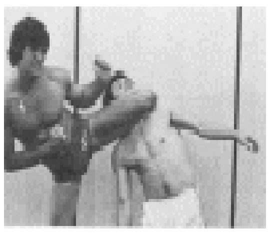
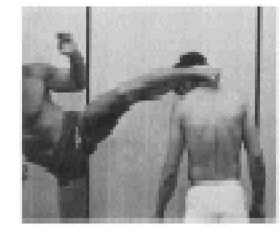
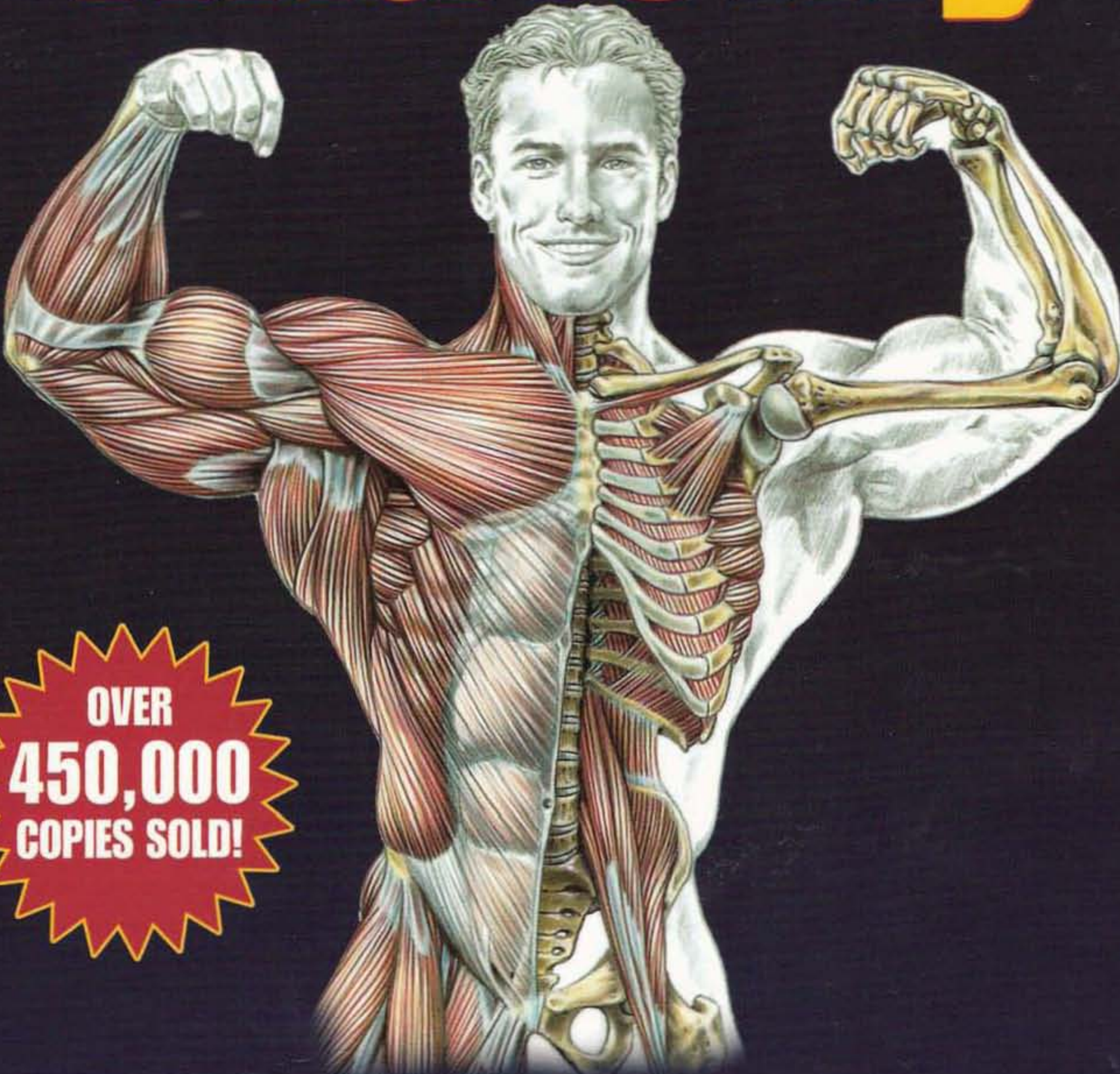


THE 100 DEADLIEST KARATE MOVES



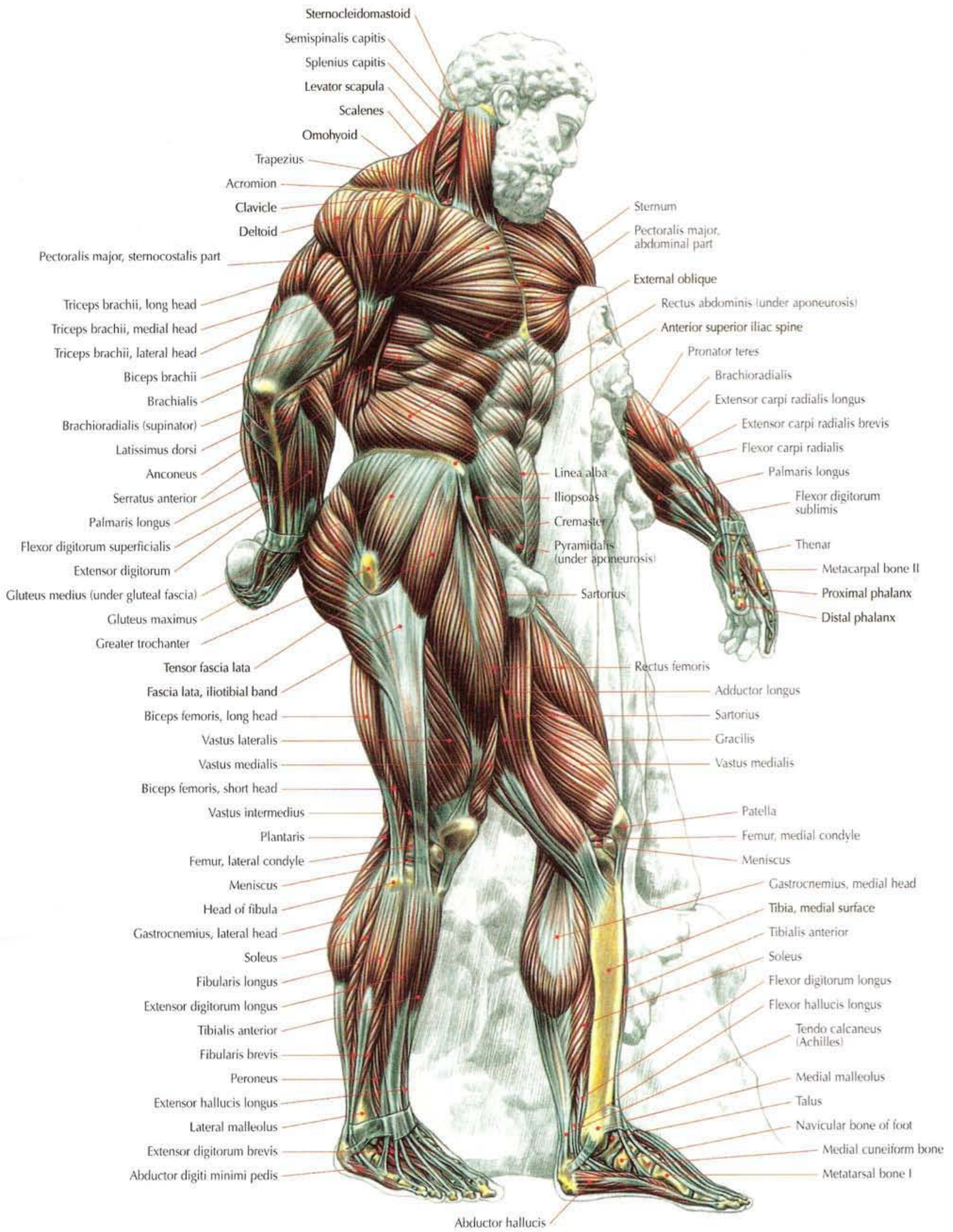
SECOND EDITION

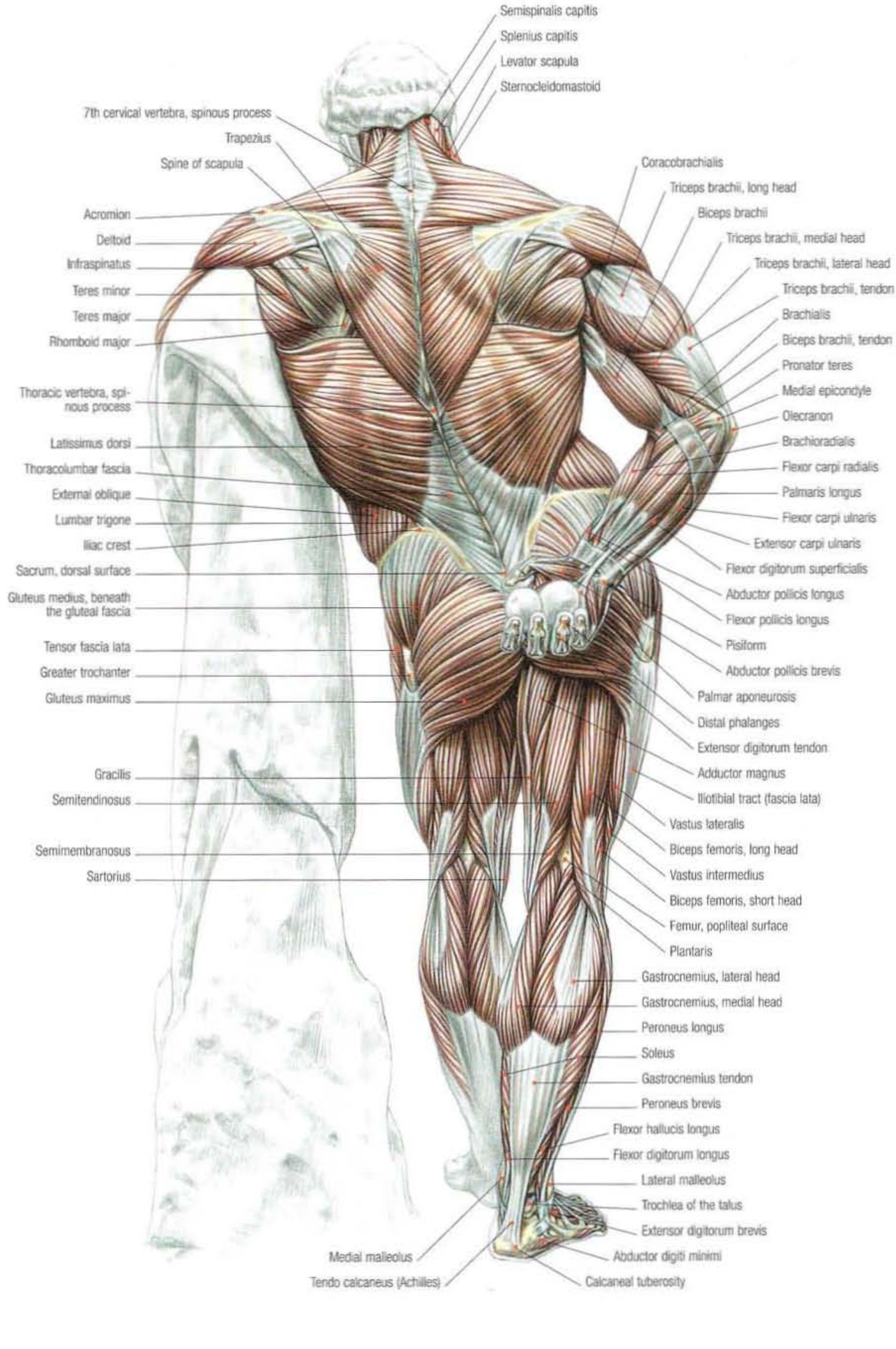
Strength Training Anatomy



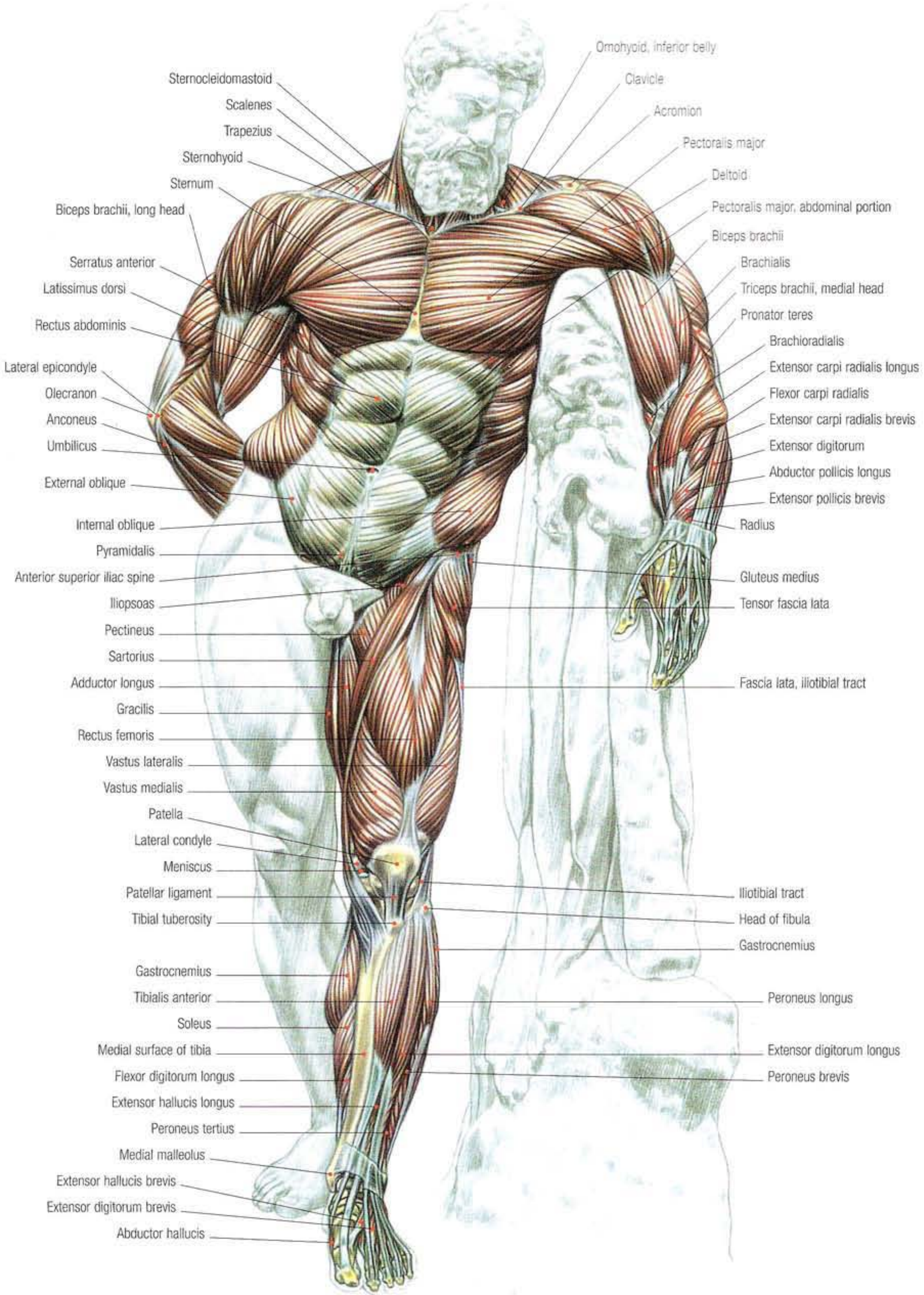
OVER 450,000 COPIES SOLD!

Frédéric Delavier


Sternocleidomastoid
Semispinalis capitis
Splenius capitis
Levator scapula
Scalenes
Omohyoid
Trapezius
Acromion
Clavicle
Deltoid
Pectoralis major, sternocostalis part
Triceps brachii, long head
Triceps brachii, medial head
Triceps brachii, lateral head
Biceps brachii
Brachialis
Brachioradialis (supinator)
Latissimus dorsi
Anconeus
Serratus anterior
Palmaris longus
Flexor digitorum superficialis
Extensor digitorum
Gluteus medius (under gluteal fascia)
Gluteus maximus
Greater trochanter
Tensor fascia lata
Fascia lata, iliotibial band
Biceps femoris, long head
Vastus lateralis
Vastus medialis
Biceps femoris, short head
Vastus intermedius
Plantaris
Femur, lateral condyle
Meniscus
Head of fibula
Gastrocnemius, lateral head
Soleus
Fibularis longus
Extensor digitorum longus
Tibialis anterior
Fibularis brevis
Peroneus
Extensor hallucis longus
Lateral malleolus
Extensor digitorum brevis
Abductor digiti minimi pedis
Abductor hallucis
Sternum
Pectoralis major, abdominal part
External oblique
Rectus abdominis (under aponeurosis)
Anterior superior iliac spine
Pronator teres
Brachioradialis
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Flexor carpi radialis
Palmaris longus
Flexor digitorum sublimis
Thenar
Metacarpal bone II
Proximal phalanx
Distal phalanx
Linea alba
Iliopsoas
Cremaster
Pyramidalis (under aponeurosis)
Sartorius
Rectus femoris
Adductor longus
Sartorius
Gracilis
Vastus medialis
Patella
Femur, medial condyle
Meniscus
Gastrocnemius, medial head
Tibia, medial surface
Tibialis anterior
Soleus
Flexor digitorum longus
Flexor hallucis longus
Tendo calcaneus (Achilles)
Medial malleolus
Talus
Navicular bone of foot
Medial cuneiform bone
Metatarsal bone I



Semispinalis capitis
Splenius capitis
Levator scapula
Sternocleidomastoid
7th cervical vertebra, spinous process
Trapezius
Spine of scapula
Acromion
Deltoid
Infraspinatus
Teres minor
Teres major
Rhomboid major
Thoracic vertebra, spinous process
Latissimus dorsi
Thoracolumbar fascia
External oblique
Lumbar trigone
Iliac crest
Sacrum, dorsal surface
Gluteus medius, beneath the gluteal fascia
Tensor fascia lata
Greater trochanter
Gluteus maximus
Gracilis
Semitendinosus
Semimembranosus
Sartorius
Coracobrachialis
Triceps brachii, long head
Biceps brachii
Triceps brachii, medial head
Triceps brachii, lateral head
Triceps brachii, tendon
Brachialis
Biceps brachii, tendon
Pronator teres
Medial epicondyle
Olecranon
Brachioradialis
Flexor carpi radialis
Palmaris longus
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Extensor carpi ulnaris
Flexor digitorum superficialis
Abductor pollicis longus
Flexor pollicis longus
Pisiform
Abductor pollicis brevis
Palmar aponeurosis
Distal phalanges
Extensor digitorum tendon
Adductor magnus
Iliotibial tract (fascia lata)
Vastus lateralis
Biceps femoris, long head
Vastus intermedius
Biceps femoris, short head
Femur, popliteal surface
Plantaris
Gastrocnemius, lateral head
Gastrocnemius, medial head
Peroneus longus
Soleus
Gastrocnemius tendon
Peroneus brevis
Flexor hallucis longus
Flexor digitorum longus
Lateral malleolus
Trochlea of the talus
Extensor digitorum brevis
Abductor digiti minimi
Medial malleolus
Tendo calcaneus (Achilles)
Calcaneal tuberosity



Sternocleidomastoid
Scalenes
Trapezius
Sternohyoid
Sternum
Biceps brachii, long head
Serratus anterior
Latissimus dorsi
Rectus abdominis
Lateral epicondyle
Olecranon
Anconeus
Umbilicus
External oblique
Internal oblique
Pyramidalis
Anterior superior iliac spine
Iliopsoas
Pectineus
Sartorius
Adductor longus
Gracilis
Rectus femoris
Vastus lateralis
Vastus medialis
Patella
Lateral condyle
Meniscus
Patellar ligament
Tibial tuberosity
Gastrocnemius
Tibialis anterior
Soleus
Medial surface of tibia
Flexor digitorum longus
Extensor hallucis longus
Peroneus tertius
Medial malleolus
Extensor hallucis brevis
Extensor digitorum brevis
Abductor hallucis
Omohyoid, inferior belly
Clavicle
Acromion
Pectoralis major
Deltoid
Pectoralis major, abdominal portion
Biceps brachii
Brachialis
Triceps brachii, medial head
Pronator teres
Brachioradialis
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Flexor carpi radialis
Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Extensor digitorum
Abductor pollicis longus
Extensor pollicis brevis
Radius
Gluteus medius
Tensor fascia lata
Fascia lata, iliotibial tract
Iliotibial tract
Head of fibula
Gastrocnemius
Peroneus longus
Extensor digitorum longus
Peroneus brevis

frédéric delavier

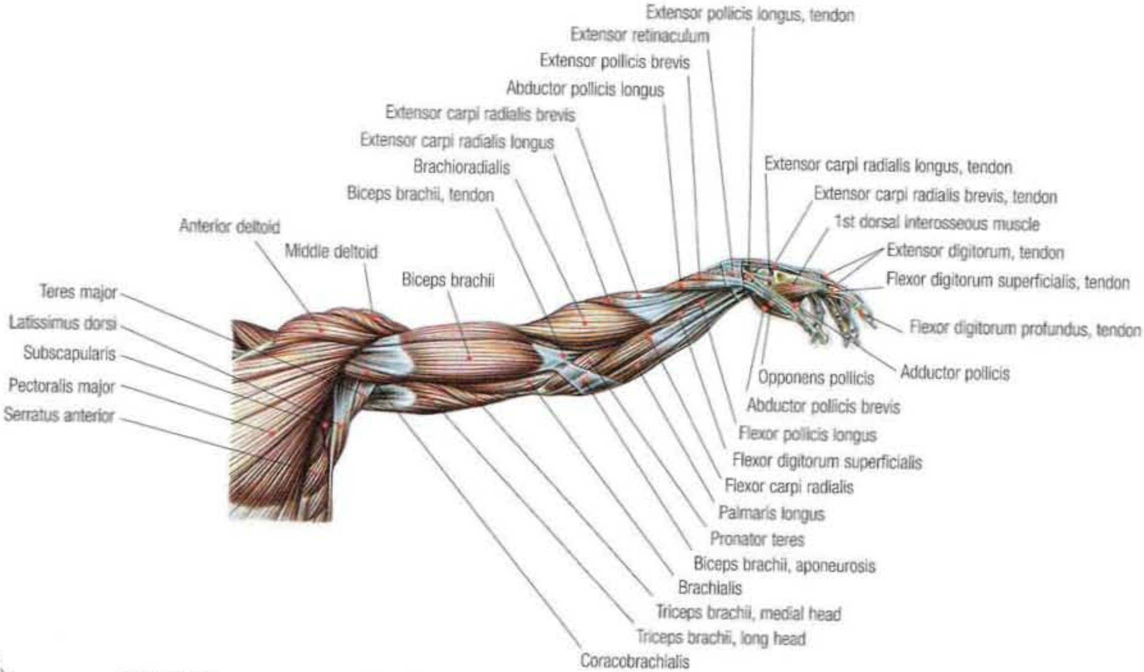
STRENGTH TRAINING ANATOMY

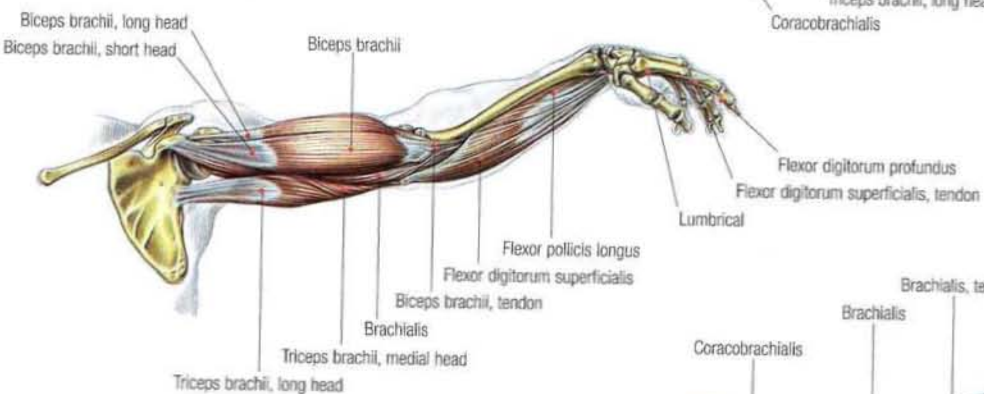
SECOND EDITION

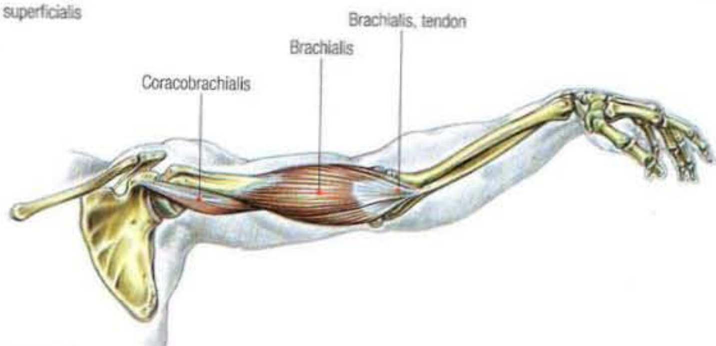
HUMAN KINETICS

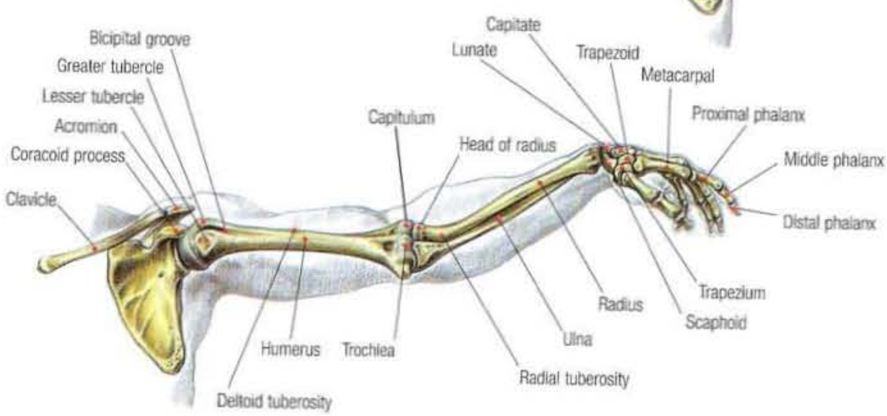
CONTENTS

1 ARMS

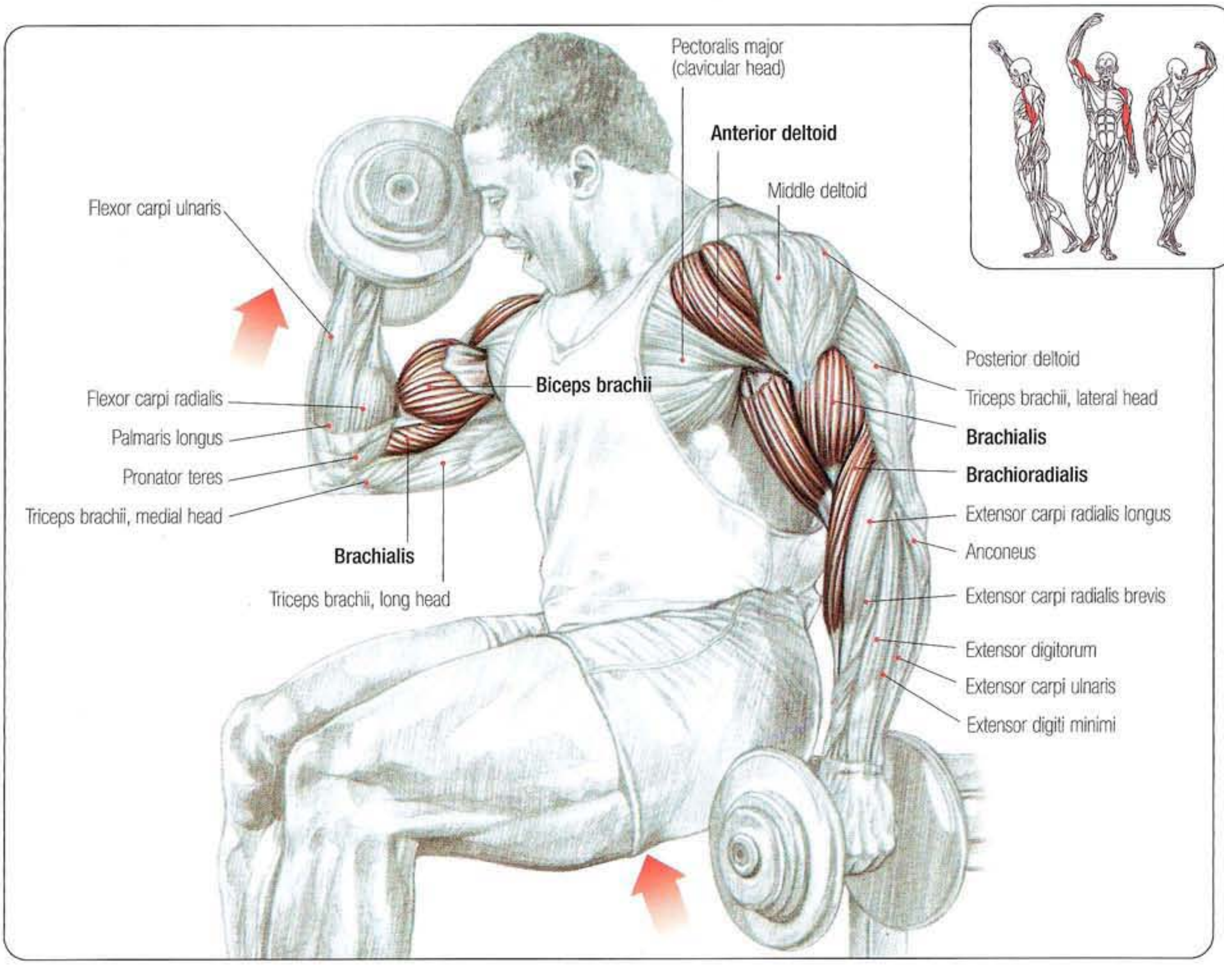

Extensor pollicis longus, tendon
Extensor retinaculum
Extensor pollicis brevis
Abductor pollicis longus
Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Brachioradialis
Biceps brachii, tendon
Anterior deltoid
Middle deltoid
Biceps brachii
Teres major
Latissimus dorsi
Subscapularis
Pectoralis major
Serratus anterior
Extensor carpi radialis longus, tendon
Extensor carpi radialis brevis, tendon
1st dorsal interosseous muscle
Extensor digitorum, tendon
Flexor digitorum superficialis, tendon
Flexor digitorum profundus, tendon
Adductor pollicis
Opponens pollicis
Abductor pollicis brevis
Flexor pollicis longus
Flexor digitorum superficialis
Flexor carpi radialis
Palmaris longus
Pronator teres
Biceps brachii, aponeurosis
Brachialis
Triceps brachii, medial head
Triceps brachii, long head
Coracobrachialis

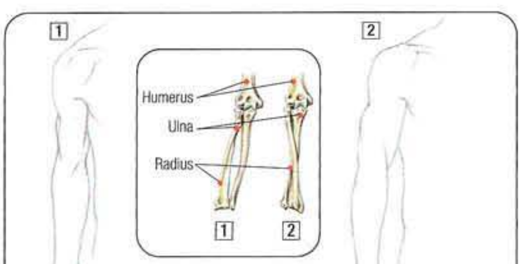

Biceps brachii, long head
Biceps brachii, short head
Biceps brachii
Flexor digitorum profundus
Flexor digitorum superficialis, tendon
Lumbrical
Flexor pollicis longus
Flexor digitorum superficialis
Biceps brachii, tendon
Brachialis
Triceps brachii, medial head
Triceps brachii, long head


Brachialis, tendon
Brachialis
Coracobrachialis


Bicipital groove
Greater tubercle
Lesser tubercle
Acromion
Coracoid process
Clavicle
Capitulum
Capitate
Lunate
Trapezoid
Metacarpal
Head of radius
Proximal phalanx
Middle phalanx
Distal phalanx
Trapezium
Scaphoid
Radius
Ulna
Humerus
Trochlea
Radial tuberosity
Deltoid tuberosity

1 CURLS





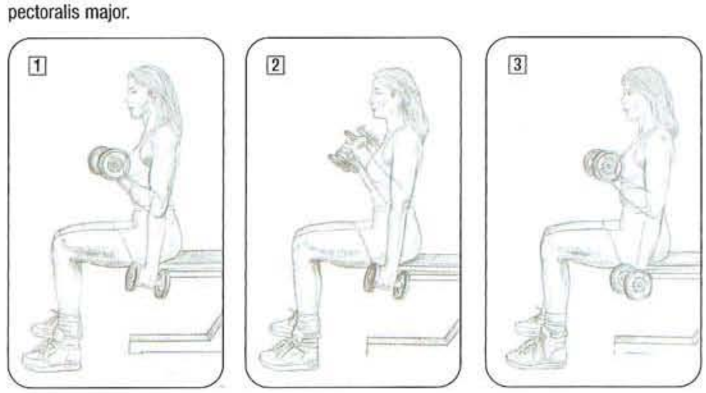
1 SUPINATION
2 PRONATION

Sit holding a dumbbell in each hand with arms hanging down and the palms of the hands facing the body:

- Inhale and bend the the elbow, rotating the palm up before the forearm reaches horizontal.
- Continue by raising the elbows at the end of the movement.

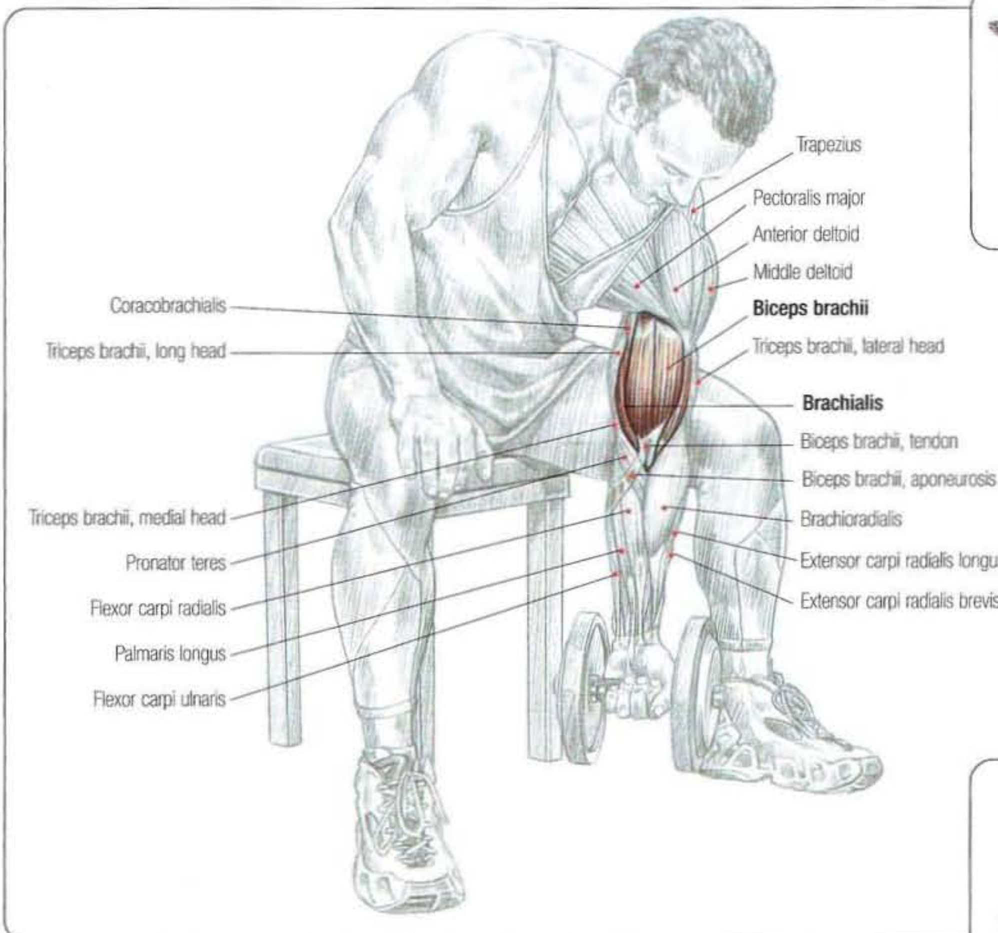
This exercise primarily uses the brachioradialis (long supinator), brachialis, biceps brachii, and anterior deltoid and, to a lesser extent, the coracobrachialis and clavicular head of the pectoralis major.

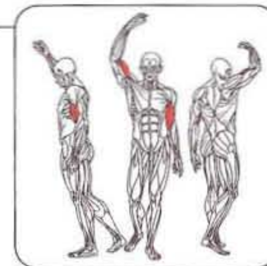
COMMENT: This exercise takes the biceps through its complete range of motion, which includes flexion, protraction, and supination.



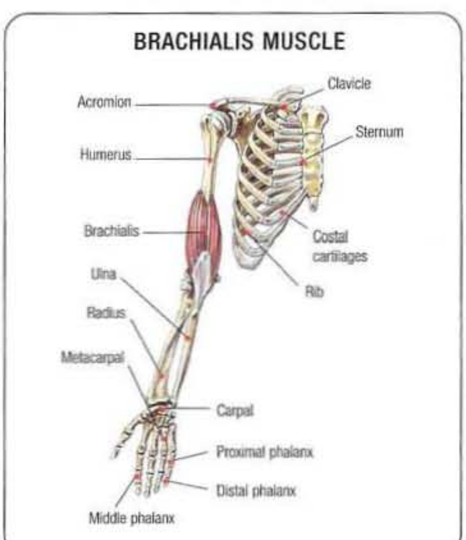
THREE WAYS TO EXECUTE CURLS
1 EMPHASIZE BICEPS
2 WORK BRACHIORADIALIS INTENSELY
3 WORK MAINLY BICEPS AND BRACHIALIS

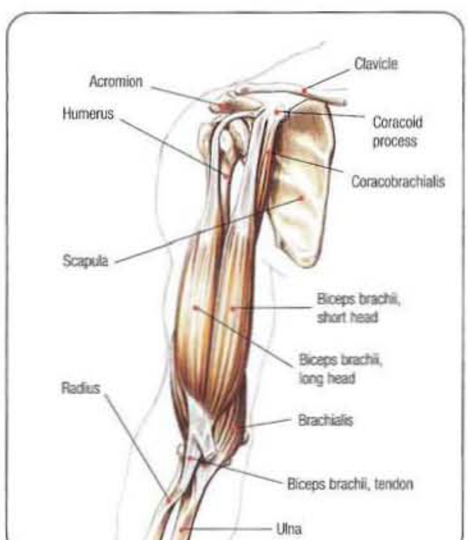
CONCENTRATION CURLS 2





FINAL POSITION





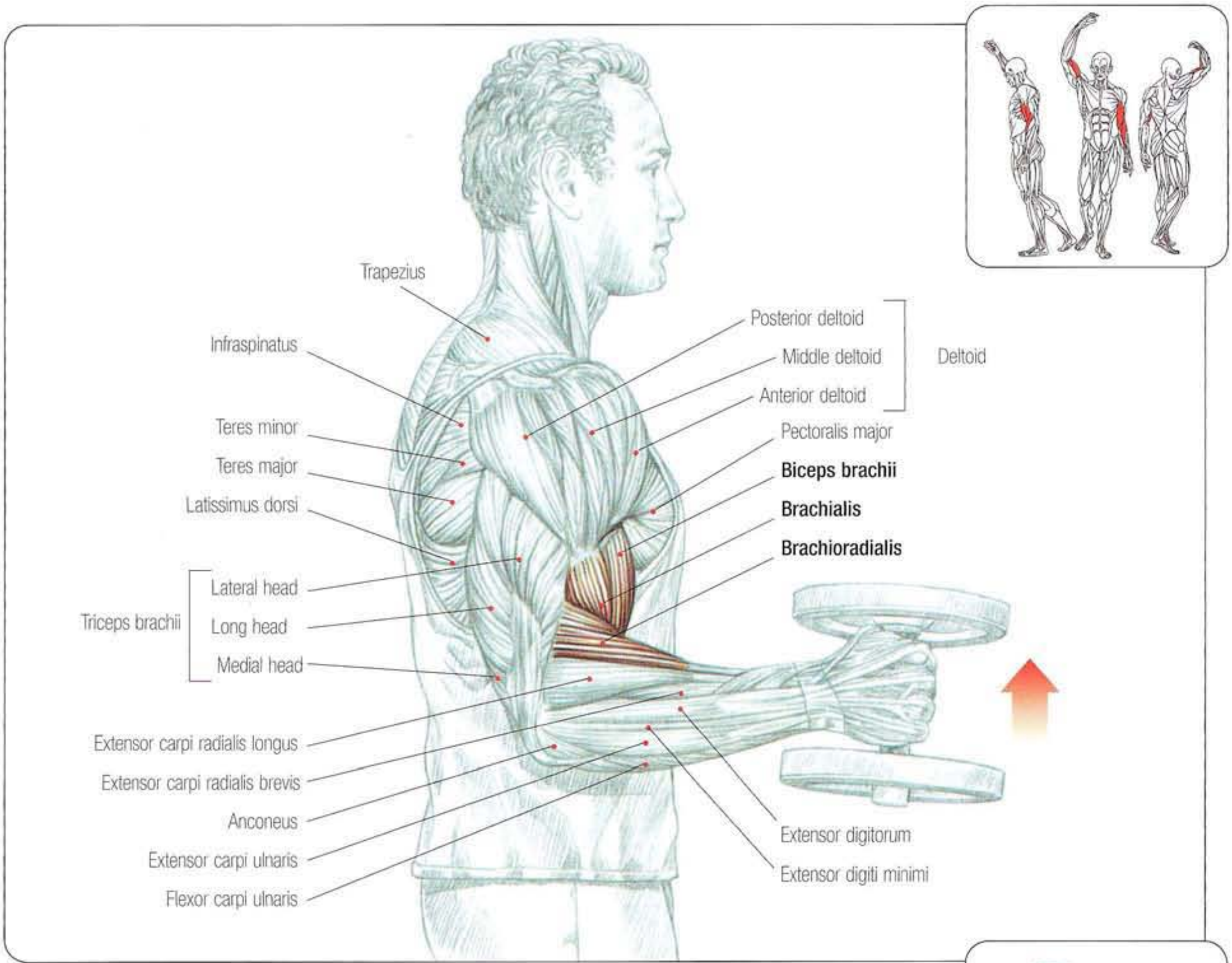
Sit holding a dumbbell with the palm facing forward and the elbow positioned against the inner thigh:

- Inhale and lift the forearm by bending the elbow.
- Exhale at the end of the effort.

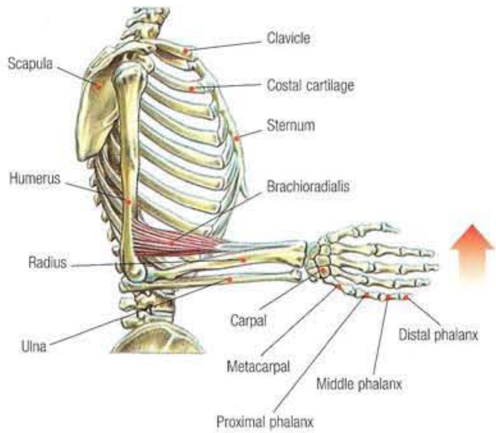
This isolation exercise allows you to control the range of motion, speed, and form of the movement.

It mainly works the biceps brachii and brachialis.

3 HAMMER CURLS



BRACHIORADIALIS MUSCLE

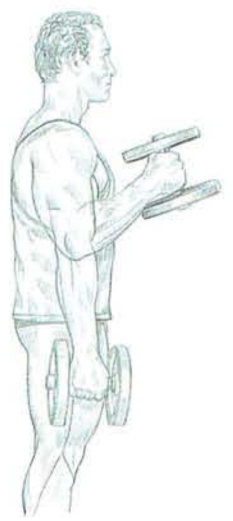


Stand or sit gripping a dumbbell in each hand with the palms facing each other:

- Inhale and raise the forearms together or alternately.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

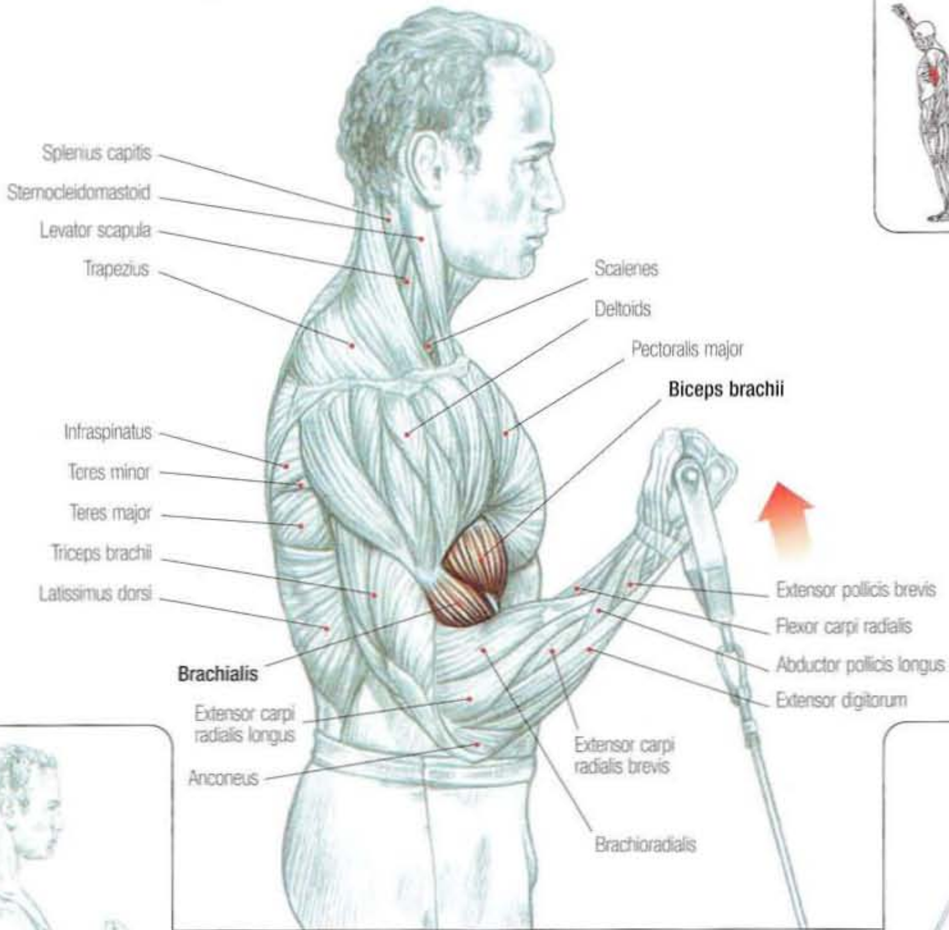
This is the best exercise for developing the brachioradialis.

It also develops the biceps brachii, brachialis, and, to a lesser degree, the extensor carpi radialis brevis and longus.



THE MOVEMENT

LOW-PULLEY CURLS 4

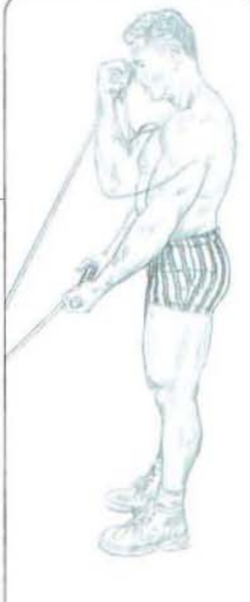


Stand facing the machine, grasping the handles with an underhand grip (thumbs facing away from each other):

- Inhale and bend the elbows to raise the forearms.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

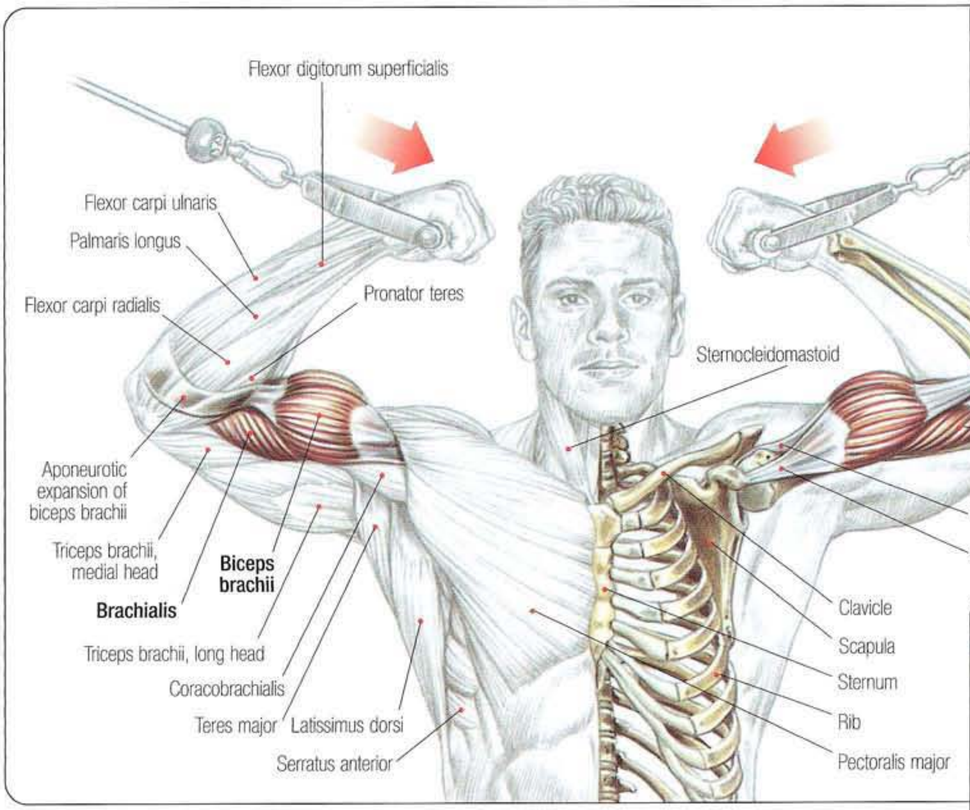
This exercise focuses the effort on the biceps brachii and works the muscle intensely.

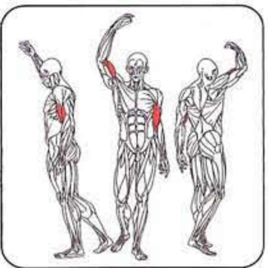
THE MOVEMENT



VARIATION
Two-handed low-pulley curls

5 HIGH-PULLEY CURLS





Stand between the pulleys with the arms outstretched in a "cross" and grasp the handles of the high pulleys with an underhand grip:

- Inhale and bend the elbows to bring the hands toward the body. Exhale at the end of the movement.

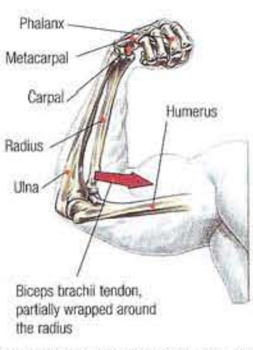
This exercise, which is most often performed as a cool-down at the end of an arm session, focuses the work on the short head of the biceps brachii, which has been stretched and put under tension in the "cross" start-up position.

This exercise also contracts the monoarticular brachialis elbow flexor.

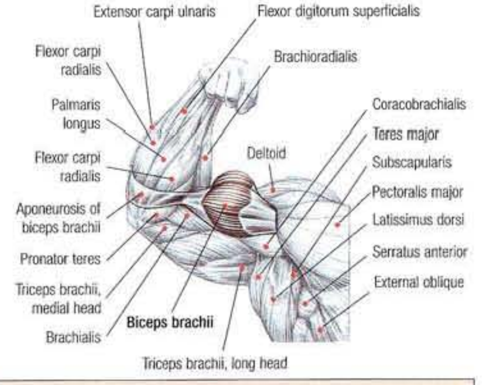
Perform this exercise with light weights so that you can concentrate and feel the contraction at the inside of the biceps brachii. Sets of high reps provide the best results.

VARIATION
One-handed execution

When the hand is pronated, the distal tendon of the biceps brachii muscle is partially wrapped around the radius.

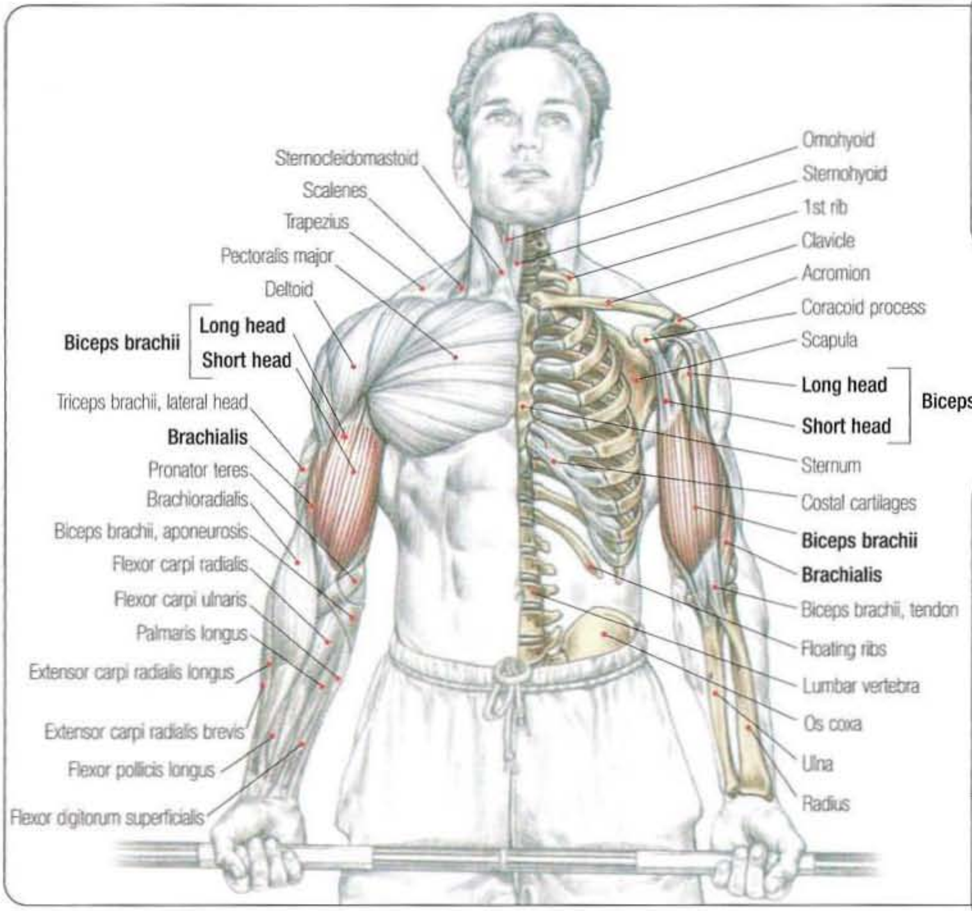


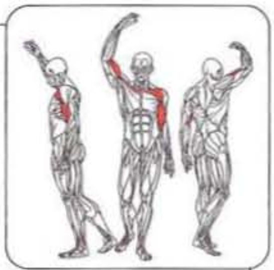
When the biceps brachii contracts, the force placed on its distal tendon causes the radius to pivot on its axis, bringing the hand into supination.



Comment: In addition to its role as a forearm flexor, the biceps brachii is the most powerful supinator.

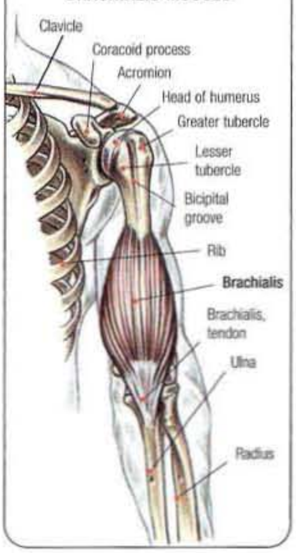
BARBELL CURLS 6





THE MOVEMENT

BRACHIALIS MUSCLE



Stand with the back straight, grasping the barbell with an underhand grip and hands slightly wider than shoulder-width apart:

- Inhale and raise the barbell by bending the elbows, taking care to stabilize the torso and spine by isometrically contracting the gluteal muscles, abdominal muscles, and spinal muscles.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

This exercise mainly contracts the biceps brachii, brachialis, and, to a lesser degree, the brachioradialis, pronator teres, and the wrist flexor group.

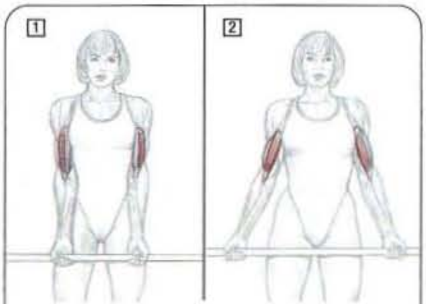
Variations: Vary the width of the grip to work different parts of the muscle more intensely:

- Placing the hands farther apart isolates the short head of the biceps brachii.
- Placing the hands closer together isolates the long head of the biceps brachii.

Raising both elbows after they are flexed increases the contraction of the biceps brachii and contracts the anterior deltoid.

To make the exercise more difficult, perform the movement with the back against a wall so that the shoulder blades don't move.

You can lift more weight and gain strength by leaning the torso back while lifting the bar; however, to prevent injury, this requires good technique and well-developed abdominal and lumbar muscles.

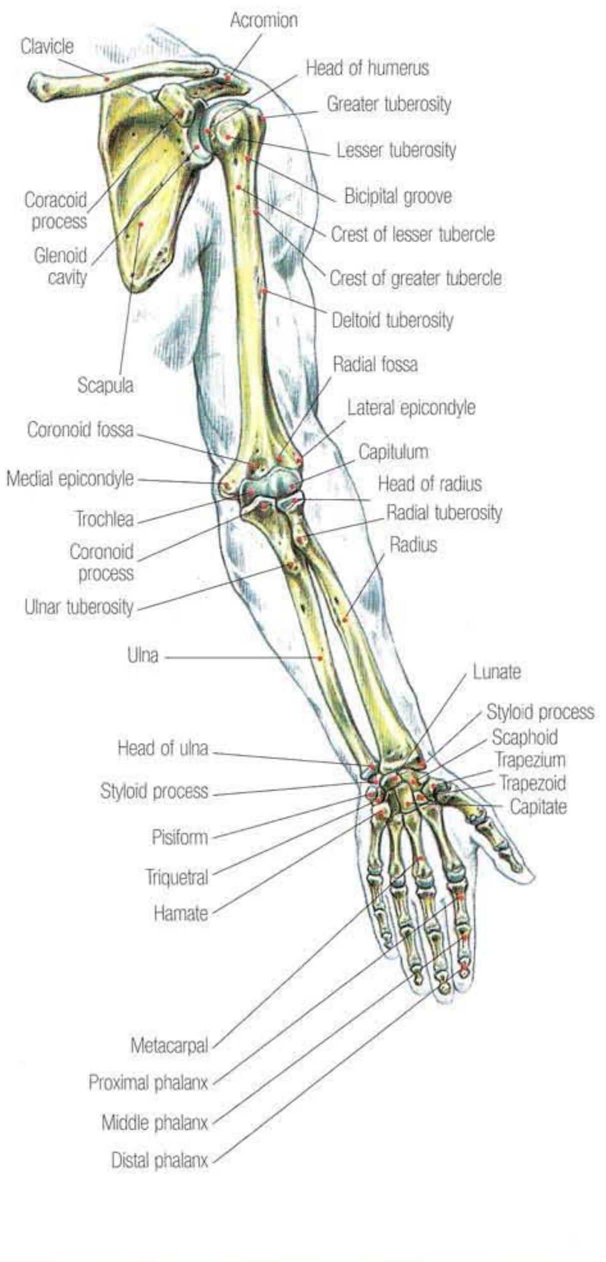


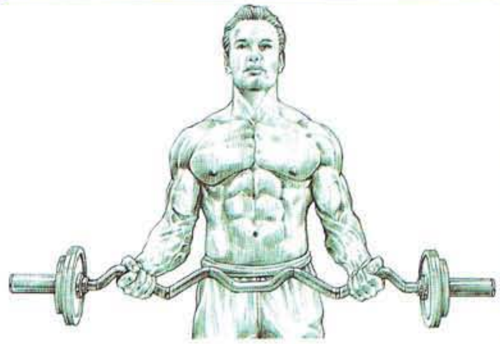
BARBELL CURLS

1 **Narrow grip**
Mainly works the long head of the biceps brachii.

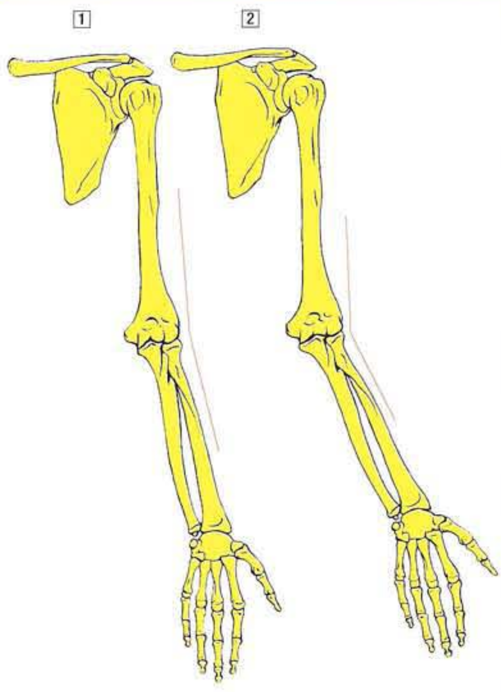
2 **Wide grip**
Mainly works the short head of the biceps brachii.

ELBOW STRUCTURE AND ITS EFFECT ON TRAINING





Biceps training with an E-Z bar eases excessive wrist tension.



1 Upper extremity with a small angle

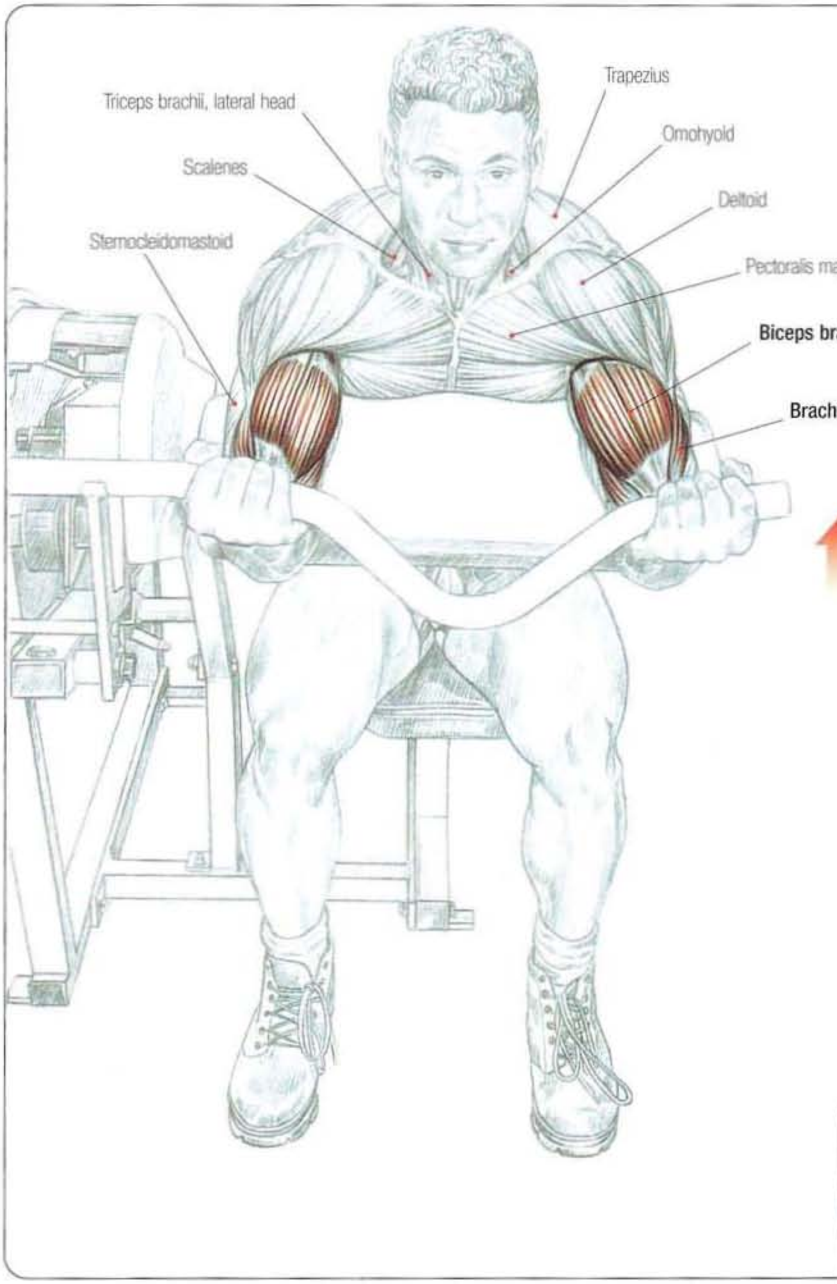
2 Upper extremity with a significant valgus angle (more common in women)

When training the biceps brachii using a barbell, take into account variations in each person's physical structure.

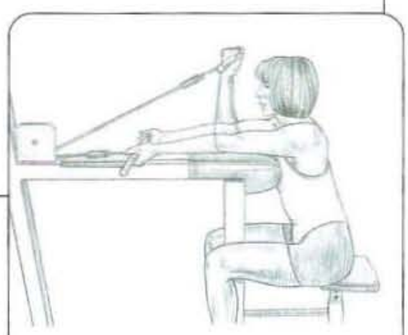
In the anatomical position (arms hanging alongside the body, palms facing forward, and thumbs pointing laterally), the angle at the elbow between the upper arm and the forearm varies from person to person. Someone whose forearm hangs distinctly away from the body in a valgus position must break excessively at the wrist when performing a curl with a straight bar, which is painful. Therefore, these people should work with an E-Z bar to spare their wrists.

Comment: Valgus of the elbow is usually more pronounced in women.

MACHINE CURLS 7




INITIAL POSITION


Performing the curl with an Atlas pulley is a great way to pump up the muscle.

Sit at the machine and grasp the bar with an underhand grip, arms extended, and resting on the support:

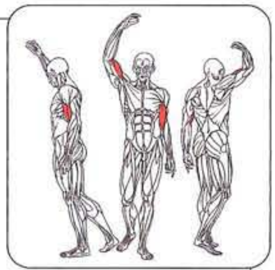
- Inhale and raise the forearms.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

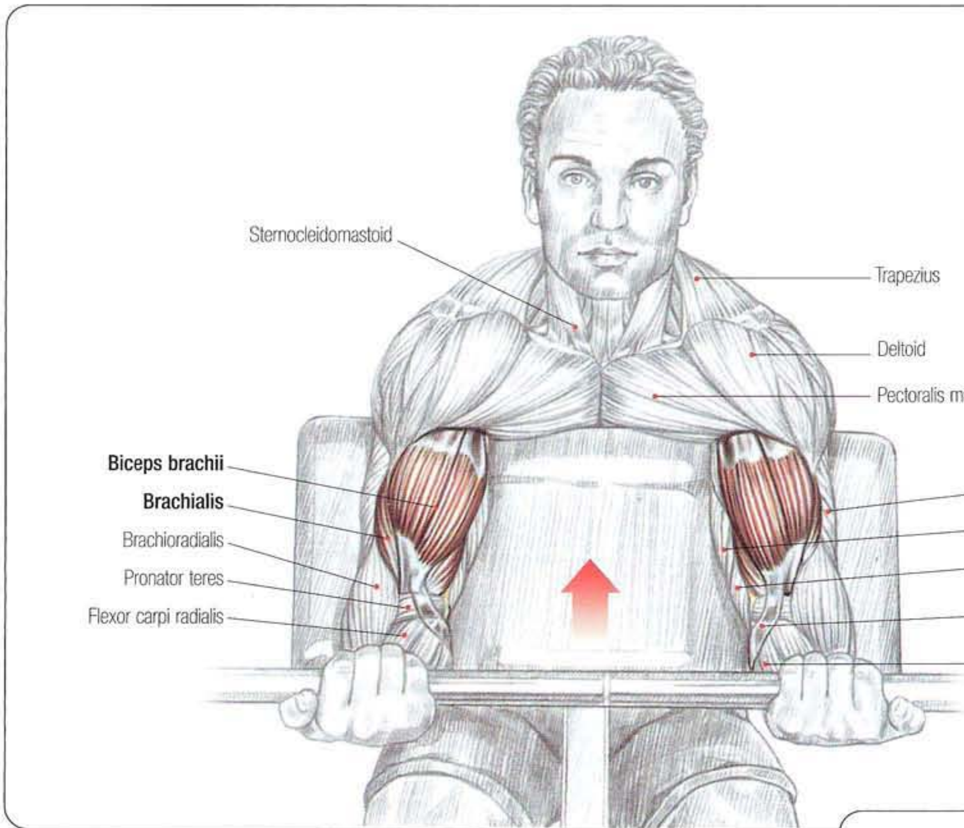
This is one of the best exercises for working the biceps brachii. Fixing the arms against the support makes it impossible to "cheat."

At the beginning, the muscle tension is intense, so be sure to warm up properly using light weights. To avoid the risk of tendonitis, do not completely extend the arm.

This movement also works the brachialis and, to a lesser extent, the brachioradialis and pronator teres.

8 PREACHER CURLS



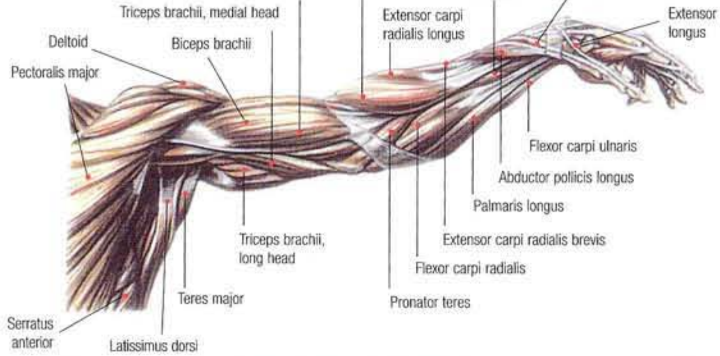


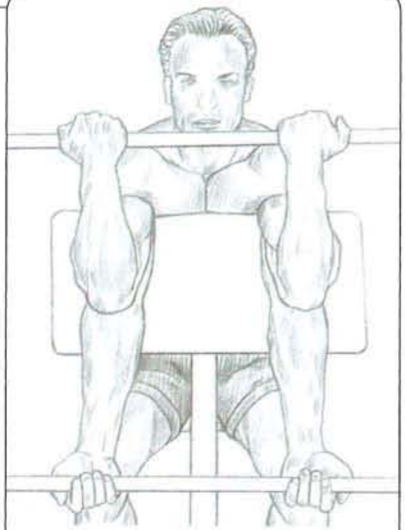
Sit or stand with the arms resting on the support pad and grasp the bar with an underhand grip:

- Inhale and raise the forearms by bending the elbows. Exhale at the end of the effort.

This is one of the best exercises for isolating the biceps.

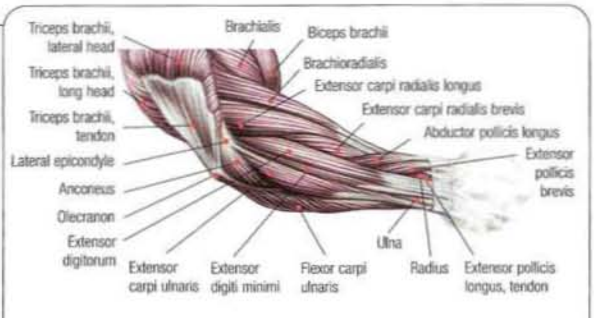
Attention: The angle of the support pad places significant tension on the forearms when the arm is completely extended. Therefore, warm up the muscles properly and begin with lighter weights.



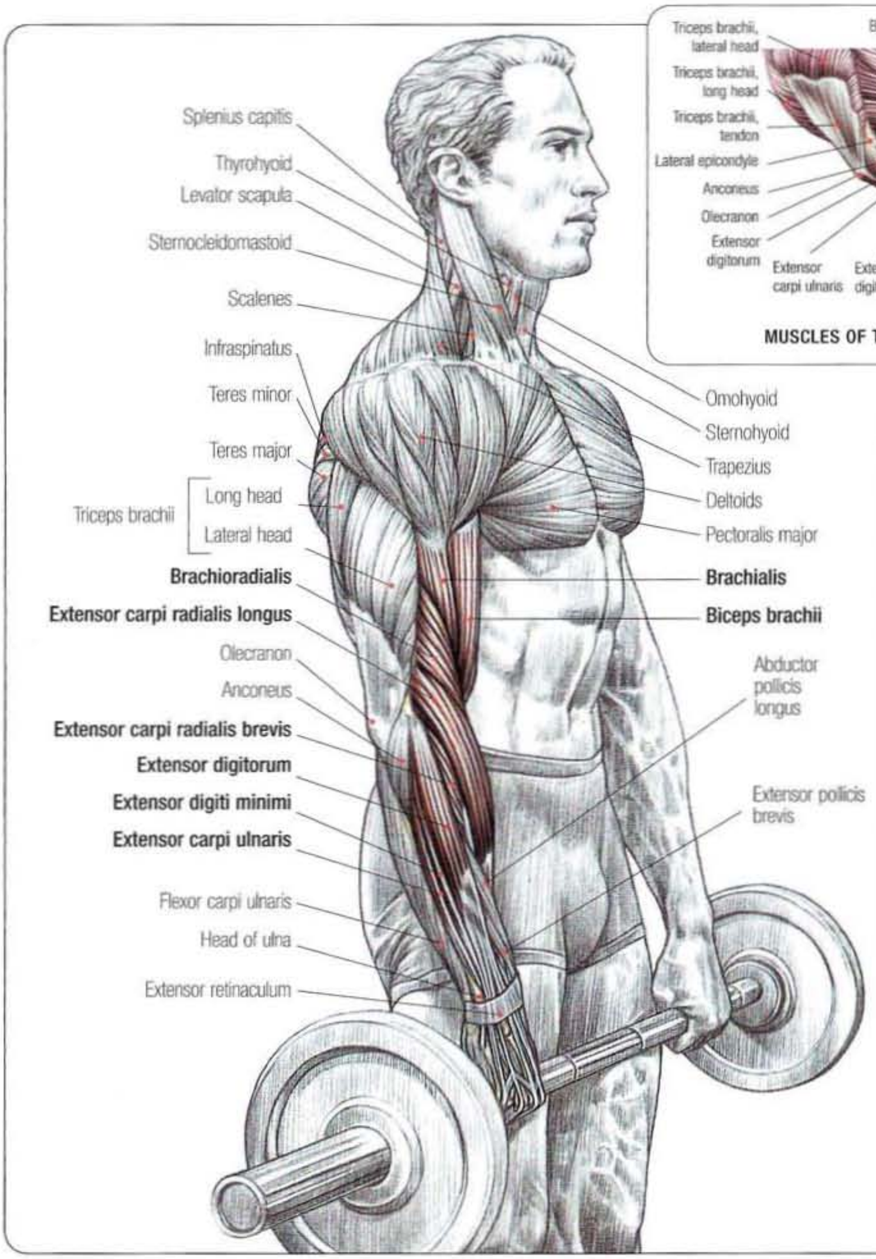


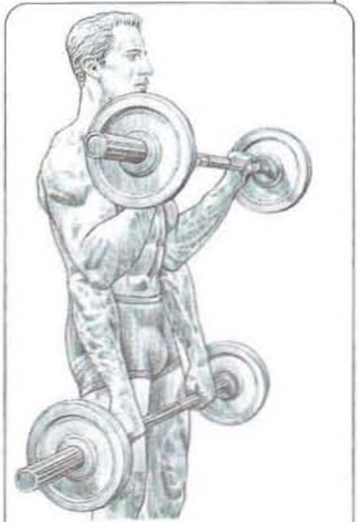
THE MOVEMENT

REVERSE CURLS 9

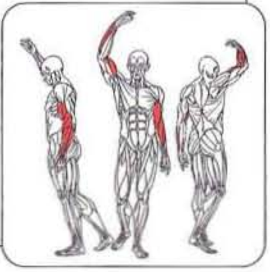


MUSCLES OF THE FOREARM (LATERAL VIEW)





THE MOVEMENT



Stand with the legs slightly apart and arms extended and grasp the bar with an overhand grip (with the thumbs facing each other):

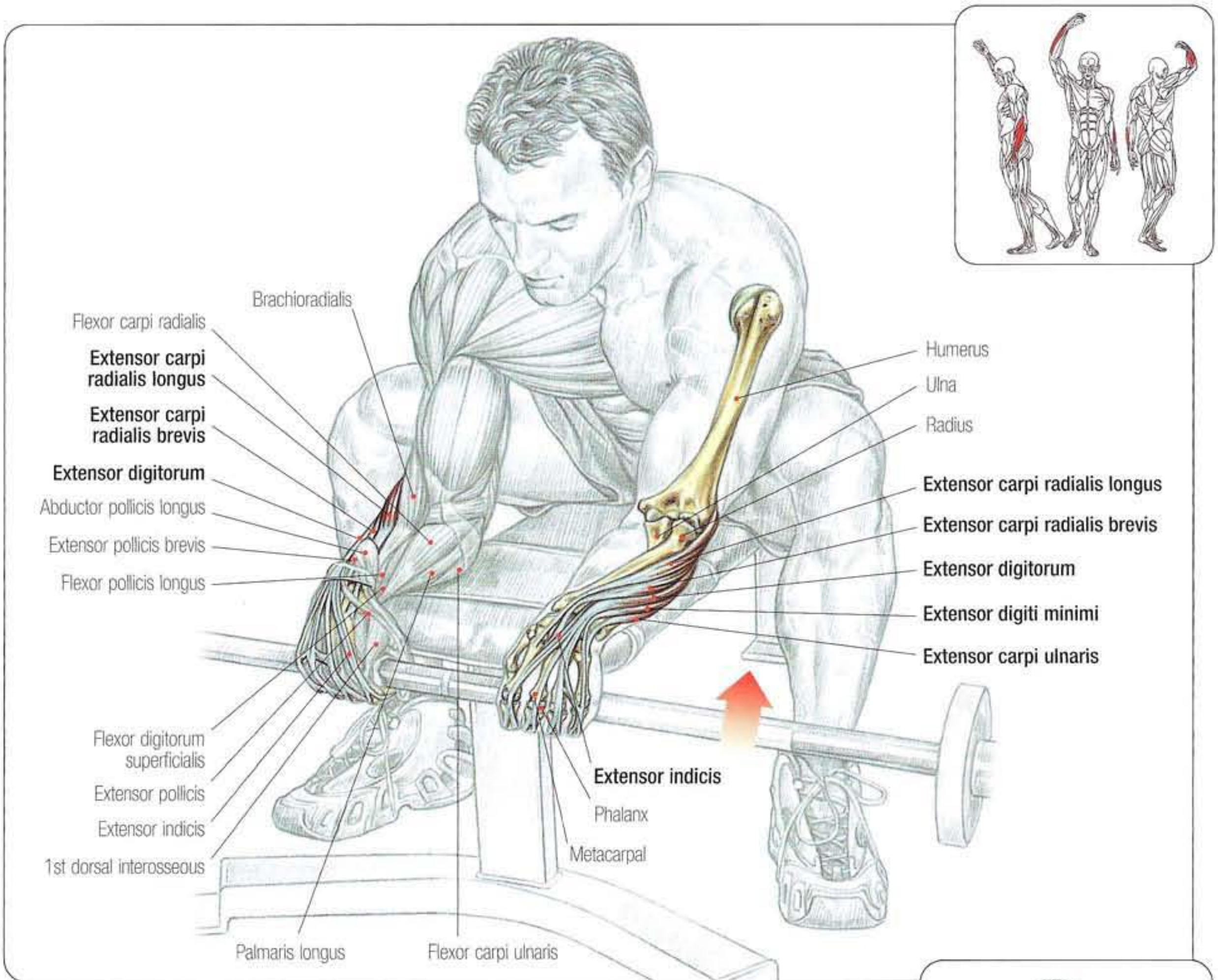
- Inhale and raise the forearms by bending the elbows.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

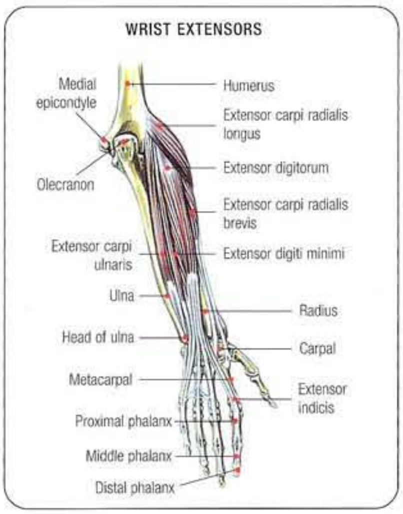
This exercise works the extensor muscles of the wrist: extensor carpi radialis longus, extensor carpi radialis brevis, extensor digitorum, extensor digiti minimi, and extensor carpi ulnaris.

It also acts on the brachioradialis, brachialis, and, to a lesser degree, the biceps brachii.

Comment: This is an excellent exercise for strengthening the wrist, which is often weak because of an imbalance caused by using the wrist flexors rather than the wrist extensors. For this reason, many boxers include it in their training. Many bench press champions use it to keep their wrists from trembling under extreme weights.

10 REVERSE WRIST CURLS



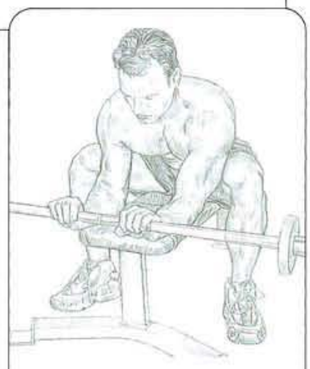


Sit with the forearms resting on the thighs or on a bench and grasp the bar with an overhand grip and keep the wrists relaxed:

- Raise the hands by extending at the wrists.

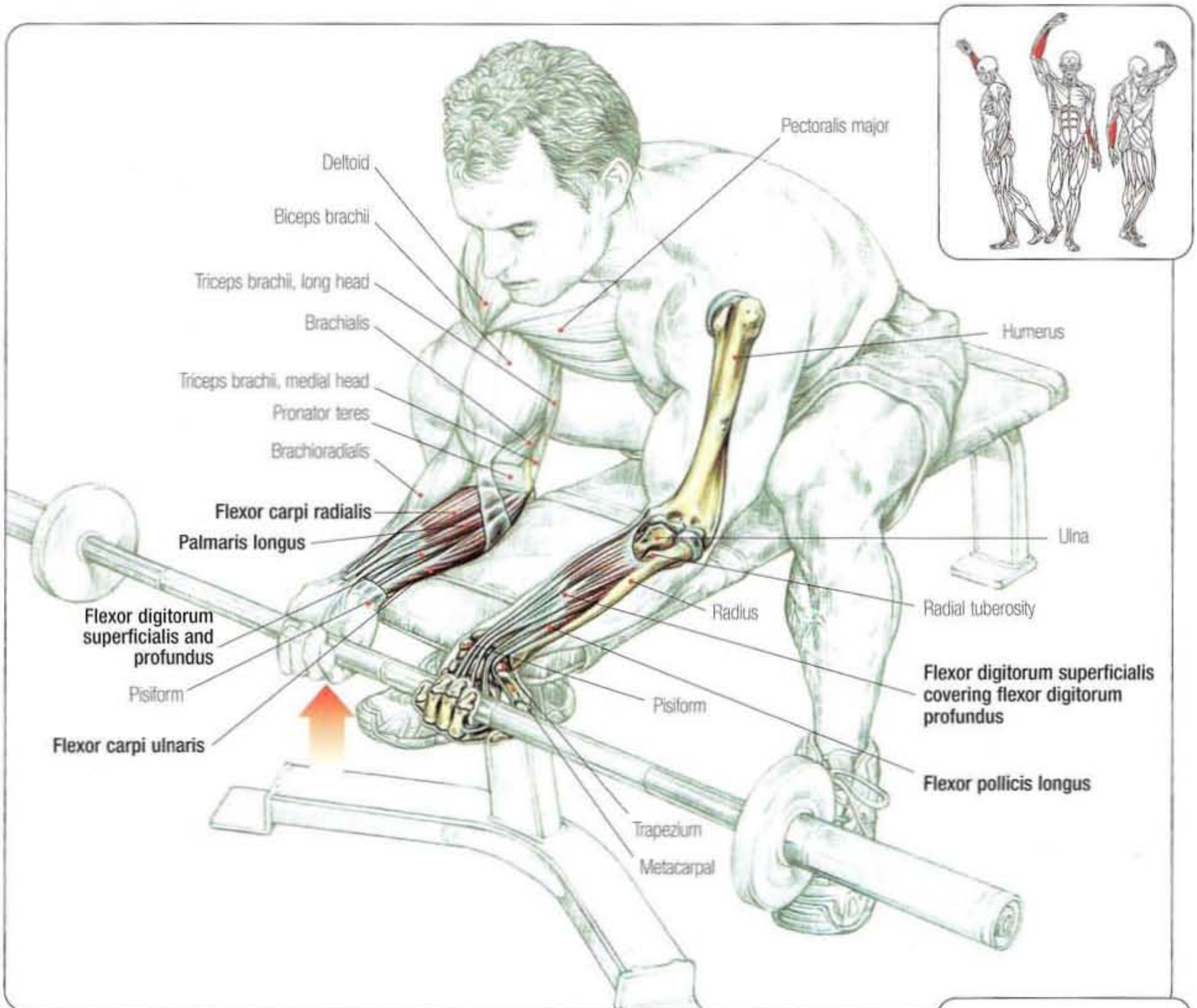
This exercise contracts the extensor carpi radialis longus and brevis, extensor digitorum, extensor digiti minimi, as well as the extensor carpi ulnaris.

Comment: This exercise strengthens the wrists, which are often vulnerable because of weak wrist extensors.

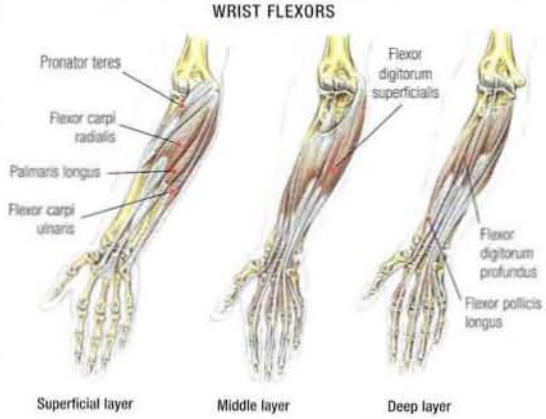


FINAL POSITION

WRIST CURLS 11



WRIST FLEXORS

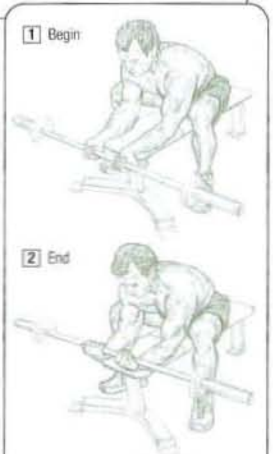


Sit with the forearms resting on the thighs or on a bench and grasp the bar with an underhand grip with wrists relaxed:

- Inhale and raise the hands by flexing at the wrists.

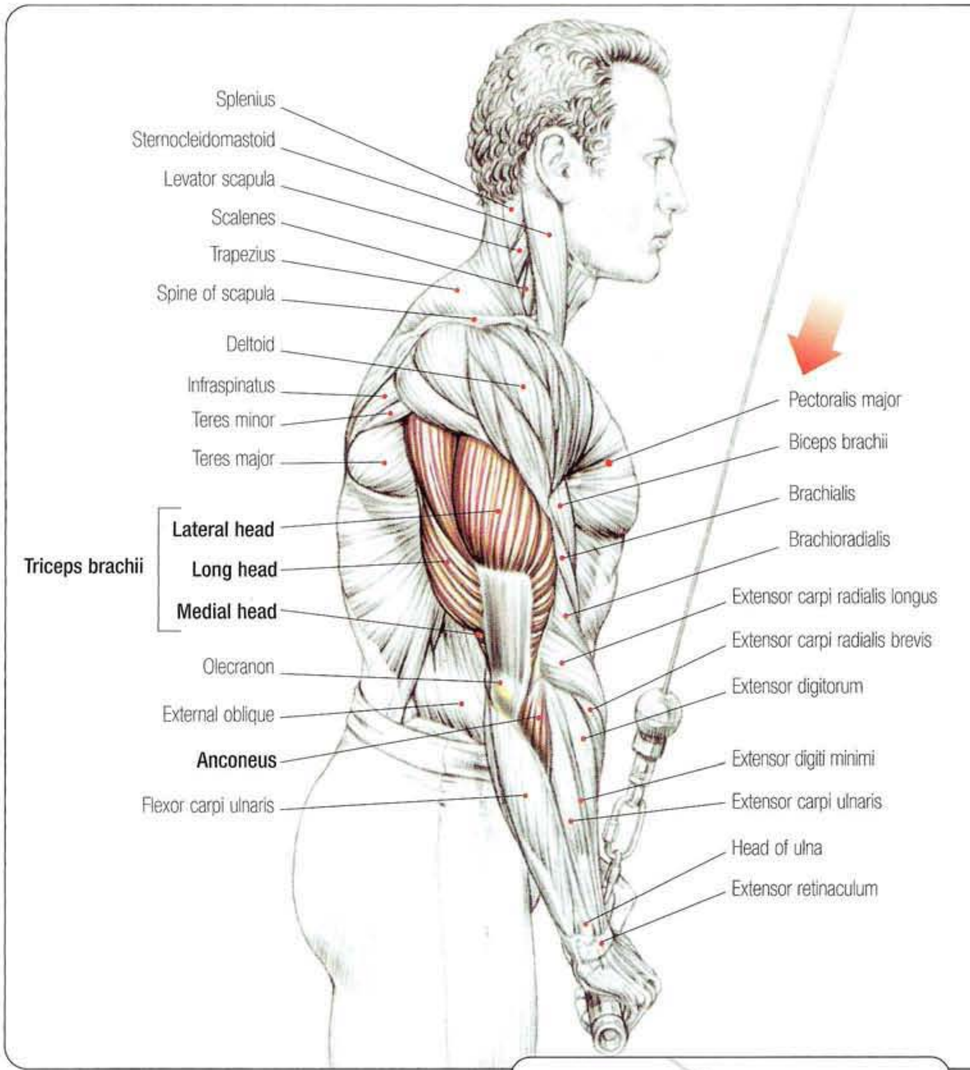
This exercise contracts the flexor carpi radialis, palmaris longus, flexor carpi ulnaris, and the flexors digitorum superficialis and profundus.

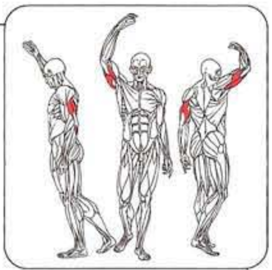
The latter two muscles, although located deep in the wrist, make up most of the muscle mass of the wrist flexors.



THE MOVEMENT

12 PUSH-DOWNS





THE MOVEMENT

Stand with the back to the machine and grasp the handle with an overhand grip, keeping the elbows tucked into the body:

- Inhale and extend the forearms, keeping the elbows tucked into the body.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

Comment: This exercise isolates the triceps and the anconeus.

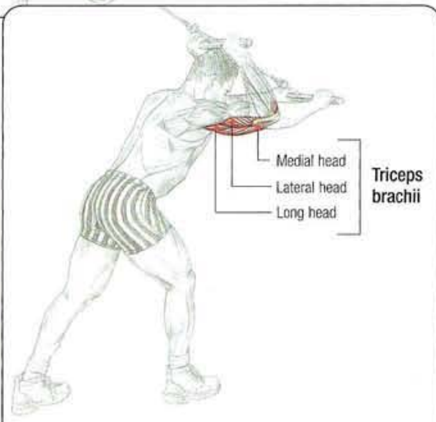
The variation using a rope rather than a handle engages the lateral head of the triceps more intensely.

Performing the movement with an underhand grip requires more contribution from the medial head of triceps.

Hold an isometric contraction for one or two seconds at the end of the movement to feel the effort more intensely.

When using heavy weights, lean forward with the torso.

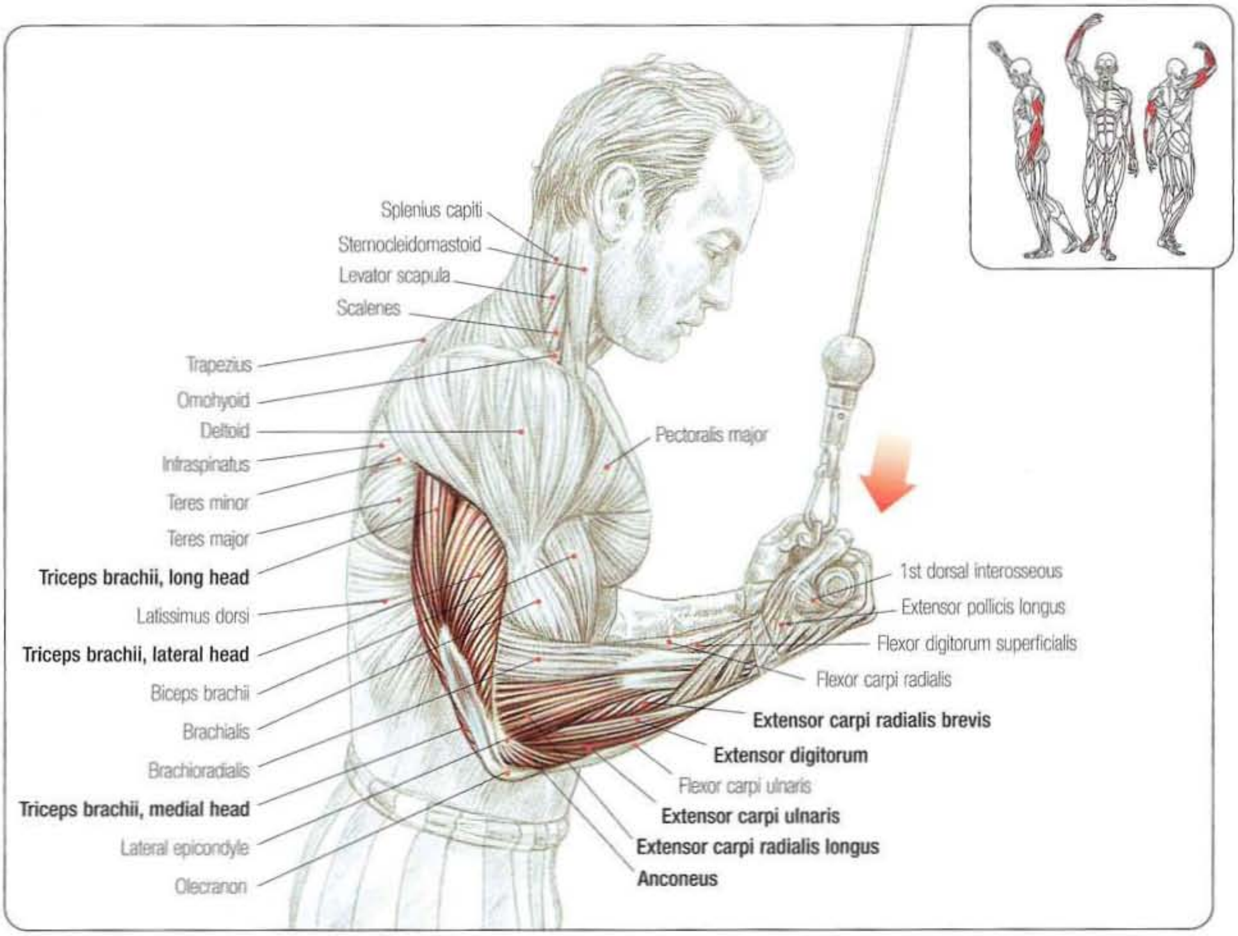
Beginners can use this exercise to develop enough strength to move on to more difficult exercises.



VARIATION WITH BACK TO THE MACHINE
To isolate of the long head of the triceps.

VARIATION WITH A ROPE
To isolate the lateral head of the triceps

REVERSE PUSH-DOWNS 13



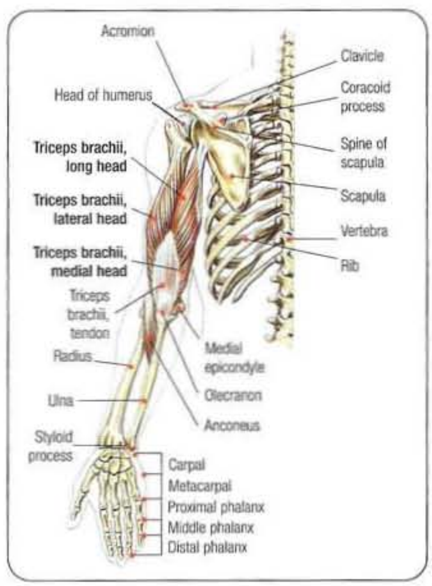
Stand facing the machine with the arms next the body and elbows bent and grasp the handle with an underhand grip:

- Inhale and extend the forearms by straightening the elbows, keeping them tucked into the body.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

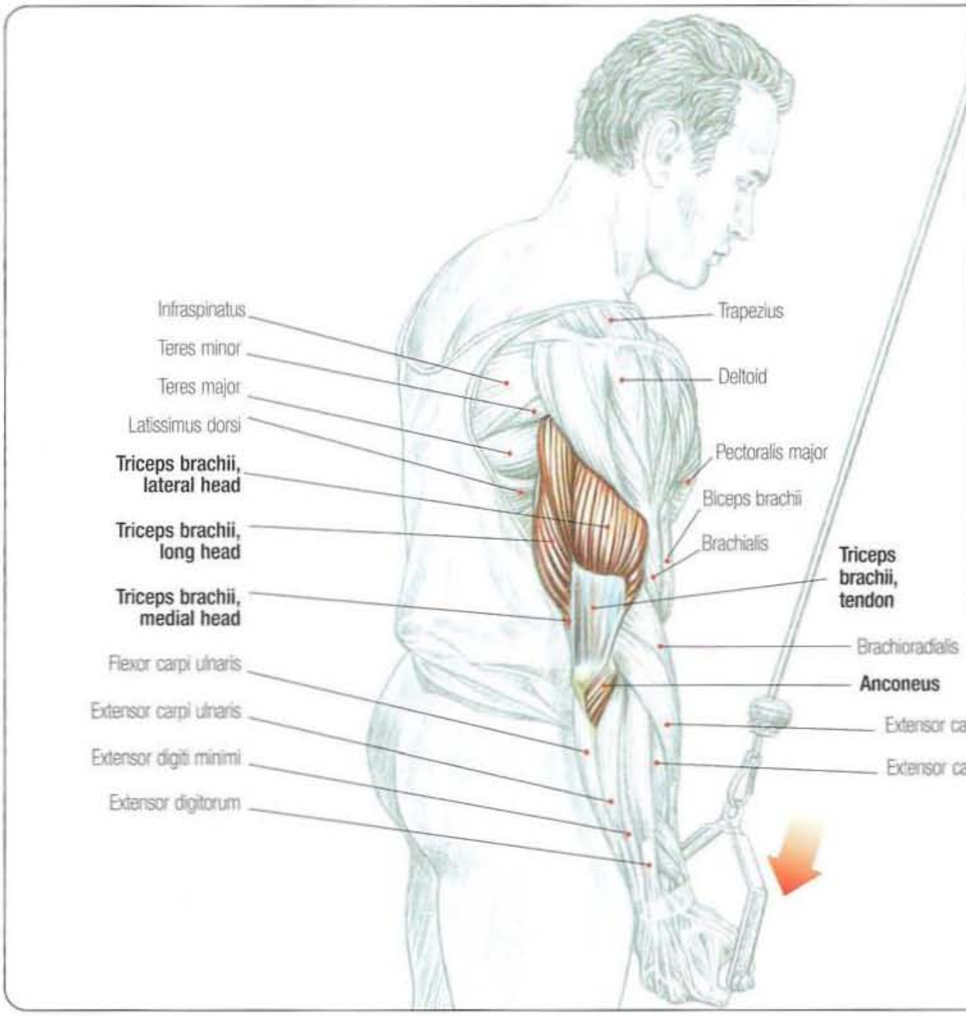
The underhand grip isolates the medial head of the triceps brachii and precludes working with heavy weights.

When extending the forearms, the anconeus and wrist extensors also contract.

The extensor carpi ulnaris, extensor digitorum, extensor digiti minimi, and extensors carpi radialis longus and brevis keep the wrist straight with isometric contraction during the exercise.



14 ONE-ARM REVERSE PUSH-DOWNS



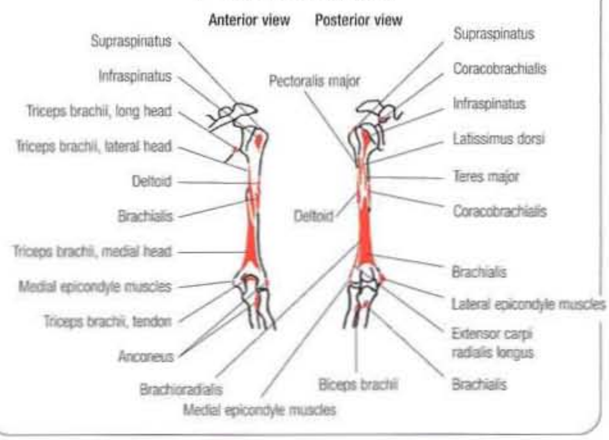
INITIAL POSITION

Stand facing the machine and grasp the handle with an underhand grip:

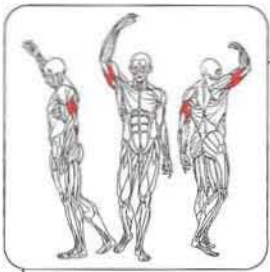
- Inhale and extend the forearm.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

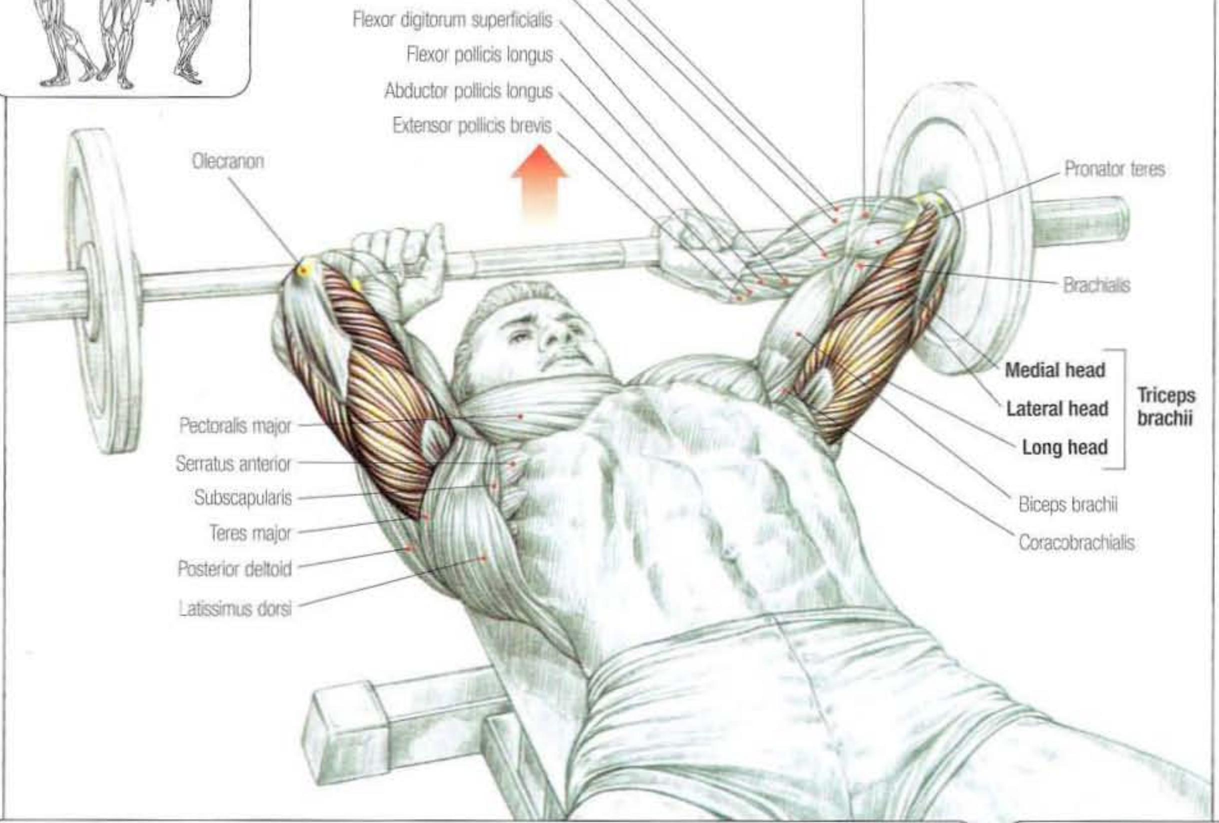
This exercise mainly works the lateral head of the triceps.

INSERTIONS OF THE ARM

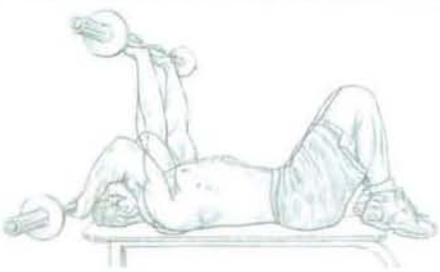


TRICEPS EXTENSIONS 15





1 **Lowering the bar to the forehead**
Focuses the work on the medial and lateral heads of the triceps brachii.



2 **Lowering the bar behind the head**
Focuses the work on the long head of the triceps brachii.

Lie on a horizontal bench and grasp the barbell with an overhand grip and the arms vertical:

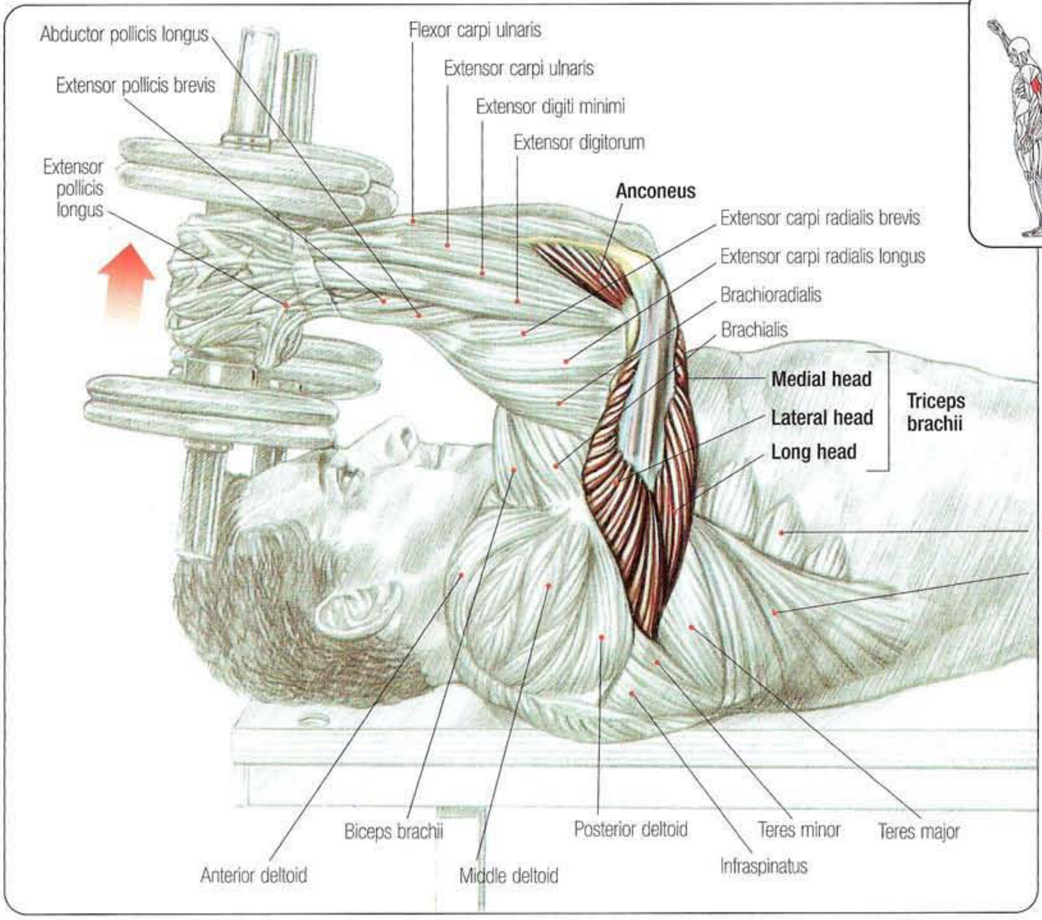
- Inhale and lower the barbell to the forehead or behind the head by bending the elbows.
- Return to the initial position.
- Exhale at the end of the effort.

Comments: Because of individual variations in shoulder width, valgus angle at the elbows, and wrist flexibility, the hands can be closer or farther apart on the bar and the elbow angle more or less open during the exercise.
Using an E-Z bar helps prevent excessive strain at the wrists.

VARIATION ON A MACHINE

Performing this exercise at an Atlas triceps pulley simulates the movement with a barbell, but enables you to isolate the long head of the triceps brachii.

16 DUMBBELL TRICEPS EXTENSIONS

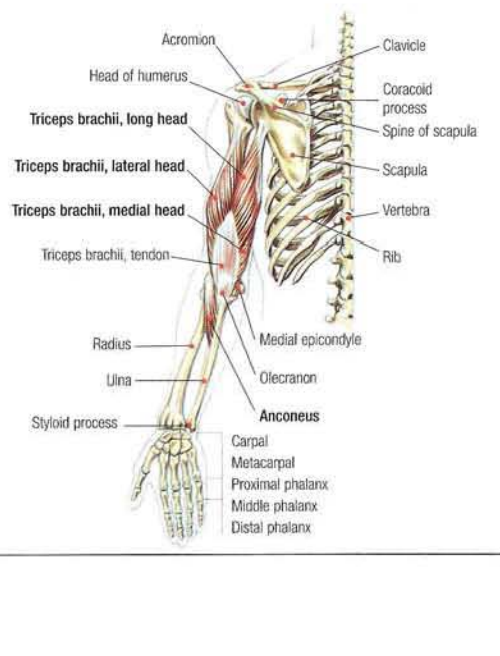


Lie on a flat bench and grasp a dumbbell in each hand with the arms vertical:

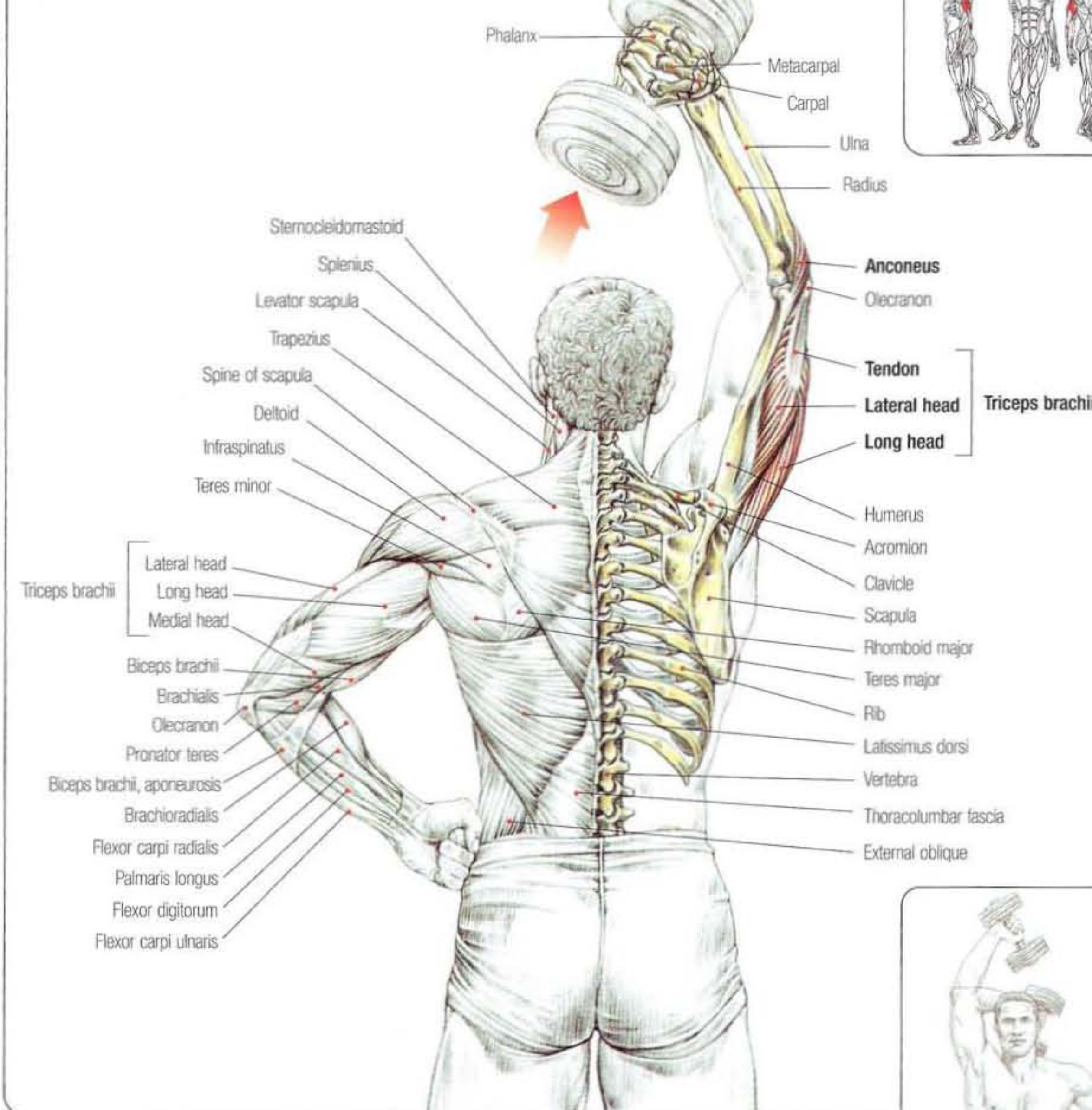
- Inhale and lower the forearms by bending the elbow with a controlled movement.
- Return to the initial position.
- Exhale at the end of the effort.

This exercise works all three heads of the triceps brachii equally.

THE MOVEMENT



ONE-ARM DUMBBELL TRICEPS EXTENSIONS 17

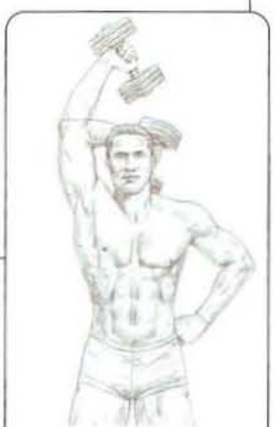


Sit or stand and grip a dumbbell in one hand with the arm vertical:

- Inhale and bend the elbow to lower the dumbbell behind the head to the neck.
- Return to the initial position.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

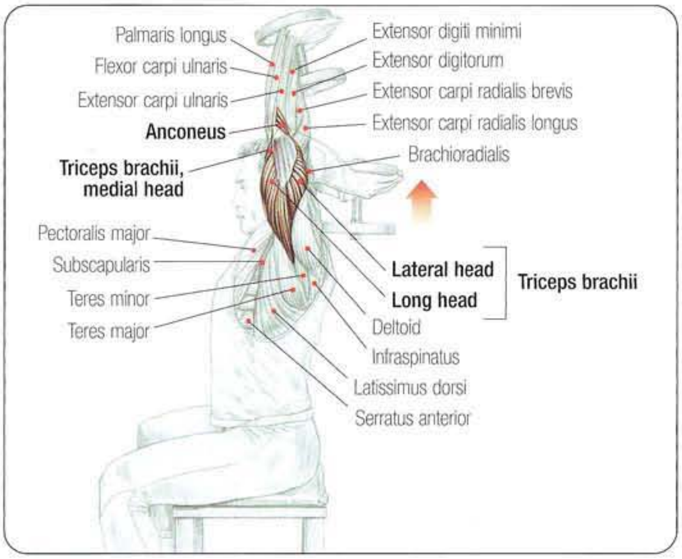
The vertical position of the arm stretches the long head of the triceps brachii, emphasizing its contraction while working.

Comment: Contract the abdominal core to prevent arching the low back. If possible use a bench with support for the low back.



THE MOVEMENT

18 SEATED DUMBBELL TRICEPS EXTENSIONS

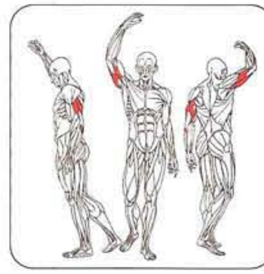


Sit and grasp a dumbbell, holding it behind the neck:

- Inhale, and extend the forearm.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

The vertical position of the arm strongly stretches the long head of the triceps brachii, emphasizing its contraction while working.

Contract the abdominal core to prevent arching the low back. If possible use a bench with support for the low back.



19 SEATED E-Z BAR TRICEPS EXTENSIONS

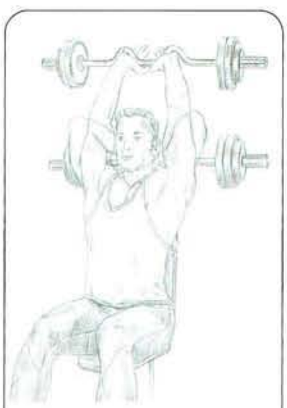
Sit or stand and grasp an E-Z bar with an overhand grip and arms vertical:

- Inhale and bend the elbows to lower the bar behind the head.
- Return to the initial position.
- Exhale at the end of the extension.

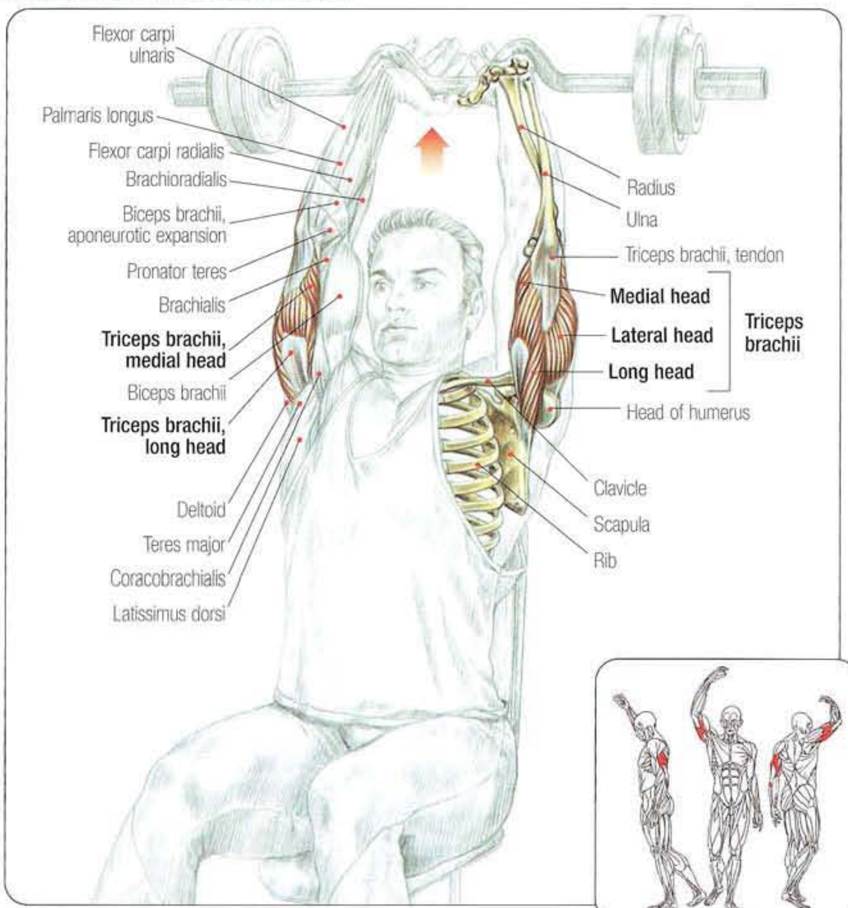
The vertical position of the arms strongly stretches the long head of the triceps brachii, emphasizing its contraction while working.

An overhand grip isolates the lateral head of the triceps brachii.

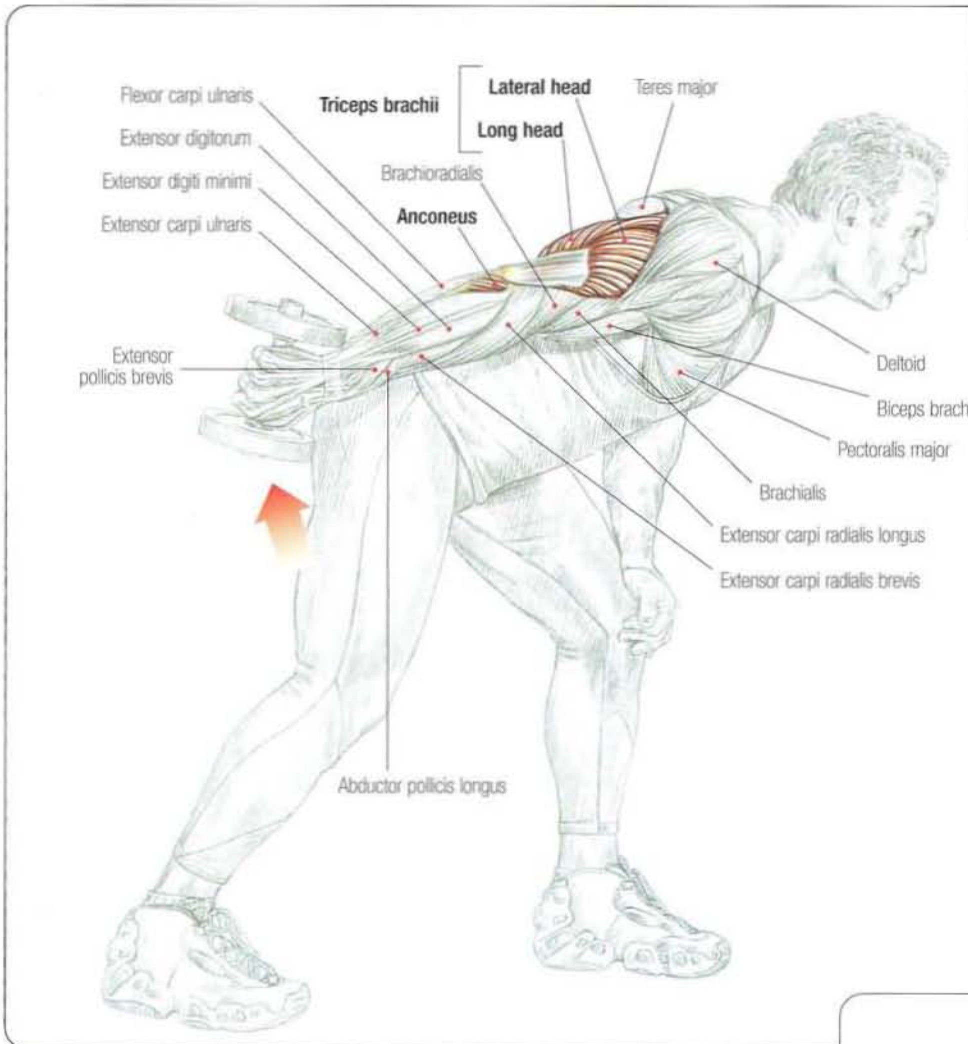
Contract the abdominal muscles and avoid arching the low back. If possible use a bench with support for the low back.

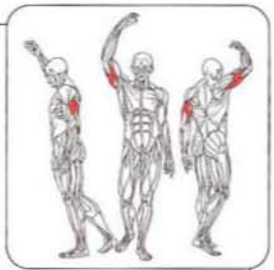


THE MOVEMENT



TRICEPS KICKBACKS 20





Stand with the knees slightly bent and lean forward at the waist, maintaining a straight back. Bend the elbow and hold the upper arm horizontally alongside the body:

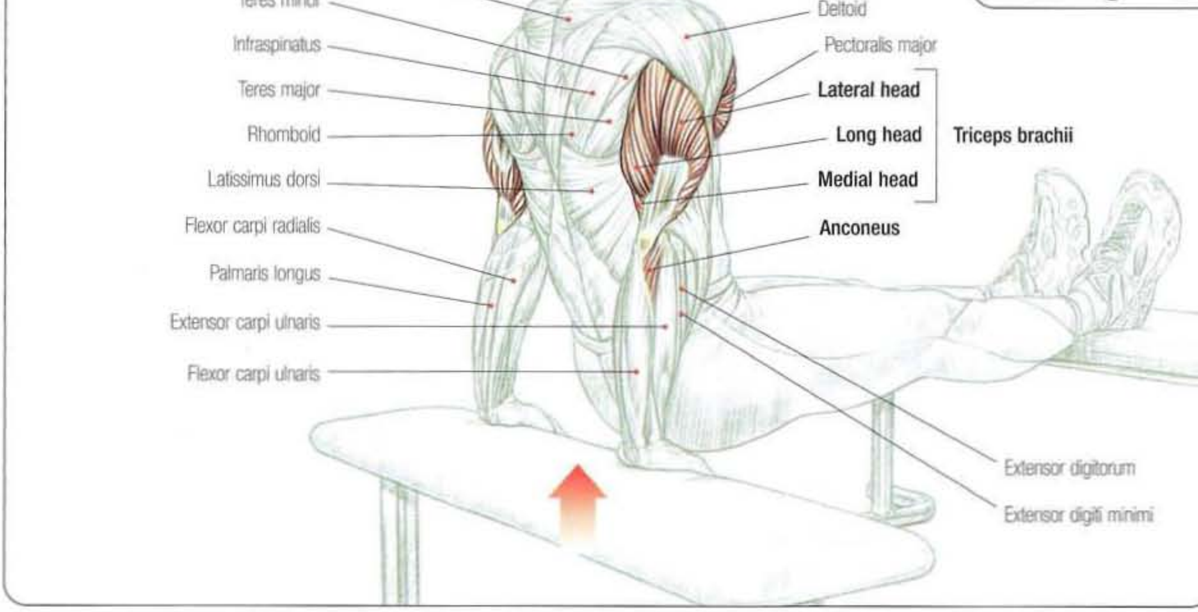
- Inhale and extend the forearm.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

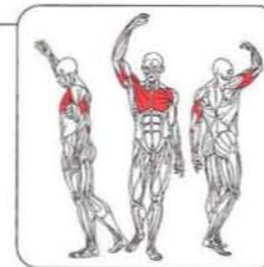
This is an excellent exercise for pumping the triceps group.

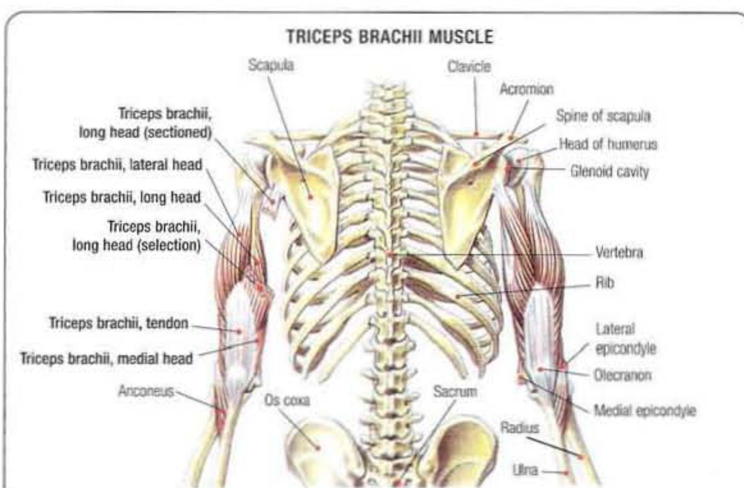
Perform this exercise until you feel a burn for best results.

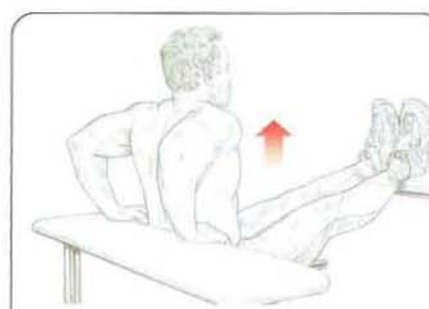
INITIAL POSITION

21 TRICEPS DIPS









INITIAL POSITION

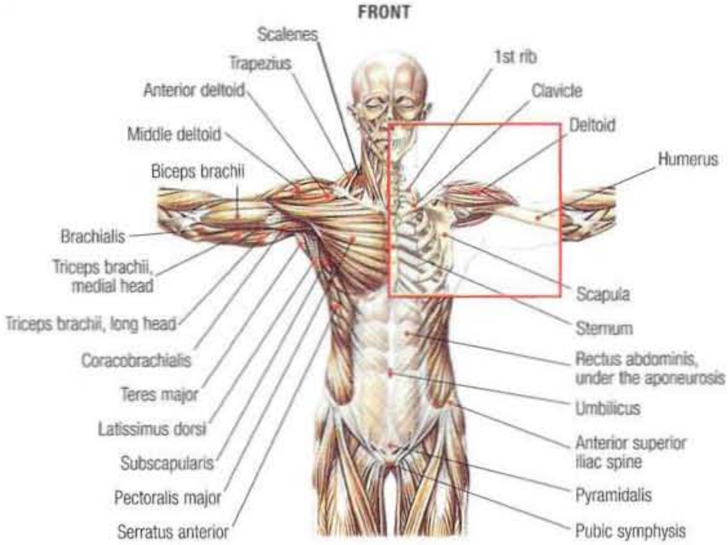
Suspend the body between two benches by placing the hands on the edge of one bench and the feet on the edge of the other bench:

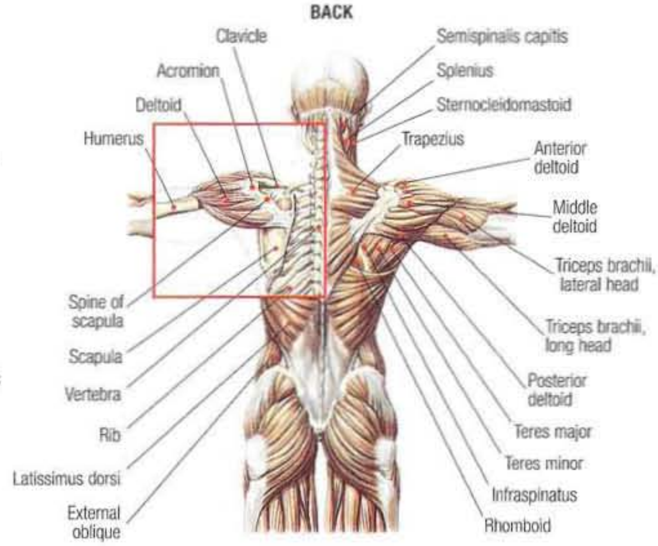
- Inhale, then dip by bending the elbows and rise by extending the forearms.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

This exercise works the triceps and pectorals as well as the anterior deltoid.

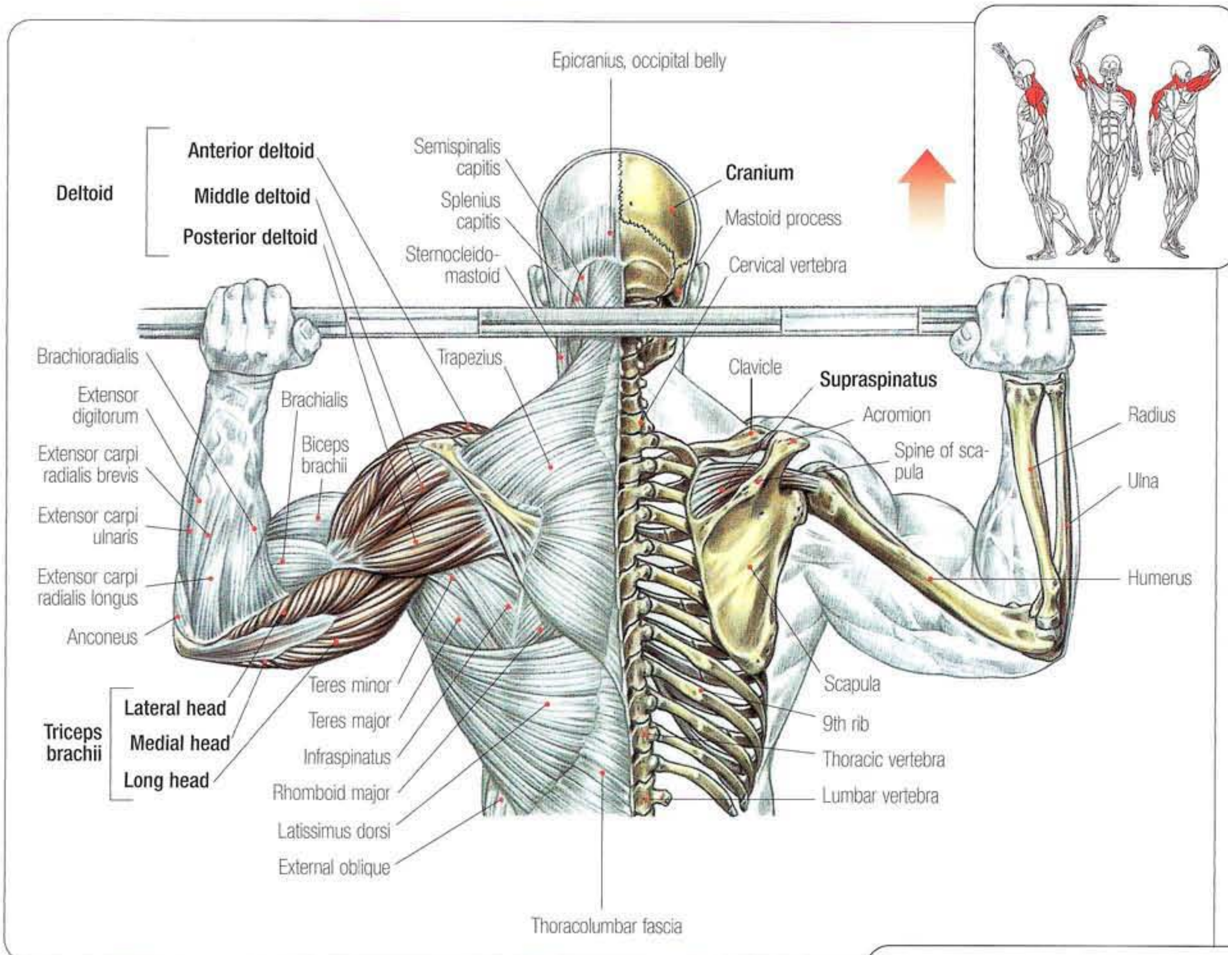
Resting weights on top of the thighs increases the difficulty and intensity of the dip.

2 SHOULDERS


FRONT
Scalenes
Trapezius
Anterior deltoid
Middle deltoid
Biceps brachii
Brachialis
Triceps brachii, medial head
Triceps brachii, long head
Coracobrachialis
Teres major
Latissimus dorsi
Subscapularis
Pectoralis major
Serratus anterior
1st rib
Clavicle
Deltoid
Humerus
Scapula
Sternum
Rectus abdominis, under the aponeurosis
Umbilicus
Anterior superior iliac spine
Pyramidalis
Pubic symphysis


BACK
Clavicle
Acromion
Deltoid
Humerus
Spine of scapula
Scapula
Vertebra
Rib
Latissimus dorsi
External oblique
Semispinalis capitis
Splenius
Sternocleidomastoid
Trapezius
Anterior deltoid
Middle deltoid
Triceps brachii, lateral head
Triceps brachii, long head
Posterior deltoid
Teres major
Teres minor
Infraspinatus
Rhomboid

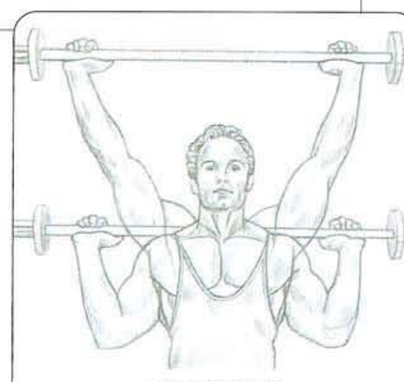
1 BACK PRESSES



Sit with the back straight, holding the bar across the back of the neck with an overhand grip:

- Inhale and extend the bar straight up, keeping the low back as straight as possible.
- Exhale at the end of the effort.

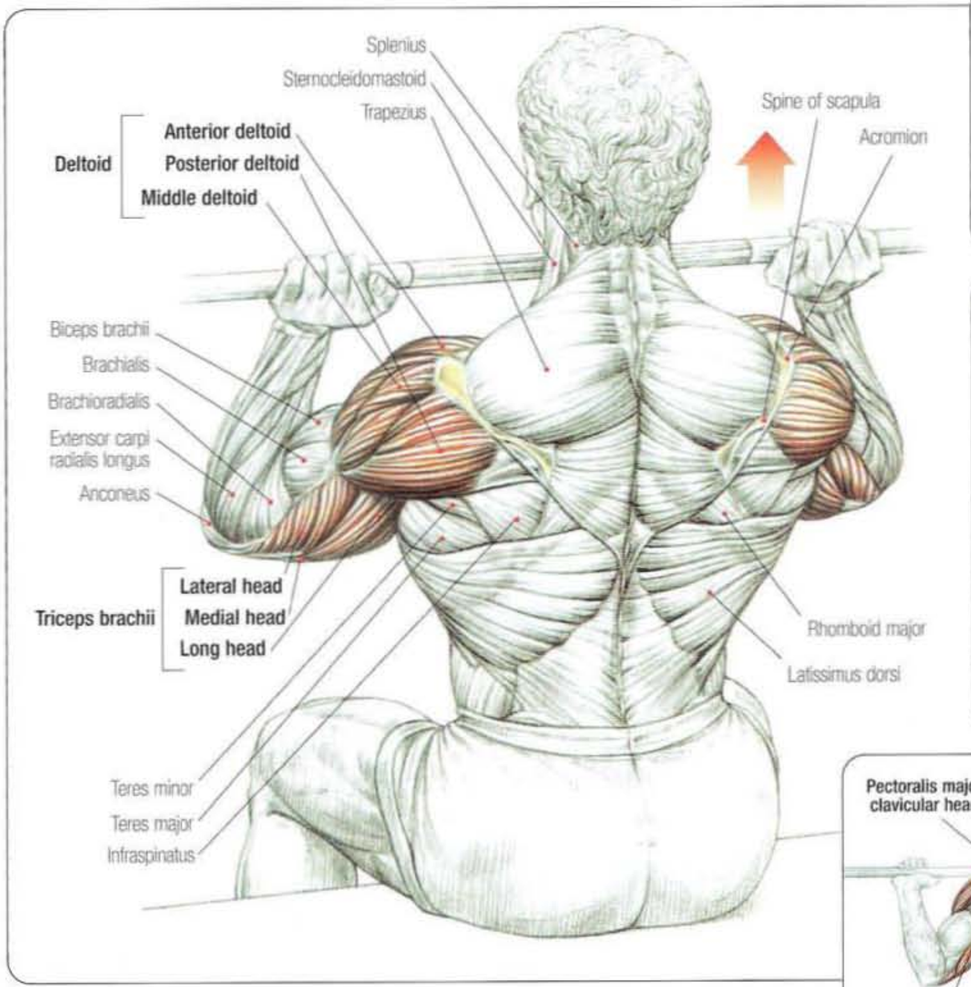
This exercise uses the deltoid, mainly the middle and posterior fibers, as well as the trapezius, triceps brachii, and serratus anterior. Although not worked as intensely, the rhomboids, infraspinatus, teres minor, and, deeper in, the supraspinatus also contract. You can also perform this exercise while standing at a frame that guides the barbell. Various specific machines can help with the performance of this exercise.

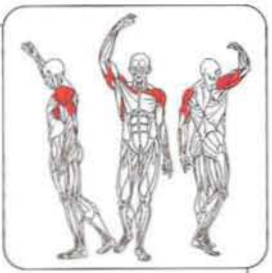


THE MOVEMENT

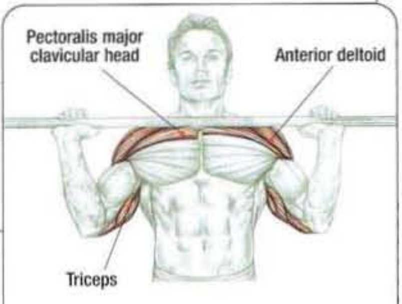
To prevent injury to the shoulder joint, which is vulnerable, lower the bar only as far as your unique shoulder structure and flexibility allow you to do comfortably.

SEATED FRONT PRESSES 2

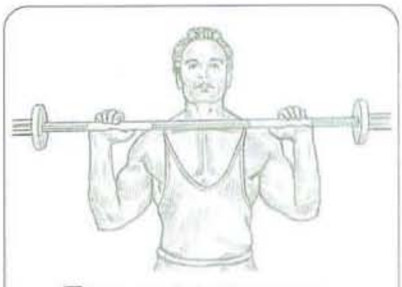




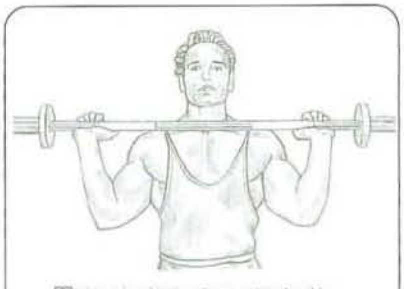
FINAL POSITION



FRONT VIEW



1 Narrow grip with the elbows forward
Isolates the anterior deltoid and the clavicular head of the pectoralis major.



2 Wide grip with the elbows out to the side
Isolates the anterior and middle deltoids.

Sit with the back straight and hold the bar with an overhand grip, resting it across the upper chest:

- Inhale and extend the bar vertically.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

This fundamental exercise mainly uses the anterior and lateral deltoids, clavicular head of the pectoralis major, triceps brachii, serratus anterior, trapezius and, deeper in, the supraspinatus.

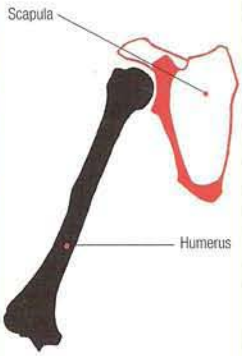
You can also perform this exercise standing, as long as you keep the back straight, avoiding excessive curvature of the lumbar spine. Extending the barbell with the elbows forward isolates the anterior deltoid.

Extending the bar with the elbows spread apart isolates the middle deltoid.

You can use various machines for this exercise.

SHOULDER INJURIES

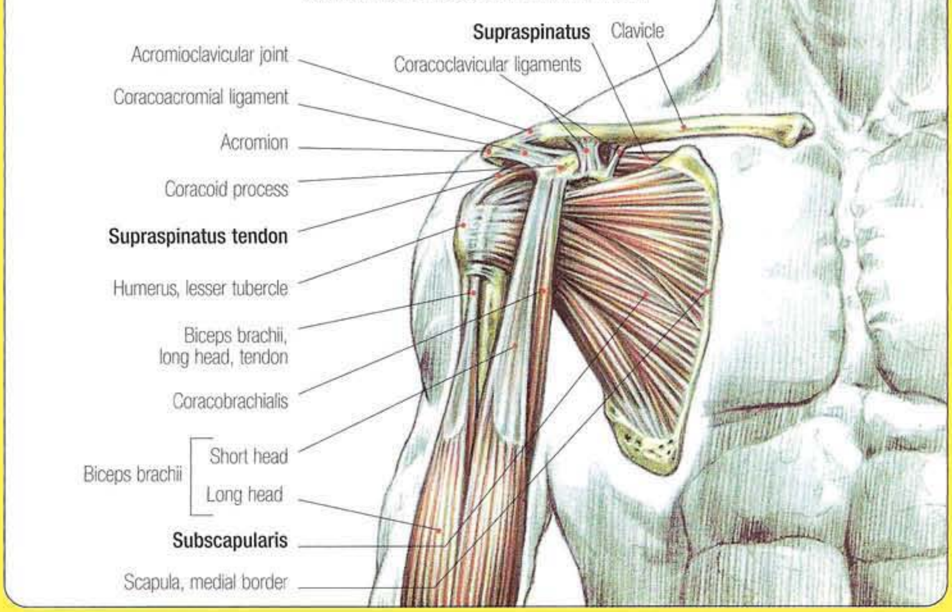
HIP JOINT



SHOULDER JOINT

Compared to the relatively stable coxofemoral joint, the shoulder joint is less encased and is more mobile, which makes it more vulnerable to injury.

ROTATOR CUFF MUSCLES FROM THE FRONT



Shoulder injuries occur frequently in weightlifting and especially in bodybuilding where developing the entire deltoid group requires the athlete to perform a significant number of repetitions and variations in exercises, which multiplies the risk of injury.

Compared to the stability of the hip joint, where the head of the femur sits deep in the glenoid cavity of the pelvis, the shoulder joint, which is very mobile and allows the arm to move through a wide range of motion, is in fact much less contained and protected.

The shoulder is defined as a ball-and-socket joint because the head of the humerus is mainly held within the glenoid cavity of the scapula by a complex musculotendinous group.

Most weightlifting injuries occur when training the deltoids, and they rarely result in muscle pulls or tears. They are usually caused by poor technique or overuse of the tendons reinforcing the articular capsule.

In contrast to contact sports, such as football, where sudden arm movements can create serious injuries involving dislocation or even torn tendons, the most serious injury in weightlifting involves entrapment.

When some people perform exercises in which they raise the arms, such as extensions from the neck or lateral raises, the supraspinatus tendon is rubbed and compressed between the head of the humerus and the osteoligamentous ceiling created by the inferior surface of the acromion and the coracoacromial ligament.

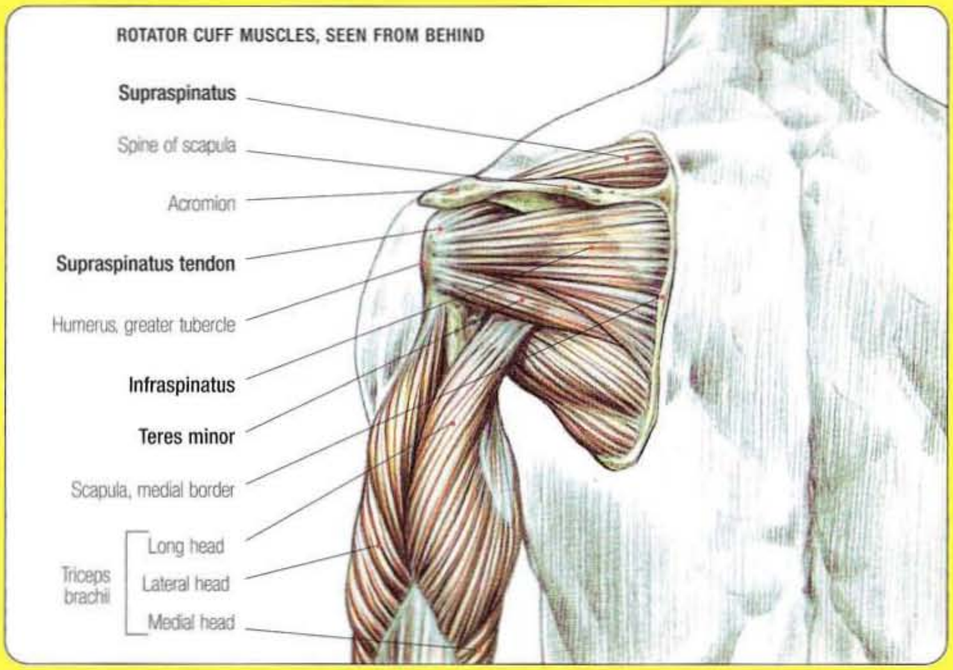
Inflammation follows. This generally begins with the serous bursa, which normally protects the supraspinatus from excessive friction, and extends to the supraspinatus tendon itself, which, without treatment, ends up affecting the adjacent infraspinatus tendon posteriorly and the long head of the biceps brachii anteriorly. Raising the arm becomes extremely painful and eventually can cause irreversible deterioration of the supraspinatus tendon through calcification and even tearing; however, this usually happens to people 40 years of age or older.

The space between the humerus and the osteoligamentous acromiocoracoid ceiling varies from person to person. Some athletes cannot raise their arms laterally without excessive friction. These people should avoid all extensions from the neck, lateral raises that go too high, and back presses.

All barbell extensions for the shoulders must be performed to the front with the elbows slightly forward. When doing lateral dumbbell raises, you'll need to determine the proper height to raise the arms to. The correct movement is the one you can perform without causing pain.

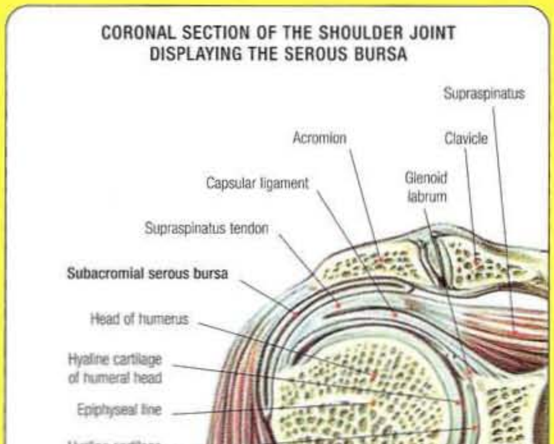
Not everyone responds the same way to the same shoulder injury. Some people may perform all sorts of arm raises that compress the tendon, sometimes even causing tendon degeneration, without initiating a painful inflammatory process. This is how a torn supraspinatus tendon can be discovered during assessment without that person ever having complained of pain.

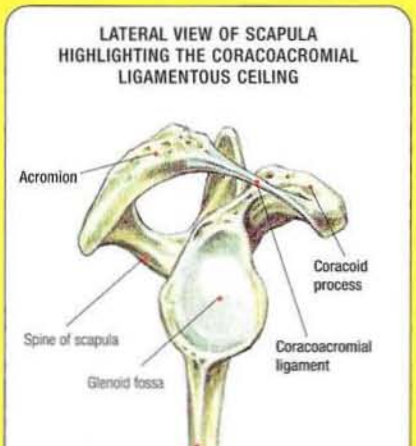
Another cause of shoulder pain may an imbalance in muscle tension around the articular capsule. Remember that the head of the humerus is solidly fixed against the glenoid fossa of the scapula by a group of muscle tendons adhering to or crossing over the articular capsule: In front, this is the subscapularis; a little more anterior is the long head of the biceps; superiorly, is the supraspinatus; and finally posteriorly, the infraspinatus and teres minor. Spasm, hypertonicity, or hypotonicity in one or more of these muscles can pull the shoulder joint into an incorrect position. This position can cause friction during arm movements, resulting in inflammation.



Example: Shortening or spasm of the teres minor and the infraspinatus will pull the head of the humerus in external rotation, which will cause rubbing at the anterior shoulder joint during arm movement. Over time, this will injure the long head of the biceps brachii.

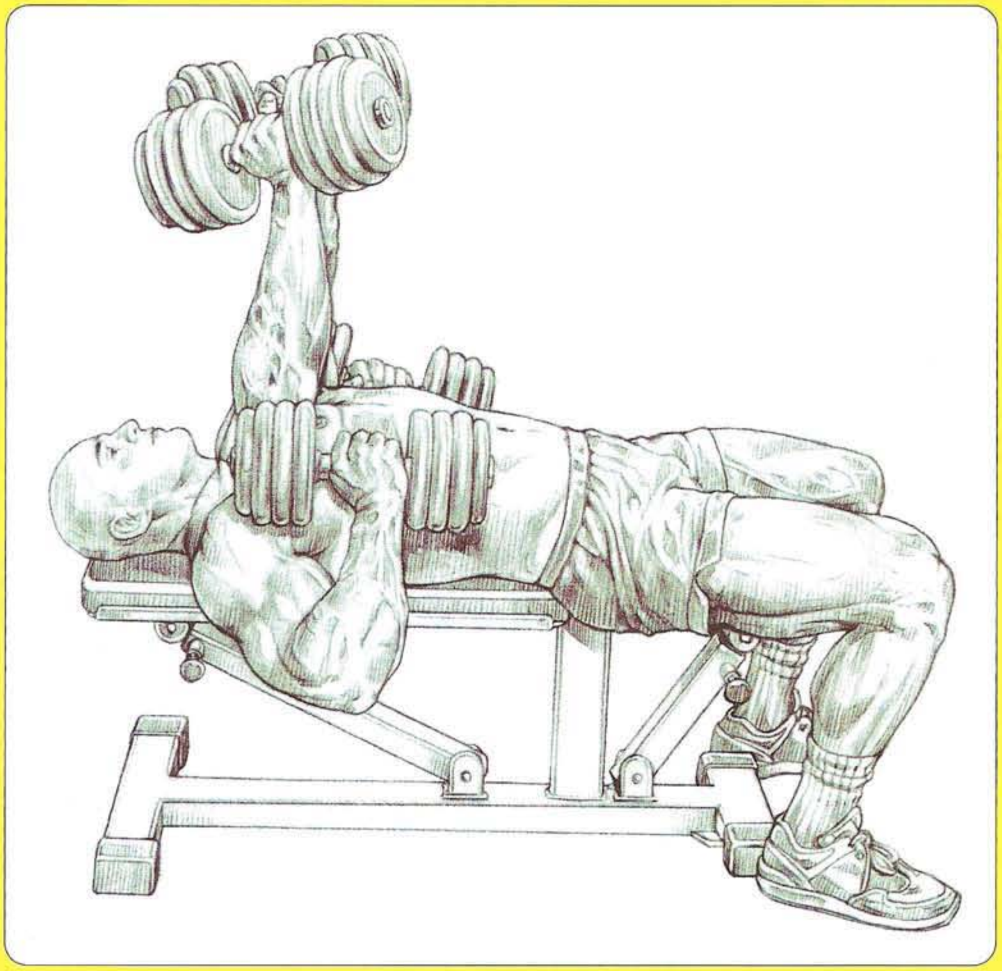
Balance the training of the shoulder muscles and avoid exercises that feel awkward or painful.





Comment:
Massage, either manually or even better with an electric massager, and electrical stimulation are effective for decreasing or eliminating spasms and shortening of the teres minor and infraspinatus.

LYING DUMBBELL PRESSES



This is one of the rare exercises that may be performed by people suffering from the all-too-common entrapment syndrome.

Performing arm extensions with dumbbells while lying on a bench and keeping the elbows next to the body works the anterior deltoid and, to a lesser degree, the middle deltoid intensely while preventing excessive rubbing at the anterior shoulder.

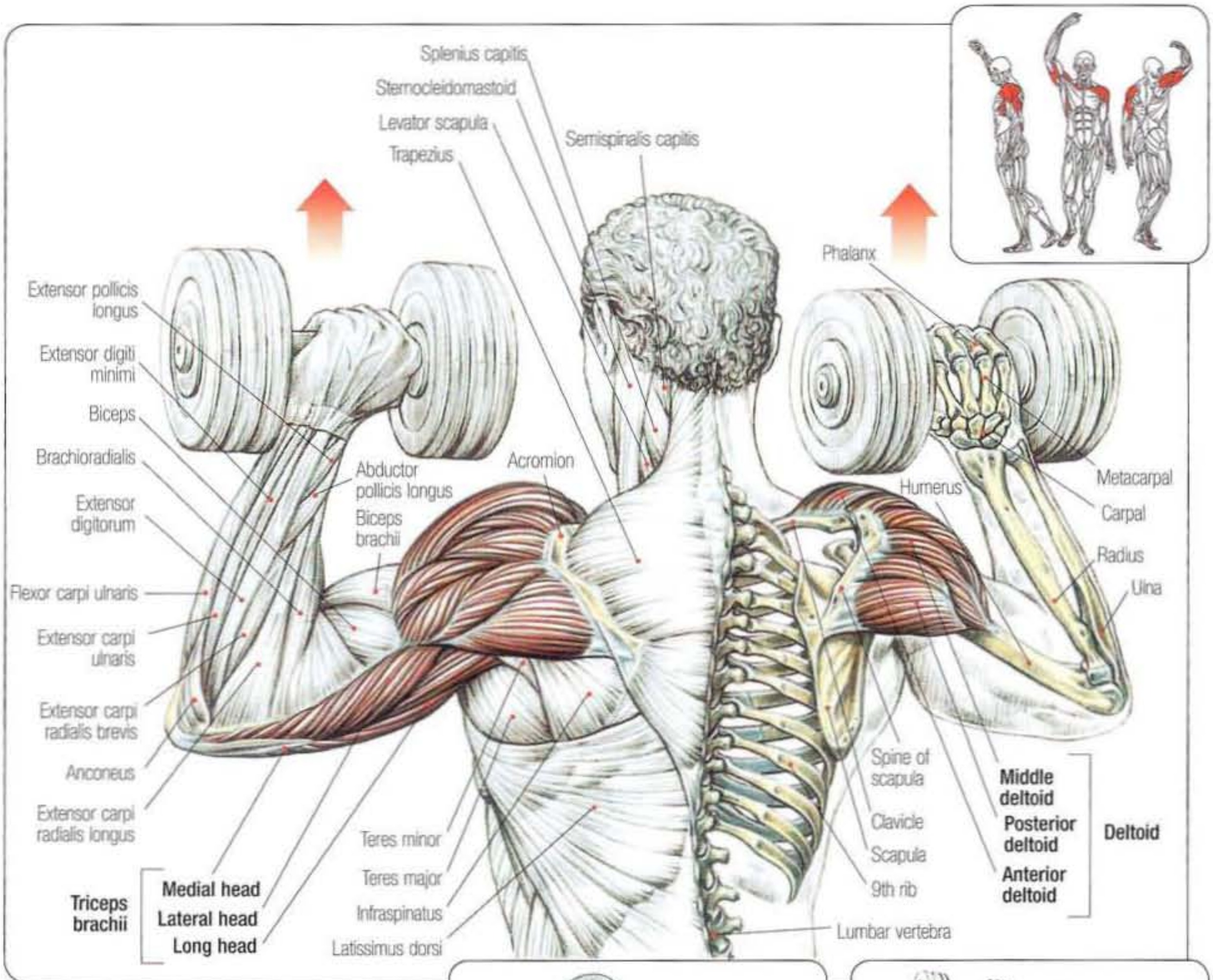
When performed regularly, this maintains size and tone of deltoids despite the existence of injury. You can also use this exercise to reeducate the pectoralis major following tearing. Extending while keeping the elbows against the body reduces its stretch, thus reducing the risk of tearing the scarred area.

Performing the exercise:

Lie on a bench with the chest expanded, back slightly arched, feet flat on the ground, and the elbows bent next to the body, holding a dumbbell in each hand.

- Inhale and extend the arms vertically.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.
- Return to the initial position with a controlled movement.

SEATED DUMBBELL PRESSES 3



Sit on a bench, keeping the back straight, and hold dumbbells at shoulder level with an overhand grip (thumbs pointing inward):

- Inhale and extend the arms vertically.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

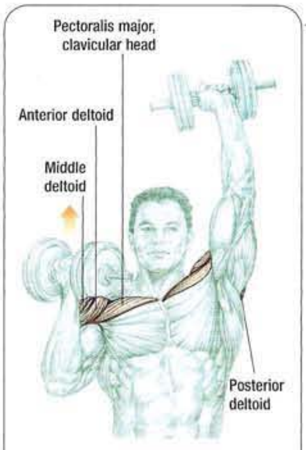
This exercise contracts the deltoid, mainly the middle deltoid, as well as trapezius, serratus anterior, and triceps brachii.

This movement may also be performed standing or alternating the arms. A backrest helps prevent an excessive arch in the back.

VARIATION
PALMS FACING EACH OTHER

FINAL POSITION

4 FRONT DUMBBELL PRESSES



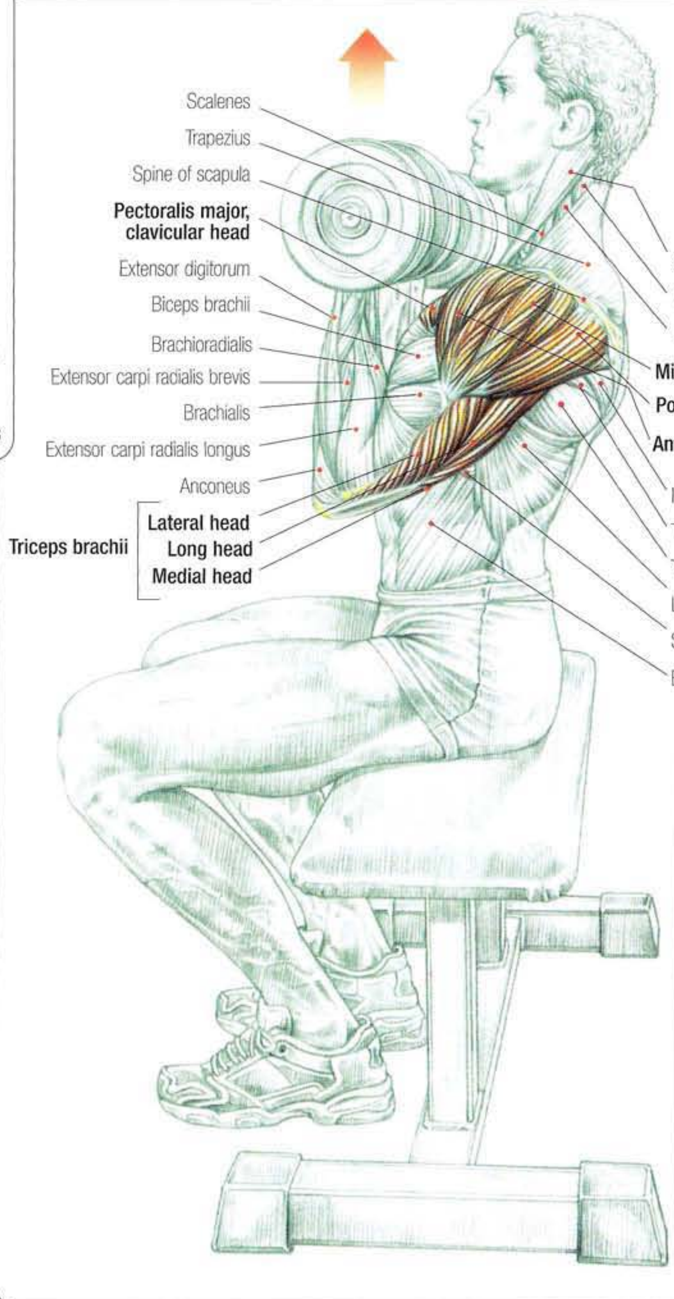
VARIATION WITH ALTERNATING EXTENSIONS

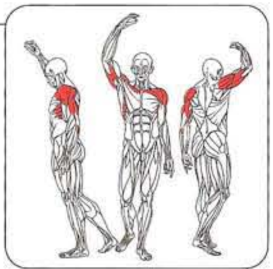
Sit on a bench, keeping the back straight. With elbows bent and pointing forward, hold the dumbbells at shoulder level with an underhand grip (thumbs pointing away from each other):

- Inhale and extend the arms vertically while rotating 180 degrees at the wrists, bringing them into an overhand grip (thumbs pointing toward each other).
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

This exercise solicits the deltoid, mainly the anterior deltoid, as well as the clavicular head of the pectoralis major, triceps brachii, trapezius, and serratus anterior.

Variations:
This exercise may be performed seated against a backrest to help prevent an excessive arch in the back, standing, and alternating arms.

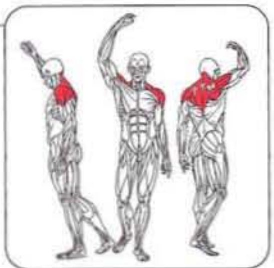


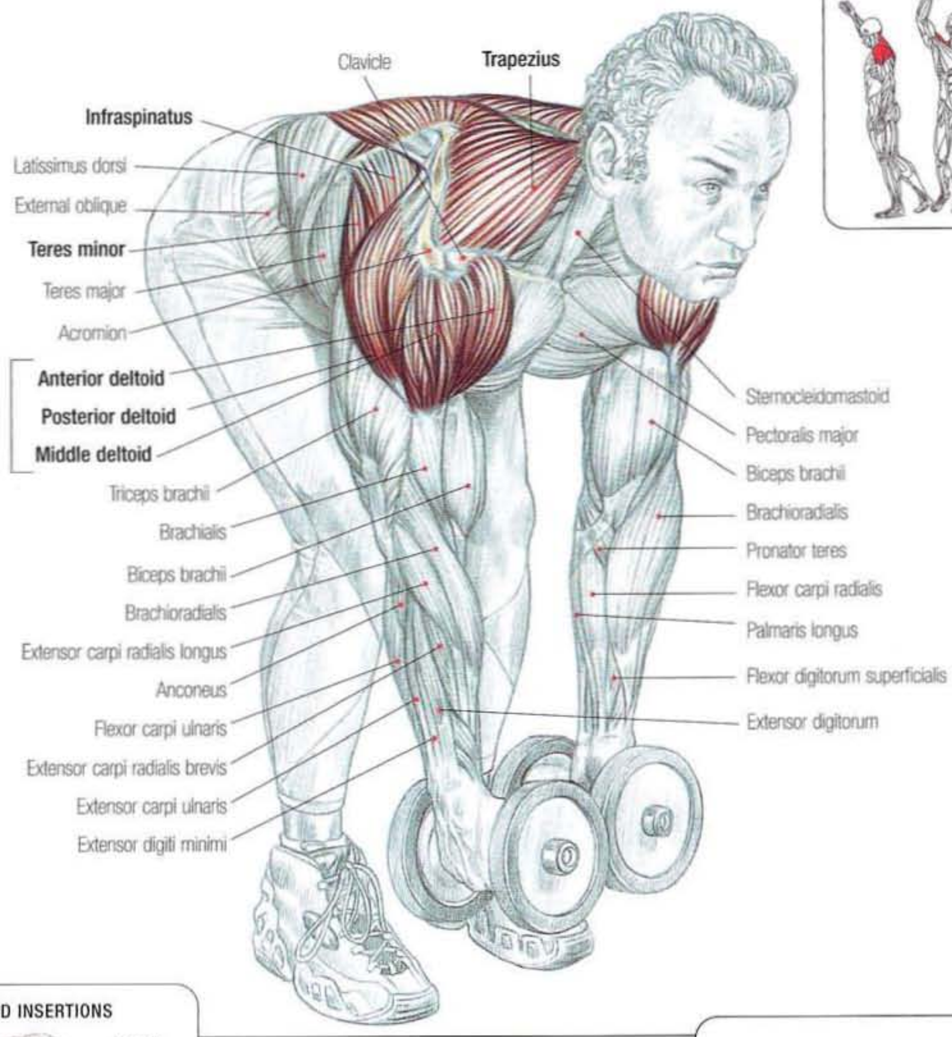


FINAL POSITION

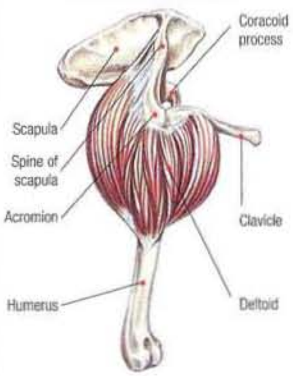
Comment: Working with the elbows pointing forward prevents excessive friction, which triggers inflammation in the shoulder that can eventually develop into a more serious injury.
This movement is recommended for people with weak shoulders and is meant to replace more intense exercises, such as classic dumbbell extensions with the elbows pointing to the sides or extensions from behind the neck.

BENT-OVER LATERAL RAISES 5





DELTOID INSERTIONS

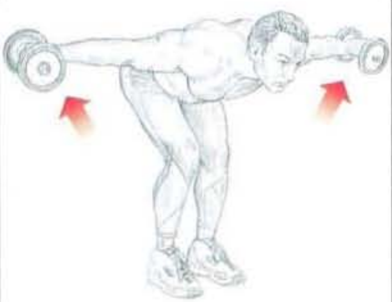


Stand with legs slightly apart and knees slightly bent and lean forward at the waist while keeping the back straight. With arms hanging down, grasp the dumbbells with the elbows slightly bent:

- Inhale and raise the arms to horizontal.
- Exhale at the end of the effort.

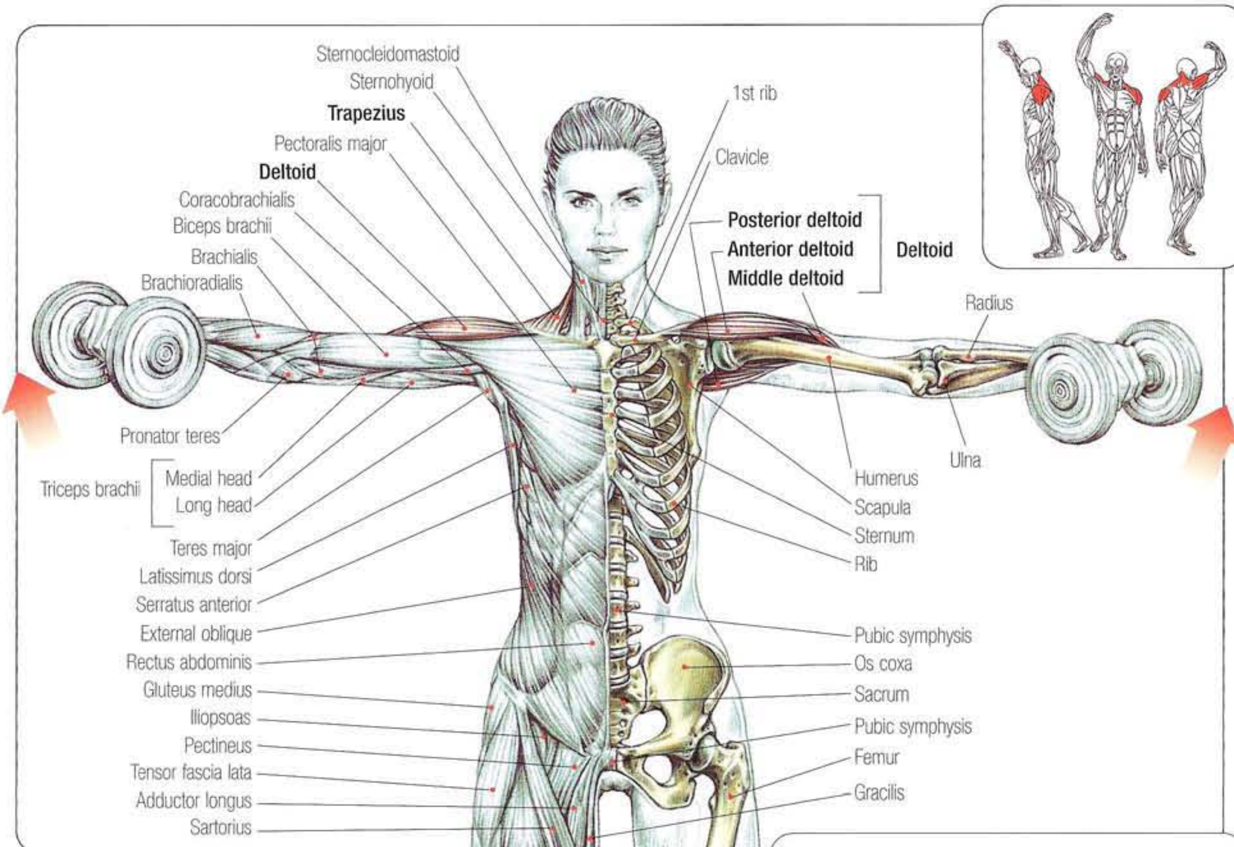
This exercise works the shoulder group, accenting the work of the posterior deltoid. Squeeze the shoulder blades together at the end of the movement to contract the middle and lower portions of the trapezius, rhomboids, teres minor, and infraspinatus.

Variation: The exercise may be performed facedown on an incline bench.

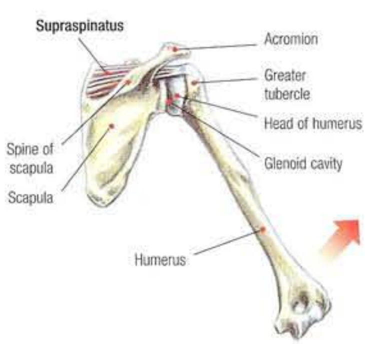


FINAL POSITION

6 LATERAL DUMBBELL RAISES



SUPRASPINATUS MUSCLE ACTION

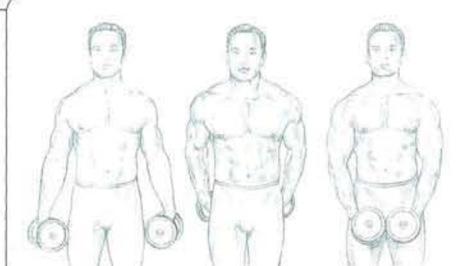


The supraspinatus helps the deltiod raise the arm laterally and helps keep the head of the humerus in the glenoid cavity.

Stand with a straight back, with legs slightly apart, arms hanging next to the body, holding a barbell in each hand:

- Raise the arms to horizontal with the elbows slightly bent.
- Return to the initial position.

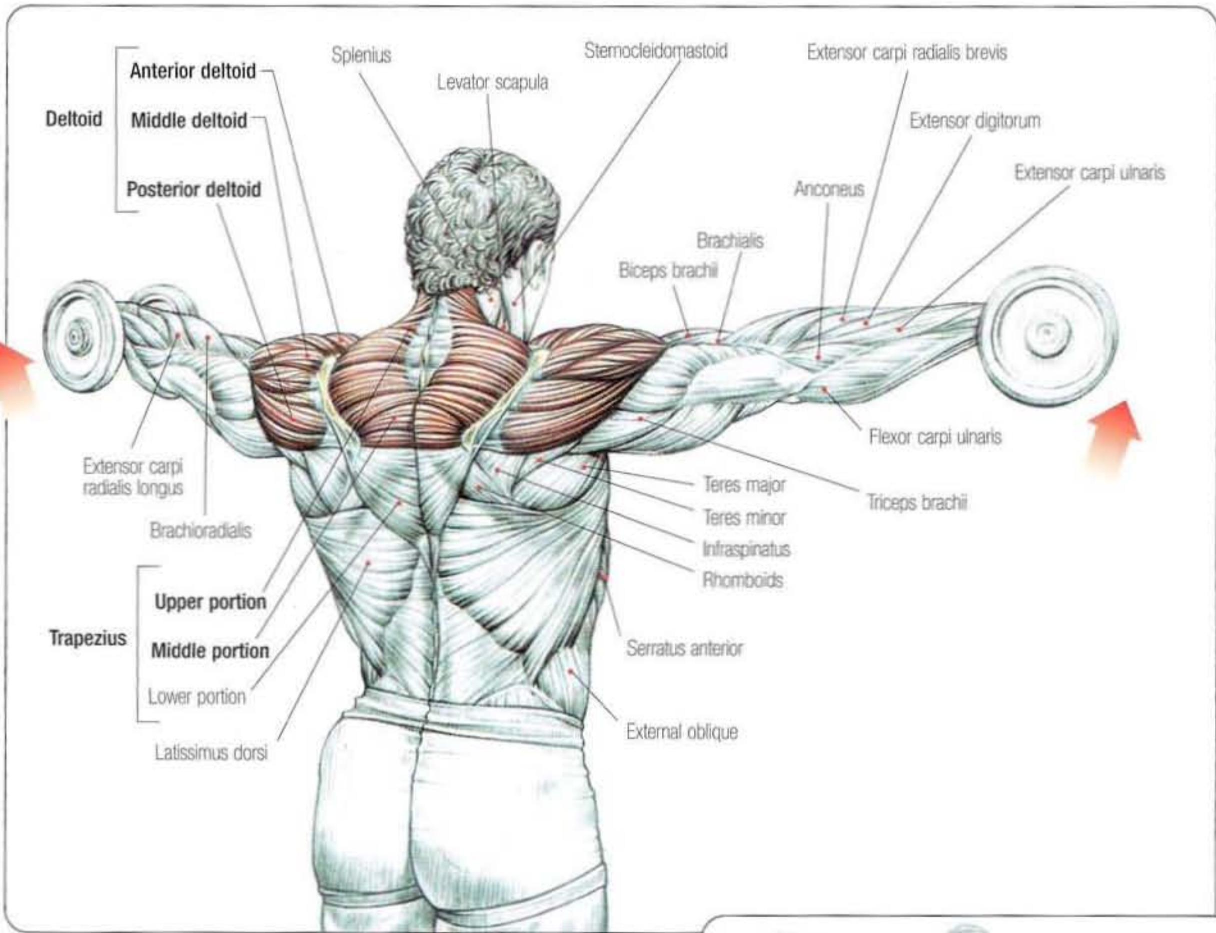
This exercise mainly uses the middle deltoid.

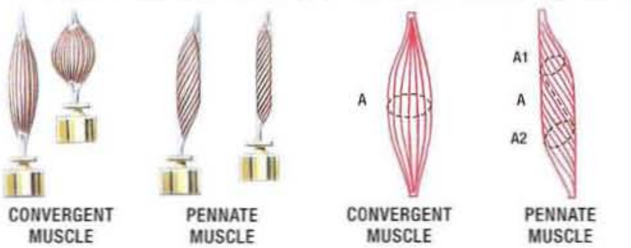


INITIAL POSITIONS: VARIATIONS

The three divisions of the deltoids create a multipennate muscle whose different fiber directions converge on the humerus. Their function is to support relatively heavy weight and to move the arm through its full range of motion with precision. Therefore, it is important to adapt training to the specifics of this muscle by varying the initial position of the movement (hands behind, to the side, or in front). This thoroughly works all the fibers of the middle deltoid. Because everyone's physical structure is different (length of the clavicle, shape of the acromion, and height of the insertion at the humerus), you must find the angle of the initial position that is best for you. Lateral raises contract the supraspinatus, although you can't see this because it is located deep in the supraspinatus fossa of the scapula (shoulder blade), where it attaches to the lesser tubercle of the humerus.

Raising the arm above horizontal contracts the upper part of the trapezius; however, many bodybuilders don't work above horizontal so that they isolate the the lateral deltoid. This exercise should not be performed with heavy weights, but instead in sets of 10 to 25 reps, while varying the working angle without much recuperation time until you feel a burn. To increase the intensity, maintain an isometric contraction for a few seconds with the arm at horizontal between each repetition.





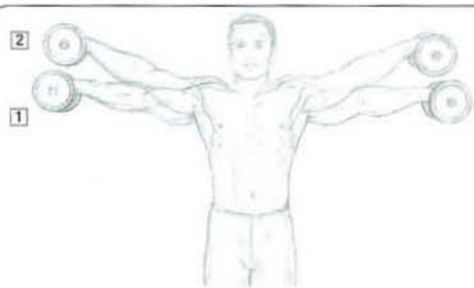
A pennate muscle displaces greater weight than a convergent muscle but over a shorter distance.

During lateral raises, because the pennate fibers of the middle deltoid produce great force but weak contraction, they work synergistically with the anterior and posterior deltoids to bring the arm to horizontal.

The sum of the actin* and myosin* filaments of a fusiform muscle is equal to its transverse section A.

The sum of the actin and myosin filaments of a pennate muscle is equal to the sum A of its oblique sections A1 and A2.

*The motor elements of a muscle whose maximum force of contraction is approximately 5 kg per cm² per second.

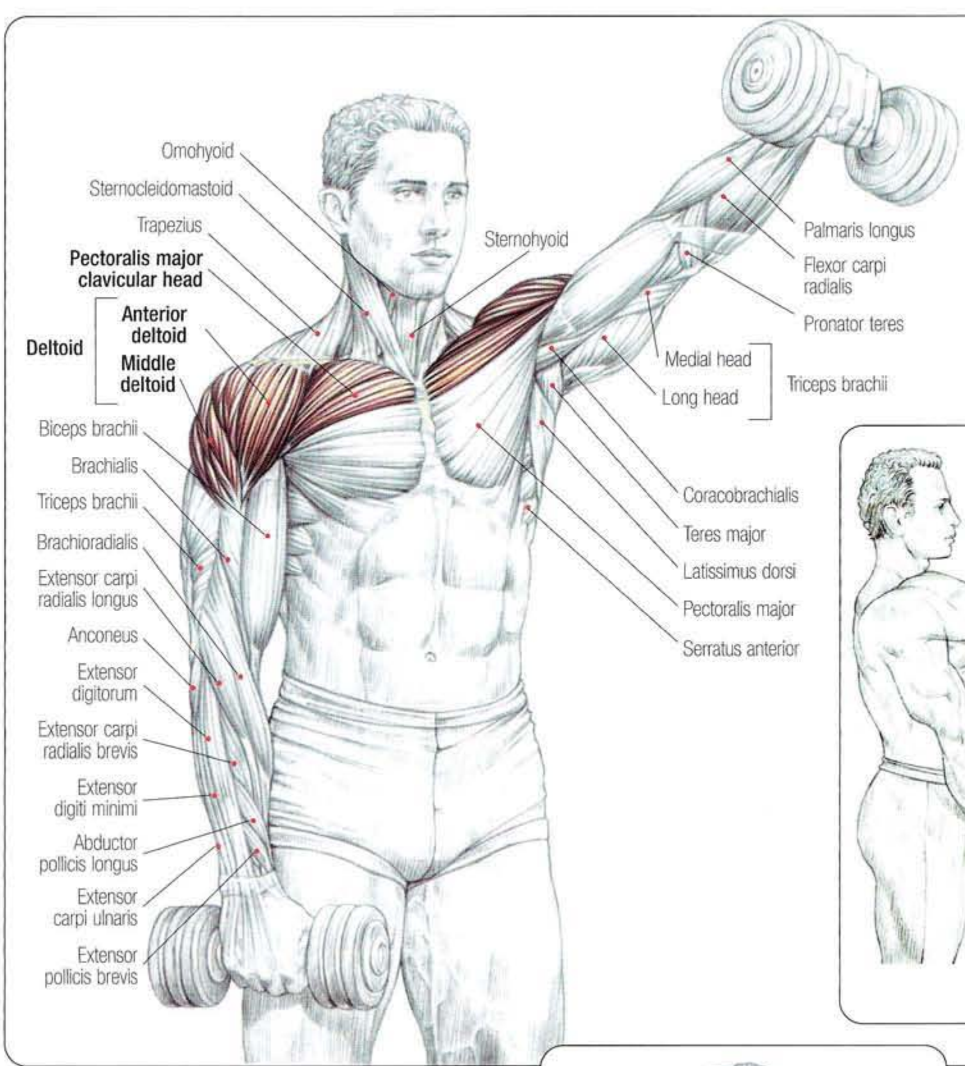


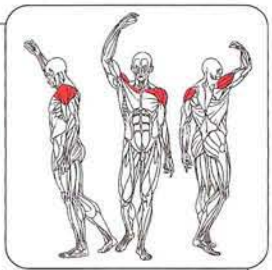
FINAL POSITION: VARIATIONS

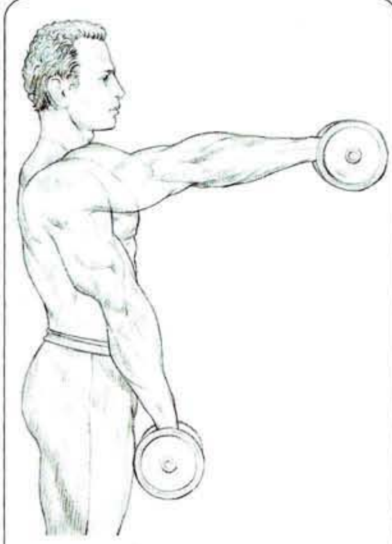
1 Arms raised to horizontal works the deltoid.

2 Arms raised above horizontal isolates the upper and middle portions of the trapezius.

7 ALTERNATE FRONT ARM RAISES







THE MOVEMENT

Stand with the feet slightly apart, holding the barbells with an overhand grip as they rest against the front of the thighs or slightly to the side:

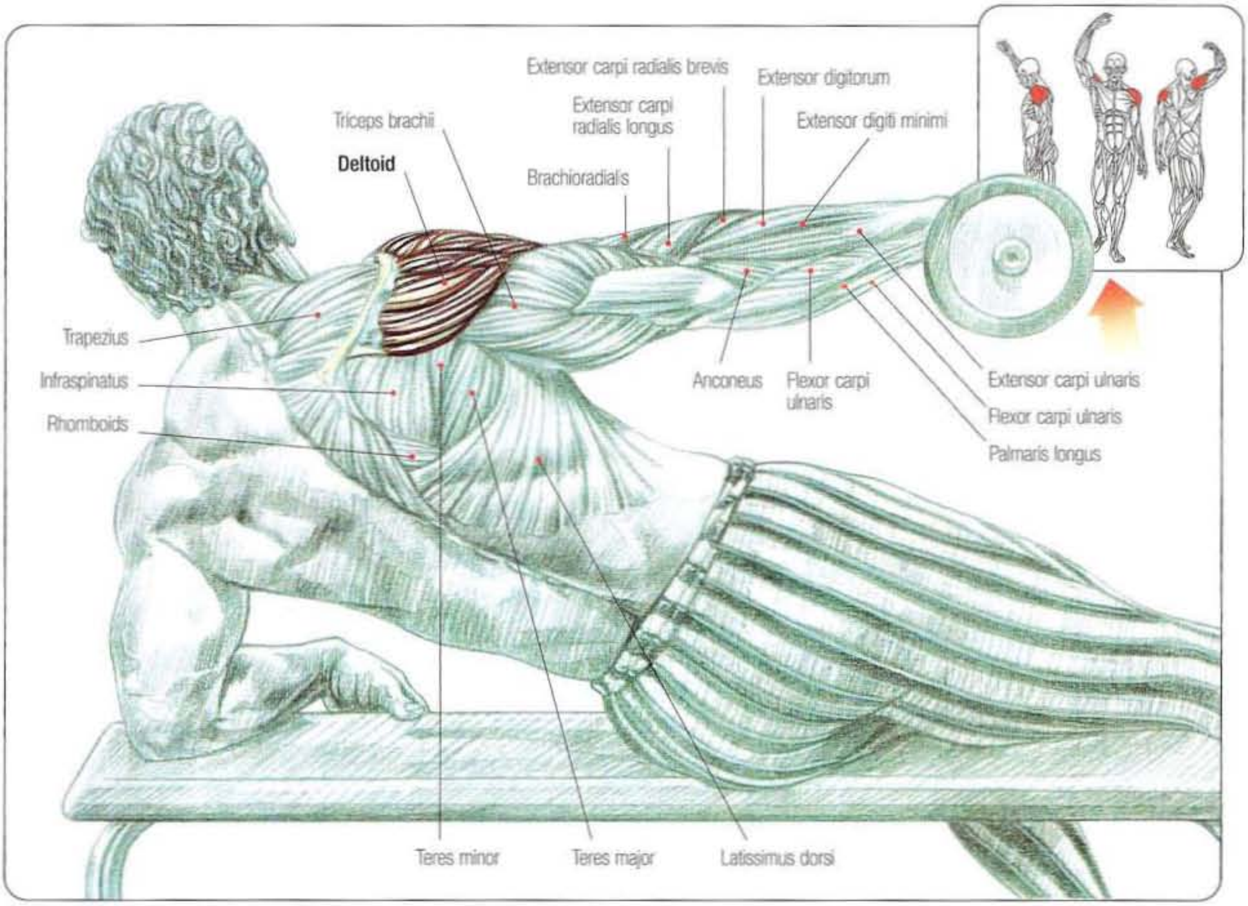
- Inhale and alternate raising the arms to the front to eye level.
- Exhale at the end of the effort.

This exercise uses mainly the anterior deltoid, the clavicular head of the pectoralis major, and, to a lesser degree, the remaining deltoids. All movements that raise the arms contract the muscles that anchor the scapula to the rib cage, such as the serratus anterior and rhomboids, which create a stable support for the humerus to move from.

VARIATION
Lying facedown on an incline bench.

VARIATION
Raising to the front using both hands.

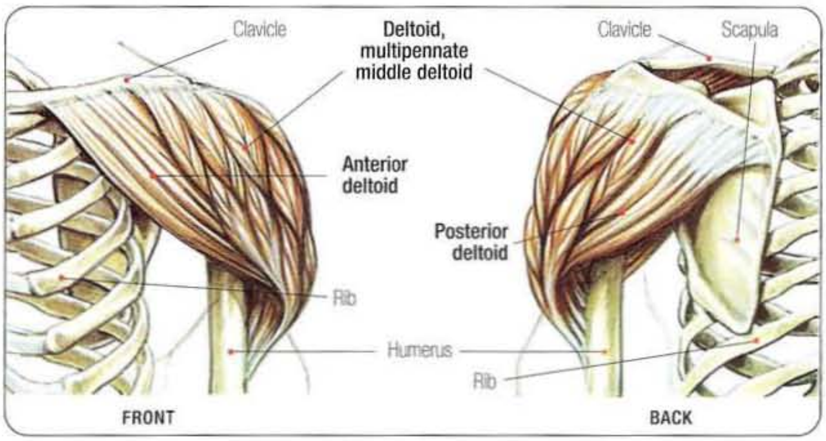
SIDE-LYING LATERAL RAISES 8



Lie on one side on the floor or on a bench holding a dumbbell with an overhand grip:

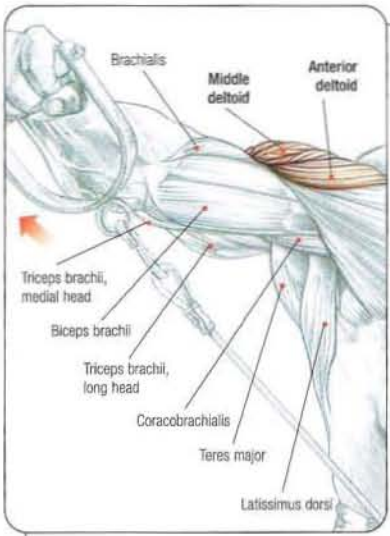
- Inhale and raise the arm to vertical.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

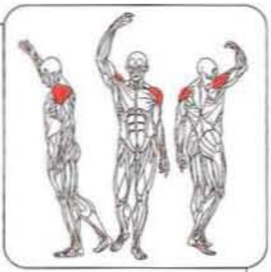
Unlike standing raises, which progressively work the muscle to maximum intensity at the end of the movement (when the arm reaches horizontal), this exercise works the deltoid differently by focusing the effort at the beginning of the raise. Sets of 10 to 12 repetitions work best.

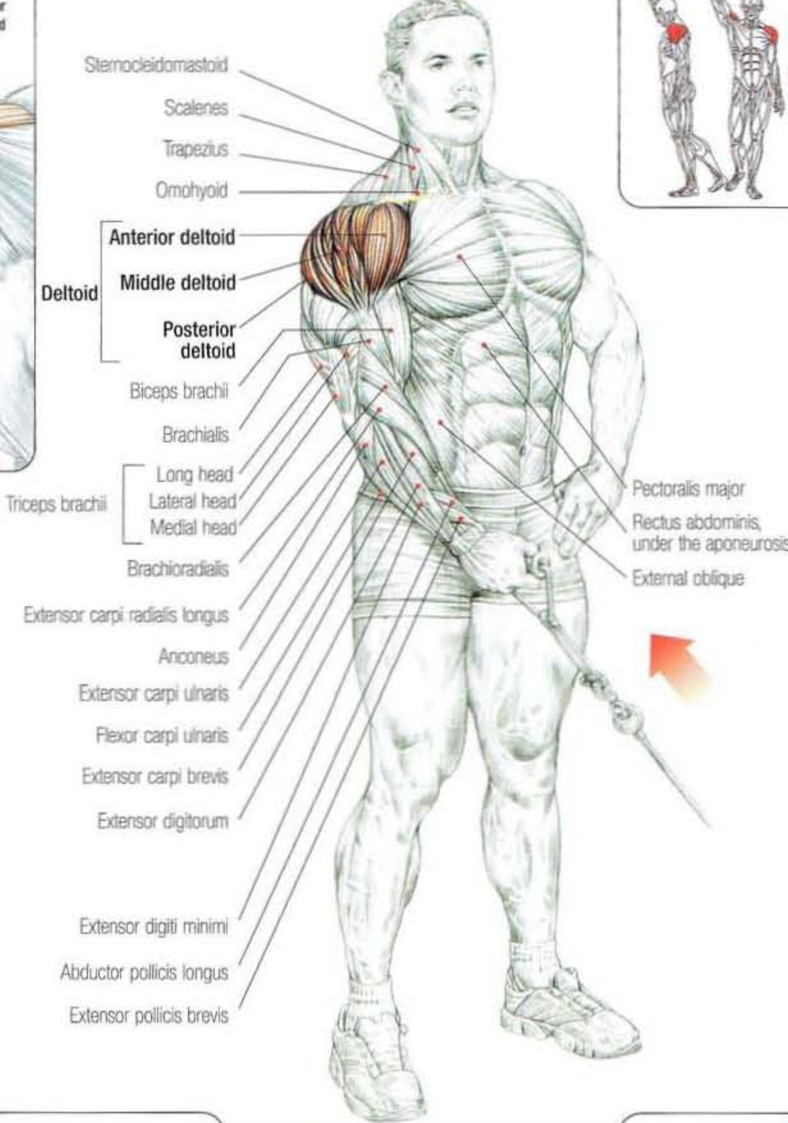


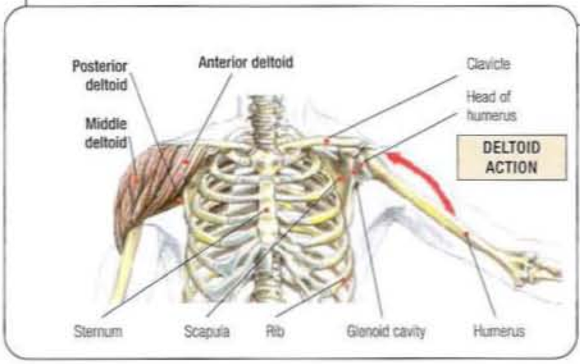
Comment: This movement contracts the supraspinatus, the muscle mainly responsible for initiating abduction. Varying the initial position (dumbbell in front of or behind the thigh) allows you to work all the deltoid fibers.

9 LOW-PULLEY LATERAL RAISES









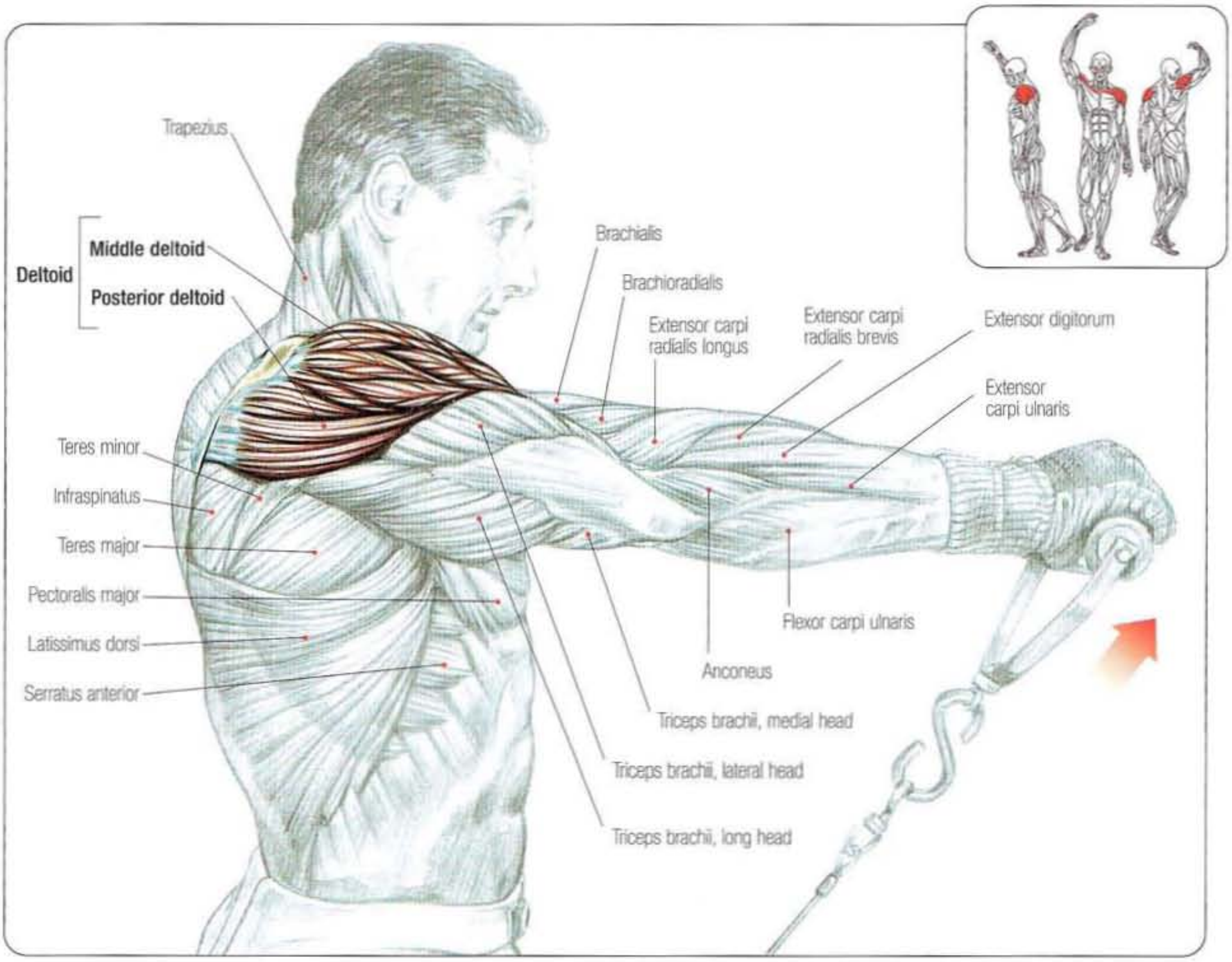
Grasp the handle with the arm next to the body:

- Inhale and raise the arm to horizontal.
- Exhale out at the end of the movement.

This exercise mainly develops the middle deltoid. Because the muscle is multipennate, composed of many fibers in the shape of a feather, it is best to vary the working angles in order to work all the fibers.

FINAL POSITION

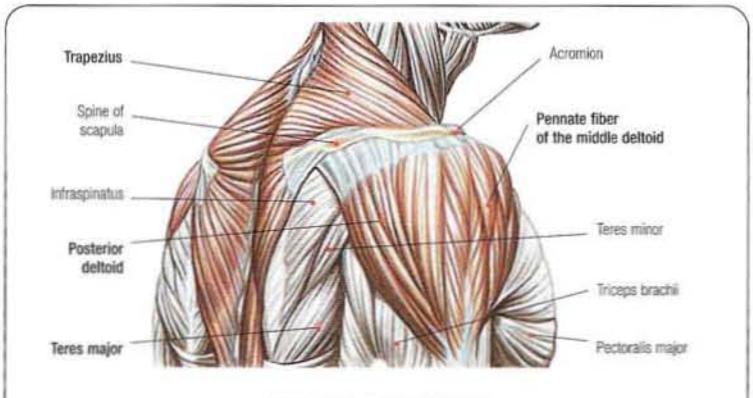
LOW-PULLEY FRONT RAISES 10



Stand with the feet slightly apart, arms next to the body. Grasp the handle with an overhand grip with one hand:

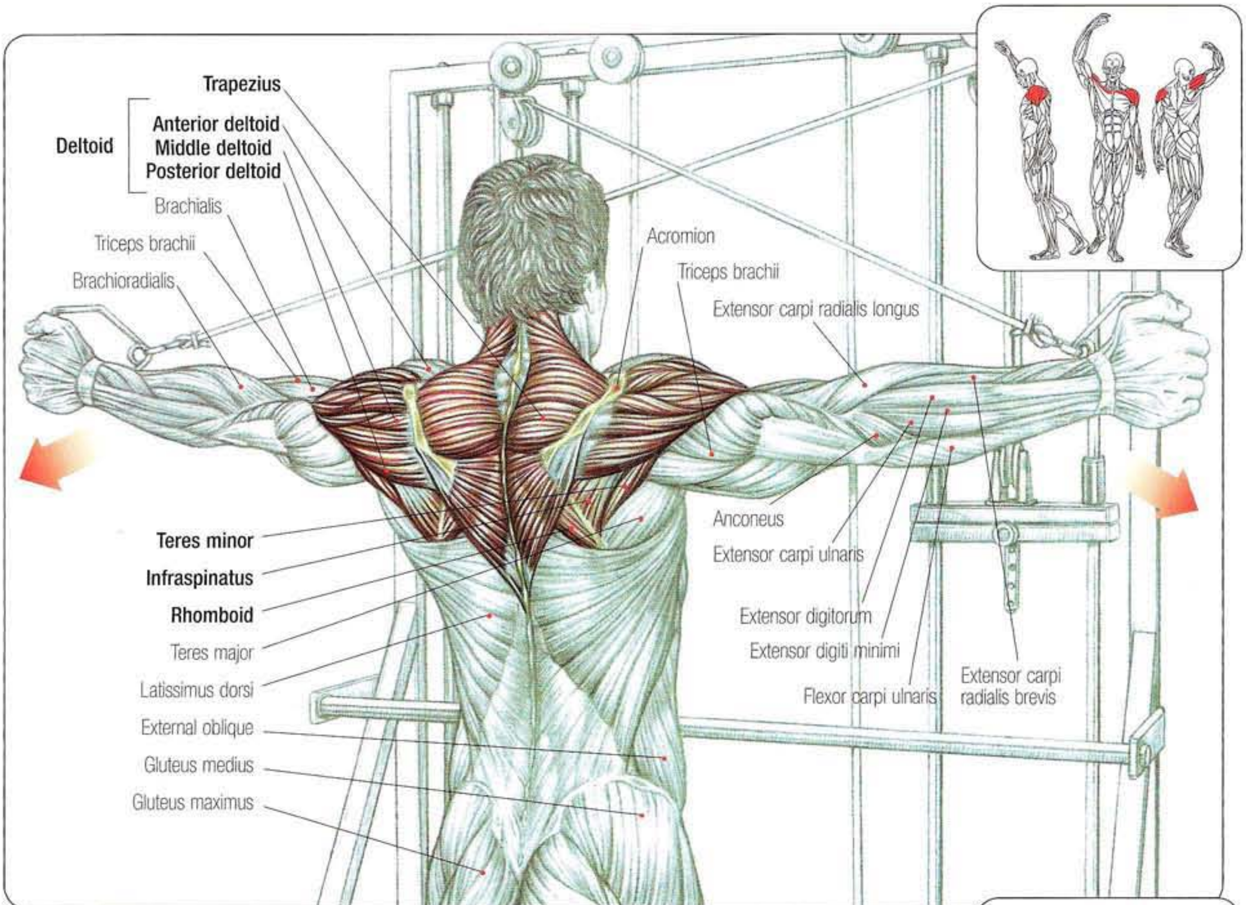
- Inhale and raise the arm up to eye level.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

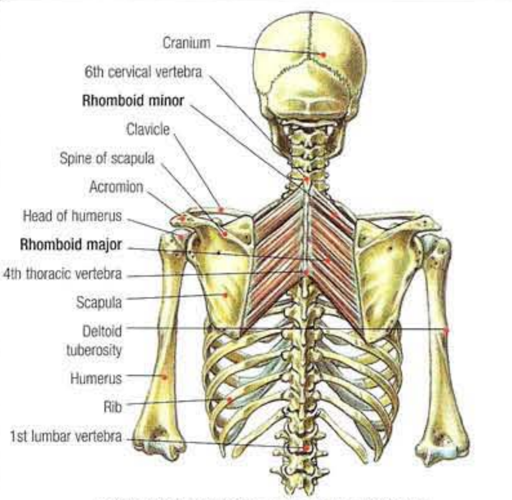
This exercise contracts the deltoid (mainly the anterior deltoid) as well as the clavicular head of the pectoralis major and, to a lesser degree, the short head of the biceps brachii.



SHOULDERS (LATERAL VIEW)

11 HIGH-PULLEY LATERAL EXTENSIONS





RHOMBOID MAJOR AND MINOR MUSCLES

Located deep under the trapezius, the rhomboids pull the shoulder blades together toward the spine and press them against the rib cage.

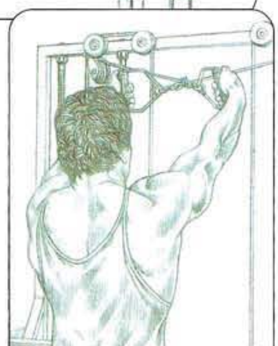
In some people, the major and minor rhomboids are fused, creating one muscle.

Stand facing the pulleys with the arms extended to the front, gripping the right handle with the left hand and the left handle with the right hand:

- Inhale and extend arms to the side and back.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

Return to the initial position with a controlled movement and begin again.

This exercise mainly contracts the posterior deltoid, infraspinatus, teres minor, and, at the end of the movement as the shoulder blades come together, the trapezius and deeper in, the rhomboids.

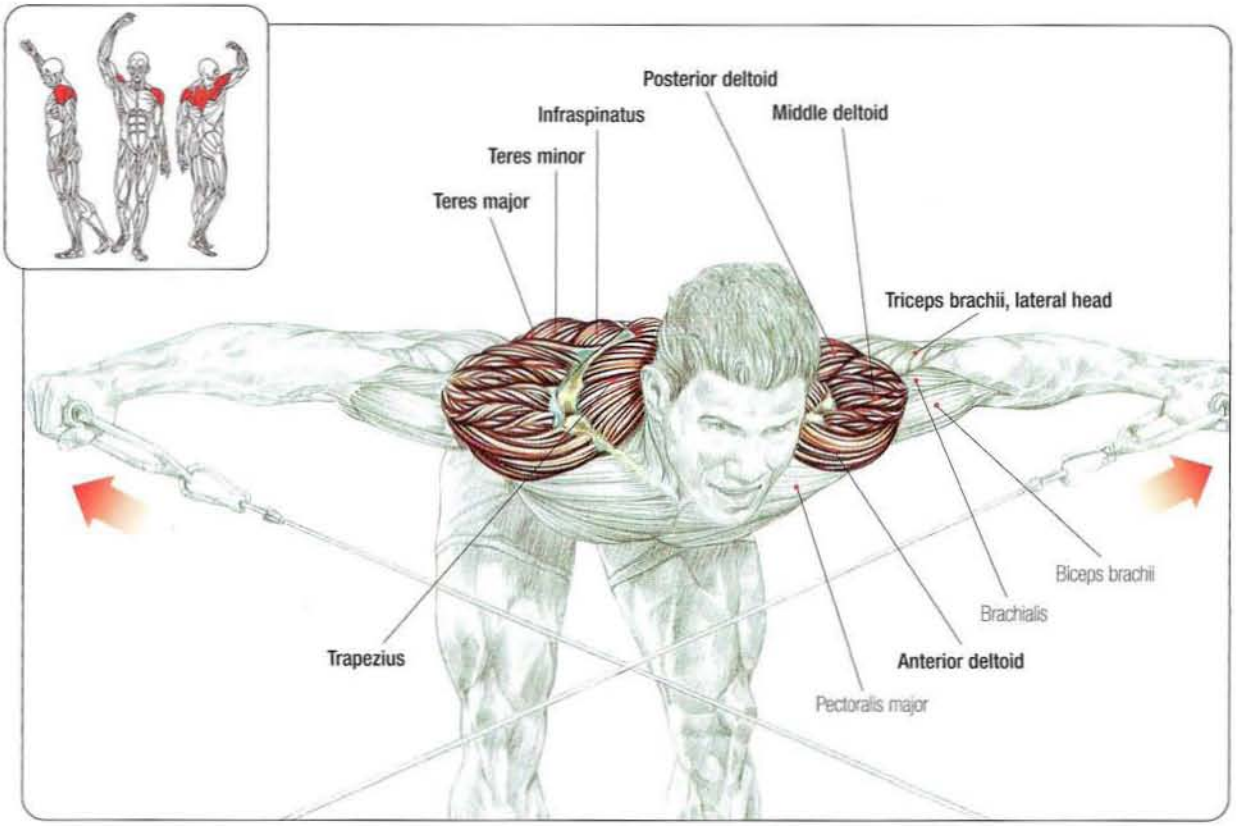


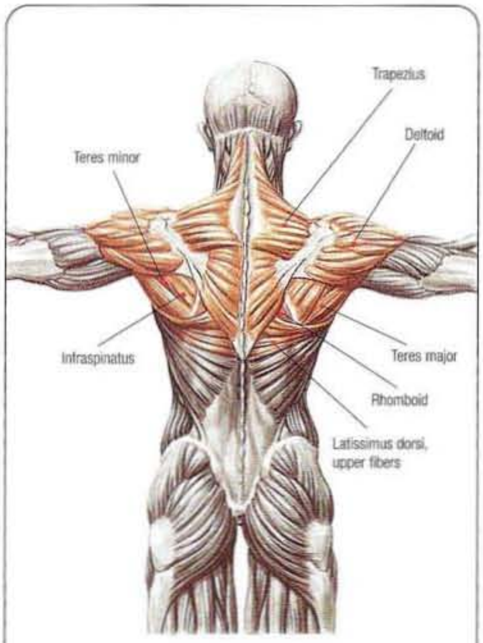
INITIAL POSITION

Comment: People who carry their shoulders forward because of chest muscle development can perform this exercise in addition to posterior shoulder work at a machine to help rebalance their posture.

To realign shoulders where they belong, work with moderate weights, and at the end of the movement squeeze the shoulders back.

LOW-PULLEY BENT-OVER LATERAL RAISES 12





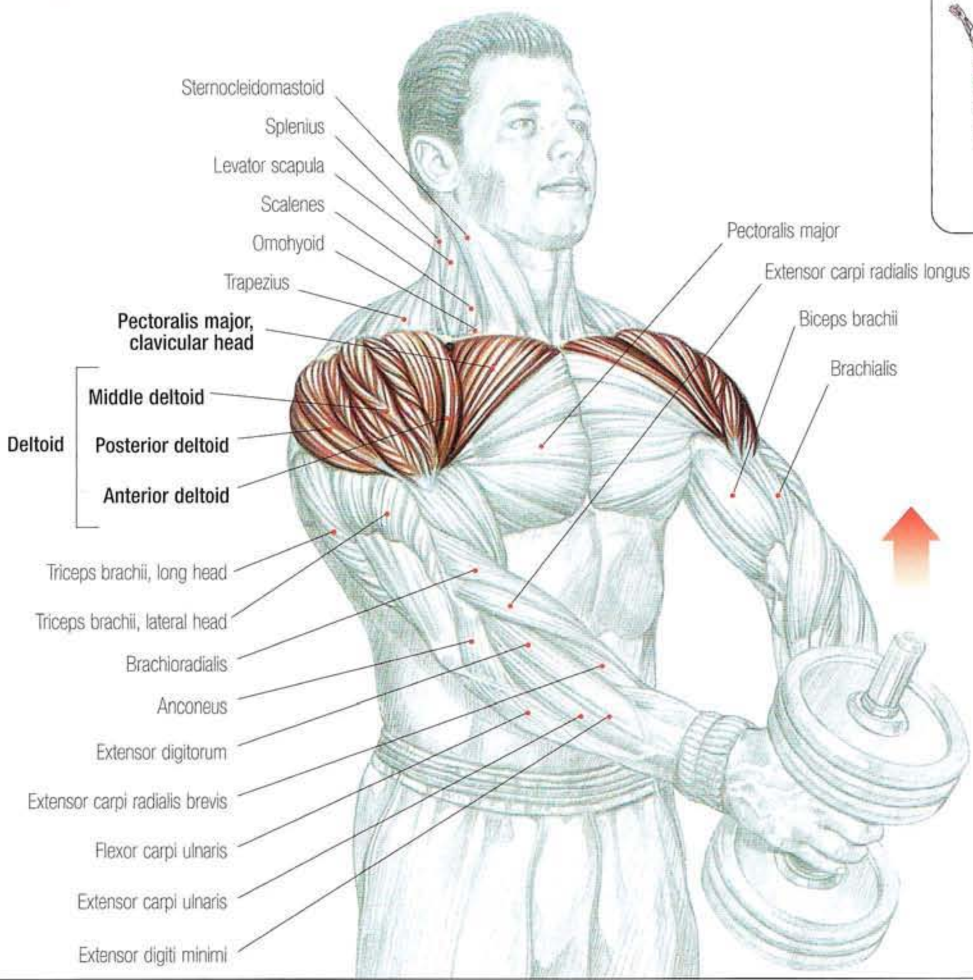
PARTS WORKED

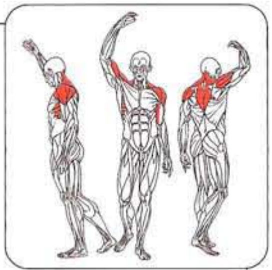
Stand with the feet apart, legs slightly bent, and lean forward from the waist, keeping a flat back. Grip a handle in each hand with the cables crossed:

- Inhale and raise the arms to the side to horizontal.
- Exhale at the end of the effort.

This exercise mainly works the posterior deltoid. At the end of the movement, as the shoulder blades squeeze together, the trapezius (middle and lower portions) and the rhomboids contract.

13 ONE-DUMBBELL FRONT RAISES



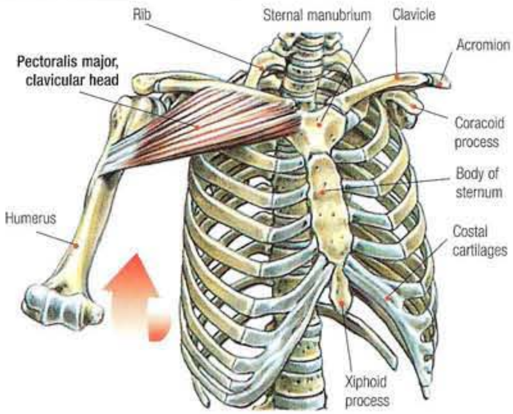


Stand with the legs slightly apart, a straight back, and the abdominal muscles contracted. With arms extended, grasp a dumbbell in both hands with fingers crossed over each other as it rests against the thighs:

- Inhale and raise the dumbbell to eye level.
- Lower gently, avoiding abrupt movements.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

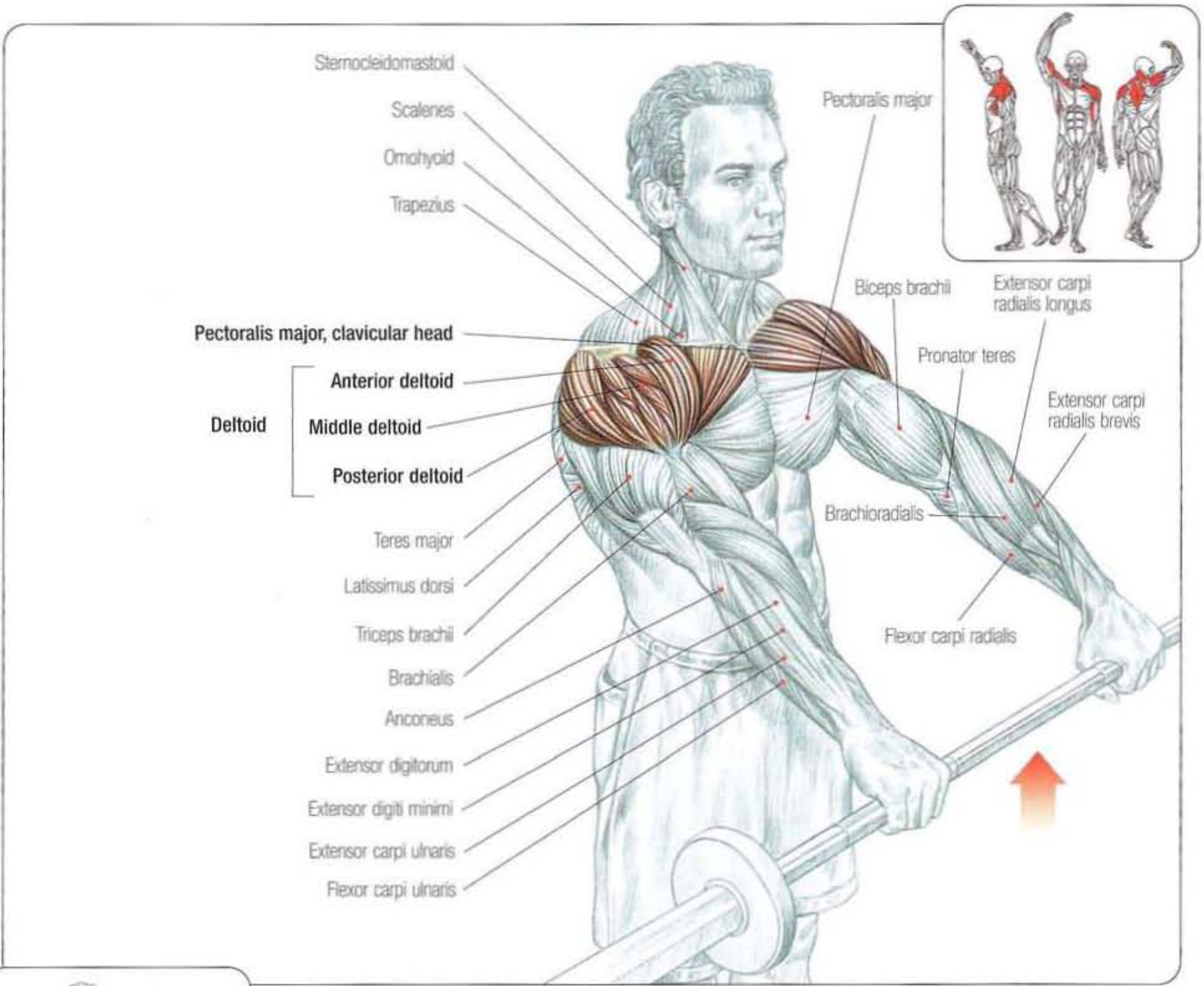
This exercise mainly contracts the anterior deltoid, the clavicular head of the pectoralis major, and the short head of the biceps.

Note that all the fixators of the scapula are used during the isometric contraction, which allows the humerus to move from a stable position.



CLAVICULAR HEAD OF THE PECTORALIS MAJOR ACTIVELY PARTICIPATES IN RAISING THE ARM ANTERIORLY

BARBELL FRONT RAISES 14



VARIATION
Front raise at a low pulley.

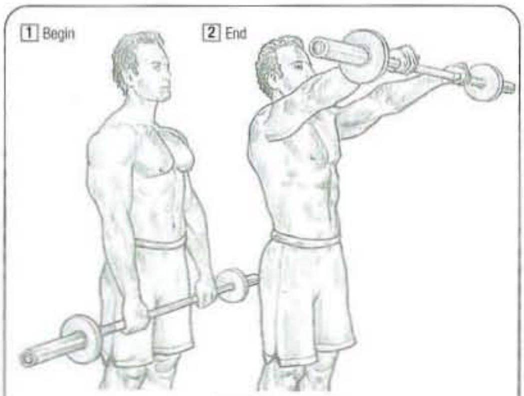
Stand with the legs slightly apart and the back straight, contracting the abdominal muscles. Hold the barbell with an overhand grip as it rests against the thighs:

- Inhale and raise the barbell with extended arms to eye level.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

This exercise contracts the anterior deltoid, the clavicular head of the pectoralis major, the infraspinatus, and, to a lesser degree, the trapezius, serratus anterior, and short head of biceps.

If you continue raising the arms, the posterior deltoid contracts, reinforcing the work of the other muscles and allowing you to raise the arms to vertical.

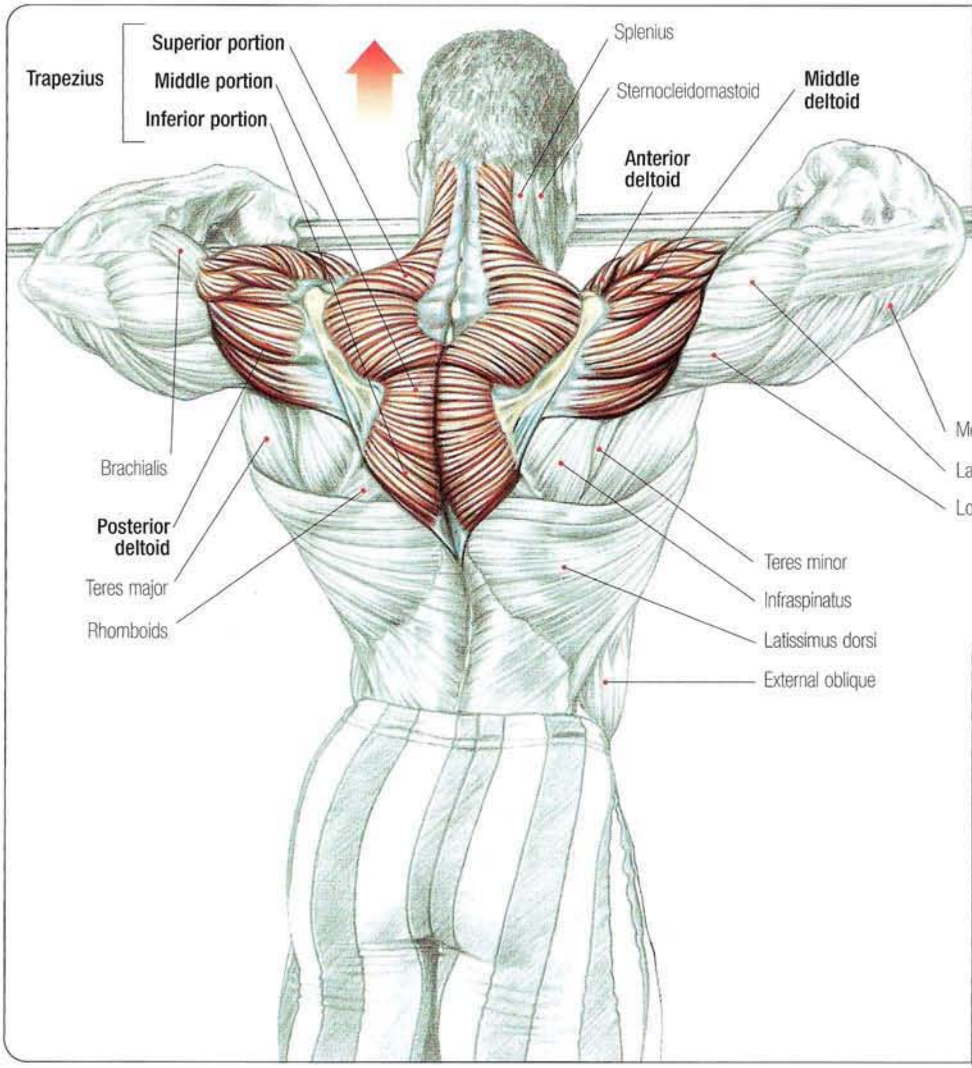
The exercise may also be performed with your back to a low pulley and the cable passing between the legs.

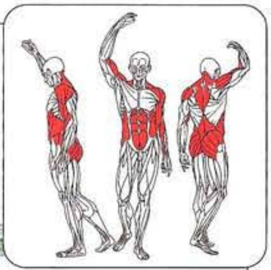


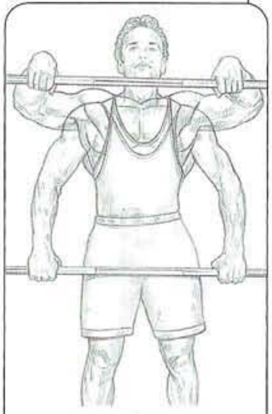
THE MOVEMENT

Comment: The biceps brachii participates to a lesser degree in all anterior arm raises.

15 UPRIGHT ROWS







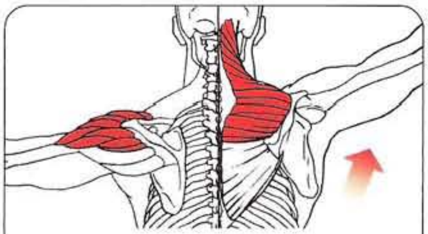
THE MOVEMENT

Stand with the legs slightly apart and back straight. Grasp the barbell with an overhand grip slightly wider than shoulder width as it rests against the thighs:

- Inhale and pull the barbell up along the body to the chin keeping the elbows as high as possible.
- Lower the bar in a controlled manner without abrupt movements.
- Exhale at the end of the effort.

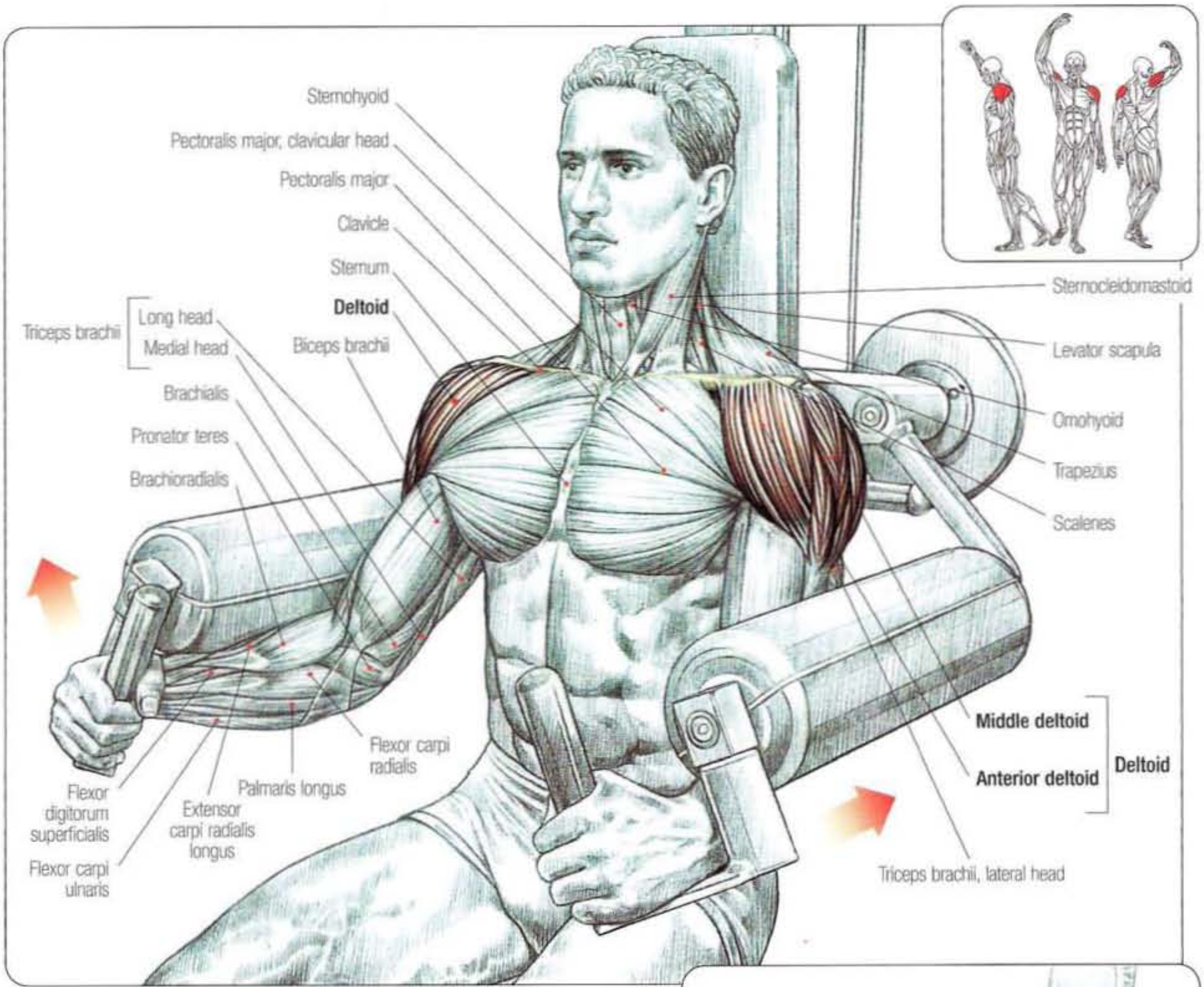
This exercise mainly uses the deltoid, trapezius, and biceps, and to a lesser degree, the muscles of the forearms, the gluteal muscles, the lumbosacralis group, and the abdominal muscles.

This is a fundamental exercise that is comprehensive and helps develop a "Hercules" physique.



The deltoid raises the arm to horizontal. The trapezius takes over to rotate the scapula (shoulder blade), allowing the arm to continue its upward course.

NAUTILUS LATERAL RAISES 16

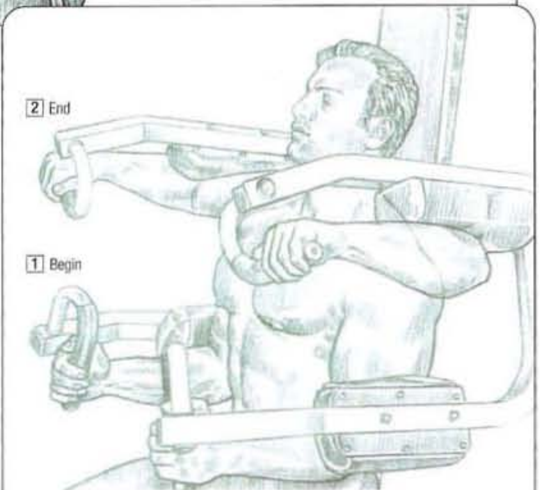


Sit at a machine, grasping the handles:

- Inhale and raise the elbows to horizontal
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

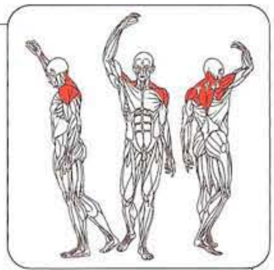
This exercise uses the deltoid (focusing most of the effort on the middle deltoid) and the supraspinatus, located under the deltoid. If raising the arm above horizontal, the upper portion of the trapezius also becomes involved.

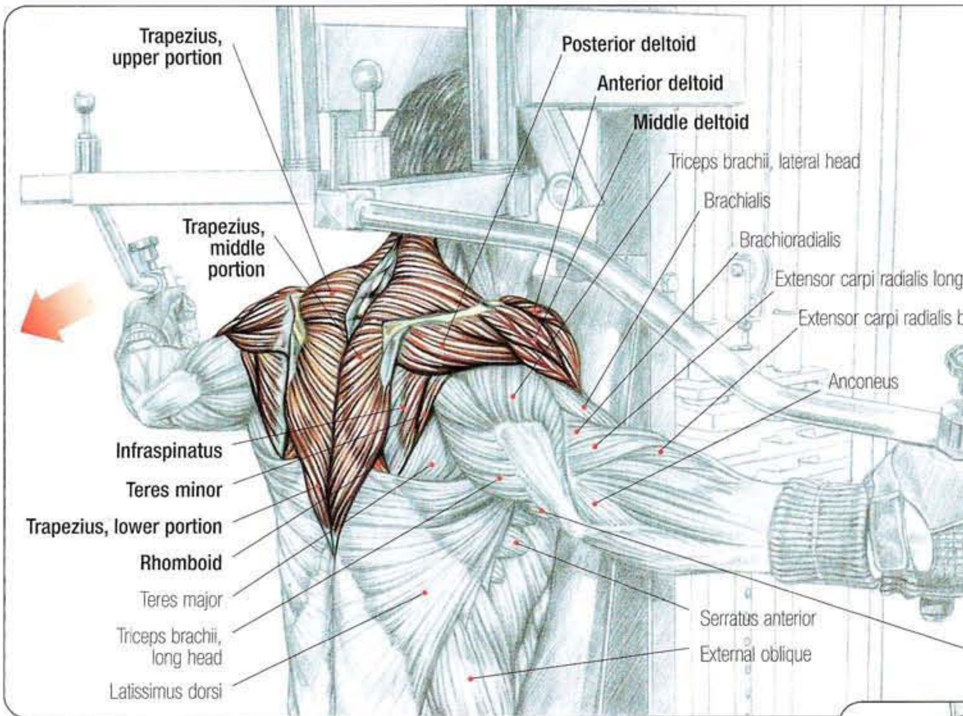
Comment: This is an excellent beginning exercise because you don't have to worry about your form or positioning, and it allows long sets of repetitions.

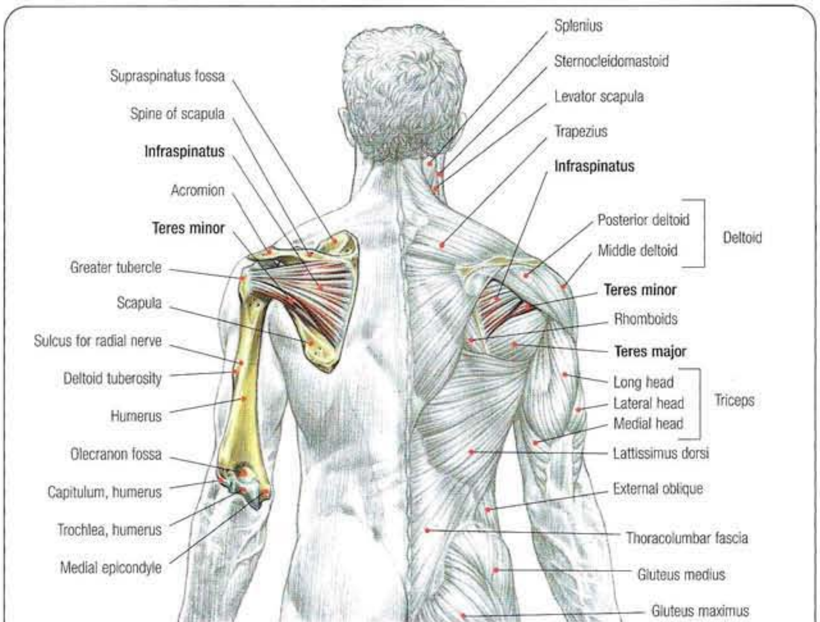


THE MOVEMENT

17 PEC DECK REAR-DELT LATERALS



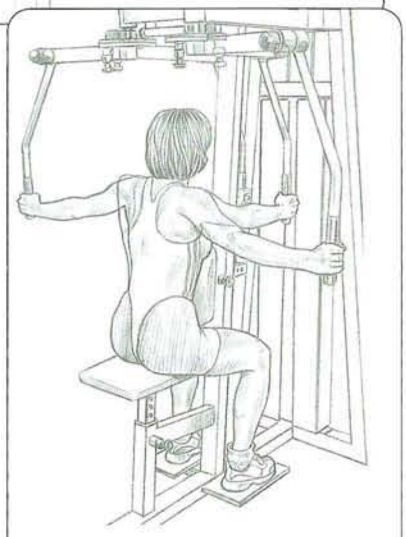




INFRASPINATUS AND TERES MINOR

Both of these muscles arise from the posterior surface of the scapula (shoulder blade), pass onto the scapulohumeral articulation, adhering to its articular capsule, and insert at the greater tubercle of the humerus.
They play an important role in external rotation of the arm and reinforce the action of the shoulder ligaments by actively reinforcing the attachment of the arm to the chest.

Comment: In some people, the teres minor and infraspinatus are fused, forming one muscle.



THE MOVEMENT

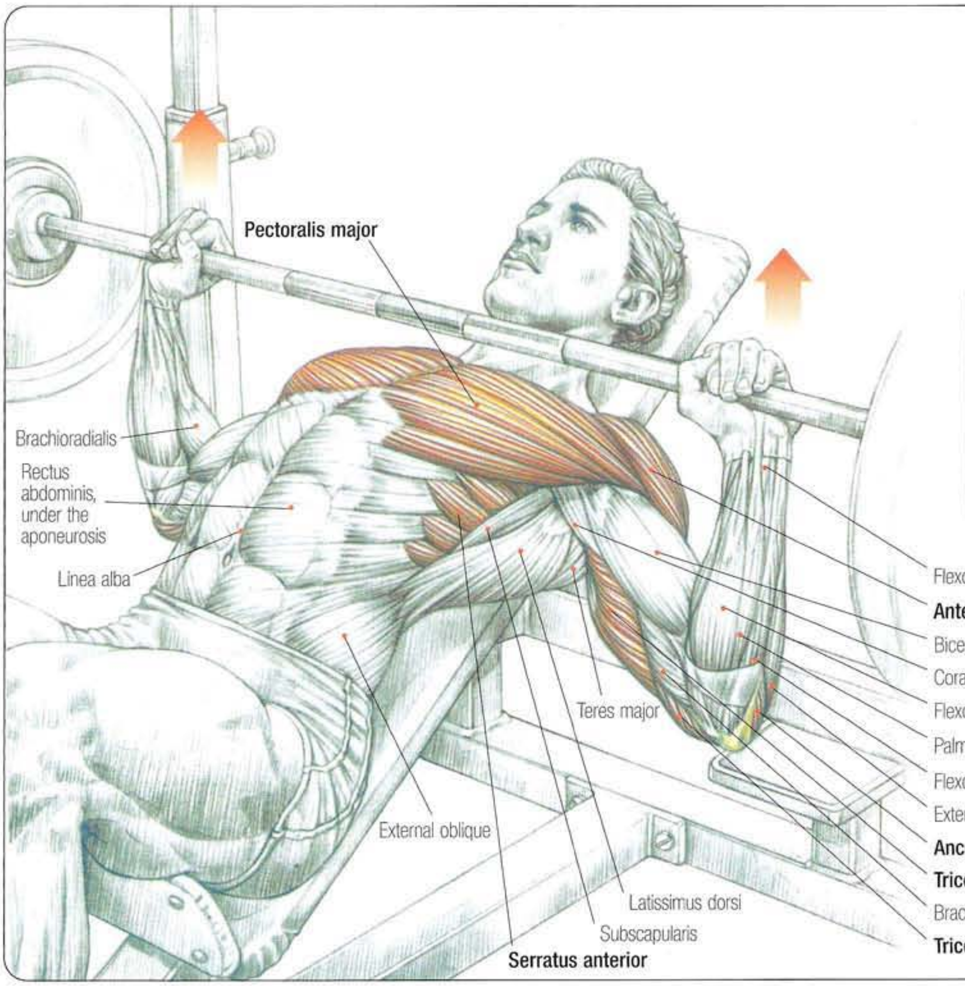
Sit facing the machine, with the torso against the back pad, arms forward, gripping the handles:

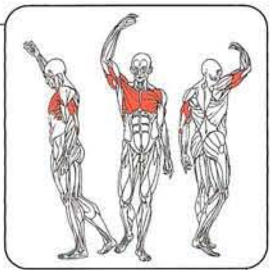
- Inhale and separate the arms, squeezing the shoulder blades together at the end of the movement.
- Exhale.

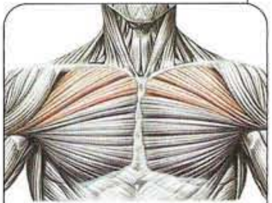
This exercise mainly engages the posterior deltoid, infraspinatus, and teres minor and, at the end of the movement, when the shoulder blades squeeze together, the trapezius and rhomboids.

3 CHEST

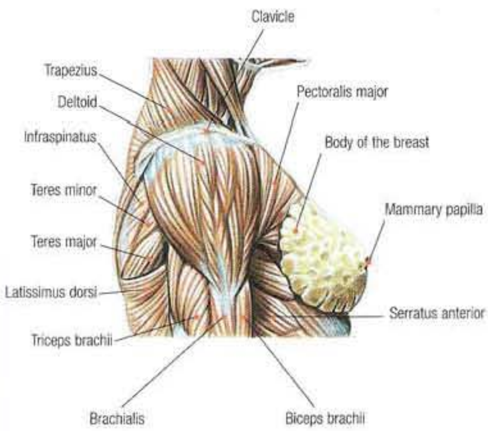
1 INCLINE PRESSES







PART OF THE PECTORALS MAINLY USED



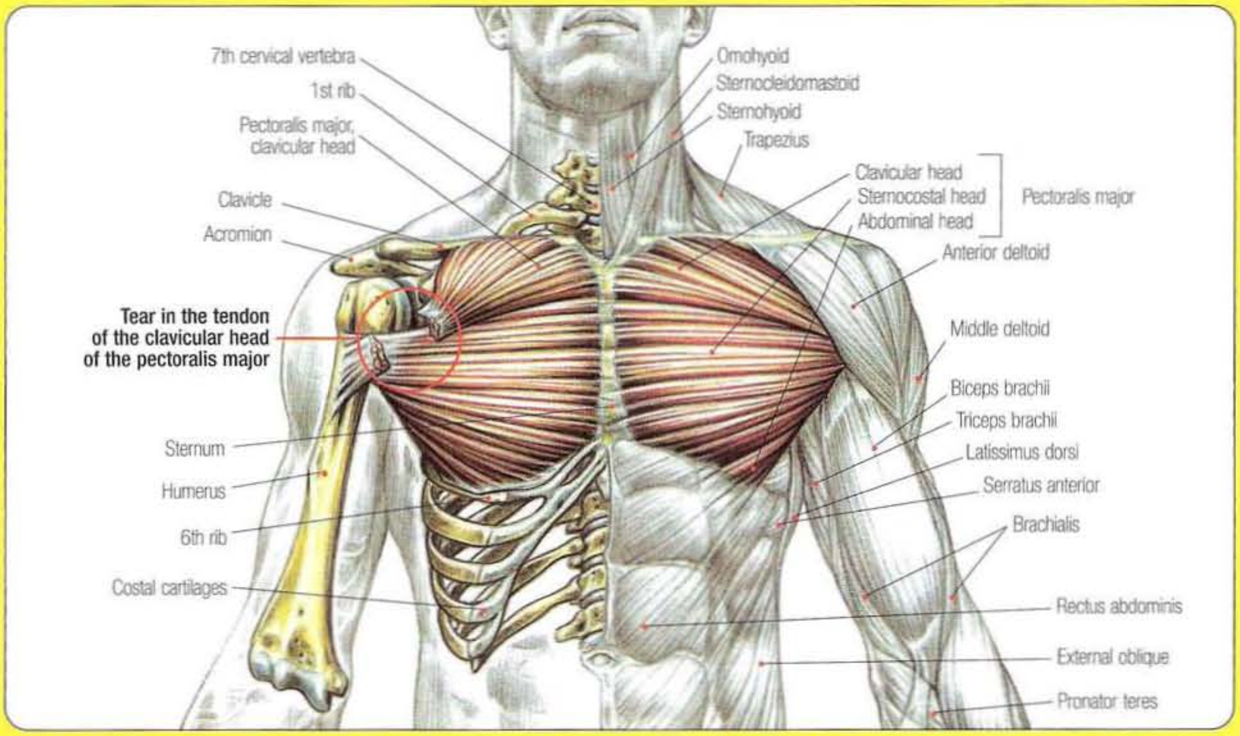
Comment: Contrary to popular lore, the incline press does not tone the breasts and in no way prevents their sagging. Breasts are composed of adipose tissue containing the mammary glands, all of which is contained in a net of connective tissue that rests on top of the pectoralis major.

Sit on an incline bench angled at 45 to 60 degrees, grasp the barbell with an overhand grip wider than shoulder width:

- Inhale and lower the barbell to the sternal notch.
- Extend the arms.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

This exercise mainly solicits the clavicular head of the pectoralis major, anterior deltoid, triceps brachii, serratus anterior, and pectoralis minor. This exercise may be done at a frame that guides the bar.

PECTORALIS MAJOR TEAR



The pectoralis major originates at the anterior surface of the rib cage and inserts at the anterior surface of the upper end of the humerus.

It is a powerful muscle whose main function is to bring the arms together in front of the rib cage. (It is the hugging muscle.)

Unlike most sports, where pectoralis major injuries are rare, weightlifting, especially the bench press, can lead to small tears and even partial rupture of its tendon.

This ultimate injury is seen only in relatively powerful athletes using abnormally rapid force before the tendon has had time to strengthen. Sometimes it is associated with a low-calorie diet aimed at increased muscle definition. (These diets tend to weaken the muscles, tendons, and joints.)

The injury, which always occurs during heavy bench-pressing, generally affects only the tendon of the clavicular head of the pectoralis major.

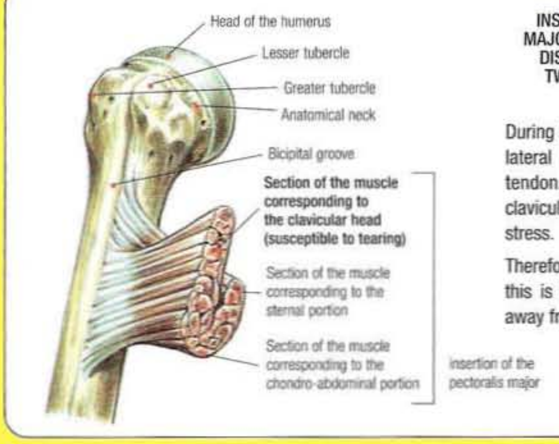
A torn tendon is extremely painful, and the athlete may faint. Swelling and bruising often appear on the anterior surface of the arm, and retraction of the clavicular head leads to a hollow that is medial to the anterior deltoid.

The problem with this injury is that doctors often misdiagnose it. This mistake is unfortunately common but is understandable because during the posttraumatic examination the injured party is able to perform all the movements that indicate full motor function of the pectoralis major. Therefore, the injury appears to be a simple muscle tear rather than the more serious tear of the tendinous insertion.

For example, despite a tear of the clavicular head of the pectoralis major, anterior elevation of the arm, which is part of its function, is compensated for by the anterior deltoid. And abduction is performed by the sternal and abdominal heads of the pectoralis major.

If the tendon of the clavicular head of the pectoralis major is torn, it must be surgically reinserted onto the humerus as soon as possible. If this is not done promptly, retraction and fibrosis of the muscle occurs, and the operation will no longer be possible.

Although you can move your arm through its full range of motion without the superior head of the pectoralis major, you will never recover your initial strength and will be at a serious disadvantage if you want to continue heavy weight training.

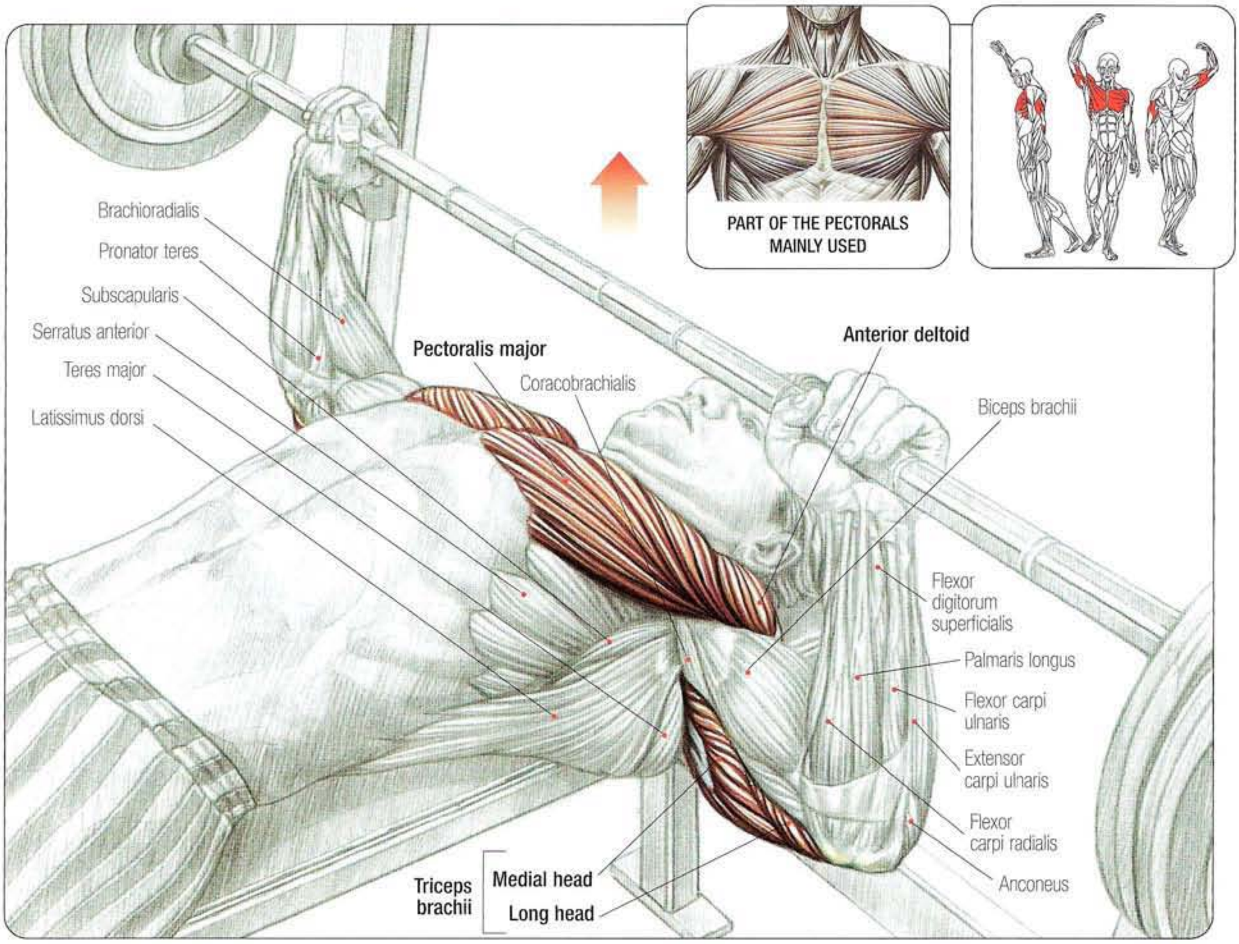


INSERTION OF THE PECTORALIS MAJOR MUSCLE ON THE HUMERUS DISPLAYING HOW THE TENDON TWISTS ON ITSELF CREATING A U-SHAPE

During bench presses or flys, the most lateral part of the pectoralis major tendon, which corresponds to the clavicular head, is put under the most stress.

Therefore, when lifting heavy weights, this is the tendon that tears or pulls away from its insertion.

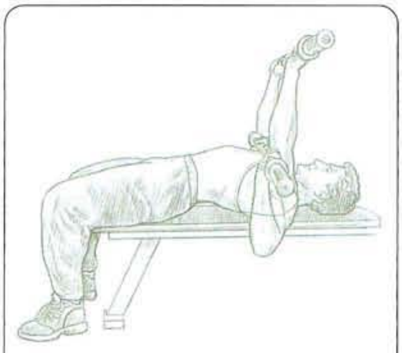
2 BENCH PRESSES



Lie faceup on a horizontal bench, with buttocks on the bench and feet flat on the ground:

- Grasp the barbell with an overhand grip wider than shoulder width.
- Inhale and lower the bar to the chest with a controlled movement.
- Extend the arms and exhale at the end of the effort.

This exercise engages the complete pectoralis major muscle, pectoralis minor, anterior deltoid, serratus anterior, and coracobrachialis.



THE MOVEMENT

Variations

1. This movement may be performed while arching the back power-lifter style. This position brings the more powerful lower part of the pectoral muscle into play, allowing you to lift heavier weights.
2. Executing the extension with the elbows next to the body concentrates the work onto the anterior deltoid.
3. Varying the width of the hands isolates different parts of the muscle:
   - Hands closer together isolates the central part of the pectorals.
   - Hands wider apart isolates the lateral part of the pectorals.
4. Varying the angle of the barbell isolates different parts of the muscle:
   - Lowering the bar to the chondrocostal border of the rib cage isolates the lower part of the pectorals.
   - Lowering the barbell onto the middle part of the pectorals isolates the midline fibers.
   - Lowering the bar onto the sternal notch isolates the clavicular head of the muscle.
5. If you have back problems or want to isolate the pectorals, perform the extension with the legs raised.
6. Perform the extension at a frame that guides the bar.

CLASSIC POSITION

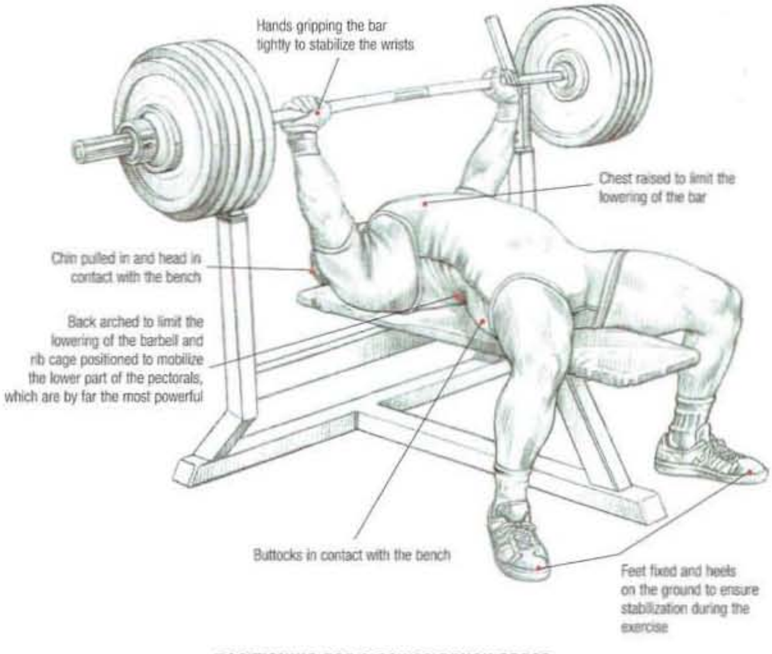
ARCHED-BACK VARIATION

Executing the bench press with an arched back, power-lifter style, limits the range of the movement and allows you to lift significantly heavier weights because it uses mainly the lower part of the pectorals, which are the strongest. In competition, the feet and the head should not move, and the buttocks should remain in contact with the bench. People with back problems should not perform this variation.

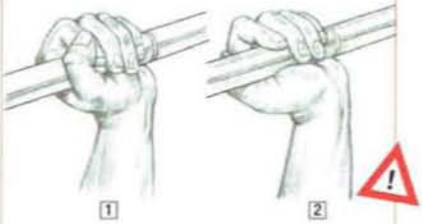
RAISED-LEG VARIATION

Performing the movement with raised legs helps prevent excessive arching, which can cause low back pain.

This variation diminishes the effort of the lower pectorals by working the middle and superior fibers more.



POSITIONING FOR A POWER BENCH PRESS

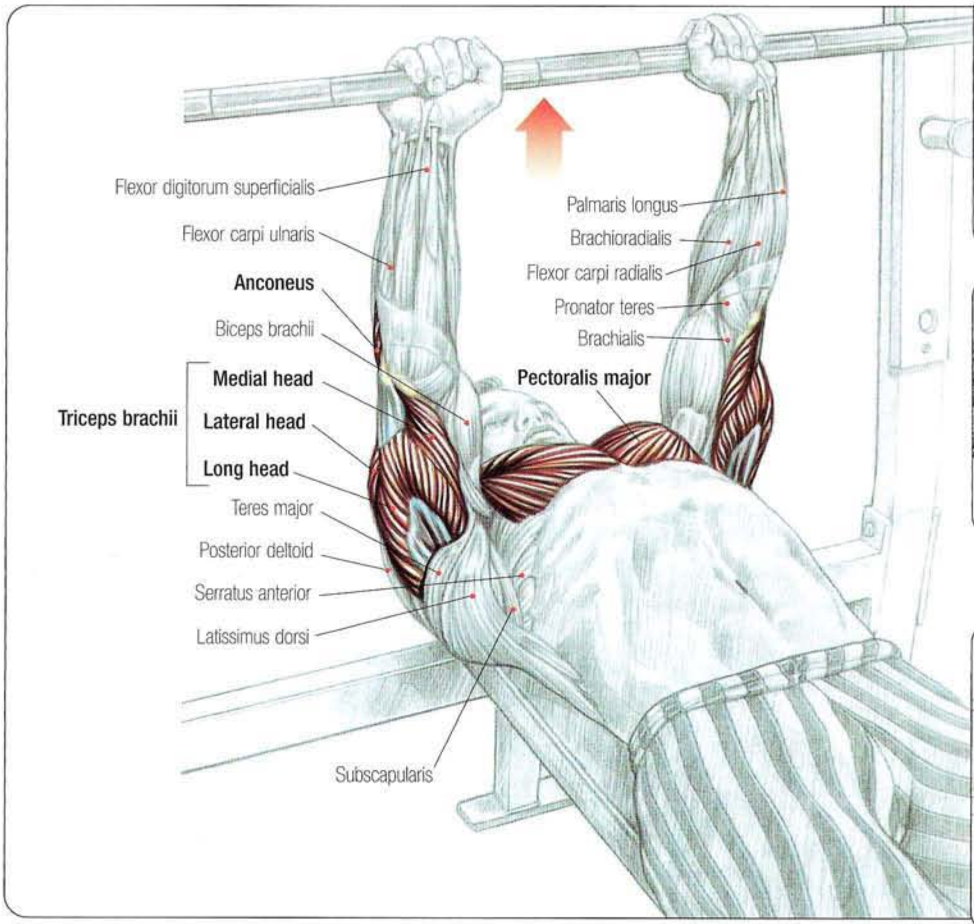


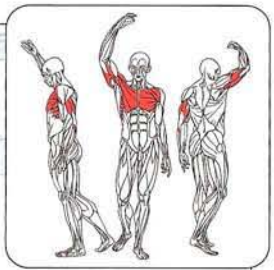
ATTENTION

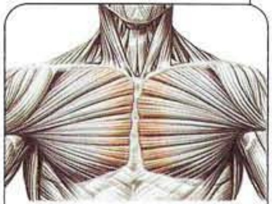
1 For maximum safety, lock onto the bar with a grip in which the thumb and fingers oppose each other.

2 If the grip on the bar is not locked on in opposition, the bar could slip out of your hands and fall on the jaw or, worse, the neck and cause a serious injury.

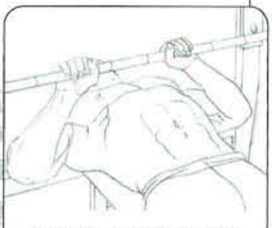
3 CLOSE-GRIP BENCH PRESSES







PART OF THE PECTORAL MUSCLES THAT ARE MAINLY USED



EXECUTION WITH ELBOWS OPEN TO THE SIDES TO BETTER ISOLATE THE TRICEPS BRACHII

Lie on a horizontal bench with the buttocks on the bench and the feet on the ground, gripping the barbell with an overhand grip and wrists 4 to 15 inches apart, depending on the flexibility of the wrists: Inhale and lower the bar with a controlled movement to the chest, with the elbows out to the side. Extend and exhale at the end of the effort. This exercise develops the pectoral muscles at the sternal notch and the triceps brachii. (With this in mind, it may be included in a program for the arms.) By extending and keeping the elbows next to the body, a greater part of the work is performed by the anterior deltoid. This movement may be performed at a frame that guides the bar.

Attention: Depending on your physical structure, the narrow grip may cause wrist pain. In this case, use a wider grip.

Bench Presses and Elbow Pain

Elbow pain most often develops after bench pressing. This overuse injury is generally related to excessive training with long sets. In bench pressing, locking the extended arms at the end of the movement subjects the elbow to rubbing and microtrauma, which over time may lead to inflammation.

Comment: Occasionally, this condition can lead to intra-articular calcifications, which are particularly crippling. In this case, surgery is often the only solution for regaining complete arm extension.

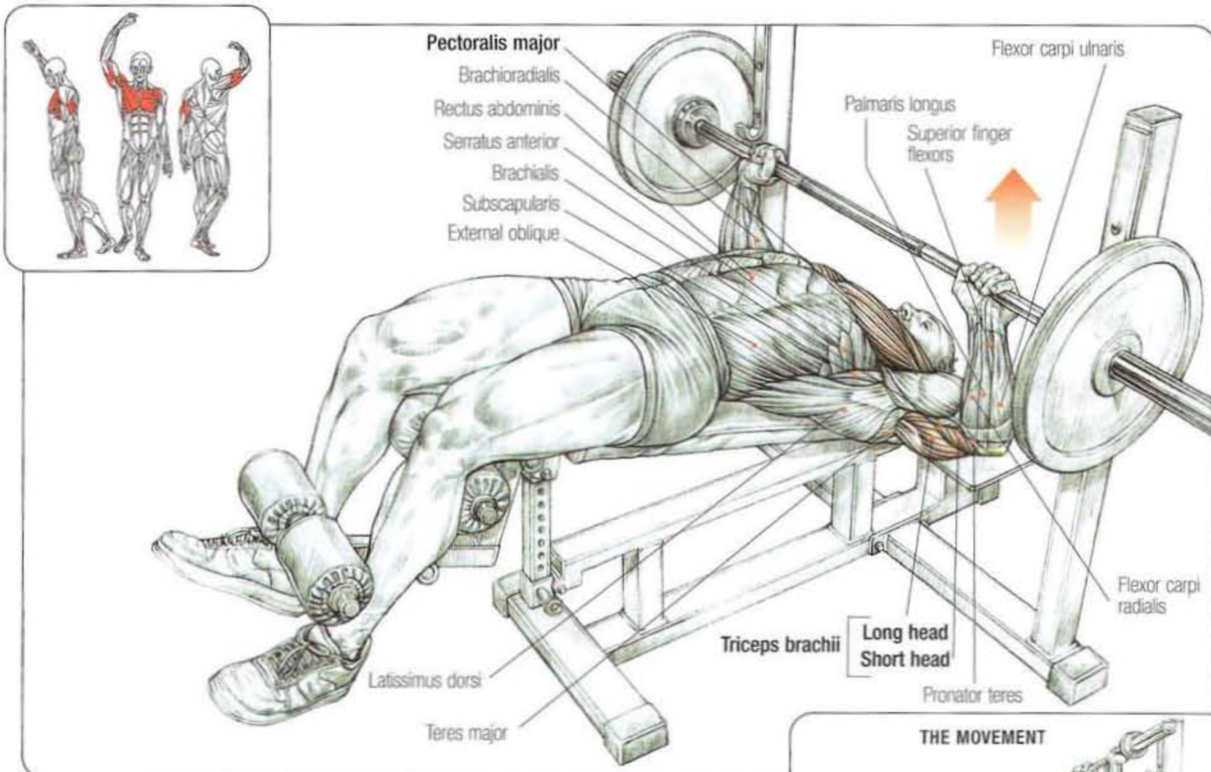
At the first sign of elbow pain, avoid for several days exercises that involve arm extension in order to prevent serious injury.

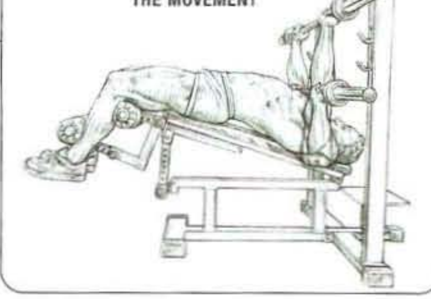
When you resume exercises that include arm extension, avoid completely extending the forearms at the end of the movement until the pain has completely disappeared.

SECTION THROUGH THE ELBOW JOINT

With repeated extension of the forearm, the olecranon butts up against the olecranon fossa of the humerus. The articulation then suffers from microtrauma, which over time may generate painful inflammation at the dorsal surface of the elbow.

DECLINE PRESSES 4





THE MOVEMENT

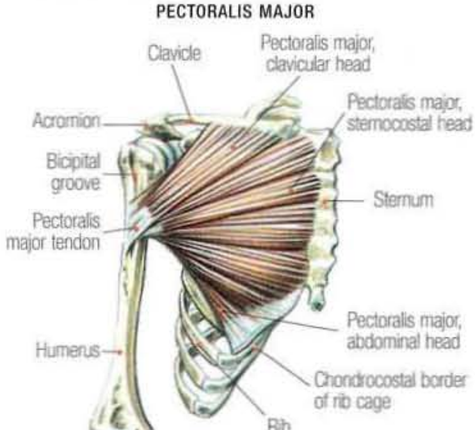
Lie on a decline bench (between 20 and 40 degrees), with the head angled down and feet fixed to prevent sliding and grasp the barbell with an overhand grip shoulder width or more:

- Inhale and lower the barbell to the lower pectorals with a controlled movement.
- Extend the arms and exhale at the end of the movement.

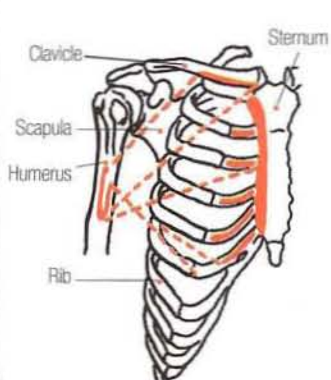
This exercise contracts the pectoralis major (mainly its inferior fibers), triceps brachii, and the anterior deltoid.

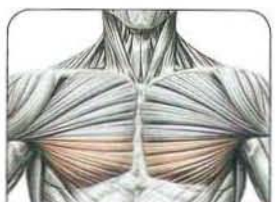
This exercise is useful for outlining the inferior groove of the pectorals. Using light weights and lowering the bar to the neck stretches the pectoralis major correctly. The decline press may be performed at a frame that guides the bar.

PECTORALIS MAJOR



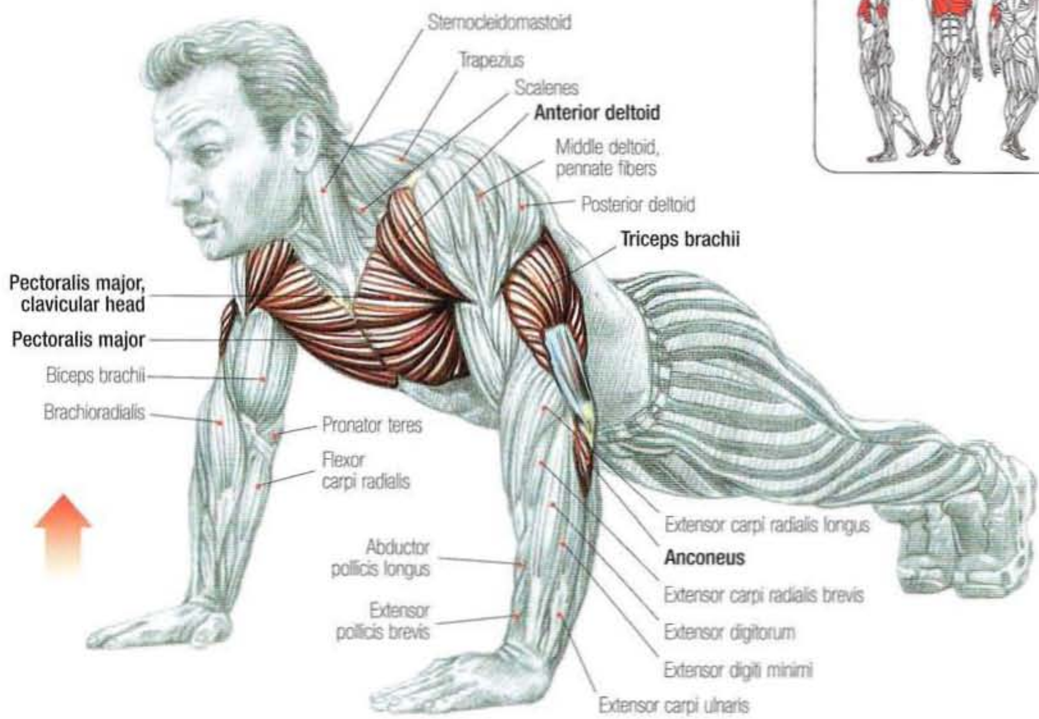
PECTORALIS MAJOR MUSCLE INSERTIONS

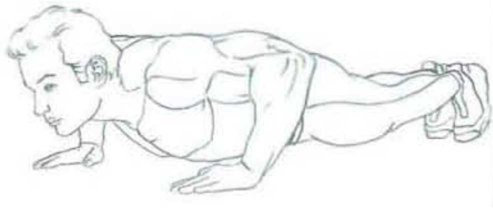




PART OF PECTORALIS MUSCLES MAINLY USED

5 PUSH-UPS



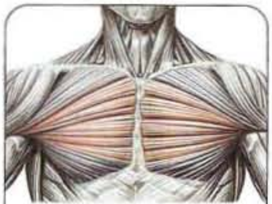


INITIAL POSITION

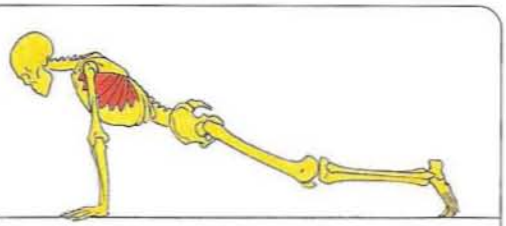
Support yourself facedown on the ground, with arms extended, hands shoulder-width (or more) apart, and feet touching or slightly apart:

- Inhale and bend the elbows to bring the rib cage close to the ground without arching the low back excessively.
- Push back up to complete arm extension.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

This movement is excellent for the pectoralis major and the triceps brachii.



PART OF THE PECTORAL MUSCLES MAINLY USED



While performing push-ups the serratus anterior contracts to maintain the scapula against the rib cage, locking the arms onto the torso.

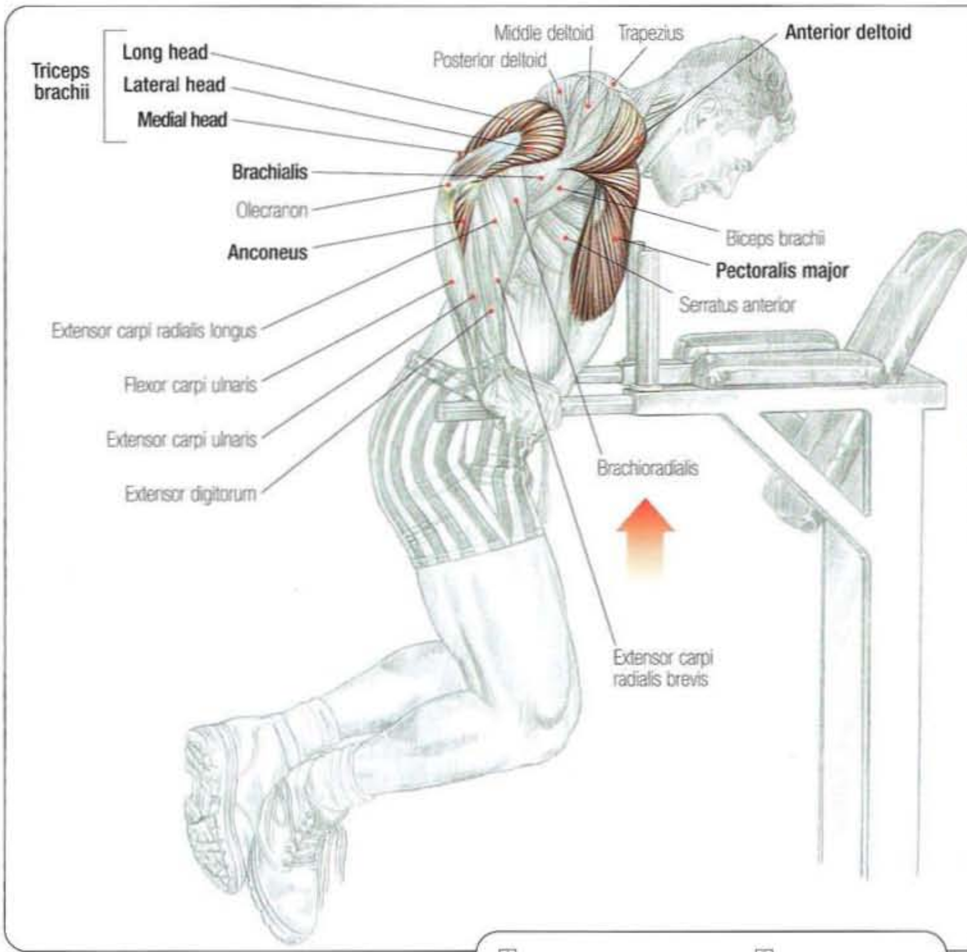
Varying the tilt of the chest focuses the work on different parts of the pectorals:

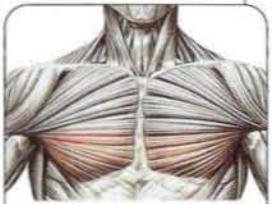
- Feet higher isolates the the clavicular head of the pectoralis major.
- Chest higher isolates the inferior part of the pectoralis major.

Varying the width of the hands focuses the work on different parts of the pectorals:

- Hands wider isolates the lateral part of the pectoralis major.
- Hands closer together isolates the sternal head of the pectoralis major.

PARALLEL BAR DIPS 6





PART OF THE PECTORAL MUSCLES MAINLY USED

Hang from the parallel bars with arms extended and legs suspended:

- Inhale and bend the elbows to bring the chest level with the bars.
- Return to the extended arm position.
- Exhale at the end of the effort.

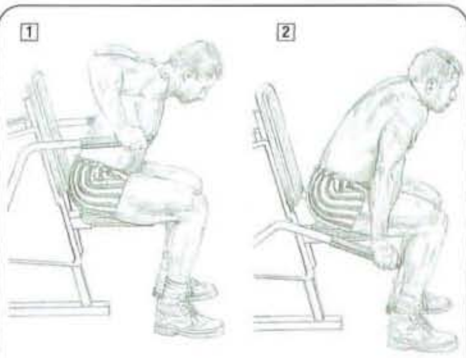
The more the chest is angled forward during the exercise, the more the inferior fibers of the pectorals are used. Conversely, the more vertical the chest, the more the triceps brachii will be used.

This exercise is excellent for stretching the pectoralis major and for working on the flexibility of the shoulder girdle. However, it is not recommended for beginners because it requires a certain amount of initial strength.

If you are a beginner, use a dips machine to familiarize yourself with the movement.

Sets of 10 to 20 repetitions provide the best results.

For developing more strength and also more size, athletes used to this movement may use a weight belt, or hang a weight from their legs.



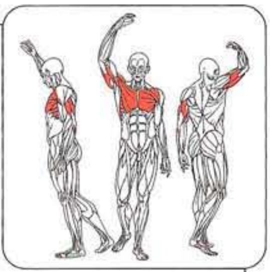
EXECUTING DIPS AT A MACHINE

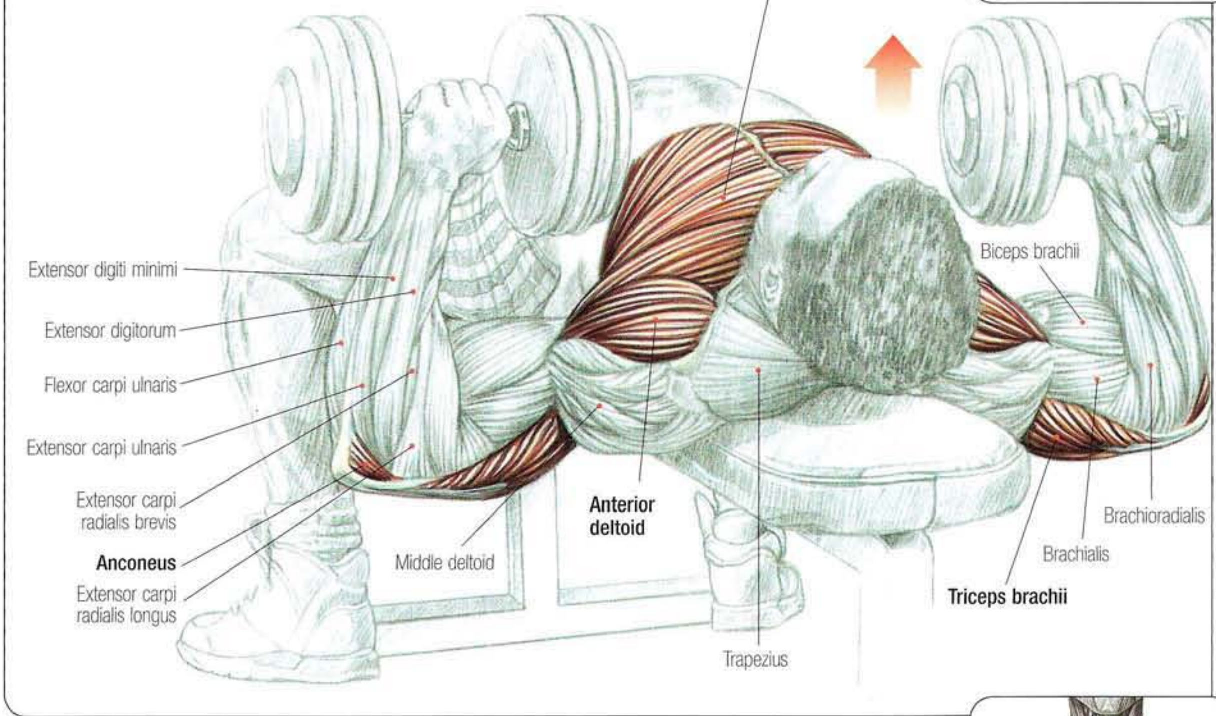
1 Initial position
2 Final position

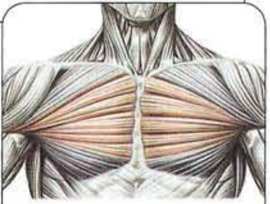
THE MOVEMENT

Comment: Execute the dips with caution to prevent shoulder trauma.

7 DUMBBELL PRESSES







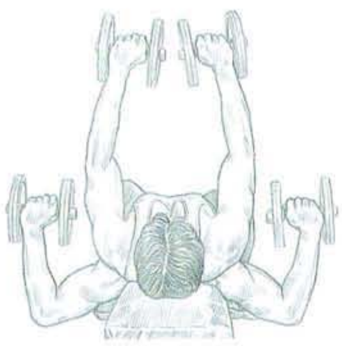
PART OF THE PECTORAL MUSCLES MAINLY USED

Lie faceup on a horizontal bench, with feet flat on the ground for stability and elbows bent, holding dumbbells with an overhand grip at the chest level:

- Inhale and extend the arms vertically while rotating the forearms so that the palms face each other.
- Once the hands face each other, perform an isometric contraction to focus the effort on the sternal head of the pectoralis major.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

This exercise is similar to the bench press, but with its greater range of motion, it stretches the pectoralis muscles.

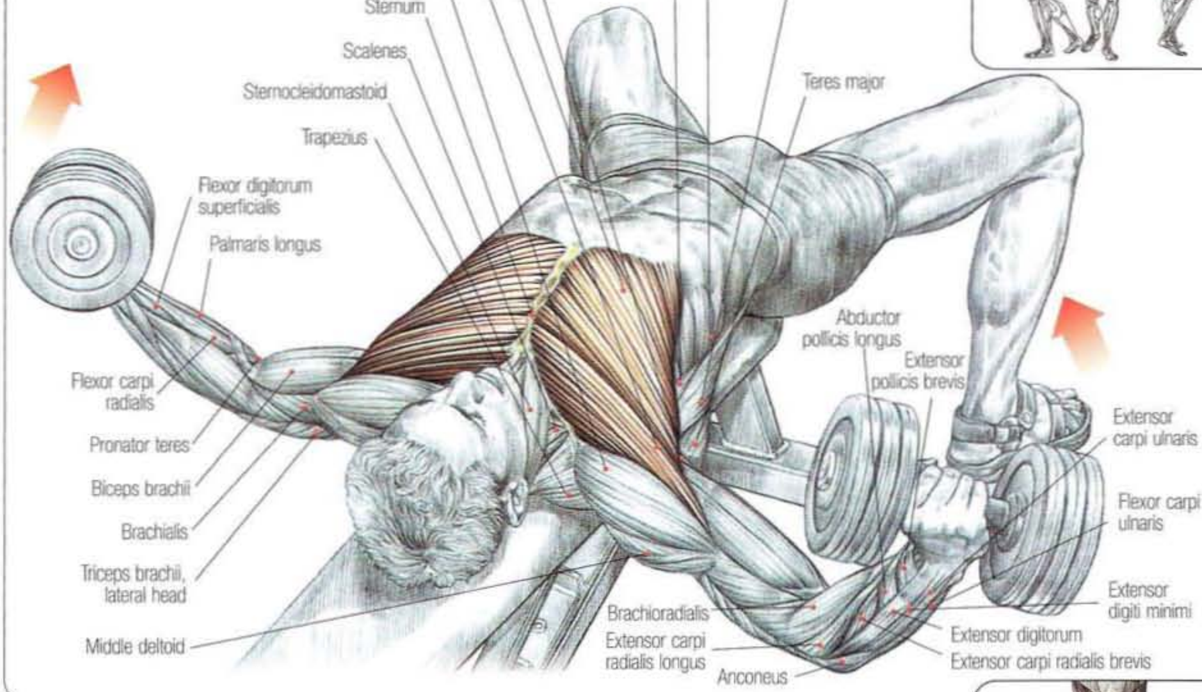
Although not contracted as intensely, the triceps brachii and anterior deltoid are also used.

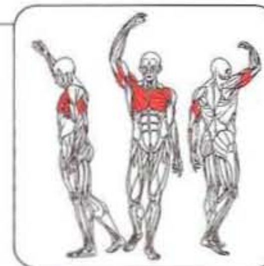


VARIATION

Executing the exercise without rotating the forearms.

DUMBBELL FLYS 8



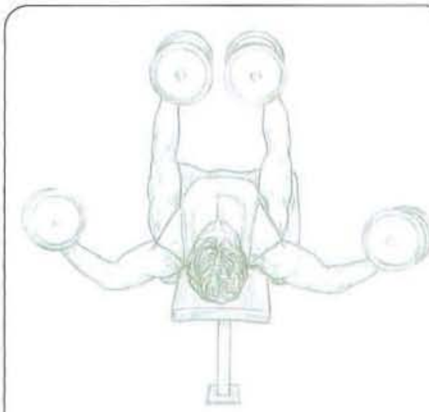


Lie on a narrow bench that won't interfere with the shoulder movement and hold a dumbbell in each hand with arms extended or slightly bent to relieve stress on the joint:

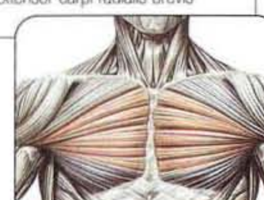
- Inhale and open the arms to horizontal.
- Raise the arms to vertical while exhaling.
- Perform a small isometric contraction at the end of the movement to emphasize the work on the sternal head of the pectoralis major.

This exercise is never performed with heavy weights.

This exercise focuses the work on the pectoralis major. It serves as a basic exercise to increase thoracic expansion, which contributes to increased pulmonary capacity. It also develops muscle flexibility.



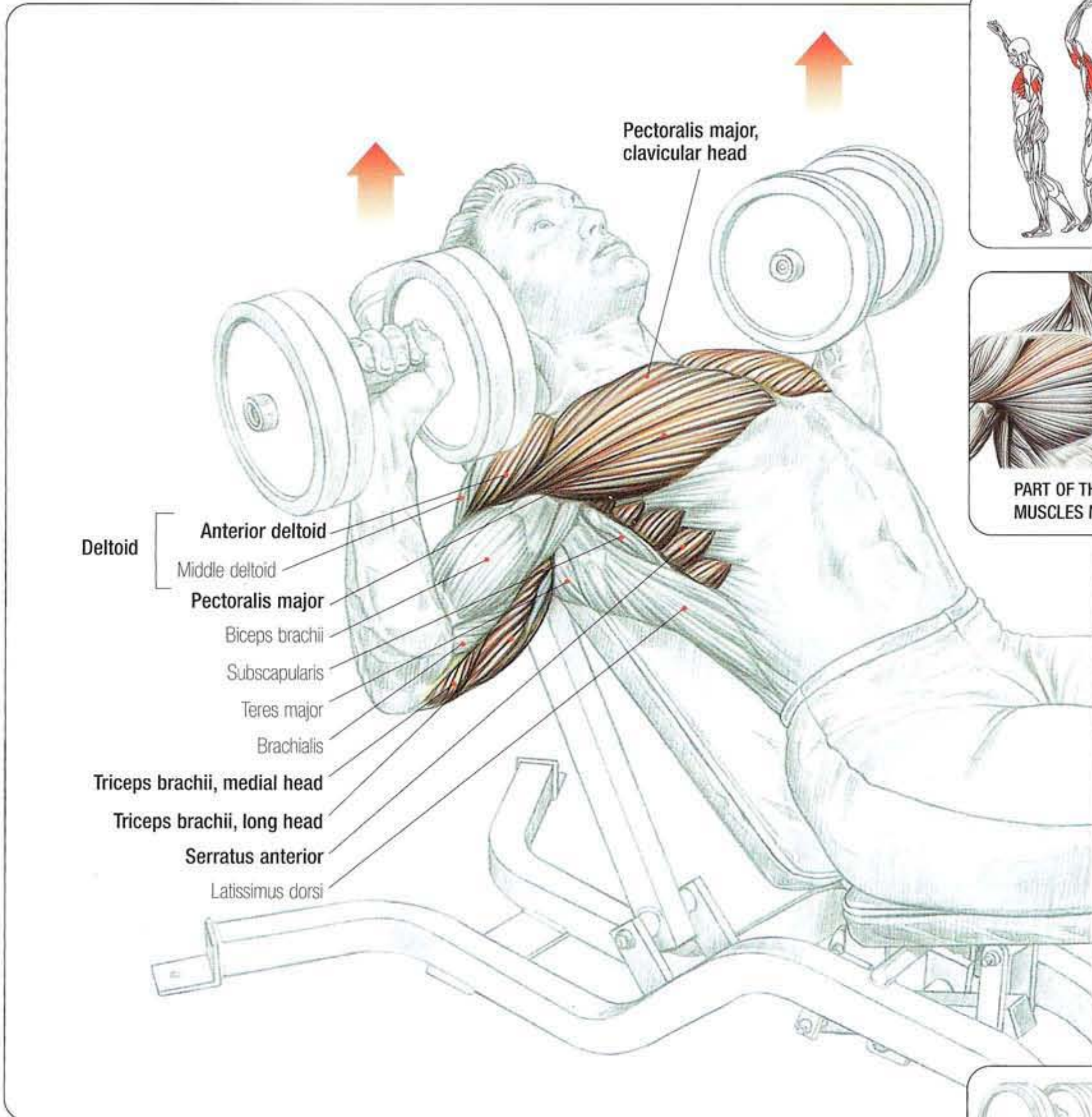
THE MOVEMENT

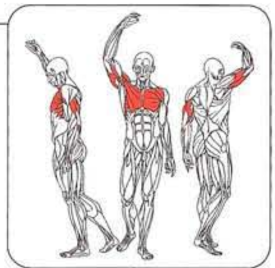


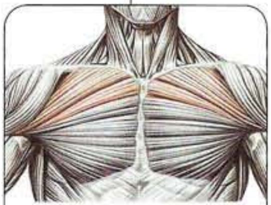
PART OF THE PECTORAL MUSCLES MAINLY USED

Comment: To avoid the risk of tearing the pectoral muscles, perform the exercise with extreme caution when using heavier weights.

9 INCLINE DUMBBELL PRESSES







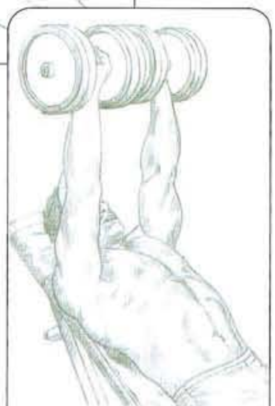
PART OF THE PECTORAL MUSCLES MAINLY USED

Sit on a bench with an angle of no more than 60 degrees (to prevent too much work with the deltoid), with elbows bent and grasping the dumbbells with an overhand grip:

- Inhale and extend the arms vertically, bringing the dumbbells together.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

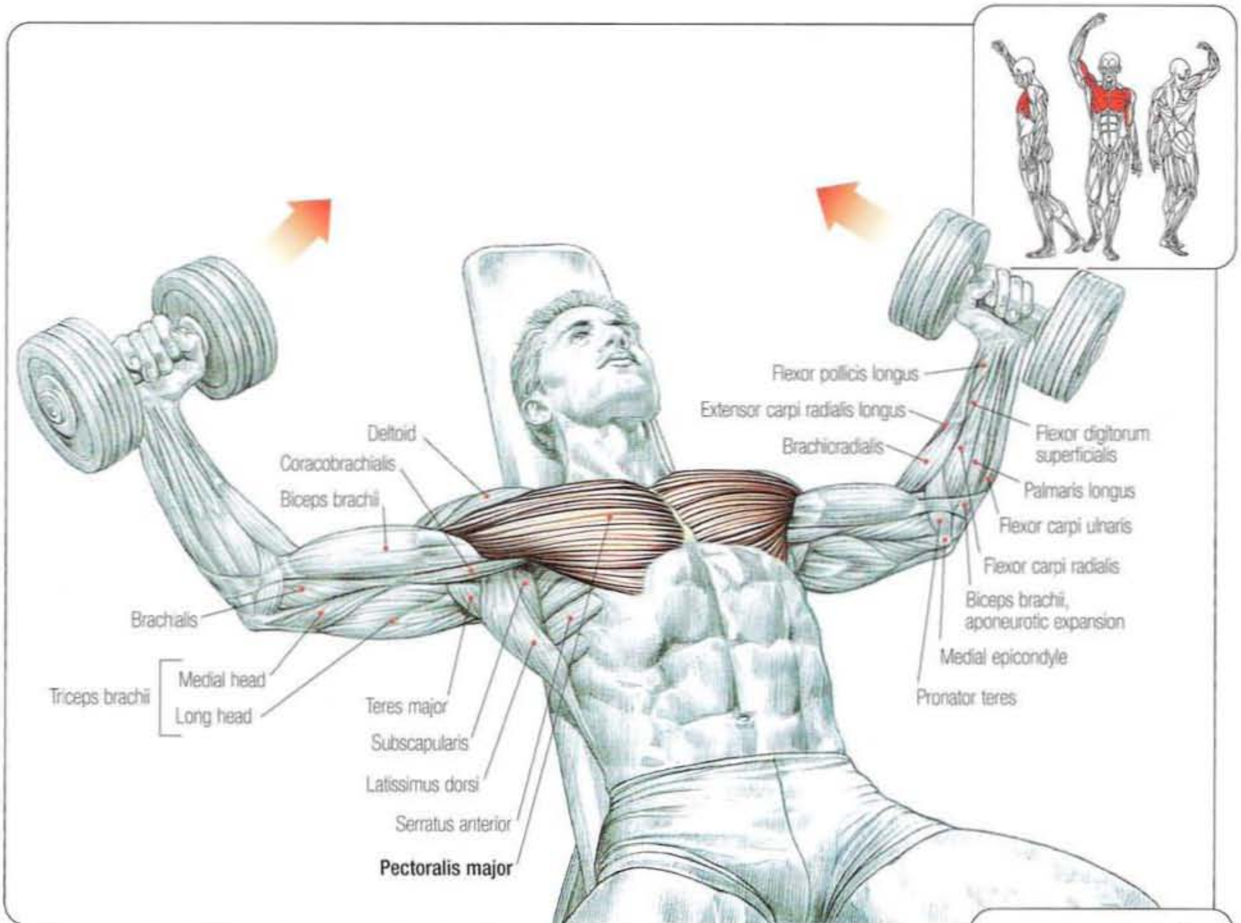
This exercise, which is midway between an incline press and incline dumbbell fly, works the pectorals (mainly the clavicular head) and increases their flexibility. It also contracts the anterior deltoid, the serratus anterior, and the pectoralis minor (these last two muscles are fixators of the scapula, which stabilize the arm at the torso). It also uses the triceps brachii, but not as intensely as the barbell press does.

Variation: Beginning the press with the hands in an underhand grip and rotating the wrists halfway to an overhand grip so that the dumbbells face each other focuses the effort on the sternal head of the pectoralis major.



FINAL POSITION

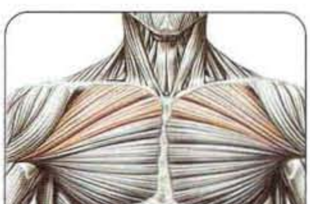
INCLINE DUMBBELL FLYS 10



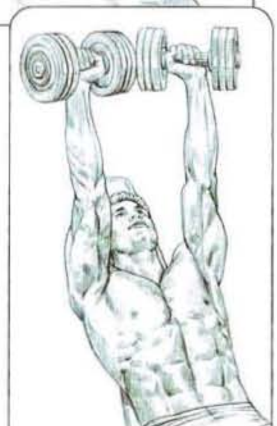
Sit on a bench angled between 45 and 60 degrees, dumbbells in hand and arms extended vertically or slightly bent to ease stress when bringing the arms together:

- Inhale and extend the arms to horizontal.
- Raise the arms to vertical while exhaling.

This movement should not be performed with heavy weights. It focuses the effort mainly on the clavicular head of the pectoralis major. Along with the pullover, it is a fundamental exercise for developing thoracic expansion.

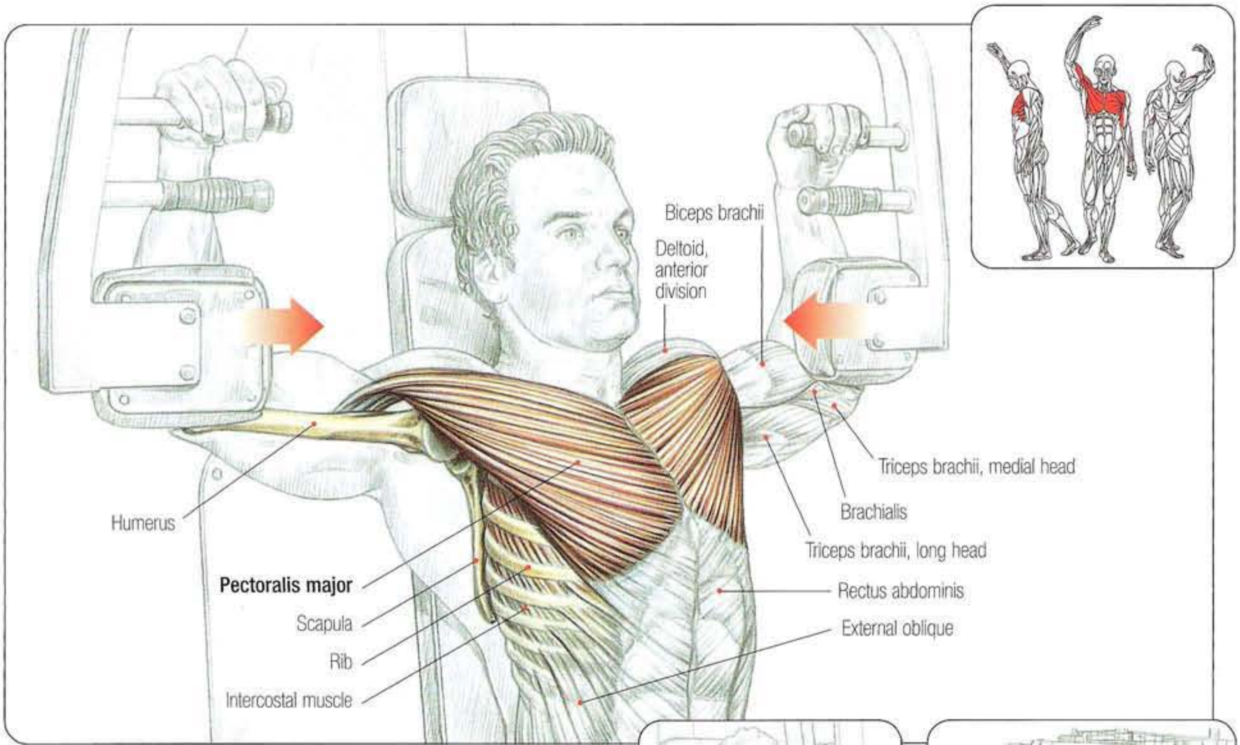


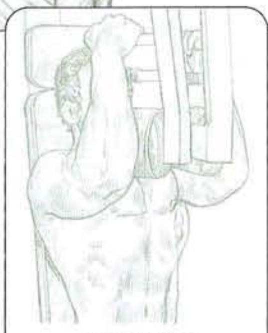
PART OF THE PECTORAL MUSCLES MAINLY USED



FINAL POSITION

11 PEC DECK FLYS





FINAL POSITION

VARIATION
At a machine applying force with the hands.

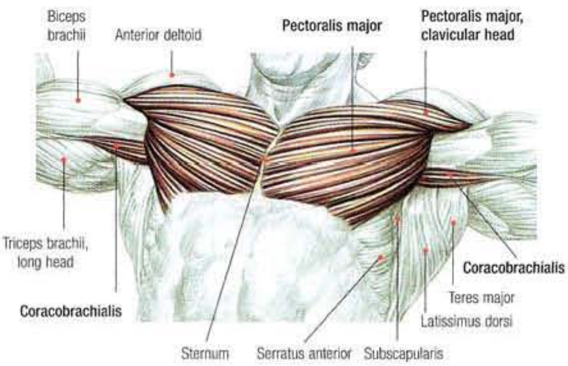
Sit at the machine with the arms open and horizontal, bent at the elbows. Rest the forearms on the pads, with the forearms and wrists relaxed:

- Inhale and squeeze the arms together. Exhale at the end of the movement.

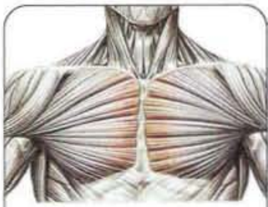
This exercise works the pectoralis major by stretching it. As the elbows come together, focus the effort onto the sternal head of the pectoralis major.

This exercise also develops the coracobrachialis and the short head of the biceps brachii. Long sets allow you to pump the muscles intensely.

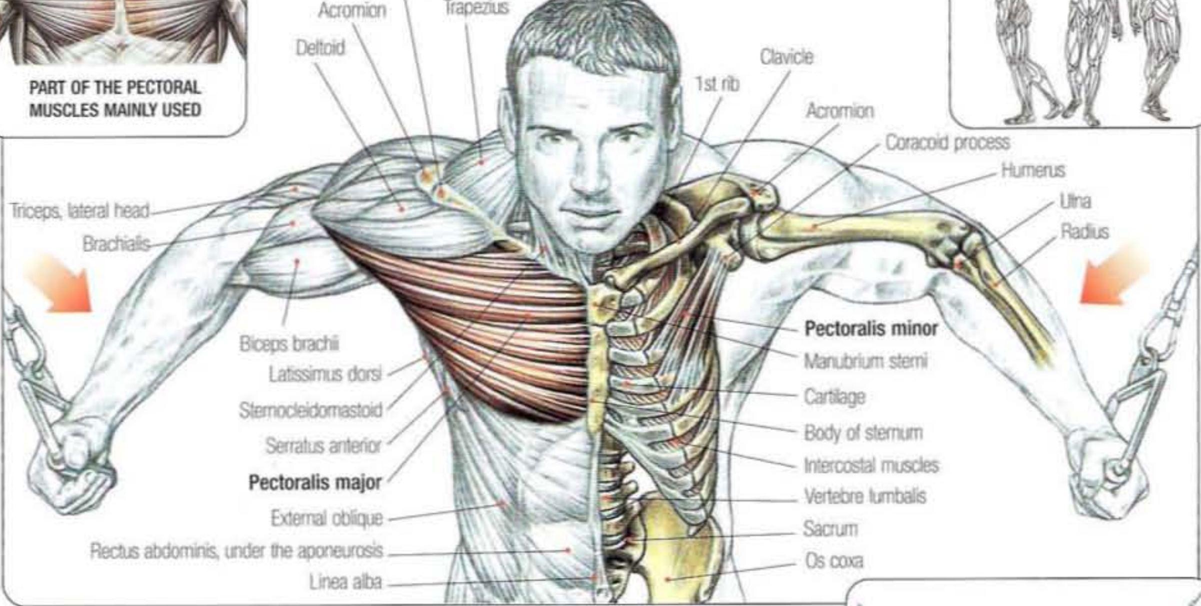
This exercise helps beginners develop enough strength to move onto more complex movements.



CABLE CROSSOVER FLYS 12



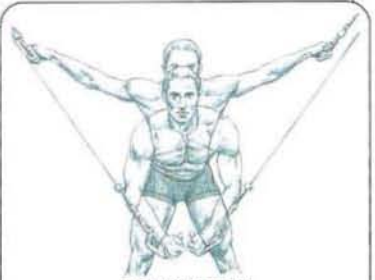
PART OF THE PECTORAL MUSCLES MAINLY USED



Stand with the legs slightly apart and lean the torso forward a bit, with the arms spread apart and elbows slightly bent:

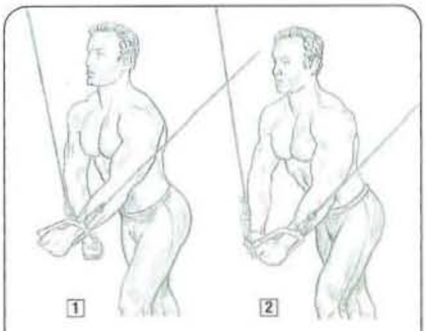
- Inhale and squeeze the arms together until the wrists touch. Exhale at the end of the contraction.

This is an excellent exercise for working the pectoralis major muscles. Sets with a lot of reps allow you to pump the muscle well. You can work all the fibers of the pectoralis major by varying the angle of the chest and the working angle of the arms (squeezing the arms at various heights).



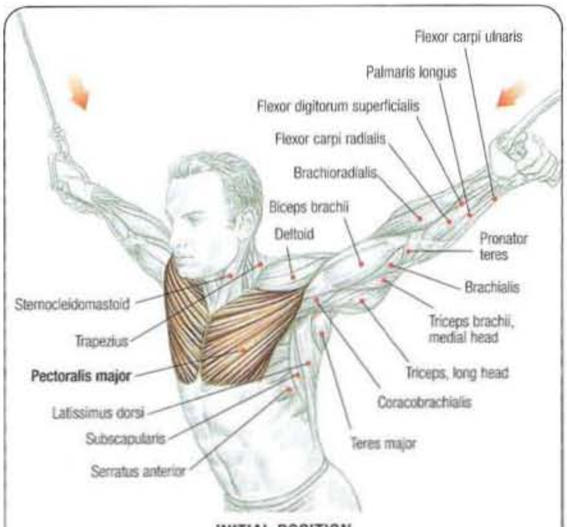
THE MOVEMENT

Comment: Cable crossover flys also contract the pectoralis minor, which is located deeper than the pectoralis major. Besides stabilizing the scapula (shoulder blade), this muscle also pulls it forward.



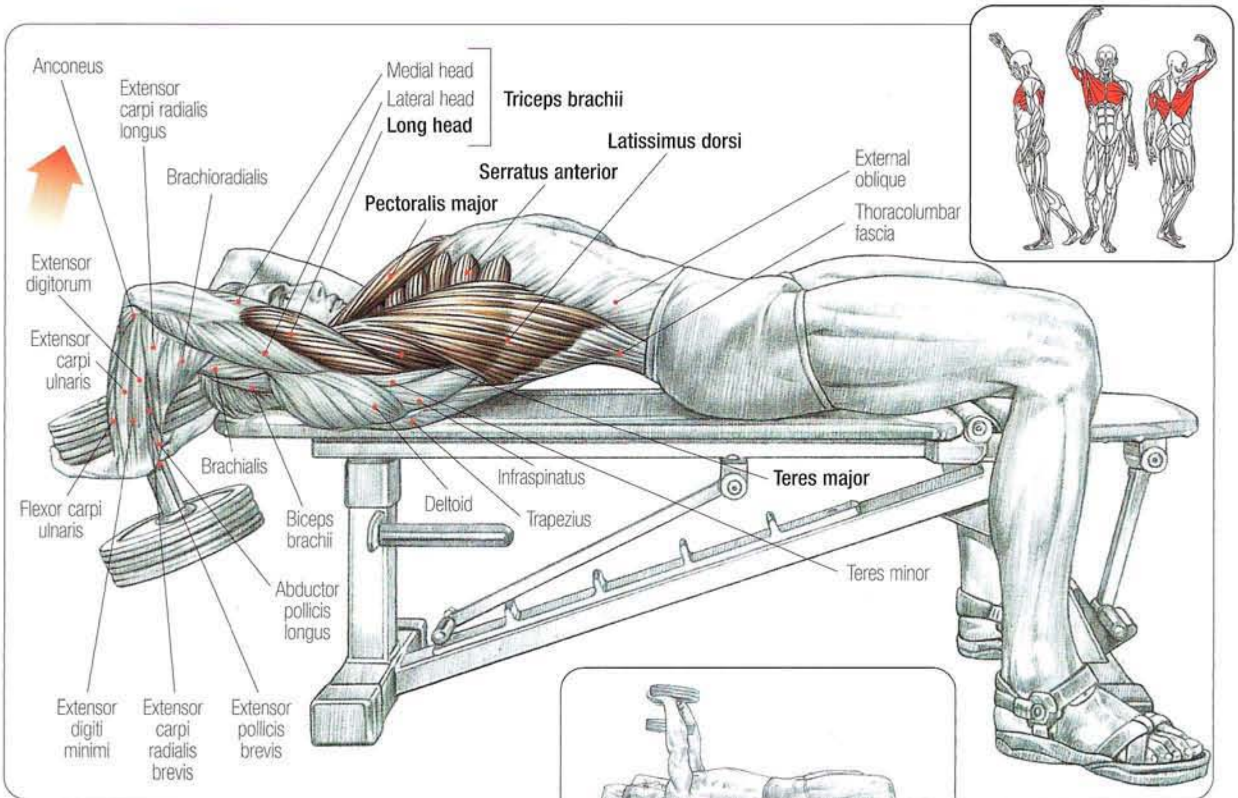
1 **Crossed arm:**
Increases the focus onto the sternal head of the pectoralis major.

2 Classic execution.



INITIAL POSITION

13 DUMBBELL PULLOVERS



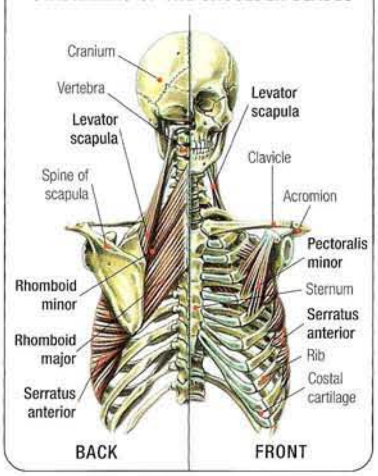
THE MOVEMENT

Lie on a bench with the feet flat on the ground and hold a dumbbell in the palms of both hands, with the thumbs surrounding the handle and arms extended:

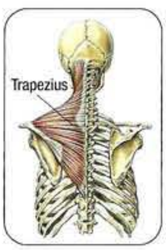
- Inhale and lower the dumbbell behind the head, bending slightly at the elbows.
- Exhale and return to the initial position.

This exercise develops the bulk of the pectoralis major, long head of triceps brachii, teres major, latissimus dorsi, serratus anterior, rhomboids, and pectoralis minor. The last three muscles stabilize the scapula so that the humerus can move from a stable base.

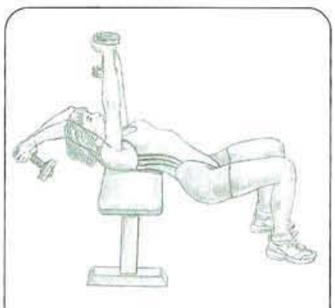
STABILIZERS OF THE SHOULDER BLADES



If you use this exercise to open the rib cage, you must work with light weights and avoid bending too much at the elbows. If possible, use a convex bench or place yourself across a horizontal bench and position the pelvis lower than the shoulder girdle. Take in a deep breath at the beginning of the movement and breathe out only at the end of the execution.



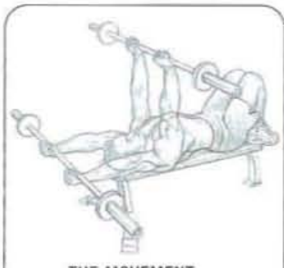
PERFORMING THE MOVEMENT AT A MACHINE



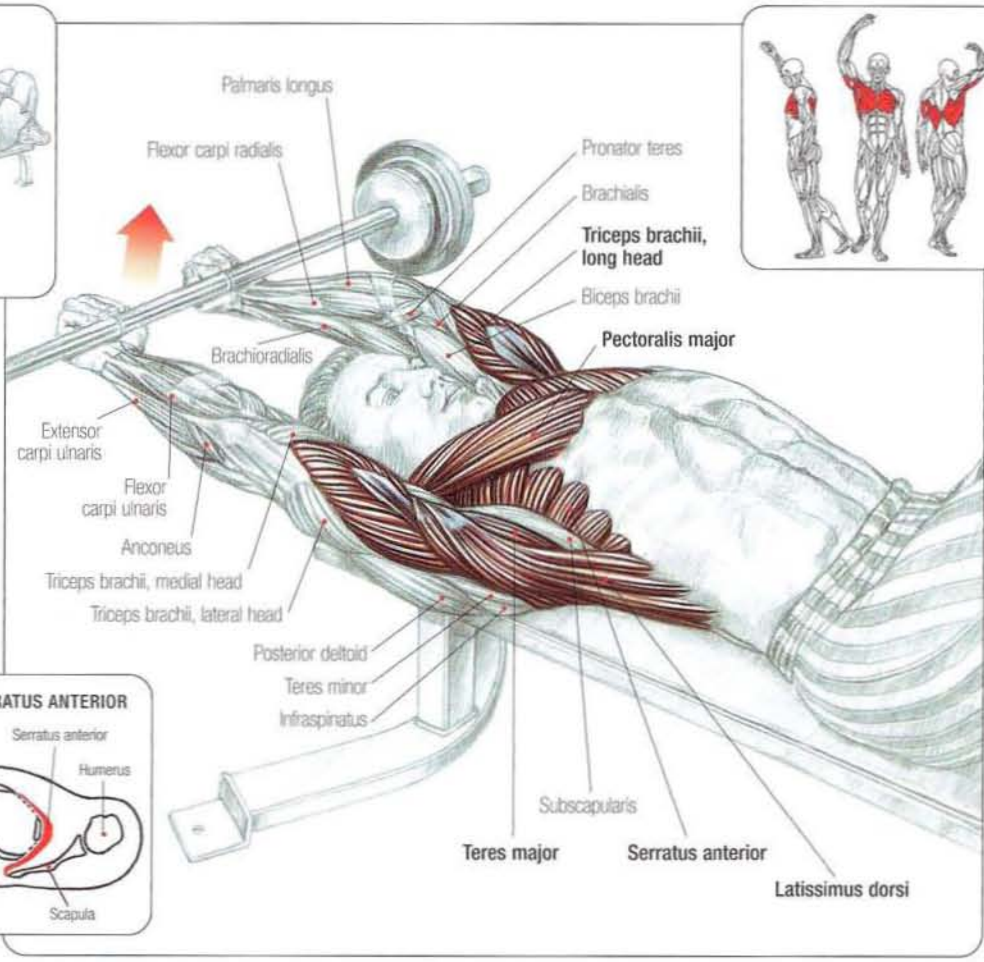
VARIATION POSITION ACROSS A BENCH

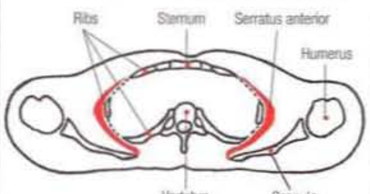
Placing yourself transversely across a bench opens the rib cage.

BARBELL PULLOVERS 14

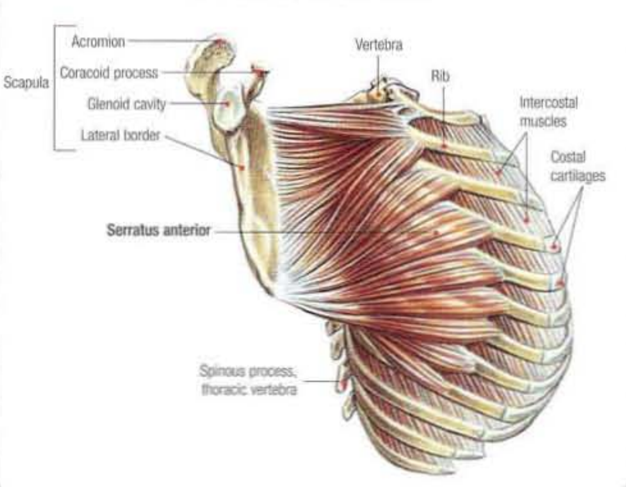


THE MOVEMENT





INSERTIONS OF THE SERRATUS ANTERIOR



SERRATUS ANTERIOR MUSCLE

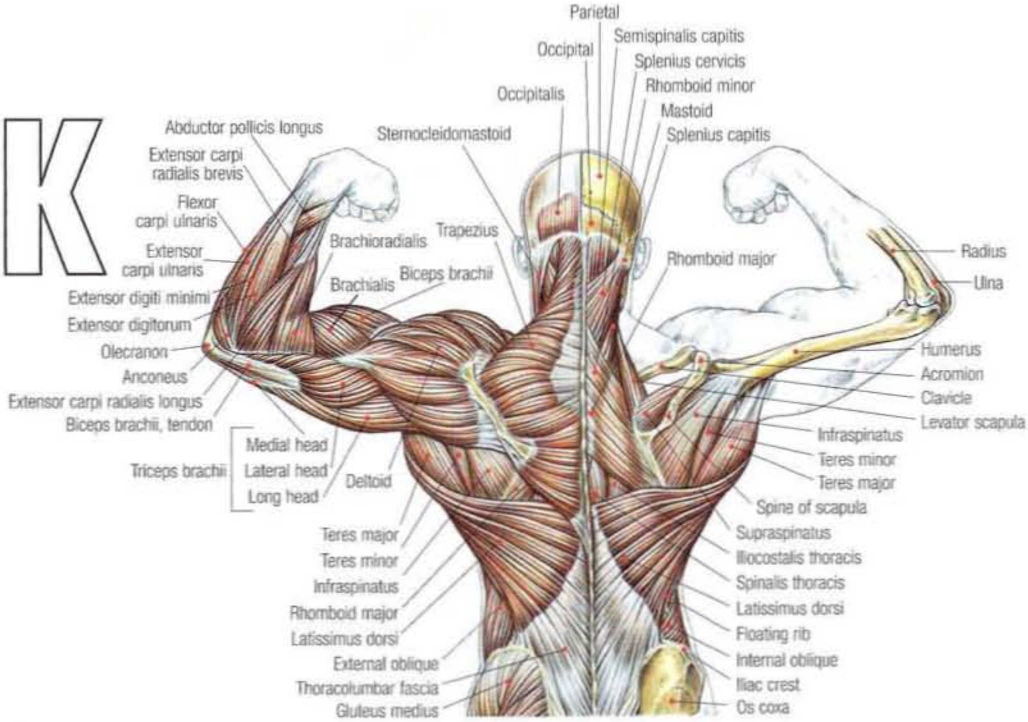
With arms extended, hold the barbell with an overhand grip and hands shoulder-width apart:

- Inhale and expand the chest as much as possible, lowering the barbell behind the head bending slightly at the elbows.
- Exhale while returning to the initial position.

This exercise develops the pectoralis major, long head of the triceps brachii, teres major, latissimus dorsi, serratus anterior, rhomboids, and pectoralis minor.

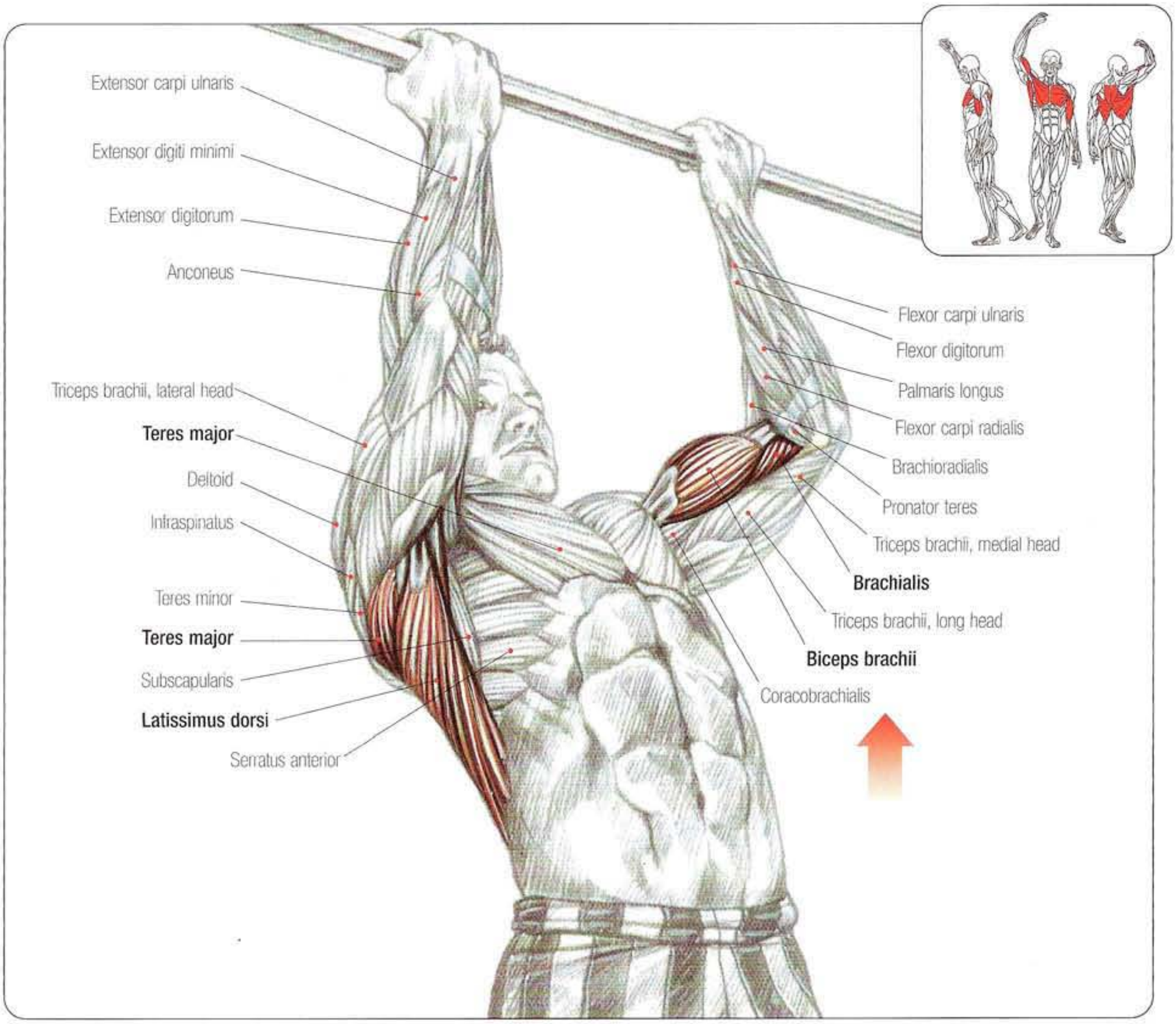
This is an excellent movement for developing the flexibility and expansion of the rib cage. It should be performed with light weights using proper form and breathing.

4 BACK



Parietal
Occipital
Semispinalis capitis
Splenius cervicis
Occipitalis
Rhomboid minor
Mastoid
Abductor pollicis longus
Sternocleidomastoid
Splenius capitis
Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Brachioradialis
Trapezius
Extensor carpi ulnaris
Rhomboid major
Radius
Brachialis
Biceps brachii
Ulna
Extensor digiti minimi
Extensor digitorum
Olecranon
Humerus
Anconeus
Acromion
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Clavicle
Biceps brachii, tendon
Levator scapula
Infraspinatus
Medial head
Teres minor
Triceps brachii
Lateral head
Teres major
Long head
Deltoid
Spine of scapula
Teres major
Supraspinatus
Teres minor
Iliocostalis thoracis
Infraspinatus
Spinalis thoracis
Rhomboid major
Latissimus dorsi
Latissimus dorsi
Floating rib
External oblique
Internal oblique
Thoracolumbar fascia
Iliac crest
Gluteus medius
Os coxa

REVERSE CHIN-UPS 1



Hang from a bar with an underhand grip, hands shoulder-width apart:

- Inhale and push out the chest as you raise the chin to the bar.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

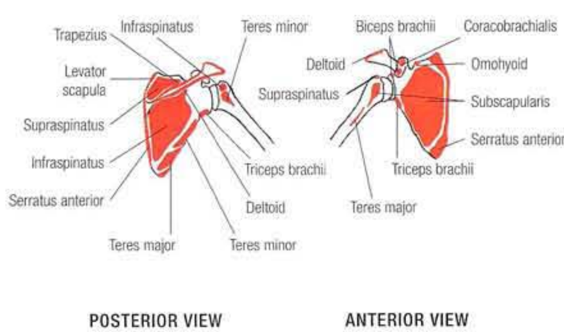
This movement develops the latissimus dorsi and teres major and is associated with the intense work of the biceps brachii and brachialis.

Therefore, it could be included in an arm workout program.

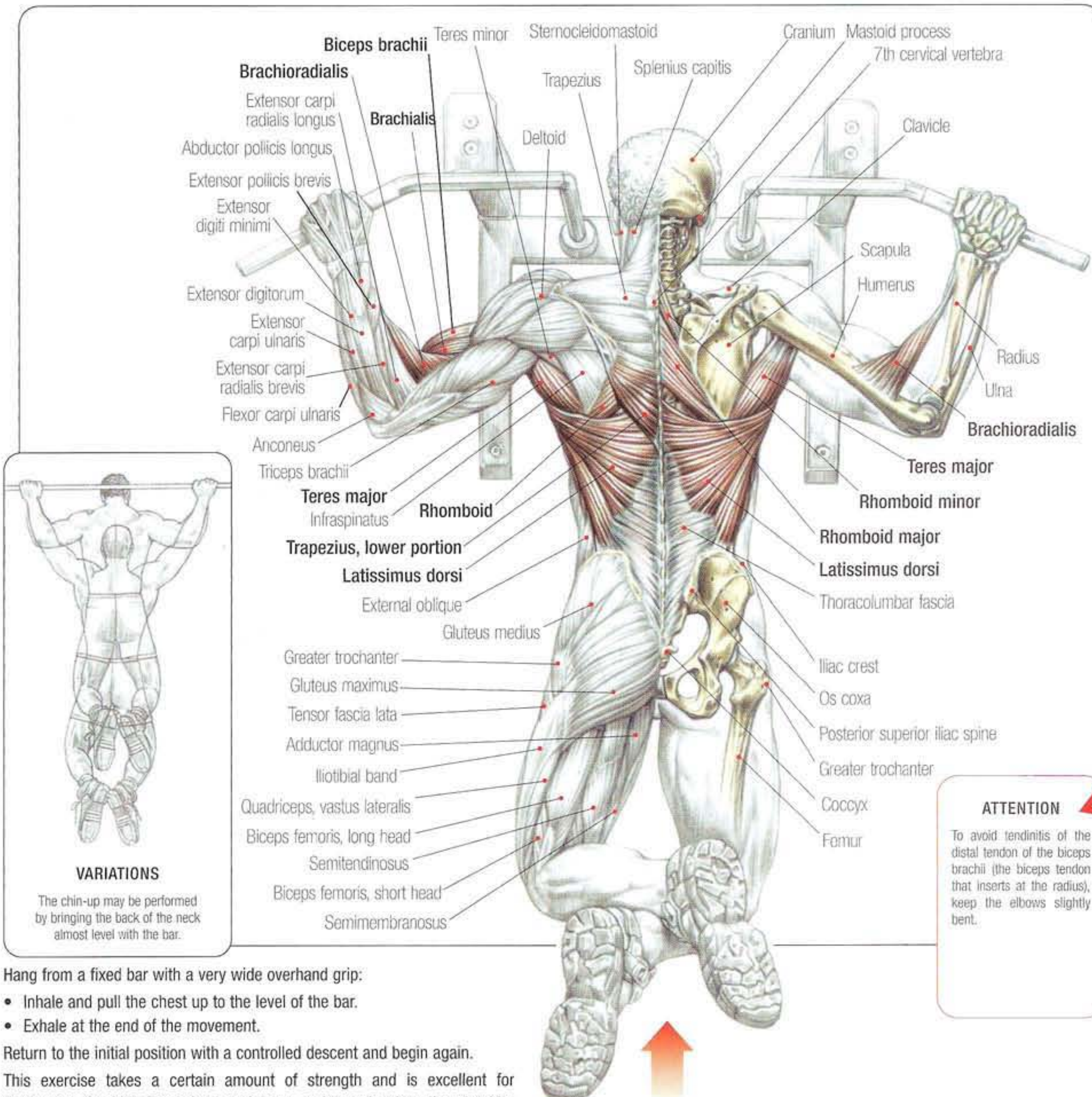
This exercise also contracts the middle and lower portions of the trapezius, the rhomboids, and the pectorals.

Performing this exercise takes a certain amount of strength; use a high pulley to make it easier.

MUSCLE INSERTIONS AT THE SHOULDER BLADE



2 CHIN-UPS



VARIATIONS

The chin-up may be performed by bringing the back of the neck almost level with the bar.

ATTENTION

To avoid tendinitis of the distal tendon of the biceps brachii (the biceps tendon that inserts at the radius), keep the elbows slightly bent.

Hang from a fixed bar with a very wide overhand grip:

- Inhale and pull the chest up to the level of the bar.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

Return to the initial position with a controlled descent and begin again.

This exercise takes a certain amount of strength and is excellent for developing the latissimus dorsi and teres major and, when the shoulder blades come together at the top of the chin-up, the rhomboids and middle and lower portions of the trapezius. It also works the biceps brachii, brachialis, and brachioradialis.

Variations: By sticking out the chest you can raise your chest to chin level. To increase the intensity, wear a weight belt. Keeping the elbows in next to the body during the movement contracts mainly the external fibers of the latissimus dorsi and develops the width of the back.

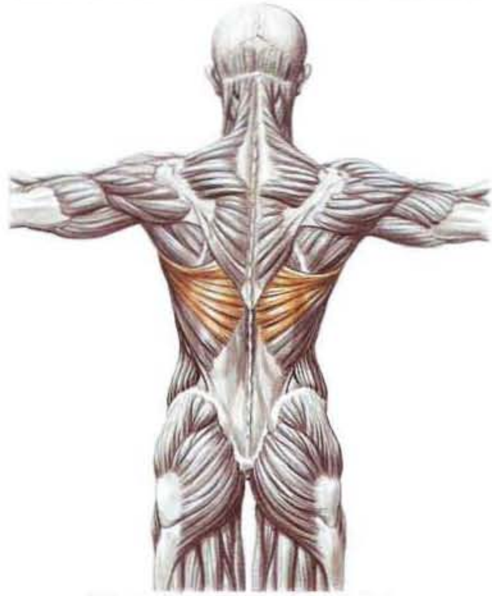
Bringing the elbows back and the chest out as you raise the chin to the bar mainly solicits the upper and central fibers of the latissimus dorsi and those of the teres major. This exercise develops the bulk of the back when the shoulder blades come together and the rhomboids and the upper and lower portion of the trapezius are used equally.

Comment: Although not as strongly contracted, the pectoralis major works with the latissimus dorsi and teres major to create the angle between the arm and the trunk.

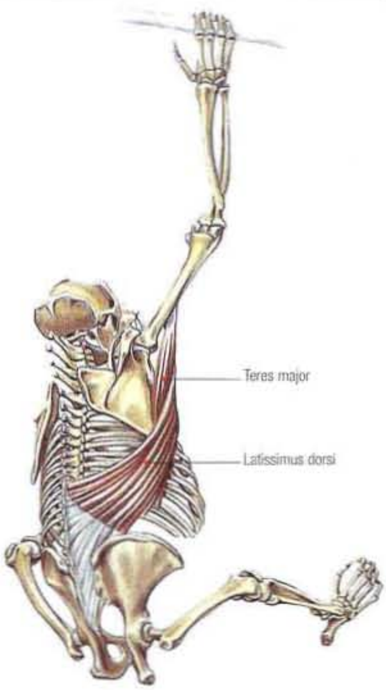
BRINGING THE BAR TO THE NECK WITH ARMS ALONGSIDE THE BODY

Bringing the elbows alongside the body mainly solicits the lateral fibers of the latissimus dorsi and develops the width of the back.

BRINGING THE BAR TO THE CHEST WITH ELBOWS BEHIND



Pulling the elbows back to raise the chin to the bar mainly solicits the upper and central fibers of the latissimus dorsi. This variation is excellent for developing the bulk of the back.

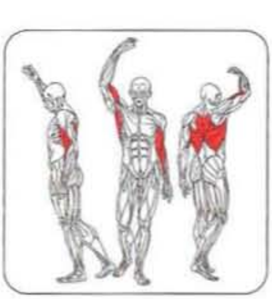


In both monkeys and humans, the latissimus dorsi and teres major are particularly well developed.

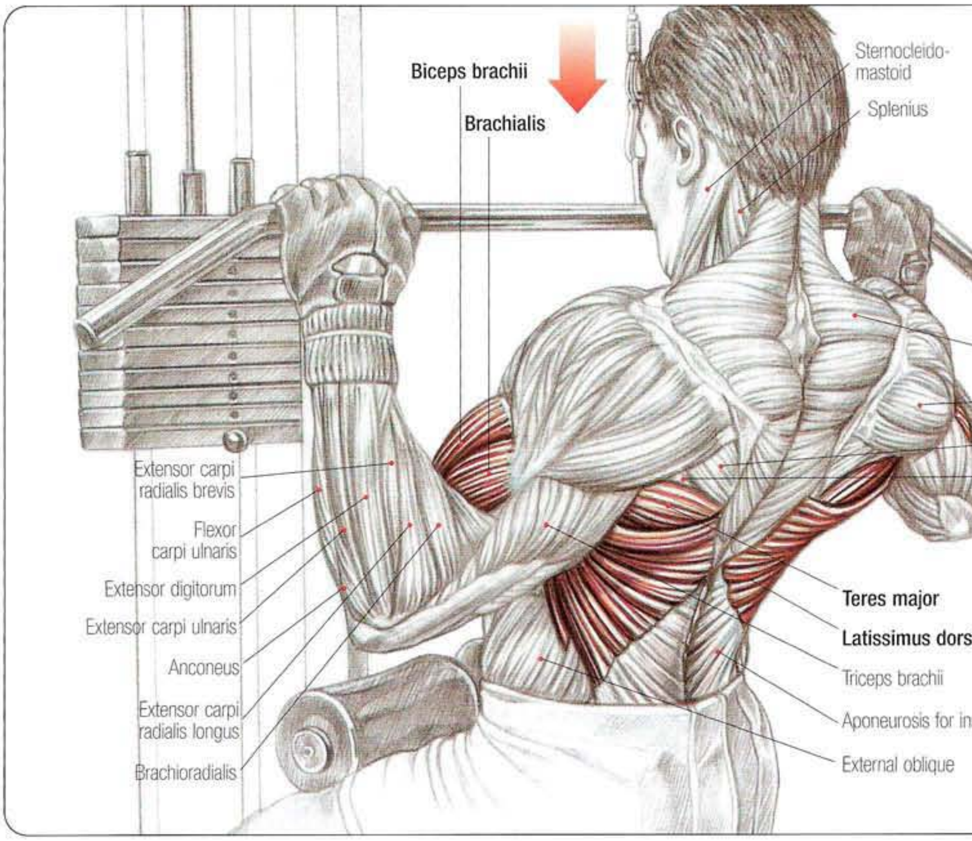
Originally, the teres major and latissimus dorsi muscles of our far-off ancestors played a role in their getting around on all fours by helping them to push off with the front paws.

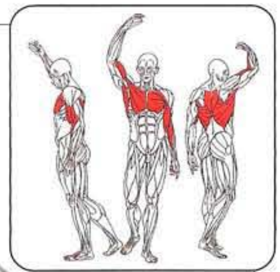
As our ancestors became tree climbers, these muscles became powerful, specializing in vertical displacement. Returning to the ground, our more recent ancestors adopted bipedal displacement without losing the possibility of climbing. For this reason we possess powerful back muscles capable of pulling our bodies up, still allowing us to climb trees.

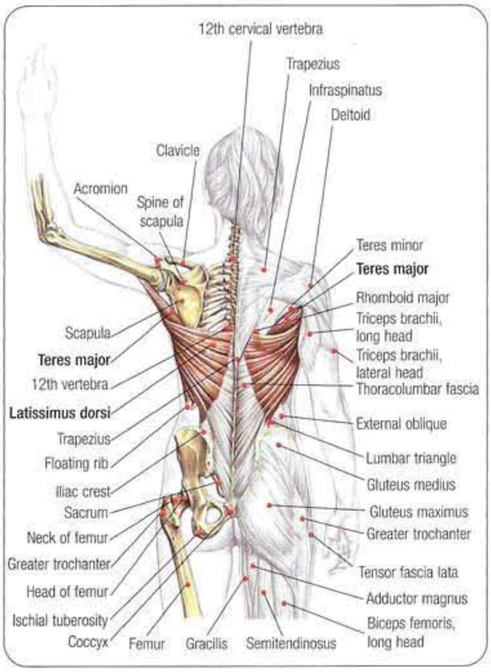
Comment: The main difference between our locomotor mechanism and that of our close simian relatives is the development of lower extremities that allow us to walk on two legs. Our chest and upper extremities have not developed differently and have the same structure and proportions. Contrary to popular opinion, apes do not have relatively big arms; we just have big legs!



3 LAT PULL-DOWNS

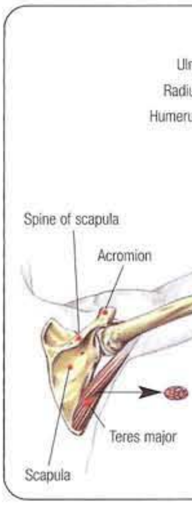




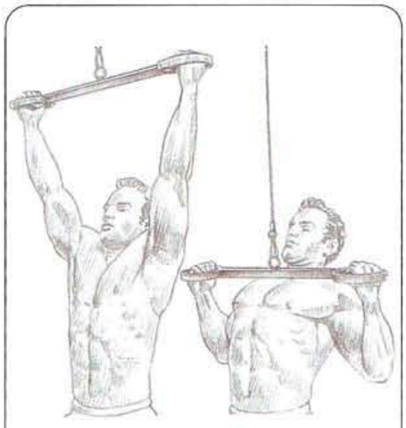


Sit facing the machine with the legs positioned under the pads, gripping the bar in with a wide overhand grip: Inhale and pull the bar down to the sternal notch while puffing out the chest and pulling the elbows back. Exhale at the end of the movement.

This exercise develops the bulk of the back. It mainly works the upper and central fibers of the latissimus dorsi. The middle and lower portions of the trapezius, the rhomboids, the biceps brachii, the brachialis, and, to a lesser extent, the pectorals also contract.

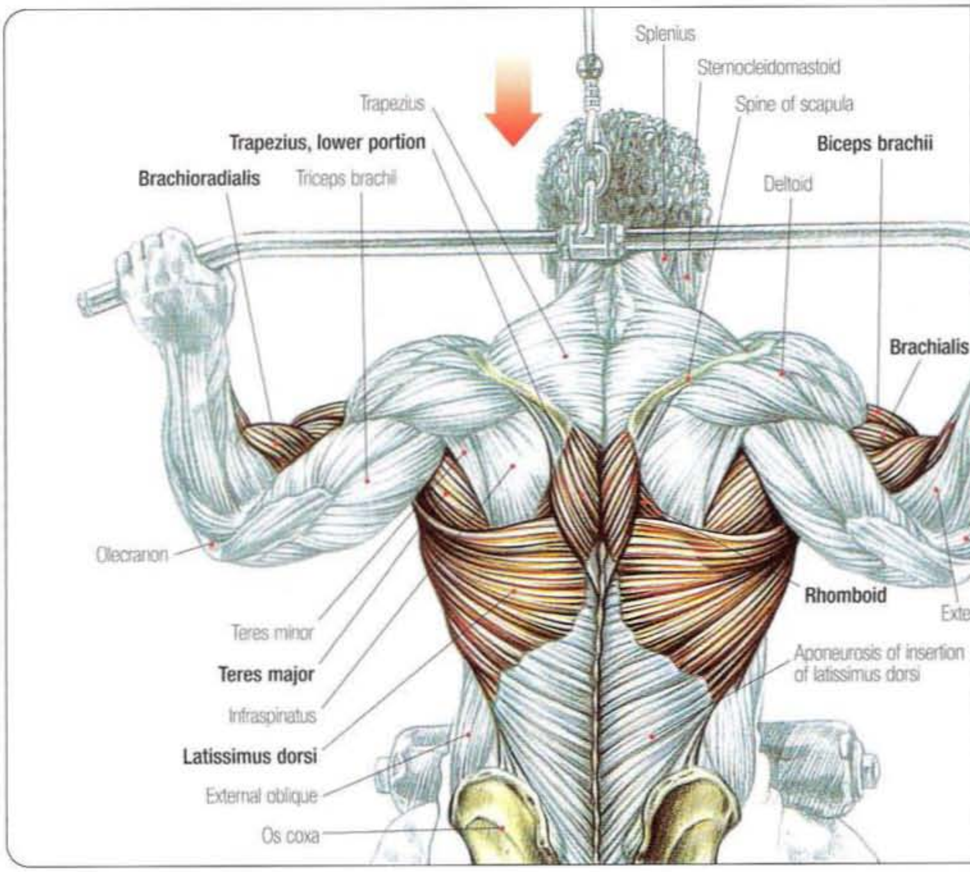


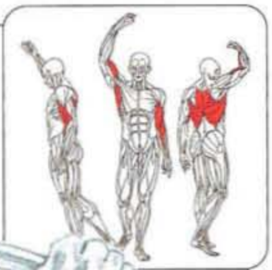
The teres major gets its name from its circular transverse section.

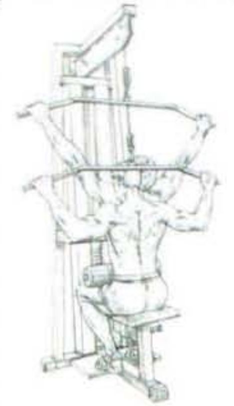


VARIATION WITH A WIDE BAR AND PALMS FACING EACH OTHER

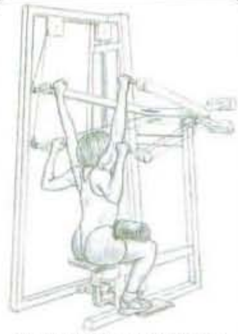
BACK LAT PULL-DOWNS 4





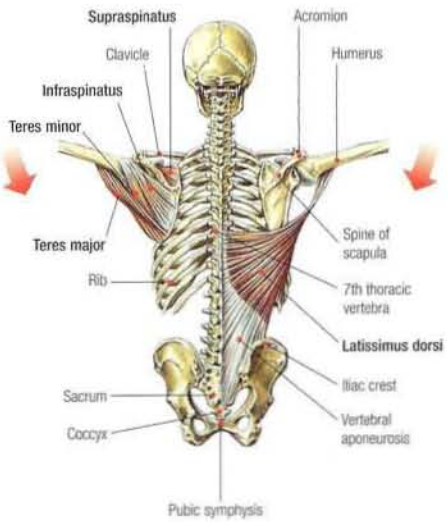


THE MOVEMENT



VARIATION AT A MACHINE WITH A FIXED AXIS

ACTION OF TERES MAJOR AND LATISSIMUS DORSI

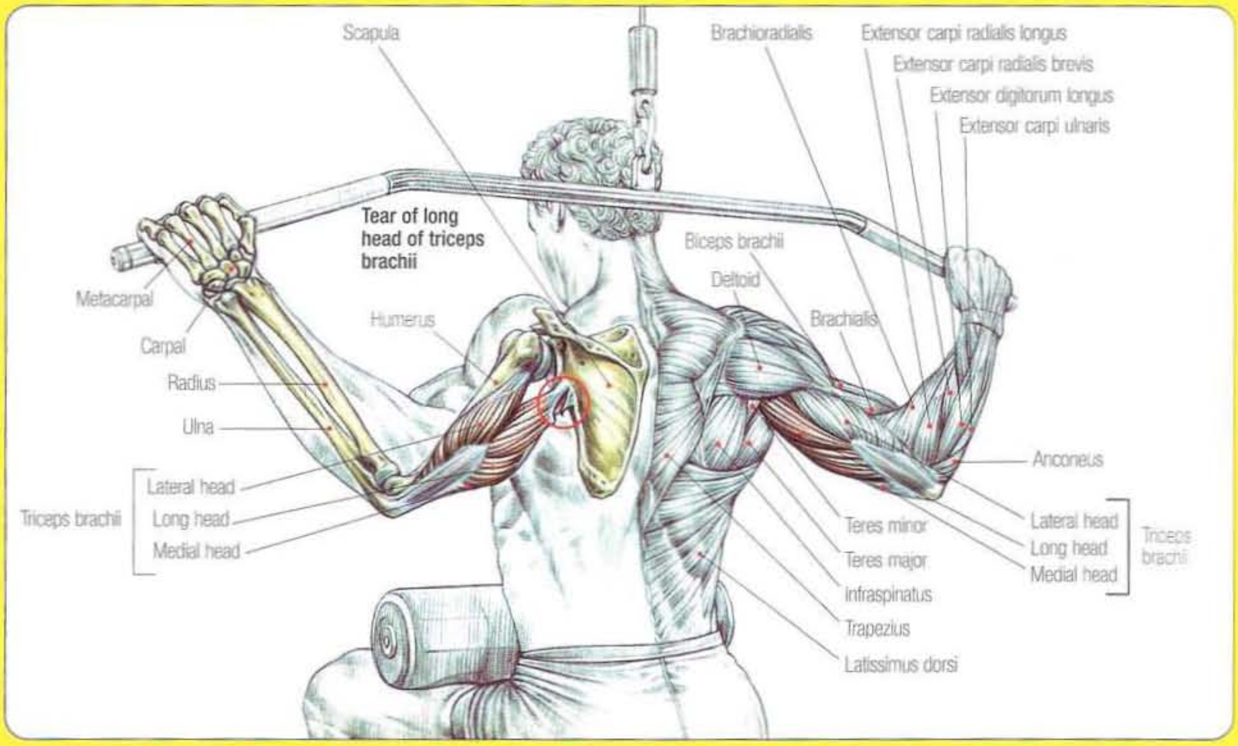


Sit facing the machine with the thighs positioned under the pads, grasping the bar with a wide overhand grip:

- Inhale and pull the bar down to the back of the neck, bringing the elbows alongside the body.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

This exercise develops the width of the back. It works the latissimus dorsi (mainly the lateral and lower fibers), the teres major, the forearm flexors (biceps brachii, brachialis, and brachioradialis), the rhomboids, and the lower portion of the trapezius. The latter two muscles come into play when the shoulder blades are pulled together. Back lat pull-downs help beginners develop enough strength to move on to chin-ups.

TRICEPS BRACHII TEARS



Heavy training of the back and injury to the long head of the triceps brachii

Although it is not the most-used muscle when working the back, the long head of the triceps brachii is the most frequently injured muscle during back lat pull-downs with heavy weights or during chin-ups with added weight.

The latissimus dorsi is a powerful, fan-shaped muscle that attaches the arm to the rib cage, and whose distal tendon is strongly attached to the humerus.

This is the main climbing muscle.

The long head of the triceps brachii, on the other hand, is a smaller muscle whose main function is to extend the forearm and secondarily to bring the arm toward the rib cage. In this way it complements the action of the latissimus dorsi.

Tearing of the long head of the triceps occurs when the muscle is fatigued, most frequently after an improper warm-up.

It only takes a sudden relaxation of the latissimus dorsi during chin-ups with added weight to immediately shift the tension to the long head of the triceps.

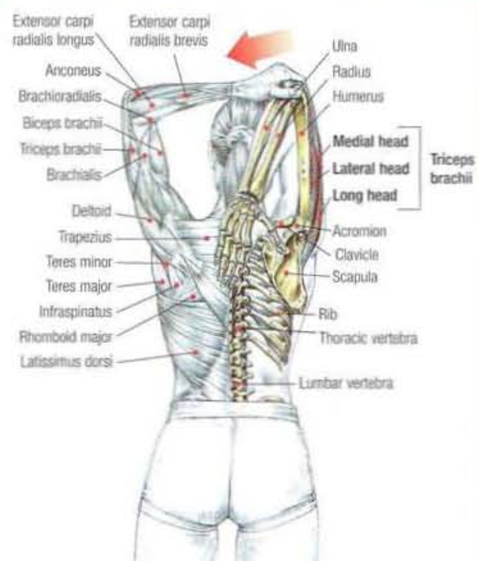
This tendon may partially tear, most often close to its insertion on the scapula. (Fortunately complete tears are infrequent.)

Unlike incapacitating shoulder injuries, which may completely halt upper-body training, a tear in the long head of the biceps is less devastating.

You can still perform back exercises such as seated rows or T-bar rows and movements for the triceps such as forearm extensions at a high pulley with the elbows next to the body despite the injury as long as you begin with lighter weights.

However, a brief rest period is recommended before beginning upper-body training.

Comment: Tearing the long head of the triceps may also occur during bench presses. To prevent this triceps tear, warm up with stretching exercises



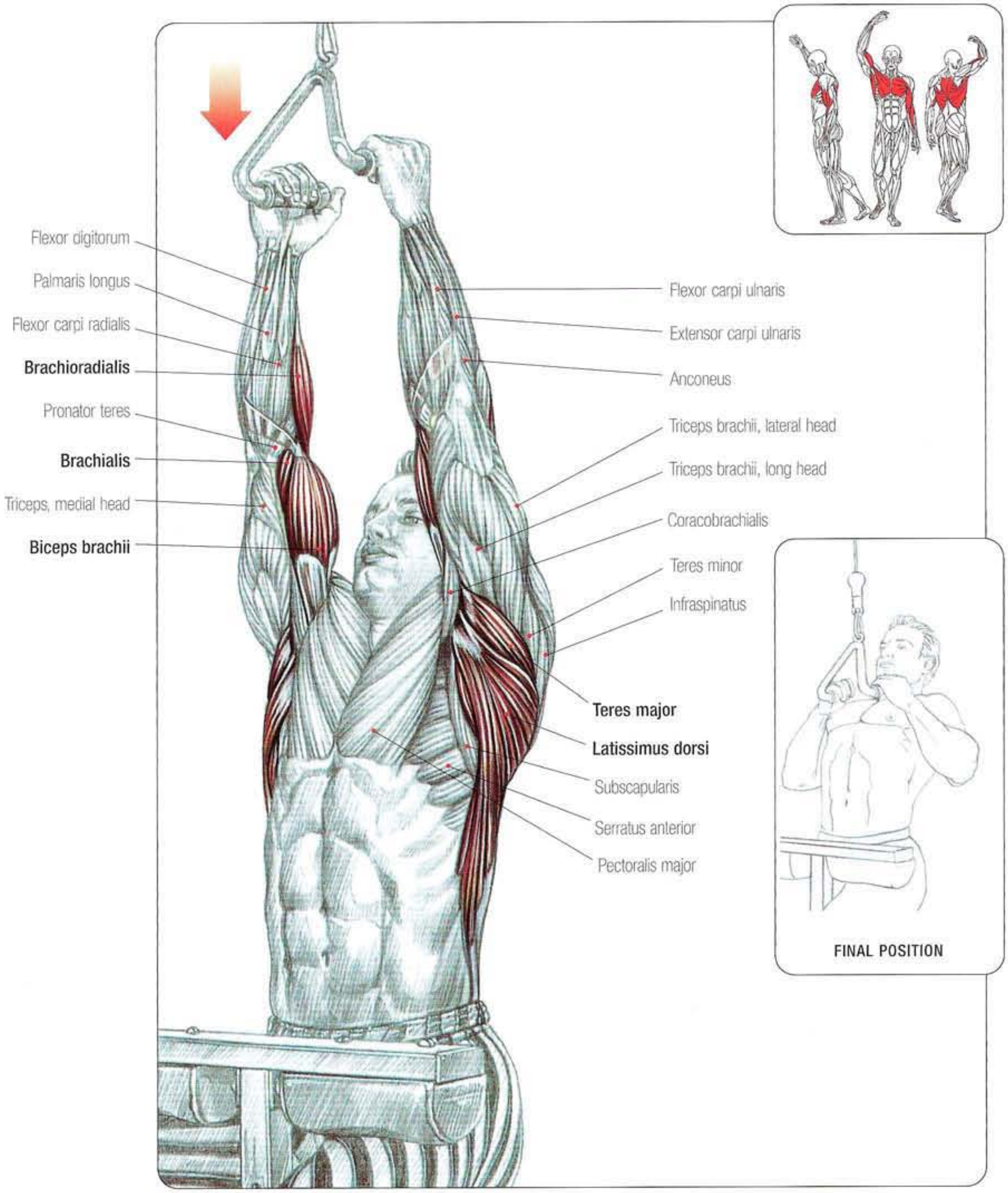
TRICEPS STRETCH

Stand or sit with your back straight and one arm raised vertically beside your head. Bend the arm at the elbow and touch the top of the back with your hand. With the other hand grasp the elbow and slowly try to pull it behind your head.

This stretches the teres major, the long head of the triceps brachii, and, to a lesser extent, the latissimus dorsi.

Variation: Pull the hand rather than the elbow. For greater intensity, place the raised arm against a wall.

CLOSE-GRIP LAT PULL-DOWNS 5



Sit and face the machine with knees positioned under the pads.

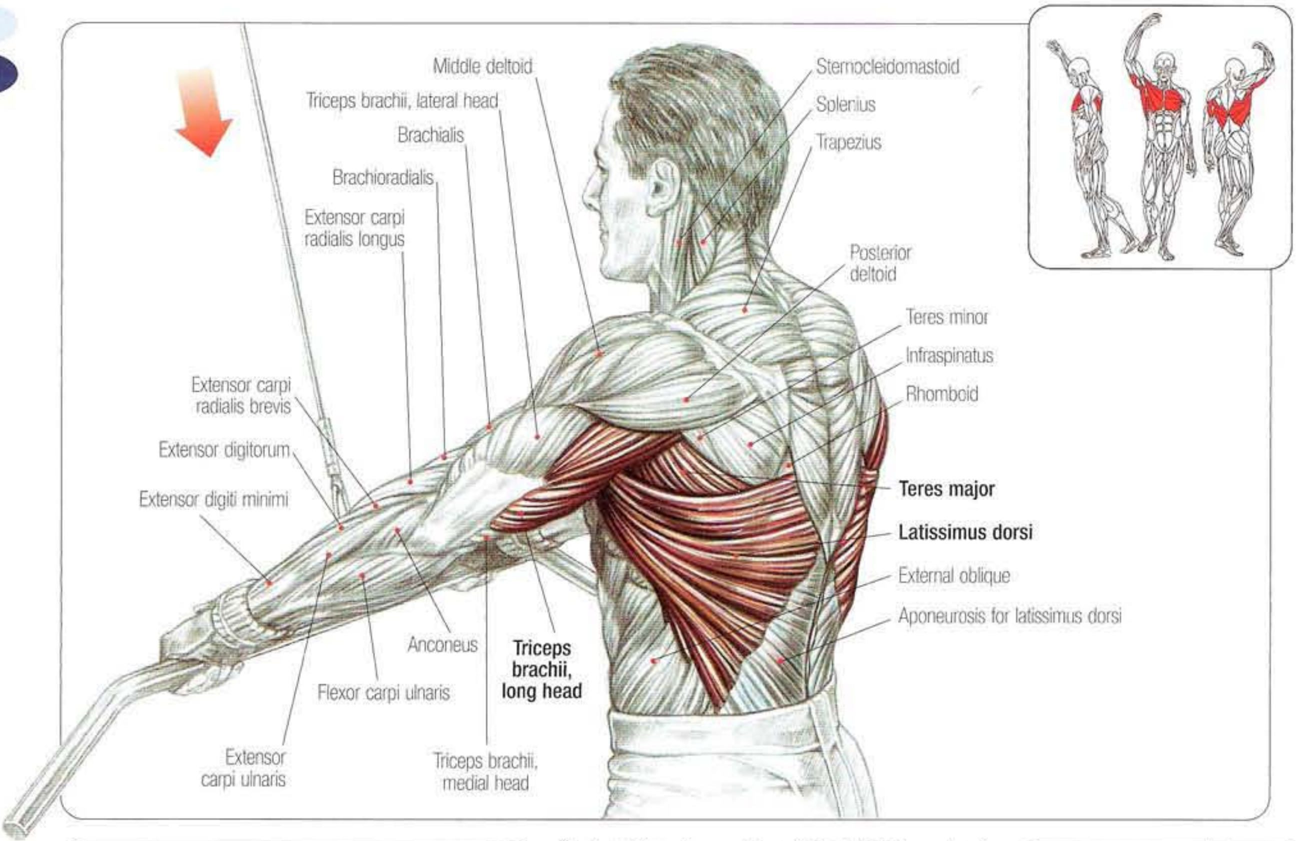
- Inhale and bring the handle to the sternum while expanding the chest and leaning slightly back with the torso.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

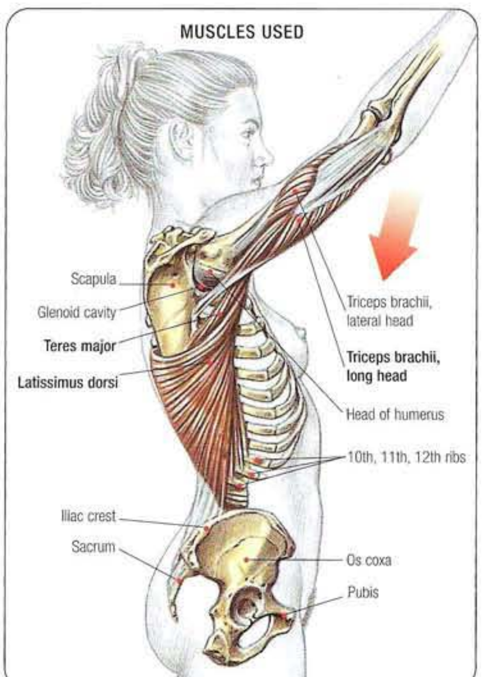
This exercise develops the latissimus dorsi and teres major.

When the shoulder blades come together, the trapezius and the posterior deltoid contract.

As with every pulling exercise, the biceps brachii and brachialis contract, and when the palms face each other, the brachioradialis comes into play.

6 STRAIGHT-ARM LAT PULL-DOWNS



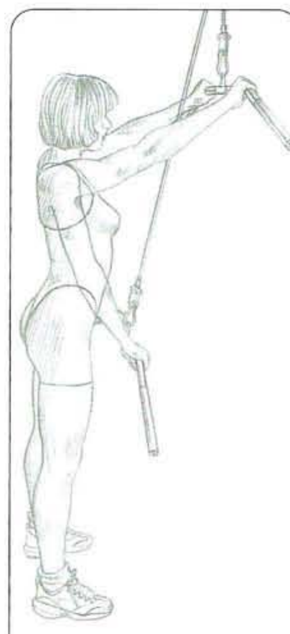


Stand and face the machine with feet slightly apart; grip the bar with an overhand grip, arms extended and shoulder-width apart; fix the back and contract the abdominal core:

- Inhale and bring the bar to the thighs, keeping the arms extended (elbows can be slightly bent).
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

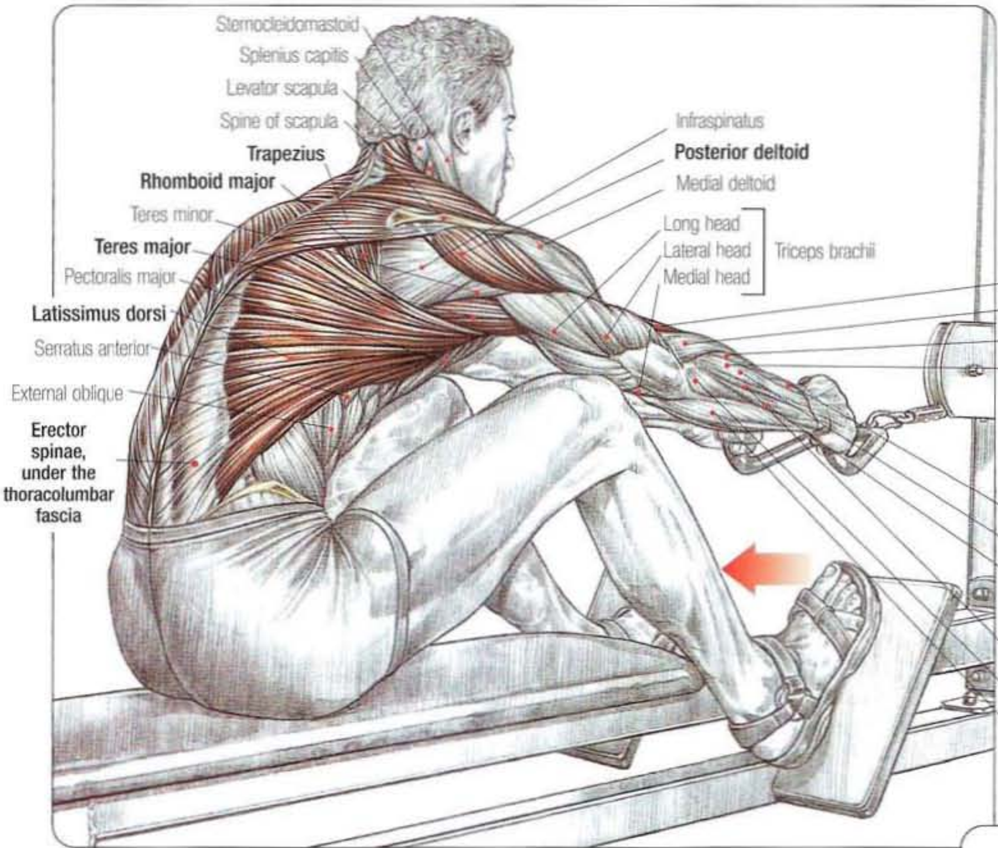
This exercise, which works the latissimus dorsi, strengthens the teres major and the long head of the triceps, which stabilizes the arm–trunk hinge.

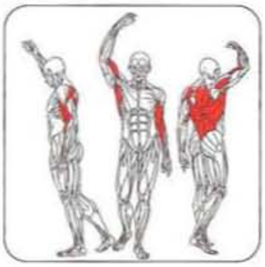
Comment: Many swim coaches use this exercise to develop a powerful crawl stroke.



THE MOVEMENT

SEATED ROWS 7





Sit facing the machine, feet resting on the foot pad and the torso bent forward. Inhale and bring the handle to the base of the sternum by straightening the back and pulling the elbows back as far as possible. Exhale at the end of the movement and return smoothly to the initial position.

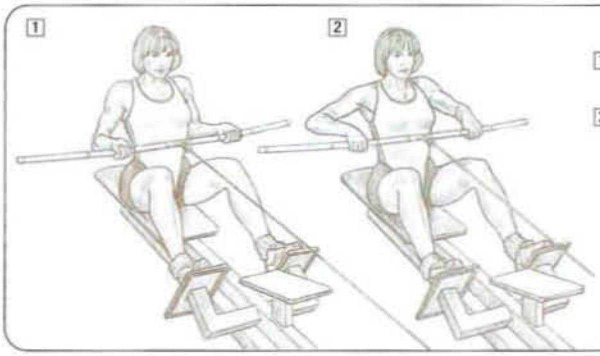
This exercise works the bulk of the back; it focuses the effort on the latissimus dorsi, teres major, posterior deltoid, biceps brachii, and brachioradialis, and at the end of the movement, when the shoulder blades come together, the trapezius and rhomboids.

While raising the chest, the spinal muscles (erector spinae) also contribute.

Allowing the weight to pull you on the return helps develop back flexibility.

Attention: To prevent back injury, never round the back when performing seated rows with heavy weights.

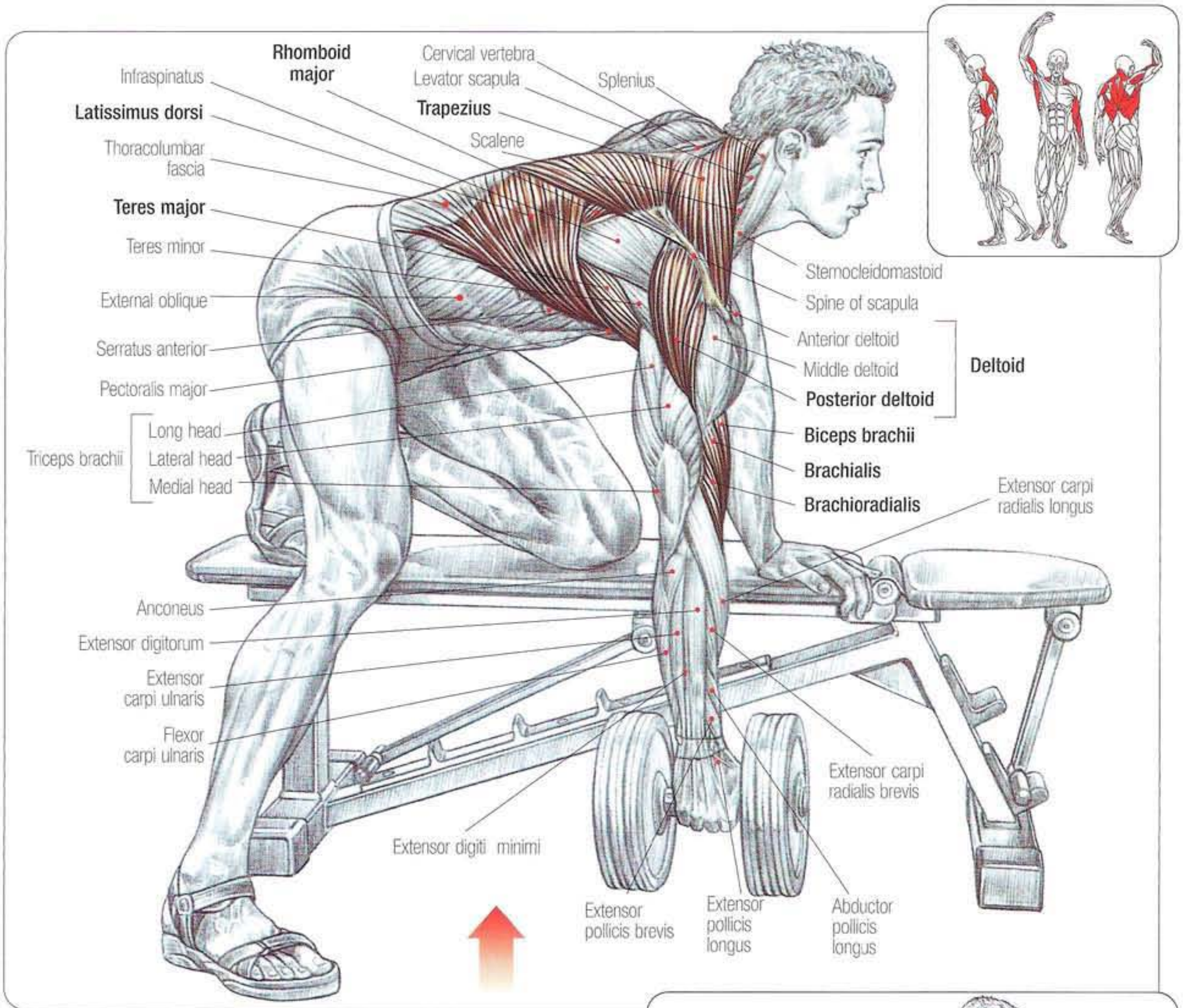
THE MOVEMENT



Variations with a wide bar:

1. An underhand grip isolates the inferior portion of the trapezius.
2. An overhand grip isolates the posterior deltoid and the middle portion of the trapezius.

8 ONE-ARM DUMBBELL ROWS



Grasp a barbell with the palm facing in; use the opposite hand and knee on the bench to support the back:

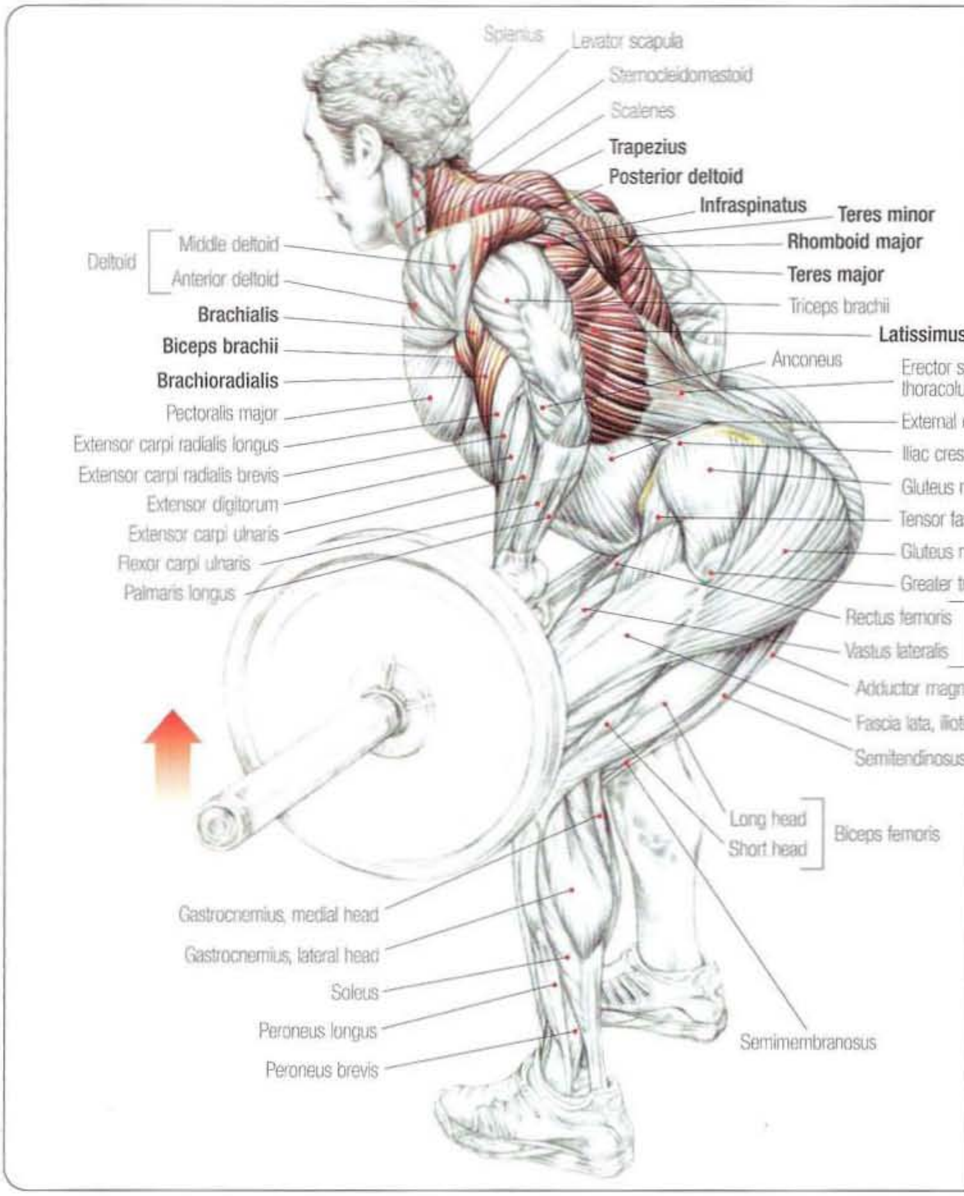
- Inhale and lift the upper arm and elbow as high as possible next to the body with the elbow bent.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

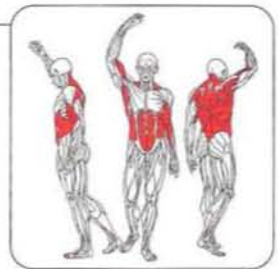
To maximize the contraction, rotate the torso slightly toward the working side at the end of the row.

This exercise mainly works the latissimus dorsi, teres major, and posterior deltoid, and, at the end of the contraction, the trapezius and rhomboids. The forearm flexors (biceps brachii, brachialis, and brachioradialis) are also used.

FINAL POSITION

BENT ROWS 9





THE MOVEMENT

1 **Hands in pronation (overhand grip)**
Emphasizes the rhomboids and lower portion of the trapezius.

2 **Hands in supination (underhand grip)**
Emphasizes the upper portion of the trapezius and the biceps brachii.

Stand with legs slightly bent, grasping the bar with overhand grip and the hands wider than shoulder-width apart. With the back straight, lean forward at the waist 45 degrees, so that the bar is at knee level:

- Inhale and hold the breath during an isometric contraction of the core and pull the barbell up to the chest.
- Return to the initial position and exhale.

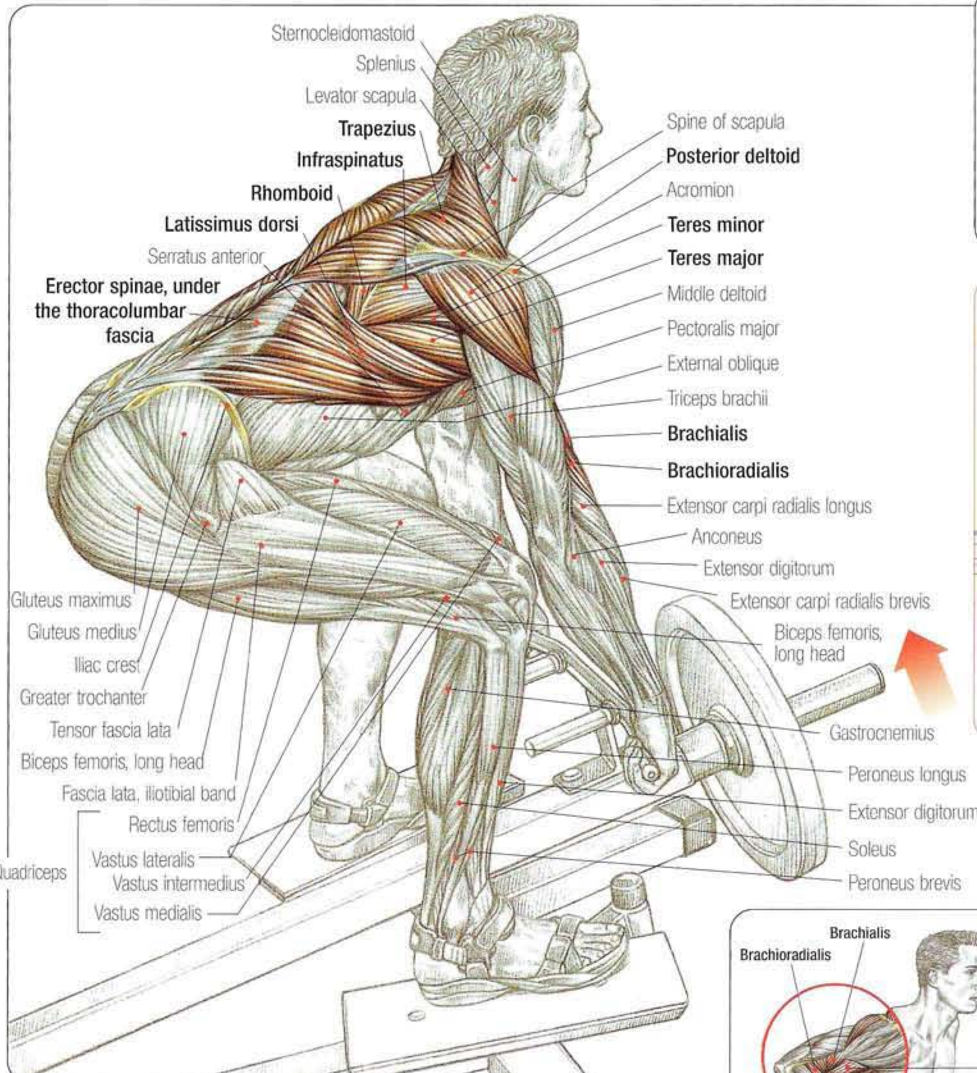
This exercise contracts the latissimus dorsi, teres major, posterior deltoid, and the forearm flexors (biceps brachii, brachialis, brachioradialis). When the shoulder blades come together, the rhomboids and trapezius contract.

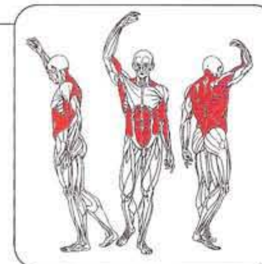
The forward lean of the torso uses the spinal muscles in an isometric contraction.

Varying the hand position in width and grip (overhand or underhand) along with changing the angle of the torso allows you to work the back from a variety of angles.

Attention: To prevent injury, never round the back during this exercise.

10 FREESTANDING T-BAR ROWS





Never round your back when performing freestanding T-bar rows.

Straddle the bar with the legs slightly bent, leaning forward with a flat back about 45 degrees. Grasp the bar with an overhand grip:

- Inhale and raise the bar to the chest.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

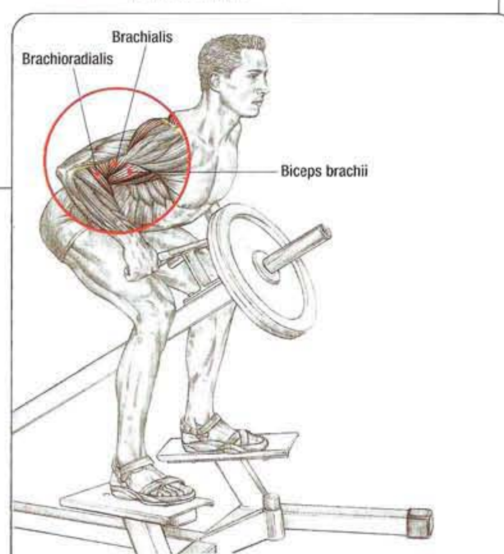
This exercise is similar to bent rows and allows you to concentrate on working your back because you do not have to focus too much effort on positioning.

This exercise uses mainly the latissimus dorsi, teres major, infraspinatus, rhomboids, trapezius (mainly the middle portion), and the flexors of the forearm.

The forward lean isolates the abdominal and spinal muscles in isometric contraction.

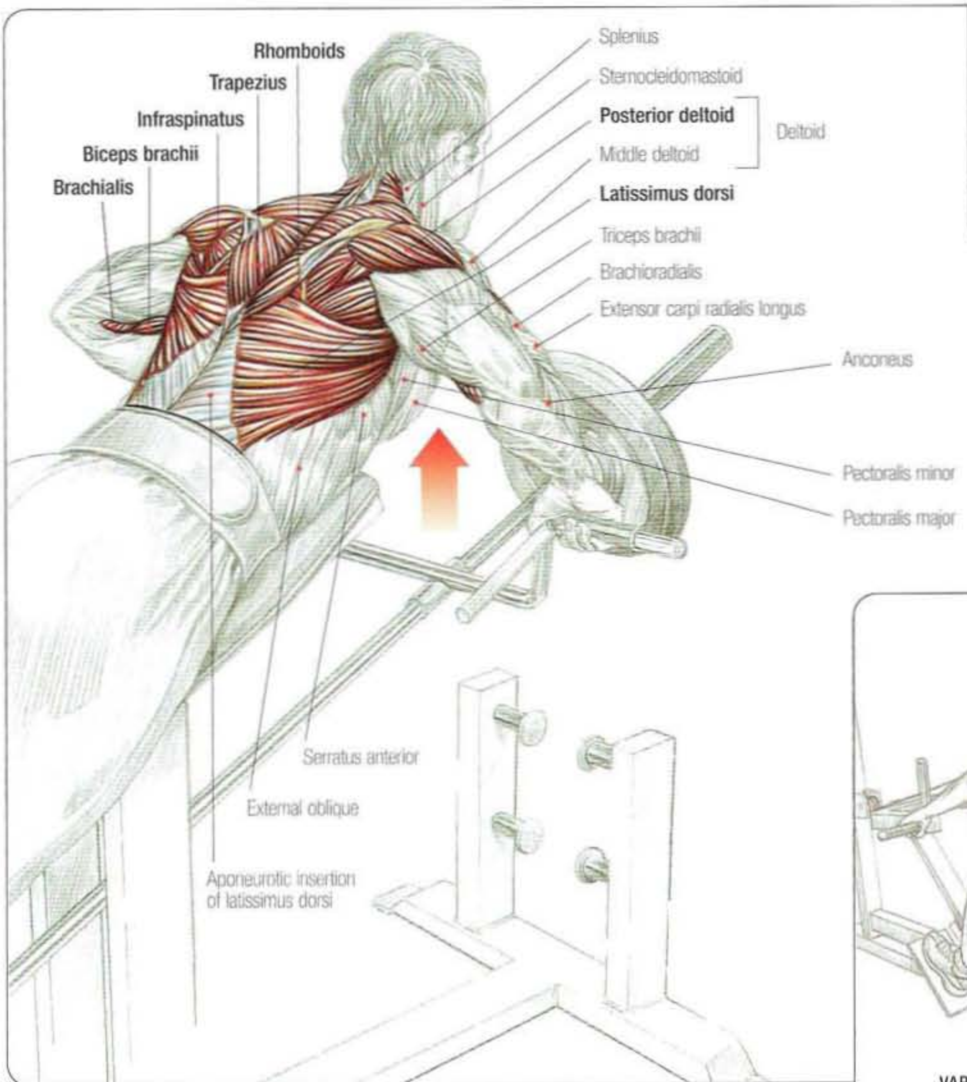
Using a supinated (underhand) grip transfers some of the effort to the triceps brachii and the upper portion of the trapezius at the end of the pull.

Some machines are equipped with parallel handles that allow a grip between pronated and supinated, which contracts the brachioradialis more intensely.



T-bar rows also work the forearm flexors.

T-BAR ROWS WITH ABDOMINAL SUPPORT 11



VARIATION AT A MACHINE REPRODUCING THE MOVEMENT AS PERFORMED AT A T-BAR

- Inhale and bring the bar to the chest with an overhand grip.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

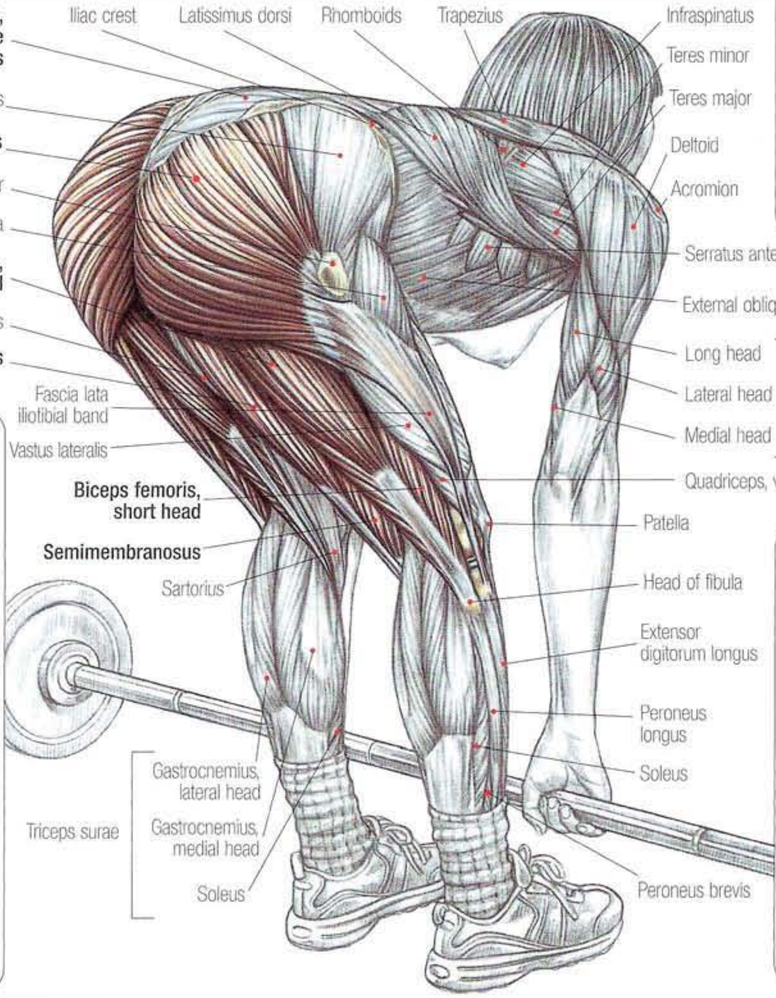
This exercise is similar to bent rows and allows you to concentrate on working your back because you do not have to focus too much effort on positioning.

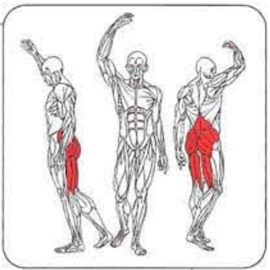
It mainly uses the latissimus dorsi, teres major, posterior deltoid, arm flexors, trapezius, and rhomboids.

Some machines are equipped with an abdominal support, which eliminates the work of the abdominal and spinal muscles. However, when using heavy weights, the rib cage is compressed against the abdominal-support pad, which interferes with breathing and makes the exercise painful to perform.

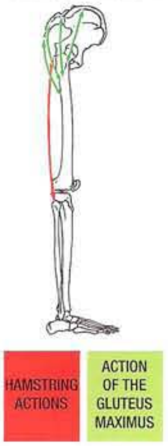
Comment: A pronated (overhand) hold shifts some of the effort to the biceps brachii and the upper portion of the trapezius at the end of the pull.

12 STIFF-LEGGED DEADLIFTS





ACTION OF THE HAMSTRINGS AND GLUTEUS MAXIMUS WHEN SHIFTING THE PELVIS TO VERTICAL



DEADLIFT WITH STRAIGHT LEGS

Stand with the feet slightly apart in front of the bar as it rests on the ground:

- Inhale and bend forward at the waist with the chest forward, back arched, and legs as straight as possible.
- Grasp the bar with an overhand grip. Keeping the arms relaxed, stand up straight by rotating the hips. Keep the abdominal muscles tight and a slight arch in the back for support.
- Exhale out at the end of the movement.
- Bend forward and return to the initial position, but without returning the bar to the floor.

To avoid injury, keep the back straight.

This exercise contracts the deep spinal muscles on either side of the spinal column that straighten the spine.

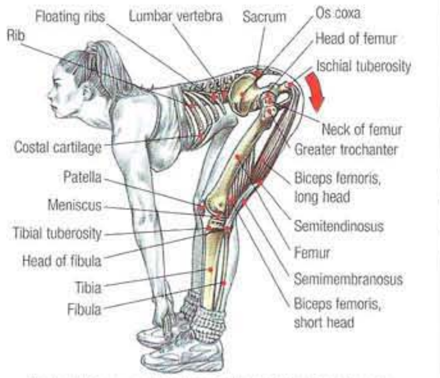
Straightening the torso by tilting the pelvis from front to back contracts the gluteus maximus and hamstrings (except the short head of the biceps femoris).

Deadlifting from the ground with extended knees stretches the back of the thighs.

To increase the intensity, stand on a box so that the feet are higher than the bar on the ground.

Comment: To stretch the hamstrings, perform the stiff-legged deadlift with very light weights. The greater the weight, the more the gluteal muscles take over from the hamstrings to straighten the pelvis to vertical.

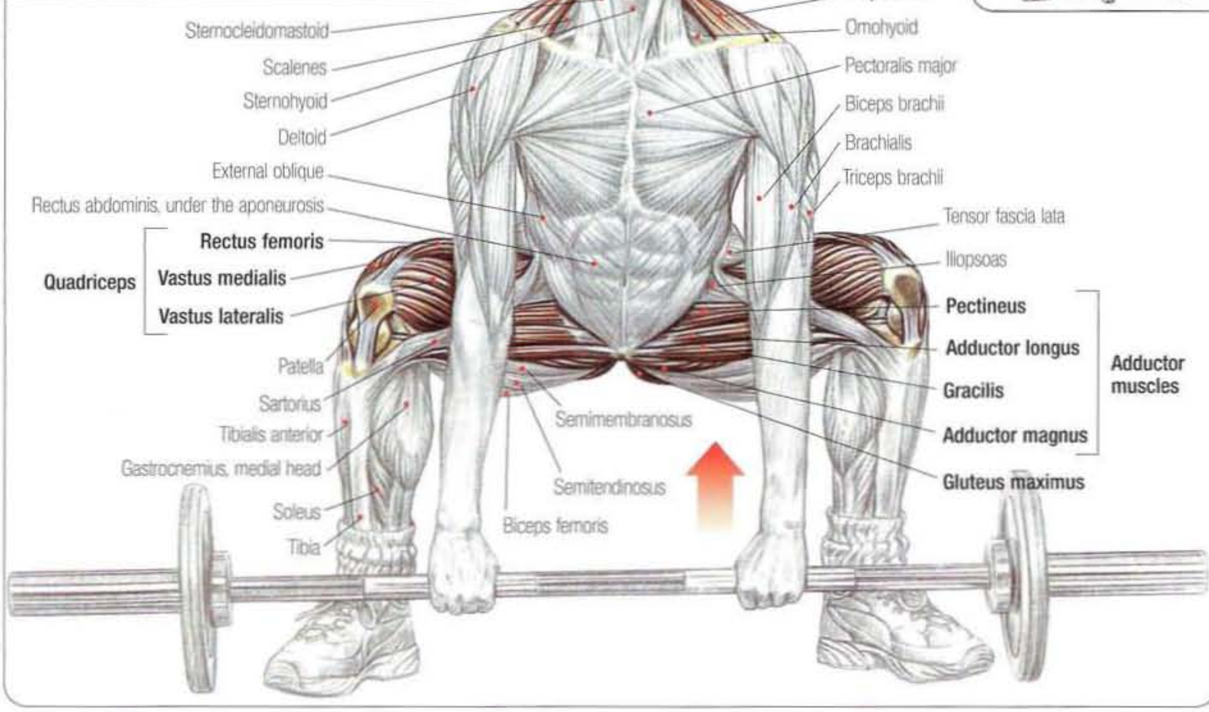
HAMSTRING ACTIONS



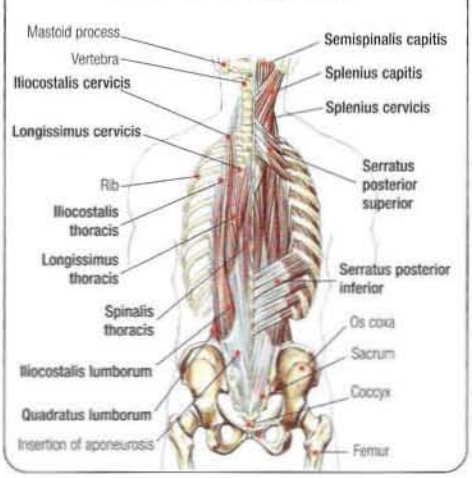
The hamstrings, except for the short head of the biceps femoris, actively participate in tilting the pelvis back.

SUMO DEADLIFTS 13

THE MOVEMENT



DEEP MUSCLES OF THE BACK USED DURING THE SUMO DEADLIFT



Stand facing the bar, with legs wider than shoulder-width apart and toes pointing out in line with the knees:

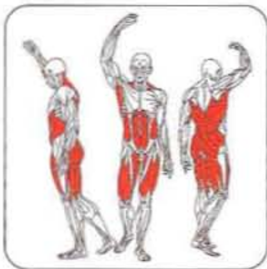
- Inhale and bend the legs until the thighs are horizontal to the ground; grasp the bar with an overhand grip about shoulder-width apart. If you are lifting very heavy weights, use a reverse grip (grasping the bar with one overhand and one underhand grip) to keep the bar from rolling.
- Hold your breath and contract the core, slightly round the back, and extend the legs, bringing the torso vertical and pulling the shoulders back.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.
- Return the bar to the ground holding your breath and never round your back.

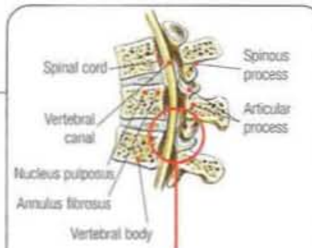
The difference between this and the classic deadlift is that this exercise works the quadriceps and adductor muscles intensely. Because the pelvis is not as tilted, it works the back less.

Comment: When beginning the movement, slide the bar along the shins. High reps (10 maximum) with light weights strengthen the lumbar region and work the thighs and the gluteal muscles.

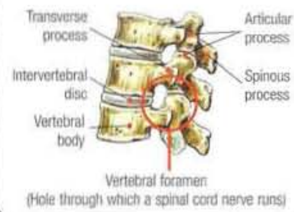
When using heavy weights, perform this exercise with great caution to prevent injuries to the hip joints, adductor group of the thighs, and the lumbosacral junction. The sumo deadlift is one of the three power-lifting movements.

14 DEADLIFTS





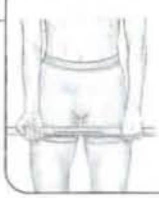
With vertebral flexion, the disc is compressed in front and expanded in back. The fluid of the nucleus pulposus migrates to the back and may compress on the neural elements (which causes sciatic pain).



COMMENT

By limiting the rolling of the bar, the reverse grip allows you to lift much heavier weights.

Reverse power grip



Classic grip

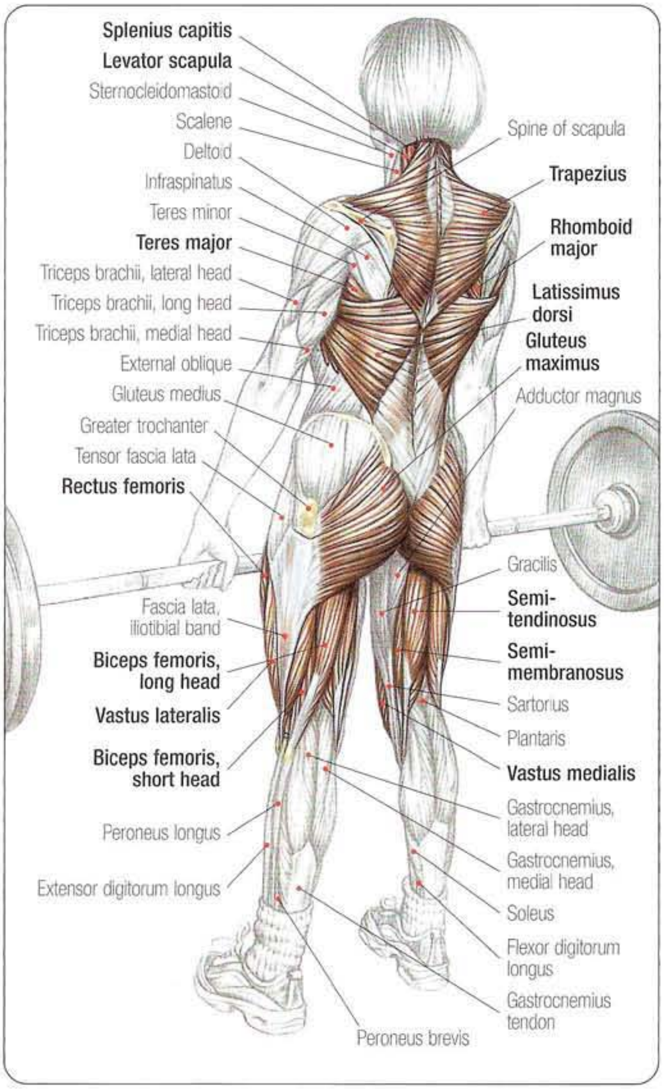
Stand facing the barbell, legs slightly apart with the abdominal muscles contracted and the back slightly arched. Bend the knees until the thighs are horizontal with the floor. This position will vary depending on the flexibility at the ankles and your physical structure. (The thighs will be horizontal for someone with short femurs and arms. The thighs will be above than horizontal for someone with long femurs and arms.) Grasp the barbell with extended arms in an overhand grip a little wider than shoulder-width apart (reversing the grip of one hand—one overhand and one underhand—keeps the bar from rolling, which allows you to use much heavier weights):

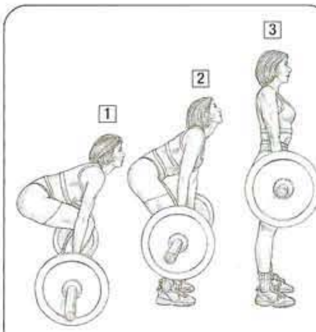
- Inhale, hold the breath, and contract the abdominal muscles and low back and raise the bar by straightening the legs and allowing the bar to slide up the shins. When the bar reaches the knees, straighten the torso while straightening the legs.
- Exhale at the end of the effort.

Throughout the exercise, never straighten your back.

This exercise works nearly every muscle in the body and is effective for developing the lumbosacral and trapezius muscles. It also works the gluteal muscles and quadriceps intensely.

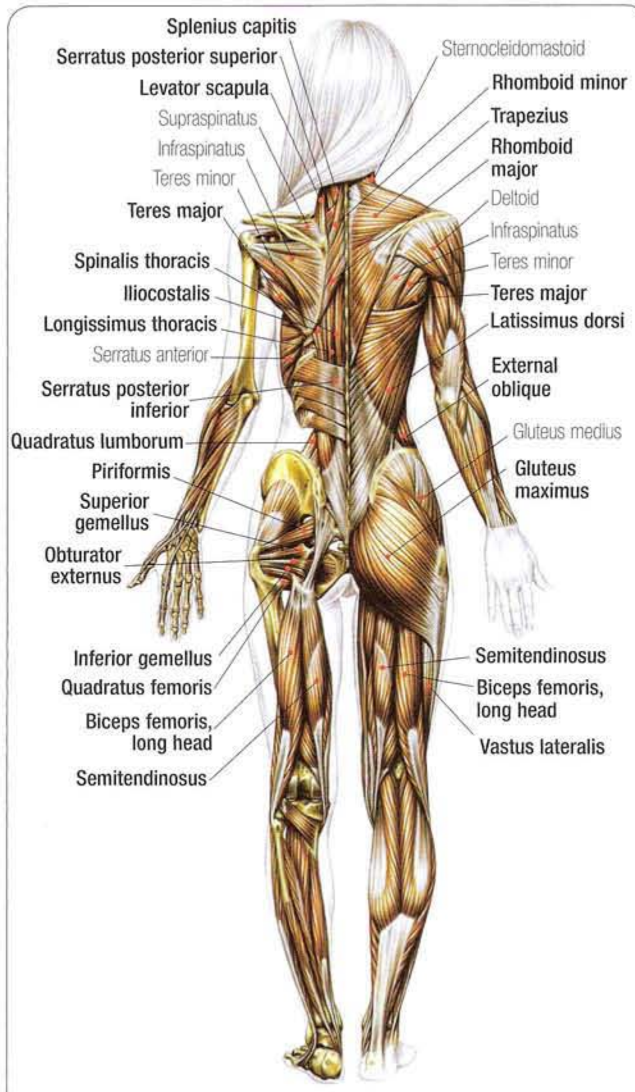
The deadlift, along with the bench press and the squat, make up the exercises in power-lifting competitions.





THE MOVEMENT


To prevent injury, never round the back during the exercise.



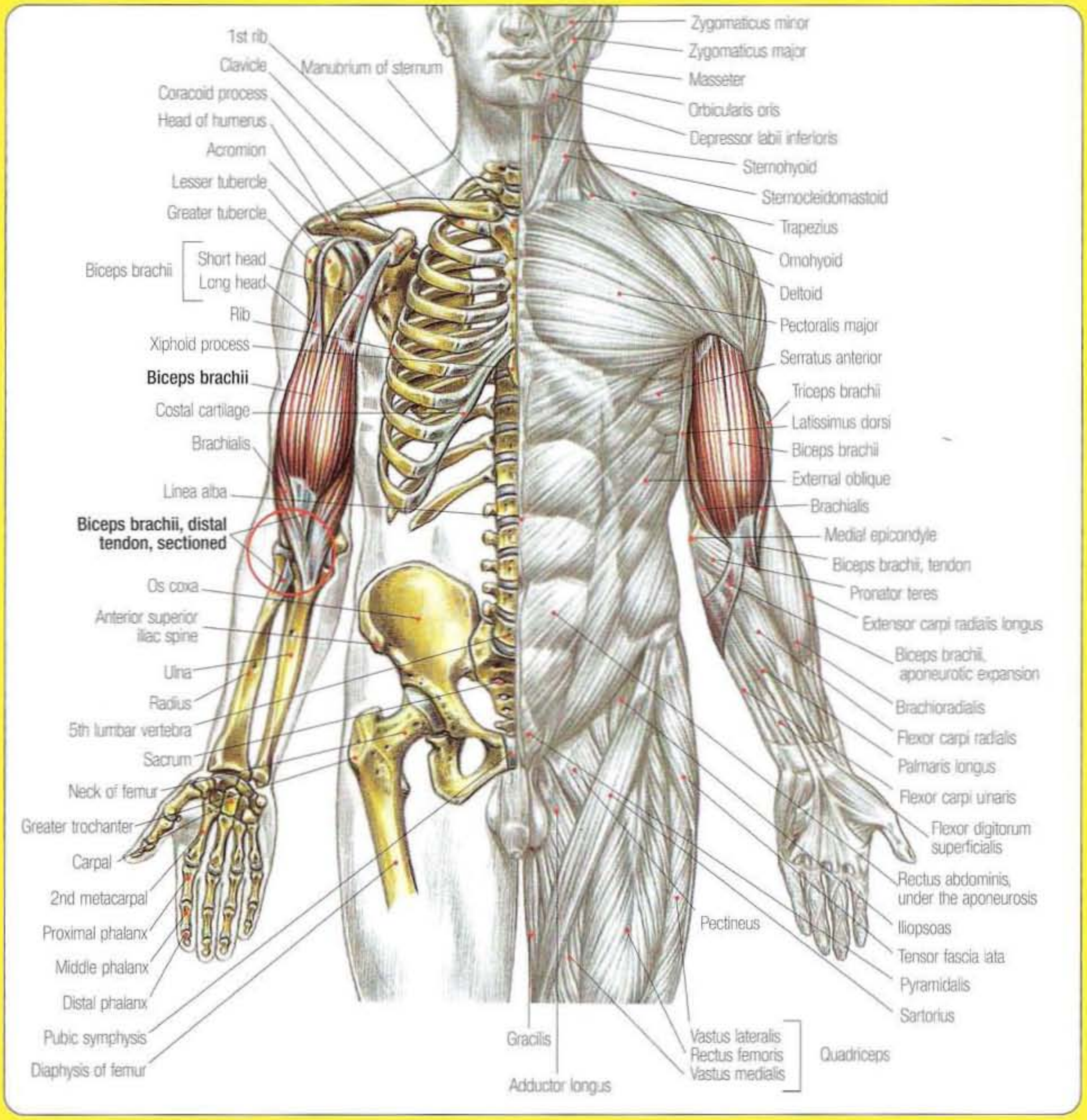
MUSCLES USED DURING THE DEADLIFT (HIGHLIGHTED)

No matter what the exercise, as soon as heavy weights are involved, it is essential to create a "block."

1. *Expanding the chest and holding a deep breath fills the lungs, which supports the rib cage and prevents the chest from collapsing forward.*
2. *Contracting the abdominal muscle group supports the core and increases the intra-abdominal pressure, which prevents the torso from collapsing forward.*
3. *Finally, arching the low back by contracting the lumbar muscles positions the spinal column in extension.*

These three actions together are referred to as *blocking*, which keeps you from rounding the back (vertebral flexion). A rounded back when lifting heavy weights can cause a herniated disc.

BICEPS BRACHII TENDON TEAR



Tearing the long head of the biceps brachii is by far the most common serious sport-related biceps injury.

Generally, it occurs in a muscle, already weakened by tendinitis, after a sudden backward movement of the arm, e.g., during a throw. This movement is relatively common in baseball, tennis, and any sport involving a throwing action, but it also occurs in the snatch in weightlifting. During this motion, tension is suddenly placed on the long head of the biceps brachii, most often where its tendon passes through the bicipital groove of the humerus.

Weightlifting, specifically the deadlift, with heavy weights can cause another characteristic biceps brachii injury.

A common practice when using heavy weights in the deadlift that prevents the bar from rolling in the hands is to use a reverse grip (one overhand grip and one underhand grip).

This technique, although usually safe, can in rare instances cause the tearing or the pulling away of the inferior tendon of the biceps brachii where the muscle inserts onto the humerus.

During the positive phase of the deadlift, the effort is mainly exerted by the muscles of the legs and gluteal muscles, the back, and the abdominal muscles. The arms hang down, completely extended and relaxed.

Unfortunately, the slight shortening caused by contracting either head of the biceps brings the hand into supination (the biceps being the strongest supinator), which with extra heavy weights may cause complete rupture of the tendon at the radius.

This injury occurs at the distal attachment because as the arms hang next to the body, the proximal tension is divided between the short and long heads of the biceps brachii whereas, distally, only one tendinous insertion supports the tension.

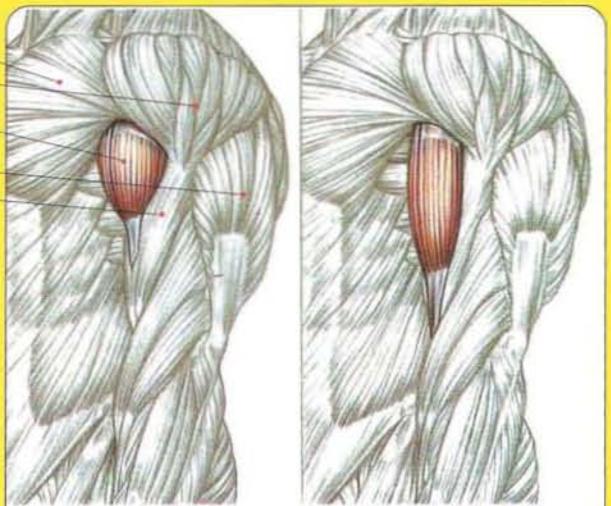
Compared to other tendon tears such as the pectoralis major or the adductors of the thigh in which the pain is unbearable and stops the athlete from continuing, the pain of a biceps tendon tear is relatively mild despite the seriousness of the actual injury.

In competitive power lifting, athletes have continued their lift despite the biceps tendon tear incurred during that lift.

After the accident the diagnosis is obvious: swelling caused by hemorrhaging appears in the forearm. But what is most striking is the appearance of the biceps brachii, which becomes ball shaped at the upper arm close to pectoralis major and the deltoid, revealing the brachialis muscle lower down.

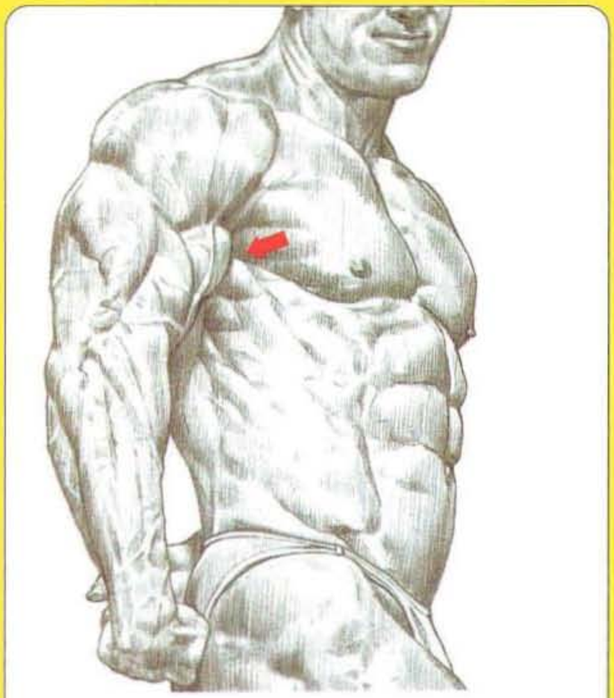
Despite the tear, the brachialis, brachioradialis, extensor carpi radialis longus and brevis, and pronator teres muscles can still flex the arm, just not as strongly. Supination of the forearm becomes much more of a problem because the end range of this movement relies only on the supinator muscle.

If this injury is not immediately treated with surgery to reattach the biceps tendon onto the radius, irreversible retraction of the muscle will occur with fibrous change. And although moving the arm will still be possible, there will be permanent loss of strength in flexion and supination. It is possible to prevent this injury by regularly working the biceps, not to develop the muscle, but to strengthen its tendon. For this reason add forearm flexion isolations using a bar in a series of "cheats" by leaning the chest back to give the bar a boost. If practiced regularly, this technique reinforces the distal tendon of the biceps by the tension it places on it. Nevertheless it must be performed carefully without rounding the back to avoid injury.



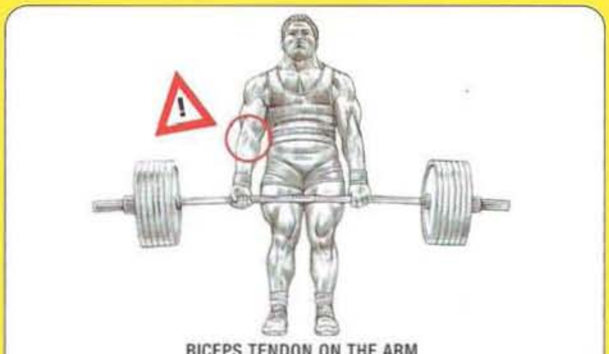
BICEPS BRACHII MUSCLE RETRACTED WITH TEARING OF ITS DISTAL TENDON

NORMAL BICEPS BRACHII MUSCLE



TYPICAL APPEARANCE OF AN UNTREATED DISTAL BICEPS TENDON TEAR

If, after tearing the distal tendon of the biceps brachii, surgery to reattach it to the radius is not performed quickly, permanent retraction and atrophy of the muscle will occur.



BICEPS TENDON ON THE ARM OF THE SUPINATED HAND CAN TEAR DURING A HEAVY DEADLIFT

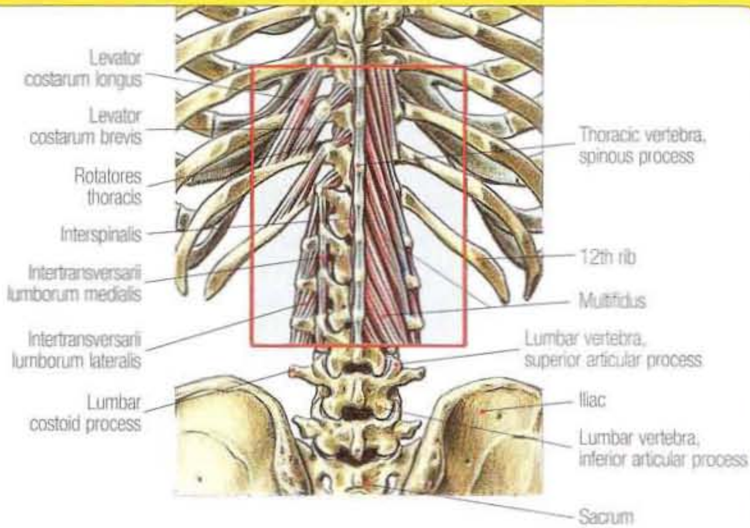
LOW BACK PAIN

Back pain is the most common problem of the lumbar spine region.

Generally, it is not serious and is most often caused by the shortening of the small, deep vertebral muscles that attach to the transverse processes.

If, during a poorly executed rotation or extension of the spine, one of these muscles is overstretched or is torn, it will automatically shorten along with its neighboring muscles and the superficial erector spinae. The back muscles cramp in pain; however, this cramping limits movement that otherwise might tear or increase the tearing of the small deep muscle.

This general shortening of a portion of the back muscles often disappears when the small deep muscle heals. But sometimes the back pain becomes entrenched, and even after the muscles heal, the local shortening can last several weeks and in some people for years.



SMALL DEEP MUSCLES OF THE BACK

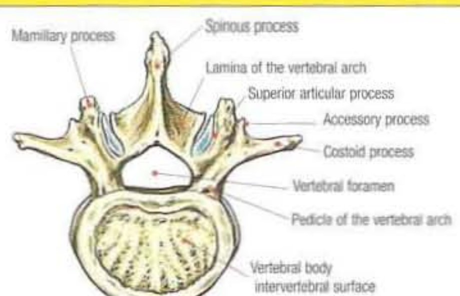
Comment: Although not serious in and of itself, lumbago, which is a painful contracture of the back muscles, can be part of more serious vertebral injuries such as herniated discs, tears in the paravertebral muscles and ligaments, and fractures.

SHOULD YOU ARCH YOUR BACK?

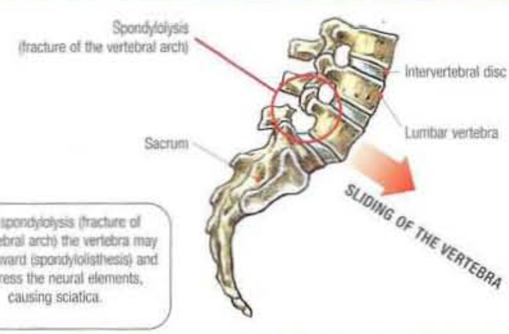
SHOULD YOU ARCH YOUR BACK?

For people without vertebral problems, arching the back during an exercise is not risky. In fact, with movements such as the squat (page 46) or the deadlift (page 132), where the back tends to round, arching the back can prevent injury. However, for some people arching the back during an exercise can be very dangerous.

- For people suffering from congenital spondylolysis (incomplete fusing of the vertebral arch), putting the lumbar spine in extension can cause the vertebra to slide (spondylolisthesis), which may cause serious nerve compression and lead to sciatica.
- For people who are not fully grown or people experiencing osteoporosis, extending the lumbar spine may lead to spondylolysis because of fractures in the vertebral arch. This fracture in the posterior anchoring system of the vertebra may allow the vertebra to slide forward and seriously compress the neural elements (which leads to sciatica).

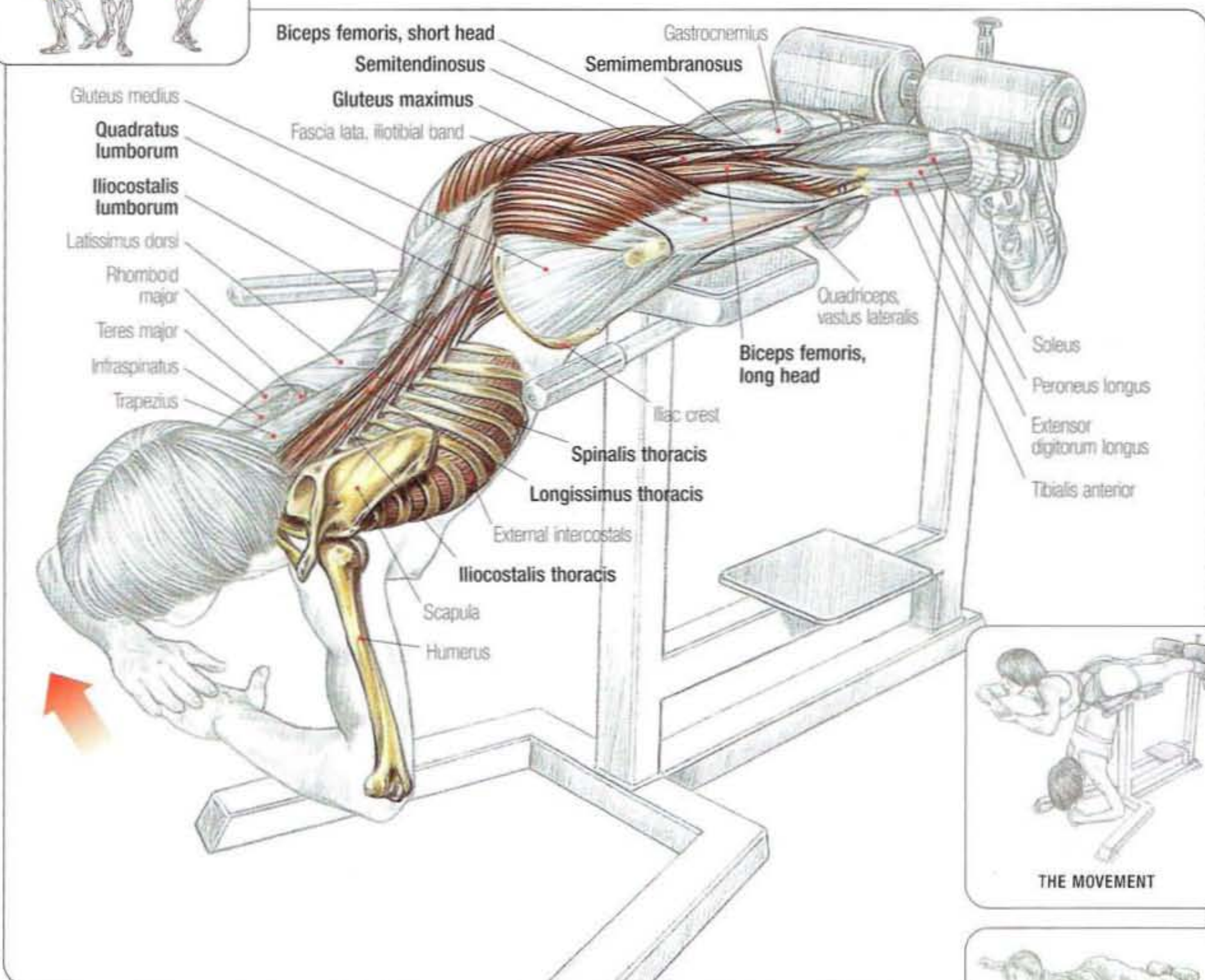


LUMBAR VERTEBRA FROM ABOVE

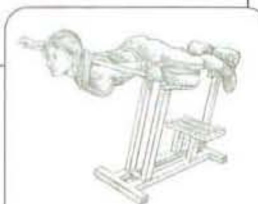


With spondylolysis (fracture of the vertebral arch) the vertebra may slide forward (spondylolisthesis) and compress the neural elements, causing sciatica.

BACK EXTENSIONS 15



THE MOVEMENT



VARIATION WITH A BAR ACROSS THE SHOULDERS

VARIATION EXTENDING AT AN INCLINE BENCH

Lie facedown on a Roman chair and place the ankles under the roller pads. Because the axis of flexion passes through the coxofemoral joints, the pubic bone should not rest on the support pad:

- With the torso bent forward, extend the back to horizontal. Raise the head and continue into hyperextension by arching the lumbar spine. This must be performed carefully to protect your low back.

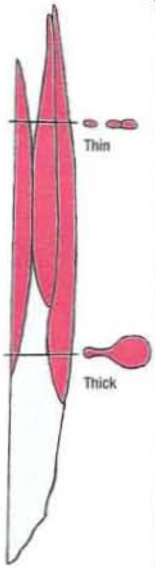
This exercise mainly develops the group of paraspinal erectors of the spine (iliocostales, longissimus thoracis, spinalis thoracis, splenius, and semispinalis capitis) and quadratus lumborum and, to a lesser degree, the gluteus maximus and the hamstrings except for the short head of the biceps femoris. Complete flexion of the torso develops the flexibility of the lumbosacral mass. Supporting the pelvis on the bench, so that the axis is displaced to the back of the body, focuses the movement completely at the lumbosacral level but less intensely given the range of motion and the greater power of the lever arm.

To increase the intensity, sustain the horizontal position of the torso at the end of the extension for a few seconds. Using an incline bench makes this exercise easier for beginners to execute.

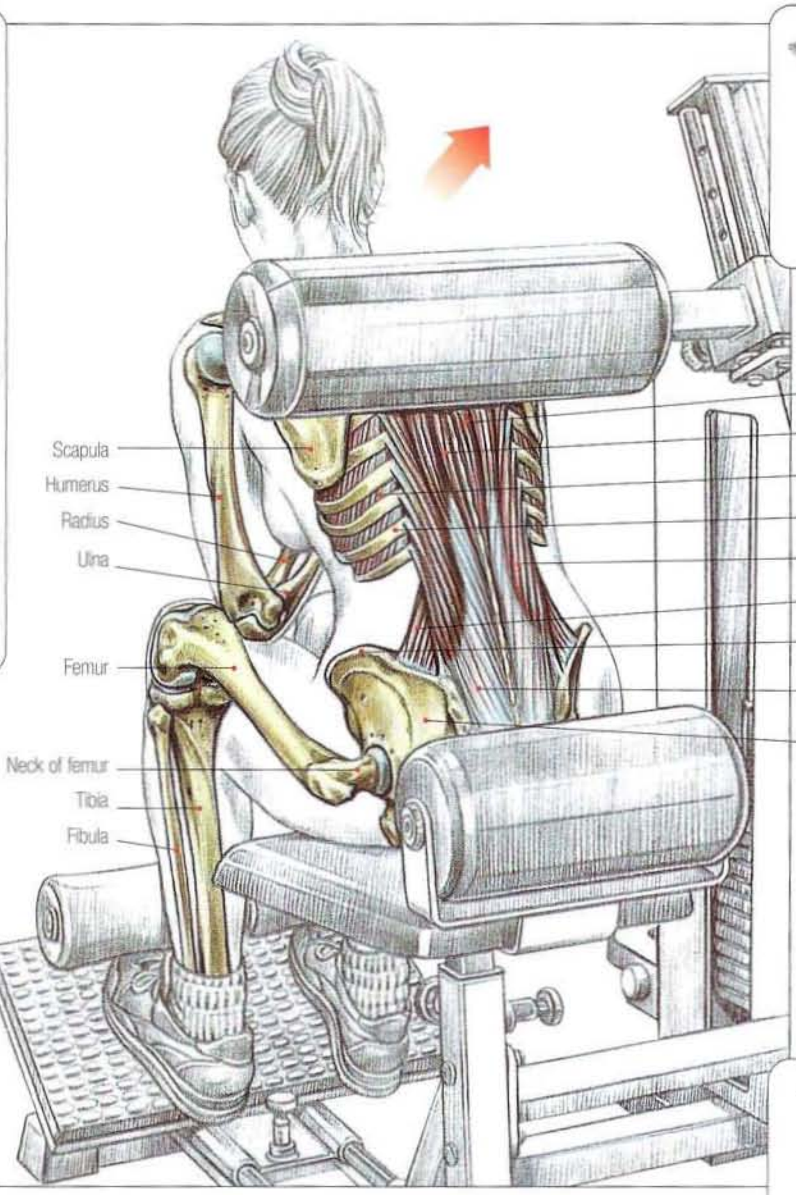
Variations

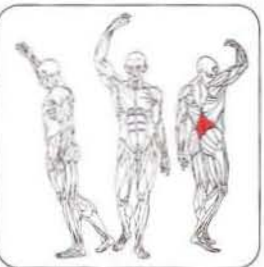
- Performing the torso extension with a bar on the shoulders stabilizes the upper back, which focuses the effort on the lower part of the erector spinae muscles.
- The back extension machine allows you to focus on the lumbosacral mass of the spinal muscles (see page 88, Torso Extensions at a Machine).
- To increase the intensity, perform the exercise while holding a weight to the chest or behind the neck.

16 TORSO EXTENSIONS AT A MACHINE



ERECTOR MUSCLE OF THE SPINE





THE MOVEMENT

Sit at the machine, leaning the torso forward and the pad of the machine at shoulder-blade (scapula) level:

- Inhale and press back, straightening the torso as much as possible.
- Return slowly to the initial position while exhaling and begin again.

This exercise works the erector muscles of the spine, focusing the effort on the low back, specifically the lumbosacral mass of the spinal muscles.

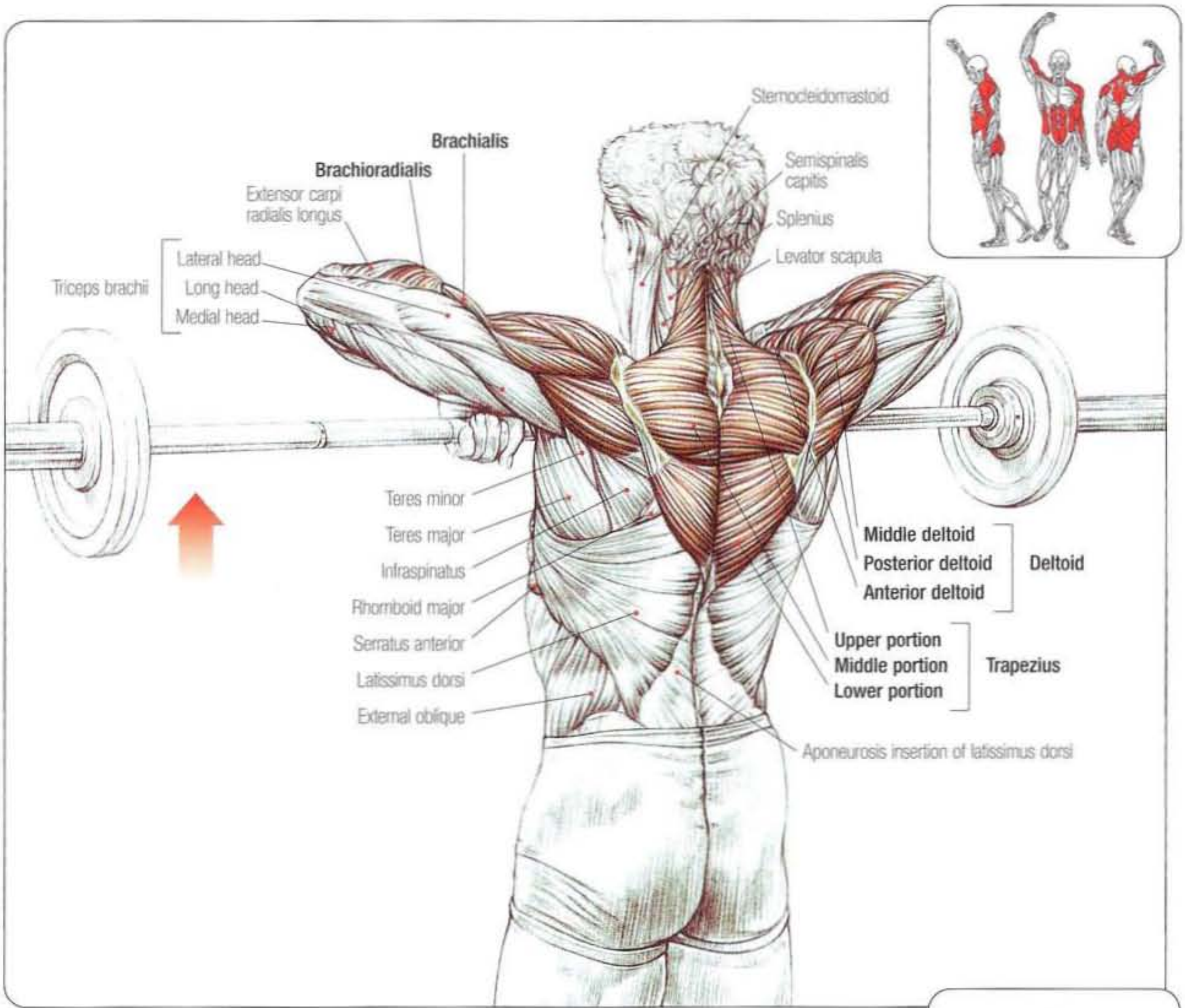
This exercise is excellent for beginners. Done in sets of 10 to 12 repetitions, it develops the strength to progress to more technically demanding exercises for the back.

To perform this exercise with heavier weights, reduce the number of repetitions in the set.

Because the machine regulates the range of motion and the weight, the number of repetitions may vary during the same session.

Example: Two series of 15 repetitions with moderate weights and complete range of performance followed by two series of 7 repetitions with more weights and reduced range.

UPRIGHT ROWS 17



THE MOVEMENT

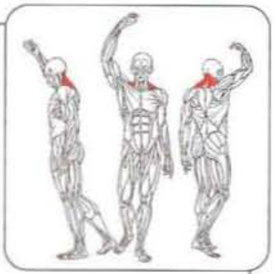
Stand with the legs slightly apart, keeping the back straight and grasping the barbell with an overhand grip. The grip should be hand width or slightly wider:

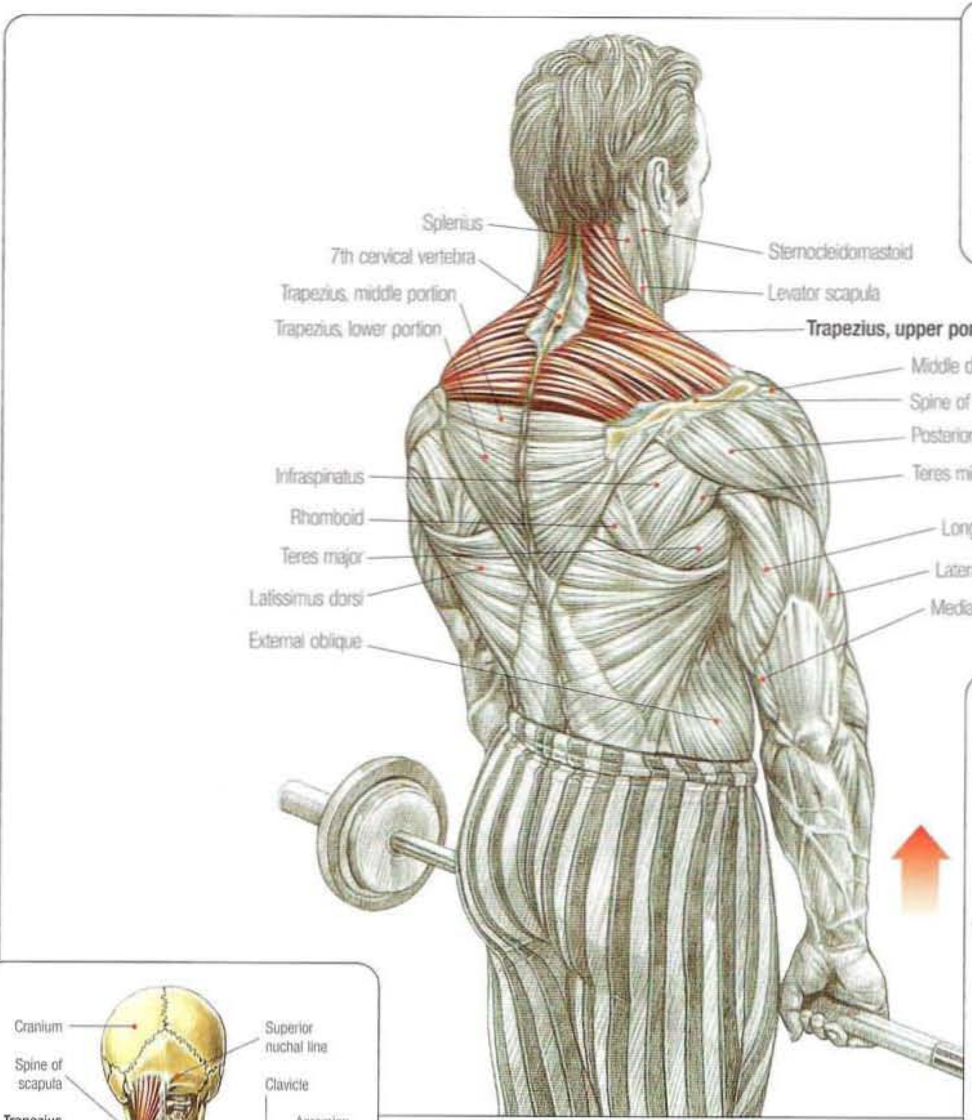
- Inhale and pull the barbell up along the front of the body to the chin, raising the elbows as high as possible.
- Exhale and lower the barbell with a controlled movement.

This exercise mainly uses the superior portion of the trapezius as well as the deltoid, levator scapula, biceps brachii, brachialis, muscles of the forearm, abdominal muscles, gluteal muscles, and lumbosacral group.

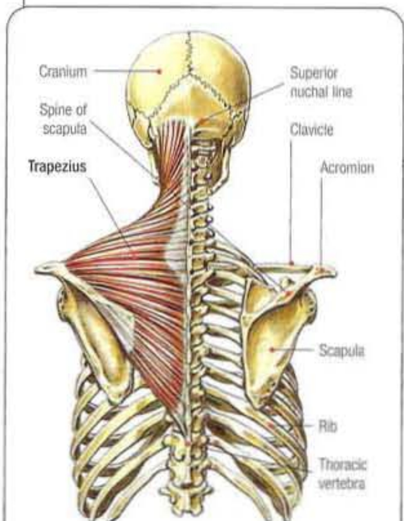
A wider grip uses the deltoid more than the trapezius.

18 BARBELL SHRUGS





FINAL POSITION
TRAPEZIUS CONTRACTED



TRAPEZIUS

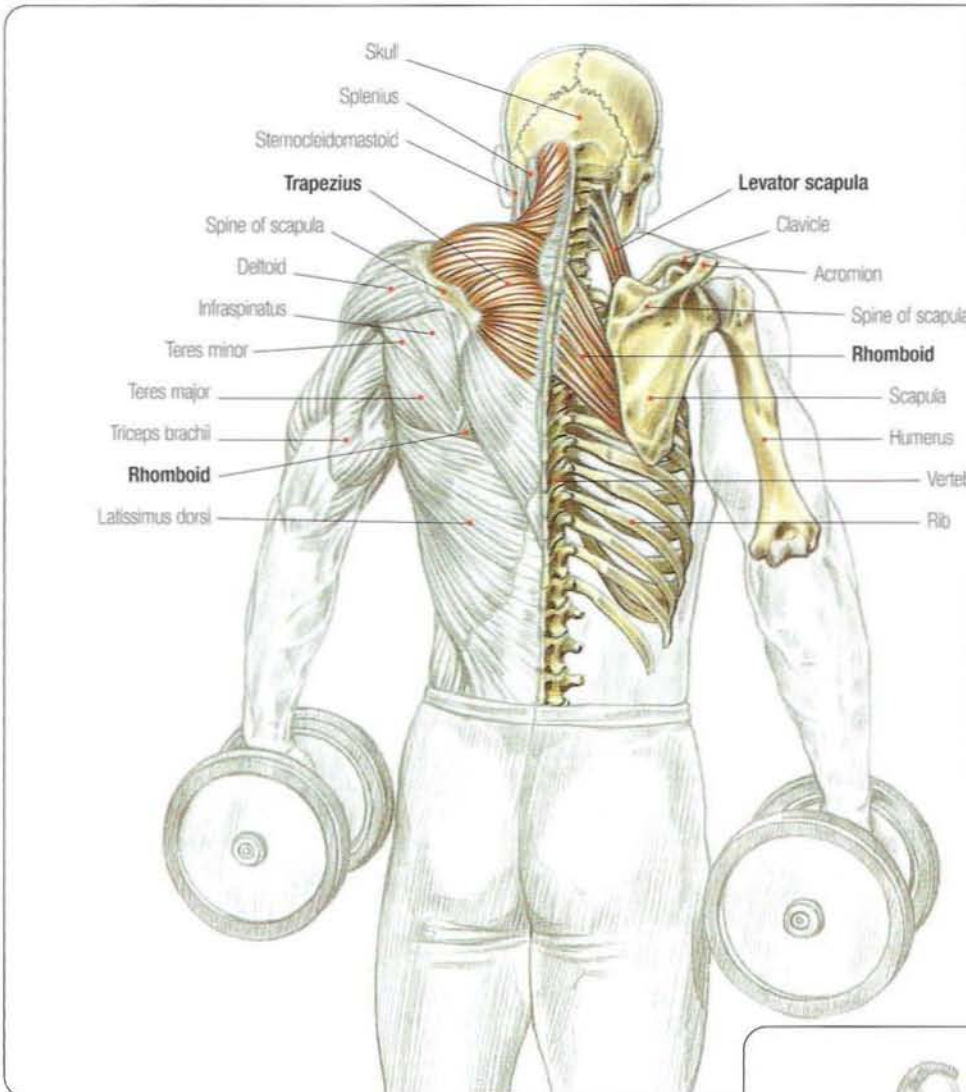
Stand with the legs slightly apart and face the bar that is either on the ground or on a stand:

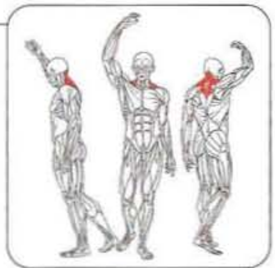
- Grasp the bar with an overhand grip, with the hands slightly wider than shoulder-width apart, or use a reverse grip if the weight is heavy.
- Shrug the shoulders keeping the arms relaxed, back straight, and abdominal muscles contracted.

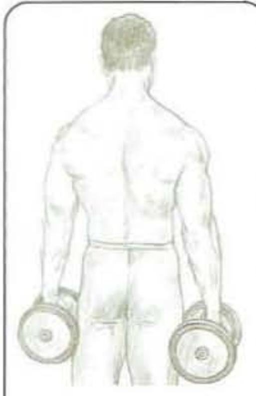
This exercise develops the upper portion of the trapezius, mainly its occipital-clavicular fibers, and the levator scapula.

Comment: Use a reverse grip when working with heavy weights. To balance the work on the trapezius, change the hands with each set. For example, perform one set with the right hand overhand and the left hand underhand. Switch on the following set.

DUMBBELL SHRUGS 19







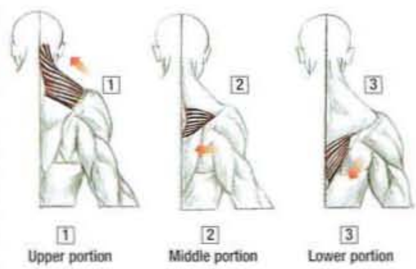
INITIAL POSITION

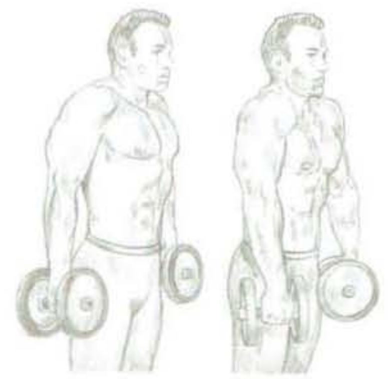
Stand with the legs slightly apart, head upright or slightly flexed forward, and arms relaxed at the sides gripping a dumbbell in each hand:

- Shrug the shoulders with an anterior to posterior rotation.
- Return to the initial position.

This exercise contracts the superior, or clavicular, portion of the trapezius, the levator scapula, and the middle portion of the trapezius and the rhomboids when squeezing the shoulder blades together and rotating the shoulders to the back.

TRAPEZIUS ACTION

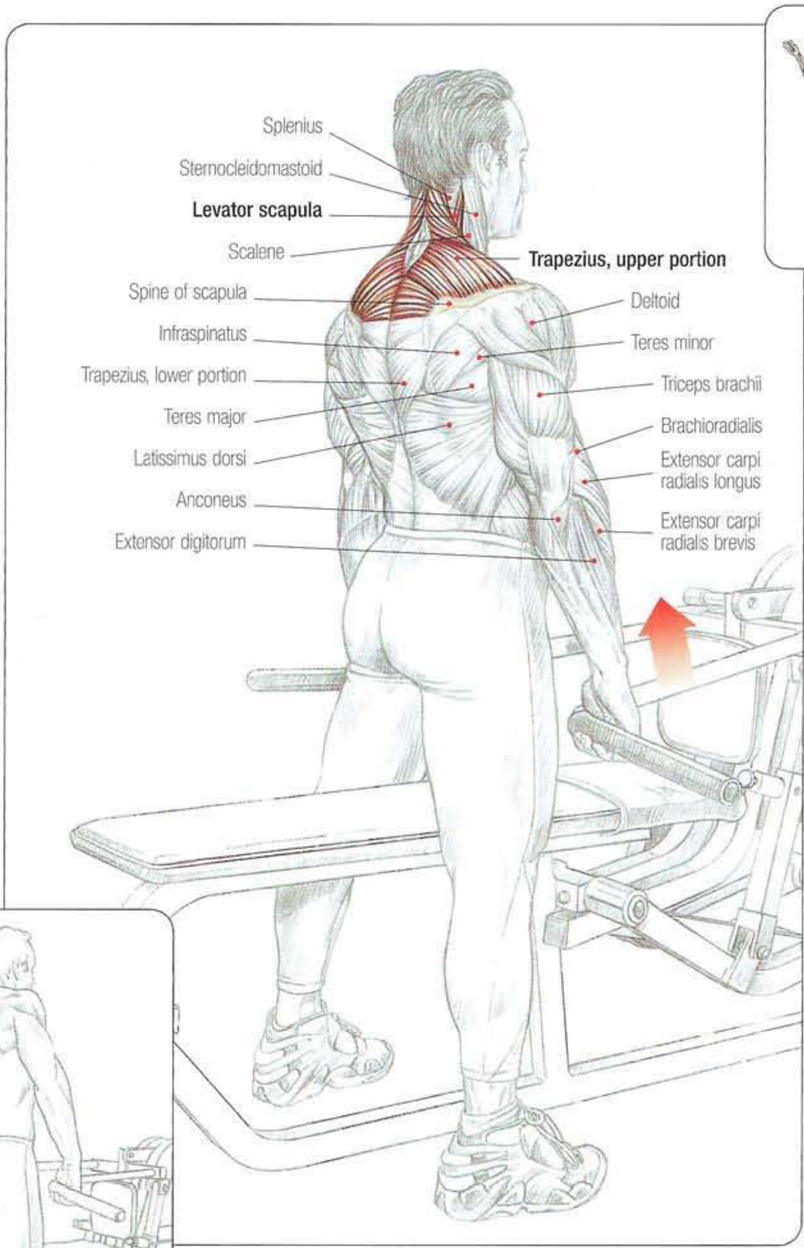


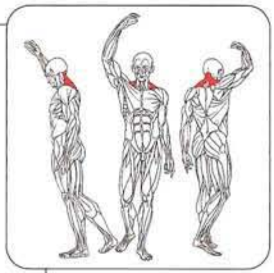


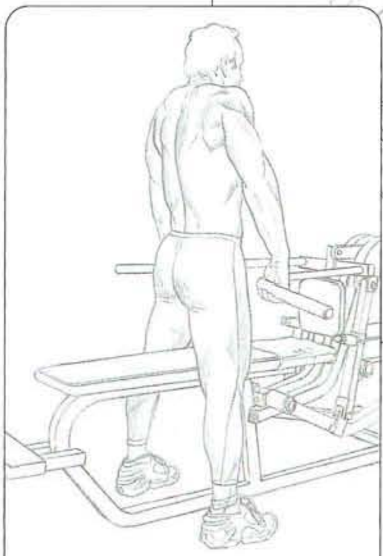
EXECUTING THE ROTATION AT THE END OF THE MOVEMENT

Comment: It is impossible to rotate the shoulders when using heavy weights.

20 MACHINE SHRUGS







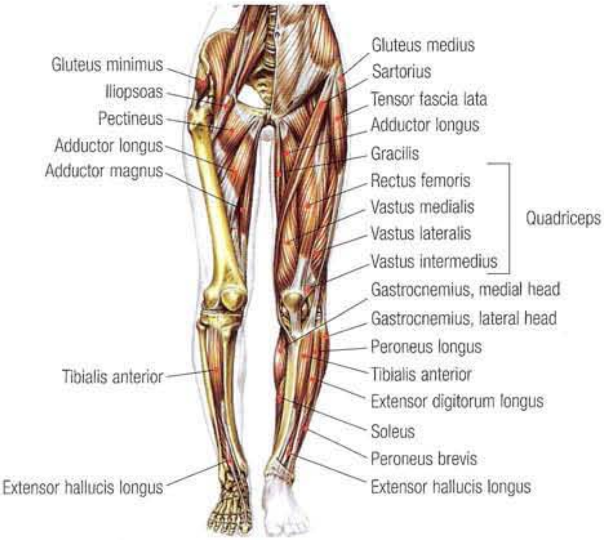
FINAL POSITION
TRAPEZIUS CONTRACTED

Stand facing the machine and hold the handles with an overhand grip slightly wider than shoulder width, or if the machine allows, with the palms facing each other:

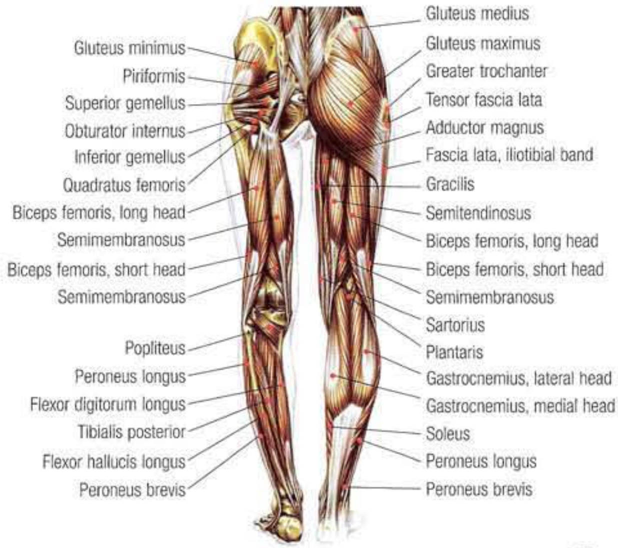
- Shrug the shoulders, keeping the head and back straight.

This exercise allows you to perform long sets. It is excellent for developing the upper portion of the trapezius and the levator scapula.

5
LEGS

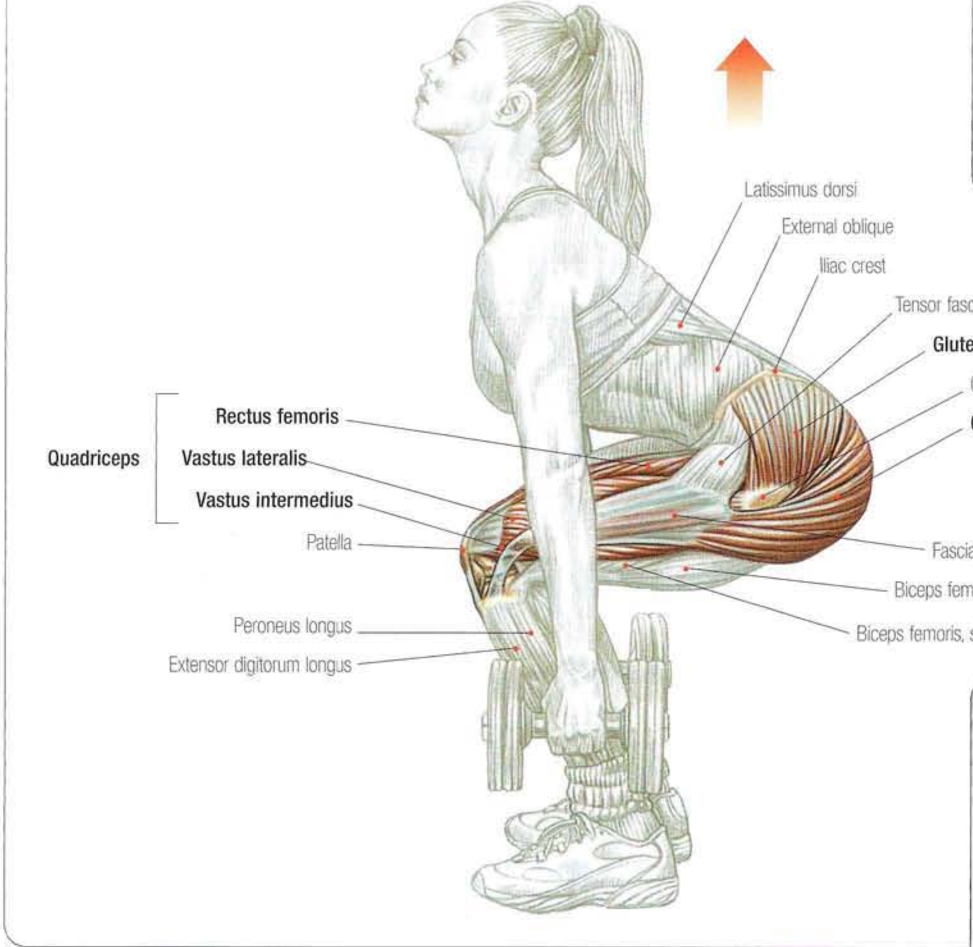


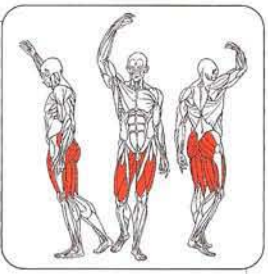
Gluteus minimus
Iliopsoas
Pectineus
Adductor longus
Adductor magnus
Tibialis anterior
Extensor hallucis longus
Gluteus medius
Sartorius
Tensor fascia lata
Adductor longus
Gracilis
Rectus femoris
Vastus medialis
Vastus lateralis
Vastus intermedius
Quadriceps
Gastrocnemius, medial head
Gastrocnemius, lateral head
Peroneus longus
Tibialis anterior
Extensor digitorum longus
Soleus
Peroneus brevis
Extensor hallucis longus

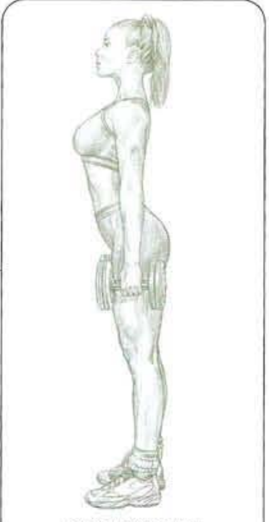


Gluteus minimus
Piriformis
Superior gemellus
Obturator internus
Inferior gemellus
Quadratus femoris
Biceps femoris, long head
Semimembranosus
Biceps femoris, short head
Semimembranosus
Popliteus
Peroneus longus
Flexor digitorum longus
Tibialis posterior
Flexor hallucis longus
Peroneus brevis
Gluteus medius
Gluteus maximus
Greater trochanter
Tensor fascia lata
Adductor magnus
Fascia lata, iliotibial band
Gracilis
Semitendinosus
Biceps femoris, long head
Biceps femoris, short head
Semimembranosus
Sartorius
Plantaris
Gastrocnemius, lateral head
Gastrocnemius, medial head
Soleus
Peroneus longus
Peroneus brevis

1 DUMBBELL SQUATS







INITIAL POSITION

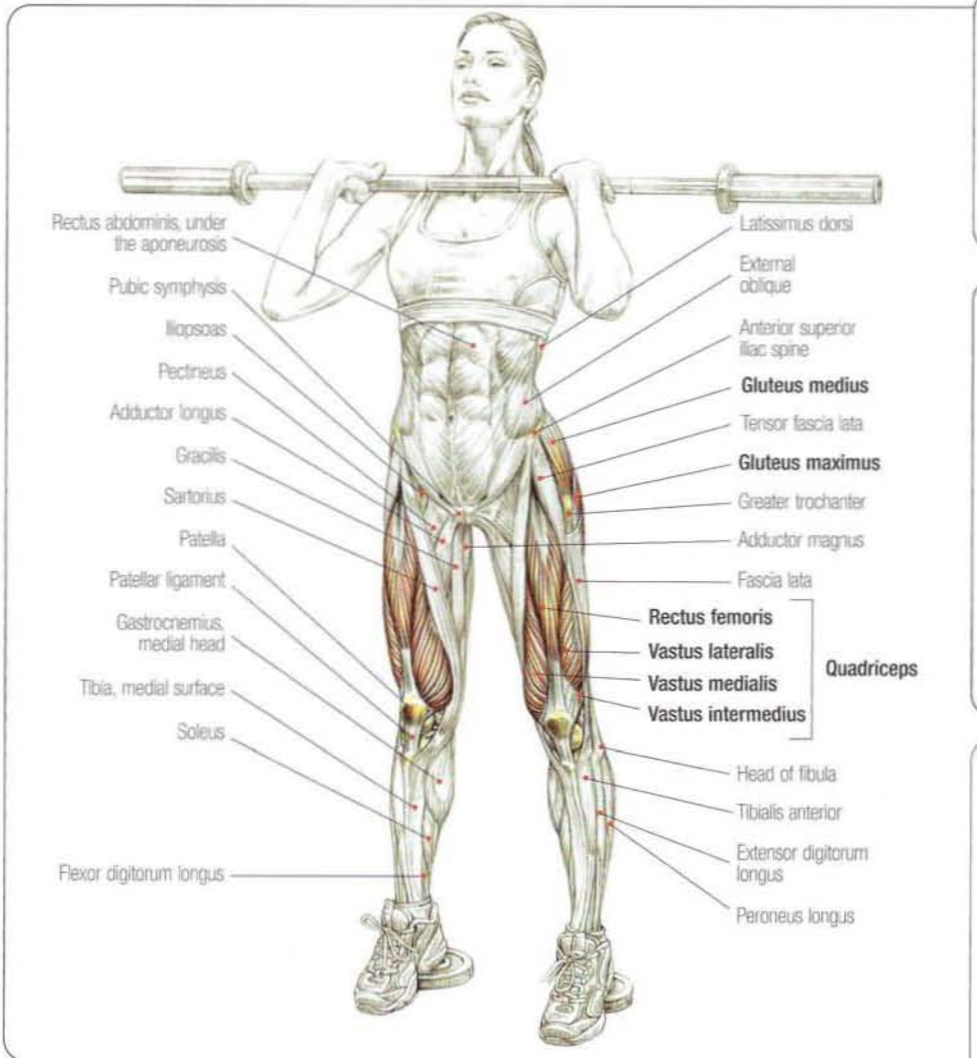
Stand with the feet slightly apart, a dumbbell in each hand and the arms relaxed, looking straight ahead:

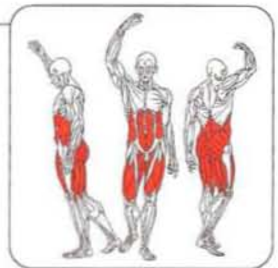
- Inhale, slightly arch the back, and bend the knees.
- When the thighs reach horizontal, extend the legs to return to the initial position.
- Exhale at the end of the effort.

This exercise mainly works the quadriceps and the gluteal muscles.

Comment: There is no point in working with heavy weights. Working with moderate weights in sets of 10 to 15 repetitions provides the best results.

FRONT SQUATS 2





THE MOVEMENT

Lowering the thighs by bending the knees while the legs are held by equipment focuses a major part of the work on the quadriceps muscles.

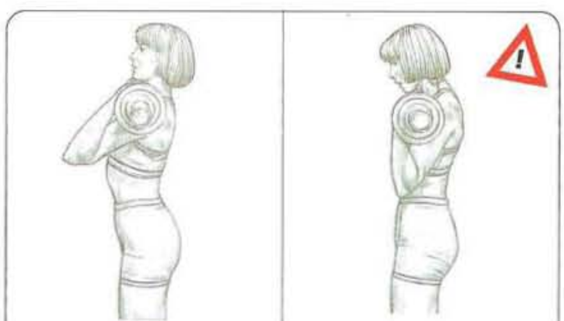
Stand with the legs about shoulder-width apart, holding the bar with an overhand grip as it rests on the upper pectoral muscles and the anterior deltoid:

- Inhale deeply to maintain intrathoracic pressure, which prevents the torso from collapsing forward, slightly arch the low back, contract the abdominal core, and bend the knees to lower the thighs horizontal to the floor.
- Return to the initial position and breathe out at the end of the movement.

Stick out the chest and to raise the elbows as high as possible to prevent the barbell from sliding forward.

Even though the barbell is in front, keep the back upright and don't lean the torso forward. To make the exercise easier, place blocks under the heels.

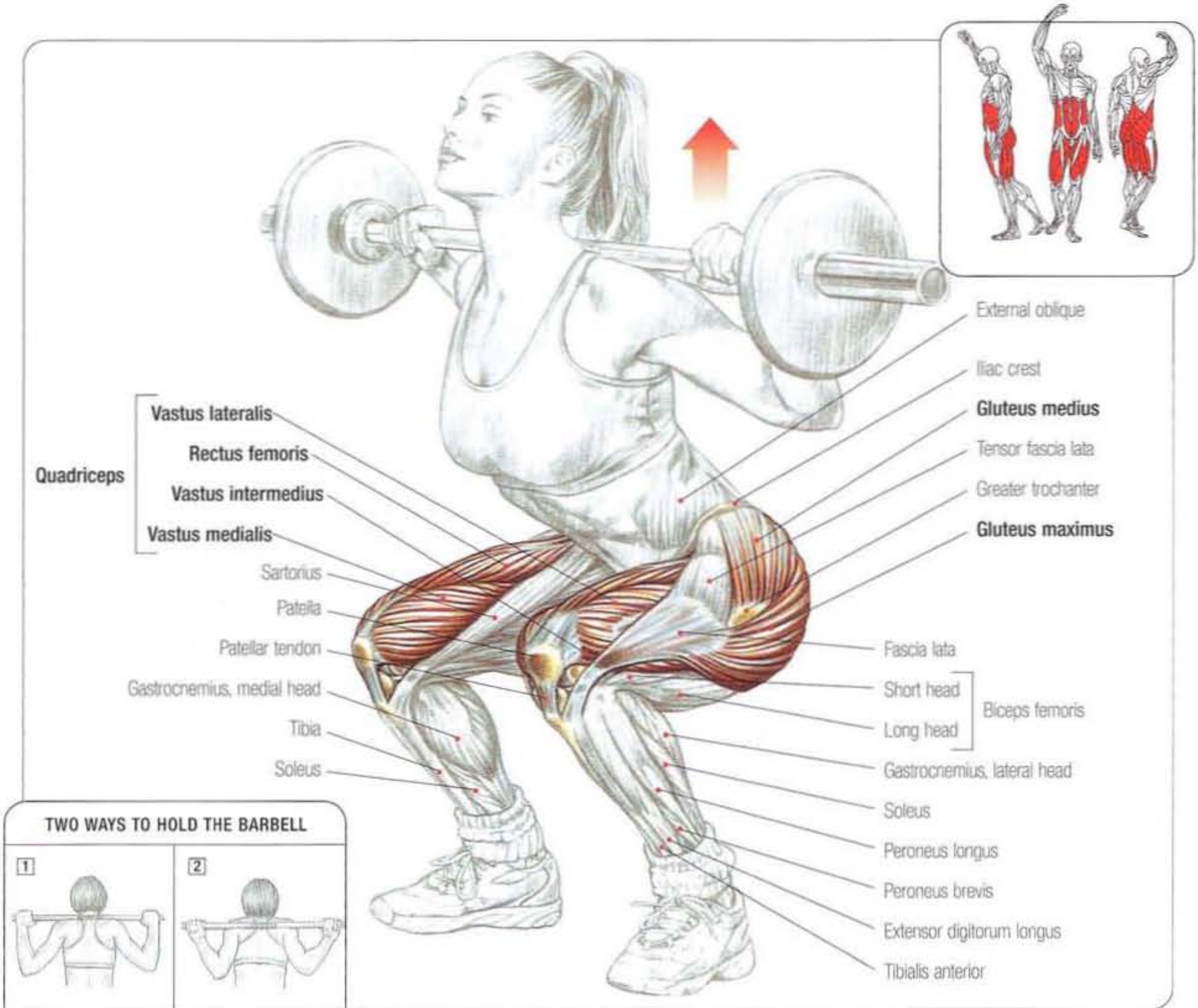
This type of squat focuses a greater part of the effort onto the quadriceps and is performed with lighter weights than the classic squat. This exercise contracts the gluteal muscles, hamstring, abdominal core, and the erector spinae. This is a movement frequently used in weight training because it corresponds perfectly with the work the thighs do at the end of a snatch.



CORRECT POSITION

INCORRECT POSITION

3 SQUATS



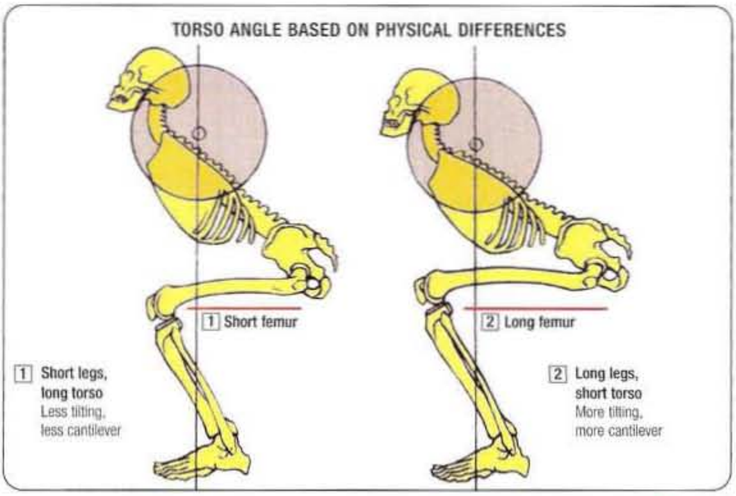
1 On the trapezius
2 On the deltoid and the trapezius, power-lifter style.

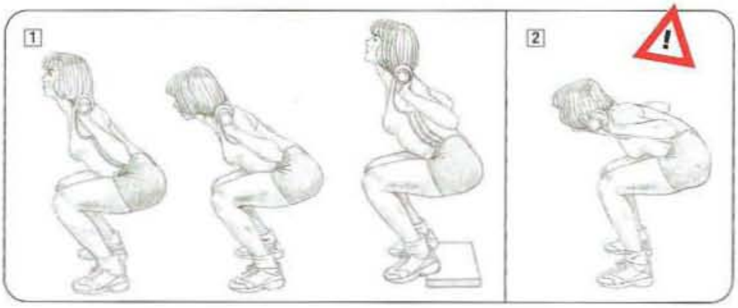
The squat is the number one bodybuilding movement: It uses nearly the entire muscular system, and it also works the cardiovascular system. It helps develop thoracic expansion, and therefore, respiratory capacity:

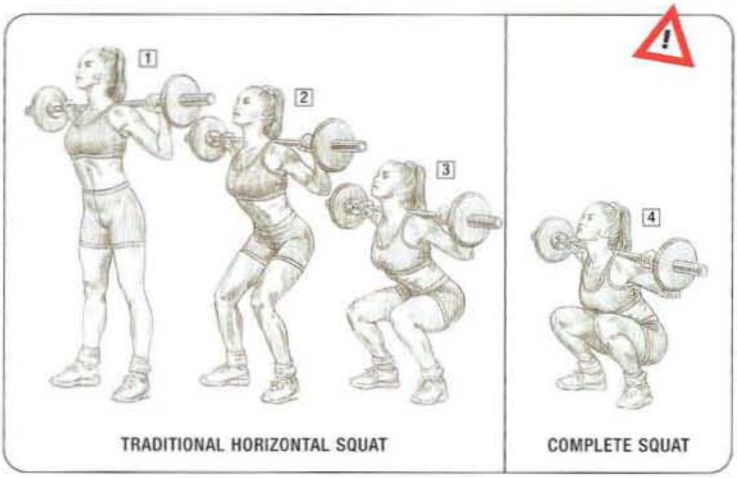
- With the barbell resting on a stand, slide under the bar and place it on the trapezius a bit higher than the posterior deltoid. Grasp the bar firmly with the hands at a comfortable width and the elbows back.
- Inhale deeply (to maintain the intrathoracic pressure, which will prevent the torso from collapsing forward), slightly arch the back by rotating the pelvis forward, contract the abdominal core, look straight ahead, and remove the barbell from the stand.
- Step back one or two steps and stop with both feet parallel to each other (or toes pointing slightly outward) and about shoulder-width apart. Bend forward from the hips (the axis of flexion should pass through the coxofemoral joints) and avoid rounding the back in order to prevent injury.
- When the thighs are horizontal to the floor, straighten the legs and lift the torso to return to the initial position.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

The squat mainly works the quadriceps, gluteal muscles, adductor group, erector spinae, abdominal muscles, and the hamstrings.

Comment: The squat is one of the best exercises for developing the shape of the buttocks.







Variations:

- People with rigid ankles or long femurs can place a block under their heels to keep from tilting the torso too much. This variation isolates the quadriceps.
- Lowering the bar onto the posterior deltoid increases the leverage of the back, which helps you lift heavier weights. This technique is essential for power lifters.
- The squat can be performed at a frame, which keeps you from tilting the torso and lets you focus on the quadriceps.

FOOT PLACEMENT IN THE SQUAT

When executing the classic squat, that is, with the feet approximately shoulder-width apart, you must place the feet properly. They should be parallel or slightly pointed to the outside. However, you must take into consideration your unique physical structure and make adjustments as necessary to ensure that the feet are in line with the knees.

For example: If you naturally walk with the feet pointed out, perform the squat with the feet pointed out.

1 CORRECT POSITIONS

When executing squats, hold the back straight.

Given the variations in each person's physical structure (different leg lengths and ankle flexibility) and the variations in technique (width of stance, use of heel blocks, barbell higher or lower), the tilt of the torso will vary; however, the lean should start at the hips.

2 INCORRECT POSITION

Never round the back when executing squats.

This mistake is responsible for most lumbar spine injuries, especially herniated discs.

To feel the working of the gluteal muscles, lower the thighs to horizontal.

1-2-3 NEGATIVE PHASE
4 COMPLETE SQUAT

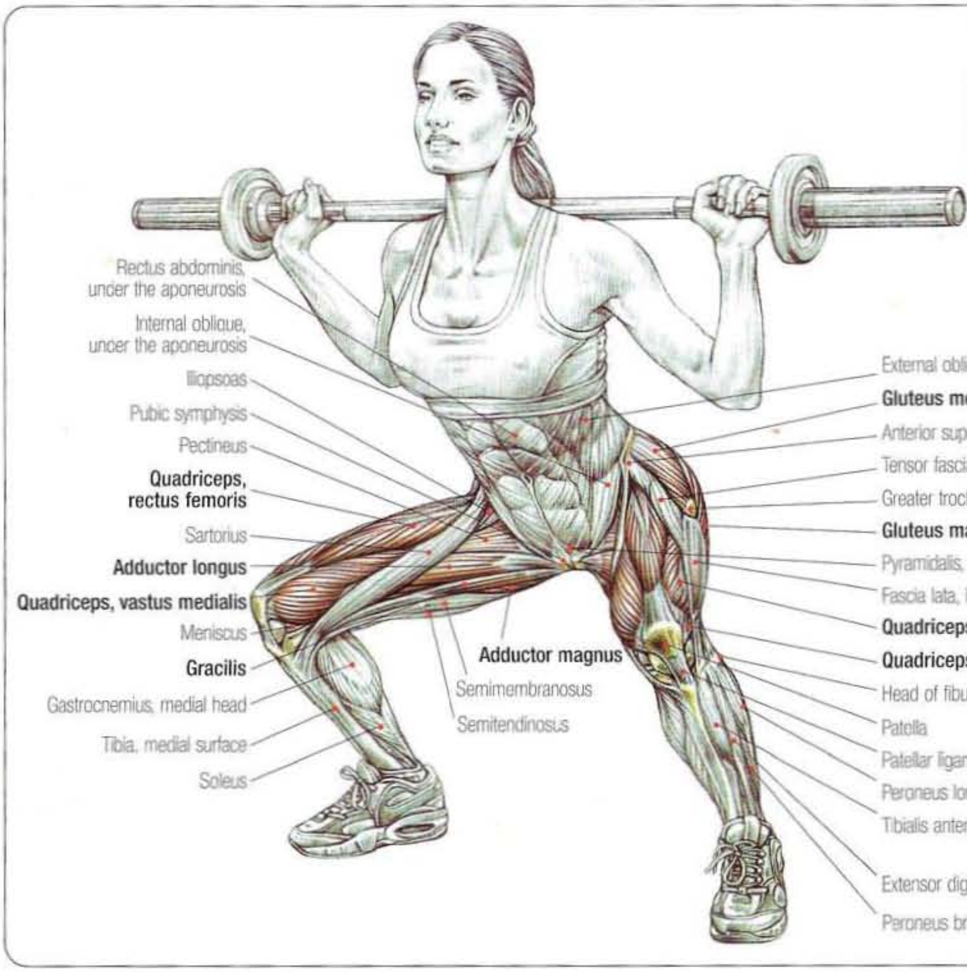
To feel the working of the gluteal muscles even more, lower the thighs past horizontal. However, this technique can only be performed by people with flexible ankles or short femurs. Furthermore, you must perform the complete squat carefully and avoid the tendency to round the low back, which can lead to serious injury.

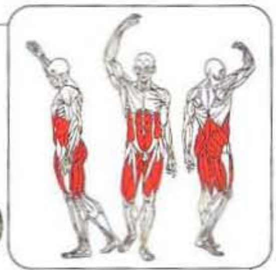
No matter what the exercise, as soon as heavy weights are involved, it is essential to create a "**block**."

1. *Expanding the chest and holding a deep breath fills the lungs, which supports the rib cage and prevents the chest from collapsing forward.*
2. *Contracting the abdominal muscle group supports the core and increases the intra-abdominal pressure, which prevents the torso from collapsing forward.*
3. *Finally, arching the low back by contracting the lumbar muscles positions the spinal column in extension.*

These three actions together are referred to as *blocking*, which keeps you from rounding the back (vertebral flexion). A rounded back when lifting heavy weights can cause a herniated disc.

4 POWER SQUATS

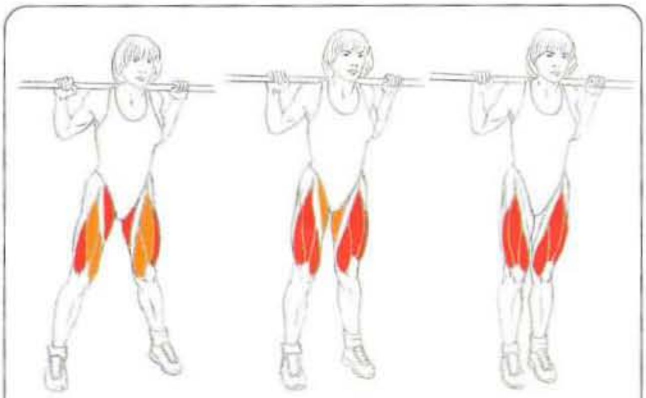




This movement is performed the same as the classic squat, except that the legs are farther apart and the toes point out, which works the inner thigh intensely.

The working muscles are as follows:

- quadriceps
- adductor muscle group (adductor magnus, adductor longus, adductor brevis, adductor pectineus, and gracilis)
- gluteal muscles
- hamstrings
- abdominal muscles
- lumbosacral muscle group



THREE FEET POSITIONS FOR SQUATS

DISC HERNIATION

Disc herniation is a relatively frequent injury in weightlifting, most often caused by incorrect back position during the squat, deadlift, or bent row.

When executing these exercises, the main thing to avoid is rounding the back (vertebral flexion), which expands the back of the disc and pinches the front of it.

If the intervertebral disc is cracked or aging, the gelatinous liquid of the nucleus pulposus migrates backward and can compress on the spinal cord or the roots of the spinal nerves. Symptoms depend on the type of lesion, the amount of nucleus pulposus pushed out, and the surface that is compressed. The nucleus pulposus can bulge or, worse, explode through the annulus fibrosus, which surrounds it, and sometimes tear the posterior ligament that connects the vertebrae to each other. Compression of the neural elements caused by the tearing of the annulus fibrosus is particularly painful and incapacitating.

In weight training, herniations usually occur at the lumbar level and most frequently between the third and fourth or between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae. The pain is dull and deep, sometimes accompanied by swelling and tingling. The pain is located in the middle of the back or more often to one side, radiating to the gluteal muscles, pelvis, and pubis and down the leg following the path of the sciatic nerve (hence the name sciatica to define this type of pain). Generally, disc herniations are spontaneously reabsorbed, and the pain eventually disappears. But in some cases, the bulge in the disc does not disappear and continues to press painfully against the nerves, or a detached piece of intervertebral cartilage compresses the neural elements.

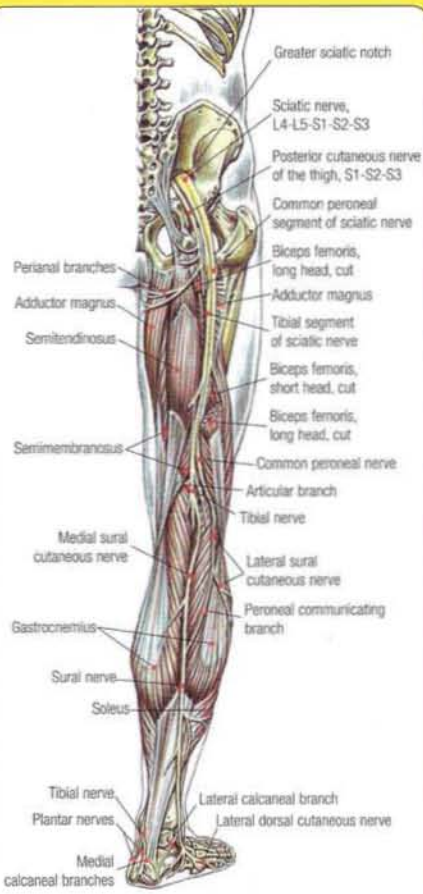
In both these cases, a surgeon can remove the part that is pressing against the nerves.

To prevent disc herniation, use proper form when performing risky exercises such as the squat, deadlift, good morning, and bent row.

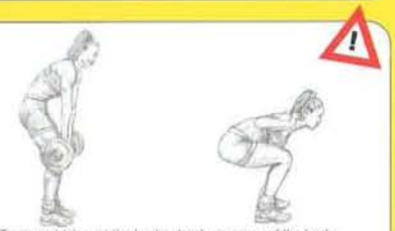
No matter what the exercise, as soon as heavy weights are involved, it is essential to create a "block."

1. *Expanding the chest and holding a deep breath fills the lungs, which supports the rib cage and prevents the chest from collapsing forward.*
2. *Contracting the abdominal muscle group supports the core and increases the intra-abdominal pressure, which prevents the torso from collapsing forward.*
3. *Finally, arching the low back by contracting the lumbar muscles positions the spinal column in extension.*

These three actions together are referred to as blocking, which keeps you from rounding the back (vertebral flexion). A rounded back when lifting heavy weights can cause a herniated disc.

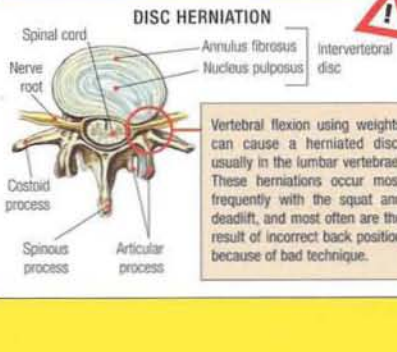


SCIATIC NERVE
AND POSTERIOR CUTANEOUS NERVE OF THIGH



To prevent injury at the lumbar level, never round the back when executing a deadlift or squat.

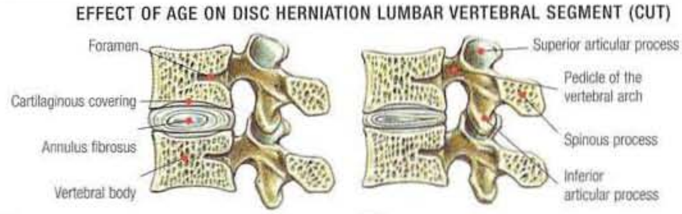
DISC HERNIATION



Vertebral flexion using weights can cause a herniated disc, usually in the lumbar vertebrae. These herniations occur most frequently with the squat and deadlift, and most often are the result of incorrect back position because of bad technique.

Comment: After a heavy workout, stretch the back by hanging from a chinning bar and focusing on relaxing the body. This allows the muscles to relax and rebalance the pressures inside the intervertebral discs.

EFFECT OF AGE ON DISC HERNIATION LUMBAR VERTEBRAL SEGMENT (CUT)



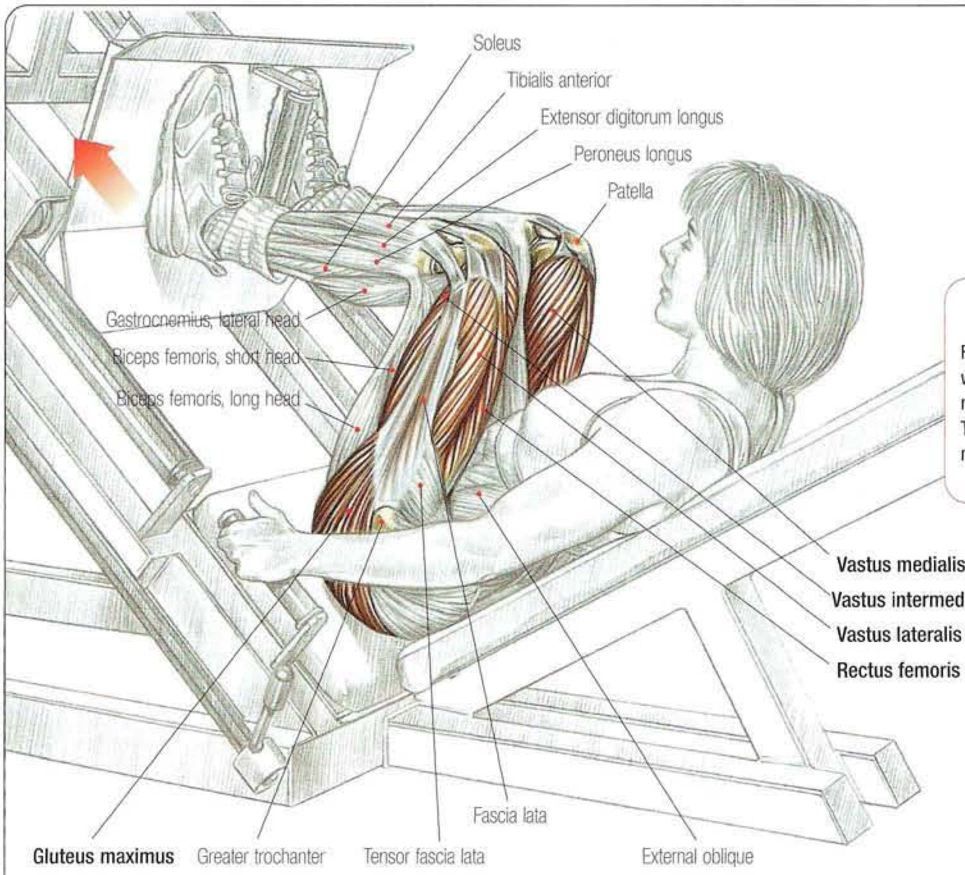
1 **Young vertebral segment**
The intervertebral disc is still healthy.

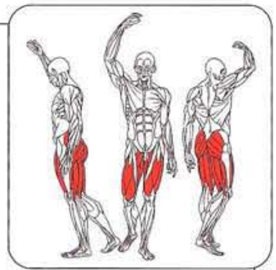
2 **Older vertebral segment**
With age, the annulus fibrosus begins to develop fissures and the viscous gel of the nucleus pulposus begins to dehydrate. The intervertebral disc collapses and the vertebral segments lose their mobility.

From the age of 30, the intervertebral discs degenerate, and the annulus fibrosus can crack as the nucleus pulposus begins to dehydrate. The discs of older athletes are more rigid and less elastic, and the mobility of the spine is limited. On the other hand, as the viscous gel of the nucleus pulposus gradually dehydrates, it becomes less likely that it will be displaced and compress against the nerve.

In comparison, disc herniation in a young person involves the movement of a greater amount of the gelatinous fluid of the nucleus pulposus, causing more compression, pain, and incapacity of the neural elements. Disc herniation therefore occurs more frequently with young athletes.

5 ANGLED LEG PRESSES





ATTENTION

For some people, using the press with heavy loads can provoke a movement of the sacroiliac hinge. This can induce very painful muscle spasms.

INITIAL POSITION

Position the back properly against the backrest on a machine, with the feet slightly apart:

- Inhale and release the safety bars then bend the knees completely so that the thighs touch or nearly touch the torso.
- Return to the initial position, exhaling at the end of the movement.

Placing the feet low against the foot plate isolates the quadriceps; placing the feet higher on the foot plate calls on the gluteal muscles and the hamstrings. Placing the feet wider apart focuses effort on the adductors.

Comment: People with back pain who are unable to perform squats can do this exercise. However, they must never lift the back off the back pad.

Feet high on the foot plate

Strong use of the gluteal muscles and the hamstrings

Feet low on the foot plate

Strong use of the quadriceps

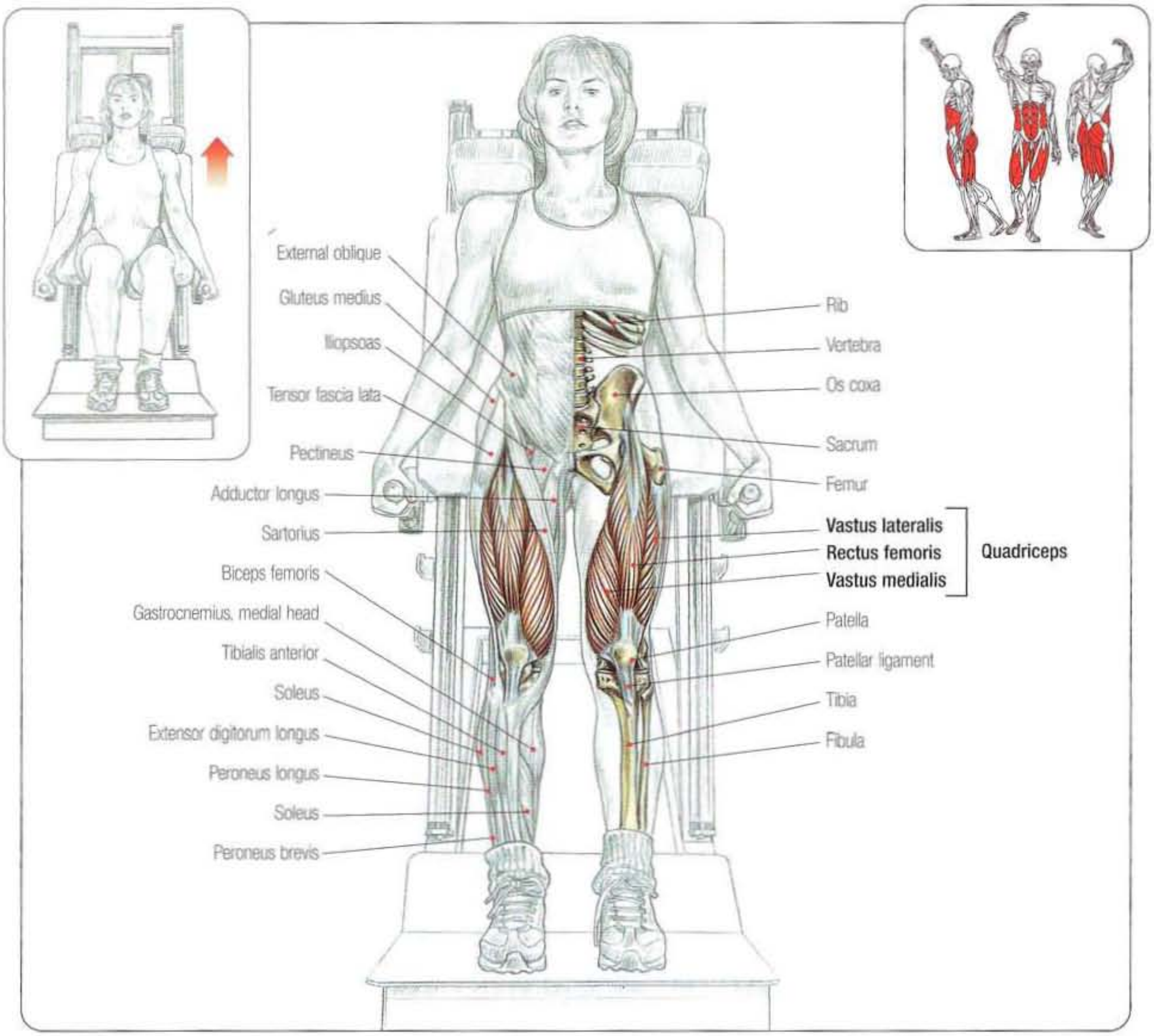
Feet apart

Strong use of the adductors

Feet close together

Strong use of the quadriceps

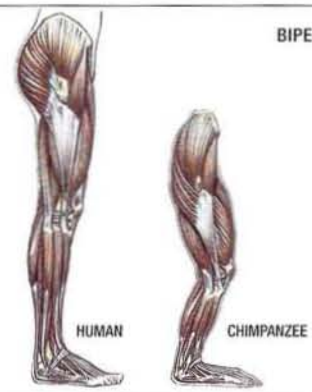
HACK SQUATS 6



Stand with the legs straight and feet slightly apart, back against the back pad, and shoulders positioned under the shoulder pads. (Hack refers to a "yoke." The pads are reminiscent of the collar placed around the neck of draft animals.):

- Inhale and release the safety catch. Bend the knees, then return to the initial position.
- Exhale at the end of the exercise.

This movement focuses the effort on the quadriceps. The more the feet are forward, the more the gluteal muscles will be used. To protect the back, contract the abdominal core, which eliminates lateral movement of the pelvis or cervical spine.

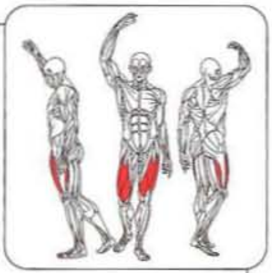


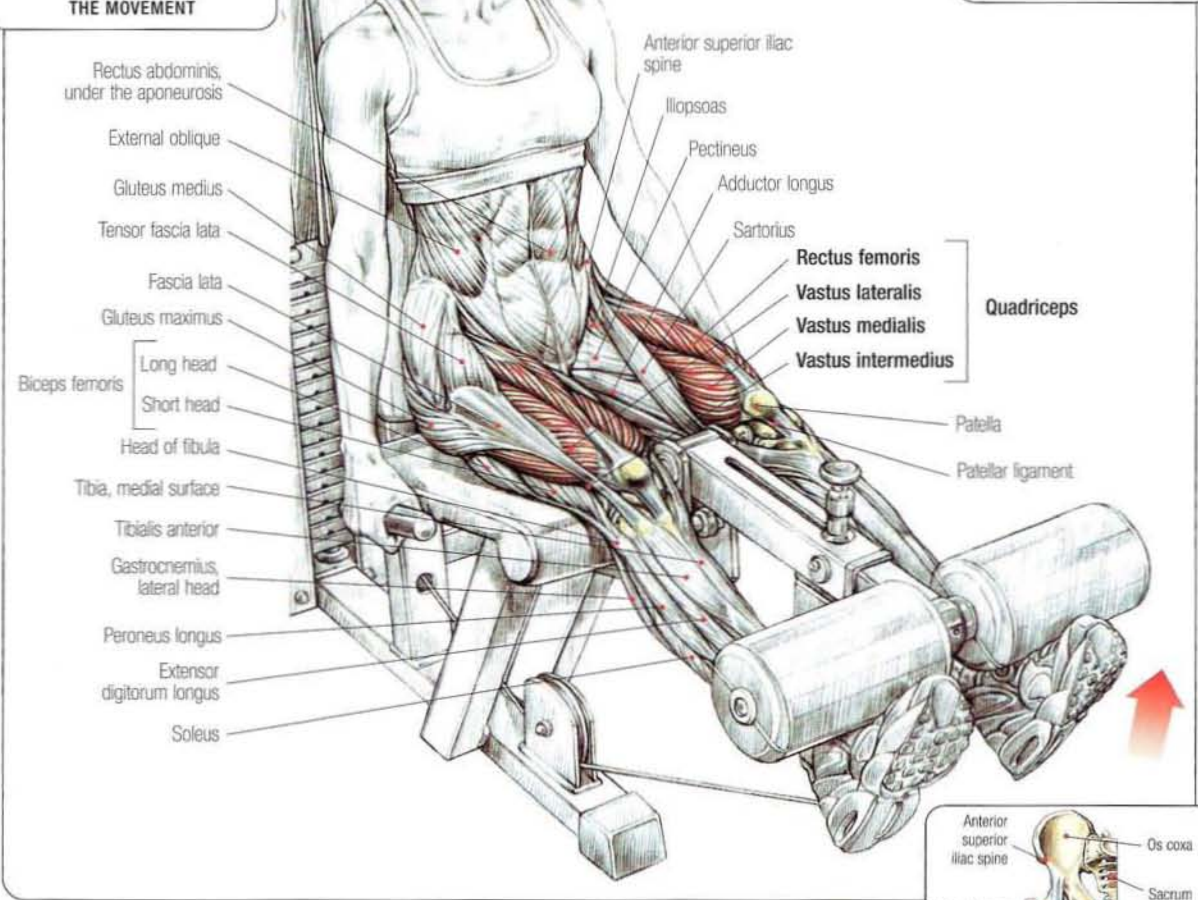
BIPEDAL ADAPTATION

In the chimpanzee, our closest relative, the well-developed torso is paired with an underdeveloped gluteus maximus, which makes raising the trunk and standing erect difficult and causes an awkward two-footed gait.

The human is the only primate who has completely adapted to walking upright on two legs. Besides the well-developed gluteus maximus, the entire human structure has adapted to walking on two legs. For example, the torso is relatively small, which makes holding it erect easier, and, unlike the gorilla or chimpanzee, humans can lock the knee joint when it is extended, which makes standing much less tiring.

7 LEG EXTENSIONS



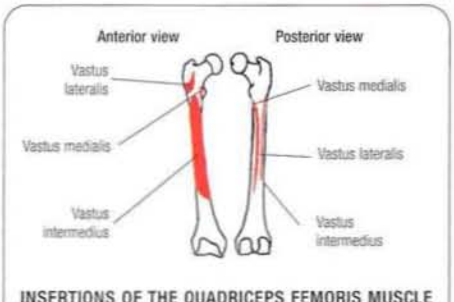


Sit at the machine and grasp the handles or the seat to hold the torso immobile. Bend the knees and place the ankles under the ankle pads.

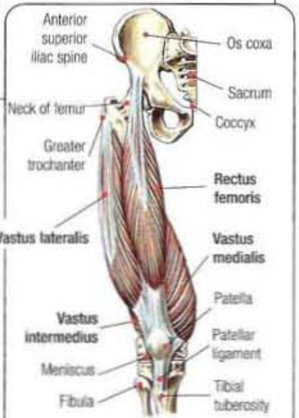
- Inhale and raise the legs to horizontal.
- Exhale at the end of the exercise.

This is the best exercise for isolating the quadriceps. The greater the angle of the backrest, the farther toward the back the pelvis rotates. This exercise stretches the rectus femoris, which is the midline biarticular portion of the quadriceps, which makes the work on it more intense while extending the legs.

This movement is recommended for beginners so that they can develop enough strength to move on to more technically demanding exercises.

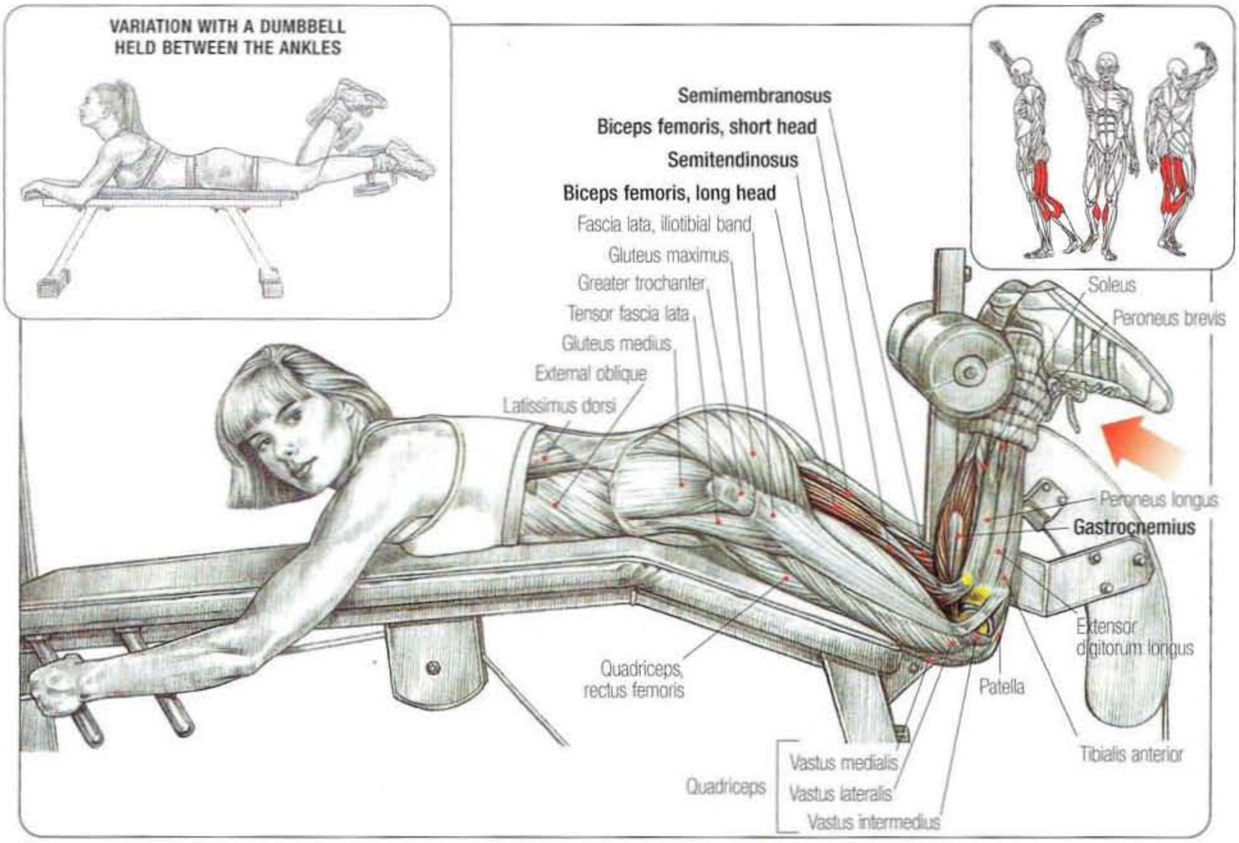


INSERTIONS OF THE QUADRICEPS FEMORIS MUSCLE ONTO THE FEMUR



QUADRICEPS FEMORIS MUSCLE

LYING LEG CURLS 8



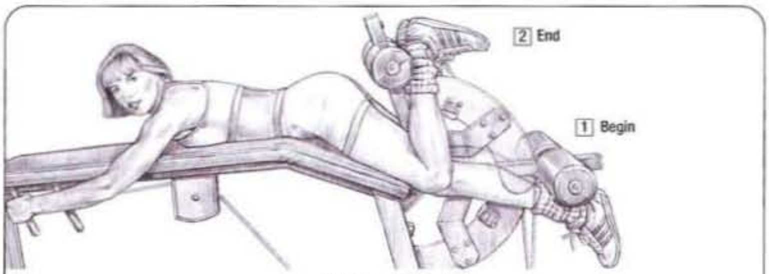
Lie facedown on the machine, holding the handles, legs extended, and ankles positioned under the ankle pads:

- Inhale and bend both legs at the same time, trying to touch the gluteal muscles with the heels.
- Exhale at the end of the effort.
- Return to the initial position with a controlled movement.

This exercise works the hamstring group and gastrocnemius and deeper, the popliteus muscle. In theory, during flexion, it is possible to target the semitendinosus and semimembranosus by internally rotating the feet, or to target the long and short heads of the biceps femoris by externally rotating the feet. But in practice, this proves to be difficult, and only emphasis on the hamstrings and the gastrocnemius can be easily achieved:

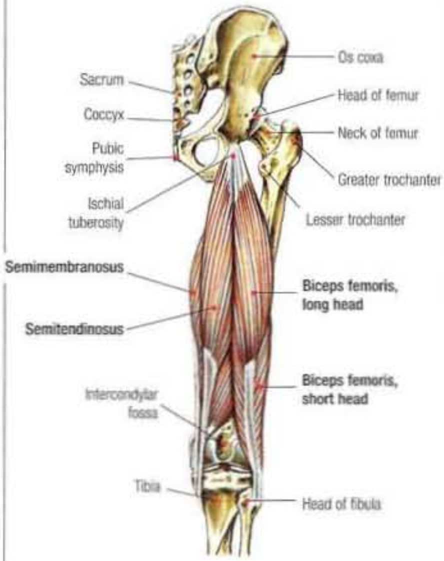
- Point the toes (plantar flexion) to feel the effort in the hamstrings.
- Flex the feet (dorisflexion) to feel the effort in the gastrocnemius.

Variation: This exercise may be performed by alternating the legs.

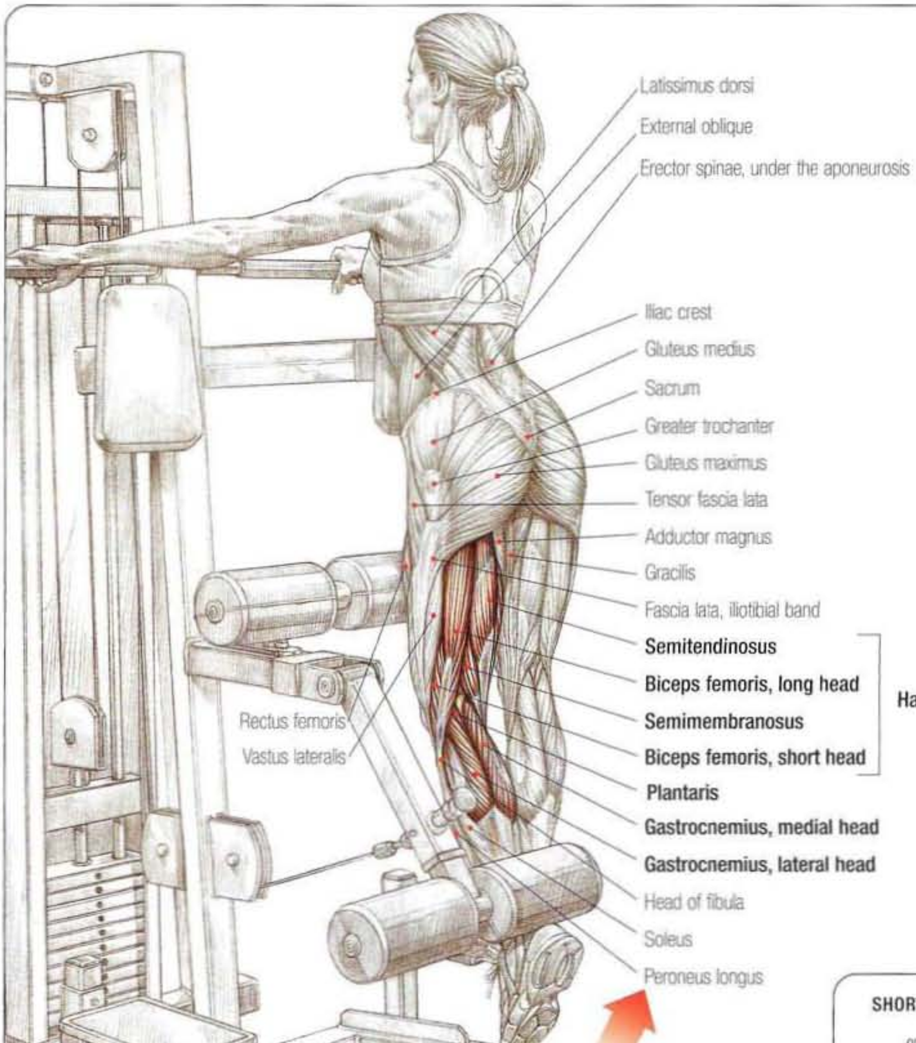


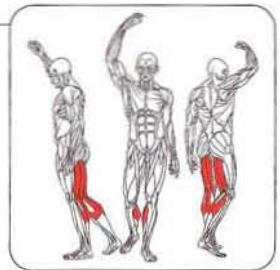
THE MOVEMENT

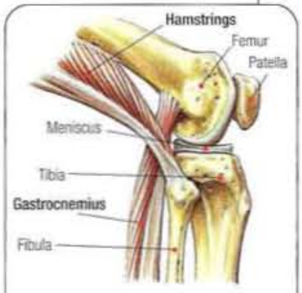
HAMSTRING MUSCLES



9 STANDING LEG CURLS







Contracting the hamstrings and the lateral and medial heads of the gastrocnemius flexes the knee joint.

THE MOVEMENT

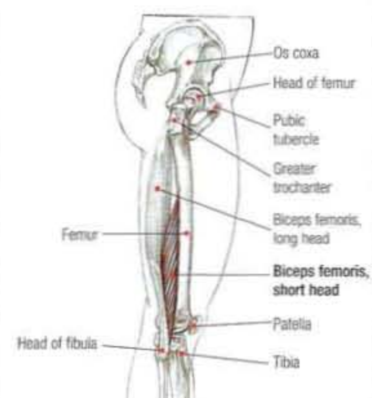
Stand with the torso resting against the pad, thigh positioned against the knee pad, the knee straight, and the back of the ankle resting against the ankle roll:

- Inhale and bend at the knee.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

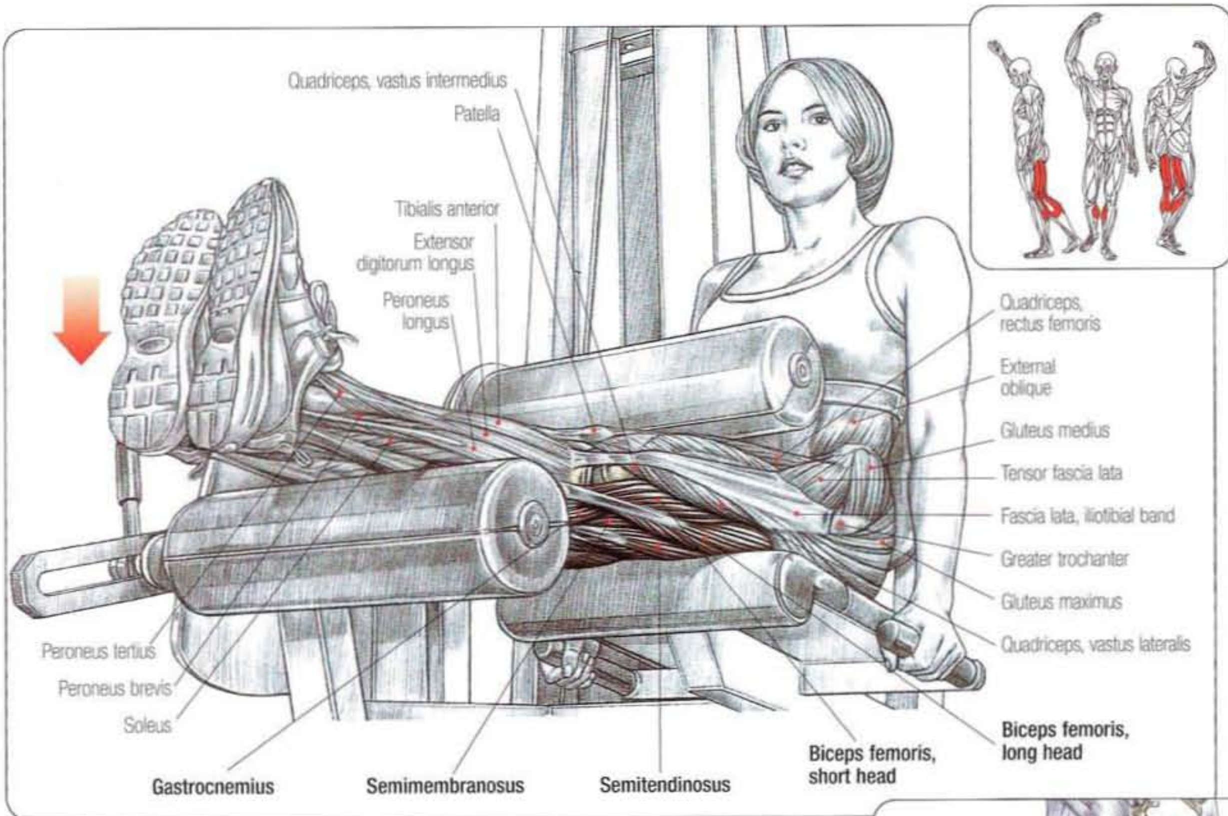
This exercise uses the hamstring group (semitendinosus and semimembranosus and the long and short heads of the biceps femoris) and, to a lesser extent, the gastrocnemius. To engage the gastrocnemius more, simply bend at the ankle when bending at the knee. To decrease its participation, which is often the goal, simply point the toes.

SHORT HEAD OF THE BICEPS FEMORIS

Of all the flexor muscles, only the short head of the biceps femoris works across just one joint: It bends the knee.



SEATED LEG CURLS 10



Sit at the machine, with the legs extended, ankles resting on the ankle pad, thighs positioned between the thigh pad and the seat, holding the handles:

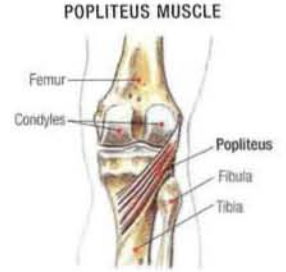
- Inhale and bend the knees.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

This exercise uses the hamstring muscles and, deeper, the popliteus. To a lesser extent, it works the gastrocnemius.

Variations

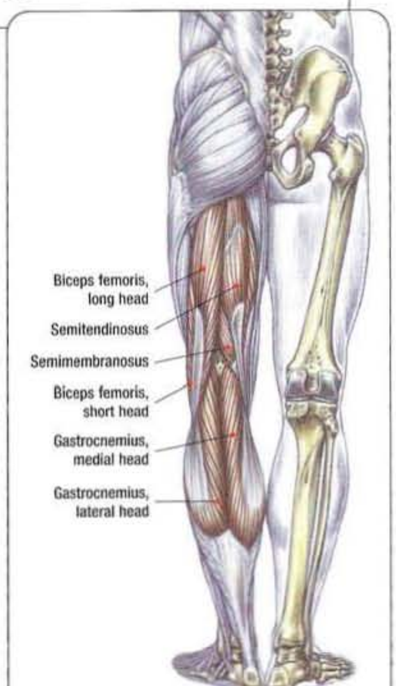
- Perform the exercise with the feet in dorsiflexion (feet flexed) to increase the work of the gastrocnemius muscles.
- Perform the exercise with the feet in plantar flexion (toes pointed) to focus the effort on the hamstrings.

POPLITEUS MUSCLE



The popliteus, located on the posterior side of the leg at the knee joint, works with the hamstrings and gastrocnemius to bend the leg.

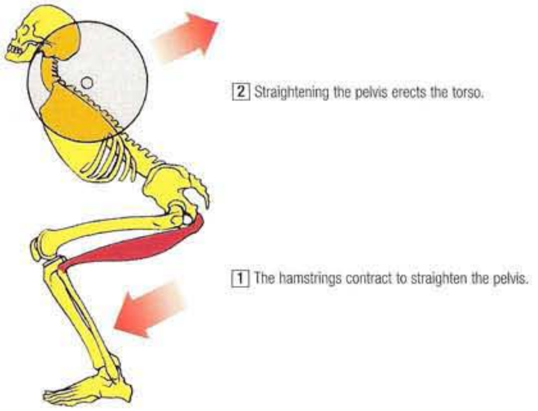
END OF MOVEMENT



MUSCLES USED

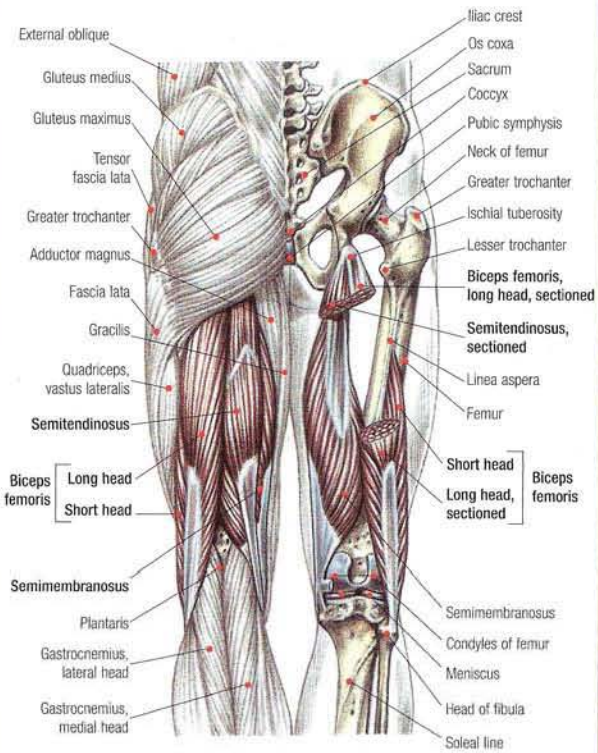
HAMSTRING MUSCLE TEARS

ACTION OF THE HAMSTRING MUSCLES DURING THE SQUAT



While performing the squat, the hamstring muscles contract to straighten the pelvis, which at the same time prevents the torso from tilting too far forward (as long as pelvis is aligned with the torso by contracting the abdominal and lumbar muscles).

HAMSTRING MUSCLES



Muscle tearing of the hamstrings

In bodybuilding, hamstring tears occur frequently. This injury occurs most often during the squat when the torso is too far forward. The hamstring muscle group, with the exception of the short head of biceps femoris, is in an extremely stretched position and contracts forcefully to straighten the pelvis. This can lead to tearing, most often at the high or middle portion of the muscle group.

Hamstring tears can also occur when working at a leg curl machine using heavy weights. This most often occurs at the beginning of the movement when the legs are extended and the muscles are stretched.

Although in general, the tears in hamstring muscle fibers are not extensive and not serious (it is rare to see a significant tear in the muscle or its tendinous insertion), they are always painful and prone to complications.

In fact, fibrous scarring frequently occurs after a tear in this muscle group, which creates friction that is especially painful and incapacitating during sport activity. Furthermore, this inelastic scar tissue is liable to tear during intense effort.

Preventing hamstring tearing

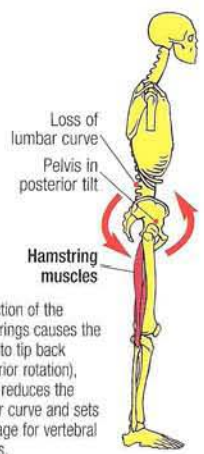
To prevent muscle tears, perform either a specific stretching workout or incorporate hamstring stretches during a lifting workout between sets of squats and deadlifts and exercises for the back of the thigh.

Certain weightlifting exercises, such as good mornings or stiff-legged deadlifts, can be considered the best hamstring protectors because of their combined action of muscle strengthening and stretching.

After hamstring tearing

To prevent the formation of fibrous scar tissue in the hamstrings, it is essential to reeducate the muscles as soon as possible. A week after a tear, you must perform gentle stretches for the back of the thighs. The goal is to stretch the injured muscles and especially to soften the scar so that it doesn't tear when you resume training.

RETRACTION OF THE HAMSTRINGS



Retraction of the hamstrings causes the pelvis to tip back (posterior rotation), which reduces the lumbar curve and sets the stage for vertebral injuries.

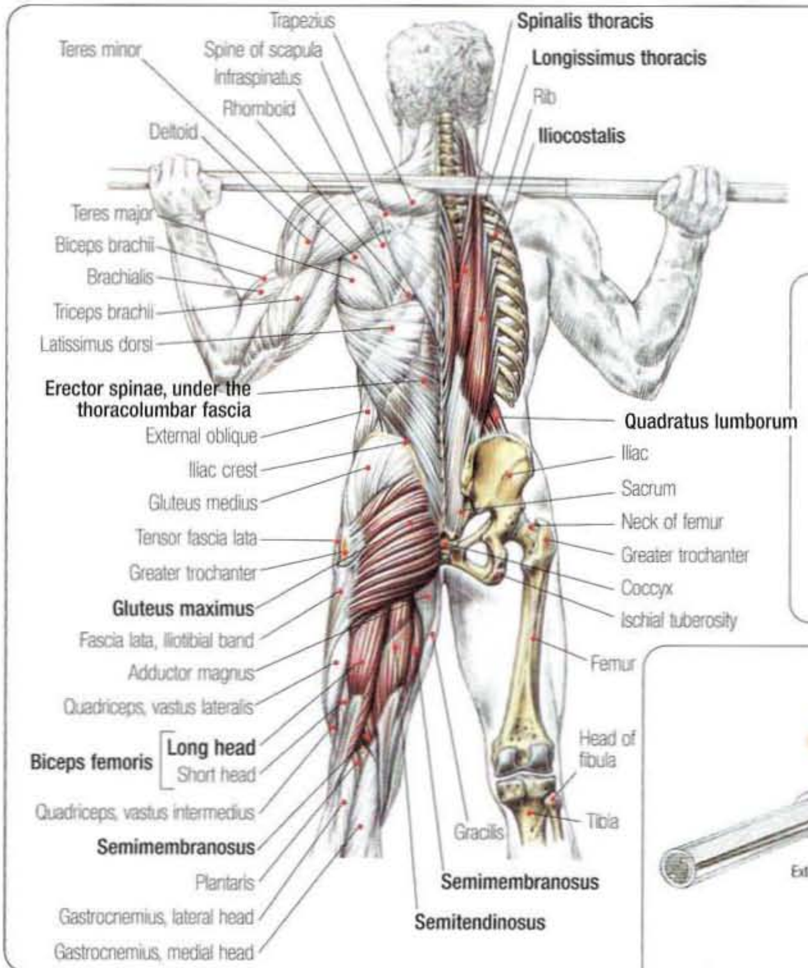
In today's modern world, sitting for long periods during the day can lead to retraction of the hamstring muscles in certain people.

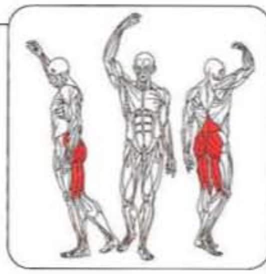
This retraction of the muscles on the back of the thigh tips the pelvis back and reduces the normal curvature of the spine.

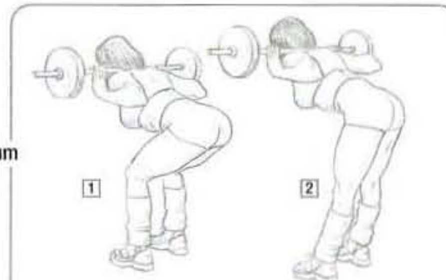
This causes the person to adopt poor posture with the pelvis tucked under and the back rounded, which over time can lead to vertebral injuries. To limit this relatively frequently occurring retraction of the hamstrings, stretching movements such as an easy good morning with straight legs and the stiff-legged deadlift are recommended. Hamstring stretches after a hamstring workout are also recommended.

Comment: A massage therapist can also treat fibrous scars by using massage or mechanical techniques aimed at softening the lesion.

GOOD MORNINGS 11

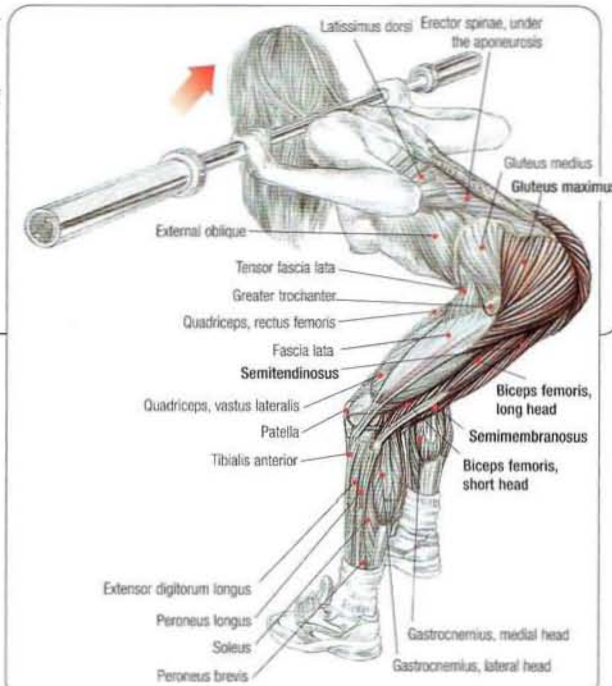






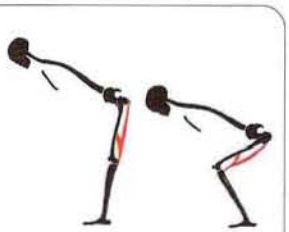
TWO WAYS TO PERFORM GOOD MORNINGS

1 Bent knees 2 Straight knees



Straightening the legs while tilting forward lengthens the hamstrings, helping to better feel the contraction while straightening the trunk.

Bending the knees while tilting forward allows the hamstrings to relax, which facilitates hip flexion.



Stand with the feet slightly apart and the bar resting on the trapezius or a little lower on the posterior deltoid:

- Inhale and bend the torso forward, keeping the back straight. The axis of rotation should pass through the coxofemoral joints.
- Return to the initial position and exhale.

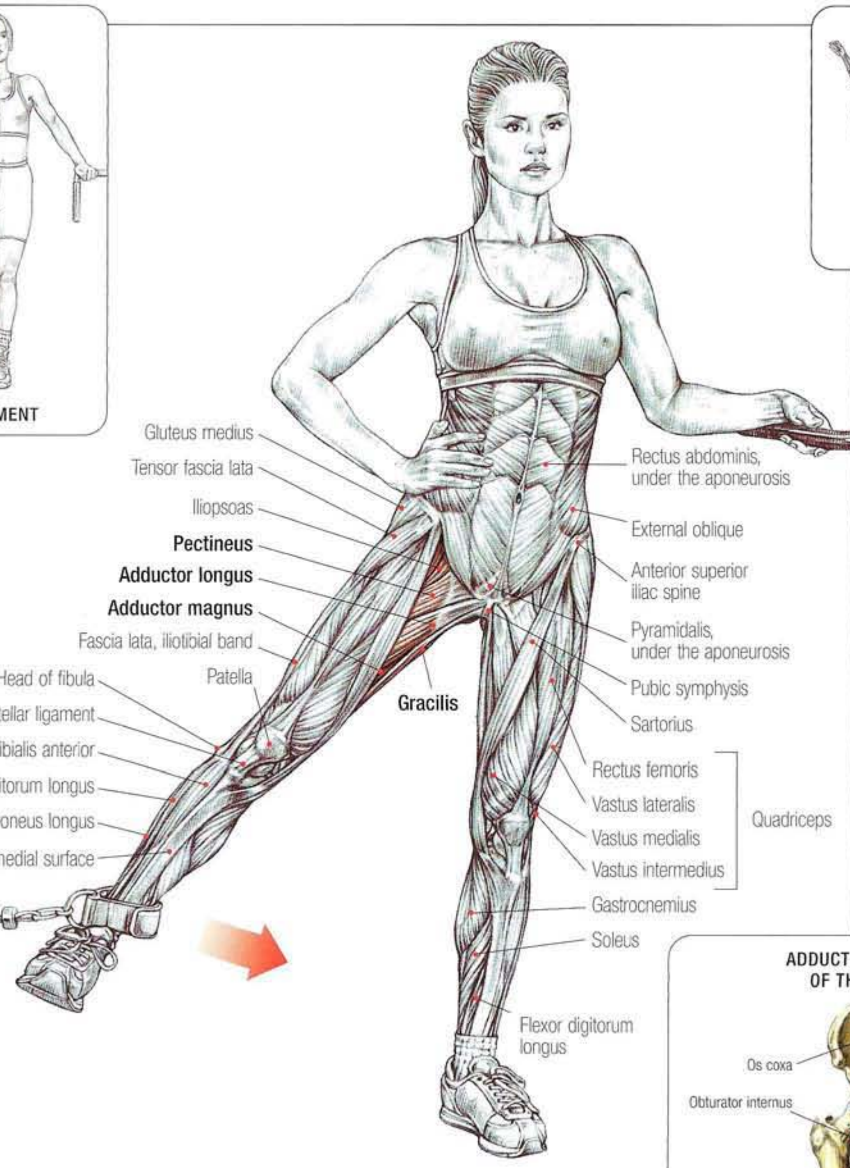
To make the exercise easier, bend slightly at the knees.

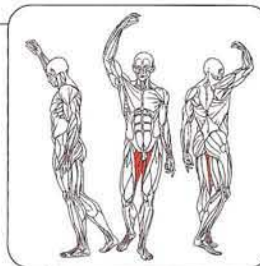
This movement, which works the gluteus maximus and the spinal group, is especially noteworthy for the action on the hamstrings (except the short head of the biceps femoris, which only flexes the knee). Besides knee flexion, the main function of the hamstrings is to tip the pelvis back (posterior rotation) and straighten the torso when the pelvis is locked to the torso through isometric contraction of the abdominal core and the lumbosacral muscle group.

To better feel the work of the hamstrings, don't work with heavy weights. In the negative phase, the good morning is excellent for stretching the back of the thighs. Worked regularly, it helps prevent injury when executing a heavy squat.

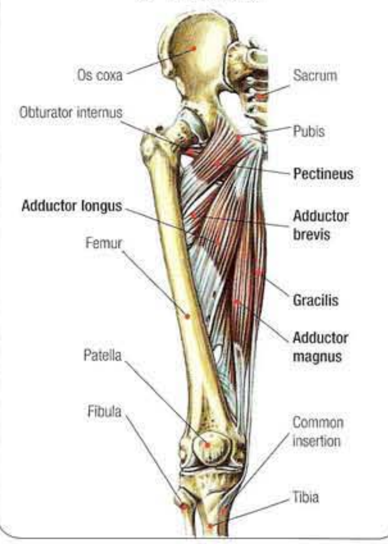
12 CABLE ADDUCTIONS

THE MOVEMENT





ADDUCTOR MUSCLES OF THE THIGHS

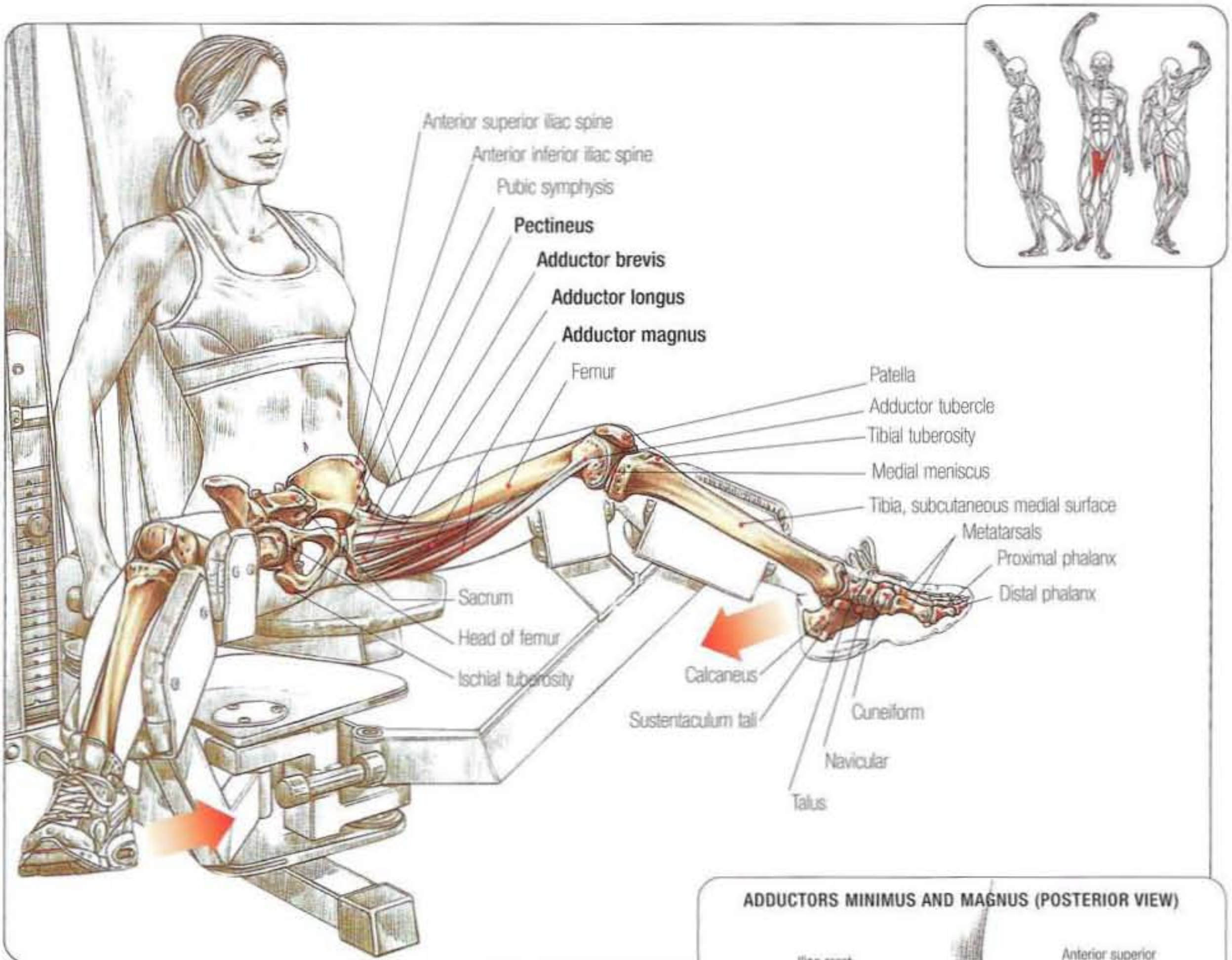


Stand on one leg, with the other leg in the ankle cuff and the hand of the supporting leg holding onto the machine:

- Pull the cable across the support leg.

This exercise works the adductor group (pectineus; adductors brevis, longus, and magnus; and gracilis). To develop definition of the inside of the thighs, perform sets of high repetitions.

MACHINE ADDUCTIONS 13



Sit at the machine with the legs spread apart:

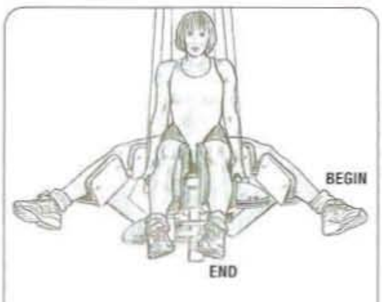
- Contract the thighs to bring the legs together.
- Return to the initial position with a controlled movement.

This exercise works the adductor muscle group (pectineus; adductors minimus, magnus, brevis and longus; and gracilis) and allows you to use heavier weights than you can with the cable adductions but with a decreased range of motion.

Best results are achieved in long sets until you feel a burn.

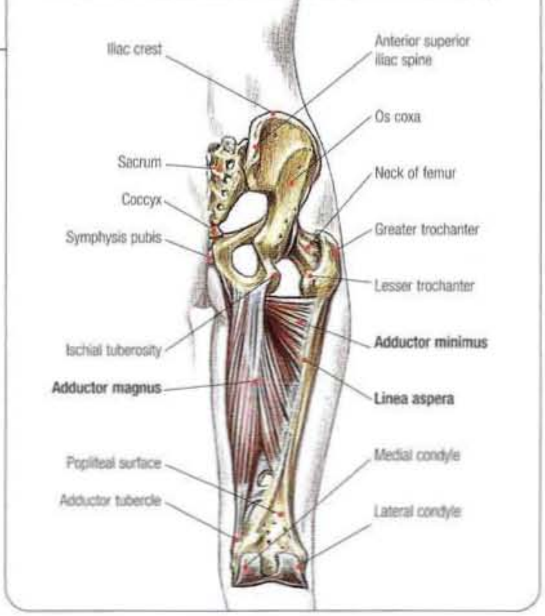
Comment: Perform this exercise to strengthen the adductors. This muscle group is often injured during intense exertion.

Therefore, increase the weights gradually and perform adductor muscle stretches at the end of the workout.



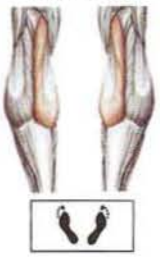
THE MOVEMENT

ADDUCTORS MINIMUS AND MAGNUS (POSTERIOR VIEW)

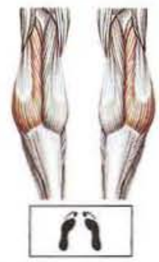


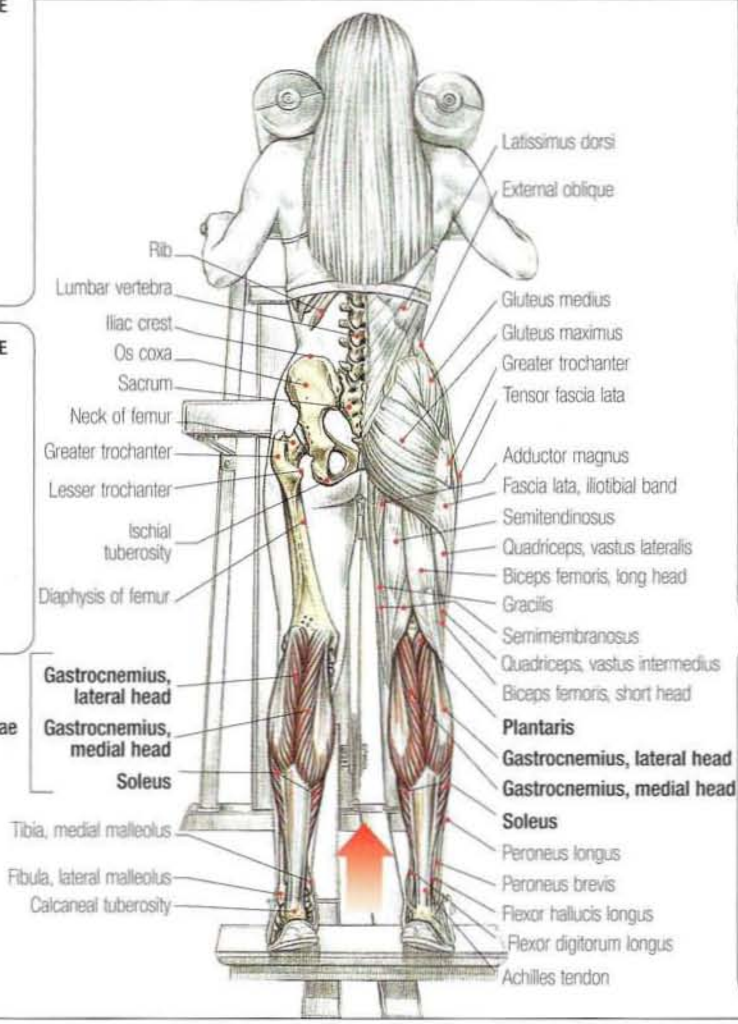
14 STANDING CALF RAISES

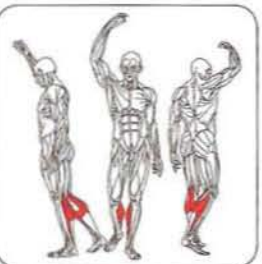
GASTROCNEMIUS MUSCLE MEDIAL HEAD



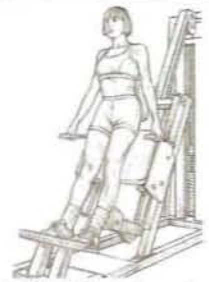
GASTROCNEMIUS MUSCLE LATERAL HEAD







THE MOVEMENT



Variation: Performing the exercise at an incline machine works the calves without overloading the back.

THE MOVEMENT

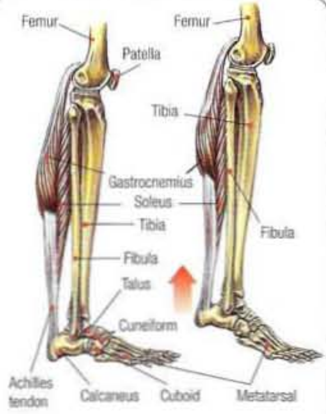
Stand at the machine with a straight back, shoulders under the pads, and the balls of the feet on the foot plate, with the calves relaxed and the heels hanging down:

- Rise up by extending (plantar flex) the feet, keeping the knees straight.

This exercise uses the triceps surae (made up of the soleus and the lateral and medial heads of the gastrocnemius). Move the feet through the complete range of flexion with each repetition in order to stretch the muscles properly. In theory, it is possible to isolate the medial gastrocnemius by pointing the toes out and to isolate the lateral gastrocnemius by pointing the toes in. But in practice, this is difficult to achieve. Only separating the work of the soleus and gastrocnemius is easy to achieve. This is done by flexing the knees to relax the gastrocnemius and to put more effort on the soleus.

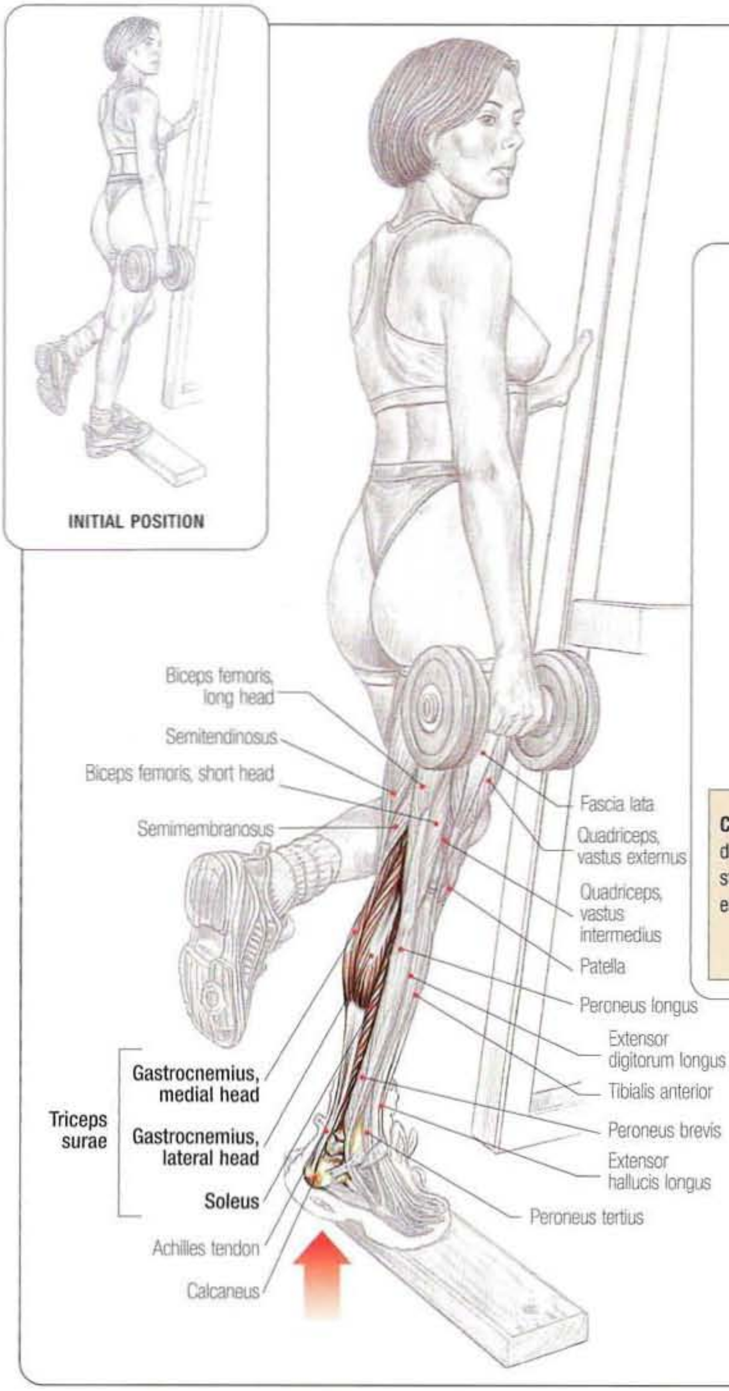
Variations: Perform the exercise at a frame with a wedge under the feet or with a free bar without the wedge for more balance; however, this reduces the amplitude of movement.

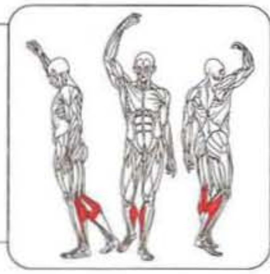
Comment: The triceps surae is an extremely powerful, tough muscle group that alone raises the entire weight of the body thousands of times in a day when we walk. Don't hesitate to work it with heavy weights.



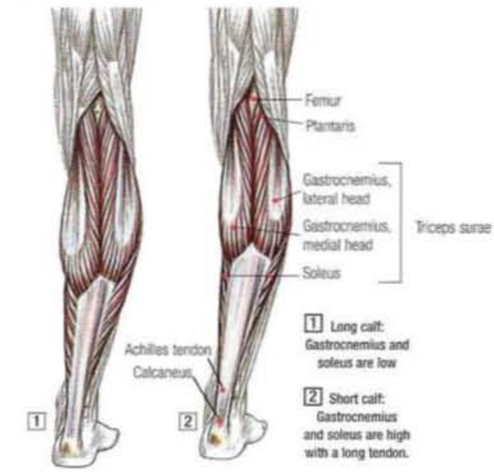
TRICEPS SURAE ACTION

ONE-LEG TOE RAISES 15





TWO TYPES OF CALVES



Comment: Some people have an unusual triceps surae that does not grow larger with training. These people can develop strength only. Long gastrocnemius and soleus muscles develop easily. Conversely, short calves resist developing bulk.

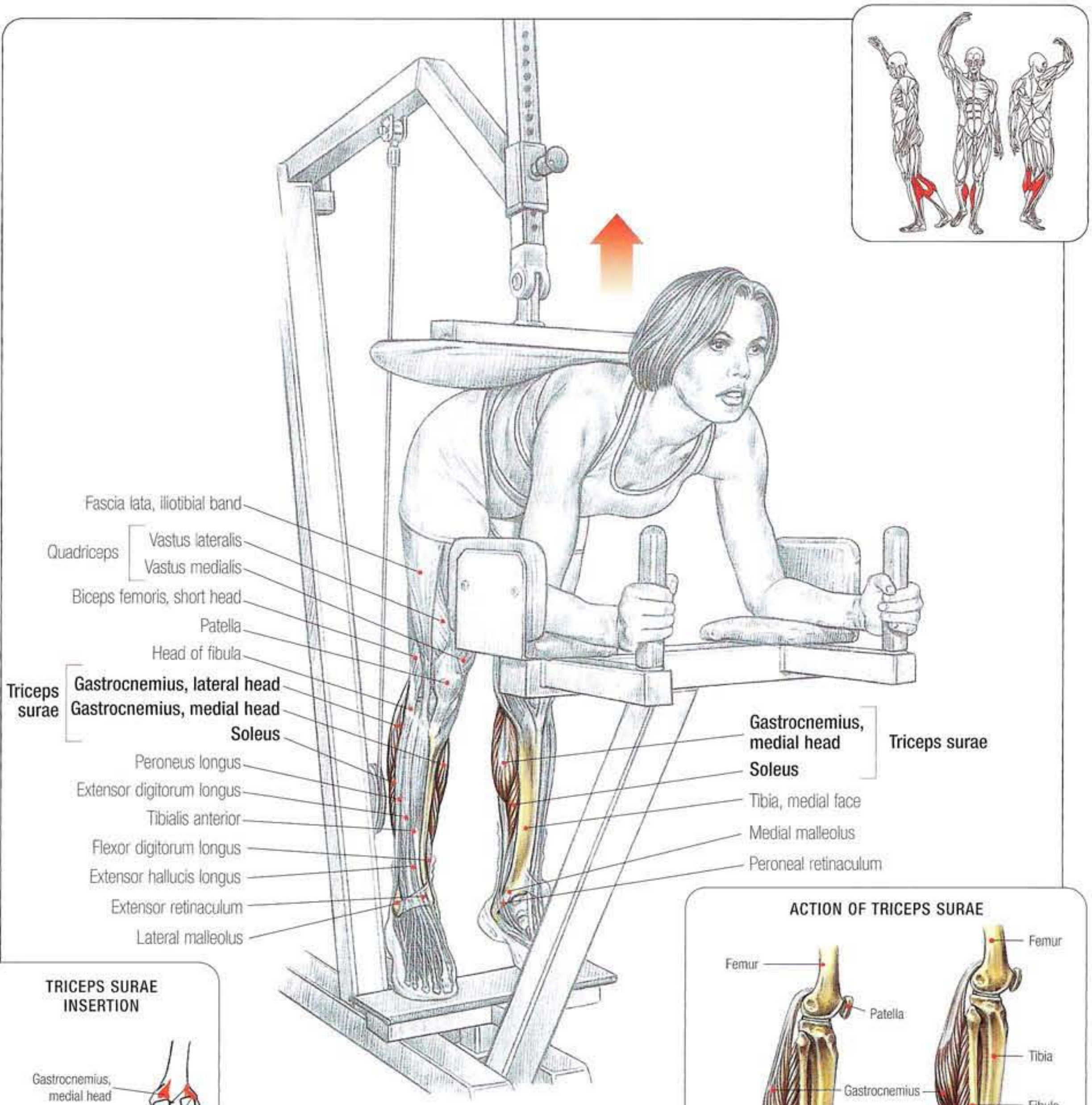
TRICEPS SURAE MUSCLE GROUP

Stand with the toes of one foot on the foot plate and hold a dumbbell in one hand and use the other hand for support and balance:

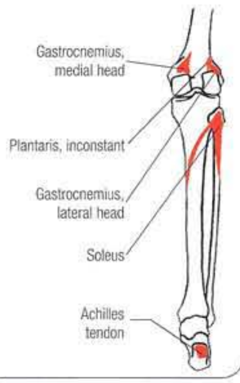
- Rise up on the toes (plantar flexion), keeping the knee joint straight or slightly flexed.
- Return to the initial position.

This exercise contracts the triceps surae. Completely flex the foot with each repetition in order to stretch the triceps surae properly. Optimal results are obtained through long sets until you feel a burn.

16 DONKEY CALF RAISES



TRICEPS SURAE INSERTION



Stand with the legs relaxed, toes on the foot plate and heels hanging down, legs extended, torso leaning forward, forearms resting on the front support, and the padded plate of the machine resting on the back of the hips:

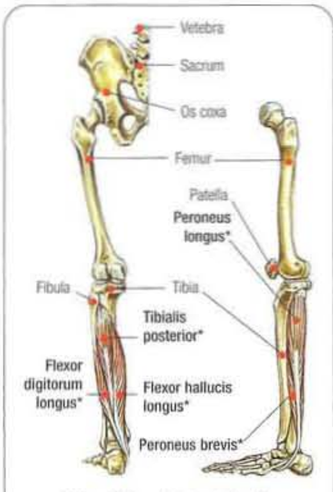
- Rise up by extending the ankles and pointing the toes (plantar flexion).

This exercise focuses on the triceps surae, especially the gastrocnemius.

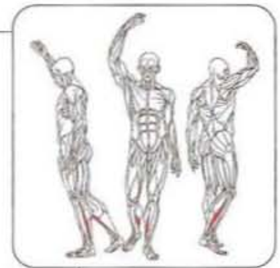
Variation: If there's no machine for this exercise, put a block under the feet, bend forward, and rest the forearms on a support, and perform this exercise while someone straddles your hips.

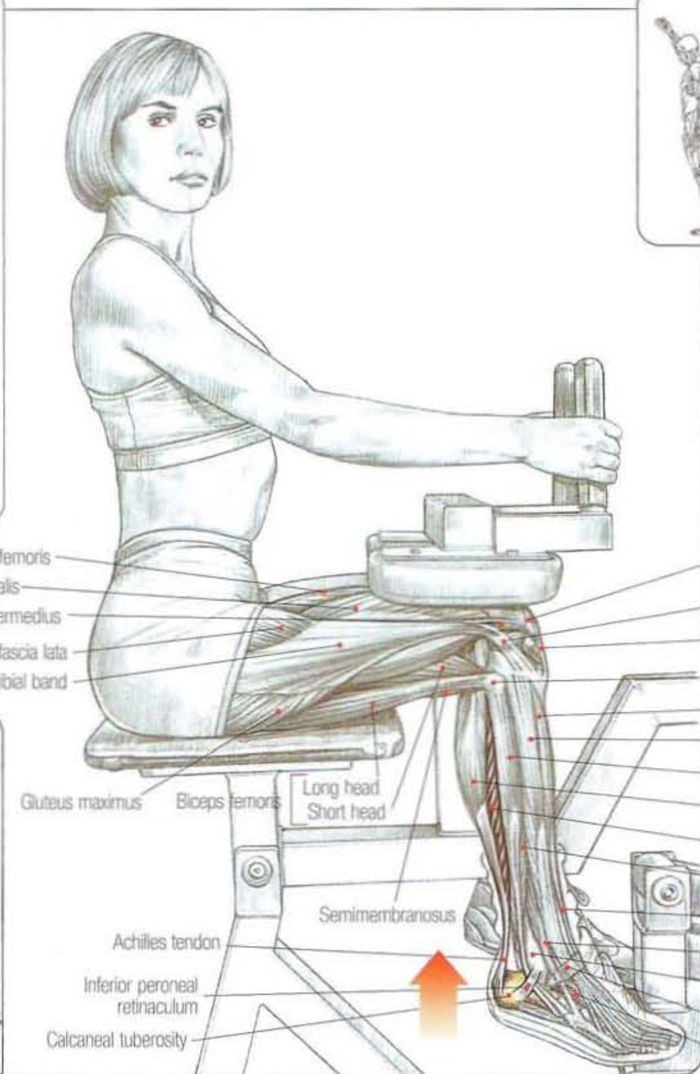
ACTION OF TRICEPS SURAE

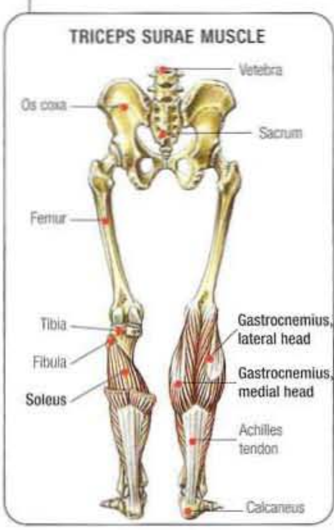
SEATED CALF RAISES 17



*Although it is not their main function these muscles participate in foot extension.







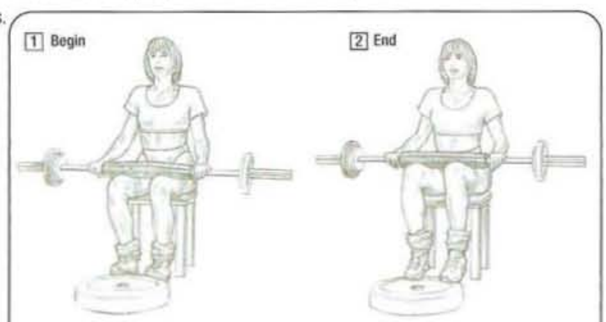
Sit at a machine, with the knees positioned under the pads, the toes on the foot bar, and the ankles relaxed:

- Extend the feet and point the toes.

This exercise isolates the soleus, whose name is derived from its resemblance to the flat fish, the sole. (This muscle inserts at the top at the tibia and fibula under the knee joint and attaches at the bottom to the calcaneus by the Achilles tendon. Its purpose is to extend the feet at the ankles.)

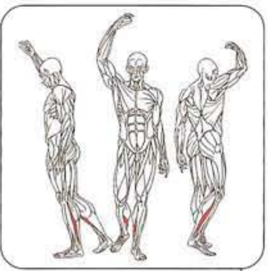
Bending at the knees relaxes the gastrocnemius, which attaches at the top above the knee joint and at the bottom onto the Achilles tendon, and reduces its contribution to ankle extension.

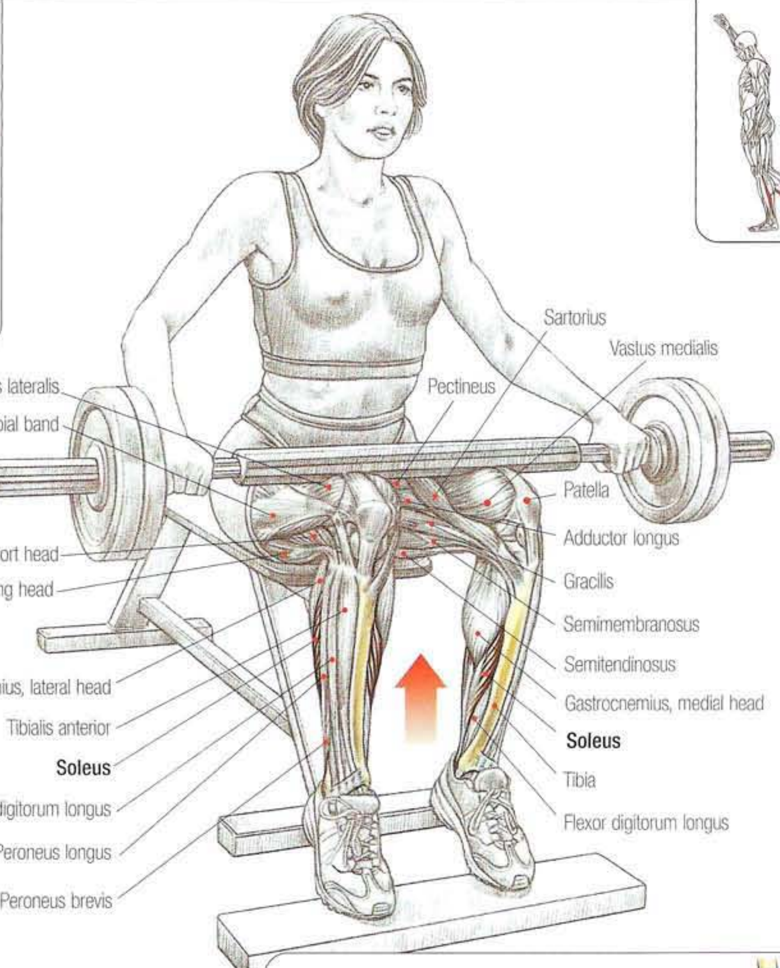
Variation: You can also perform this exercise by sitting on a bench with a wedge under the feet and a barbell resting on the thighs. Wrap the bar for comfort.



VARIATION WITH A BARBELL RESTING ON THE KNEES

18 SEATED BARBELL CALF RAISES





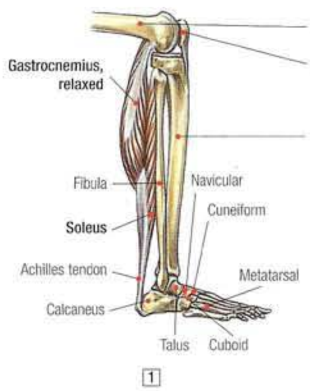
Sit on a bench with a block under the toes and the barbell resting on the thighs:

- Extend (plantar flex) the ankle.

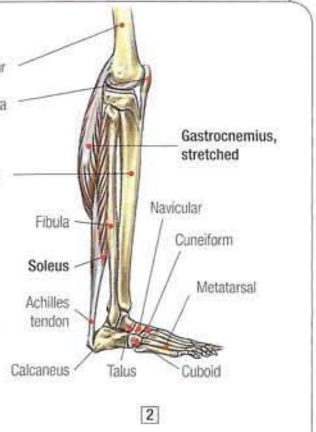
Attention: Cushion the bar on the thighs with a rubber pad or a folded towel to reduce pain.

This exercise mainly uses the soleus. This muscle, which is part of the triceps surae group, inserts at the top below the knee joint on the tibia and fibula. At the bottom, it attaches to the calcaneus via the Achilles tendon. Its function is to extend the feet at the ankles. Unlike the calf raises, which allow you to work with heavy weights, this exercise does not allow heavy weights because of the awkwardness of the bar position. For best results, work in sets of 15 to 20 repetitions.

Variation: You can also perform this exercise without additional weights while sitting on a chair or bench. In this case, work in very long sets until you feel a burn.



When the knees are bent, the gastrocnemius muscle, which attaches above the knee, is relaxed. In this position, it weakly assists ankle extension because most of the work is done by the soleus.



Conversely, when the knee is straight, the gastrocnemius is stretched. In this position, it actively participates in ankle extension and completes the action of the soleus.

6 BUTTOCKS

Gluteal muscles, a human characteristic

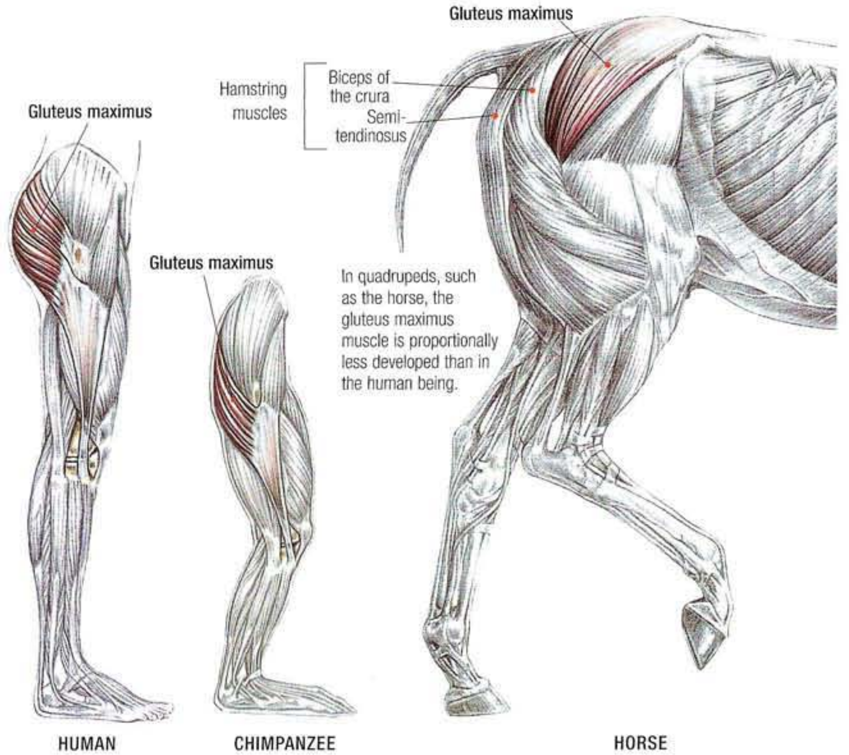
Although some of the larger primates occasionally walk, humans are the only primates and one of the few mammals that has completely adapted to two-legged locomotion. One of the structural features directly related to this way of getting around is the significant development of the gluteus maximus muscle, which has become the biggest and most powerful muscle in the human body.

The development of the gluteal muscles is truly a human characteristic. In comparison, the gluteal muscles in quadrupeds are proportionately underdeveloped, and the hindquarters of the horse, which some consider as typical for animals, is in fact made up of the hamstrings (the back of the thigh in humans).

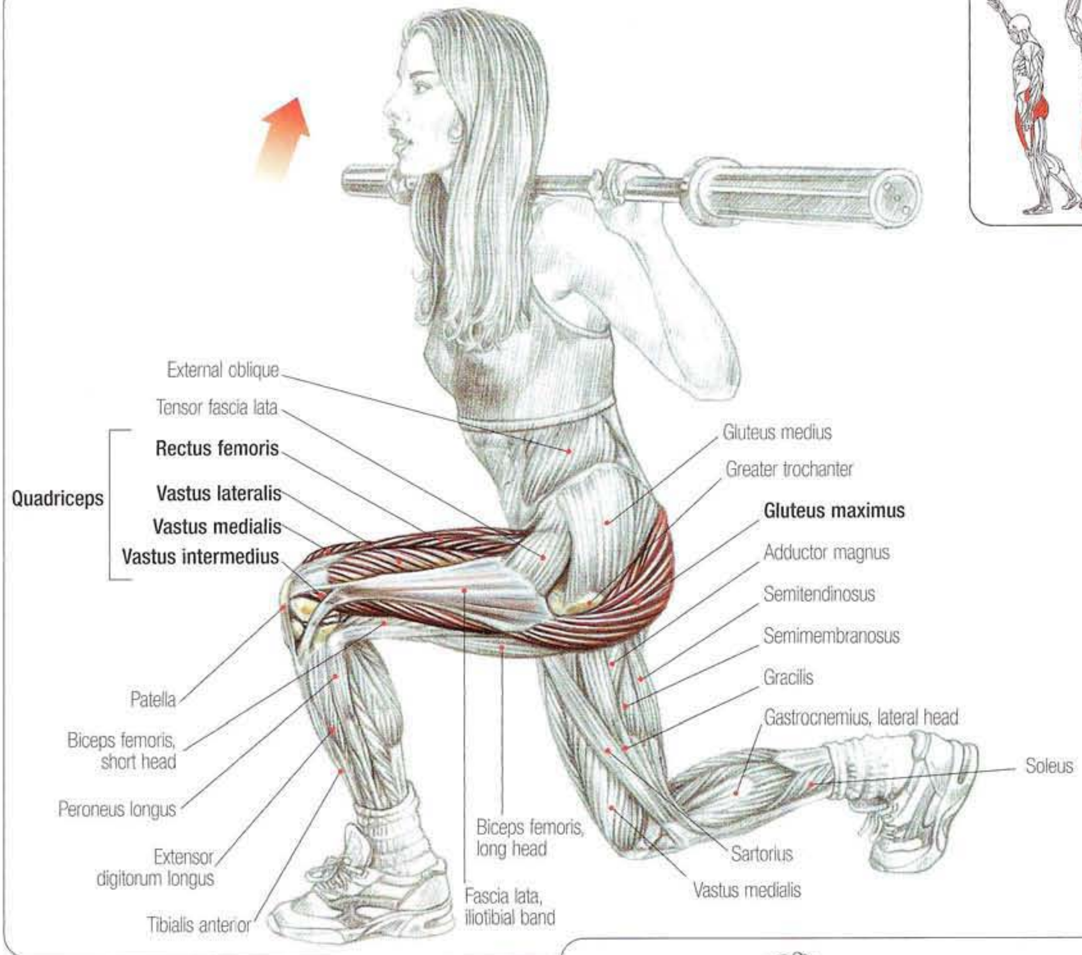
In humans, the gluteus maximus, which extends the hip, does not play an important role in walking. Instead, the hamstrings play the major role in straightening the pelvis (hip extension) with each stride. Just put your hand on the buttocks while walking, and you can feel that they do not contract much.

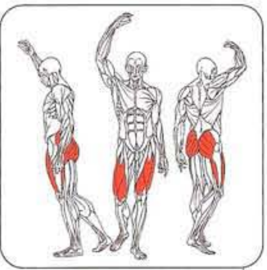
However, as soon as the effort becomes significant, such as when walking uphill, walking quickly, or running, the gluteal action is called into play to extend the hip and erect the torso.

These biomechanical points help explain why in exercises for the gluteal muscles and the hamstrings, such as good mornings (see page 107) and leg raises, either the gluteal muscles or the hamstrings are isolated depending on the amount of weight involved.



1 LUNGES



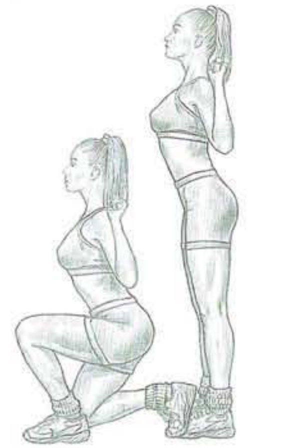


Stand with the legs slightly apart and the bar behind the neck resting on the trapezius muscles:

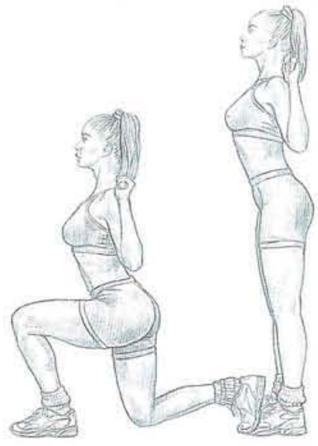
- Inhale and take a big step forward, keeping the trunk as straight as possible.
- Lunge until the front thigh is horizontal to the floor or slightly less.
- Exhale and return to the initial position.

This exercise, which works the gluteus maximus intensely, can be performed two different ways: either by taking a small step (which isolates the quadriceps) or taking a big step (which isolates the hamstrings and gluteus maximus and stretches the rectus femoris and iliopsoas of the back leg).

Comment: Because the front leg must support almost all the weight in the lunge position and the exercise demands a good sense of balance, begin with very light weights.

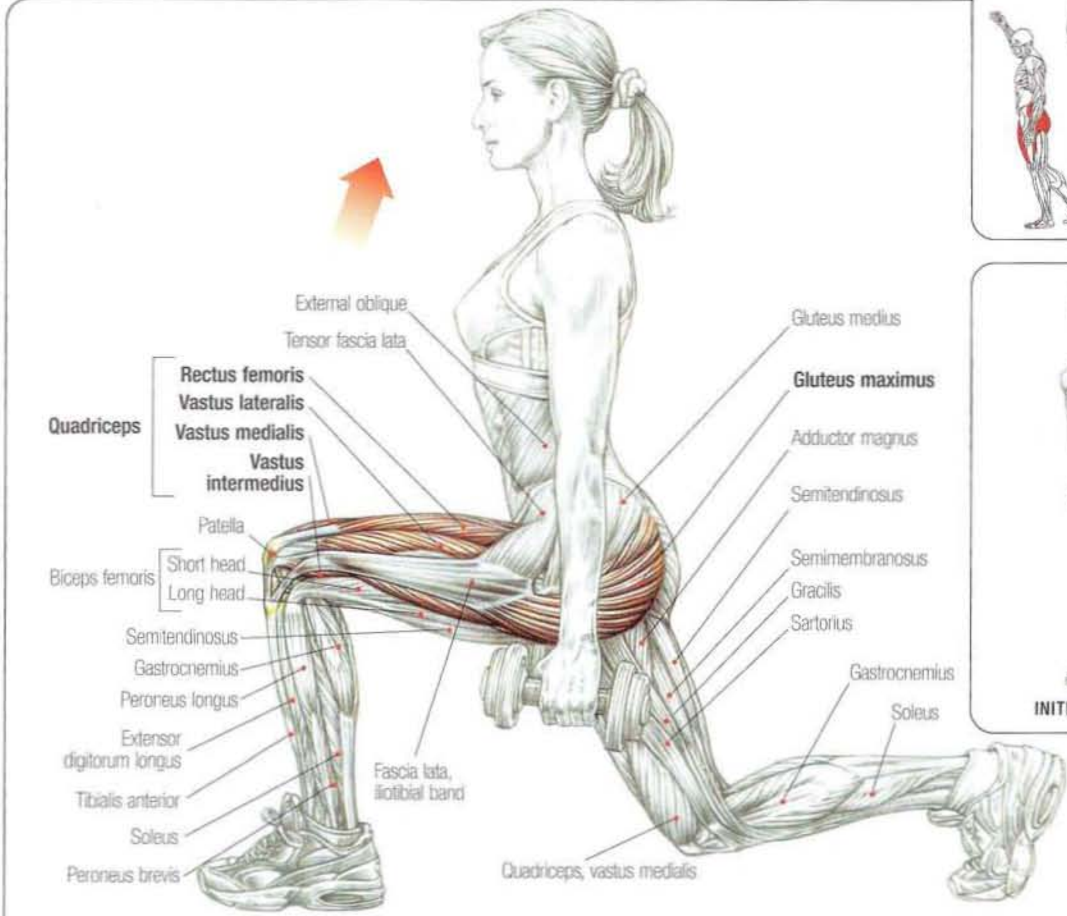


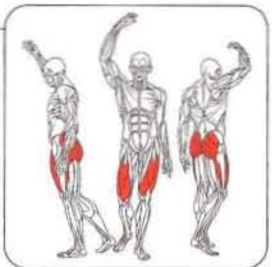
1 EXECUTION WITH A SMALL STEP: PREDOMINANTLY WORKS THE QUADRICEPS

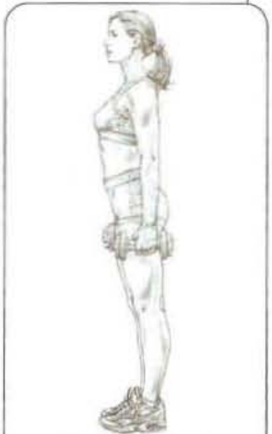


2 EXECUTION WITH A BIG STEP: PREDOMINANTLY WORKS THE GLUTEUS MAXIMUS

DUMBBELL LUNGES 2







INITIAL POSITION

Stand with the legs slightly apart and hold a dumbbell in each hand:

- Inhale and take a big step forward, keeping the torso as straight as possible.
- When the forward thigh reaches horizontal or slightly below, use tonic extension to return to the initial position.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

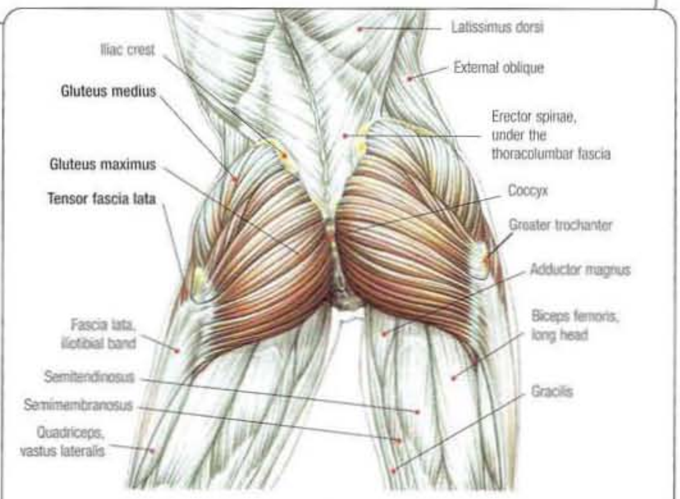
This exercise mainly works the gluteus maximus and quadriceps.

Variations: The bigger the step, the more the gluteus maximus of the forward leg is used and the iliopsoas and rectus femoris of the back leg is stretched.

A smaller step isolates the quadriceps of the forward leg.

You can perform a complete set on one side and then the other or work the legs alternately during the same set.

Comment: Because all of the weight is supported by the front leg in the lunge position and the exercise requires a good sense of balance, work with light weights to protect the knee.



ANATOMY OF THE BUTTOCKS

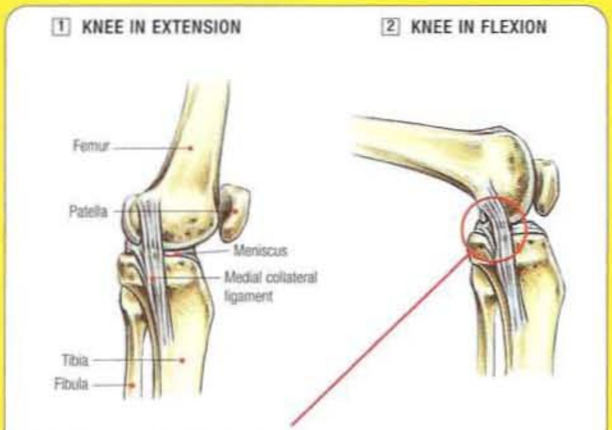
KNEE INSTABILITY

When the knee is extended, the medial and lateral collateral ligaments are stretched and prevent rotation of the joint. When you are standing, the knee locks in extension, and there is no need for muscle tension to stabilize the joint.

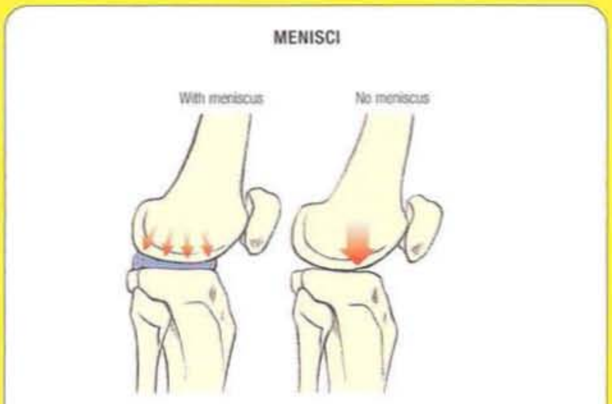
When the knee is bent, the medial and lateral collateral ligaments are relaxed. In this position muscle tension provides the stability.

When the knee flexes and rotates, the meniscus travels forward. Then, if extension is not controlled, the meniscus may not return to its normal position fast enough and becomes pinched between the condyles, which can tear the meniscus. If a piece of the meniscus is severed when it is pinched, surgery may be necessary to remove it.

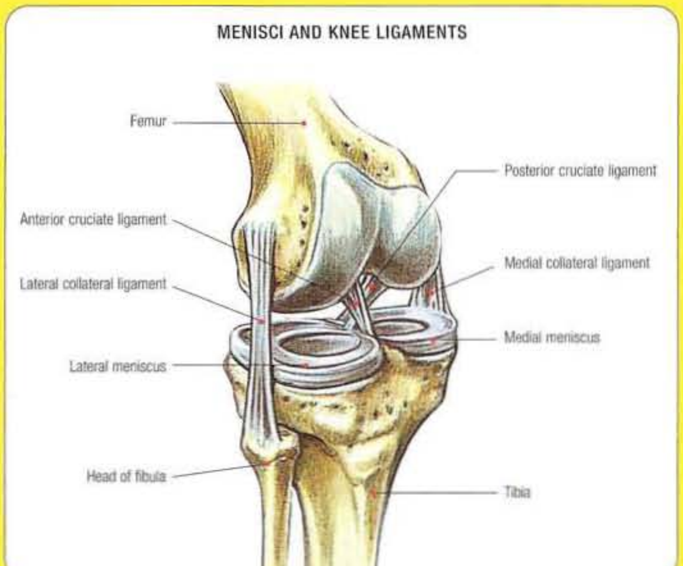
With asymmetrical exercises such as the lunge (see page 116), control the speed and the form of the movement to protect the knee.



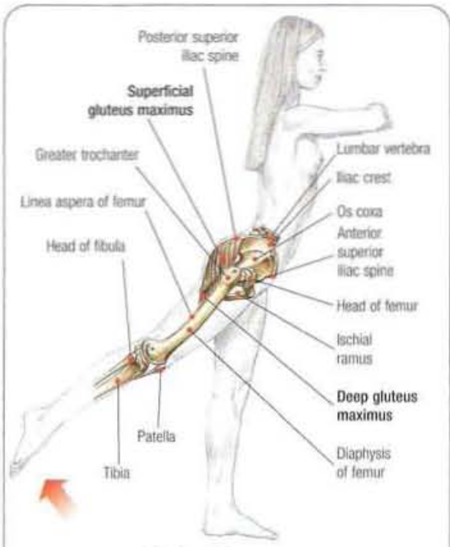
When the knee is flexed, the lateral ligaments are relaxed. Rotation of the joint is possible.



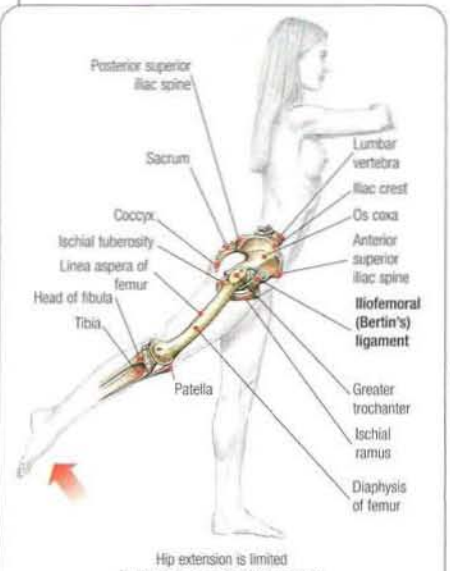
One of the main functions of the meniscus is to disperse pressure in the knee joint by increasing the supporting surface area for the femur on the tibia, avoiding premature wear on the articular surfaces.



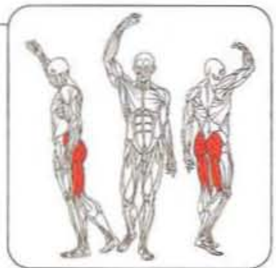
CABLE BACK KICKS 3

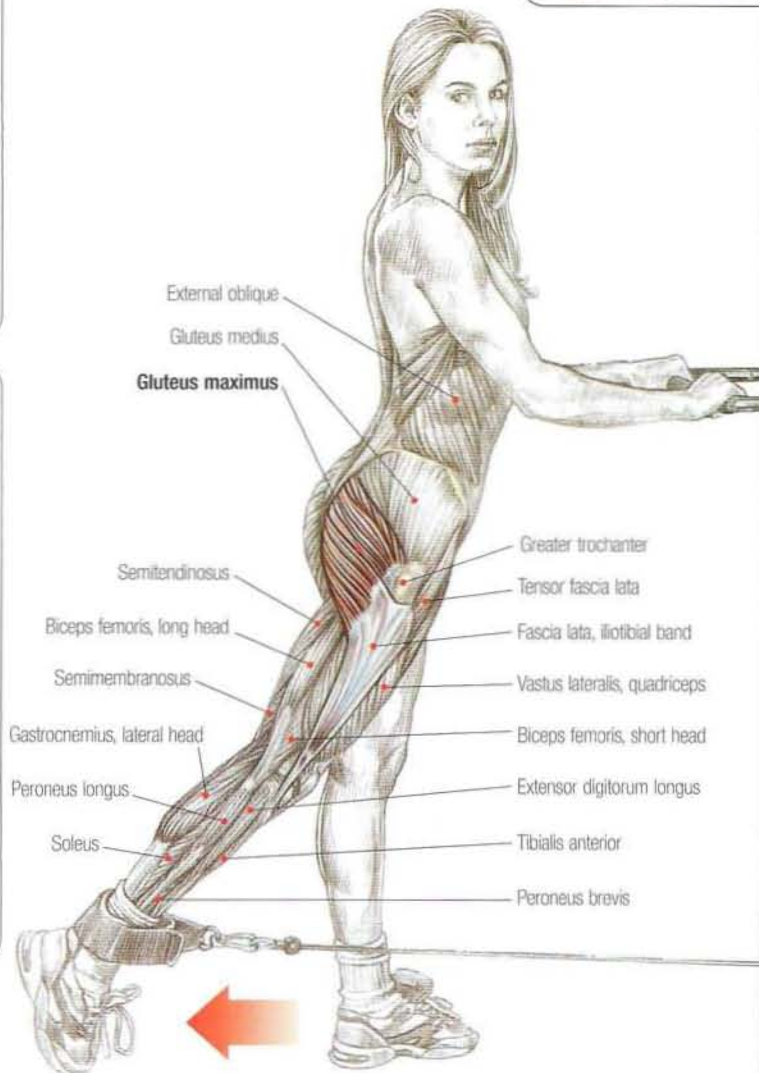


The deep gluteus maximus attaches to the linea aspera of the femur



Hip extension is limited by the iliofemoral (Bertin's) ligament





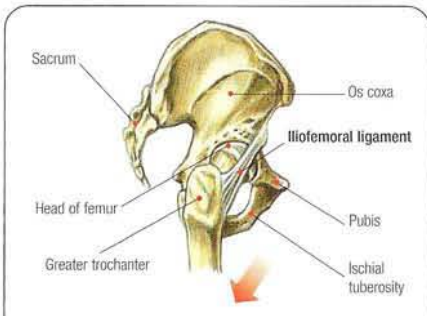
Stand on one leg facing the machine, the other leg attached to the ankle strap of the low pulley, and the pelvis tilted forward. Grasp the handle:

- Extend the hip and pull the leg back.
- Hip extension is limited by the tension of the iliofemoral (Bertin's) ligament.

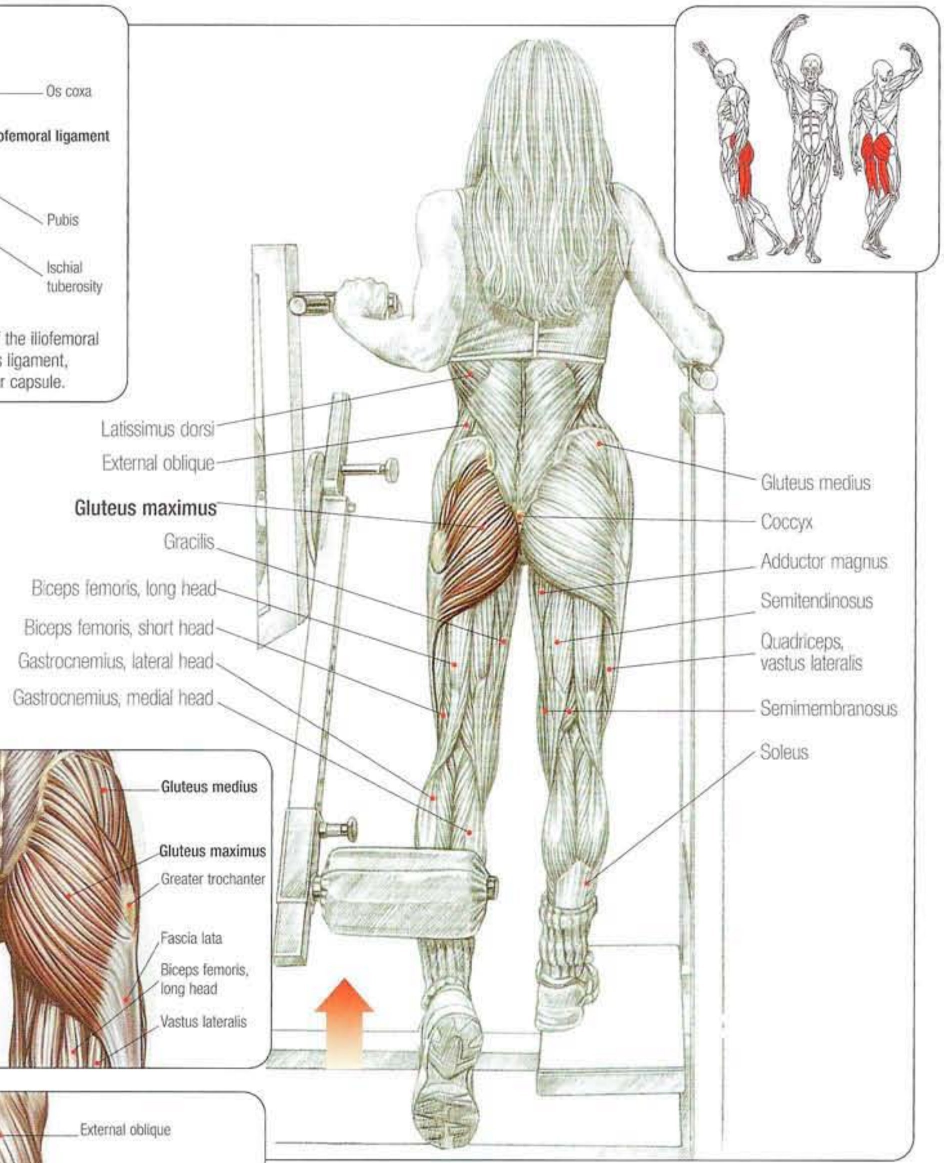
This exercise mainly works the gluteus maximus and, to a lesser extent, the hamstrings (except the short head of biceps femoris).

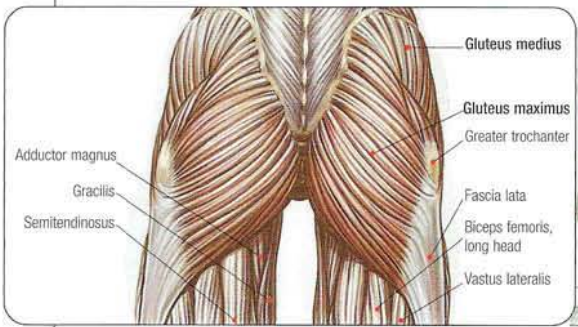
It helps develop the profile of the hips while firming the gluteal region.

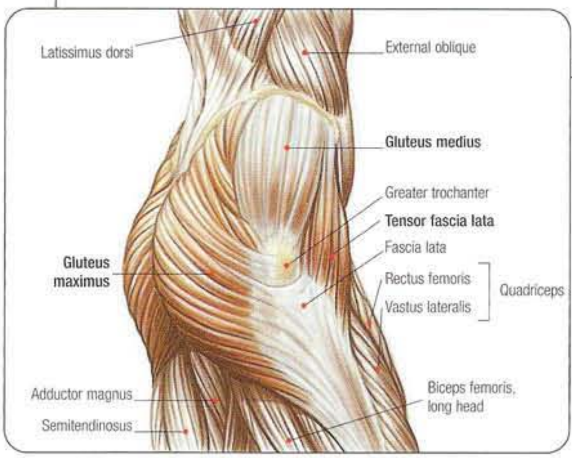
4 MACHINE HIP EXTENSIONS



Hip extension is limited by the tension of the iliofemoral ligament, also referred to as Bertin's ligament, which is a thickening of the articular capsule.





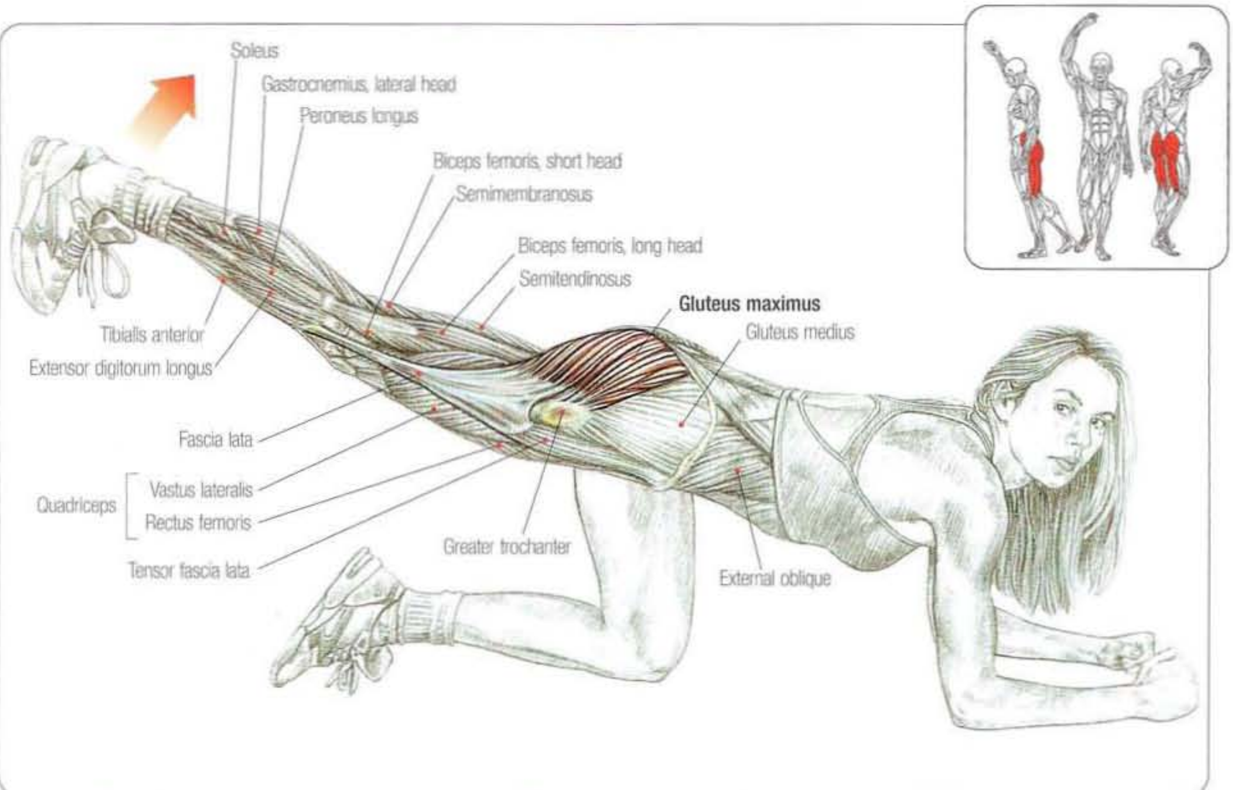


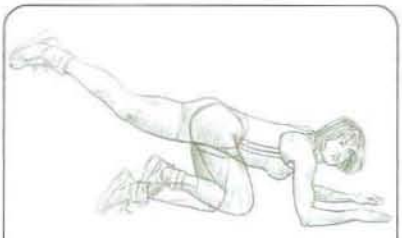
Stand on one leg with the other slightly forward and position the roll against the calf halfway between the knee and ankle. Lean the torso forward slightly and grasp the handles:

- Inhale and push the thigh back until the hip is hyperextended.
- Maintain the position with an isometric contraction for a couple of seconds.
- Return to the initial position.
- Exhale at the end of the extension.

This exercise mainly works the gluteus maximus and, to a lesser extent, the semitendinosus, semimembranosus, and the long head of the biceps femoris.

FLOOR HIP EXTENSIONS 5





THE MOVEMENT

Kneel on one leg and bring the other knee to the chest while leaning on the elbows or on the hands with the arms extended:

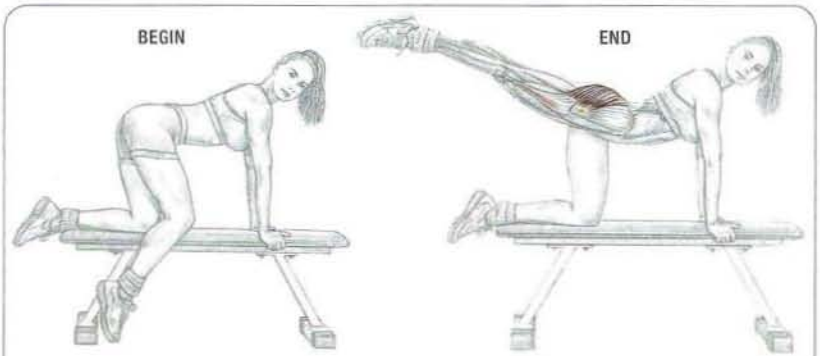
- Extend the bent leg back with complete hip extension.

With the leg extended, this exercise uses the hamstrings and gluteus maximus. With the knee bent, only the gluteus maximus is used and less intensely.

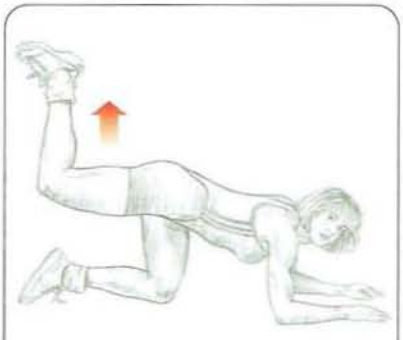
This exercise can be performed with higher or lower amplitude during the last part of the extension. You can maintain an isometric contraction for a couple of seconds at the end of the movement.

To increase the intensity, use ankle weights.

Its ease of execution and its effectiveness has made this exercise popular, and it is frequently used in group classes.

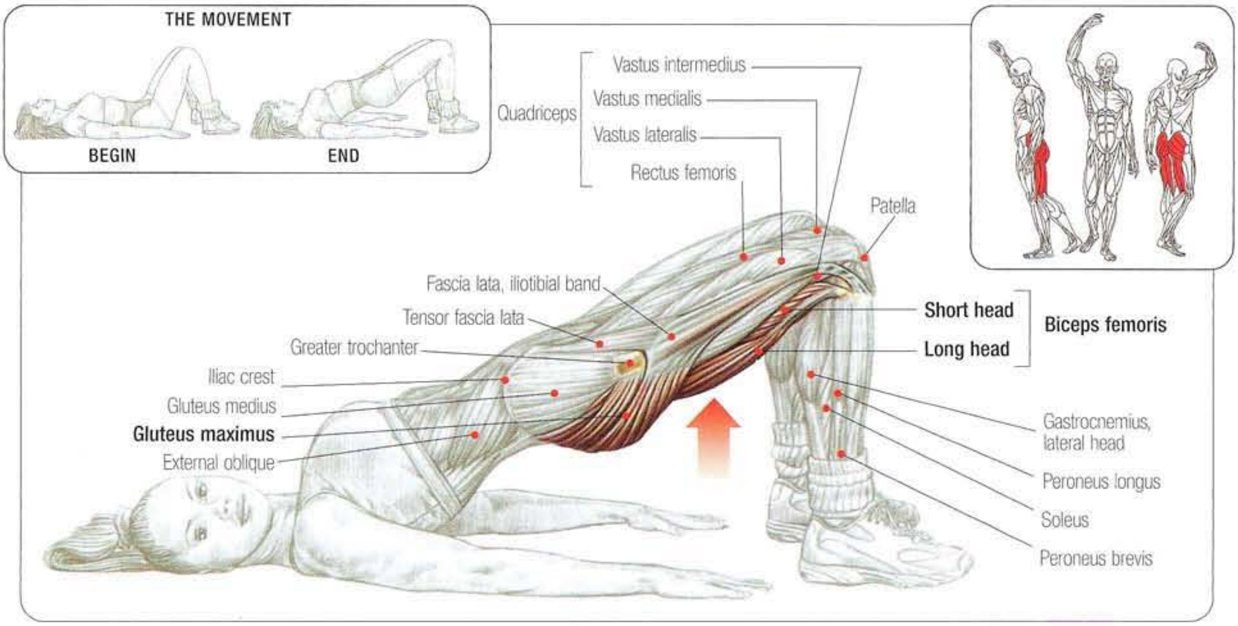


VARIATION ON A BENCH



VARIATION WITH BENT KNEE

6 BRIDGING



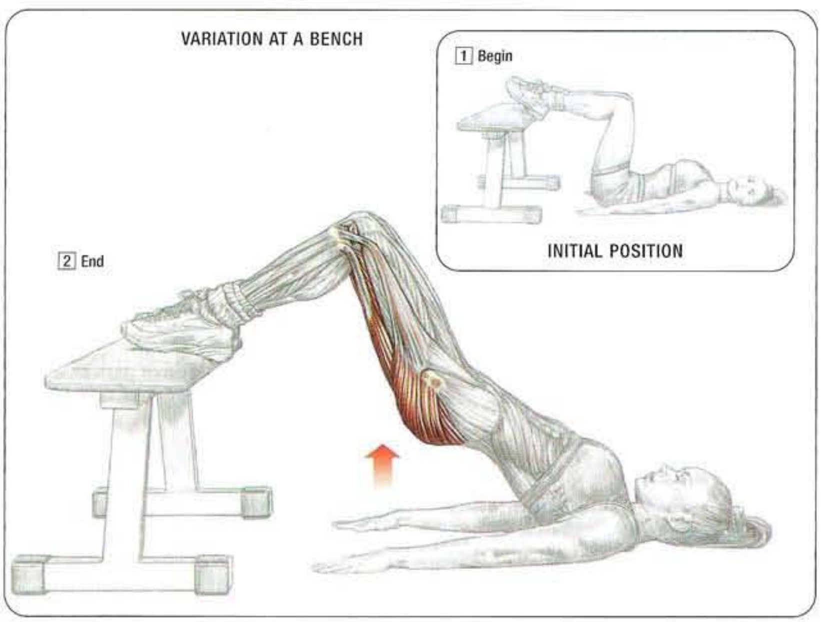
Lie on the back, with hands flat on the ground, arms alongside the body, and knees bent:

- Inhale and lift the buttocks off the ground, pushing down through the feet.
- Maintain the position for a couple of seconds and lower the pelvis without touching the buttocks on the ground.
- Exhale and begin again.

This exercise mainly works the hamstrings and gluteus maximus.

Perform this exercise in long sets, making sure to contract the muscles at the top of the lift, when the pelvis is off the ground.

Comment: Because it is easy and effective, bridging has become part of most group exercise classes.



Variation 1:

To perform bridging with the feet raised, lie on the back, with hands flat at the sides, arms alongside the body, thighs vertical, and feet resting on a bench:

- Inhale and raise the pelvis off the ground; maintain the position for two seconds and lower without touching the buttocks to the ground.
- Exhale and begin again.

This exercise works the gluteus maximus and especially the hamstrings. The hamstrings are used more in this exercise than when bridging from the ground. Execute this exercise slowly, and focus on the muscle contraction.

Sets of 10 to 15 repetitions provide the best results.

Another variation is to perform bridging with the calves resting on the bench. This isolates the hamstrings even more intensely and also requires strong work from the gastrocnemius.

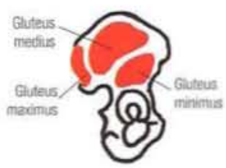
Variation 2:

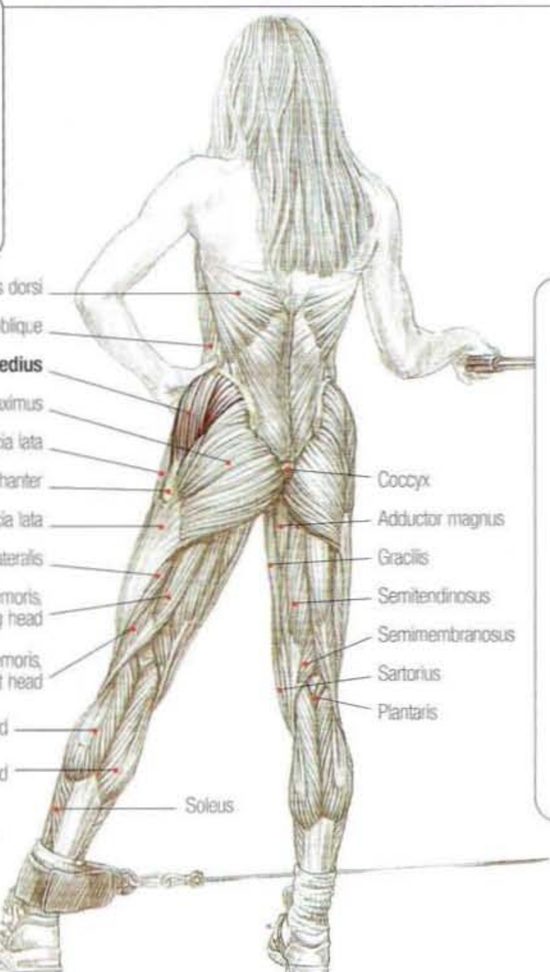
Limit the range of the movement by not lowering the pelvis as far and create a burn.

Comment: Bridging is actually extending the hips.

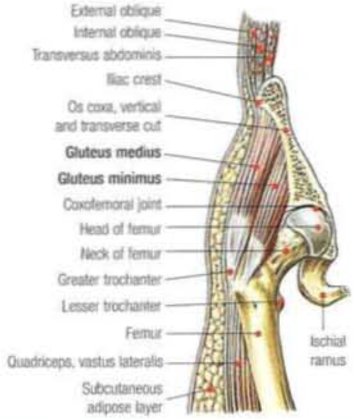
CABLE HIP ABDUCTIONS 7

GLUTEAL INSERTIONS AT THE OS COXA





SECTION THROUGH A FEMALE HIP DISPLAYING THE GLUTEUS MEDIUS OVERLYING THE GLUTEUS MINIMUS



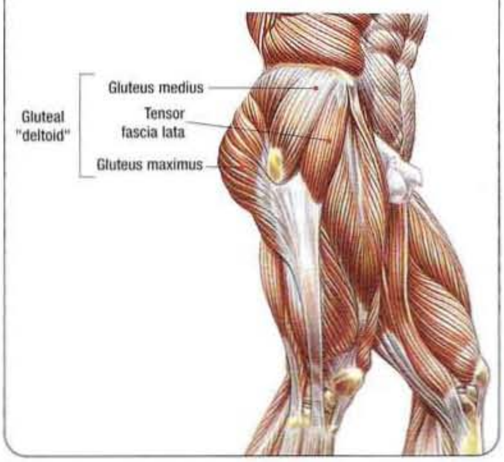
Stand on one leg with a pulley attached to the other ankle:

- Raise the leg laterally as high as possible.

This exercise mainly works gluteus medius and the deeper gluteus minimus.

Long sets until you feel a burn are most effective.

GLUTEAL "DELTOID"



GLUTEUS MINIMUS

Although located deep, the gluteus minimus contributes to the bulk of the upper buttock.

INDIVIDUAL VARIATIONS IN HIP MOBILITY

Regardless of individual muscle elasticity and ligamentous tension, it is mainly the shape of the bones of the coxofemoral joint that is responsible for hip mobility. The configuration of the bone is most important in hip abduction.

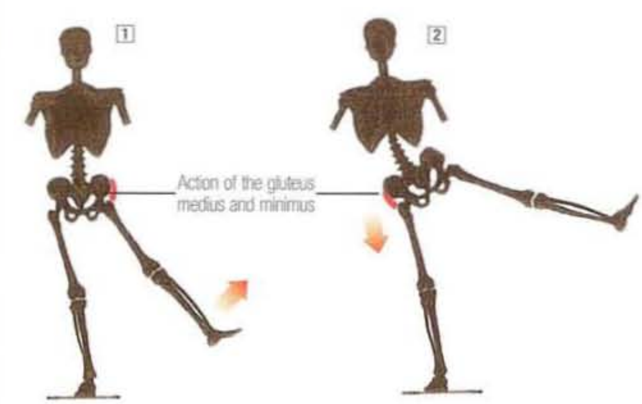
Example

- When the neck of the femur is almost horizontal (coxa vara) and associated with a well-developed superior rim of the acetabulum covering the head of the femur, abduction movements are limited.
- When the neck of the femur is close to vertical (coxa valga) and associated with an undeveloped superior acetabular rim, abduction movements are facilitated.

Therefore, it is useless to try to raise the leg high laterally if your hip joint is not made for it.

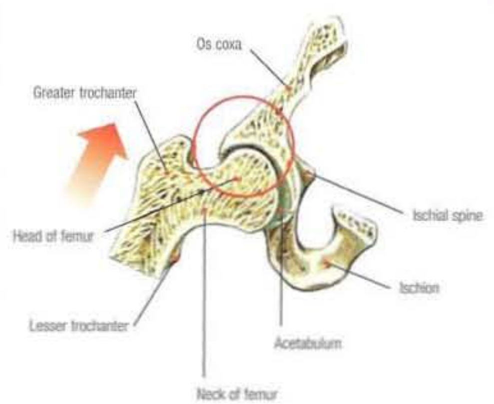
ATTENTION

If hip abduction is forced, the neck of the femur will butt up against the rim of the acetabulum, and the pelvis will tilt onto the head of the opposite femur to compensate for lateral extension of the leg. When some people perform sets of forced abductions, over time microtrauma may occur, which develops excessive growth of the superior rim of the acetabulum, limiting the mobility of the hip and risking painful inflammation.



1 Abduction of the hip (limited by the neck of the femur butting against the acetabulum)

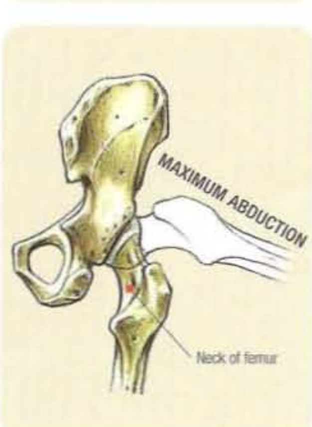
2 Forced abduction of the hip (tilting the pelvis onto the head of the opposite femur)



ABDUCTION IS LIMITED BY THE NECK OF THE FEMUR BUTTING UP AGAINST THE RIM OF THE ACETABULUM.

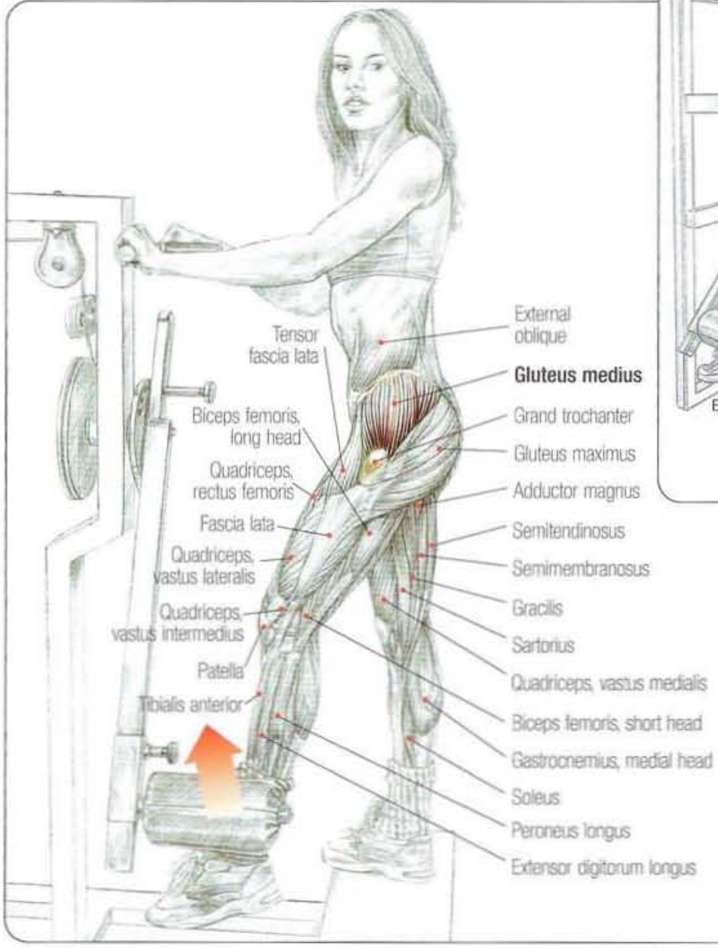
VARIATIONS IN OSSEOUS HIP STRUCTURE

An almost horizontal neck of the femur is referred to as a **coxa vara**. It limits abduction movements because it butts up against the rim of the acetabulum sooner.

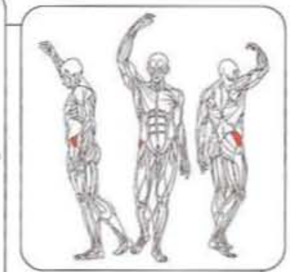


An almost vertical neck of the femur is referred to as **coxa valga**. It allows greater abduction movements.

STANDING MACHINE HIP ABDUCTIONS 8



THE MOVEMENT

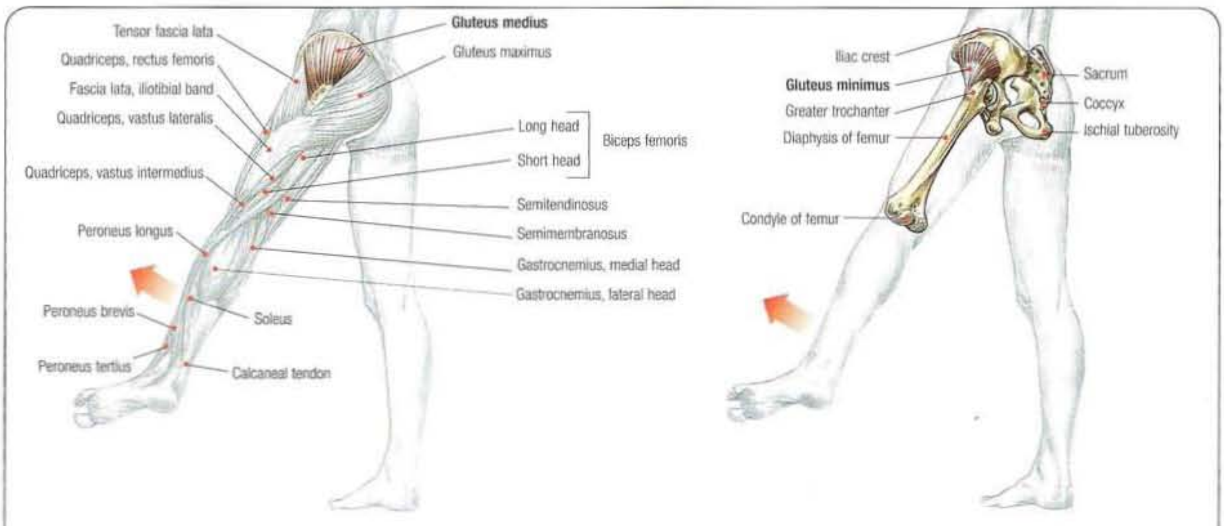


Stand on one leg at the machine, placing the other leg against the roll below the knee:

- Slowly raise the leg as high as possible.
- Return to the initial position.

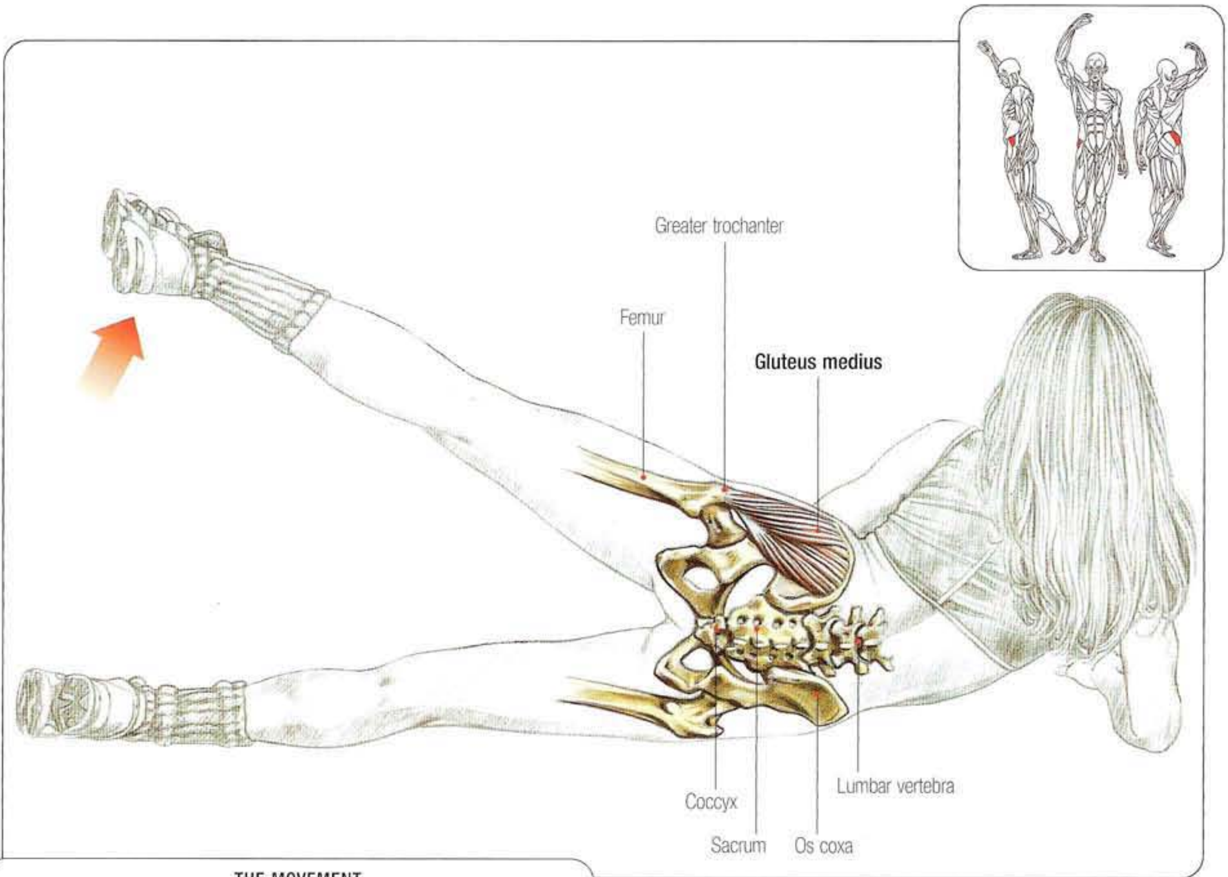
Abduction is limited by how soon the neck of the femur butts up against the rim of the acetabulum.

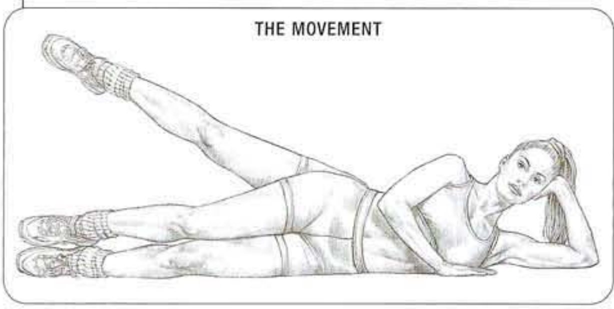
This exercise develops the gluteus medius. It also develops the deeper gluteus minimus, whose function is the same as that of the anterior fibers of the gluteus medius. For best results, use long sets.



GLUTEUS MEDIUS AND MINIMUS RAISE THE LEG LATERALLY

9 FLOOR HIP ABDUCTIONS





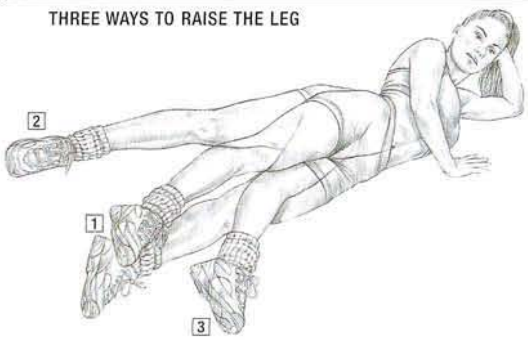
Lie on the side and support the head with the hand:

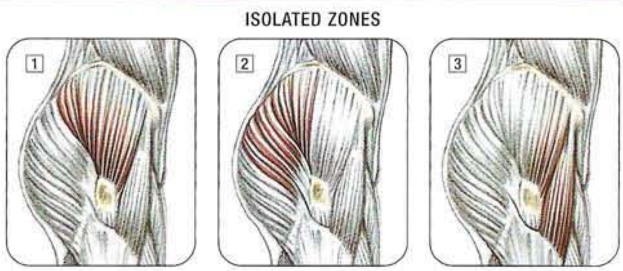
- Raise the leg laterally no more than 70 degrees, keeping the knee straight.

This exercise works the gluteus medius and minimus. You can vary how high you raise the leg. Hold the leg at the height of the movement for a few seconds with an isometric contraction.

You can raise the leg slightly to the front or the back or raise it vertically.

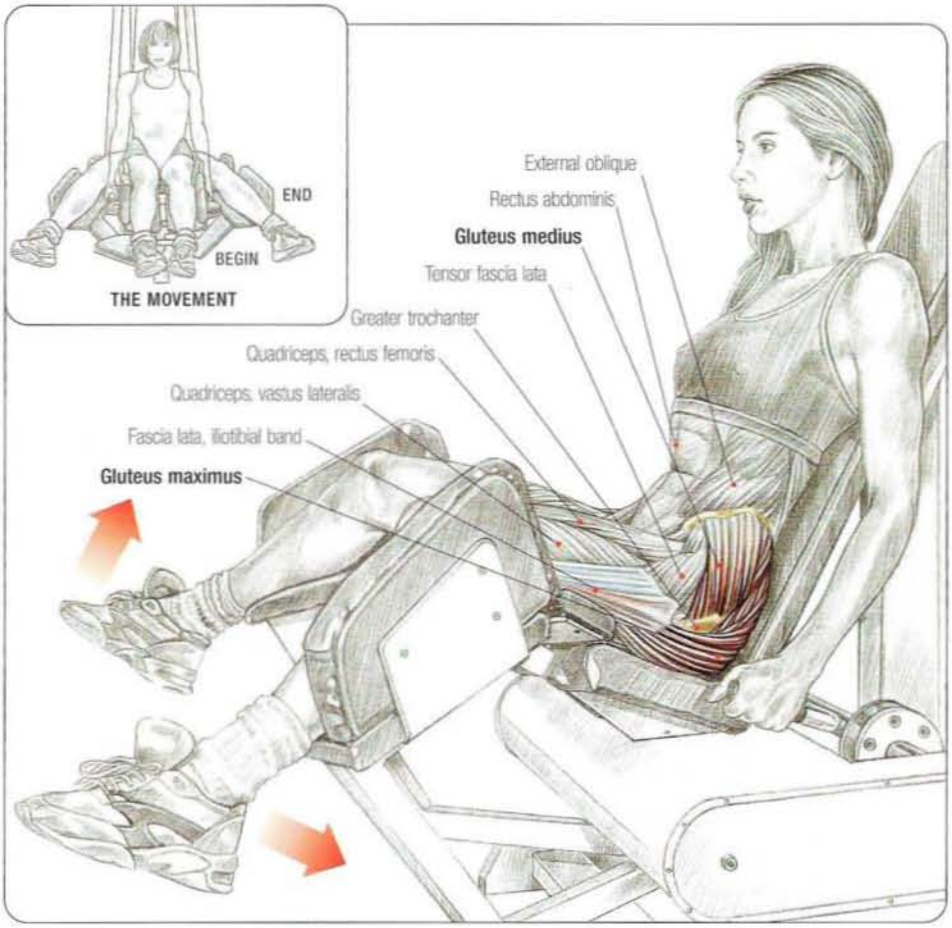
To increase the intensity, use ankle weights, elastic band, or low pulley.

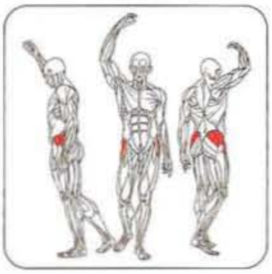




1 Leg raised vertically
2 Leg raised slightly behind
3 Leg raised slightly in front

SEATED MACHINE HIP ABDUCTIONS 10





Sit at the machine:

- Spread the legs as wide as possible.
- Return to the initial position with a controlled movement.

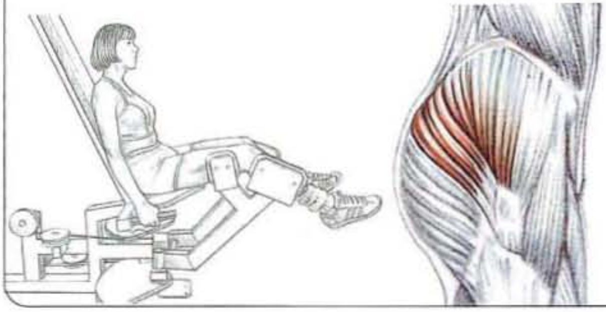
The more angled the backrest, the more the gluteus medius is isolated. The more vertical the backrest, the more the gluteus maximus is worked.

Ideally, lean forward or back to change the angle of the torso during a set.

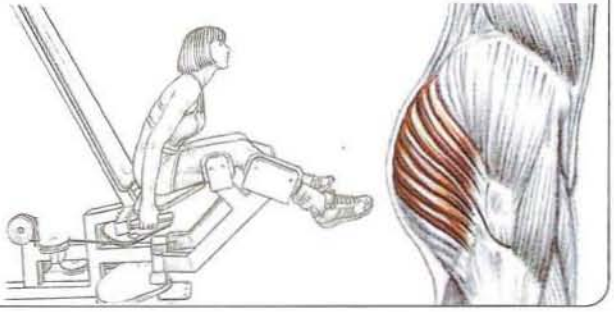
Example: Perform 10 repetitions with the torso resting against the backrest and 10 repetitions with the torso leaning forward.

This exercise sculpts and firms the top of the hip, which makes the waistline look narrower.

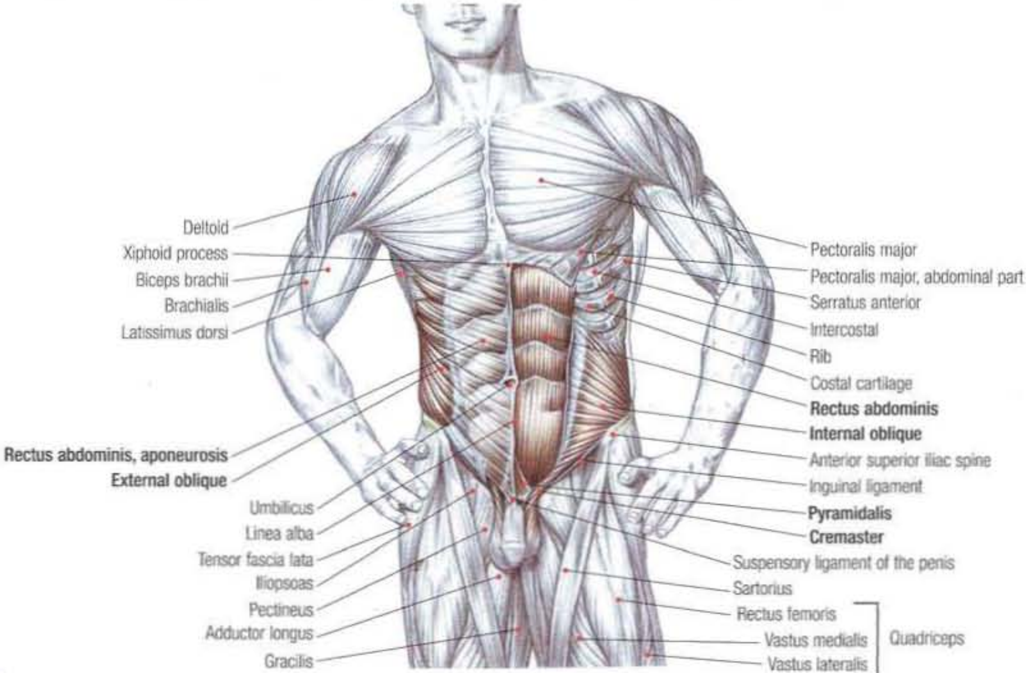
GLUTEAL PORTION ISOLATED
WITH THE TORSO AGAINST THE BACKREST



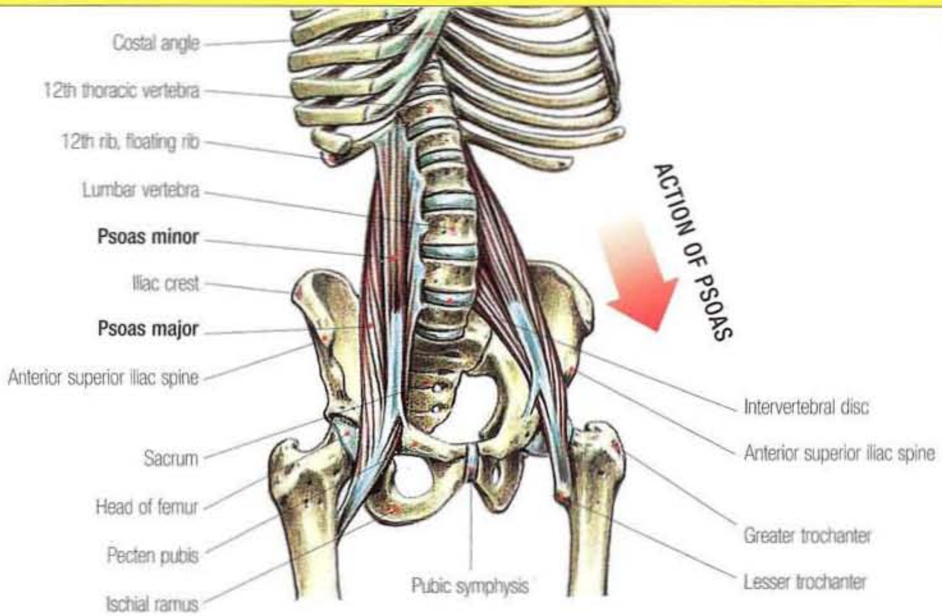
GLUTEAL PORTION ISOLATED
WITH THE TORSO LEANING FORWARD



7 ABDOMEN


Deltoid
Xiphoid process
Biceps brachii
Brachialis
Latissimus dorsi
Rectus abdominis, aponeurosis
External oblique
Umbilicus
Linea alba
Tensor fascia lata
Iliopsoas
Pectineus
Adductor longus
Gracilis
Pectoralis major
Pectoralis major, abdominal part
Serratus anterior
Intercostal
Rib
Costal cartilage
Rectus abdominis
Internal oblique
Anterior superior iliac spine
Inguinal ligament
Pyramidalis
Cremaster
Suspensory ligament of the penis
Sartorius
Rectus femoris
Vastus medialis
Vastus lateralis
Quadriceps

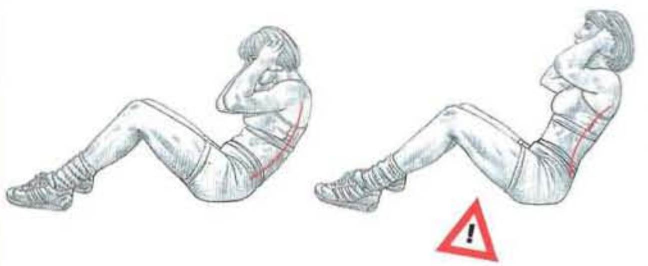
ATTENTION!



ACTION OF PSOAS MAJOR ON THE LUMBAR CURVE

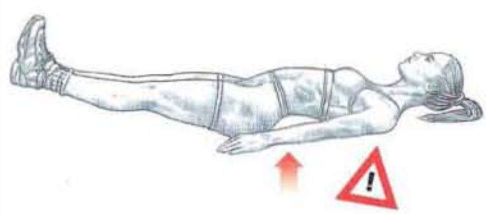
Aside from its role as a powerful hip flexor, the psoas muscle pulls the lumbar spine into lordosis, increasing the curve.

When performing exercises for the abdominal muscles, round the back.



CORRECT POSITION, ROUNDED BACK **INCORRECT POSITION, ARCHED BACK**

As with most movements involving the abdominal core, leg raises either on the ground or at an incline bench should never be performed with an arched back.



INCORRECT POSITION, BACK ARCHED

Unlike other weightlifting movements, exercises for the abdominal core and especially those for the rectus abdominis absolutely must be worked with a rounded back (rolling up the spine).

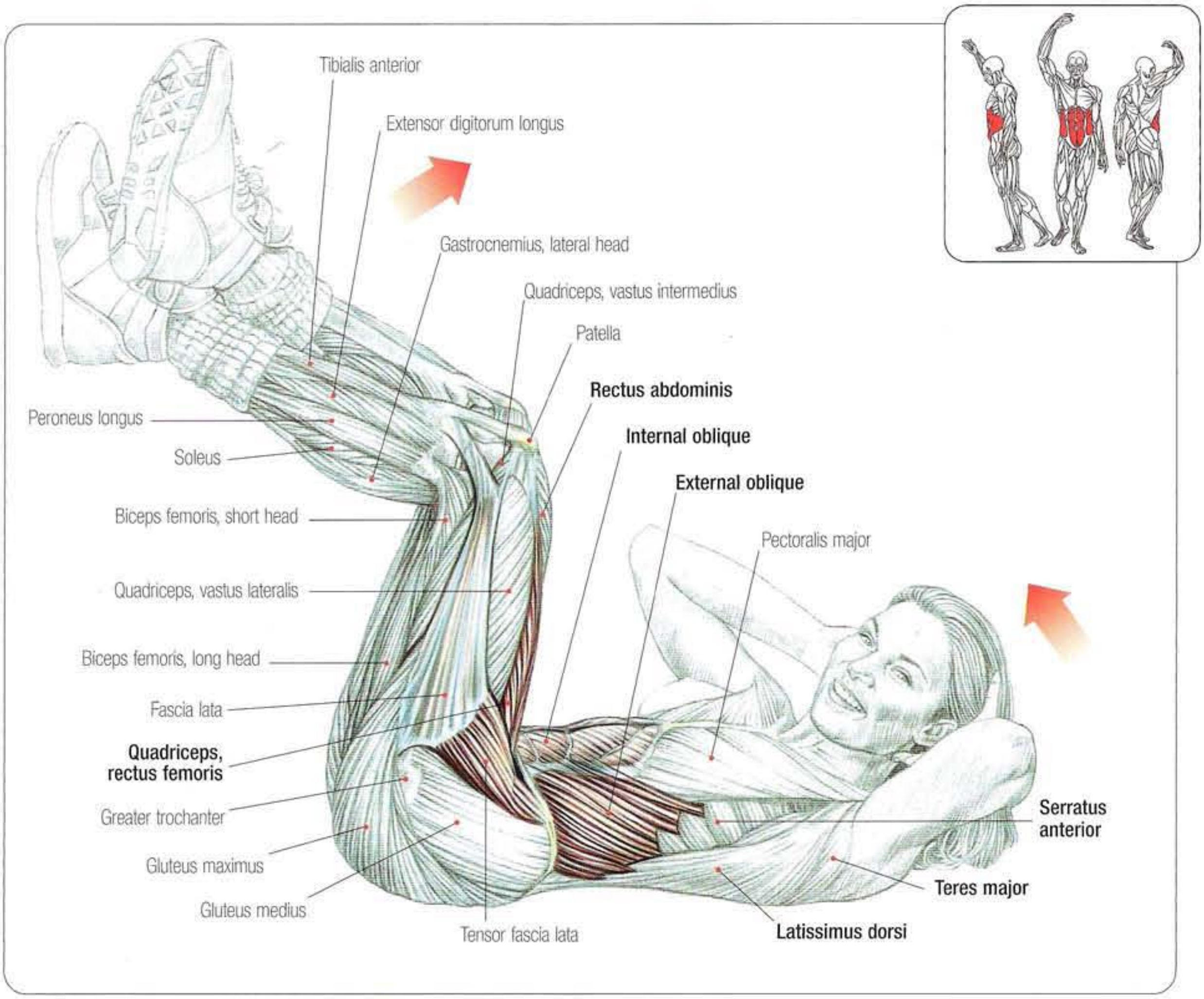
When performing exercises that roll the spine up off the floor, as in crunches, you hold the spine differently than when performing squats, deadlifts, or other standing movements.

If during exercises with additional weights, such as squats, deadlifts, or good mornings, the vertebral column is not arched at the lumbar spine, vertical pressure combined with rounding the back pushes the nucleus pulposus of the intervertebral disc posteriorly, which can compress the nerves and cause sciatica or a herniated disc.

On the other hand, when performing specific exercises for the abdomen, if the back is not rounded with intense contraction of the rectus abdominis and the internal and external obliques, the powerful psoas hip flexors will increase the lumbar curve, forcing the intervertebral discs forward.

This causes increased pressure at the posterior lumbar vertebral articulations, which can cause low back pain or, more seriously, articular compression or shearing.

1 CRUNCHES*



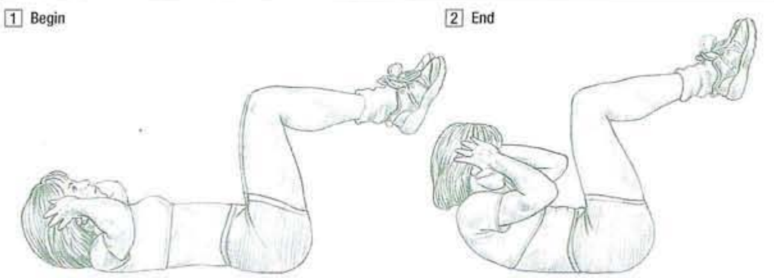
Lie on the back, with hands behind the head, thighs vertical, and knees bent:

- Inhale and raise the shoulders off the ground, bringing the knees and head toward each other by crunching, which means rounding the back and rolling the spine up.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

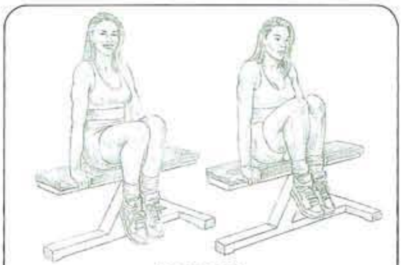
This exercise mainly uses the rectus abdominis.

To work the obliques more intensely, bring the right elbow to the left knee, then the left elbow to the right knee alternately with each crunch.

* Perform a crunch by rounding the back and rolling the spine up, bringing the pubis and sternum toward each through voluntary contraction.

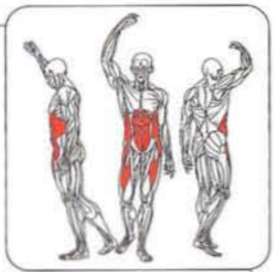


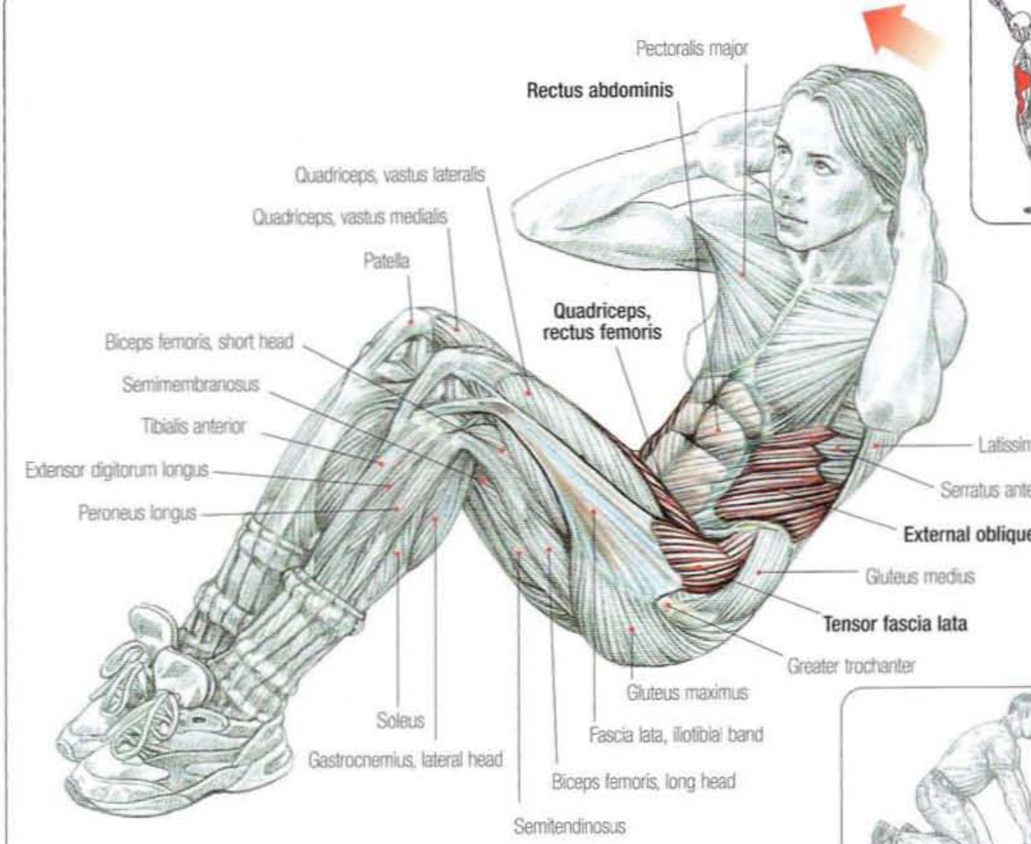
THE MOVEMENT

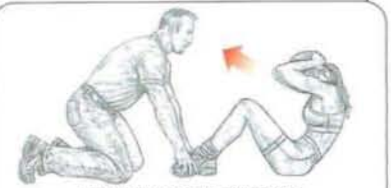


VARIATION
SEATED CRUNCH ON A BENCH

SIT-UPS 2







PERFORMING THE EXERCISE WITH A PARTNER ANCHORING THE FEET

Lie on the back, with knees bent, feet flat on the ground, and hands behind the head:

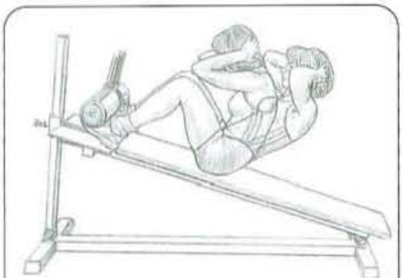
- Inhale and raise the torso by rounding the back.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.
- Return to the initial position without touching the ground.

Continue until a burn develops in the abdominal muscles.

This exercise works the hip flexors as well as the obliques, but it mainly acts on the rectus abdominis.

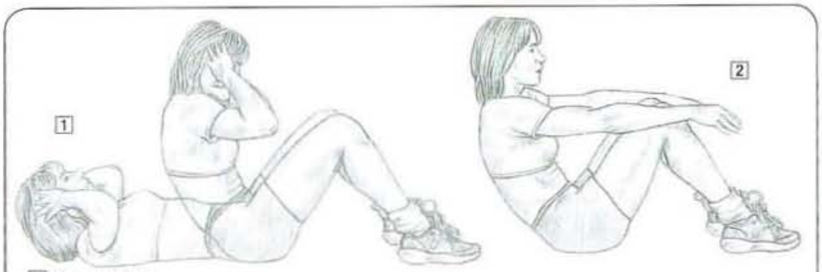
Variations:

1. Having a partner hold the feet makes the exercise easier.
2. Extending the arms forward makes the exercise easier for beginners.
3. Working on an incline bench makes the exercise more intense.



VARIATION ON AN INCLINE BENCH

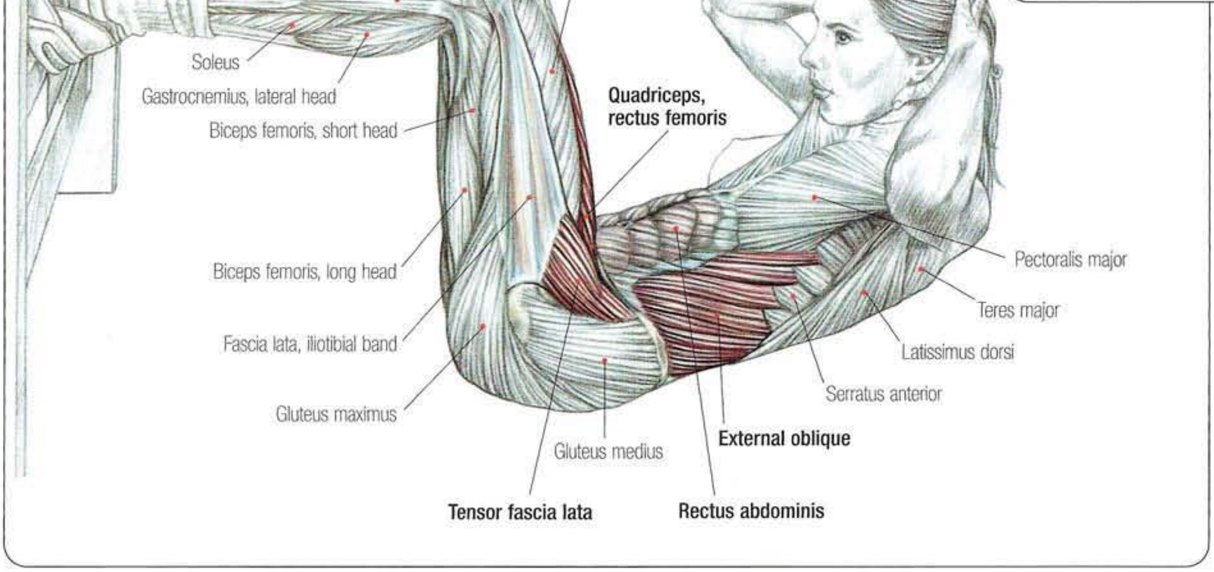
The greater the angle, the greater the effort.

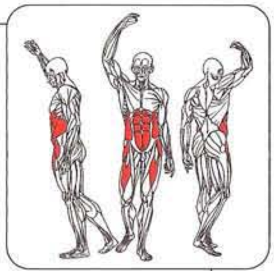


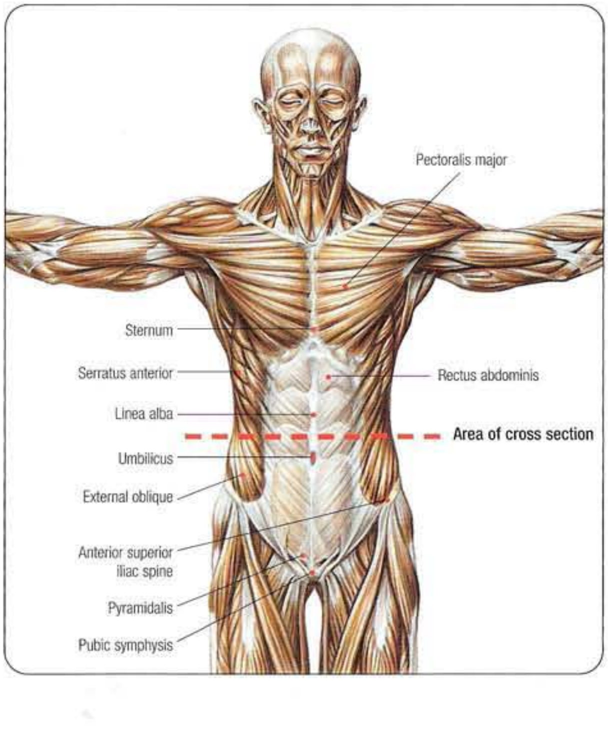
1 The movement.
2 Variation with arms extended to make the movement easier.

Comment: Because, in general, a woman's torso is not as bulky proportionate to the legs as in men, performing sit-ups without lifting the feet off the ground is easier for women than for men.

3 GYM LADDER SIT-UPS





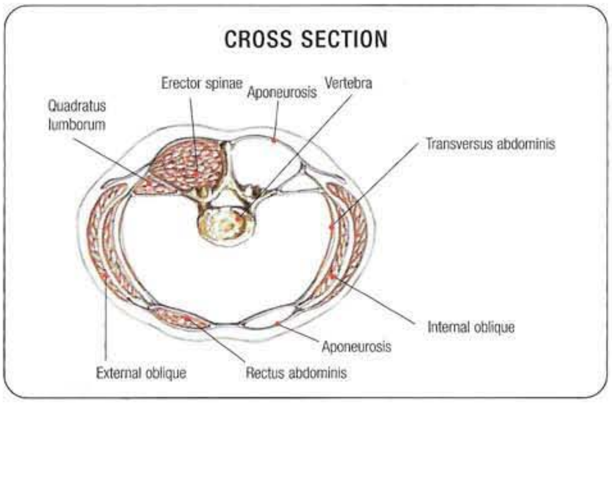


Lie faceup on the ground and position the feet between two bars in the ladder, with the thighs vertical, and hands behind the head:

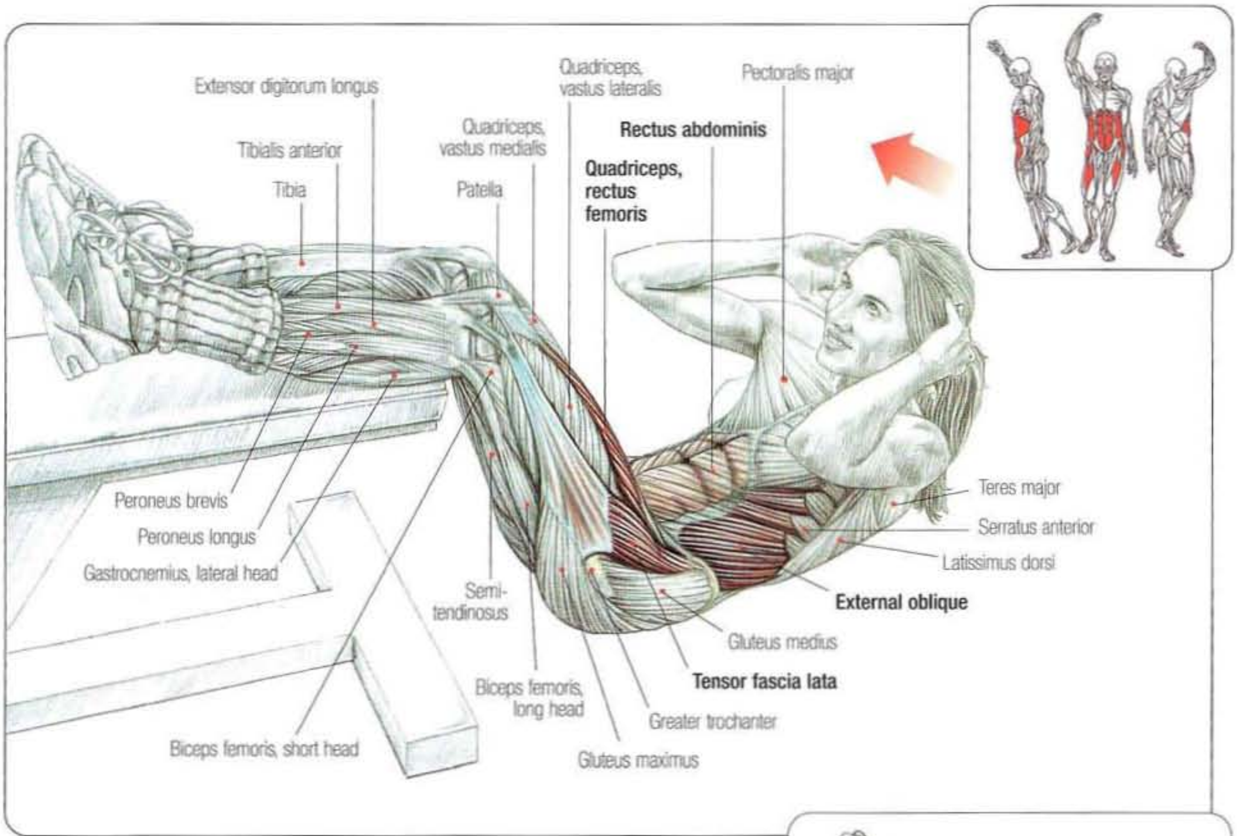
- Inhale and raise the torso as high as possible, rounding the spine.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

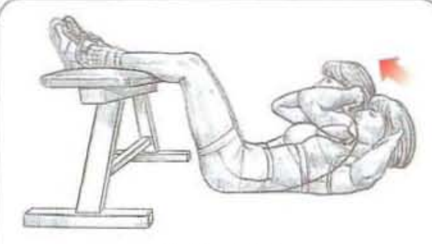
This exercise works the rectus abdominis and, to a lesser degree, the external oblique.

Position the feet lower on the ladder so that the pelvis can rock more and better contract the flexor muscles of the hip (iliopsoas, rectus femoris, and tensor fascia lata) when lowering the torso.



CALVES OVER BENCH SIT-UPS 4





THE MOVEMENT

Correct position

Incorrect position

PLACEMENT OF THE HANDS AND ELBOWS

To prevent pulling on the neck excessively, place the hands behind the ears rather than behind the head.

The wider the elbows, the more difficult the movement.

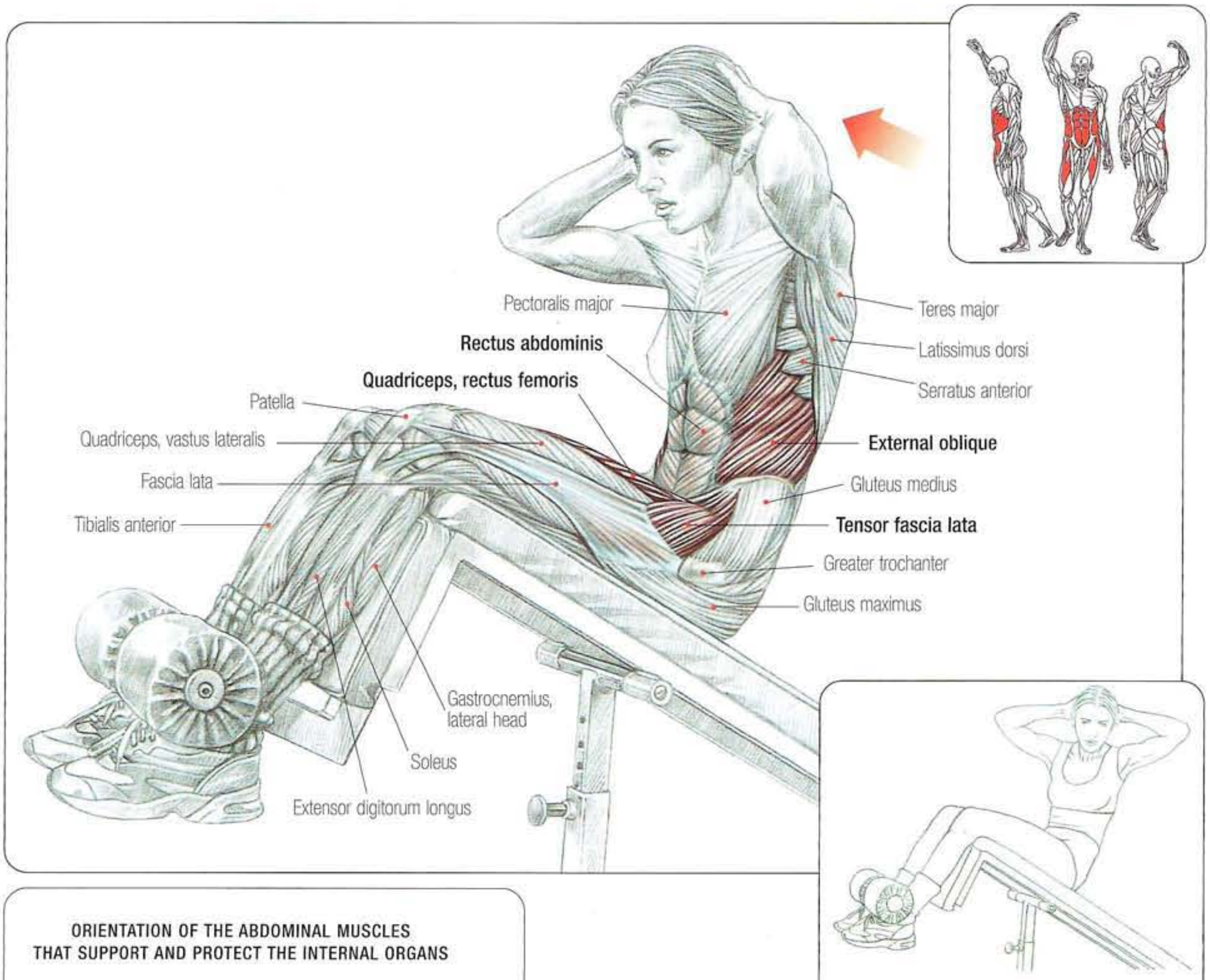
Conversely, the closer together and more forward the elbows, the easier the execution.

Lie on your back with your calves laying over a flat exercise bench. Place your hands behind your head:

- Inhale and lift your shoulders off the floor.
- Try to touch your knees with your head.
- Exhale as you complete the movement.

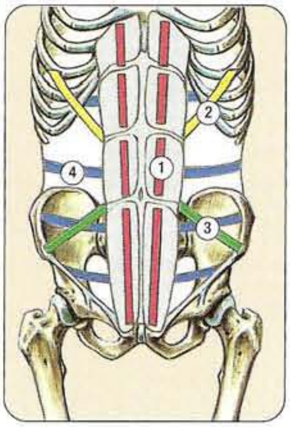
This exercise focuses on the rectus abdominis, particularly above the navel. By placing your torso farther from the bench you increase pelvic mobility, which allows your torso upward by contracting the iliopsoas, tensor fasciae latae, and rectus femoris in order to flex the hips.

5 INCLINE BENCH SIT-UPS



VARIATION WITH TORSO ROTATION

ORIENTATION OF THE ABDOMINAL MUSCLES THAT SUPPORT AND PROTECT THE INTERNAL ORGANS



In quadrupeds, the muscles of the abdominal core create a hammock-like structure that passively supports the internal organs. These muscles move little during locomotion.

With the shift to bipedal locomotion in humans, the muscles of the abdominal core have grown stronger to align the pelvis with the trunk in a vertical position and to prevent the trunk from swaying too much during walking or running.

The abdominal core has developed into powerful muscles that actively contain the internal organs.

Sit on a bench with the feet positioned under the rolls, hands behind the ears:

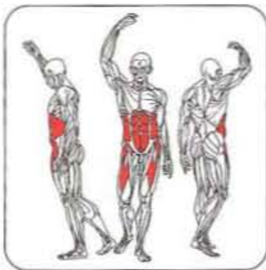
- Inhale and lower the torso less than 20 degrees.
- Raise the torso while slightly rounding the back to better focus on the rectus abdominis.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

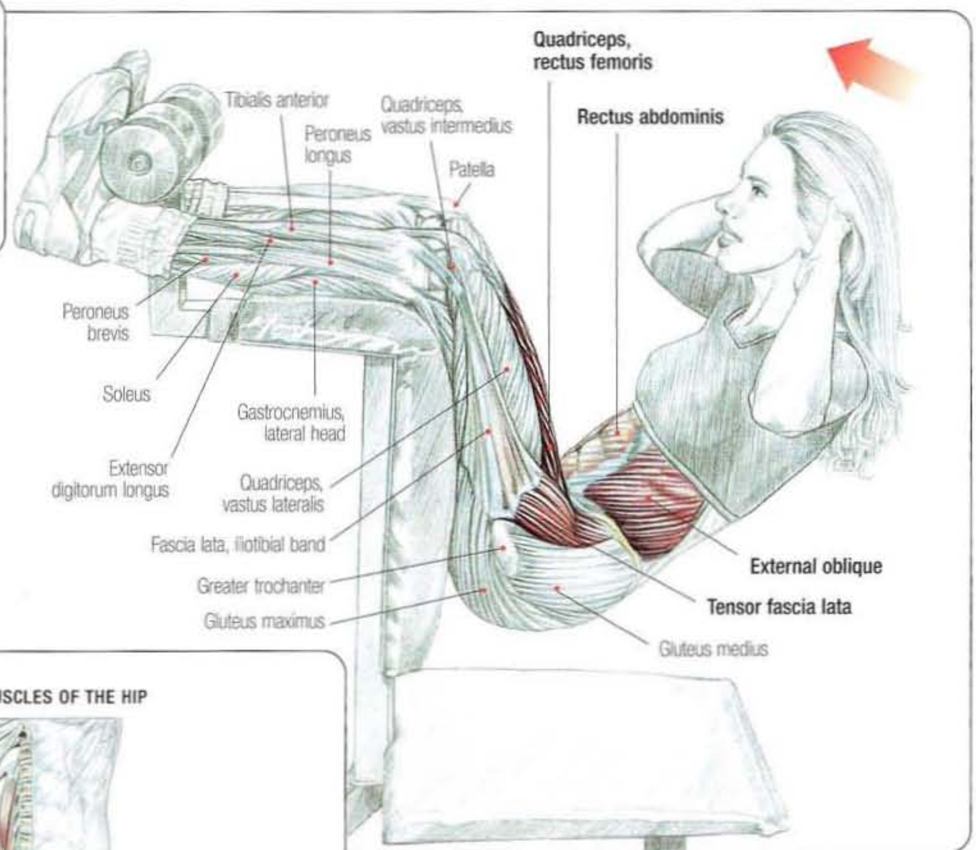
Perform this exercise in long sets. It works the abdominal core as well as the iliopsoas, tensor fascia lata, and rectus femoris of the quadriceps. The latter three muscles tilt the pelvis forward.

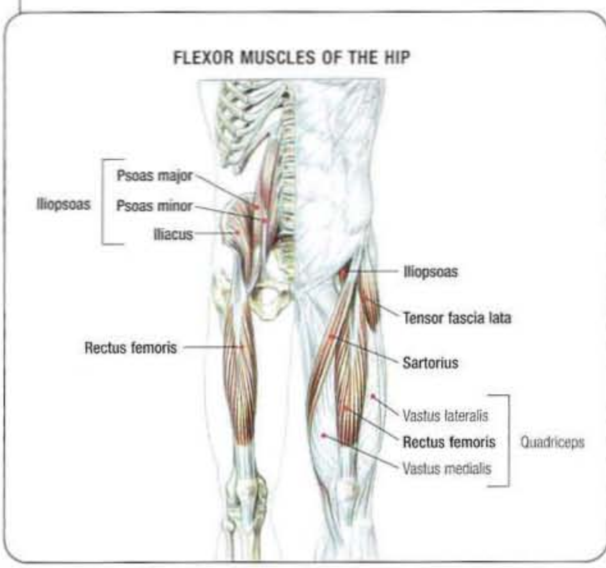
Variation: Rotating the torso on the way up focuses some of the effort on the internal and external obliques.

Example: Rotating to the left works the right external oblique, the left internal oblique, and the right rectus abdominis more intensely. Rotations can be performed in sets of alternating sides or sets all on the same side. In either case, concentrate on feeling the muscles contract. There is no point in angling the bench excessively.

SUSPENDED BENCH SIT-UPS 6







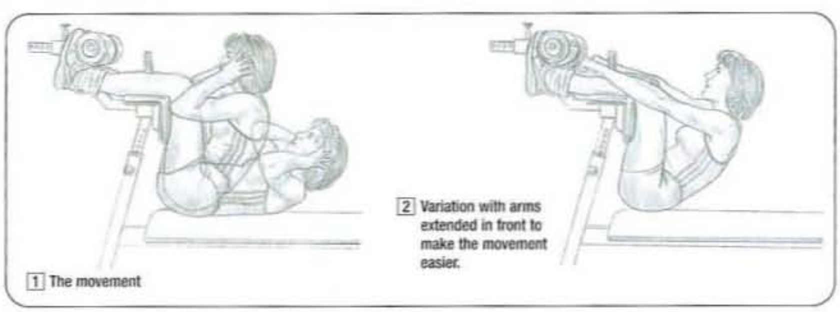
Position the feet under the pads, with the torso suspended in midair, hands near the ears:

- Inhale and raise the torso, trying to bring the head to the knees while rounding the spine.
- Exhale at the end of the contraction.

This exercise develops the rectus abdominis. It also contracts the obliques, but less intensely.

Because of the forward tilt of the pelvis, the rectus abdominis, iliopsoas, and tensor fascia lata contribute strongly.

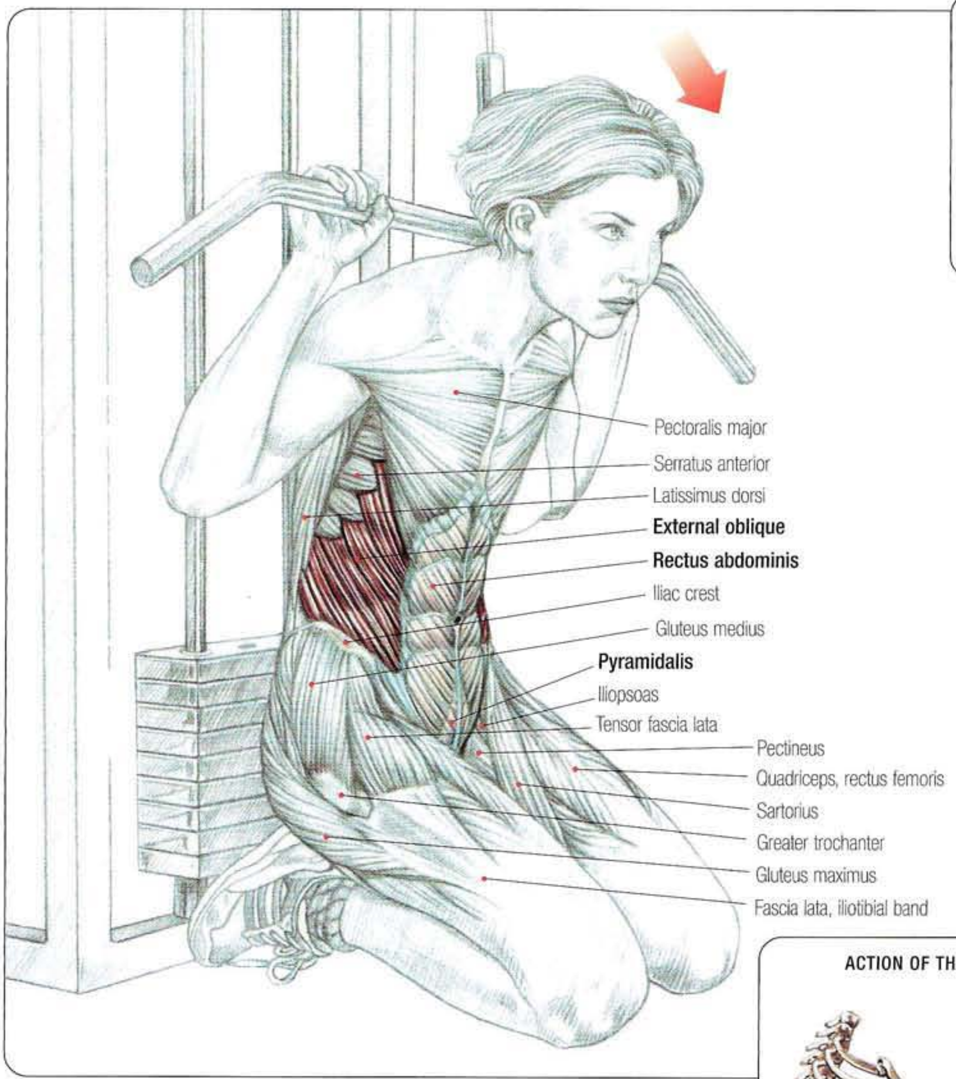
Comment: This movement requires a fair amount of strength, which you can build through other easier exercises.

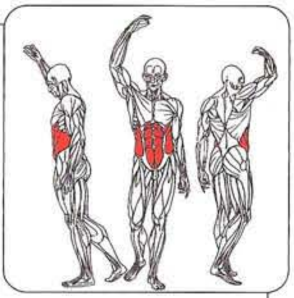


1 The movement

2 Variation with arms extended in front to make the movement easier.

7 HIGH-PULLEY CRUNCHES





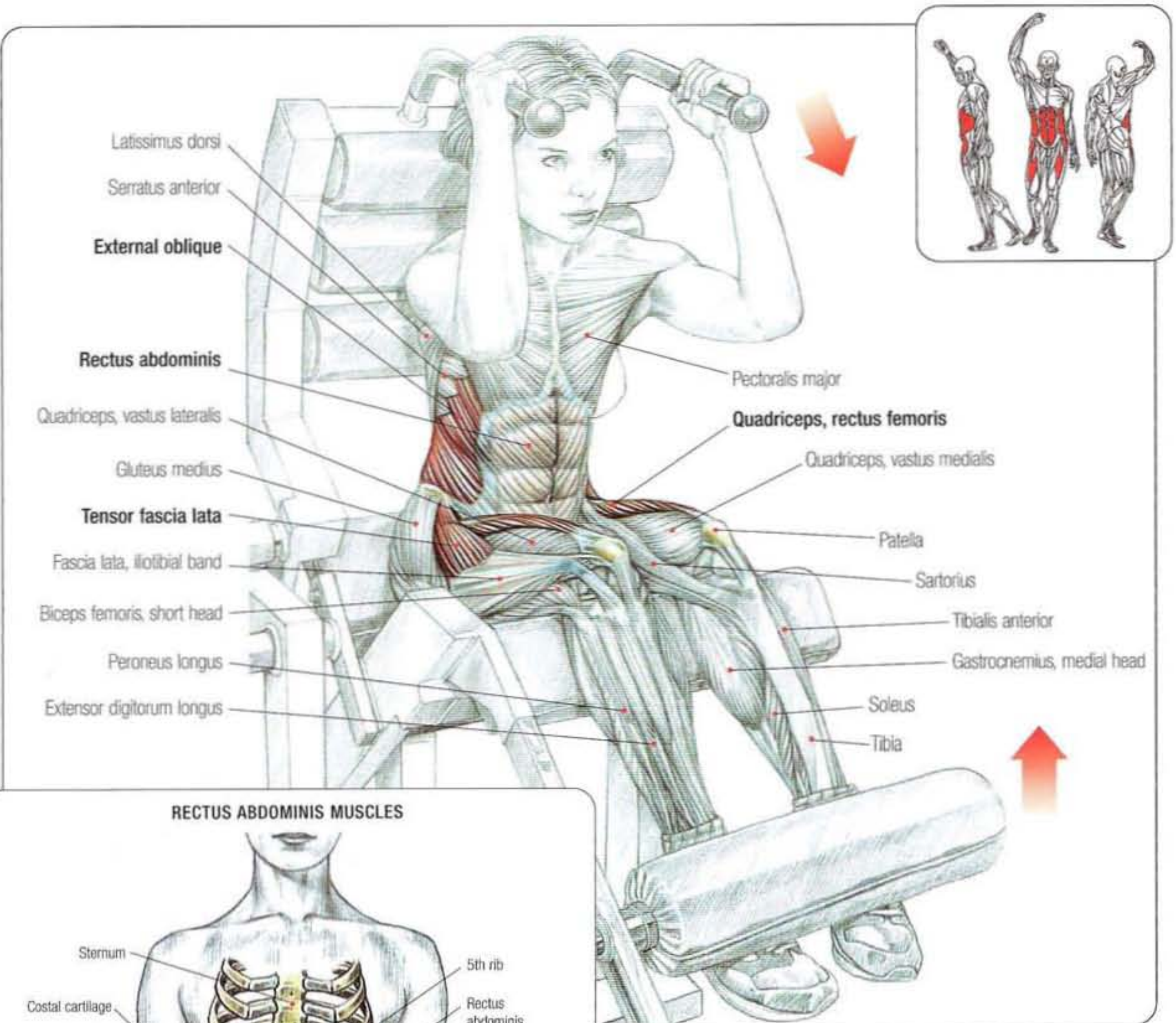

ACTION OF THE ABDOMINAL MUSCLES

Kneel in front of the machine, holding the handle behind the neck:

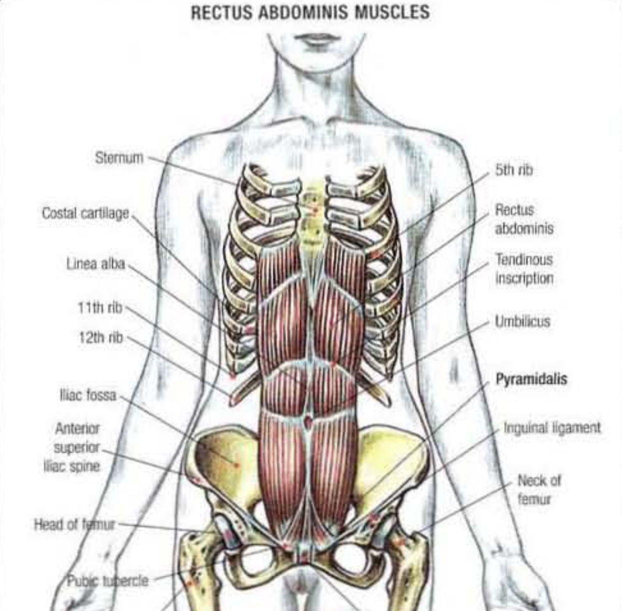
- Inhale.
- Exhale and roll the spine as you lower the sternum toward the pubis.

This movement is never performed with heavy weights. Concentrate on feeling the muscles contract, mainly the rectus abdominis, in order to focus the work on the abdominal core.

MACHINE CRUNCHES 8



RECTUS ABDOMINIS MUSCLES

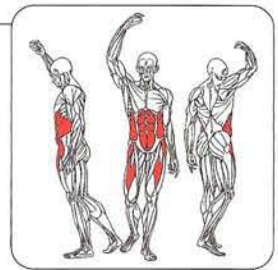


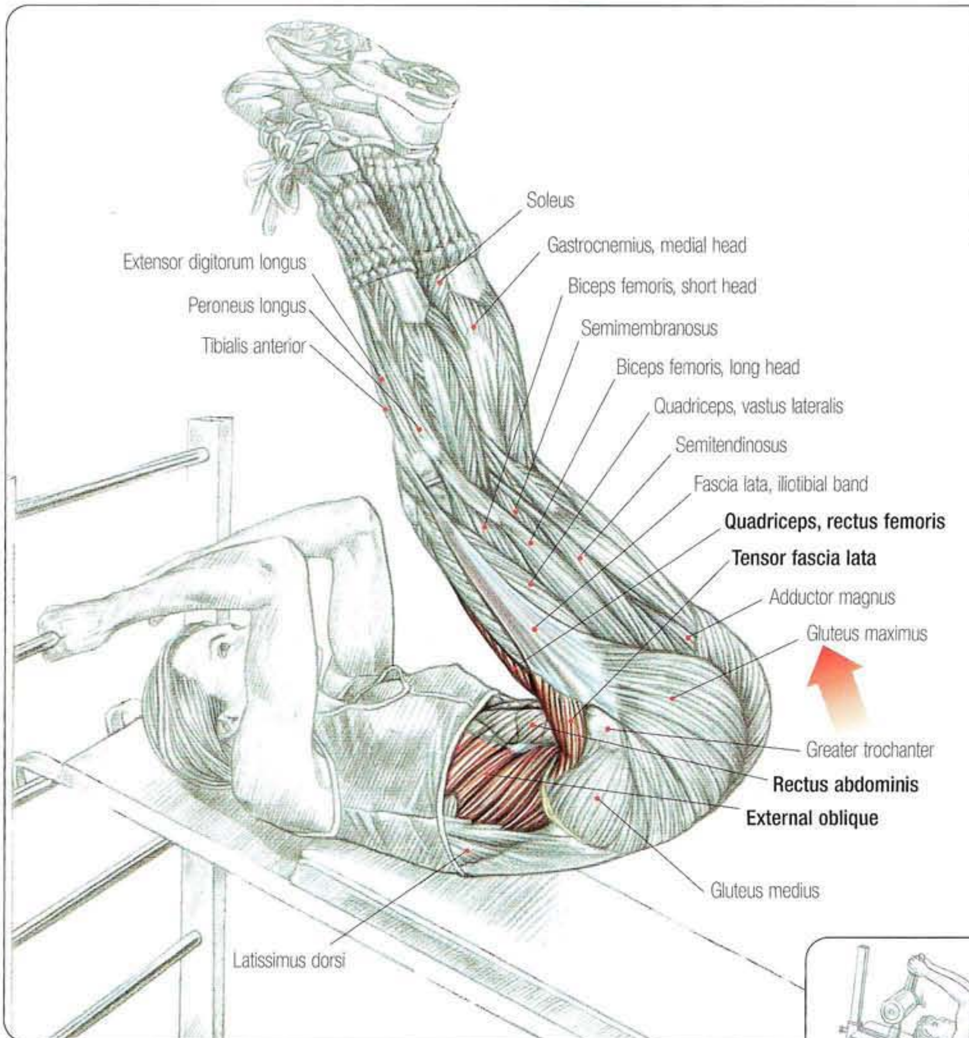
Sit at the machine, grasp the handles, and position the feet under the pad:

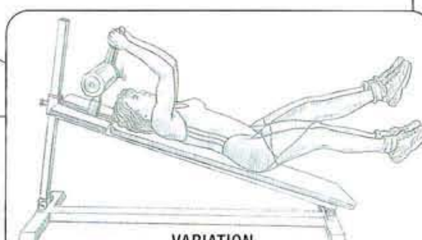
- Inhale and roll the spine, trying to bring the sternum to the pubis.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

This exercise allows you to adjust the weight, or workload, to your ability. To avoid risk, beginners should use light weights. Well-trained athletes can use heavier weights.

9 INCLINE LEG RAISES







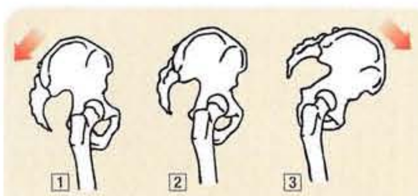
VARIATION
Performing leg flutters

Lie on an incline bench and grip the bars or handles:

- Inhale and raise the legs to horizontal, then raise the pelvis, rolling the spine up as if trying to bring the knees to the head.

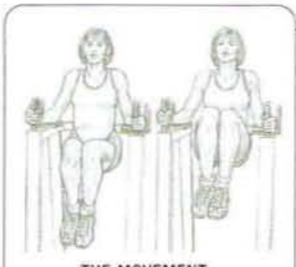
This exercise first works the iliopsoas, tensor fascia lata, and rectus femoris of the quadriceps when raising the legs. Then it works the abdominal core and contracts mainly the infraumbilical portion of the rectus abdominis when raising the pelvis and rolling up the spine.

Comment: This is an excellent exercise if you have trouble feeling the work on the lower abdominal muscles. Given the difficulty of the exercise, beginners should start with the bench only slightly inclined.

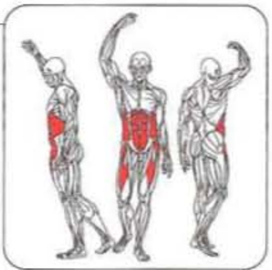


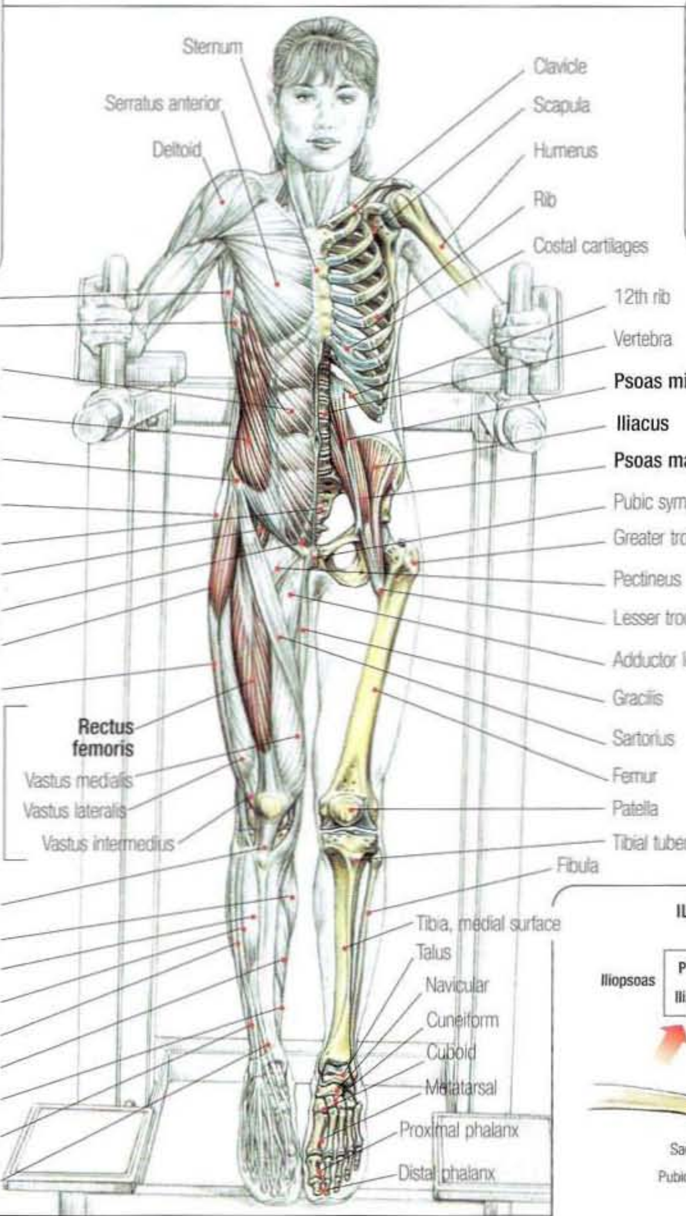
1 Pelvis in posterior tilt
2 Pelvis in neutral position
3 Pelvis in anterior tilt

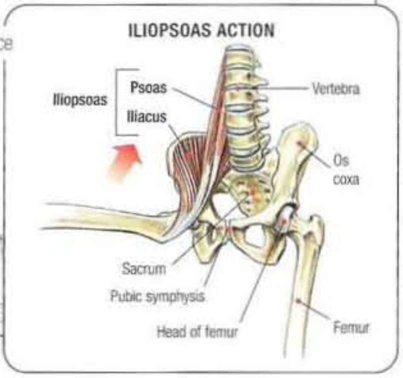
LEG RAISES 10



THE MOVEMENT







Support the body by resting the elbows on the pads. Position the back against the back support:

- Inhale and raise the knees to the chest, rounding the back in order to contract the abdominal core.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

This exercise works the hip flexors, mainly the iliopsoas, and the obliques. It intensely works the lower part of the rectus abdominis.

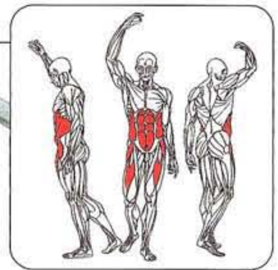
Variations:

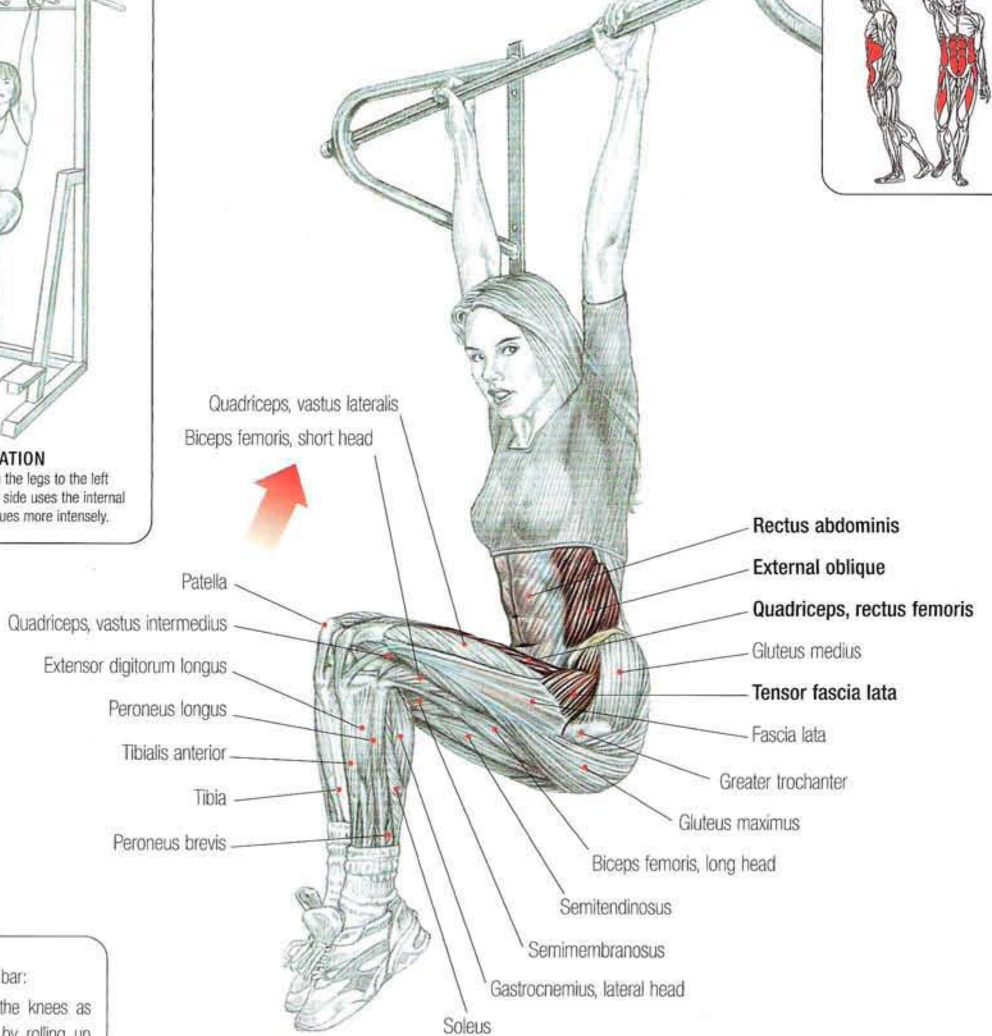
1. To target the lower abdominal muscles, perform small flutters with the legs when rolling up the spine.
2. To make the exercise more intense, extend the legs horizontally. However, this requires flexible hamstrings.
3. Hold the knees to the chest for a few seconds with an isometric contraction.

11 HANGING LEG RAISES

VARIATION

Alternately raising the legs to the left and then to the right side uses the internal and external obliques more intensely.



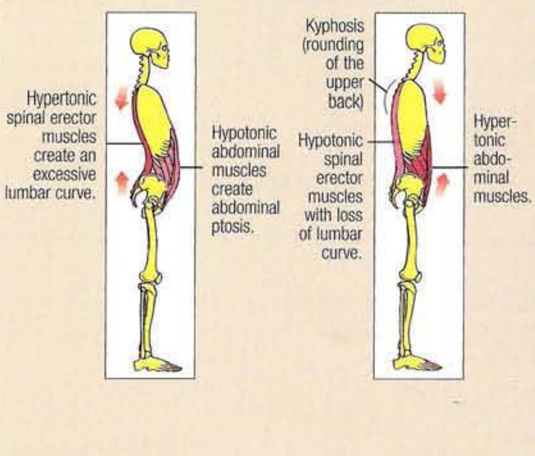


Hang from a chin-up bar:

- Inhale and raise the knees as high as possible by rolling up the spine and bringing the pubis toward the sternum.
- Exhale at the end of the movement.

This exercise uses the iliopsoas, rectus femoris, and tensor fascia lata when you raise the legs and the rectus abdominis and, to a lesser degree, the internal and external obliques when you bring the pubis toward the sternum.

Small leg flutters without lowering the knees below horizontal focus the effort on the abdominal core.



ABDOMINAL–LUMBAR EQUILIBRIUM

Balance the work between the abdominal muscles and the erector muscles of the spine.

Hypotonicity or hypertonicity of either of these muscle groups can lead to poor posture, which over time can cause injury.

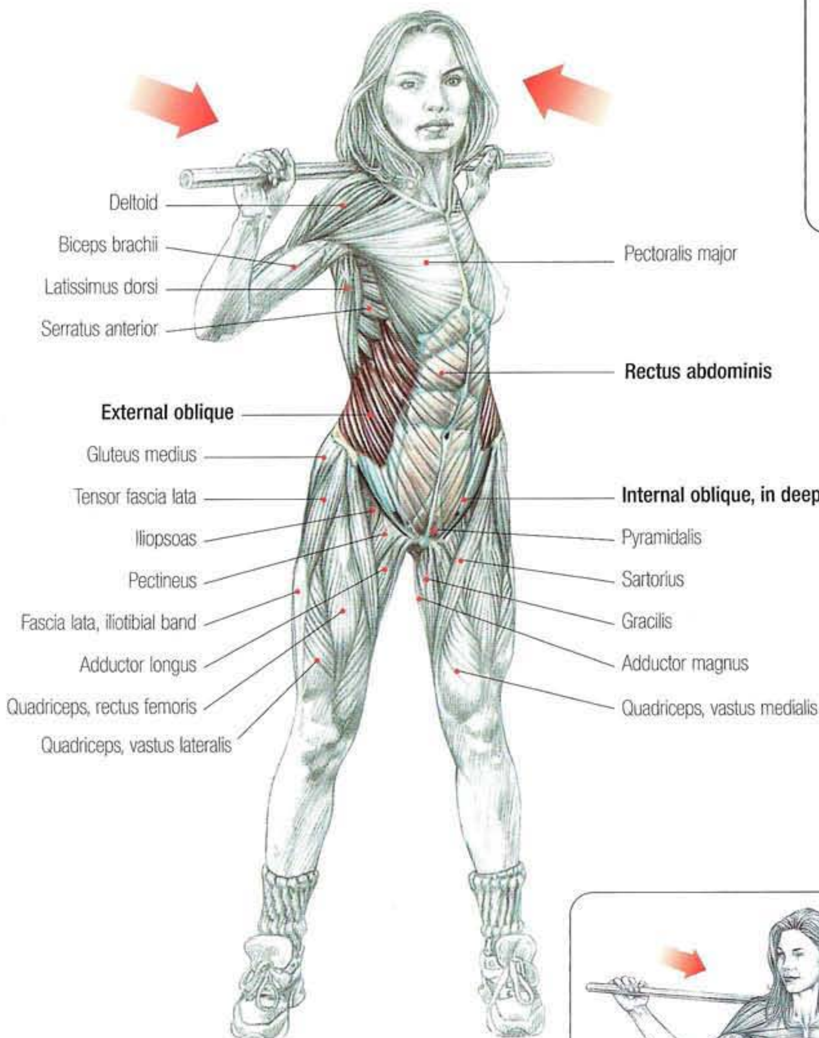
Example

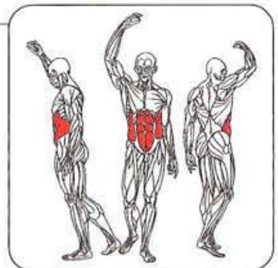
Hypertonicity of the lower part of the erector muscles of the spine (lumbosacral mass) associated with hypotonicity of the abdominal muscles leads to hyperlordosis with abdominal ptosis (sagging).

If addressed in time with exercises to strengthen the abdominal core, this postural fault can sometimes be corrected.

Conversely, hypertonic abdominal muscles associated with slack erector muscles, especially in the upper part (spinalis thoracis, longissimus thoracis, iliocostalis thoracis) leads to kyphosis (rounding of the upper back) with loss of the lumbar curve. This postural fault can be corrected with exercises to strengthen the erector muscles of the spine.

BROOMSTICK TWISTS 12





Stand with the legs apart, holding a stick across the trapezius above the posterior deltoid, hands resting on the stick without pushing:

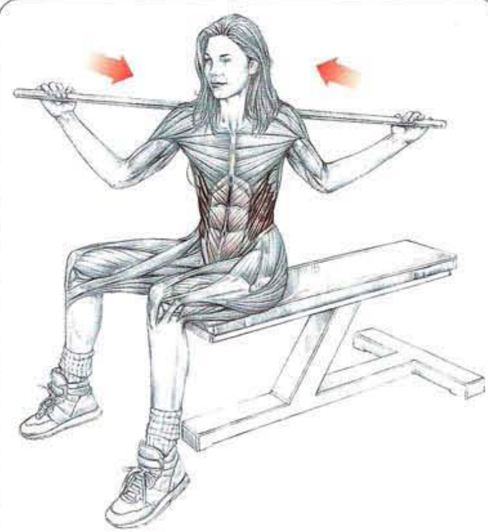
- Rotate the torso to one side and to the other, keeping the pelvis fixed with isometric contraction of the gluteal muscles.

When the right shoulder is forward, this exercise works the right external oblique and, deep in, the left internal oblique and, to a lesser degree, the rectus abdominis, quadratus lumborum, and the extensor muscles of the spine on the left side.

To increase the intensity, round the back slightly.

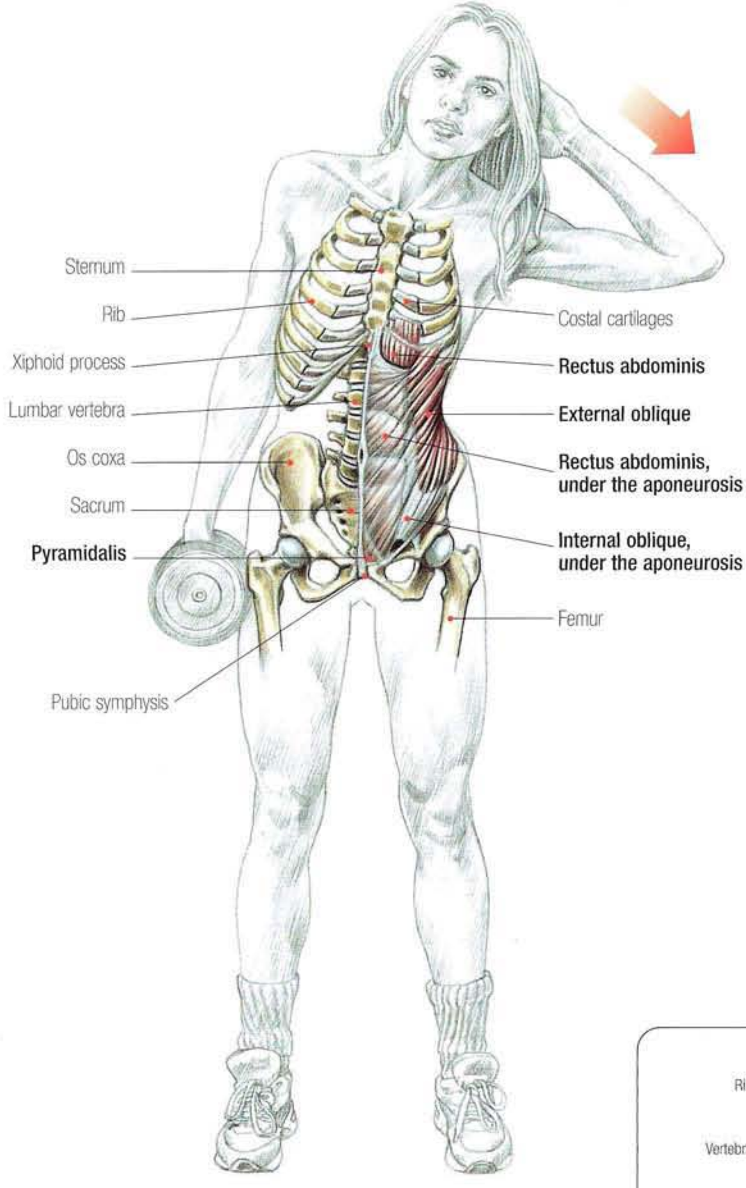
You can also perform the movement while seated, which helps to fix the pelvis so that you can focus the effort on the abdominal core.

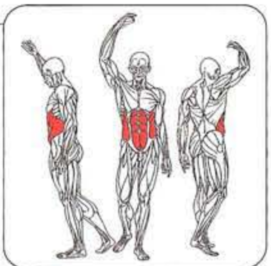
Best results are obtained with sets lasting several minutes.

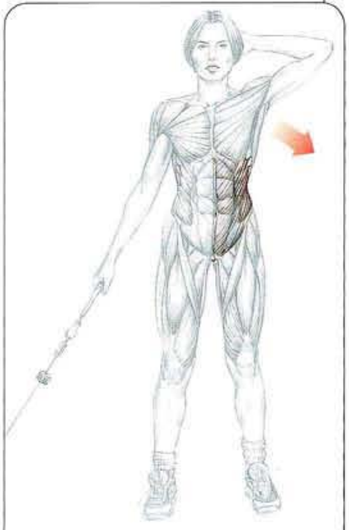


VARIATION
Seated on a bench.

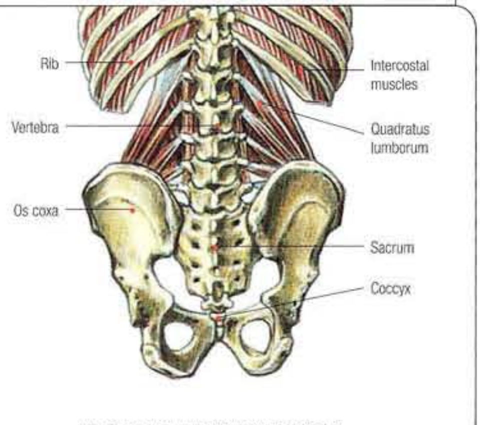
13 DUMBBELL SIDE BENDS







VARIATION AT A LOW PULLEY



QUADRATUS LUMBORUM MUSCLE

Stand with the legs slightly apart, one hand behind the head and holding a dumbbell in the other hand:

- Bend the torso to the side opposite to the dumbbell.
- Return to the initial position or beyond with passive flexion of the torso.
- Alternate sets changing the side of the dumbbell without resting.

This exercise mainly works the obliques on the side the torso bends toward. It works the rectus abdominis, deep muscles of the back, and quadratus lumborum (back muscle that inserts on the 12th rib, the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae, and the iliac crest) less intensely

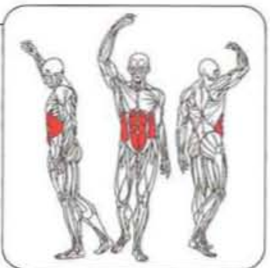
ROMAN CHAIR SIDE BENDS 14

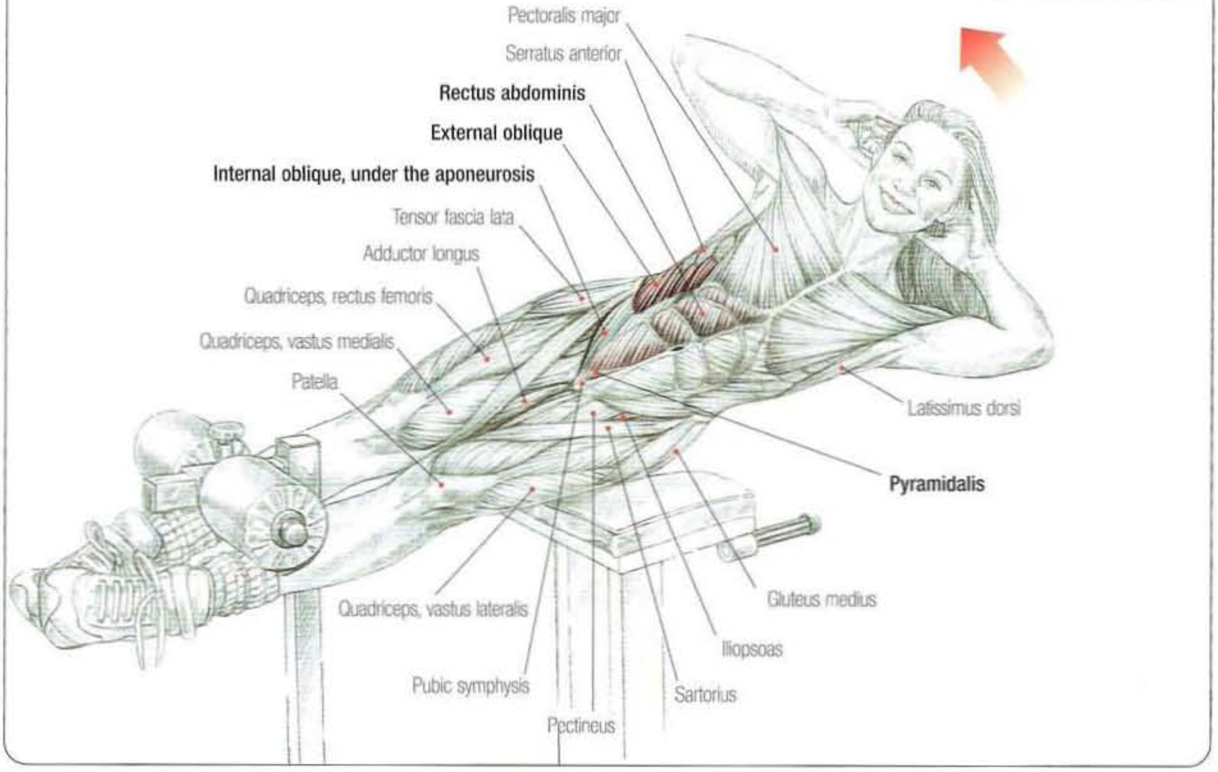
This exercise is performed on a bench originally designed for lumbar extensions.
Lie on your side with the hip on the bench, torso in the air, hands near the ears or on the chest, and feet positioned under the rolls:

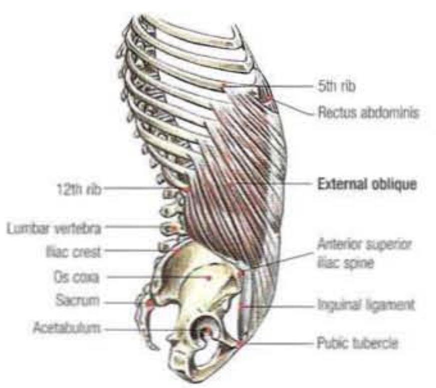
- Raise the side of the body toward the ceiling.

This exercise mainly works the obliques and rectus abdominis on the side that is bending, but the opposite obliques and rectus abdominis are also used in isometric contraction to prevent the torso from lowering below horizontal.

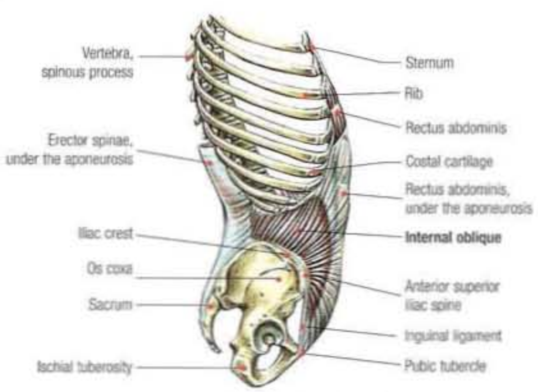
Comment: The quadratus lumborum muscle is always used when bending the torso toward the side.





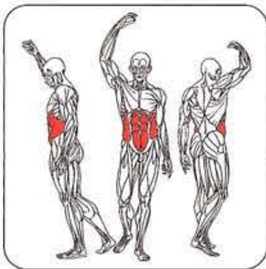


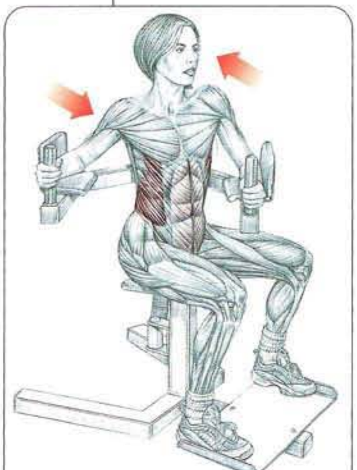
EXTERNAL OBLIQUE MUSCLE OF THE ABDOMEN



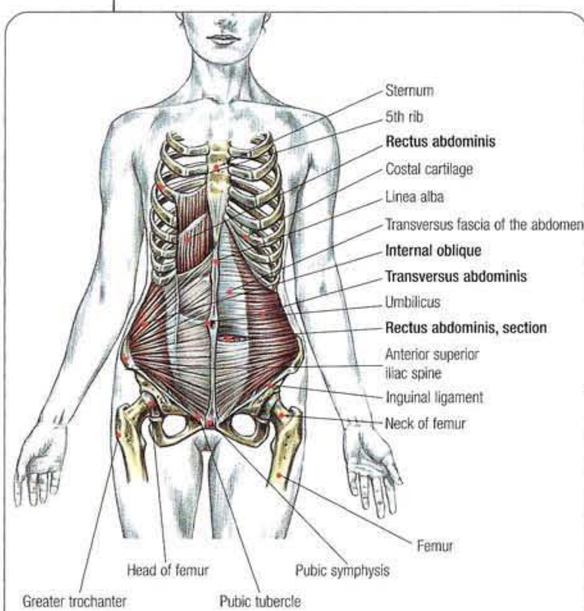
INTERNAL OBLIQUE MUSCLE OF THE ABDOMEN

15 MACHINE TRUNK ROTATIONS

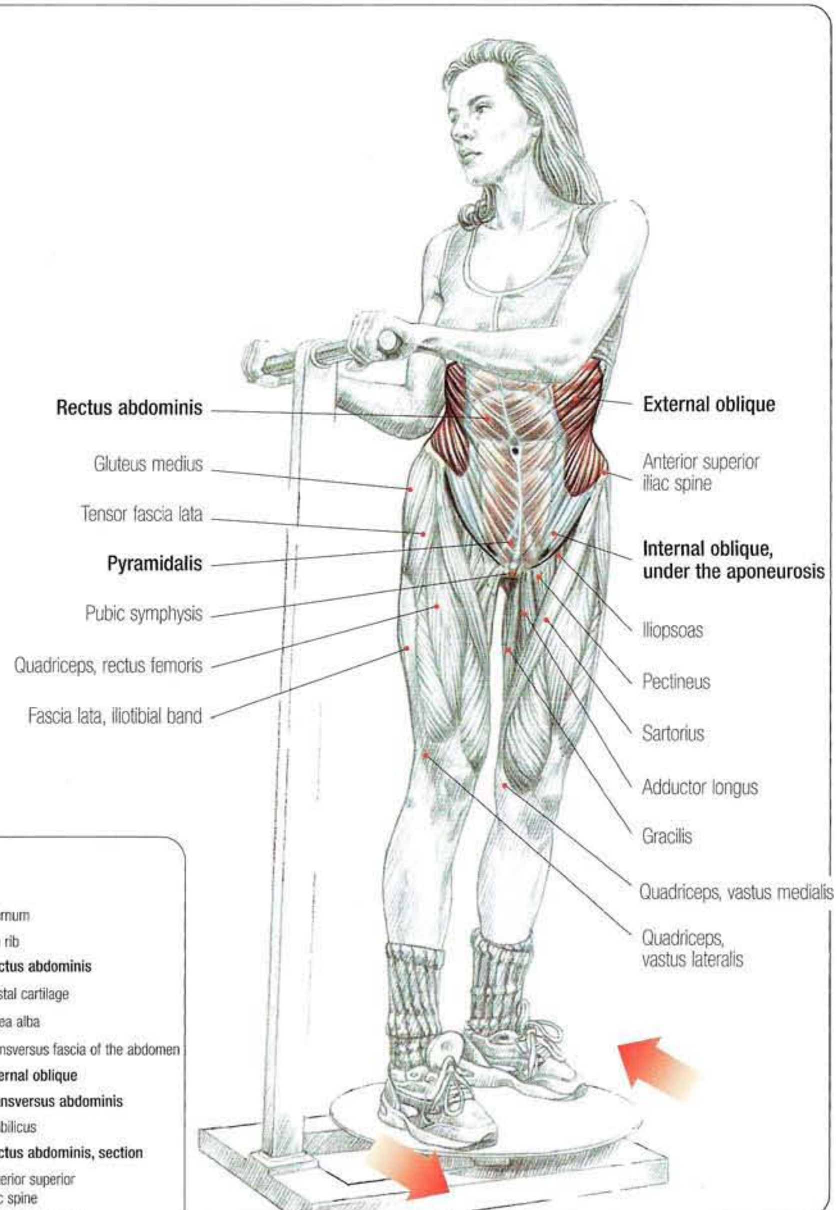




VARIATION SEATED AT A MACHINE



DEEP MUSCLES OF THE ABDOMEN



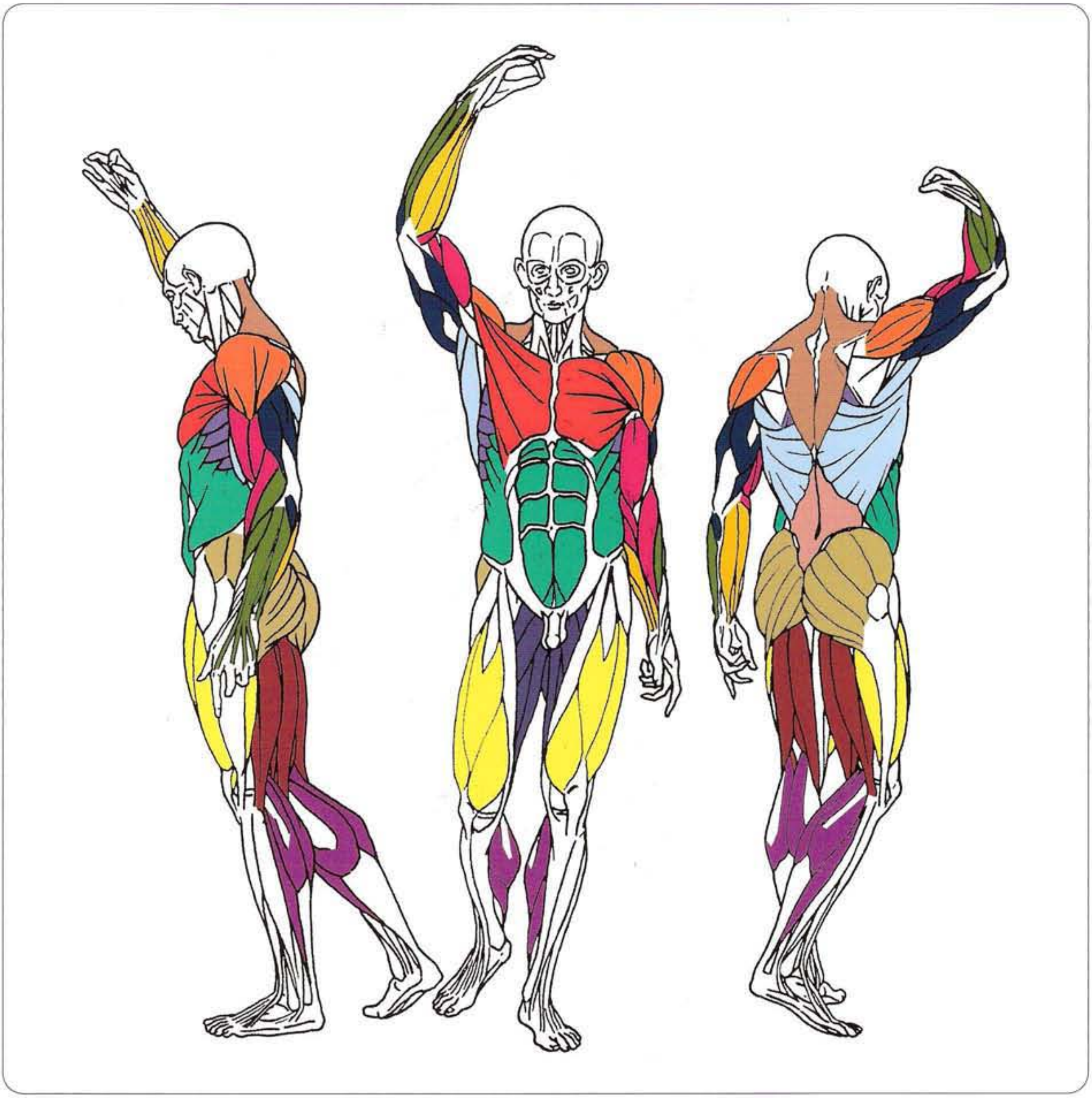
Stand on the swivel plate and grasp the handle:

- Rotate the pelvis to one side then to the other, keeping the shoulders fixed. The knees should be slightly bent. Control the rotations.

This exercise mainly works the external and internal obliques and, to a lesser degree, the rectus abdominis.

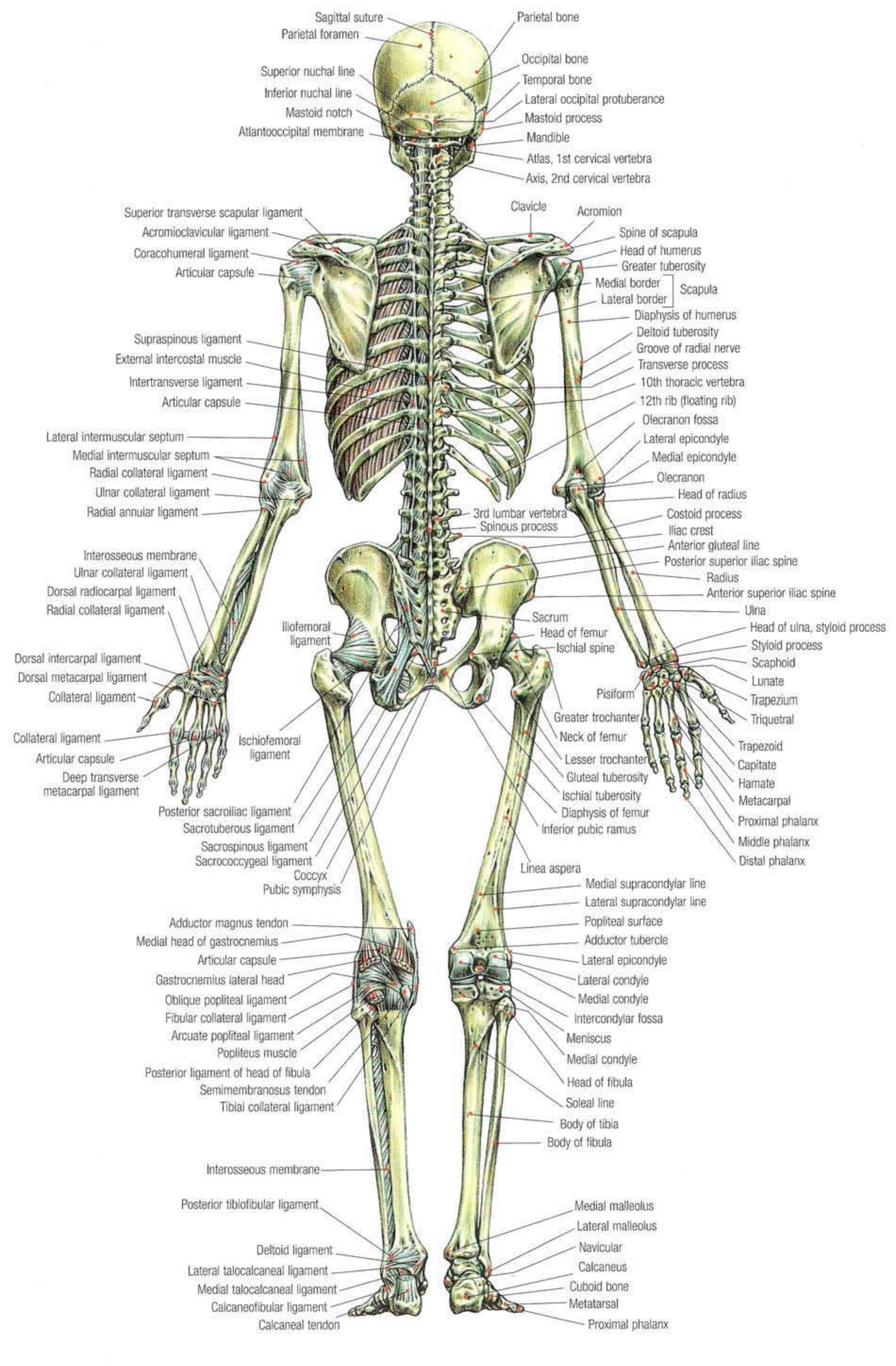
To feel the effort more intensely on the external and internal obliques, round the back slightly.

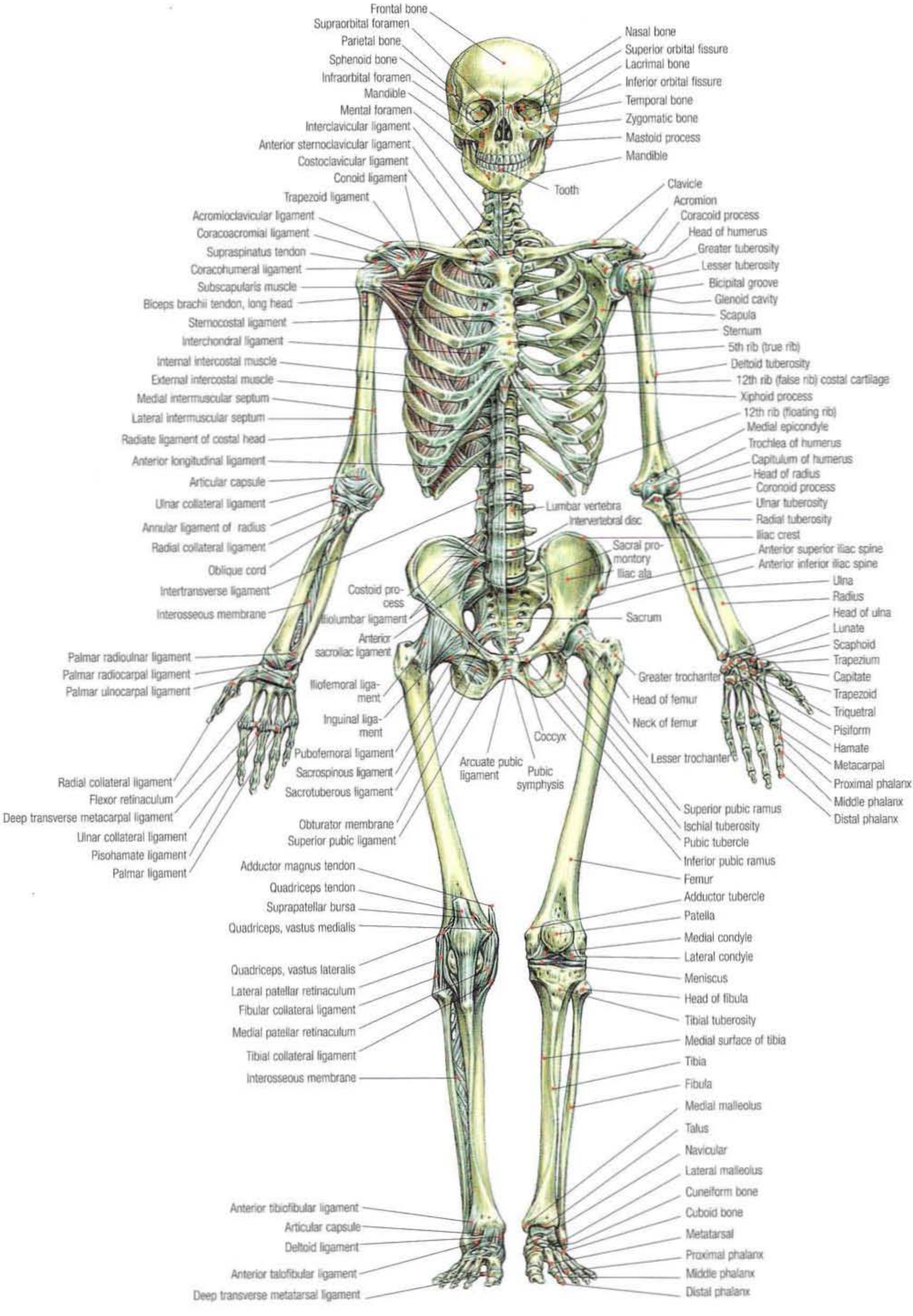
Best results are obtained with very long sets.



MAIN MUSCLE GROUPS

- Abdominals
- Arm extensors
- Wrist flexors
- Surae
- Adductors
- Wrist extensors
- Scapulae fixers
- Pectorals
- Dorsal muscles
- Gluteals
- Thigh flexors
- Quadriceps
- Shoulders
- Arm flexors
- Lumbar muscles
- Trapezii


Sagittal suture
Parietal foramen
Superior nuchal line
Inferior nuchal line
Mastoid notch
Atlantooccipital membrane
Parietal bone
Occipital bone
Temporal bone
Lateral occipital protuberance
Mastoid process
Mandible
Atlas, 1st cervical vertebra
Axis, 2nd cervical vertebra
Superior transverse scapular ligament
Acromioclavicular ligament
Coracohumeral ligament
Articular capsule
Clavicle
Acromion
Spine of scapula
Head of humerus
Greater tuberosity
Medial border
Lateral border
Scapula
Diaphysis of humerus
Deltoid tuberosity
Groove of radial nerve
Transverse process
10th thoracic vertebra
12th rib (floating rib)
Supraspinous ligament
External intercostal muscle
Intertransverse ligament
Articular capsule
Lateral intermuscular septum
Medial intermuscular septum
Radial collateral ligament
Ulnar collateral ligament
Radial annular ligament
Olecranon fossa
Lateral epicondyle
Medial epicondyle
Olecranon
Head of radius
3rd lumbar vertebra
Spinous process
Costoid process
Iliac crest
Anterior gluteal line
Posterior superior iliac spine
Radius
Anterior superior iliac spine
Ulna
Head of ulna, styloid process
Styloid process
Scaphoid
Lunate
Trapezium
Triquetral
Pisiform
Interosseous membrane
Ulnar collateral ligament
Dorsal radiocarpal ligament
Radial collateral ligament
Iliofemoral ligament
Sacrum
Head of femur
Ischial spine
Dorsal intercarpal ligament
Dorsal metacarpal ligament
Collateral ligament
Collateral ligament
Articular capsule
Deep transverse metacarpal ligament
Ischiofemoral ligament
Greater trochanter
Neck of femur
Lesser trochanter
Gluteal tuberosity
Ischial tuberosity
Diaphysis of femur
Inferior pubic ramus
Trapezoid
Capitate
Hamate
Metacarpal
Proximal phalanx
Middle phalanx
Distal phalanx
Posterior sacroiliac ligament
Sacrotuberous ligament
Sacrospinous ligament
Sacrococcygeal ligament
Coccyx
Pubic symphysis
Linea aspera
Medial supracondylar line
Lateral supracondylar line
Popliteal surface
Adductor tubercle
Lateral epicondyle
Lateral condyle
Medial condyle
Intercondylar fossa
Meniscus
Medial condyle
Head of fibula
Soleal line
Body of tibia
Body of fibula
Adductor magnus tendon
Medial head of gastrocnemius
Articular capsule
Gastrocnemius lateral head
Oblique popliteal ligament
Fibular collateral ligament
Arcuate popliteal ligament
Popliteus muscle
Posterior ligament of head of fibula
Semimembranosus tendon
Tibial collateral ligament
Interosseous membrane
Posterior tibiofibular ligament
Deltoid ligament
Lateral talocalcaneal ligament
Medial talocalcaneal ligament
Calcaneofibular ligament
Calcaneal tendon
Medial malleolus
Lateral malleolus
Navicular
Calcaneus
Cuboid bone
Metatarsal
Proximal phalanx



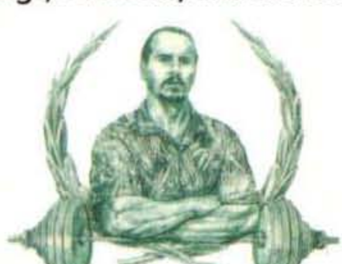
Frontal bone
Supraorbital foramen
Parietal bone
Sphenoid bone
Infraorbital foramen
Mandible
Mental foramen
Interclavicular ligament
Anterior sternoclavicular ligament
Costoclavicular ligament
Conoid ligament
Trapezoid ligament
Acromioclavicular ligament
Coracoacromial ligament
Supraspinatus tendon
Coracohumeral ligament
Subscapularis muscle
Biceps brachii tendon, long head
Sternocostal ligament
Interchondral ligament
Internal intercostal muscle
External intercostal muscle
Medial intermuscular septum
Lateral intermuscular septum
Radiate ligament of costal head
Anterior longitudinal ligament
Articular capsule
Ulnar collateral ligament
Annular ligament of radius
Radial collateral ligament
Oblique cord
Intertransverse ligament
Interosseous membrane
Palmar radioulnar ligament
Palmar radiocarpal ligament
Palmar ulnocarpal ligament
Radial collateral ligament
Flexor retinaculum
Deep transverse metacarpal ligament
Ulnar collateral ligament
Pisohamate ligament
Palmar ligament
Costoid process
Iliolumbar ligament
Anterior sacroiliac ligament
Iliofemoral ligament
Inguinal ligament
Pubofemoral ligament
Sacrospinous ligament
Sacrotuberous ligament
Obturator membrane
Superior pubic ligament
Arcuate pubic ligament
Pubic symphysis
Coccyx
Adductor magnus tendon
Quadriceps tendon
Suprapatellar bursa
Quadriceps, vastus medialis
Quadriceps, vastus lateralis
Lateral patellar retinaculum
Fibular collateral ligament
Medial patellar retinaculum
Tibial collateral ligament
Interosseous membrane
Anterior tibiofibular ligament
Articular capsule
Deltoid ligament
Anterior talofibular ligament
Deep transverse metatarsal ligament
Nasal bone
Superior orbital fissure
Lacrimal bone
Inferior orbital fissure
Temporal bone
Zygomatic bone
Mastoid process
Mandible
Tooth
Clavicle
Acromion
Coracoid process
Head of humerus
Greater tuberosity
Lesser tuberosity
Bicipital groove
Glenoid cavity
Scapula
Sternum
5th rib (true rib)
Deltoid tuberosity
12th rib (false rib) costal cartilage
Xiphoid process
12th rib (floating rib)
Medial epicondyle
Trochlea of humerus
Capitulum of humerus
Head of radius
Coronoid process
Ulnar tuberosity
Radial tuberosity
Lumbar vertebra
Intervertebral disc
Iliac crest
Anterior superior iliac spine
Anterior inferior iliac spine
Sacral promontory
Iliac ala
Sacrum
Ulna
Radius
Head of ulna
Lunate
Scaphoid
Trapezium
Capitate
Trapezoid
Triquetral
Pisiform
Hamate
Metacarpal
Proximal phalanx
Middle phalanx
Distal phalanx
Greater trochanter
Head of femur
Neck of femur
Lesser trochanter
Superior pubic ramus
Ischial tuberosity
Pubic tubercle
Inferior pubic ramus
Femur
Adductor tubercle
Patella
Medial condyle
Lateral condyle
Meniscus
Head of fibula
Tibial tuberosity
Medial surface of tibia
Tibia
Fibula
Medial malleolus
Talus
Navicular
Lateral malleolus
Cuneiform bone
Cuboid bone
Metatarsal
Proximal phalanx
Middle phalanx
Distal phalanx

Strength Training Anatomy

Discover for yourself the magic of *Strength Training Anatomy*, one of the best-selling strength training books ever published!

Get an inside look at the human form in action with more than 400 full-color illustrations. This detailed artwork showcases the muscles used during each exercise and delineates how these muscles interact with surrounding joints and skeletal structures. Like having an X-ray for each exercise, the information gives you a multifaceted view of strength training not seen in any other resource.

This updated bestseller also contains detailed anatomical analysis of training injuries and preventive measures to help you exercise safely. Chapters are devoted to each major muscle group, with 115 total exercises for arms, shoulders, chest, back, legs, buttocks, and abdomen.



The former editor in chief of *PowerMag* in France, author and illustrator **Frédéric Delavier** is a journalist for *Le Monde du Muscle* and a contributor to *Men's Health Germany* and several other strength publications.

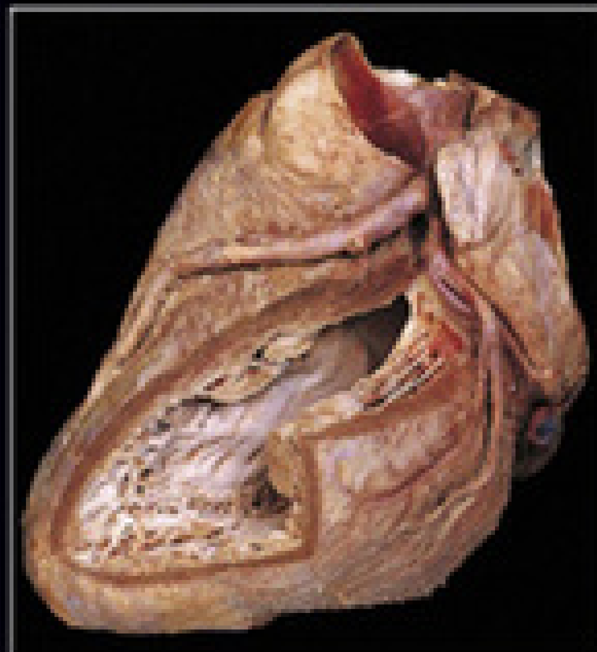
ISBN 0-7360-6368-4
51995
9 780736 063685
$19.95
In Canada $26.95

Human Kinetics

SIXTH EDITION

HUMAN ANATOMY

Color Atlas and Textbook



John Gosling
Philip Harris
John Humpherson
Ian Whitmore
Peter Willan

ELSEVIER

HUMAN ANATOMY

J.A. Gosling MD, MB ChB, FRCS, FAS
Professor of Anatomy
Stanford University
USA

P.F. Harris MD, MB ChB, MSc, FAS
Emeritus Professor of Anatomy
University of Manchester
UK

J.R. Humpherson MB ChB
Formerly Senior Lecturer in Anatomy
Faculty of Life Sciences
University of Manchester
UK

I. Whitmore MD, MB BS, LRCP MRCS, FAS
Professor of Anatomy
Stanford University
USA

P.L.T. Willan MB ChB, FRCS
Formerly Professor of Anatomy
University of UAE
Al-Ain
United Arab Emirates

Contributors to previous editions
Photography by:

A.L. Bentley ABIPP, AIMBI, MBKS
Formerly Medical Photographer
Faculty of Life Sciences
University of Manchester
UK

J.L. Hargreaves BA(hons)
Formerly Medical Photographer
Faculty of Life Sciences
University of Manchester
UK

Embalming and section cutting by:

J.T. Davies LIAS
Formerly Senior Anatomical Technician
Faculty of Life Sciences
University of Manchester
UK

HUMAN ANATOMY

SIXTH EDITION

Color Atlas and Textbook

ELSEVIER

Edinburgh London New York Oxford Philadelphia St Louis Sydney Toronto 2017

ELSEVIER

First edition 1985
Second edition 1990
Third edition 1996
Fourth edition 2002
Fifth edition 2008
Sixth edition 2017

ISBN 978-0-7234-3827-4
eISBN 978-0-7234-3828-1

Notices

Knowledge and best practice in this field are constantly changing. As new research and experience broaden our understanding, changes in research methods, professional practices, or medical treatment may become necessary.

Practitioners and researchers must always rely on their own experience and knowledge in evaluating and using any information, methods, compounds, or experiments described herein. In using such information or methods they should be mindful of their own safety and the safety of others, including parties for whom they have a professional responsibility.

With respect to any drug or pharmaceutical products identified, readers are advised to check the most current information provided (i) on procedures featured or (ii) by the manufacturer of each product to be administered, to verify the recommended dose or formula, the method and duration of administration, and contraindications. It is the responsibility of practitioners, relying on their own experience and knowledge of their patients, to make diagnoses, to determine dosages and the best treatment for each individual patient, and to take all appropriate safety precautions.

To the fullest extent of the law, neither the Publisher nor the authors, contributors, or editors, assume any liability for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions, or ideas contained in the material herein.

Printed in China

For Elsevier:
Senior Content Strategist: Jeremy Bowes
Content Development Specialist: Nani Clansey
Project Manager: Andrew Riley
Designer/Design Direction: Miles Hitchen
Illustration Manager: Amy Faith Naylor

Preface to the Sixth Edition

The prime purpose of the first edition of *Human Anatomy* was to present topographical anatomy as it is seen in the dissecting room. The unique combination of photographs with accompanying labelled diagrams and concise text is preserved in this edition. However, the book has evolved to accommodate modern trends in the teaching of anatomy to emphasise clinical applications and problem solving.

Changes have included the addition of introductory sections for each chapter to provide an overview of each region; the incorporation of selected radiographs and CT scans and MR images; and the use of cross sections of all regions of the body to provide a basis for interpreting body scans.

Self-assessment exercises have included clinical case histories and multiple choice questions, as well as radiographs and scans, together with anatomical sections.

In previous editions the terminology was updated to conform to *Terminologia Anatomica* and a list of alternative terms is included. On occasions fonts have changed to improve readability.

In this edition we have continued to improve the text and the diagrams by remedying omissions and removing errors and ambiguities. In addition, we have added new radiographs and scans. The numerous examples of clinical and applied anatomy in each chapter are now clearly identified. After discussions with the publisher, we elected to indicate clinical comments by highlighting in blue and to employ enclosing arrows in some electronic media.

Whilst the book was initially written for medical and dental students, the content will now also be useful to candidates preparing for higher qualifications in surgical specialties and radiology. It will also be relevant to students in other professions where anatomy is a significant component of the course.

It is with sadness that we report the death of John Davies whose skills as an embalmer enabled the authors to prepare the many dissections presented in this atlas.

J.A.G., P.F.H., J.R.H., I.W., P.L.T.W.
2016

Preface to the First Edition

Despite the many anatomical atlases and textbooks currently available, there appeared to be a need for a book which combined the advantages of each of these forms of presentation. This book was conceived with the intention of filling that need. With a unique combination of photographs of dissections, accompanying diagrams and concise text, this volume aims to provide the student with a better understanding of human anatomy.

The basis of this work is the cadaver as seen in the dissecting room; therefore, reference to surface and radiological anatomy is minimal. Likewise, comments on the clinical and functional significance of selected anatomical structures are brief. However, comparison is made where appropriate between the anatomy of the living and that of the cadaver.

Each dissection was specially prepared and photographed to display only a few important features. However, since photographs of dissections are inherently difficult to interpret, each is accompanied by a guide in the form of a drawing. Each drawing is coloured and labelled to highlight the salient features of the dissection and is accompanied by axes to indicate the orientation of the specimen. Adjacent photographs often depict different stages of the same dissection to help the student construct a three dimensional image.

The first chapter introduces anatomical terminology, provides general information about the basic tissues of the body, and includes overall views of selected systems. Because the six subsequent chapters describe anatomy primarily through dissection, a regional approach has been employed. Features of bones are described only when considering their related structures, especially muscles and joints; osteology is not considered in its own right. The internal structure of the ear and eye are beyond the scope of this book since the study of these topics requires microscopy; the anatomy of the brain and spinal cord are also excluded as they are usually taught in special courses.

The level of detail contained in this book is appropriate for current courses in topographical anatomy for medical and dental undergraduates. In addition, it will be of value to postgraduates and to students entering those professions allied to medicine in which anatomy is part of the curriculum.

The terminology employed is that which is most frequently used in clinical practice. Where appropriate, alternatives (such as those recommended in *Nomina Anatomica*) are appended in brackets.

Preparation of the dissections and the text has occupied the authors for nearly five years. Our objective was to create a high quality and visually attractive anatomical work and we hope that the time and effort spent in its preparation is reflected in the finished product.

J.A.G., P.F.H., J.R.H., I.W., P.L.T.W.
Manchester, 1985

Acknowledgements for All Editions

The authors are indebted to Drs Victoria Clague, Gulraiz Ahmad and Peter Mullaney, Professors Waqar Bhatti, R.S. Harris and A.R. Moody, and to the Departments of Radiology at Kaiser Permanente, San Rafael CA and Manchester University for the provision of radiographs, CT scans and MR images.

Our families deserve special mention, as without their untiring support and patience these editions would certainly not have come to publication.

We thank them all.

J.A.G., P.F.H., J.R.H., I.W., P.L.T.W.

Human Anatomy User Guide

Organization

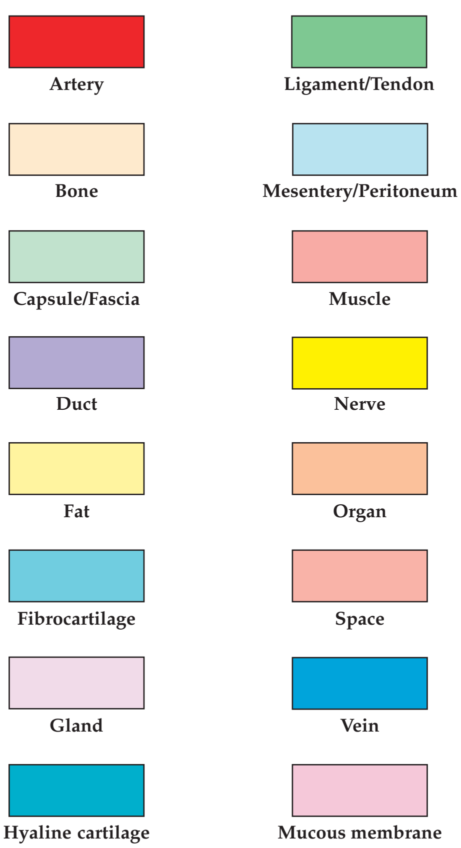
This book begins with a chapter on basic anatomical concepts. This is following seven chapters, each with its own introduction, on the different regions of the body. Information is usually presented in dissection order, progressing from the surface to deeper structures. The limbs are described from proximal to distal with the joints considered last.

Text and Photographs

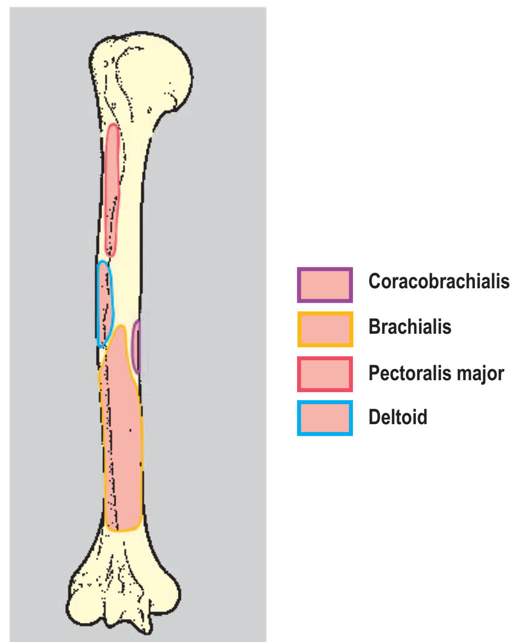
Where possible the text and photographs are arranged on self-contained two-page spreads, so that the reader can locate relevant illustrations without turning a page. Clinical content is highlighted in blue in the print edition or indicated by enclosing arrows in eBook versions (➲).

Accompanying Diagrams

Adjacent to each photograph is a line diagram in which colour is used to focus attention on particular structures in the dissection. The colours usually conform to the following code:

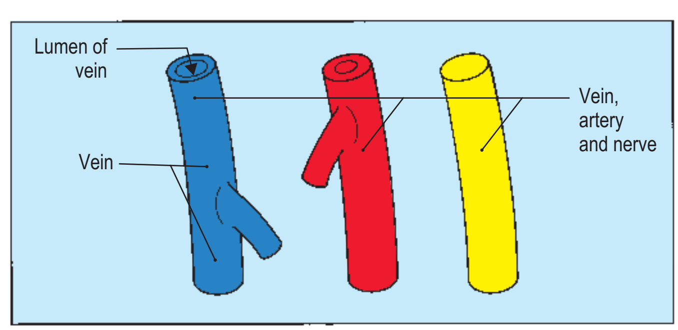


In diagrams showing muscle attachments on bone, the areas are shown using the muscle colour enclosed by different coloured lines. In other diagrams colour indicates the extent of a compartment or space.



Labels and Leader Lines

The structures of particular interest in each diagram are labelled. A single structure is named in a label either with a single leader line or by a leader line which branches to show different parts of the same structure. However, if two or more structures are named, the first has the main leader line terminating on it while the subsequent structures are indicated by side branches given off at progressively shorter distances from the label. A leader line ending in an arrow indicates a space or cavity.



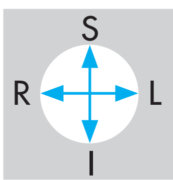
Orientation Guides

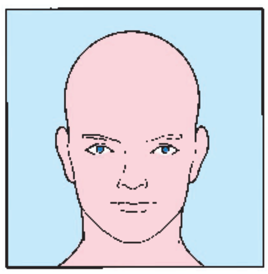
Next to the diagrams are orientation guides in which the following abbreviations are used:

L left	**P** posterior	**pr** proximal
R right	**A** anterior	**d** distal
S superior	**la** lateral	
I inferior	**m** medial	

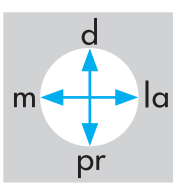
Orientation guides in oblique views employ large and small arrow heads and long and short arrow shafts. Here are four examples:

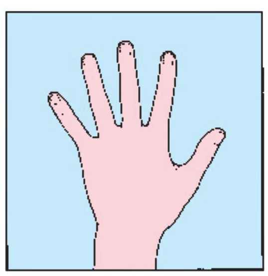
from in front;



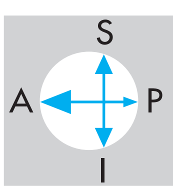


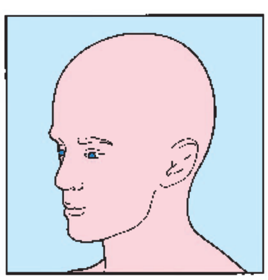
from behind;



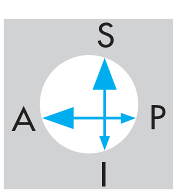


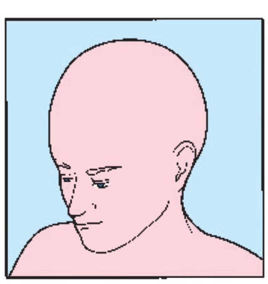
from the left side and slightly in front;





from the left side, slightly above and in front.





Terminology

The book conforms to *Terminologia Anatomica,* using the English terms. The list of alternative terms relates older non-official terms to their modern equivalent.

Self-assessment

The photographs in the main body of each chapter are unfettered by labels, leader lines or other superimposed markings; thus, readers can readily test their knowledge by either masking the whole of the accompanying diagram and studying the photograph alone, or covering only the labels.

Exams Skills, Clinical Case Skills & Observations Skills are provided after each chapter to allow readers to further self-test. Answers to Exam Skills and Clinical Case Skills are at the end of the book; those for Observation Skills are at the bottom of the same page as the picture.

Chapter 1

BASIC ANATOMICAL CONCEPTS

Terms of Position and Movement

To avoid ambiguity and confusion, anatomical terms of position and movement are defined according to an internationally accepted convention. This convention defines the anatomical position as one in which the human body stands erect with the feet together and the face, eyes and palms of the hands directed forwards (Fig. 1.1).

With the subject in the anatomical position, three sets of planes, mutually at right angles, can be defined.

Vertical (or longitudinal) planes are termed either coronal or sagittal. Coronal (or frontal) planes (Fig. 1.2) pass from one side to the other, while sagittal planes (Fig. 1.3) pass from front to back.

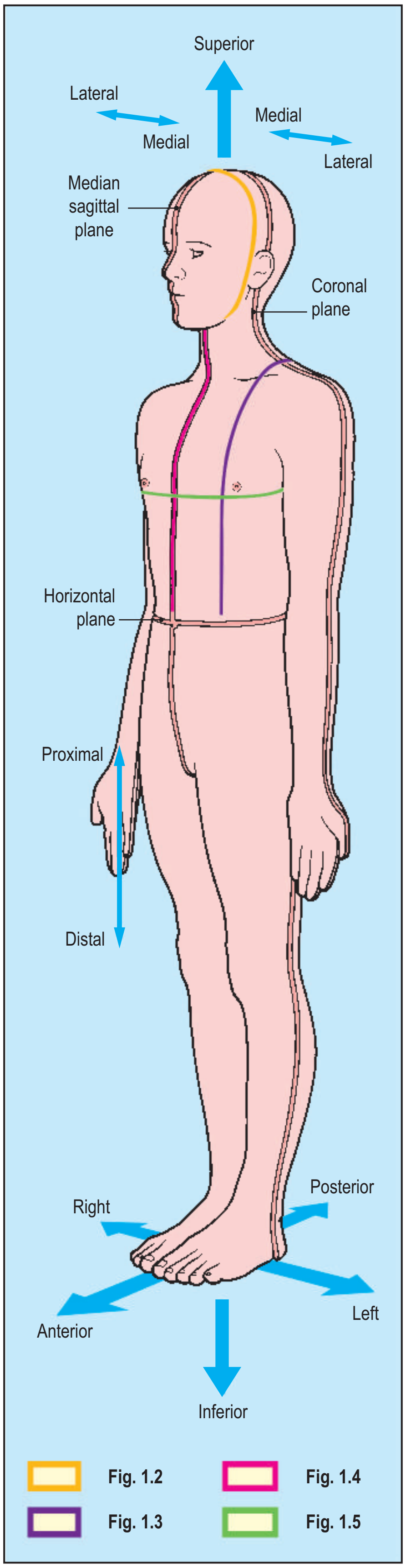


Fig. 1.1 Anatomical position and the terms used in anatomical description.

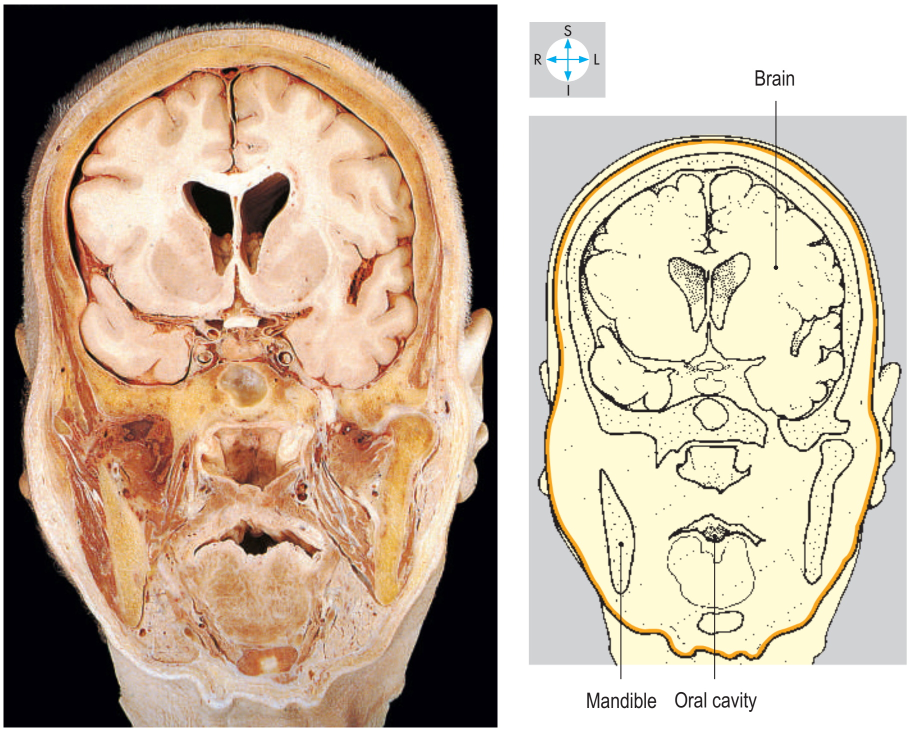


Fig. 1.2 Coronal section through the head.

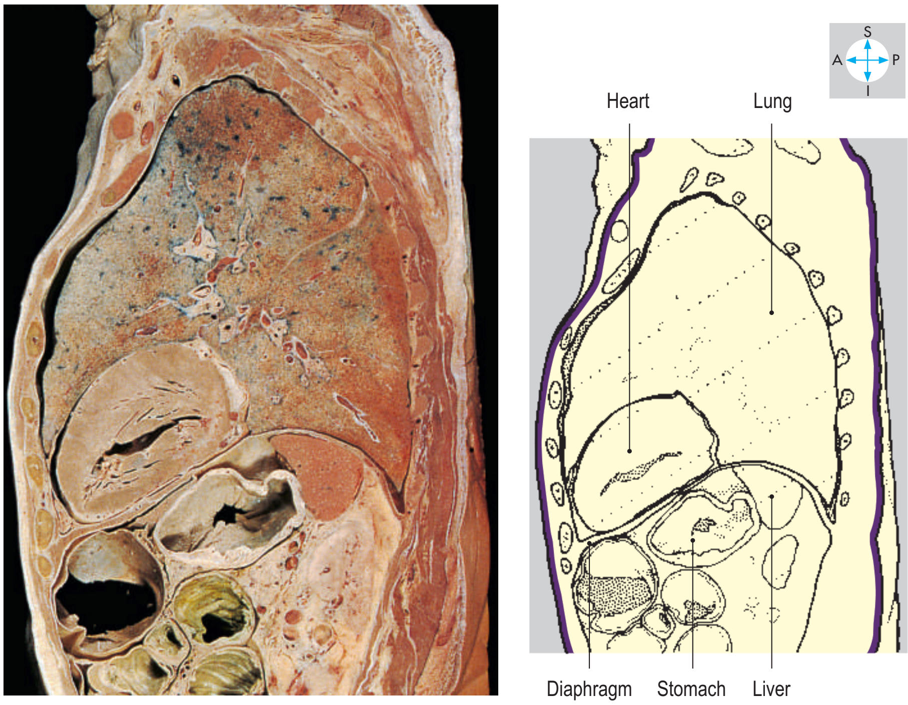


Fig. 1.3 Sagittal section through the trunk. This section lies to the left of the median sagittal plane.

One particular sagittal plane, the median sagittal (midsagittal) plane, lies in the midline and divides the body into right and left halves (Fig. 1.4).

Horizontal (or transverse) planes (Fig. 1.5) transect the body from side to side and front to back.

Sections cut at right angles to the long axis of an organ or parts of the body are also known as transverse. Similarly, longitudinal sections are cut parallel to the long axis.

The terms medial and lateral are used to indicate the position of structures relative to the median sagittal plane. For example, the ring finger lies lateral to the little finger but medial to the thumb. The front and back of the body are usually termed the anterior (or ventral) and posterior (or dorsal) surfaces, respectively (Fig. 1.1). Thus one structure is described as anterior to another because it is placed farther forwards.

Superior and inferior are terms used to indicate the relative head/foot positions of structures (Fig. 1.1). Those lying towards the head (or cranial) end of the body are described as superior to others, which are inferior (or caudal). Thus the heart lies superior to the diaphragm; the diaphragm is inferior to the heart. In the limbs, the terms proximal and distal have comparable meanings. For example, the elbow joint is proximal to the wrist but distal to the shoulder. These terms are also used to indicate the physiological direction of flow in tubes, such as the oesophagus is proximal to the stomach.

The terms superficial and deep indicate the location of structures in relation to the body surface. Thus the ribs lie superficial to the lungs but deep to the skin of the chest wall (Fig. 1.5).

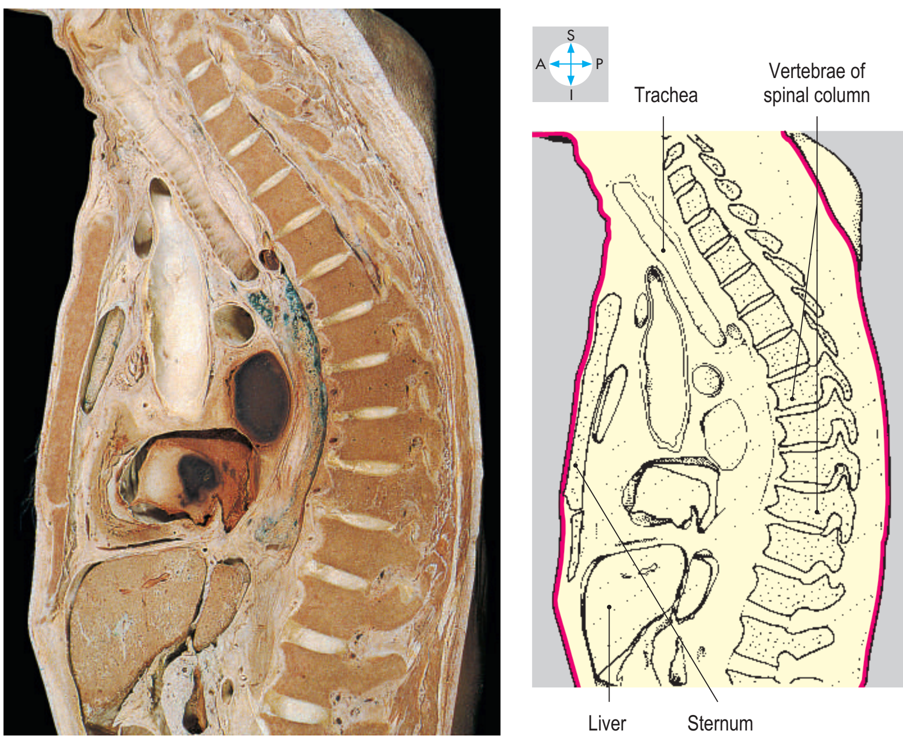


Fig. 1.4 Median sagittal section through the trunk.

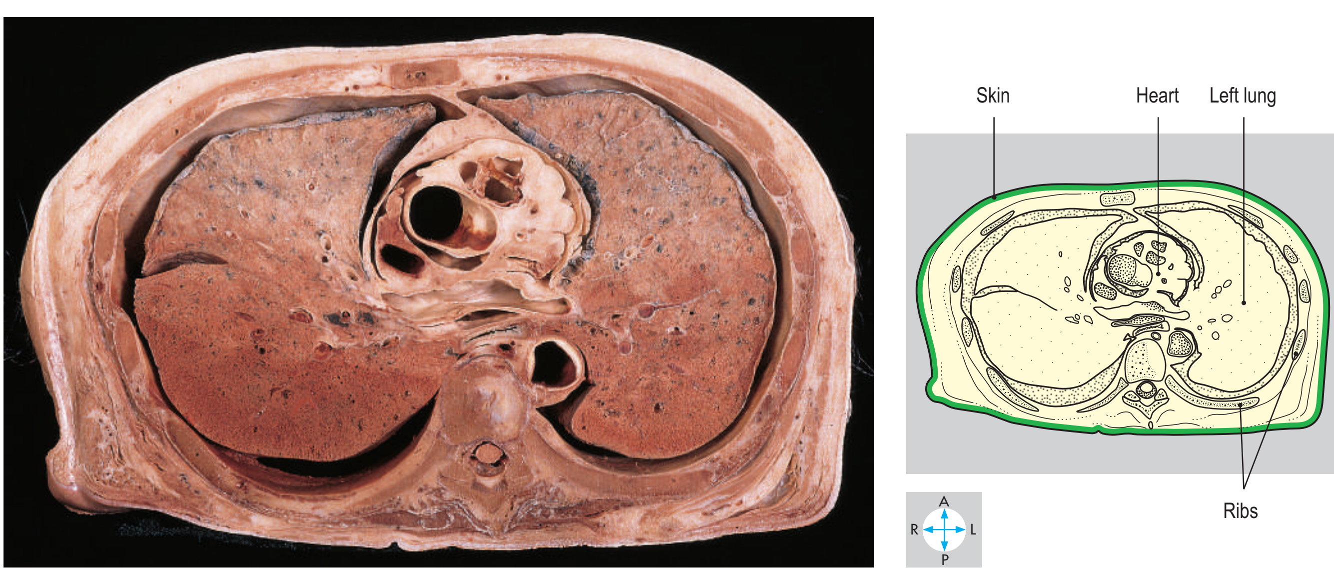


Fig. 1.5 Transverse section through the thorax at the level of the intervertebral disc between the sixth and seventh thoracic vertebrae. Inferior aspect. (Compare Fig. 2.71.)

Movements at joints are also described by specific terms. From the anatomical position, forward movement of one part in relation to the rest of the body is called flexion. Extension carries the same part posteriorly (Fig. 1.6). However, because in the fetus the developing upper and lower limbs rotate in different directions, the movements of flexion and extension in all joints from the knee downwards occur in opposite directions to the equivalent joints in the upper limb. In abduction, the structure moves away from the median sagittal plane in a lateral direction, whereas adduction moves it towards the midline (Fig. 1.7). For the fingers and toes, the terms abduction and adduction are used in reference to a longitudinal plane passing along the middle finger or the second toe, respectively. Movement around the longitudinal axis of part of the body is called rotation. In medial (or internal) rotation, the anterior surface of a limb rotates medially, while lateral (or external) rotation turns the anterior surface laterally (Fig. 1.8). Movements that combine flexion, extension, abduction, adduction and medial and lateral rotation (for instance, the 'windmilling' action seen at the shoulder joint) are known as circumduction.

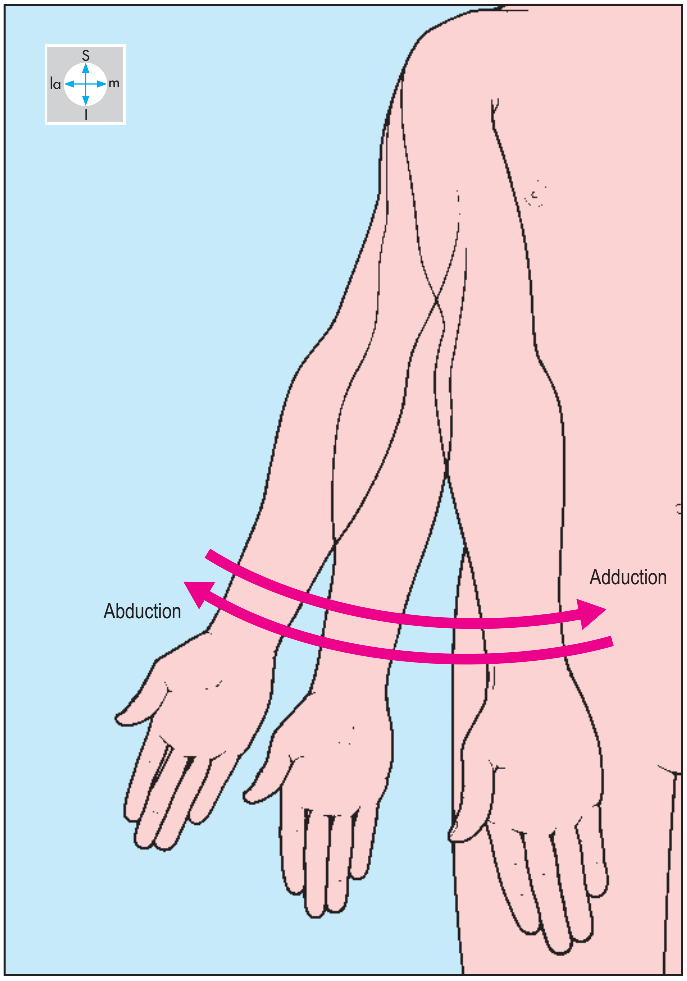


Fig. 1.7 Movements of abduction and adduction. In adduction, flexion of the shoulder joint allows the limb to be carried anterior to the trunk.

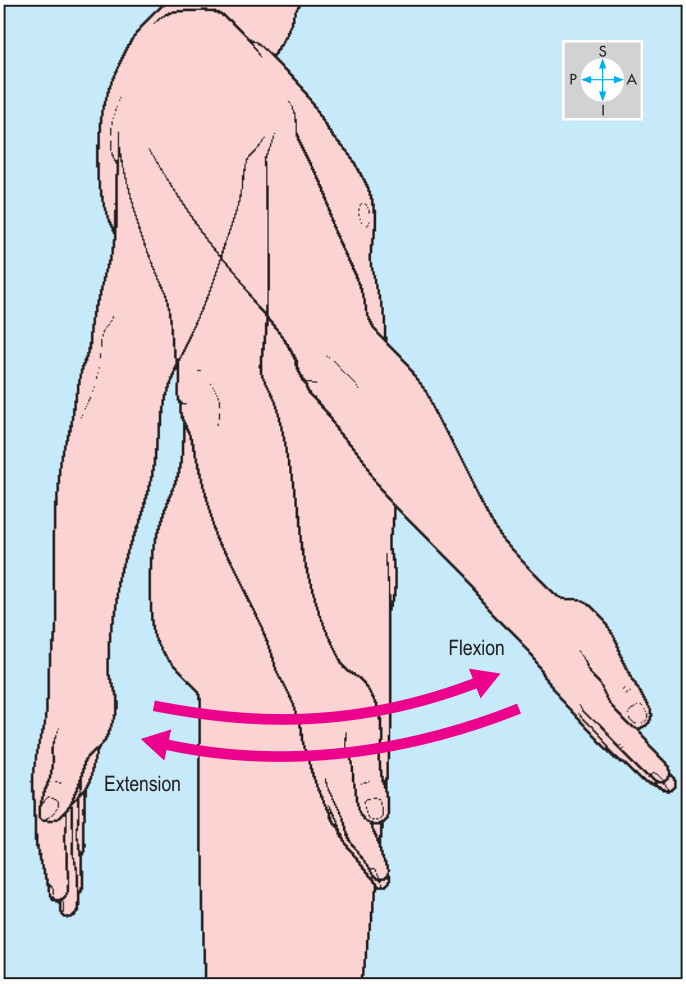


Fig. 1.6 Movements of flexion and extension of the shoulder joint.

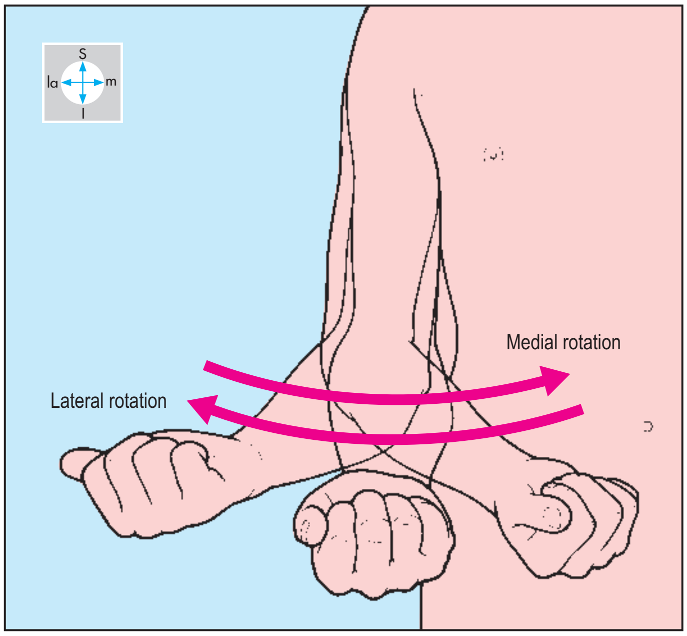


Fig. 1.8 Movement of the forearm indicates medial and lateral rotation at the shoulder joint. The elbow is flexed.

Basic Tissues and Structures

Skin

Skin (Fig. 1.9) is a protective covering for the surface of the body and comprises a superficial layer, called the epidermis, and a deeper layer, the dermis. The epidermis is an epithelium consisting of a surface layer of dead cells, which are continually shed and replaced by cells from its deeper germinal layer. The dermis is a layer of connective tissue containing blood vessels, lymphatics and nerves. In most areas of the body, the skin is thin and mobile over the underlying structures. Specializations of the skin include fingernails and toenails, hair follicles and sweat glands. On the palms of the hands and soles of the feet (and corresponding surfaces of the digits), hair follicles are absent and the epidermis is relatively thick. The skin in these regions is also firmly anchored to the underlying structures, reducing its mobility during gripping and standing. Lines of tension (Langer's lines) occur within skin and are of importance to surgeons. Scars following surgical incisions made along these lines tend to be narrower than those made across the lines of tension.

Skin is usually well vascularized and receives blood from numerous subcutaneous vessels. Knowledge of this vascular supply is important when operations that involve the use of skin flaps are undertaken. Skin has a rich nerve supply, responding to touch, pressure, heat, cold, vibration and pain. In certain areas, such as the fingertips, the skin is especially sensitive to touch and pressure. Skin is innervated by superficial (cutaneous) branches of spinal or cranial nerves. The area of skin supplied by each cranial or spinal nerve is known as a dermatome (Figs 1.37 & 1.38).

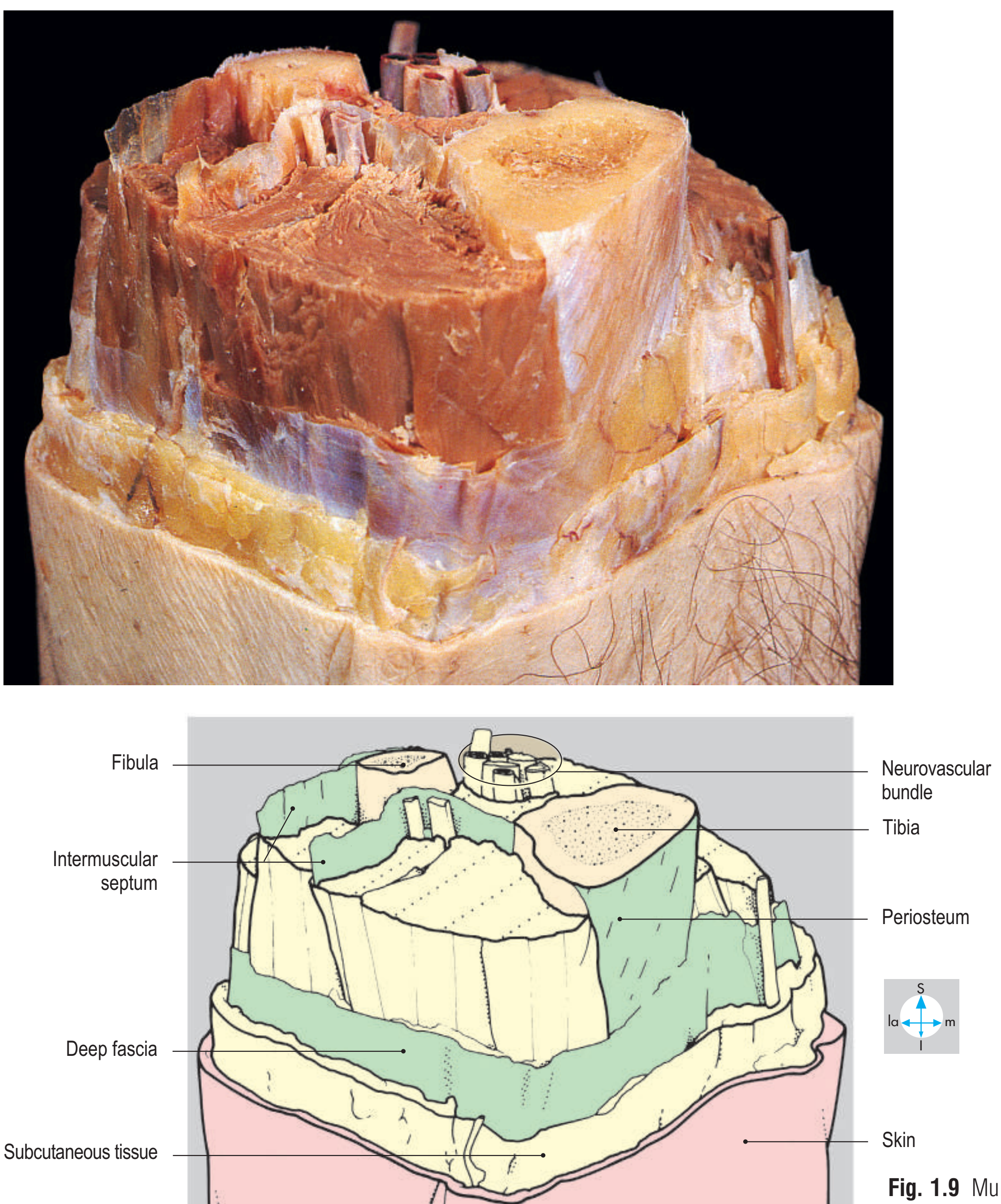


Fig. 1.9 Multilevel 'step' dissection through the right midcalf to show layers of skin, fascia and intermuscular septa.

Subcutaneous tissue (superficial fascia)

Immediately deep to the skin is a layer of loose connective tissue, the subcutaneous tissue (Fig. 1.9), which contains networks of superficial veins and lymphatics and is traversed by cutaneous nerves and arteries. It also contains fat, which varies considerably in thickness from region to region and between individuals. For example, over the buttock the fat is particularly thick, while on the back of the hand it is relatively thin. Over the lower abdomen this tissue is subdivided into two layers, a superficial fatty layer and a deeper membranous layer.

Deep fascia

The deep fascia (Fig. 1.9) consists of a layer of dense connective tissue immediately beneath the subcutaneous tissue. Although thin over the thorax and abdomen, it forms a substantial layer in the limbs (e.g. fascia lata; p. 260) and neck (e.g. investing fascia; p. 324). Near the wrist and ankle joints, the deep fascia is thickened to form retinacula, which maintain the tendons in position as they cross the joints. Deep fascia also provides attachment for muscles and gives anchorage to intermuscular septa, which separate the muscles into compartments. Bleeding and swelling within muscle compartments due to crushing injuries or fractures may raise the pressure so much that it compresses blood vessels and reduces blood flow. The resulting ischaemia may be followed by scarring and deformity with contracture of muscles.

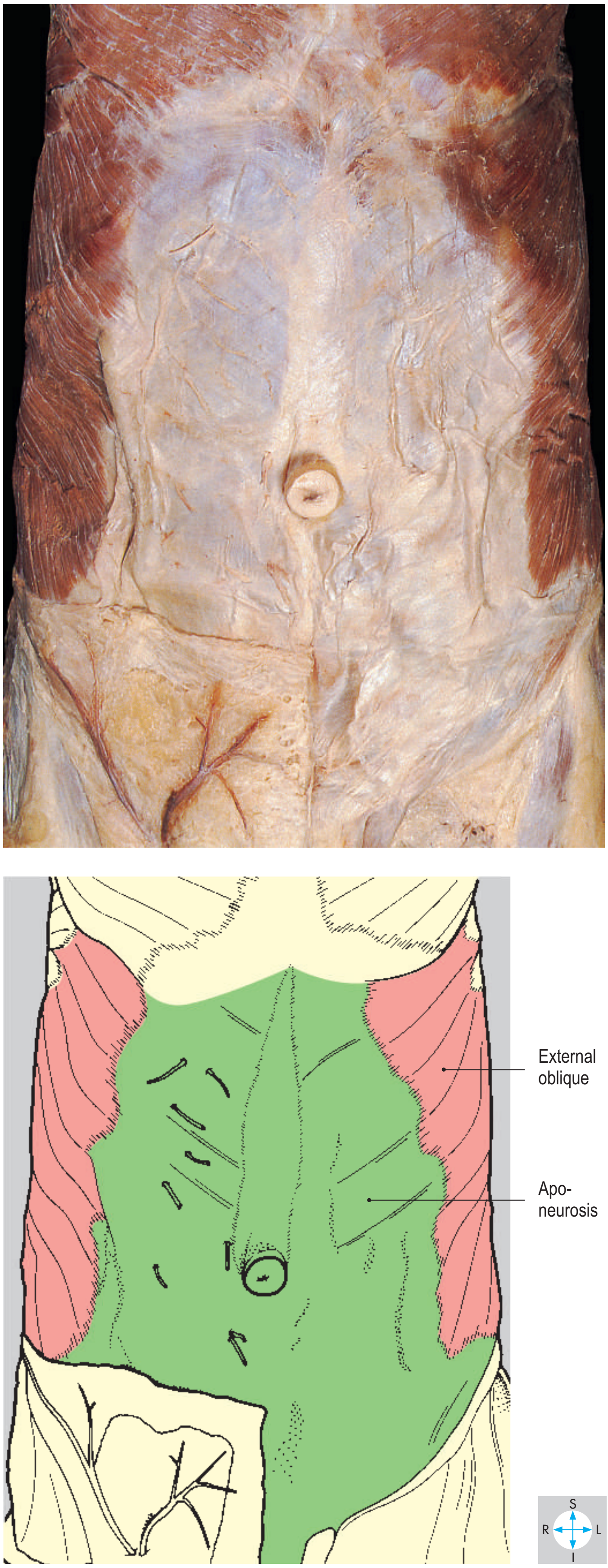


Fig. 1.10 External oblique is a flat muscle with an extensive aponeurosis.

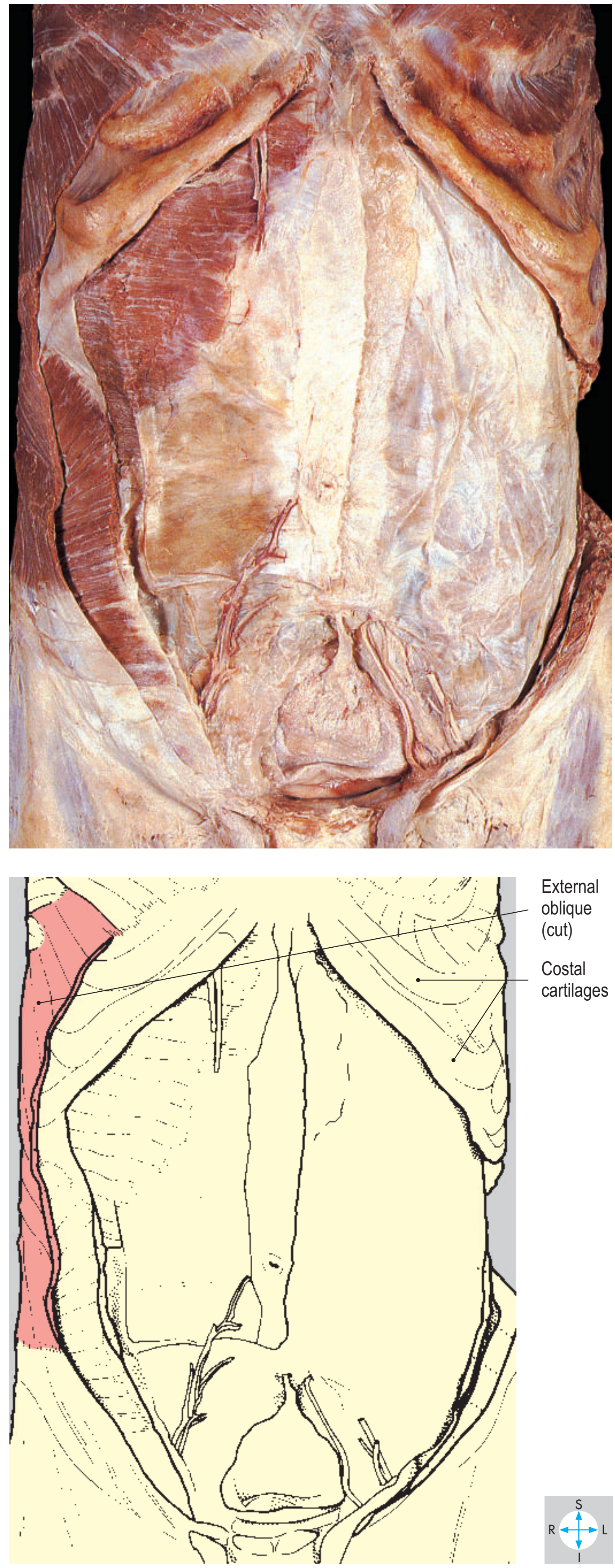


Fig. 1.11 External oblique cut to show its thickness.

Muscle

Muscle is a tissue in which active contraction shortens its component cells and/or generates tension along their length. There are three basic types: smooth muscle, cardiac striated muscle, voluntary striated muscle. Striated and smooth describe the microscopic appearance of the muscle.

Smooth muscle is present in the organs of the alimentary, genitourinary and respiratory systems and in the walls of blood vessels. Capable of slow, sustained contraction, smooth muscle is usually controlled by the autonomic nervous system (p. 22) and by endocrine secretions (hormones).

Cardiac striated muscle (myocardium) is confined to the wall of the heart and is able to contract spontaneously and rhythmically. Its cyclical activity is coordinated by the specialized conducting tissue of the heart and can be modified by the autonomic nervous system.

Skeletal muscle (voluntary striated muscle) is the basic component of those muscles that produce movements at joints. These actions are controlled by the somatic nervous system (p. 20) and may be voluntary or reflex. Each muscle cell (fibre) has its own motor nerve ending, which initiates contraction of the fibre. Muscles may be attached to the periosteum of bones either directly or by fibrous connective tissue in the form of deep fascia, intermuscular septa or tendons. Direct fleshy attachment can be extensive but tendons are usually attached to small areas of bone. Muscles with similar actions tend to be grouped together, and in limbs these groups occur in compartments (e.g. extensor compartment of the forearm).

Usually, each end of a muscle has an attachment to bone. The attachment that remains relatively fixed when the muscle performs its prime action is known as the origin, whereas the insertion is the more mobile attachment. However, in some movements, the origin moves more than the insertion; therefore, these terms are of only limited significance.

The muscle fibres within voluntary muscle are arranged in differing patterns, which reflect the function of the muscle. Sometimes they are found as thin flat sheets (as in external oblique; Figs 1.10 & 1.11). Strap muscles (such as sartorius; Fig. 1.12) have long fibres that reach without interruption from one end of the muscle to the other.

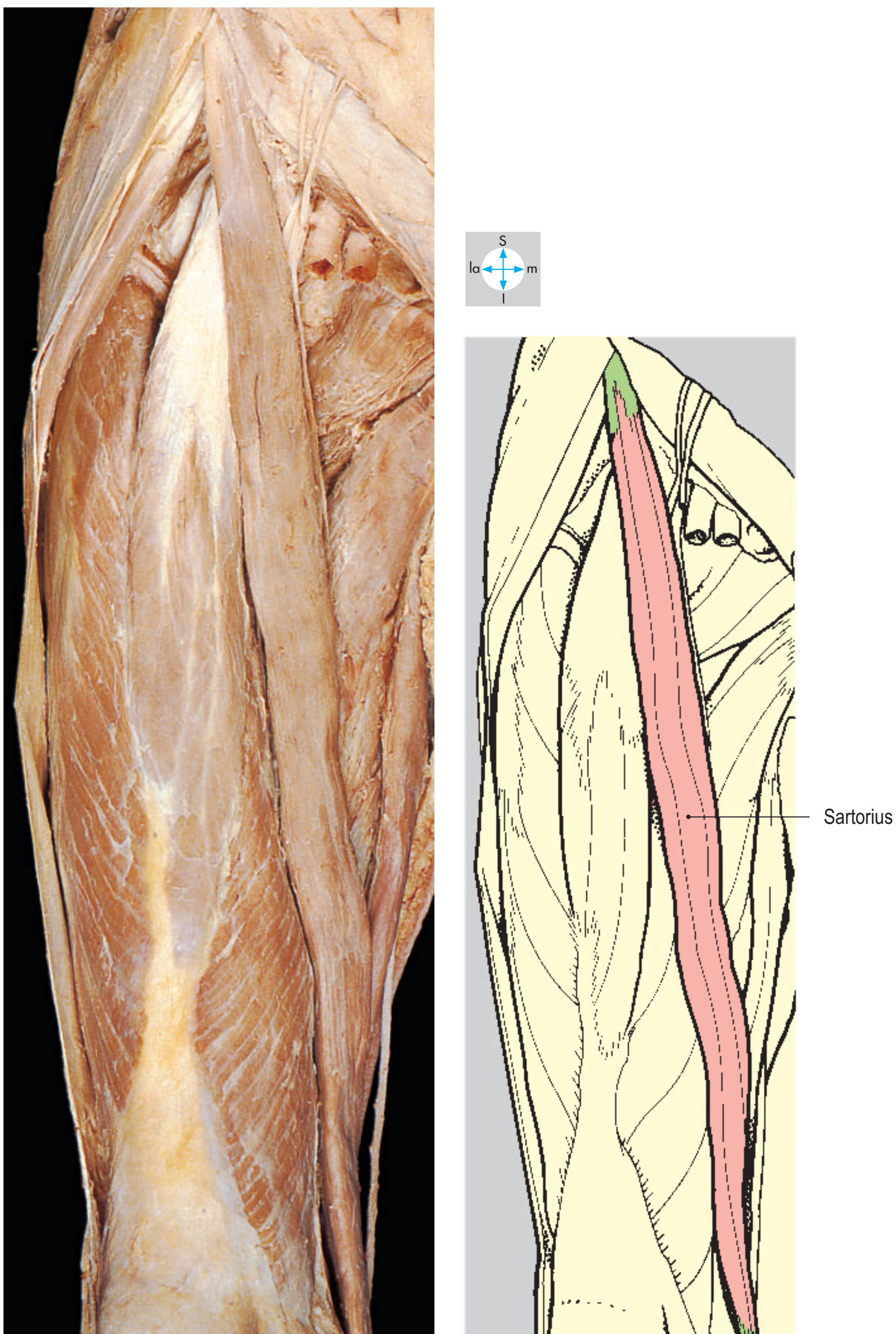


Fig. 1.12 Sartorius is a strap muscle.

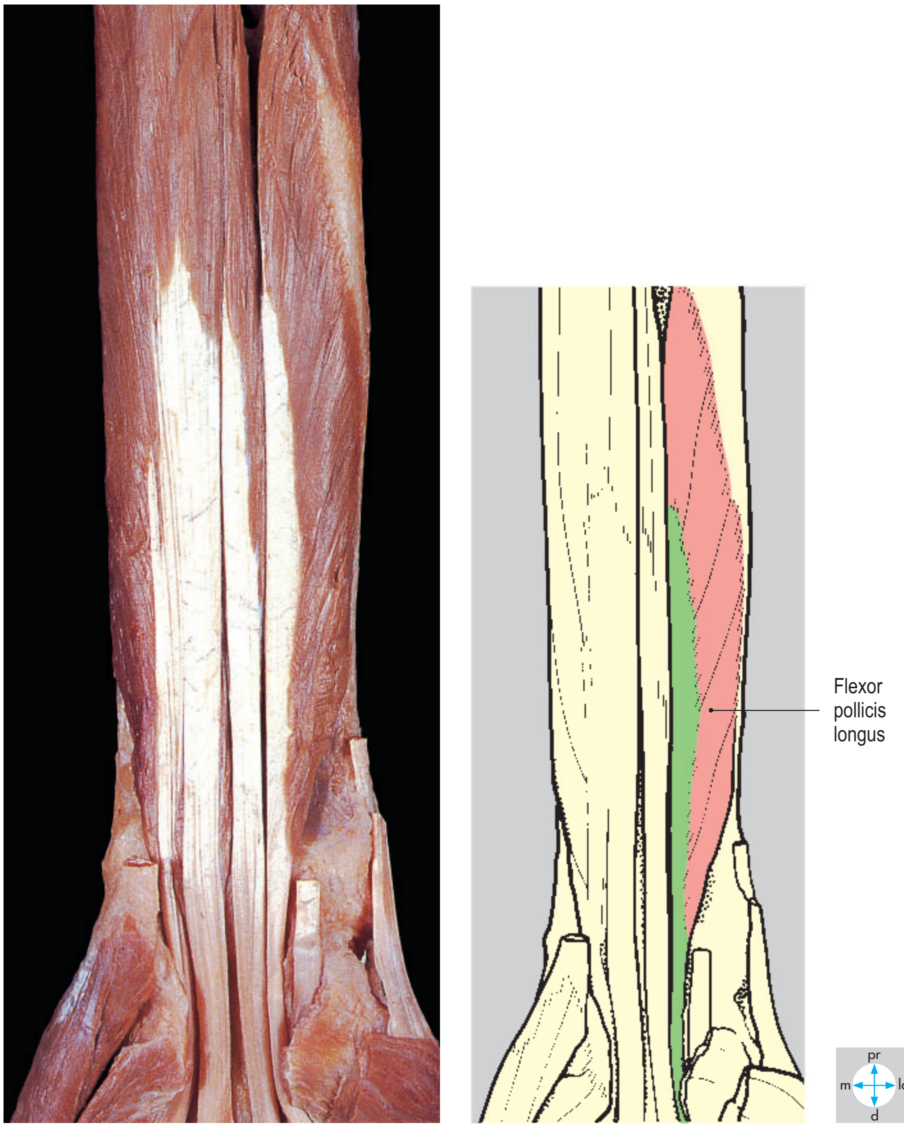


Fig. 1.13 Flexor pollicis longus is a unipennate muscle.

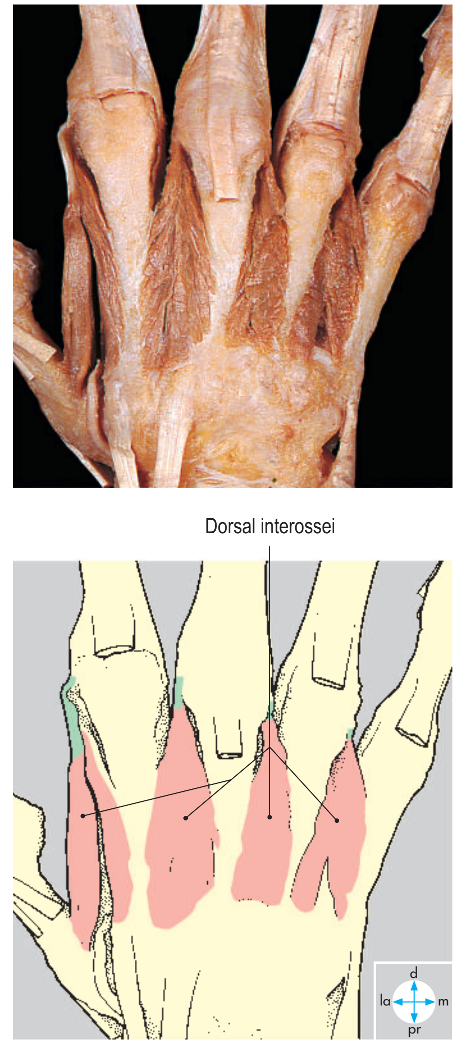


Fig. 1.14 Dorsal interossei are bipennate muscles.

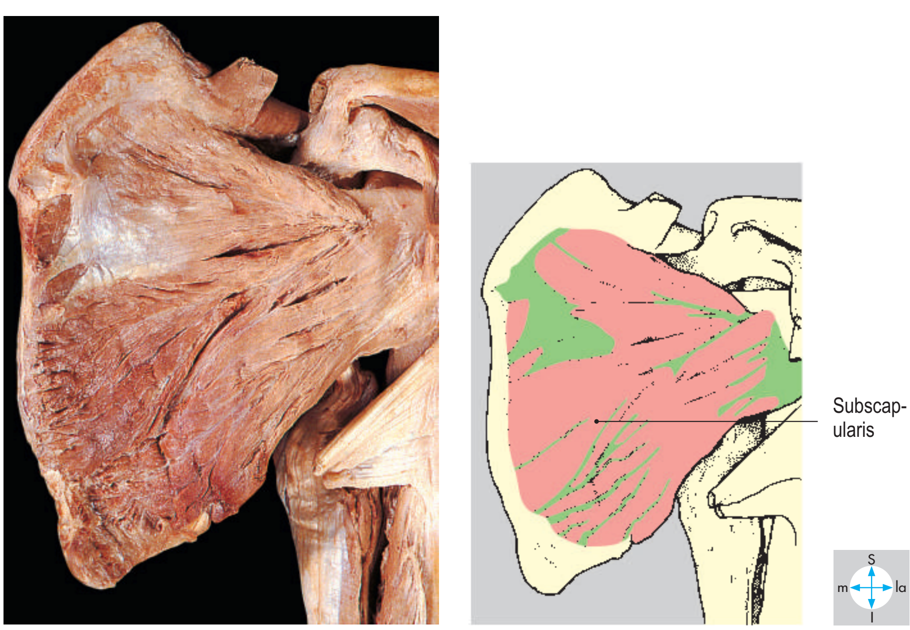


Fig. 1.15 Subscapularis is a multipennate muscle.

Pennate muscles are characterized by fibres that run obliquely. Unipennate muscles (e.g. flexor pollicis longus; Fig. 1.13) have fibres running from their origin to attach along only one side of the tendon of insertion. In bipennate muscles (such as dorsal interossei; Fig. 1.14) the fibres are anchored to both sides of the tendon of insertion.

Multipennate muscles (e.g. subscapularis; Fig. 1.15) have several tendons of origin and insertion with muscle fibres passing obliquely between them. Some muscles, for instance digastric, have two fleshy parts (bellies) connected by an intermediate tendon (p. 348).

Most tendons are thick and round or flattened in cross-section, although some form thin sheets called aponeuroses (Fig. 1.10). When tendons cross projections or traverse confined spaces, they are often enveloped in a double layer of synovial membrane to minimize friction. Where they cross joints, tendons are often held in place by bands of thick fibrous tissue, which prevent 'bowstringing' when the joints are moved. Examples include the retinacula at the wrist and ankle joints, and tendon sheaths in the fingers and toes (Figs 1.16 & 1.17).

The nerve supply to a skeletal muscle contains both motor and sensory fibres, which usually enter the fleshy part of the muscle. Groups of muscles with similar actions tend to be supplied by nerve fibres derived from the same spinal cord segments.

As very metabolically active tissue, muscle has a rich arterial blood supply, usually carried by several separate vessels. The contraction and relaxation of muscles in the limbs compresses the veins in each compartment. As the veins contain unidirectional valves, this muscle pump action assists the return of venous blood from the limbs to the trunk.

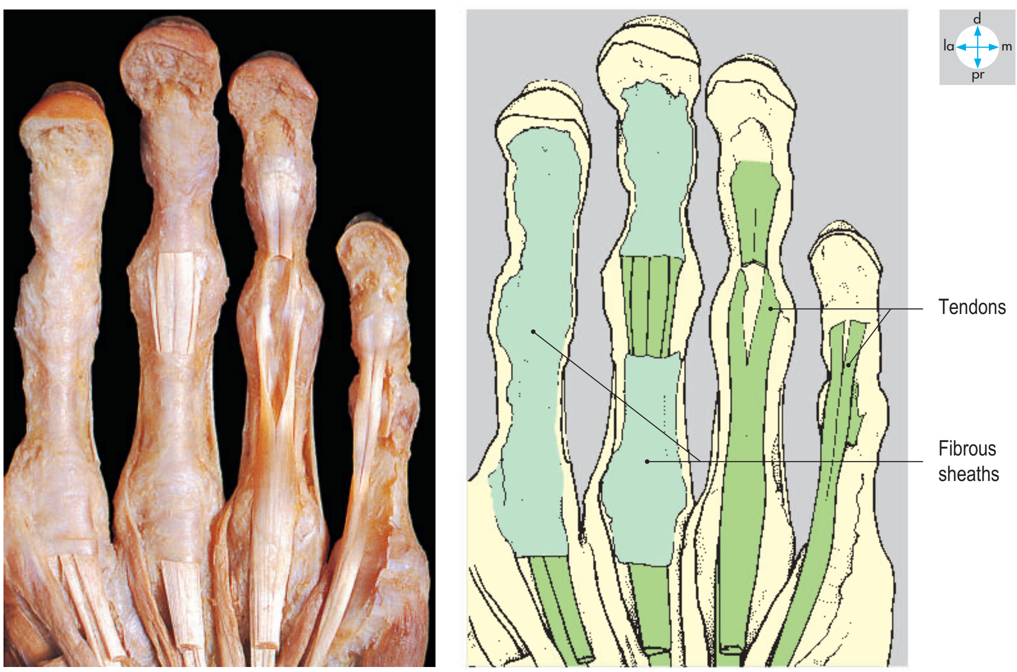


Fig. 1.16 Anterior view of the left hand, dissected to reveal its fibrous sheaths and tendons.

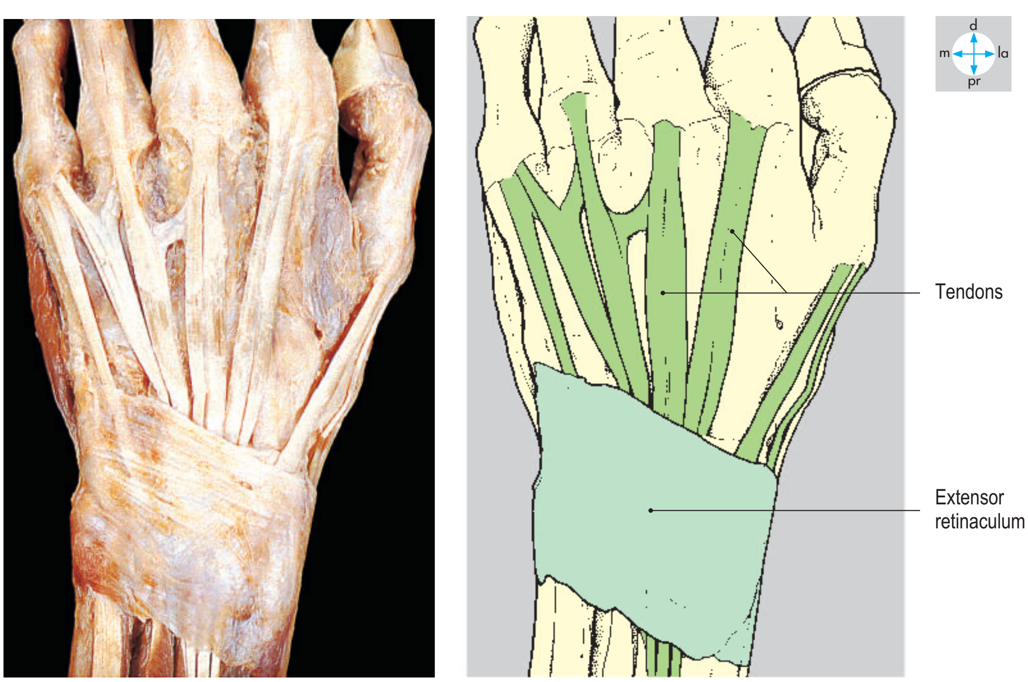


Fig. 1.17 Posterior view of the left hand, dissected to show the extensor retinaculum at the wrist.

Cartilage

Cartilage is a variety of hard connective tissue, which gains its nutrition by diffusion from blood vessels in the surrounding tissues. It is classified by its histological structure into hyaline cartilage, fibrocartilage and elastic cartilage.

Hyaline cartilage occurs in costal cartilages (Fig. 1.11), the cartilages of the larynx and trachea, and in developing bones. In synovial joints (Fig. 1.23) it forms the glassy, smooth articular surfaces, which reduce friction during movement. Articular cartilage is partly nourished by diffusion from the synovial fluid in the joint cavity.

The inclusion of tough inelastic collagen fibres in the matrix constitutes fibrocartilage, which is stronger and more flexible than the hyaline type. Fibrocartilage is found in intervertebral discs (Fig. 1.22), the pubic symphysis, the manubriosternal joint, and as articular discs in some synovial joints (e.g. knee and temporomandibular).

Elastic cartilage, which occurs in the external ear and epiglottis, is the most flexible form of cartilage. It contains predominantly elastic fibres and has a yellowish appearance.

Cartilage may become calcified in old age, becoming harder and more rigid. Brittle costal cartilages may be subject to fracture during chest compressions of cardiopulmonary resuscitation, particularly in older people.

Fig. 1.18 Longitudinal section of an adult tibia.

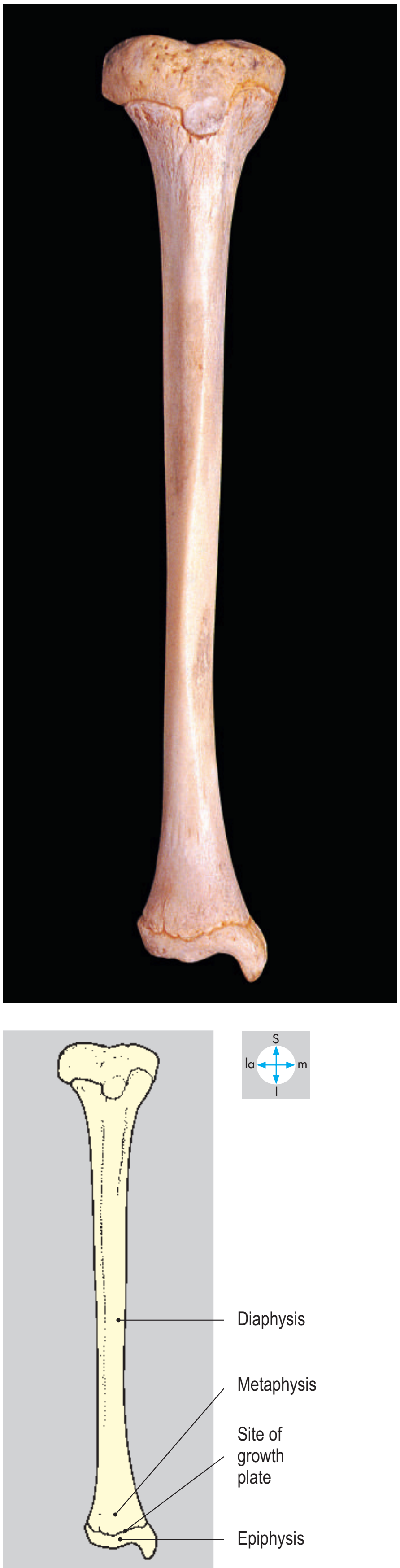


Fig. 1.19 Anterior view of a child's tibia.

Bone

Bone forms the basis of the skeleton and is characterized by a hard, calcified matrix, which gives rigidity. In most bones two zones are visible. Near the surface the outer cortical layer of bone appears solid and is called compact bone, whereas centrally the bone is known as spongy (cancellous) bone. Many bones contain a cavity (medulla) occupied by the bone marrow, a potential site of blood cell production (Fig. 1.18).

The numerous bones comprising the human skeleton vary considerably in shape and size, and are classified into long bones (e.g. femur); short bones (bones of the carpus); flat bones (parietal bone of skull); irregular bones (maxilla of skull); and sesamoid bones (patella). Sesamoid bones develop in tendons, generally where the tendon passes over a joint or bony projection. Some bones are described as pneumatized because of their air-filled cavities (for instance, ethmoid).

Bone is enveloped by a thin layer of fibrous tissue called periosteum (Fig. 1.9), which provides anchorage for muscles, tendons and ligaments. Periosteum is a source of cells for bone growth and repair and is richly innervated and exquisitely sensitive to pain. The pain of fractures or tumours in bone is often due to disturbance of the periosteum.

Bone has a profuse blood supply provided partly via the periosteal vessels and partly by nutrient arteries, which enter bones via nutrient foramina and also supply the marrow. Fractured bones often bleed profusely from damaged medullary and periosteal vessels.

Several names are given to the different parts of a long bone in relation to its development (Fig. 1.19). The shaft (or diaphysis) ossifies first and is separated by growth plates from the secondary centres of ossification (or epiphyses), which usually lie at the extremities of the bone. The part of a diaphysis next to a growth plate is called a metaphysis and has a particularly rich blood supply. When increase in bone length ceases, the growth plates disappear and the epiphyses fuse with the diaphysis. Fractures involving epiphyses and metaphyses often disrupt bone growth.

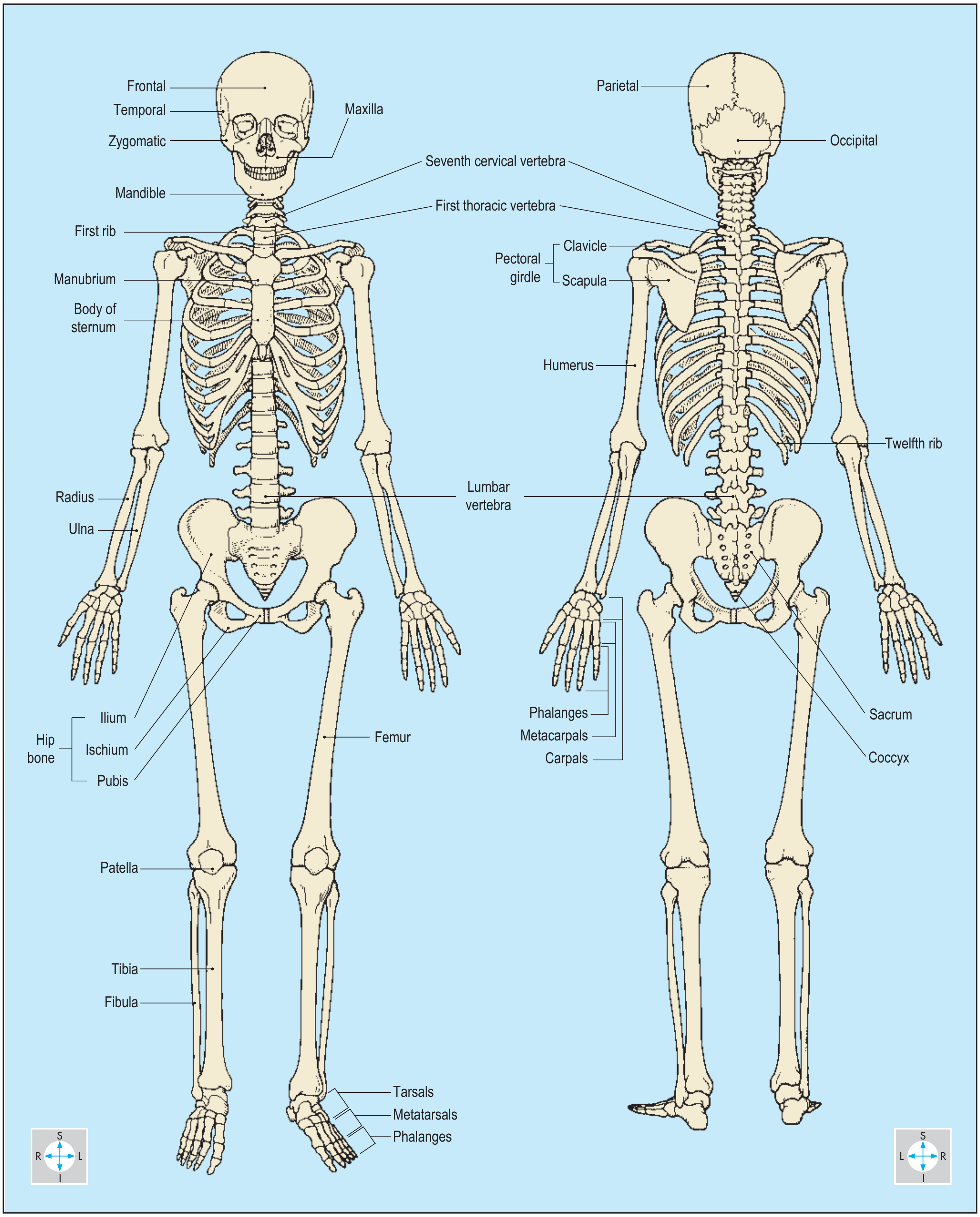


Fig. 1.20 Anterior and posterior views of the skeleton.

Skeleton

The skeleton (Fig. 1.20) is composed of bones and cartilages held together by joints, and gives rigidity and support to the body. It has axial and appendicular components. The axial component includes the skull, vertebral column, ribs, costal cartilages and sternum. The appendicular skeleton comprises the bones of the upper and lower limbs and their associated girdles. In this book, individual bones are described in the appropriate regions.

Joints

Joints are classified according to their structure into fibrous, cartilaginous and synovial types. In fibrous joints (Fig. 1.21), which are relatively immobile, the two bones are joined by fibrous tissue (e.g. sutures seen between the bones of the skull).

Cartilage is interposed between bone ends in cartilaginous joints. Primary cartilaginous joints contain hyaline cartilage, are usually capable of only limited movement, and are described between the ribs and sternum. In secondary cartilaginous joints (Fig. 1.22), fibrocartilage unites the bone ends. These joints, which generally allow more movement than those of the primary type, all lie in the midline. Examples include the intervertebral discs, the manubriosternal joint and the pubic symphysis.

Synovial joints

The most common type of joint is the synovial joint, which is complex and usually highly mobile. They are classified according

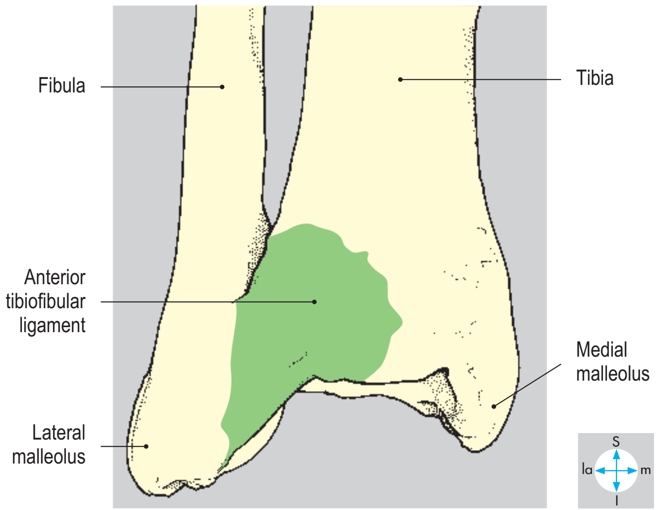
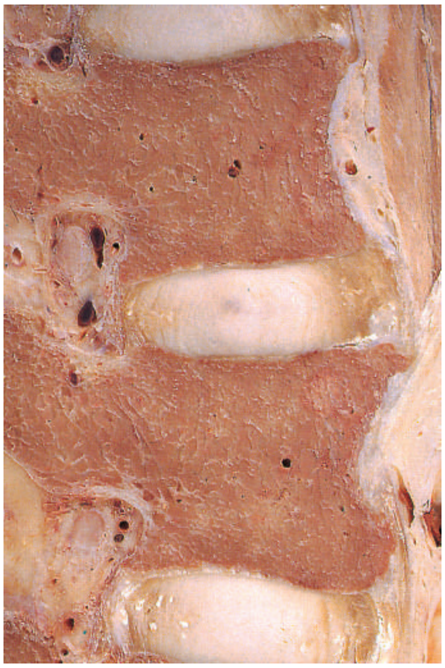


Fig. 1.21 The inferior tibiofibular joint is an example of a fibrous joint.



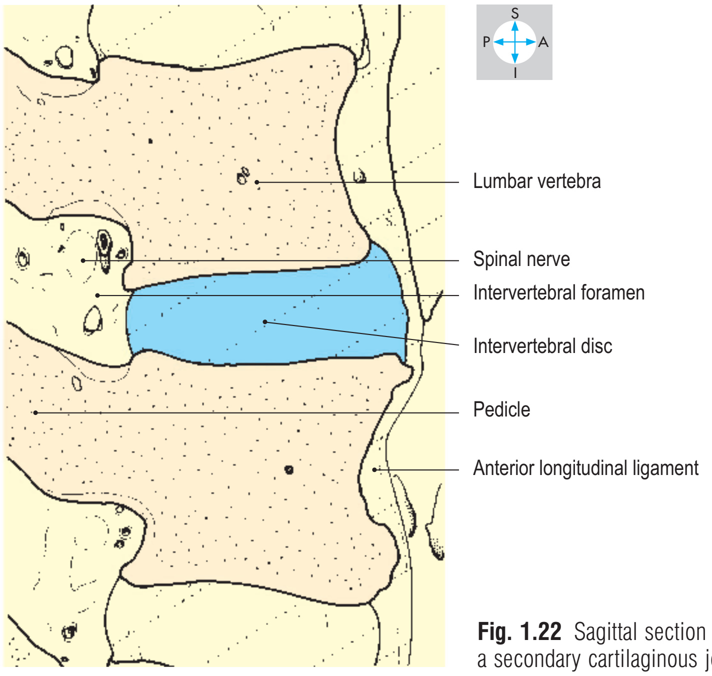


Fig. 1.22 Sagittal section to show an intervertebral disc, a secondary cartilaginous joint.

to the shape of the joint surfaces (such as plane, saddle, ball-and-socket) or by the type of movement they permit (such as sliding, pivot, hinge). In a typical synovial joint (Fig. 1.23) the articulating surfaces are coated with hyaline cartilage and the bones are joined by a fibrous capsule, a tubular sleeve, which is attached around the periphery of the areas of articular cartilage. In every synovial joint, all of the interior (except for intra-articular cartilage) is lined with synovial membrane. This thin vascular membrane secretes synovial fluid into the joint space, providing nutrition for the cartilage and lubrication for the joint.

The capsule is usually thickened to form strengthening bands known as capsular ligaments (e.g. the pubofemoral ligament). In addition, fibrous bands, discrete from the capsule, may form extracapsular ligaments (such as the costoclavicular ligament). In some joints, there are intracapsular ligaments (for instance, the ligament of the head of the femur), which are covered by synovial membrane. Tendons sometimes fuse with the capsule (as in the rotator cuff) or they may run within the joint, covered by synovial membrane, before reaching their bony attachment (e.g. biceps brachii at the shoulder joint; Fig. 1.24).

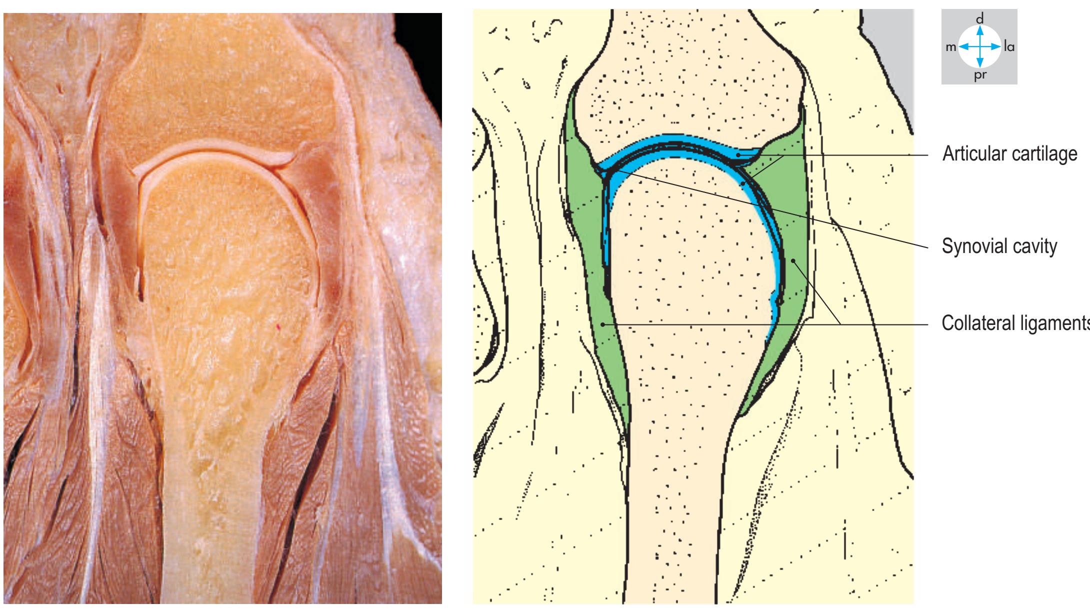


Fig. 1.23 Coronal section through a metacarpophalangeal joint, a synovial joint. The collateral ligaments are thickenings of the joint capsule.

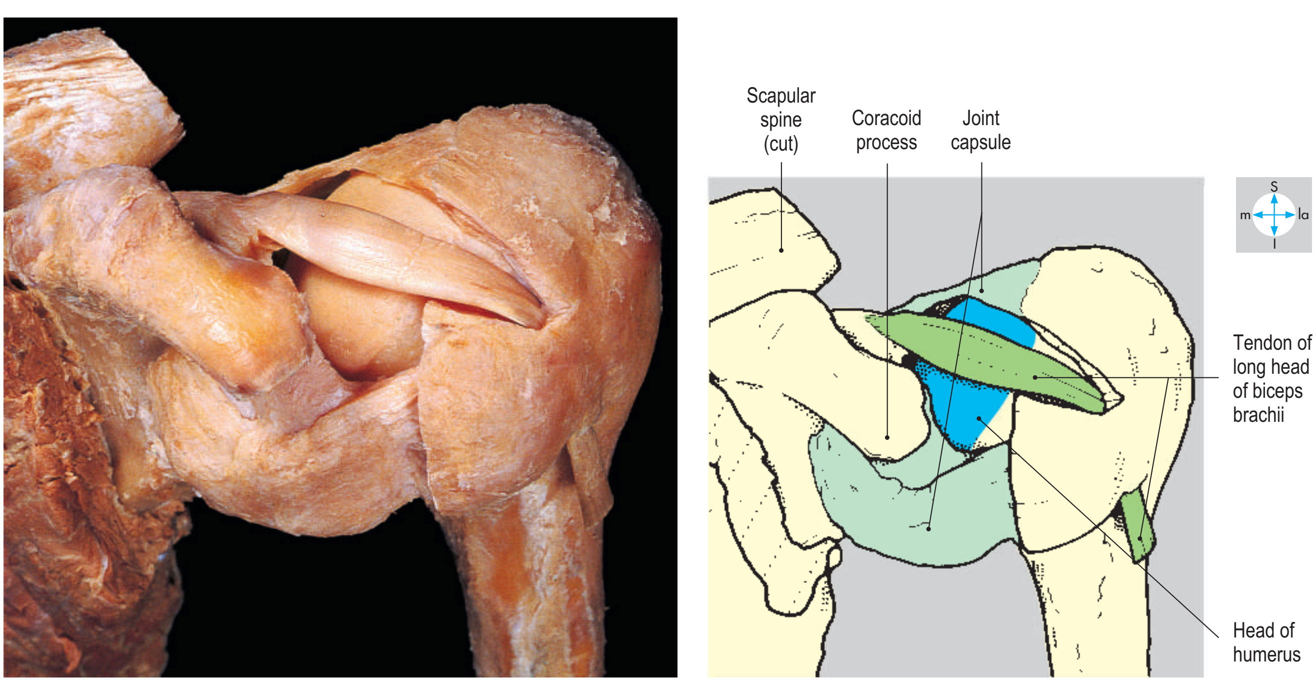


Fig. 1.24 Removal of part of the shoulder joint capsule reveals the intracapsular but extrasynovial tendon of the long head of biceps brachii.

Fluid-containing sacs of synovial membrane called bursae (Fig. 1.25) separate some tendons and muscles from other structures. Bursae, which lie close to joints, may communicate with the cavity of the joint through a small opening in the capsule (as does the subscapularis bursa).

In some joints (e.g. knee) a disc of cartilage is interposed between the articular cartilage covering the bone ends (Fig. 1.26). This provides a matched shape for each bone end, thus allowing freer movement without compromising stability. In addition, different types of movement are permitted in each half of the joint.

Stability varies considerably from one synovial joint to another, as several factors limit excessive movement and contribute to the stability of the joint. These include the shape of the articulating surfaces, the strength of the capsule and associated ligaments, the tone of the surrounding muscles and, where present, intra-articular discs and ligaments. At the hip joint, the ligaments and the shape of the bones provide the main stability, whereas the tone of the surrounding muscles is more important in stabilizing the shoulder joint. Lack of stability associated with muscle weakness or trauma may result in dislocation, so that the cartilage-covered surfaces may no longer make contact. Dislocation may damage adjacent blood vessels and nerves.

Joints, particularly their capsules, receive a rich sensory innervation derived from the nerves supplying the muscles that act on the joint. For instance, the axillary nerve supplies the shoulder joint and deltoid.

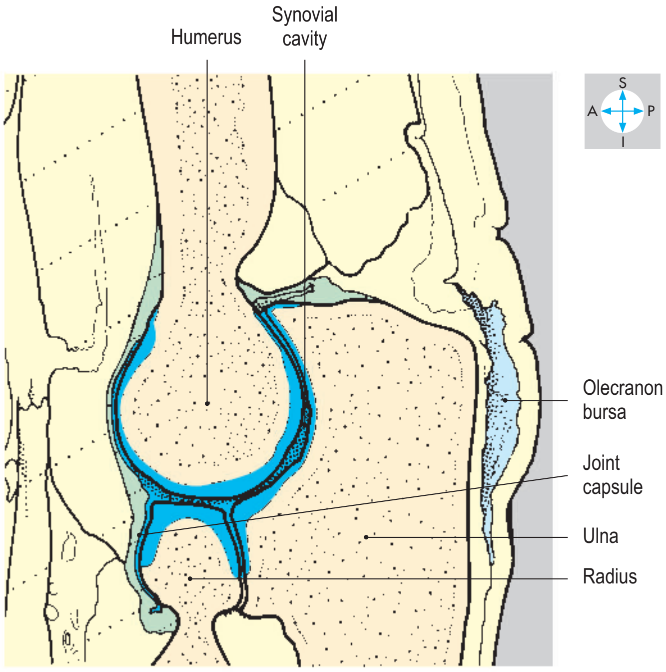
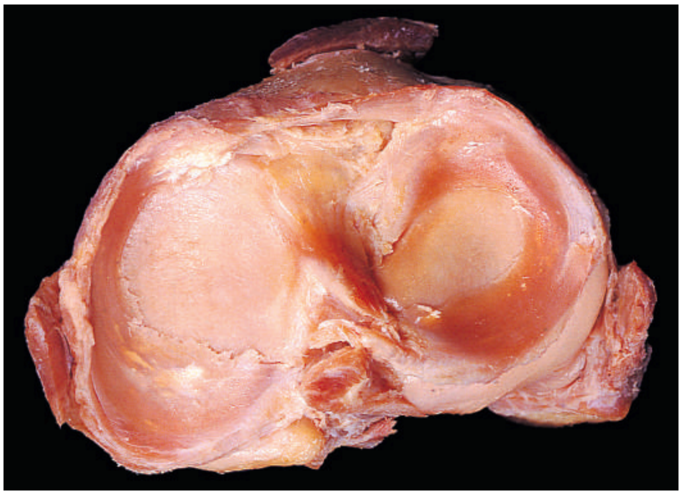


Fig. 1.25 Sagittal section through the elbow joint. The olecranon bursa does not communicate with the joint cavity.



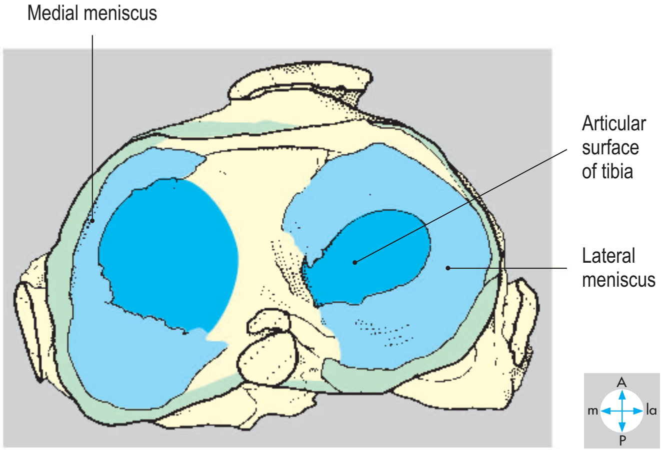


Fig. 1.26 Disarticulated knee joint to show the menisci.

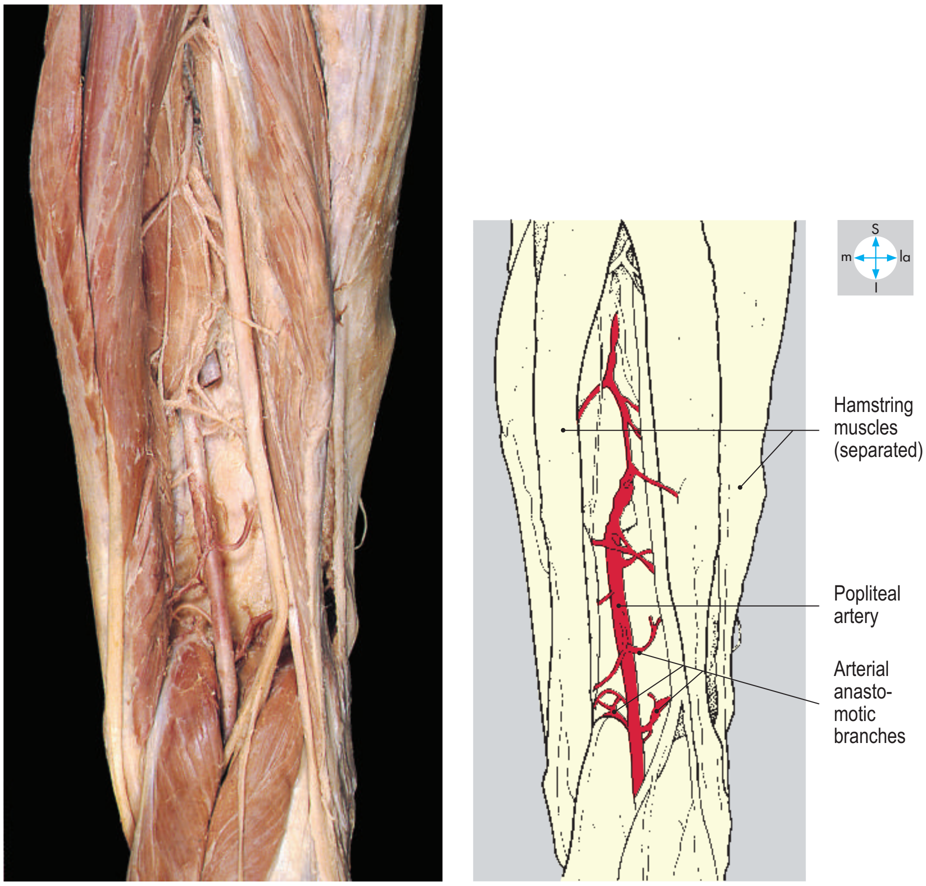


Fig. 1.27 Branches of the popliteal artery anastomose around the knee joint.

Blood vessels around joints frequently take part in rich anastomoses, which allow alternative pathways for blood flow when the joint has moved to a different position and ensure an adequate supply to the synovial membrane (such as in the knee joint; Fig. 1.27).

Serous membranes and cavities

Pericardium, pleura and peritoneum comprise the serous membranes lining the cavities that separate the heart, lungs and abdominal viscera, respectively, from their surrounding structures. Where the membrane lines the outer wall of the cavity it is called parietal and has somatic sensory innervation, and where it covers the appropriate organ it is called visceral with no somatic innervation. The spread of disease to involve parietal membranes usually provokes pain felt at a site which the patient can identify precisely. The parietal and visceral parts are in continuity around the root of the viscus and are separated from each other by a cavity, which normally contains only a thin film of serous fluid. The membranes are in close contact but are lubricated by the intervening fluid, which permits movement between the viscus and its surroundings (Fig. 1.28).

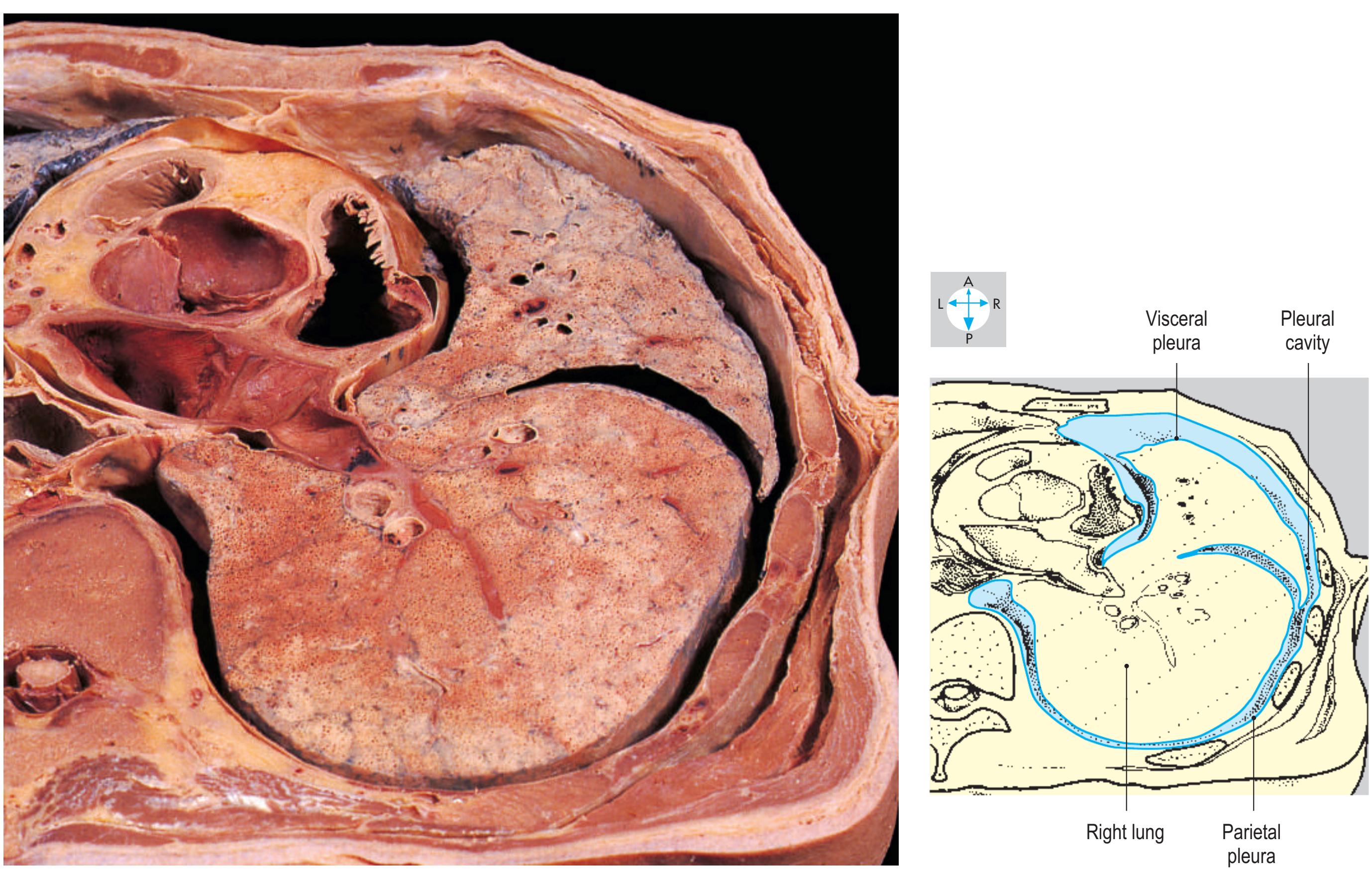


Fig. 1.28 Transverse section through the thorax at the level of T5 showing the right pleural cavity. Superior aspect.

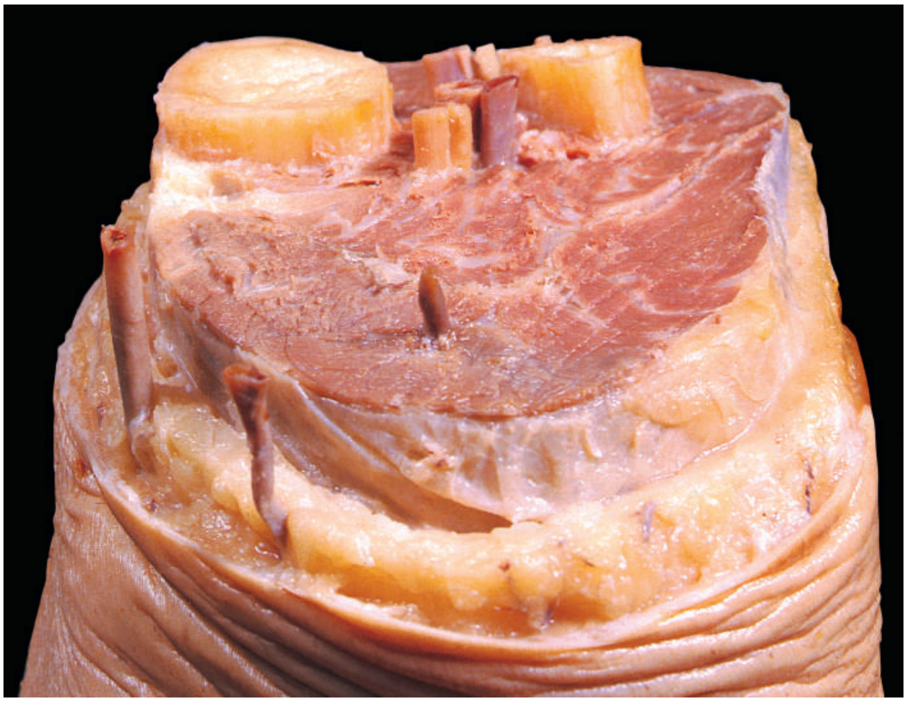
Blood vessels

Blood vessels convey blood around the body and are classified into three main types: arteries, capillaries and veins.

Arteries are relatively thick-walled vessels, which convey blood in a branching system of decreasing calibre away from the heart (Fig. 1.31). Some arteries are named after the region through which they pass (such as the femoral artery), while others are named according to the structures they supply (for instance, the renal artery). The largest vessels, such as the aorta, have elastic walls and therefore are called elastic arteries. They give rise to arteries whose walls are more muscular (muscular arteries), such as the radial artery in the forearm. A particularly thick smooth muscle coat is also a feature of the walls of the microscopic arterioles. The tone of arteriolar smooth muscle is under the control of the autonomic nervous system and hormones and is an important factor in the maintenance of pressure in the arterial system. In general, there are few alternative pathways for arterial blood to reach its destination. However, in some regions (e.g. joints and at the base of the brain), arterial supply is provided by more than one vessel (Fig. 1.27). Such arteries may communicate directly with each other at sites known as arterial anastomoses. Arterial pulses may be felt easily in superficial arteries, such as the radial artery at the wrist. Identifying pulses in deeply located arteries, such as the abdominal aorta, may require firm pressure.

Capillaries link the smallest arteries (arterioles) and the smallest veins (venules) and convey blood at low pressure through the tissues. Collectively, these thin-walled microscopic vessels have a very extensive surface area, facilitating gaseous and metabolic exchange between the blood and tissues.

Veins carry blood at low pressure from the capillary bed back to the heart (Fig. 1.32). They may be deep (accompanying arteries) or superficial (lying in the superficial fascia) (Fig. 1.29) and are usually linked by venous anastomoses. Veins accompanying arteries are often arranged as several interconnecting vessels called venae comitantes. In the limbs, the deep veins can be compressed by local muscular action, thus assisting venous return. Many veins (excluding the venae cavae, those draining viscera and those within the cranium) contain unidirectional valves, which direct the flow of blood towards the heart (Fig. 1.30). Damage to these valves can lead to dilated veins known as varicose. The venous pattern is often variable, and numerous anastomotic connections provide alternative pathways for venous return. In some regions, numerous intercommunicating veins form meshworks called plexuses (such as the pelvic venous plexus). In the cranial cavity, venous blood is carried in special vessels formed by the dura mater lining the interior of the skull. These dural sinuses receive blood from the brain.



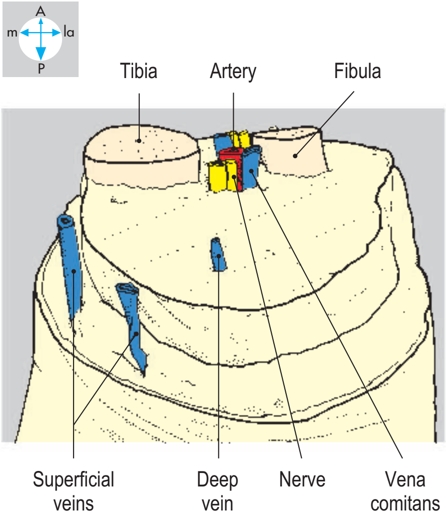


Fig. 1.29 Multilevel 'step' dissection through the right leg showing the blood vessels.

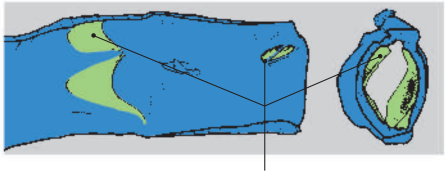


Fig. 1.30 Portion of saphenous vein opened longitudinally and in cross-section.

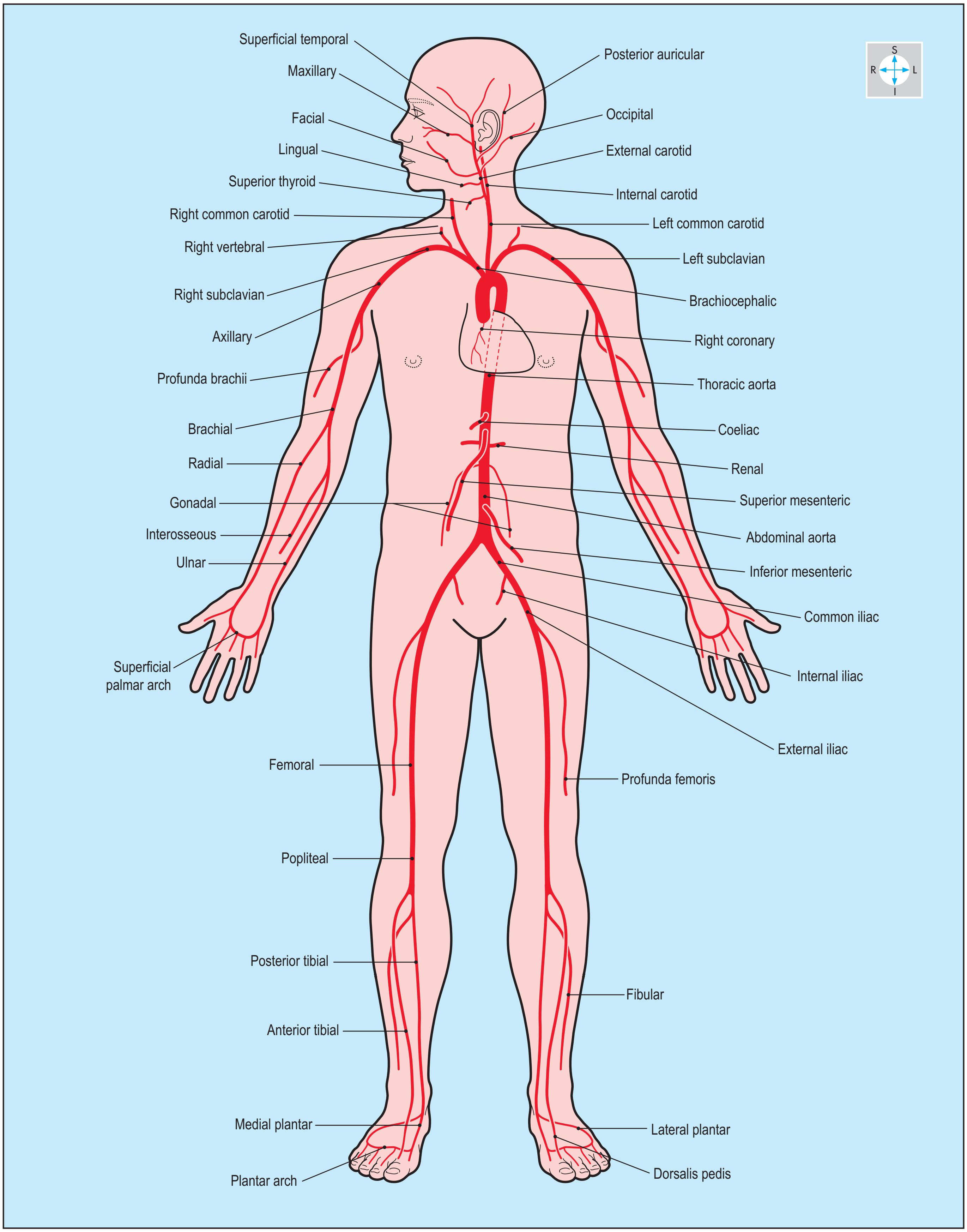


Fig. 1.31 Principal systemic arteries.

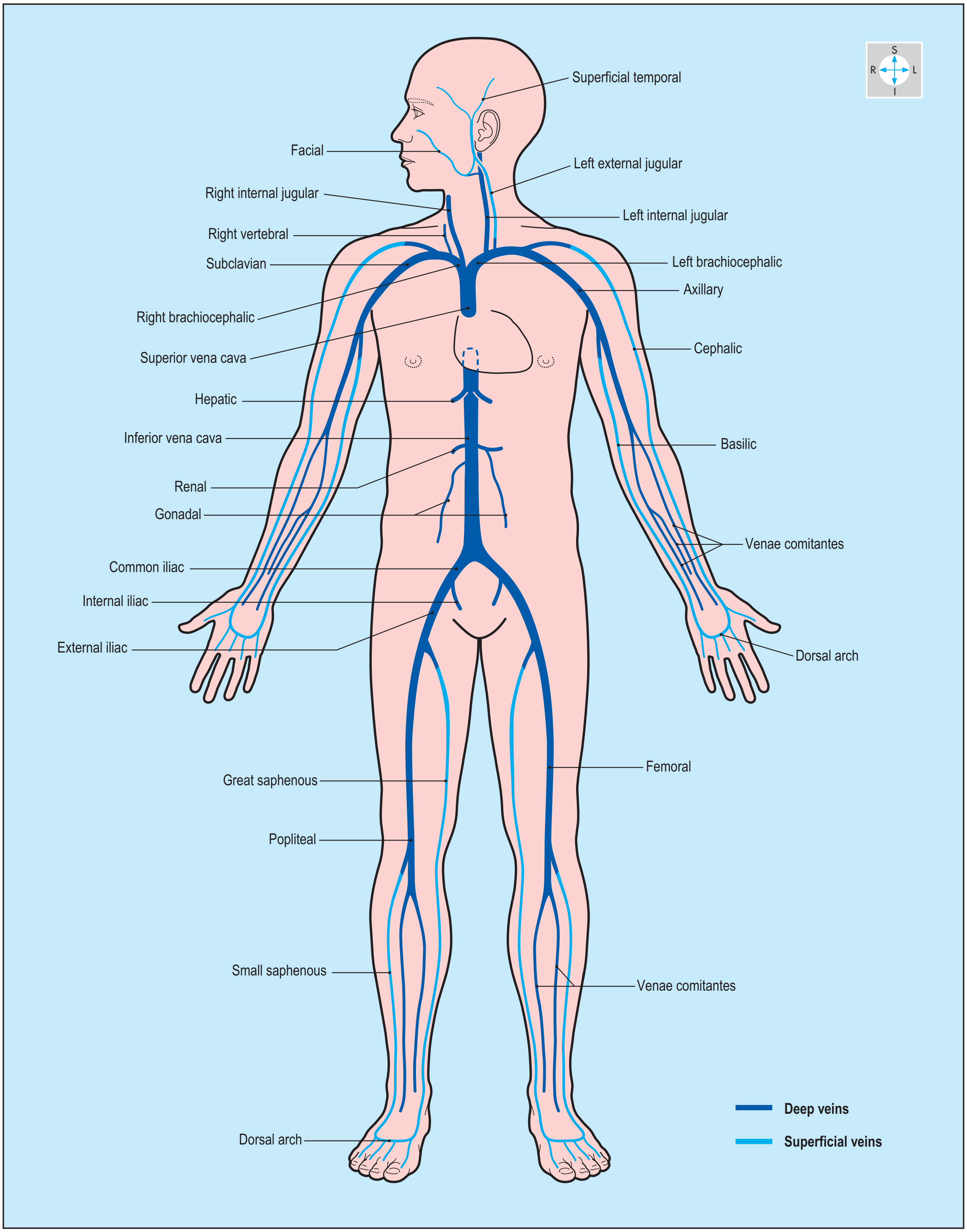


Fig. 1.32 Principal systemic veins.

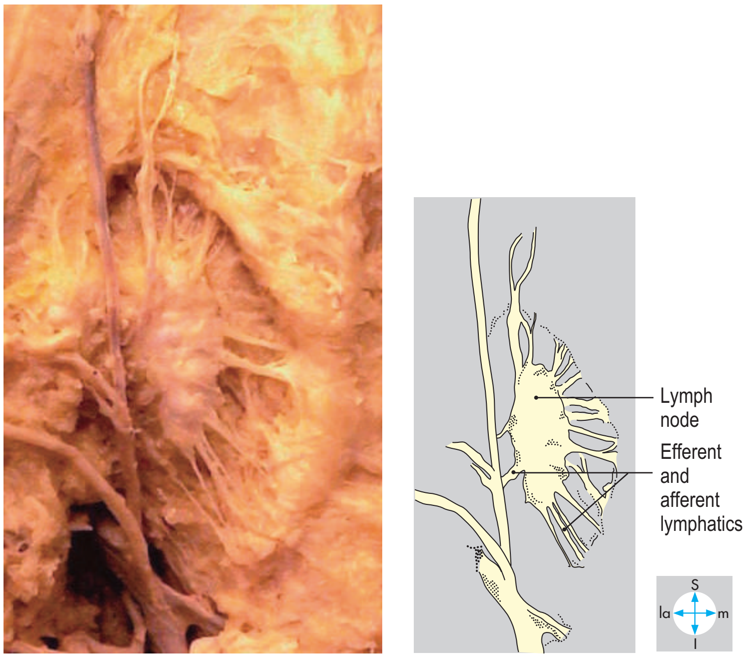


Fig. 1.33 Inguinal lymph node.

Lymphatic vessels and nodes

Tissue fluid is collected by microscopic open-ended channels called lymphatics. From a particular region or organ, these valved lymphatic vessels drain into aggregations of lymphoid tissue (called lymph nodes; Fig. 1.33), which filter lymph. Groups of lymph nodes are often found close to an organ (e.g. hilar nodes) or at the root of a limb (e.g. axillary lymph nodes). Ultimately, lymph drains into the venous system in the root of the neck through larger lymph channels called the thoracic duct and the right lymphatic trunk (Fig. 1.34).

Because they filter the fluid passing through them, lymph nodes may become involved in the spread of infection or malignancy (e.g. cancer). Thus the surgeon removing a cancerous organ may also excise the lymph nodes draining that organ.

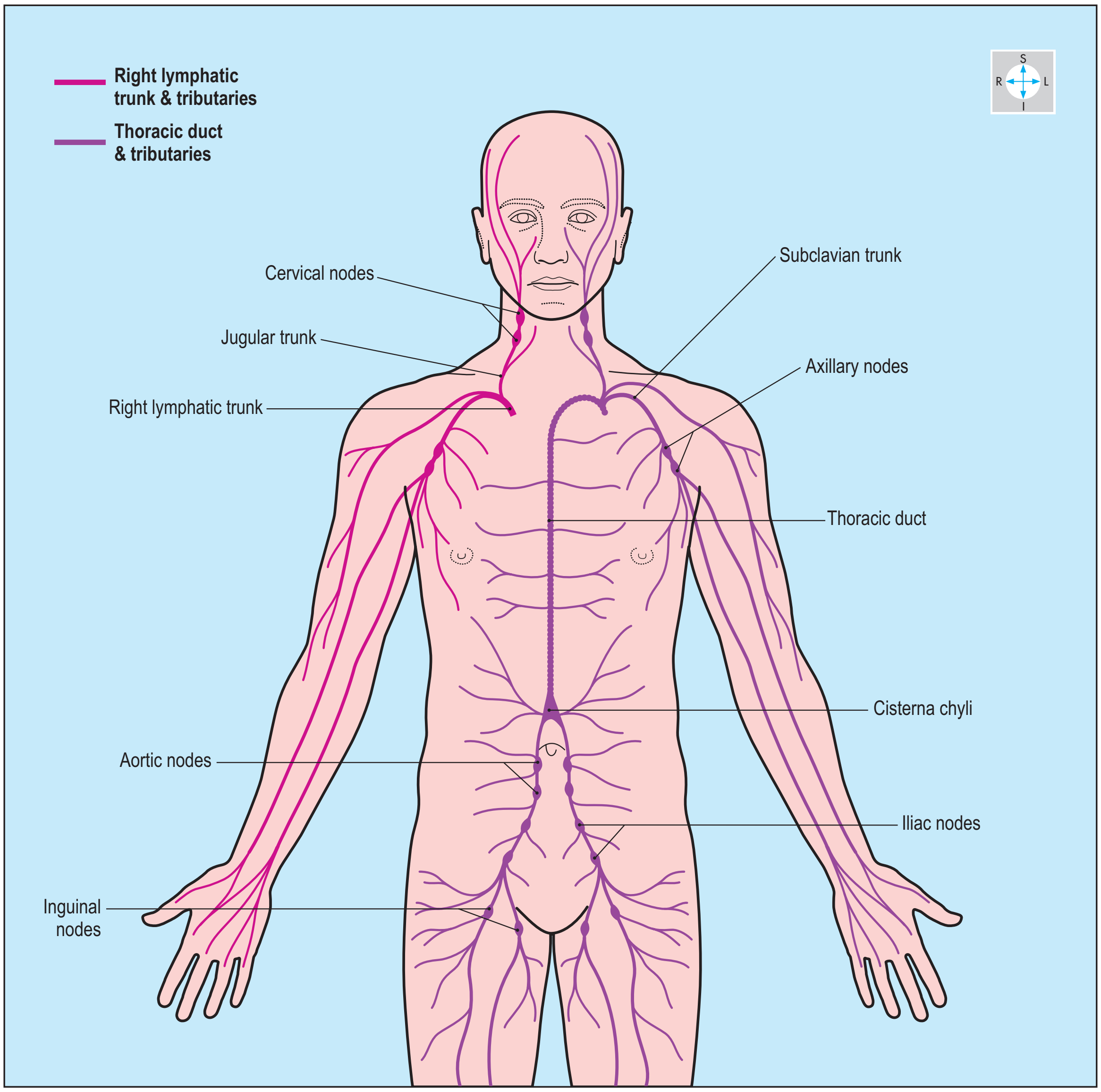


Fig. 1.34 The main lymphatic nodes and vessels.

Nervous tissue

Nervous tissue contains two types of cell: neurones and neuroglia. The neurone is the functional unit responsible for the conduction of nerve impulses. It consists of a cell body and its associated processes. One type of process, of which there is only one per neurone, is the axon. This may be relatively short but sometimes is very long, as in peripheral nerves, where axons comprise the individual nerve fibres. The neuroglia undertake supporting roles and include Schwann cells, which provide the myelin sheaths around axons. These sheaths insulate the axons, increasing their speeds of conduction.

The nervous system consists of central and peripheral parts. The brain and spinal cord comprise the central nervous system.

The peripheral nervous system consists of spinal, cranial and autonomic nerves, and their associated ganglia. Bundles of nerve cell processes and their supporting Schwann cells form peripheral nerves. Several nerve processes, bound together by connective tissue, form a nerve bundle; numerous bundles, surrounded by a fibrous sheath (epineurium), constitute the complete peripheral nerve. Nerve cell bodies also form part of the peripheral nervous system and are usually grouped together into ganglia. The peripheral nervous system is divided into somatic and autonomic parts.

Somatic nerves

In general, the somatic nerves innervate skeletal muscle and transmit sensation from all parts of the body except the viscera. A total of 12 pairs of cranial nerves are attached to the brain and are named: olfactory (I); optic (II); oculomotor (III); trochlear (IV); trigeminal (V); abducens (VI); facial (VII); vestibulocochlear (VIII); glossopharyngeal (IX); vagus (X); accessory (XI); hypoglossal (XII). Most of these nerves supply structures in the head and neck, but the vagus nerve also supplies thoracic and abdominal viscera.

Spinal nerves are also in pairs and each is attached to a specific segment of the spinal cord by anterior and posterior roots. There are eight cervical (C1–C8); 12 thoracic (T1–T12); five lumbar (L1–L5); five sacral (S1–S5); and one or two coccygeal (Co) spinal nerves (Fig. 1.35).

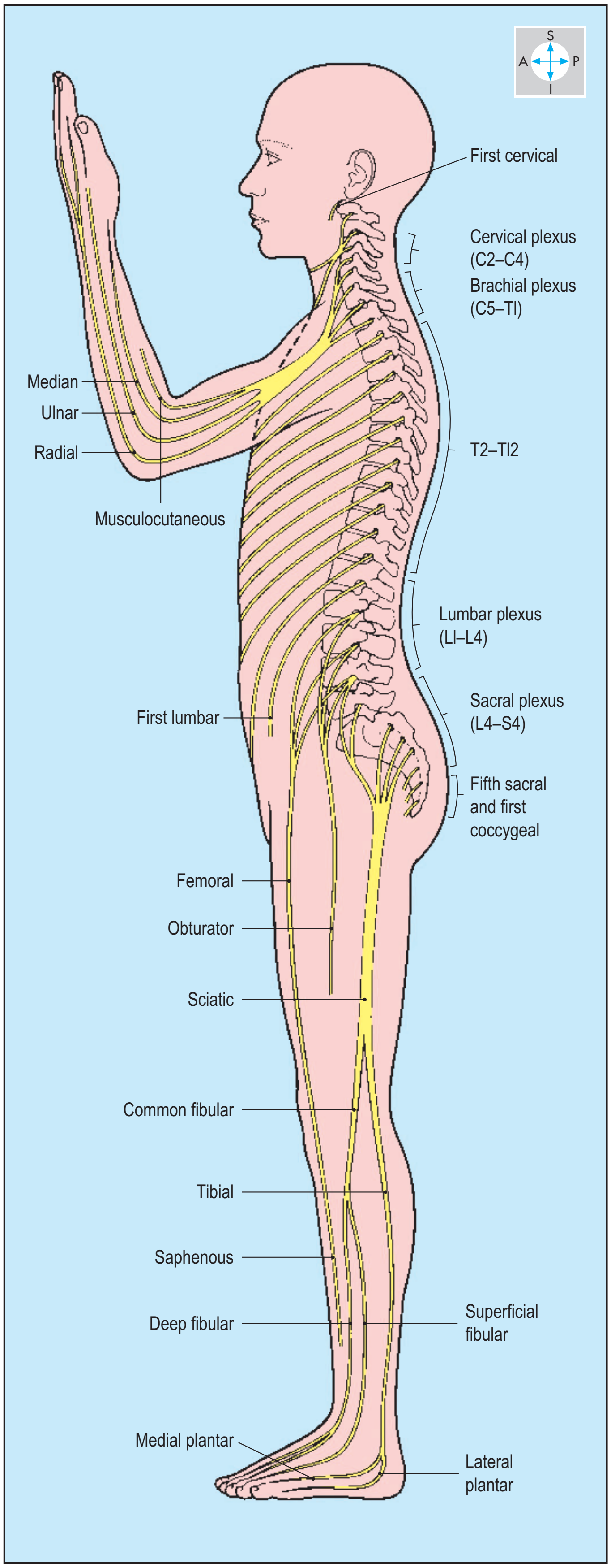


Fig. 1.35 Lateral view of the distribution of the anterior rami of the spinal nerves.

Thoracic spinal nerves illustrate the typical segmental pattern of distribution to the body wall (Fig. 1.36). The area of skin supplied by one spinal (or cranial) nerve is called a dermatome (Figs 1.37 & 1.38). In the trunk the dermatome pattern involves substantial overlap between adjacent areas. Similarly, all the muscles supplied by a single spinal (or cranial) nerve comprise a myotome.

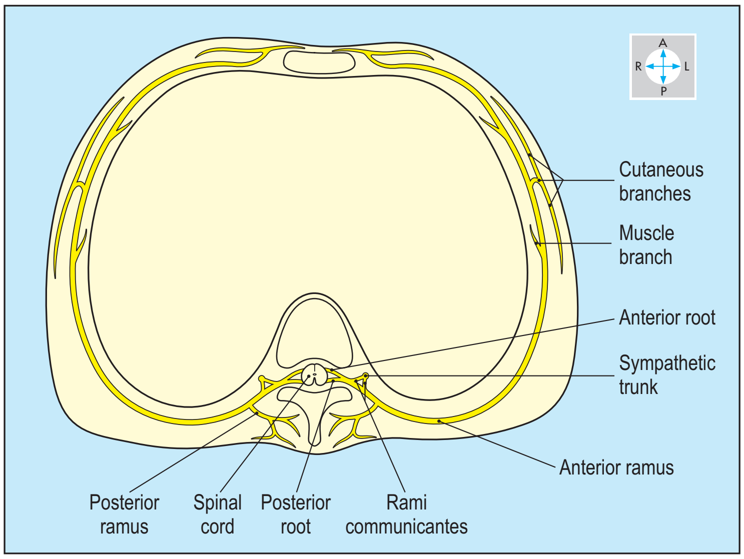


Fig. 1.36 Course and distribution of a typical thoracic spinal nerve. Inferior aspect.

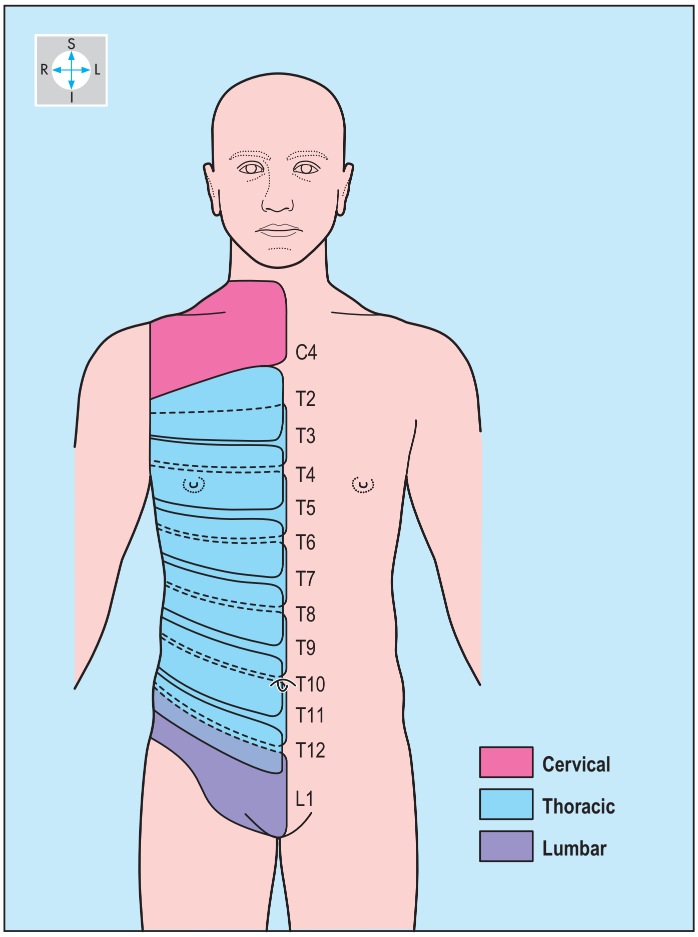


Fig. 1.37 Dermatomes of the trunk.

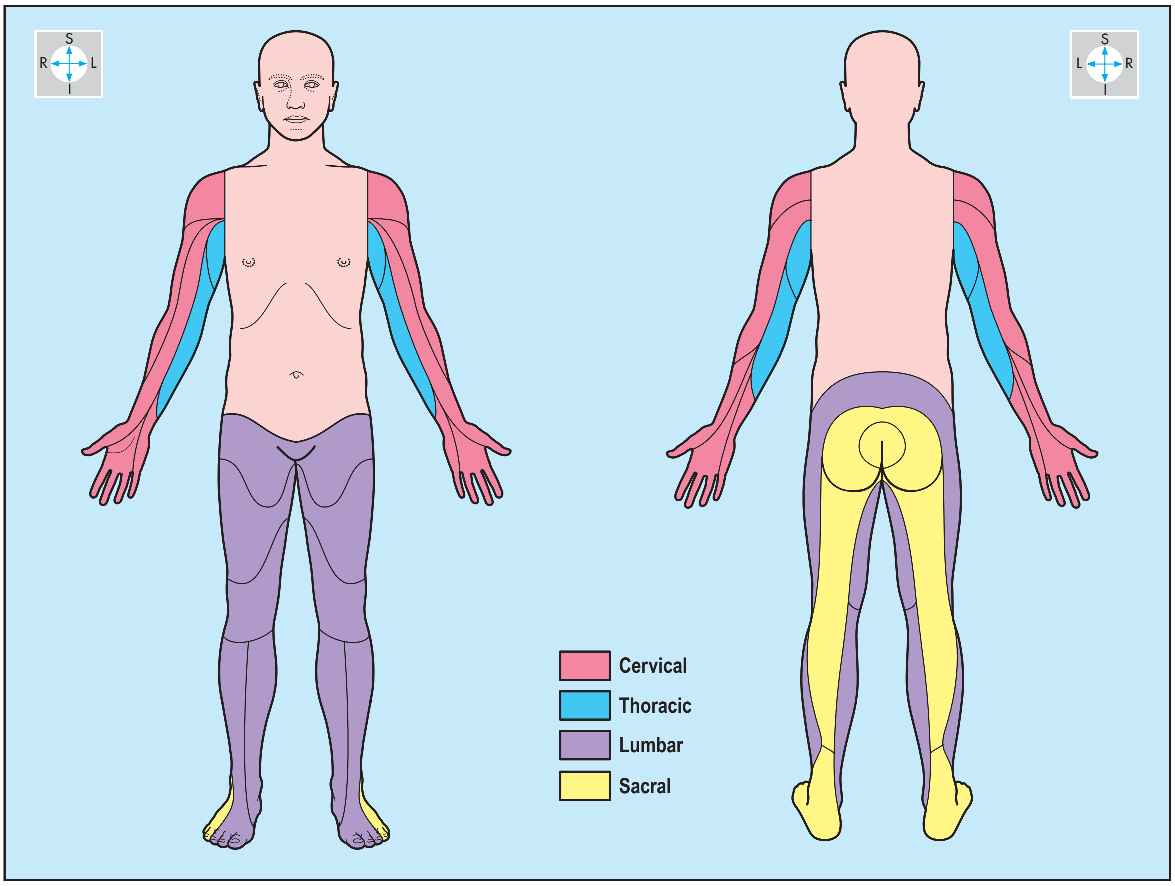


Fig. 1.38 Dermatomes of the limbs.

The regular pattern of innervation in the trunk is modified in the limbs, each being supplied by several spinal nerves through a complex network, a plexus (such as the brachial plexus of the upper limb; Fig. 1.39). Plexus formation modifies the pattern of myotomes so that spinal cord segments innervate muscles according to their prime actions. For example, flexors of the elbow joint are supplied by the spinal cord segments C5 and C6. Sensory cell bodies are located in ganglia on peripheral nerves near the central nervous system (for instance, trigeminal ganglion, posterior root ganglia). However, the cell bodies of somatic motor nerves are located in the central nervous system.

Autonomic nerves

The autonomic nervous system innervates smooth and cardiac muscle and glands. It is divided into two parts: sympathetic and parasympathetic, whose effects for the most part are antagonistic (e.g. sympathetic stimulation increases while parasympathetic stimulation reduces heart rate). In both sympathetic and parasympathetic components, preganglionic myelinated axons leave the central nervous system and synapse on neurones in peripheral ganglia distributed throughout the body. The postganglionic axons that pass to the effector organs are nonmyelinated. Autonomic sensory fibres accompany autonomic efferent fibres in peripheral nerves, but their cell bodies are located in the posterior root ganglia in company with somatic sensory neurones. Pain from diseased organs, called visceral pain, which is usually poorly localized, is transmitted by autonomic sensory nerves.

The parts of the central nervous system from which the autonomic nerves emerge differ for the sympathetic and parasympathetic components (Fig. 1.40).

Sympathetic nerves Preganglionic sympathetic fibres leave the central nervous system in the spinal nerves of all the thoracic and the upper two lumbar segments (thoracolumbar outflow) and enter the ganglionated sympathetic trunks via white rami communicantes. The two sympathetic trunks lie on either side of the vertebral column and extend throughout most of its length. Each trunk consists of sympathetic ganglia and interconnecting nerve trunks.

Unmyelinated postganglionic axons destined for the blood vessels and sweat glands of the body wall, including the limbs, leave the ganglia by grey rami communicantes and are distributed by the spinal nerves. Special visceral branches pass directly from the trunks to reach the appropriate organ.

Postganglionic sympathetic nerve fibres are often conveyed to their destinations as plexuses intimately related to the walls of arteries.

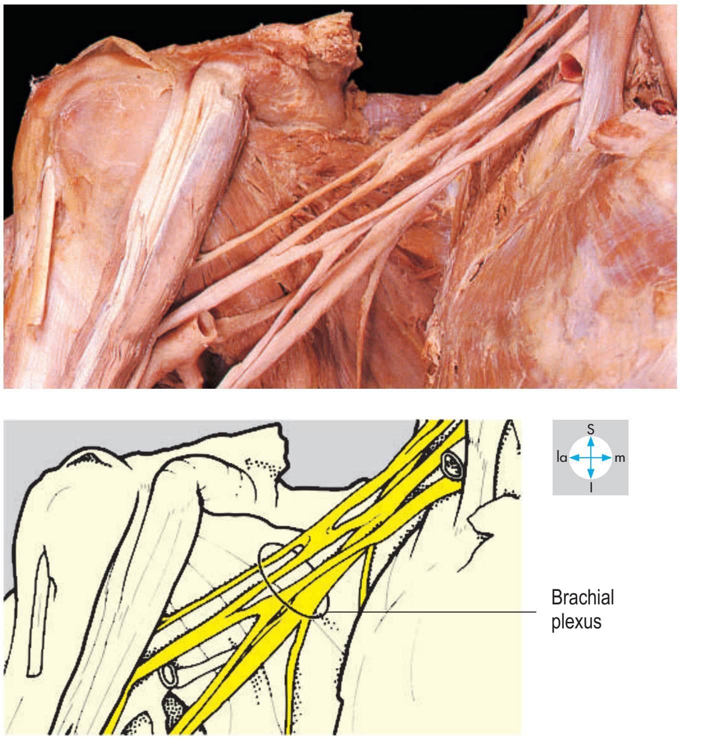


Fig. 1.39 The axilla has been dissected to show the brachial plexus.

Parasympathetic nerves In the parasympathetic system, myelinated preganglionic fibres leave the central nervous system as part of cranial nerves III, VII, IX and X and as part of sacral spinal nerves S2, S3 and S4, to form the craniosacral autonomic outflow. These preganglionic fibres synapse in ganglia lying close to or in the wall of the target organ. Relatively short nonmyelinated postganglionic axons emerge from these ganglia to innervate the appropriate tissue. In the head there are four paired ganglia (ciliary, pterygopalatine, submandibular and otic) that receive preganglionic parasympathetic fibres from cranial nerves III, VII and IX. The postganglionic fibres from these ganglia supply the eye, and lacrimal, nasal and salivary glands. Preganglionic fibres from the vagus (X) nerve synapse with postganglionic neurones that innervate cervical, thoracic and abdominal viscera. Preganglionic fibres from the sacral nerves (pelvic splanchnic nerves or nervi erigentes) supply the pelvic organs. The parasympathetic ganglia associated with the vagus and sacral nerves usually comprise small clusters of cells in the walls of the innervated organs (Fig. 1.40).

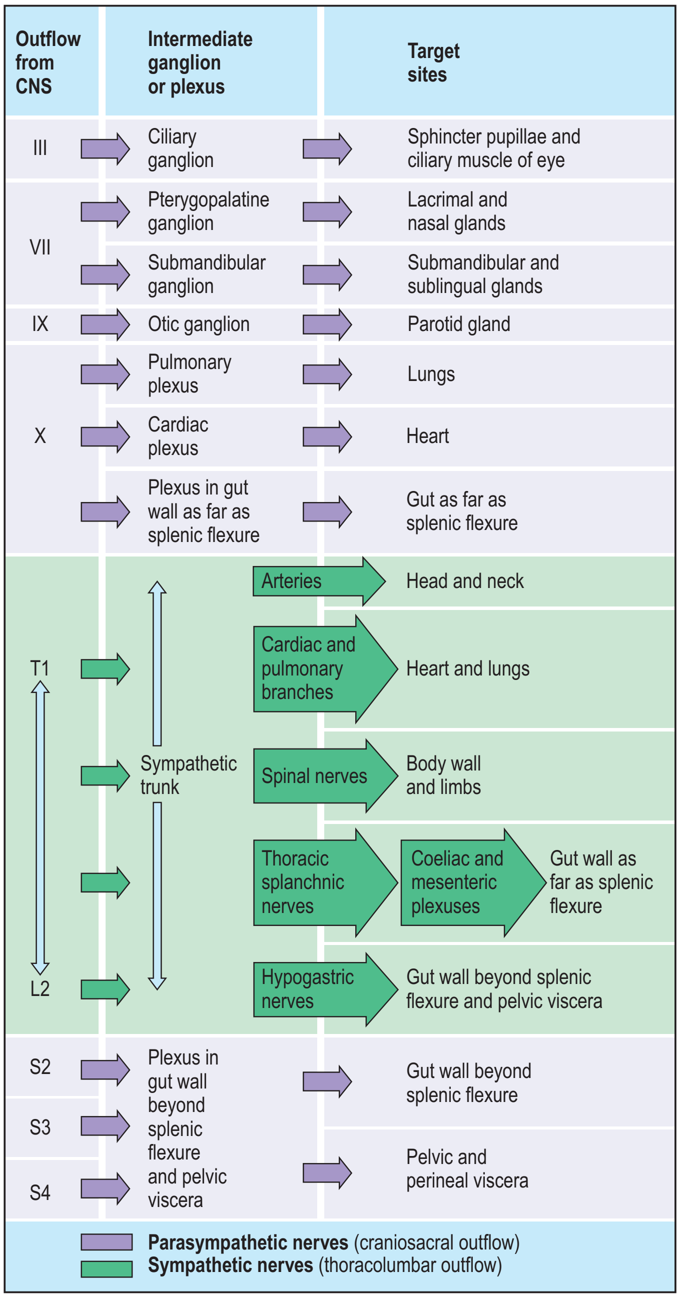


Fig. 1.40 Pattern of innervation in the parasympathetic and sympathetic autonomic nervous systems.

Chapter 2

THORAX

Introduction

The thorax is the region of the trunk that includes the sternum, costal cartilages, ribs and thoracic vertebrae, together with the structures they enclose. Superiorly, the thorax is limited by the upper surfaces of the first ribs and their costal cartilages, the manubrium of the sternum and the first thoracic vertebra. The space bounded by these structures is the superior thoracic aperture (thoracic inlet) (Fig. 2.1), which allows structures to pass between the root of the neck and the thorax. Space-occupying tumours in this location may compress adjacent structures, leading to the clinical condition called, confusingly, thoracic outlet syndrome. Inferiorly, the cavity of the thorax is separated from the abdominal contents by a fibromuscular sheet called the diaphragm. The oesophagus and other intrathoracic structures pass through the diaphragm to gain or leave the abdomen. Since the diaphragm is convex superiorly, some of the organs within the abdomen are covered by the lower ribs and costal cartilages.

The ribs, costal cartilages and sternum form a semi-rigid framework that provides attachment for several muscles; some connect adjacent ribs and costal cartilages, others attach to the pectoral

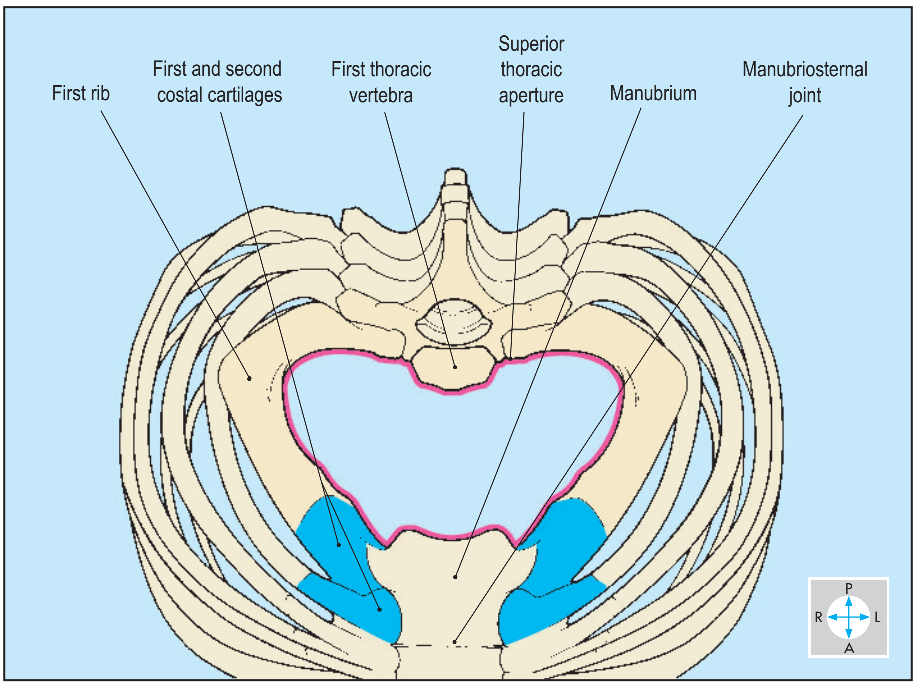


Fig. 2.1 The boundaries of the superior thoracic aperture (pink line).

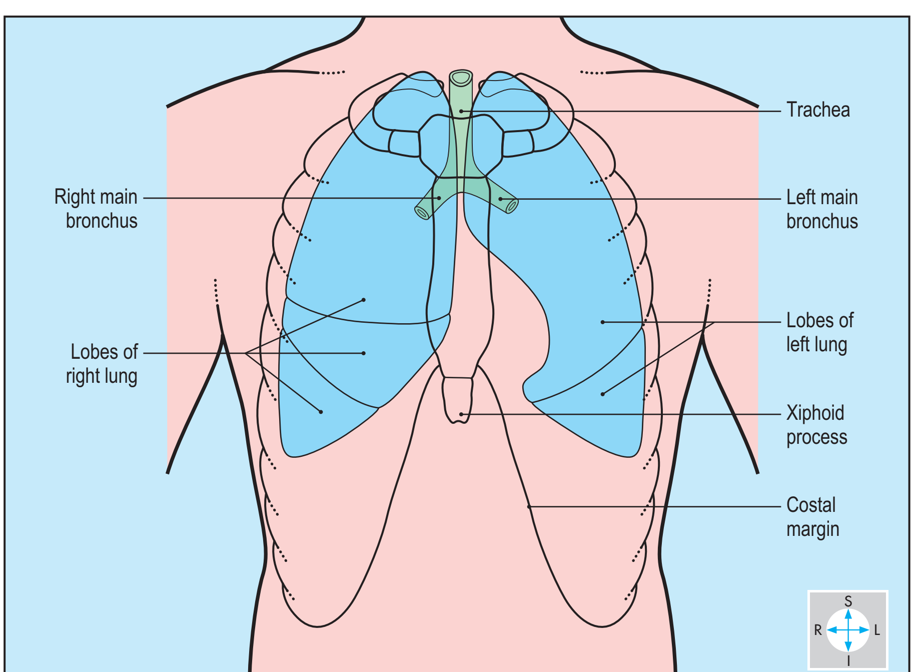


Fig. 2.2 The trachea, bronchi and lungs.

girdle or humerus or descend from the thorax to contribute to the musculature of the abdominal wall. The medial ends of the clavicles articulate with the upper border of the manubrium and flank the jugular (suprasternal) notch. The manubrium articulates with the body of the sternum at the manubriosternal joint (sternal angle, angle of Louis), which usually forms a horizontal ridge. This is a useful landmark during clinical examination because the second costal cartilages meet the sternum at this level. It is normal practice to count ribs starting at the second costal cartilages, as the first ribs are obscured by the clavicles. Inferiorly, the thoracic wall is limited by the costal margin, which is formed by the costal cartilages of the lower ribs. The costal margin extends upwards and medially as far as the lower end of the sternum and forms the upper boundary of the abdominal wall. The inferior portion of the sternum, the xiphoid process, can usually be identified in the midline between the costal margins (subcostal angle). The space between adjacent ribs and costal cartilages is occupied by intercostal muscles, which are active during respiratory movements of the thoracic wall. Intercostal vessels and nerves run between these muscles in each space and give branches to adjacent tissues and the overlying skin. In both sexes, the nipples are surface features, the anatomical locations of which vary depending upon the build of the individual. The glandular components of the breast lie deep to the nipple, embedded in the fat of the subcutaneous tissues that cover the muscles of the chest wall. Posteriorly, the upper ribs are covered by the scapulae and their muscles.

The space contained within the thoracic wall is occupied by several important organs. Some of these are confined to the thorax (e.g. heart), while others traverse the region, passing from the neck into the abdomen (e.g. oesophagus). On each side, the lung occupies a large proportion of the thoracic cavity (Fig. 2.2) and is surrounded by a serous sac called the pleura. The pleura encloses a cavity (pleural cavity), which usually contains a thin film of serous fluid enabling the lungs and thoracic wall to move freely over one another. Each pleural cavity is separated from its neighbour by a midline partition called the mediastinum. The mediastinum is the term used to describe all the structures that occupy this central portion, including the heart and its great vessels (Figs 2.3 & 2.4) and the intrathoracic parts of the trachea and oesophagus.

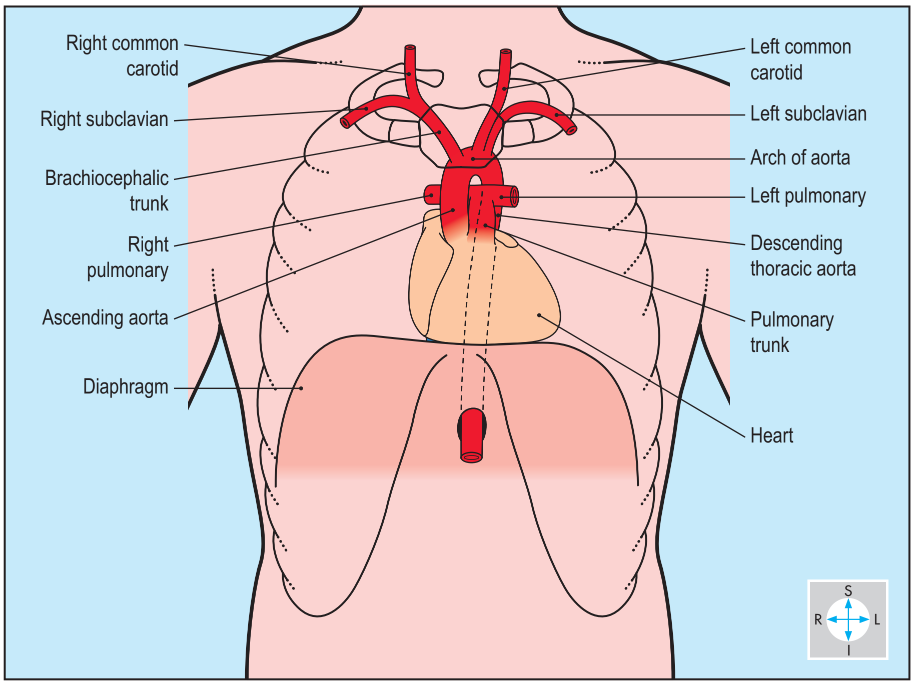


Fig. 2.3 The heart and great arteries.

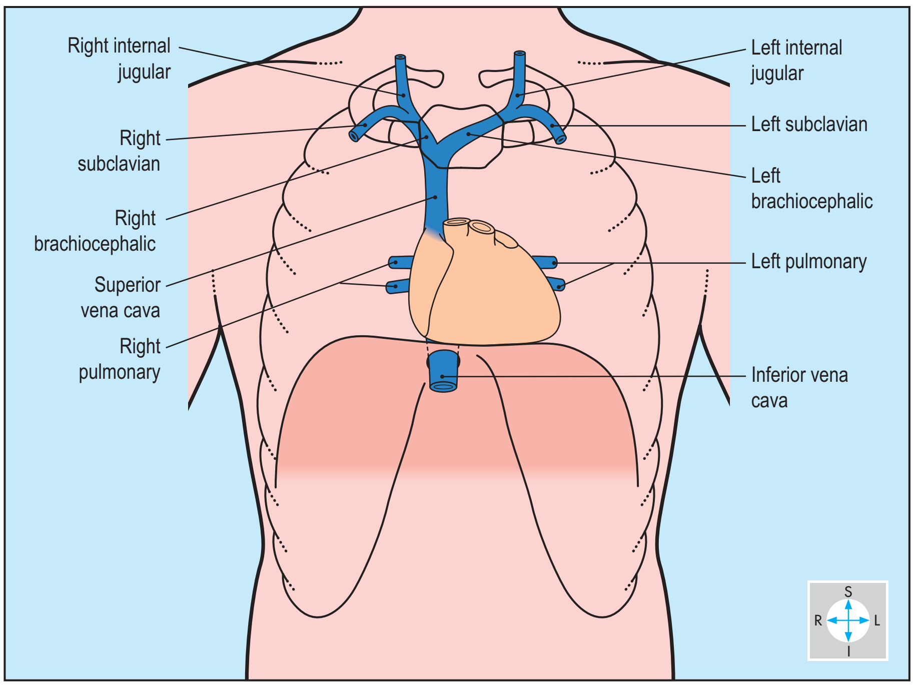


Fig. 2.4 The heart and great veins.

Skeleton of the Thorax

The skeleton of the thorax consists of 12 thoracic vertebrae, the 12 pairs of ribs and their costal cartilages, and the sternum (Fig. 2.5). Structures in continuity between the root of the neck and the upper part of the thoracic cavity pass through the superior thoracic aperture (thoracic inlet), which is bounded by the first thoracic vertebral body, the first pair of ribs and costal cartilages and the upper border of the sternum. The inferior thoracic aperture (thoracic outlet), through which structures pass between the thoracic and abdominal cavities, is formed by the twelfth thoracic vertebral body, the twelfth and eleventh ribs and the costal margin (the fused costal cartilages of the seventh to the tenth ribs inclusive).

Ribs

Although the ribs differ in size and shape, most (2–9 inclusive) have features in common and are described as typical ribs (Fig. 2.6). Each typical rib consists of a head, neck, tubercle, shaft, upper and lower borders and inner and outer surfaces. The heads of the ribs are those parts that articulate with the thoracic vertebral bodies. The lower part of the head forms a synovial joint with its own vertebral body, while the upper part articulates with the vertebra above. The intermediate part of the head lies against the intervertebral disc. The neck of the rib connects the head and the tubercle and lies in front of the transverse process. The tubercle of the rib faces posteriorly and the medial part of its surface forms a synovial joint with the articular facet on the transverse process of the corresponding vertebra. The shaft forms the remainder of the rib and ends anteriorly at a shallow depression, which receives the costal cartilage. Passing laterally from the tubercle, the shaft slopes downwards and backwards before turning forwards and outwards to form the angle. Lateral to the angle, the shaft possesses a sharp lower border, which bounds the costal groove.

The first rib is atypical. Its head possesses an articular facet solely for its own vertebral body. The shaft is short and broad and has superior and inferior surfaces. In addition, its superior surface carries a ridge that forms a projection on the inner border of the rib, the scalene tubercle, to which is attached the scalenus anterior. Two grooves lie across the shaft, one in front of the ridge (for the subclavian vein) and the other behind (for the subclavian artery and lowest trunk of the brachial plexus). The tenth, eleventh and twelfth ribs are also atypical, in that each head possesses a single facet and the rib is usually devoid of a tubercle or an angle.

Costal cartilages

All ribs possess costal cartilages, and those of the upper seven pairs (true ribs) articulate with the sides of the sternum. Pairs 8–12 (false ribs) fall short of the sternum. These articulate with the

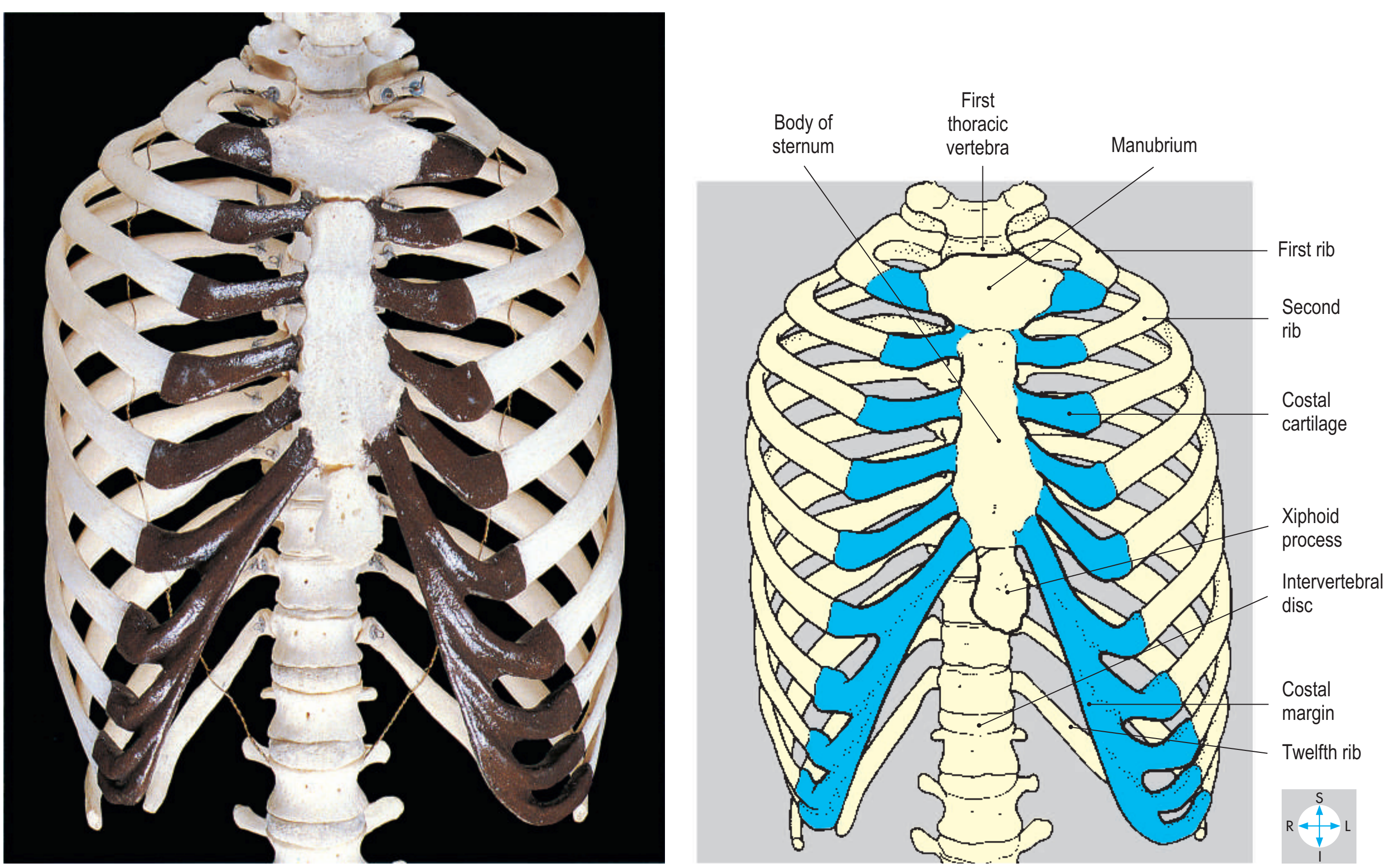


Fig. 2.5 Articulated bones of the thorax showing the relationships between the vertebral column, ribs, costal cartilages and sternum.

cartilage immediately above, while 11 and 12 (floating ribs) are pointed and end freely in the muscle of the abdominal wall.

Sternum

The sternum is a flat bone and consists of the manubrium, the body (Fig. 2.7) and the xiphoid process. The manubrium articulates with the medial end of each clavicle at the sternoclavicular joint and with the first costal cartilage. Its upper margin includes the jugular notch, which forms part of the superior thoracic aperture. A palpable secondary cartilaginous joint (the manubriosternal joint) unites the manubrium and body and forms a useful guide to the second costal cartilage, which abuts the sternum at the lateral margin of the joint. The lateral margins of the body of the sternum are indented by the medial ends of the second to the seventh costal cartilages. The xiphoid process lies in the subcostal angle and projects downwards and backwards from the body of the sternum.

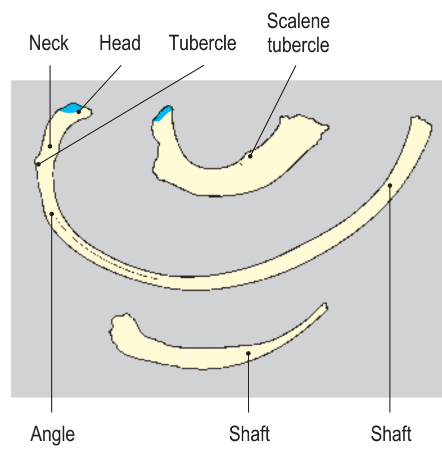


Fig. 2.6 Superior view of the right first, seventh and twelfth ribs showing their surface features and relative sizes.

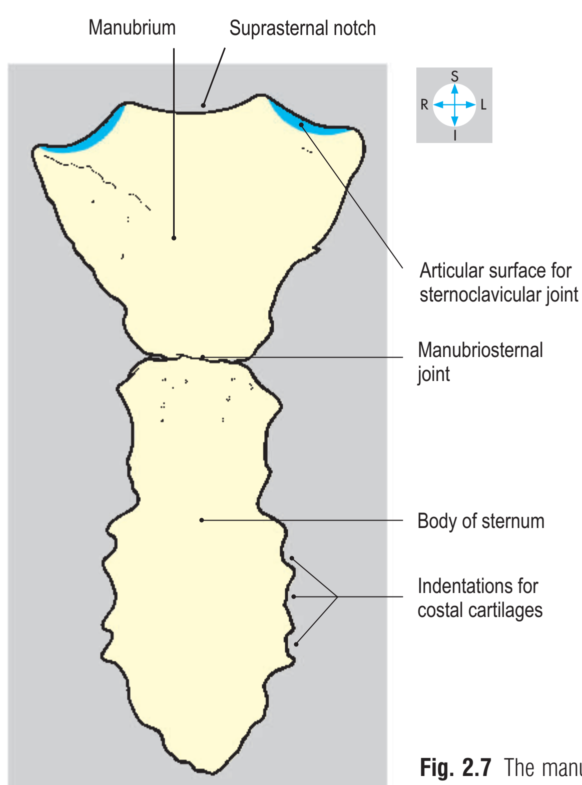


Fig. 2.7 The manubrium and the body of the sternum. The xiphoid process is absent.

Thoracic Wall

Skin

The skin covering the thorax receives its nerve supply from lower cervical and upper thoracic spinal nerves. Above the level of the manubriosternal joint, C4 gives cutaneous innervation, while thoracic nerves T2–T11 provide the dermatomes for the remainder of the thoracic wall. The first thoracic nerve does not contribute to the cutaneous nerve supply of the thorax but innervates some of the skin of the upper limb (Figs 1.35 & 3.6).

Breast

The breast (Fig. 2.8) consists of glandular tissue and a quantity of fat embedded in the subcutaneous tissue of the anterior chest wall. In the male and immature female, the gland is rudimentary. Although the size and shape of the breast in the adult female vary, the base (the part lying on the deep fascia covering pectoralis major, serratus anterior and rectus abdominis) is constant in position. In the adult female, the base is roughly circular and extends between the second and sixth ribs. Medially, the gland overlies the lateral border of the sternum. Part of the breast extends upwards and laterally and reaches the anterior fold of the axilla. This is the axillary tail (process) and is the only part of the breast to penetrate beneath the deep fascia. During clinical palpation of the breast it is essential that the axillary tail is included as part of the physical examination.

The glandular elements consist of 15–20 lobes arranged radially, each draining into a lactiferous duct. These ducts open independently onto the surface of the nipple. The nipple is surrounded by an area of pink skin, the areola, which may develop brown pigmentation during pregnancy.

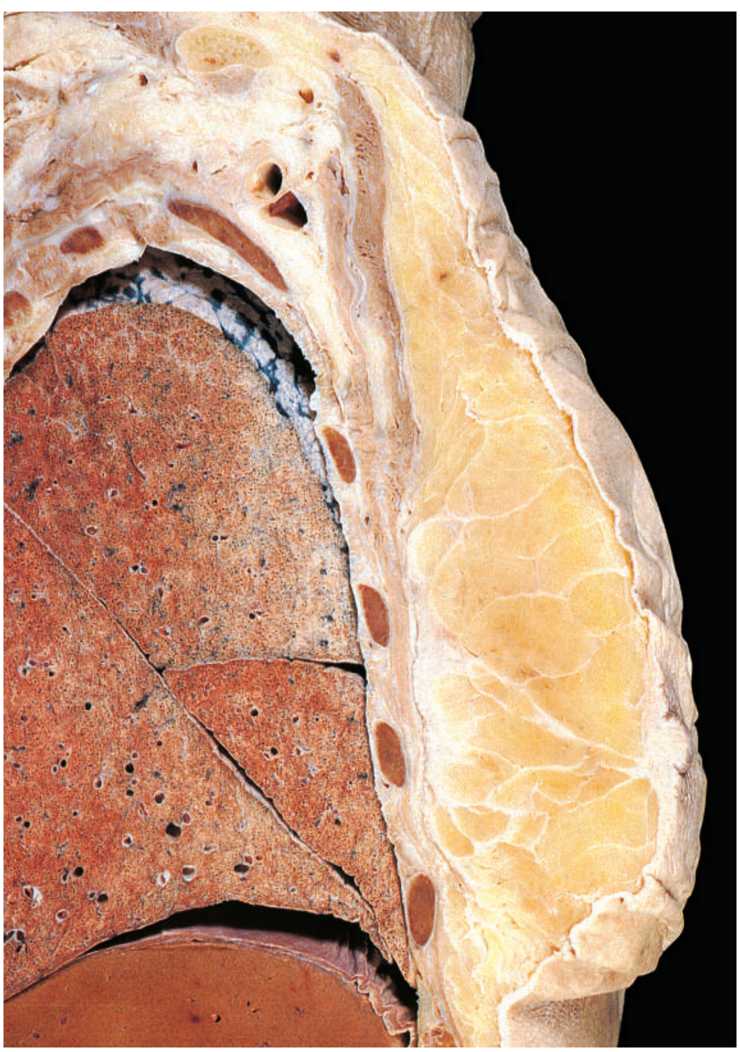
The gland is traversed by fibrous septa (ligaments of Astley Cooper) (Fig. 2.8), which subdivide the lobes and loosely attach the skin of the breast to the deep fascia covering the chest wall. In certain types of breast carcinoma, these fibrous septa may produce characteristic dimpling of the skin over the lesion. Normally, the breast is freely mobile over the underlying muscles. However, lack of mobility when pectoralis major is contracted indicates that breast pathology has fixed the gland to the underlying chest wall muscles.

Blood supply

The fat and glandular elements of the breast receive blood from arteries that also supply the deeper structures of the chest wall. These vessels include perforating branches from the internal thoracic artery (internal mammary artery) and the second, third and fourth intercostal arteries. The lateral thoracic and thoracoacromial arteries arising from the axillary artery also supply the breast. The gland is drained by veins that accompany the arteries.

Lymph drainage

Within the substance of the breast, the lymphatic vessels form a system of interconnecting channels that collect lymph from all parts of the organ. The superior and lateral aspects of the breast usually drain into central and apical axillary nodes via infraclavicular and pectoral nodes. It is therefore important to palpate axillary lymph nodes in suspected cases of malignant breast disease. The medial and inferior parts of the breast drain deeply into glands along the internal thoracic vessels and thence via the bronchomediastinal lymph trunk into the confluence of lymphatic



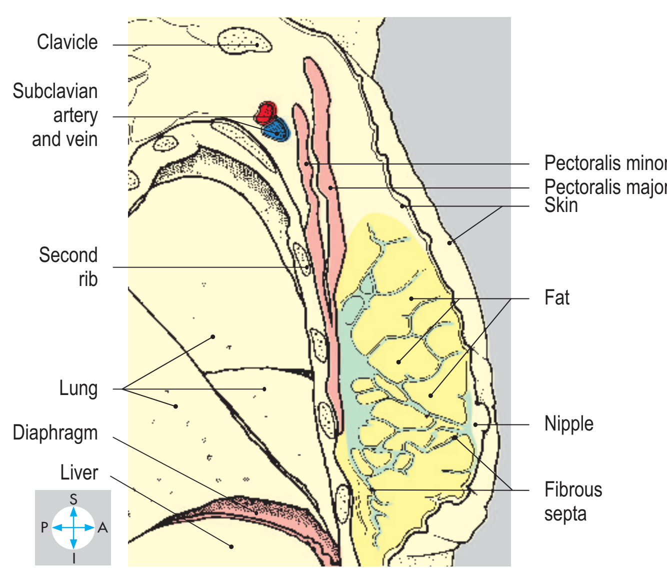


Fig. 2.8 Sagittal section through the right breast and underlying chest wall. In this dissection, the glandular structure of the breast cannot be distinguished.

vessels in the root of the neck (p. 330). Lymphatics may also cross the midline to communicate with vessels in the opposite breast.

Muscles

The outer surfaces of the ribs, costal cartilages and sternum give attachment to muscles involved in movements of the upper limb and the scapula, namely pectoralis major, pectoralis minor and serratus anterior. In addition, the external surfaces of the lower ribs provide attachment for rectus abdominis and the external oblique muscles of the anterior abdominal wall (pp 143, 144).

Pectoralis major

This large fan-shaped muscle (Fig. 2.9) attaches to the clavicle, sternum and upper costal cartilages and forms the bulk of the anterior wall of the axilla. The clavicular head is attached to the anterior surface of the medial half of the clavicle. The sternocostal head is anchored to the manubrium and body of the sternum, and to the upper six costal cartilages. Laterally, both parts of the muscle attach to the humerus along the lateral lip of the intertubercular sulcus (p. 77).

Pectoralis major is supplied by the medial and lateral pectoral nerves from the brachial plexus. Functionally, it is a powerful adductor and flexor of the arm at the shoulder joint and also produces medial rotation of the humerus. When the upper limb is fixed, the sternocostal part may act as an accessory muscle of inspiration by elevating the ribs.

Pectoralis minor

This small muscle (Fig. 2.10) lies deep to pectoralis major and is usually attached to the third, fourth and fifth ribs. The muscle converges on the medial border of the coracoid process of the scapula. Pectoralis minor is supplied by the medial and lateral pectoral nerves and assists in movements of protraction and rotation of the scapula.

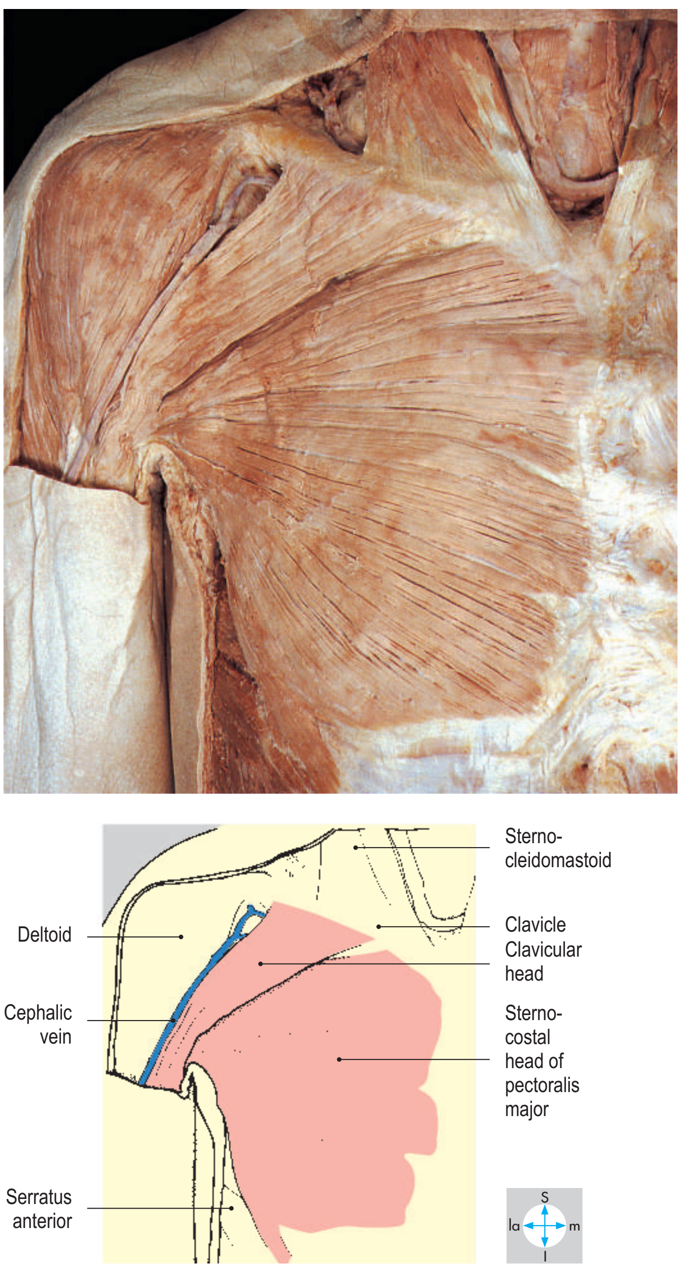


Fig. 2.9 Pectoralis major, revealed by removal of the skin, the subcutaneous tissue and deep fascia.

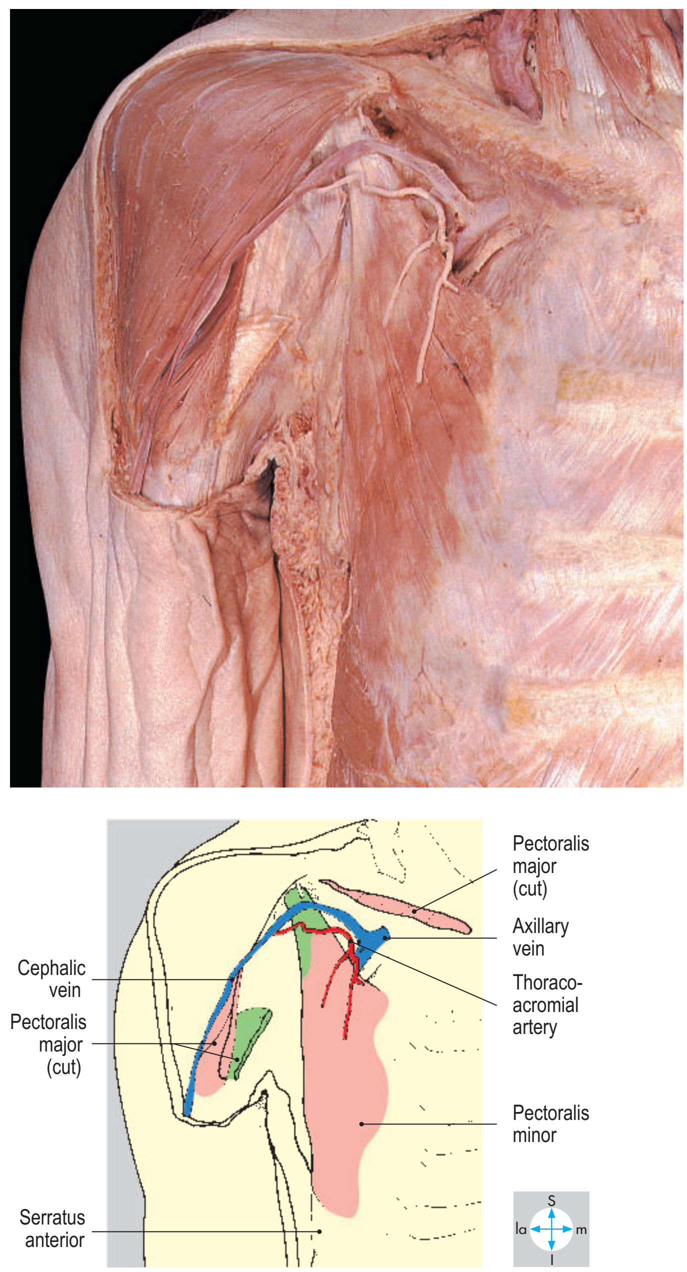


Fig. 2.10 Pectoralis minor, exposed by removal of pectoralis major.

Serratus anterior

This large muscle lies between the scapula and chest wall and attaches to the lateral aspects of the upper eight ribs (Fig. 2.11), forming part of the medial wall of the axilla. The muscle fibres from the upper four ribs attach to the superior angle and to the costal surface of the medial border of the scapula. The fibres from ribs 5–8 converge on the costal surface of the inferior angle of the scapula.

Innervation is provided by the long thoracic nerve arising in the neck from the upper three roots (C5, C6 & C7) of the brachial plexus. The muscle is a powerful protractor of the scapula and assists trapezius in producing scapular rotation during abduction of the upper limb. In addition, the muscle helps to stabilize the scapula during movements of the upper limb.

Intercostal spaces

The interval between two adjacent ribs is called an intercostal space. On each side of the thorax there are 11 such spaces, numbered from above and occupied by muscles, membranes, nerves and vessels. The number given to each intercostal space and its neurovascular structures corresponds to that of the rib which limits the space superiorly. The nerves and vessels immediately inferior to the twelfth ribs are termed the subcostal nerves and vessels. The intercostal nerves and vessels supply the intercostal

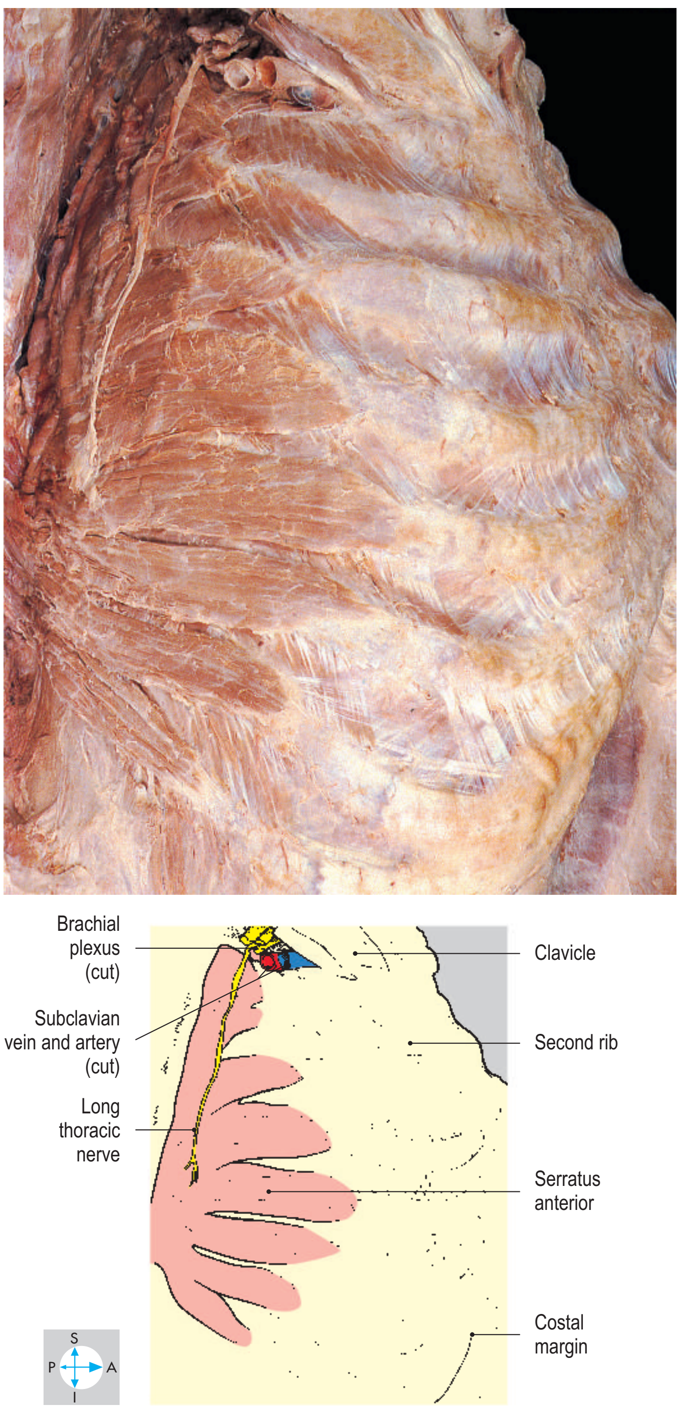


Fig. 2.11 Serratus anterior seen after removal of the pectoral muscles and displacement of the scapula backwards.

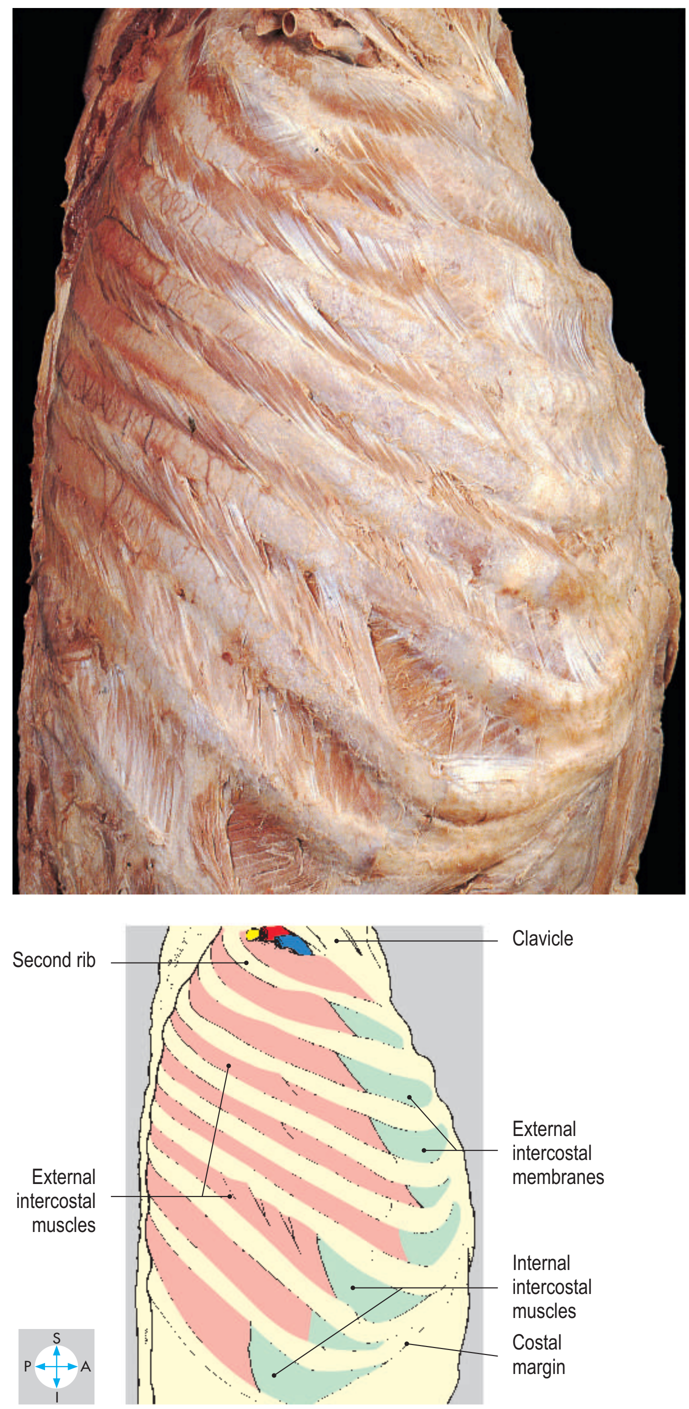


Fig. 2.12 External intercostal muscles, exposed by removal of the upper limb and serratus anterior.

muscles and the parietal pleura deep to each space. Branches from these vessels also supply the overlying muscles of the body wall, the superficial fascia and skin. Most intercostal nerves have cutaneous branches that supply the skin covering the chest and abdominal walls.

Intercostal muscles

There are three layers of intercostal muscles, which lie superficial, intermediate and deep. These are named the external, the internal and the innermost intercostal muscles.

External intercostal muscles

The fibres of the external intercostal muscles slope downwards and forwards from the lower border of one rib to the upper border of the subjacent rib (Fig. 2.12). The muscle extends from the tubercle of the rib posteriorly to the junction of the rib and its costal cartilage anteriorly. Between costal cartilages the muscle fibres are replaced by a thin fascial sheet, the external intercostal membrane, which reaches the lateral border of the sternum (Fig. 2.13).

Internal intercostal muscles

The internal intercostal muscles (Fig. 2.14) lie immediately deep to the external intercostal muscles. The fibres of the two muscles are mutually at right angles, those of the internal intercostal muscles running downwards and backwards from the lower border of one rib to the upper border of the subjacent rib. Anteriorly, each muscle continues between the costal cartilages to reach the lateral border of the sternum (Fig. 2.13). Posteriorly, each

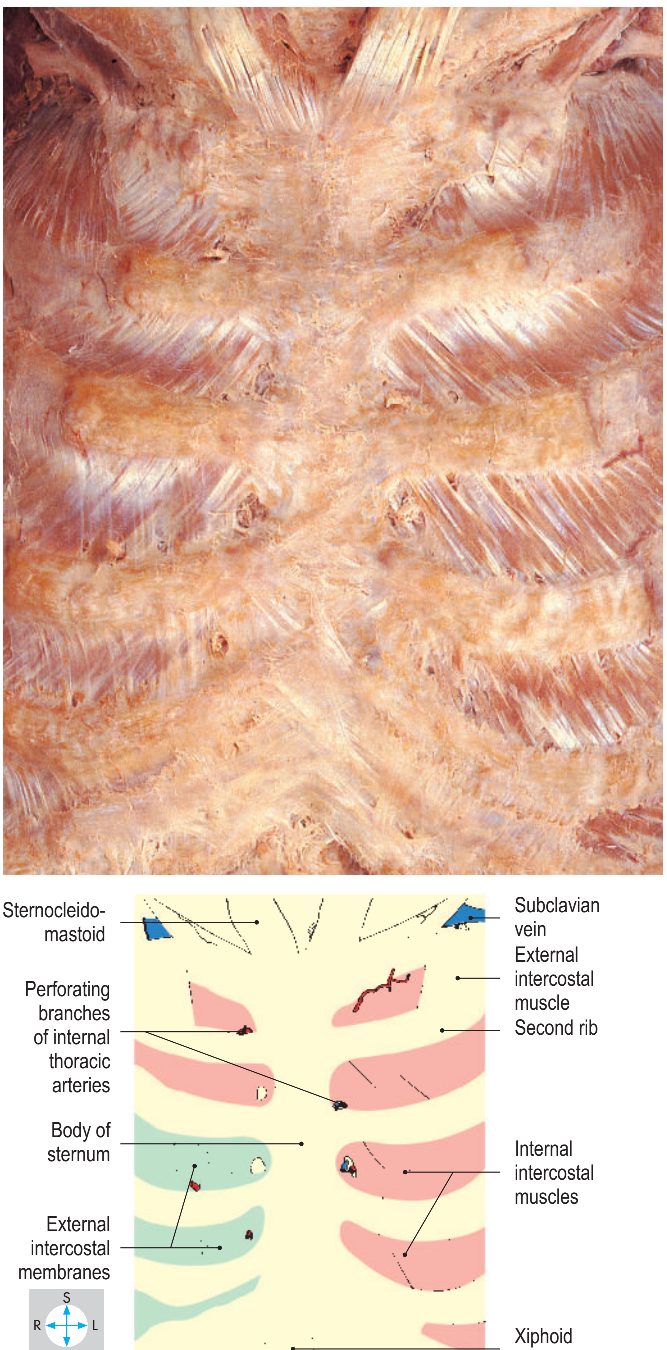


Fig. 2.13 External intercostal membranes and the anterior fibres of the internal intercostal muscles.

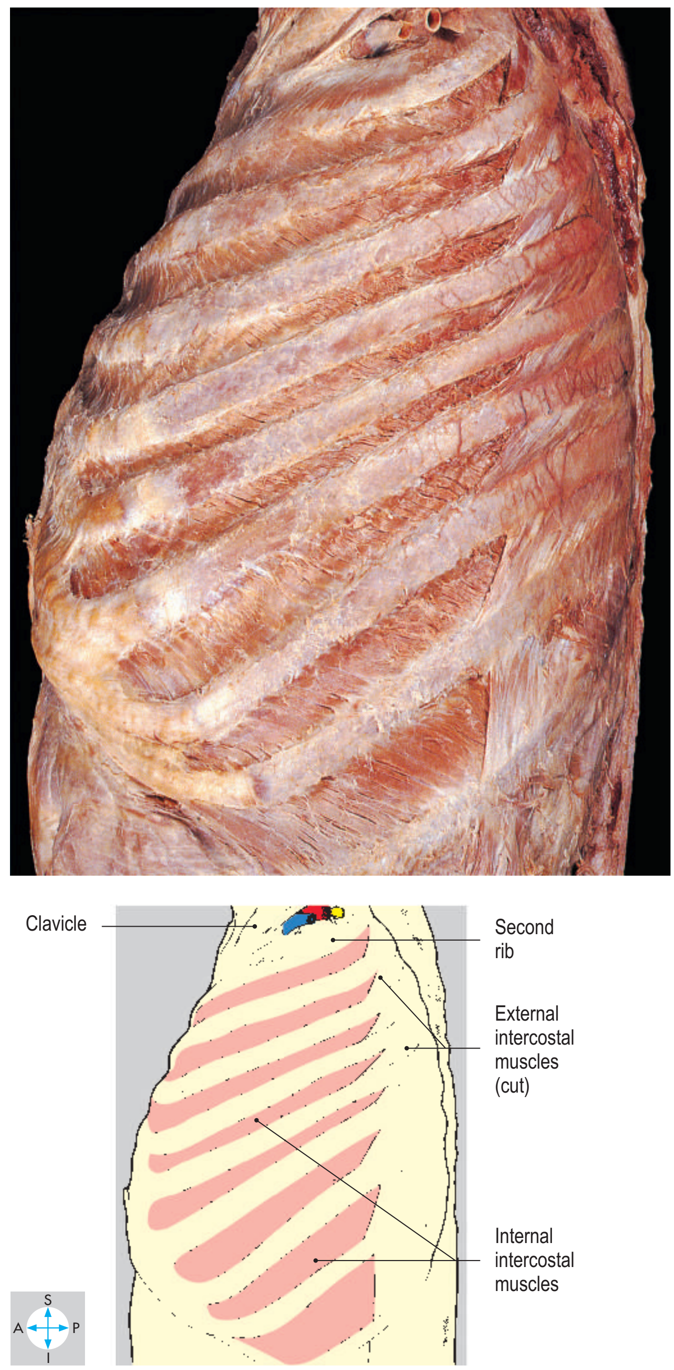


Fig. 2.14 Internal intercostal muscles, exposed by removal of the anterior parts of the external intercostal muscles.

muscle extends only to the angles of the ribs, where it is replaced by the internal intercostal membrane, which continues as far as the tubercles of the ribs.

Innermost intercostal muscles

These muscles lie on a plane deep to that of the internal intercostal muscles (Fig. 2.15). They form the lateral part of an incomplete layer of muscle which includes the transversus thoracis (sternocostalis) anteriorly (Fig. 2.16) and subcostalis posteriorly. The innermost intercostal muscles connect the inner surface of each rib to that of its neighbours.

Nerve supply

All the intercostal muscles in a particular intercostal space are supplied by the corresponding intercostal nerve.

Actions

Although the main role of the intercostal muscles is in ventilation of the lungs, it must be emphasized that during normal, quiet breathing, the muscles of the thoracic wall make only a small contribution. Inspiration is usually brought about mainly by the diaphragm, whose descent increases the vertical diameter of the thorax. The transverse and anteroposterior diameters of the thorax are increased, especially in deep inspiration, by the external intercostal muscles, which incline the ribs outwards, upwards and forwards, so that the intercostal spaces are widened. During quiet breathing, expiration is largely due to the 'elastic' recoil of the lungs and thoracic wall and involves minimal activity by the intercostal muscles. Even when expiration is 'forced', for example during vigorous physical exertion or when coughing, the main muscular effort is provided by the muscles of the abdominal wall rather than the chest wall. However, the internal intercostal muscles contribute to forced expiration by drawing the ribs downwards and inwards, thereby narrowing the intercostal spaces.

Intercostal vessels and nerves

Each intercostal space has a principal artery, vein and nerve, which collectively form the neurovascular bundle (Fig. 2.15). This bundle lies in the neurovascular plane between the internal and innermost intercostal muscles and runs along the upper part of the intercostal space, occupying the costal groove of the rib. Usually, the vein lies superiorly and the nerve inferiorly in the bundle. A collateral nerve and collateral vessels arise posteriorly from the neurovascular bundle and run forwards along the lower border of the intercostal space to supply the intercostal muscles.

Intercostal arteries

Intercostal arteries enter from both anterior and posterior ends of the intercostal space. Anteriorly, the internal thoracic arteries (internal mammary arteries) (Fig. 2.16) arising from the subclavian arteries in the root of the neck (p. 330) provide branches that run laterally to supply the upper six pairs of intercostal spaces. On each side, the lower five spaces receive anterior intercostal arteries from the musculophrenic artery, one of the terminal branches of the internal thoracic artery. These anterior arteries anastomose end-to-end with the posterior intercostal arteries.

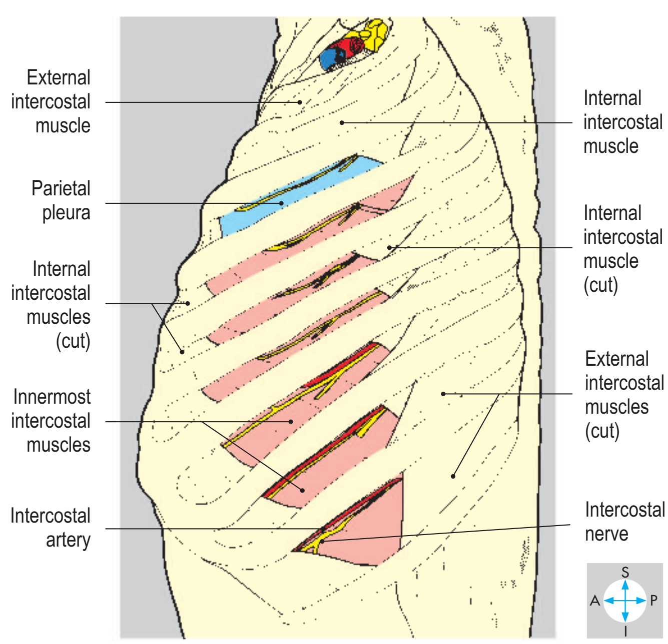


Fig. 2.15 Innermost intercostal muscles and intercostal nerves exposed after removing parts of the internal intercostal muscles. In the third intercostal space the innermost intercostal muscle has been removed to expose the parietal pleura.

Posterior intercostal arteries to the lower nine intercostal spaces arise as direct branches from the descending thoracic aorta (Fig. 2.64). For the first and second spaces, the posterior intercostal arteries are derived from the intercostal branch of the costocervical trunk. This trunk arises from the subclavian artery (p. 331) and its intercostal branch enters the thorax by crossing the neck of the first rib. The anastomoses between anterior and posterior intercostal arteries in the lower nine intercostal spaces and between the scapular arteries and posterior intercostals are important because they enable blood to reach the descending aorta when the aortic arch is abnormally narrowed (coarctation of the aorta).

Intercostal veins

Anteriorly, the intercostal veins from the lower five intercostal spaces drain into the musculophrenic veins. The upper six intercostal veins and the musculophrenic veins drain into the internal thoracic veins, which themselves are tributaries of the brachiocephalic veins in the root of the neck. Posteriorly, the intercostal veins drain into the azygos venous system. On the right, those in the lower eight spaces terminate directly in the azygos vein (Fig. 2.64). The veins from the second and third spaces combine into a single vessel, the right superior intercostal vein, which drains into the arch of the azygos vein. The first posterior intercostal vein (supreme intercostal vein) leaves the thorax to terminate in the root of the neck, usually in the right vertebral vein.

On the left, the lower eight posterior intercostal veins enter either the hemiazygos or accessory hemiazygos veins (Fig. 2.65). The left superior intercostal vein drains the second and third spaces and crosses the left side of the arch of the aorta to terminate in the left brachiocephalic vein (Fig. 2.57). As on the right the first posterior intercostal vein (supreme intercostal vein) leaves the thorax to terminate usually in the vertebral, but occasionally in the brachiocephalic, vein.

Intercostal nerves

The intercostal nerves comprise the anterior rami of the upper 11 thoracic spinal nerves. Each intercostal nerve enters the neurovascular plane posteriorly (Fig. 2.65) and gives a collateral branch that supplies the intercostal muscles of the space. Except for the first, each intercostal nerve gives off a lateral cutaneous branch near the midaxillary line, which pierces the overlying muscle (Fig. 1.36). This cutaneous nerve divides into anterior and posterior branches, which supply the adjacent skin. The intercostal nerves of the second to the sixth spaces enter the superficial fascia near the lateral border of the sternum and divide into medial and lateral cutaneous branches.

Most of the fibres of the anterior ramus of the first thoracic spinal nerve join the brachial plexus for distribution to the upper limb (p. 80). The small first intercostal nerve is the collateral branch and supplies only the muscles of the intercostal space, not the overlying skin.

The intercostal nerves of the lower five spaces continue in the neurovascular plane beyond the costal margin to supply the muscles and skin of the abdominal wall (p. 145).

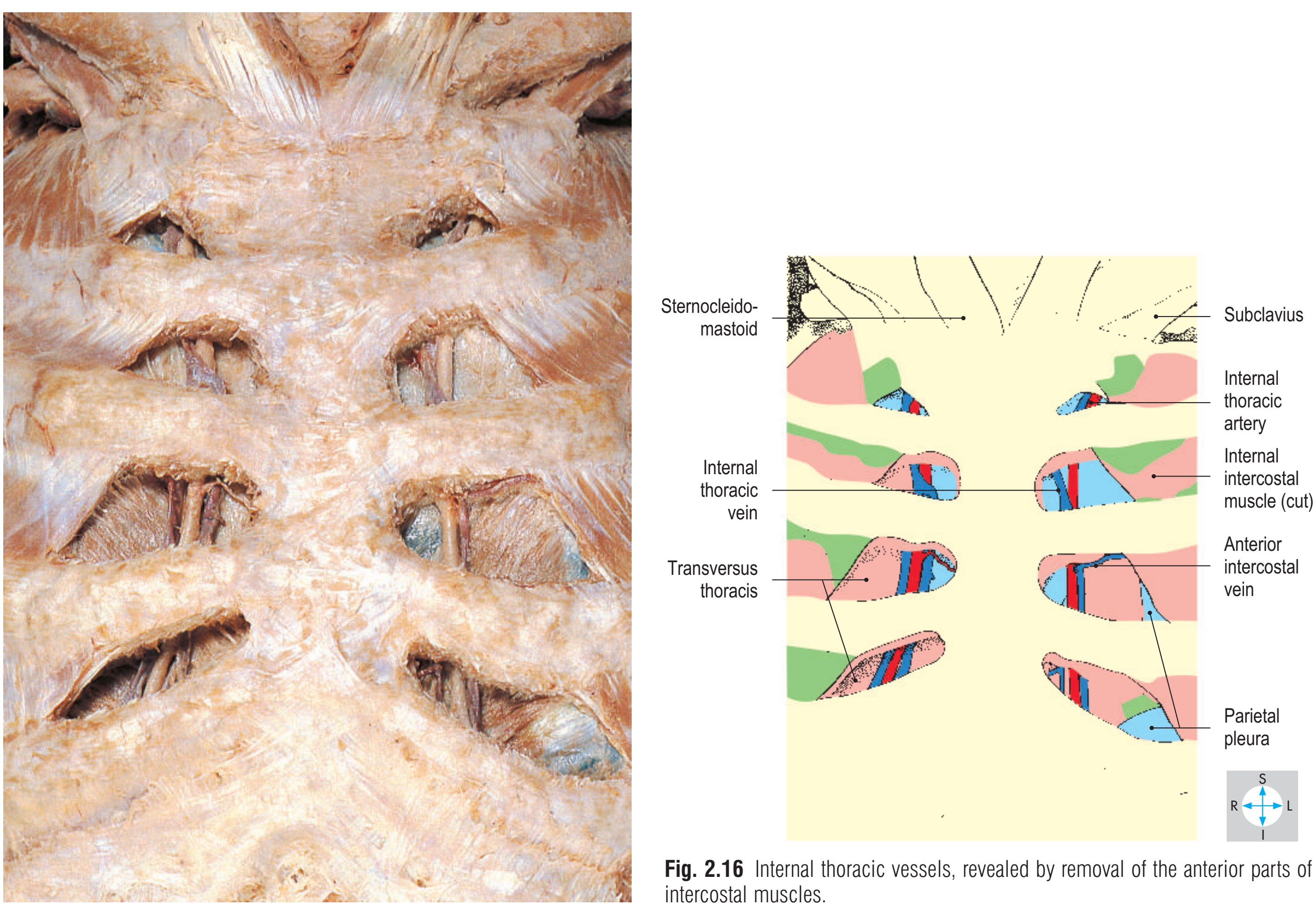


Fig. 2.16 Internal thoracic vessels, revealed by removal of the anterior parts of the intercostal muscles.

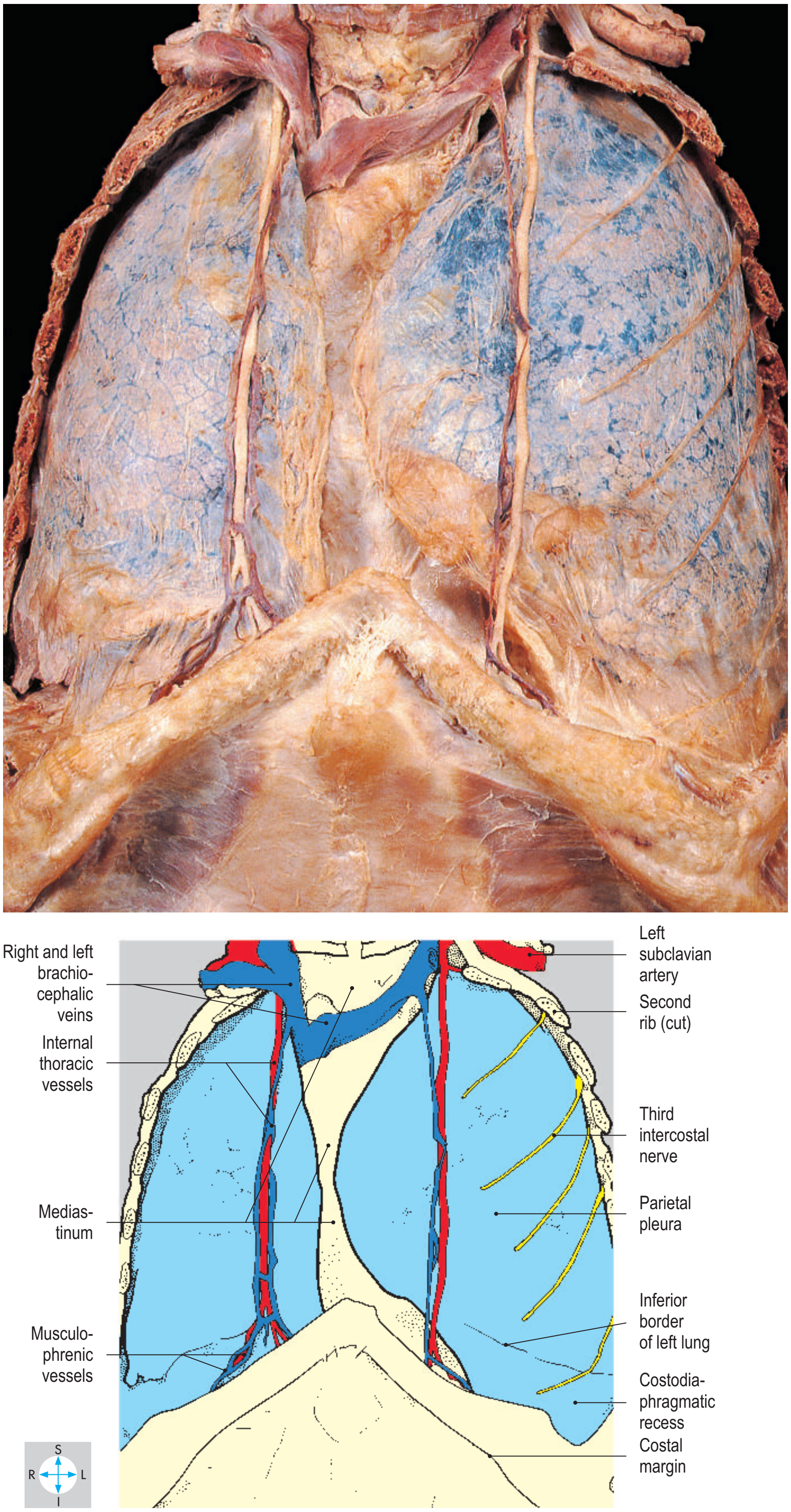


Fig. 2.17 Removal of the anterior chest wall has exposed the internal thoracic vessels and costal part of the parietal pleura, through which the lungs are visible.

Pleura

The thoracic cavity lies within the walls of the thorax and is separated from the abdominal cavity by the diaphragm. The cavity contains the right and left lungs, each surrounded by a serous membrane called the pleura. Between the lungs is a central partition, the mediastinum, which includes the heart and great vessels, the trachea and the oesophagus. Superiorly, numerous mediastinal structures enter or leave the root of the neck through the superior thoracic aperture (p. 322). Inferiorly, important structures including the aorta, inferior vena cava and oesophagus pass between the mediastinum and the abdomen through openings in the diaphragm (p. 203).

The pleura surrounds the lungs and lines the walls of the thoracic cavity and is subdivided into visceral and parietal parts. The visceral layer covers the surface of the lung and is continuous with the parietal layer around the mediastinal attachment of the lung at the lung root. The parietal layer covers the lateral aspect of the mediastinum, the upper surface of the diaphragm and the inner aspect of the chest wall (Fig. 2.17). Although the parietal and visceral layers are normally in contact, a space, the pleural cavity (Fig. 2.18), exists between them and contains a thin film of serous fluid. The fluid ensures close apposition of the two pleural surfaces and reduces friction during respiratory movements. Injury or disease may produce an accumulation of air (pneumothorax) or fluid (pleural effusion) within the pleural cavity, causing the lung to collapse.

Parietal pleura

The parietal pleura is named according to the surfaces it covers. Thus, the mediastinal pleura conforms to the contours of the structures forming the lateral surface of the mediastinum and is innervated by sensory branches of the phrenic nerve. Inferiorly, the diaphragmatic pleura clothes the upper surface of the diaphragm. The central portion receives sensory branches from each phrenic nerve, while the periphery is innervated by lower intercostal nerves. The pleura covering the inner surface of the thoracic wall is called the costal pleura

and is innervated segmentally by the intercostal nerves (Fig. 2.17).

The periphery of the diaphragm slopes steeply downwards towards its attachment to the thoracic wall, creating a narrow gutter, the costodiaphragmatic recess. Within this recess, which is particularly deep laterally and posteriorly, the costal and diaphragmatic parts of the parietal pleura lie in mutual contact.

The parietal pleura extending into the root of the neck is called the cervical pleura and is innervated by the first intercostal nerve. It is applied to the undersurface of a firm fascial layer, the suprapleural membrane, which prevents upward movement of the apex of the lung and pleura during ventilation (Fig. 7.15).

Surface markings of the parietal pleura

Because the parietal pleura is reflected from the thoracic wall onto both the mediastinum and the diaphragm, a line of pleural reflection can be mapped out on the body surface. Traced from its upper limit, approximately 2.5 cm above the medial third of the clavicle, this line descends behind the sternoclavicular joint. This cervical pleura may be accidentally perforated when a central venous line is being placed in the subclavian vein. The pleural reflection line approaches the midline at the level of the manubriosternal joint. On the right, the pleural reflection descends vertically to the level of the sixth costal cartilage, while on the left, the heart displaces the pleura laterally (Fig. 2.17) so that from the fourth to the sixth costal cartilages, the line of reflection lies just lateral to the edge of the sternum. This displacement exposes part of the pericardium underlying the medial ends of the fourth and fifth intercostal spaces. Traced laterally from the sixth costal cartilage, the surface marking is the same on each side, crossing the eighth rib in the midclavicular line and the tenth rib in the midaxillary line.

Posteriorly, the parietal pleura continues horizontally, crosses the twelfth rib 5 cm from the midline and continues medially for a further 2.5 cm. Thus, a small area of parietal pleura lies below the level of the twelfth rib.

Visceral pleura

The visceral pleura (Fig. 2.18) is continuous with the mediastinal parietal pleura around the root of the lung. Structures entering or leaving the hilum of the lung occupy the upper part of this pleural sleeve, the lower part consisting of an empty fold of pleura, the pulmonary ligament (Fig. 2.25). The visceral pleura firmly adheres to the surface of the lung and extends into the depths of the fissures. Unlike the parietal layer, the visceral pleura does not have a somatic innervation.

Surface markings of the visceral pleura

Since the visceral pleura covers the surface of the lung, its surface markings coincide with those of the lung (p. 41).

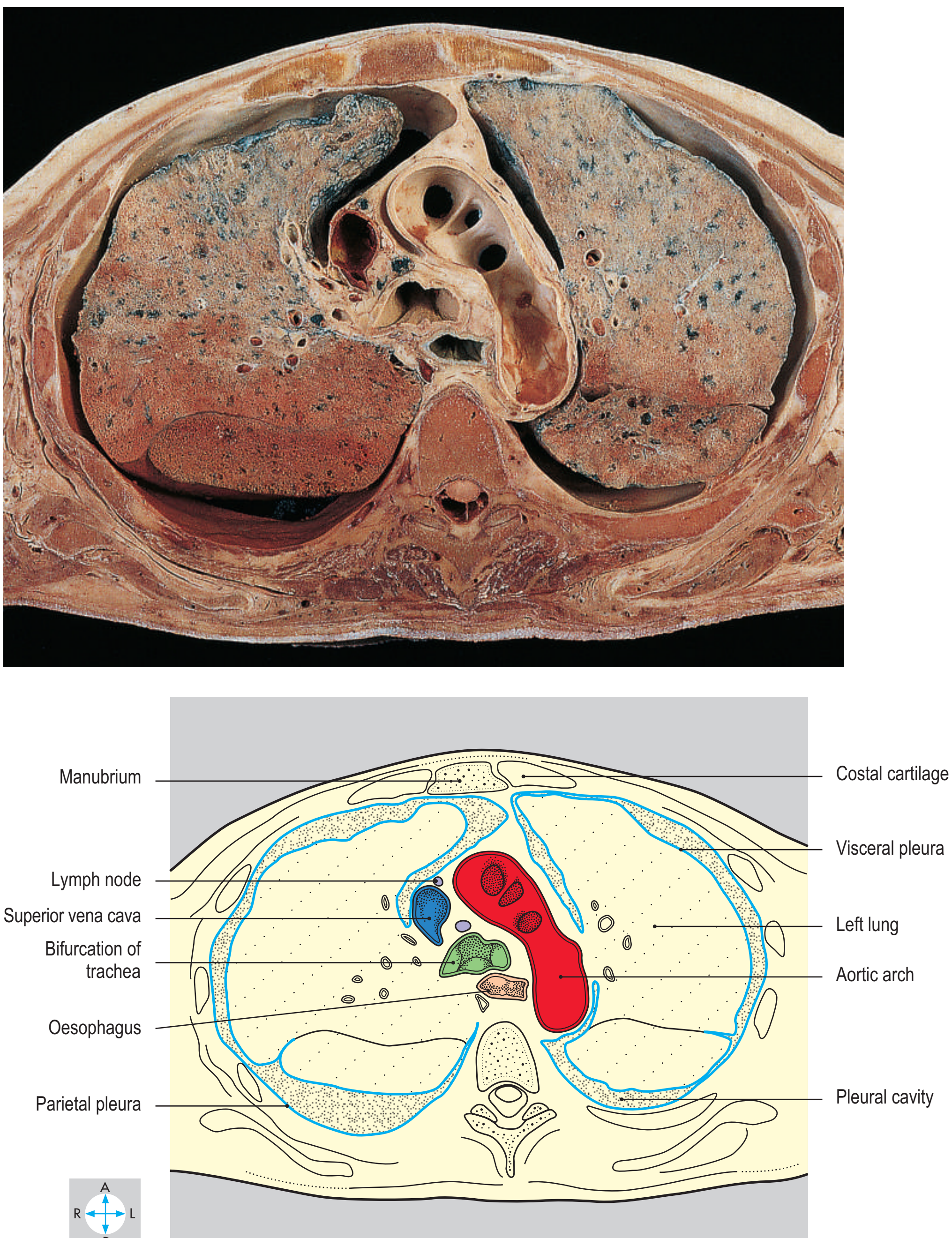


Fig. 2.18 Transverse section at the level of the fourth thoracic vertebra showing the arch of the aorta and the bifurcation of the trachea. Inferior aspect. (Compare Fig. 2.68.)

Lungs

The two lungs lie in the thoracic cavity and are separated by the structures in the mediastinum (Fig. 2.19). Although the lungs of infants are pink, those of older individuals may have a mottled appearance due to deposits of inhaled carbon. Living lungs are elastic, enabling their volumes to change during ventilation, in contrast to embalmed lungs, which are rigid and often bear the imprints of adjacent structures. Each lung is covered in visceral pleura and is cone-shaped, with the base or diaphragmatic surface directed downwards and the apex upwards. The costal surface is smoothly convex, while the mediastinal surface is irregular and bears the hilum of the organ. Fissures are usually present, and divide each lung into lobes (usually three lobes on the right and two on the left). Most of the lung consists of the peripheral part of the respiratory tract and the associated pulmonary vascular system. Having entered the lung, the bronchi and pulmonary vessels subdivide extensively (Fig. 2.26).

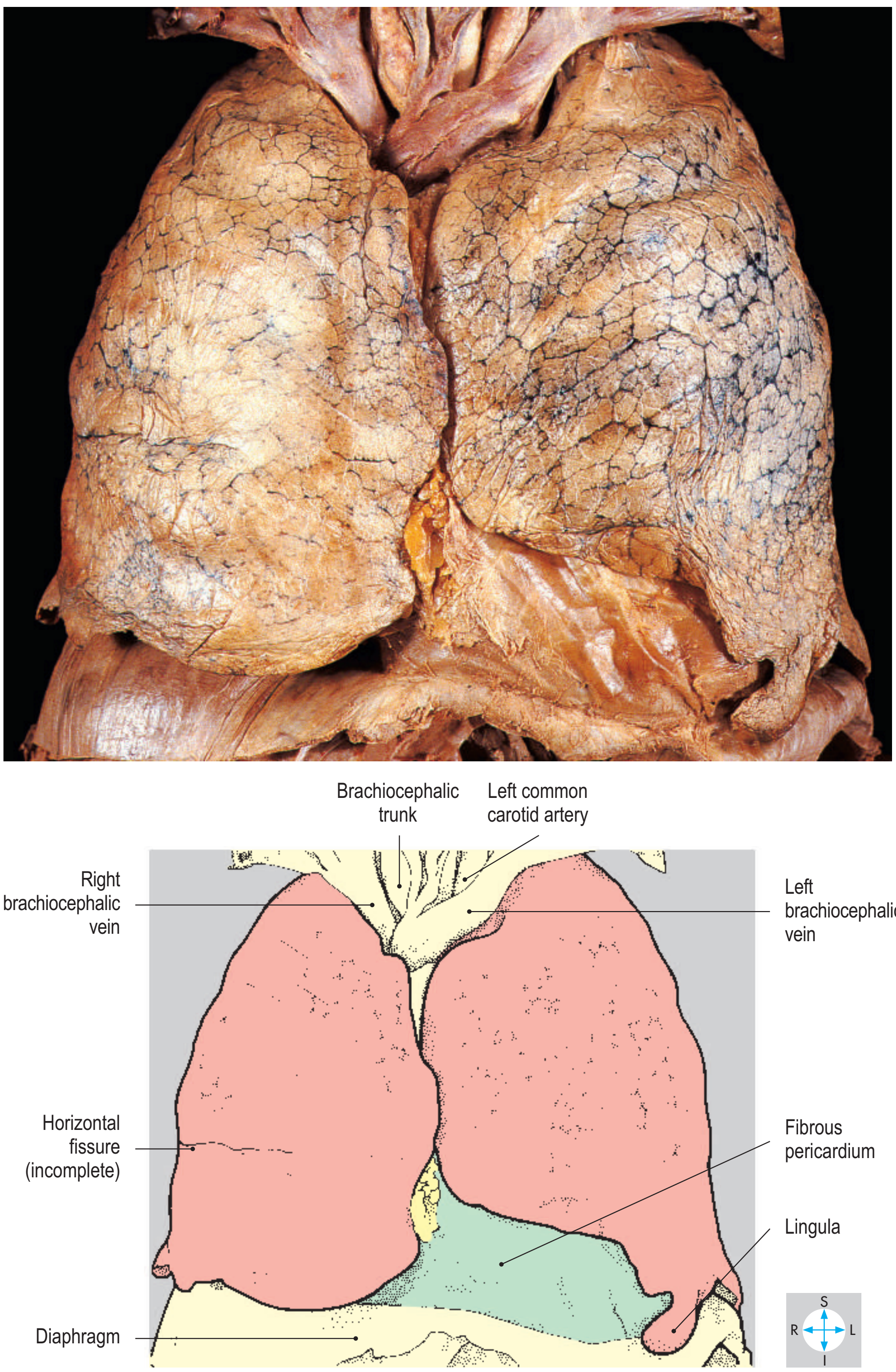


Fig. 2.19 Lungs, after removal of the anterolateral thoracic wall and parietal pleura. In this specimen the lungs overlie more of the mediastinum than is usual.

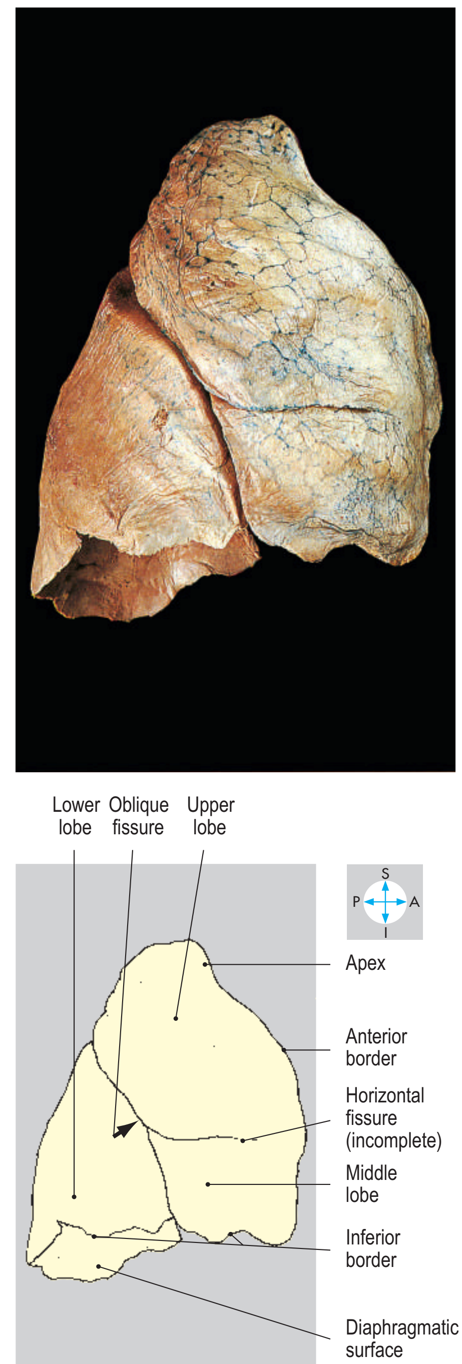


Fig. 2.20 Costal surface of the right lung, showing oblique and horizontal fissures and the upper, middle and lower lobes.

Fissures

Although variations occur, each lung is usually divided into upper and lower lobes by an oblique fissure. On the right, the upper lobe is further subdivided by the horizontal fissure (Fig. 2.20), which runs from the anterior border of the lung into the oblique fissure and demarcates the middle lobe. On the left, the horizontal fissure is usually absent and the middle lobe is represented by the lingula (Fig. 2.21).

Surfaces, borders and relations

The costal surface is convex and extends upwards into the cervical part of the pleura to form the apex of the lung, which is closely related to the corresponding subclavian artery and vein. The inferior surface (base) is markedly concave (Figs 2.22 & 2.23), conforming to the upward convexity of the dome of the diaphragm. The costal and diaphragmatic surfaces meet at the sharp inferior border. The anterior border is also sharp and is formed where the costal and mediastinal surfaces are in continuity. In contrast, the posterior border is rounded and rather indistinct.

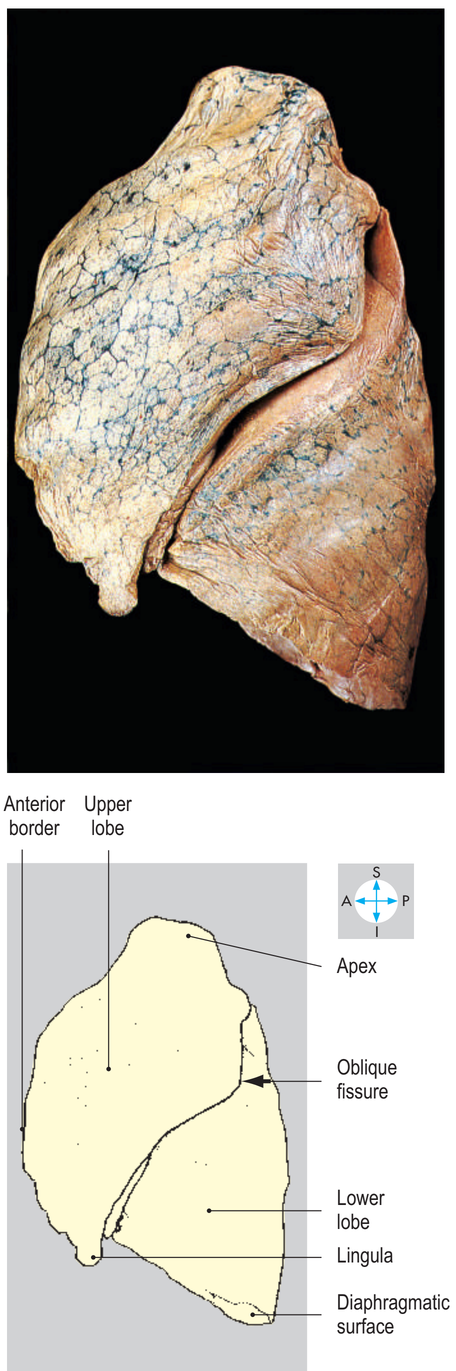


Fig. 2.21 Costal surface of the left lung showing the oblique fissure and upper and lower lobes.

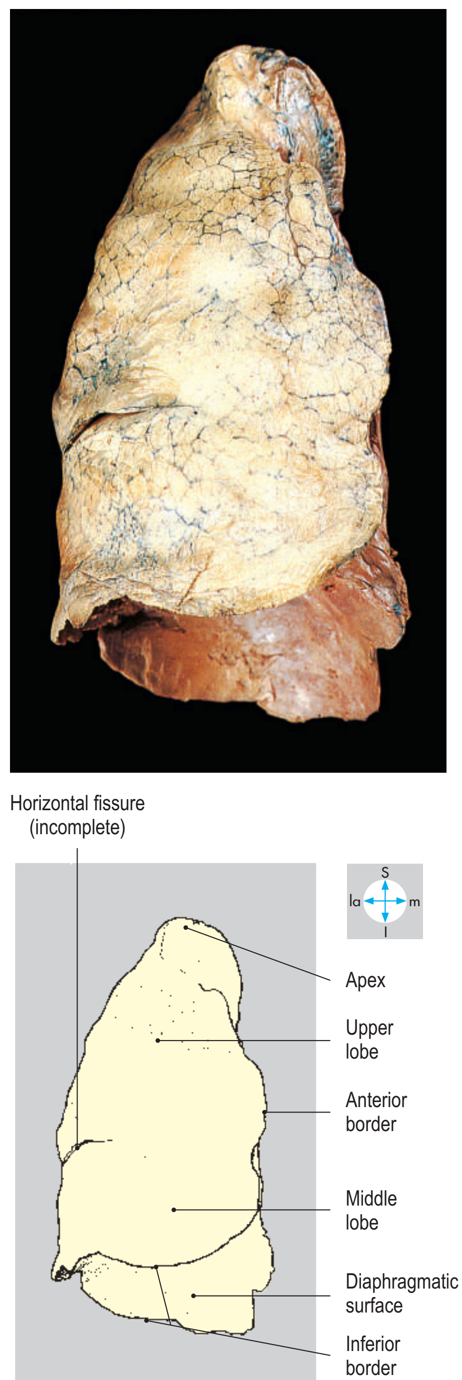


Fig. 2.22 Right lung, showing its concave inferior surface and sharp anterior and inferior borders.

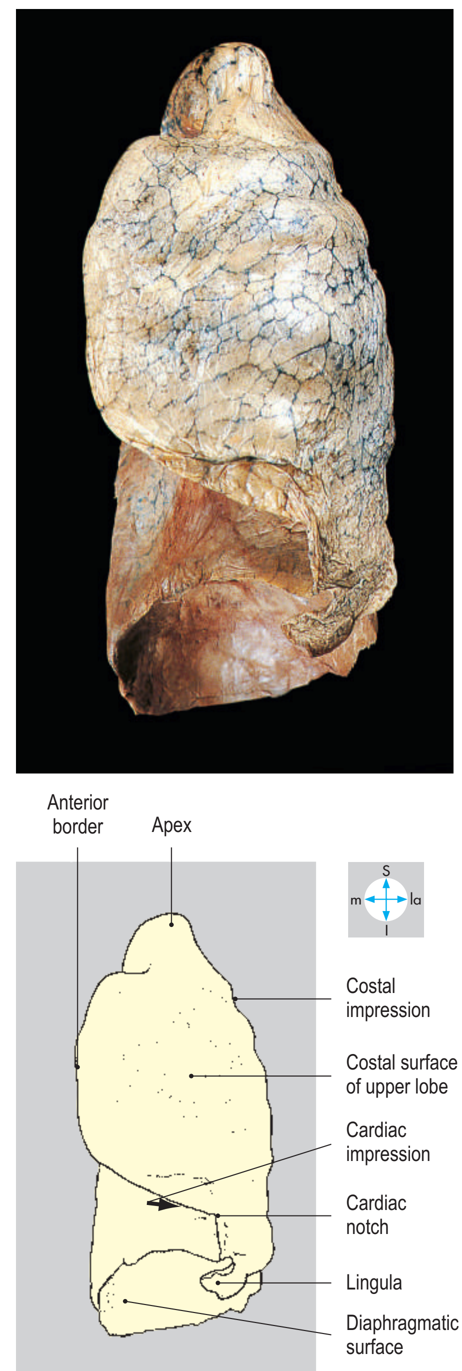


Fig. 2.23 Left lung, showing the cardiac notch and lingula, both of which are particularly obvious in this specimen.

Each lung is attached to the mediastinum by the lung root, the principal components of which are the pulmonary vessels and the bronchi. These structures, accompanied by bronchial vessels, lymphatics and autonomic nerves, enter or leave the lung through the hilum. Usually, two pulmonary veins emerge from each lung, the inferior vein being the lowest structure in the hilum (Figs 2.24 & 2.25). The bronchi and pulmonary arteries are adjacent as they pass through the hilum, and on the left, the main bronchus lies posteroinferior to the pulmonary artery. However, on the right, the main bronchus frequently divides into two branches, the upper and lower lobe bronchi, before reaching the lung, and each bronchus is accompanied by a branch of the pulmonary artery. The hila of both lungs often contain lymph nodes, which are recognizable by their acquired dark coloration (Fig. 2.27).

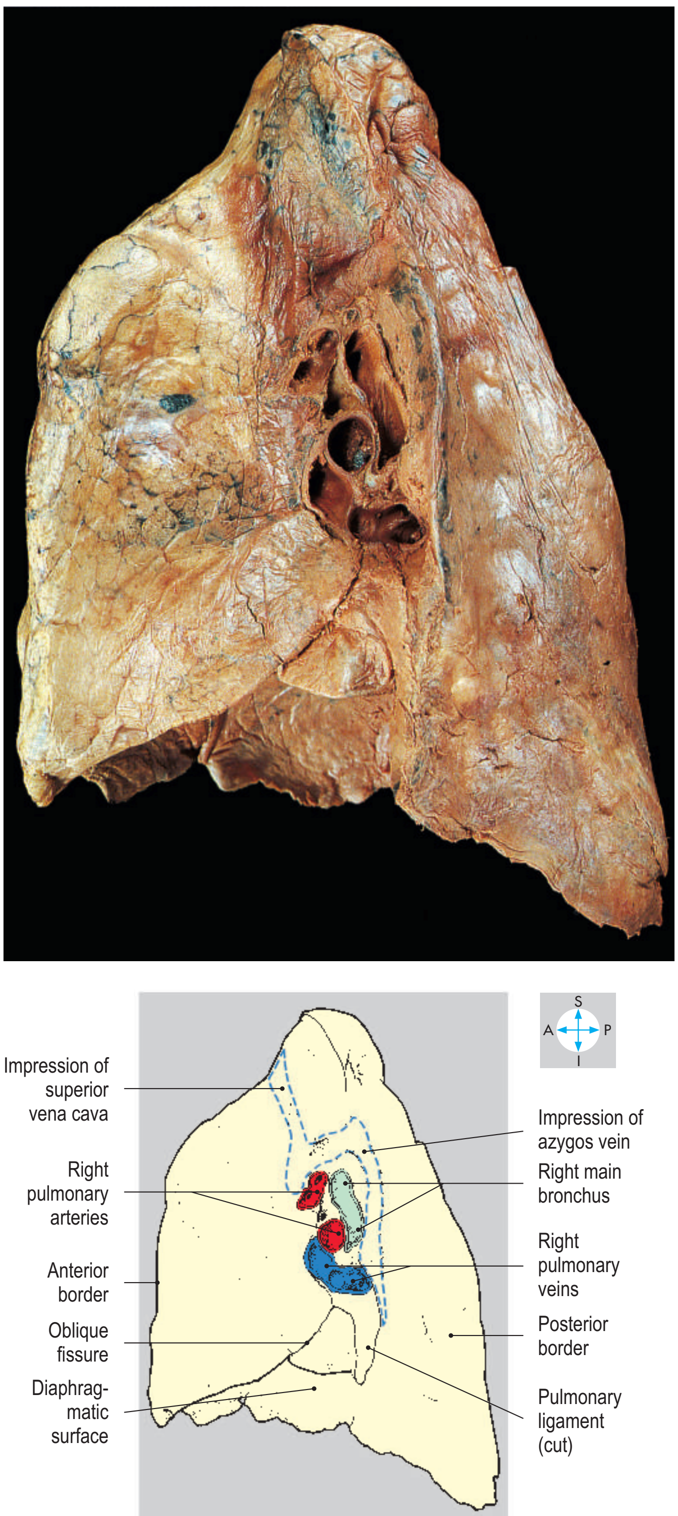


Fig. 2.24 Mediastinal surface of the right lung.

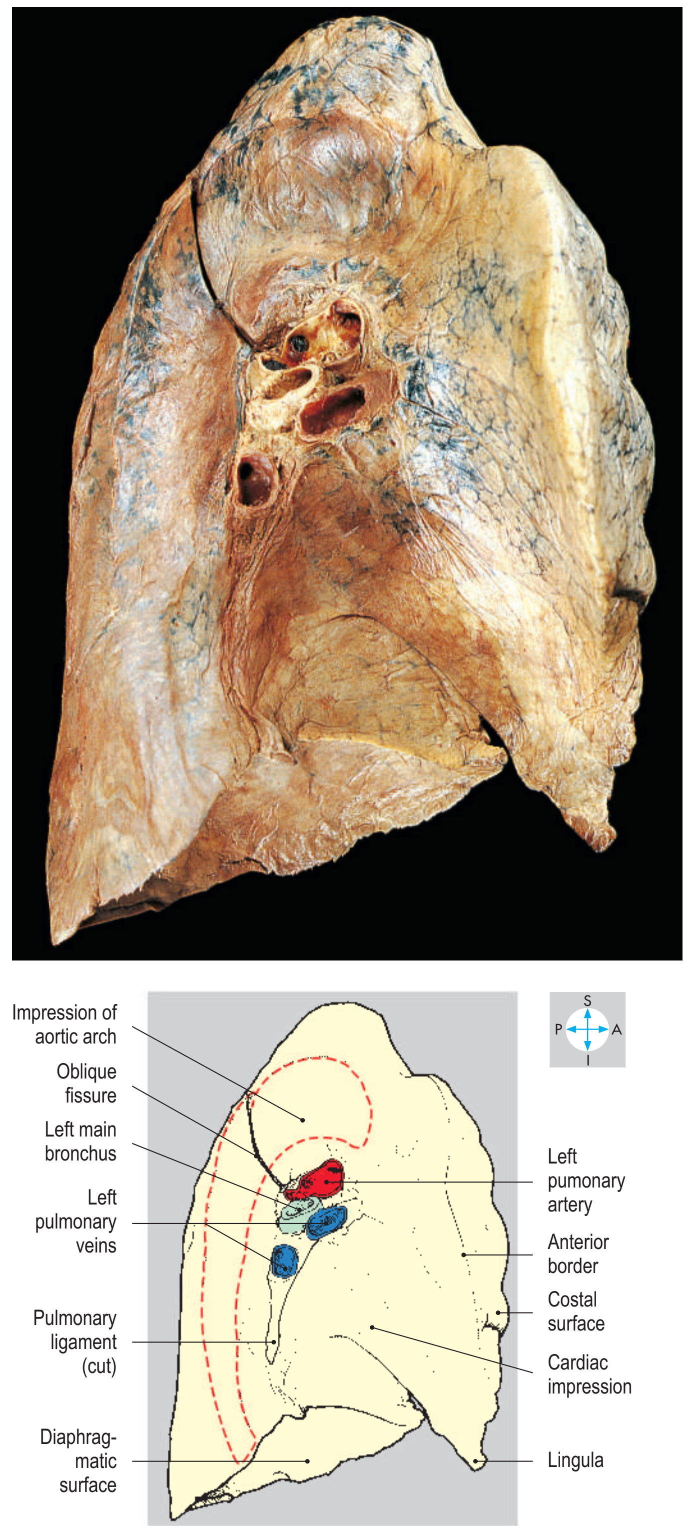


Fig. 2.25 Mediastinal surface of the left lung.

The two lungs have different medial relations. On the right, the anterior part of the mediastinal surface of the lung is related to the right brachiocephalic vein, the superior vena cava and the pericardium covering the right atrium of the heart. Intervening between these structures and the mediastinal pleura is the right phrenic nerve, which descends in front of the hilum to reach the diaphragm. The upper part of the hilum is related to the azygos vein (Fig. 2.24), which arches forwards to terminate in the superior vena cava. The trachea and accompanying right vagus nerve are related to the right upper lobe.

On the left, the mediastinal surface of the lung bears distinct impressions produced by the fibrous pericardium and the heart (Fig. 2.25). The left phrenic nerve is related to the mediastinal pleura and passes in front of the hilum as it descends across the pericardium. The aorta creates an obvious groove (Fig. 2.25) where it arches over the lung root and descends behind the hilum as the descending thoracic aorta.

Surface markings

The apex of each lung rises above the medial third of the clavicle. From here the anterior border of the lung follows the reflection of the parietal pleura, passing behind the sternoclavicular and manubriosternal joints. On the right, the border descends vertically, close to the midline from the level of the second to the sixth costal cartilages (Fig. 2.2). On the left, the heart displaces the lung and parietal pleura so that the pericardium is exposed behind the medial ends of the fourth and fifth intercostal spaces. This location is sometimes used to insert a needle into the pericardial cavity or heart. On both sides, the inferior border of the lung crosses the sixth rib in the midclavicular line, the eighth rib in the midaxillary line and the tenth rib 5 cm from the midline posteriorly. The lower border of the lung lies at a higher level than the line of pleural reflection; this part of the pleural cavity not occupied by lung is called the costodiaphragmatic recess (Fig. 4.105) and may be fluid filled in pleural effusion.

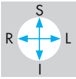


Fig. 2.26 Resin corrosion cast of the lower trachea and the bronchial tree. The amber portions of the specimen relate to the trachea, the main (primary) bronchi and the lobar (secondary) bronchi, while the coloured portions are the segmental (tertiary) bronchi and their branches.

Bronchi

The bifurcation of the trachea in the mediastinum gives rise to the right and left main (principal) bronchi (Fig. 2.26).

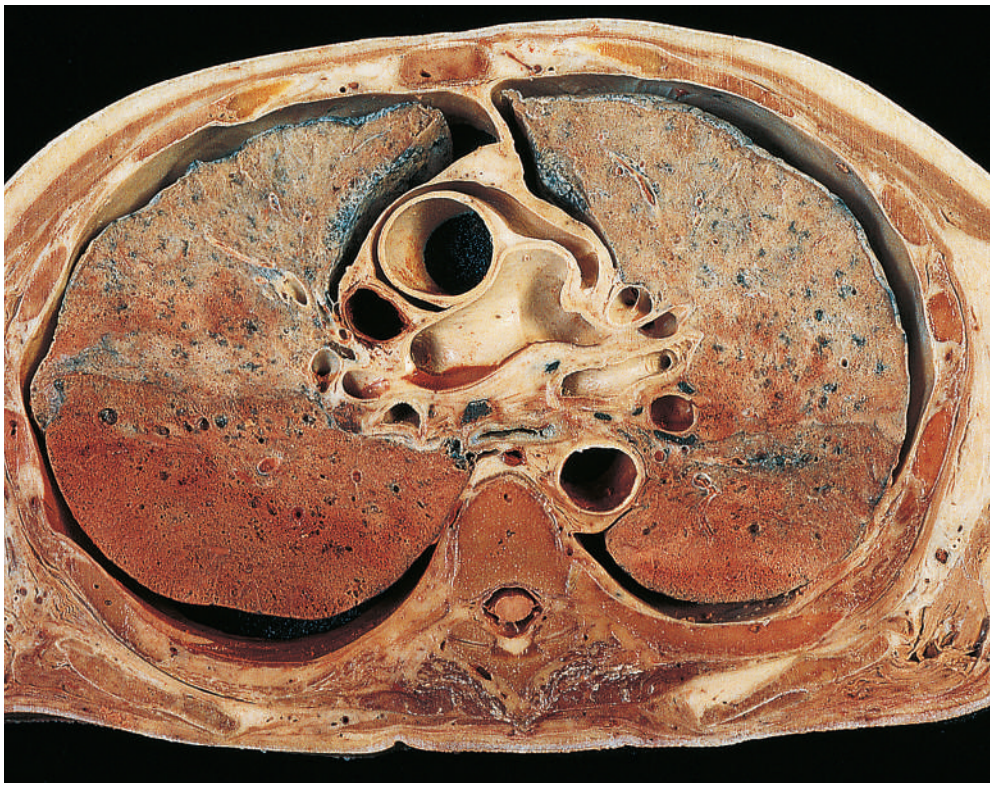
The right main bronchus is wider and more steeply inclined than the left (Fig. 2.27). As a consequence, inhaled foreign bodies are more commonly found in the right main bronchus. The main bronchi give rise to lobar (secondary) bronchi, which are confined to their respective lobes. On the right, the upper lobe bronchus arises outside the hilum in the lung root, whereas on the left, the lobar bronchi arise entirely within the lung. In each lobe, further subdivision occurs into segmental (tertiary) bronchi, which are constant in position and supply specific portions of lung called bronchopulmonary segments. Each lobe consists of a definite number of these segments. Within individual segments, the bronchi further subdivide into bronchioles, then respiratory bronchioles, which in turn lead into the alveolar ducts and alveoli. Bronchial arteries derived from the descending thoracic aorta accompany and supply the major bronchi. Venous return from the bronchi is through bronchial veins that terminate in the azygos venous system (p. 63).

Pulmonary vessels

The right and left pulmonary arteries divide into branches that correspond to and accompany the subdivisions of the bronchi within the lungs. The bronchi and pulmonary arteries lie centrally in the bronchopulmonary segments. The arteries ultimately give rise to pulmonary capillaries in the alveolar walls. Oxygenated blood drains from these capillaries into tributaries of the pulmonary veins that occupy intersegmental positions. These vessels empty into two pulmonary veins, which usually emerge separately through each hilum (Figs 2.24 & 2.25) and drain into the left atrium.

Autonomic nerves

The pulmonary plexus, most of which lies behind the lung root, contains both sympathetic and parasympathetic fibres, which accompany the bronchi into the lung. Sympathetic nerves originate in the upper thoracic ganglia of the sympathetic trunk and supply smooth muscle in the walls of the bronchi and pulmonary blood vessels. The parasympathetic fibres are derived from the vagus nerves and supply bronchial smooth muscle and mucous glands.



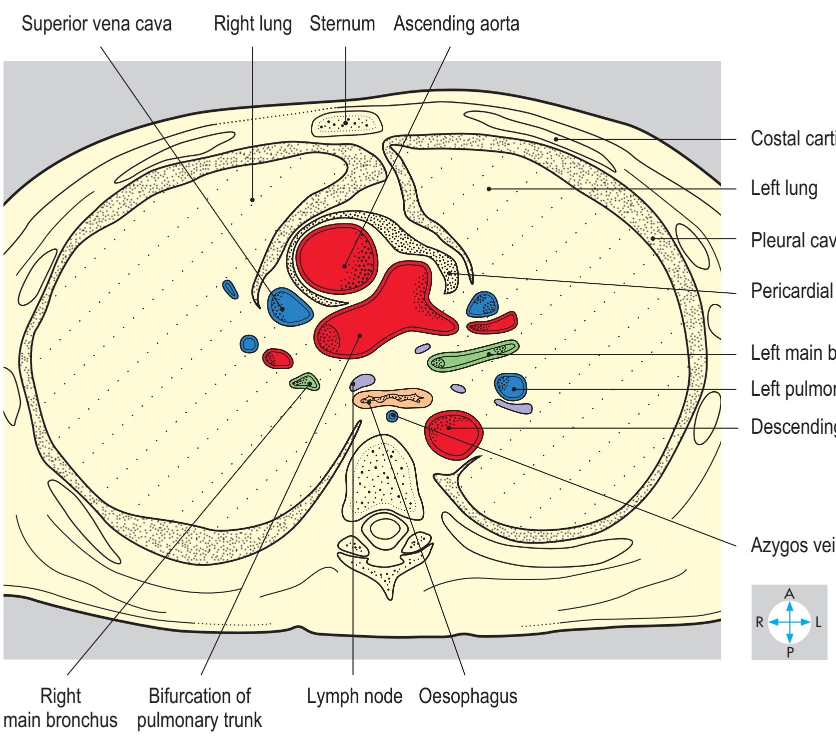


Fig. 2.27 Transverse section at the level of the fifth thoracic vertebra showing the bifurcation of the pulmonary trunk. Inferior aspect. (Compare Fig. 2.69.)

Mediastinum

The central part of the thorax between the two pleural cavities contains a group of structures collectively termed the mediastinum. These include the heart and great vessels, the trachea and the oesophagus. The mediastinum extends from the superior thoracic aperture above to the diaphragm below and from the sternum in front to the thoracic vertebral bodies behind (Fig. 2.28). By convention, the mediastinum is divided into superior and inferior parts by an imaginary horizontal plane passing through the manubriosternal joint and the lower part of the fourth thoracic vertebra. The superior mediastinum lies between this plane and the superior thoracic aperture and contains the superior vena cava and its tributaries, the arch of the aorta and its branches and the trachea. Also passing through this region are the oesophagus, the thoracic duct and the right and left vagus and phrenic nerves.

The inferior mediastinum lies between the imaginary plane and the diaphragm and consists of three compartments. The largest of these is the middle mediastinum, containing the heart and its covering of fibrous pericardium. In front of the middle mediastinum lies the anterior mediastinum, consisting of a small amount of fat and the remnants of the thymus gland. Behind the fibrous pericardium lies the posterior mediastinum, traversed by the descending thoracic aorta, the oesophagus, the thoracic duct and the azygos venous system. The sympathetic trunks run alongside the thoracic vertebral bodies.

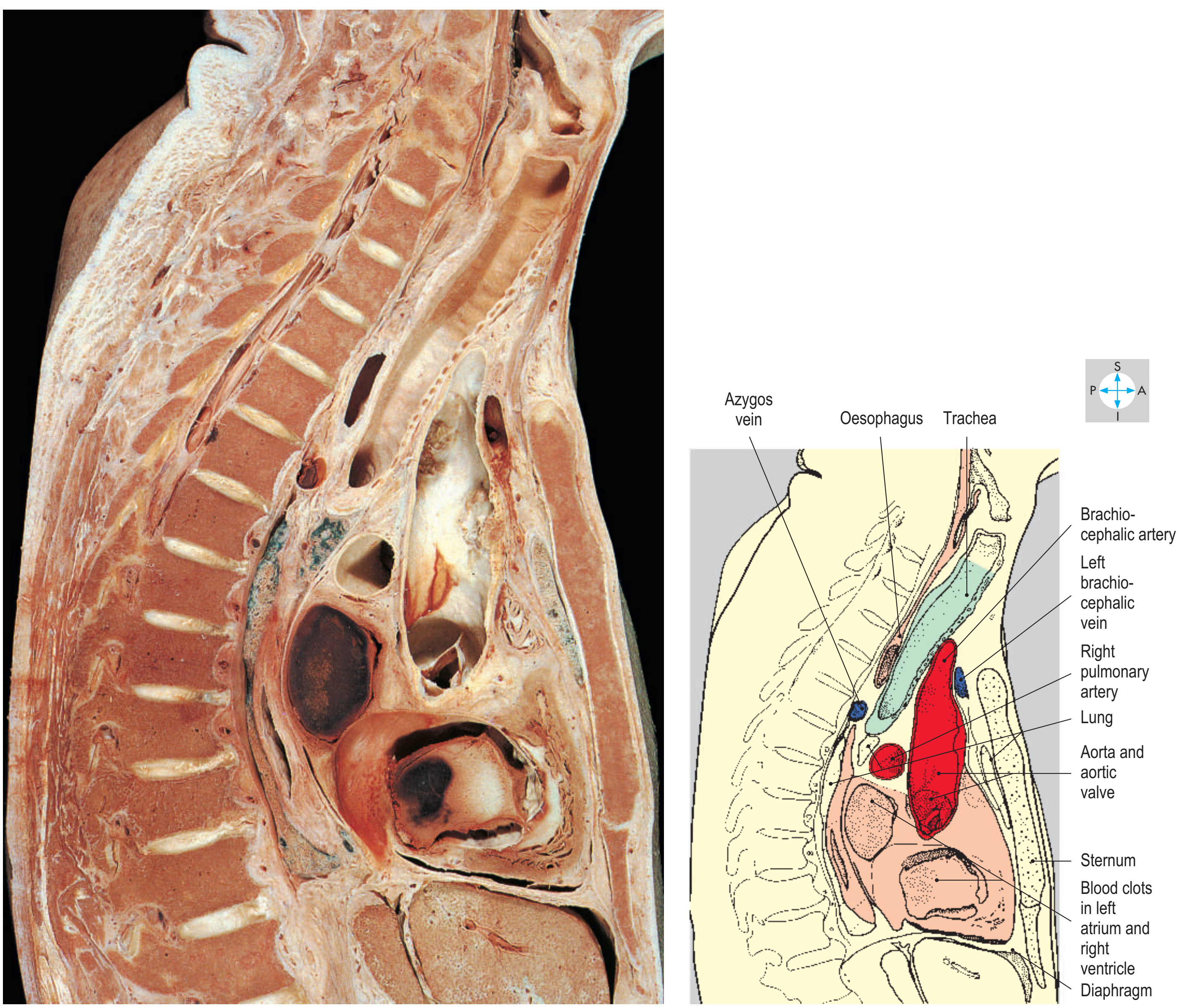


Fig. 2.28 Near-midline sagittal section through the thorax showing some mediastinal structures.

Pericardium

Fibrous pericardium

The fibrous pericardium is a sac of dense connective tissue surrounding the heart. In addition to the heart, it encloses the roots of the great arteries and veins and is covered on its inner surface by serous pericardium (see below). The broad base of the fibrous pericardium is attached to the central tendon of the diaphragm (Fig. 2.29) and is pierced by the inferior vena cava.

Superiorly, the sac fuses with the adventitial layers of the aorta, pulmonary trunk and superior vena cava. On each side, the posterior part of the sac blends with the walls of the pulmonary veins.

The anterior aspect of the fibrous pericardium is related to the anterior parts of the two lungs and the anterior reflections of the pleura. Between the pleural reflections, the pericardium lies close to the body of the sternum and to the medial ends of the adjacent fourth and fifth left costal cartilages and associated intercostal structures.

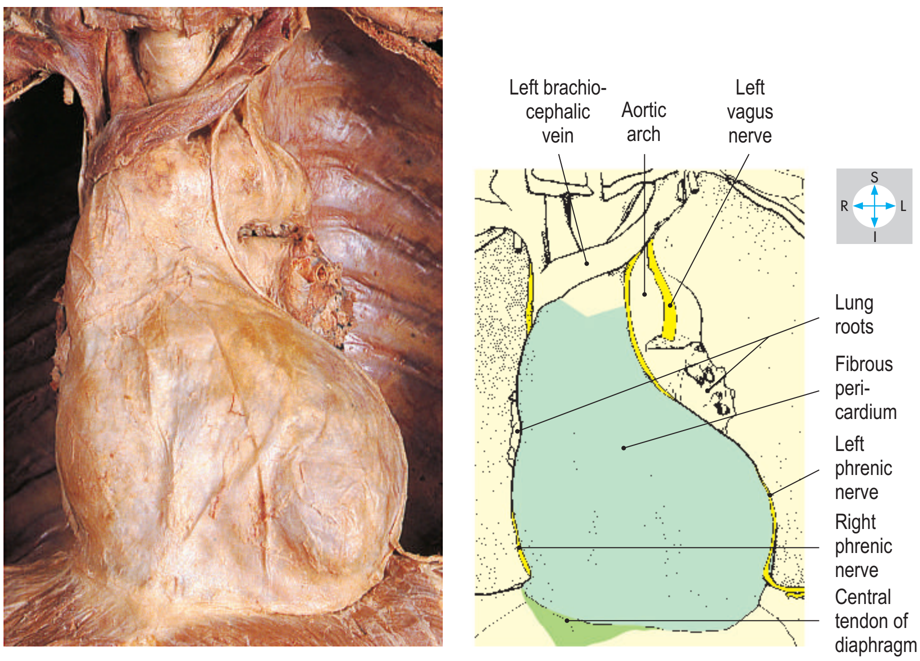


Fig. 2.29 The fibrous pericardium and phrenic nerves revealed after removal of the lungs.

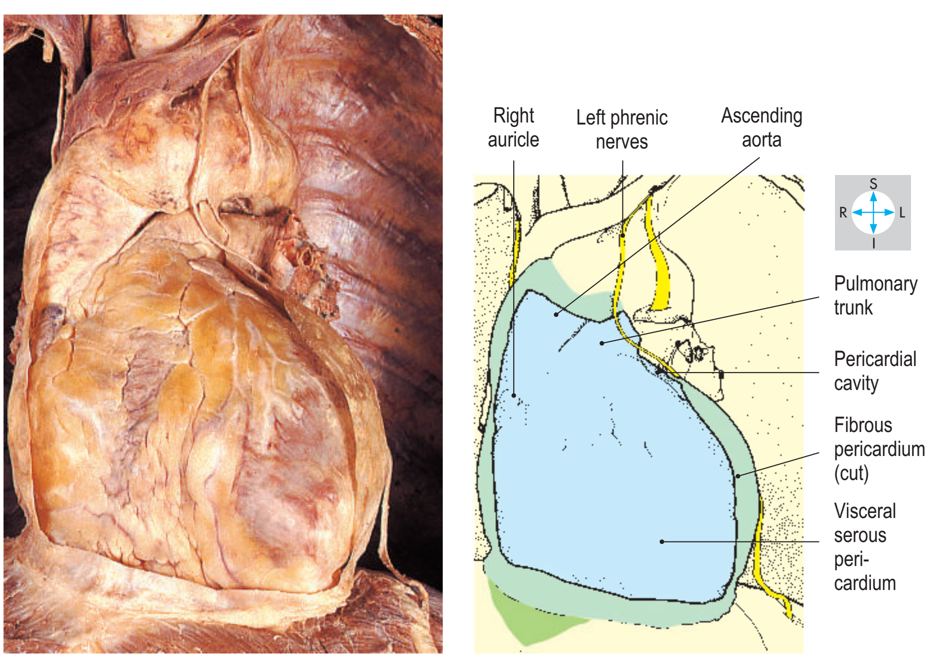


Fig. 2.30 The fibrous pericardium has been opened to expose the visceral pericardium covering the anterior surface of the heart.

During infancy and childhood, the thymus (most of which lies in the superior mediastinum) is related to the anterior surface of the pericardium, but after puberty, the thymus regresses and is gradually replaced by fat.

Laterally, the pericardium is covered by mediastinal pleura and is crossed by the right and left phrenic nerves as they descend to the diaphragm. These nerves supply sensory fibres to the fibrous pericardium, the parietal serous pericardium and the mediastinal pleura. Most of the blood supply to the fibrous pericardium is provided by the internal thoracic arteries and veins via pericardiacophrenic vessels that accompany the phrenic nerves.

Behind the fibrous pericardium lie the oesophagus, the descending thoracic aorta and the thoracic duct (pp 62, 63).

Serous pericardium

Deep to the fibrous pericardium lies the serous pericardium, consisting of parietal and visceral layers. Between the two layers is the pericardial cavity, a narrow space containing a thin film of serous fluid. The parietal layer lines the inner surface of the fibrous pericardium, to which it is firmly attached. The visceral layer covers the outer surface of the heart and the roots of the great vessels (Fig. 2.30).

These two layers slide freely against each other and are in continuity where the great vessels pierce the fibrous pericardium. The reflections between the parietal and visceral layers form two sleeves. One sleeve surrounds the ascending aorta and pulmonary trunk; the second is more extensive and surrounds the superior and inferior venae cavae and pulmonary veins. The two pericardial sleeves lie adjacent to each other and the narrow intervening channel is called the transverse pericardial sinus (Fig. 2.40). A second sinus lies behind the left atrium of the heart. This is the oblique pericardial sinus, which is limited superiorly by the pericardial reflection around the pulmonary veins and superior vena cava (Fig. 2.35). An accumulation of fluid (e.g. blood) within the pericardial cavity may compromise venous return to the heart and therefore reduce cardiac output (cardiac tamponade).

Heart

External features

The heart, enclosed in pericardium, occupies the middle mediastinum. It is roughly cone-shaped and lies behind the sternum with its base facing posteriorly and its apex projecting inferiorly, anteriorly and to the left, producing the cardiac impression in the left lung.

The heart consists of four chambers, namely the right and left atria and the right and left ventricles (Fig. 2.31). A fat-filled groove, the coronary or atrioventricular sulcus, separates the surfaces of the atria from the ventricles and carries the right and left coronary arteries and the coronary sinus. The right atrium receives the superior and inferior venae cavae and the coronary sinus. The right and left pulmonary veins drain into the left atrium. The right ventricle is continuous with the pulmonary trunk while the left ventricle opens into the ascending aorta.

Borders

It is useful to represent the outline of the heart as a projection onto the anterior chest wall. When represented in this way, the heart has right, inferior and left borders (Fig. 2.32). The right border is formed by the right atrium and runs between the third and sixth right costal cartilages approximately 3 cm from the midline. The inferior border is formed mainly by the right atrium and right ventricle. At its left extremity, the border is completed by that part of the left ventricle which forms the apex of the heart. The inferior border runs from the sixth right costal cartilage approximately 3 cm from the midline to the apex, which usually lies behind the fifth left intercostal space, 6 cm from the midline. In the living, the apex usually produces an impulse (apex beat) palpable on the anterior chest wall. The left ventricle together with the left auricle (left atrial appendage) form the left border of the heart, which slopes upwards and medially from the apex to the second left intercostal space, approximately 3 cm from the midline.

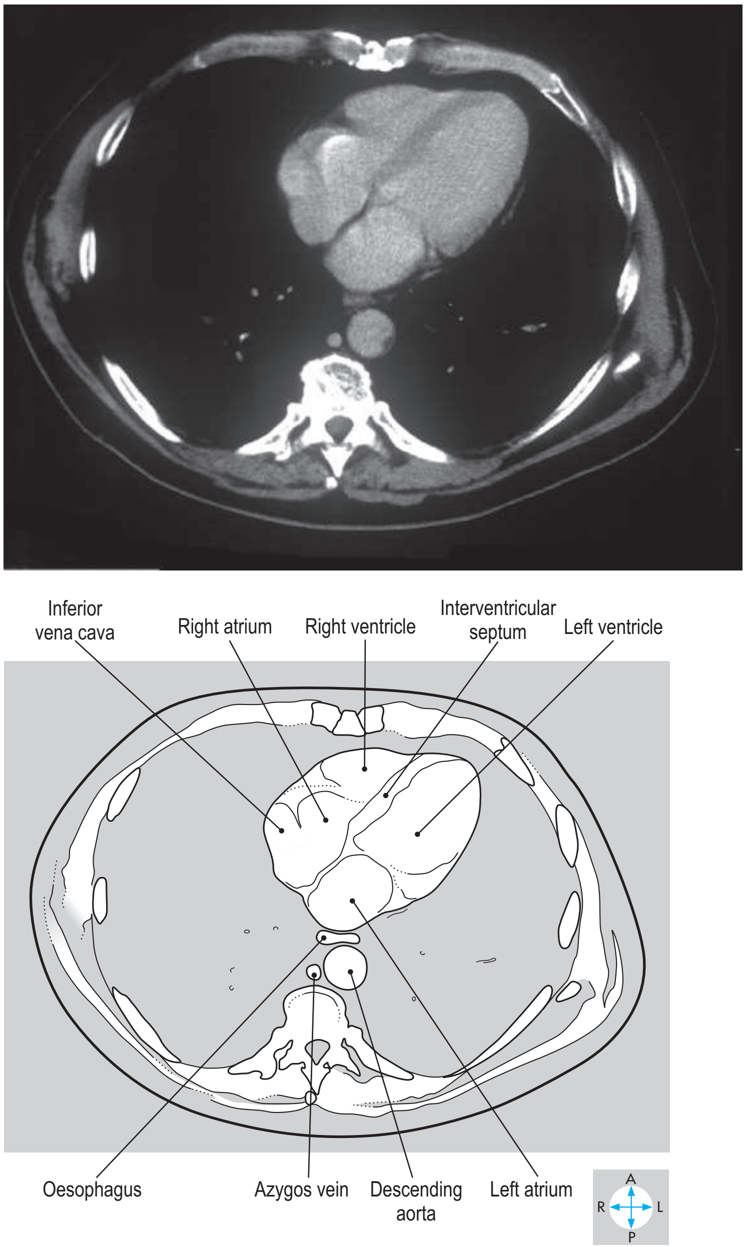


Fig. 2.31 Transverse CT image at the level of the eighth thoracic vertebra. (Compare Fig. 2.72.)

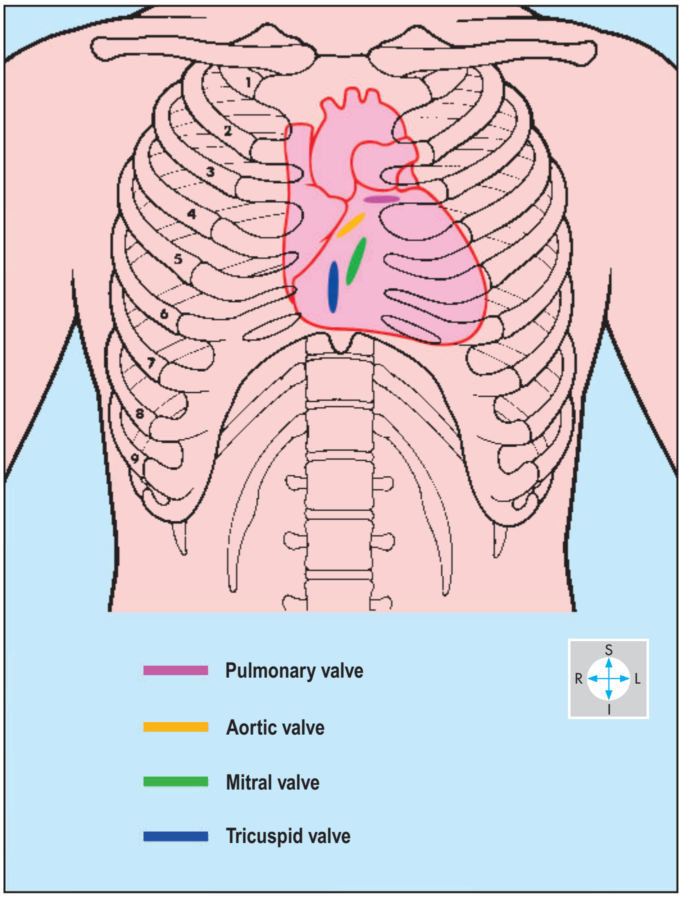


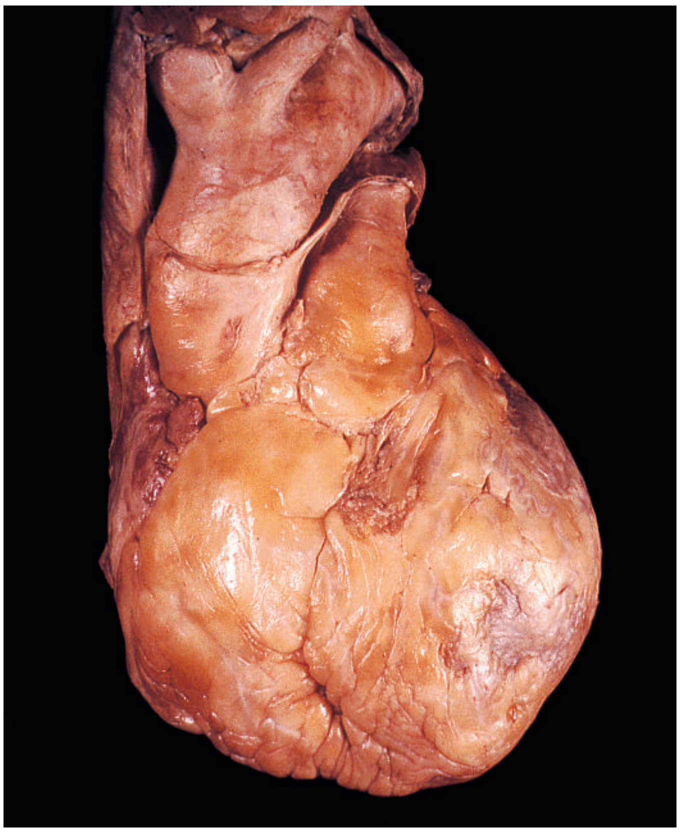
Fig. 2.32 Borders and valves of the heart and their relationships to the anterior chest wall.

Surfaces

Most of the anterior surface of the heart consists of the right atrium and right ventricle (Fig. 2.33). The left ventricle contributes a narrow strip adjacent to the left border of the heart. The anterior surface is completed by the right and left auricles. The coronary sulcus descends more or less vertically on the anterior surface and contains the right coronary artery embedded in fat. The anterior surfaces of the right and left ventricles are separated by the anterior interventricular artery (left anterior descending artery).

Most of the inferior (diaphragmatic) surface of the heart (Fig. 2.34) consists of the two ventricles, the left usually contributing the greater area. The posterior interventricular vessels mark the boundary between these two chambers. The surface is completed by a small portion of the right atrium adjacent to the termination of the inferior vena cava.

The posterior surface or base of the heart (Fig. 2.35) consists mostly of the left atrium together with a small part of the right atrium.



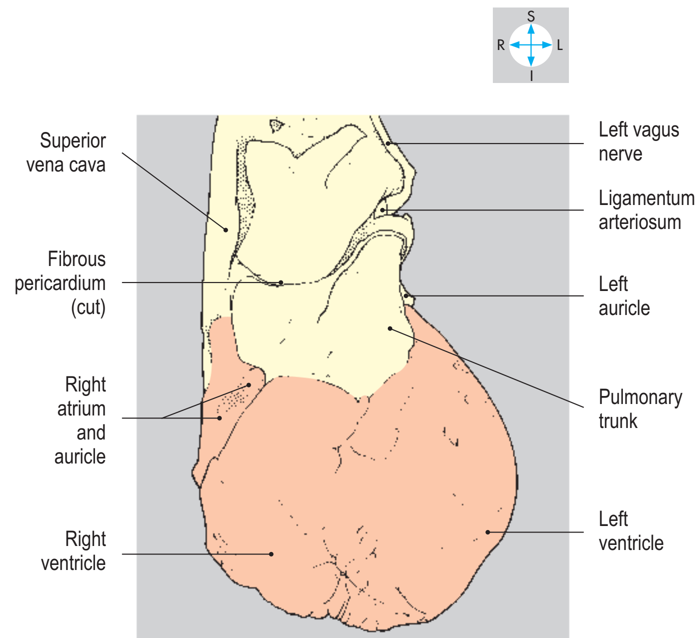


Fig. 2.33 Anterior surface of the heart.

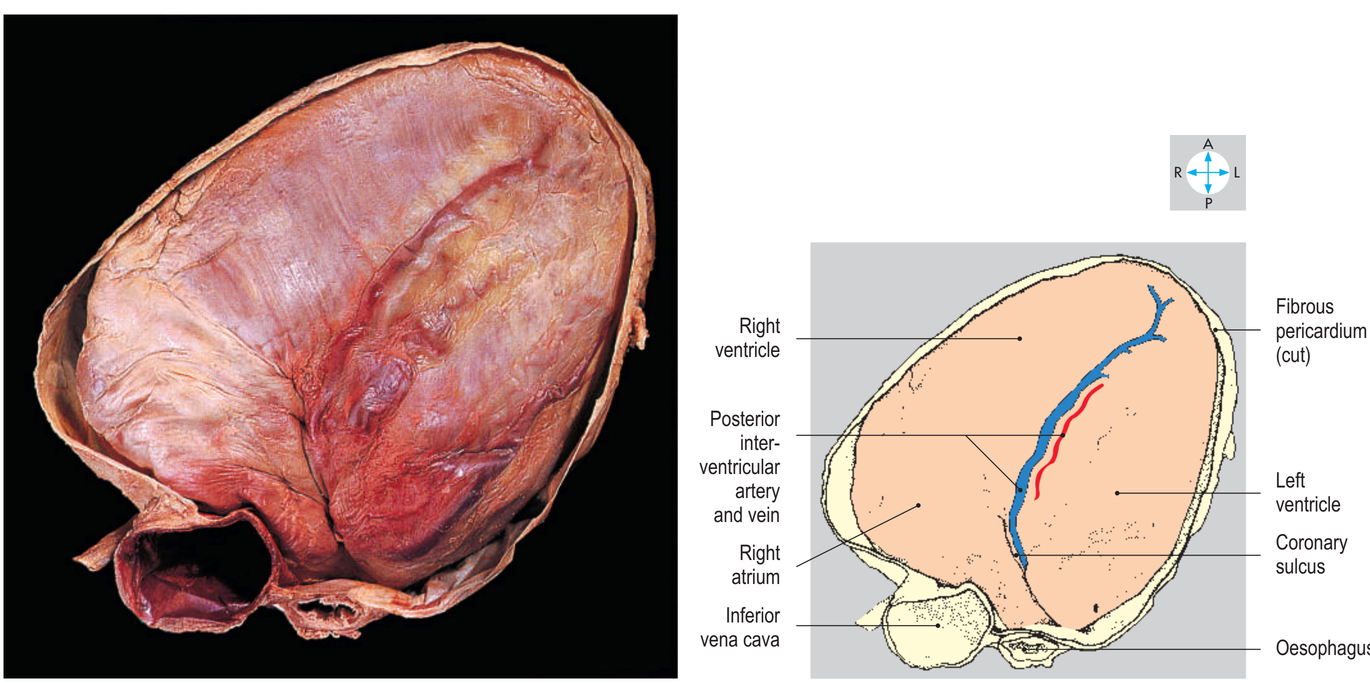


Fig. 2.34 Inferior surface of the heart. The inferior part of the fibrous pericardium has been removed with the diaphragm.

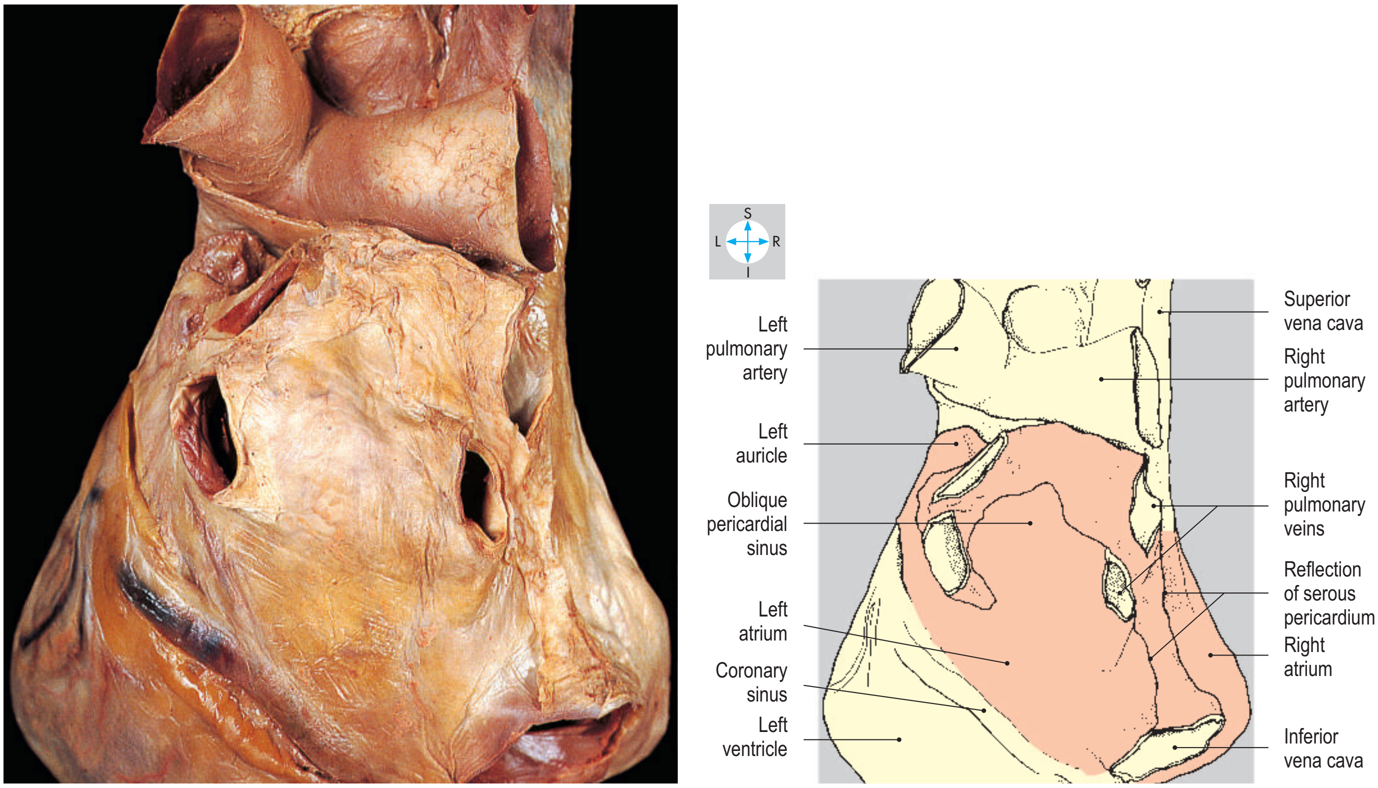


Fig. 2.35 The posterior surface of the heart showing the reflection of the serous pericardium and the site of the oblique pericardial sinus.

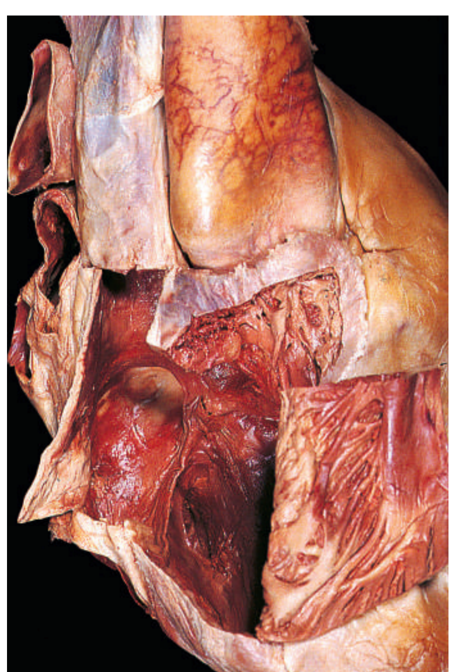
Chambers and valves

The cavities of the right and left atria are continuous with those of their respective ventricles through the atrioventricular orifices. Each orifice possesses an atrioventricular valve, which prevents backflow of blood from the ventricle into the atrium. The myocardium of the atria is separated from that of the ventricles by connective tissue, which forms a complete fibrous ring around each atrioventricular orifice. Interatrial and interventricular septa separate the cavities of the atria and ventricles. Valves, each with three semilunar cusps, guard the orifices between the right ventricle and pulmonary trunk (pulmonary valve) and the left ventricle and ascending aorta (aortic valve). All these valves close passively in response to differential pressure gradients.

Right atrium

The right atrium receives blood from the superior and inferior venae cavae and from the coronary sinus and cardiac veins, which drain the myocardium. The superior vena cava enters the upper part of the chamber. Adjacent to its termination is a broad triangular prolongation of the atrium, the auricle (atrial appendage), which overlaps the ascending aorta (Fig. 2.36).

Internally, the anterior wall of the right atrium possesses a vertical ridge, the crista terminalis (Fig. 2.36). From the crista, muscular ridges (musculi pectinati) run to the left and extend into the auricle. The posterior (septal) wall is relatively smooth but possesses a well-defined ridge surrounding a shallow depression named the fossa ovalis. This fossa is the site of the foramen ovale, which, in the fetus, allows blood to pass directly from the right to the left atrium. The coronary sinus empties into the chamber close to the atrioventricular orifice. Inferiorly, the right atrium receives the inferior vena cava immediately after the vessel has pierced the central tendon of the diaphragm. A fold called the valve of the inferior vena cava (Fig. 2.36) projects into the chamber and is the remnant of a fetal structure that directed the flow of blood across the right atrium towards the foramen ovale.



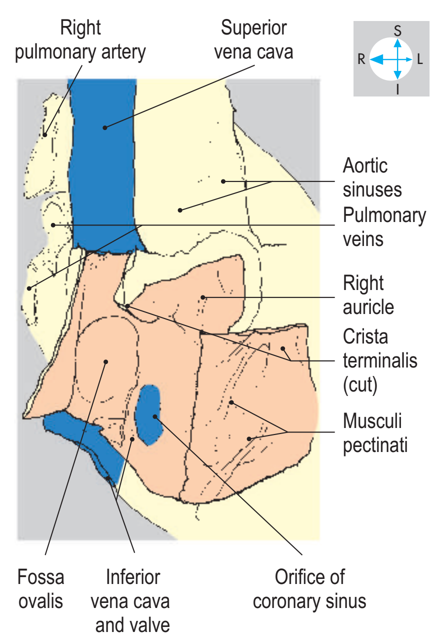


Fig. 2.36 Interior of the right atrium and auricle, exposed by reflection and excision of part of the anterior atrial wall.

Tricuspid valve

From the right atrium, blood flows into the right ventricle through the right atrioventricular orifice, which is guarded by the tricuspid valve (Fig. 2.37). The valve possesses three cusps, the bases of which attach to the margins of the atrioventricular orifice, while their free borders project into the cavity of the right ventricle (Fig. 2.38), where they are anchored by fibrous strands (chordae tendineae) to the papillary muscles of the ventricle. During ventricular contraction (systole), the papillary muscles pull on the chordae, preventing eversion of the valve cusps and reflux of blood into the atrium. The valve lies in the midline behind the lower part of the body of the sternum (Fig. 2.32) and its sounds are heard best by auscultation over the xiphisternum.

Right ventricle

The right ventricle has the right atrium on its right and the left ventricle both behind and to its left. The chamber forms parts of the anterior and inferior surfaces of the heart and narrows superiorly at the infundibulum, which leads into the pulmonary trunk (Fig. 2.38). The walls of the right ventricle are thicker than those

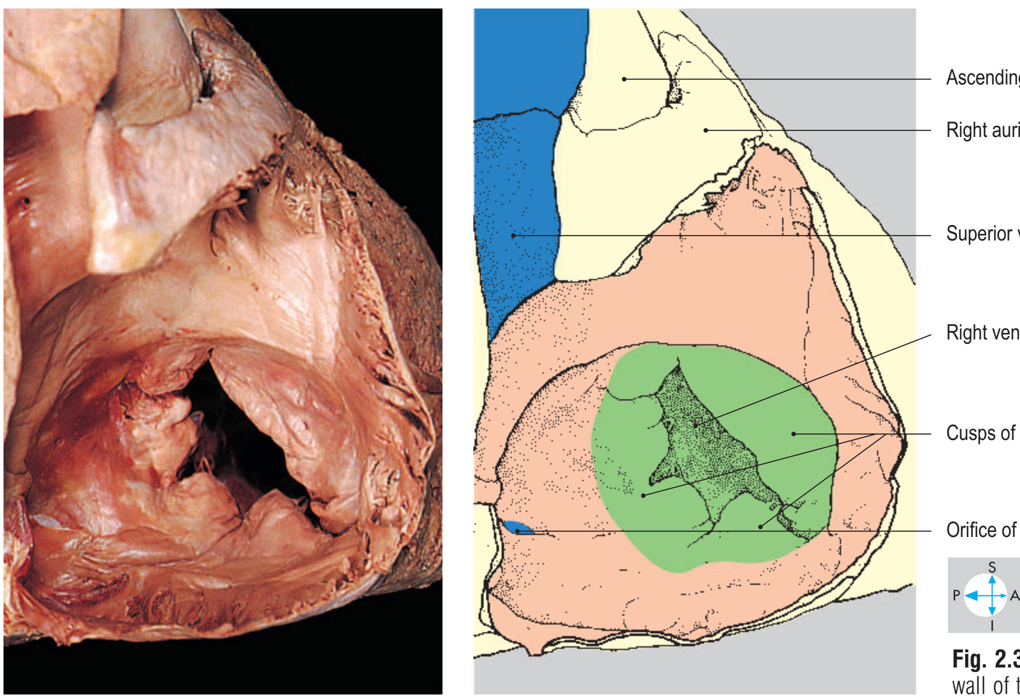


Fig. 2.37 Tricuspid valve, revealed after removal of the lateral wall of the right atrium.

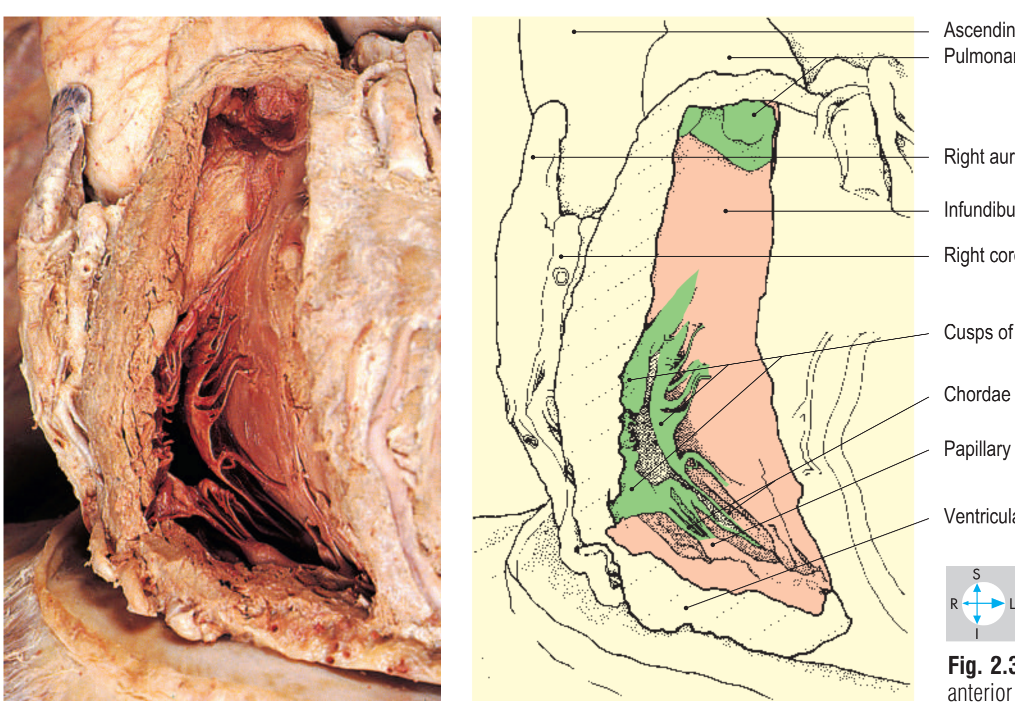


Fig. 2.38 Interior of the right ventricle seen after removal of its anterior wall.

of the right atrium and internally possess numerous muscular ridges called trabeculae carneae (Fig. 2.43). One of these, the moderator band (Fig. 2.54), often bridges the cavity of the chamber, connecting the interventricular septum to the anterior ventricular wall. When present, it carries the right branch of the atrioventricular bundle of conducting tissue (p. 56). Projecting from the ventricular walls into the interior of the chamber are processes of myocardium, the papillary muscles, each attached at its apex to several chordae tendineae. The right ventricle is separated from the left ventricle by the interventricular septum, which is muscular inferiorly and membranous superiorly (Figs 2.43 & 2.46).

Pulmonary valve

The pulmonary orifice lies between the infundibulum and the pulmonary trunk and is guarded by the pulmonary valve (Figs 2.39 & 2.40), which consists of three semilunar cusps. The valve closes during ventricular relaxation (diastole), preventing backflow of blood from the pulmonary trunk into the right ventricle. The valve lies behind the left border of the sternum at the level of the third costal cartilage (Fig. 2.32). Sounds generated by this valve are loudest over the anterior end of the second left intercostal space.

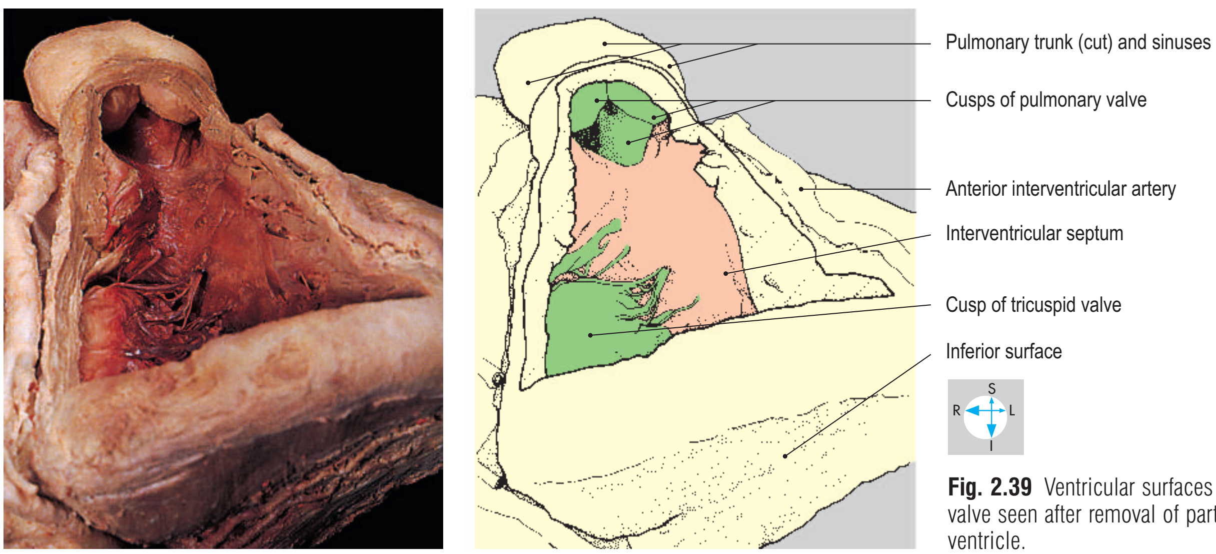


Fig. 2.39 Ventricular surfaces of the cusps of the pulmonary valve seen after removal of part of the anterior wall of the right ventricle.

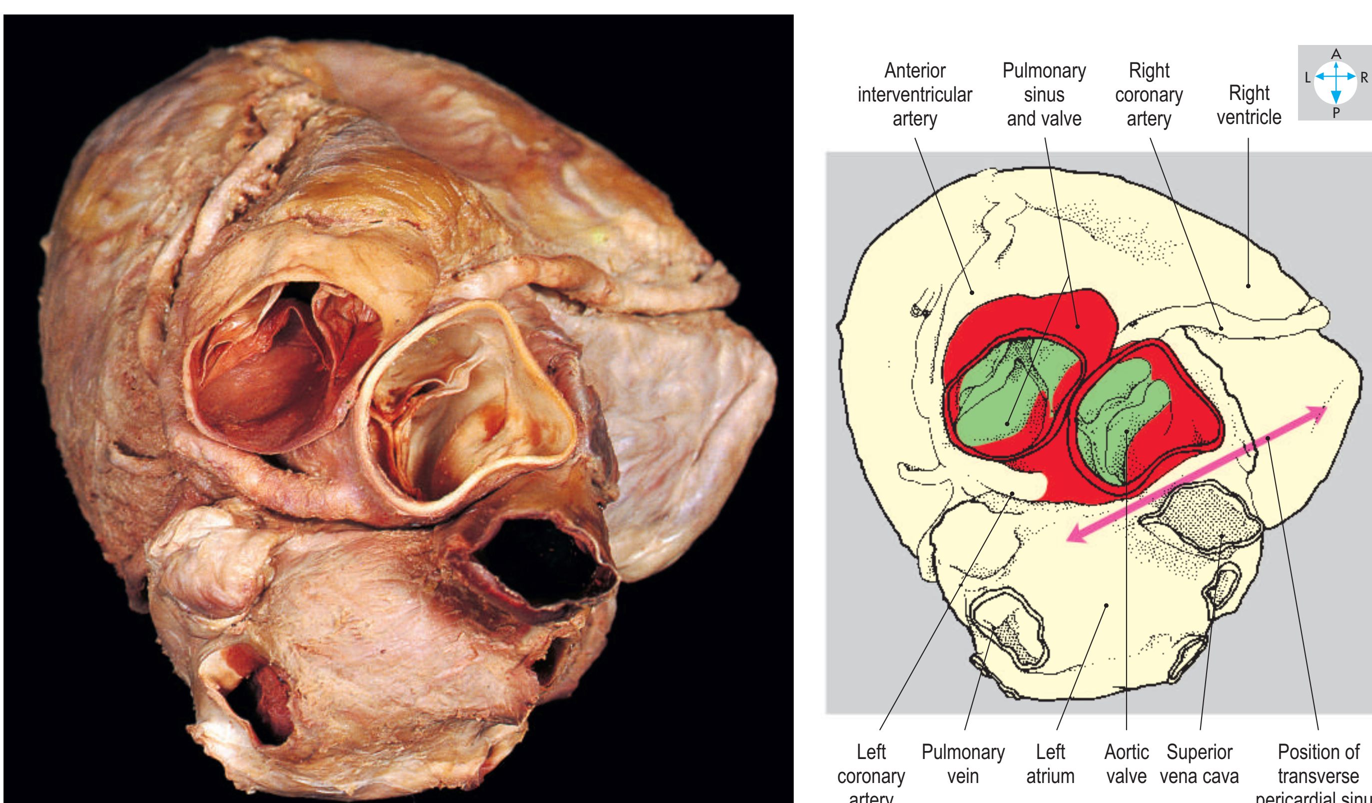


Fig. 2.40 Pulmonary and aortic valves seen from above.

Left atrium

The left atrium lies behind the right atrium and forms the base of the heart. It possesses a hook-like auricle (left atrial appendage), which projects forwards to the left of the pulmonary trunk and infundibulum. The chamber receives superior and inferior pulmonary veins from each lung (Fig. 2.35). The four pulmonary veins, together with the two venae cavae, are all enclosed in a sleeve of serous pericardium, forming the superior limit of the oblique pericardial sinus. The left atrium forms the anterior wall of this sinus, which separates the chamber from the fibrous pericardium and oesophagus. Most of the inner surface of the left atrium is smooth (Fig. 2.41), although musculi pectinati are present in the auricle.

Mitral (bicuspid) valve

The left atrium communicates anteroinferiorly with the left ventricle through the left atrioventricular orifice, which is guarded by the mitral valve. This valve possesses two cusps, whose bases attach to the margins of the atrioventricular orifice (Fig. 2.41), while their free borders and cusps are anchored by chordae tendineae to the papillary muscles within the left ventricle (Fig. 2.42). The valve prevents reflux during ventricular contraction. Although it lies in the midline at the level of the fourth costal cartilages (Fig. 2.32), the sounds of the mitral valve are best heard over the apex of the heart.

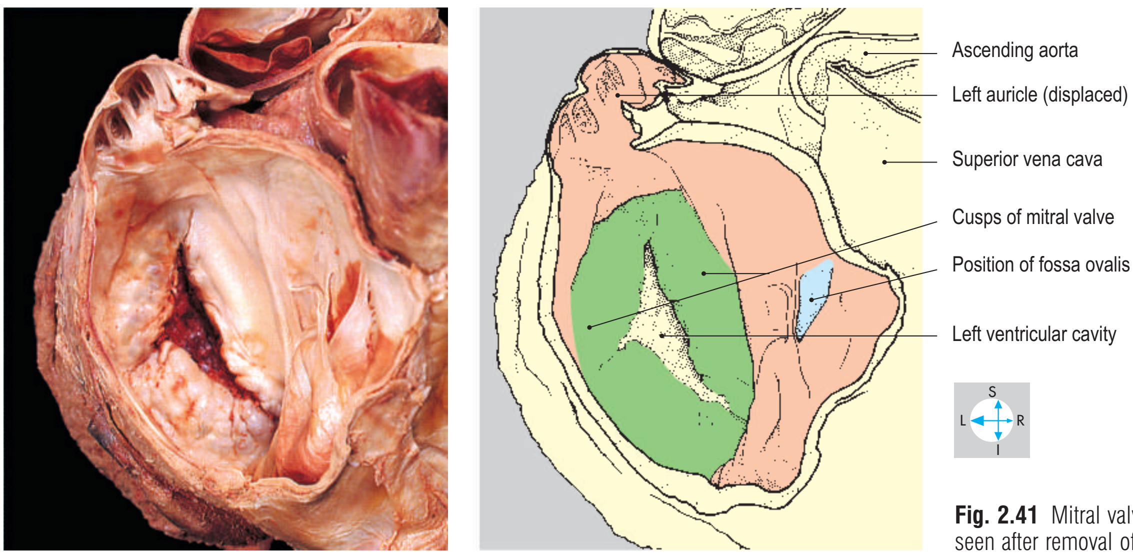


Fig. 2.41 Mitral valve and interior of the left atrium and auricle seen after removal of the posterior wall of the chamber.

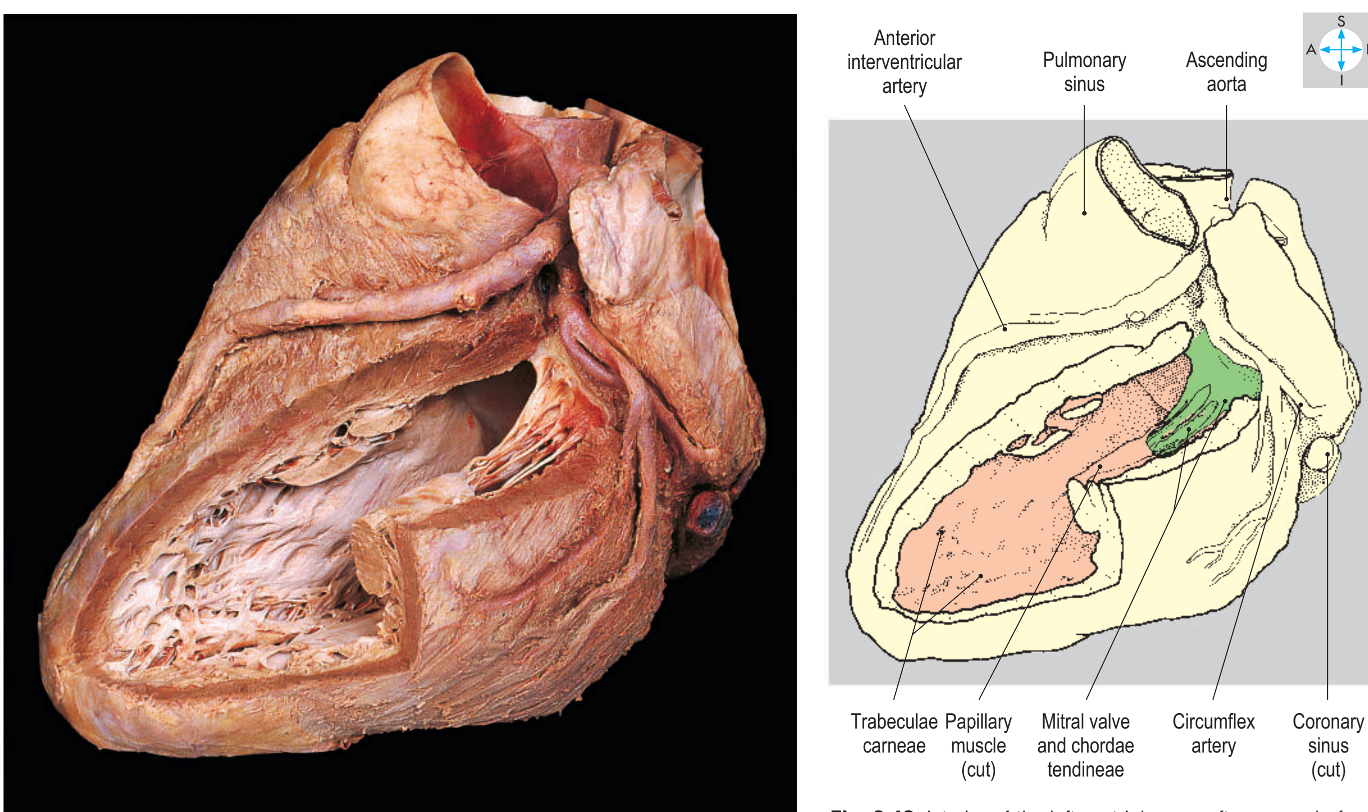


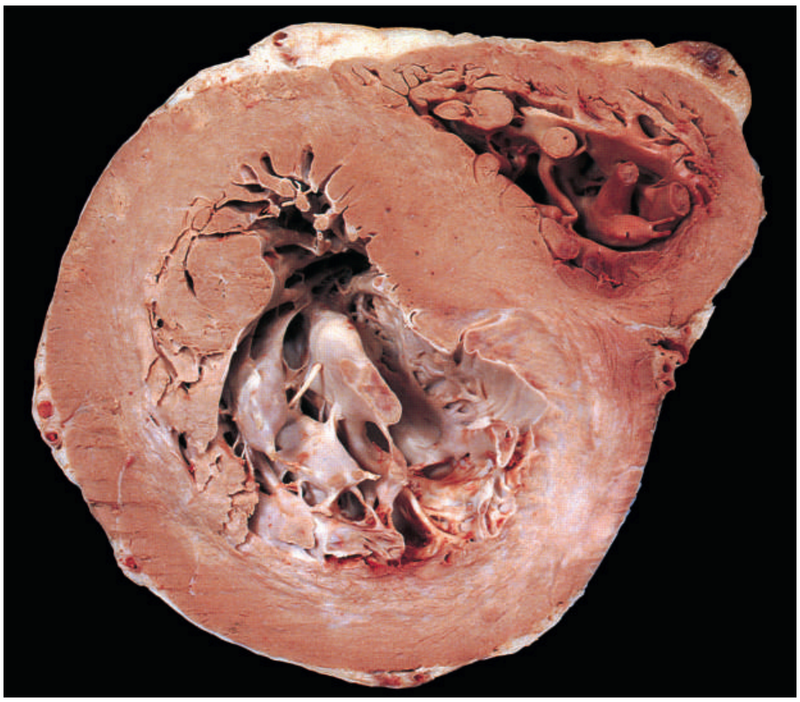
Fig. 2.42 Interior of the left ventricle seen after removal of part of its wall.

Left ventricle

From the left atrioventricular orifice, the left ventricle extends forwards and to the left as far as the apex. The thickness of the wall of the chamber is normally three times that of the right ventricle (Fig. 2.43). Internally, there are prominent trabeculae carneae and papillary muscles (Fig. 2.46). The chamber narrows as it passes upwards and to the right behind the infundibulum to form the aortic vestibule (Fig. 2.44), the part of the ventricle that communicates with the ascending aorta through the aortic orifice.

Aortic valve

The aortic valve consists of three semilunar cusps (Fig. 2.45), which prevent backflow of blood from the ascending aorta during ventricular diastole. The valve lies behind the sternum to the left of the midline at the level of the anterior end of the third left intercostal space (Fig. 2.32). However, its sounds are best heard over the medial ends of the first and second right intercostal spaces.



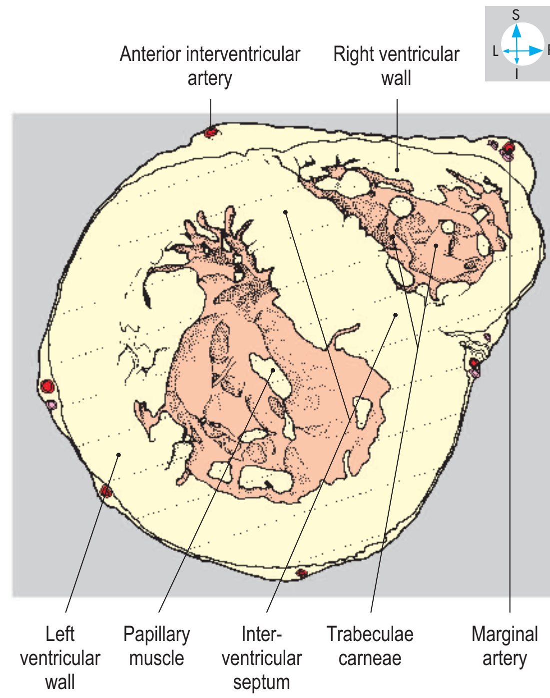
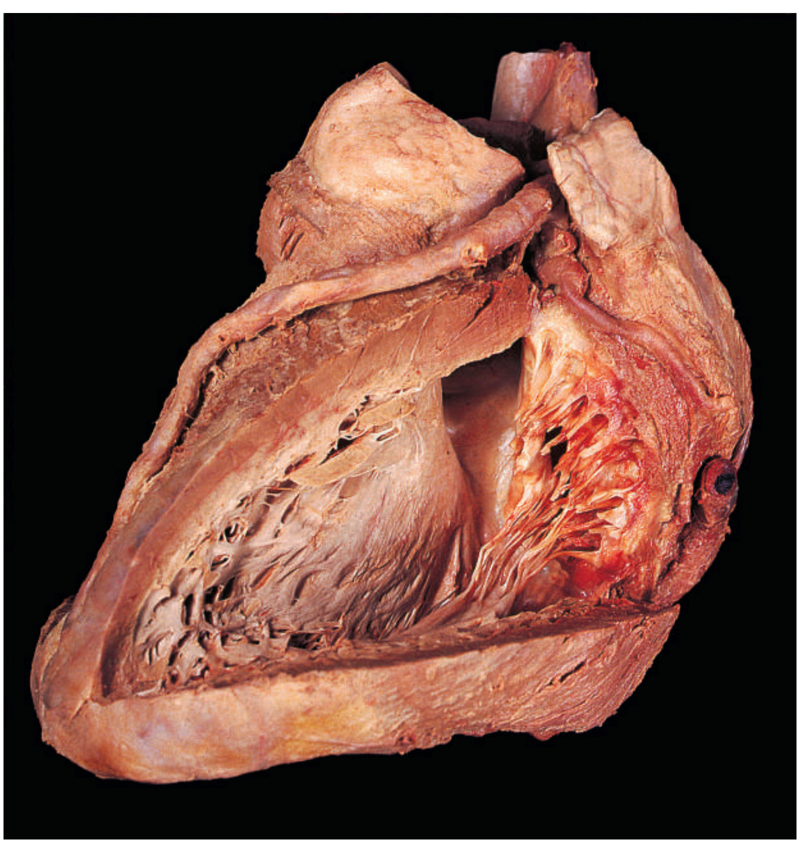


Fig. 2.43 Section through the heart showing the apical portions of the left and right ventricles.



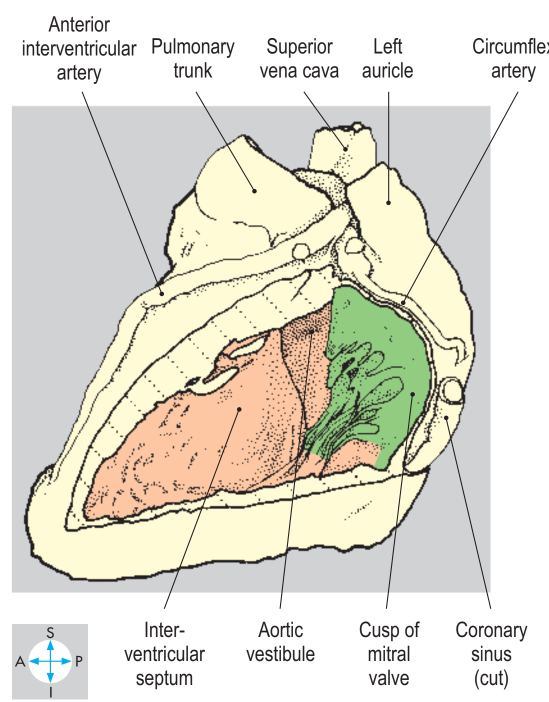


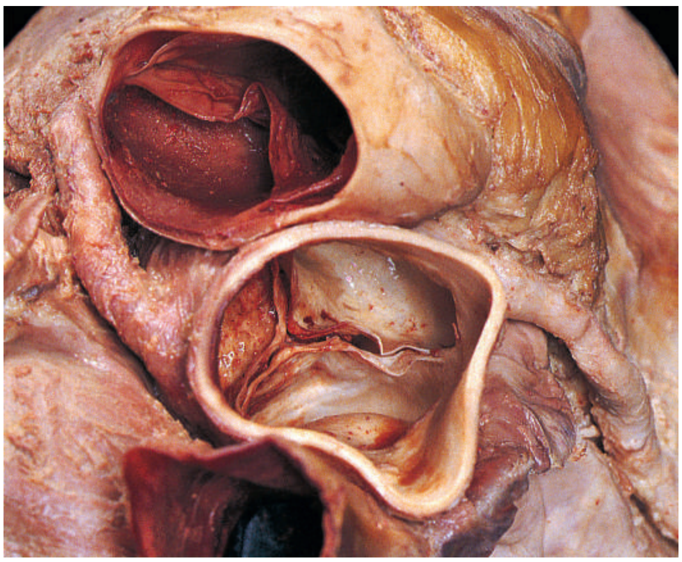
Fig. 2.44 Mitral valve and aortic vestibule, exposed by removal of part of the left ventricular wall.

Pulmonary trunk and ascending aorta

The pulmonary trunk and the ascending aorta lie within the fibrous pericardium, enclosed together in a sleeve of serous pericardium anterior to the transverse pericardial sinus (Fig. 2.40). The pulmonary trunk extends upwards and backwards, while the ascending aorta initially lies behind it and passes upwards and forwards, overlapped by the right auricle. At the origin of each vessel are three dilatations or sinuses (Figs 2.39 & 2.45), one immediately above each of the cusps of the pulmonary and aortic valves. When ventricular contraction ceases, blood flows into the sinuses, thus pushing against the cusps and closing the valves. Two of the aortic sinuses give rise to the right and left coronary arteries.

The pulmonary trunk emerges from the pericardium and divides into right and left pulmonary arteries in the concavity of the aortic arch, anterior to the bifurcation of the trachea at the level of the fourth thoracic vertebra. As the ascending aorta pierces the fibrous pericardium, it turns backwards and to the left, becoming the arch of the aorta.

Connecting the aortic arch to the pulmonary trunk (or to the commencement of the left pulmonary artery) is the ligamentum arteriosum (Fig. 2.46), the remnant of the fetal ductus arteriosus which conveyed blood from the pulmonary trunk to the aorta, bypassing the pulmonary circulation. Occasionally, the ductus remains patent after birth, giving rise to serious circulatory abnormalities.



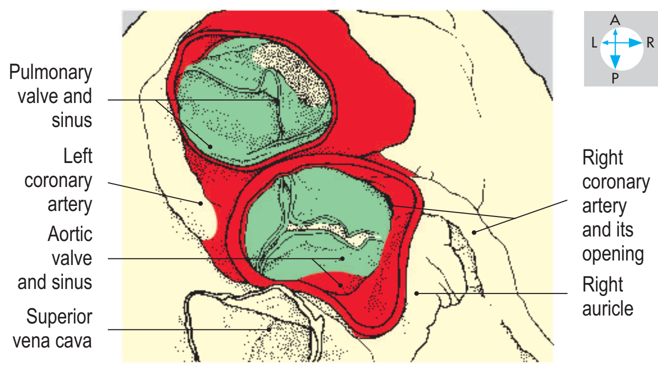


Fig. 2.45 Aortic and pulmonary valves viewed obliquely from above.

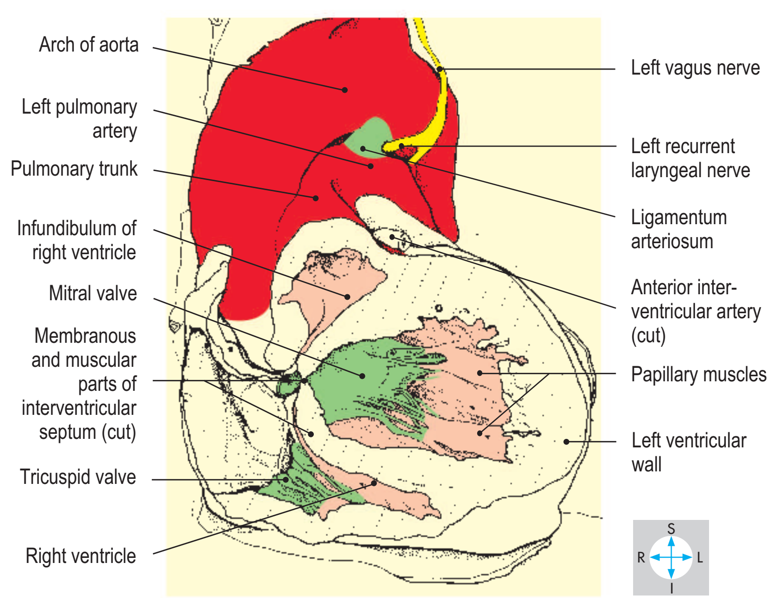


Fig. 2.46 Anterior view of the aorta, pulmonary trunk and ligamentum arteriosum. Most of the muscular part of the interventricular septum has been removed to show the interior of the left ventricle.

Blood vessels

The arterial supply to the heart is provided by the right and left coronary arteries, which arise from the ascending aorta just above the aortic valve (Fig. 2.47). They supply the myocardium, including the papillary muscles and conducting tissue. The principal venous return is via the coronary sinus and the cardiac veins.

Right coronary artery

This vessel arises from the anterior aspect of the root of the aorta and descends in the anterior coronary sulcus (Figs 2.47 & 2.48). At the inferior border, it gives off a marginal branch, which runs to the left towards the apex of the heart. The right coronary artery continues on the inferior surface in the coronary sulcus (Fig. 2.49) and terminates by anastomosing with the circumflex branch of the left coronary artery. On the inferior surface, the posterior (inferior) interventricular artery arises from the right coronary artery (occasionally the left coronary artery) and runs in the posterior interventricular groove towards the apex. When the posterior interventricular artery arises from the right coronary artery, the heart is described as right dominant. The right coronary artery and its branches supply the anterior surface of the right atrium, the lower part of the left atrium, most of the right ventricle and parts of the left ventricle and interventricular septum (Fig. 2.51B). In addition, branches from this artery usually supply most of the conducting tissue of the heart (p. 56).

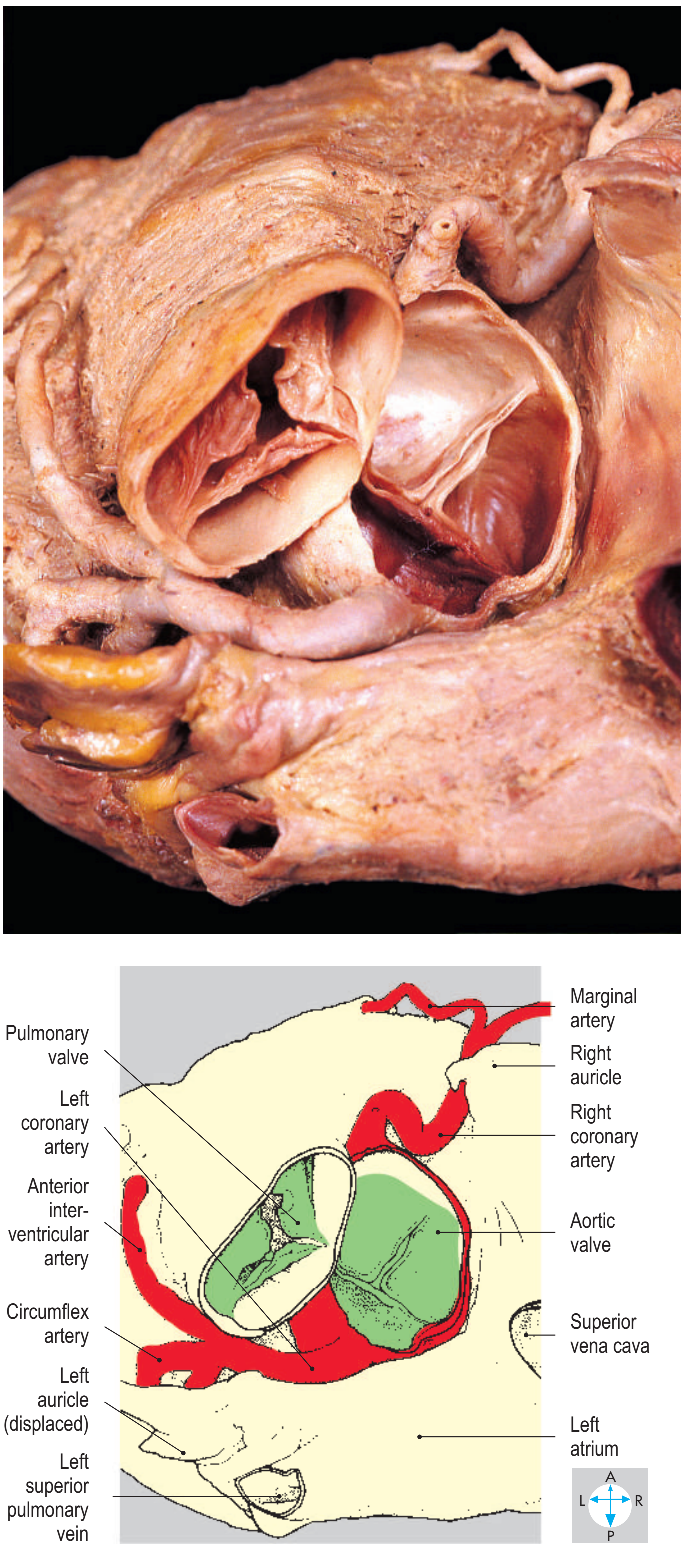


Fig. 2.47 Origins of the right and left coronary arteries from the root of the ascending aorta seen from above.

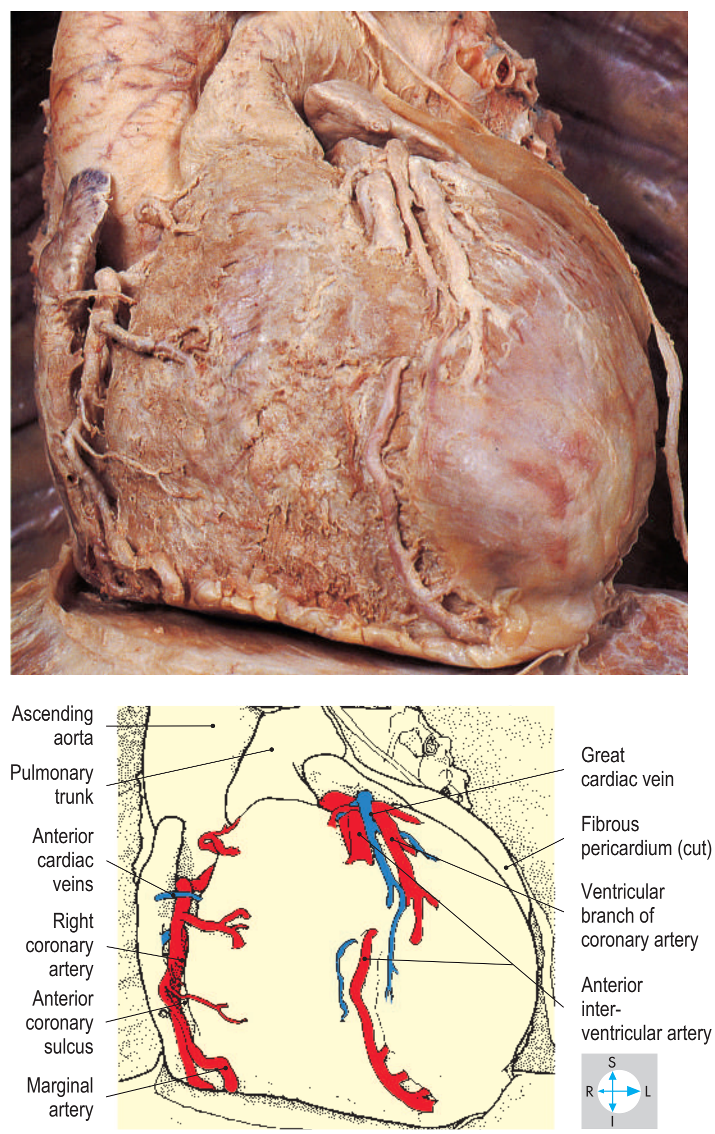


Fig. 2.48 Right and left coronary arteries and their branches on the anterior surface of the heart.

Left coronary artery

This artery takes origin from the posterior aspect of the root of the ascending aorta and runs to the left behind the pulmonary trunk where its major branch, the anterior interventricular artery, arises (Figs 2.47 & 2.50). The latter vessel descends in the anterior interventricular groove towards the apex of the heart. The left coronary artery continues as the circumflex artery in the posterior part of the coronary sulcus and terminates by anastomosing with the right coronary artery. The vessel supplies the posterior wall of the left atrium and auricle, most of the left ventricle and parts of the right ventricle and interventricular septum (Fig. 2.51A).

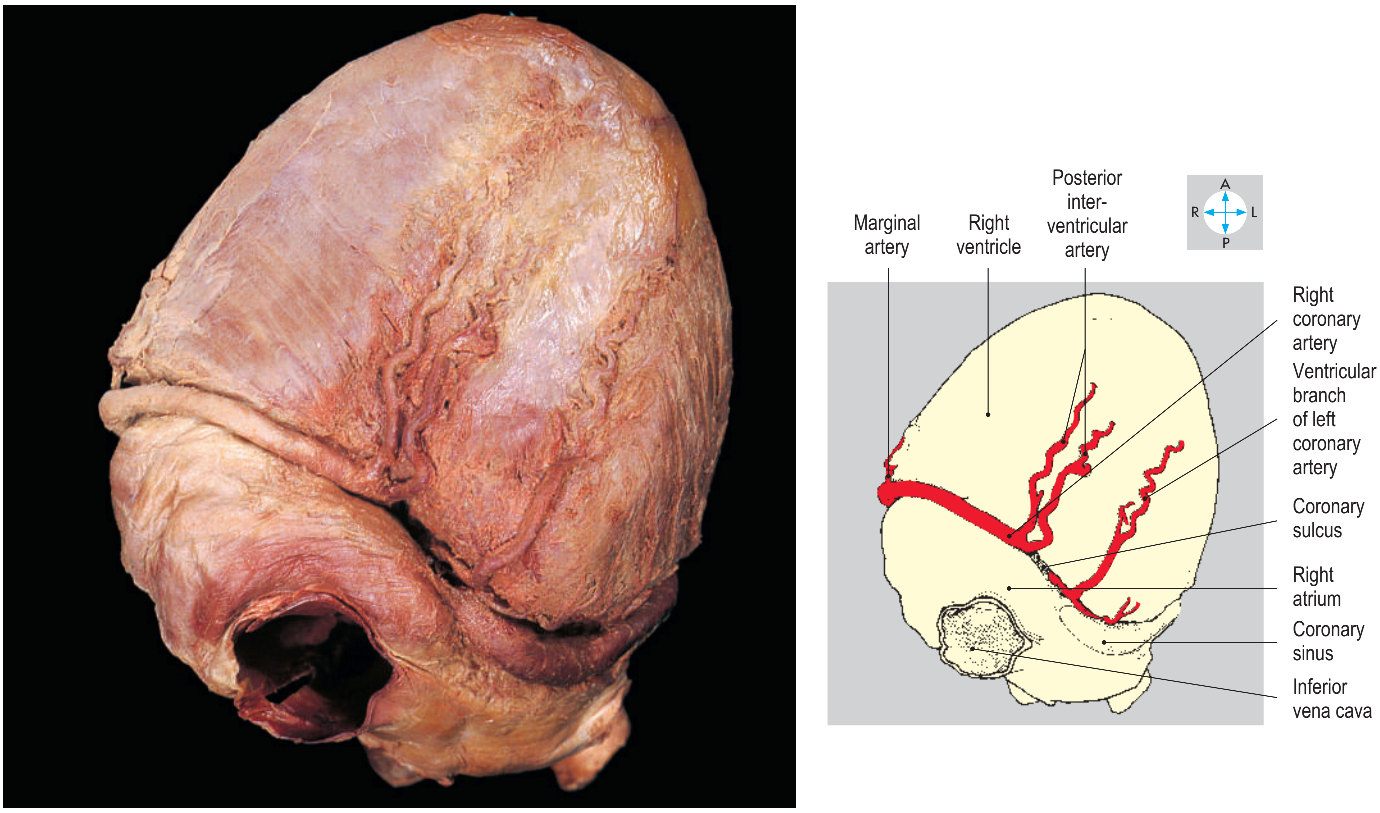


Fig. 2.49 Right and left coronary arteries and their branches on the inferior surface of the heart. The posterior interventricular artery is duplicated in this specimen.

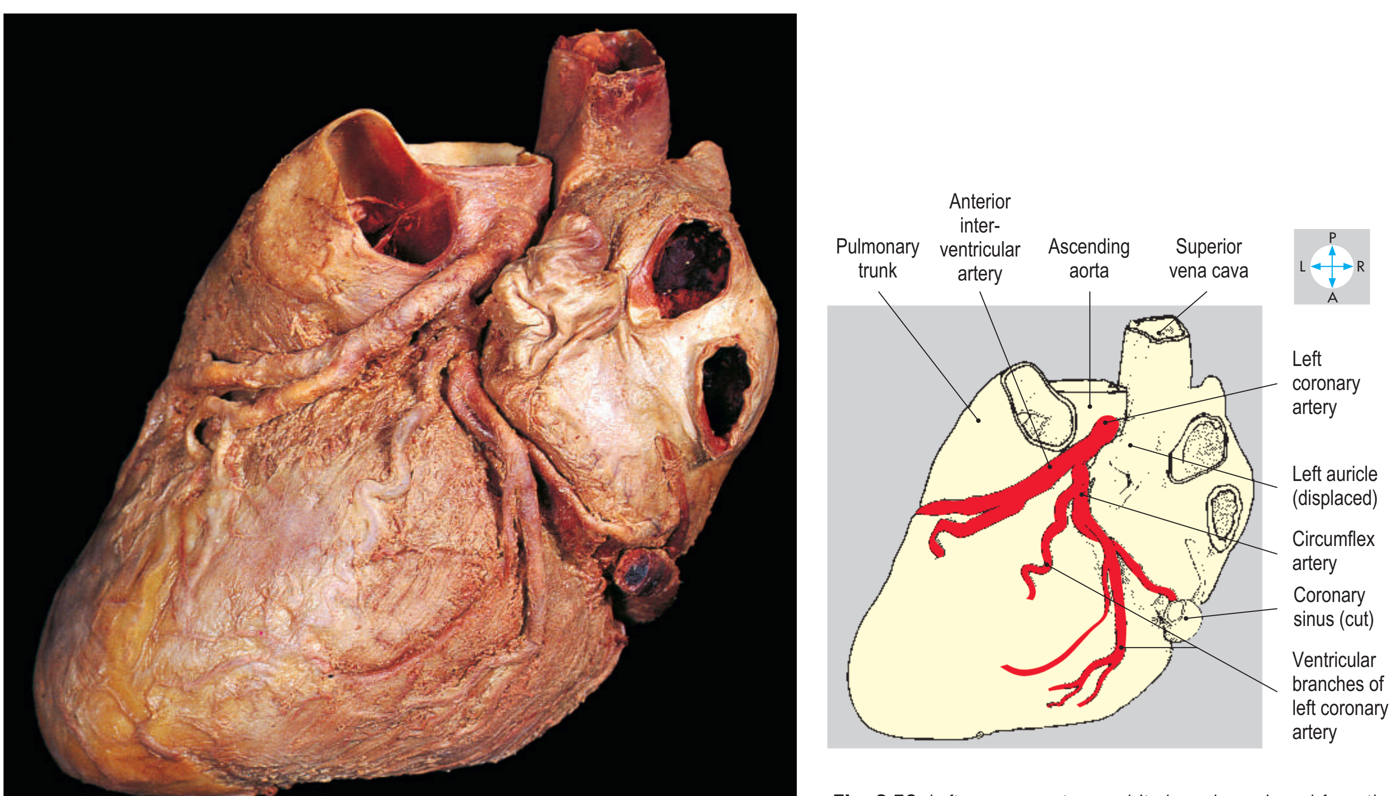


Fig. 2.50 Left coronary artery and its branches, viewed from the left.

Coronary sinus and cardiac veins

Most of the venous return from the heart is carried by the coronary sinus, which runs along the posterior part of the coronary sulcus and terminates in the right atrium. The coronary sinus is formed near the left border of the heart by the union of the posterior vein of the left ventricle and the great cardiac vein (Fig. 2.52), which accompanies the anterior interventricular artery. Other veins enter the coronary sinus, including the middle cardiac

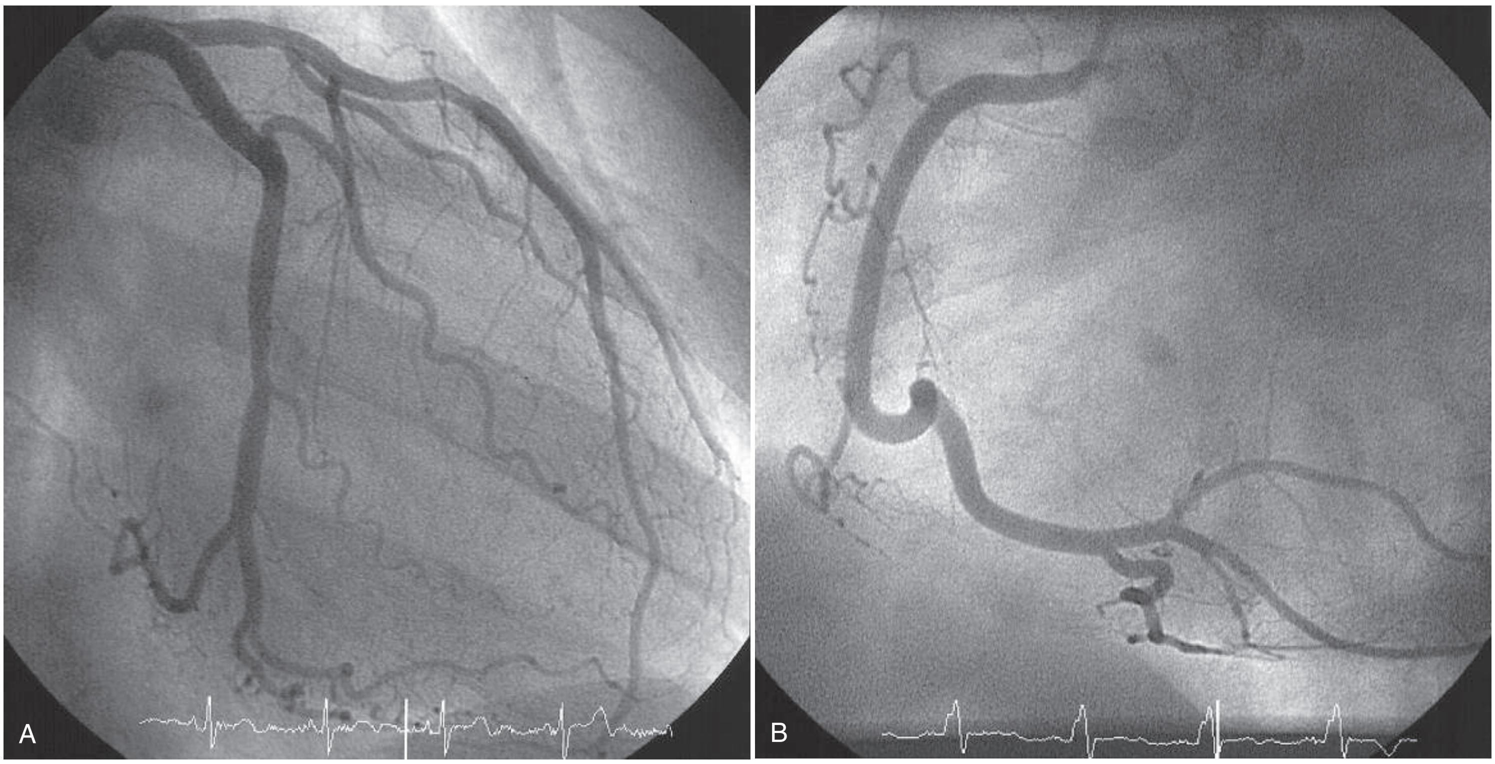


Fig. 2.51 (A) Left coronary arteriogram. (B) Right coronary arteriogram. *(From Weir J, Abrahams PH, Spratt JD, Salkowski LR. Imaging Atlas of Human Anatomy. 4th edn. 2011:89–122. ©Elsevier.)*

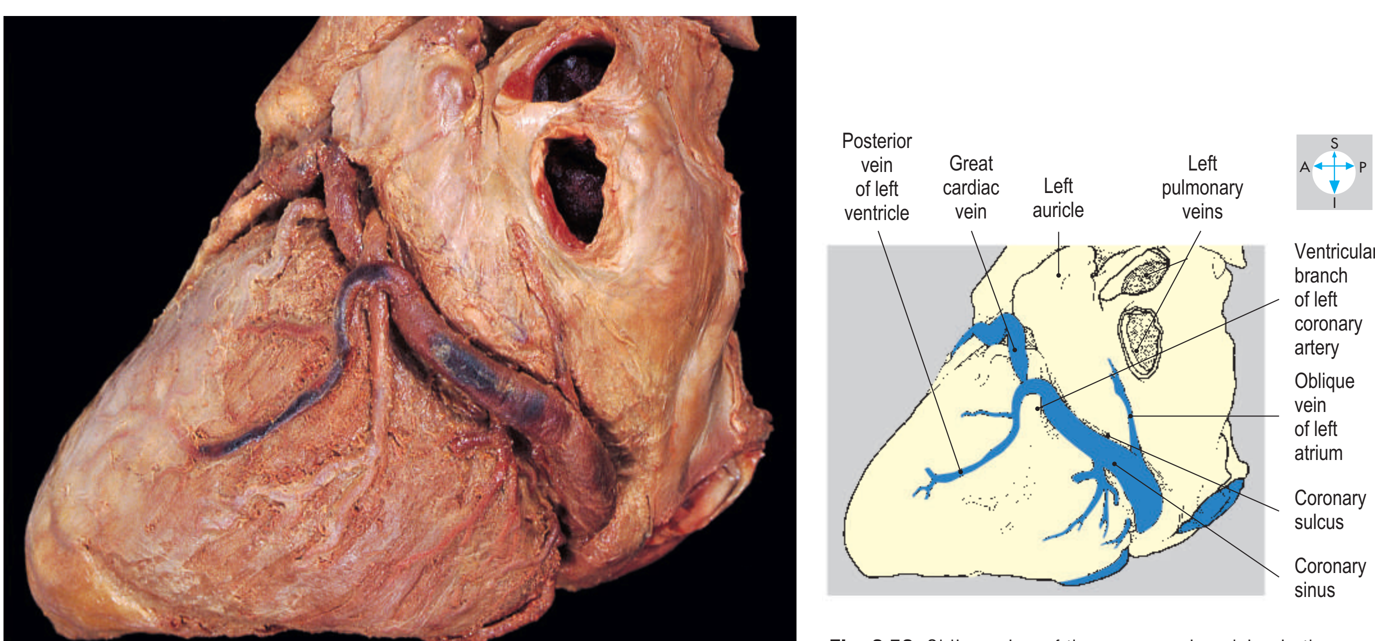


Fig. 2.52 Oblique view of the coronary sinus lying in the coronary sulcus.

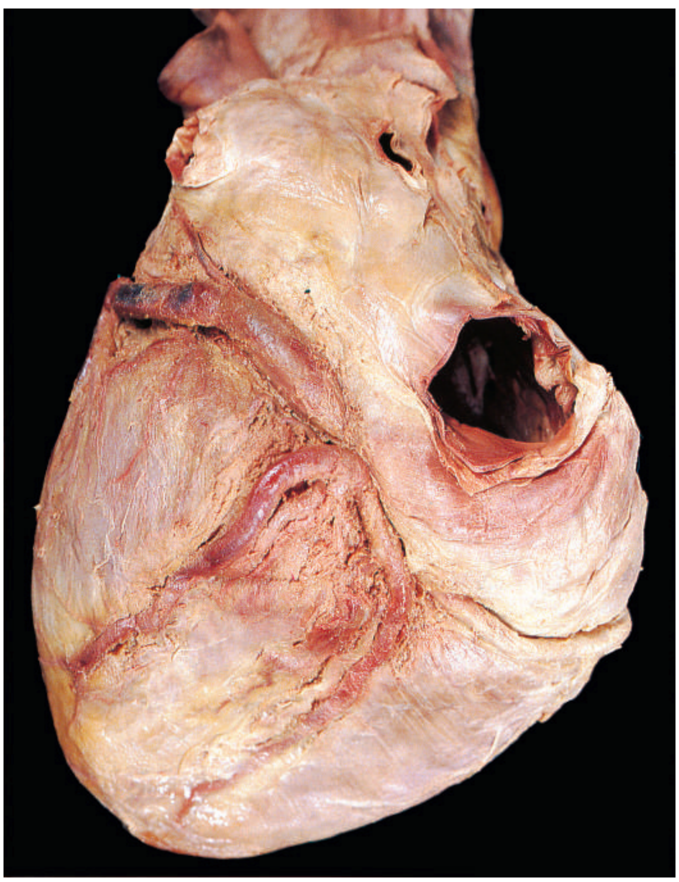
vein (Fig. 2.53), which accompanies the posterior interventricular artery. Some cardiac veins enter the right atrium independently (Fig. 2.48).

Conducting system

Coordinated contraction of the myocardium is controlled by specialized conducting tissues, consisting of the sinuatrial (SA) node, the atrioventricular (AV) node, the atrioventricular bundle (of His) and its right and left branches (Fig. 2.54).

The SA node lies in the anterior wall of the right atrium close to the termination of the superior vena cava. It occupies part of the root of the auricle and the upper end of the sulcus terminalis. Numerous autonomic nerves supply the node and modify its rate of discharge. The SA node usually receives blood from an atrial branch of either the right or left coronary artery. From the SA node the cardiac excitation wave passes through the atrial myocardium to reach the AV node.

The AV node lies in the interatrial septum anterosuperior to the termination of the coronary sinus. It is continuous with the atrioventricular bundle, which passes through the fibrous ring separating the atria and ventricles. The bundle gains the upper part of the interventricular septum and promptly divides into right and



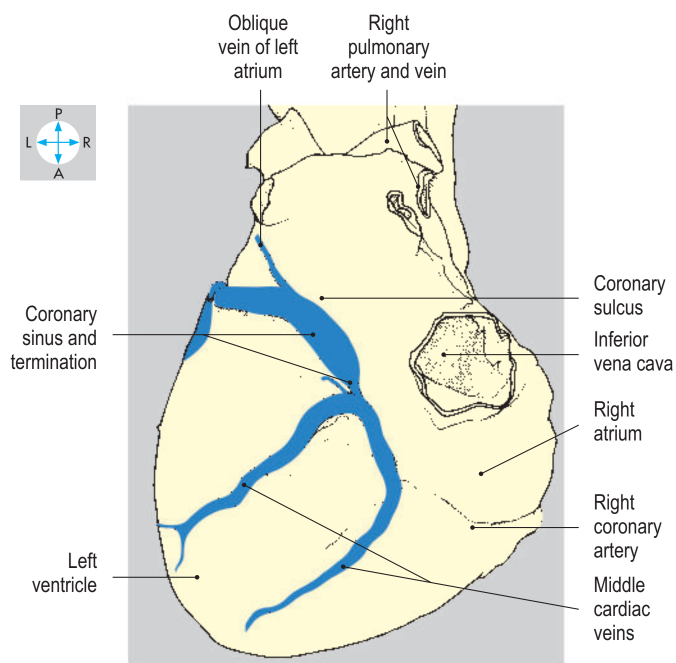


Fig. 2.53 Posteroinferior view of the termination of the coronary sinus in the right atrium.

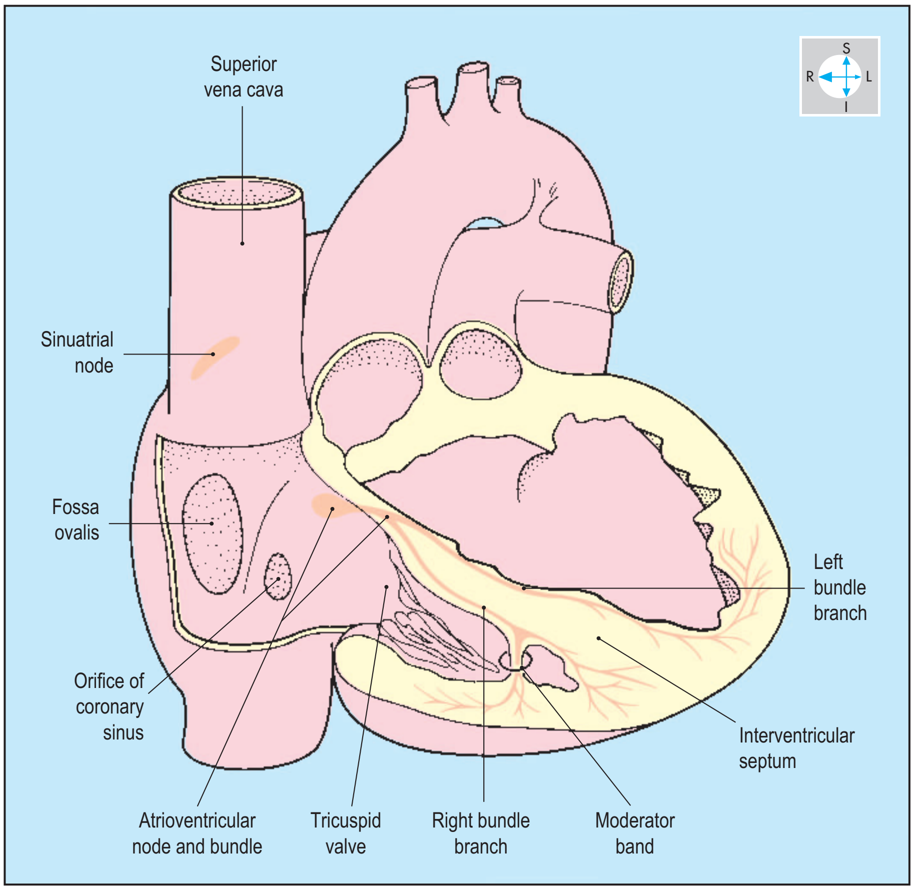


Fig. 2.54 Location of the conducting tissues.

left branches. The AV node and bundle are supplied by branches of the posterior interventricular artery. Interruption of the arterial supply to the conducting tissues may result in cardiac arrhythmias.

Lying beneath the endocardium, the right branch of the atrioventricular bundle descends in the interventricular septum and often passes in the moderator band (Fig. 2.55) to ramify within the anterior wall of the right ventricle. The left branch runs on the left side of the interventricular septum. Both branches divide repeatedly at the ventricular apices and spread out into the myocardium of the respective ventricles.

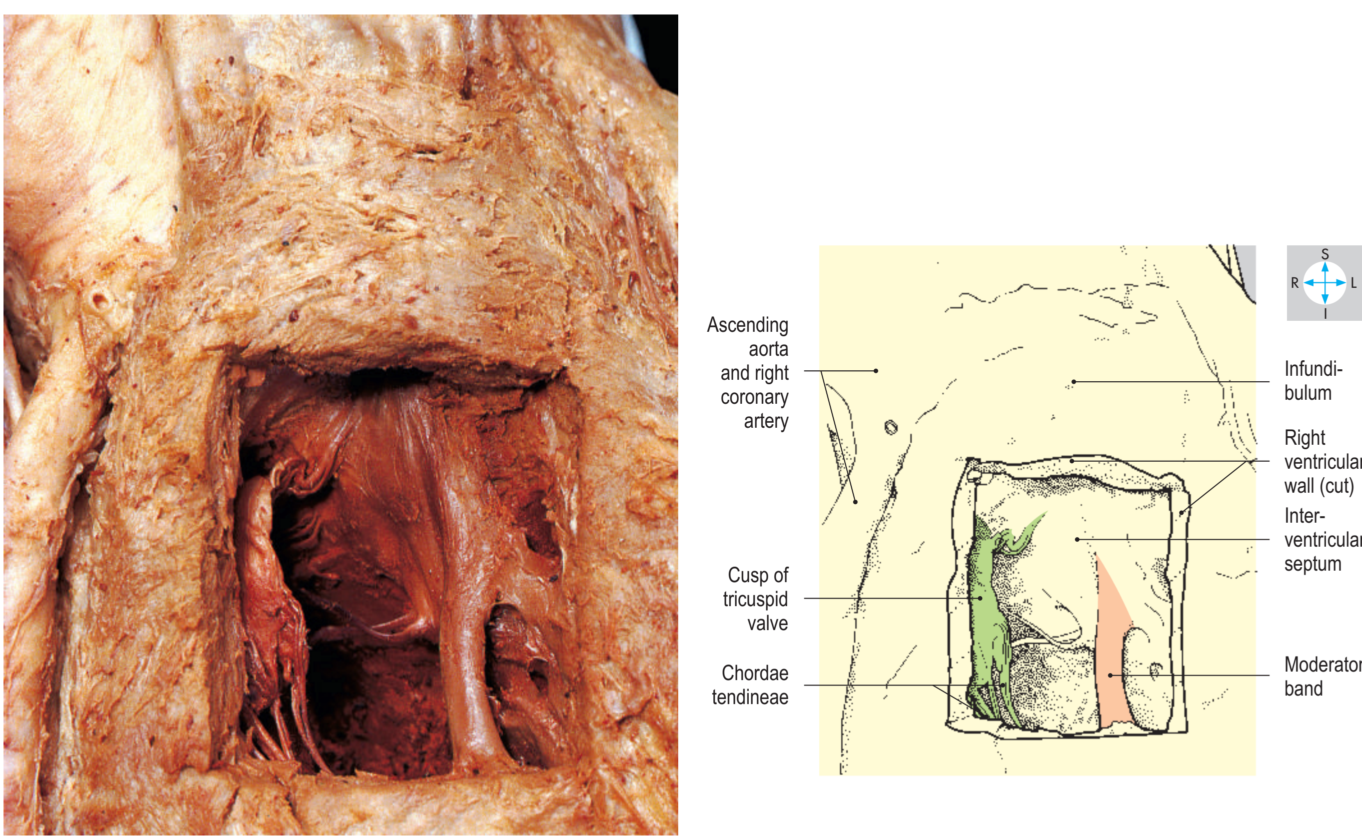


Fig. 2.55 Moderator band, seen through a window cut in the anterior wall of the right ventricle.

Mediastinal Structures

Brachiocephalic veins

On each side, the brachiocephalic vein is formed in the root of the neck by the union of the internal jugular and subclavian veins. At its origin, the vein lies behind the sternoclavicular joint and in front of the first part of the subclavian artery.

The right brachiocephalic vein runs a short vertical course in the superior mediastinum to unite with the left brachiocephalic vein (Fig. 2.56) behind the medial end of the first right costal cartilage. It receives the right vertebral and internal thoracic veins, together with the right jugular and subclavian lymph trunks and the right lymph duct. The vessel is accompanied by the right phrenic nerve.

The left brachiocephalic vein enters the thorax and runs obliquely to the right, passing behind the manubrium. The vessel lies in front of the origin from the arch of the aorta of the left common carotid artery and the brachiocephalic trunk. At its commencement, the vein is joined by the termination of the thoracic duct and, along its course, receives the left vertebral, internal thoracic and superior intercostal veins and, usually, the inferior thyroid veins.

Superior vena cava

Formed by the union of the two brachiocephalic veins, this large vessel descends vertically (Fig. 2.56) and terminates in the right atrium of the heart. It lies to the right of the ascending aorta and to the left of the right phrenic nerve and receives the azygos vein before piercing the fibrous pericardium.

Arch of aorta and branches

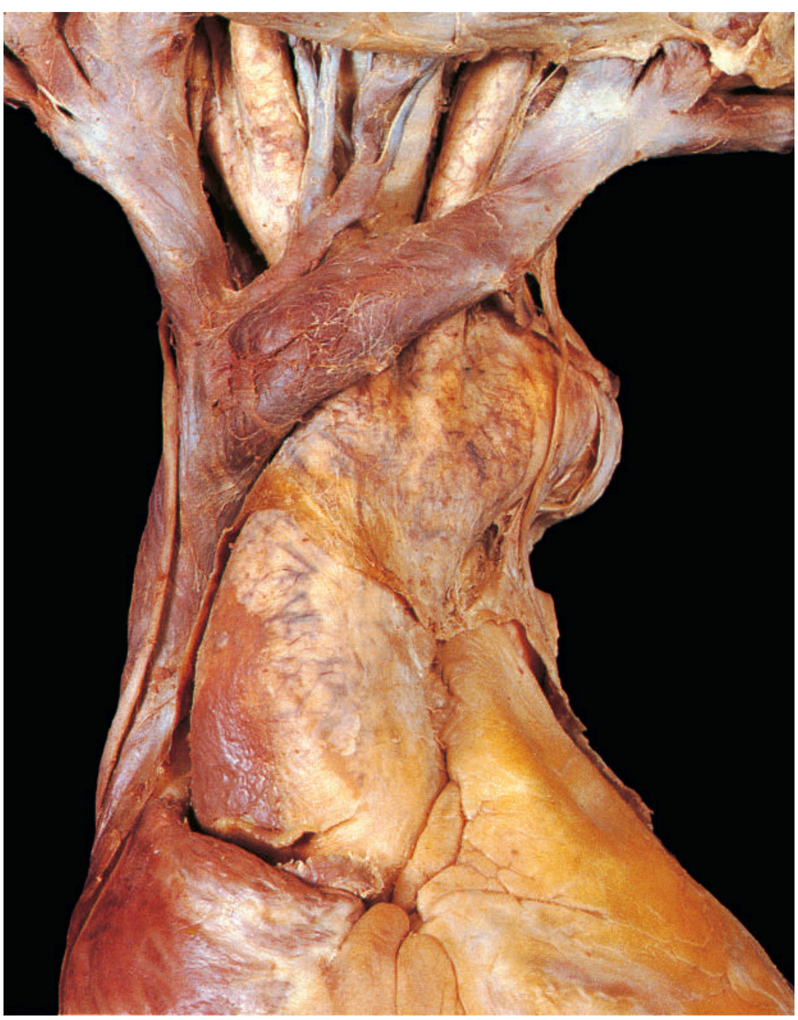
The arch of the aorta lies within the superior mediastinum, in continuity with the ascending aorta. The vessel curves backwards and to the left to reach the left side of the fourth thoracic vertebral body, where it becomes the descending aorta. The arch possesses a concavity inferiorly, left and right sides and a superior convexity.

The concavity is related to the bifurcation of the pulmonary trunk and the left main bronchus. The ligamentum arteriosum attaches the pulmonary trunk (or left pulmonary artery) to the concavity of the aortic arch and is closely related to the left recurrent laryngeal nerve (Figs 2.46 & 2.57).

The left side of the aortic arch is crossed by the left phrenic and vagus nerves (Fig. 2.57) and covered by mediastinal pleura. The phrenic nerve lies in front of the vagus and passes onto the fibrous pericardium in front of the lung root. The vagus nerve inclines backwards to pass behind the lung root, having given off the left recurrent laryngeal nerve. The left superior intercostal vein passes forwards across the arch and usually terminates in the left brachiocephalic vein (Fig. 2.57).

The right side of the arch is related, from in front backwards, to the superior vena cava, trachea, left recurrent laryngeal nerve, oesophagus and thoracic duct. These structures lie between the aorta and the right mediastinal pleura.

The convexity of the arch gives rise to the brachiocephalic trunk, left common carotid and left subclavian arteries (Fig. 2.58), which ascend into the root of the neck. The brachiocephalic trunk is the first branch of the arch of the aorta and arises behind the left brachiocephalic vein. The trunk slopes upwards and to the right across the anterior surface of the trachea, leaving the thorax to the right of the trachea to divide in the root of the neck into the right subclavian and right common carotid arteries.



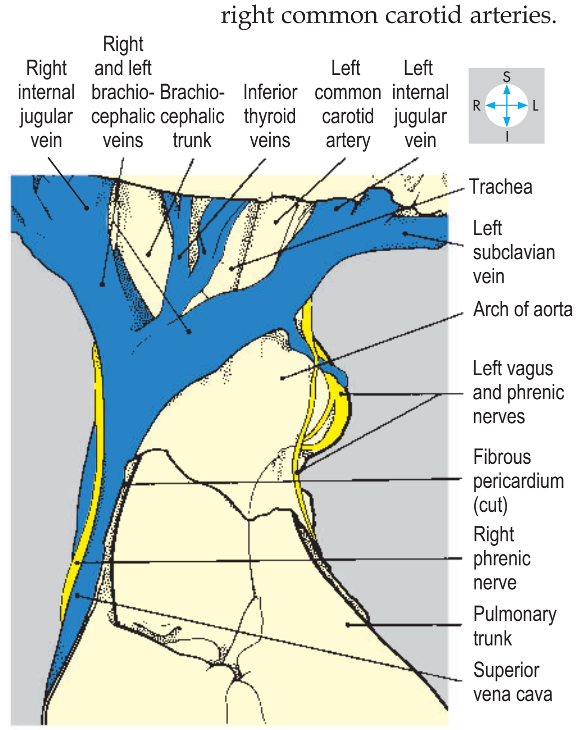


Fig. 2.56 Relationships of the brachiocephalic veins to the great arteries arising from the aortic arch.

The left common carotid artery arises behind the brachiocephalic trunk and ascends, in company with the left phrenic and vagus nerves, through the superior mediastinum on the left of the trachea into the root of the neck (Fig. 2.58).

The left subclavian artery is the most posterior artery arising from the aortic arch and lies immediately behind the left common carotid artery. It runs upwards and laterally, closely related to the pleura covering the apex of the left lung, entering the root of the neck behind the sternoclavicular joint.

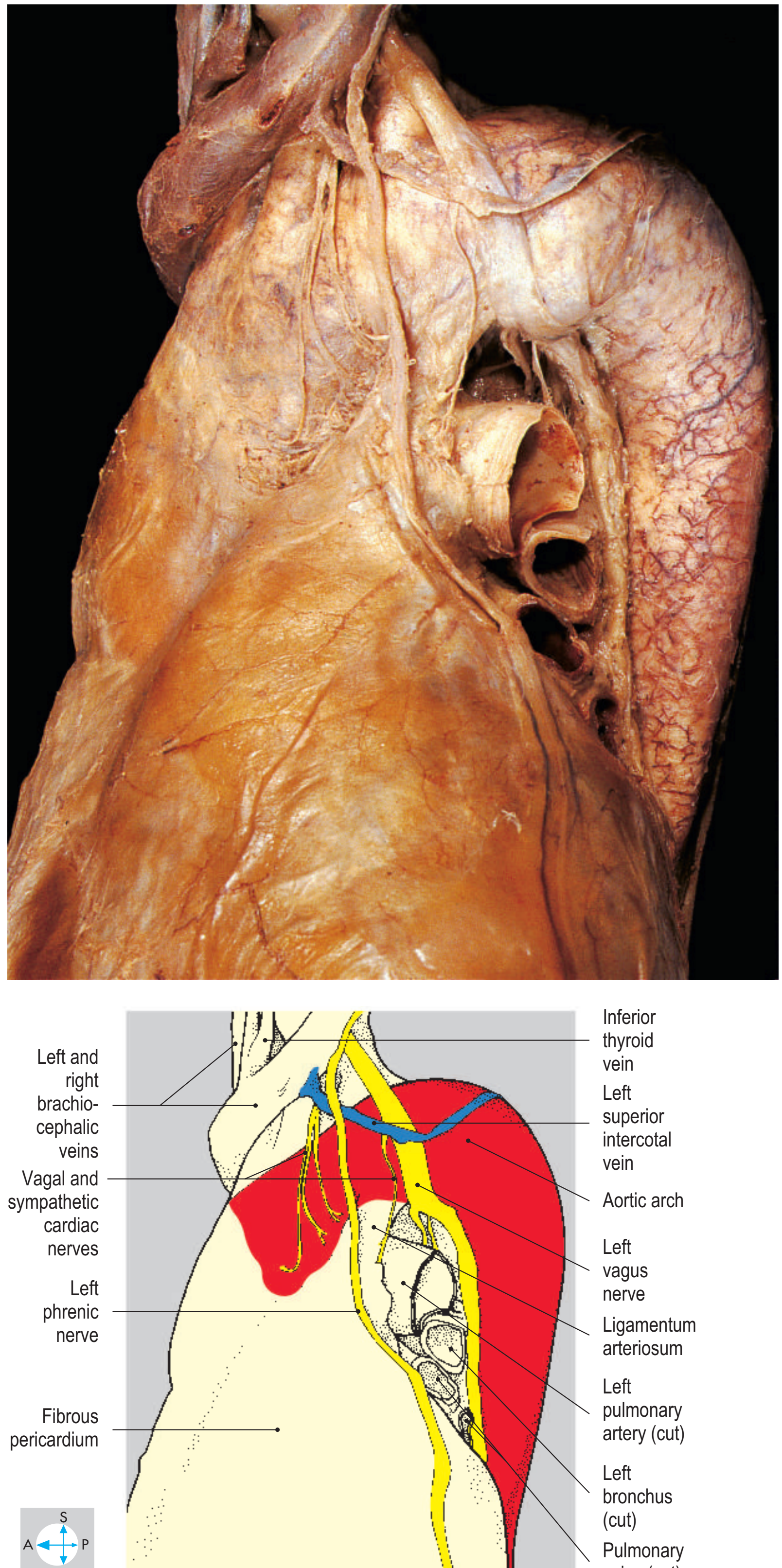


Fig. 2.57 Oblique view of the arch of the aorta showing the courses of the left vagus and phrenic nerves.

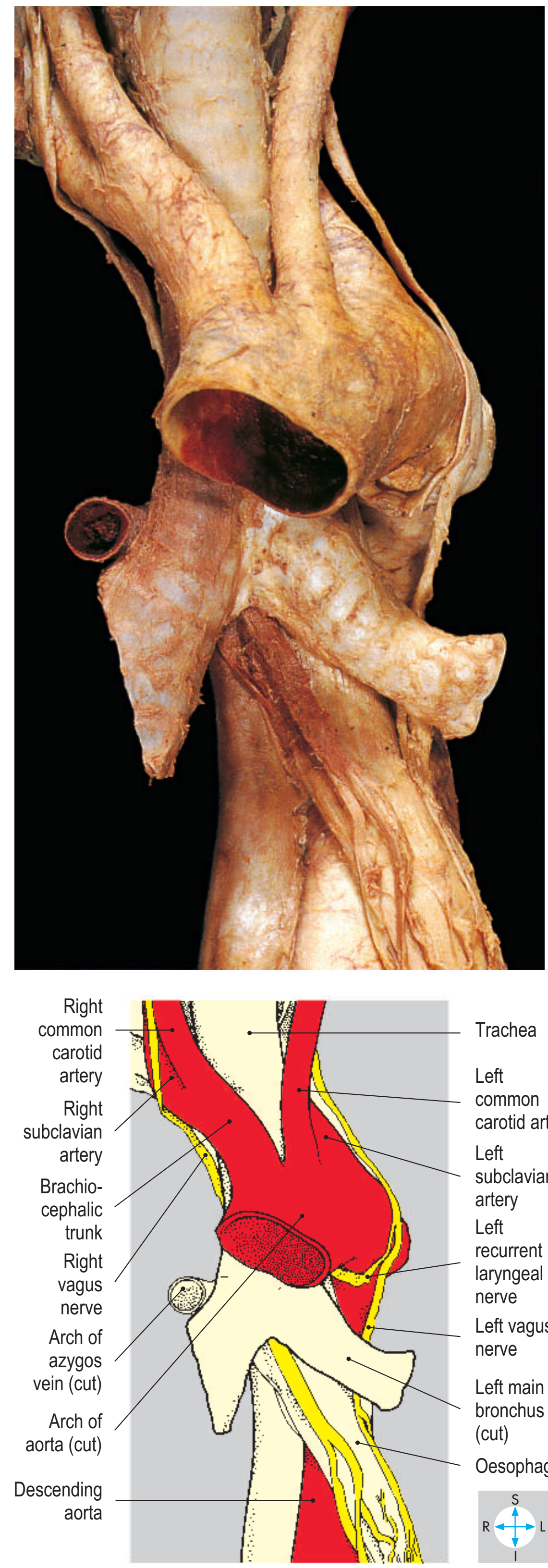


Fig. 2.58 Arch of the aorta and its branches viewed anteriorly.

Phrenic nerves

The right and left phrenic nerves (C3, C4 & C5) pass through the superior thoracic aperture behind the respective subclavian veins. Owing to the asymmetry of the mediastinal organs, the intrathoracic courses of the two nerves differ. The right phrenic nerve, covered by mediastinal pleura, accompanies the right brachiocephalic vein and the superior vena cava in front of the root of the right lung (Fig. 2.59). It descends vertically across the fibrous pericardium covering the right atrium and pierces the diaphragm alongside the inferior vena cava.

The left phrenic nerve, also covered by mediastinal pleura, lies lateral to the left common carotid artery and crosses the left side of the aortic arch to gain the fibrous pericardium in front of the left lung root (Fig. 2.57). The nerve then descends across the pericardium as far as the apex of the heart, where it pierces the diaphragm (Fig. 2.60).

The phrenic nerves supply the muscle of the diaphragm, excluding the crura. They give sensory fibres to the fibrous and parietal serous pericardium and the mediastinal and diaphragmatic pleura, and sensory branches to the peritoneum covering the inferior surface of the diaphragm (pp 36, 205).

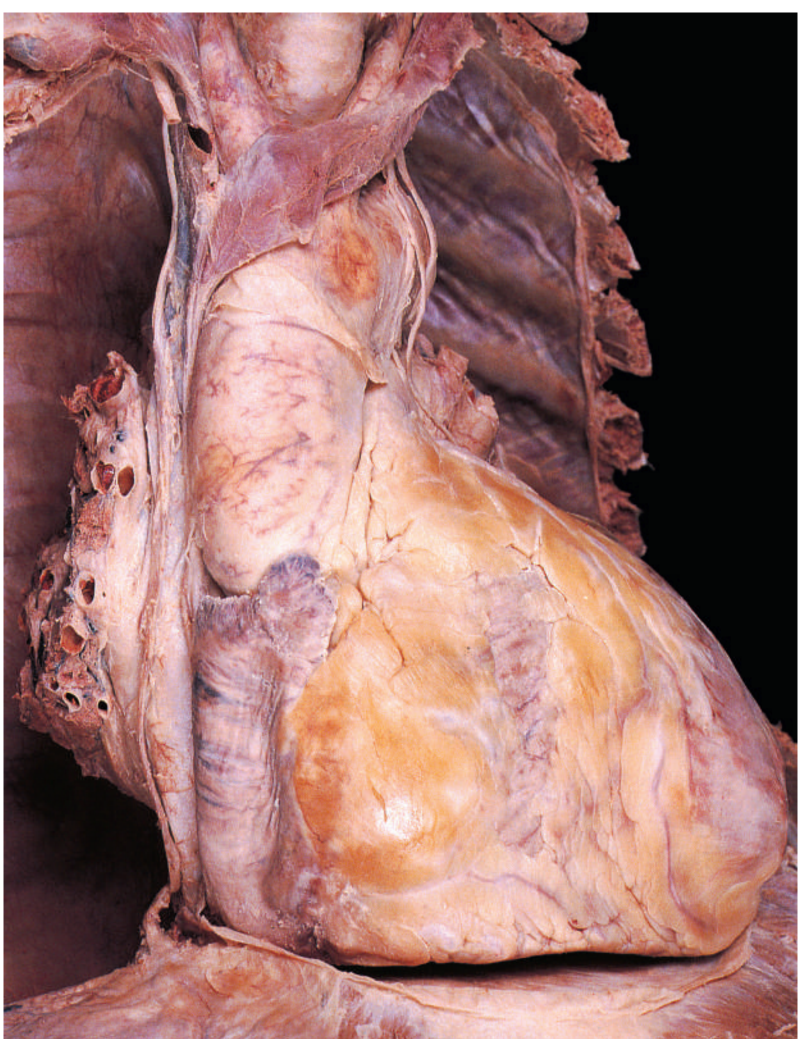
Trachea

The trachea descends through the neck, where normally it is palpable above the jugular notch, and enters the thorax in the midline, immediately behind the upper border of the manubrium. It runs vertically through the superior mediastinum and, at the level of the aortic arch, divides into right and left main bronchi (Fig. 2.61).

The right main bronchus is wider than the left and inclines steeply downwards to enter the right lung root. The right upper lobar bronchus often arises outside the hilum of the lung. The left main bronchus runs obliquely to the left within the concavity of the arch of the aorta, passing behind the left pulmonary artery to gain the left lung root.

The thoracic part of the trachea is crossed anteriorly by the brachiocephalic trunk and the left brachiocephalic vein (Fig. 2.59). In addition, the trachea is overlapped by the anterior margins of the pleura and lungs and the thymus (or its remnants). The trachea is related on the left to the arch of the aorta and left common carotid and subclavian arteries, on the right to the superior vena cava, the termination of the azygos vein, the right vagus nerve and the mediastinal pleura, and posteriorly to the oesophagus and the left recurrent laryngeal nerve. (The right recurrent laryngeal nerve does not enter the thorax but passes around the right subclavian artery in the root of the neck; p. 331.)

The vascular supply of the trachea is from the inferior thyroid arteries and veins. The recurrent laryngeal nerves supply sensory and parasympathetic secretomotor fibres to the mucous membrane and motor fibres to the smooth muscle (trachealis).



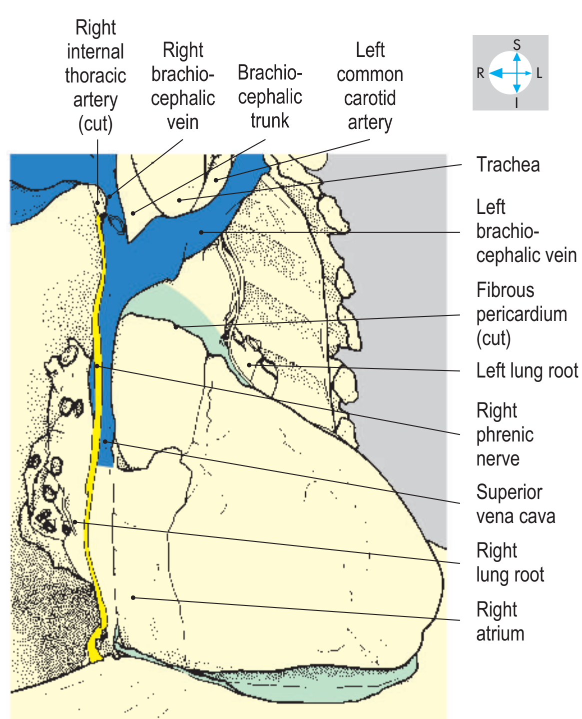


Fig. 2.59 Oblique view showing the course of the right phrenic nerve.

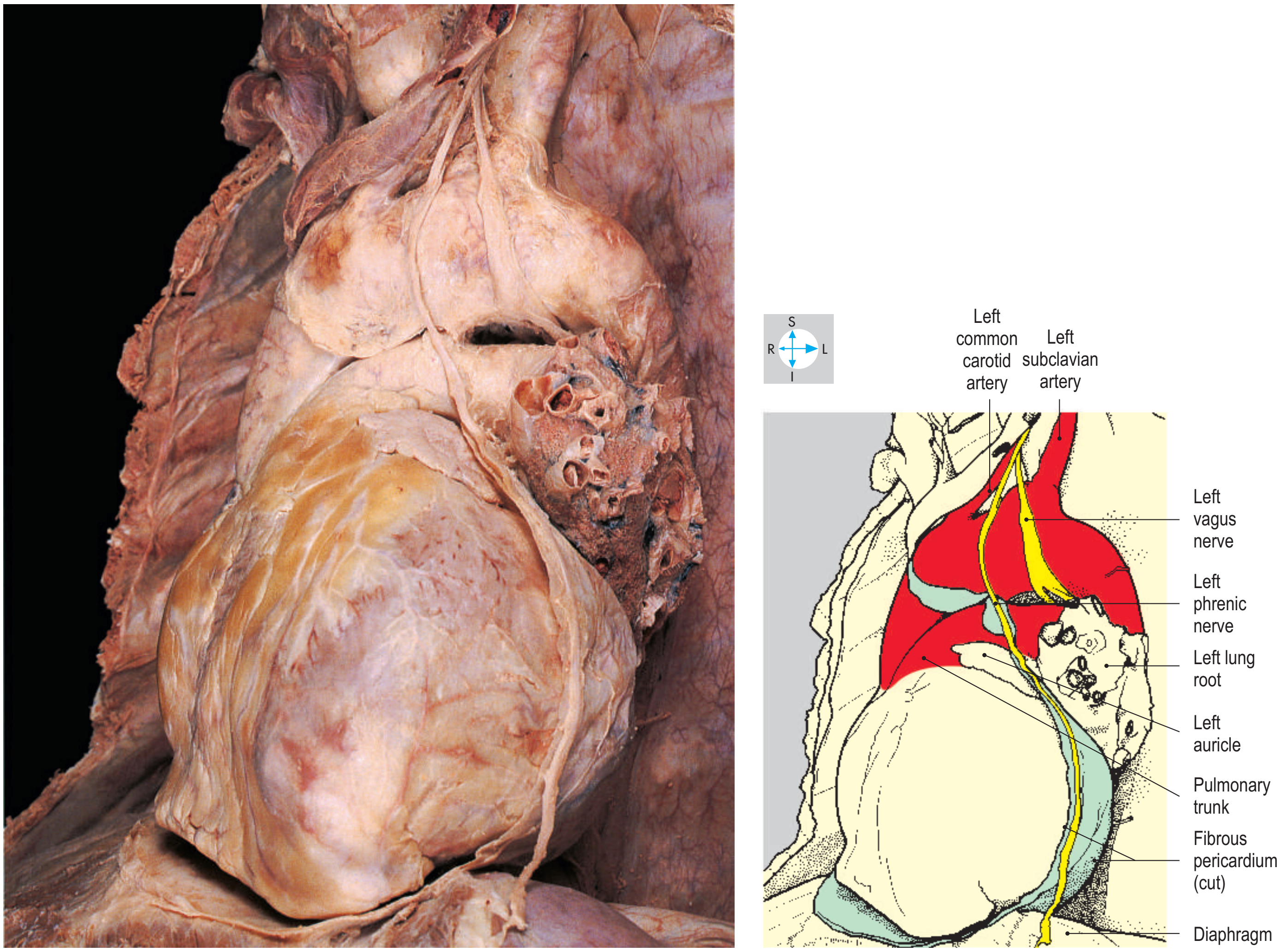


Fig. 2.60 Oblique view of the intrathoracic course of the left phrenic nerve.

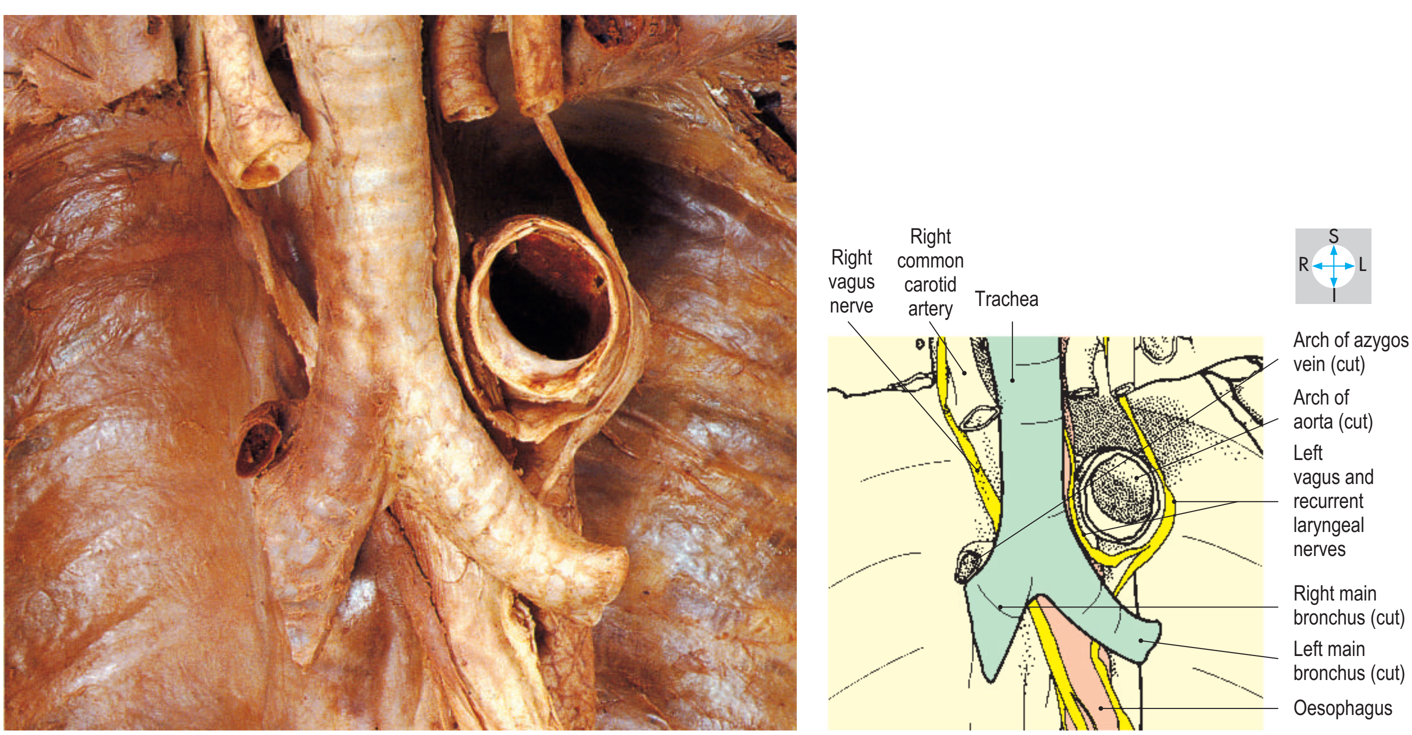


Fig. 2.61 Trachea and left and right main bronchi, exposed after removal of the anterior part of the aortic arch.

Oesophagus

The oesophagus descends through the root of the neck and traverses the superior thoracic aperture behind the trachea. In the superior mediastinum the oesophagus lies in front of the upper four thoracic vertebral bodies and behind the trachea, the left main bronchus and left recurrent laryngeal nerve. The aortic arch and the thoracic duct are on its left while the azygos vein arches forwards on its right (Fig. 2.62).

The oesophagus continues into the posterior mediastinum in front of the fifth thoracic vertebra accompanied by the right and left vagus nerves. It descends behind the fibrous pericardium and inclines to the left to cross in front of the descending aorta. On its right side, the oesophagus is covered by mediastinal pleura. On the left, once anterior to the descending aorta, it is related to pleura as far as the diaphragm. Accompanied by branches of the vagus nerves (see below), the oesophagus passes through the diaphragm at the level of the tenth thoracic vertebra.

The oesophagus is supplied by branches from the inferior thyroid arteries and from the descending thoracic aorta. Its lower part receives branches from the left gastric artery that ascends through the oesophageal opening in the diaphragm. Radicles of the left gastric vein (a tributary of the portal vein) anastomose with veins that drain venous blood from the oesophagus into the azygos system (see Portacaval anastomoses, p. 185). The upper part of the oesophagus is drained by the brachiocephalic veins. Sensory and parasympathetic motor fibres to the oesophagus are provided by the vagi and their recurrent laryngeal branches.

Vagus (X) nerves

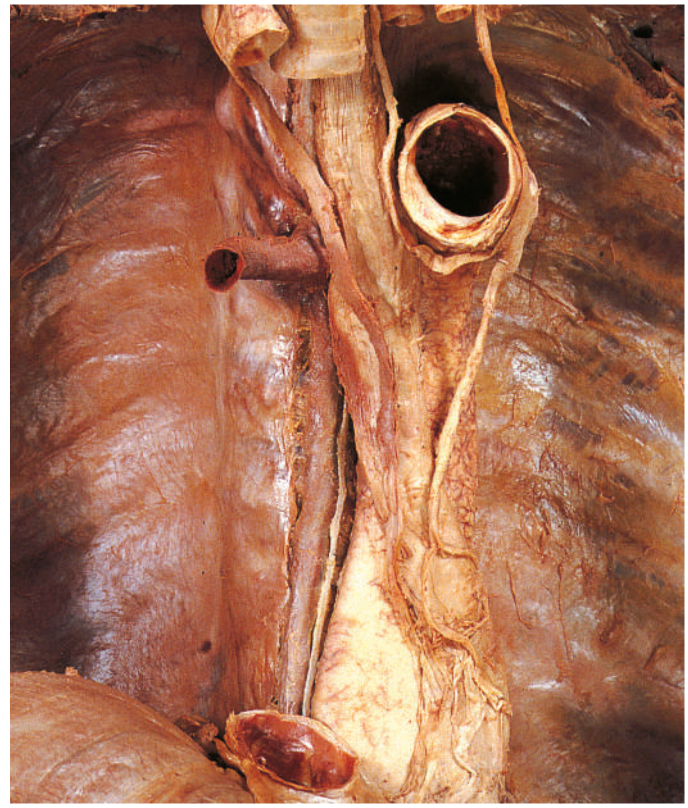
In the superior mediastinum, the relationships of the right and left vagi differ. The right vagus nerve (Fig. 2.62) enters the thorax behind the bifurcation of the brachiocephalic trunk and on the right of the trachea. The nerve, covered by mediastinal pleura, inclines backwards and passes behind the right lung root to gain the oesophagus. The left vagus nerve descends behind the left common carotid artery to cross the left side of the aortic arch, gives off the left recurrent laryngeal nerve and continues behind the left lung root to reach the oesophagus.

The left recurrent laryngeal nerve (Fig. 2.62) passes around the arch of the aorta adjacent to the ligamentum arteriosum and ascends in the interval between the trachea and oesophagus. In the posterior mediastinum, the right and left vagus nerves divide on the surface of the oesophagus to form a network, the oesophageal plexus. The terminal branches of the plexus (the anterior and posterior vagal trunks) enter the abdomen with the oesophagus (p. 197).

Descending thoracic aorta and branches

The descending aorta (Fig. 2.63) is continuous with the aortic arch and initially lies to the left of the fifth thoracic vertebral body. As it traverses the posterior mediastinum, it inclines forwards and to the right, gaining the midline anterior to the twelfth thoracic vertebra. On the right, the upper part of the descending aorta is related to the thoracic vertebral bodies and the oesophagus. The lower part and all of its left side are covered by mediastinal pleura. The thoracic duct and the azygos vein lie to the right of the aorta, and anteriorly it is crossed by the oesophagus sloping obliquely from the midline to the left. The descending aorta leaves the thorax in front of the twelfth thoracic vertebra and behind the median arcuate ligament of the diaphragm with the thoracic duct and azygos vein (Figs 2.64 & 4.104).

Posterior intercostal arteries from the descending aorta supply the third to the eleventh intercostal spaces on both sides. They anastomose with the anterior intercostal arteries derived from either the internal thoracic or the musculophrenic arteries. Other branches from the aorta supply the right and left bronchi and the oesophagus.



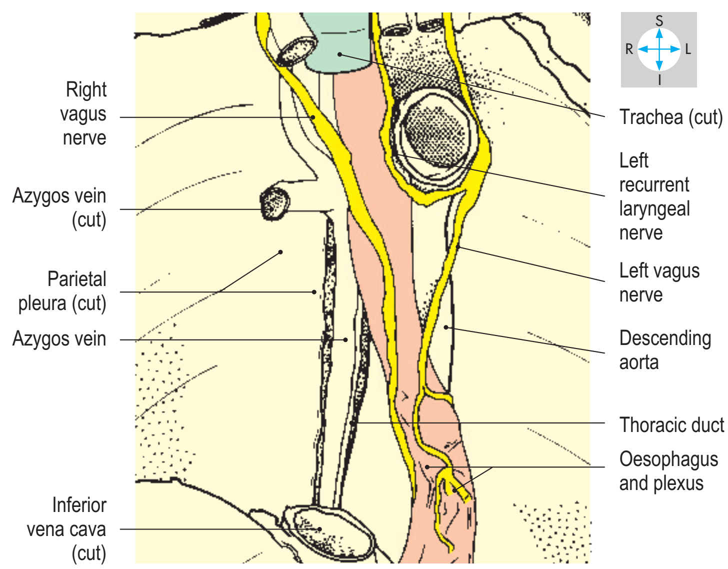


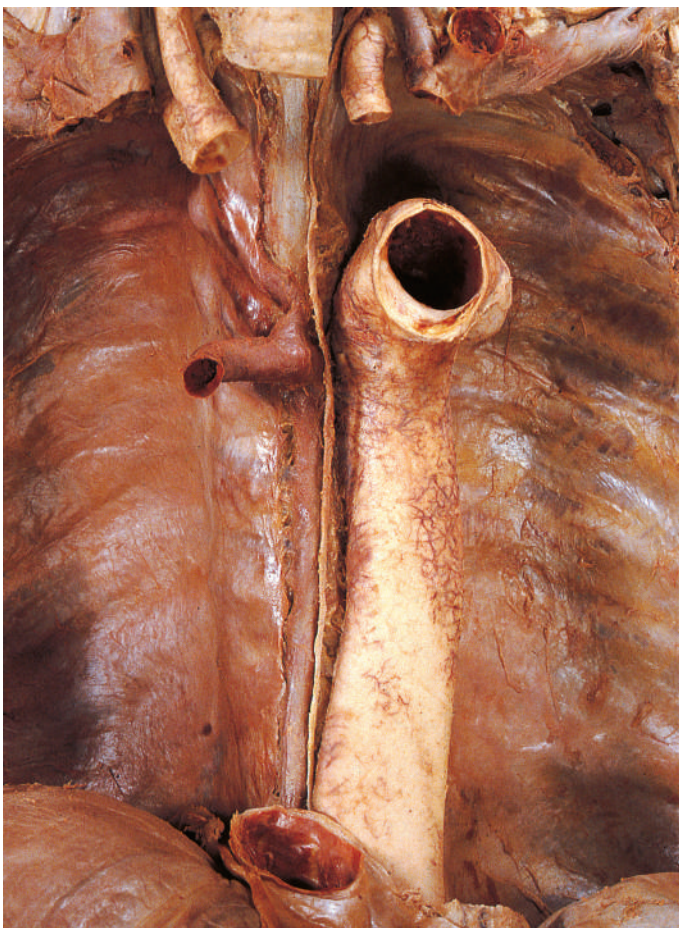
Fig. 2.62 Intrathoracic part of the oesophagus and accompanying vagus nerves after removal of the main bronchi and the lower part of the trachea.

Thoracic duct

Arising from the upper part of the cisterna chyli (p. 196), the thoracic duct passes into the thorax, lying between the azygos vein and descending aorta, and with these structures (Figs 2.62 & 2.63) ascends through the posterior mediastinum to gain the superior mediastinum on the left of the oesophagus. The duct then curves forwards and to the left, crossing the apex of the left lung to enter the root of the neck where it terminates in the confluence of the left internal jugular and subclavian veins.

Azygos venous system

This system of veins drains blood from most of the posterior thoracic wall and from the bronchi, the pericardium and part of the intrathoracic oesophagus. The azygos vein enters the thorax through the aortic opening and receives posterior intercostal veins from the lower eight spaces on the right (Fig. 2.64). Veins from the second and third spaces drain into the right superior intercostal vein, which terminates in the azygos vein as it arches over the right lung root to join the superior vena cava. The venous return



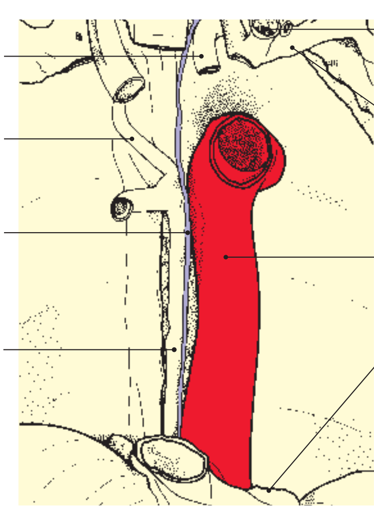


Fig. 2.63 Descending aorta and thoracic duct, exposed after removal of the thoracic part of the oesophagus.

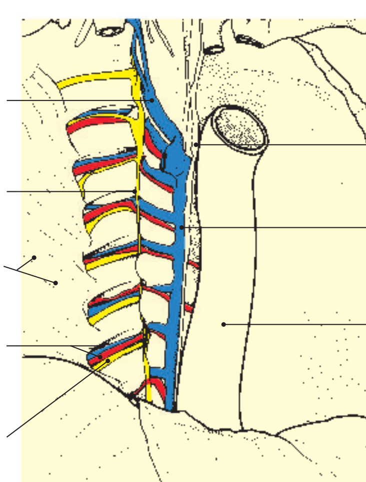


Fig. 2.64 Azygos vein, right intercostal nerves and posterior intercostal vessels, exposed after removal of the parietal pleura.

from the first space drains into the right brachiocephalic vein. The azygos vein also receives the hemiazygos veins.

The hemiazygos and accessory hemiazygos veins drain the lower eight posterior intercostal spaces on the left side. The lowermost four spaces usually empty into the hemiazygos vein, which crosses the midline to terminate in the azygos vein (Fig. 2.65). Veins from the next four intercostal spaces usually join to form the accessory hemiazygos vein, which also crosses the midline to end in the azygos. Sometimes, the hemiazygos and accessory hemiazygos veins drain into the azygos vein by a single vessel. The second and third spaces on the left are drained by the left superior intercostal vein (Fig. 2.57), which crosses the aortic arch to end in the left brachiocephalic vein. The first left intercostal space drains into the corresponding brachiocephalic vein.

Thoracic sympathetic trunk

The thoracic part of the sympathetic trunk (chain) runs along the lateral aspects of the thoracic vertebral bodies (Figs 2.65 & 2.66). In continuity with the cervical and abdominal parts, the thoracic sympathetic trunk consists of a series of interconnected enlargements (ganglia) occurring at intervals along its length. Usually, each thoracic spinal nerve is connected to its own ganglion by two branches, a white (preganglionic) and a grey (postganglionic) ramus communicans. Not infrequently, adjacent ganglia fuse together and, most often, the inferior cervical and first thoracic ganglia fuse to form the stellate ganglion.

Branches

Fine nerve filaments running from the sympathetic trunk contribute to the autonomic prevertebral plexuses supplying the thoracic organs, including the heart (cardiac plexuses), lungs (pulmonary plexuses) and the oesophagus (oesophageal plexus). The lower thoracic ganglia give rise to a collection of autonomic fibres that form the greater (Fig. 2.66), lesser and least splanchnic nerves, destined to supply intra-abdominal structures, which are gained by piercing the crura of the diaphragm. All thoracic spinal nerves receive from the grey rami communicantes, sympathetic postganglionic fibres, which are distributed to various structures of the body wall (e.g. blood vessels, hair follicles and sweat glands) by the segmental spinal nerves.

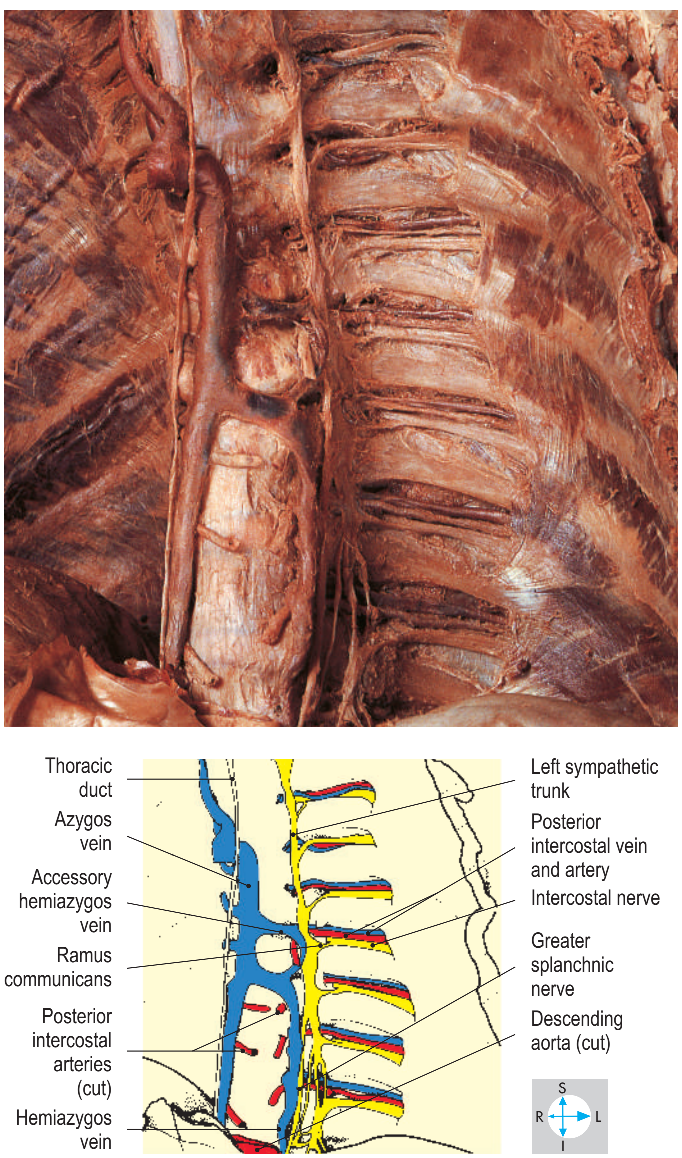


Fig. 2.65 Oblique view of left sympathetic trunk, hemiazygos vein, intercostal nerves and posterior intercostal vessels after removal of the descending aorta and parietal pleura on the left side of the midline.

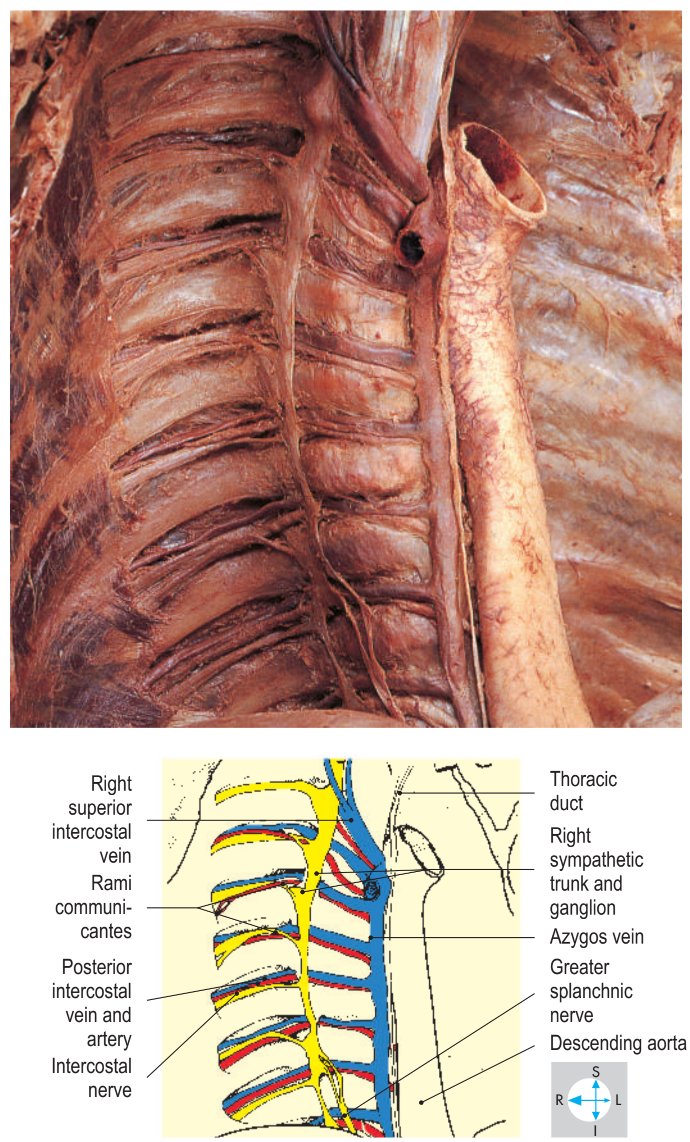


Fig. 2.66 Oblique view of right sympathetic trunk and posterior intercostal vessels and intercostal nerves after removal of the parietal pleura.

Exam Skills

Each of the incomplete statements below is followed by five suggested answers or completions. Decide which are true and which are false. The answers are supplied on p. 417.

1. In the right atrium features visible on the interatrial septum include:

a) the orifice of the coronary sinus.
b) the valve of the inferior vena cava.
c) the fossa ovalis.
d) the crista terminalis.
e) musculi pectinati.

2. In the mediastinum:

a) the left brachiocephalic vein passes behind the left common carotid artery.
b) the brachiocephalic trunk arises from the aortic arch.
c) the left vagus nerve crosses the aortic arch.
d) the ligamentum arteriosum connects the aortic arch to the left pulmonary artery.
e) the oesophagus lies anterior to the descending thoracic aorta.

3. The right lung:

a) possesses a transverse fissure.
b) is in contact with the pericardium overlying the right ventricle.
c) possesses an oblique fissure separating the lower from the middle lobe.
d) has an impression of the azygos arch on its medial surface.
e) receives a rich somatic sensory innervation.

4. A typical rib:

a) articulates with the transverse process of the thoracic vertebra of the same number.
b) possesses a head, which articulates with the body of the same numbered vertebra.
c) is attached by a costal cartilage to the sternum.
d) is attached to the rib below by fibres of external intercostal muscle.
e) has parietal pleura in contact with its deep surface.

5. The oesophagus:

a) passes through the right crus of the diaphragm.
b) receives innervation from the phrenic nerve.
c) is indented by the arch of the aorta.
d) is closely related to the right recurrent laryngeal nerve in the thorax.
e) has veins draining into the hepatic portal vein.

6. The trachea:

a) has the right brachiocephalic vein anteriorly.
b) divides at the level of the fourth thoracic vertebra.
c) has the aortic arch on its left.
d) has a sensory supply from the phrenic nerves.
e) is closely related to the recurrent laryngeal nerves.

7. The right coronary artery:

a) lies in the coronary sulcus.
b) anastomoses directly with the anterior interventricular artery.
c) supplies the SA node.
d) has a right marginal branch.
e) supplies most of the left ventricle.

8. In the thorax, the right vagus:

a) is closely related to the trachea.
b) gives rise to the right recurrent laryngeal nerve.
c) is crossed by the azygos arch.
d) lies anterior to the root of the right lung.
e) contributes to the formation of the oesophageal plexus.

9. The arch of the aorta:

a) is crossed by the left recurrent laryngeal nerve.
b) is crossed by the left vagus.
c) is covered by parietal pleura of the left lung.
d) is crossed by the left phrenic nerve.
e) is located within the superior mediastinum.

10. In the thorax, the sympathetic chains:

a) connect with the intercostal nerves.
b) give rise to splanchnic nerves.
c) leave in company with the descending thoracic aorta.
d) are covered by parietal pleura.
e) are closely related to the oesophagus.

11. The left brachiocephalic vein:

a) lies partly within the middle mediastinum.
b) lies anterior to the brachiocephalic trunk.
c) usually receives the thoracic duct.
d) terminates in the superior vena cava.
e) receives inferior thyroid veins.

12. The fibrous pericardium:

a) is innervated by intercostal nerves.
b) is firmly attached to the diaphragm.
c) is closely related to the phrenic nerves.
d) is closely related to the oesophagus.
e) is lined by parietal serous pericardium.

13. The left main bronchus:

a) lies within the concavity of the arch of the aorta.
b) is closely related to the oesophagus.
c) is usually wider than the right main bronchus.
d) lies posterior to the left vagus nerve.
e) receives branches from the internal thoracic artery.

14. Concerning respiratory movements:

a) the diaphragm descends during expiration.
b) the lung extends into the costodiaphragmatic recess during inspiration.
c) intercostal muscles contract during inspiration.
d) expiration is assisted by contraction of pectoralis major.
e) elasticity of the lungs contributes to expiration.

15. The thoracic duct:

a) enters the thorax in company with the oesophagus.
b) lies in the posterior mediastinum.
c) arches across the apex of the left lung.
d) lies anterior to the trachea in the superior mediastinum.
e) lies to the left of the azygos vein as it enters the thorax.

16. Concerning the cardiac conducting system:

a) the SA node lies in the interatrial septum.
b) specialized conducting tissue connects the SA and AV nodes.
c) the AV node lies close to the termination of the coronary sinus.
d) the AV bundle lies in the interventricular septum.
e) the left coronary artery is commonly the main arterial supply.

Clinical Case Skills

The answers are supplied on p. 418.

Case Study 1

A 51-year-old woman complained to her family practitioner that she had felt very fatigued for several weeks. She had lost 7–10 pounds in weight over the previous month. On physical examination the physician discovered a firm nodular swelling, about 3–4 cm in diameter, in the left breast that was anchored in tissue several centimetres beneath the skin.

Questions:

1. To which additional areas of this woman's body should the physician direct special attention during the physical examination and why?
2. Which muscle should be caused to contract in order to demonstrate the fixation of the swelling?
3. Following surgical removal of the swelling and exploration of the axilla, the patient is found to have a winged scapula. How has this occurred?
4. Following surgery, she noted a swollen left arm. Why?

Case Study 2

A 67-year-old man developed a worsening cough over several months and, when the sputum began to show streaks of blood, he consulted a physician. The patient gave a history of smoking cigarettes for 40 years and recently had noted that his voice had become hoarse. An X-ray of the chest revealed an irregularly-shaped density in the hilar region of the left lung.

Questions:

1. How might the hoarseness relate to the location of the density?
2. Which other structures are situated in the vicinity of the hilar region of the lung?
3. What is the nerve supply of the mediastinal pleura against which the density lies?
4. If the density obstructed the left upper lobe bronchus, what would the effect be?

Case Study 3

While playing golf, a 74-year-old man felt tingling down the medial side of his left arm. He continued to play but 10 minutes later began to have difficulty breathing and became dizzy. He sat down on a nearby bench but soon complained of severe chest pain and then lapsed into unconsciousness.

He was rushed to hospital where an electrocardiogram showed irregularities in the heart's electrical activity. Some minutes later, he deteriorated markedly, and his blood pressure dropped dramatically. He lapsed into a deep coma and died several minutes later. A post-mortem showed total obstruction of the left coronary artery and near-complete obstruction of the right coronary artery.

Questions:

1. What is the cause of the tingling sensation in the left arm?
2. How does coronary artery disease cause irregularities in the cardiac cycle?
3. Which coronary artery is more likely to cause irregularities in rhythm if obstructed?
4. Where do anastomoses occur between the coronary arteries?

Case Study 4

An 8-year-old boy was found to have high blood pressure during a school physical examination. He was referred to his physician, who verified the high blood pressure and noted that his femoral pulses were weak in comparison to the radial and carotid pulses. His feet seemed cool to the touch and the patient said he always had to wear warm socks even in summer. A chest radiograph was remarkable for irregular notches along the lower borders of several of the ribs on both sides of his chest.

Questions:

1. How can unequal pulses in the upper and lower limbs be explained?
2. Which vessels caused the notching along the ribs, and in which direction was blood flowing through them?
3. Rib notching was absent from the upper two ribs. Why?
4. Would auscultation of the thorax reveal any abnormal sounds?

Observation Skills

Identify the structures indicated. The answers are supplied at the foot of the page.

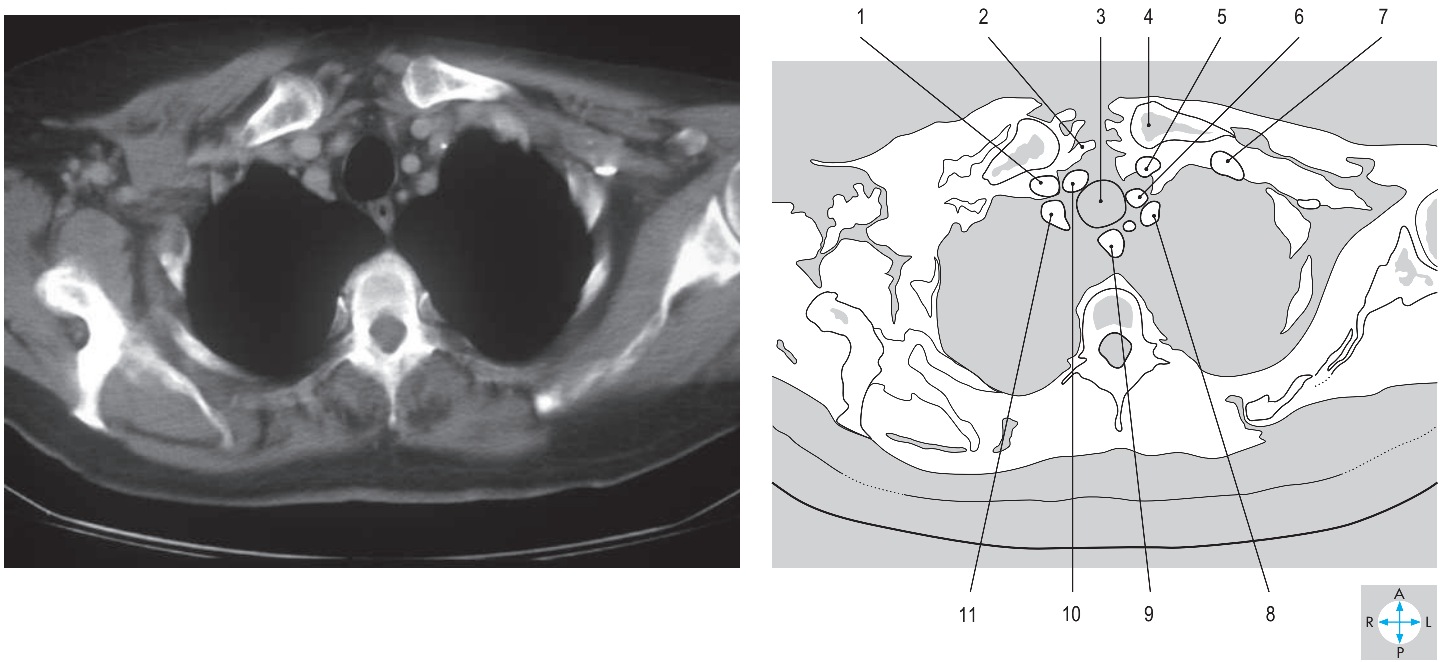


Fig. 2.67 Transverse CT image at the level of the second thoracic vertebra. (Compare Fig. 2.71.)

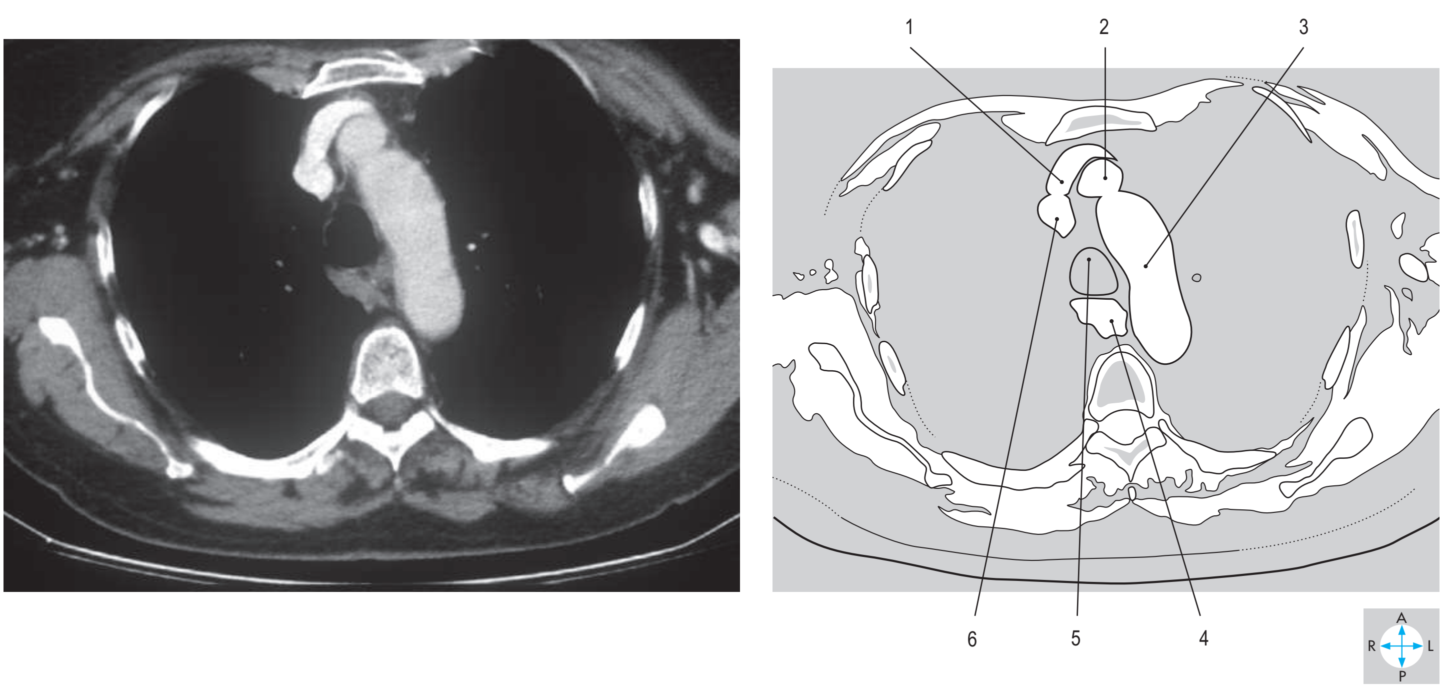


Fig. 2.68 Transverse CT image at the level of the fourth thoracic vertebra. (Compare Fig. 2.18.)

Answers:

Fig. 2.67 1 = right internal jugular vein; 2 = infrahyoid strap muscle; 3 = trachea; 4 = medial end of left clavicle; 5 = left internal jugular vein; 6 = left common carotid artery; 7 = left subclavian vein; 8 = left subclavian artery; 9 = oesophagus; 10 = right common carotid artery; 11 = right subclavian artery.

Fig. 2.68 1 = left brachiocephalic vein; 2 = brachiocephalic trunk arising from arch of aorta; 3 = aortic arch; 4 = oesophagus; 5 = trachea; 6 = termination of right brachiocephalic vein.

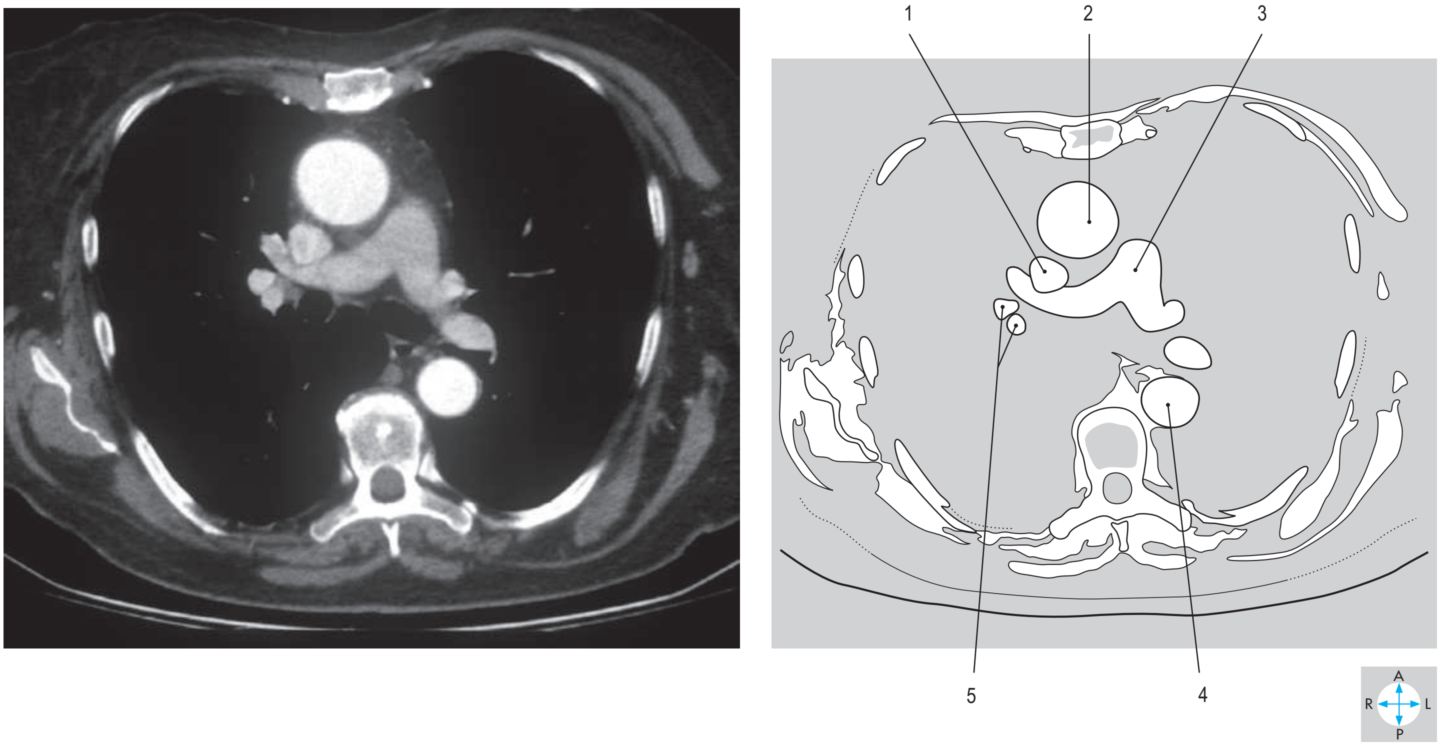


Fig. 2.69 Transverse CT image at the level of the fifth thoracic vertebra. (Compare Fig. 2.27.)

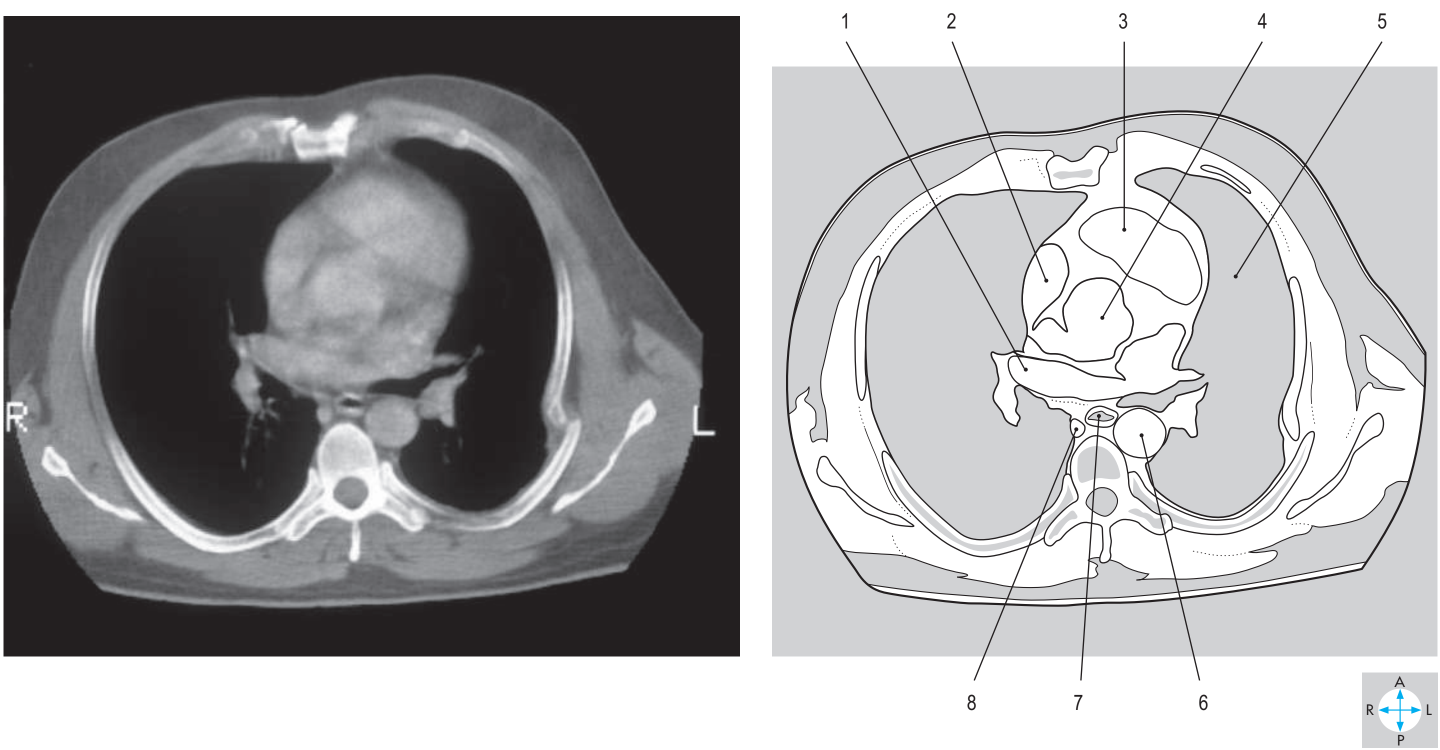


Fig. 2.70 Transverse CT image at the level of the seventh thoracic vertebra. (Compare Fig. 1.5.)

Answers:

Fig. 2.69 1 = superior vena cava; 2 = ascending aorta; 3 = bifurcation of pulmonary trunk into right and left pulmonary arteries; 4 = descending aorta; 5 = pulmonary veins.

Fig. 2.70 1 = right pulmonary vein entering left atrium; 2 = right atrium; 3 = right ventricle; 4 = infundibulum of left ventricle; 5 = left lung; 6 = descending aorta; 7 = oesophagus; 8 = azygos vein.

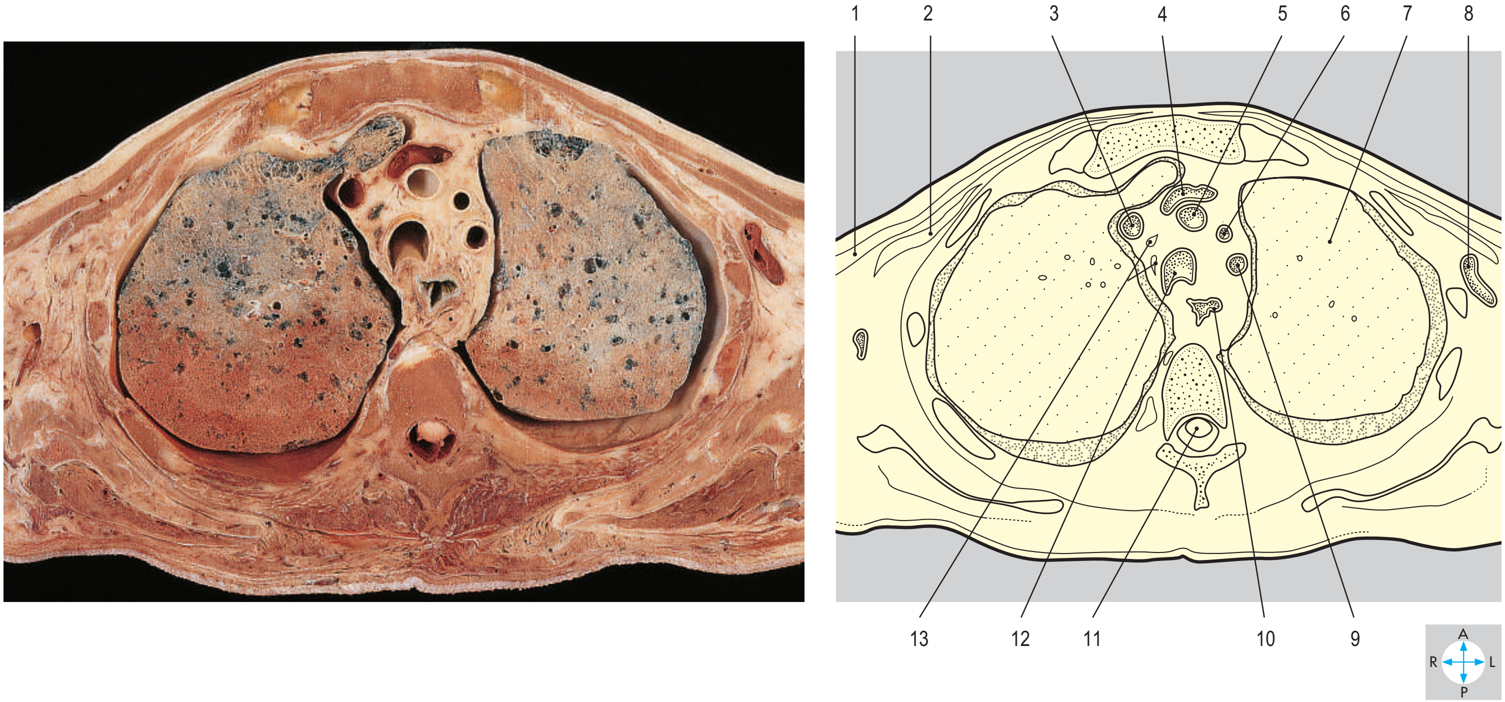


Fig. 2.71 Transverse section at the level of the third thoracic vertebra. Inferior aspect. (Compare Fig. 2.67.)

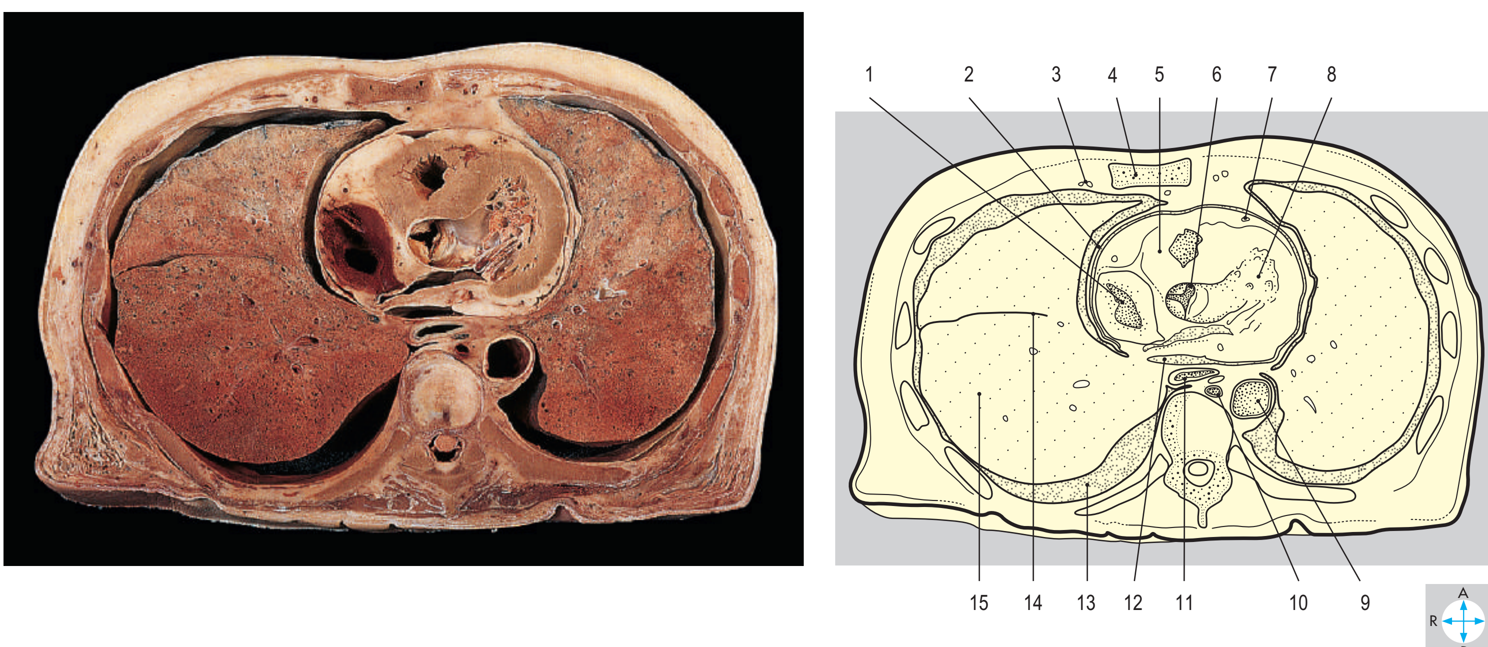


Fig. 2.72 Transverse section at the level of the sixth thoracic vertebra. Inferior aspect. (Compare Fig. 2.31.)

Answers:

Fig. 2.71 1 = pectoralis major; 2 = pectoralis minor; 3 = right brachiocephalic vein; 4 = left brachiocephalic vein; 5 = brachiocephalic trunk; 6 = left common carotid artery; 7 = left lung; 8 = left axillary vein; 9 = left subclavian artery; 10 = oesophagus; 11 = thoracic spinal cord; 12 = trachea; 13 = lymph nodes.

Fig. 2.72 1 = right atrium; 2 = fibrous pericardium; 3 = internal thoracic vessels; 4 = sternum; 5 = right ventricle; 6 = aortic valve; 7 = anterior interventricular artery; 8 = left ventricle; 9 = descending aorta; 10 = azygos vein; 11 = oesophagus; 12 = pericardial cavity; 13 = pleural cavity; 14 = oblique fissure; 15 = lower lobe of right lung.

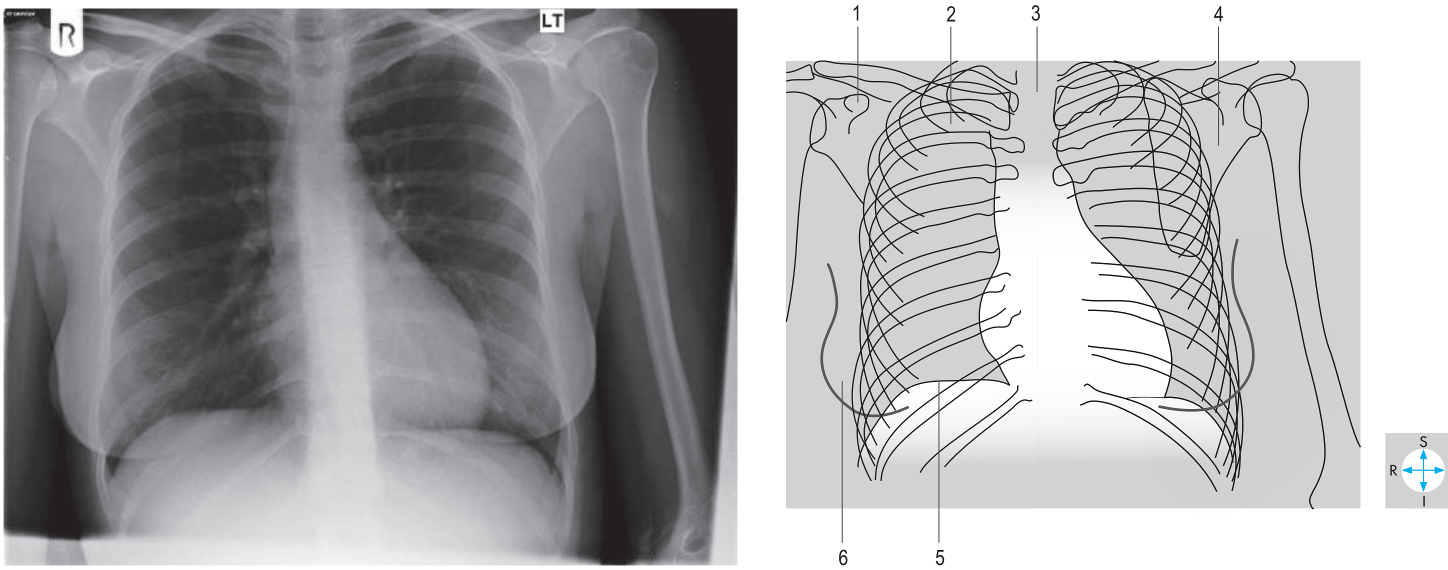


Fig. 2.73 Posteroanterior chest radiograph.

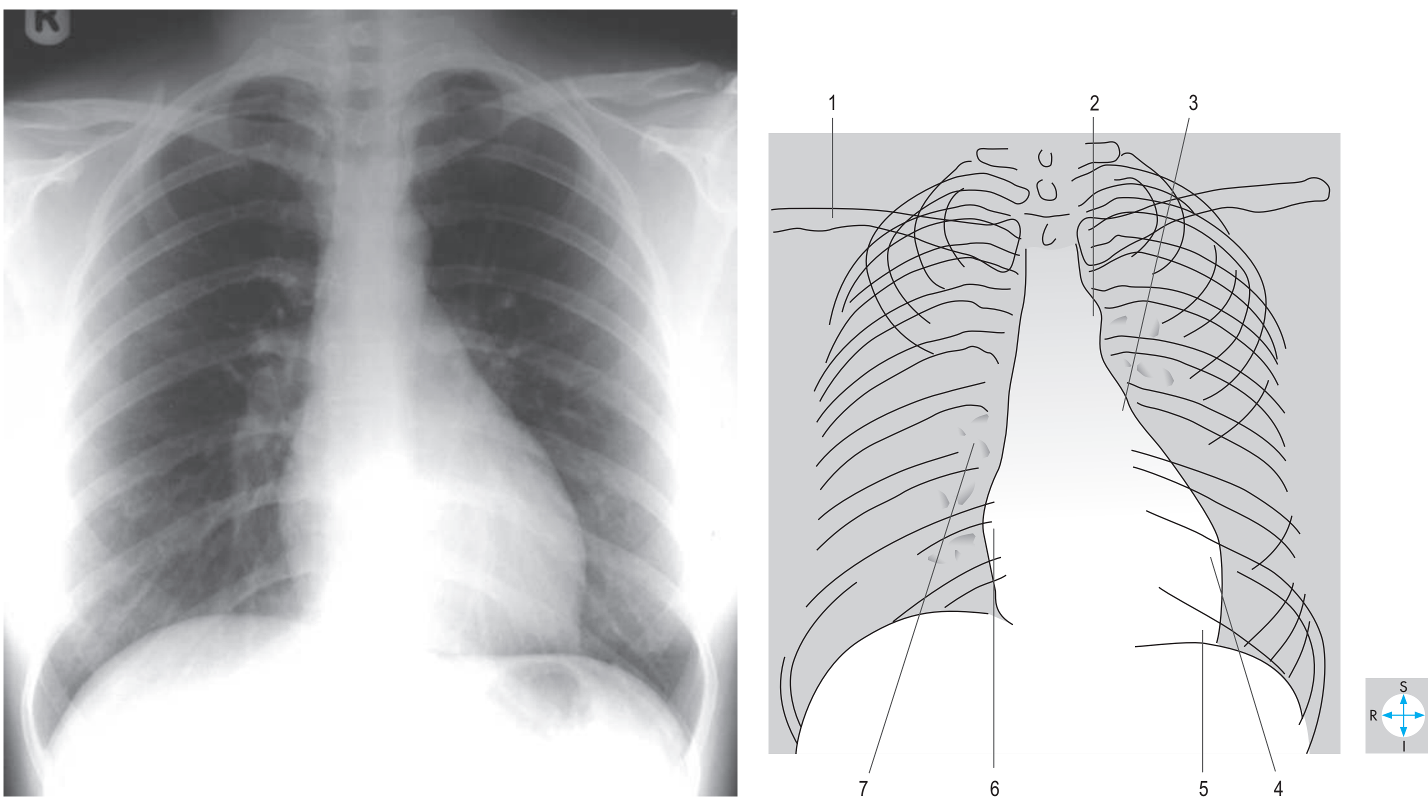


Fig. 2.74 Posteroanterior chest radiograph.

Answers:

Fig. 2.73 1 = coracoid process; 2 = first rib; 3 = trachea; 4 = blade of scapula; 5 = diaphragm; 6 = breast.

Fig. 2.74 1 = clavicle; 2 = arch of aorta; 3 = pulmonary trunk; 4 = left ventricle; 5 = apex; 6 = right atrium; 7 = hilar markings.

Chapter 3

UPPER LIMB

Introduction

The upper limb (extremity) comprises several bones and their joints (Fig. 3.1), clothed by soft tissues. For descriptive purposes, the limb is divided into regions (Fig. 3.2), each enveloped by fascia and containing muscles with nerve and vascular supplies. The scapula with its associated muscles and soft tissues comprise the scapular region, the muscles attaching between the front of the chest wall and the upper limb (together with the overlying fascia, breast and skin) constitute the pectoral region. The scapula and the clavicle, which together form the pectoral girdle, articulate at the acromioclavicular joint. The clavicle articulates with the trunk at the sternoclavicular joint and the scapula with the humerus at the glenohumeral (shoulder) joint.

Between the proximal part of the limb and the chest wall is the axilla, a region traversed by the principal nerves and vessels passing between the upper limb and the root of the neck.

The arm is that part of the upper limb between the shoulder and the elbow. The muscles of the arm are disposed in anterior (flexor) and posterior (extensor) compartments, separated by the humerus and the medial and lateral intermuscular septa (Fig. 3.3). In front of the elbow joint (at which the humerus, radius and ulna articulate) lies the cubital fossa, a region traversed by vessels and nerves passing between the arm and the forearm.

The forearm lies between the elbow and the wrist, and its muscles are arranged in anterior (flexor) and posterior (extensor) compartments, separated by the radius, ulna, and interosseous membrane (Fig. 3.4). Rotation at the proximal and distal radioulnar joints permits the hand to function in any position between the extremes of supination (palm facing up) and pronation (palm facing down).

The forearm articulates with the carpus at the wrist (radiocarpal) joint. Together with the flexor retinaculum, the bones of the carpus form the carpal tunnel, which links the anterior compartment of the forearm and the palm of the hand. The structures of the palm lie anterior to the metacarpals, while posteriorly is the dorsum of the hand. The digits are named, from lateral to medial, the thumb and the index, middle, ring and little fingers.

The skin and subcutaneous tissue of the shoulder region are supplied by supraclavicular nerves, whereas the cutaneous supply of the remainder of the upper limb is derived from the brachial plexus (Fig. 3.5). Each of the anterior (ventral) rami contributing to this plexus supplies a specific area of skin (dermatome; Fig. 3.6).

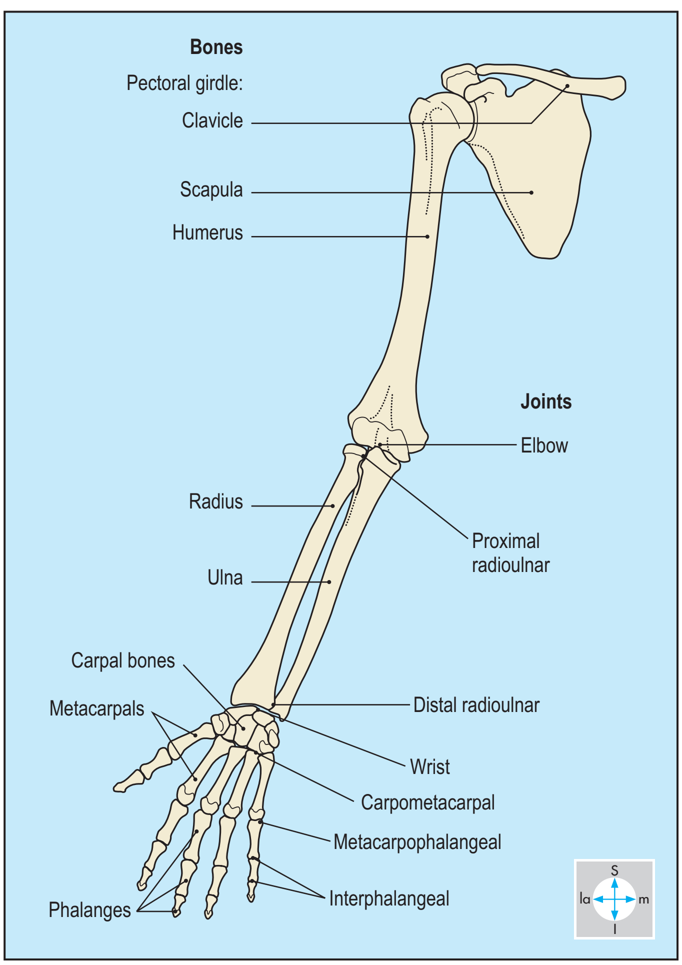


Fig. 3.1 Bones and joints of the upper limb.

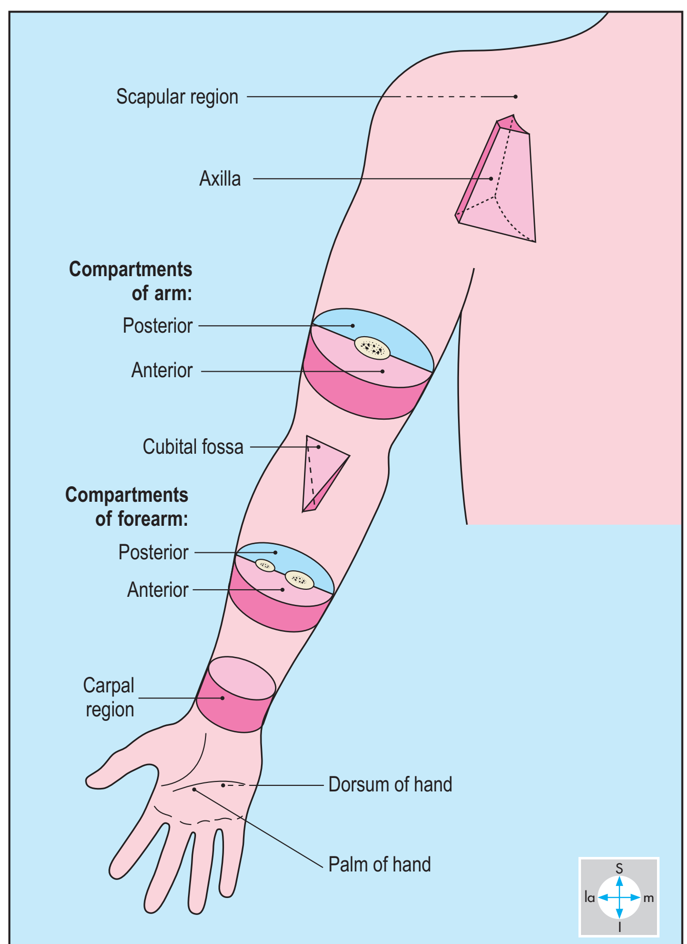


Fig. 3.2 Parts of the upper limb.

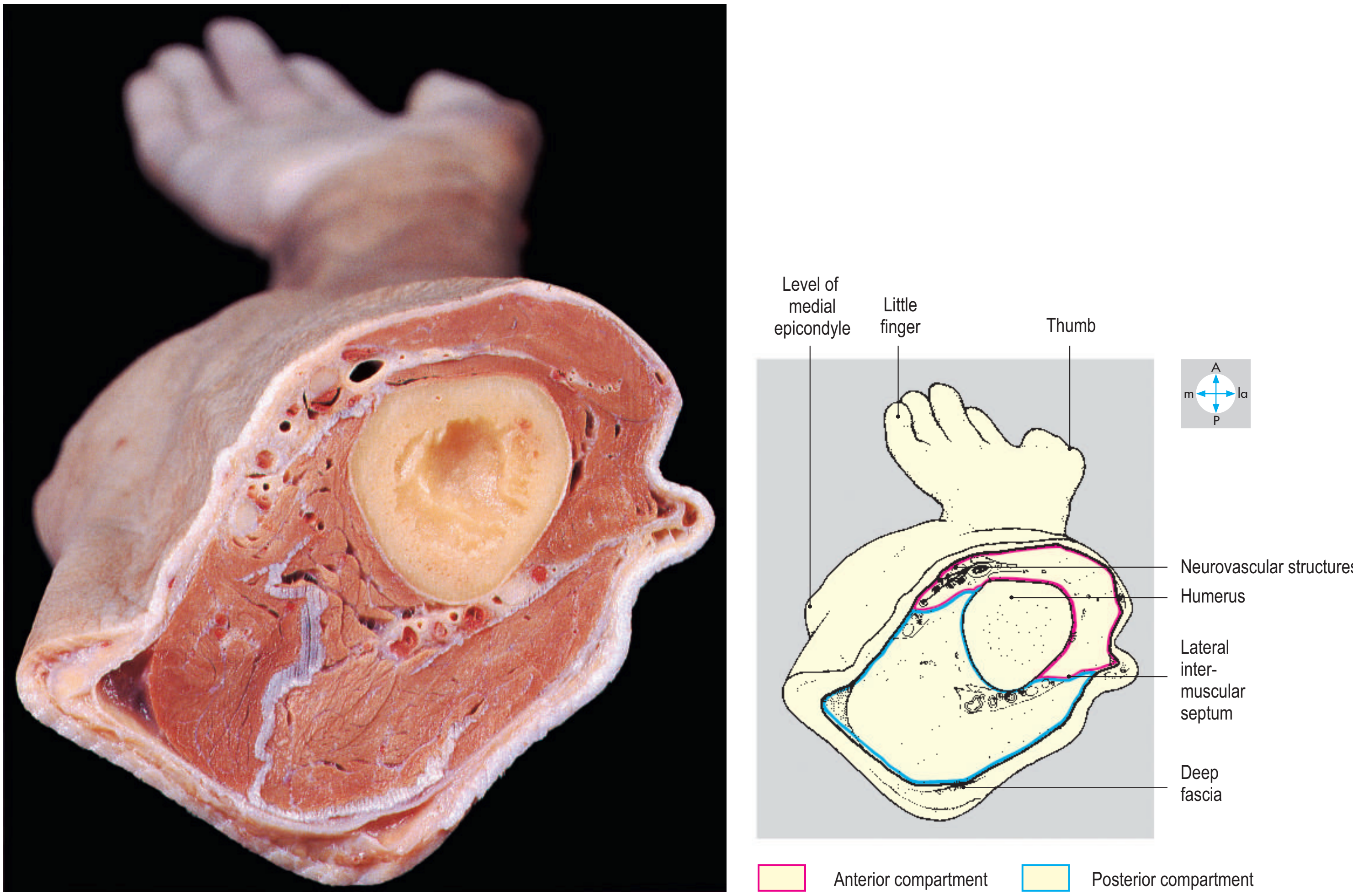


Fig. 3.3 Transverse section midway between glenohumeral and elbow joints to show the compartments of the arm.

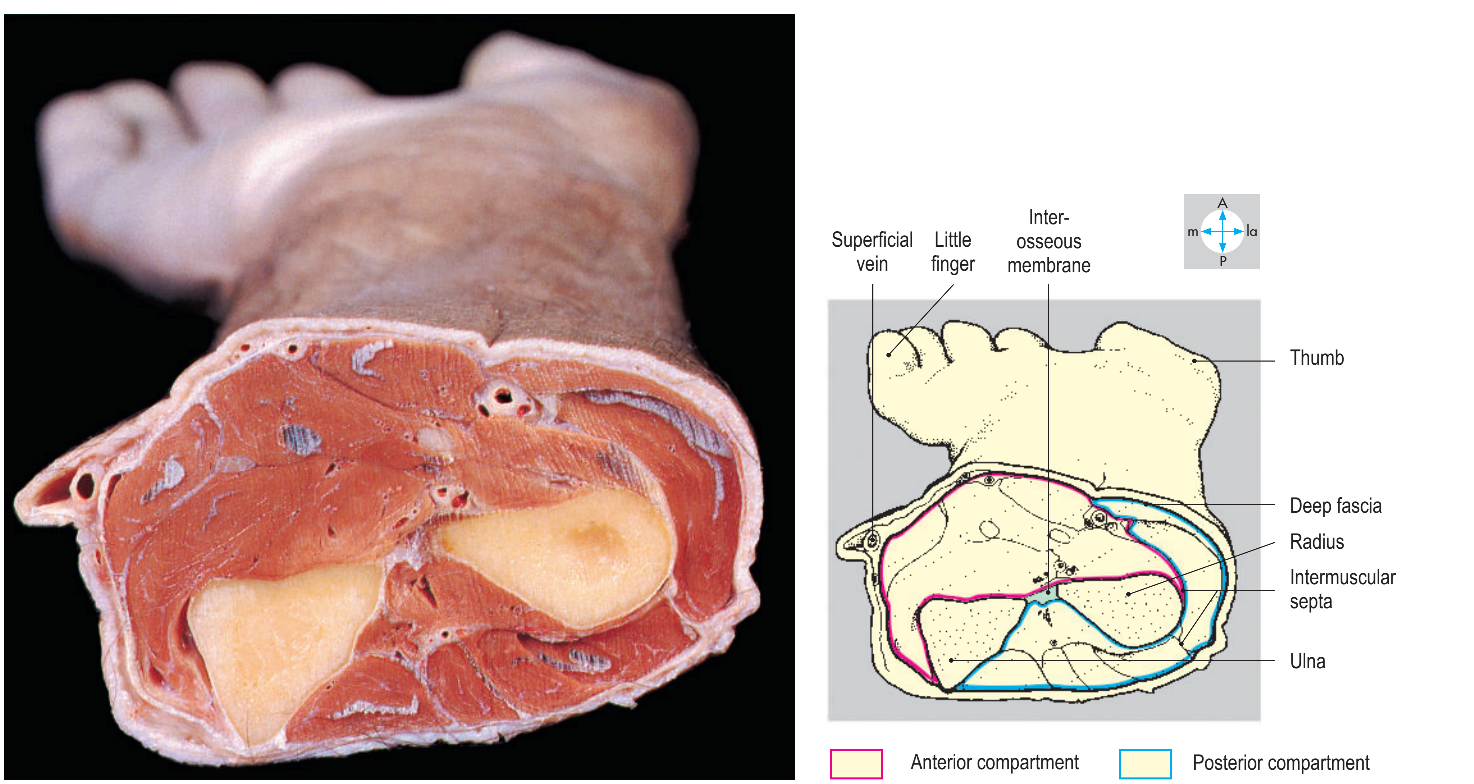


Fig. 3.4 Transverse section midway between elbow and wrist joints to show the compartments of the forearm.

Each dermatome and the area supplied by each individual superficial nerve may vary somewhat from one person to another. There is overlapping of innervation by adjacent superficial nerves. Damage to a single nerve produces anaesthesia over an area smaller than that supplied by the nerve so that identification of nerve injury requires careful testing. The ventral rami also supply specific muscles (myotomes) that can be tested clinically by assessing movements at joints (Table 3.1).

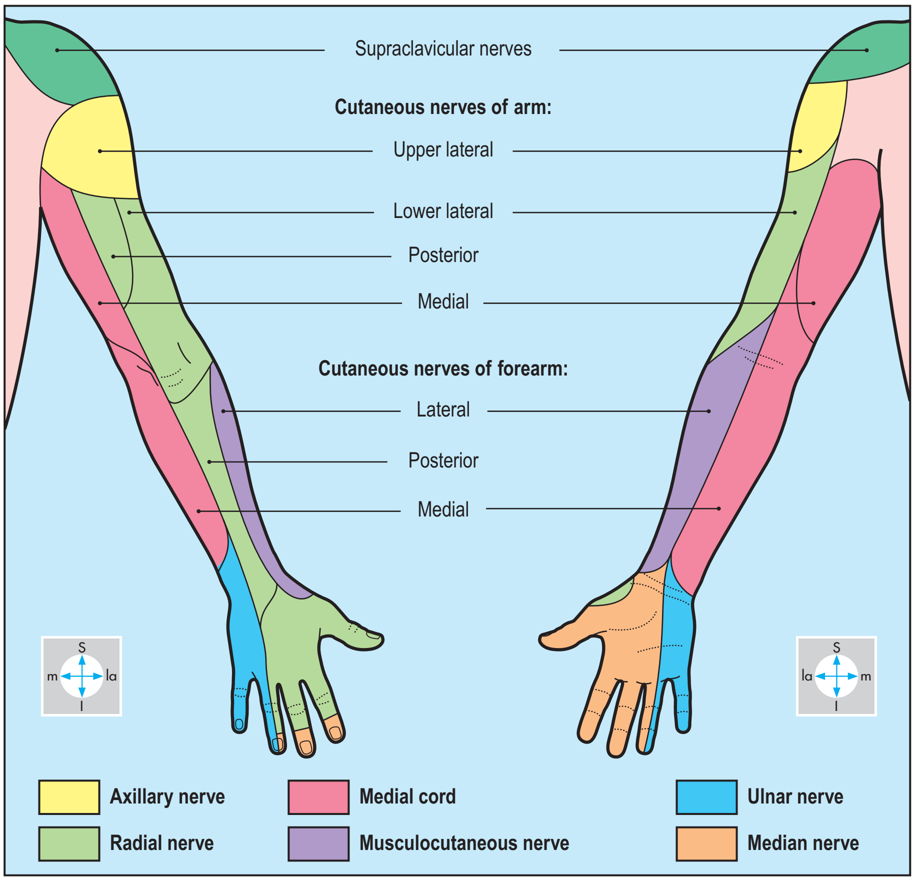


Fig. 3.5 Typical distribution of cutaneous nerves in the upper limb.

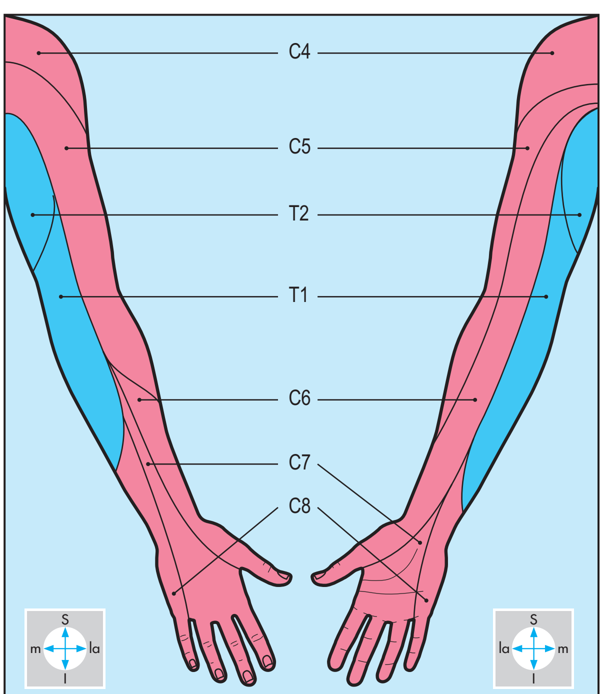


Fig. 3.6 Typical arrangement of dermatomes of upper limb. There may be considerable overlap of areas supplied.

The courses of the principal arteries are shown in Figure 3.7. In the root of the neck, the axillary artery is continuous with the subclavian artery, which derives from the brachiocephalic trunk on the right, but directly from the arch of the aorta on the left side. In the axilla and arm, there is a single main arterial channel, which terminates in the forearm by dividing into radial and ulnar arteries.

There are deep and superficial veins in the upper limb (Fig. 3.8). Deep veins accompany the arteries in the forearm and hand and consist of interconnecting networks of venae comitantes. The brachial artery may be accompanied by either one or two veins, but there is usually a single axillary vein, which drains via the subclavian into the brachiocephalic vein. The superficial veins, lying outside the muscle compartments, are often visible through the skin and those on the forearm and back of the hand are often used for venepuncture. The veins contain valves which prevent backflow of blood. The smaller superficial veins, and on occasion the main veins of the limb, are subject to considerable variation, even between the right and left sides of the same individual.

Most superficial lymphatics of the upper limb drain to the axillary nodes (p. 81), although lymph from the medial aspect of the forearm first traverses a small group of nodes near the medial aspect of the cubital fossa. In the shoulder region, some lymph may pass through supra- or infraclavicular nodes. The deep lymphatics of the limb also drain to the axillary lymph nodes. From here, lymph passes into the

Table 3.1 Segmental innervation for upper limb movements

Shoulder (glenohumeral joint)		
Action	Abduction	Adduction
Spinal segments	C5	C6
Elbow (cubital joint)		
Action	Flexion	Extension
Spinal segments	C5 and C6	C7 and C8
Reflex	Biceps jerk	Triceps jerk
Wrist (radiocarpal joint)		
Action	Flexion	Extension
Spinal segments	C6 and C7	C6 and C7
Knuckles (metacarpophalangeal joints)		
Action	Abduction and adduction of fingers	
Spinal segments	T1	

C, cervical myotomes; T, thoracic myotomes.

subclavian trunk and then into either the right lymphatic duct or, on the left, the thoracic duct (Fig. 1.34).

Figure 3.9 illustrates the important sites at which the principal nerves of the limb are closely related to bone: axillary nerve to the neck of the humerus; radial nerve to the midshaft of the humerus; ulnar nerve to the medial epicondyle; posterior interosseous nerve to the neck of the radius. Injury to one of these bones may damage the adjacent nerve. The main parts of the brachial plexus in the axilla, the cords, are continuous via the divisions and trunks in the lower part of the neck with the anterior (ventral) rami of spinal nerves C5, C6, C7, C8 and T1, which form the roots of the plexus.

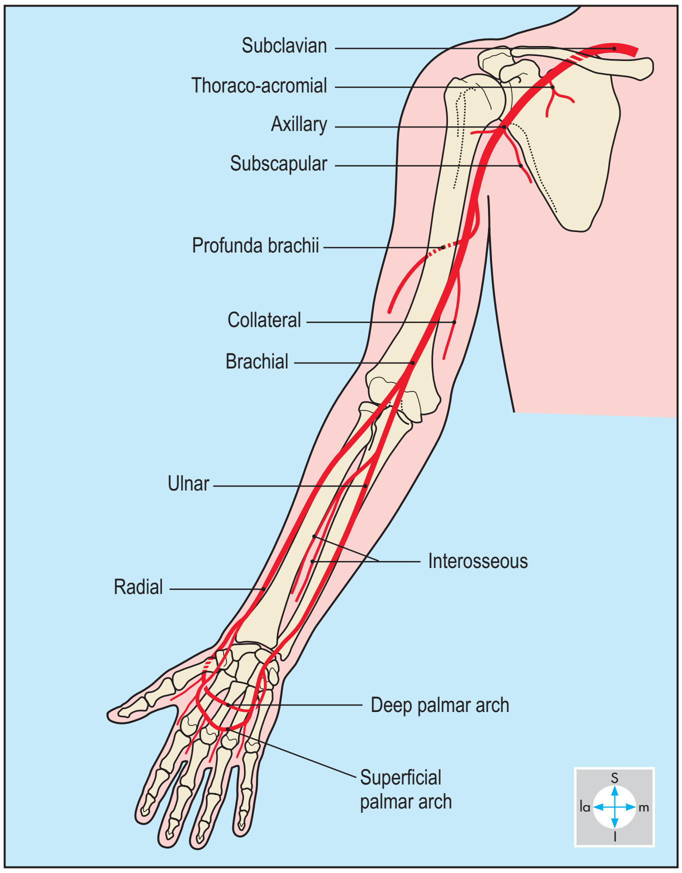


Fig. 3.7 Principal arteries of the upper limb. No muscular branches are shown.

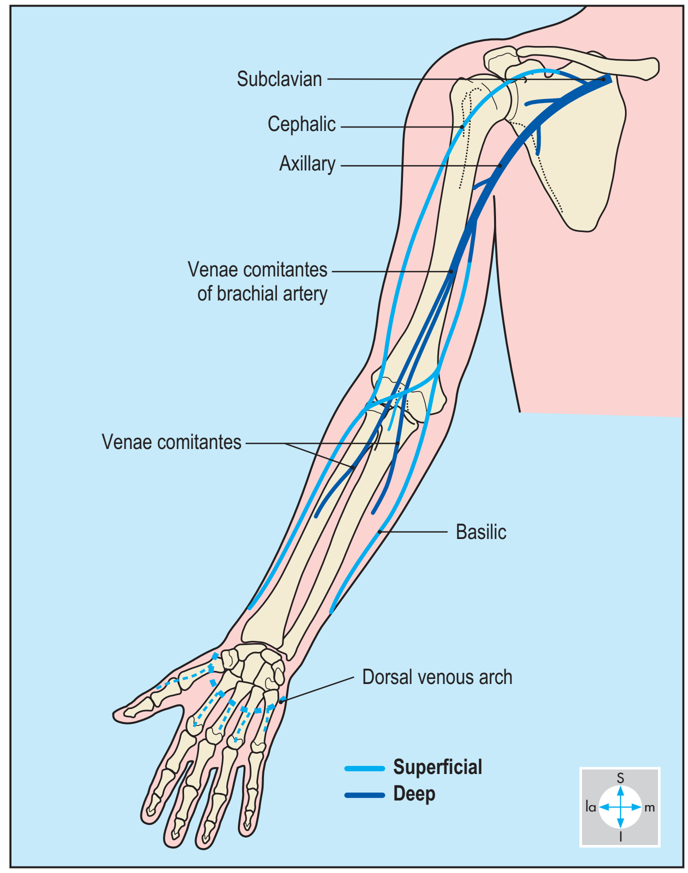


Fig. 3.8 Typical arrangement of the principal veins of the upper limb. For clarity, venae comitantes are illustrated as single channels.

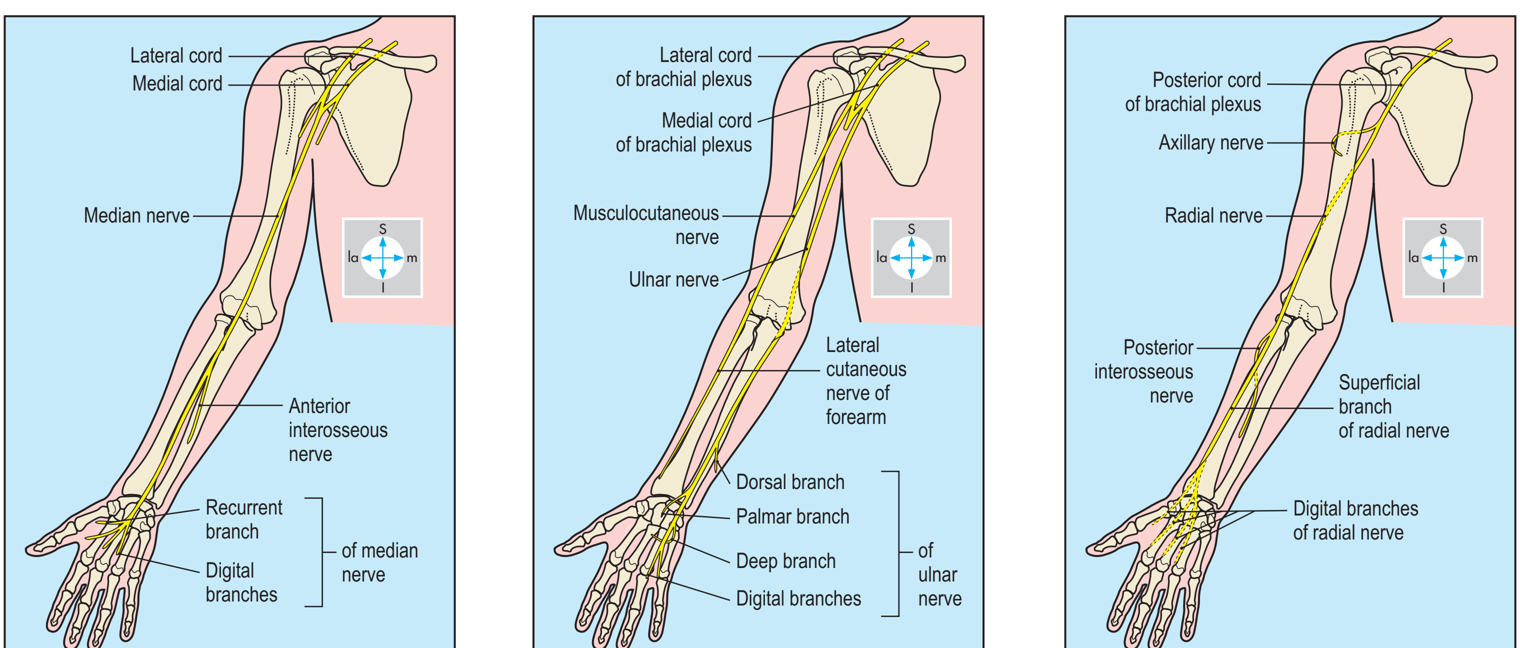


Fig. 3.9 Courses of the principal nerves of the upper limb. From left to right: median nerve, musculocutaneous and ulnar nerves, radial and axillary nerves.

Deltoid

Deltoid is a large multipennate muscle responsible for the rounded contour of the shoulder region (Fig. 3.10). The muscle overlies the shoulder joint and the attachments of the short scapular muscles to the upper end of the humerus (Fig. 3.11). Proximally, it has a continuous attachment to the lateral third of the clavicle and to the acromion and spine of the scapula. The distal attachment is to a roughened area, the deltoid tuberosity, midway down the lateral surface of the shaft of the humerus (Fig. 3.23). Deltoid acts only on the shoulder joint, where it is the main abductor. During this movement, produced by the acromial fibres, the joint is stabilized by the clavicular fibres and those from the scapular spine. Acting alone, the anterior fibres produce flexion, whereas the posterior fibres extend the shoulder joint. Deltoid is supplied by the axillary nerve, a terminal branch of the posterior cord of the brachial plexus.

Axillary nerve

The axillary nerve leaves the axilla through the quadrangular space (Fig. 3.64) accompanied by the posterior circumflex humeral artery. In its course, the nerve is closely related to the surgical neck of the humerus and to the capsule of the shoulder joint. It supplies deltoid and teres minor, the shoulder joint and skin overlying the lower part of deltoid. Damage to the nerve may occur during dislocation of the shoulder joint, resulting in weakness of abduction, impaired sensation and, subsequently, in loss of the normal contour of the shoulder as the deltoid muscle becomes wasted.

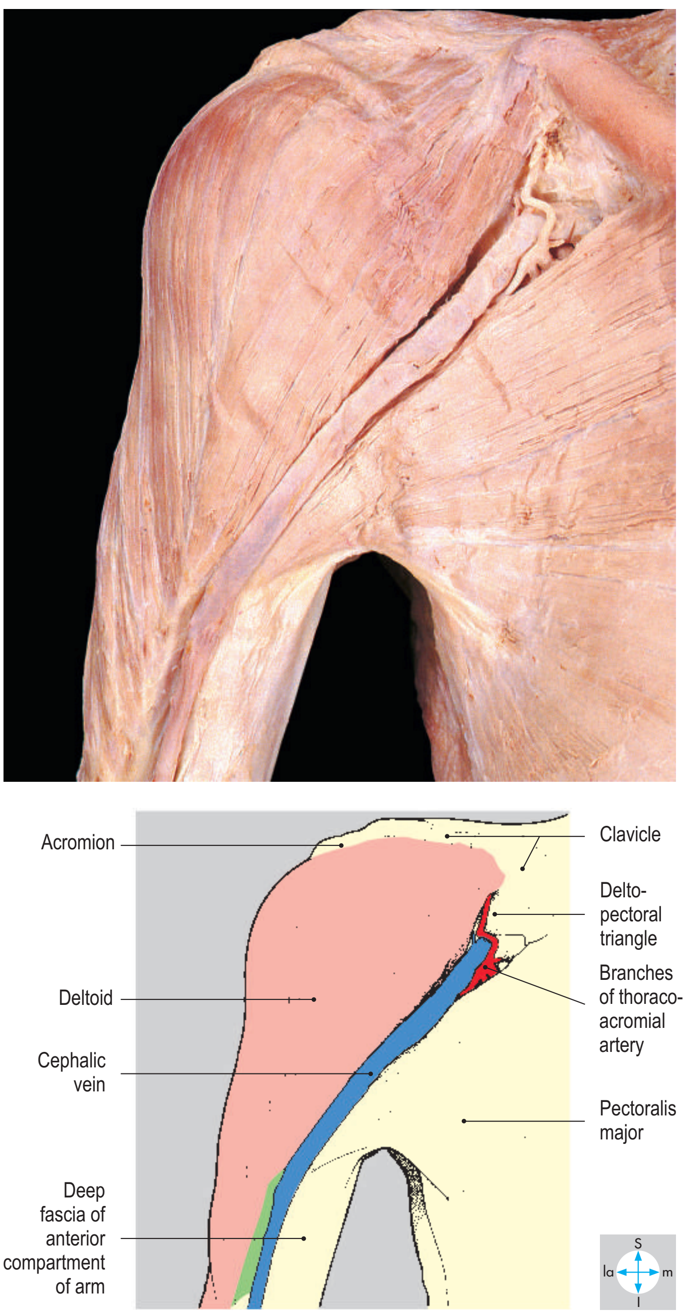


Fig. 3.10 Anterior view of deltoid. The cephalic vein lies in the deltopectoral groove. Deformity of the clavicle is due to a healed fracture.

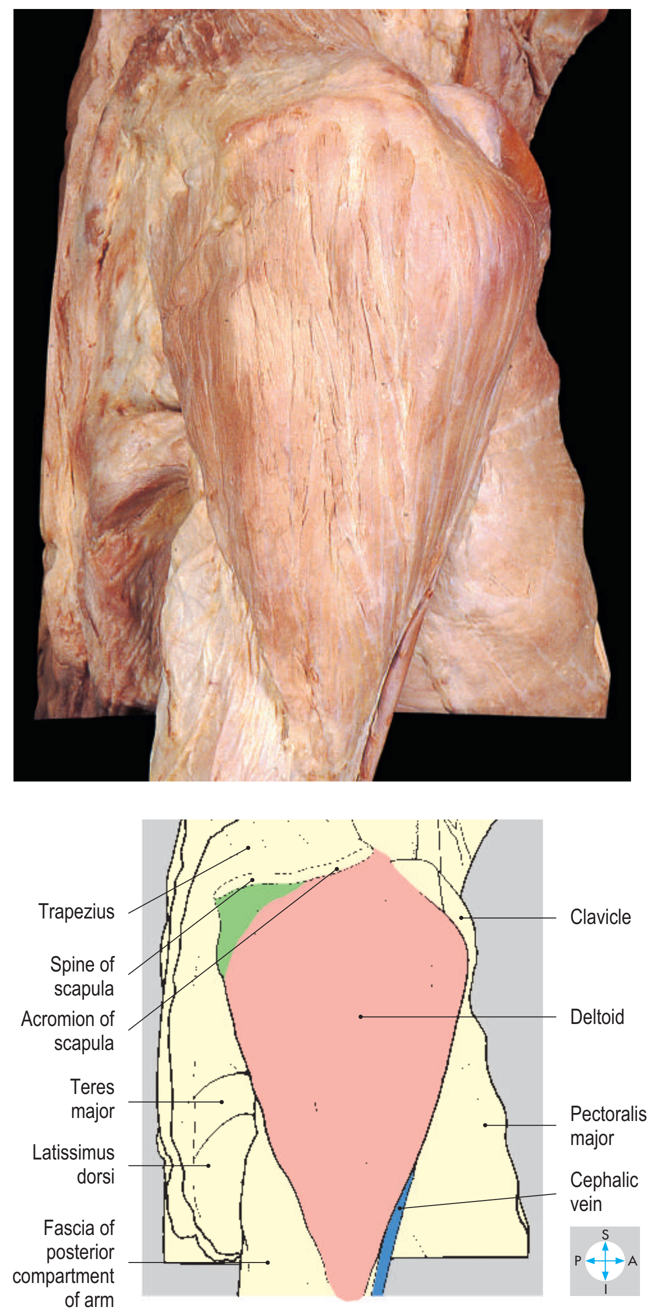


Fig. 3.11 Lateral view. Deltoid has a continuous proximal attachment to the spine and acromion of the scapula and the lateral part of the clavicle.

Axilla

The axilla is the space between the root of the upper limb and the chest wall. It is traversed by the principal vessels and nerves that pass between the upper limb and the root of the neck. The shape and size of the axilla vary according to the position of the shoulder joint but when the limb is in the anatomical position the axilla is shaped as a truncated pyramid with a narrow apex (inlet) superiorly, a broad base and three walls (Fig. 3.12).

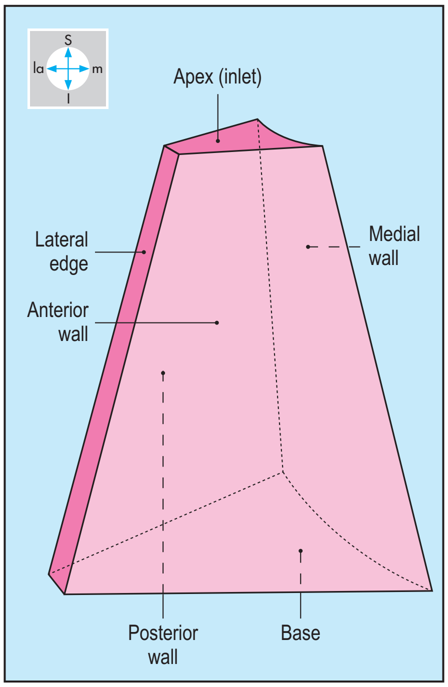


Fig. 3.12 Shape of the axilla.

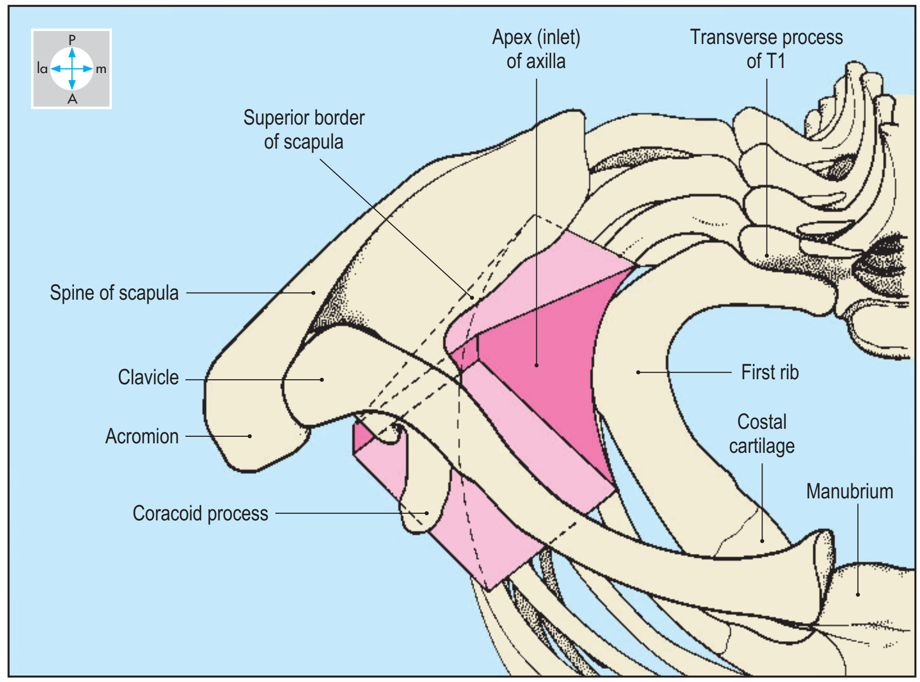


Fig. 3.13 Axilla from above, showing the boundaries of its apex.

Walls

The upper ribs and intercostal spaces, covered by serratus anterior, form the medial wall (Fig. 3.15), which is convex laterally. The anterior wall consists of pectoralis major overlying pectoralis minor and subclavius (Figs 3.14 & 3.16), while the posterior wall is formed by subscapularis, teres major and latissimus dorsi. The muscles of the anterior and posterior walls converge on the humerus (Fig. 3.15) so that the axilla is limited laterally by the narrow intertubercular sulcus of the humerus. The base of the axilla, convex upwards, is formed by fascia passing between the inferior margins of the anterior and posterior walls. The triangular apex of the axilla provides continuity between the root of the neck and the upper limb and is bounded by the clavicle, the superior border of the scapula and the first rib (Fig. 3.13).

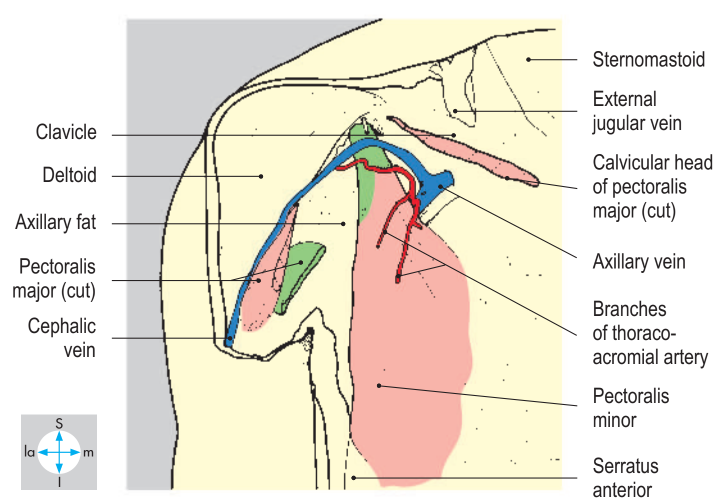


Fig. 3.14 Structures that pass above pectoralis minor in the anterior wall of the axilla. Pectoralis major and fascia around pectoralis minor have been removed.

Contents

The axilla contains the axillary artery and its branches, the axillary vein and its tributaries, parts of the brachial plexus and the axillary lymph nodes.

Coracobrachialis and the short and long heads of biceps brachii traverse the axilla. In addition, the tail of the breast usually enters the axilla. All these structures are embedded in loose fatty connective tissue (Fig. 3.15).

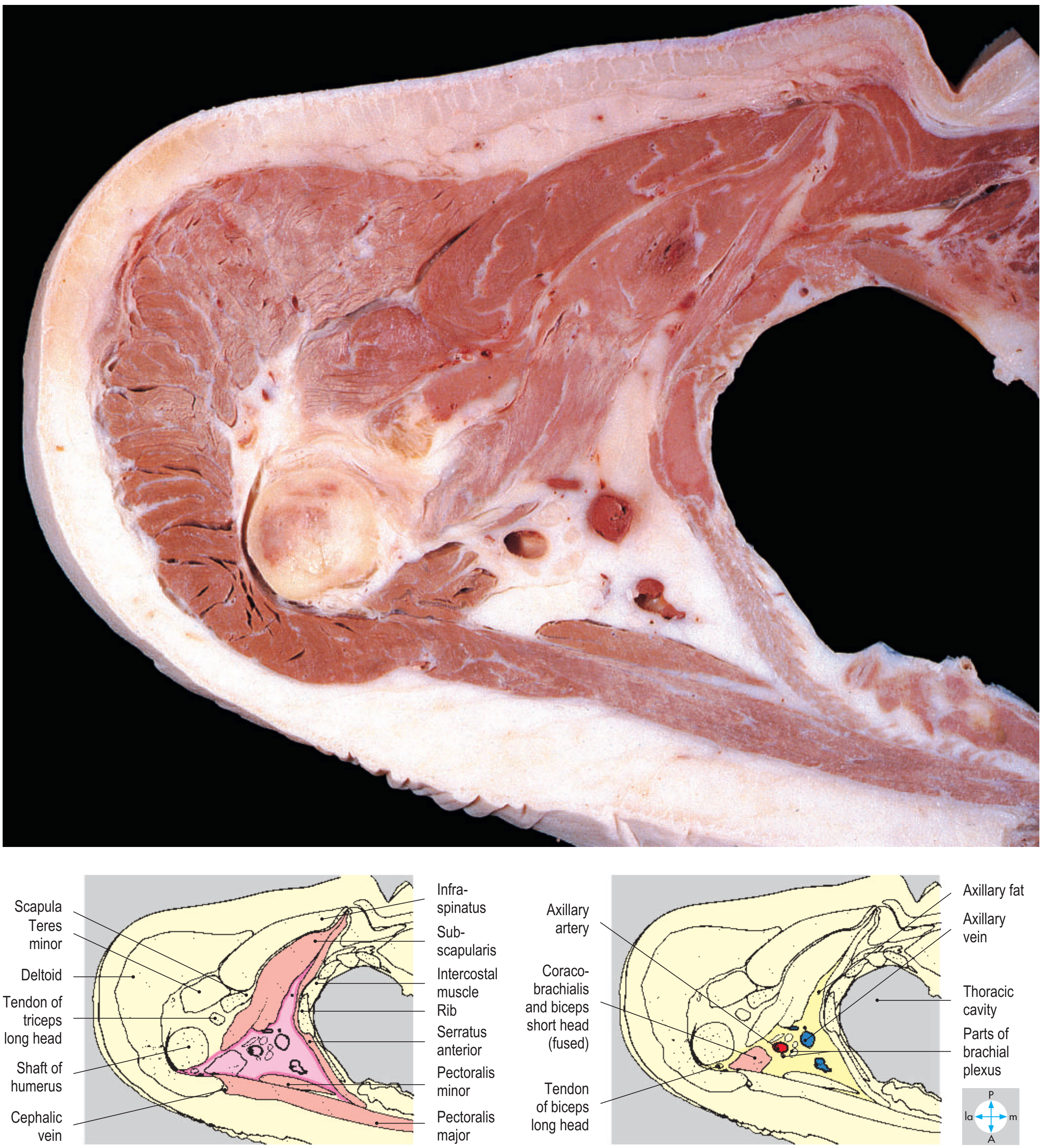


Fig. 3.15 Transverse section showing (left) the walls and (right) the contents of the axilla. Superior aspect. The lung has been removed.

Axillary artery

The subclavian artery continues as the axillary artery beyond the lateral edge of the first rib. Near the inlet, the axillary artery lies posterior to the axillary vein (Figs 3.16 & 3.17) but more distally, the artery lies lateral to the vein close to the humerus. The axillary artery and parts of the brachial plexus that surround it are bound together by a fibrous layer called the axillary sheath. Local anaesthetic injected inside the sheath will spread to produce a brachial plexus nerve block. Coracobrachialis and the short head of biceps brachii lie lateral to the artery, while pectoralis minor crosses it anteriorly. By convention, the axillary artery is described in parts which lie above, behind and below pectoralis minor. Distal to the lower border of teres major, the vessel continues into the arm as the brachial artery (Fig. 3.18).

Branches of the axillary artery supply the walls of the axilla and adjacent structures. The thoracoacromial artery (Fig. 3.14) supplies the anterior wall, while the superior thoracic and lateral thoracic arteries supply the medial and anterior walls. The

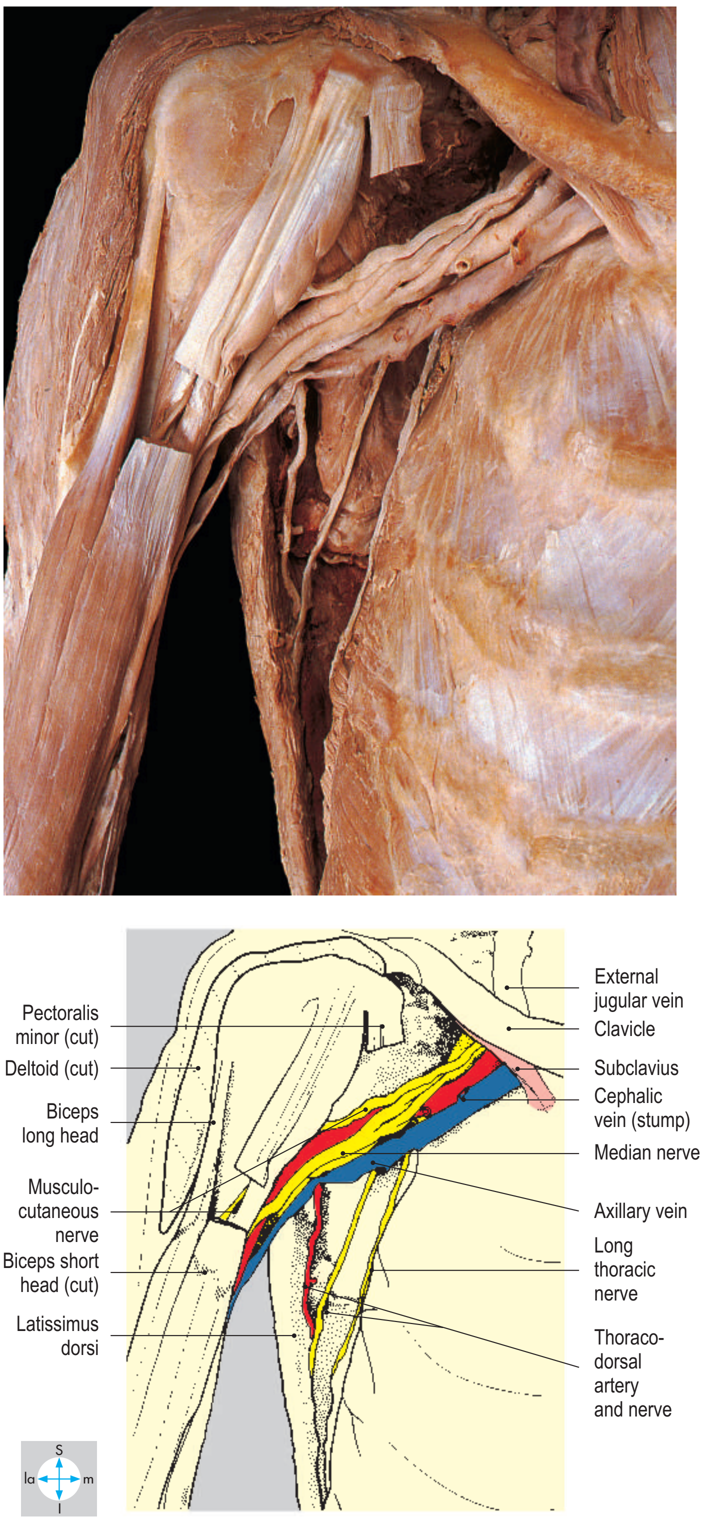


Fig. 3.16 Axillary neurovascular bundle, exposed by removal of the pectoral muscles and axillary fat.

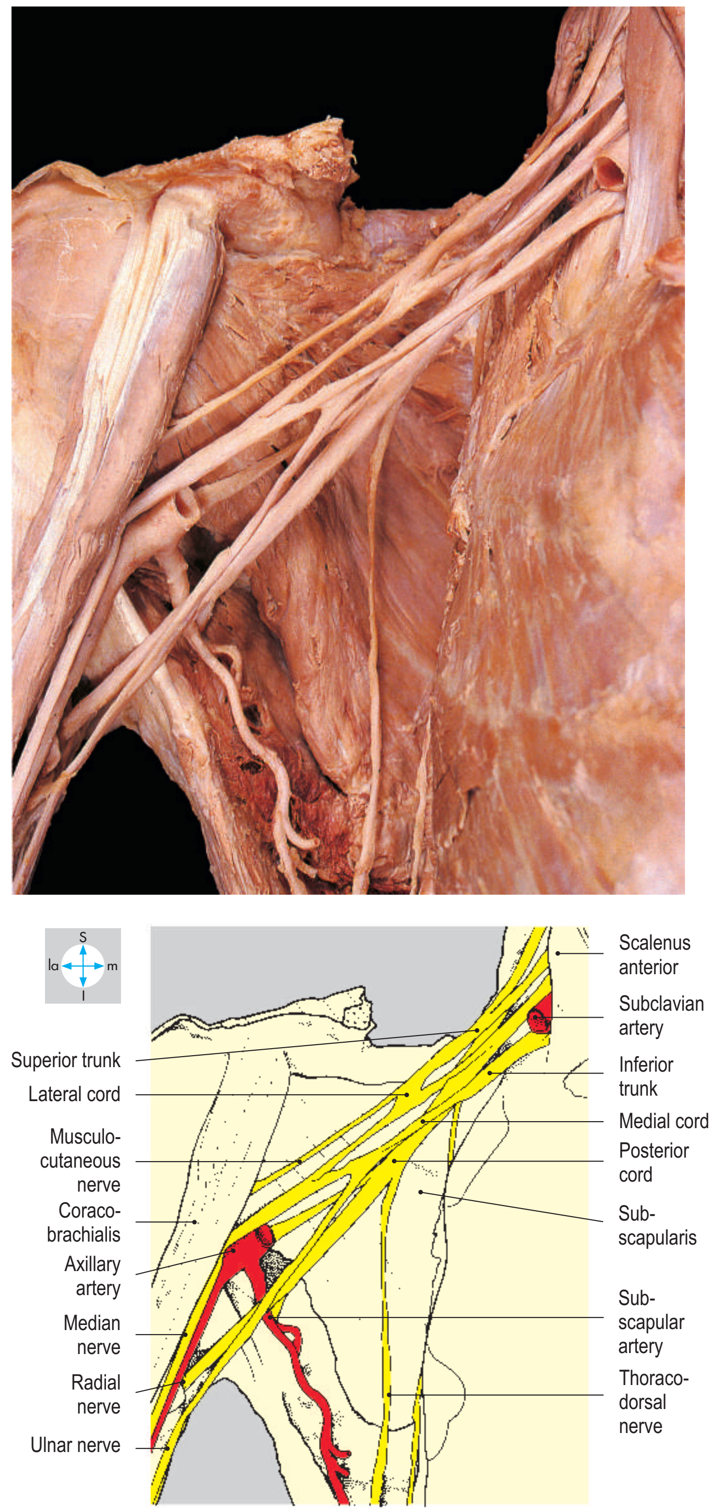


Fig. 3.17 Components of the brachial plexus. The clavicle and the veins and most of the axillary artery have been removed.

thoracoacromial and lateral thoracic arteries also supply part of the breast. The posterior wall is supplied by the subscapular artery. The anterior and posterior circumflex humeral arteries (Fig. 3.18) pass laterally and encircle the surgical neck of the humerus, supplying the shoulder joint and the upper part of the arm. An important collateral circulation, the scapular anastomosis is formed by communication between the circumflex scapular branch of the subscapular artery and the suprascapular branch from the thyrocervical trunk, a branch of the subclavian artery. These, and anastomoses involving transverse cervical and posterior intercostal arteries, may enable blood to bypass blockages in the subclavian and axillary arteries.

Axillary vein

The venae comitantes of the brachial artery unite with the basilic vein in the upper part of the arm and continue as the axillary vein above the inferior border of teres major. The vein ascends medial to the axillary artery (Fig. 3.16), passing behind pectoralis minor, and crosses the lateral edge of the first rib to continue as the subclavian vein, lying anterior to its companion artery. A major tributary of the axillary vein is the cephalic vein, which ascends in the groove between deltoid and pectoralis major. Just below the clavicle, it enters the axilla by piercing the fascia above pectoralis minor (Fig. 3.14). The progress of a catheter inserted proximally along the cephalic vein may be impeded by the acute angulations often present near its termination in the axillary vein above pectoralis minor. The axillary vein receives other tributaries, which in general correspond to the branches of the axillary artery.

Brachial plexus

The whole plexus is described here, although only the divisions, cords and certain branches lie within the axilla. The brachial plexus supplies the upper limb and consists of a branching network of nerves derived from the anterior rami of the lower four cervical and the first thoracic spinal nerves. Occasionally, the plexus receives a major contribution from cervical nerve four (said to be a pre-fixed plexus) or from the second thoracic nerve (post-fixed plexus). The plexus enables nerve fibres originating in several spinal cord segments to be distributed to each peripheral branch. Knowledge of the segmental arrangement and distribution is necessary for accurate diagnosis in diseases or injuries involving the spinal cord or the brachial plexus. The parts of the plexus are named, from proximal to distal: roots, trunks, divisions and cords (Fig. 3.19). The five roots (anterior rami) give rise to three trunks (superior, middle and inferior), which emerge between scalenus medius and scalenus anterior to lie in the floor of the posterior triangle of the neck (p. 326). The roots of the plexus lie deep to the prevertebral fascia, while the trunks are covered by its lateral extension, the axillary sheath. Each trunk divides into an anterior and a posterior division behind the clavicle, at the apex of the axilla. Within the axilla, the divisions combine to produce the three cords, which are named lateral, medial and posterior, according to their relationships to the axillary artery. Each cord ends near the lower border of pectoralis minor by dividing into two terminal branches. Other branches of the plexus arise in the neck and axilla directly from the roots,

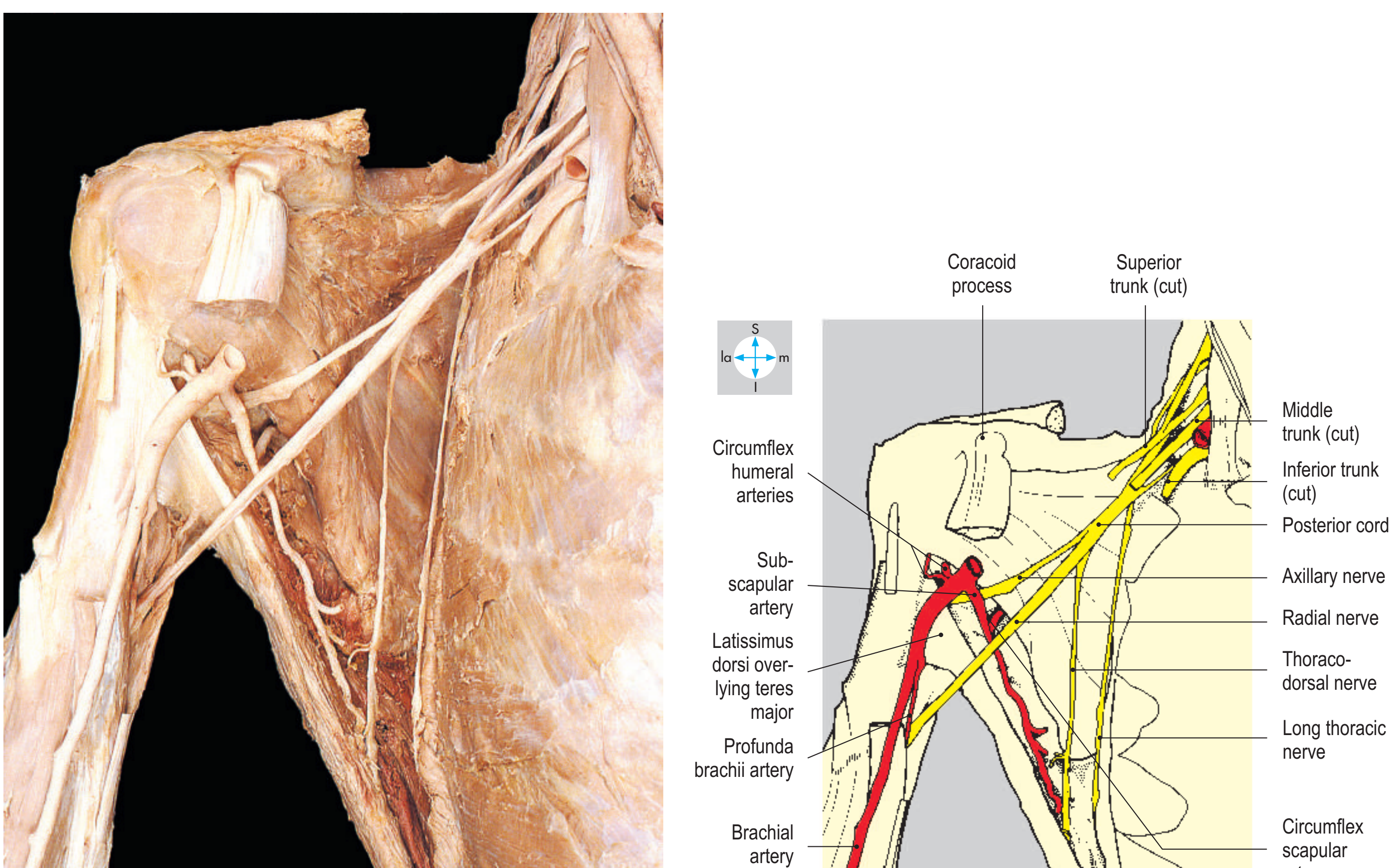


Fig. 3.18 Some posterior branches of the brachial plexus seen after removal of the more anterior parts of the plexus. Biceps brachii and coracobrachialis have been excised.

trunks and cords (Fig. 3.20). The anterior divisions form the lateral and medial cords (Fig. 3.17), whose branches supply the flexor muscles of the arm, forearm and hand, and the skin overlying the flexor compartments. The three posterior divisions unite to form the posterior cord (Fig. 3.18), the branches of which supply the extensor musculature of the shoulder, arm and forearm and the skin of the posterior surface of the limb.

Axillary lymph nodes

The axillary lymph nodes receive lymph not only from the upper limb but also from the superficial tissues of the trunk above the level of the umbilicus, including the breast.

The nodes are described in groups according to their positions in the axilla. Anteriorly lies the pectoral group, which drains the lateral and anterior aspects of the body wall including the breast. Laterally, along the axillary vessels, is the humeral (lateral) group of nodes, which receives most of the lymph from the upper limb. Posteriorly the subscapular nodes receive lymph from the dorsal aspect of the body wall. Within the axilla, efferent lymph channels drain centrally and then proximally to apical nodes from which a subclavian lymph trunk arises; this terminates in the root of the neck by joining, on the right, the right lymphatic duct or, on the left, the thoracic duct. Sometimes the lymph trunks join the subclavian vein directly (p. 330). Clinical examination often includes palpation of the axillary lymph nodes, for example in breast disease. When malignant disease is present, the axilla may be explored surgically to identify sentinel lymph nodes.

The principal vessels and nerves entering or leaving the axilla are listed in Table 3.2.

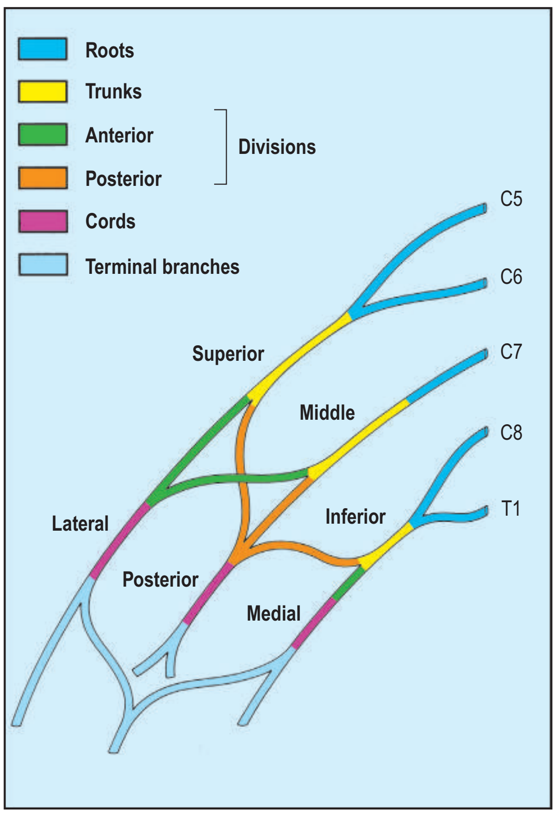


Fig. 3.19 Main components of the brachial plexus in their usual arrangement.

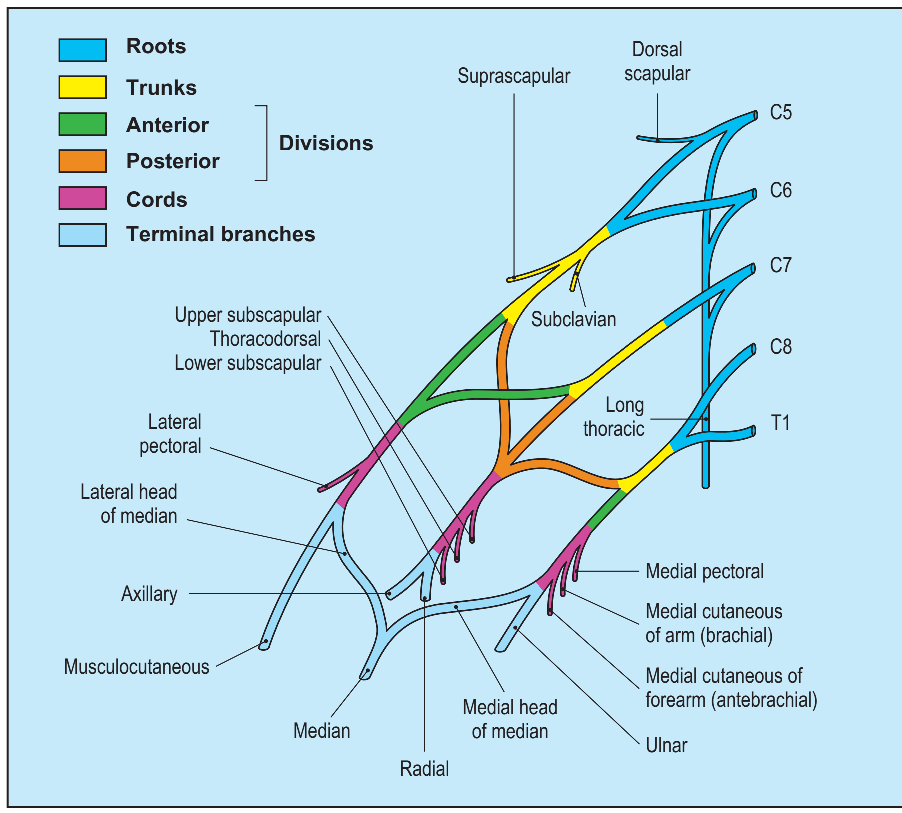


Fig. 3.20 Branches of the brachial plexus. The arrangement of these nerves may vary considerably.

Table 3.2 Principal vessels and nerves entering or leaving the axilla

Between axilla and root of neck (via inlet of axilla)	Between axilla and arm (lateral to fascia of axillary floor)	Through anterior wall (via interval between clavicle and pectoralis minor)	Through posterior wall (via triangular and quadrangular intermuscular spaces)
Subclavian/axillary artery Axillary/subclavian vein Trunks/divisions of brachial plexus Subclavian lymph trunk	Axillary/brachial artery Brachial/axillary vein Median nerve C6, C7, C8, T1 Musculocutaneous nerve C5, C6, C7 Ulnar nerve C8, T1 Radial nerve C5, C6, C7, C8 Brachial lymphatics	Thoracoacromial artery Cephalic vein Pectoral nerves C5, C6, C7, C8, T1 Deltopectoral lymphatics	Circumflex branch of subscapular artery Axillary nerve C5, C6 with posterior circumflex humeral artery

Anterior Compartment of the Arm

The anterior compartment of the arm contains three muscles (biceps brachii, coracobrachialis and brachialis), the brachial artery with its venae comitantes and three nerves (the median, ulnar and musculocutaneous nerves).

Muscles

The three muscles of the compartment are supplied by the musculocutaneous nerve. The two heads of biceps separate proximally (Fig. 3.21) and have tendinous attachments to the scapula. The short head lies medially and attaches to the tip of the coracoid process. The tendon of the long head attaches to the supraglenoid tubercle, leaves the shoulder joint deep to the transverse humeral ligament and continues distally in the intertubercular sulcus deep to the tendon of pectoralis major. The muscle bellies fuse and are attached by a tendon (Fig. 3.27) to the tuberosity of the radius and by the bicipital aponeurosis, which fuses with deep fascia on the medial side of the forearm. Biceps is a strong flexor of the elbow and supinator of the forearm at the radioulnar joints, and a weak flexor of the shoulder joint.

Coracobrachialis attaches to the coracoid process with the short head of biceps. The muscle attaches distally to the medial side of the shaft of the humerus near its midpoint (Fig. 3.23). Coracobrachialis is pierced by the musculocutaneous nerve (Fig. 3.22) and functions as a weak flexor and adductor of the shoulder joint.

Brachialis lies deeply and has an extensive attachment to the anterior surface of the distal half of the shaft of the humerus

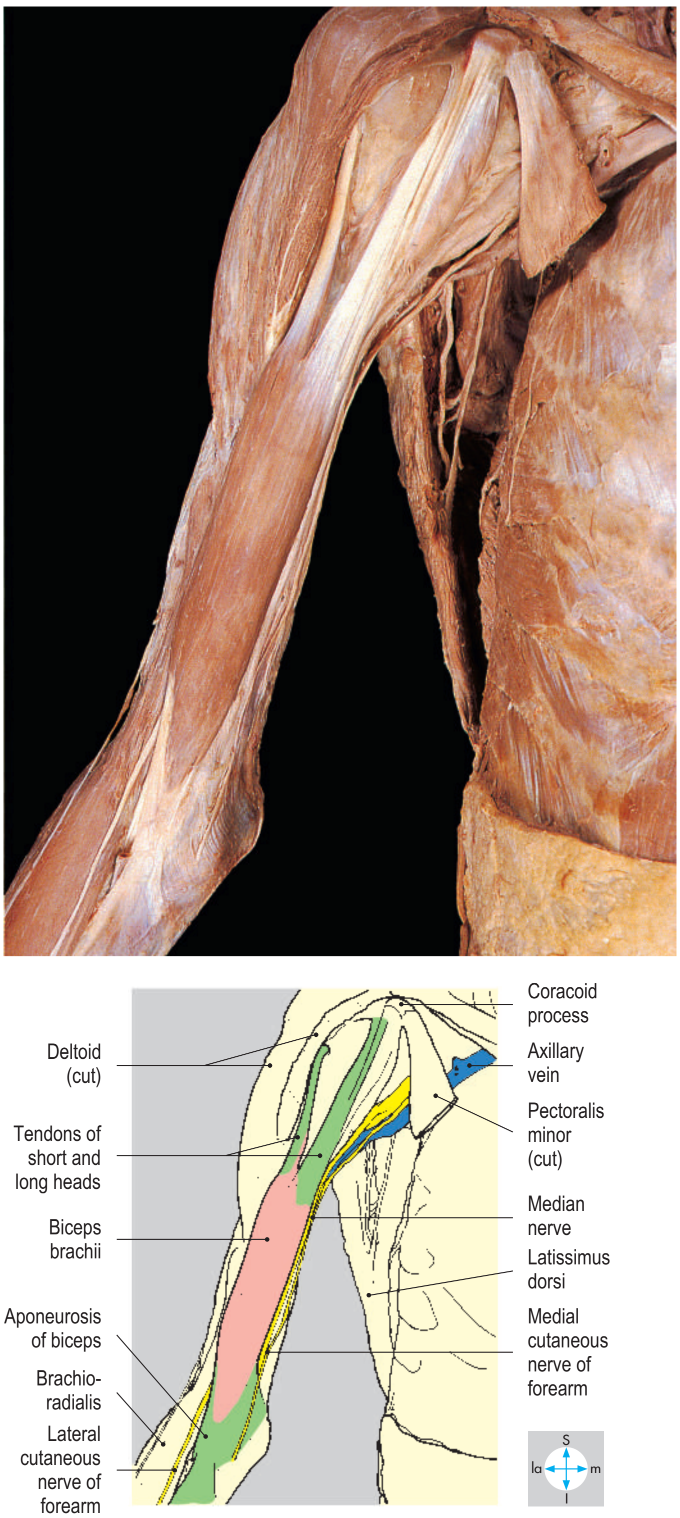


Fig. 3.21 Anterior view of biceps brachii after removal of deep fascia and anterior fibres of deltoid.

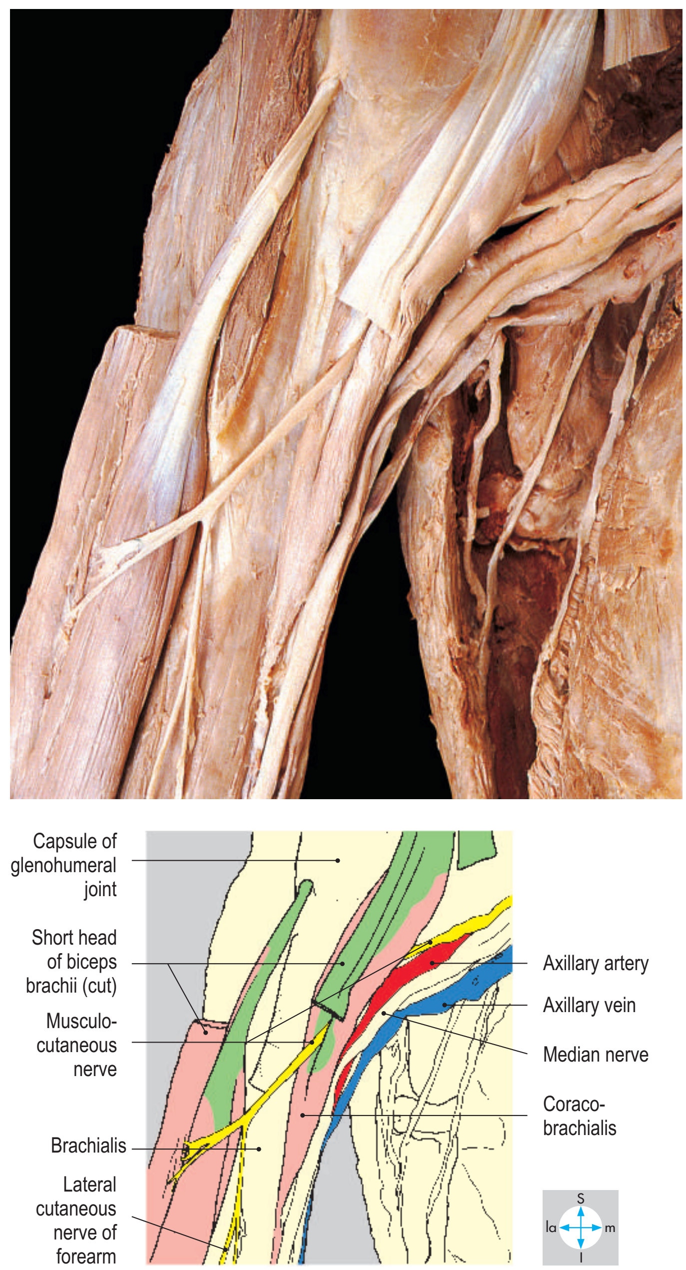


Fig. 3.22 The musculocutaneous nerve piercing coracobrachialis. The short head of biceps brachii has been divided and the muscle reflected laterally.

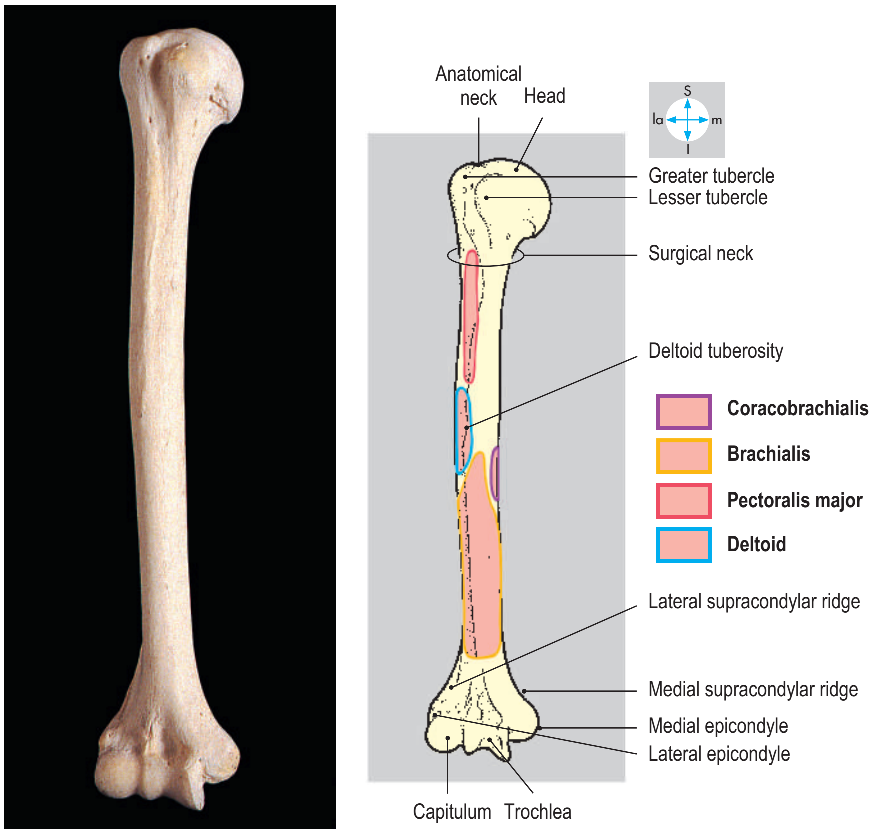


Fig. 3.23 Anterior aspect of humerus.

(Fig. 3.23) and adjacent intermuscular septa. The muscle passes to the coronoid process of the ulna (Fig. 3.34) and acts as a powerful flexor of the elbow joint.

Vessels

The brachial artery is the continuation of the axillary artery distal to teres major. In the upper part of the arm, the brachial artery with its venae comitantes is accompanied by the median and ulnar nerves (Fig. 3.24) and the medial cutaneous nerve of the forearm. The artery passes distally and laterally, lying medial to biceps and anterior to coracobrachialis and brachialis. An important branch, the profunda brachii artery (p. 107), supplies the posterior compartment of the arm. Division of the brachial artery into its terminal radial and ulnar branches usually occurs in the cubital fossa but may occur more proximally. The brachial artery is vulnerable to injury in fractures just proximal to the humeral epicondyles, with risk of subsequent fibrosis in forearm muscles (Volkmann's ischaemic contracture).

Venae comitantes, ascending from the cubital fossa, accompany the brachial artery and are joined by the basilic vein after it has pierced the deep fascia at about midarm level. At the lower border of the axilla the venous channels usually combine to form a single axillary vein.

Nerves

The musculocutaneous nerve (Fig. 3.22) is a terminal branch of the lateral cord. It pierces coracobrachialis and lies between

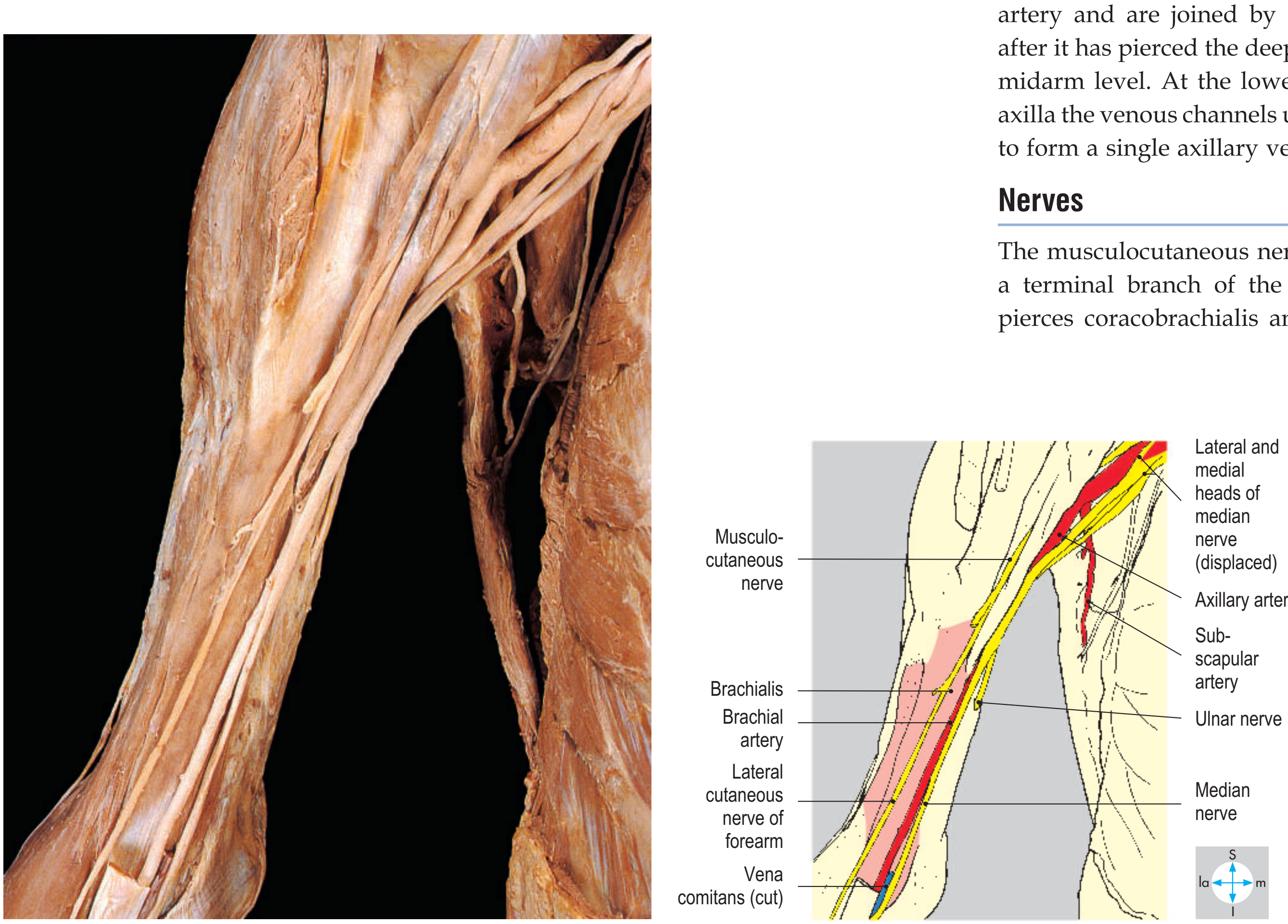


Fig. 3.24 Brachialis, the brachial artery and the nerves of the compartment. Biceps brachii and most veins have been excised.

biceps and brachialis, supplying each of these muscles. The nerve continues distally as the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm, which pierces the deep fascia between biceps and brachioradialis to lie superficially over the cubital fossa (Fig. 3.26).

The median and ulnar nerves traverse the entire length of the arm, but neither gives any branches above the elbow joint. The median nerve arises by lateral and medial heads, which are terminal branches of the lateral and medial cords. In the upper part of the arm the nerve lies lateral to the brachial artery but at midarm level it crosses anterior to the vessels and finally lies medial to the artery (Fig. 3.24), a position retained in the cubital fossa. The ulnar nerve is a terminal branch of the medial cord and, together with the medial cutaneous nerve of forearm, initially lies medial to the brachial artery but leaves the artery at midarm level (Fig. 3.24). It then pierces the medial intermuscular septum and enters the posterior compartment to lie between the septum and the medial head of triceps.

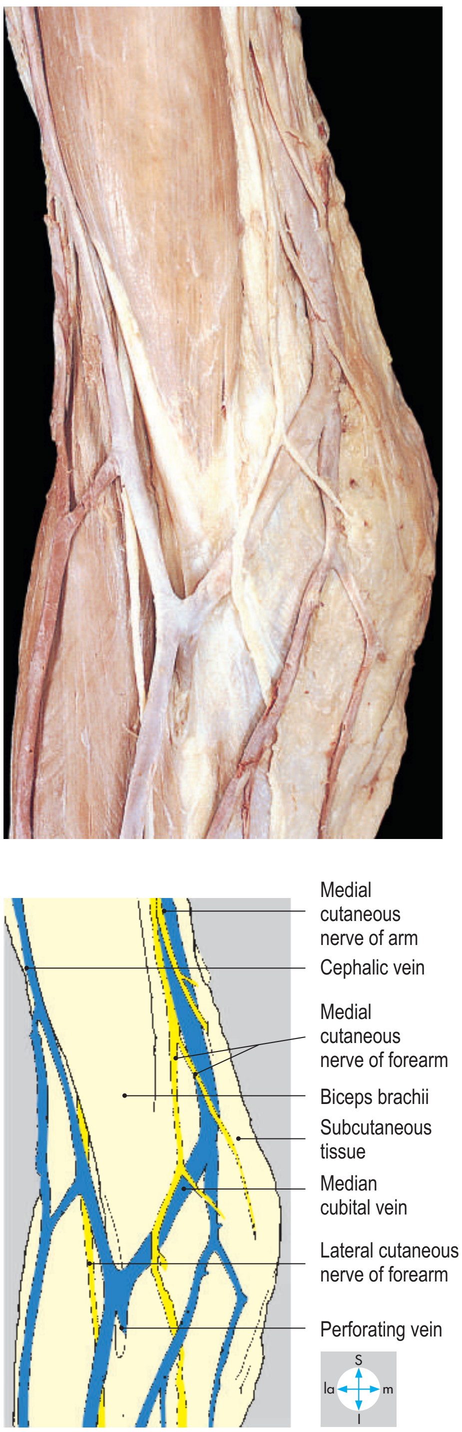


Fig. 3.25 Cutaneous nerves and superficial veins overlying the right cubital fossa. Subcutaneous tissue has been retained medial to the basilic vein.

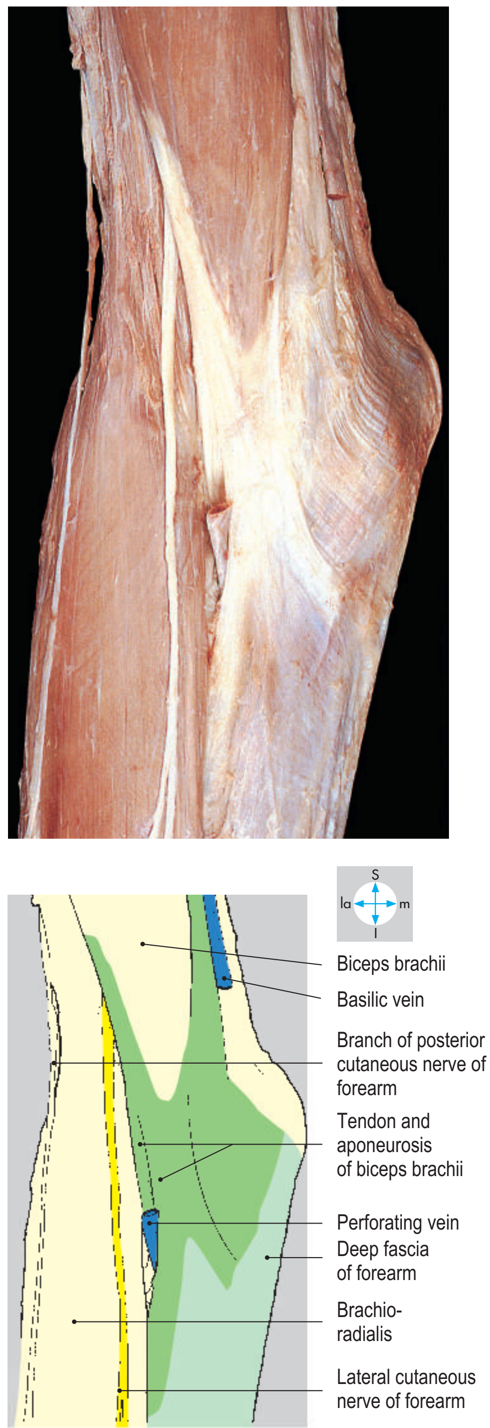


Fig. 3.26 Roof of the cubital fossa after removal of subcutaneous tissue, veins and nerves. A perforating vein communicates with deep veins by passing through the deep fascia.

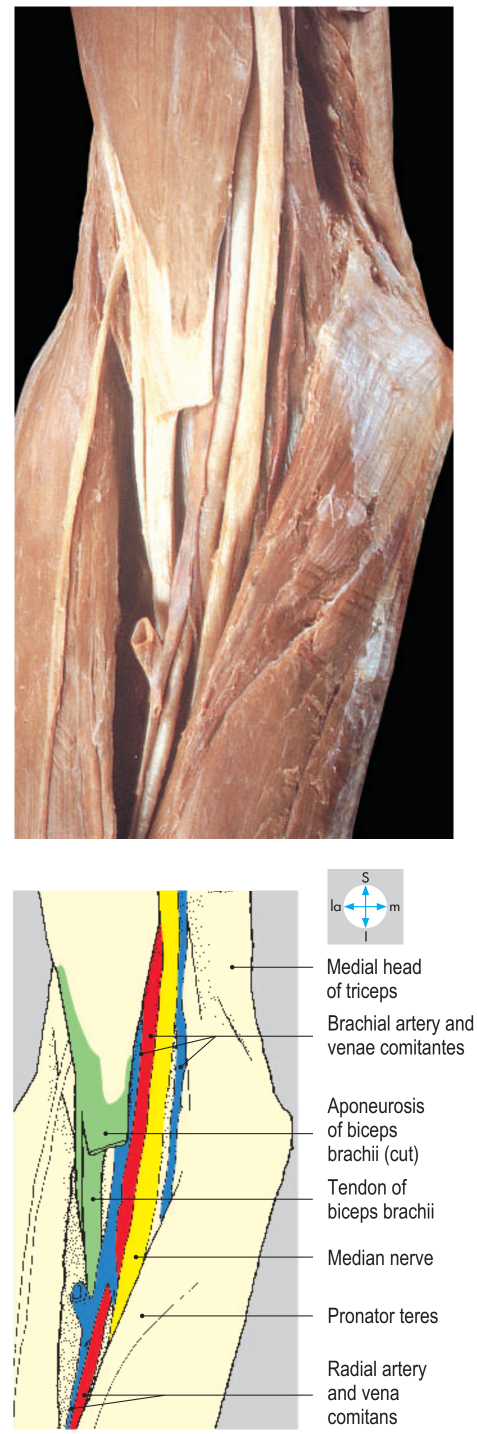


Fig. 3.27 Contents of the cubital fossa. The aponeurosis of biceps brachii and deep fascia have been removed.

Cubital Fossa

The cubital fossa is a triangular space in front of the elbow joint, bounded laterally by brachioradialis and medially by pronator teres (Fig. 3.28). By convention, the fossa is limited proximally by an imaginary line drawn between the two humeral epicondyles. The roof is formed by deep fascia, reinforced by the aponeurosis of biceps (Fig. 3.26). The subcutaneous tissue overlying the roof contains branches of the lateral and medial cutaneous nerves of forearm and superficial veins such as the median cubital vein, which links the cephalic and basilic veins (Fig. 3.25). The arrangement of these superficial veins, which are often punctured to obtain samples of blood for laboratory analysis, may vary considerably between individuals.

The fossa is traversed by nerves and vessels passing between the arm and the forearm. Its contents (Figs 3.27 & 3.29), embedded in fatty connective tissue, are, from medial to lateral, the median nerve, the brachial artery and its venae comitantes, the tendon of biceps and the radial nerve. Distally, the terminal branches of the radial nerve, the superficial and deep radial (posterior interosseous) nerves, and the terminal branches of the brachial artery (namely the radial and ulnar arteries) also lie within the fossa. The floor of the cubital fossa (Fig. 3.29) is formed by supinator and brachialis overlying the capsule of the elbow joint.

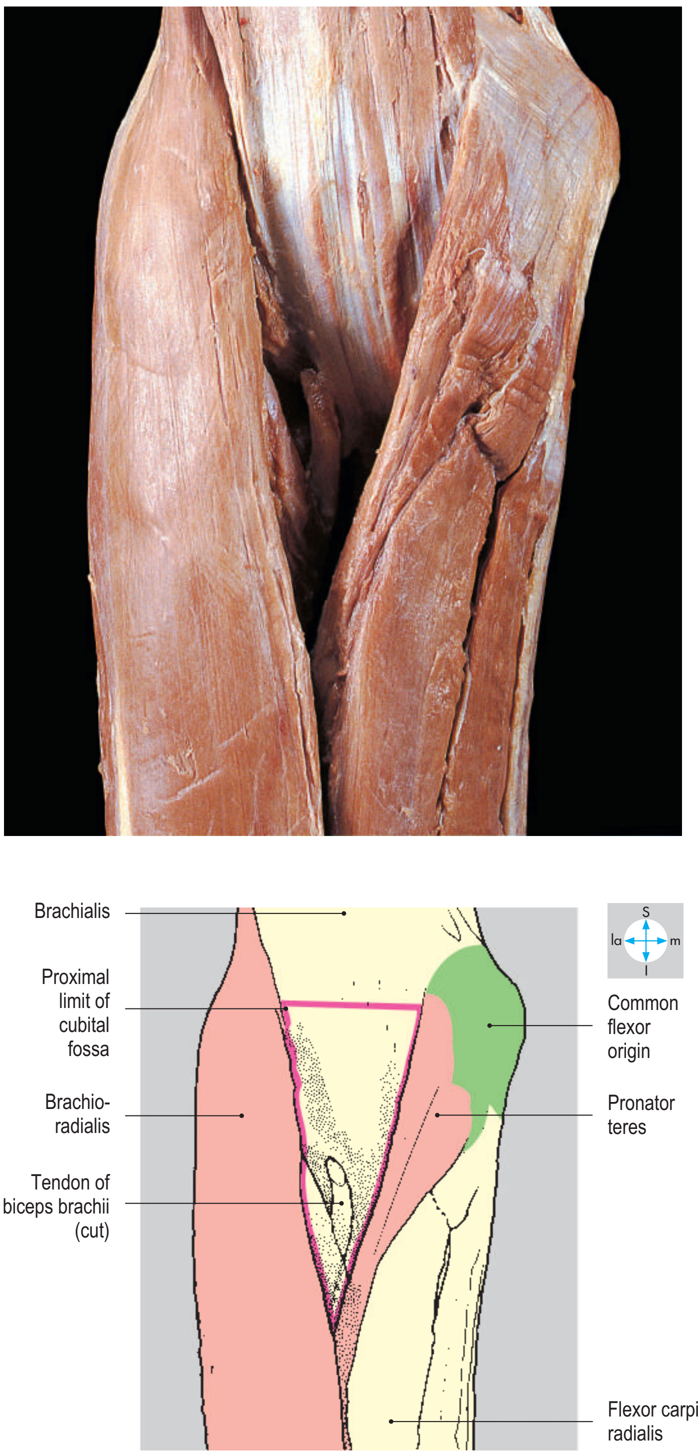


Fig. 3.28 Boundaries of the cubital fossa after removal of the roof and contents.

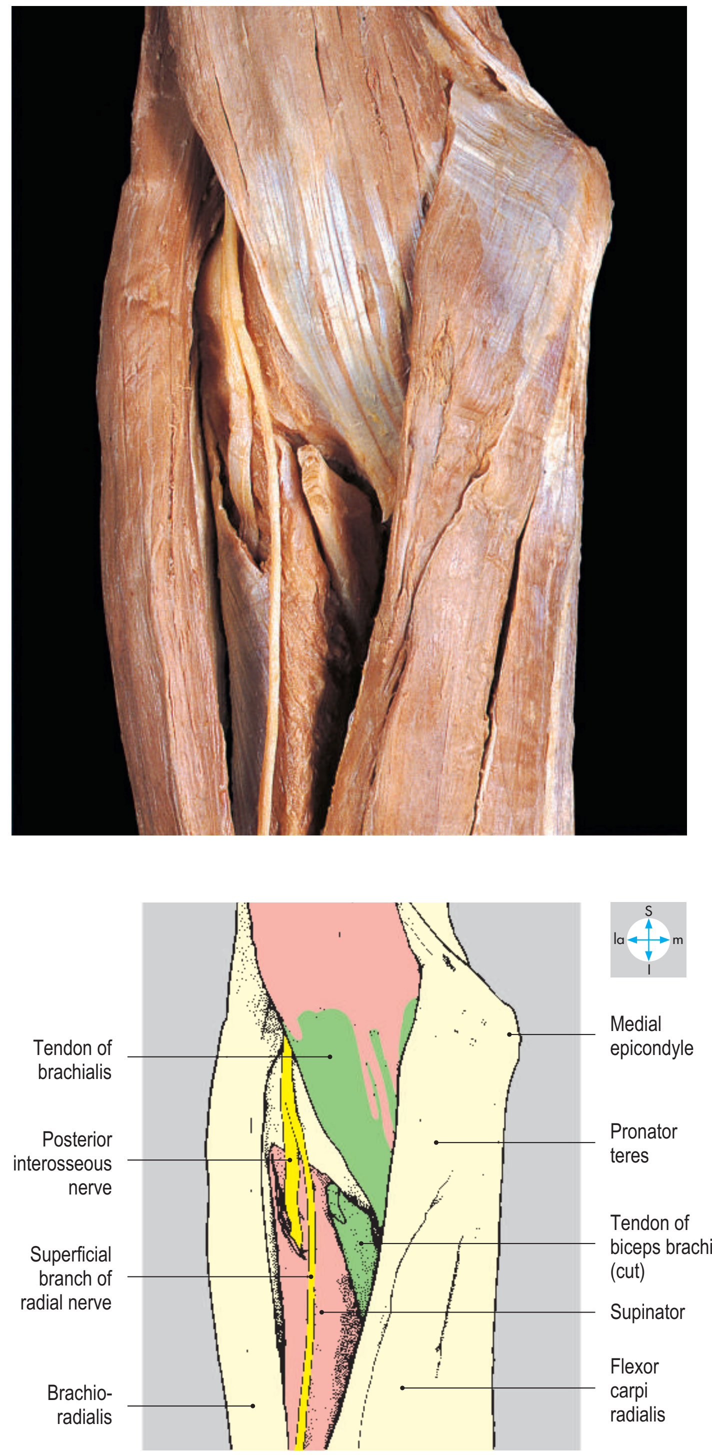


Fig. 3.29 Brachioradialis and pronator teres have been retracted to reveal the floor of the cubital fossa and expose the radial nerve.

Anterior Compartment of the Forearm

The anterior compartment of the forearm (Fig. 3.4) contains a superficial and a deep group of muscles, which include flexors of the wrist, fingers and thumb and two muscles that act as pronators. The compartment is traversed by the median and ulnar nerves and by the radial and ulnar arteries with their venae comitantes. A layer of deep fascia continuous with a similar layer on the posterior aspect of the limb encloses the compartment and provides additional attachment for the superficial muscles. In front of the carpus, deep fascia forms the flexor retinaculum (Fig. 3.30), which lies anterior to tendons in the carpal tunnel (p. 124). Subcutaneous tissue overlying the compartment contains cutaneous nerves and tributaries of the cephalic and basilic veins. Branches of the medial and lateral cutaneous nerves of the forearm may continue distal to the wrist over the carpal region of the hand.

Superficial muscles

The superficial muscles are, from lateral to medial, pronator teres, flexor carpi radialis, palmaris longus and flexor carpi ulnaris (Fig. 3.31). Flexor digitorum superficialis is also included in this group but is partly covered by the other muscles.

All the superficial muscles attach proximally to the common flexor origin on the front of the medial epicondyle of the humerus (Fig. 3.34). In addition, pronator teres attaches to the medial side of the coronoid process of the ulna, and flexor carpi ulnaris attaches to the medial border of the olecranon and the adjacent part of the subcutaneous border of the ulna. Flexor digitorum superficialis has an additional attachment to the ulnar collateral ligament of the elbow, the coronoid process and the anterior oblique line of the radius.

Distally, pronator teres attaches halfway along the lateral aspect of the shaft of the radius and forms the medial border of the cubital fossa. The muscle pronates the forearm. Flexor carpi radialis attaches to the bases of the second and third metacarpal bones (Fig. 3.37). It is a flexor and abductor of the wrist joint. Palmaris longus, a vestigial muscle that may be absent, has a long thin tendon, which attaches to the

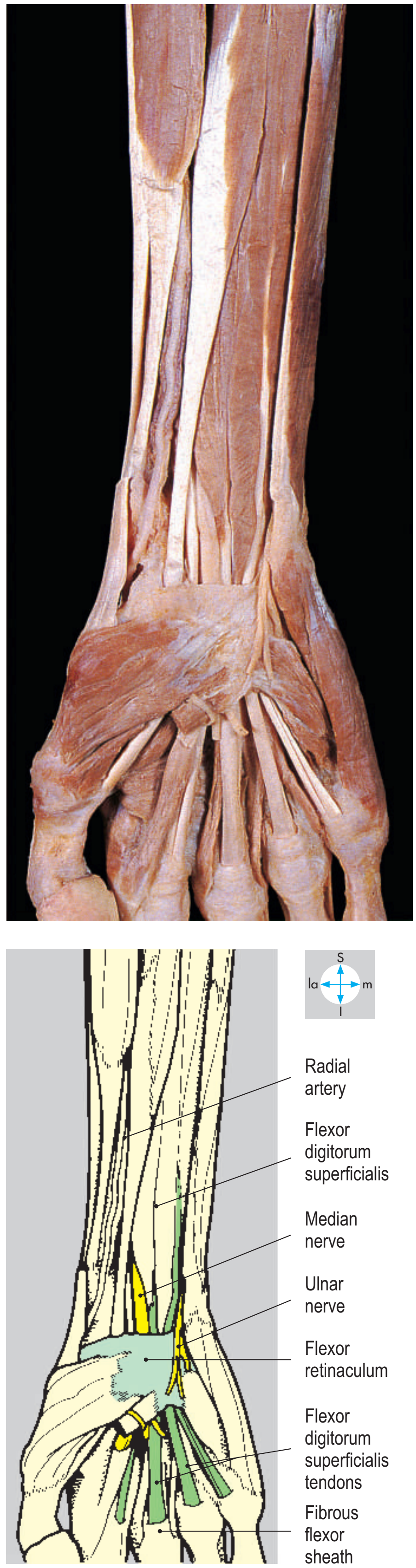


Fig. 3.30 Flexor retinaculum revealed by removal of subcutaneous tissue and most of the deep fascia. The retinaculum is partly obscured by some of the intrinsic muscles of the hand.

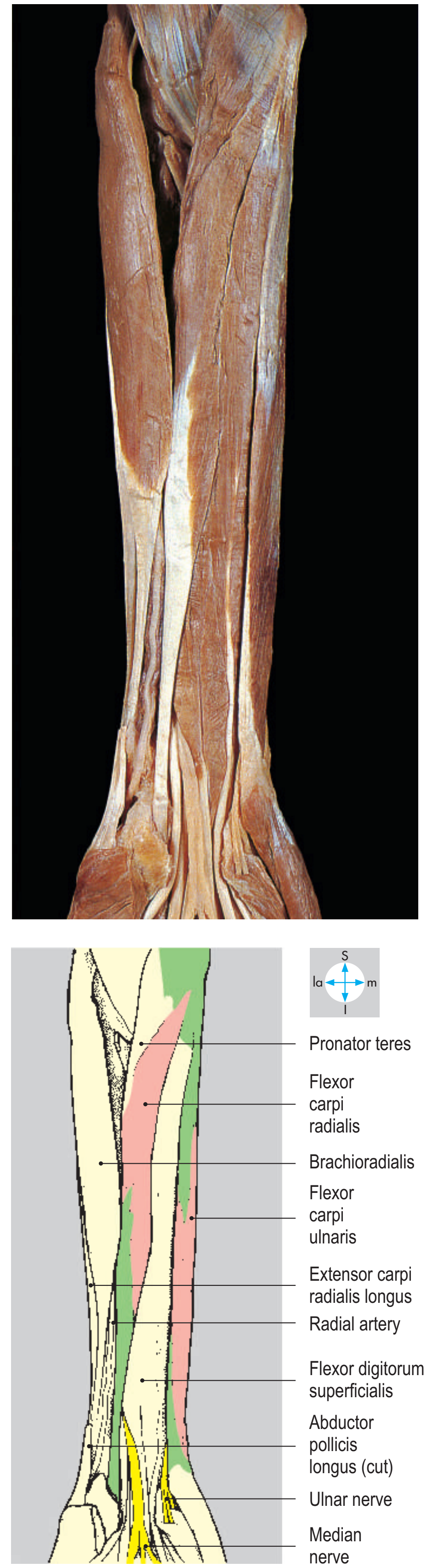


Fig. 3.31 Flexor carpi radialis and flexor carpi ulnaris seen after removal of deep fascia and the flexor retinaculum. This specimen lacks palmaris longus.

palmar aponeurosis. The muscle is a weak flexor of the wrist joint. Flexor carpi ulnaris attaches distally to the pisiform and, via ligaments from the pisiform, to the hook of the hamate and the base of the fifth metacarpal (Fig. 3.47). It is the most medial of the superficial muscles and is a flexor and adductor of the wrist.

Flexor digitorum superficialis (Fig. 3.32) is relatively large and is the deepest of this group of muscles. Distally, it gives rise to four tendons, one for each finger, which pass into the hand deep to the flexor retinaculum. In the carpal tunnel the tendons have a characteristic grouping (Fig. 3.32). Within each finger, the tendon forms two slips, which pass around the profundus tendon and then partly reunite before attaching to the sides of the middle phalanx (Fig. 3.37). The muscle flexes the wrist and the metacarpophalangeal and proximal interphalangeal joints of the fingers.

The superficial muscles all pass anterior to the elbow and therefore act as weak flexors of that joint in addition to their roles in the movements of the wrist and hand. Collectively, the carpal flexors and extensors stabilize the wrist joint during movements of the fingers and thumb. Inflammation at the common flexor origin (medial epicondylitis or Golfer's elbow) may follow unaccustomed use of the superficial forearm muscles and cause pain on flexion of the wrist joint.

All the superficial muscles are innervated by the median nerve, except flexor carpi ulnaris, which is supplied by the ulnar nerve.

Deep muscles

The deep muscles are flexor pollicis longus, flexor digitorum profundus and pronator quadratus. Their attachments to the radius and ulna are illustrated in Figure 3.34. Distally the flexor pollicis longus tendon (Fig. 3.35) passes through the carpal tunnel and attaches to the base of the distal phalanx of the thumb. The muscle flexes the interphalangeal and metacarpophalangeal joints of the thumb. Flexor digitorum profundus (Fig. 3.35) gives rise to four tendons, which traverse the carpal tunnel deep to the tendons of flexor digitorum superficialis (Fig. 3.40). In the palm, the tendons diverge, one entering each finger. Each tendon passes between the slips of

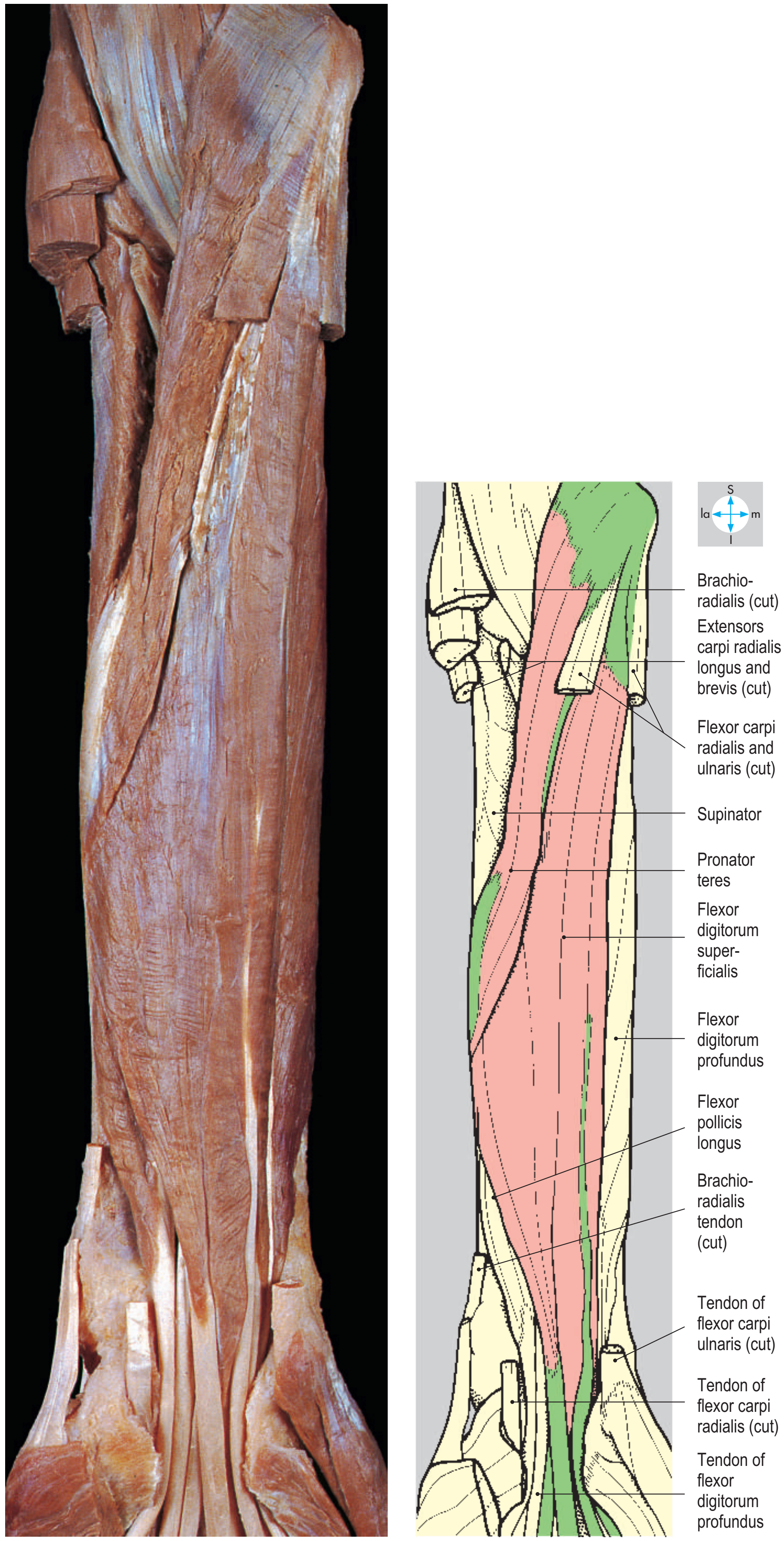


Fig. 3.32 Flexor digitorum superficialis and pronator teres, revealed by division of flexors carpi ulnaris and radialis, and of brachioradialis. The vessels and nerves in the forearm have been removed.

the corresponding superficialis tendon, continuing distally to attach to the base of the terminal phalanx. The muscle is a flexor of the fingers and of the wrist joint. Pronator quadratus, a small rectangular muscle lying transversely between the anterior surfaces of the shafts of the radius and ulna (Fig. 3.33), pronates the forearm.

The deep muscles are innervated by the anterior interosseous nerve, except for the medial part of flexor digitorum profundus, which is supplied by the ulnar nerve.

Vessels

The brachial artery usually divides into the radial and ulnar arteries in the cubital fossa (Fig. 3.36). The radial artery passes distally, under brachioradialis, lying on the flexor muscles. In the lower forearm, the vessel is accompanied by the superficial branch of the radial nerve and, near the wrist, is subcutaneous and palpable against the anterior surface of the radius. The artery winds round the lateral aspect of the wrist, traverses the 'anatomical snuff box' and

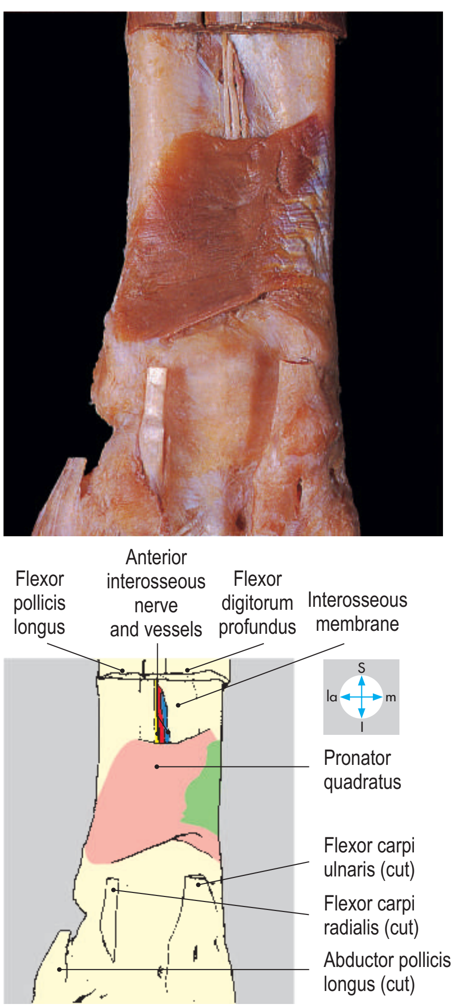


Fig. 3.33 Pronator quadratus exposed by division of flexor pollicis longus and flexor digitorum profundus.

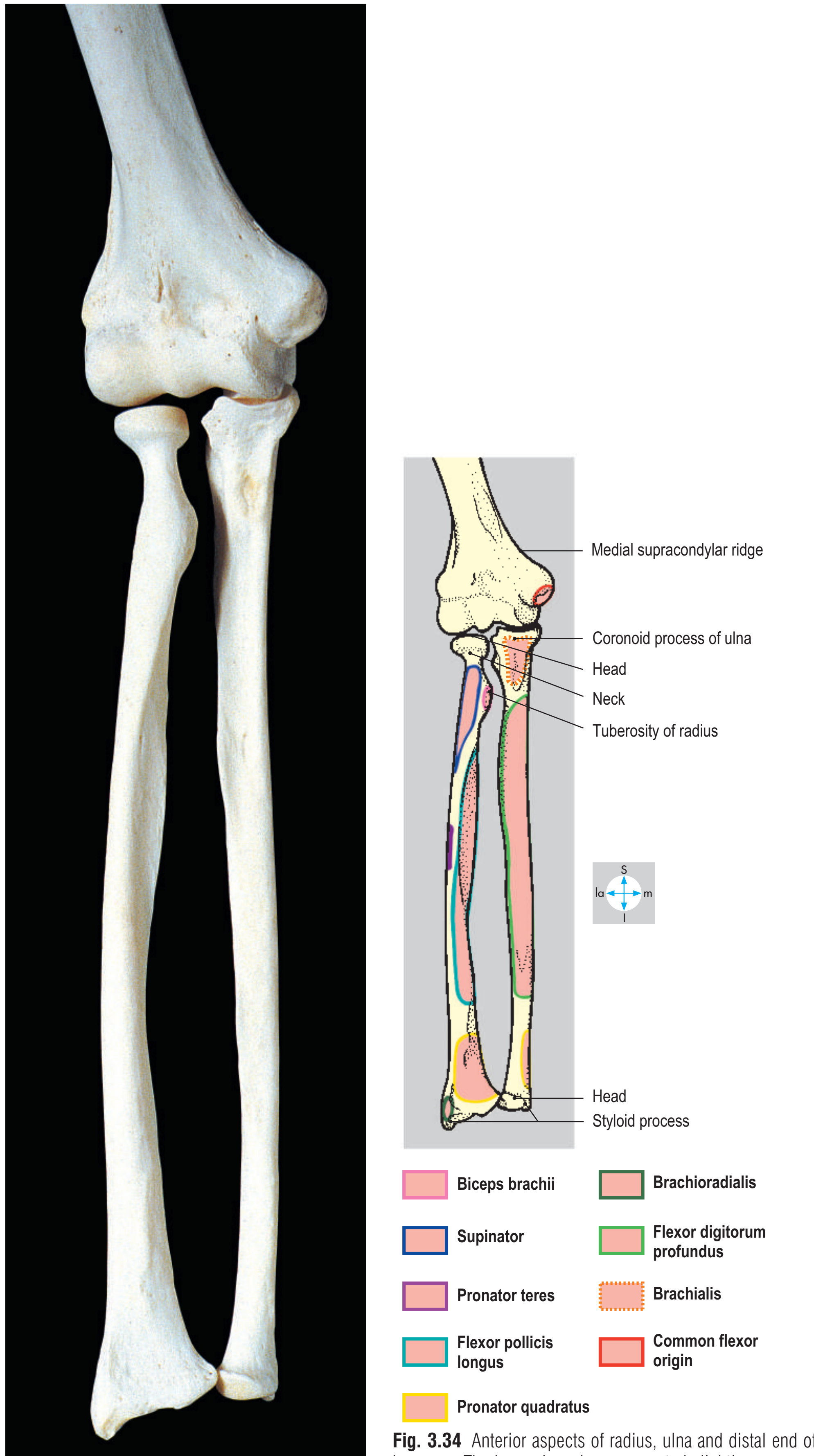


Fig. 3.34 Anterior aspects of radius, ulna and distal end of humerus. The bones have been separated slightly.

subsequently enters the palm to form the deep palmar arch (Fig. 3.54). In the forearm, the artery gives branches to muscles and contributes to anastomoses around the elbow and wrist joints. Near the wrist, the radial artery is close to the cephalic vein. These vessels may be joined surgically to form an arteriovenous fistula for easy vascular access in patients undergoing renal dialysis.

The ulnar artery passes deep to the arch formed by the radial and ulnar attachments of flexor digitorum superficialis and continues between the superficial and deep flexor muscles. In the distal part of the forearm, the artery is accompanied on its medial side by the ulnar nerve. It lies beneath flexor carpi ulnaris but at the wrist emerges to lie lateral to the tendon of this muscle, where its pulse can be palpated. The ulnar artery crosses superficial to the flexor retinaculum and, as it enters the hand, divides into superficial and deep palmar branches. The ulnar artery gives branches to the muscles of the anterior compartment and to the anastomoses around the elbow and wrist joints. Its largest branch, the common interosseous artery (Fig. 3.36), arises near the origin of the ulnar artery and promptly divides into posterior and anterior interosseous branches. The posterior interosseous artery enters the posterior interosseous compartment of the forearm (Fig. 3.77). The larger anterior interosseous artery passes distally in the anterior compartment, lying on the interosseous membrane, accompanied by the anterior nerve. The vessel supplies the deep flexor muscles and gives nutrient branches to the radius and ulna. Distally, it penetrates the interosseous membrane to assist in the anastomoses around the wrist. The patency of the ulnar and radial arteries and of the palmar arches can be assessed using Allen's test. After compression of both arteries, release of one artery should be followed within a few seconds by flushing of the whole hand. The compression is then repeated and followed by release of the other artery. Incomplete or slow flushing suggests poor blood flow through one of the arteries or its branches.

Venae comitantes accompany the arteries of the anterior compartment and drain proximally into veins around the brachial artery.

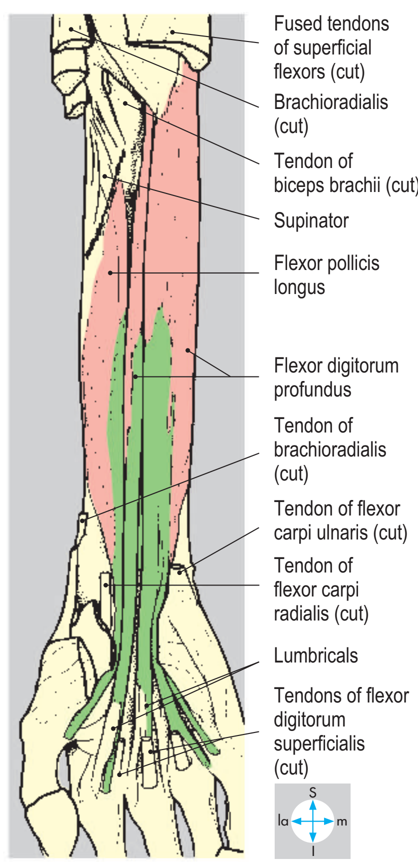


Fig. 3.35 Flexor digitorum profundus and flexor pollicis longus exposed by removal of the superficial flexors. As in this specimen, the index component of flexor digitorum profundus is often separate from the rest of the muscle.

Nerves

The median nerve enters the forearm from the cubital fossa between the two heads of pronator teres. It crosses anterior to the ulnar artery (Fig. 3.36) and descends between the superficial and deep flexors. At the wrist, the median nerve is remarkably superficial, lying medial to the tendon of flexor carpi radialis and just deep to the palmaris longus tendon. The median nerve passes through the carpal tunnel into the hand, where it divides into terminal branches (Fig. 3.52). The nerve supplies all the superficial muscles of the anterior compartment except flexor carpi ulnaris. The anterior interosseous branch of the median nerve (Fig. 3.36) supplies all the deep muscles of the compartment except the medial part of flexor digitorum profundus. This branch lies between flexor digitorum profundus and flexor pollicis longus and passes behind pronator quadratus to supply the wrist (Fig. 3.33). In the forearm, the median nerve also gives a palmar cutaneous branch, which crosses superficial to the flexor retinaculum and supplies skin of the lateral part of the palm. Superficial lacerations near the wrist may damage the palmar cutaneous branches but leave the median and ulnar nerves intact. Testing

digital sensation alone will miss injuries to these nerves supplying the palm.

The ulnar nerve passes behind the medial epicondyle where it can be palpated. Pressure here produces pain or tingling felt in the cutaneous distribution of the nerve along the medial side of the hand. Fractures involving the medial epicondyle may damage the ulnar nerve. The nerve enters the forearm between the two heads of flexor carpi ulnaris. Lying on flexor digitorum profundus and covered by flexor carpi ulnaris, it traverses the medial side of the anterior compartment, accompanied in the lower part of the forearm by the ulnar artery. Near the wrist, the ulnar nerve emerges lateral to the flexor carpi ulnaris tendon and crosses superficial to the flexor retinaculum with the ulnar artery on its lateral side. The nerve terminates in the hand by dividing into superficial and deep branches (p. 95). The ulnar nerve supplies the elbow joint and gives branches to flexor carpi ulnaris and the medial part of flexor digitorum profundus. It also provides a palmar cutaneous nerve supplying skin on the medial aspect of the palm, and dorsal cutaneous branches that innervate the medial part of the dorsum of the hand (Fig. 3.78).

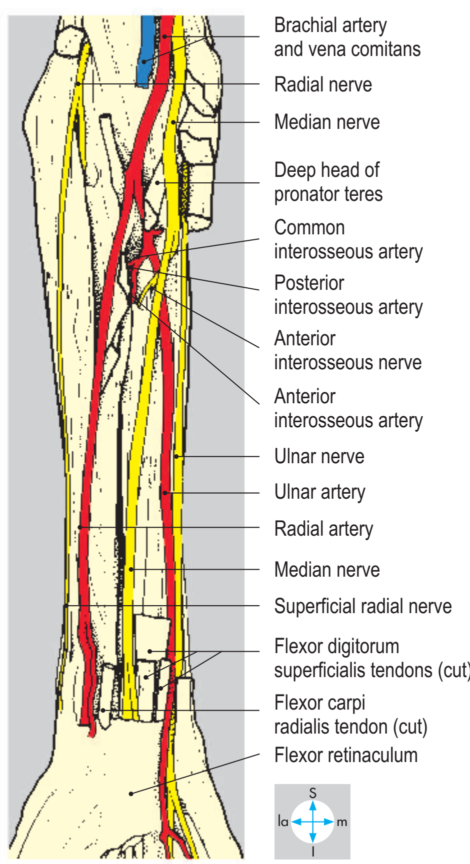


Fig. 3.36 Vessels and nerves of the anterior compartment of the forearm. The superficial flexor muscles and brachioradialis have been divided and most of the venae comitantes have been removed.

Palm and Digits

The hand comprises the wrist (carpus), the palm (metacarpus) and the digits (Figs 3.37 & 3.38). The palm of the hand (Fig. 3.39) contains the palmar aponeurosis, intrinsic muscles, tendons originating from muscles in the anterior compartment of the forearm, and palmar vessels and nerves. The intrinsic muscles comprise the thenar and hypothenar groups, the lumbricals and interossei, and adductor pollicis. The tendons enter the palm through the carpal tunnel (Fig. 3.98) deep to the flexor retinaculum. The skin of the anterior surface of the hand is thick, devoid of hair and contains many sweat glands. It is firmly bound to the underlying deep fascia, producing characteristic creases. Skin over the palmar surface of each distal phalanx is firmly tethered to the periosteum by fibrous septa, which enclose fat-filled spaces. Infection causing increased pressure in the pulp space may result in thrombosis of vessels supplying the distal phalanx causing bone necrosis.

Deep fascia of the palm

The deep fascia of the palm is thickened centrally to form the triangular palmar aponeurosis (Fig. 3.39) and is thinner at each side where it covers the thenar and hypothenar muscles. Proximally, the palmar aponeurosis attaches to the flexor retinaculum and is continuous with the tendon of palmaris longus. Distally, the aponeurosis gives rise to four pairs of digital slips, which cross the metacarpophalangeal joints and attach to the proximal phalanges of the fingers via the fibrous flexor sheaths. The aponeurosis covers the

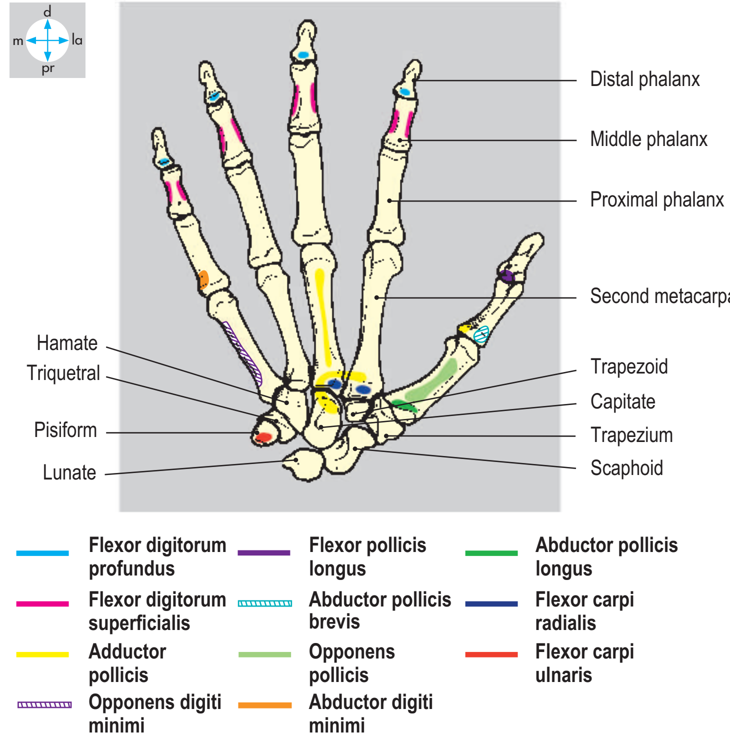


Fig. 3.37 Bones of the hand. The distal attachments of the forearm flexor muscles and of the thenar and hypothenar muscles and the attachments of adductor pollicis are indicated.

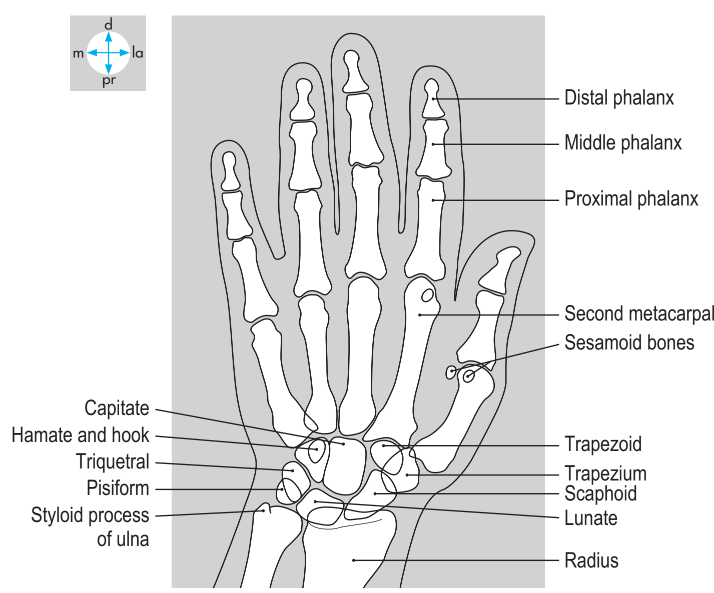


Fig. 3.38 Radiograph of an adult hand. (Compare Fig. 3.97.)

superficial palmar arch, the median nerve and the tendons of the long flexors of the digits. Thickening and shortening of the aponeurosis in Dupuytren's contracture produces fixed flexion of the metacarpophalangeal and proximal interphalangeal joints.

Lateral and medial septa pass from the edges of the palmar aponeurosis to the first and fifth metacarpal bones, respectively. These septa separate the thenar and hypothenar muscles from a central palmar space, which is traversed by the palmar digital vessels and nerves and by the tendons of the long flexor muscles of the fingers.

The subcutaneous tissue of the medial side of the palm usually contains palmaris brevis (Fig. 3.39), a small muscle attaching to the overlying skin and to the palmar aponeurosis.

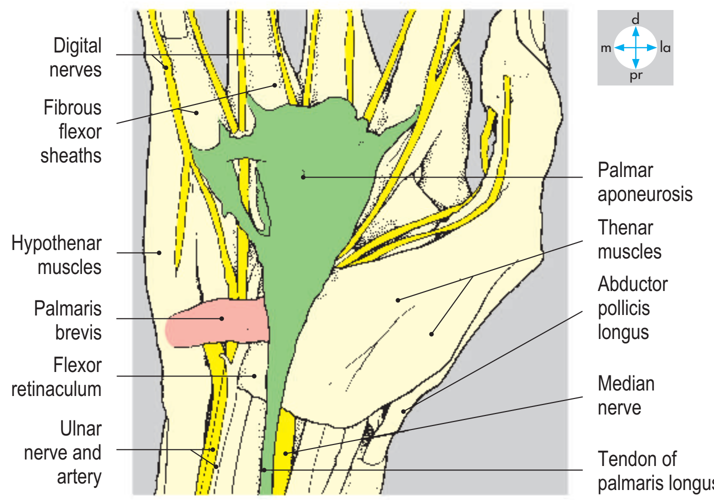


Fig. 3.39 Palmar aponeurosis exposed by removal of skin and subcutaneous tissue.

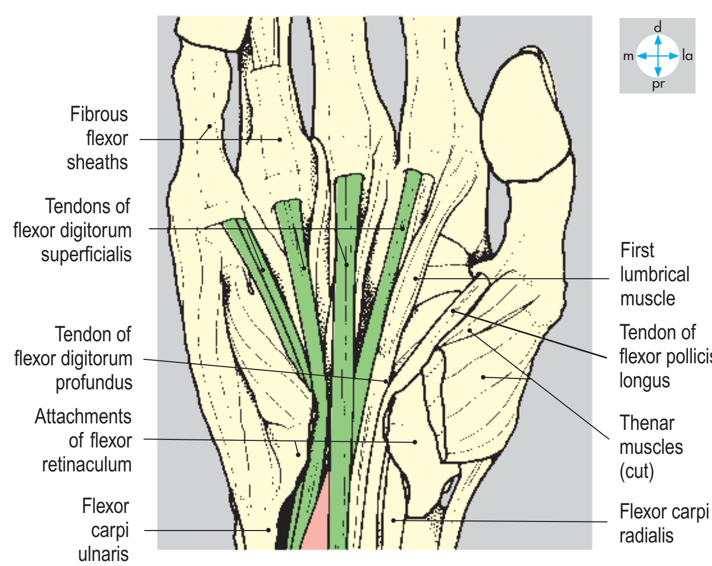
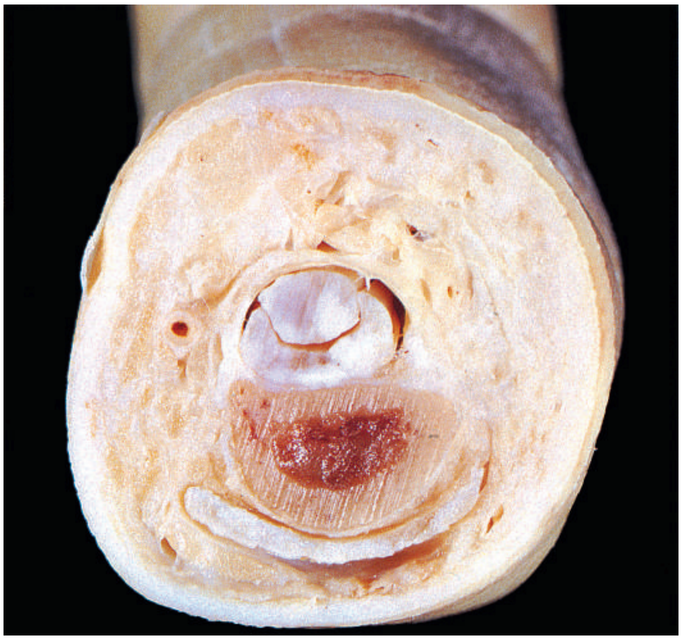


Fig. 3.40 Tendons of flexor digitorum superficialis in the palm. The palmar aponeurosis, flexor retinaculum and palmar vessels and nerves have been removed.

Flexor tendons in the hand

The tendons of flexor pollicis longus, flexor digitorum profundus and flexor digitorum superficialis enter the hand deep to the flexor retinaculum (Fig. 3.99). On reaching the appropriate digit, each tendon traverses a tunnel formed by the fibrous flexor sheath and the phalanges (Fig. 3.40). The fibrous sheath is attached to the edges of the anterior surfaces of the phalanges (Fig. 3.41) and continues as far as the distal phalanx (Fig. 3.42). The sheath is thinner and more flexible in front of the interphalangeal joints, allowing flexion of the digit without 'bowstringing' of the tendons and thus facilitating gripping. Within the flexor sheaths the tendons are invested by synovial membrane and receive vincula tendinum, small folds of synovium that convey blood vessels to the tendons.



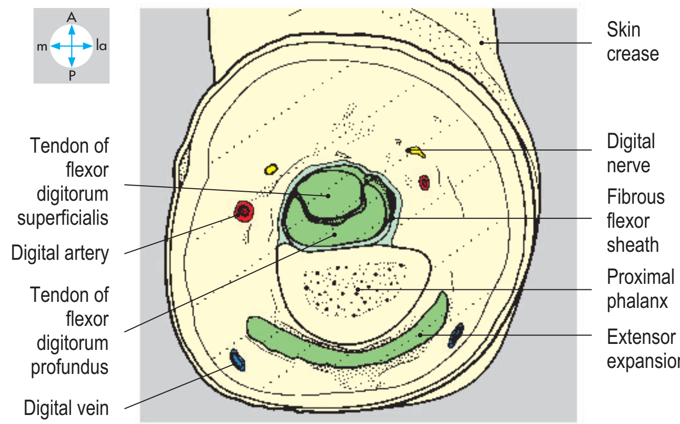


Fig. 3.41 Transverse section through the index finger at the level of the proximal phalanx.

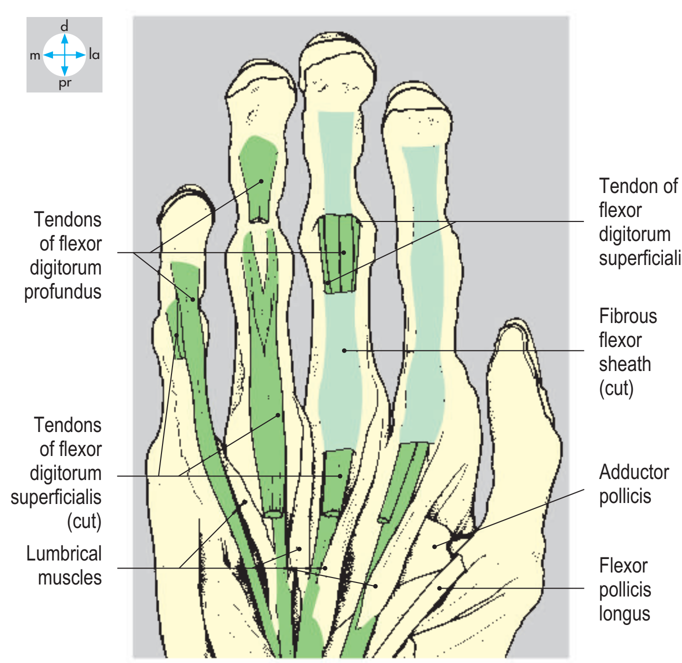


Fig. 3.42 Digital fibrous flexor sheaths. The partially cut away sheath of the middle finger exposes the tendons of flexor digitorum superficialis and profundus, whose phalangeal attachments are revealed on the ring and little fingers.

Thenar muscles

Abductor pollicis brevis, flexor pollicis brevis and opponens pollicis form the thenar eminence on the lateral side of the palm. They attach proximally to the trapezium and scaphoid and to the lateral part of the flexor retinaculum (Fig. 3.37).

Abductor pollicis brevis (Fig. 3.43) lies superficial to the other thenar muscles and passes from the scaphoid to the base of the proximal phalanx of the thumb. The muscle abducts the thumb, moving the digit anteriorly at right angles to the plane of the palm.

Flexor pollicis brevis, lying deep and medial to the abductor, passes from the trapezium to the proximal phalanx of the thumb. The muscle flexes the carpometacarpal and metacarpophalangeal joints, drawing the thumb across the palm (maintaining the thumbnail at right angles to the palmar plane).

Opponens pollicis (Fig. 3.44), the deepest of the thenar muscles, attaches proximally to the trapezium and distally to the shaft of the first metacarpal. The muscle produces opposition of the thumb, allowing pulp-to-pulp contact with the fingers. This movement combines flexion, adduction and rotation of the first metacarpal at its carpometacarpal joint.

The thenar muscles are supplied by the recurrent branch of the median nerve (Figs 3.43 & 3.44). Injury to this nerve may be assessed by palpating the thenar muscles while the subject attempts abduction of the thumb.

Fig. 3.43 Muscles of the thenar eminence exposed by removal of deep fascia. Abductor pollicis brevis is superficial to flexor pollicis brevis and opponens pollicis.

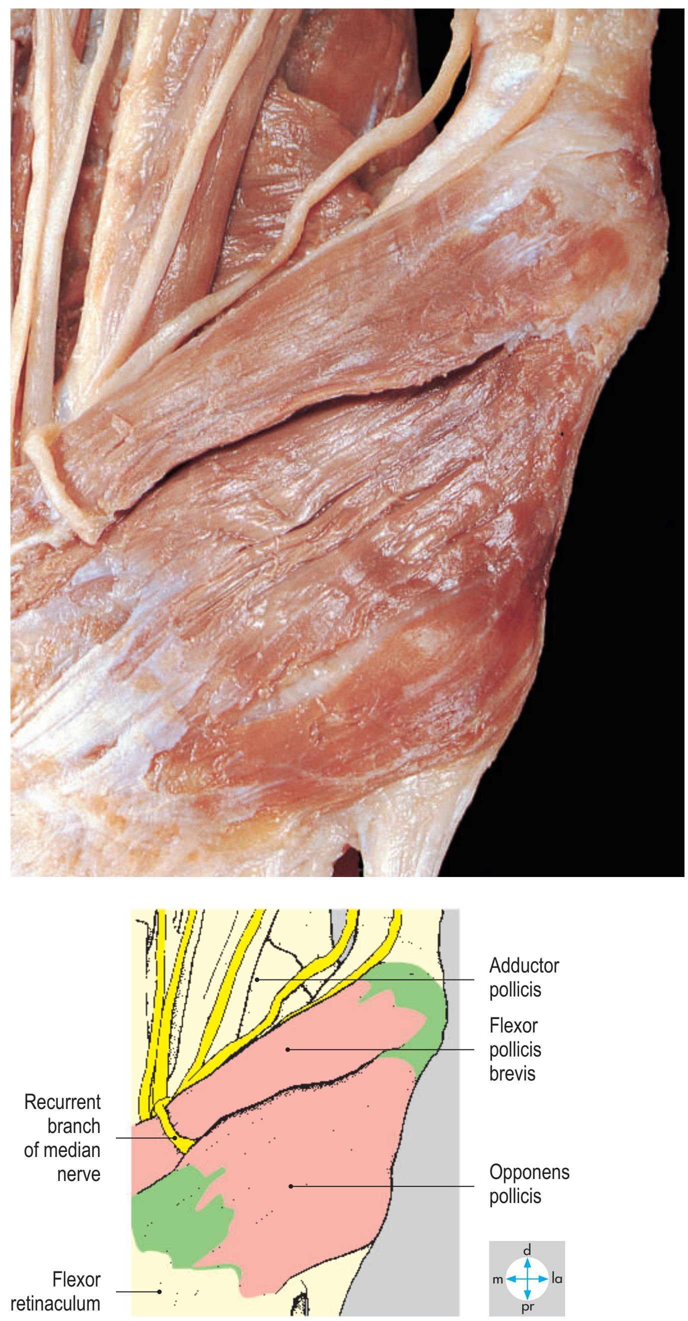


Fig. 3.44 Opponens pollicis and flexor pollicis brevis exposed by removal of abductor pollicis brevis.

Hypothenar muscles

Abductor digiti minimi, flexor digiti minimi brevis and opponens digiti minimi (Fig. 3.45) form the hypothenar eminence and attach proximally to the pisiform, the hook of the hamate and the adjacent part of the flexor retinaculum. Abductor digiti minimi passes from the pisiform to the base of the proximal phalanx of the little finger and abducts the digit, moving it medially in the plane of the palm. Flexor digiti minimi brevis attaches between the hamate and base of the proximal phalanx of the little finger and flexes the metacarpal and proximal phalanx of the little finger. Opponens digiti minimi passes from the hamate to the shaft of the fifth metacarpal and on contraction deepens the hollow of the palm.

The hypothenar muscles are supplied by the deep branch of the ulnar nerve (Fig. 3.45).

Deep muscles

The deep muscles of the hand consist of adductor pollicis, the palmar and dorsal interossei and the lumbricals.

Adductor pollicis (Fig. 3.46) has transverse and oblique heads. The transverse

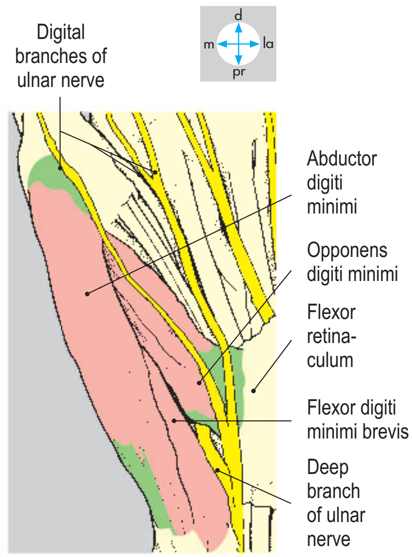


Fig. 3.45 Hypothenar muscles exposed by removal of the deep fascia.

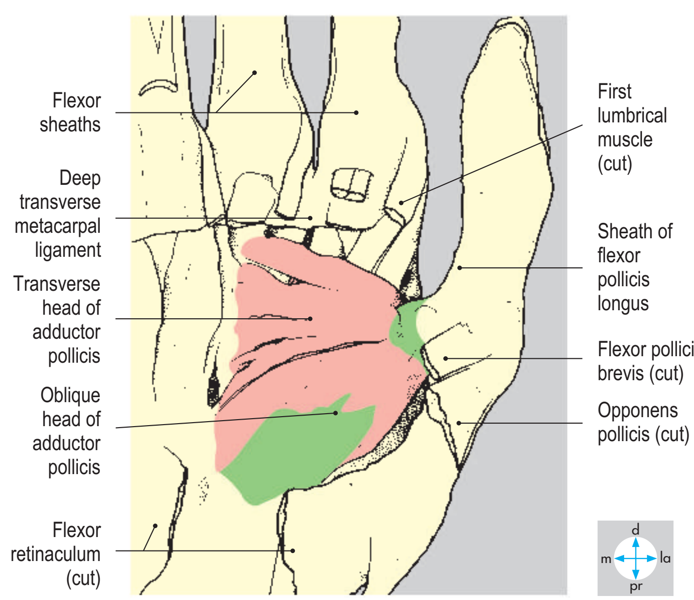


Fig. 3.46 Adductor pollicis. The muscles of the thenar eminence, long flexor tendons, and palmar and digital vessels and nerves have been removed.

head attaches to the shaft of the third metacarpal bone, and the oblique head to the trapezoid, capitate and bases of the second and third metacarpals. Both heads pass laterally to attach to the base of the proximal phalanx of the thumb by a common tendon which usually contains a sesamoid bone (Fig. 3.38). The muscle adducts and flexes the thumb at its carpometacarpal and metacarpophalangeal joints and is supplied by the deep branch of the ulnar nerve (Fig. 3.54).

The interossei consist of three palmar and four dorsal muscles (Fig. 3.47). Each palmar interosseous muscle (Fig. 3.48) arises by a single head from the anterior border of the shaft of the second, fourth or fifth metacarpal. Each dorsal interosseous

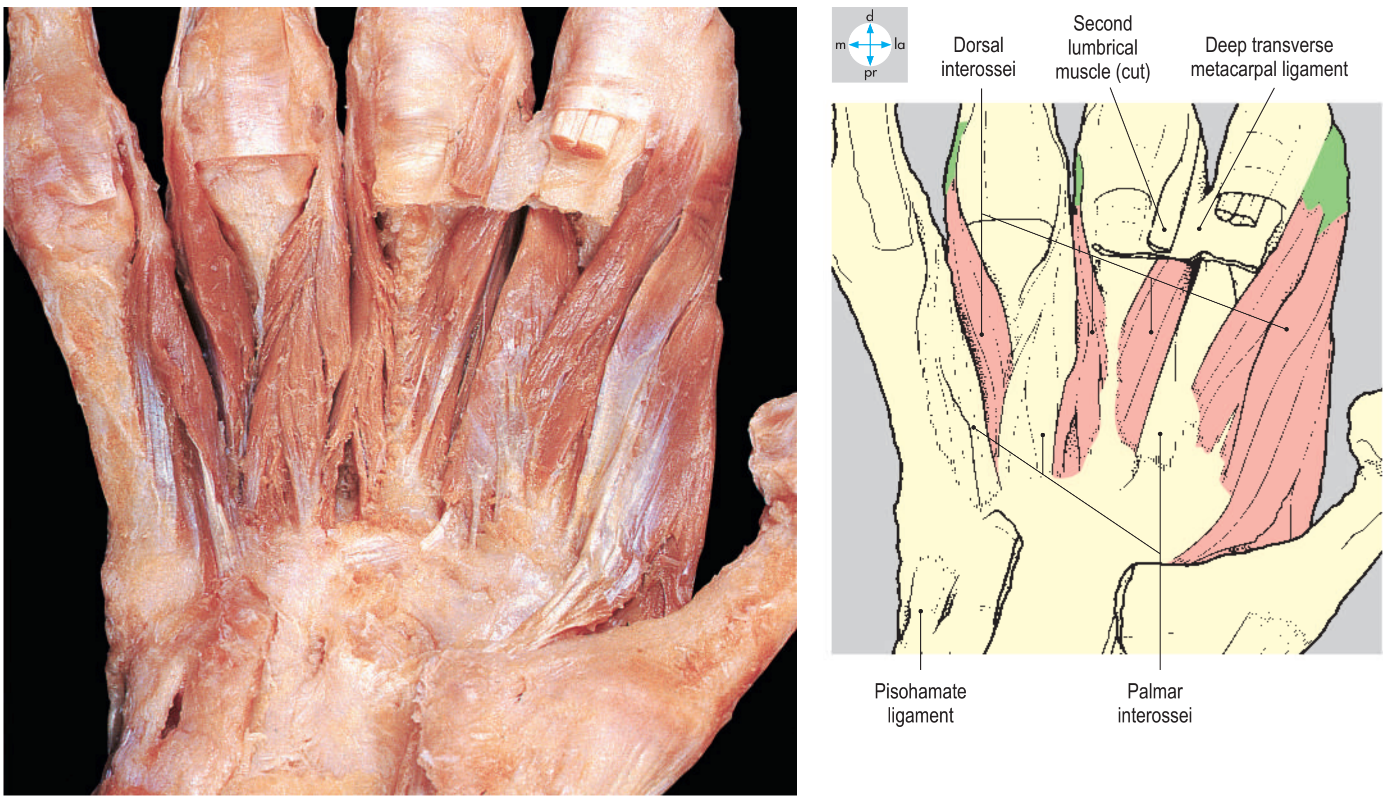


Fig. 3.47 Palmar and dorsal interossei exposed by removal of the long flexor tendons and adductor pollicis. The dorsal interossei have much more bulk than the palmar interossei.

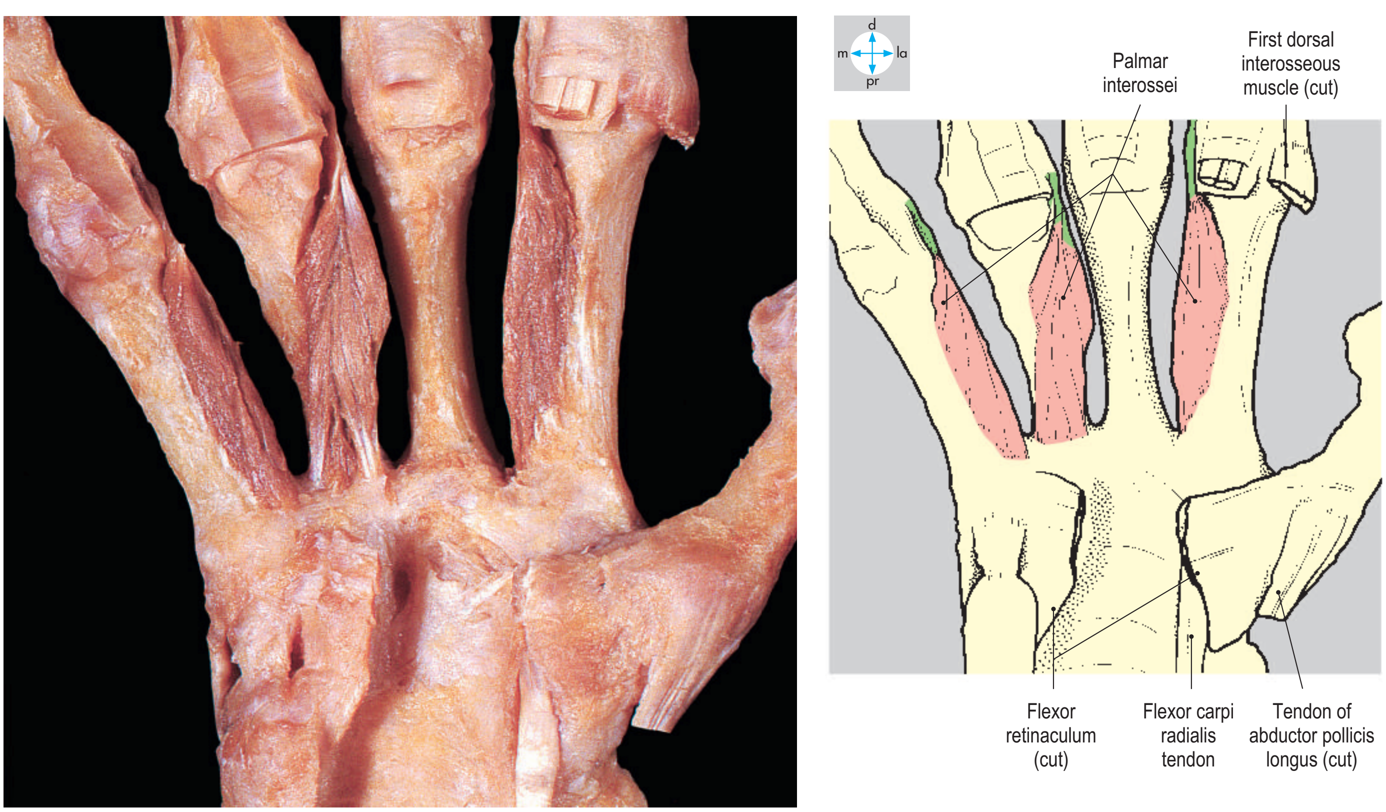


Fig. 3.48 Palmar interossei. The dorsal interossei and deep transverse metacarpal ligaments have been excised.

muscle (Fig. 3.49) arises by two heads from the contiguous sides of the shafts of the adjacent metacarpals. Distally the tendon of each interosseous muscle attaches to the base of the proximal phalanx and to the extensor expansion of the appropriate digit (Fig. 3.51). The interossei move the fingers in the plane of the palm (coronal plane); movement of a finger away from the long axis of the middle finger is called abduction while movement towards the middle finger is adduction. The palmar interossei adduct and the dorsal interossei abduct the fingers. In addition, the interossei flex the metacarpophalangeal joints and extend the interphalangeal joints. All the interossei are supplied by the deep branch of the ulnar nerve (Fig. 3.54). The integrity of the nerve and the adducting function of the palmar interossei can be tested by gripping a sheet of paper between the sides of two adjacent fingers.

The lumbricals are four small muscles attaching proximally to the tendons of flexor digitorum profundus (Fig. 3.50). Distally, each lumbrical attaches to the radial side of the extensor expansion of the appropriate finger. The muscles extend the interphalangeal joints and flex the metacarpophalangeal joints. The first and second lumbricals usually have only one head each and are supplied by the median nerve, whereas the third and fourth (medial) usually have two heads and are supplied by the ulnar nerve.

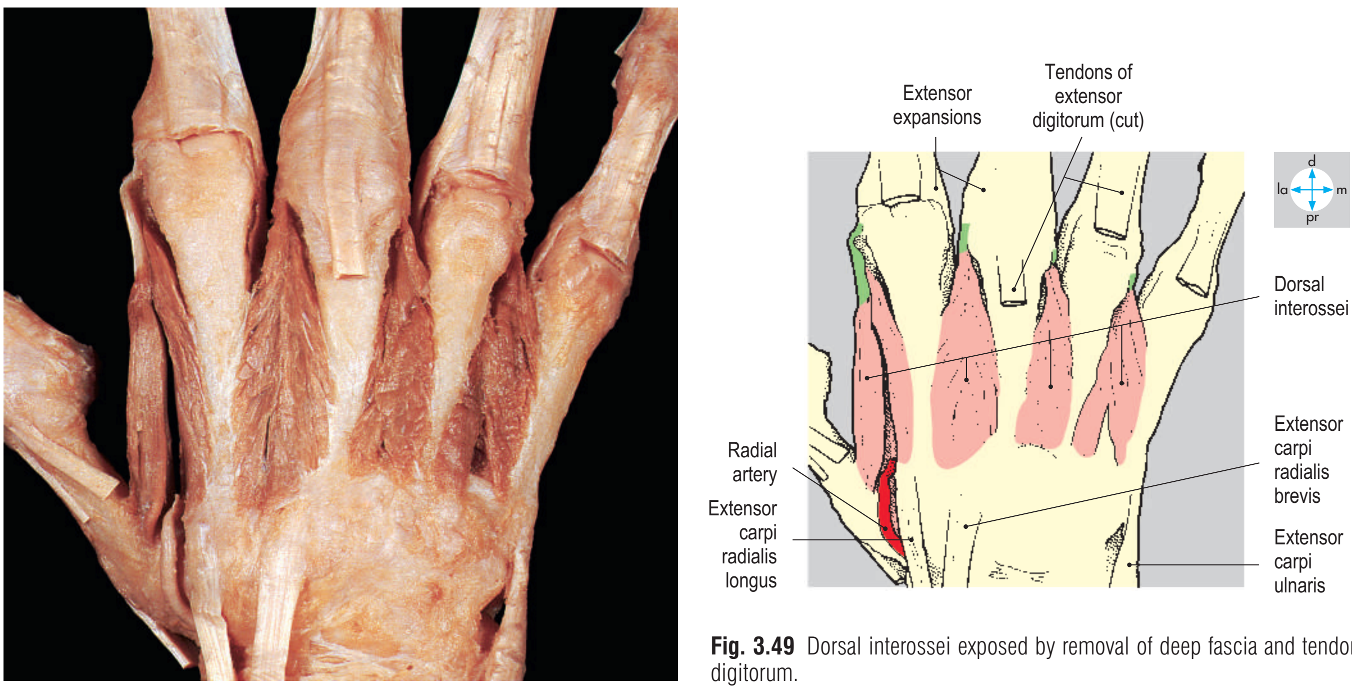


Fig. 3.49 Dorsal interossei exposed by removal of deep fascia and tendons of extensor digitorum.

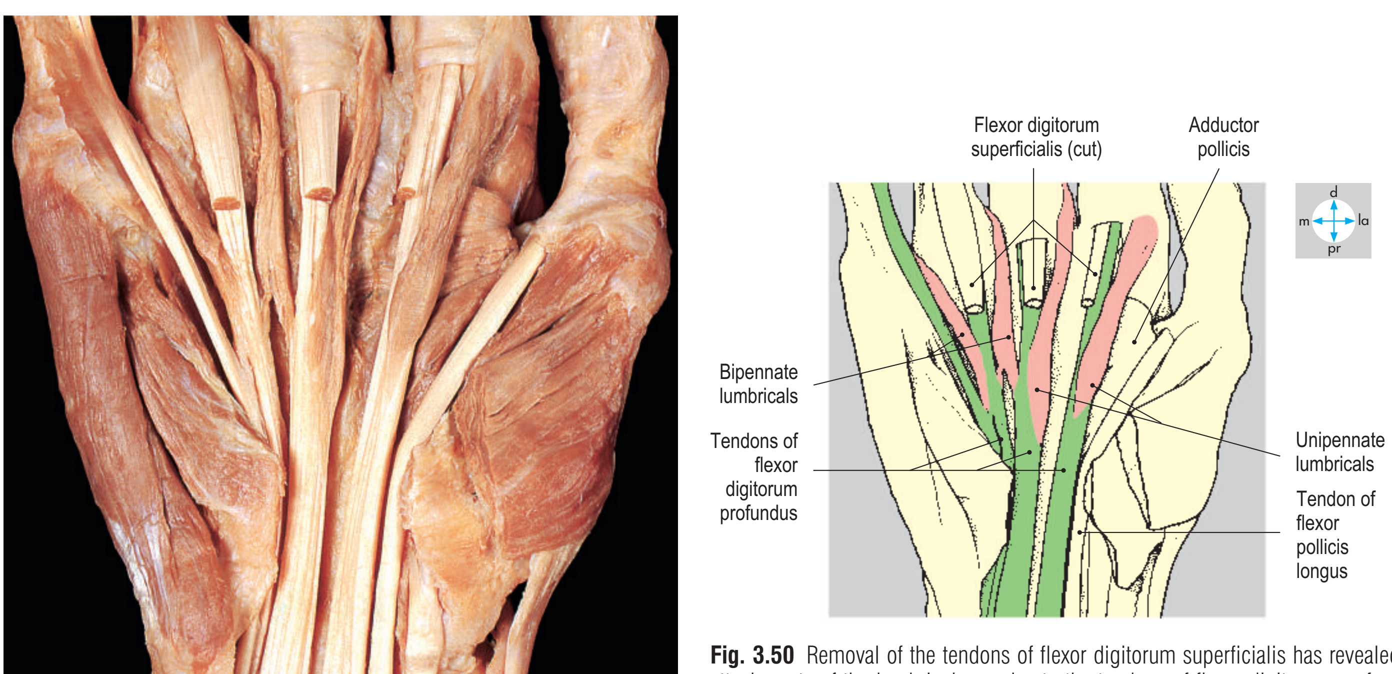


Fig. 3.50 Removal of the tendons of flexor digitorum superficialis has revealed the attachments of the lumbrical muscles to the tendons of flexor digitorum profundus.

Digital extensor expansions

Each finger possesses an extensor expansion or hood (Fig. 3.51), which receives the tendons of the appropriate long extensor muscle(s), interossei and lumbricals. The broad proximal part of the expansion overlies the metacarpophalangeal joint. Distally, the expansion tapers and attaches by a central slip to the base of the middle phalanx and by two marginal slips to the base of the distal phalanx.

Blood vessels

The arterial supply to the hand is derived from branches of the ulnar and radial arteries, which form superficial and deep palmar arches linking the two main arteries and ensuring a rich blood supply to the palm and fingers.

The ulnar artery enters the hand superficial to the flexor retinaculum and gives a deep branch that accompanies the deep branch of the ulnar nerve. The main artery continues as the superficial palmar arch (Fig. 3.52), which passes distally to the level of the thumb web, lying deep to the palmar aponeurosis but anterior to the digital nerves and flexor tendons. The superficial palmar arch gives four palmar digital branches, which supply the adjacent sides of the fingers (Fig. 3.53) and medial side of the little finger, and is completed laterally by a branch of the radial artery.

The radial artery enters the palm from the dorsum of the hand between the two heads of the first dorsal interosseous muscle (Fig. 3.49). The artery gives branches to the thumb and index finger and continues as the deep palmar arch (Fig. 3.54), which lies over the bases of the metacarpal bones, deep to the flexor tendons, and is about 1 cm proximal to the superficial arch. The deep arch provides perforating branches, which anastomose with dorsal metacarpal arteries, and three palmar metacarpal arteries, which anastomose with the palmar digital arteries of the superficial arch. The deep arch is completed medially by the deep branch of the ulnar artery. Other vessels such as dorsal metacarpal arteries from the dorsal carpal arch may provide an important supply of blood to the hand. The anastomoses between branches of arteries supplying the hand usually provide an adequate blood supply even if one artery is blocked.

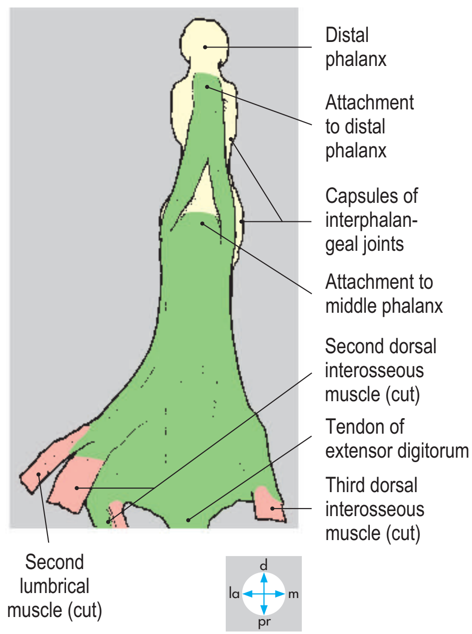


Fig. 3.51 Dorsal view of the digital expansion of the middle finger. The expansion has been flattened proximally to show the attachments of lumbrical and interosseous muscles.

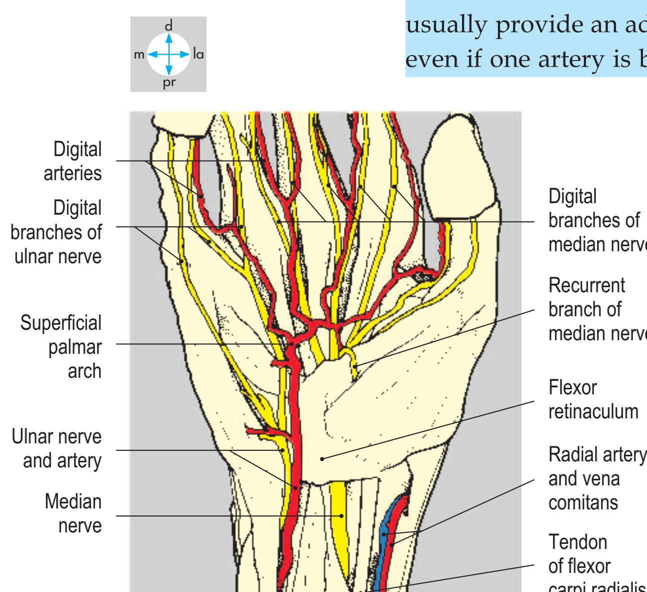


Fig. 3.52 Superficial vessels and nerves of the palm. Skin, subcutaneous tissue and the palmar aponeurosis have been removed.

Most venous blood from the fingers and palm drains into superficial veins on the dorsum of the hand to enter the cephalic or basilic veins.

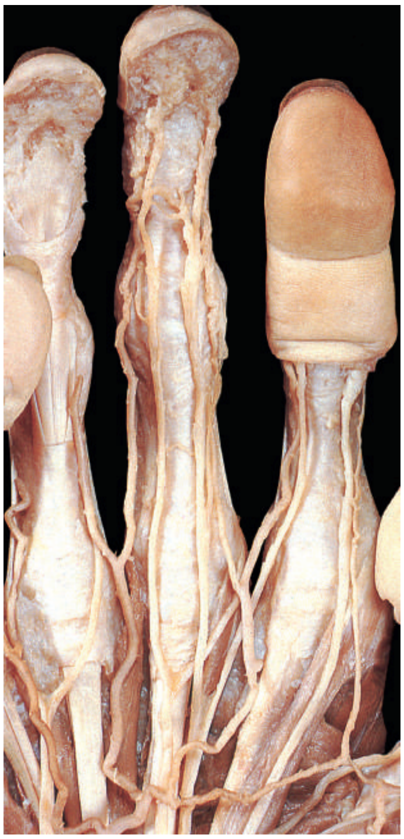
Nerves

Innervation of the anterior aspect of the hand is shared by the ulnar and median nerves. The ulnar nerve supplies more intrinsic muscles than the median nerve, which supplies a larger area of skin.

The ulnar nerve (Fig. 3.52) enters the palm superficial to the flexor retinaculum and terminates as superficial and deep branches. The superficial branch supplies digital branches to the skin of the medial one and one-half digits. A corresponding area of the palm is supplied by palmar branches that arise from the ulnar nerve in the forearm. The deep branch of the ulnar nerve (Fig. 3.54) accompanies the deep palmar arch and supplies the three hypothenar muscles, the medial two lumbricals, all the interossei and adductor pollicis. The ulnar nerve also supplies palmaris brevis. Injury to the ulnar nerve produces marked wasting (atrophy) of the muscles between the first and second metacarpal bones.

The median nerve traverses the carpal tunnel and terminates as digital and recurrent branches. The digital branches (Fig. 3.52) supply skin of the lateral three-and-one-half digits and usually the lateral two lumbricals. A corresponding area of the palm is supplied by palmar branches arising from the median nerve in the forearm. The recurrent branch of the median nerve (Fig. 3.43) supplies the three thenar muscles.

In the palm, the digital branches of the ulnar and median nerves lie deep to the superficial palmar arch (Fig. 3.52), but in the fingers they lie anterior to the digital arteries arising from the superficial arch (Fig. 3.53). Although there may be variability of innervation of the ring and middle fingers, the skin on the anterior surface of the thumb is always supplied by the median nerve and that of the little finger by the ulnar nerve. The palmar digital branches of the median and ulnar nerves also supply the nail beds of their respective digits.



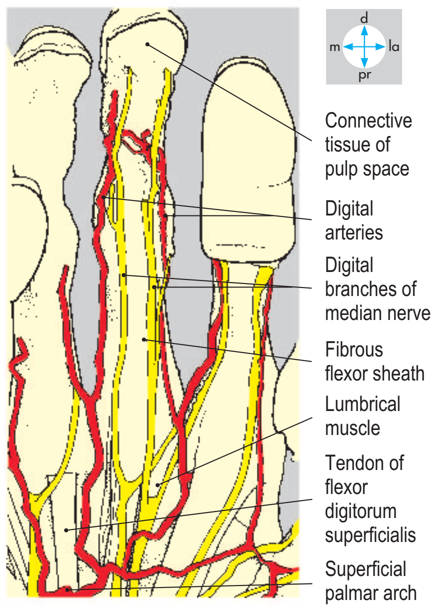
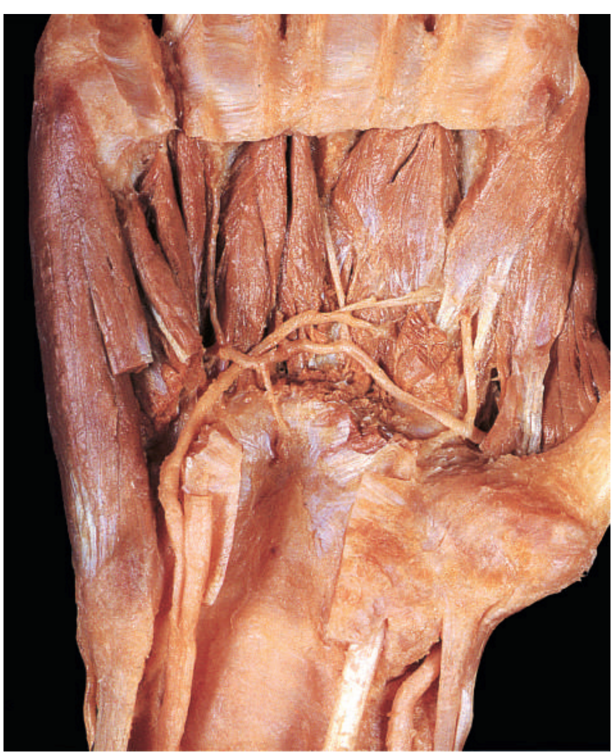


Fig. 3.53 Palmar digital arteries and nerves of the fingers.



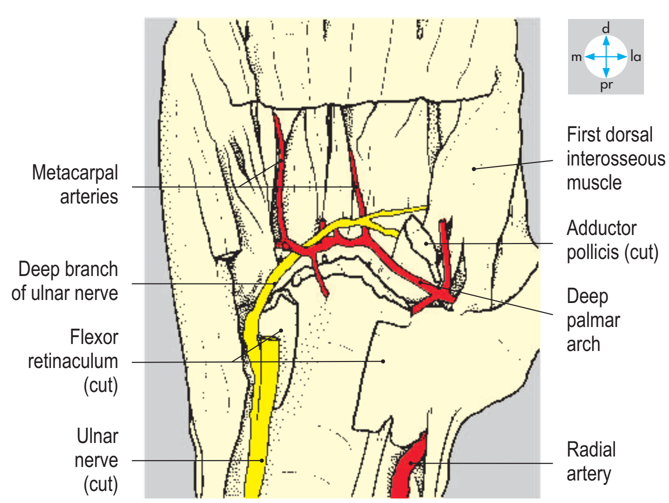


Fig. 3.54 Deep palmar arch and deep branch of ulnar nerve. The long flexor tendons and muscles of the thenar eminence have been removed, and adductor pollicis and the hypothenar muscles divided.

Muscles Attaching the Upper Limb to the Trunk

Three muscles connect the root of the upper limb to the chest wall and are usually dissected with the thorax. For this reason, pectoralis major and minor and serratus anterior are described with the thoracic wall (p. 31). Only the posterior group of muscles attaching the limb and its girdle to the vertebral column are described here: trapezius, latissimus dorsi, levator scapulae and the rhomboids (Fig. 3.55).

Trapezius

Trapezius (Fig. 3.56) is a large superficial muscle overlying the dorsum of the neck and thorax. Its upper fibres attach to the ligamentum nuchae, the external occipital protuberance and the superior nuchal line and pass downwards and laterally to the acromion of the scapula and the lateral part of the clavicle. These fibres produce elevation of the scapula as in shrugging the shoulder. When the scapula is fixed, they produce lateral flexion of the neck. The middle fibres of trapezius run horizontally from the ligamentum nuchae and upper thoracic spinous processes to the acromion and spine of the scapula and retract the scapula. Fibres of the lower part of the muscle attach to the lower thoracic spinous processes superficial to latissimus dorsi (Fig. 3.56) and pass upwards and laterally to the spine of the scapula. These fibres depress the scapula. Acting together, the upper and lower parts of trapezius produce rotation of the scapula, turning the glenoid fossa superiorly to permit full abduction of the limb (p. 117). In the neck, the anterior edge of the muscle forms the posterior boundary of the posterior triangle. The accessory nerve crosses the triangle (Fig. 7.9) and supplies the trapezius from its deep surface.

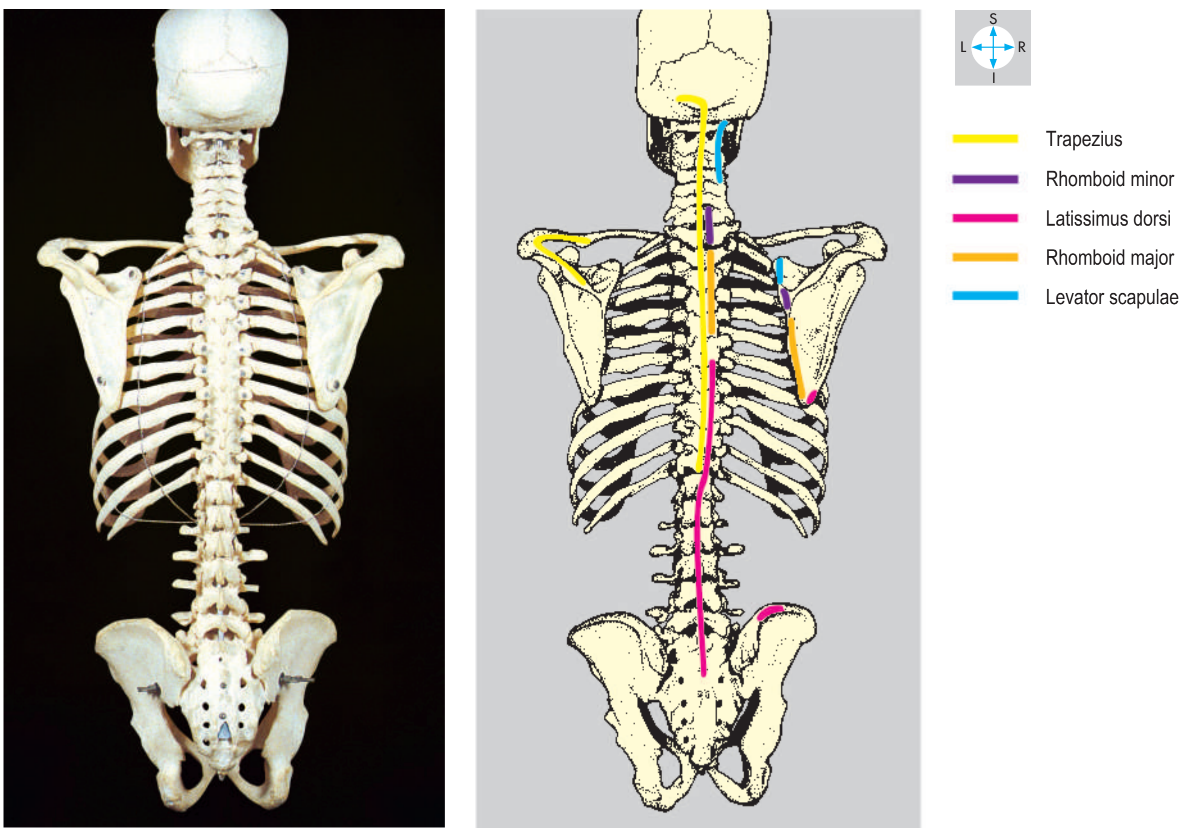


Fig. 3.55 Attachments of trapezius, rhomboid major and minor, levator scapulae and latissimus dorsi.

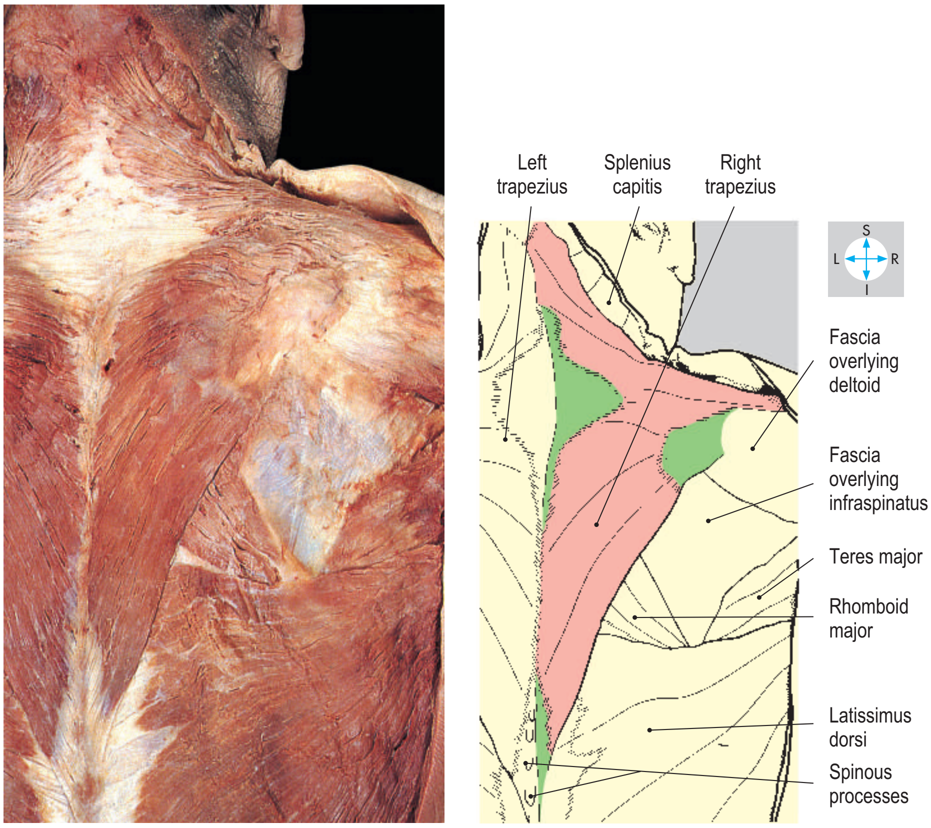


Fig. 3.56 The trapezius muscles have fascial attachments to the cervical and thoracic spinous processes and, in this dissection, are asymmetric inferiorly.

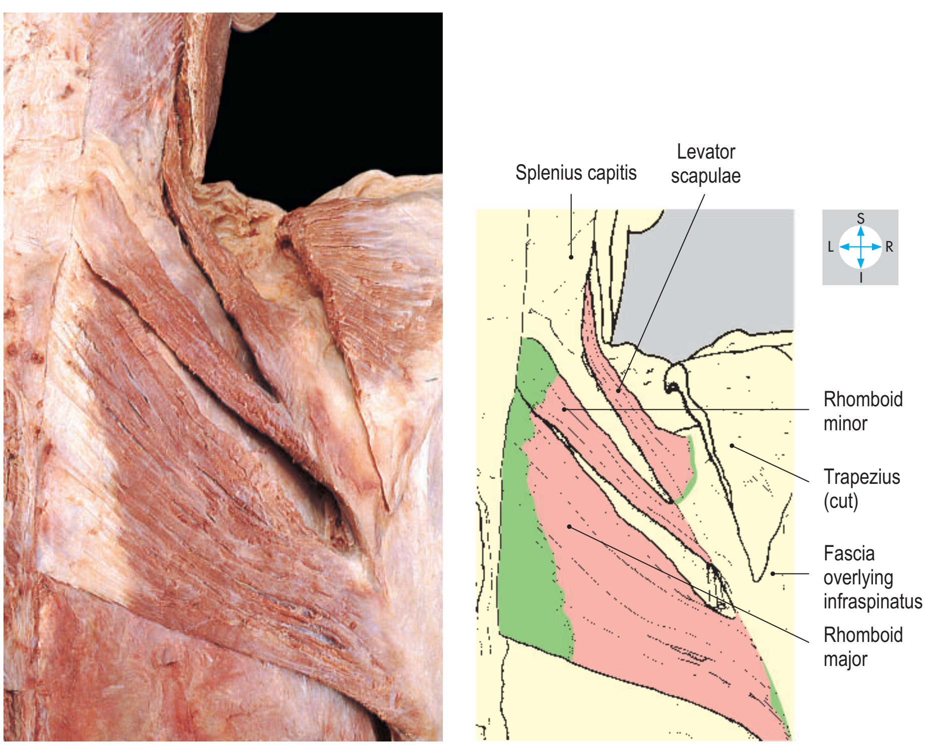


Fig. 3.57 Levator scapulae and rhomboids exposed by removal of trapezius.

Levator scapulae and rhomboids

These three muscles are covered by the trapezius. Levator scapulae (Fig. 3.57) ascends from the medial border of the scapula above the root of the spine to the transverse processes of the upper four cervical vertebrae. The fibres of the rhomboids incline upwards and medially (Fig. 3.57). Rhomboid minor attaches to the medial border of the scapula at the root of its spine and to the spinous processes of the seventh cervical and first thoracic vertebrae. Rhomboid major passes between the remainder of the medial border of the scapula and the spines of the second to fifth thoracic vertebrae.

All three muscles elevate the scapula and assist in scapular rotation during adduction of the upper limb. The dorsal scapular nerve from the brachial plexus (C5) supplies the rhomboids and may innervate levator scapulae, which is also supplied by branches from the cervical plexus (C3 & C4).

Latissimus dorsi

Latissimus dorsi (Fig. 3.58) is a large triangular muscle overlying much of the dorsal aspect of the trunk. The muscle attaches to the spinous processes of the lower six thoracic vertebrae and through the lumbar fascia to the spines of the lumbar vertebrae and the sacrum. The most inferior fibres attach to the posterior part of the iliac crest. Fibres also attach to the lower four ribs and to the inferior angle of the scapula. All the fibres converge on a narrow tendon in the posterior fold of the axilla. The tendon winds round the lower border of teres major to attach to the intertubercular sulcus of the humerus.

The muscle is a powerful adductor and extensor of the humerus at the shoulder joint, particularly when the upper limb is abducted and flexed. Latissimus dorsi is also a medial rotator at the shoulder joint and assists with rotation and retraction of the scapula. In movements such as rising from an armchair, if the humerus is fixed, both muscles contract to raise the trunk. This action is particularly important in patients with paralysed lower limbs. Latissimus dorsi is supplied by a single neurovascular bundle which contains the thoracodorsal nerve (a branch of the posterior cord of the brachial plexus; Fig. 3.18) and the thoracodorsal vessels, which are branches of the subscapular vessels. In reconstructive surgery, the muscle and its overlying skin may be mobilized on this neurovascular pedicle to provide a large myocutaneous flap.

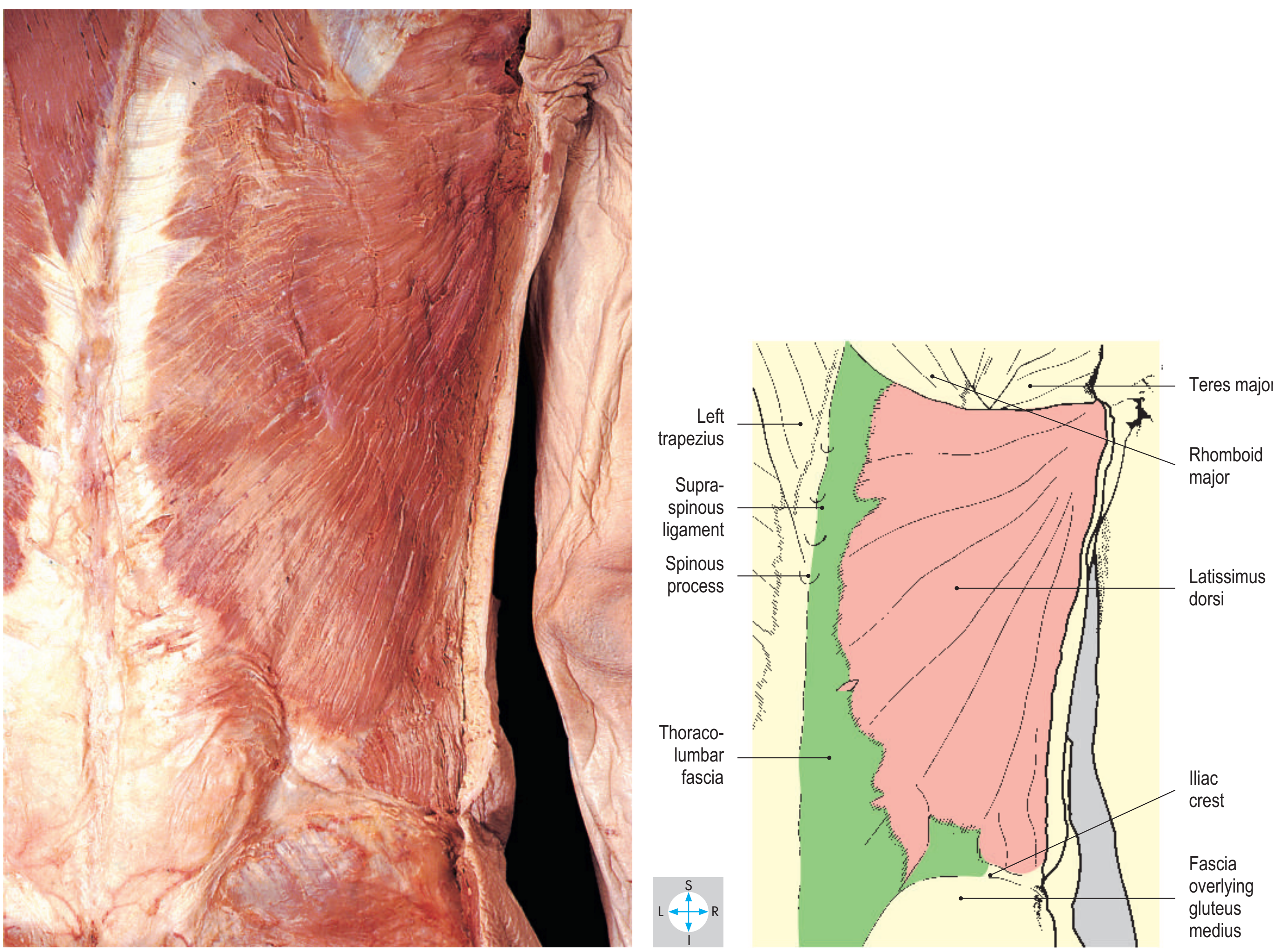


Fig. 3.58 Latissimus dorsi. The anterior border lies parallel to the cut skin edge, and the thoracic attachment has been exposed by removal of trapezius.

Short Scapular Muscles

These short muscles, the four rotator cuff muscles and teres major, span the shoulder (glenohumeral) joint, attaching to the scapula and to the proximal part of the humerus (Figs 3.59 & 3.62).

Rotator cuff muscles

This important group of muscles, namely subscapularis, supraspinatus, infraspinatus and teres minor, is intimately related to the shoulder joint. By attaching not only to the tubercles of the humerus but also to the capsule of the joint, they hold the humeral head firmly in the glenoid fossa and help stabilize the joint.

Subscapularis

Subscapularis (Fig. 3.60) attaches proximally to the medial part of the costal surface of the scapula. Its tendon, separated from the neck of the scapula by the subscapular bursa, is attached to the lesser tubercle of the humerus. The muscle is supplied by the subscapular nerves from the posterior cord of the brachial plexus. Subscapularis produces medial rotation of the arm at the shoulder joint.

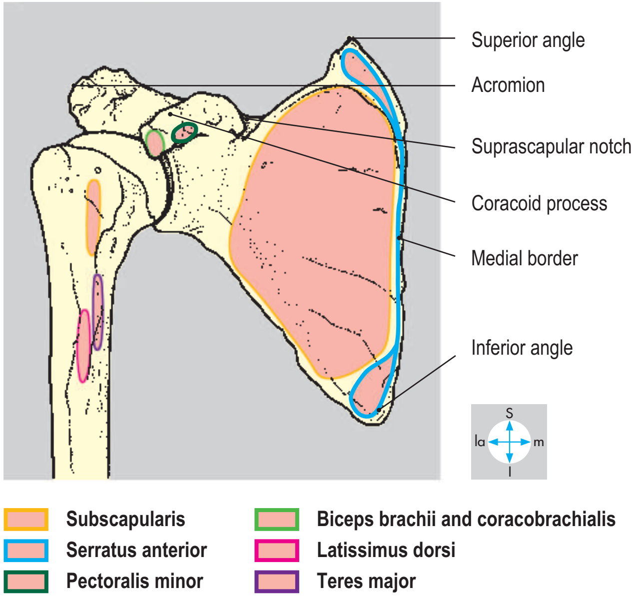


Fig. 3.59 Anterior aspects of scapula and proximal end of humerus. The head of the humerus is partly obscured by the overlying coracoid process of the scapula.

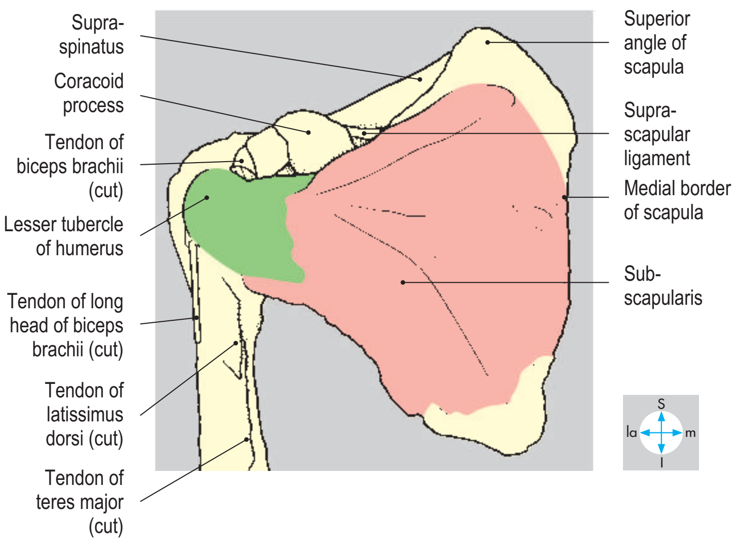


Fig. 3.60 Anterior view of subscapularis. The attachment of serratus anterior to the medial border of the scapula has been excised.

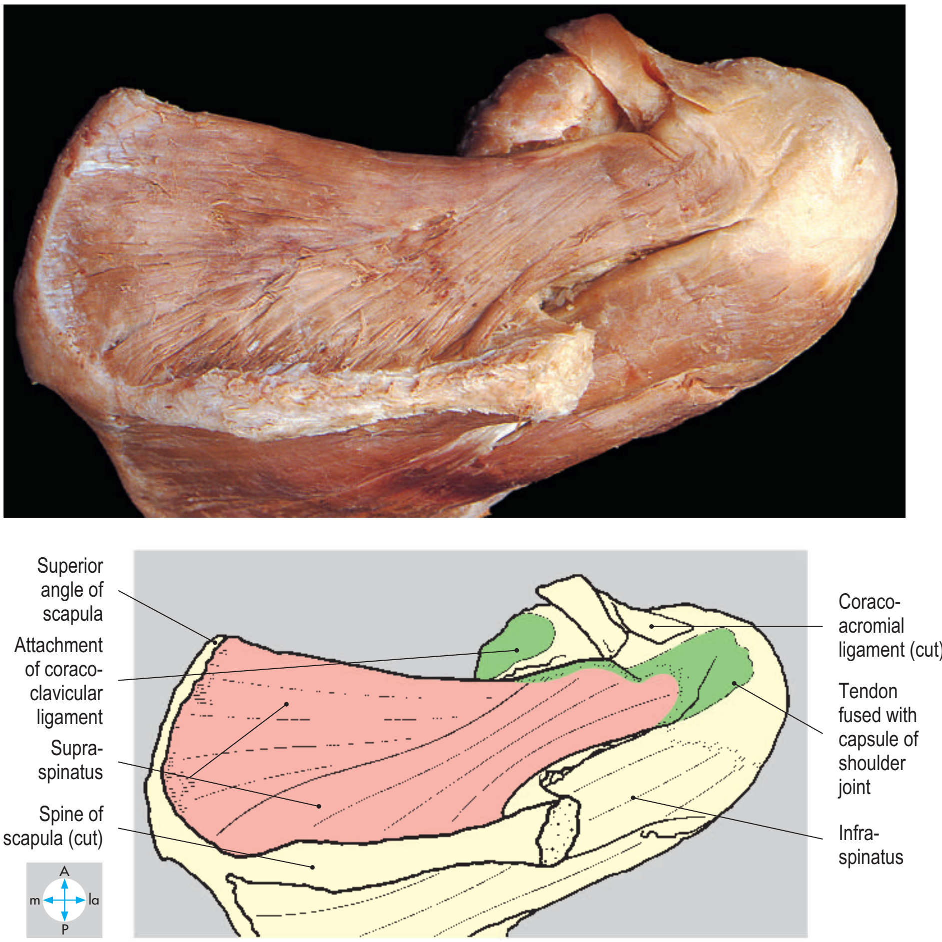


Fig. 3.61 Superior view of supraspinatus after removal of the acromion of the scapula.

Supraspinatus

Supraspinatus (Fig. 3.61) attaches to the supraspinous fossa of the scapula and to the superior facet of the greater tubercle of the humerus (Fig. 3.62). The subacromial bursa lies above the tendon of supraspinatus, separating the tendon and the capsule of the shoulder joint from the coracoacromial arch. The muscle initiates abduction of the shoulder joint. Tendinitis results in an arc of painful movement from about 60° to 120° of abduction. Complete rupture may lead the patient to develop a trick movement in which the body is tilted so that the limb abducts passively until deltoid can abduct the joint actively.

Infraspinatus

Infraspinatus (Fig. 3.63) arises from the infraspinous fossa, and its tendon inserts into the middle facet of the greater tubercle of the humerus. The muscle is covered by a strong fascial membrane. A bursa sometimes separates the tendon from the neck of the scapula.

Supraspinatus and infraspinatus are supplied by the suprascapular nerve, which arises from the upper trunk of the brachial plexus and passes beneath the suprascapular ligament (Fig. 3.59).

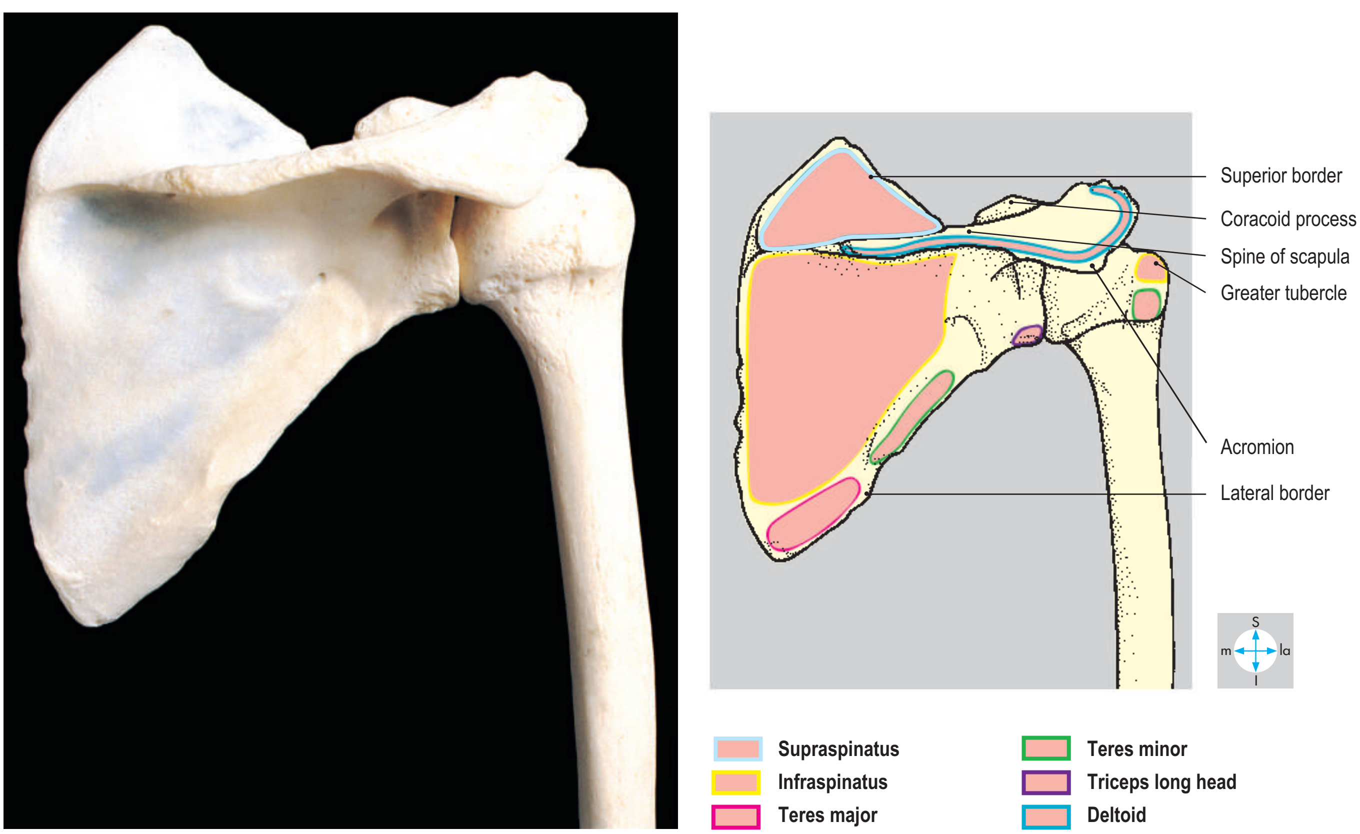


Fig. 3.62 Posterior aspects of scapula and proximal end of humerus. The head of the humerus is partly obscured by the overlying acromion of the scapula.

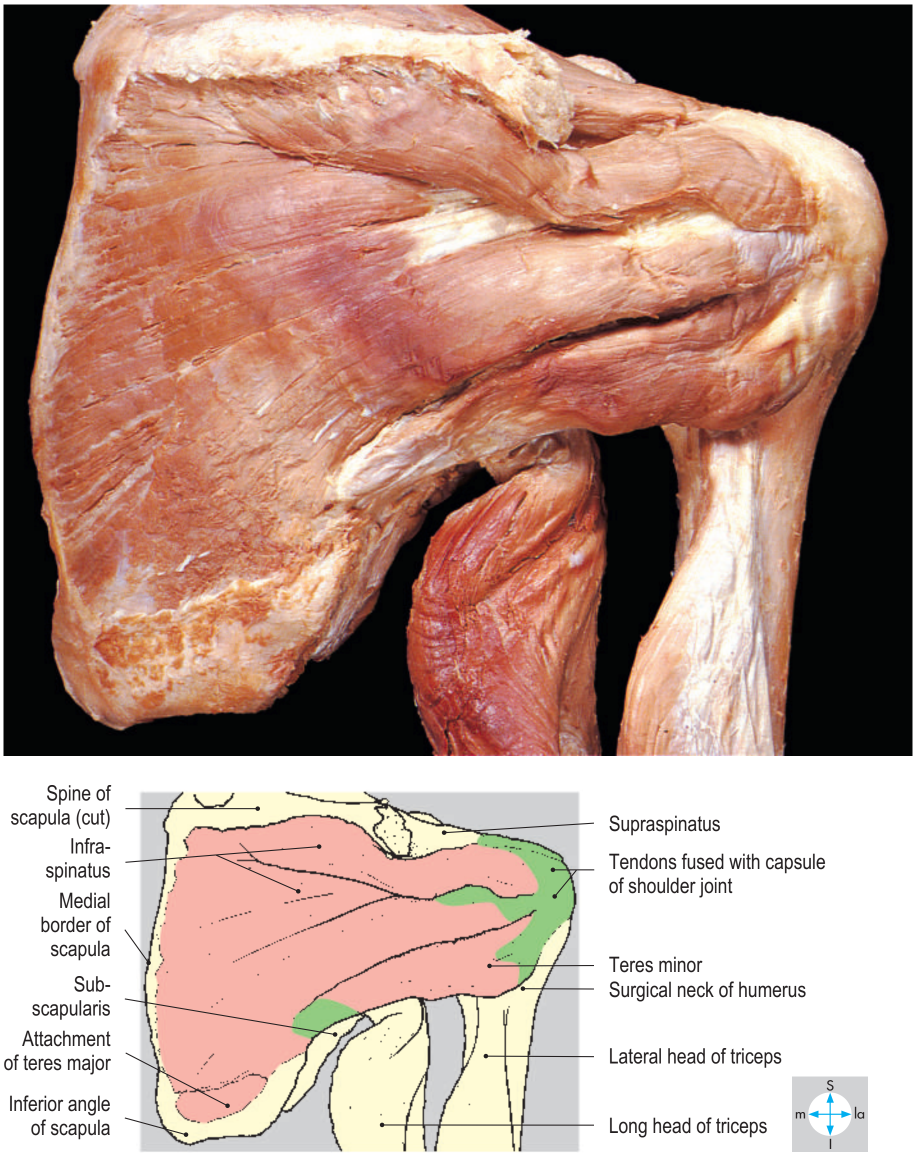


Fig. 3.63 Posterior view of infraspinatus and teres minor. Teres major has been removed.

Teres minor

Teres minor (Fig. 3.63) attaches to the posterior surface of the scapula along the upper part of the lateral edge and to the inferior facet of the greater tubercle of the humerus. It is supplied by the axillary nerve.

Both infraspinatus and teres minor laterally rotate the humerus at the shoulder joint. Fractures of the greater tubercle of the humerus may detach infraspinatus and teres minor from the humerus, allowing muscle spasm to produce medial rotation at the shoulder joint.

Teres major

Teres major (Fig. 3.64) is a short bulky muscle, which attaches to the lower part of the posterior surface of the scapula. Laterally, the muscle attaches below the lesser tubercle of the humerus to the medial lip of the intertubercular sulcus (Fig. 3.59). Teres major is supplied by the lower subscapular nerve and adducts and medially rotates the humerus at the shoulder joint.

The axillary nerve and posterior circumflex humeral vessels pass between the teres minor and major muscles, lateral to the long head of triceps, through the quadrangular space (Fig. 3.64). Near the space, the axillary nerve and the posterior circumflex humeral artery are closely related to the surgical neck of the humerus, and fracture of the neck may damage both structures.

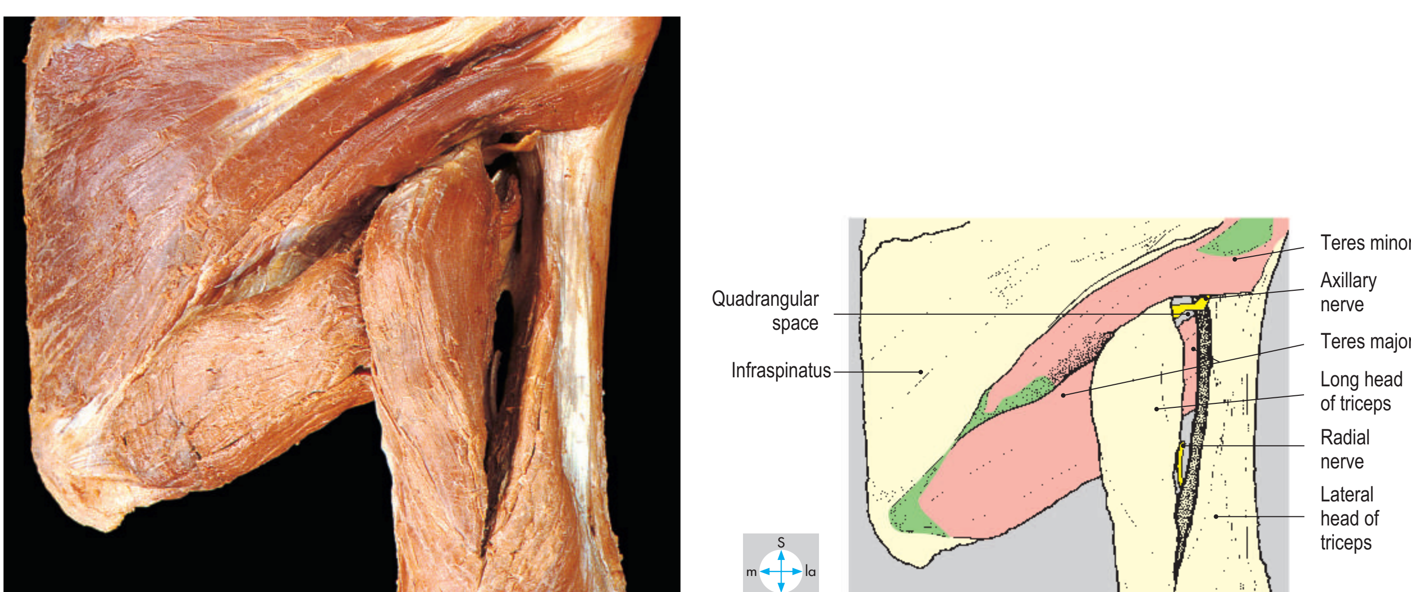


Fig. 3.64 Teres major and minor. The axillary nerve passes above teres major while the radial nerve lies below the muscle. Both nerves pass lateral to the long head of triceps.

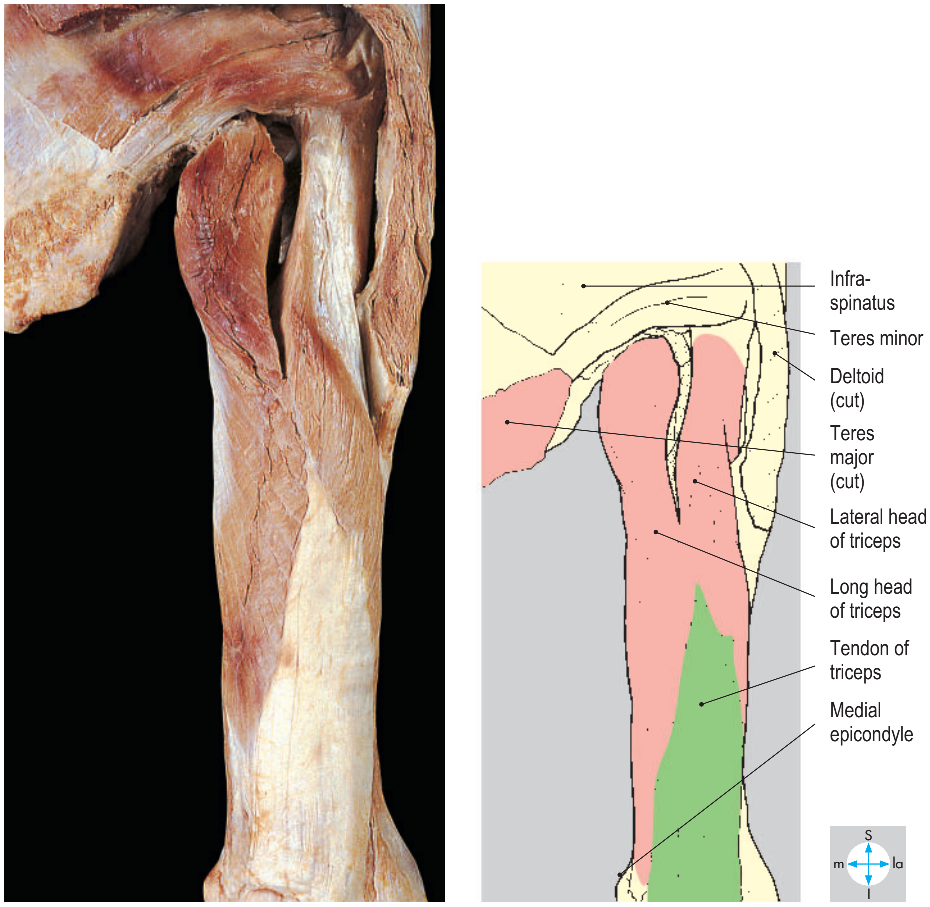


Fig. 3.65 Posterior aspect of triceps. Teres major and the posterior fibres of deltoid have been excised.

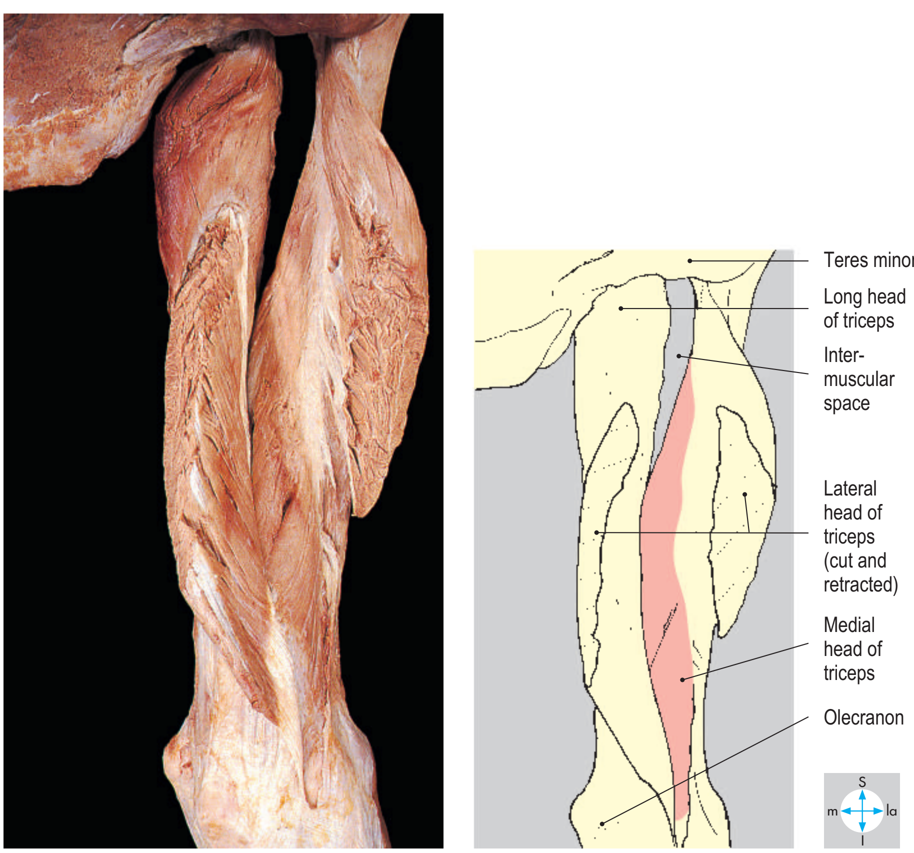


Fig. 3.66 The medial head of triceps has been exposed by removal of deltoid and division and retraction of the lateral head.

Posterior Compartment of the Arm

The posterior compartment of the arm contains triceps brachii, the radial nerve accompanied by the profunda brachii artery with its venae comitantes, and the ulnar nerve.

Triceps brachii

Proximally, this muscle attaches to the scapula and the humerus by three heads. The tendon of the long head (Fig. 3.65) attaches to the infraglenoid tubercle of the scapula, and the lateral head attaches to the posterior aspect of the shaft of the humerus above the radial groove (spiral groove, sulcus of the radial nerve) (Fig. 3.67). Both the long and lateral heads lie superficial to the medial head (Fig. 3.66), which has an extensive origin from the lateral and medial intermuscular septa and from the shaft of the humerus below the radial groove. Distally, the three heads fuse, and triceps attaches by a single tendon to the olecranon process of the ulna. Frequently, a bursa lies deep to the tendon, separating it from the capsule of the elbow joint. The three heads are supplied separately by branches of the radial nerve. Triceps is a powerful extensor of the elbow joint. The long head alone spans the shoulder joint and may assist in stabilizing that joint, particularly in full abduction.

Vessels and nerves

Radial nerve

The radial nerve, a terminal branch of the posterior cord, leaves the axilla by passing below teres major and between the humerus and the long head of triceps (Fig. 3.64). In the posterior compartment, the nerve passes between the medial and lateral heads of triceps and in the radial groove is intimately related to the shaft of the humerus (Fig. 3.68). It then leaves the posterior compartment by piercing the lateral intermuscular septum to reach the lateral part of the cubital fossa in front of the elbow joint (Fig. 3.29). In the arm, the radial nerve gives muscular branches to the medial and lateral heads of triceps and to brachioradialis and extensor carpi radialis longus, and cutaneous branches to the lateral aspect of the arm and the posterior aspect of the forearm. The branch to the

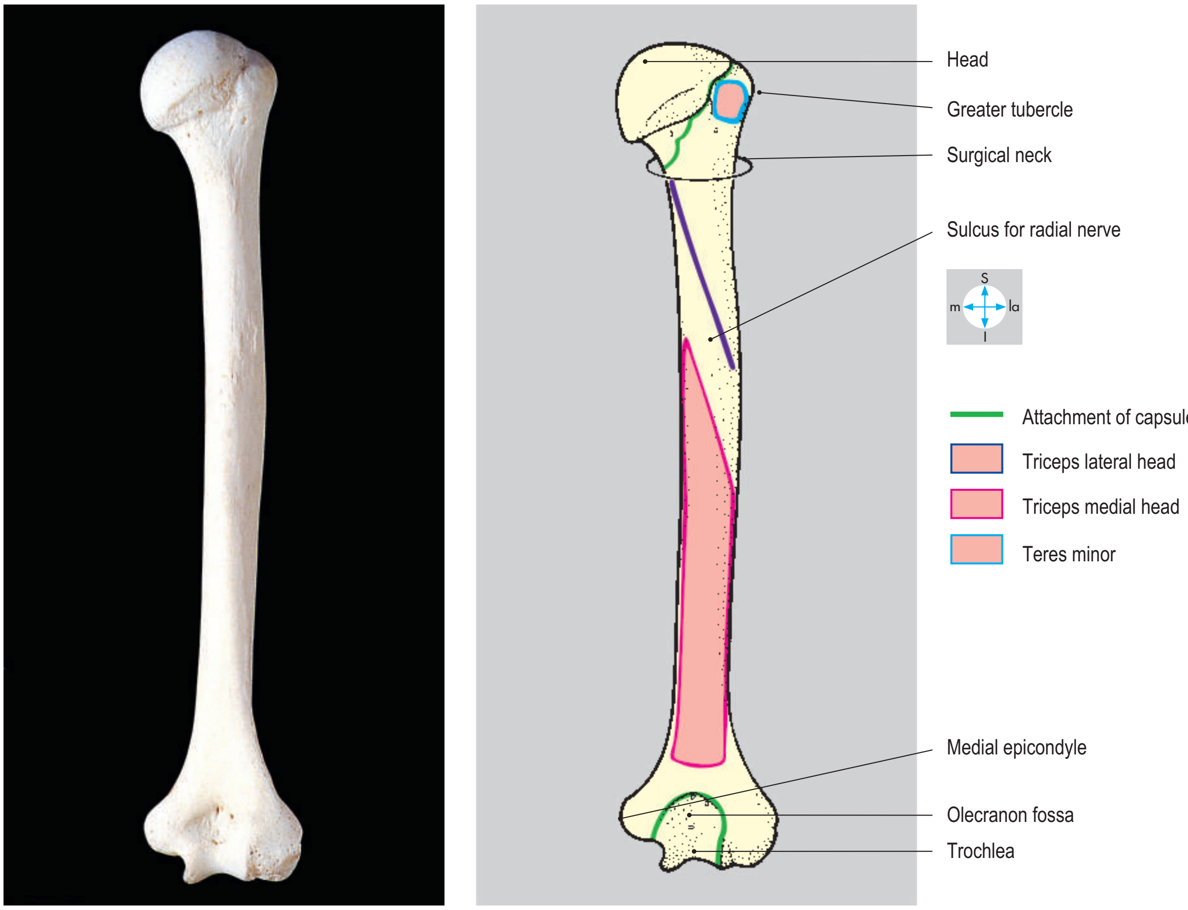


Fig. 3.67 Posterior aspect of humerus.

long head of triceps usually arises in the axilla. The radial nerve may be damaged in the radial groove by fracture of the shaft of the humerus (p. 113), but the branches to triceps, which arise more proximally, are usually spared.

Profunda brachii artery

The profunda brachii artery, a proximal branch of the brachial artery (Fig. 3.18), supplies the posterior compartment and accompanies the radial nerve in the radial groove of the humerus (Fig. 3.68). It gives muscular branches and contributes to the anastomosis around the elbow joint. The venae comitantes of the profunda brachii artery drain into the axillary vein.

Ulnar nerve

The ulnar nerve passes from the anterior to the posterior compartment by piercing the medial intermuscular septum at about midarm level (Fig. 3.24) and descends between the septum and the medial head of triceps. At the elbow it passes posterior to the medial epicondyle of the humerus, medial to the joint, and enters the forearm between the humeral and ulnar heads of flexor carpi ulnaris. The nerve gives no branches in the arm.

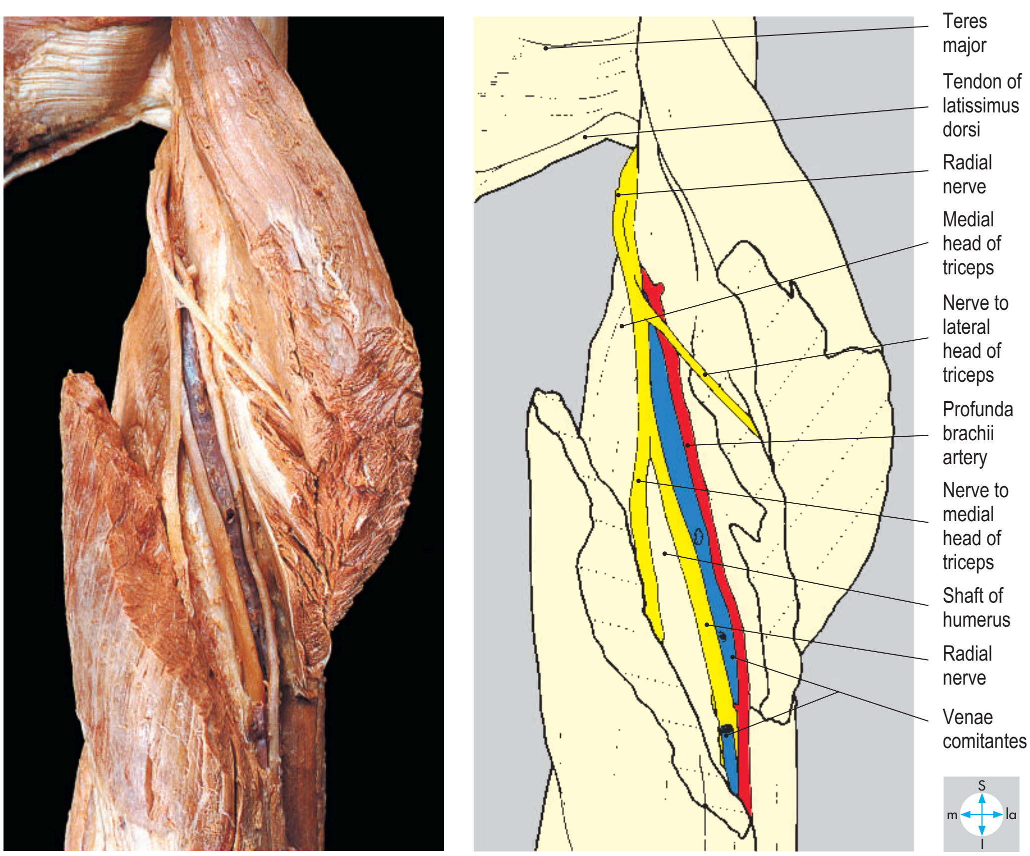


Fig. 3.68 The radial nerve and profunda brachii artery in the radial groove, seen after retraction of the cut lateral head of triceps. The long head has been excised.

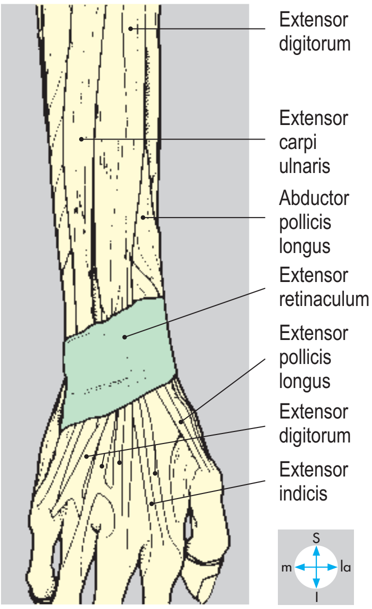


Fig. 3.69 Extensor retinaculum exposed by removal of subcutaneous tissue and deep fascia. The fibres of the retinaculum run obliquely, passing medially and inferiorly from the radius towards the hamate and pisiform bones.

Posterior Compartment of the Forearm

The posterior compartment of the forearm lies behind the radius and ulna and the intervening interosseous membrane. It contains the extensor muscles of the wrist and fingers, the extensors and long abductor of the thumb, and also brachioradialis, supinator and anconeus. The muscles are supplied by the posterior interosseous artery and nerve (deep branch of the radial nerve), assisted by the radial nerve itself. The compartment is enclosed by a layer of deep fascia, which attaches to the posterior

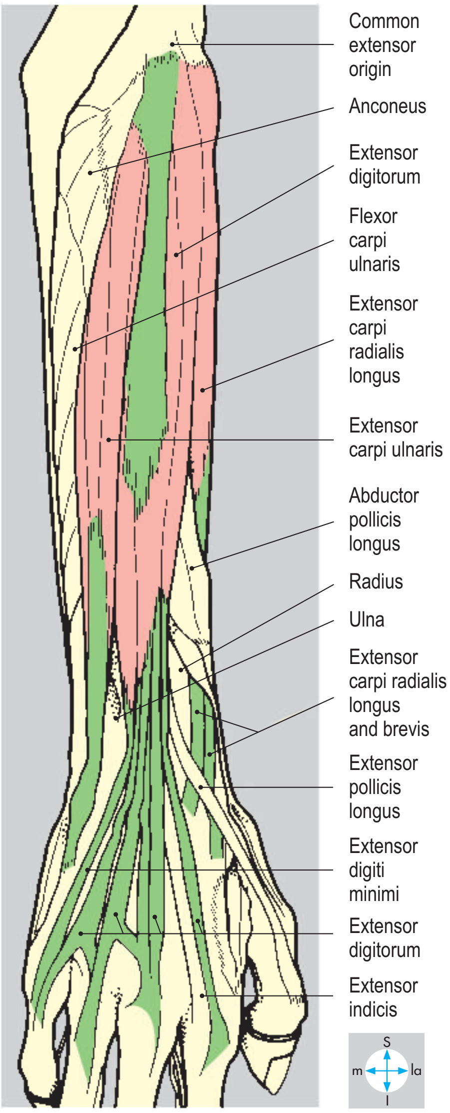


Fig. 3.70 Superficial muscles of the posterior compartment exposed by removal of deep fascia and the extensor retinaculum. Flexor and extensor carpi ulnaris lie edge to edge along the subcutaneous border of the ulna.

(subcutaneous) border of the ulna. In the region of the wrist the fascia is thickened to form the extensor retinaculum (Fig. 3.69). The extensor tendons, invested by synovial sheaths, pass deep to the retinaculum and enter the hand.

Superficial muscles

Four superficial extensors attach proximally to the anterior surface of the lateral humeral epicondyle at the common extensor origin (Fig. 3.70). Extensor carpi radialis brevis (Fig. 3.71) passes distally to the base of the third metacarpal and is an extensor and abductor of the wrist. Extensor digitorum (Figs 3.69 & 3.70) has four tendons which pass to the fingers and form the dorsal expansions or extensor hoods (Fig. 3.51). On the dorsum of the hand these tendons are interconnected by fibrous bands. The muscle is an extensor of the fingers and the wrist joint. Extensor digiti minimi (Fig. 3.70) attaches via two tendons to the dorsal expansion of the little finger and assists extension of this finger. Extensor carpi ulnaris (Fig. 3.70) attaches proximally to both the common extensor origin and the posterior surface of the ulna. Distally, it attaches to the base of the fifth metacarpal bone. The muscle is an extensor and adductor of the wrist. These four superficial extensors span the elbow but, since their attachments are close to the axis of movement, do not act effectively on that joint. They are innervated by the posterior interosseous (deep branch of the radial) nerve.

Two other superficial muscles, brachioradialis and extensor carpi radialis longus, arise from the lateral supracondylar ridge of the humerus and are innervated directly from the main trunk of the radial nerve. Brachioradialis (Figs 3.71 & 3.72) arises from the upper two-thirds of the ridge and attaches distally to the radial styloid process. The muscle is a flexor of the elbow joint

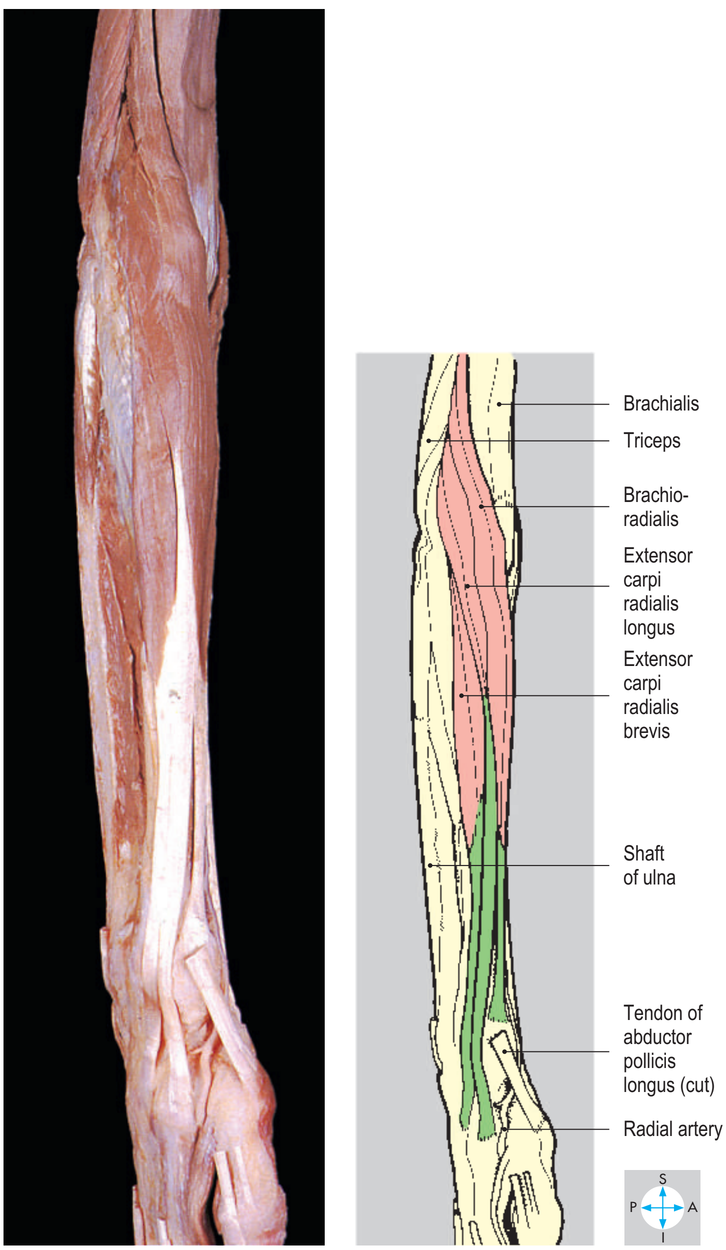


Fig. 3.71 Extensors carpi radialis longus and brevis, and brachioradialis after removal of abductor pollicis longus and extensors pollicis longus and brevis.

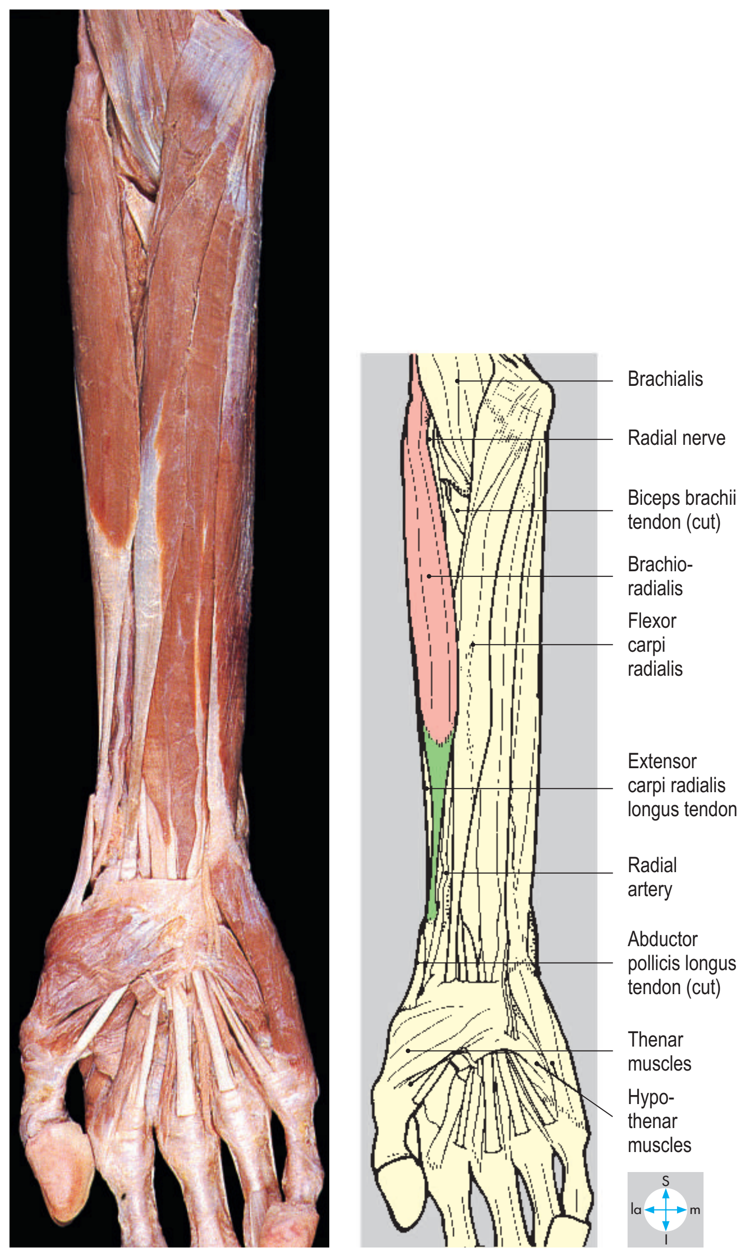


Fig. 3.72 Brachioradialis (anterior aspect). The muscle forms the lateral boundary of the cubital fossa and covers the radial artery and the superficial branch of the radial nerve in the forearm.

and rotates the forearm from full pronation or supination into an intermediate position. Extensor carpi radialis longus (Figs 3.70 & 3.71) arises from the lower third of the supracondylar ridge and attaches distally to the base of the second metacarpal bone. The muscle is an extensor and abductor of the wrist joint.

In addition to their primary roles, the three carpal extensors provide an essential contribution to the power grip by fixing the wrist in an optimum position while the long flexors act on the fingers. Overuse of the muscles attaching to the lateral epicondyle may produce inflammation near the attachment with pain during extension of the wrist and fingers (lateral epicondylitis or 'tennis elbow').

Deep muscles

The proximal attachments of four of the deep muscles are illustrated in Figure 3.73. The tendon of extensor indicis (Fig. 3.74) passes distally, medial to that of extensor digitorum, and attaches to the extensor expansion of the index finger. The extensor pollicis longus tendon passes distally around the ulnar (medial) side of

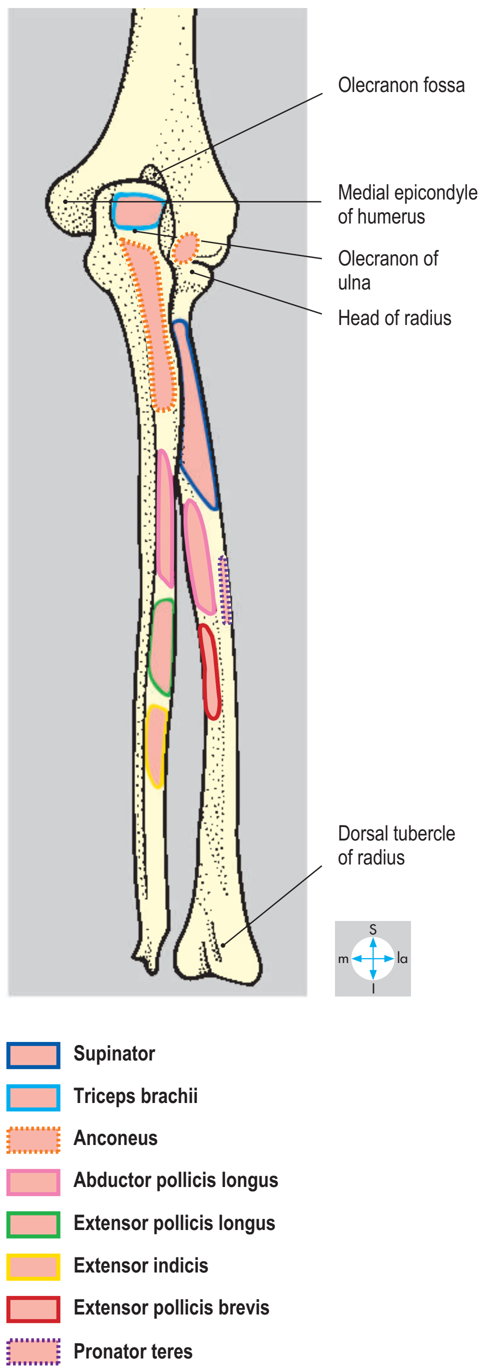


Fig. 3.73 Posterior aspects of radius, ulna and distal end of humerus.

the dorsal tubercle of the radius (Fig. 3.74), then crosses the radial extensors of the carpus to attach to the base of the distal phalanx of the thumb (Fig. 3.75). The muscle extends the thumb and its carpometacarpal joint. The tendons of extensor pollicis brevis and abductor pollicis longus (Fig. 3.75) lie together as they cross the radial carpal extensors and brachioradialis. Extensor pollicis brevis attaches to the base of the proximal phalanx of the thumb, which it extends. Abductor pollicis longus attaches to the base of the first metacarpal bone, which it extends and abducts.

Although these four deep muscles act primarily on the joints of the hand, they also span the wrist joint; but their actions here are weak. They are all innervated by the posterior interosseous (deep branch of the radial) nerve.

Extension of the thumb creates a hollow on the posterolateral aspect of the wrist called the anatomical snuff box (Fig. 3.75). It is limited anteriorly by the tendons of abductor pollicis longus and extensor pollicis brevis and posteriorly by extensor pollicis longus. Superficial to the snuff box lie the origin of the cephalic vein and branches of the superficial radial nerve supplying the dorsum of the hand. The branches can be palpated where they cross superficial to the tendon of extensor pollicis longus. The tendons of the two radial carpal extensors and the radial artery pass through the snuff box. The bony floor comprises the radial styloid process, scaphoid, trapezium and base of the first metacarpal bone. Fracture of the scaphoid bone often produces pain, swelling and tenderness in the snuff box (p. 122).

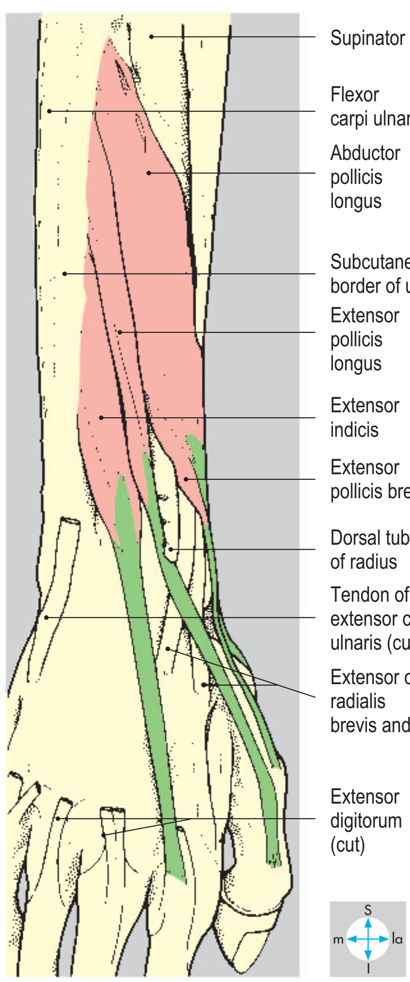


Fig. 3.74 Extensor indicis and extensors pollicis longus and brevis, after division of extensor digitorum. The tendon of extensor indicis lies on the ulnar (medial) side of the index tendon of extensor digitorum.

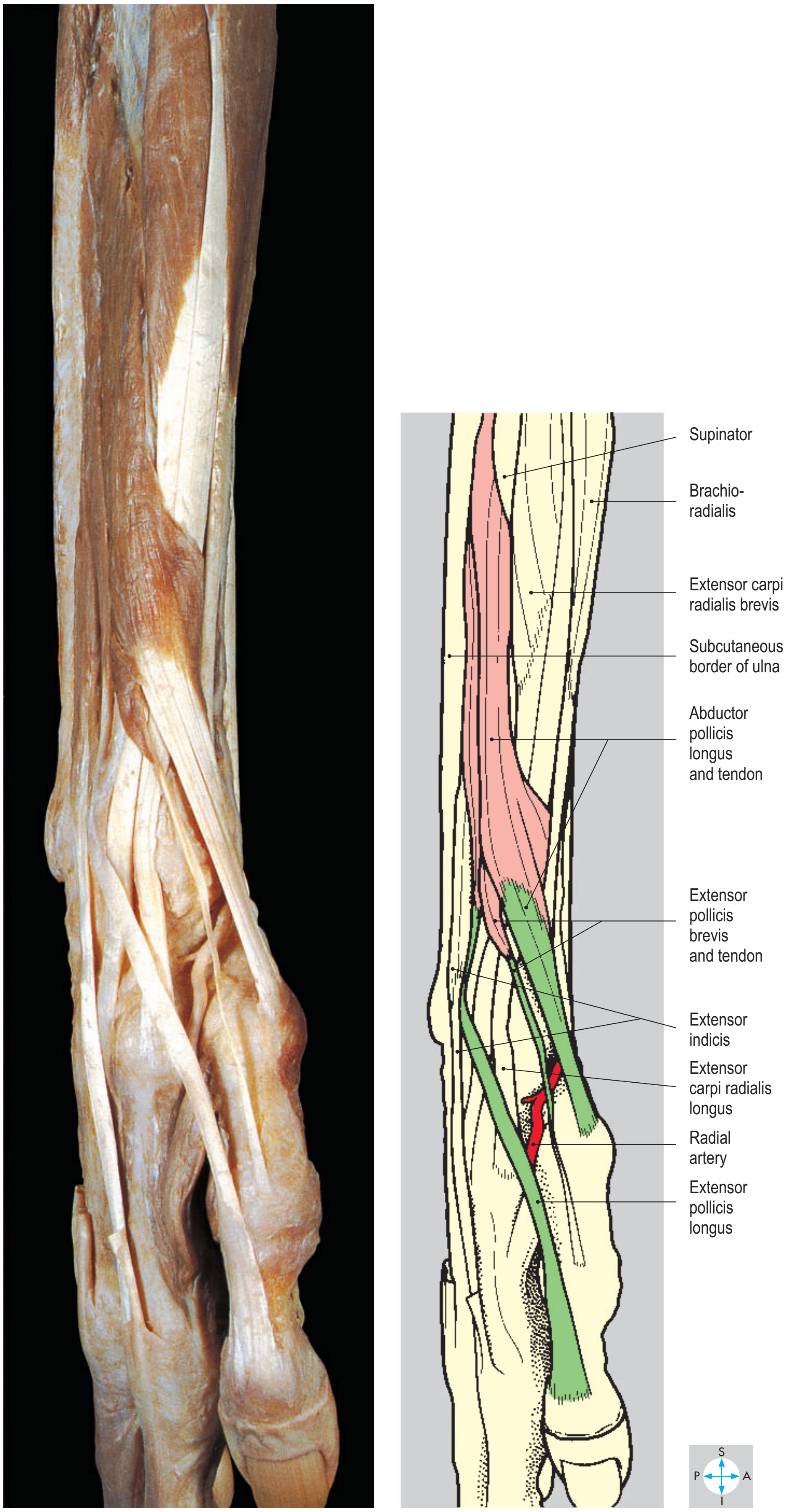


Fig. 3.75 Abductor pollicis longus and extensors pollicis longus and brevis. At the wrist, the radial carpal extensors are crossed by the tendons of these three muscles passing to the thumb.

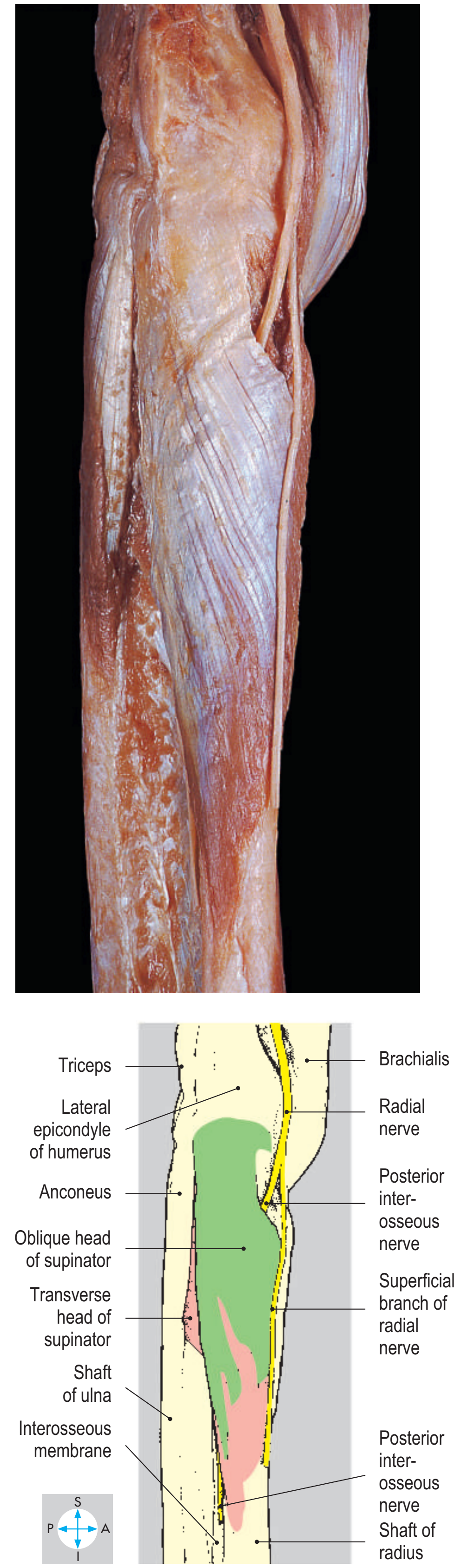


Fig. 3.76 Supinator, revealed by removal of the other muscles of the posterior compartment. The posterior interosseous nerve passes between the transverse and oblique heads of the muscle.

Supinator, also a deep muscle, consists of oblique and transverse heads (Fig. 3.76). The oblique head attaches to the lateral epicondyle and collateral ligament, while the transverse head is attached to the supinator crest of the ulna. Both heads wind laterally around the proximal part of the radius and attach to its anterior surface (Fig. 3.73). The muscle supinates the forearm and is supplied by the deep branch of the radial nerve (posterior interosseous nerve), which passes between the two heads of the muscle (Fig. 3.77).

Vessels

In the cubital fossa, the common interosseous branch of the ulnar artery divides into larger anterior and smaller posterior interosseous arteries, which pass distally into their respective compartments of the forearm. The posterior interosseous artery (Fig. 3.77) lies between and supplies the superficial and deep groups of muscles. Near the wrist, a branch of the anterior interosseous artery penetrates the interosseous membrane to assist in the supply of the distal part of the posterior compartment. In addition, muscles on the lateral aspect of the compartment may receive blood from branches of the radial artery. The arteries of the compartment are accompanied by venae comitantes that drain into veins accompanying the brachial artery.

On the dorsum of the wrist, the radial artery enters the anatomical snuff box from the anterior compartment of the forearm deep to the tendons of abductor pollicis longus and extensor pollicis brevis. The artery crosses the floor of the snuff box and leaves the dorsum of the hand by penetrating the first dorsal interosseous muscle to enter the palm.

Nerves

The posterior compartment of the forearm is supplied by the radial nerve, which leaves the arm by penetrating the lateral intermuscular septum. Anterior to the elbow, the nerve lies between brachialis and brachioradialis and divides into superficial and deep branches (Fig. 3.76). The superficial branch continues distally through the forearm covered by brachioradialis, leaving its posterior border near the wrist and crossing the snuff box to terminate as cutaneous branches on the dorsum of the hand (Fig. 3.78). The deep branch, the posterior interosseous nerve, arises from the radial nerve at the level of the neck of the radius and enters the posterior compartment by passing between the two heads of supinator (Fig. 3.77). Initially, it accompanies the posterior interosseous artery but distally lies more deeply on the interosseous membrane. The posterior interosseous nerve gives branches to the elbow, radioulnar and wrist joints, and supplies most of the posterior compartment muscles. Brachioradialis and extensor carpi radialis longus are supplied directly by the radial nerve from branches arising in the arm, and anconeus is supplied by the branch of the radial nerve to the medial head of triceps. Damage to the radial nerve or to its posterior interosseous branch may weaken the extensor muscles of the wrist and fingers, so that they are unable to overcome gravity, causing 'wrist drop'.

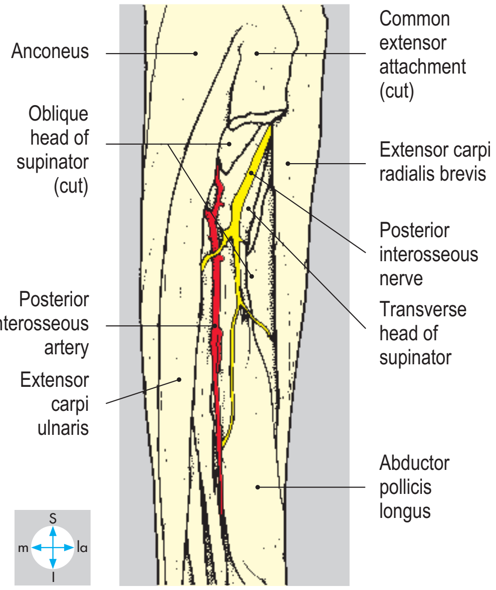


Fig. 3.77 Posterior interosseous artery and nerve, exposed by division of extensor digitorum. The specimen is partly pronated, so the radial border of the forearm faces anteriorly.

Dorsum of the Hand

The dorsum of the hand is innervated by branches of the radial and ulnar nerves (Fig. 3.78). The superficial branch of the radial nerve usually supplies the skin of the lateral three and one-half digits (excluding the nail beds) and a corresponding part of the dorsum of the hand. Skin of the dorsal aspect of the first web space is usually supplied exclusively by the radial nerve and is tested when radial nerve injury is suspected. The skin over the remainder of the posterior aspect of the hand and the medial one and one-half fingers (excluding the nail beds) is supplied by dorsal branches of the ulnar nerve that arise in the anterior compartment and pass around the medial aspect of the wrist.

Much of the venous blood from the digits and the palm drains into a network of vessels that often forms a superficial venous arch on the dorsum of the hand.

At the wrist, the tendons of extensor digitorum lie deep to the extensor retinaculum (Fig. 3.79), invested by a single synovial sheath. On the dorsum of the hand, the tendons diverge to reach the fingers.

Skin on the dorsum of the hand is elastic and freely mobile on the underlying loose connective tissue: infection or injury of the hand frequently results in swelling (oedema) of these lax tissues.

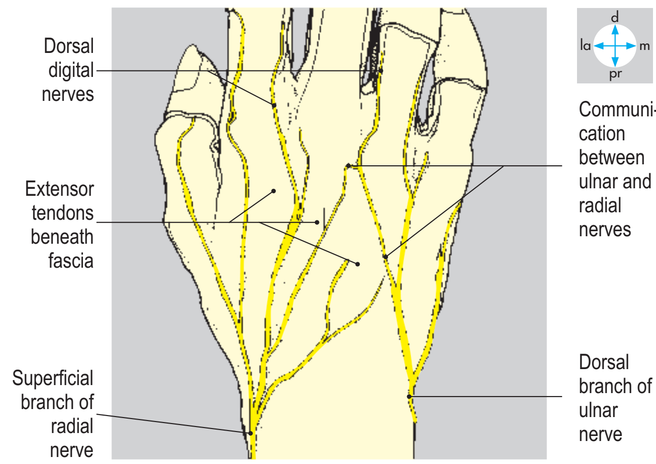


Fig. 3.78 Cutaneous branches of the radial and ulnar nerves on the dorsum of the hand after removal of the superficial veins.

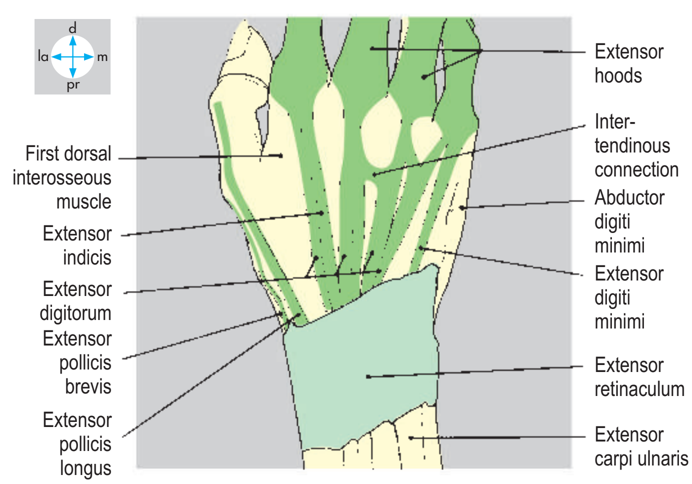


Fig. 3.79 Extensor retinaculum and extensor tendons, exposed by removal of subcutaneous tissue. The tendons pass through fibro-osseous tunnels deep to the retinaculum and are enveloped by synovial sheaths (here removed), which continue beyond the edges of the retinaculum.

Clavicular and Shoulder Joints

Three joints contribute to the considerable mobility of the arm; movement occurs between the humerus and the scapula at the shoulder (glenohumeral) joint, and the scapula moves on the chest wall through the joints at each end of the clavicle. Although few muscles attach to the clavicle, the numerous muscles attached to the scapula and upper humerus all contribute to movement at the clavicular joints. Indeed, movement at the shoulder joint is almost always associated with movement at the sternoclavicular and acromioclavicular joints.

Clavicular joints

The sternoclavicular and acromioclavicular joints are subcutaneous and easily palpable in the living subject. Each has a tubular capsule lined by synovial membrane.

At the sternoclavicular joint (Fig. 3.80), the medial end of the clavicle articulates with the notch on the upper border of the manubrium and with the first costal cartilage. The joint is partitioned by an intracapsular disc of fibrocartilage that attaches superiorly to the clavicle, inferiorly to the first costal cartilage and around its periphery to the capsule. There are two accessory ligaments. Above the capsule is the interclavicular ligament, which joins the medial ends of the clavicles. Just lateral to the joint is the costoclavicular (rhomboid) ligament, which attaches the clavicle firmly to the first costal cartilage. Stability depends on the disc and accessory ligaments, which limit both medial displacement and elevation of the medial end of the clavicle. The sternoclavicular joints are separated from the origins of the brachiocephalic veins and other structures in the root of the neck by the sternohyoid and sternothyroid muscles.

At the acromioclavicular joint (Fig. 3.81) the lateral end of the clavicle articulates with the medial aspect of the acromion of the scapula. The joint capsule attaches to the edges of the articular surfaces that lie

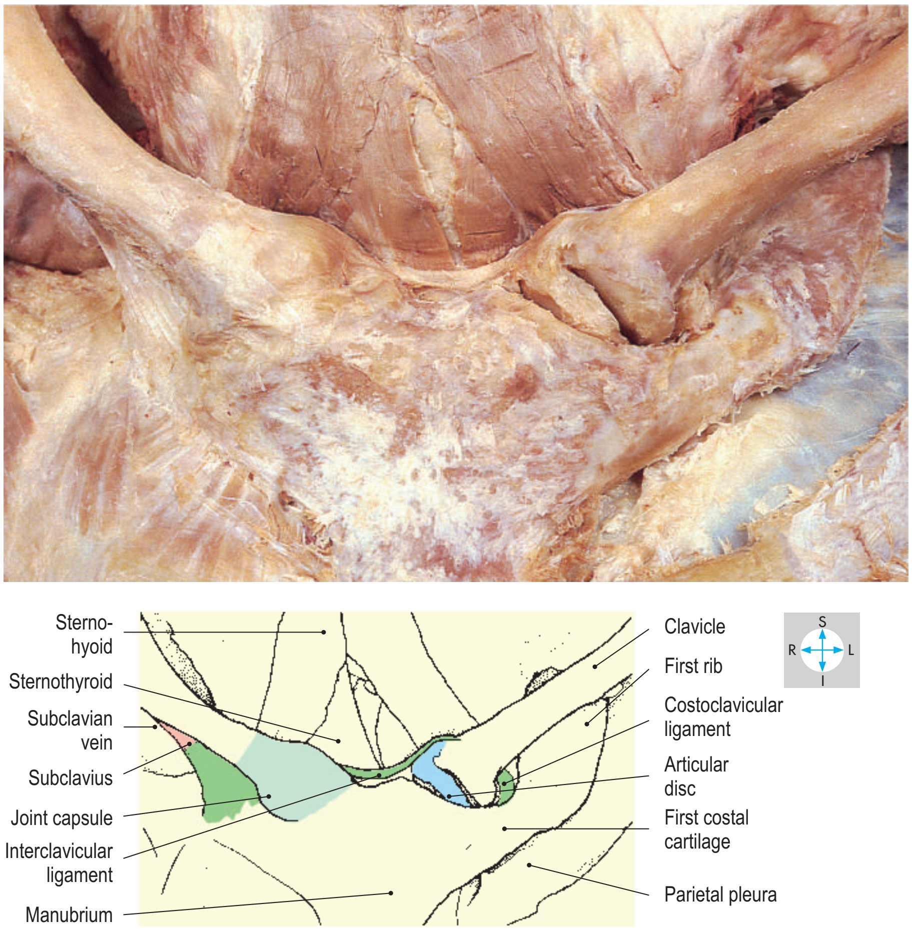


Fig. 3.80 Sternoclavicular joints. On the left, the joint capsule and subclavius have been excised to reveal the cartilaginous disc and costoclavicular ligament. Pleura is exposed in the first left intercostal space.

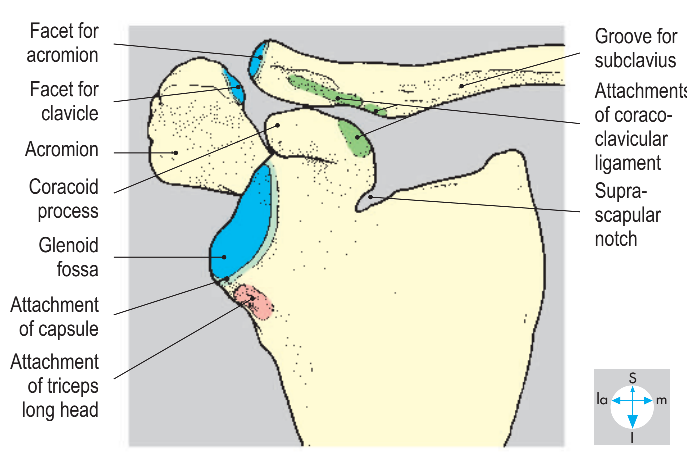


Fig. 3.81 Oblique anterior view of scapula and lateral part of clavicle. The bones have been separated to show the articular surfaces of the acromioclavicular joint and the sites of attachment of the coracoclavicular ligament.

obliquely, the clavicular facet facing laterally and inferiorly. Stability of the joint is provided mostly by the strong coracoclavicular ligament linking the coracoid process and the undersurface of the clavicle near its lateral end. This ligament consists of conoid and trapezoid parts.

Both the sternoclavicular and acromioclavicular joints are supplied by branches of the supraclavicular nerves (C3 & C4).

The lateral end of the clavicle may be elevated or depressed and drawn forwards or backwards. The axes of these movements occur at the costoclavicular and coracoclavicular ligaments, rather than through the clavicular joints. Thus, the medial end of the clavicle is elevated during depression of the scapula and moves posteriorly when the scapula is protracted. Full abduction of the upper limb requires rotation of the scapula so that the glenoid fossa tilts upwards. Rotation of the clavicle through 40° at the sternoclavicular joint supplements the 20° of movement available at the acromioclavicular joint, permitting the scapula to rotate through about 60°. The principal muscles of scapular rotation are trapezius and serratus anterior. Protraction is produced by pectoralis minor and serratus anterior and retraction by trapezius and the rhomboids.

The clavicle forms a strut that supports the scapula against the medial pull of muscles such as pectoralis major and latissimus dorsi. The clavicular joints are stabilized by their accessory ligaments, which are so strong that trauma, such as falling onto the outstretched limb, is more likely to fracture the clavicle than rupture the ligaments. The lateral part of a fractured clavicle tends to be displaced inferiorly by the weight of the limb and medially by spasm of pectoralis major and latissimus dorsi muscles, whereas the medial fragment may be elevated by the action of sternocleidomastoid muscle.

Shoulder joint

The shoulder (glenohumeral) joint is synovial, of the ball-and-socket type, and is capable of a wide range of movement. The hemispherical head of the humerus is directed medially and backwards and articulates with the much smaller glenoid fossa of the scapula (Fig. 3.82). The fossa faces anterolaterally and is slightly deepened by the glenoid labrum, a cartilaginous lip round its edge.

The joint capsule (Fig. 3.83) forms a loose sleeve attaching medially to the glenoid labrum. Its humeral attachment is around

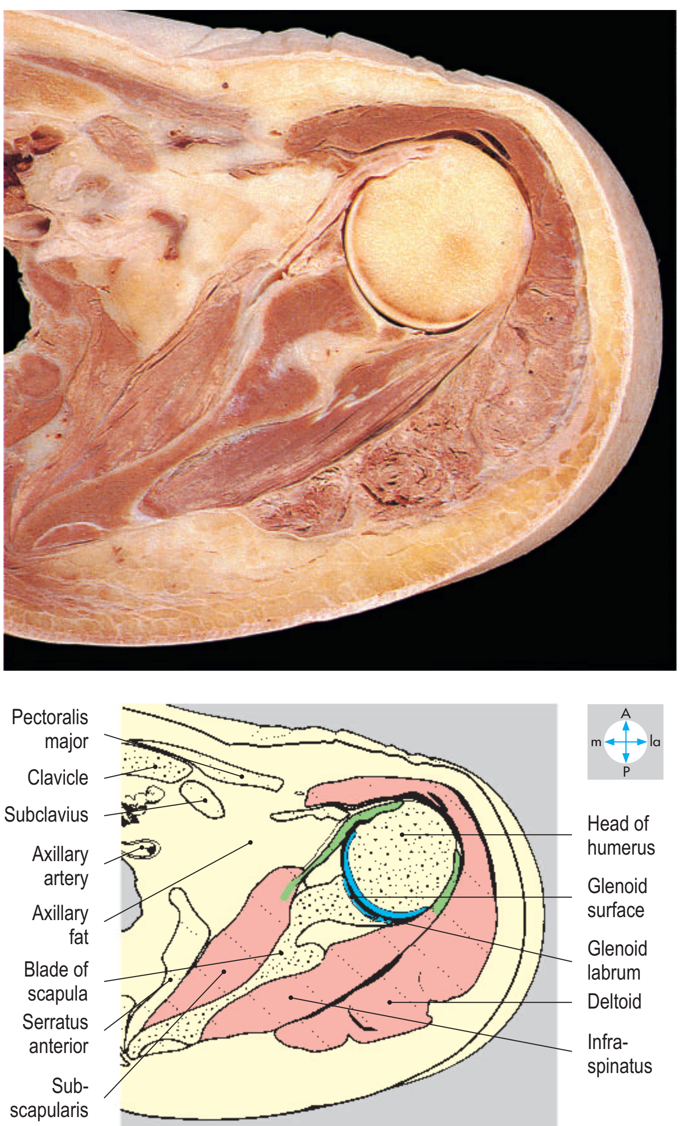


Fig. 3.82 Transverse section at the level of the humeral head showing the relations of the shoulder joint. Superior aspect.

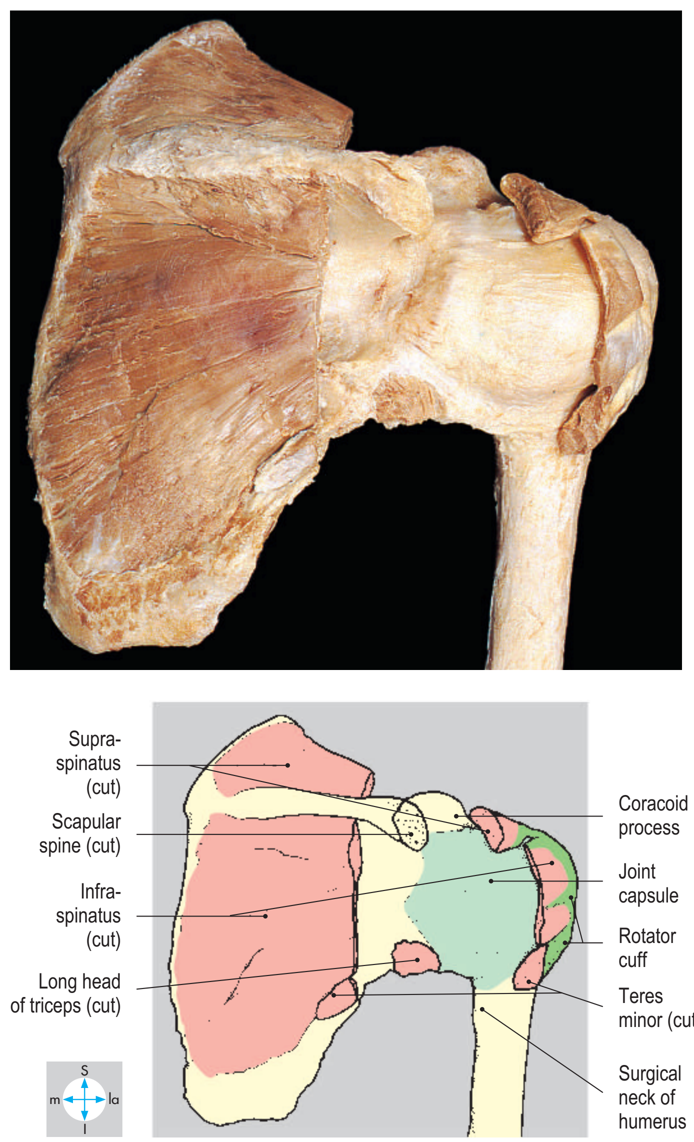


Fig. 3.83 Posterior aspect of the shoulder joint. The acromion and parts of the rotator cuff muscles have been excised to reveal the joint capsule.

the anatomical neck except inferiorly on the medial side, where it descends to the level of the surgical neck.

Synovial membrane lines the fibrous capsule and covers the intracapsular part of the humeral shaft (Fig. 3.84). The cavity of the joint usually communicates with the subscapular bursa through a deficiency in the anterior part of the capsule. Indistinct thickenings in the capsule form the glenohumeral ligaments. Between the greater and lesser tubercles (Fig. 3.85), the capsule forms the transverse humeral ligament beneath which the tendon of the long head of biceps enters the joint from the intertubercular groove. The tendon is surrounded by a tubular sheath of synovial membrane as it passes over the humeral head to attach to the supraglenoid tubercle (Fig. 3.86).

The joint is intimately related to subscapularis, supraspinatus, infraspinatus and teres minor (Figs 3.86 & 3.87) whose tendons fuse with the capsule to form the rotator cuff (Fig. 3.83). Above the joint is the coracoacromial arch formed by the coracoid process, the acromion and the intervening coracoacromial ligament. The arch is separated from supraspinatus by the subacromial bursa.

Articular nerves are derived from the suprascapular and subscapular nerves and also from the axillary nerve which passes very close to the joint. As this nerve leaves the axilla through the quadrangular space (Fig. 3.64), it lies immediately inferior to the capsule. The vascular supply is provided by branches of the circumflex humeral and suprascapular arteries.

Flexion of the shoulder joint (up to 180°) is produced mainly by the clavicular fibres of pectoralis major and the anterior fibres of deltoid. Extension (limited to about 45°) is produced by latissimus dorsi and the posterior fibres of deltoid. At the shoulder joint itself, about 120° of abduction is possible, produced by supraspinatus and deltoid; simultaneous rotation of the scapula through 60° permits full elevation of the arm above the head.

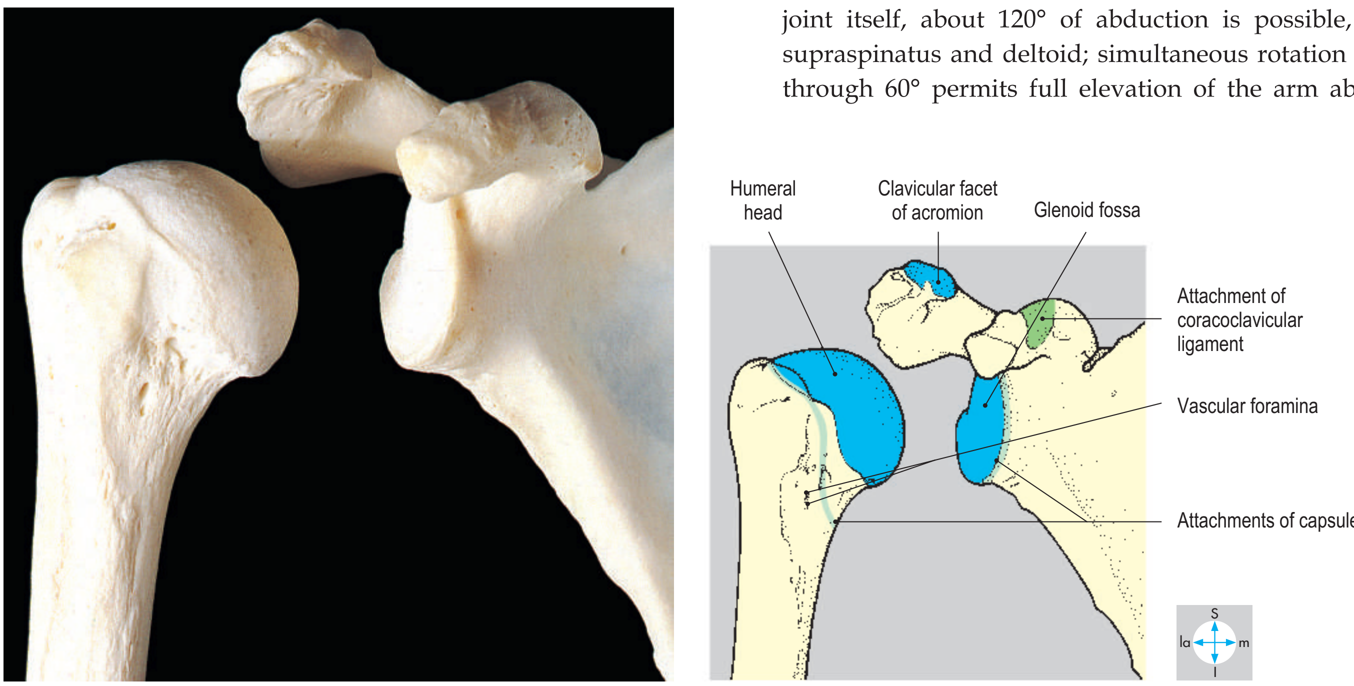


Fig. 3.84 The bones that form the shoulder joint have been separated to reveal their articular surfaces.

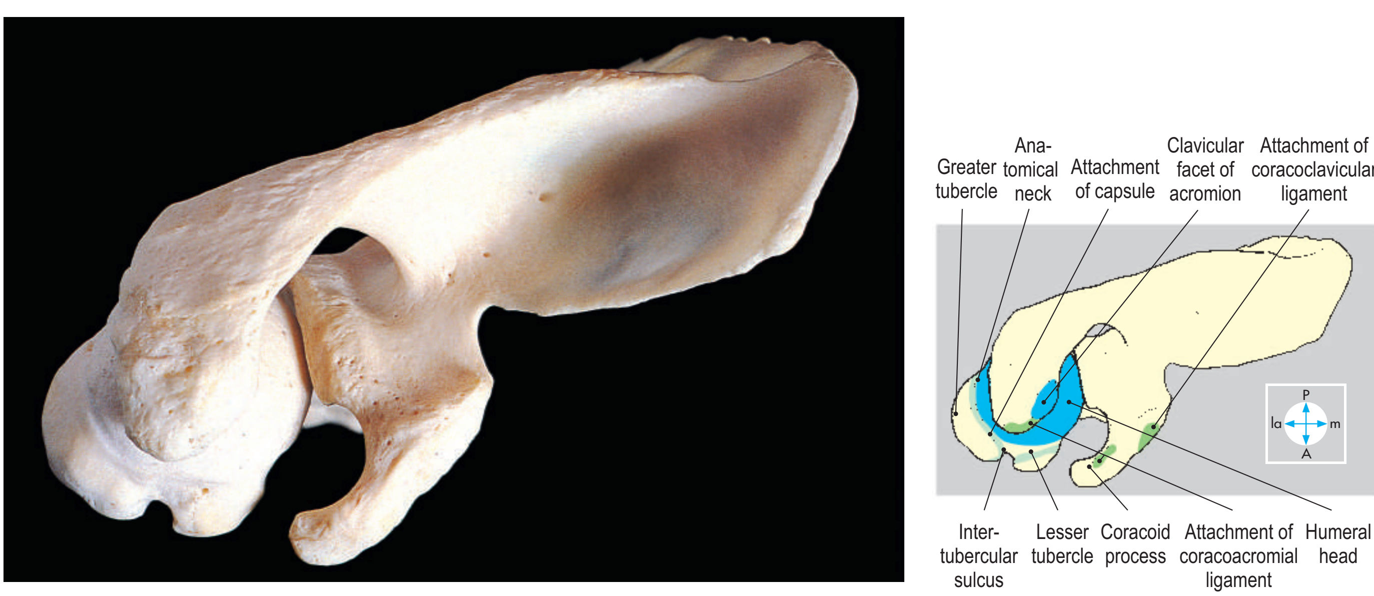


Fig. 3.85 Superior view of scapula and upper end of humerus. The acromion and coracoacromial ligament prevent upward displacement of the humeral head.

Adduction, produced by teres major, latissimus dorsi and pectoralis major, is limited by the area of the articular surface of the humerus. Medial rotation is produced by pectoralis major, subscapularis, teres major and the anterior fibres of deltoid, and lateral rotation by infraspinatus, teres minor and the posterior fibres of deltoid.

Although the coracoacromial arch prevents upward displacement of the humerus, stability of the shoulder joint relies principally on the rotator cuff muscles that hold the humeral head firmly in the glenoid fossa. Despite the labrum, the glenoid fossa is a shallow socket. The capsular ligaments are lax in most positions and tighten only near the extremes of movement. Dislocation of the joint, usually with anterior and inferior displacement of the head of the humerus, associated with trauma or weakness of the rotator cuff muscles, is relatively common and may result in damage to the axillary nerve.

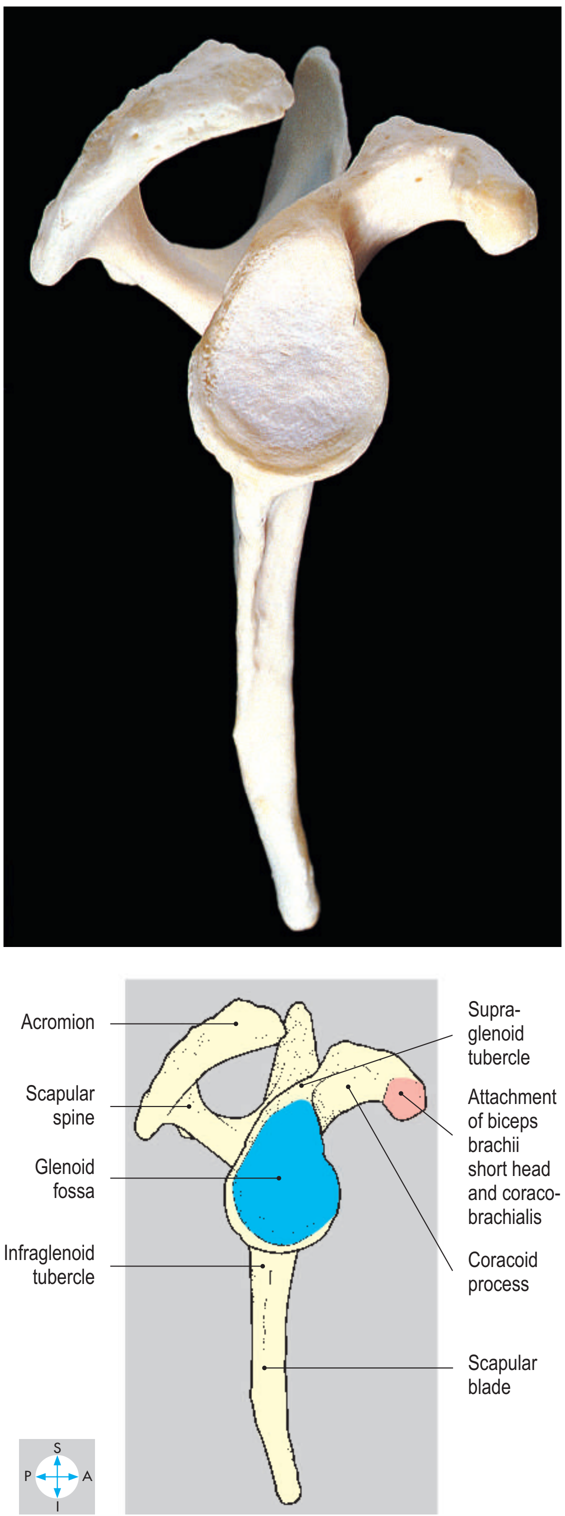


Fig. 3.86 Lateral aspect of scapula showing the pear-shaped glenoid fossa. The positions of supraspinous, infraspinous and subscapular fossae can be appreciated.

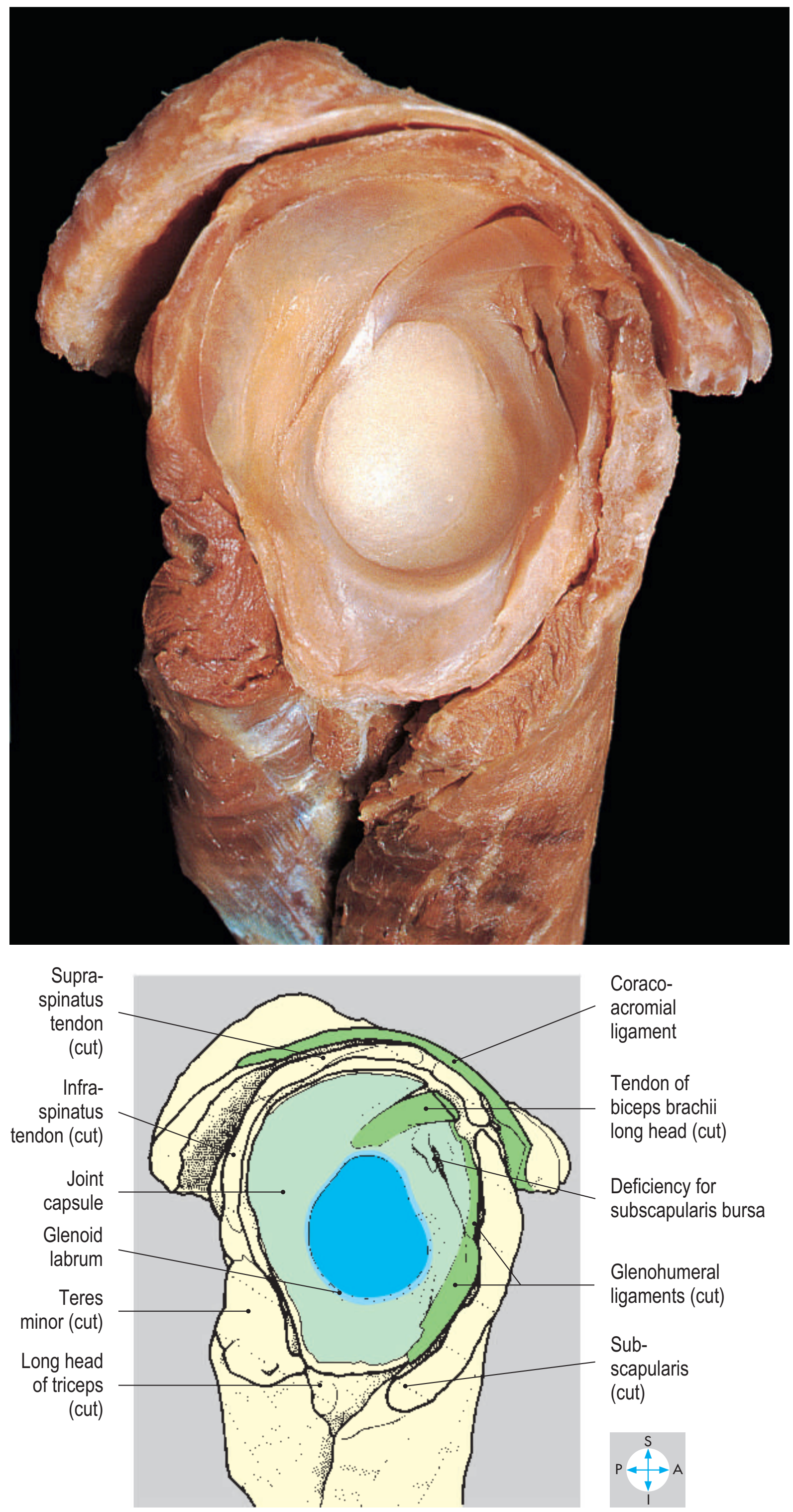


Fig. 3.87 The scapular component of a disarticulated shoulder joint showing the relations and internal features of the joint.

Elbow Joint

The elbow is a synovial hinge joint between the distal end of the humerus and the proximal ends of the radius and ulna (Fig. 3.88). Laterally, the capitulum of the humerus articulates with the slightly concave upper surface of the head of the radius. Medially, the trochlea of the humerus articulates with the deep trochlear notch of the ulna. In the anatomical position (in which the elbow is extended and the forearm is supinated) the orientation of the joint surfaces produces a carrying angle, which displaces the hand somewhat laterally. This angle between the long axes of the arm and the forearm disappears when the forearm is pronated.

The joint capsule (Figs 3.89 & 3.90) attaches proximally to the shaft of the humerus above the radial and coronoid fossae anteriorly and to the margins of the olecranon fossa posteriorly. Distally, it attaches to the anular ligament of the proximal radioulnar joint and to the margins of the trochlear notch of the ulna. Synovial membrane lines the capsule and clothes the underlying pads of fat that project into the radial, coronoid and olecranon fossae of the humerus. The cavity of the elbow joint is continuous with that of the proximal radioulnar joint.

There are two collateral ligaments (Figs 3.89 & 3.90). The radial (lateral) collateral ligament passes between the lateral epicondyle and the anular ligament. The ulnar (medial) collateral ligament attaches proximally to the medial epicondyle, while distally its fibres diverge and attach to the medial aspects of the coronoid and olecranon processes of the ulna. Stability of the joint depends on the integrity of these collateral ligaments, which hold the trochlea of the humerus firmly in the trochlear notch.

Rotation of the ulna is prevented by the shape of the articular surfaces of the

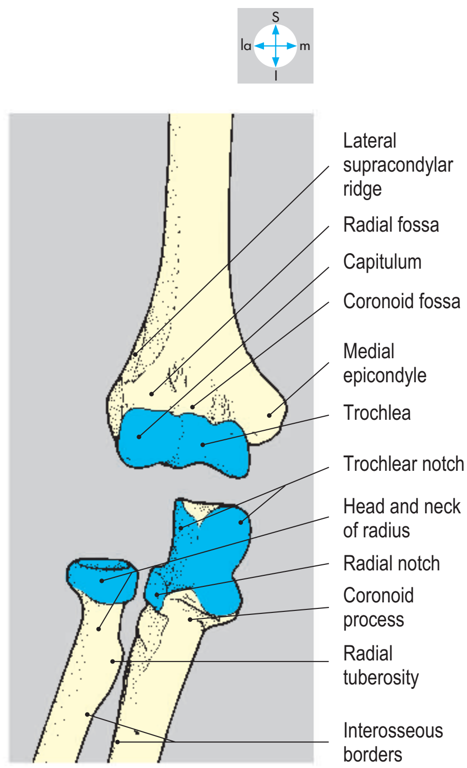


Fig. 3.88 The bones that form the elbow and proximal radioulnar joints have been separated to reveal their articular surfaces.

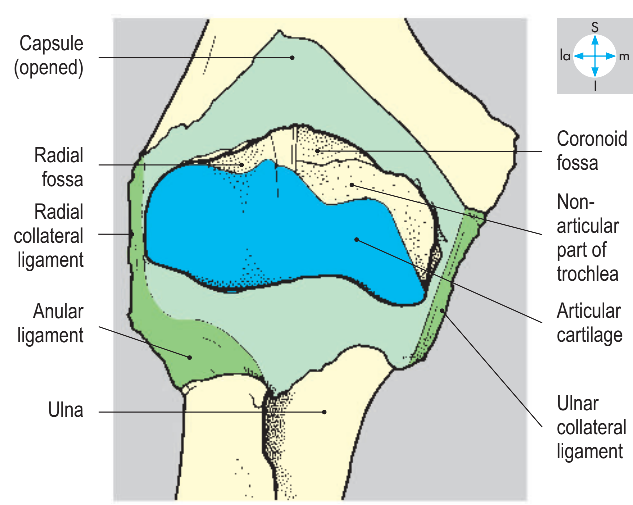


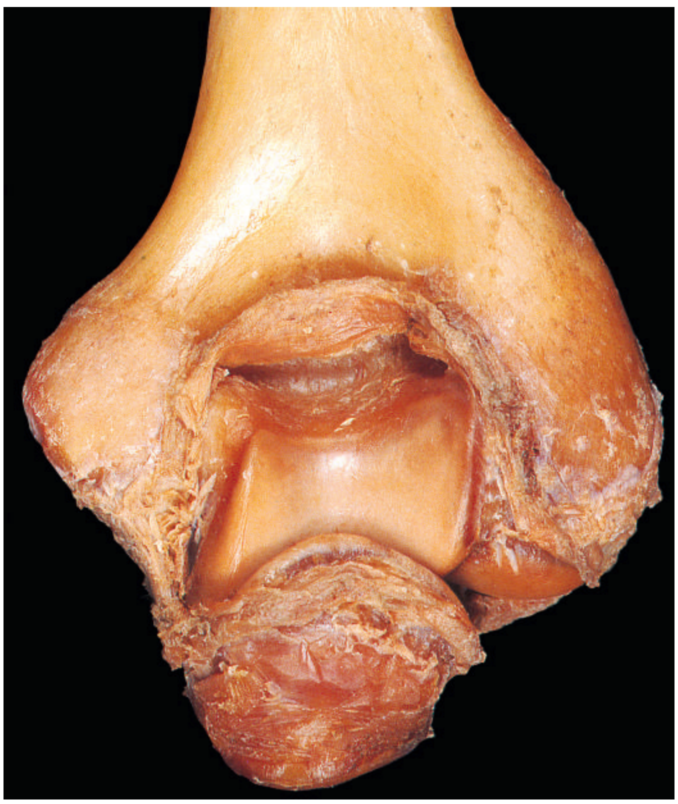
Fig. 3.89 Anterior aspect of elbow joint. The capsule has been opened to expose the interior of the joint.

trochlea. Dislocation of the joint is usually associated with ligamentous or bony injury.

Only flexion and extension occur at the elbow joint. Flexion (about 150°) is produced mainly by biceps and brachialis with a contribution from brachioradialis when the elbow is partially flexed. Flexion is limited by contact between the anterior surfaces of the arm and the forearm. Extension is often assisted by gravity. Active extension is produced by triceps assisted by anconeus. In full extension the olecranon engages in the olecranon fossa of the humerus, limiting the movement and increasing joint stability. The flexors and extensors of the wrist and hand arising from the humerus close to the joint do not contribute significantly to elbow movements.

Behind the elbow joint lies the tendon of triceps (Fig. 3.91). Immediately anterior to the capsule are brachialis and the tendon of biceps in the cubital fossa (Fig. 3.29). The brachial artery and median nerve are separated from the capsule by brachialis. The ulnar nerve lies behind the medial epicondyle in contact with the ulnar collateral ligament. The vessels and nerves are vulnerable to injury in traumatic dislocation of the joint.

The elbow receives blood from the anastomosis around the joint formed by branches of the brachial, radial and ulnar arteries. The vessels supplying the joint are accompanied by articular nerves derived from branches of the musculocutaneous, radial, ulnar (and sometimes the median) nerves.



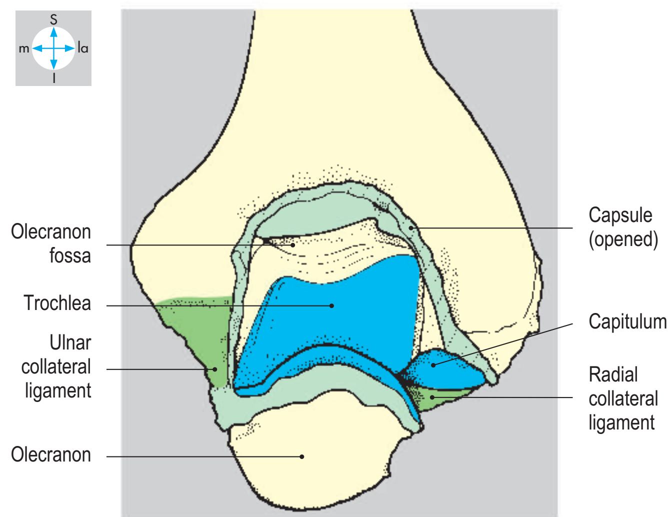
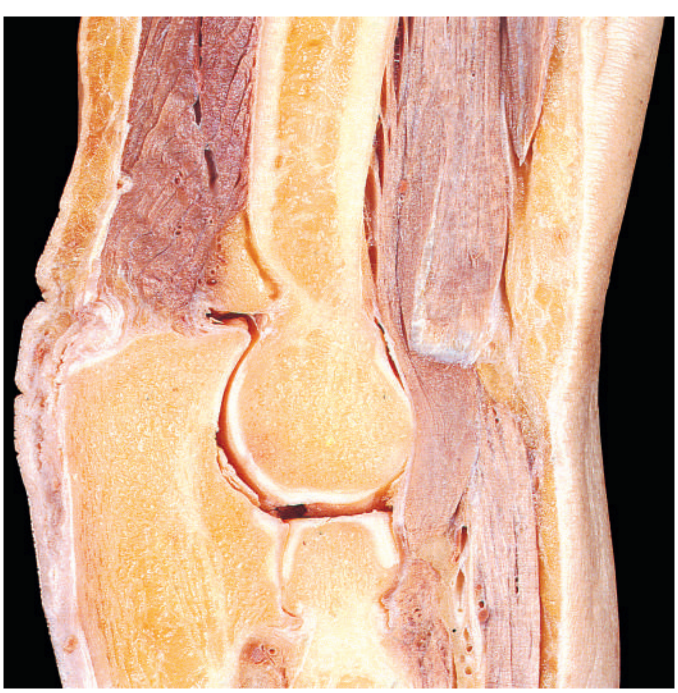


Fig. 3.90 Posterior aspect of flexed elbow joint. The capsule has been opened to reveal the olecranon fossa.



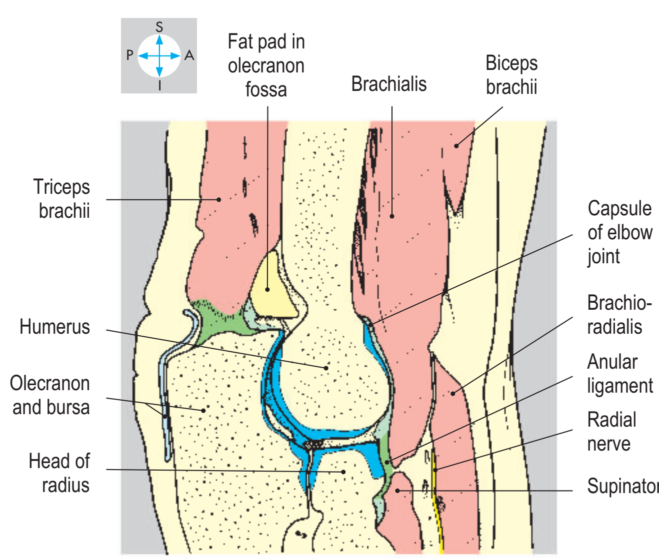


Fig. 3.91 Oblique longitudinal section of elbow (extended) and proximal radioulnar joints showing the articular surfaces and relations of the joints.

Radioulnar Joints

The radius and ulna articulate at the proximal and distal radioulnar joints, which are synovial. At the proximal joint, the head of the radius articulates with the radial notch of the ulna (Fig. 3.88). The head and neck are encircled by the anular ligament, which attaches to the anterior and posterior margins of the notch on the ulna (Fig. 3.92) and blends with the capsule and radial collateral ligament of the elbow. Thus the cavity of the proximal joint is continuous with that of the elbow.

The distal radioulnar joint occurs between the head of the ulna and the ulnar notch of the radius (Fig. 3.93). An articular disc (a triangular cartilage) attaches the ulnar styloid process to the distal end of the radius and separates the cavity of the distal joint from that of the wrist.

The anular ligament of the proximal joint and the articular disc of the distal joint prevent separation of the radius and ulna, yet allow the radius to rotate freely. In addition, the shafts of the bones are joined by the interosseous membrane, whose fibres incline downwards and medially from the interosseous border of the radius to that of the ulna. The membrane may be regarded as a fibrous radioulnar joint.

The movements of supination and pronation occur through approximately 180° at the radioulnar joints. During pronation the radius rotates across the ulna and twists the forearm and hand so that the palm faces posteriorly. Supination returns the limb to the anatomical position. The axis of the movement passes through the head of the radius and the styloid process of the ulna. Supination is the more powerful movement and is produced by biceps and supinator, although biceps is ineffective when the elbow is fully extended. Pronation is produced by pronator teres and pronator quadratus. Also, when the elbow is flexed, brachioradialis rotates the forearm and returns the limb to the midposition from the extremes of supination or pronation. The head of the radius can be felt rotating about 2 cm distal to the lateral epicondyle during these movements.

In a fall onto the hand, the interosseous membrane may transmit force from the radius to the ulna, protecting the radial head from compression against the capitulum of the humerus. However, since the membrane does not oppose distraction, a sudden tug on the hand may dislocate the radial head downwards from within the anular ligament of the proximal radioulnar joint.

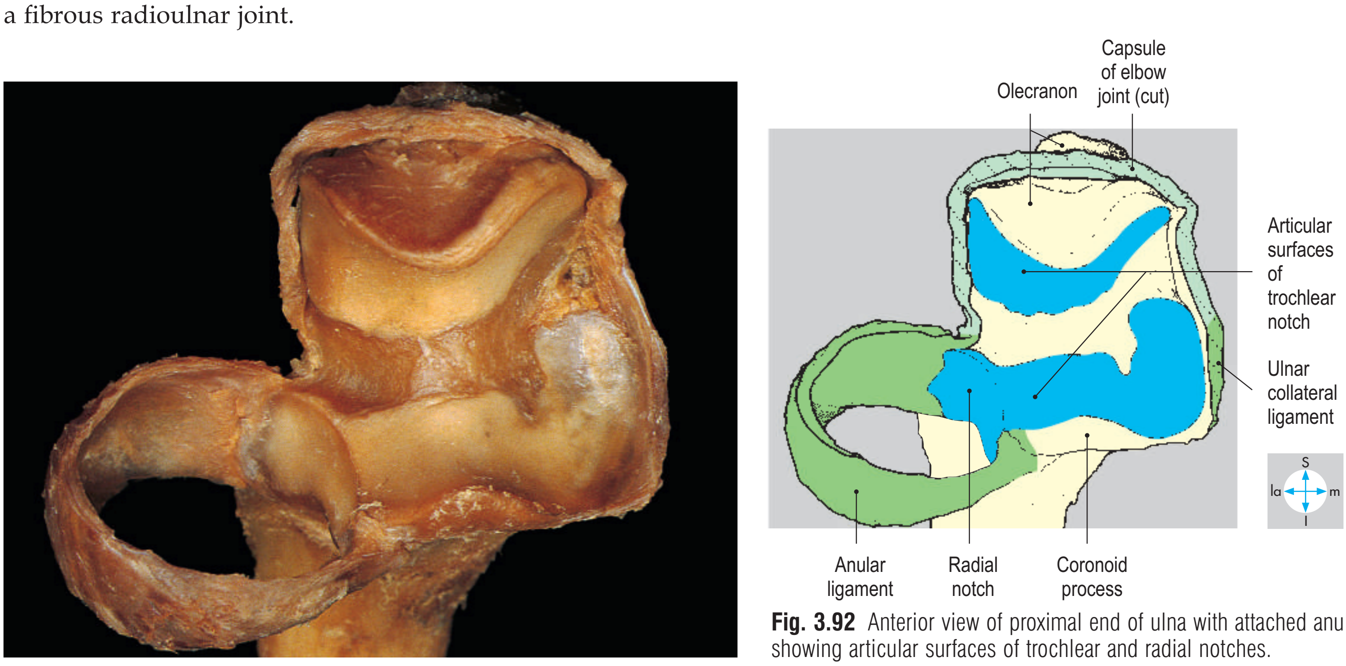


Fig. 3.92 Anterior view of proximal end of ulna with attached anular ligament, showing articular surfaces of trochlear and radial notches.

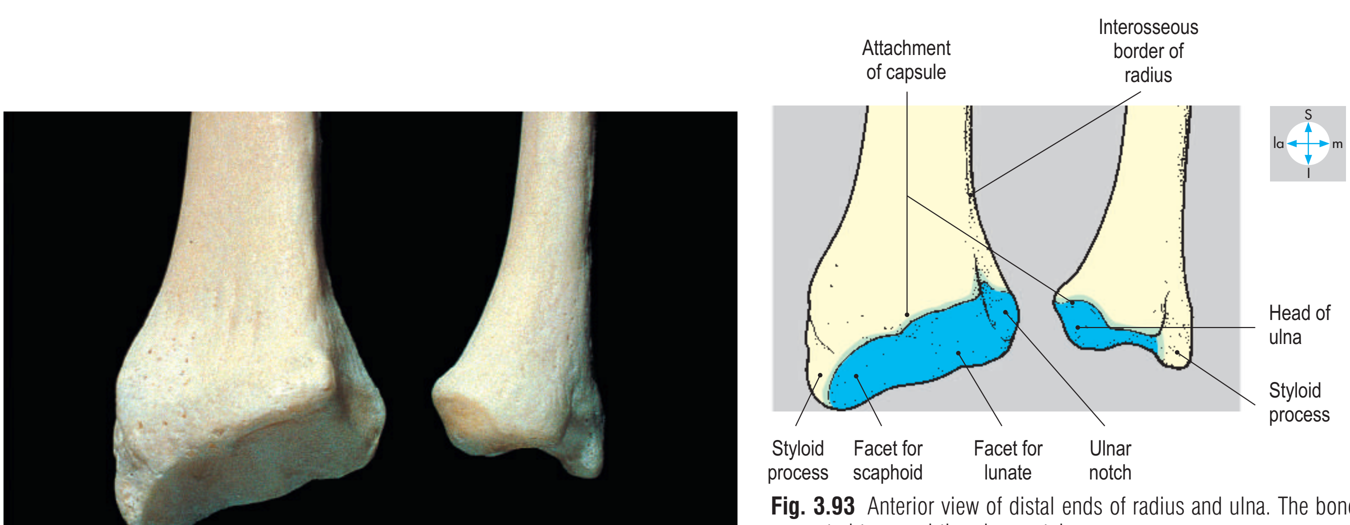


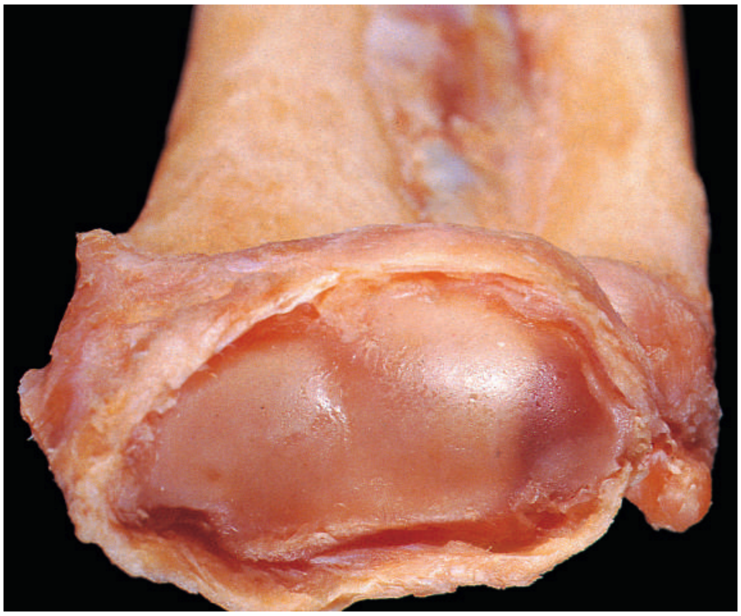
Fig. 3.93 Anterior view of distal ends of radius and ulna. The bones have been separated to reveal the ulnar notch.

Wrist Joint

Mobility of the hand on the forearm is provided by a series of synovial joints. Most of the movement occurs at the radiocarpal (wrist) joint, supplemented by movement between the carpal bones themselves. However, minimal rotation occurs here but is achieved for the hand by pronation and supination.

Radiocarpal joint

At the radiocarpal joint, the distal end of the radius and the attached articular disc articulate with the proximal row of carpal bones including, from lateral to medial, the scaphoid, lunate and triquetral (Fig. 3.94). Pisiform does not take part in the wrist joint. The articular disc attaches to the radius and the root of the ulnar styloid process and separates the cavity of the radiocarpal joint from that of the inferior radioulnar joint (Fig. 3.95). The capsule, lined by synovial membrane, attaches to the edges of the articular surfaces and is strengthened by collateral ligaments that pass from the styloid processes of the ulna and radius to the adjacent carpal bones. The movements of this joint are considered on p. 123. Function at the wrist may be severely compromised by fracture of the scaphoid across its narrow 'waist'. This injury may deprive part of the bone of its blood supply, resulting in ischaemic necrosis.



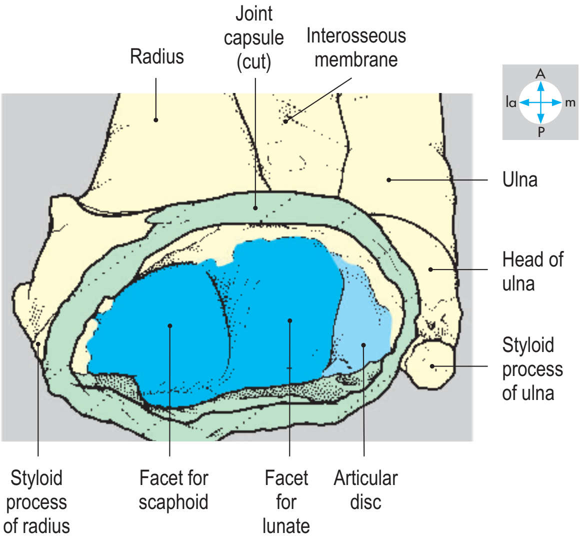


Fig. 3.94 Articular surface of the distal end of the radius and adjacent articular disc.

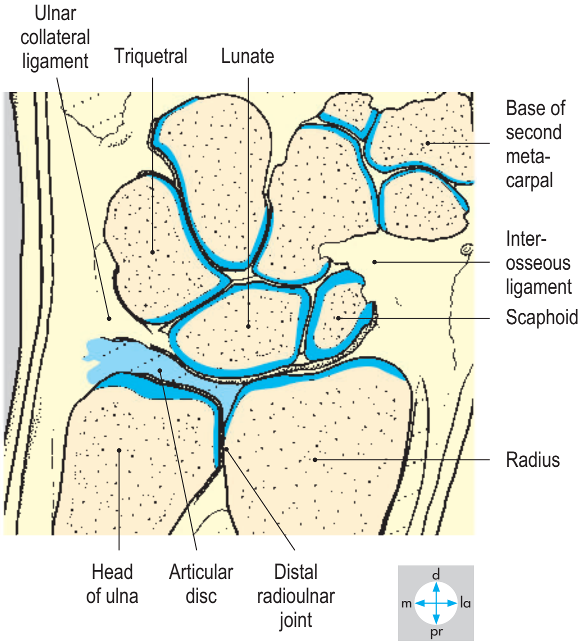


Fig. 3.95 Coronal section of the wrist joint showing articular surfaces and articular disc.

Joints of Carpus

The carpal bones are arranged in two rows: a proximal row, consisting of, from lateral to medial, scaphoid, lunate, triquetral and pisiform; and a distal row consisting of trapezium, trapezoid, capitate and hamate bones (Fig. 3.96).

Intercarpal joints

The joints between the carpal bones are supported by anterior, posterior and interosseous ligaments. The cavities of these joints usually communicate (Fig. 3.96) and function as a single unit called the midcarpal joint (Fig. 3.97). The joints are most stable in full extension when the anterior ligaments are taut.

The pisiform, a sesamoid bone in the tendon of flexor carpi ulnaris, has a separate joint with the triquetral (Fig. 3.98) and is firmly anchored distally to the hook of the hamate and base of the fifth metacarpal bone by pisohamate and pisometacarpal ligaments (Fig. 3.47). The relations of the intercarpal joints are illustrated in Figure 3.98.

Movements

Movements at the radiocarpal and intercarpal joints are complementary, allowing flexion, extension, adduction and abduction of the hand on the forearm. Although the long flexors and extensors of the digits act on the radiocarpal and intercarpal joints, flexion is due principally to the two carpal flexors, and extension to the three carpal extensors. Adduction is produced mainly by the simultaneous contraction of the flexors and extensors on the ulnar side of the forearm and abduction by contraction of the muscles on the radial side.

The radiocarpal and intercarpal joints are stabilized by the extensors and flexors of the wrist during action of the long flexors and/or extensors of the digits. In many activities, movement between the hand and forearm combines extension and abduction, achieved by the two radial carpal extensors.

Carpal tunnel

The carpal tunnel (canal) is a fibro-osseous passage linking the anterior compartment of the forearm with the palm of the hand. The walls of the tunnel consist anteriorly of the flexor retinaculum and posteriorly of the two rows of carpal bones which form a deep groove on their flexor surfaces. The retinaculum (Fig. 3.99) lies transversely across the anterior aspect of the wrist, attaching to the trapezium and scaphoid laterally and to the pisiform and hook of the hamate medially. The retinaculum lies in the hand, its proximal border level with the distal skin crease. The tendon of palmaris longus gains partial attachment to the retinaculum and enters the hand in front of the carpal tunnel (Fig. 3.39). The tendon is accompanied on its medial side by the ulnar artery and nerve, which pass lateral to the pisiform and the flexor carpi ulnaris tendon, but medial to the hook of the hamate. However, the median nerve and the other tendons entering the palm pass deep to the flexor retinaculum and traverse the carpal tunnel.

Within the tunnel (Fig. 3.98) the tendons of flexor digitorum superficialis lie anterior to those of flexor digitorum profundus. These tendons all possess a common synovial sheath, which is usually in continuity with the digital synovial sheath of the little finger but not with those of the other fingers. The tendon of flexor pollicis longus also traverses the tunnel, invested by a separate synovial sheath which continues into the thumb. The tendon of flexor carpi radialis lies laterally in a groove on the trapezium, isolated from the main part of the carpal tunnel.

The median nerve traverses the tunnel immediately deep to the flexor retinaculum, lying approximately at the midpoint of the wrist close to the tendon of palmaris longus, anterior to the tendon of flexor pollicis longus and medial to the flexor carpi radialis tendon. Compression of the median nerve may occur within the carpal tunnel, giving rise to a condition called the carpal tunnel syndrome, which may result in weakness of the thenar muscles and altered sensation (paresthesiae or 'pins and needles') felt in the thumb, index and middle fingers. Since skin on the lateral side of the palm is supplied by a branch of the median nerve which crosses superficial to the retinaculum, sensation in this area usually remains intact (p. 99). The syndrome may be treated operatively by dividing the flexor retinaculum to decompress the tunnel.

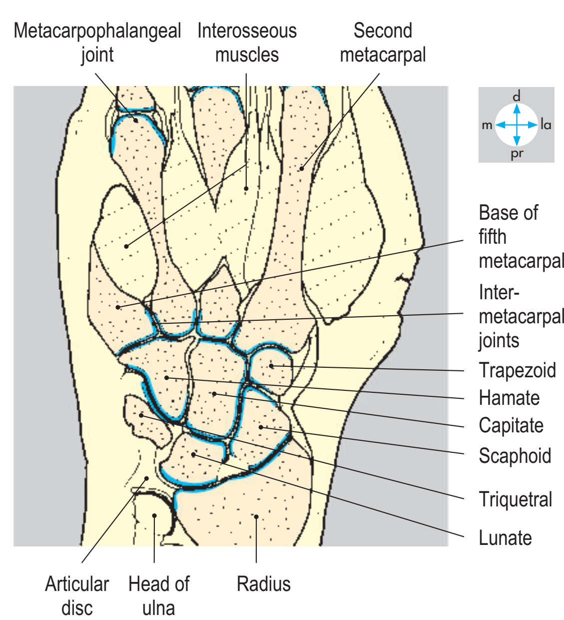


Fig. 3.96 Coronal section of the hand showing the joints of the carpal region. The thumb and little finger lay anterior to the plane of section.

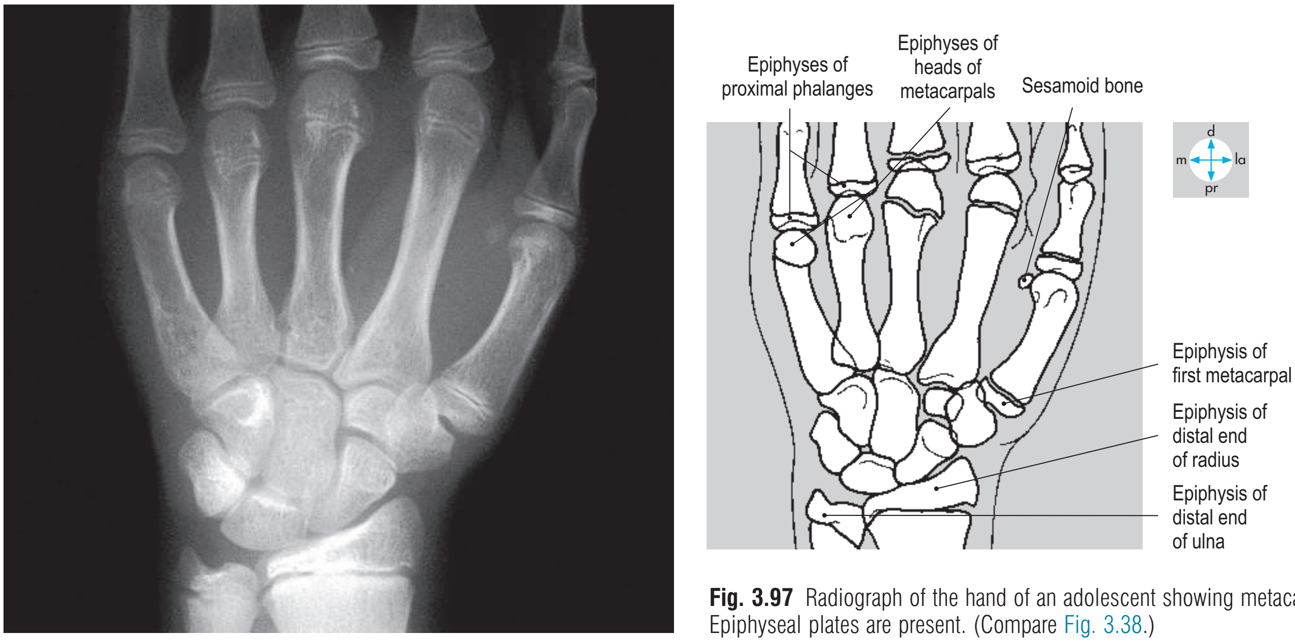


Fig. 3.97 Radiograph of the hand of an adolescent showing metacarpal and carpal bones. Epiphyseal plates are present. (Compare Fig. 3.38.)

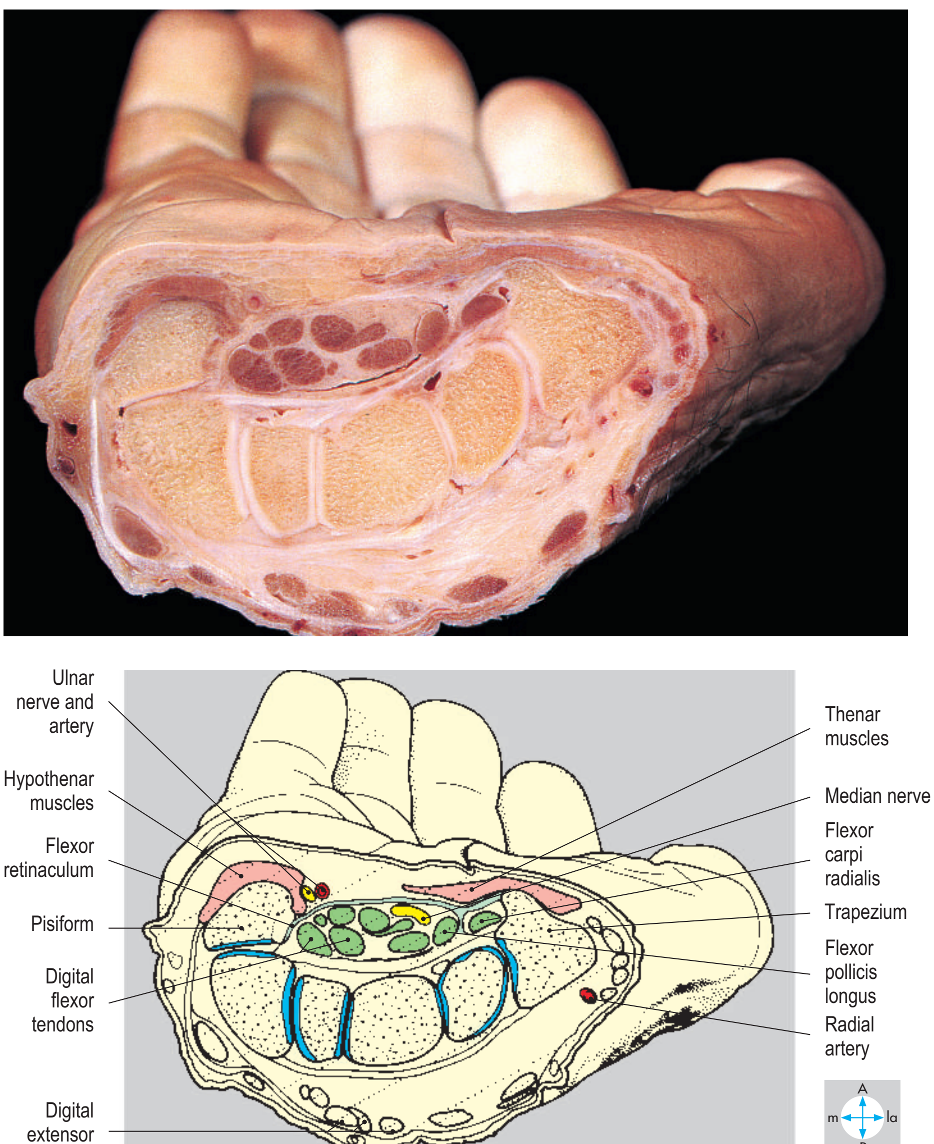


Fig. 3.98 Transverse section through the carpus showing the carpal tunnel and its contents.

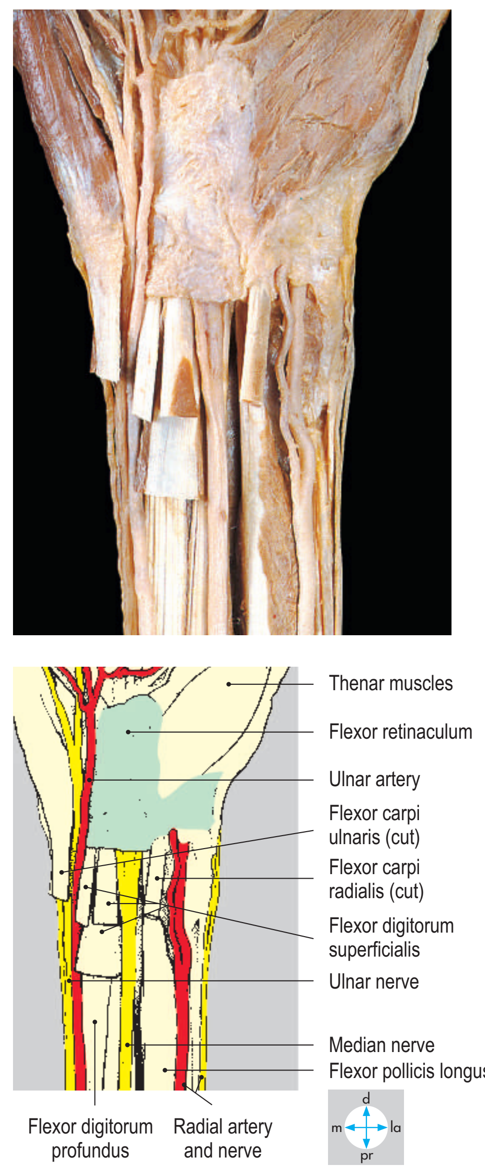


Fig. 3.99 Flexor retinaculum and the superficial relations and structures entering the carpal tunnel.

Joints of the Hand

The carpometacarpal, metacarpophalangeal and interphalangeal joints are synovial and allow the hand to perform its various functions, including the intricate movements involved in gripping objects. The intrinsic muscles perform delicate movements of the fingers; power is provided by contraction of the muscles in the compartments of the forearm.

Carpometacarpal joints

There are three separate carpometacarpal joints, one for the thumb and two for the fingers. The joint between the first metacarpal and trapezium (Fig. 3.100) possesses saddle-shaped articular surfaces and a lax capsule. This joint permits flexion and extension in a plane parallel to that of the palm, and adduction and abduction in a plane at right angles to that of the palm (and in the plane of the thumbnail). During opposition (the combined movements of medial rotation, adduction and flexion), the thumb rotates so that it may touch any of the fingers pulp-to-pulp. Median nerve injury results in significant disability because opposition is essential in everyday manipulative movements.

The remaining two carpometacarpal joints, those for the fingers, are plane joints and less mobile than the first. Laterally, a joint cavity lies between the second and third metacarpals and the trapezoid and capitate, while medially the fourth and fifth metacarpals articulate with the hamate (Fig. 3.97). These carpometacarpal joints communicate with the three plane (intermetacarpal) joints that lie between the bases of the medial four metacarpals.

Metacarpophalangeal joints

These joints occur between the rounded heads of the metacarpals and concave bases of the proximal phalanges (Fig. 3.38). Each joint capsule is reinforced at the sides by collateral ligaments and is thickened anteriorly to form a fibrocartilaginous plate. The plates of the medial four digits are interconnected by the deep transverse metacarpal ligament. The joints permit flexion, extension, adduction and abduction. Because the collateral ligaments tighten during flexion, adduction and abduction are possible only in the extended position.

Interphalangeal joints

Each of these joints possesses a capsule reinforced by collateral ligaments (Fig. 3.101). However, posteriorly, the capsule is deficient and is replaced by the extensor expansion (Fig. 3.102). These are hinge joints that allow only flexion and extension.

The carpometacarpal, metacarpophalangeal and interphalangeal joints are supplied by branches of adjacent vessels and nerves traversing the palm and digits.

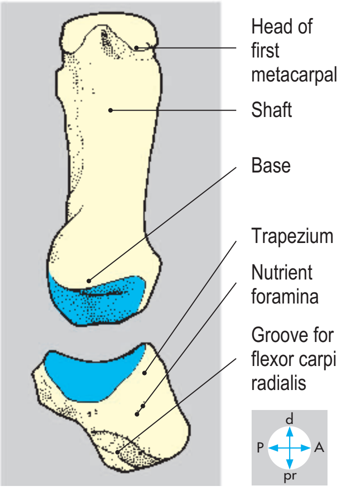


Fig. 3.100 Trapezium and metacarpal of thumb, separated to show the saddle-shaped articular surfaces of the carpometacarpal joint.

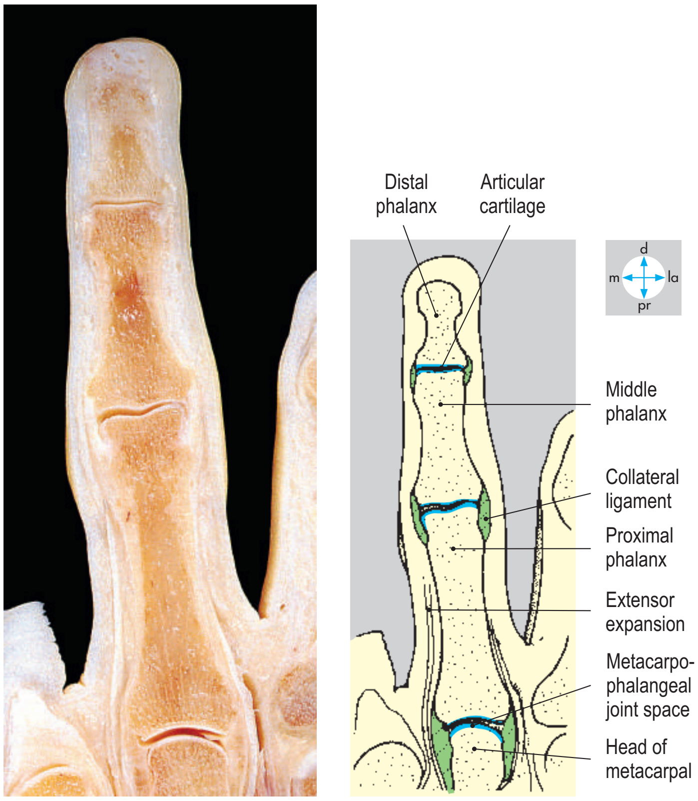


Fig. 3.101 Coronal section of a finger. The joint spaces have been exaggerated by hyperextension of the specimen.

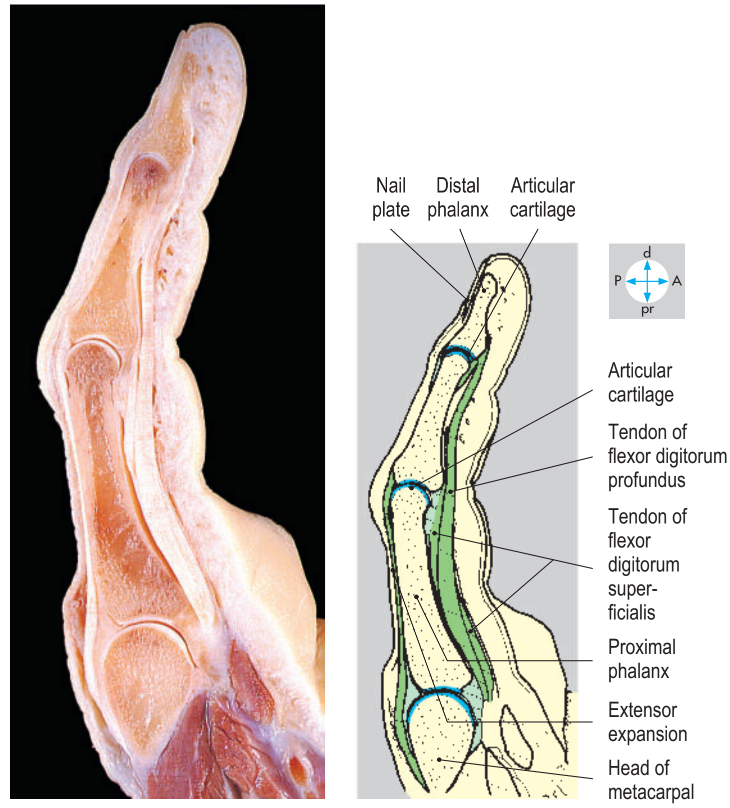


Fig. 3.102 Sagittal section of a finger to show the capsules and relations of the joints.

Exam Skills

Each of the incomplete statements below is followed by five suggested answers or completions. Decide which are true and which are false. The answers are supplied on p. 417.

1. The flexor retinaculum:

a) forms part of the carpal tunnel.
b) is crossed superficially by the median nerve.
c) is crossed superficially by the ulnar artery.
d) gives attachment to the thenar muscles.
e) attaches to the trapezium.

2. The following muscles act on the metacarpophalangeal joint of the thumb:

a) opponens pollicis.
b) abductor pollicis brevis.
c) extensor pollicis brevis.
d) the first dorsal interosseous.
e) flexor pollicis brevis.

3. Deltoid:

a) is innervated by the axillary nerve.
b) is usually active against gravity during abduction of the shoulder joint.
c) acts to initiate abduction of the shoulder joint.
d) may suffer damage to its nerve supply during dislocation of the glenohumeral joint.
e) attaches to the lateral surface of the shaft of the humerus.

4. The following lie within the axilla:

a) the cords of the brachial plexus.
b) the tendon of the long head of biceps.
c) coracobrachialis.
d) branches of the axillary artery.
e) lymph nodes.

5. These muscles act as follows:

a) pectoralis major causes flexion at the shoulder.
b) brachialis causes flexion at the elbow.
c) biceps brachii causes supination.
d) pronator teres causes pronation.
e) trapezius causes abduction at the glenohumeral joint.

6. Medial rotation of the humerus at the shoulder joint is produced by:

a) teres minor.
b) supraspinatus.
c) subscapularis.
d) latissimus dorsi.
e) pectoralis major.

7. The following enter and/or leave the cubital fossa:

a) the tendon of biceps brachii.
b) the radial nerve.
c) the cephalic vein.
d) the ulnar nerve.
e) the brachial artery.

8. For part of its course, the brachial artery accompanies the:

a) axillary nerve.
b) median nerve.
c) radial nerve.
d) ulnar nerve.
e) musculocutaneous nerve.

9. The following usually receive fibres from the lateral cord of the brachial plexus:

a) the median nerve.
b) the axillary nerve.
c) the musculocutaneous nerve.
d) the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm.
e) the ulnar nerve.

10. Branches of the radial nerve supply:

a) skin of the thumb.
b) skin of the forearm.
c) skin of the hypothenar eminence.
d) no muscle that has flexor actions.
e) no muscle(s) located in the hand.

11. Supination:

a) occurs at the radioulnar joints.
b) causes the ulna to move around the radius.
c) is produced mainly by biceps brachii when the elbow joint is fully extended.
d) is opposed by contraction of brachialis.
e) involves active movement of the elbow joint.

12. Complete division of the ulnar nerve at the elbow will:

a) paralyse flexor digitorum superficialis.
b) paralyse flexor carpi ulnaris.
c) prevent abduction and adduction of the fingers.
d) cause anaesthesia of skin on the palmar surface of the fifth digit.
e) cause wasting of the adductor pollicis.

13. Skin of the dorsum of the hand is innervated by the:

a) lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm.
b) superficial branch of the radial nerve.
c) ulnar nerve.
d) median nerve.
e) posterior cutaneous nerve of the forearm.

14. Flexor digitorum superficialis:

a) flexes the distal interphalangeal joints.
b) receives innervation from the ulnar nerve.
c) attaches to the medial epicondyle of the humerus.
d) lies superficial to the median nerve through most of the forearm.
e) gives attachment for the lumbricals.

15. The interossei:

a) flex the interphalangeal joints.
b) abduct and adduct the fingers.
c) are innervated by the ulnar nerve.
d) flex the metacarpophalangeal joints of the fingers.
e) attach to the extensor expansions.

16. The radial nerve:

a) is a branch of the posterior cord of the brachial plexus.
b) lies in the radial (spiral) groove of the humerus.
c) enters the forearm anterior to the elbow joint.
d) has a branch that passes through supinator.
e) innervates flexor carpi radialis.

Clinical Case Skills

The answers are supplied on p. 418.

Case Study 1

A frail 90-year-old woman was admitted to sheltered accommodation and soon after arrival complained of pain in her right hand, which was ignored by a care assistant, who gave her sleeping tablets. The visiting physician found the woman had a painful blue right hand. The whole limb was cold, especially below the elbow, and cutaneous sensation was absent in the hand. She could not move her hand or fingers. The doctor could not identify pulses in the right upper limb but palpated a strong, though irregular, left radial pulse. The physician explained that a fragment of blood clot had probably escaped from the heart and been carried in the blood to the right arm, where it had blocked the brachial artery as an embolus. Admission to the nearby hospital was organized but unfortunately the elderly patient suffered a major stroke, from which she died 12 hours later.

Questions:

1. Assuming that the clot was atrial in origin, name the pathway it took from the left atrium to reach the brachial artery.
2. What determines the level of an initial arterial blockage?
3. Although the whole limb was poorly perfused (ischaemic), what was a good guide to the severity of the ischaemia?
4. What arterial anastomoses exist between the subclavian and axillary arteries?

Case Study 2

A 50-year-old grandmother with rheumatoid arthritis found that her wrists and the joints in her fingers had become more stiff and painful. She complained of having more difficulty than usual with her right hand and she had dropped several treasured cups. On one occasion while tidying away the broken fragments, she cut her thumb but had not noticed until she saw blood on her clothes. She was having difficulty sleeping as she was being woken by pain in her hand and arm, and she volunteered that something similar happened during her pregnancies but resolved spontaneously after the birth of her children. The physician examined her hands and in addition to her usual joint features noticed flattening of her right thenar eminence compared with the left and some loss of cutaneous sensation. After discussing nerve conduction studies, her physician explained that an operation on the front of her wrist with the scar running near the crease lines would probably be needed to help relieve her problems.

Questions:

1. What is the significance of flattening of the thenar muscles? Which nerve supplies these muscles and where is it particularly vulnerable to compression?
2. What had alerted the physician to sensory deficit, and what was found on examination?
3. Why is the skin incision orientated transversely at the wrist?
4. Which nerve(s) may be vulnerable at operations to divide the flexor retinaculum?

Case Study 3

A fit college student fell heavily and injured his right shoulder while playing football. He had dislocated the same shoulder about a year earlier and had injured it again several times since. His shoulder felt very painful and he was unable to move his right arm. The hospital doctor noticed that his shoulders were not symmetrical, since there was a hollow below the right acromion, and ordered radiographs of the shoulder region to exclude fractures. The radiographs confirmed the suspicion of dislocation of the right shoulder joint: there were no fractures. The dislocation was reduced easily during a short general anaesthetic and the student was allowed home wearing a collar and cuff support and bandaging that held his right elbow against his chest wall. Subsequently, an orthopaedic specialist noticed that the right deltoid was less well developed than the left. Surgical exploration of the joint revealed a capsular tear, which was repaired. Postoperatively, intensive physiotherapy was instituted to strengthen all the muscles acting at the shoulders and the student has now resumed playing football.

Questions:

1. What anatomical features render the shoulder joint particularly prone to dislocation?
2. Which nerve closely related to the joint is liable to injury by dislocation of the shoulder and how should the doctor have examined for this injury?
3. Why was the upper limb bandaged against the chest wall?
4. What is the probable significance of previous injuries?
5. What is the most important stabilizing influence on the glenohumeral joint?

Case Study 4

A 30-year-old, right-handed teacher decided to repair his wooden garden shed. He purchased new roofing, removed the partly rotten wood without difficulty and began to nail the new timbers

in place. As the day progressed, the hammer he was using seemed to feel heavier and heavier until just picking it up was an effort and he eventually completed the job using his left hand. That evening the whole of his arm, but especially his elbow, was uncomfortable and even picking up a glass of lager made his elbow sore. He found that squeezing water out of the sponge after taking a shower hurt his elbow. His physician demonstrated exquisite tenderness over the lateral epicondyle of the right humerus and pronounced, 'You've got tennis elbow!' After following his usual activities at work, the teacher found that his pain gradually eased and that he could use his arm completely normally after approximately 1 week.

Questions:

1. Which muscles attach near the lateral epicondyle?
2. Which unaccustomed repetitive action provoked the inflammatory response (give precise movements at the joint)?
3. Which two muscles were likely to be particularly involved?
4. Why did squeezing water from the sponge produce pain?

Observation Skills

Identify the structures indicated. The answers are supplied at the foot of the page.

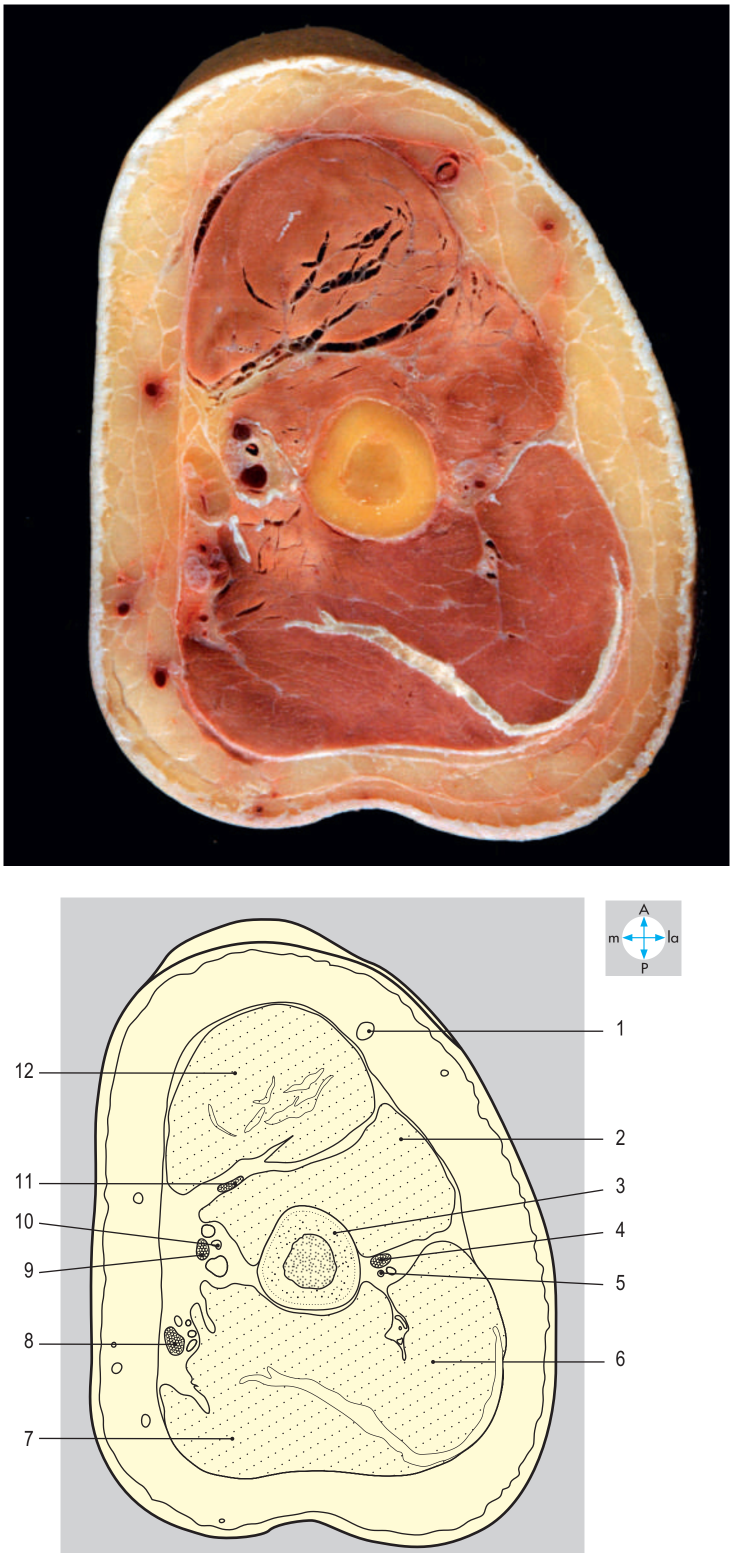


Fig. 3.103 Cross-section through the arm.

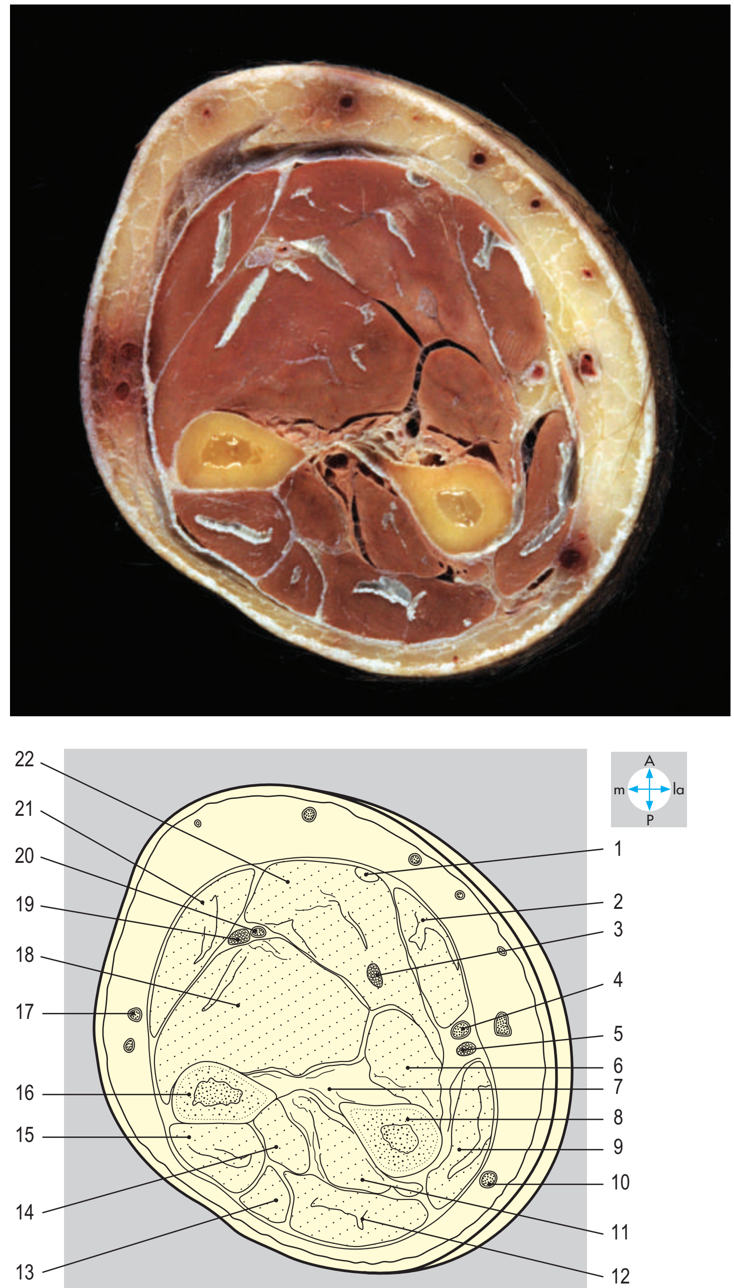


Fig. 3.104 Cross-section through the forearm.

Answers:

Fig. 3.103 1 = cephalic vein; 2 = brachialis; 3 = humerus; 4 = radial nerve; 5 = deep branchial artery; 6 = medial head of triceps; 7 = triceps long head; 8 = ulnar nerve; 9 = median nerve; 10 = brachial artery; 11 = musculocutaneous nerve; 12 = biceps brachii.

Fig. 3.104 1 = palmaris longus tendon; 2 = flexor carpi radialis; 3 = median nerve; 4 = radial artery; 5 = radial nerve; 6 = flexor pollicis longus; 7 = interosseous membrane; 8 = radius; 9 = extensor carpi radialis; 10 = cephalic vein; 11 = abductor pollicis longus; 12 = extensor digitorum; 13 = extensor digiti minimi; 14 = extensor pollicis longus; 15 = extensor carpi ulnaris; 16 = ulna; 17 = basilic vein; 18 = flexor digitorum profundus; 19 = ulnar nerve; 20 = ulnar artery; 21 = flexor carpi ulnaris; 22 = flexor digitorum superficialis.

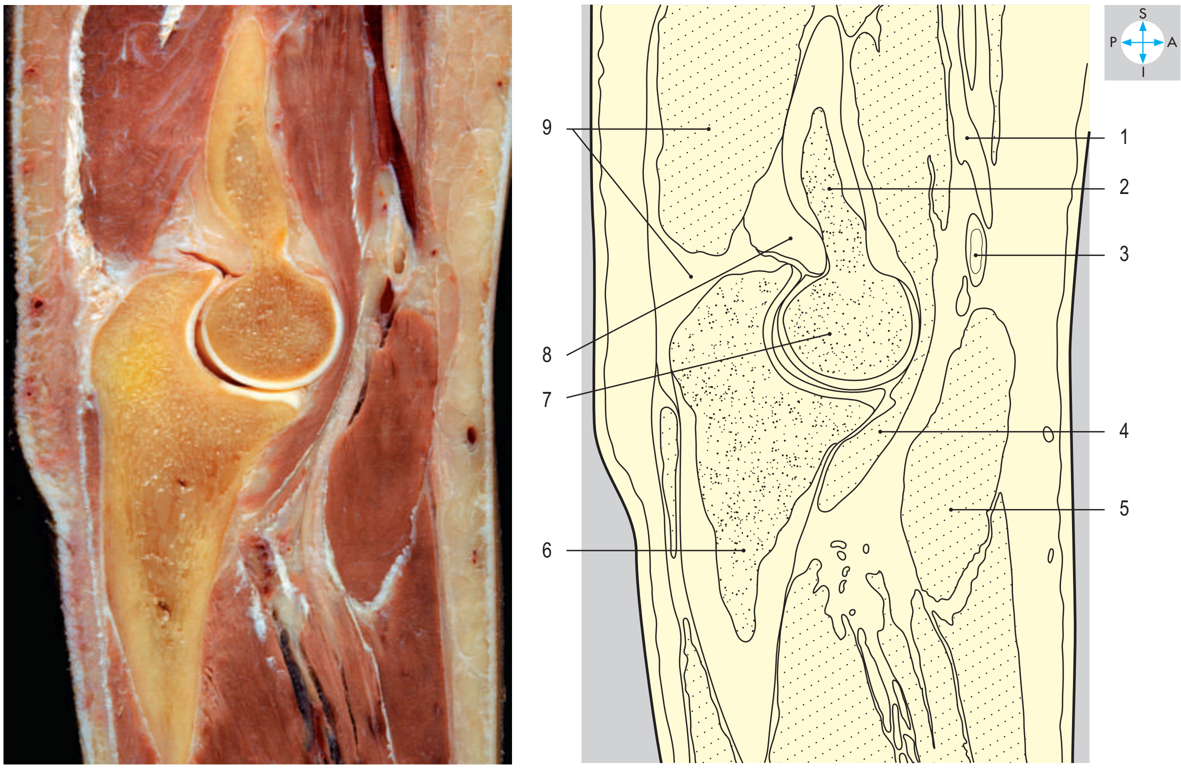


Fig. 3.105 Sagittal section through the elbow and proximal end of ulna.

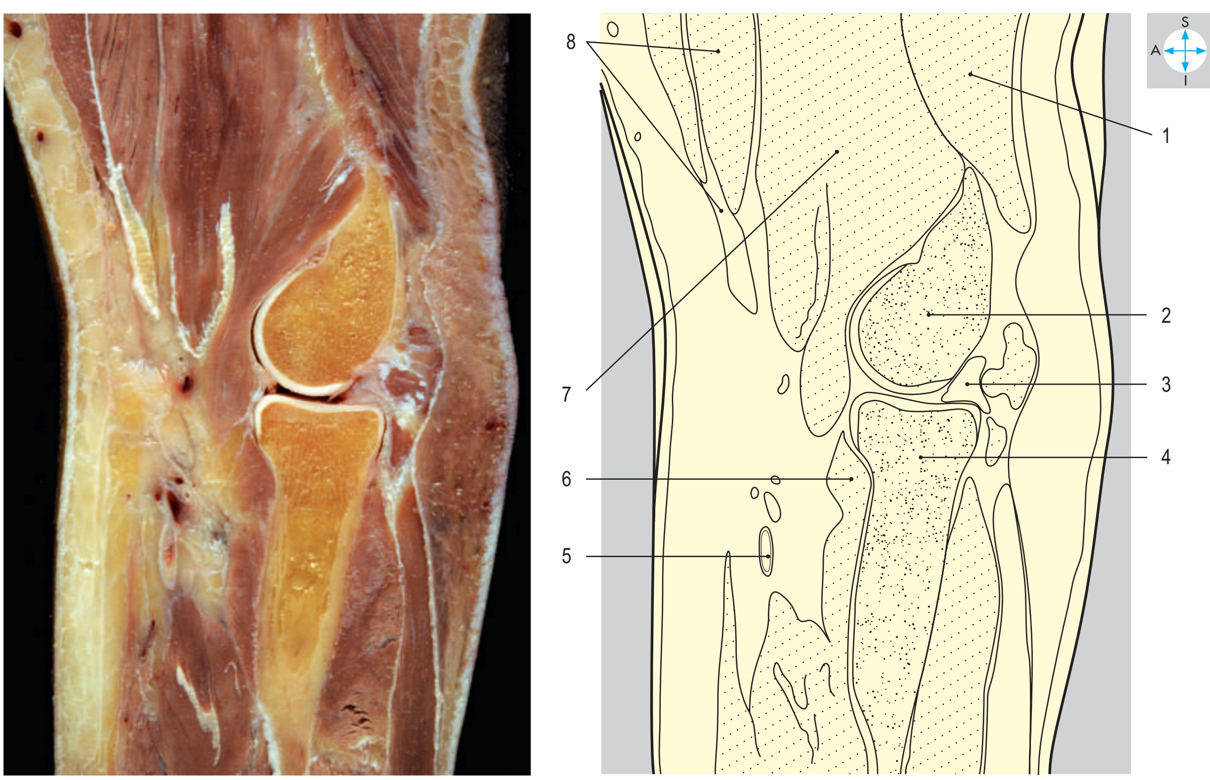


Fig. 3.106 Sagittal section through the elbow and proximal end of radius.

Answers:

Fig. 3.105 1 = brachial vein; 2 = humerus; 3 = brachial artery; 4 = brachialis; 5 = fused flexor muscles; 6 = ulna; 7 = trochlea of humerus; 8 = fat pad; 9 = triceps and tendon.

Fig. 3.106 1 = triceps brachii; 2 = capitulum of humerus; 3 = fat pad; 4 = head of radius; 5 = brachial artery; 6 = supinator; 7 = brachialis; 8 = biceps brachii and tendon.

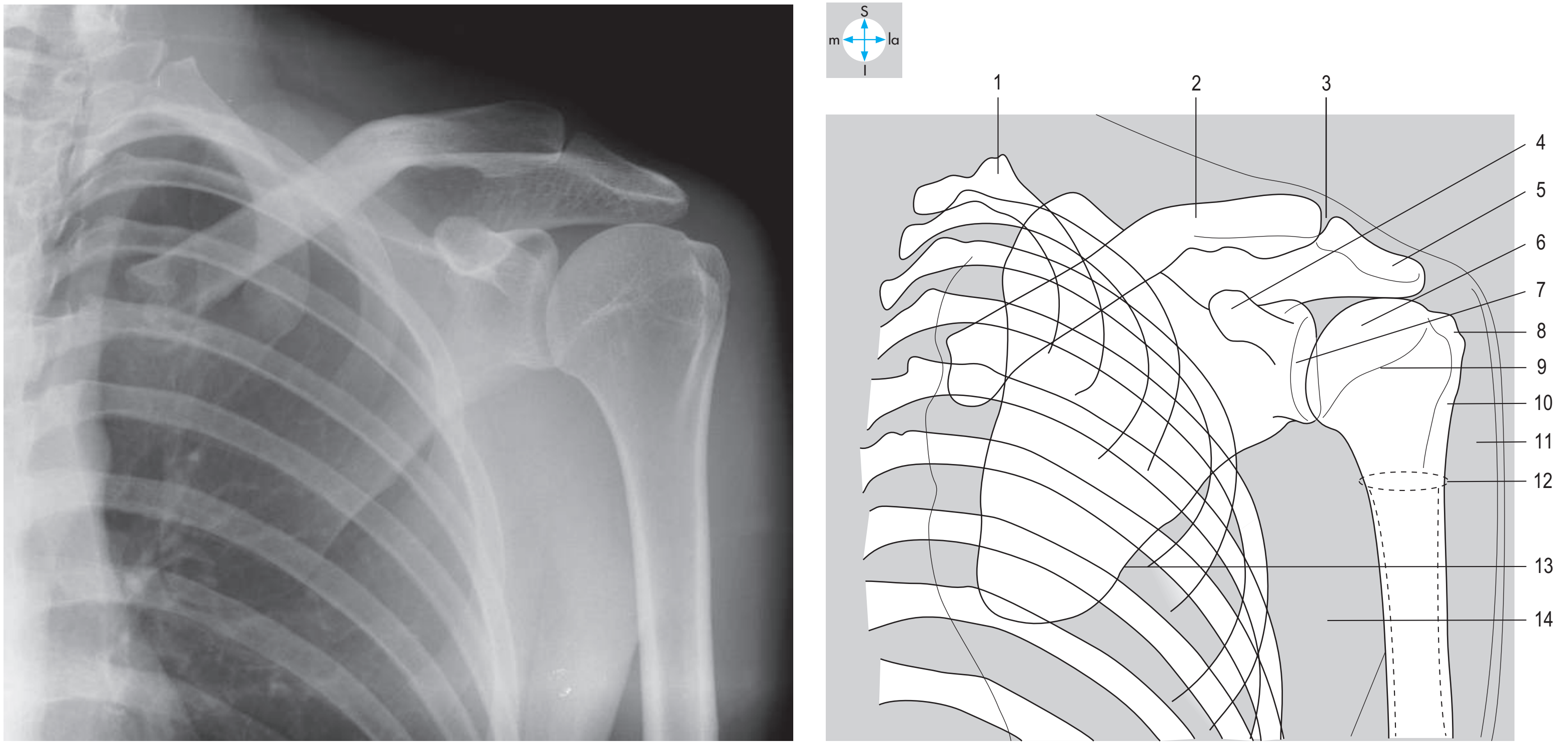


Fig. 3.107 Anteroposterior radiograph of shoulder region.

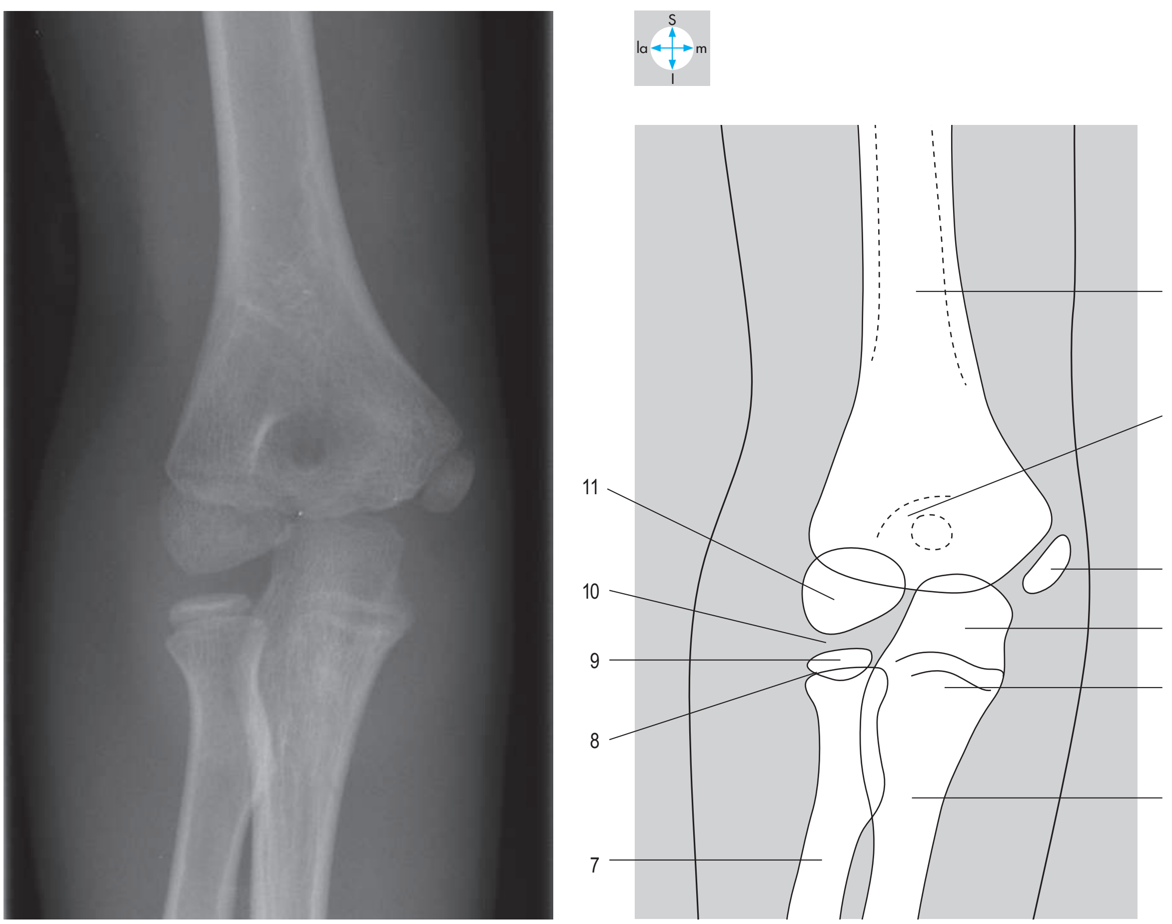


Fig. 3.108 Lateral radiograph of juvenile elbow.

Answers:

Fig. 3.107 1 = first rib; 2 = clavicle; 3 = acromioclavicular joint; 4 = coracoid process; 5 = acromion; 6 = head of humerus; 7 = articular surface of glenoid fossa; 8 = greater tubercle; 9 = anatomical neck; 10 = intertubercular groove; 11 = soft tissue shadow of deltoid; 12 = surgical neck; 13 = lateral border of scapula; 14 = soft tissue shadow of muscles of axillary folds.

Fig. 3.108 1 = shaft of humerus; 2 = olecranon fossa; 3 = epiphysis of medial epicondyle; 4 = olecranon process; 5 = coronoid process; 6 = shaft of ulna; 7 = shaft of radius; 8 = epiphyseal cartilage plate; 9 = proximal epiphysis of radius; 10 = radiohumeral joint; 11 = epiphysis of capitulum.

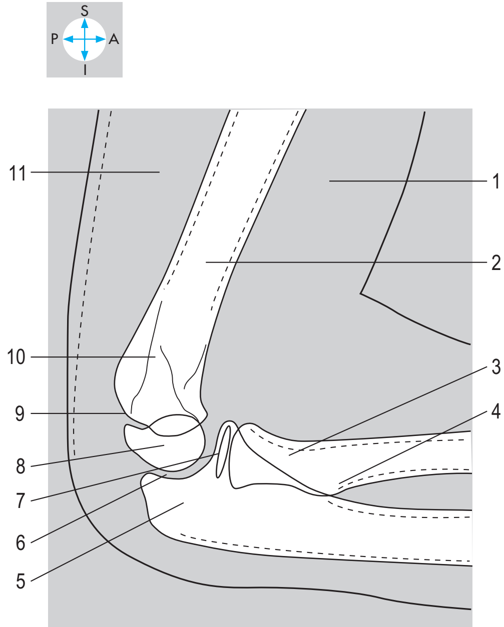


Fig. 3.109 Lateral radiograph of juvenile elbow.

Answers:

Fig. 3.109 1 = soft tissue shadow of biceps brachii and brachialis; 2 = shaft of humerus; 3 = neck of radius; 4 = radial tuberosity; 5 = olecranon process; 6 = humero-ulnar joint; 7 = proximal epiphysis of radius; 8 = epiphysis of capitulum; 9 = epiphyseal cartilage plate; 10 = supracondylar ridge; 11 = soft tissue shadow of triceps brachii.

Chapter 4

ABDOMEN

Introduction

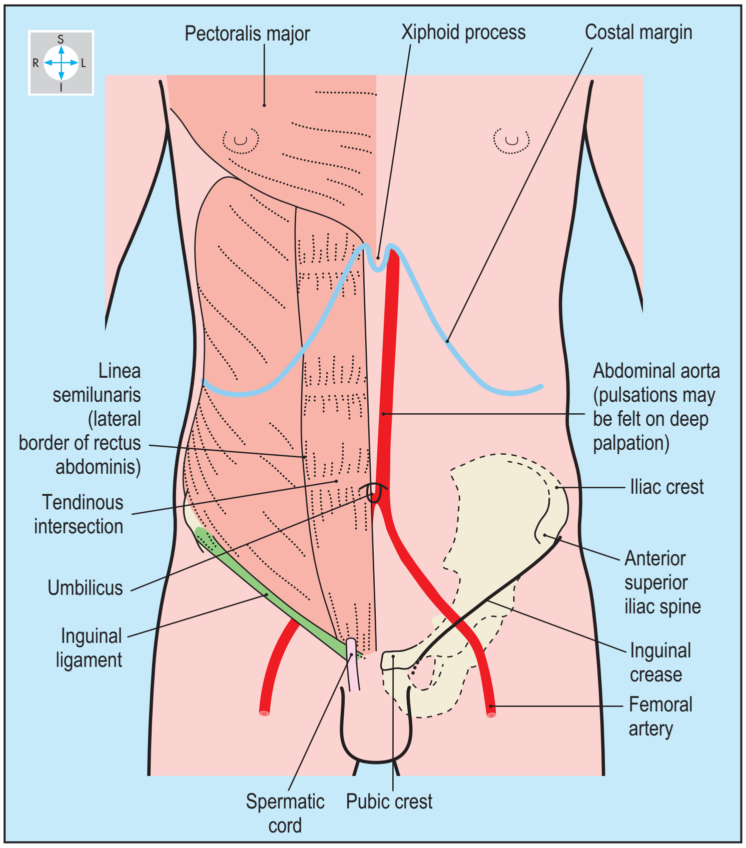


Fig. 4.1 Structures often visible or palpable in the living.

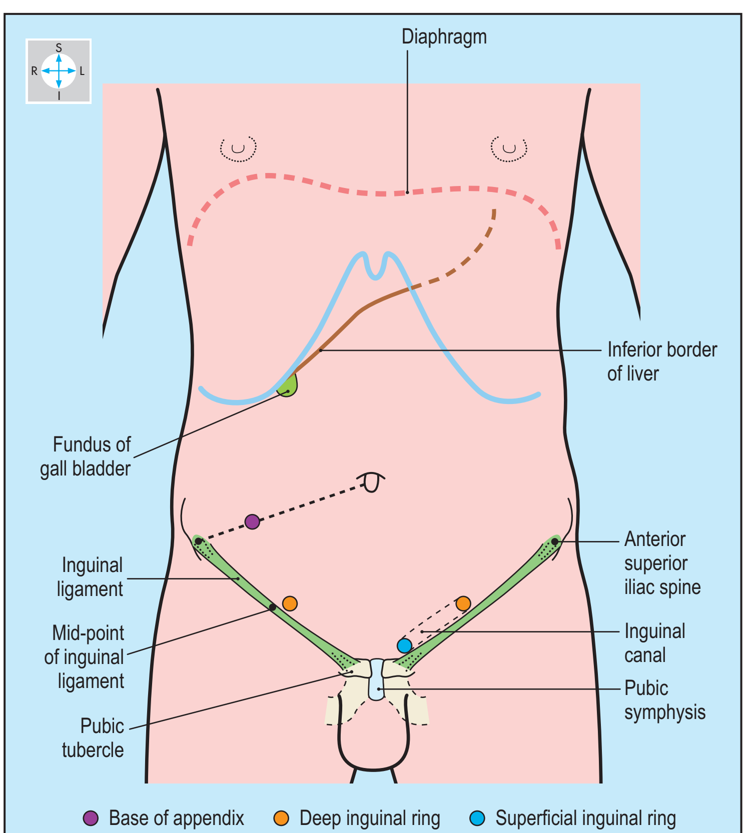


Fig. 4.2 Clinically important structures not usually visible or palpable in the living.

The abdomen is separated from the thorax above by the diaphragm, and below is continuous with the pelvis at the pelvic inlet. Passing through the diaphragm are the aorta, oesophagus and inferior vena cava. Because the diaphragm is strongly convex upwards, the upper abdominal organs lie deep to the lower ribs and costal cartilages. The pelvic inlet is an arbitrary plane sloping downwards and forwards, through which run the small and large intestines, the ureters and several vessels and nerves.

The posterior abdominal wall includes muscles that attach to the last rib, the hip bone and the lumbar vertebrae. Laterally, their fasciae merge with the anterolateral abdominal wall, the three layers of muscle of which broaden out and become aponeurotic before meeting in the midline anteriorly. Close to this median raphe is a vertical strap-like muscle, rectus abdominis, running from the pubis to the anterior chest wall.

The inguinal canal, an oblique passage through the anterolateral abdominal wall, conveys the spermatic cord in the male and the round ligament of the uterus in the female (Figs 4.1 & 4.2).

The nerves and vessels of the abdominal wall run between the muscles and supply all layers from skin to parietal peritoneum. Most of the arteries, and their accompanying veins and lymphatics, arise from the thoracic wall or the inguinal region, while the

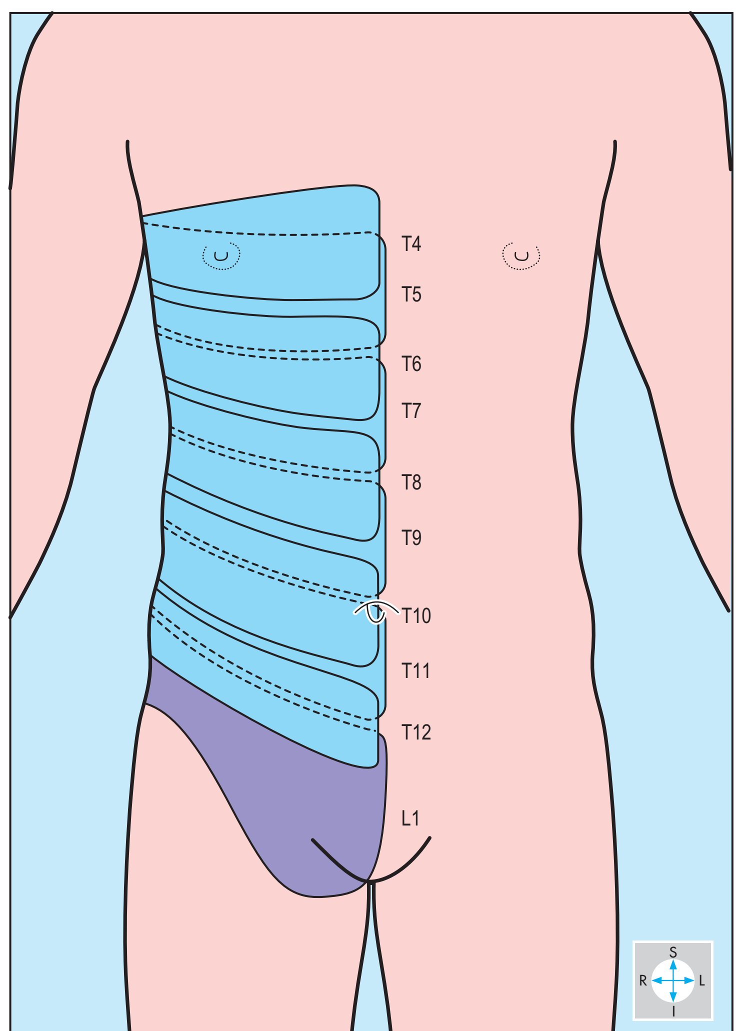


Fig. 4.3 Dermatomes of abdominal wall, showing how they overlap.

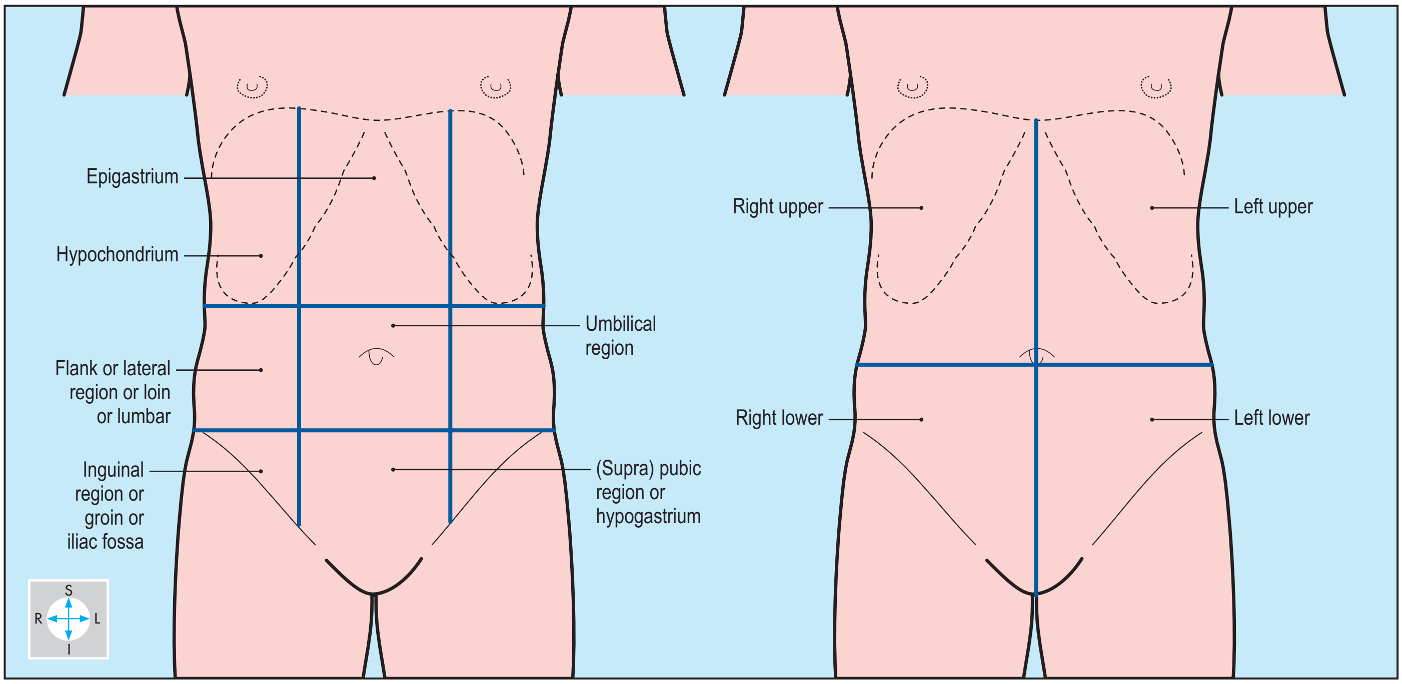


Fig. 4.4 Subdivisions of the abdomen used in clinical practice. (Left) Nine regions. (Right) Four quadrants.

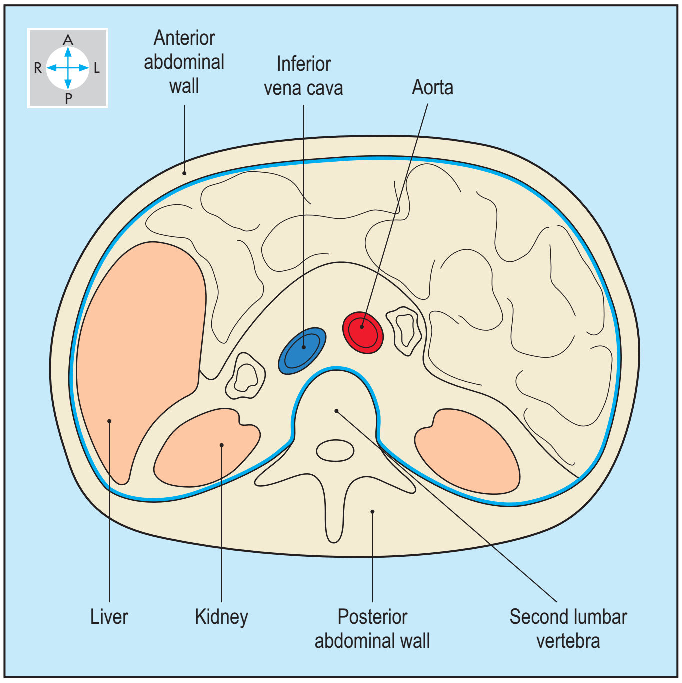


Fig. 4.5 Transverse section through the abdomen to demonstrate the shape of the cavity.

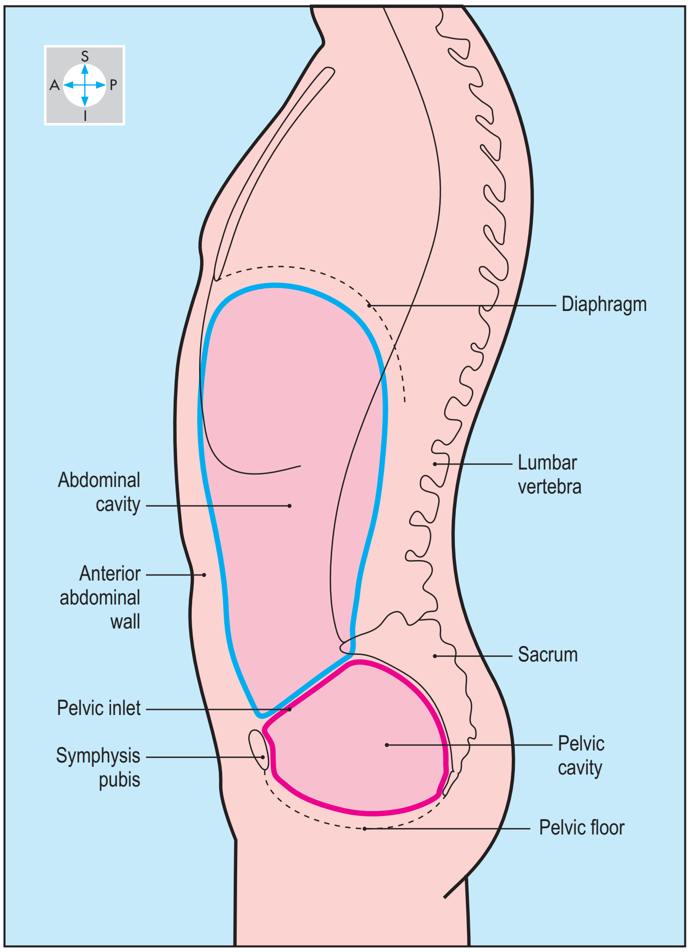


Fig. 4.6 Longitudinal section through the abdomen to show its shape and superior and inferior boundaries.

innervation is provided by spinal nerves. The cutaneous distribution of these nerves displays considerable overlap, as shown in Figure 4.3.

The abdominal wall muscles accommodate to volume changes of the abdominal and pelvic hollow organs, increase intra-abdominal pressure during forced expiration and straining, and produce movements of the lumbar spine.

The shape of the abdominal cavity is shown in Figures 4.4–4.6. Projecting into the abdomen, the lumbar vertebrae form a substantial midline ridge anterior to which run the aorta and inferior

vena cava. On each side of the lumbar vertebrae are deep paravertebral gutters. The liver lies predominantly to the right of the midline while the spleen and most of the stomach lie to the left (Fig. 4.7). The digestive organs, including the duodenum, jejunum, ileum and colon, lie anterior to the suprarenal glands, kidneys and ureters (Fig. 4.8). The abdominal organs vary considerably in their size, shape and relative position, with the stomach and intestines expanding and contracting as they accommodate their contents. The upper abdominal organs move with the diaphragm and in response to changes in body position, for example from upright to lying down.

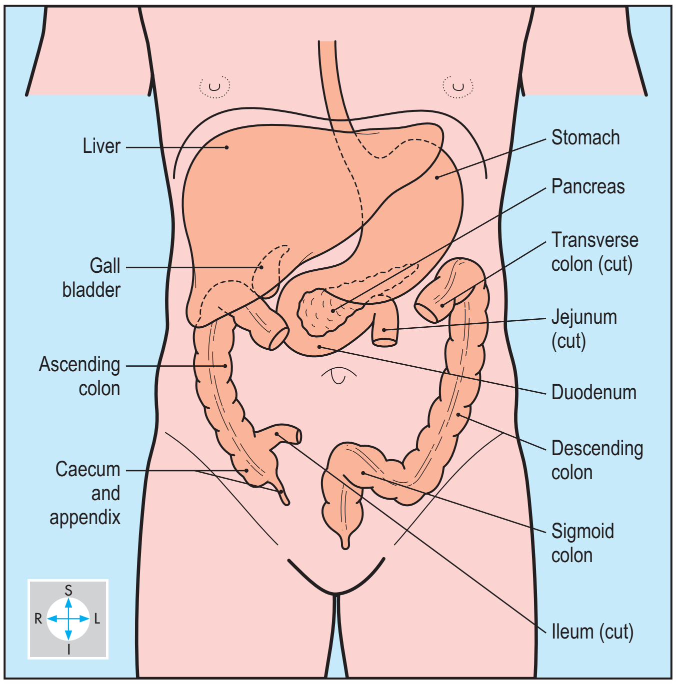


Fig. 4.7 The digestive organs within the abdomen.

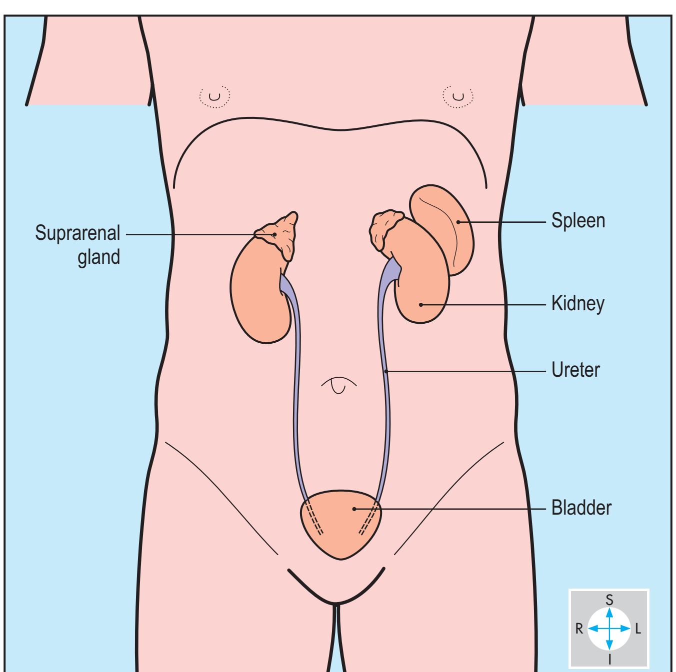


Fig. 4.8 The kidneys and related organs.

The peritoneum is a serous sac with parietal and visceral layers that are normally in close apposition. The parietal peritoneum lines the abdominal wall and the undersurface of the diaphragm, while the visceral layer coats many of the abdominal organs. Some organs have an almost complete covering and are termed intraperitoneal, for example the stomach, jejunum, ileum and liver. They are relatively mobile and attached by double layers of peritoneum between which run vessels and nerves. Such folds form mesenteries, for example the mesentery of the small intestine, or ligaments such as the falciform ligament of the liver, or omenta such as the greater omentum that hangs like an apron from the stomach. Other organs are retroperitoneal, such as the pancreas and kidneys. They have no mesenteries and only partial coverings of peritoneum, usually on the anterior surface.

The aorta descends in the midline and bifurcates to form the common iliac arteries (Fig. 4.9). From its anterior surface spring three branches to the digestive organs. The coeliac trunk supplies the derivatives of the embryonic foregut: stomach and proximal duodenum, liver, gall bladder, spleen and part of the pancreas. The superior mesenteric artery supplies the derivatives of the midgut: the remainder of the pancreas and small intestine and the large intestine as far as the transverse colon. The inferior mesenteric artery supplies the hindgut: descending and sigmoid colon and rectum. Paired branches arise from the aorta to the suprarenal glands, kidneys, gonads and abdominal wall.

On the right, the renal vein and the suprarenal and gonadal veins join the inferior vena cava directly (Fig. 4.10). On the left, the renal vein is longer and receives the suprarenal and gonadal veins. Blood from the spleen, stomach and intestines drains via the portal venous system to the liver, thence to the inferior vena cava by way of the hepatic veins (Fig. 4.11).

Lymph from the abdominal organs drains by vessels and nodes that accompany the arterial supply. There are nodes within mesenteries and around the aorta, from which vessels drain upwards to enter the cisterna chyli. The latter gives rise to the thoracic duct carrying lymph upwards through the thorax (Fig. 1.34).

Most viscera receive autonomic innervation via both sympathetic and parasympathetic plexuses around the blood vessels, particularly the aorta and its branches. The thoracic splanchnic nerves, branches of the thoracic portion of the sympathetic trunk, pierce the diaphragm close to its aortic opening. Parasympathetic fibres travel in the vagus nerve, which supplies the stomach, liver and biliary system, the small intestine and the proximal part of the large intestine. The distal portion of the colon is supplied by parasympathetic nerves from sacral segments of the spinal cord.

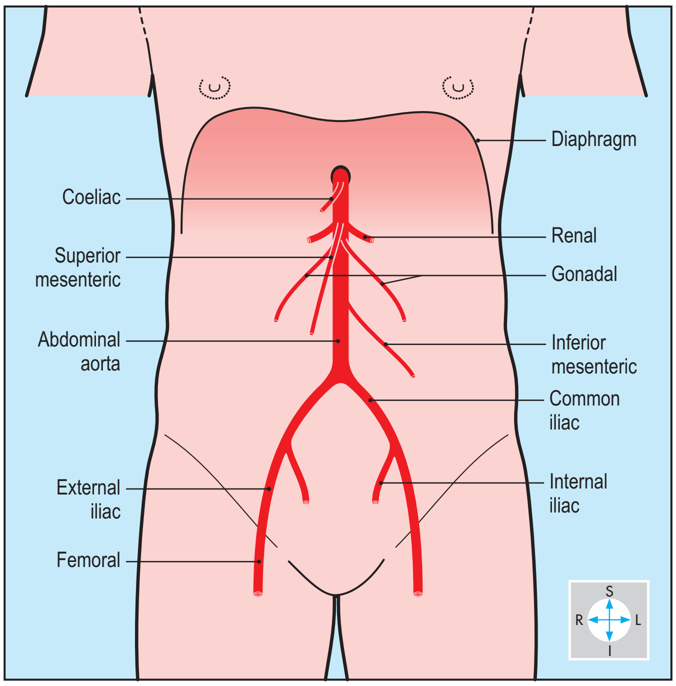


Fig. 4.9 Principal arteries of the abdomen.

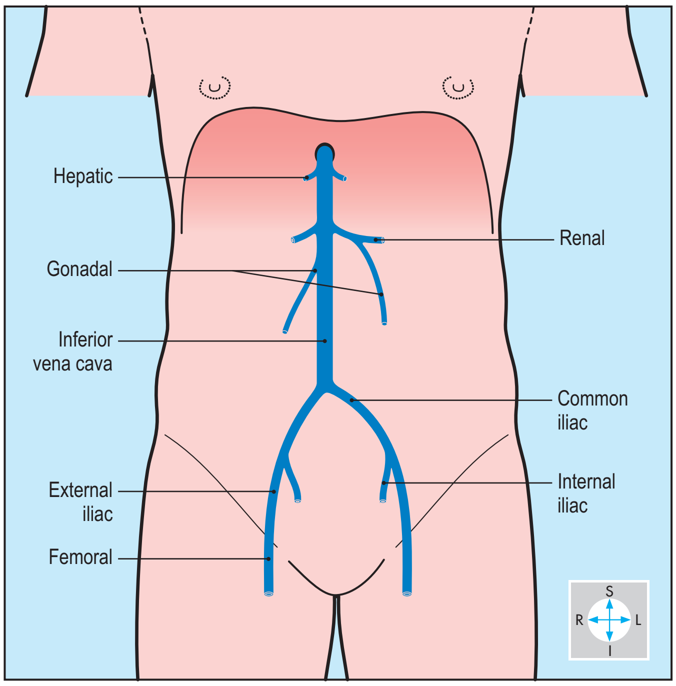


Fig. 4.10 Principal systemic veins of abdomen.

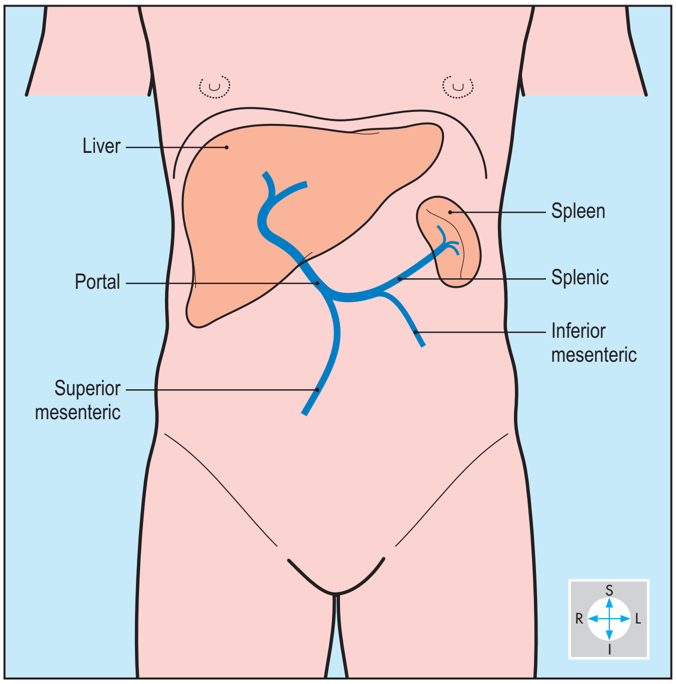


Fig. 4.11 Principal components of the portal venous system.

Anterior Abdominal Wall

The skin and subcutaneous tissue of the anterior abdominal wall overlie four muscles that move the trunk, control intra-abdominal pressure and support the abdominal contents. The main nerves and blood vessels lie in the neurovascular plane, deep to all but one of the muscles. Deep to the muscles are the transversalis fascia, extraperitoneal fat and the parietal peritoneum.

Skin and subcutaneous tissue

The midline umbilicus marks the site of former attachment of the umbilical cord. In a lean person, it usually lies midway between the xiphisternum and the symphysis pubis, at the level of the fourth lumbar vertebra, but its position is variable.

The subcutaneous tissue has an outer fatty layer, which is particularly thick in obese individuals, and a deeper membranous layer, which lies on the external oblique muscle (Fig. 4.12). Although thin over most of the abdominal wall, the membranous layer becomes substantial inferiorly. Laterally, it descends into the thigh and attaches to the fascia lata, while medially it continues around the external genitalia into the perineum (p. 244). In the event of a rupture of the male urethra, urine can escape not only into the subcutaneous tissues of the perineum but may track into the abdominal wall deep to the membranous layer, but not into the thigh (p. 227).

The subcutaneous tissue receives its blood from small branches of the arteries that supply the abdominal muscles. The superficial veins drain either upwards towards the axilla or downwards to the groin. In portal hypertension, the superficial veins may dilate and become visible, radiating from the umbilicus (caput medusae; p. 185). The nerve supply to the skin is segmental and is provided by cutaneous branches of the lower thoracic spinal nerves and the first lumbar nerve (Figs 4.2 & 4.3).

Muscles

On each side of the midline, there are four principal muscles. Three of these are flat muscles, arranged in layers in the lateral part of the abdominal wall. External oblique is the most superficial, internal oblique lies deep to it and the deepest layer is transversus abdominis. As each of these muscles is traced anteriorly and medially, its fleshy part gives way to an aponeurosis (Fig. 4.12). The aponeuroses of the flat muscles form a sheath around the fourth muscle, rectus abdominis. In the midline, the aponeuroses from both sides interdigitate to form the linea alba, which bares an obvious scar, the umbilicus. All three aponeuroses attach inferiorly to the pubic crest. These muscles are innervated by the lower six thoracic nerves and the first lumbar nerve (p. 145).

Immediately above the groin, the inguinal canal traverses the lowest part of the abdominal wall and transmits the spermatic cord in the male and the round ligament of the uterus in the female (p. 146). The umbilicus and linea alba are potential sites for hernias. Umbilical hernias are common in infants, due to weakness of the umbilical scar. In later life, weakening of the linea alba near the umbilicus can result in a paraumbilical hernia.

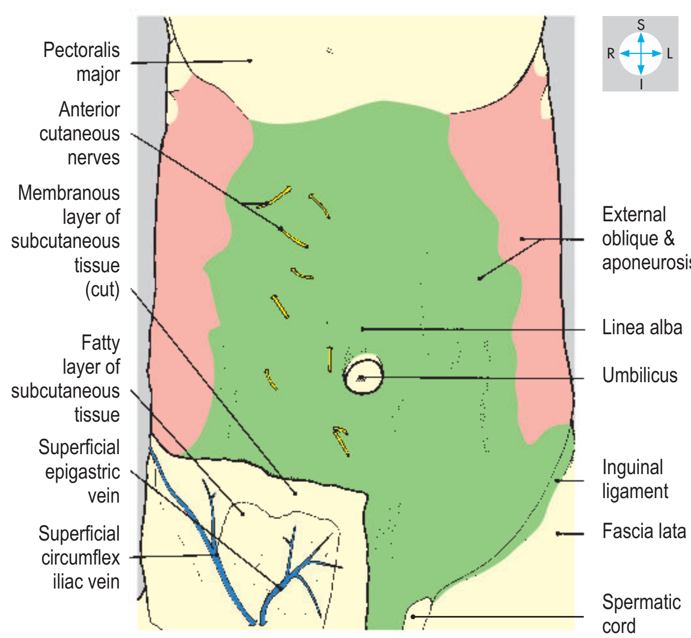


Fig. 4.12 External oblique muscles and aponeuroses. Some subcutaneous tissue, veins and cutaneous nerves have been preserved on one side.

External oblique

The muscle fibres of external oblique slope downwards and forwards (Fig. 4.13). Superiorly, a series of fleshy slips attaches to the outer surfaces of the lower eight ribs, the upper slips interdigitating with serratus anterior, the lower ones with latissimus dorsi. The most posterior fibres attach inferiorly to the iliac crest; elsewhere, the fibres give way to the aponeurosis, which passes medially in front of rectus abdominis to reach the linea alba. The aponeurosis possesses a free lower border that extends from the anterior superior iliac spine to the pubic tubercle and forms the inguinal ligament (Figs 4.1 & 4.12), which marks the boundary between the abdominal wall and the anterior aspect of the thigh.

Immediately above the medial end of the inguinal ligament, the external oblique aponeurosis presents an aperture, the superficial inguinal ring, which is the medial opening of the inguinal canal (p. 146).

Internal oblique

Internal oblique attaches to the lateral two-thirds of the inguinal ligament, to the anterior part of the iliac crest and to the thoracolumbar fascia (Fig. 4.15), through which it is anchored to the lumbar vertebrae. Most of its fibres slope forwards and upwards. The uppermost fibres attach to the costal margin between the ninth and twelfth ribs, while the remainder give way to the aponeurosis of the muscle (Fig. 4.14).

Some aponeurotic fibres reach the linea alba by passing anterior to rectus abdominis, while others pass behind the rectus (p. 143). The lowest fibres arch medially and downwards, contributing to the roof of the inguinal canal. They unite with the underlying fibres of transversus to form the inguinal falx (conjoint tendon), which descends to the pecten pubis (pectineal line) on the pubic bone.

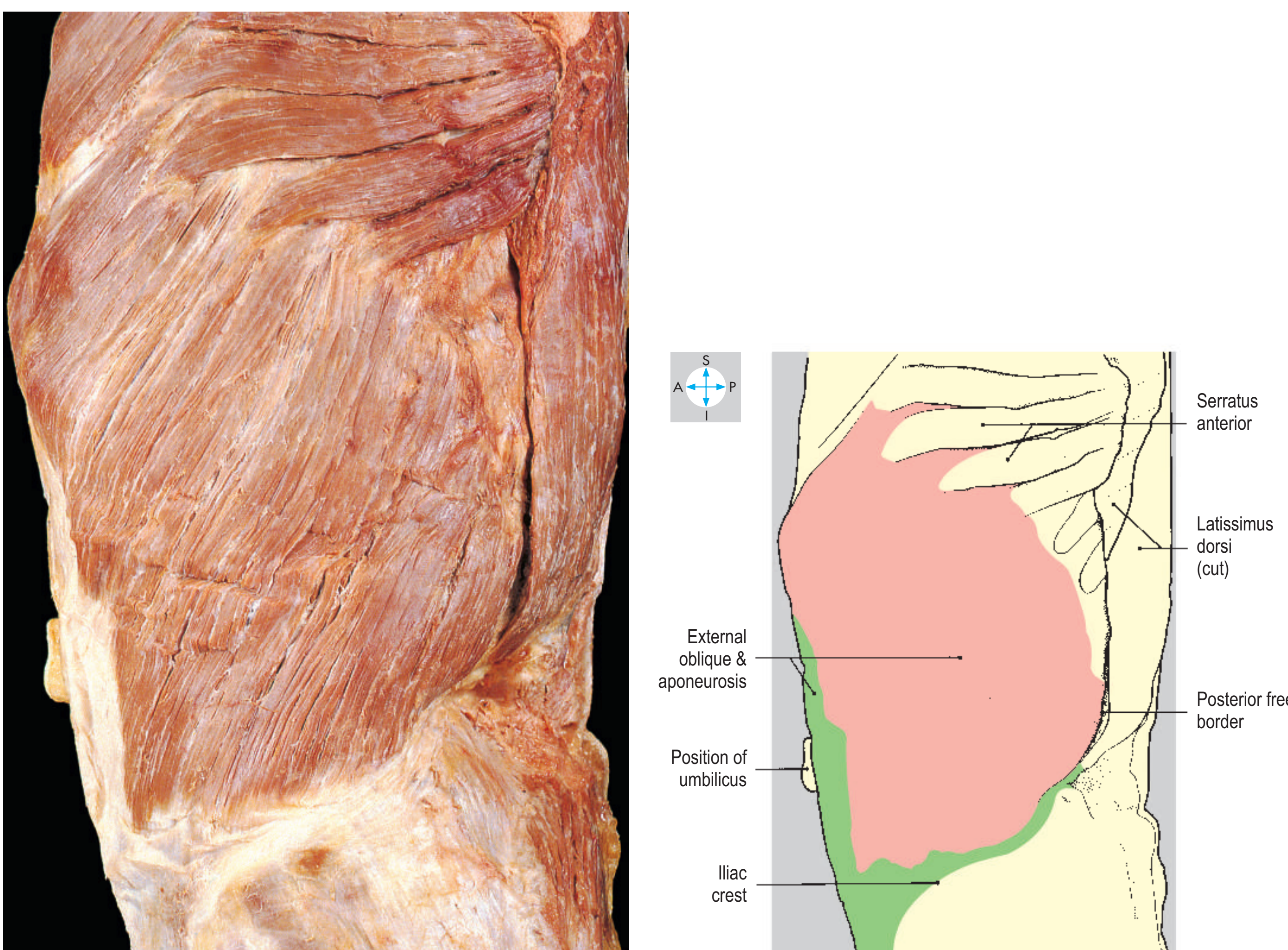


Fig. 4.13 The left external oblique showing its attachments to the lower ribs and the iliac crest.

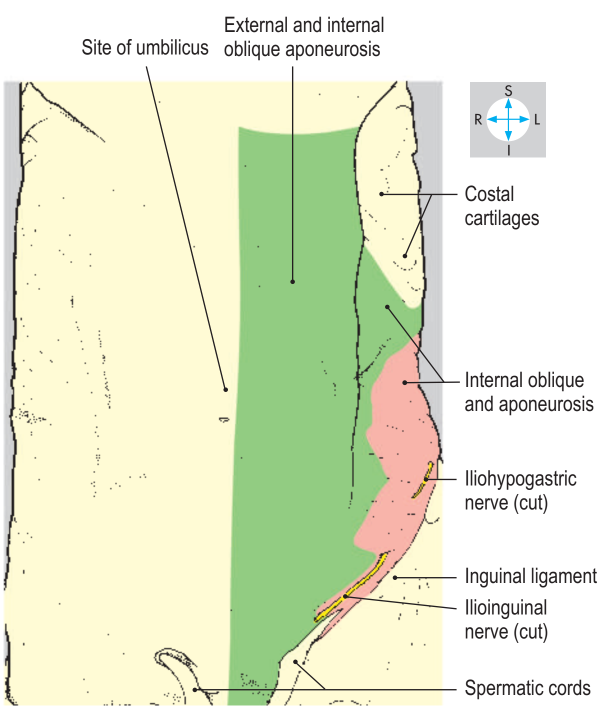


Fig. 4.14 Most of the left external oblique has been excised to reveal the underlying internal oblique muscle.

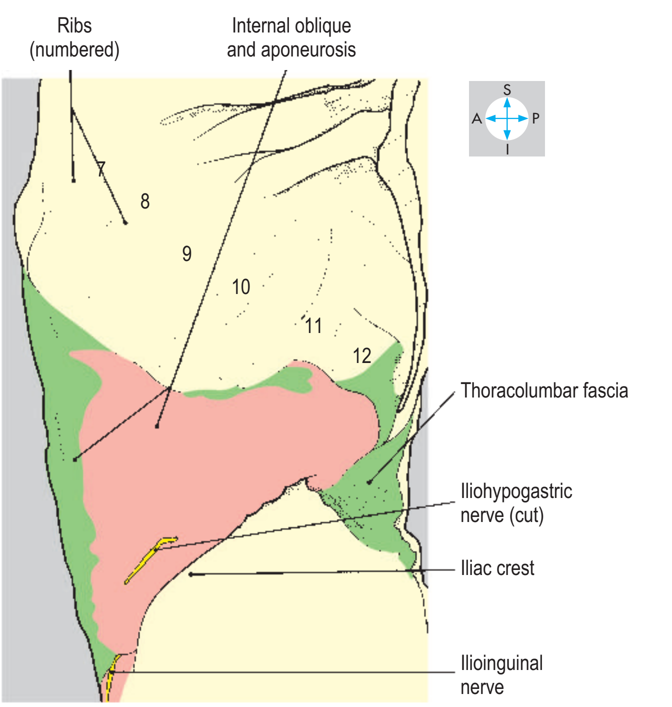


Fig. 4.15 Left internal oblique and attachments, revealed by removal of the external oblique. In this specimen, the costal attachments of serratus anterior include the ninth rib.

Transversus abdominis

The upper part of this muscle arises from the inner aspects of the lower six costal cartilages (Fig. 4.17) by fleshy slips, which interdigitate with the costal attachments of the diaphragm. The middle part of the muscle fuses with the thoracolumbar fascia while the lowest fibres attach to the iliac crest and the lateral half of the inguinal ligament. Most of the fibres run horizontally forwards and are replaced, near the lateral border of rectus, with an aponeurosis (Figs 4.16 & 4.18). The upper part of the aponeurosis reaches the linea alba by passing posterior to rectus abdominis while the inferior part passes anterior to it (see below).

The lowest fibres of transversus abdominis attach to the lateral part of the inguinal ligament and arch over the inguinal canal and, fusing with those of the overlying internal oblique, contribute to the inguinal falx.

Rectus abdominis

Rectus abdominis runs vertically on each side of the linea alba, from the pubis to the front of the chest wall (Fig. 4.16). The inferior attachment is to the anterior aspect of the pubic symphysis and to the pubic crest. The muscle widens superiorly and attaches to the anterior surfaces of the fifth, sixth and seventh costal cartilages. Its gently convex lateral border forms a surface feature called the linea semilunaris. Rectus abdominis is characterized by transverse tendinous intersections, usually at the levels of the xiphisternum, the umbilicus and midway between the two.

Rectus sheath

Rectus abdominis is enclosed in a sheath formed by the aponeuroses of the flat abdominal muscles. The anterior wall of the sheath, which is anchored to the tendinous intersections, covers the entire length of the muscle (Fig. 4.14). By contrast, the posterior wall is not attached to the muscle and falls short of its superior and inferior extremities. Superiorly, the posterior wall of the sheath terminates at the costal margin, above which rectus is in direct contact with the costal cartilages. Inferiorly, the posterior wall continues only a short distance below the umbilicus, where it thins out or ends abruptly. In the latter case, the posterior wall has a recognizable inferior margin, the arcuate line (Fig. 4.18), below which the posterior surface of rectus is in direct contact with the transversalis fascia.

In addition to rectus abdominis, the rectus sheath contains the small triangular pyramidalis muscle, the superior and inferior epigastric vessels (Figs 4.16 & 4.18) and the terminal parts of the lower six intercostal nerves that supply rectus and the overlying skin.

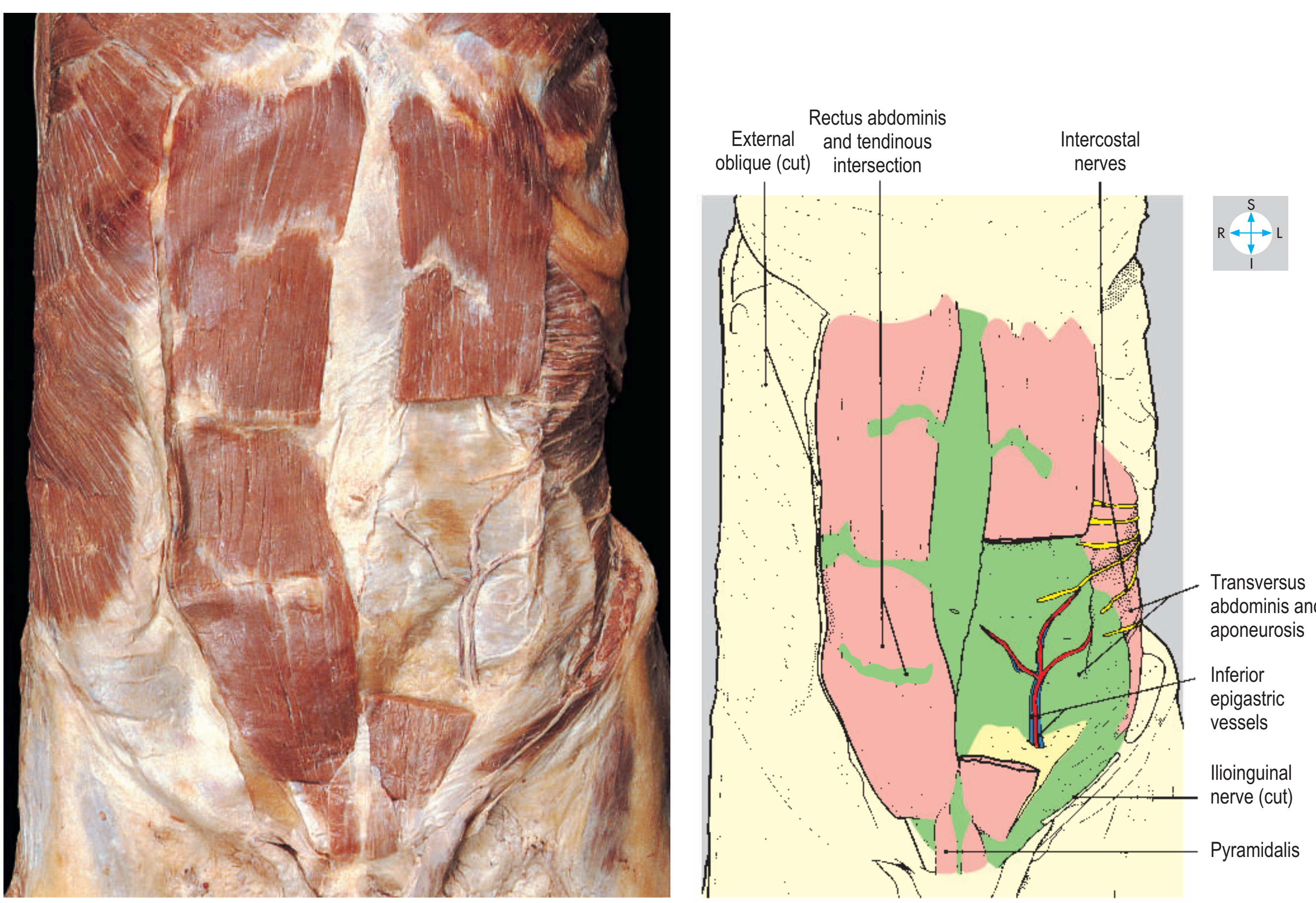


Fig. 4.16 Rectus abdominis muscles and neurovascular plane. The anterior walls of both rectus sheaths, the left oblique muscles and part of the left rectus abdominis have been removed.

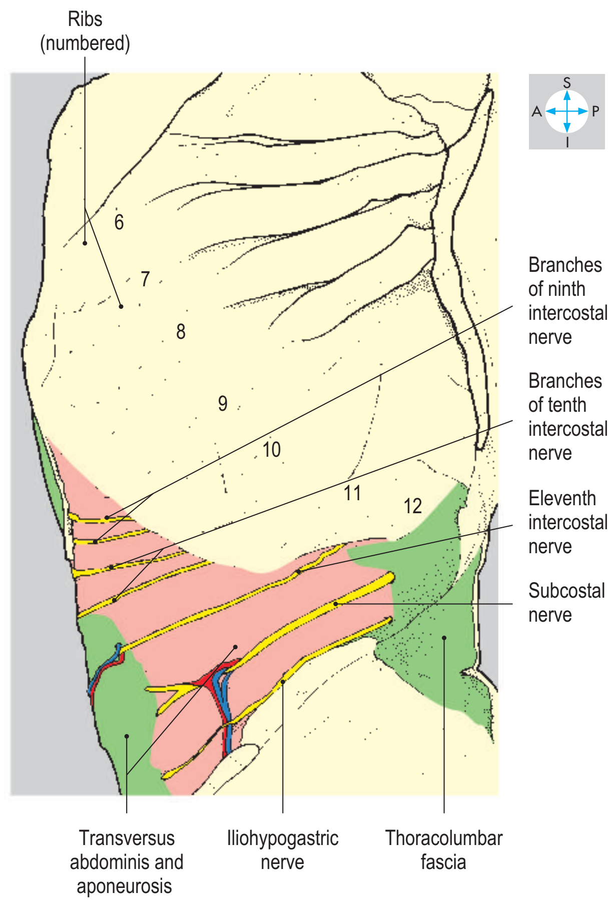


Fig. 4.17 Removal of the external and internal oblique muscles has revealed the transversus abdominis muscle and aponeurosis. Running across its surface are the lower intercostal, subcostal and iliohypogastric nerves.

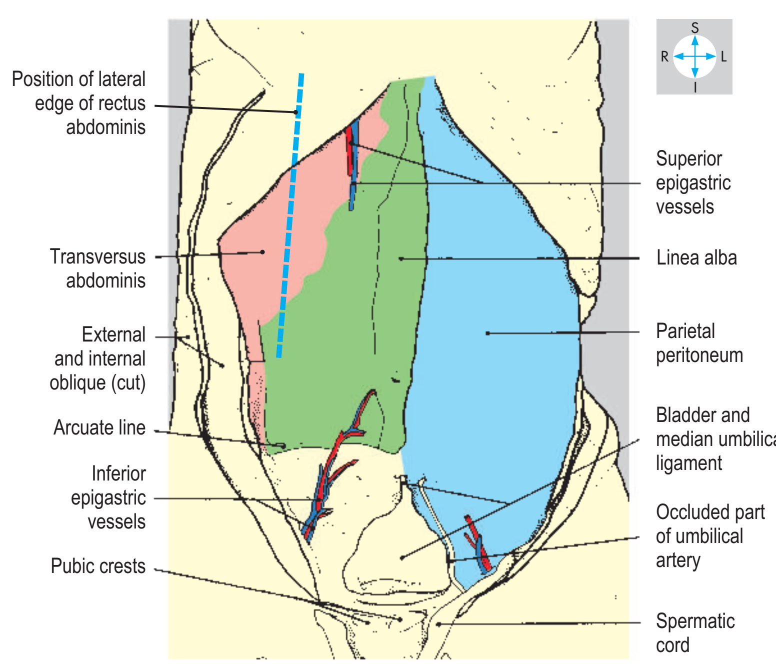


Fig. 4.18 On the right, most of the oblique muscles and all of rectus abdominis have been excised to reveal the posterior wall of the rectus sheath. On the left, all the muscles have been removed to show the parietal peritoneum. The bladder is enlarged.

Actions of abdominal muscles

The abdominal muscles flex the lumbar spine, rectus abdominis being particularly powerful in this action. Lateral flexion and rotation of the trunk are produced by coordinated contraction of the oblique muscles on both sides of the midline. Acting collectively, the abdominal muscles increase intra-abdominal pressure and, if the respiratory passages are open, the diaphragm is pushed upwards as in forced expiration, sneezing and coughing. Increased abdominal pressure with the airway closed (straining) occurs when lifting heavy objects and during defecation, childbirth and vomiting.

Structures deep to muscles

The deep surfaces of transversus and rectus abdominis are covered by the transversalis fascia, which forms part of a complete fascial sheet lying deep to the muscles surrounding the peritoneal cavity. Several names are given to this continuous fascial sheet and are derived from the muscles to which the fascia relates. For example, the iliac fascia and psoas fascia cover the iliacus and psoas muscles, respectively. Above the midpoint of the inguinal ligament, an aperture in the transversalis fascia (the deep inguinal ring) forms the lateral opening of the inguinal canal.

Deep to the transversalis fascia is the extraperitoneal fat, which contains four vestigial structures converging on the umbilicus. Descending from the liver is the round ligament of the liver (ligamentum teres hepatis; Figs 4.30 & 4.59), the remnant of the left umbilical vein. Ascending in the midline from the urinary bladder is the median umbilical ligament or urachus (Fig. 4.18). Inclining upwards from each side of the pelvis is the occluded part of the umbilical artery.

The deepest layer of the abdominal wall is the parietal peritoneum (Fig. 4.18). Although the peritoneum and the abdominal musculature are adherent in most areas, they are only loosely attached between the pubis and umbilicus. The distended bladder intervenes between the parietal peritoneum and the abdominal wall (Fig. 4.30) and can be accessed through a lower abdominal incision without opening the peritoneum.

Nerves and vessels

The skin, muscles and parietal peritoneum of the anterior abdominal wall are innervated by the lower six thoracic nerves and the first lumbar nerve.

Lower thoracic nerves

At the costal margin, thoracic nerves 7–11 leave their intercostal spaces and enter the neurovascular plane of the abdominal wall between transversus abdominis and internal oblique (Fig. 4.17). The seventh and eighth nerves slope upwards, the ninth runs horizontally and the tenth and eleventh incline downwards. The nerves pierce rectus abdominis and the anterior layer of the rectus sheath to emerge as anterior cutaneous branches that supply the overlying skin (Fig. 4.12).

The subcostal nerve (T12) takes the line of the twelfth rib across the posterior abdominal wall (p. 201). It continues around the flank in the neurovascular plane and terminates in a similar manner to the lower intercostal nerves.

The seventh to twelfth thoracic nerves give off lateral cutaneous nerves, which further divide into anterior and posterior branches. The anterior branches supply skin as far forwards as the lateral edge of rectus abdominis while the posterior branches supply skin overlying latissimus dorsi. The lateral cutaneous branch of the subcostal nerve is distributed to the skin on the side of the buttock.

First lumbar nerve

The first lumbar nerve divides into upper and lower branches, the iliohypogastric and ilioinguinal nerves (Figs 4.102 & 4.103). The iliohypogastric nerve reaches the neurovascular plane in the loin and divides just above the iliac crest into two terminal branches. The lateral cutaneous branch supplies the side of the buttock and the anterior cutaneous branch supplies the suprapubic region.

The ilioinguinal nerve leaves the neurovascular plane by piercing internal oblique above the iliac crest (Fig. 4.14). It continues between the two oblique muscles and accompanies the spermatic cord or round ligament of the uterus in the inguinal canal (Figs 4.21 & 4.24). Emerging from the superficial inguinal ring (Fig. 4.20), it gives cutaneous branches to skin on the medial side of the root of the thigh, the proximal part of the penis and front of the scrotum or the mons pubis and the anterior part of the labium majus.

Blood vessels

The blood supply to the abdominal wall is provided by the superior and inferior epigastric arteries, supplemented by the musculophrenic artery and the lower posterior intercostal arteries. The superior epigastric artery descends behind rectus abdominis and may anastomose with the inferior epigastric artery (Fig. 4.18). The latter vessel arises from the external iliac artery immediately above the inguinal ligament and inclines upwards and medially, passing just medial to the deep inguinal ring (Figs 4.18 & 4.23). The inferior epigastric artery enters the rectus sheath by passing in front of its posterior wall at the arcuate line. From the anterior ends of the lower two or three intercostal spaces, posterior intercostal arteries continue forwards in the neurovascular plane.

Venous drainage of the deeper layers of the abdominal wall is via venae comitantes of the respective arteries. Blood from the superficial tissues drains into veins, lying in the subcutaneous tissue, which run towards the axilla and groin. Dilatation of the subcutaneous veins is an important clinical sign in patients with obstruction of venous flow within the abdomen, for example, within the inferior vena cava or the liver. Dilatation of the superficial veins is an important clinical sign in patients with portal vein obstruction (p. 185).

Lymphatics

Lymph from the abdominal wall above the level of the umbilicus drains upwards. Lymphatics from the skin and subcutaneous tissue accompany the subcutaneous veins and drain into the axillary nodes, while those from the deeper tissues follow the course of the superior epigastric artery to the internal thoracic nodes. The superficial lymphatics of the lower half of the abdominal wall pass to the superficial inguinal nodes, while the deeper lymph vessels follow the course of the inferior epigastric artery to reach the external iliac nodes.

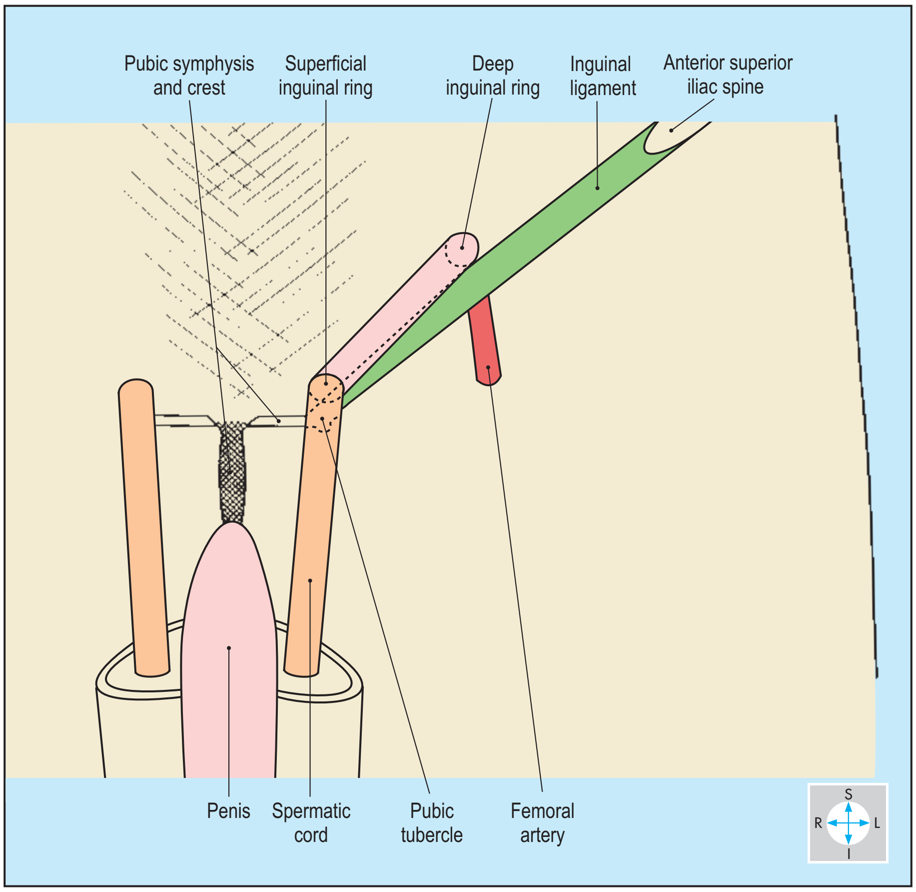


Fig. 4.19 Position of the inguinal canal and its superficial and deep rings in relation to the inguinal ligament.

Inguinal Canal

The inguinal canal is about 4 cm long and passes obliquely through the flat muscles of the abdominal wall just above the medial half of the inguinal ligament (Fig. 4.19). In the male, the canal conveys the spermatic cord (comprising the ductus [vas] deferens and the vessels and nerves of the testis). In the female, the canal is narrower and contains the round ligament of the uterus.

The lateral end of the canal opens into the abdominal cavity at the midinguinal point, defined as midway between the pubic symphysis and the anterior superior iliac spine. In clinical practice, the midinguinal point serves as a guide to the deep inguinal ring and the femoral artery (Fig. 4.2). There may be individual variation in the relative positions of the deep inguinal ring, the femoral artery, and the bony landmarks, and some authors refer to the midinguinal point or the midpoint of the inguinal ligament as appropriate surface markings. The medial end of the canal opens into the subcutaneous tissues at the superficial inguinal ring, an aperture in the external oblique aponeurosis immediately superior to the pubic tubercle (Fig. 4.20). Continuous with the margins of the superficial ring is a thin sleeve surrounding the spermatic cord, the external spermatic fascia (Fig. 4.21).

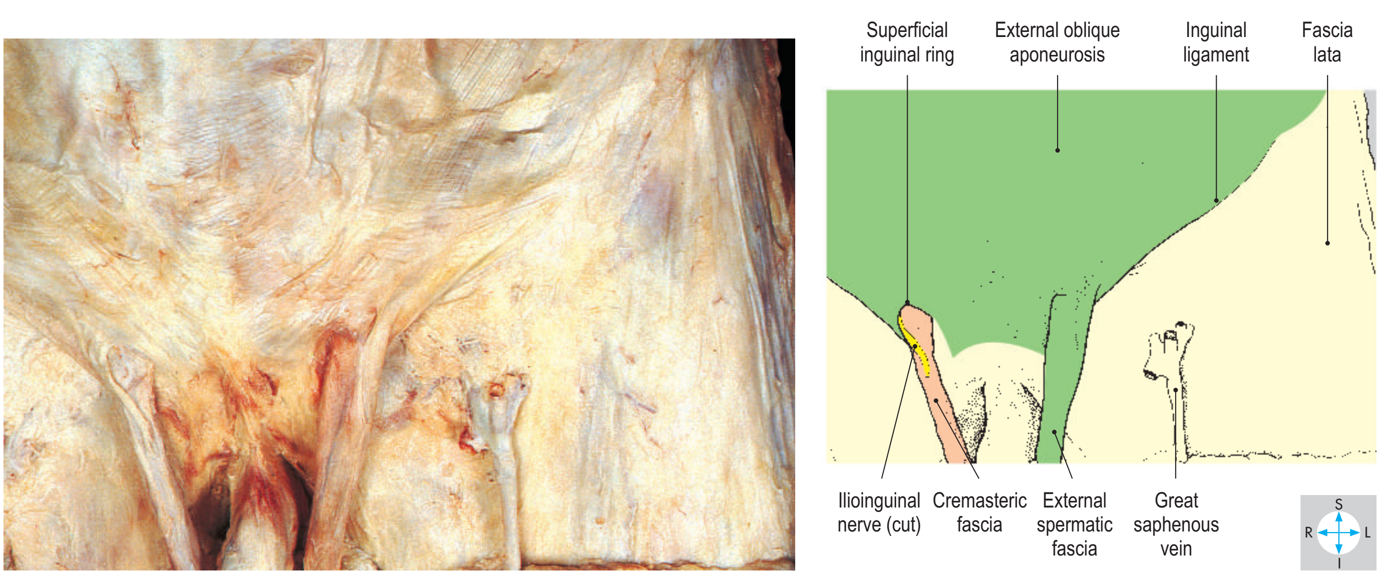


Fig. 4.20 Removal of the skin and subcutaneous tissue reveals both superficial inguinal rings (male specimen). On one side the external spermatic fascia has been removed to show the margins of the superficial ring.

Boundaries

The canal comprises a floor, a roof, and an anterior and a posterior wall. The gutter-shaped floor is formed by the inguinal ligament (Fig. 4.22), the in-turned lower edge of the external oblique aponeurosis. The ligament attaches laterally to the anterior superior iliac spine and medially to the pubic tubercle and the pectineal line of the pubis. The expanded medial end of the inguinal ligament, the lacunar ligament, lies in the floor of the medial end of the canal, and its concave lateral edge forms the medial boundary of the femoral ring (Fig. 4.23 and p. 262).

The roof is formed by the lowest fibres of internal oblique and transversus abdominis (Fig. 4.22). These fibres arch over the canal and pass medially and downwards to form the inguinal falx (conjoint tendon), which attaches to the crest and pectineal line of the pubis. The anterior wall of the canal is formed by the external oblique aponeurosis, supplemented laterally by fibres of internal oblique. These fibres arise from the lateral part of the inguinal ligament and cover the anterior aspect of the deep ring (Fig. 4.21). The posterior wall is formed by the transversalis fascia, reinforced medially by the conjoint tendon. Deep to the transversalis fascia are the inferior epigastric vessels, which lie just medial to the deep

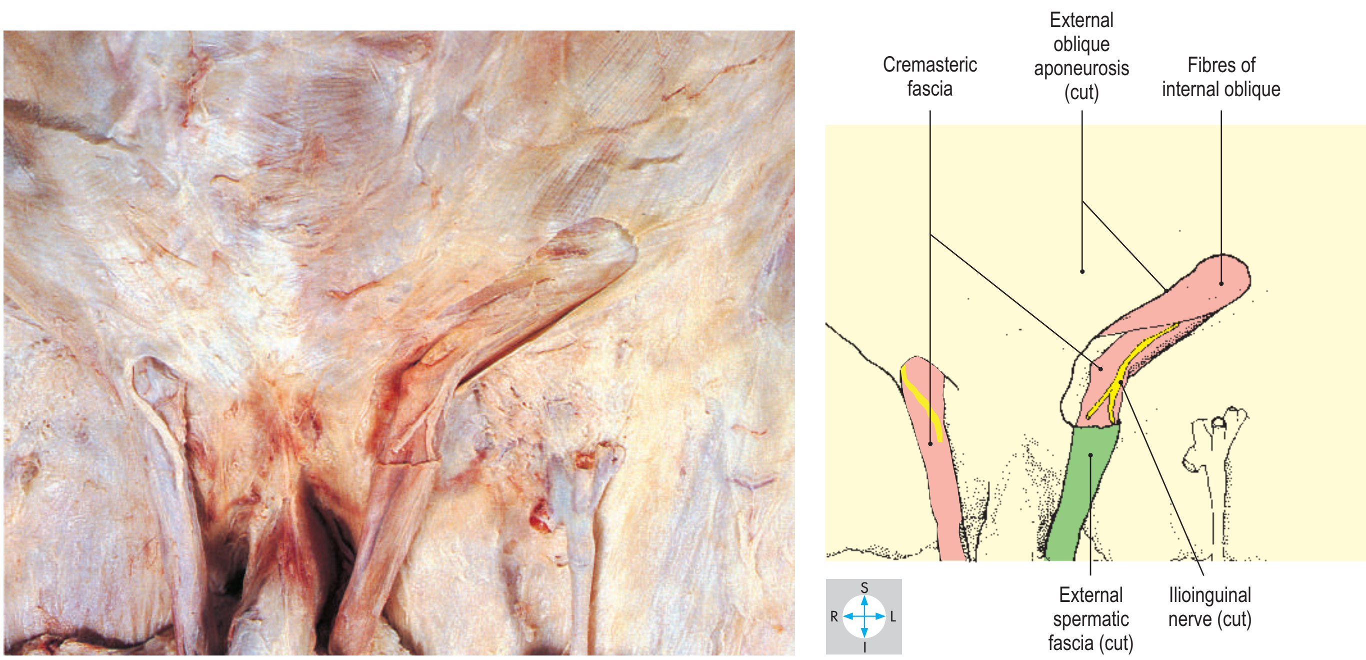


Fig. 4.21 External spermatic fascia and a strip of the external oblique aponeurosis have been removed to show the spermatic cord and ilioinguinal nerve within the canal.

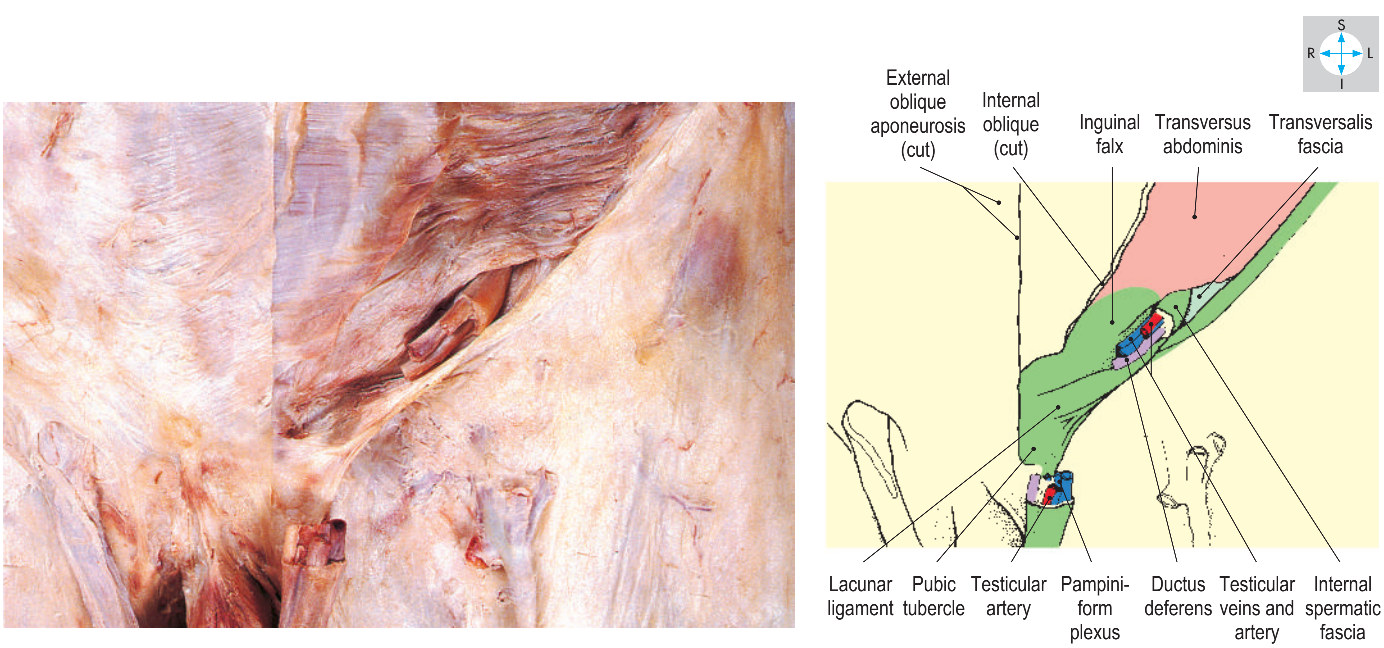


Fig. 4.22 Lower fibres of internal oblique and part of the spermatic cord have been excised to reveal the posterior wall and floor of the canal.

ring (Fig. 4.23). The inferior epigastric artery may be at risk during operations to repair inguinal hernias.

The inguinal canal is a site of potential weakness in the abdominal wall through which intra-abdominal structures may pass, producing an inguinal hernia (see below). However, several features of the canal's anatomy minimize this weakness. The obliquity of the canal ensures that the superficial and deep inguinal rings do not overlie one another (Fig. 4.19). Furthermore, the strongest part of the anterior wall lies in front of the deep ring and the strongest part of the posterior wall lies behind the superficial ring. Hence, when pressure within the abdomen rises, the anterior and posterior walls of the canal are firmly opposed. In addition, when the abdominal muscles contract, the canal is compressed by the descent of fibres of internal oblique and transversus abdominis in its roof.

Contents

In the male, the canal contains the spermatic cord (Fig. 4.21). In the female, it transmits the round ligament of the uterus (Fig. 4.24), a fibromuscular cord running from the body of the uterus to the subcutaneous tissues of the labium majus. Lymphatics from part of the body of the uterus accompany the round ligament and terminate in the superficial inguinal nodes (Fig. 6.11).

In both sexes, the ilioinguinal nerve (Fig. 4.14) lies deep to the external oblique aponeurosis close to the inguinal ligament. The nerve runs medially in the anterior wall of the canal and emerges through the superficial ring (Figs 4.20 & 4.24).

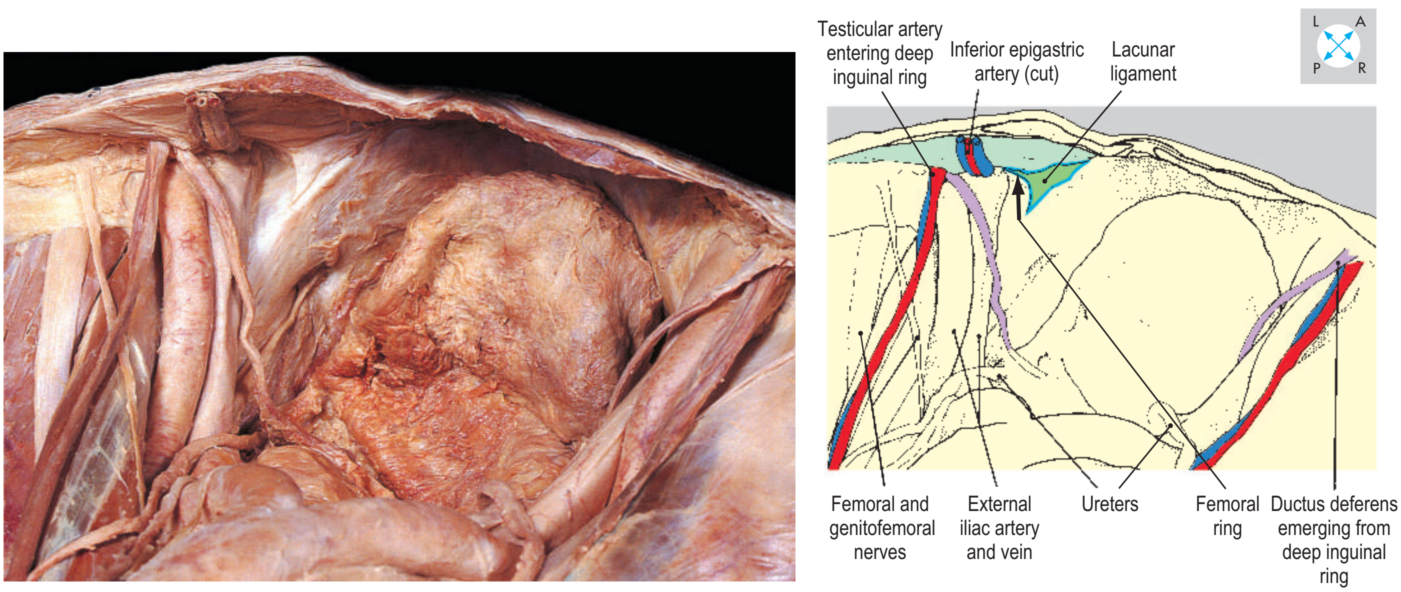


Fig. 4.23 Superior view of the male pelvis to show structures near the deep inguinal ring.

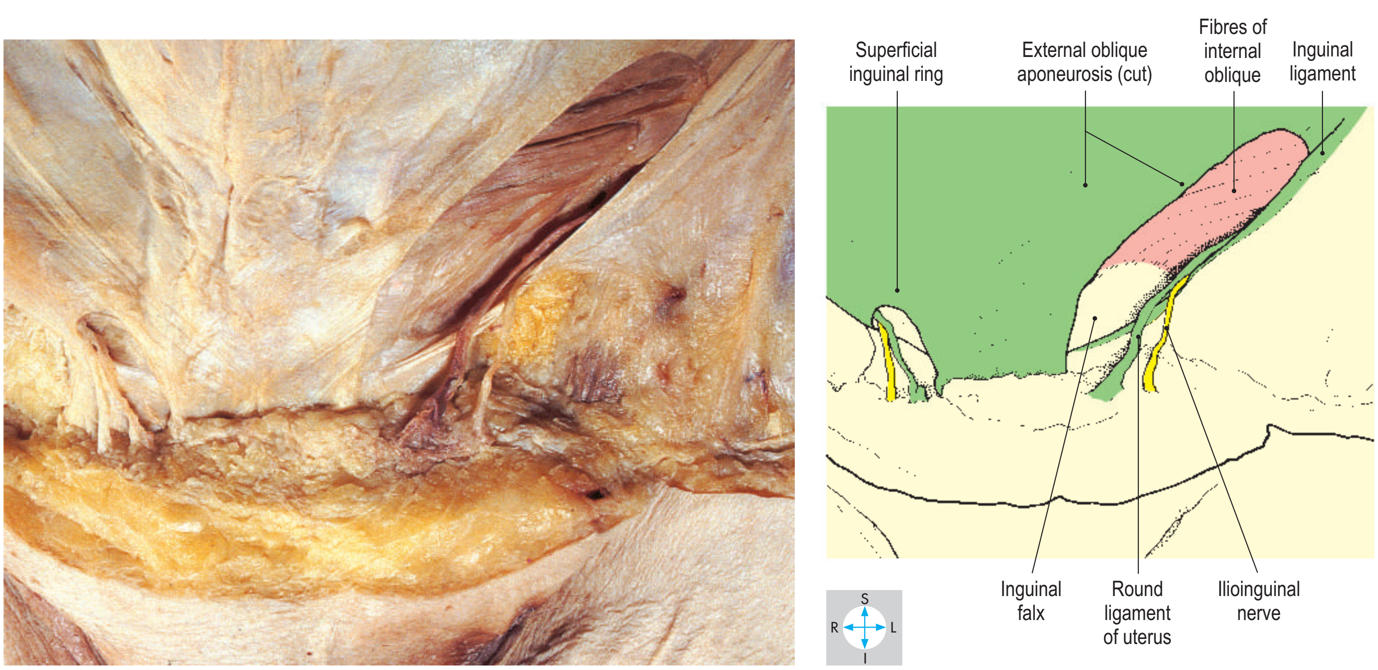


Fig. 4.24 Superficial ring and inguinal canal in the female showing the round ligaments of the uterus.

Inguinal hernias

The inguinal canal is the most common site for an abdominal hernia. Two types of inguinal hernia are recognized. The direct type pushes through the inguinal falx into the medial part of the canal. By contrast, the indirect (oblique) type traverses the deep ring and turns medially along the canal. Hernias of both types may emerge through the superficial ring and descend into the scrotum or labium majus. Direct and indirect hernias are distinguished by their relationships to the inferior epigastric vessels. A direct hernia lies on the medial side of these vessels, while the indirect type enters the inguinal canal lateral to them.

The processus vaginalis normally closes but may remain patent in infancy, leaving a tubular channel connecting with the peritoneal cavity. Herniation along the patent processus, called an infantile inguinal hernia, is more common in the male child and may extend into the tunica vaginalis around the testis (p. 151).

Scrotum

The scrotum is a pouch of skin and fascia derived from the anterior abdominal wall and contains the testes, epididymides and the lower parts of the spermatic cords (Fig. 4.25).

Skin and subcutaneous tissue

The skin of the scrotum is supplied anteriorly by the external pudendal vessels and innervated by the ilioinguinal nerve. The remainder of the scrotal skin is supplied by branches of the internal pudendal vessels and branches of the pudendal nerve and posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh. Lymph drains to the superficial inguinal nodes.

Deep to the skin lies the subcutaneous tissue, continuous superiorly with the subcutaneous tissue of the abdominal wall. The scrotal subcutaneous tissue, which contains smooth muscle called dartos, but little fat, forms a median septum, dividing the pouch into right and left sides.

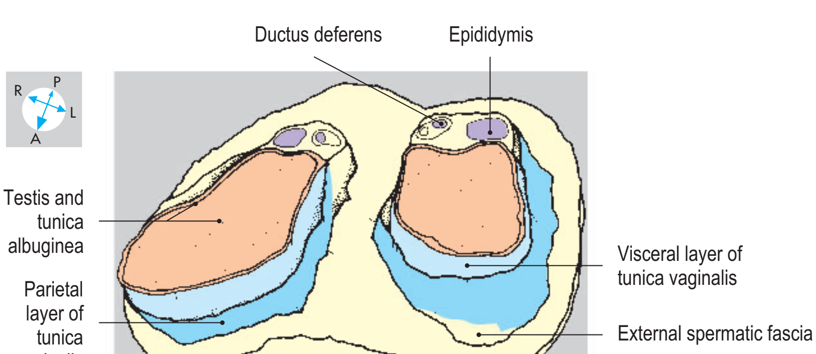


Fig. 4.25 Transverse section through scrotum. The spermatic fasciae are trimmed flush with the subcutaneous tissue.

Spermatic fasciae

Deep to the subcutaneous tissue of each side of the scrotum lie three layers of spermatic fascia (Fig. 4.26). Each layer takes the form of a sleeve derived from one of the layers of the abdominal wall.

The outermost sleeve, the external spermatic fascia, begins at the superficial inguinal ring and is continuous with the external oblique aponeurosis (Fig. 4.20). The intermediate sleeve is the cremasteric fascia and muscle, continuous within the inguinal canal with the internal oblique muscle (Fig. 4.21). The transversalis fascia of the abdominal wall (Fig. 4.22) provides the deepest sleeve, the internal spermatic fascia, which commences at the deep inguinal ring. These three fascial layers surround the components of the spermatic cord and continue downwards to enclose the testis and epididymis.

Spermatic cord

The spermatic cord runs from the deep inguinal ring into the scrotum, terminating posterior to the testis. The cord comprises the ductus (vas) deferens and the vessels and nerves of the testis and epididymis (Fig. 4.27) surrounded by the layers of spermatic fascia (Fig. 4.26).

The principal artery of the spermatic cord is the testicular artery, a branch of the abdominal aorta (Figs 4.88 & 4.89). Also present is the artery to the ductus deferens (Fig. 4.28), usually arising from the superior vesical artery within the pelvic cavity. The veins draining the testis and

Fig. 4.26 Left testis and spermatic cord within their fascial sleeves.

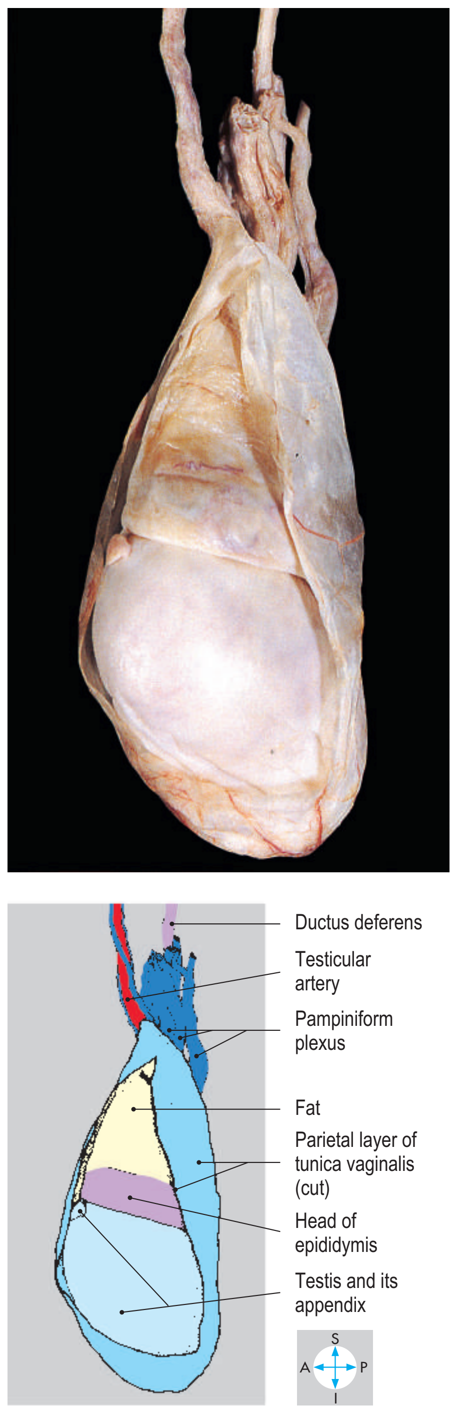


Fig. 4.27 Anterolateral part of the parietal layer of the tunica vaginalis has been removed to reveal the testis and head of the epididymis. This testis bears a vestigial tag, the appendix of the testis.

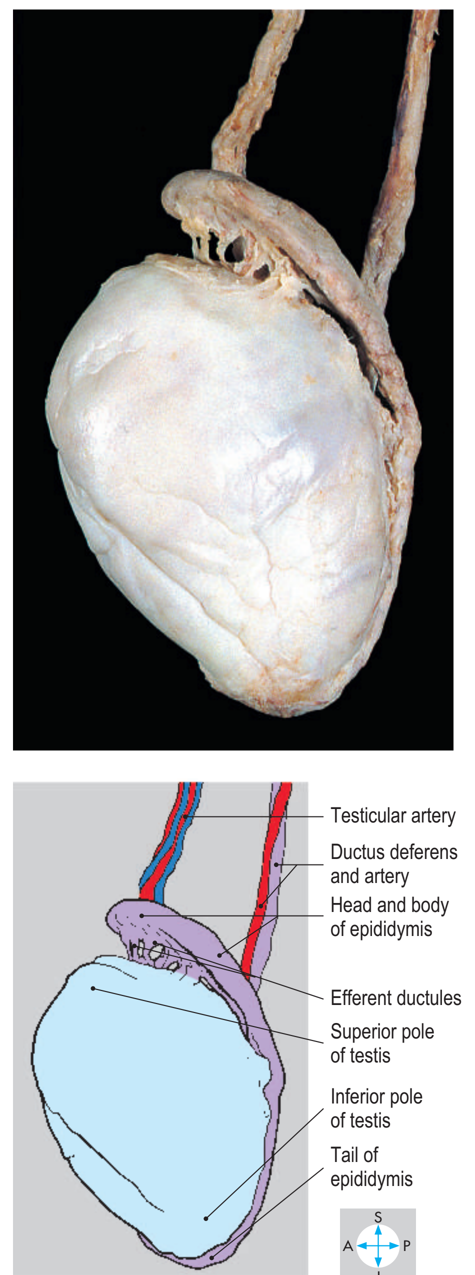


Fig. 4.28 Lateral aspect of testis and epididymis after removal of the tunica vaginalis and pampiniform plexus. The head of the epididymis has been lifted to display the efferent ducts.

epididymis form a network, the pampiniform plexus. Occasionally, these veins become dilated (varicocele; p. 188). From this plexus, one or two veins continue through the deep inguinal ring and ascend the posterior abdominal wall with the testicular artery (Fig. 4.88). The testicular vessels are accompanied by a plexus of autonomic nerves and by lymph vessels which terminate in the aortic lymph nodes.

Tunica vaginalis

The tunica vaginalis is a closed serous sac, which covers the medial, anterior and lateral surfaces of the testis and the lateral aspect of the epididymis (Figs 4.25 & 4.27). Like the peritoneum from which it is derived, the tunica vaginalis has parietal and visceral layers separated by a small quantity of serous fluid. An excessive accumulation of fluid in the sac produces a swelling (hydrocele) anterior to the testis.

In the fetus, the processus vaginalis links the tunica vaginalis with the peritoneal cavity. Usually, the processus closes before birth, but occasionally it remains patent and is associated with infantile hernia.

Testis

The testis is an ovoid organ approximately 5 cm long in the adult, suspended by the spermatic cord in the lower part of the scrotum with its superior pole tilted slightly forwards (Fig. 4.28). The testis has a thick fibrous capsule, the tunica albuginea, which is covered laterally, anteriorly and medially by the visceral layer of the tunica vaginalis (Fig. 4.25). The posterior surface of the organ, devoid of a covering of tunica vaginalis, is pierced by the efferent ductules, branches of the testicular artery and numerous small veins that form the pampiniform plexus (Figs 4.28 & 4.29).

Although the testis usually completes its descent into the scrotum by the time of birth, it may remain in the abdomen or the inguinal canal. In this case, surgical intervention is usually advised.

The testis may rotate, twisting the spermatic cord (torsion). The arterial supply is threatened and urgent surgical correction is needed to prevent necrosis of the testis. Tumours of the testis are common in young adults and may metastasize to the para-aortic nodes. Treatment involves removal of the organ (orchidectomy).

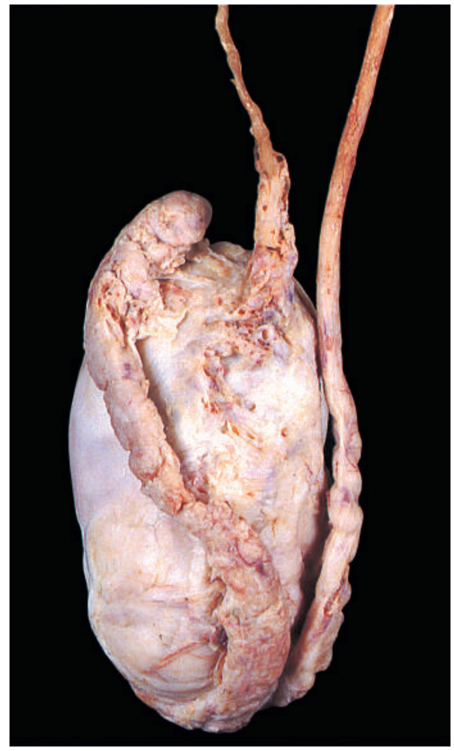
Epididymis

The epididymis consists of a narrow, highly convoluted duct applied to the posterior surface of the testis (Fig. 4.29). Its broad superior part, the head, overhangs the upper pole of the testis, from which it receives several efferent ductules (Fig. 4.28). The body of the epididymis tapers into the tail, which is continuous with the ductus deferens. The epididymis is supplied by branches of the testicular artery and drained by the pampiniform plexus.

Ductus (vas) deferens

The ductus deferens is approximately 25 cm long and connects the tail of the epididymis with the ejaculatory duct in the prostate gland. The ductus ascends behind the testis on the medial side of the epididymis and continues upwards in the cord. When the upper part of the scrotum is palpated, the ductus can be distinguished from the accompanying testicular vessels by its firmness.

After traversing the inguinal canal, the ductus runs backwards across the pelvic brim and along the lateral wall of the pelvis (Fig. 4.23) before terminating in the ejaculatory duct (Fig. 5.24).



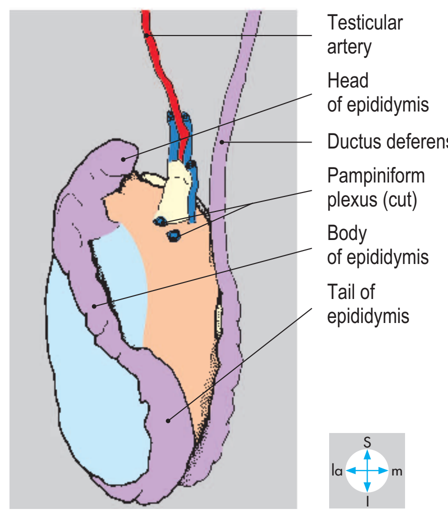


Fig. 4.29 Posterior view of testis, epididymis and ductus deferens.

Peritoneum

The peritoneum is a serous membrane with parietal and visceral layers, which encloses a space, the peritoneal cavity. The parietal peritoneum lines the walls of the abdomen and pelvis, while the visceral layer covers many of the abdominal and pelvic organs. In the male, the peritoneal cavity is a closed sac, but in the female, it communicates with the interior of the uterus and vagina via a microscopic channel through each uterine tube. Normally, the peritoneal cavity contains only a few millilitres (mL) of serous fluid, but in certain diseases, serous fluid can accumulate (ascites), sometimes up to several litres.

The peritoneal cavity comprises the greater and lesser sacs. The greater sac is very extensive and can be traced from the diaphragm above into the pelvic cavity below. The omental bursa (lesser sac) is located in the upper part of the abdomen behind the stomach and communicates with the greater sac through a narrow opening, the omental (epiploic) foramen.

Parietal peritoneum

The parietal peritoneum is applied to the inner aspect of the abdominal and pelvic walls (Fig. 4.30) and continues superiorly across most of the undersurface of the diaphragm. The peritoneum lining the anterior abdominal wall is raised into several folds or ridges. Below the umbilicus, the median umbilical ligament often raises a midline ridge (median umbilical fold), on each side of which the occluded part of the umbilical artery (medial umbilical ligament) may produce a further peritoneal fold (medial umbilical fold) (Fig. 4.31). Above the umbilicus, the round ligament of the liver (Fig. 4.30) is contained in a large fold of peritoneum, the falciform ligament, which attaches the liver to the anterior abdominal wall and the diaphragm (Fig. 4.57).

Posteriorly, the peritoneum covers several organs that lie on the muscles of the posterior abdominal wall (Fig. 4.32). These retroperitoneal organs include the ascending and descending parts of the colon, the kidneys, ureters and suprarenal glands, and most of the pancreas and duodenum. Also lying behind the peritoneum are the aorta and its branches and the inferior vena cava and its tributaries.

Nerve supply

The parietal peritoneum of the abdominal wall is innervated by the lower thoracic and first lumbar nerves. Inflammation spreading from an organ such as the appendix to this peritoneum causes well-localized pain and tenderness and rigidity of the abdominal muscles. The lower thoracic nerves also innervate the peritoneum covering the periphery of the diaphragm. Inflammation of this peritoneum consequently gives rise to pain in the lower thoracic wall and abdominal wall. By contrast, the peritoneum on the central part of the diaphragm receives sensory branches from the phrenic nerves (C3, C4 & C5) and irritation here may produce pain referred to the region of the shoulder (the fourth cervical dermatome; Fig. 3.6).

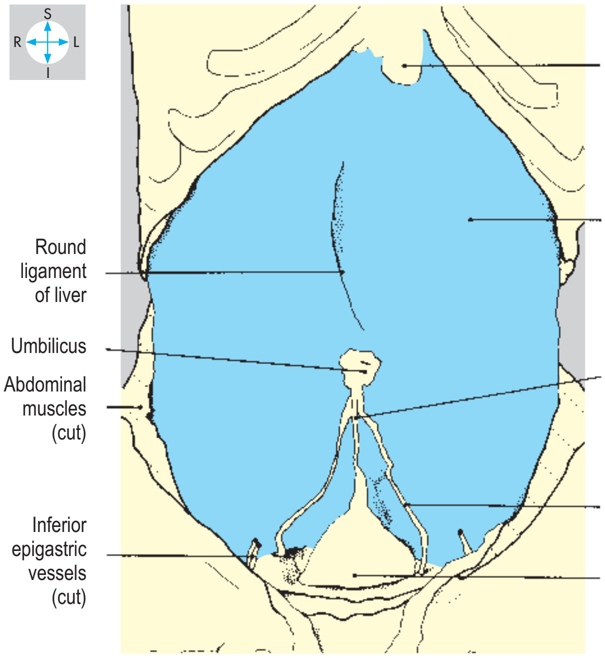


Fig. 4.30 Removal of muscles and fascia of the anterior abdominal wall reveals the parietal peritoneum and extraperitoneal structures.

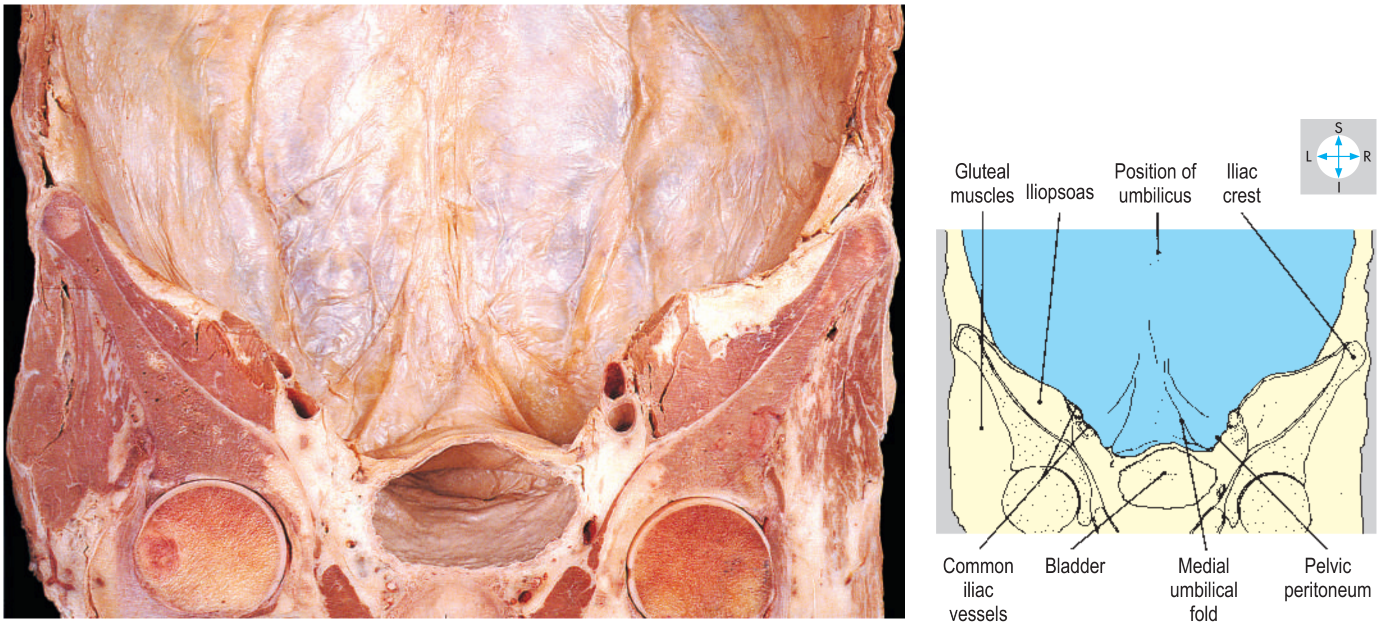


Fig. 4.31 Removal of the abdominal organs from a coronal section shows the parietal peritoneum from within.

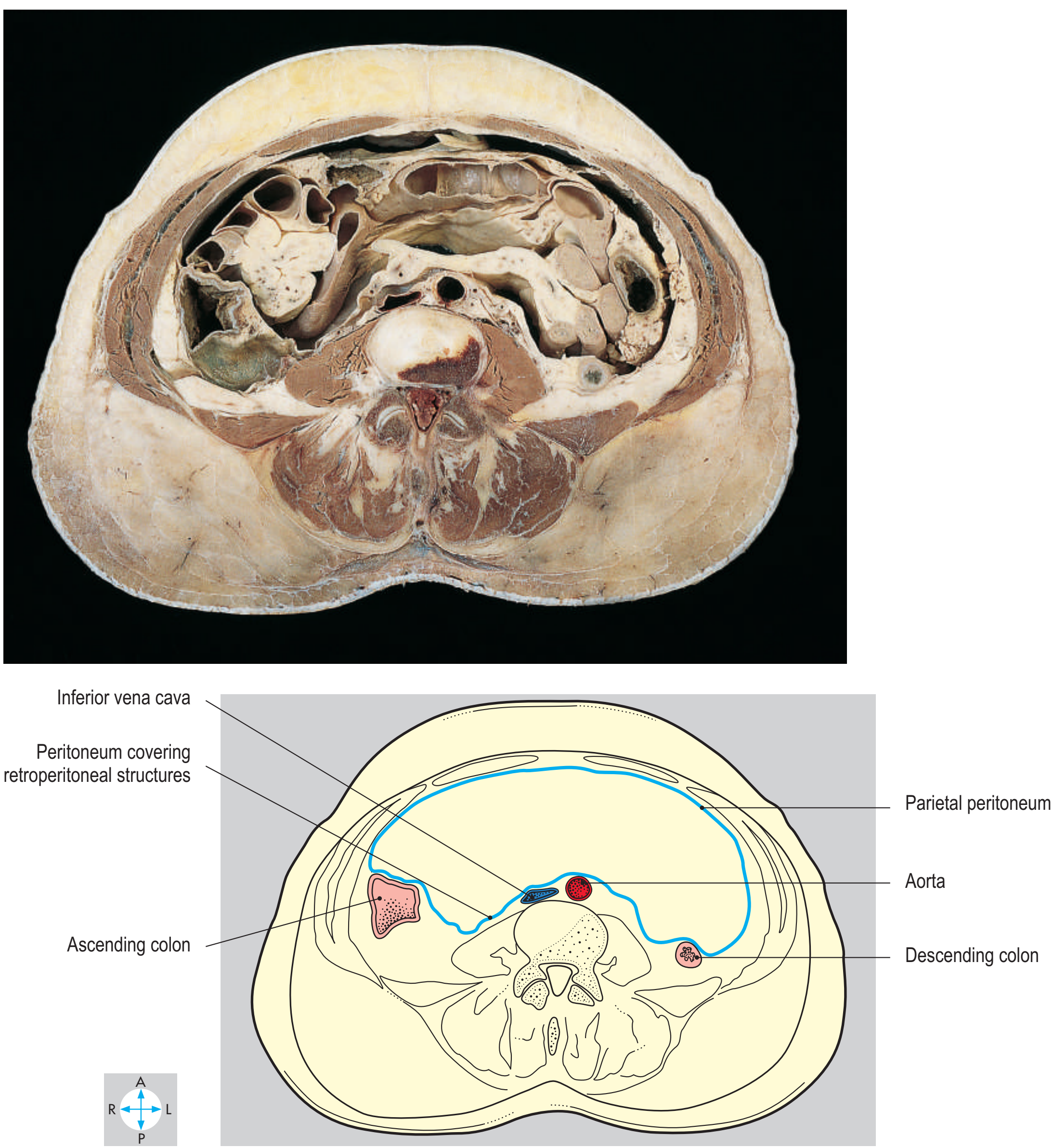


Fig. 4.32 Transverse section at the level of the third lumbar vertebra showing parietal peritoneum and some retroperitoneal structures. Inferior aspect.

Visceral peritoneum and mesenteries

Most of the abdominal organs have a covering of visceral peritoneum and are suspended within the abdominopelvic cavity by mesenteries. Although organs possessing mesenteries are often termed intraperitoneal, they do not lie within the peritoneal cavity but merely project into it. Mesenteries consist of double layers of peritoneum containing the vessels and nerves of the intraperitoneal organs. Typically, a mesentery attaches to the posterior abdominal wall, where its peritoneal layers are continuous with the parietal peritoneum. Examples include the mesentery of the small intestine (Fig. 4.35) and the transverse mesocolon.

The mesenteries of the stomach (the omenta) do not attach to the abdominal wall but to other organs. The lesser curvature of the stomach is connected to the liver by the lesser omentum, while the upper part of the greater curvature is attached to the spleen by the gastrosplenic ligament (Figs 4.37 & 4.38). The major portion of the greater curvature gives attachment to the greater omentum.

The greater omentum is an apron-like fold of peritoneum with a free lower border (Fig. 4.33). Hanging behind the anterior abdominal wall and in front of most of the small intestine, this omentum is usually a conspicuous feature when the peritoneal cavity is opened. Superiorly, it attaches to both the transverse colon (Fig. 4.34) and the greater curvature of the stomach, enclosing the inferior part of the omental bursa (see below). The free inferior border of the omentum ascends on the right as far as the first part of the duodenum, while on the left it merges with the gastrosplenic ligament. The position of the greater omentum is influenced by previous episodes of intra-abdominal disease because it tends to adhere to sites of inflammation such as the appendix or gall bladder.

The transverse mesocolon (Fig. 4.35) has a long horizontal root, attached across the posterior aspect of the abdomen, principally to the pancreas. This mesocolon slopes downwards and forwards into the greater sac, dividing it into supracolic and infracolic compartments. Along its lower margin, close to the anterior abdominal wall, runs the transverse colon.

Infracolic compartment of the greater sac

This compartment lies below and behind the transverse mesocolon and is usually covered anteriorly by the greater omentum. The infracolic compartment consists of right and left spaces separated by the mesentery of the small intestine (Fig. 4.35). The root of this mesentery begins to the left of the midline near the transverse mesocolon and slopes downwards into the right iliac fossa. The mesentery is extensively folded and is attached to the jejunum and ileum. The left infracolic space communicates directly with the cavity of the pelvis. By contrast, the right infracolic space is confined inferiorly by the attachment of the lower part of the mesentery.

Behind the peritoneum on either side of the infracolic compartment lie the ascending and descending parts of the colon. Lateral to these are grooves lined by peritoneum, the right and left paracolic gutters (Fig. 4.68).

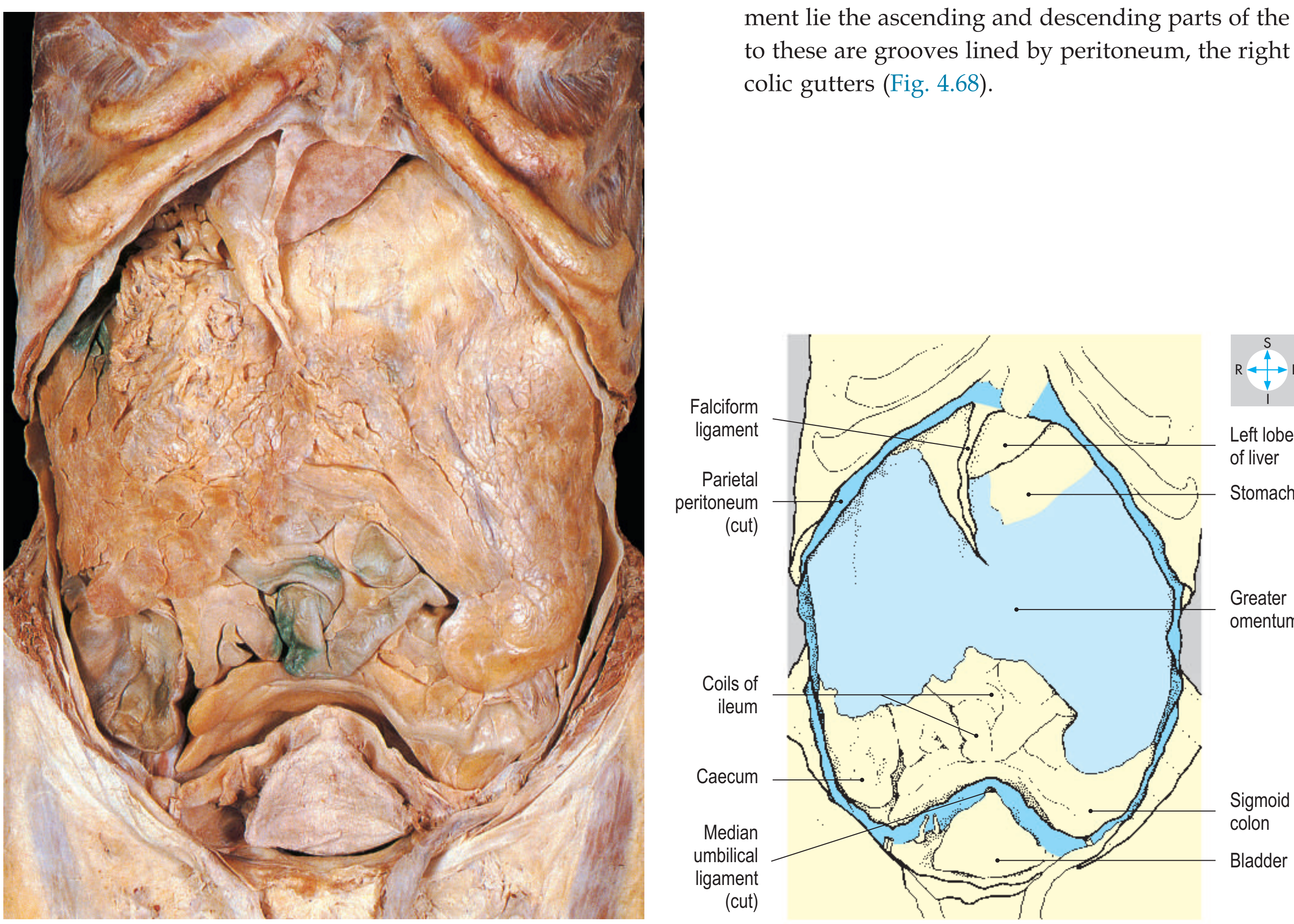


Fig. 4.33 Greater sac after removal of most of the parietal peritoneum. In this specimen the greater omentum is adherent to the right side of the diaphragm, concealing the right lobe of the liver and the gall bladder.

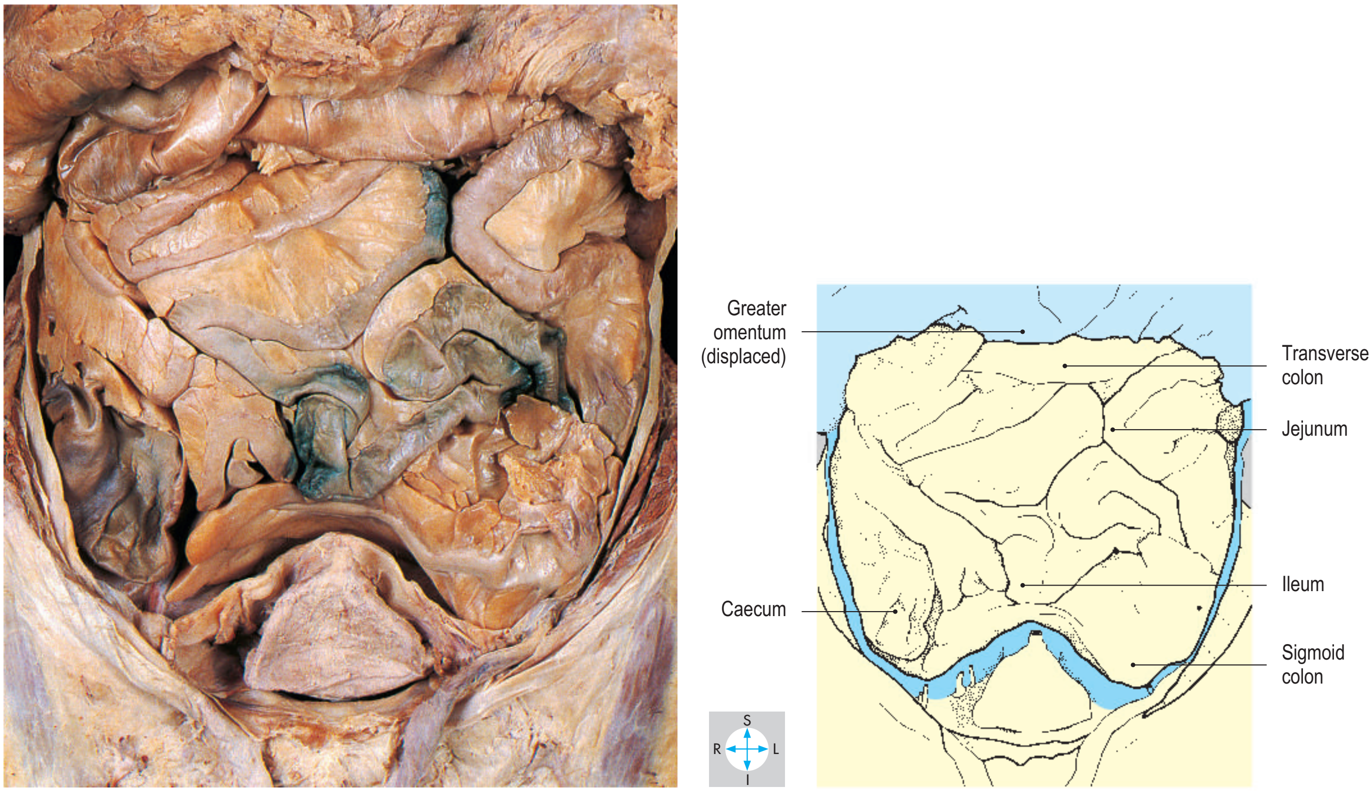


Fig. 4.34 Greater omentum has been turned upwards to display the contents of the infracolic compartment of the greater sac.

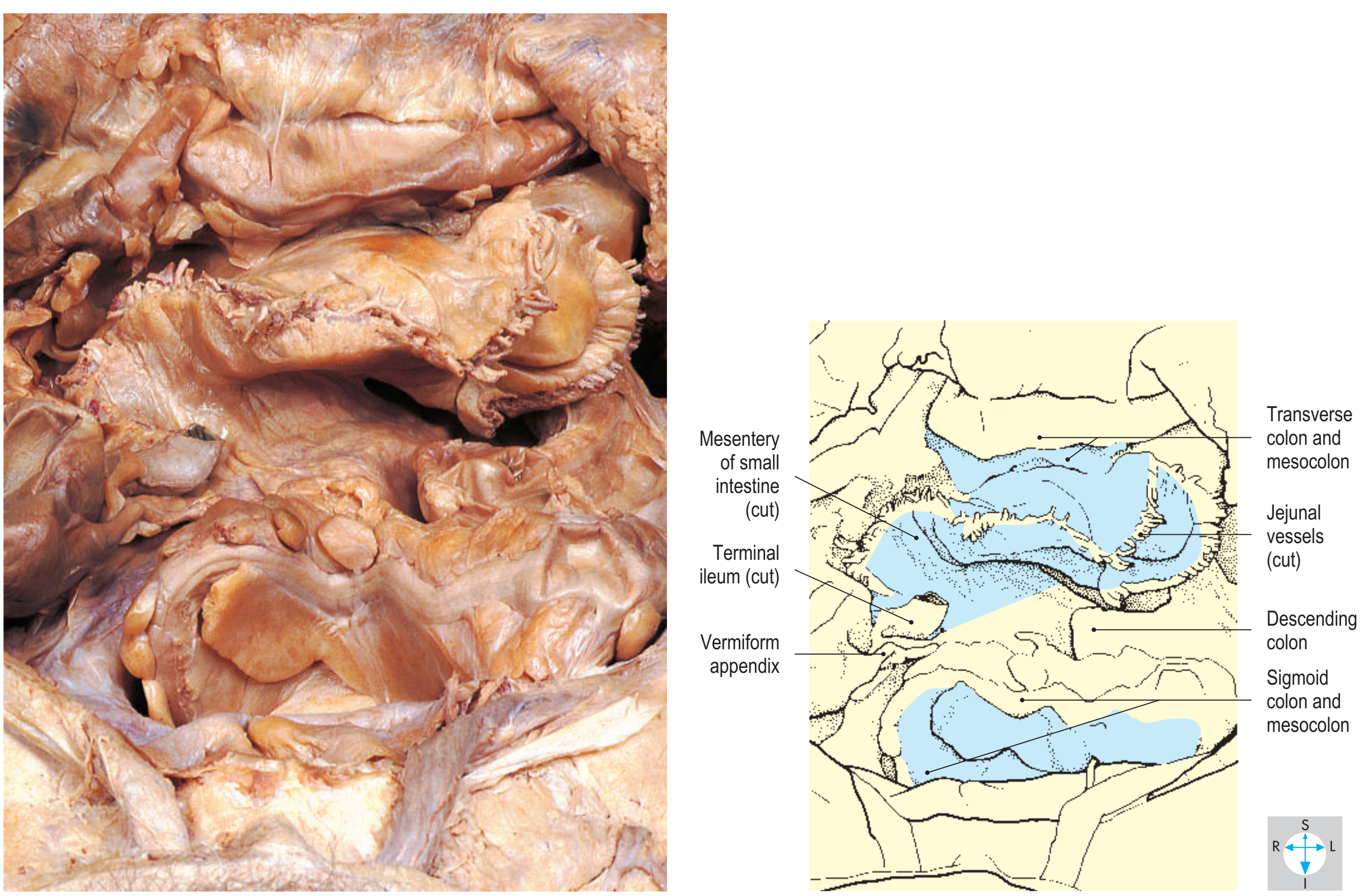


Fig. 4.35 Infracolic compartment of the greater sac. Removal of the jejunum and ileum has revealed their mesenteries. The descending colon is more medially placed than usual.

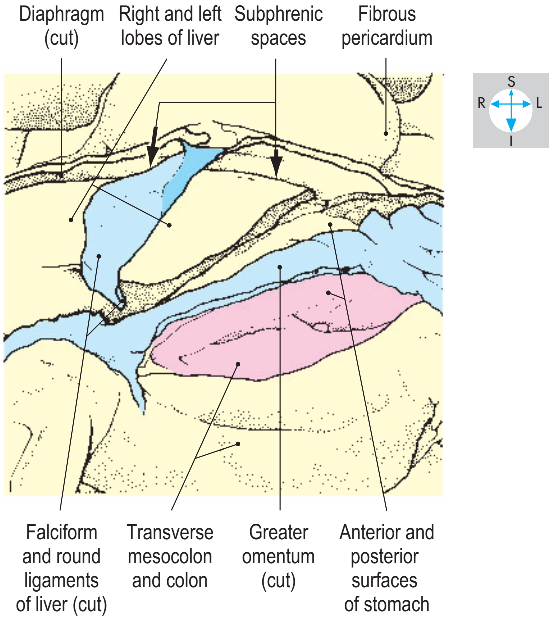
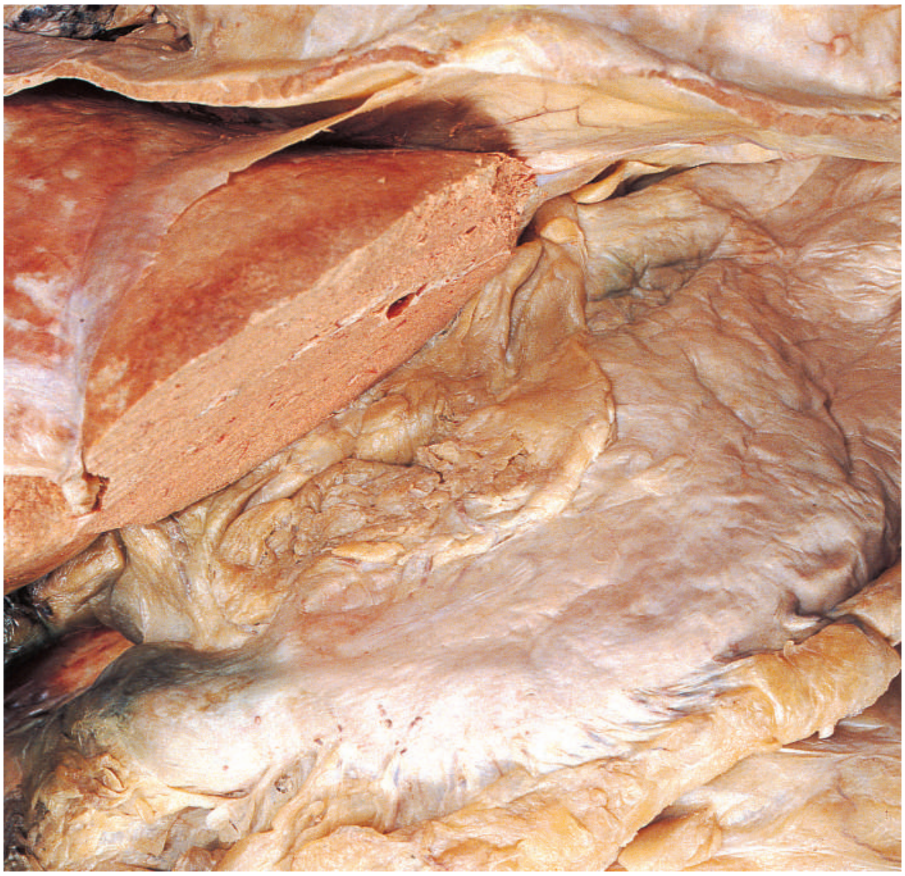


Fig. 4.36 Supracolic compartment of the greater sac. After removal of most of the greater omentum, the greater curvature of the stomach has been displaced upwards to show the position of the omental bursa (pink).



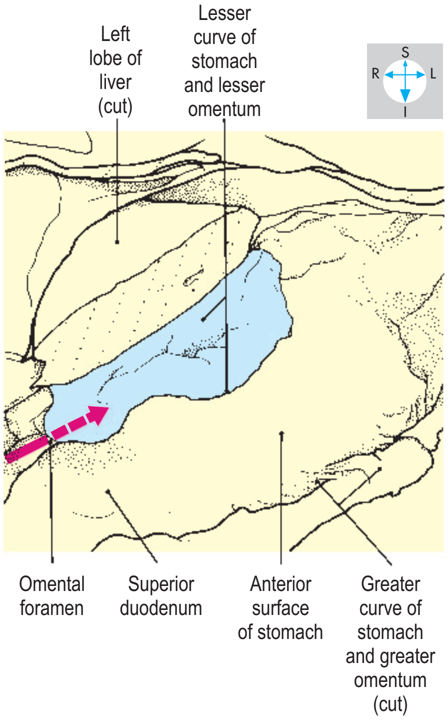


Fig. 4.37 Lesser omentum exposed by removal of part of the left lobe of the liver. The pink arrow (right) traverses the omental foramen into the omental bursa, which lies behind the lesser omentum.

Another mesentery, the sigmoid mesocolon, lies in the left lower part of the infracolic compartment. Its root is shaped like an inverted 'V', with its apex overlying the bifurcation of the left common iliac vessels and the left ureter. Behind the sigmoid mesocolon lies the intersigmoid recess, which ends blindly at the apex of the 'V' but is continuous inferiorly with the pelvic cavity.

Small folds of peritoneum may produce additional peritoneal recesses (or fossae) near the ascending duodenum (paraduodenal recesses) and the caecum (retrocaecal and ileocaecal recesses). A loop of bowel can become trapped in a peritoneal recess, producing an internal hernia, which may lead to intestinal obstruction.

Nerve supply

The autonomic nerves that supply the abdominal organs also innervate the visceral peritoneum surrounding the organs. Pain conveyed by these nerves tends to be deeply felt and poorly localized.

Supracolic compartment of the greater sac

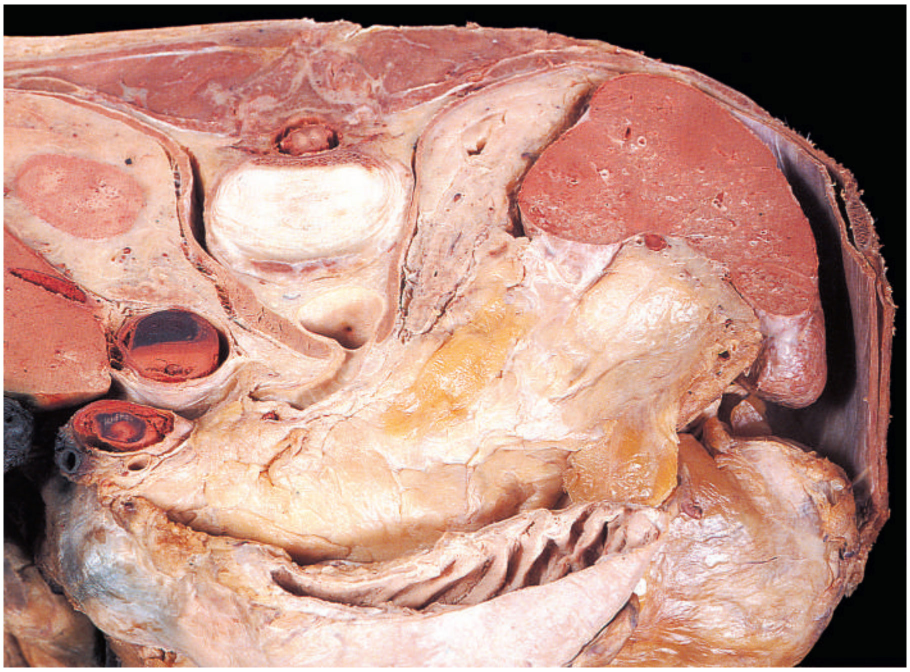
The supracolic compartment lies above and in front of the transverse mesocolon (Fig. 4.36). Its superior part intervenes between the diaphragm and the liver and is divided by the falciform ligament into two subphrenic spaces. The compartment includes the deep recess between the right lobe of the liver and the right kidney (the hepatorenal recess) and extends across the midline below the left lobe of the liver and in front of the stomach. Infection within the abdomen or pelvis can spread through the peritoneal cavity and may accumulate near the liver, producing an abscess. Abscesses between the diaphragm and the liver are termed subphrenic and those below the liver subhepatic.

Omental bursa (lesser sac)

The omental bursa is the small part of the peritoneal cavity behind the stomach (Figs 4.36 & 4.38). It communicates with the greater sac through a narrow opening, known as the omental or epiploic foramen, which lies between the first part of the duodenum and the visceral surface of the liver (Fig. 4.37).

The omental bursa is isolated from the greater sac by the stomach and several peritoneal folds. One of these folds, the lesser omentum, connects the lesser curvature of the stomach to the posterior surface of the liver (Fig. 4.37). Two further folds, the gastrosplenic and splenorenal (lienorenal) ligaments, attach the spleen to the greater curvature of the stomach and the left kidney, respectively (Fig. 4.38).

The omental bursa extends upwards behind the stomach and the caudate lobe of the liver as far as the diaphragm. On the left, it continues to the hilum of the spleen, terminating between the gastrosplenic and splenorenal ligaments. Inferiorly, the omental bursa usually extends a short distance below the greater curvature of the stomach between the gastric and colic attachments of the greater omentum. To the right, it communicates through the epiploic foramen with the hepatorenal recess of the greater sac.



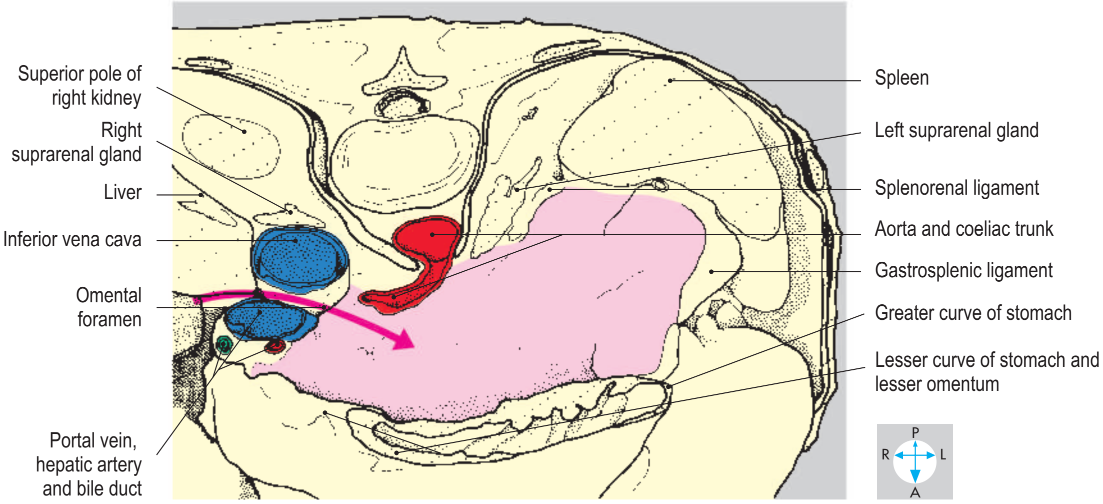


Fig. 4.38 Transverse section at the level of the disc between the twelfth thoracic and first lumbar vertebrae. The pink arrow (lower) traverses the omental foramen into the omental bursa (pink area). In this specimen the left kidney lies lower than usual. Superior aspect.

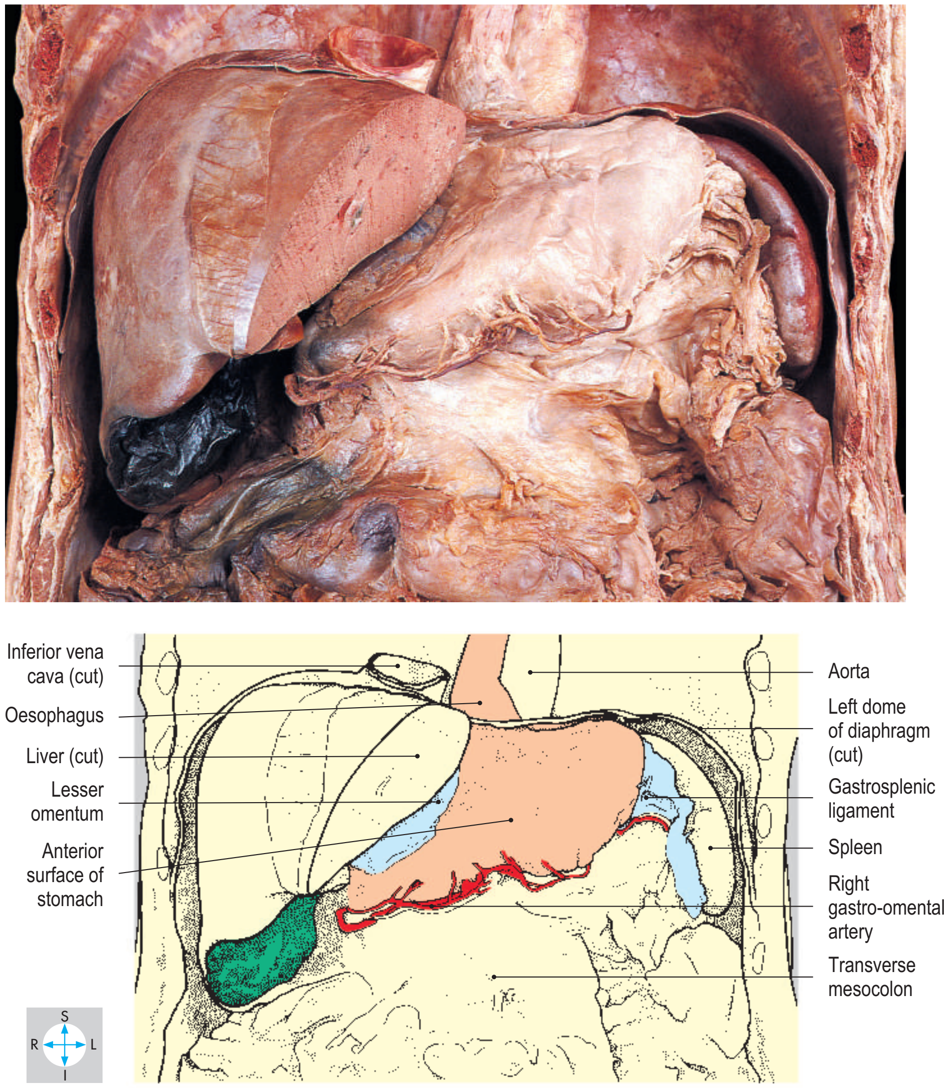


Fig. 4.39 Stomach and some of its relations, seen after removal of the anterior half of the diaphragm and left lobe of the liver and dissection of the greater omentum.

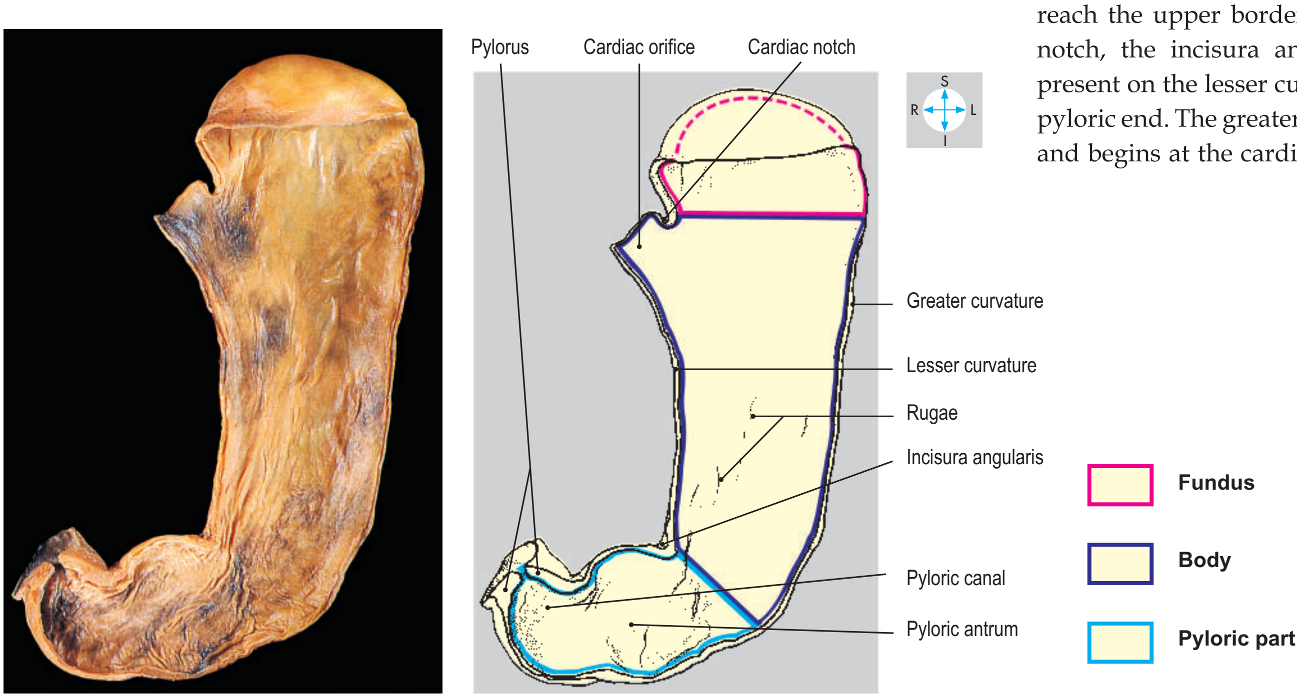


Fig. 4.40 Longitudinal section through the stomach.

Stomach

The stomach is the dilated portion of the gut, in which the early stages of digestion take place. It lies in the upper part of the abdomen beneath the left dome of the diaphragm (Fig. 4.39). Proximally, the stomach joins the oesophagus at the cardiac orifice and distally, it is continuous with the duodenum at the pylorus. Between these two relatively fixed points, the organ varies considerably in size, shape and location in response to its muscle tone, the quantity and nature of its contents and the position of the individual (Figs 4.41 & 4.42). Usually, the loaded stomach is J-shaped and lies in the left hypochondrium, the epigastrium and umbilical region of the abdomen.

The oesophagus pierces the diaphragm and has a short intra-abdominal course before joining the stomach at the cardiac orifice. This lies a little to the left of the midline at about the level of the eleventh thoracic vertebra (Fig. 4.42). Anatomical and physiological factors produce a sphincteric effect at the gastro-oesophageal junction. If this mechanism fails, gastric contents can regurgitate into the oesophagus (gastro-oesophageal reflux), causing inflammation of the oesophageal mucosa.

The stomach has two surfaces, anterior and posterior, which meet at two curved borders, the curvatures (Fig. 4.40). The lesser curvature extends from the cardiac orifice downwards and to the right, to reach the upper border of the pylorus. A notch, the incisura angularis, is usually present on the lesser curvature towards its pyloric end. The greater curvature is longer and begins at the cardiac notch on the left

side of the cardiac orifice. It arches upwards and to the left before descending along the left and inferior aspects of the organ to reach the inferior border of the pylorus.

The pylorus is normally situated just to the right of the midline at the level of the first lumbar vertebra, on the transpyloric plane.

By convention, the stomach is described as having three parts, the fundus, the body and the pyloric part (Fig. 4.40). The fundus lies above an imaginary horizontal plane passing through the cardiac orifice, while the antrum lies to the right of the incisura angularis. The body lies between the fundus and the pyloric part and is the largest part of the stomach. In the pyloric part, the cavity of the pyloric antrum tapers to the right into a narrow passage, the pyloric canal.

The mucosal lining presents numerous longitudinal folds or rugae, which are most prominent when the stomach is empty (Fig. 4.40). There is a well-developed smooth muscle coat, which is thickened around the pyloric canal and pylorus to form the pyloric sphincter.

Relations

The anterior surface of the stomach lies in contact with the diaphragm, the anterior abdominal wall and the left and quadrate lobes of the liver. Posterolateral to the fundus lies the gastric surface of the spleen (Fig. 4.39). The remainder of the stomach's relations are situated posteriorly and collectively form the stomach bed. This includes the diaphragm, left suprarenal gland, upper part of the left kidney, the splenic artery, pancreas, transverse mesocolon and sometimes, the transverse colon (Fig. 4.43). However, these structures are separated from the stomach by the omental bursa (p. 157). Gastric ulcers can perforate into either the greater sac or the omental bursa. Sometimes, ulceration may involve the pancreas or the splenic artery.

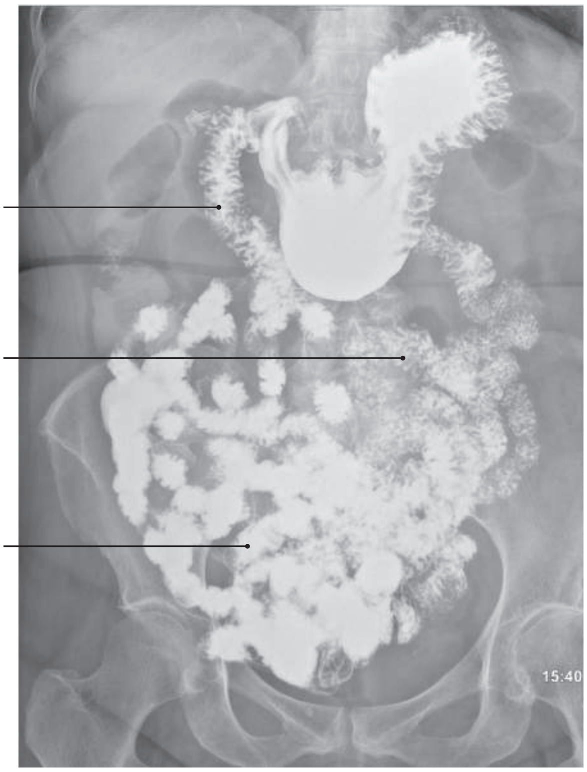


Fig. 4.41 Anteroposterior radiograph after a barium meal and follow through.

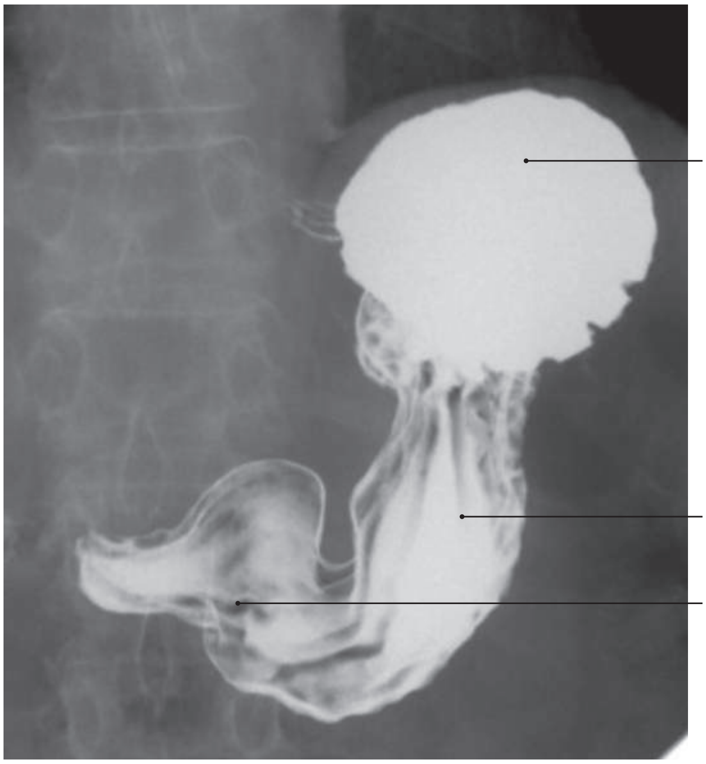


Fig. 4.42 Barium meal radiograph with patient tilted head down.

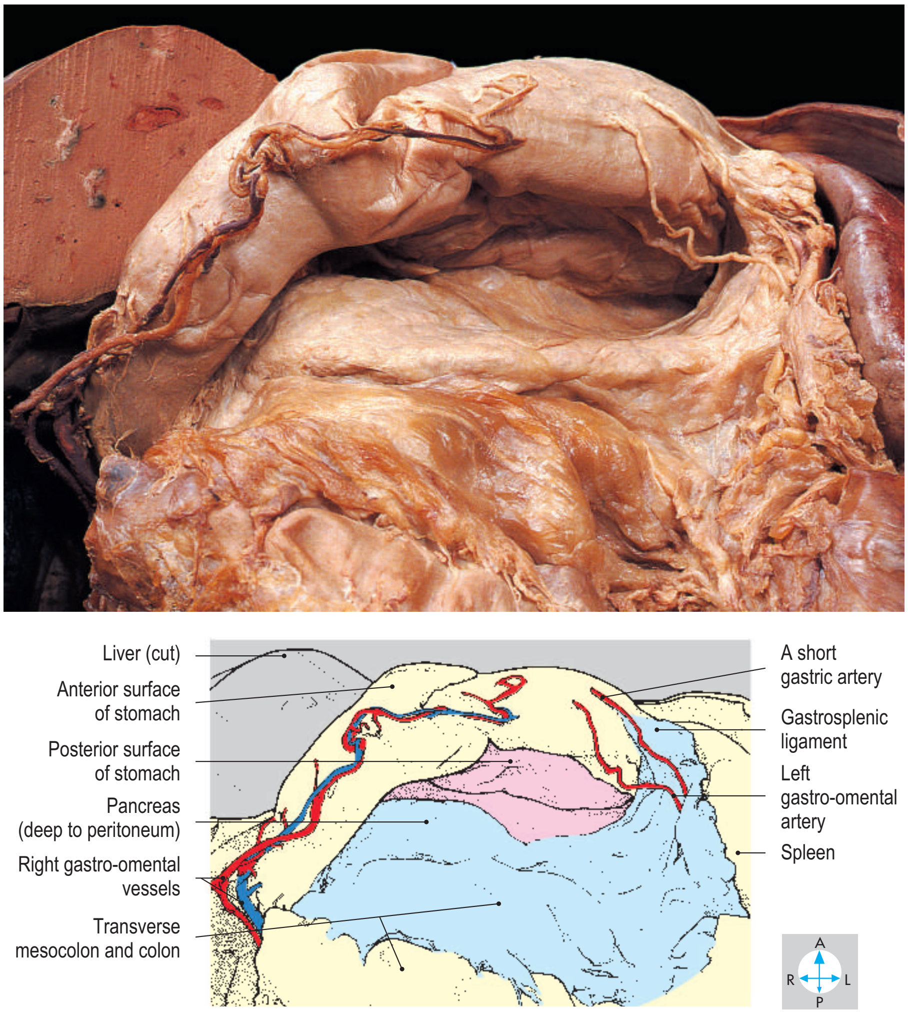


Fig. 4.43 Omental bursa (pink) and stomach bed, seen after removal of the greater omentum and lifting the greater curvature upwards.

Omenta

Attached to each curvature of the stomach is an omentum, a double layer of peritoneum. The lesser omentum extends from the liver (Fig. 4.37) to the lesser curvature and also attaches to the abdominal oesophagus and the commencement of the duodenum (Fig. 4.39). Near the lesser curvature, this omentum contains the left and right gastric vessels (Fig. 4.44), accompanied by lymphatics and autonomic nerves, while its free border encloses the portal vein, the bile duct and the proper hepatic artery.

The greater omentum hangs from the distal part of the greater curvature and from the superior duodenum. Near the greater curvature, it contains the left and right gastro-omental (gastroepiploic) vessels (Fig. 4.43). To the left, the greater omentum is continuous with the gastrosplenic ligament, which connects the proximal part of the greater curvature to the hilum of the spleen.

Arterial supply

The stomach is supplied by several arteries, which are all derived from branches of the coeliac trunk and which anastomose

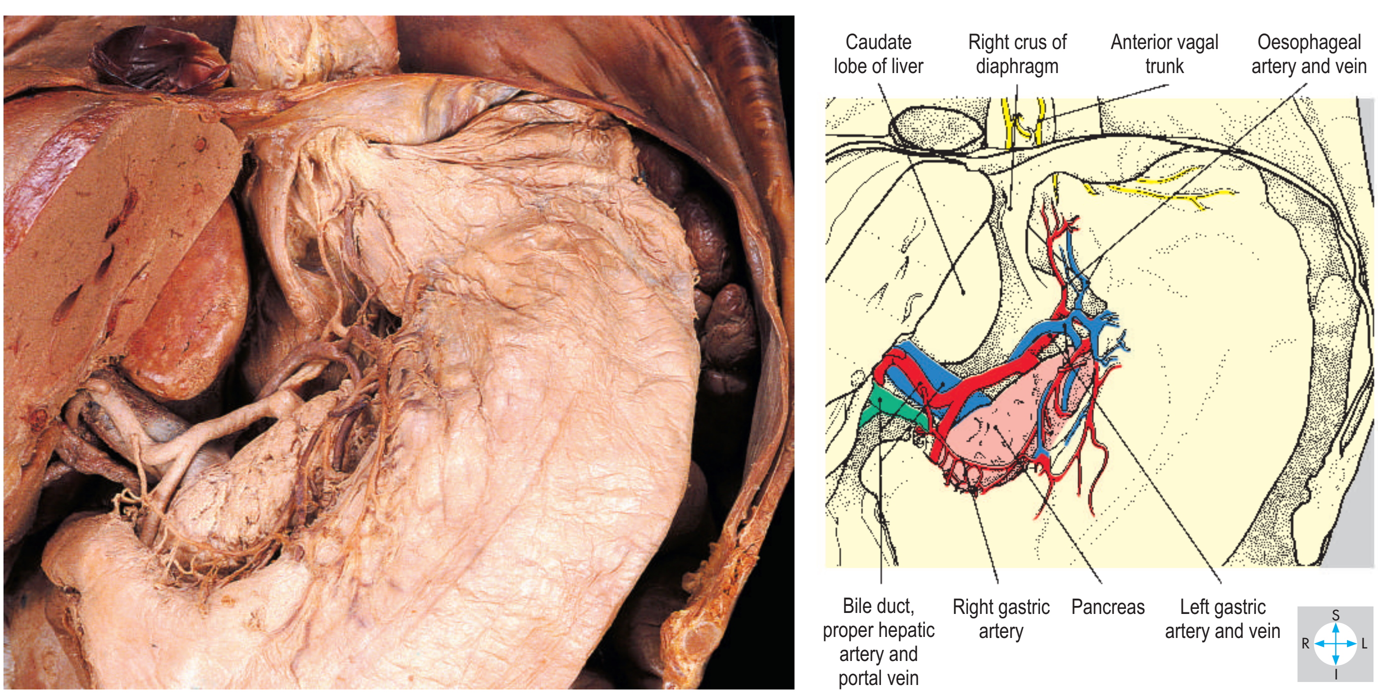


Fig. 4.44 Dissection of the lesser omentum showing structures along the lesser curvature of the stomach.

extensively with each other. The coeliac trunk (Fig. 4.45) is a short, wide vessel arising from the anterior aspect of the aorta just below the diaphragm. It divides into three branches: the left gastric, the common hepatic and the splenic arteries.

The left gastric artery is the smallest branch, passing upwards and to the left behind the omental bursa to reach the oesophagus, then descending along the lesser curvature within the lesser omentum (Fig. 4.44). Its branches include two or three to the lower oesophagus, which ascend through the oesophageal opening of the diaphragm. Other branches supply the cardia and lesser curvature of the stomach.

The common hepatic artery gives rise to the right gastric and gastroduodenal arteries. The right gastric artery (Fig. 4.44) arises above the superior duodenum and runs to the left within the lesser omentum, supplying the lesser curvature and anastomosing with the left gastric artery. One of the branches of the gastroduodenal artery is the right gastro-omental (gastroepiploic) artery (Fig. 4.43). This vessel runs to the left within the greater omentum, parallel to the greater curvature, giving numerous branches to the pyloric part and body of the stomach.

The splenic artery is the largest branch of the coeliac trunk (Fig. 4.45). It runs a tortuous course to the left along the superior border of the pancreas, initially behind the omental bursa and then within the splenorenal ligament, and terminates near the hilum of the spleen. It provides collateral branches to the pancreas and terminal branches to the spleen and stomach. There are several gastric branches, which pass to the greater curvature by way of the gastrosplenic ligament. Most of these vessels supply the fundus of the stomach and are called short gastric arteries (Fig. 4.43). However, one branch, the left gastro-omental (gastroepiploic) artery, continues downwards and to the right within the greater omentum. It follows the greater curvature, supplies the body of the stomach and may anastomose with the right gastro-omental (gastroepiploic) artery.

Venous drainage

The veins of the stomach accompany the gastric arteries and drain into the portal venous system, the portal vein itself receiving the right and left gastric veins. The splenic vein receives the short gastric and left gastro-omental (gastroepiploic) veins, while the right gastro-omental vein usually enters the superior mesenteric vein. The oesophageal tributaries of the left gastric vein (Fig. 4.44) take part in an important portacaval anastomosis (p. 185) with tributaries of the azygos venous system within the thorax.

Nerve supply

In the thorax, the vagus nerves form a plexus on the surface of the oesophagus. From this plexus emerge two principal nerves, the anterior and posterior vagal trunks, which enter the abdomen on the respective surfaces of the oesophagus. The anterior vagal trunk (Fig. 4.44), derived mostly from the left vagus nerve, gives branches to the anterior surface of the stomach, including the pyloric region. Branches from the posterior trunk, whose origin is mainly from the right vagus nerve, pass to the posterior surface of the stomach and also to the coeliac plexus (pp 197, 199). The parasympathetic innervation of the stomach by the vagus nerves is important in relation to both secretion and motility of the organ.

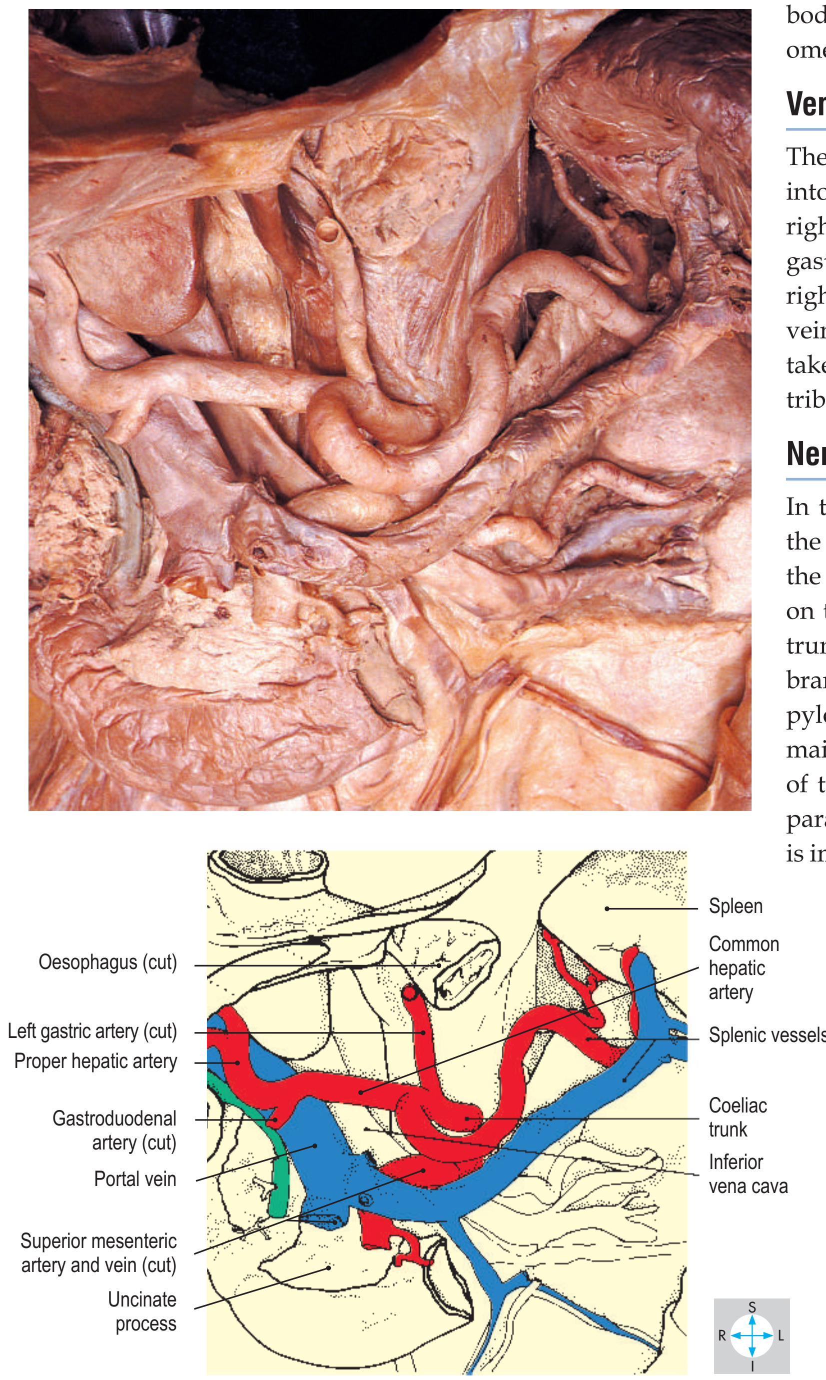


Fig. 4.45 Stomach and most of the pancreas have been removed to reveal the coeliac trunk and its branches.

Spleen

The spleen is a lymphoid organ lying in the left hypochondrium posterior to the stomach. The fresh spleen is purple in colour and variable in size and shape. Since it lies entirely behind the midaxillary line and under cover of the left lower ribs, the normal spleen cannot be palpated in the living subject, even during full inspiration. The spleen is soft and very vascular and can be damaged by blunt or penetrating injuries resulting in life-threatening intraperitoneal haemorrhage. The blood may irritate the peritoneum lining the abdominal surface of the diaphragm, producing pain referred to the left shoulder region (p. 205).

Surface features

The spleen is oval in shape when viewed from its anterior aspect (Fig. 4.46) and its long axis lies parallel to the left tenth rib. The two extremities of the organ are connected by superior and inferior borders. The superior border often possesses one or more notches near its anterior end, while the inferior border is usually smooth. The organ has two easily distinguishable surfaces. The diaphragmatic surface faces backwards and laterally and is smoothly convex (Fig. 4.47). The visceral surface faces anteromedially and is characterized by ridges and depressions. The centrally placed hilum is perforated by numerous blood vessels together with lymphatics and nerves. The depressions around the hilum accommodate adjacent organs.

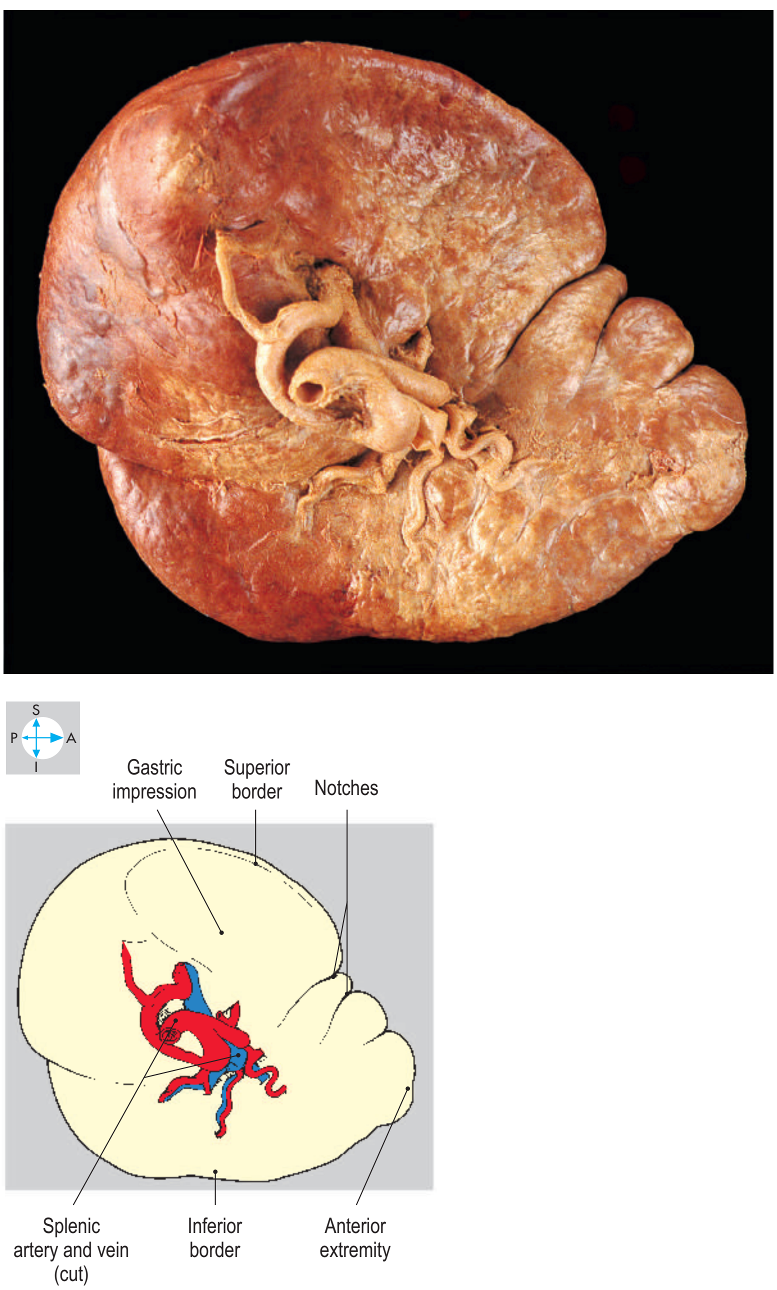


Fig. 4.46 Visceral surface of the spleen.

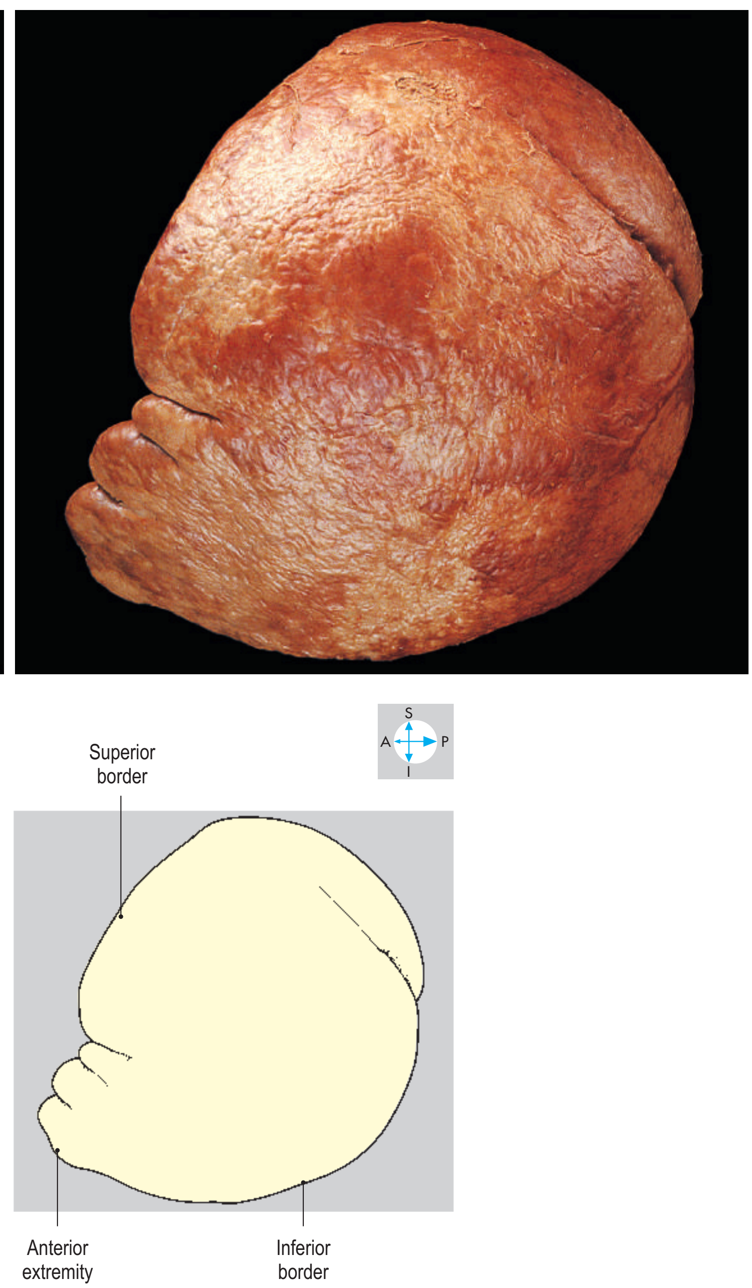


Fig. 4.47 Diaphragmatic surface of the spleen. This specimen has several well-defined notches on its superior border and a single notch on the inferior border.

Relations

The spleen is an intraperitoneal organ and most of its capsule is covered by peritoneum of the greater sac. However, there is a small bare area near the hilum, which gives attachment to two peritoneal folds or ligaments. The splenorenal (lienorenal) ligament runs medially to reach the left kidney, while the gastrosplenic ligament connects the spleen to the greater curvature of the stomach. Part of the omental bursa lies between these two ligaments and extends to the left as far as the splenic hilum (Fig. 4.38).

Arching above the spleen and descending posterior and lateral to it, the left dome of the diaphragm is responsible for movements of the organ during ventilation (Fig. 4.48). The diaphragm separates the spleen from the left lung and pleura, and from the ninth, tenth and eleventh ribs.

On the visceral surface of the spleen, above the hilum, is the gastric impression, which accommodates part of the posterior surface of the stomach. Below the medial half of the hilum is the renal impression, which abuts the superior pole of the left kidney.

Near the lateral extremity of its visceral surface, the spleen may possess a small colic impression, which lies against the left colic flexure. The tail of the pancreas extends laterally into the splenorenal ligament and its tip may reach the splenic hilum (Fig. 4.48).

Blood supply

The splenic artery is a direct branch of the coeliac trunk (p. 161). It follows a tortuous course along the upper border of the pancreas, giving off several pancreatic branches. The artery traverses the splenorenal ligament and divides into its terminal branches near the hilum of the spleen. Several splenic branches enter the hilum, while the short gastric arteries and the left gastro-omental artery enter the gastrosplenic ligament to supply the fundus and greater curvature of the stomach, respectively. Additional clumps of splenic tissue (splenunculi) may be present along the course of the artery.

Veins accompany the terminal branches of the splenic artery and unite adjacent to the hilum of the spleen to form the splenic vein. Running to the right, this vein lies posterior to the tail of the pancreas within the splenorenal ligament and continues retroperitoneally posterior to the body of the gland and inferior to the splenic artery. It then crosses the anterior aspects of the left kidney and renal vessels and receives several small tributaries from the pancreas. Posterior to the neck of the pancreas, the splenic vein unites with the superior mesenteric vein to form the portal vein and, close to its termination, is usually joined from below by the inferior mesenteric vein. If the pressure rises abnormally in the portal venous system (portal hypertension), the spleen may become enlarged (splenomegaly).

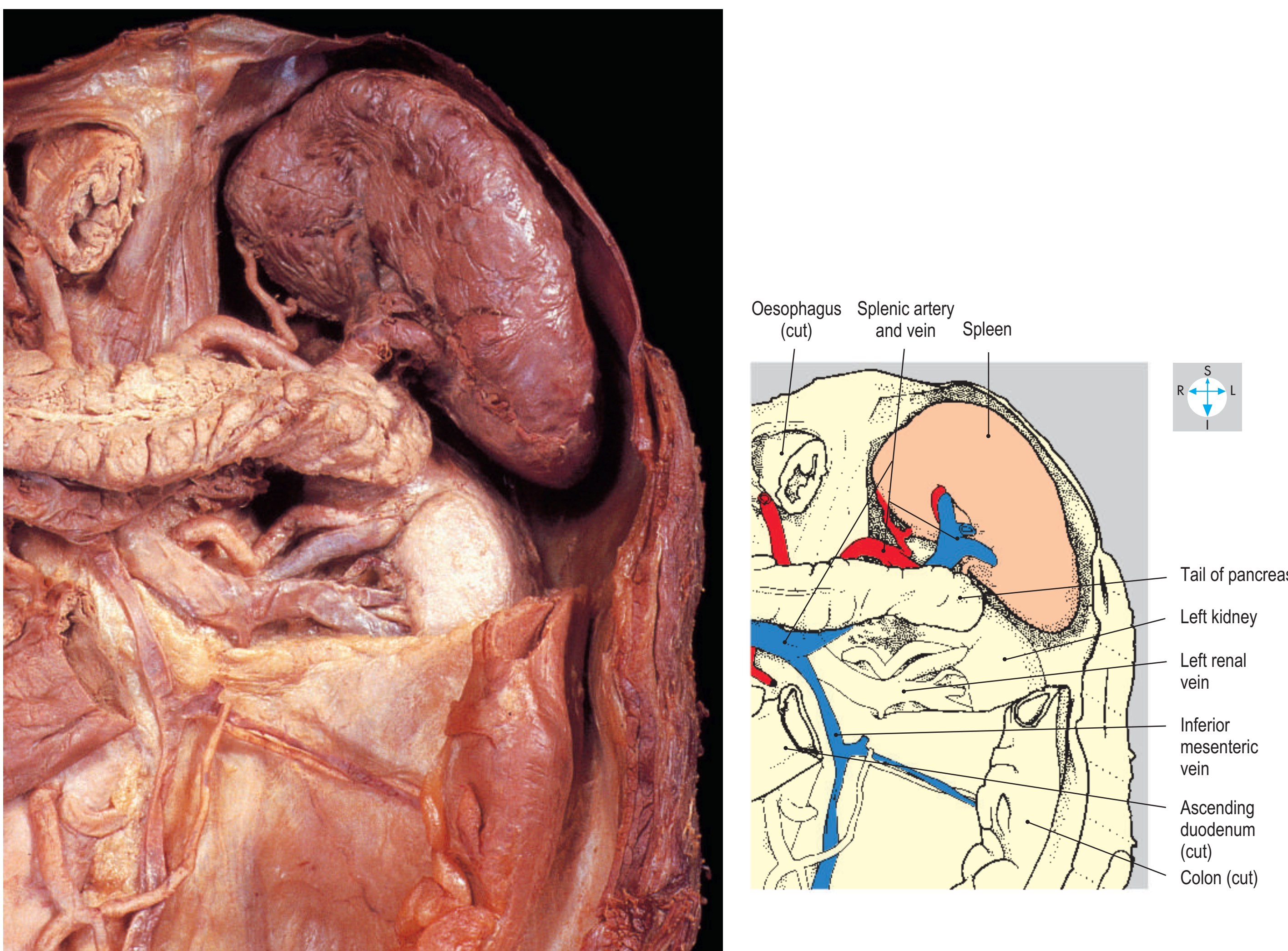


Fig. 4.48 Spleen and its vessels and relationship to the diaphragm, pancreas and left kidney. The stomach and part of the colon and peritoneum have been removed.

Duodenum

The duodenum, the proximal portion of the small intestine, begins at the pylorus and terminates at the duodenojejunal flexure. Deeply placed in the epigastric and umbilical regions of the abdomen, it curves round the head of the pancreas and is shaped like the letter 'C' (Fig. 4.49). Unlike the remainder of the small intestine, the duodenum is mostly retroperitoneal and therefore relatively immobile. The duodenal lumen receives bile and pancreatic secretions via the bile duct and the pancreatic ducts.

Parts and structure

The duodenum is conventionally described as consisting of four parts (Fig. 4.49). The superior (first part) begins slightly to the right of the midline at the level of the first lumbar vertebra (on the transpyloric plane) and passes upwards, backwards and to the right. In clinical practice, its initial portion is sometimes termed the duodenal bulb or cap. The descending duodenum (second part) runs vertically to the level of the third lumbar vertebra (Fig. 4.41). The inferior or horizontal duodenum (third part) runs to the left across the midline, arching forwards across the inferior vena cava and aorta. The ascending duodenum (fourth part) slopes upwards and to the left and terminates at the level of the second lumbar vertebra by turning sharply forwards at the duodenojejunal flexure. Close to the pylorus the duodenal mucosa is smooth but in the second and subsequent parts of the organ, it is raised to form numerous circular folds, the plicae circulares (Fig. 4.50). The commonest site for duodenal ulcers is in the first part.

The bile duct and main pancreatic duct approach the descending duodenum near its midpoint from the posteromedial aspect

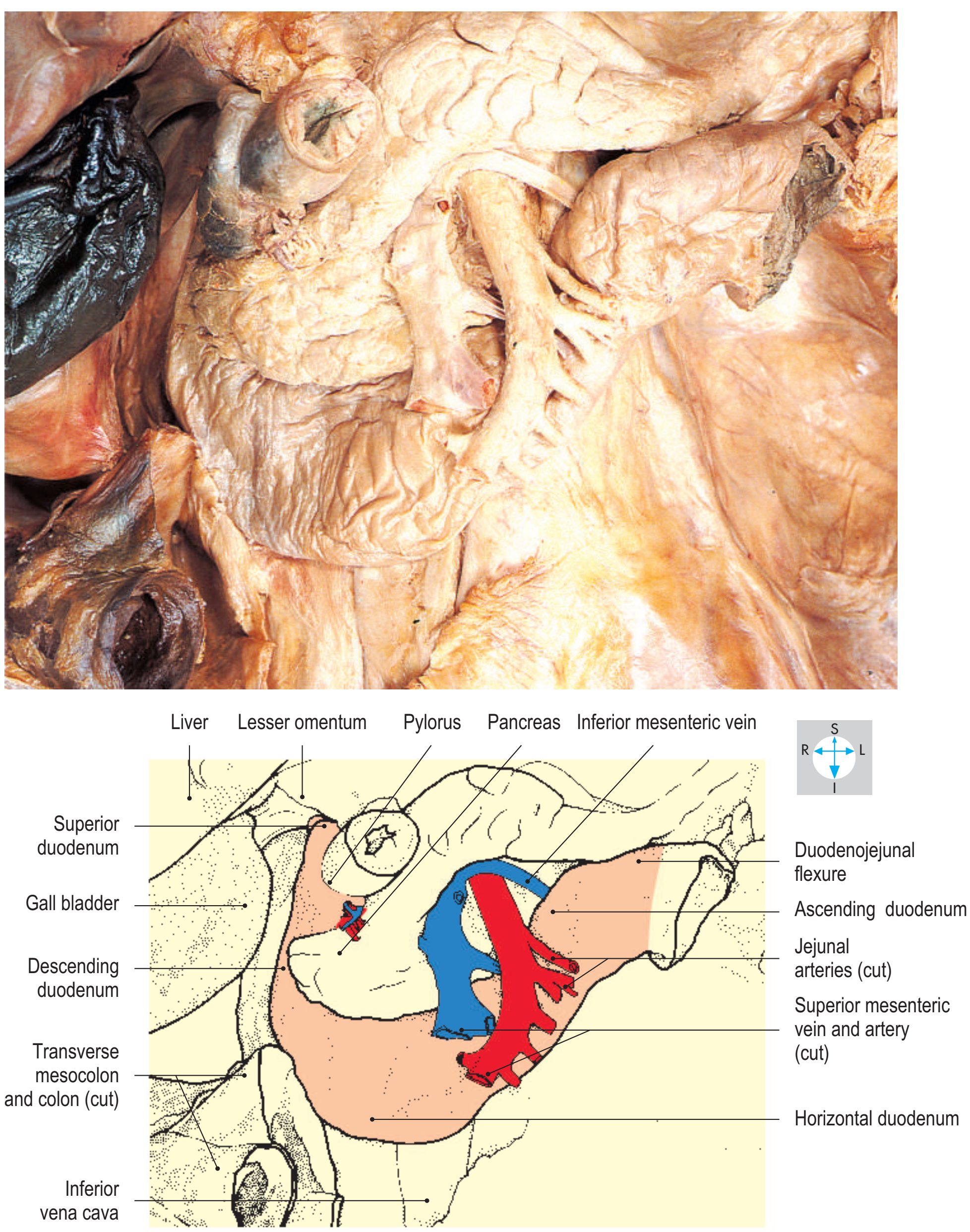


Fig. 4.49 Duodenum and some related structures. The liver and gall bladder have been slightly displaced.

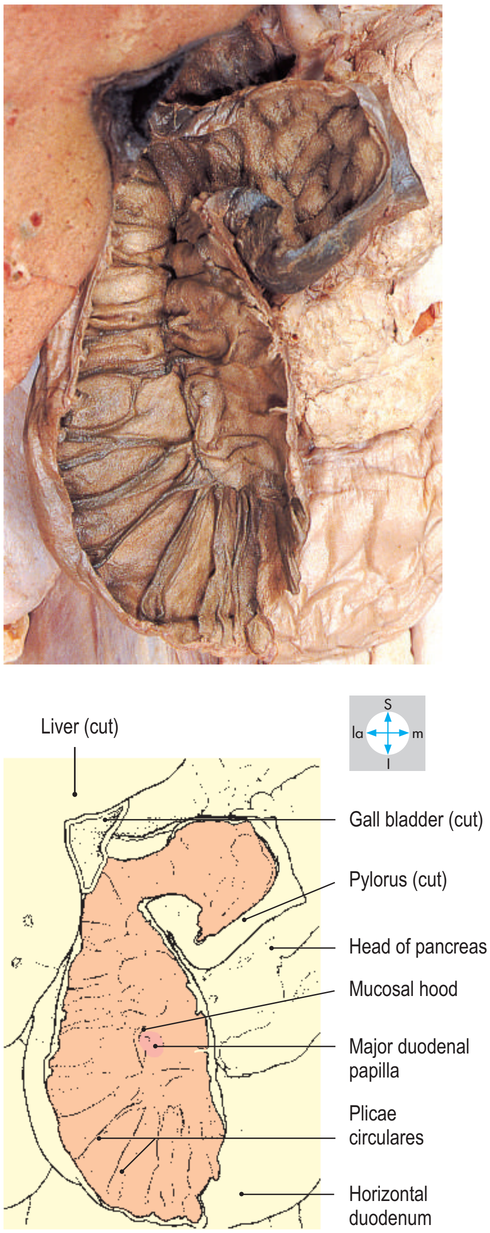


Fig. 4.50 First and second parts of the duodenum opened to show the plicae circulares and the major duodenal papilla.

(Fig. 4.51). They usually pierce the duodenal wall in proximity and commonly open into a single chamber, the hepatopancreatic ampulla (of Vater). The ampulla raises a projection, the major duodenal papilla, on the internal aspect of the duodenum. Bile and pancreatic secretions enter the duodenal lumen through the tip of this papilla via a minute opening controlled by a ring of smooth muscle, the ampullary sphincter (of Oddi). Immediately above the major duodenal papilla, there is often a prominent mucosal fold forming a hood (Fig. 4.50), which may serve as a guide to the location of the papilla, particularly during endoscopic examinations. The pancreas usually possesses a second and smaller duct, the accessory pancreatic duct, which enters the descending duodenum at the minor duodenal papilla, about 2 cm proximal to the major papilla.

Relations

Most of the duodenum is retroperitoneal. However, the initial 2 cm have peritoneal relationships similar to the stomach in that the lesser and greater omenta attach, respectively, to the superior and inferior borders. This short segment is relatively mobile and lies immediately inferior to the omental foramen (Fig. 4.49). Posterior duodenal ulcers may erode the pancreas or gastroduodenal artery (Fig. 4.52).

Anterior relations of the proximal portion of the duodenum include the liver and gall bladder. Crossing in front of the descending duodenum are the transverse colon and mesocolon (Fig. 4.49), below which lie coils of jejunum and ileum. Running obliquely across the inferior duodenum are the superior mesenteric vessels (Fig. 4.49), contained in the root of the mesentery of the small intestine. Adjacent to the ascending duodenum are often folds of peritoneum forming paraduodenal recesses.

Posteriorly, the superior duodenum is related to the portal vein, the bile duct and the gastroduodenal artery (Fig. 4.52). The descending duodenum lies in front of the hilum of the right kidney and the right renal vessels while the inferior duodenum crosses the right ureter and gonadal vessels, the inferior vena

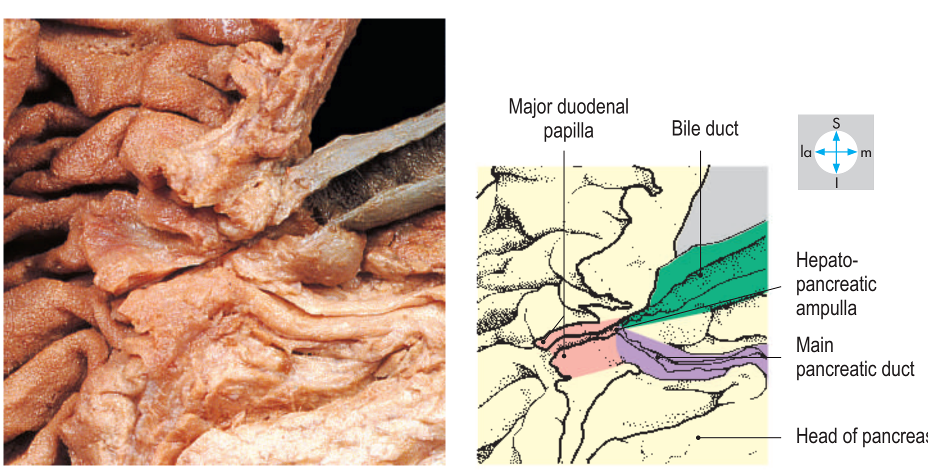


Fig. 4.51 Terminal portions of the bile and main pancreatic ducts and the hepatopancreatic ampulla have been opened.

cava, aorta and origin of the inferior mesenteric artery (Fig. 4.52). The ascending duodenum ascends in front of the left psoas muscle, the left gonadal and renal vessels and the inferior mesenteric vein.

Within the concavity of its C-shaped curve, all parts of the duodenum are related to the pancreas (Figs 4.49 & 4.52).

Blood supply

The gastroduodenal branch of the common hepatic artery descends behind the superior duodenum and divides into right gastro-omental and superior pancreaticoduodenal branches (Fig. 4.52). The latter vessel, which is often duplicated, runs in the interval between the duodenum and head of the pancreas and supplies the portion of the duodenum proximal to the major papilla.

The remainder of the duodenum is supplied by the inferior pancreaticoduodenal branch of the superior mesenteric artery (Fig. 4.52), given off as the superior mesenteric artery emerges from between the neck and uncinate process of the pancreas. The inferior pancreaticoduodenal artery runs to the right between the duodenum and pancreas, supplying both structures and anastomosing with the superior pancreaticoduodenal artery. The veins draining the duodenum follow the arterial supply and terminate in the portal venous system.

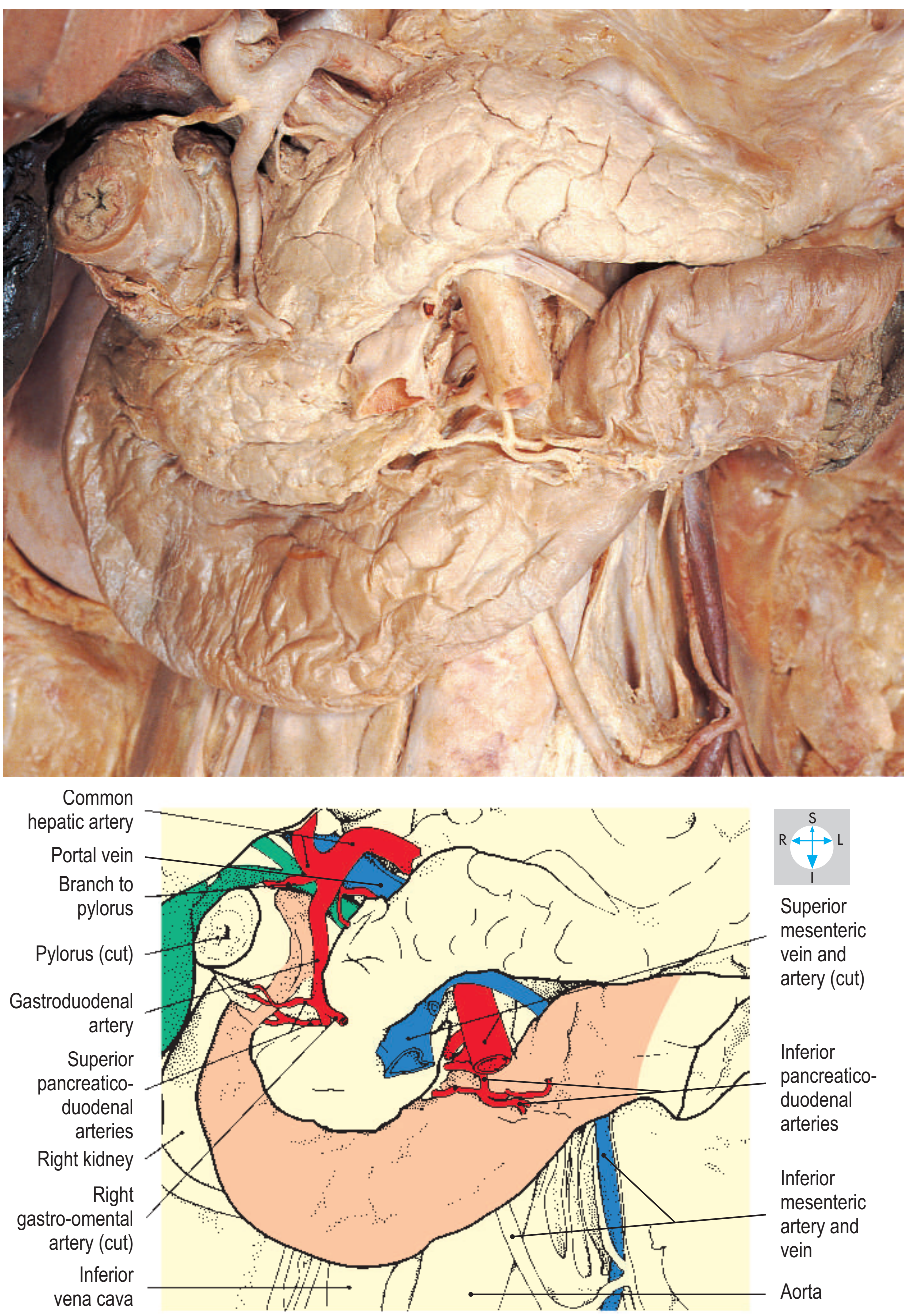


Fig. 4.52 Arterial supply and some relations of the duodenum. The superior duodenum has been displaced laterally to reveal the gastroduodenal artery, bile duct and portal vein.

Pancreas

The pancreas is both an exocrine and an endocrine gland. Most of its substance is involved in producing pancreatic juice, which is conveyed by a duct system into the descending duodenum. In addition, microscopic clumps of endocrine tissue, the pancreatic islets (islets of Langerhans), are dispersed throughout the gland.

The pancreas is a long and narrow, lobulated organ, deeply located on the posterior abdominal wall. It lies approximately on the transpyloric plane (L1 vertebral level) and slopes slightly upwards from right to left. Its extremities lie in the right and left paravertebral gutters, while the intermediate portion is thrust forwards in the midline by the prominence of the vertebral column and aorta.

The gland is divided into four parts, from right to left: the head, neck, body and tail (Fig. 4.53). The head is the broadest part and is surrounded by the loop of the duodenum. Projecting to the left from its lower portion is the uncinate process. The neck is indented posteriorly by the portal and superior mesenteric veins. The body, of fairly uniform width, extends to the left and is continuous with the tail, which tapers as it approaches the hilum of the spleen. The tail is contained within the splenorenal ligament but all other parts are retroperitoneal. The pancreas develops from two embryonic structures that fuse. This process may lead to constriction of the duodenum (annular pancreas), causing obstruction of the duodenum.

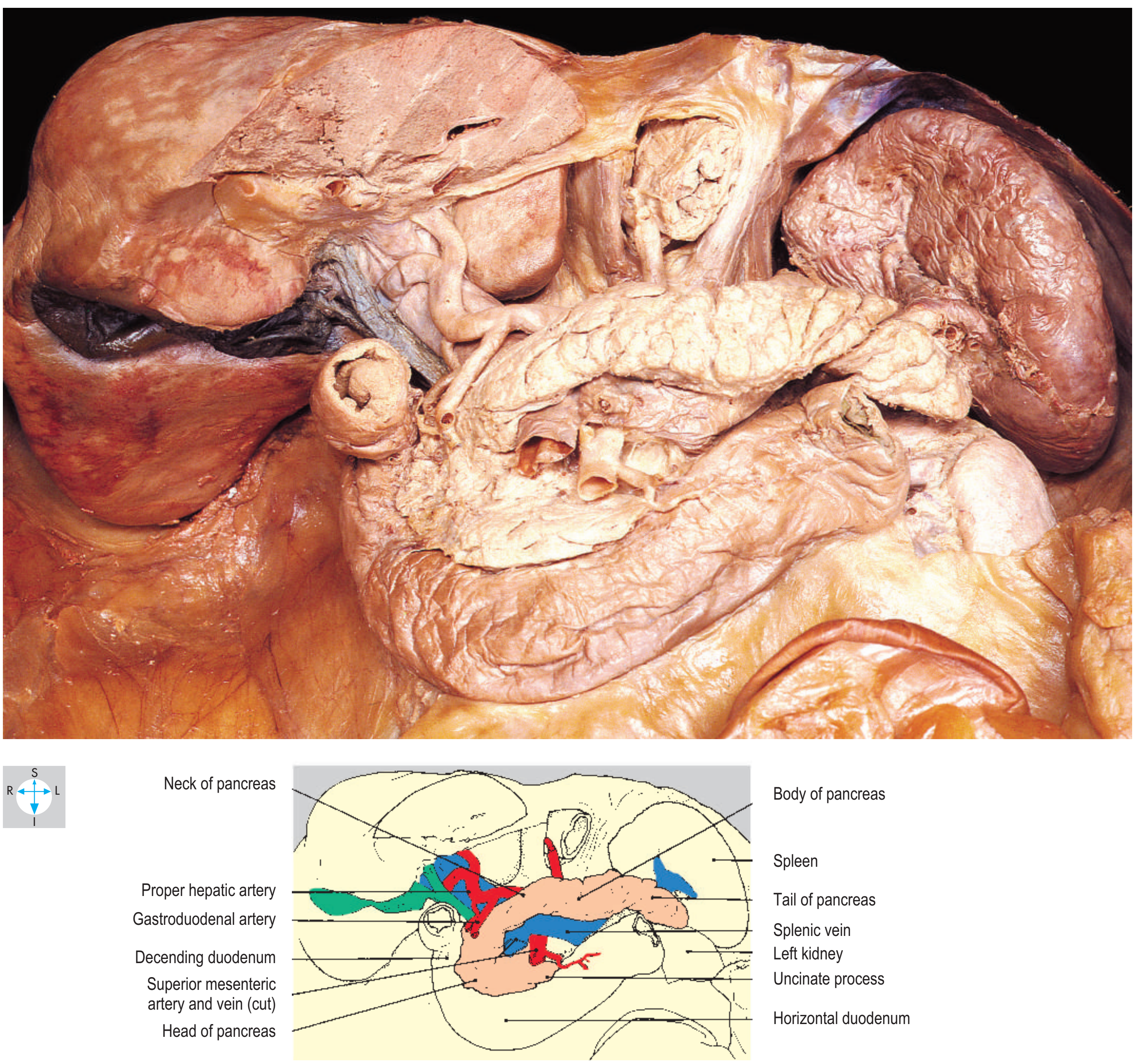


Fig. 4.53 Principal relations and parts of the pancreas.

In cross-section, the pancreas is triangular. It has well-defined superior and inferior borders and a blunt anterior border, to which is attached the transverse mesocolon. The inferior half of the gland is related to the infracolic compartment of the peritoneal cavity, while the upper half lies in the floor of the omental bursa and contributes to the stomach bed.

Relations

Surrounded by the loop of the duodenum, the head of the pancreas lies anterior to the inferior vena cava, the right renal vessels and the terminal portion of the bile duct, which is sometimes embedded within the substance of this part of the gland (Fig. 4.54). A tumour in the head of the pancreas can obstruct the bile duct, leading to jaundice. The anterior surface of the head is related to the first part of the duodenum, the transverse colon and the gastroduodenal artery (Fig. 4.53). The uncinate process lies immediately superior to the horizontal duodenum. The superior mesenteric vessels cross the anterior surface of the uncinate process and separate it from the neck of the gland, which lies in front of the superior mesenteric vein and the commencement of the portal vein. The anterior surface of the neck is separated from the pylorus by the omental bursa.

The body of the pancreas crosses the aorta and usually covers the origins of its ventral branches, the coeliac trunk, the common hepatic and splenic branches of which are related to the superior border of the gland (Fig. 4.55), and the superior mesenteric artery, which emerges at the lower border (Fig. 4.53). Further to the left, the gland covers the left renal vessels and suprarenal gland, and the hilum of the left kidney. Immediately posterior to the body, the splenic vein receives a major tributary, the inferior mesenteric vein (Figs 4.54 & 4.55). The inferior border of the body is related to the duodenojejunal flexure, coils of jejunum and the left colic flexure. Overlying the anterior surface of the body are the transverse mesocolon, the stomach and omental bursa, and part of the lesser omentum.

The tail of the gland lies within the splenorenal ligament and is accompanied posteriorly by the splenic vessels (Fig. 4.55). It lies anterior to the visceral surface and hilum of the spleen and posterior to the stomach and omental bursa.

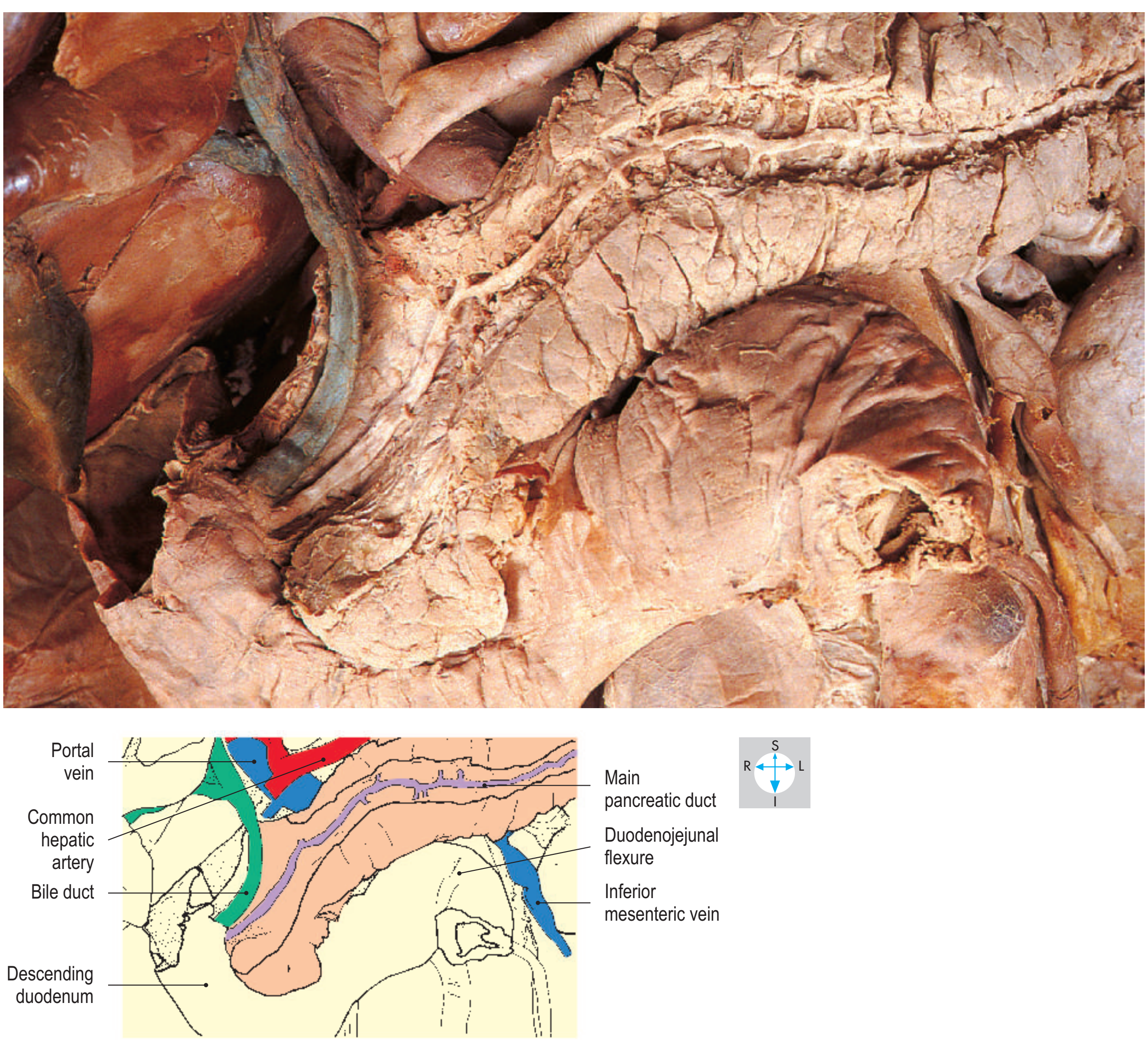


Fig. 4.54 Dissection of the pancreas to expose the terminal portions of the bile and main pancreatic ducts.

Pancreatic ducts

The main pancreatic duct arises in the tail of the gland and traverses the body and neck to reach the head where it curves downwards and to the right, to reach the medial wall of the descending duodenum (Fig. 4.54). The duct receives numerous tributaries and gradually increases in calibre from left to right. It pierces the intestinal wall at the greater duodenal papilla (Fig. 4.51).

The main pancreatic duct and the bile duct usually enter the duodenal wall together and unite to form a common chamber, the hepatopancreatic ampulla (of Vater), in which pancreatic juice and bile may mix before entering the duodenal lumen. There is usually a second and smaller duct, the accessory pancreatic duct, which opens into the duodenum about 2 cm above the main duct, at the minor duodenal papilla. Reflux of bile into the pancreatic duct, due for example to impaction of a gallstone in the hepatopancreatic ampulla, can lead to pancreatitis.

Blood supply

This is derived from branches of the coeliac and superior mesenteric arteries. The head and uncinate process receive superior pancreaticoduodenal branches from the gastroduodenal artery (a branch of the hepatic artery; Fig. 4.53) and inferior pancreaticoduodenal branches from the superior mesenteric artery (Fig. 4.52). The remainder of the gland is supplied by branches from the splenic artery (Fig. 4.55). The venous drainage of the pancreas passes into the portal system. Superior and inferior pancreaticoduodenal veins from the head of the gland pass, respectively, into the portal vein and the superior mesenteric vein. Veins from the remainder of the gland terminate in the splenic vein.

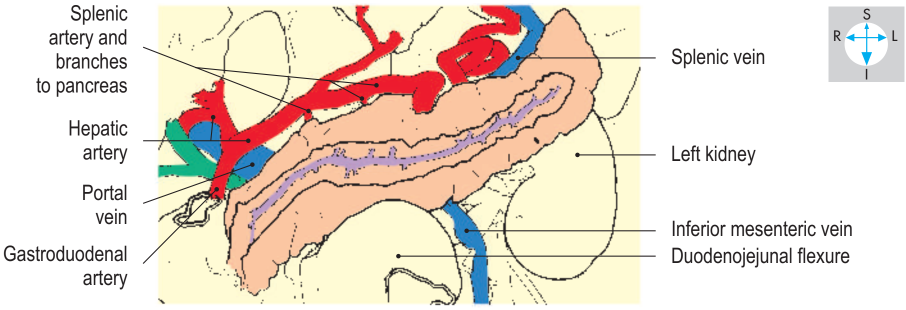


Fig. 4.55 Principal vascular relations of the body and tail of the pancreas.

Liver

The liver is the largest organ in the body and lies in the upper part of the abdominal cavity just beneath the diaphragm and mostly under cover of the ribs. It fills the right hypochondrium and extends across the epigastrium into the left hypochondrium. The living organ is reddish-brown and very soft and delicate.

The surface marking of the inferior margin of the liver coincides with the right costal margin as far anteriorly as the ninth costal cartilage and inclines across the abdomen to the eighth left costal cartilage. The healthy liver is not often palpable in the living subject, even during deep inspiration when contraction of the diaphragm pushes the liver inferiorly.

The liver has the shape of a wedge, tapering towards the left (Fig. 4.56). Of its five surfaces, the superior, the anterior and the right lateral merge with no distinct borders intervening. However, a sharp inferior margin separates the anterior from the inferior or visceral surface. The latter faces obliquely downwards, backwards and to the left. The posterior surface blends with the visceral and superior surfaces at indistinct borders. Most of the surface of the liver is clothed in peritoneum.

Surface features and relations

Anterior and lateral surfaces

The anterior and lateral surfaces of the liver are smoothly convex to conform to the diaphragm and the anterior abdominal wall (Fig. 4.57). A two-layered fold of peritoneum, the falciform ligament, connects the anterior surface to the abdominal wall and demarcates the right and left lobes of the organ. In the free lower border of this ligament runs the fibrous remnant of the umbilical vein, the round ligament (ligamentum teres) of the liver, passing from the umbilicus to the visceral surface of the liver.

Superior surface

This surface is gently convex on each side of a shallow depression related to the central tendon of the diaphragm. Above the liver, the two layers of the falciform ligament diverge. One layer passes to the right and continues as the superior layer of the coronary ligament (Fig. 4.58); the other extends to the tip of the left lobe where it forms the left triangular ligament. The posterior layer of this ligament, when traced to the right, is continuous with the lesser omentum.

Visceral surface

This surface (Fig. 4.59) is divided into three areas by two vertical features, the gall bladder and the fissure for the round ligament, the upper ends of which are linked by a horizontal cleft. This cleft is the porta hepatis through which pass the branches of the proper hepatic artery and portal vein and the hepatic ducts. The round ligament (ligamentum teres hepatis) ascends along its fissure to reach the portal vein. To the left of the fissure the left lobe of the liver overlies the body of the stomach and lesser omentum. To the right of the fissure is the small rectangular quadrate lobe, which is related to the anterior aspects of the pyloric region of the

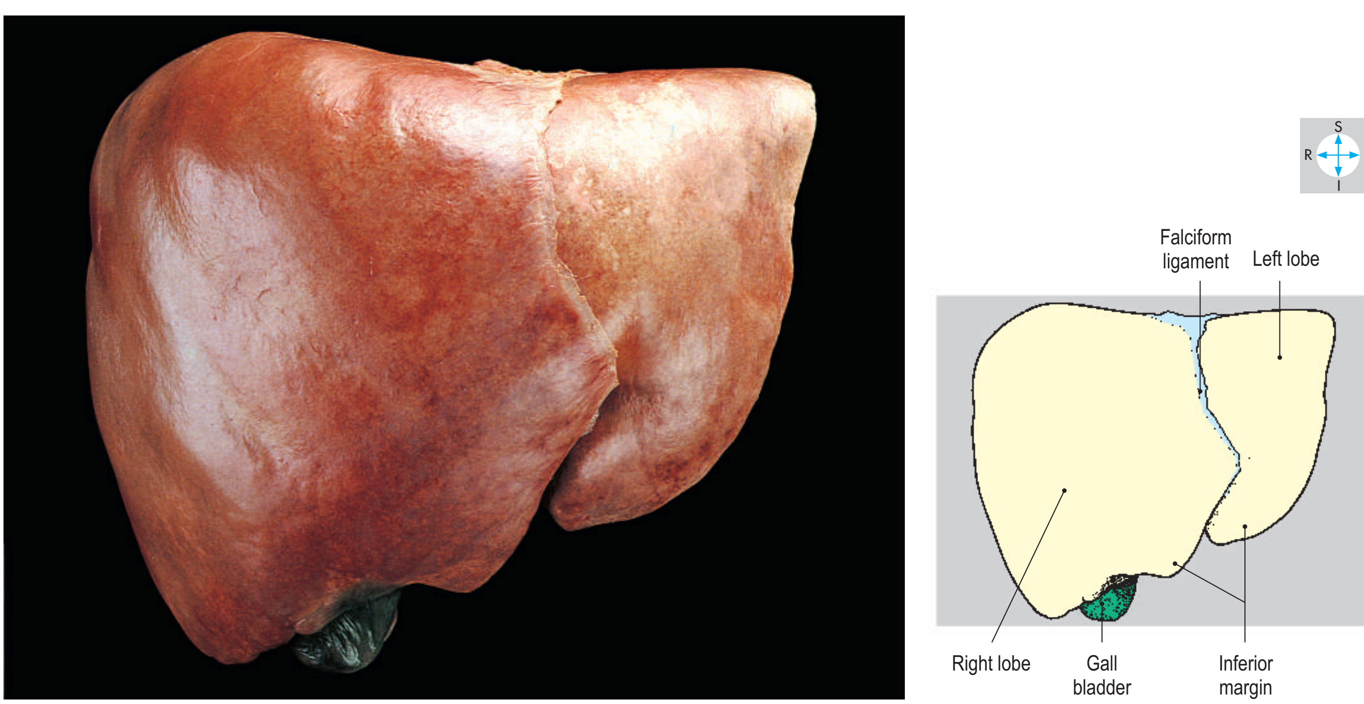


Fig. 4.56 Anterior view of the liver.

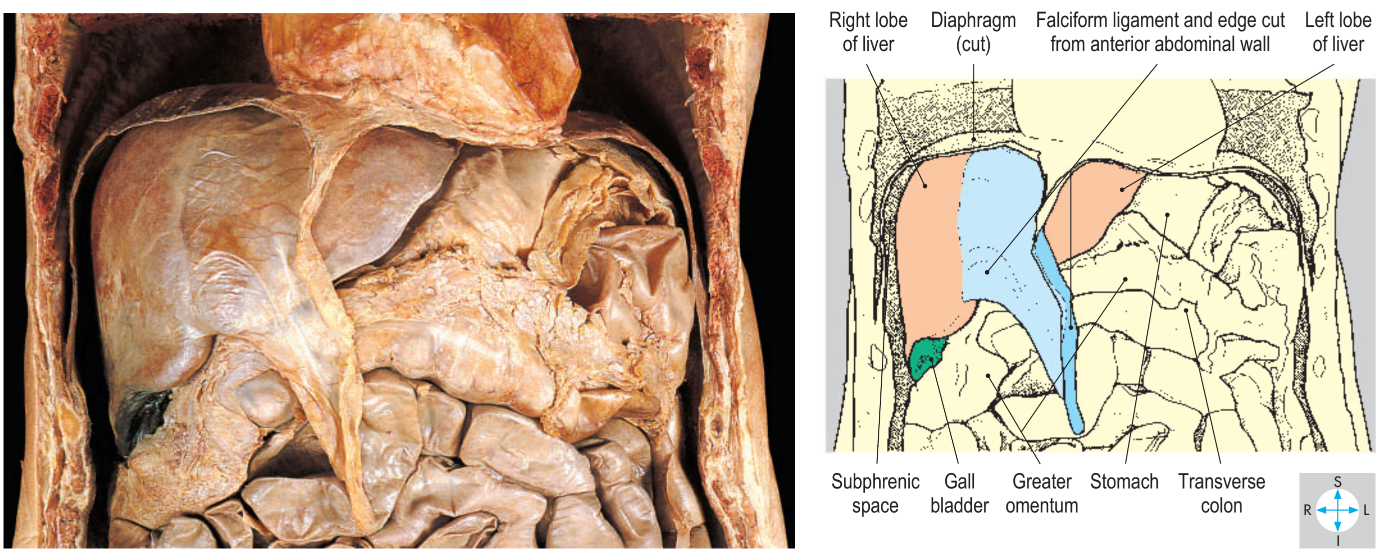


Fig. 4.57 Liver and some of its relations. In this specimen the greater omentum is adherent to the liver and stomach.

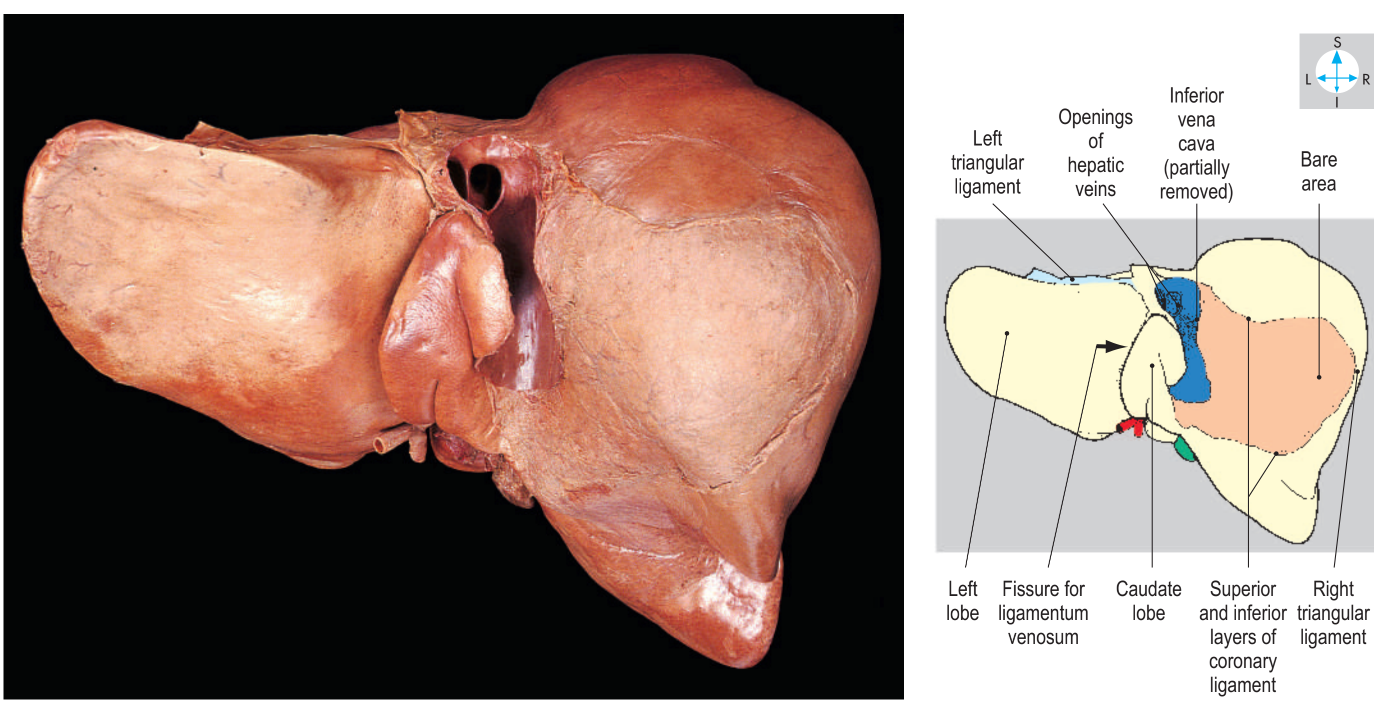


Fig. 4.58 Posterior view of the liver.

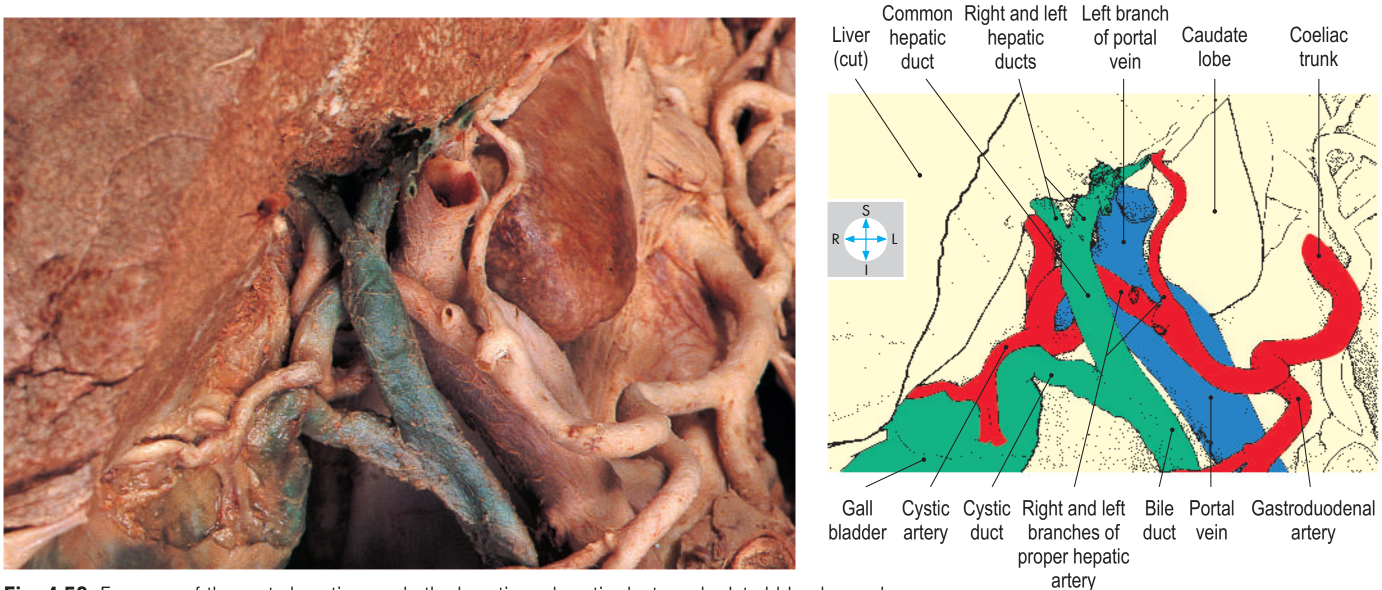


Fig. 4.59 Exposure of the porta hepatis reveals the hepatic and cystic ducts and related blood vessels.

stomach and the first part of the duodenum. To the right of the quadrate lobe is the gall bladder, embedded in its fossa. An impression to the right of the gall bladder accommodates the upper pole of the right kidney. This surface of the right lobe is also related to the right colic flexure and the descending duodenum.

Posterior surface

This surface is also divided into three areas (Fig. 4.58). Extending upwards from the left end of the porta hepatis is the fissure in which lies the ligamentum venosum, the fibrous remnant of the fetal ductus venosus. The lesser omentum attaches to the liver in the depths of this fissure and around the margins of the porta hepatis (Fig. 4.60). The portion of the liver to the left of the fissure covers the front of the abdominal oesophagus and the fundus of the stomach.

To the right of the fissure lies the caudate lobe, facing into the superior recess of the omental bursa. To the right of this lobe lies the inferior vena cava, which usually grooves the liver deeply. Further to the right is the bare area (Fig. 4.58), where the right lobe of the liver is in direct contact with the diaphragm and the right suprarenal gland with no intervening peritoneum. The bare area is bounded above and below by the two layers of the coronary ligament, which converge laterally to form the right triangular ligament.

Subphrenic and subhepatic spaces

The arrangement of the various peritoneal ligaments around the liver produces several spaces in which fluids may accumulate. Between the liver and the diaphragm are left and right subphrenic spaces (Fig. 4.57), separated from each other by the falciform ligament and the superior layer of the coronary ligament. The subhepatic spaces lie below and behind the liver, adjacent to either the stomach or the right kidney. Abscesses may occur in these spaces following infections elsewhere in the peritoneal cavity.

Biliary apparatus

Ducts

Bile produced by the liver is collected by a system of canaliculi that drain into the right and left hepatic ducts. The two hepatic ducts emerge through the porta hepatis and soon unite to form the common hepatic duct. As this duct descends in the free border of the lesser omentum, it is joined from the right by the cystic duct to form the bile duct (Fig. 4.59).

Initially, the bile duct lies in the free edge of the lesser omentum, to the right of the hepatic artery and in front of the portal vein. It then passes behind the first part of the duodenum with the gastroduodenal artery and curves to the right behind the head of the pancreas, sometimes grooving the gland (Fig. 4.54). The bile duct pierces the wall of the descending duodenum in company with the main pancreatic duct (Fig. 4.51). Impaction of stones within the bile duct can give rise to jaundice and to biliary colic, a severe intermittent pain in the epigastrium.

Gall bladder

This is a hollow, pear-shaped organ in which bile from the liver is concentrated and stored (Fig. 4.61). It lies against the visceral surface of the liver, often partially buried in its substance, and usually projects beyond the inferior margin to end blindly in a rounded fundus. The fundus normally makes contact with the anterior abdominal wall where the lateral edge (linea semilunaris) of the right rectus abdominis muscle crosses the costal margin (Fig. 4.2). The body of the gall bladder is its widest part and tapers superiorly into the neck, which continues as the cystic duct. This duct, through which bile enters and leaves, runs upwards towards

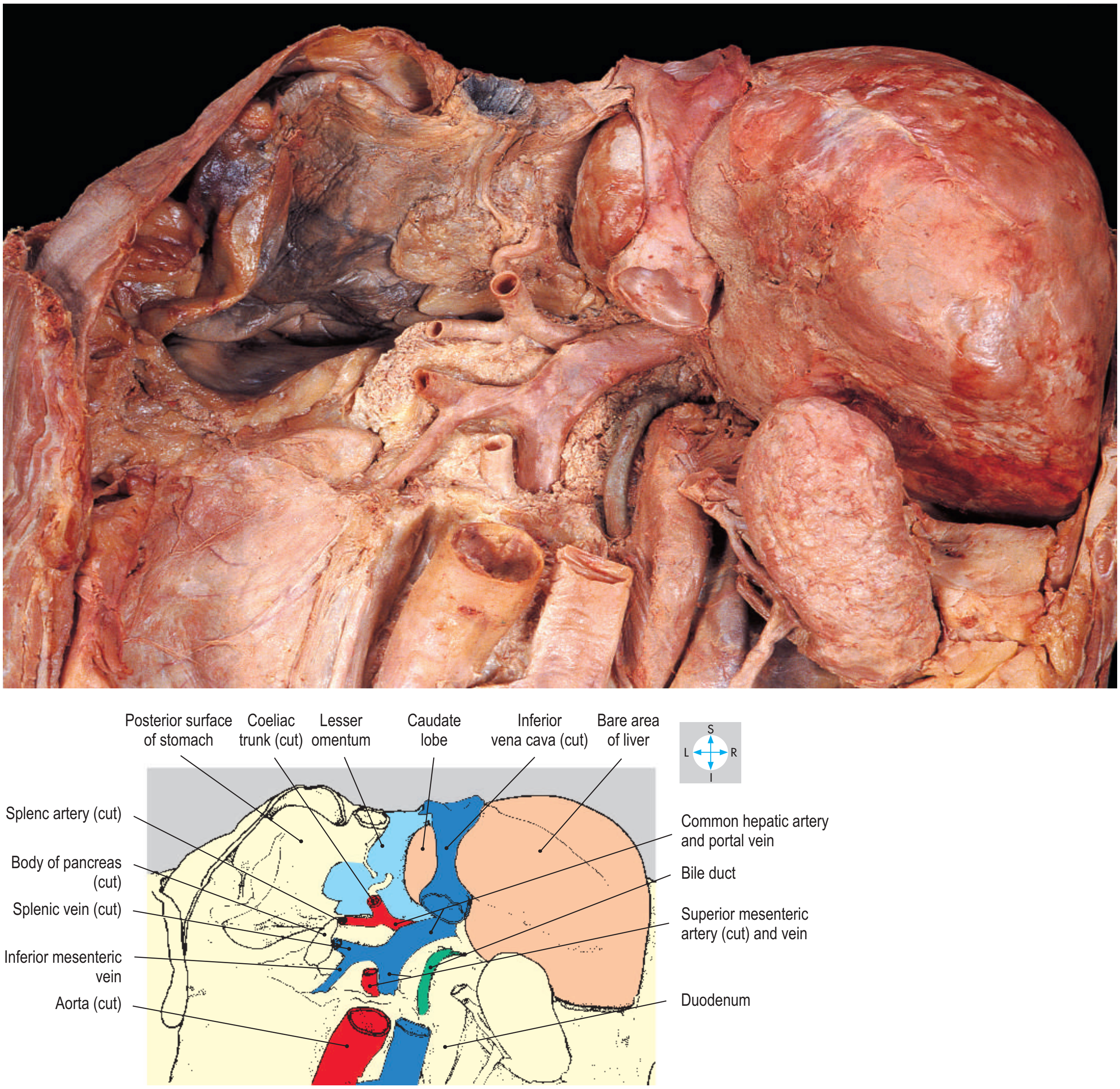


Fig. 4.60 Posterior view of liver, stomach and lesser omentum. The spleen, left kidney, parts of the pancreas, aorta and inferior vena cava have been removed.

the porta hepatis and then turns downwards to join the common hepatic duct. The undersurface of the gall bladder is covered by peritoneum continuous with that surrounding the liver. The body is usually related to the proximal part of the duodenum and the fundus often makes contact with the transverse colon. Inflammation associated with gallstones can progress to ulceration, allowing stones to pass from the gall bladder into the duodenum or colon.

The arterial supply to the gall bladder is provided by the cystic artery, which usually springs from the right branch of the proper hepatic artery (Fig. 4.59), though its origin is variable. The cystic vein normally drains into the portal vein or its right branch.

Hepatic blood vessels

Blood is conveyed to the liver by the proper hepatic artery and the portal vein, both of which enter via the porta hepatis. Blood is drained by the hepatic veins embedded in the organ, which enter the anterior aspect of the inferior vena cava immediately below the diaphragm (Fig. 4.58). The common hepatic artery, a branch of the coeliac trunk (Fig. 4.62), runs retroperitoneally downwards and to the right to the superior border of the first part of the duodenum (Fig. 4.59). Here, the common hepatic artery gives off the right gastric and gastroduodenal arteries and continues as the proper hepatic artery. The right gastric artery arises

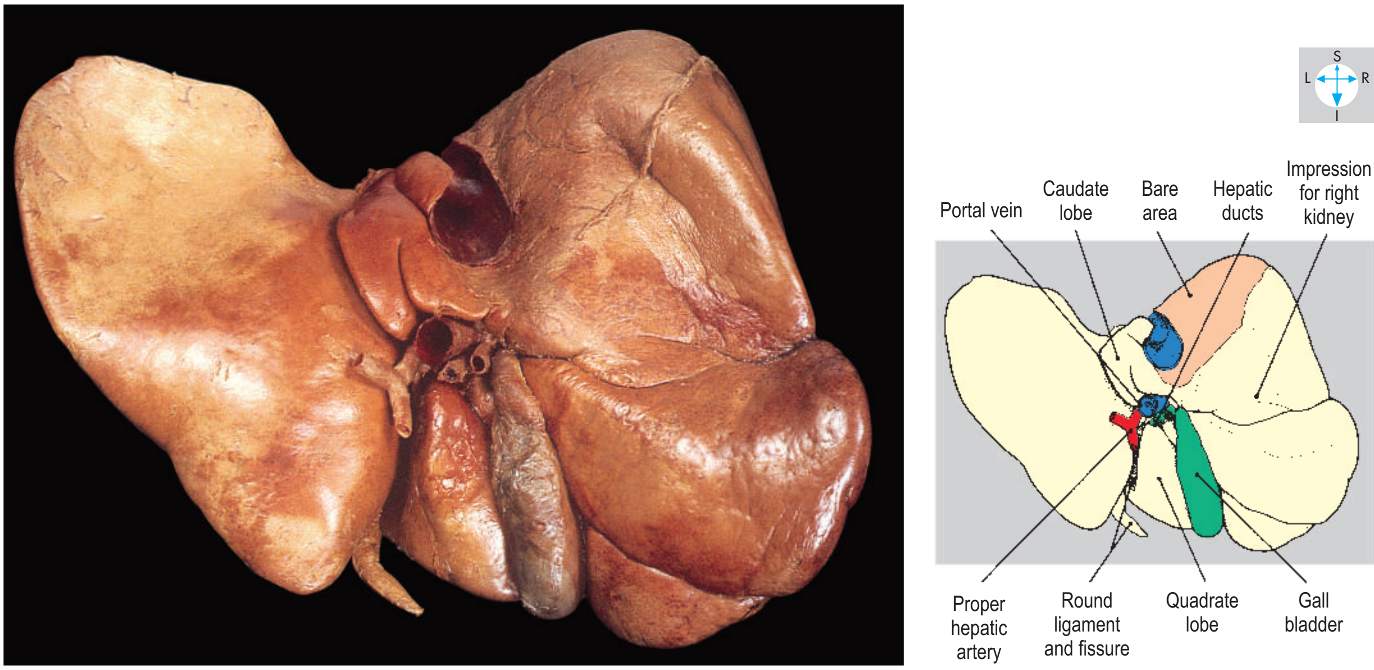


Fig. 4.61 Inferior view of liver and gall bladder showing porta hepatis and visceral surface.

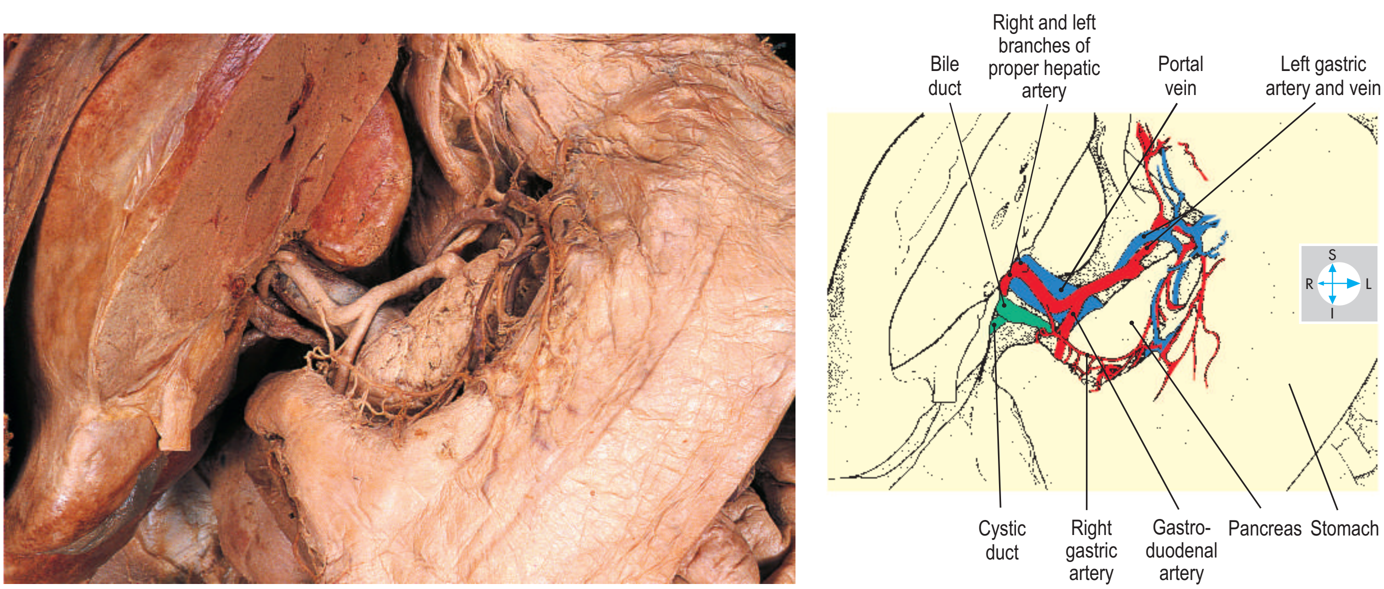


Fig. 4.62 Course and branches of the common hepatic artery. The lesser omentum has been removed.

above the first part of the duodenum and runs to the left within the lesser omentum, supplying the lesser curvature of the stomach. The larger gastroduodenal artery descends behind the first part of the duodenum alongside the bile duct. Its terminal branches are the superior pancreaticoduodenal artery (Fig. 4.52) and the right gastro-omental artery (Fig. 4.43). The proper hepatic artery ascends in the free border of the lesser omentum on the left of the bile duct and anterior to the portal vein. Near the porta hepatis, it divides into right and left branches to enter the liver with corresponding branches of the portal vein. The left branches of the artery and vein are distributed to the left quadrate and most of the caudate lobes. The right branches supply the remainder of the liver. The proper hepatic artery also supplies the gall bladder via the cystic artery (Fig. 4.59). Within the liver are several segments each with its own arterial supply. During liver and gall bladder surgery, the proper hepatic artery can be compressed, within the free border of the lesser omentum, to stem arterial bleeding.

Jejunum and Ileum

The jejunum and ileum constitute the major part of the small intestine. The jejunum commences at the duodenojejunal flexure and the ileum terminates at the ileocaecal junction. Between these two sites, the small intestine is about 5 or 6 m long and forms numerous loops that fill most of the infracolic compartment of the abdomen (Figs 4.41 & 4.63). By convention, the proximal two-fifths are called the jejunum and the remainder the ileum. However, no precise anatomical feature marks the junction between the two, there being a gradual morphological transition along the whole length of the small intestine.

As the small intestine is traced distally, there is a gradual reduction in the size of the lumen. The terminal ileum is the narrowest region and it is here that gallstones and foreign bodies may lodge. Mucosal folds (plicae circulares) are numerous in the proximal jejunum (Fig. 4.64) but diminish in both size and number so that in the distal ileum they are often absent. This difference in mucosal structure can be detected by palpation and may also be apparent on radiographs. The distribution of lymphoid tissue in the jejunum is diffuse, whereas in the mucosa of the ileum it is arranged in discrete clumps (Peyer's patches).

Ileal diverticulum

Within a metre of the ileocaecal junction, the ileum occasionally possesses a diverticulum on its antimesenteric border. This diverticulum (Meckel's diverticulum) is the embryological remnant of the vitellointestinal duct and may be connected to the umbilicus. Inflammation of the diverticulum can give rise to clinical features similar to those of appendicitis. Sometimes the tip of the diverticulum remains connected to the umbilicus by a fibrous cord around which loops of intestine may become twisted giving rise to intestinal obstruction.

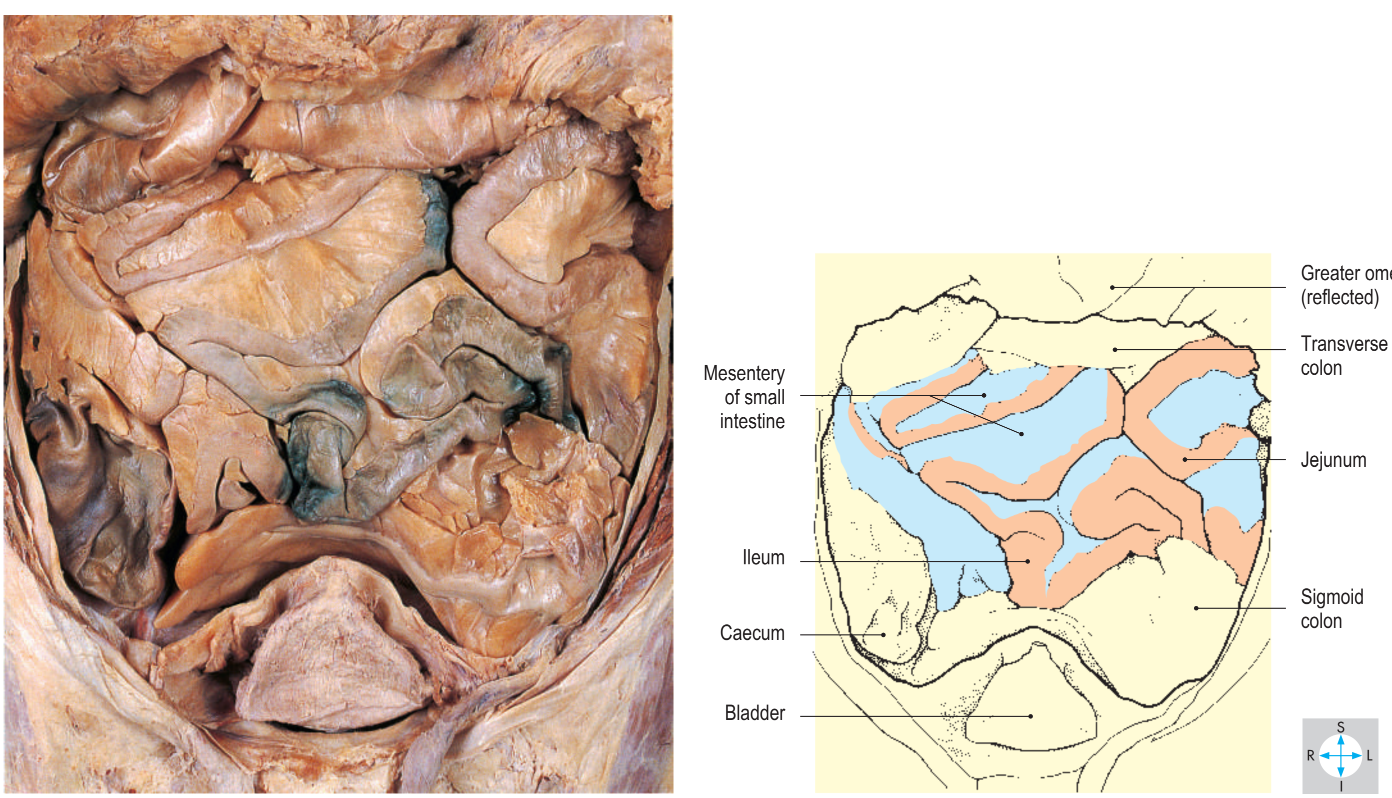


Fig. 4.63 Jejunum and ileum. The greater omentum has been reflected upwards.

Mesentery

The jejunum and ileum are contained within the free border of the mesentery of the small intestine. This fan-shaped structure has a root about 15 cm long attached to the posterior abdominal wall between the duodenojejunal flexure and the ileocaecal junction (Fig. 4.65). The mesentery divides the infracolic compartment of the peritoneal cavity into right and left infracolic spaces. Between its two peritoneal layers, the mesentery contains a quantity of fat, which is particularly abundant in the ileal portion. Embedded in this fat are numerous jejunal and ileal blood vessels (see below), lymphatic vessels and nodes, and autonomic nerves.

Location and relations

Because they are suspended from the mesentery, the jejunum and ileum possess considerable mobility and their coils can change position relative to adjacent organs. The jejunum usually occupies the central part of the abdomen, especially the umbilical region, while the ileum lies at a lower level, mostly in the hypogastrium and the pelvic cavity (Fig. 4.63). The terminal ileum usually ascends from the pelvis into the right iliac fossa to reach the medial aspect of the caecum (Fig. 4.69). The principal anterior relations of the jejunum and ileum are the greater omentum, the transverse colon and its mesocolon, and the anterior abdominal

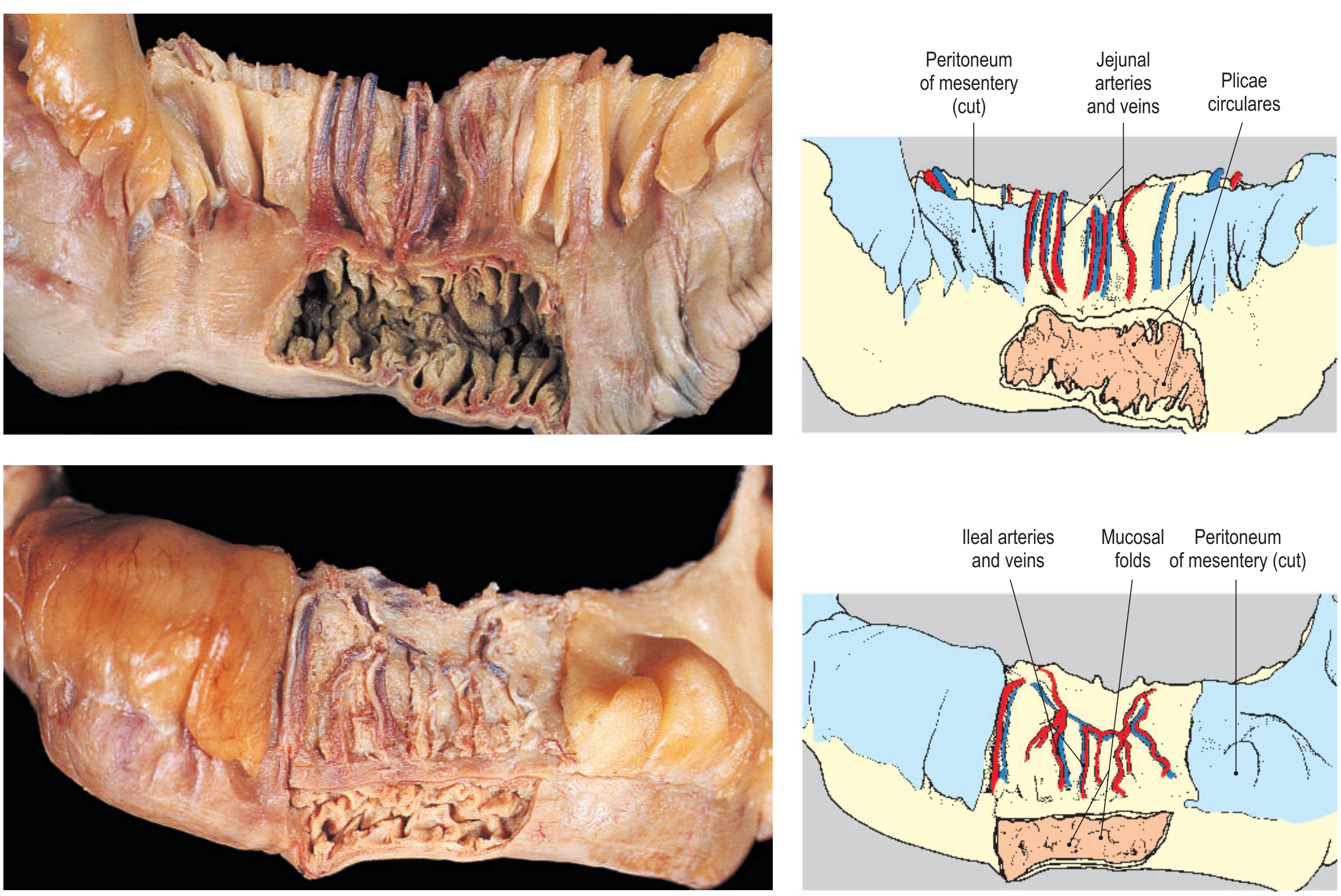


Fig. 4.64 Segments of jejunum (upper) and ileum (lower) opened to show their mucosae. Their mesenteries have been dissected to reveal the blood vessels.

wall. Posteriorly, the coils of small intestine overlie retroperitoneal structures on the posterior wall of the abdomen and pelvis and may also overlap the ascending, descending and sigmoid parts of the colon. Within the pelvis, loops of ileum may lie in contact with pelvic organs, such as the rectum and urinary bladder and, in the female, with the uterus and its appendages.

Superior mesenteric vessels

The superior mesenteric artery supplies the intestine from the descending duodenum to the splenic flexure of the colon. The artery is an anterior branch of the abdominal aorta (Fig. 4.89) at the level of the first lumbar vertebra, just below the coeliac trunk. It descends in front of the left renal vein (Fig. 4.91) and behind the neck of the pancreas. Inclining to the right, the artery continues downwards in front of the uncinate process of the pancreas and across the horizontal duodenum to enter the root of the mesentery (Fig. 4.66).

The superior mesenteric artery gives rise to middle colic and inferior pancreaticoduodenal branches before gaining the mesentery. As it descends in the root of the mesentery, it furnishes the right colic artery, which passes behind the peritoneum to supply the ascending colon. A further branch, also retroperitoneal, is the ileocolic artery, which inclines downwards and to the right towards the caecum. The superior mesenteric artery also gives numerous branches to the jejunum and ileum. Within the mesentery these jejunal and ileal arteries anastomose, producing a series

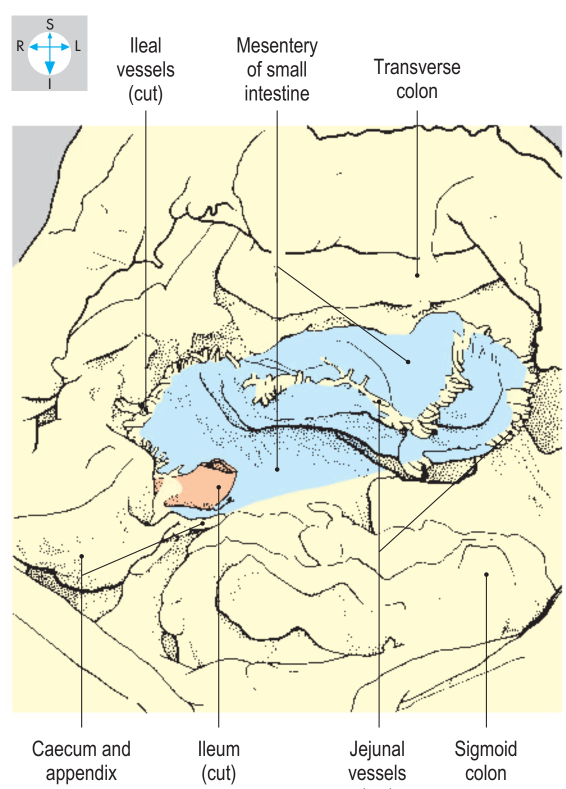


Fig. 4.65 Mesentery of small intestine. All of the jejunum and most of the ileum have been excised and the cut edge of mesentery trimmed to reveal the jejunal and ileal vessels.

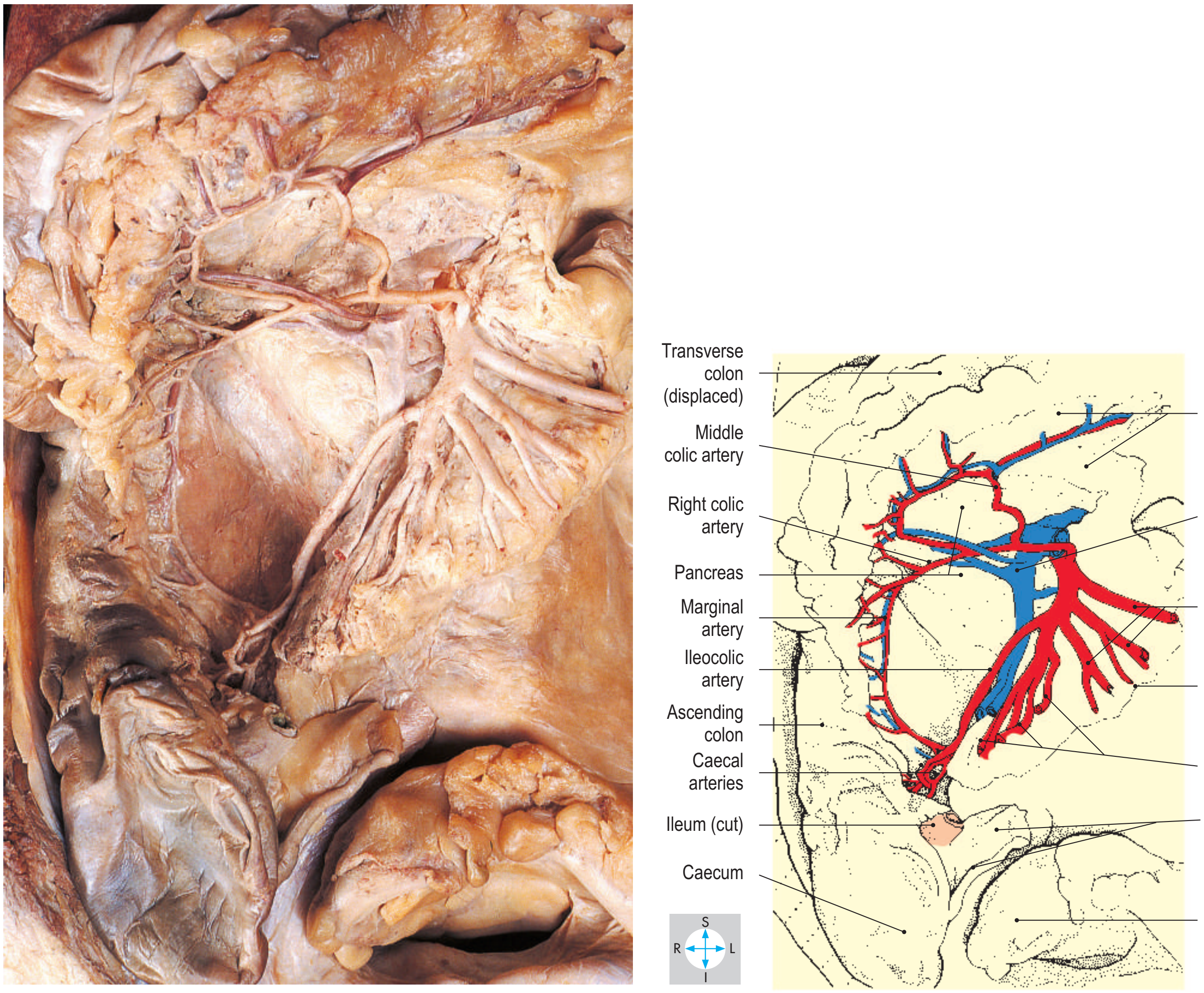


Fig. 4.66 Superior mesenteric artery and its branches. The jejunal and ileal veins have been removed.

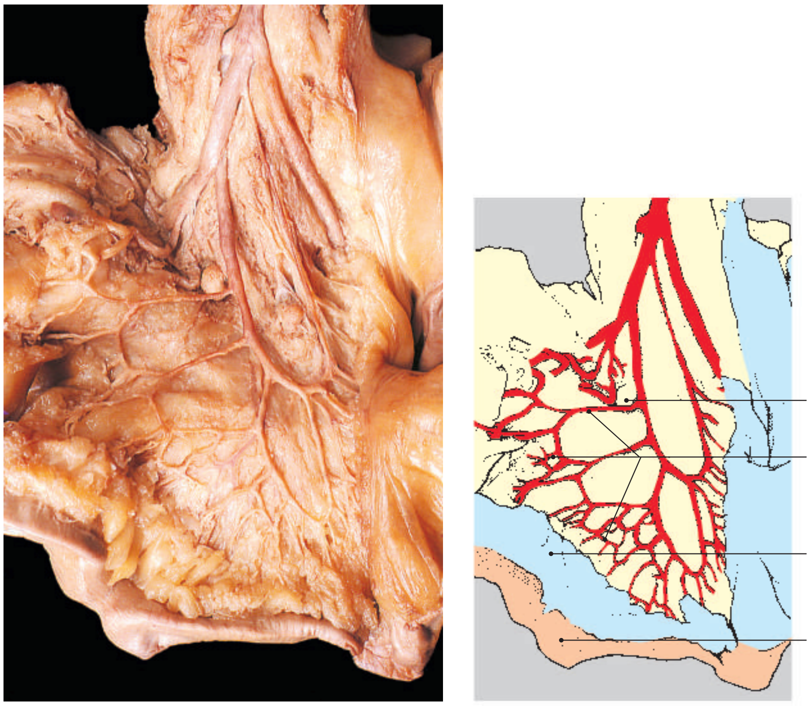


Fig. 4.67 Ileal arteries and their arcades in the mesentery of the ileum.

of arterial arcades which are more profuse in the ileal part of the mesentery (Fig. 4.67). The superior mesenteric artery terminates at the upper border of the terminal ileum, where it anastomoses with the lower branch of the ileocolic artery and the distal ileal arteries. If the superior mesenteric artery becomes narrowed by disease, most of the small intestine and part of the large intestine may become ischaemic or necrotic.

The superior mesenteric vein begins above the terminal ileum and ascends in the root of the mesentery. It lies on the right of the superior mesenteric artery and its tributaries correspond to the branches of the artery. The vein terminates behind the neck of the pancreas by joining the splenic vein to form the portal vein. Close to its termination, it may be joined by the inferior mesenteric vein (Fig. 4.78), but this more commonly enters the splenic vein.

Caecum, Appendix and Colon

The large intestine is approximately 1.5 m long and comprises the caecum, appendix, colon, rectum and anal canal. The caecum and appendix lie in the right iliac fossa, while the colon runs a circuitous course (Figs 4.68–4.70) before descending into the pelvic cavity to become continuous with the rectum. Descriptions of the rectum and anal canal are given in Chapter 5.

The lumen of the intestine is relatively wide in the caecum and ascending colon but narrows gradually as the colon is traced towards the rectum.

The outer longitudinal muscle coat of the caecum and colon is thickened to form three longitudinal bands, the taeniae coli

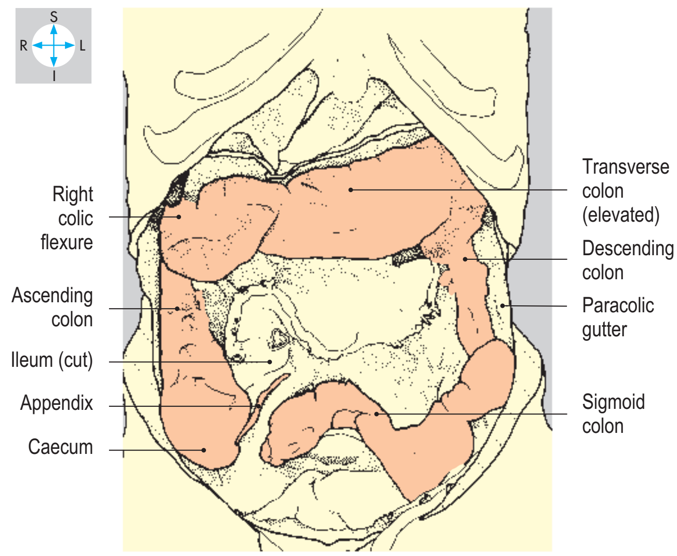
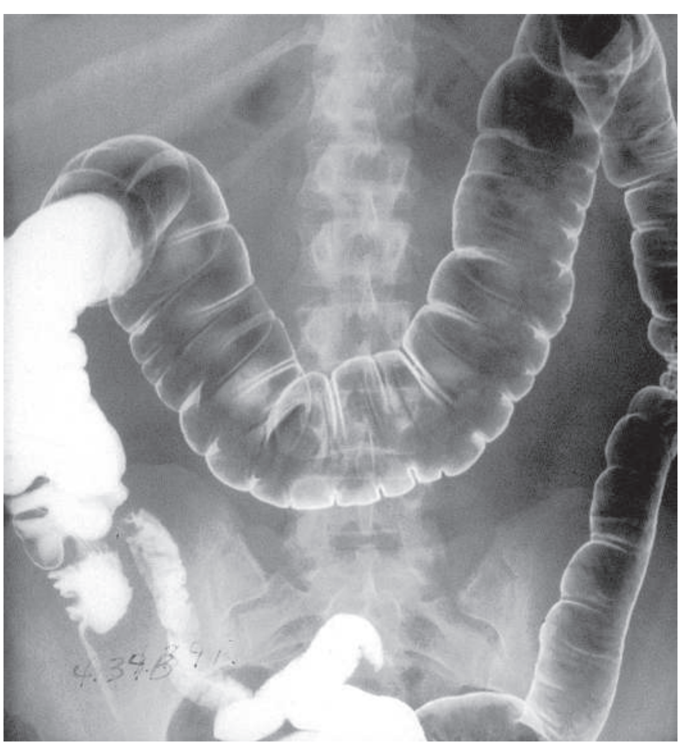


Fig. 4.68 Caecum, appendix and colon after removal of the greater omentum and most of the small intestine. The transverse colon has been raised.



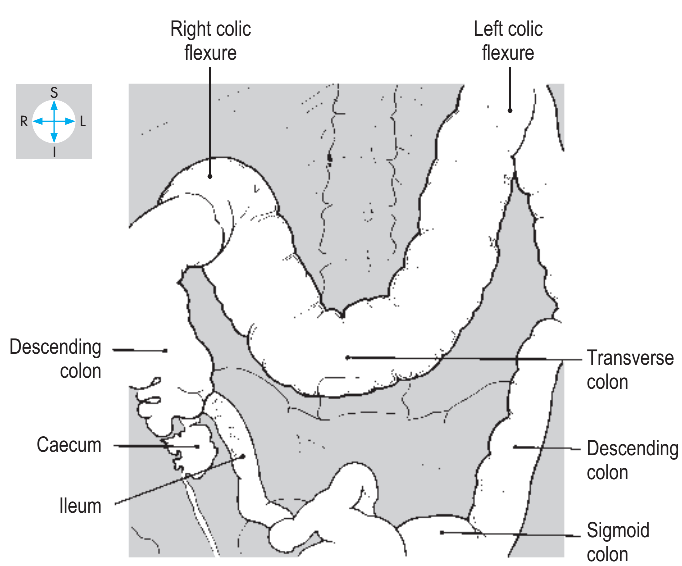


Fig. 4.69 Barium enema radiograph. Most of the colon is gas filled, but barium coats its mucosa and has passed proximally into the ileum.

(Fig. 4.71). Bulges (haustrations) of the gut wall between the taeniae correspond with sacculations on the mucosal surface. The peritoneal surface of the colon (but not of the appendix or caecum) is characterized by numerous fat-filled tags, the omental appendices (appendices epiploicae).

Caecum

The ileum terminates by opening into the large intestine at a slit-like or oval aperture, the ileal orifice (ileocaecal valve) (Fig. 4.72). The caecum is the blind-ending portion of the large intestine below the level of this orifice. The caecum and ascending colon are in direct continuity and the three taeniae coli descend along the outer surface of the caecum and converge on its posteromedial aspect at the root of the appendix.

The caecum usually lies in the right iliac fossa above the lateral half of the inguinal ligament (Fig. 4.73). Anteriorly, it is related to the abdominal wall, the greater omentum and coils of ileum; the iliacus and psoas muscles lie posteriorly. The caecum may lie free

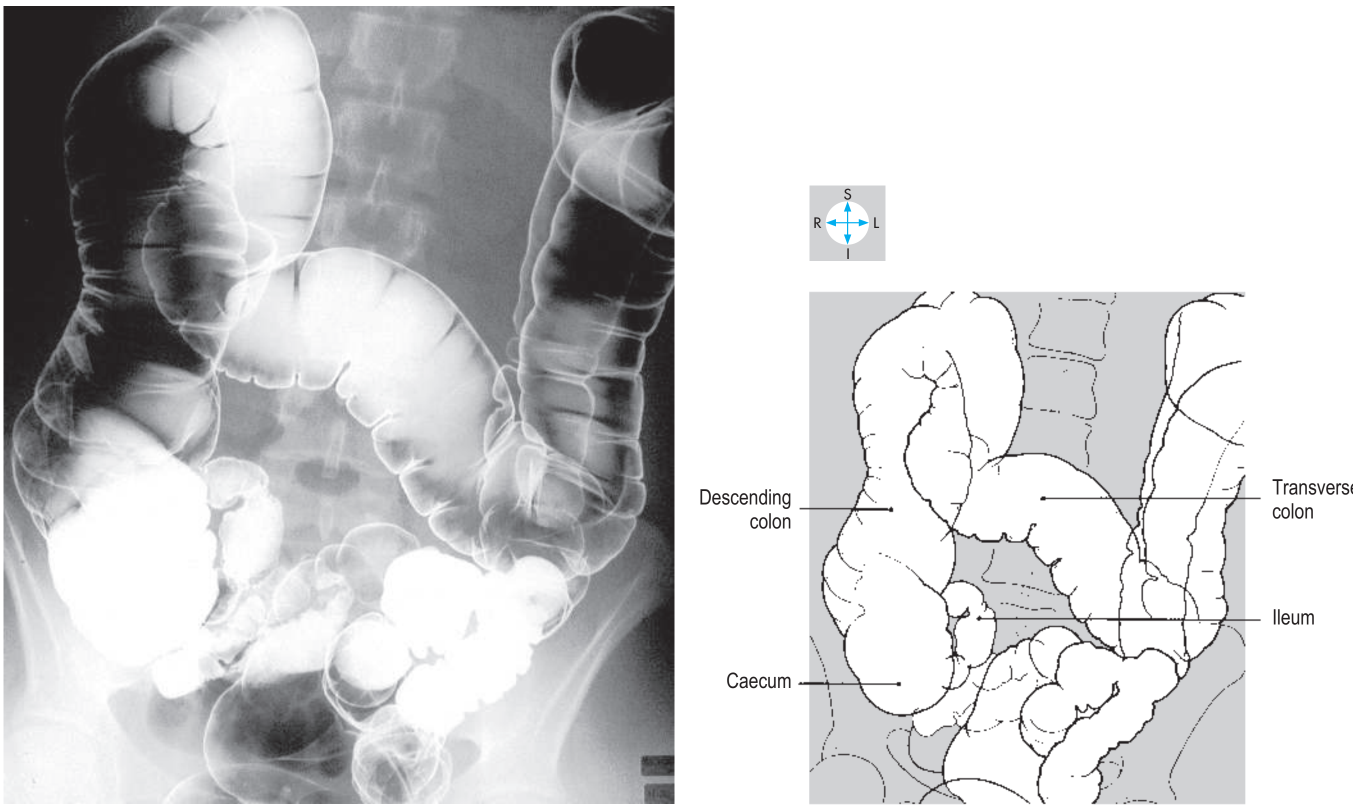


Fig. 4.70 Barium enema radiograph of a different subject, to show variation in bowel anatomy. The transverse colon is more dependent and coils of sigmoid colon overlap each other.

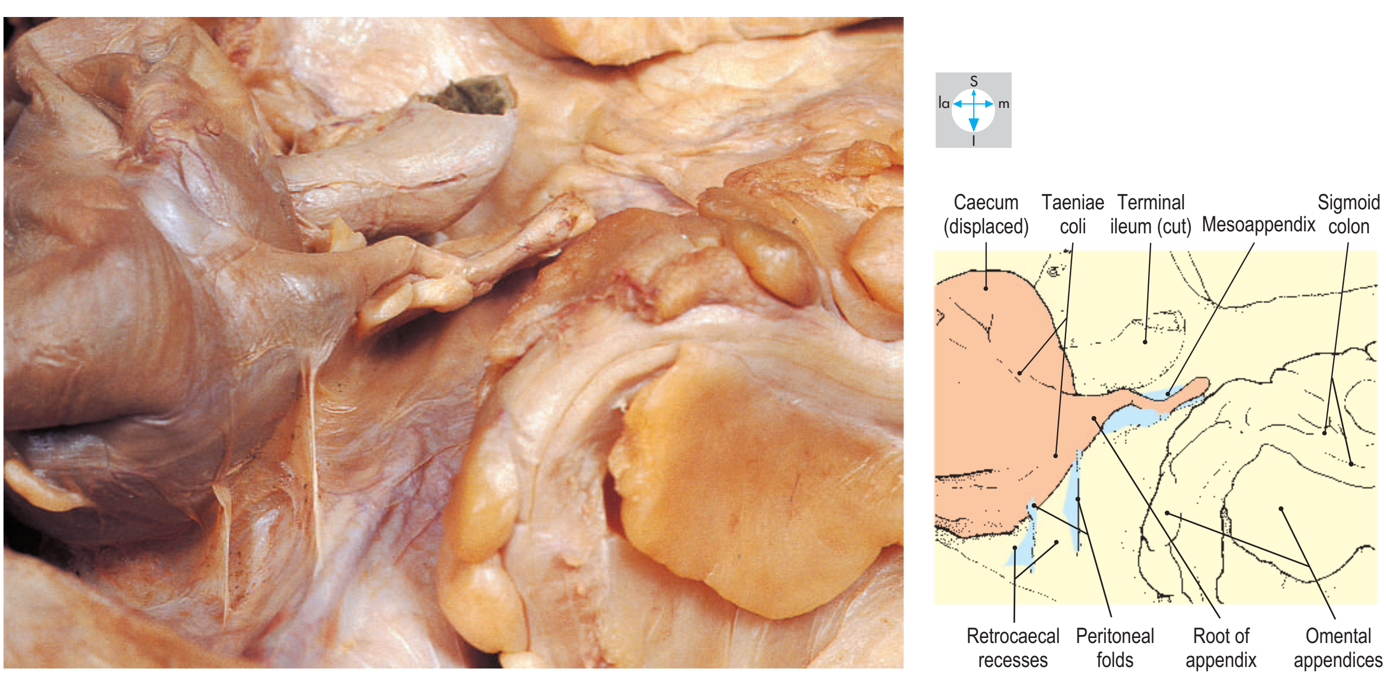


Fig. 4.71 Base of the appendix and retrocaecal folds and recesses revealed by pulling the caecum forwards.

in the iliac fossa, completely surrounded by peritoneum. Alternatively, it may be attached to the iliac fossa by peritoneal folds forming a retrocaecal fossa (Fig. 4.71). Rarely, the caecum is entirely retroperitoneal. On the medial side of the caecum, adjacent to the terminal ileum, small peritoneal folds may enclose one or more ileocaecal recesses.

Appendix

The worm-like appendix is attached to the posteromedial wall of the caecum, where the taeniae coli converge (Fig. 4.71). It is a thick-walled tube with a narrow lumen and, although variable in length, usually measures approximately 10 cm. The surface marking of the root of the appendix is relatively constant, lying one-third of the distance from the anterior superior iliac spine to the umbilicus (Fig. 4.2).

The appendix usually possesses a mesentery, the mesoappendix (Fig. 4.72), which is attached to the mesentery of the ileum and confers upon the appendix a degree of mobility. Although it frequently lies behind the caecum (Fig. 4.74), in front of the iliacus or psoas muscles, it occasionally descends into the pelvis where its tip may lie adjacent to the bladder, the right ureter and, in the female, the ovary or uterine tube (Fig. 4.73). Rarely, the appendix lies anterior or posterior to the terminal ileum. It is a common site of infection (appendicitis), which may spread to adjacent structures. Usually, the pain of appendicitis arises initially from the gut wall and is periumbilical. When the inflammation spreads to the parietal peritoneum the pain becomes localized to the right iliac region.

Colon

The colon consists of ascending, transverse, descending and sigmoid parts (Fig. 4.68). The ascending and descending parts are usually retroperitoneal, while the transverse and sigmoid parts are suspended by mesenteries. The colon possesses two acute

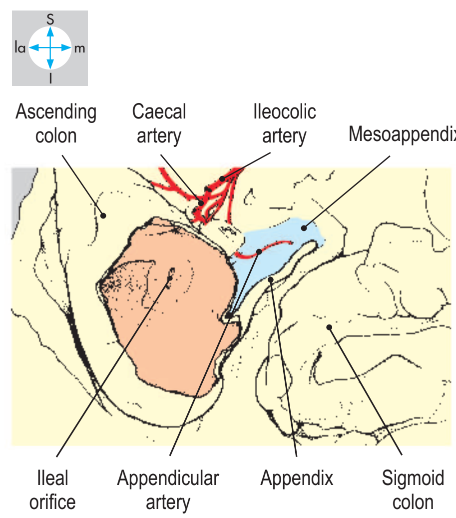
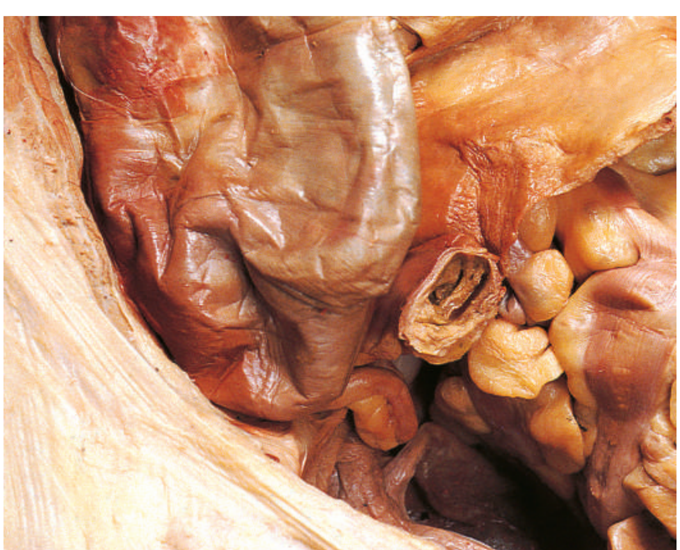


Fig. 4.72 Ileal orifice revealed by removal of the anterior wall of the caecum. The mesoappendix has been dissected to show the appendicular artery.



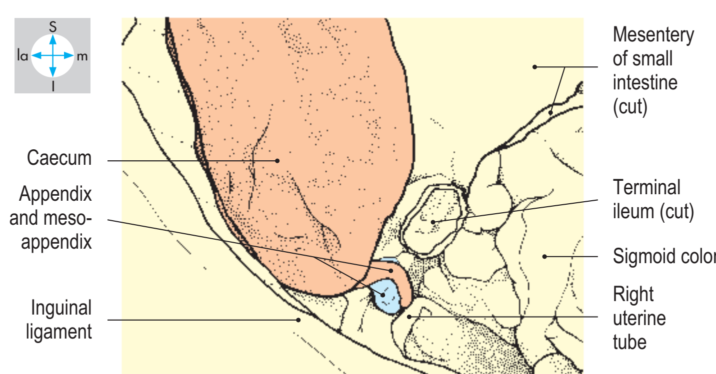


Fig. 4.73 After removal of most of the small intestine, this appendix can be seen descending over the pelvic brim.

angulations, the right (hepatic) and left (splenic) flexures (Fig. 4.69).

The ascending colon begins at the level of the ileal orifice and runs vertically upwards. At the right colic flexure under the right lobe of the liver, it becomes continuous with the transverse colon. Anterior to the ascending colon lie the abdominal wall, loops of ileum and often the greater omentum. Its posterior relations include the iliacus, transversus abdominis, quadratus lumborum and the right kidney.

The transverse colon extends from the right to the left colic flexure and is suspended by the transverse mesocolon. Typically, its middle portion hangs downwards and crosses the umbilical region (Figs 4.69 & 4.70). At the left colic flexure just below the splenic hilum, it turns inferiorly to become the descending colon. From right to left, the superior relations of the transverse colon include the liver and gall bladder and the greater curvature of the stomach. Posteriorly lie the descending duodenum, the pancreas, loops of small intestine and the spleen. Anteriorly lie the greater omentum and the abdominal wall. The greater omentum attaches to both the transverse colon and the greater curvature of the stomach (p. 160).

The descending colon runs from the left flexure to the left iliac fossa and turns medially at the pelvic brim to continue as the sigmoid colon (Figs 4.68 & 4.76). The upper part of the descending colon is covered anteriorly by coils of jejunum, while the lower part usually makes contact with the abdominal wall, through which it is often palpable. Its posterior relations include the left kidney and the psoas, quadratus lumborum and iliacus muscles.

The sigmoid (pelvic) colon begins at the pelvic brim and terminates in front of the third sacral vertebra by joining the rectum. The sigmoid colon varies in length and is mobile on its mesentery, the sigmoid mesocolon. Its proximal portion usually runs to the right across the lower abdomen (Fig. 4.68) and is related superiorly to loops of small intestine. The remainder of the sigmoid colon lies in the pelvic cavity in contact with the upper surfaces of the pelvic organs. A long pelvic mesocolon can provide mobility so that the colon may twist (volvulus), causing ischaemia or colonic obstruction. Pockets of evaginated colonic mucosa are common and may become infected (diverticulitis).

Blood supply

The blood supply of the caecum, appendix, ascending colon and most of the transverse colon is provided by the superior mesenteric vessels. The remainder of the colon is supplied by the inferior mesenteric vessels.

Branches of superior mesenteric vessels

The origin and course of the superior mesenteric artery are described on p. 177. Its branches to the large intestine vary considerably but usually include the middle colic, right colic and ileocolic arteries (Fig. 4.75).

The middle colic artery enters the transverse mesocolon and divides into right and left branches, which supply the proximal two-thirds of the transverse colon. The right colic artery reaches the ascending colon and divides into ascending and descending branches, which supply the organ. The ileocolic artery has anterior and posterior caecal branches and also supplies the ascending colon and terminal ileum. The appendicular branch (Fig. 4.72) descends behind the terminal ileum, enters the mesoappendix and runs near its free border to the tip of the appendix. The arteries supplying the caecum and colon anastomose, often forming a continuous marginal artery (Fig. 4.75).

Veins corresponding to the branches of the superior mesenteric artery drain into the superior mesenteric vein (Figs 4.75 & 4.78).

Inferior mesenteric vessels

The inferior mesenteric artery arises from the anterior aspect of the abdominal aorta 3 cm or 4 cm above the bifurcation, often overlapped by the horizontal duodenum (Fig. 4.76). The artery runs retroperitoneally downwards and to the left to reach the pelvic brim. Here it crosses the common iliac vessels and continues into the pelvis as the superior rectal artery (p. 218).

The first branch of the inferior mesenteric artery, the left colic artery, runs to the left and gives rise to ascending and descending branches. The former supplies the distal third of the transverse colon and the left colic flexure. The descending branch supplies the descending colon and the commencement of the sigmoid colon. The inferior mesenteric artery gives rise to several sigmoid arteries which reach the sigmoid colon via the mesocolon.

The branches of the inferior mesenteric artery are accompanied by tributaries of the inferior mesenteric vein (Fig. 4.76). The course and termination of this vessel are described with the portal venous system.

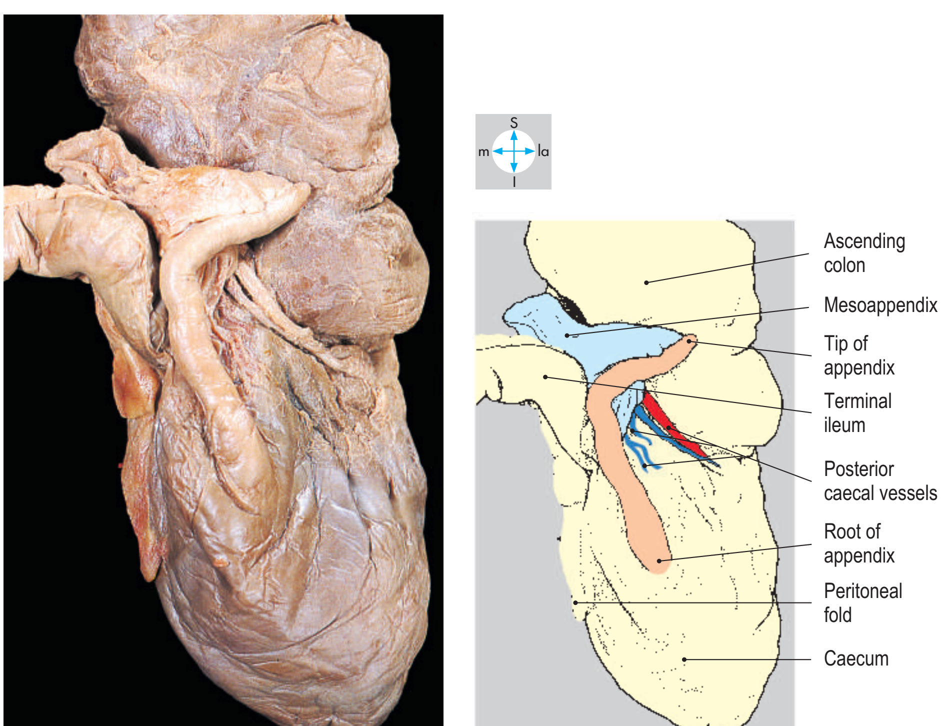


Fig. 4.74 Posterior aspect of the caecum to show a retrocaecal appendix.

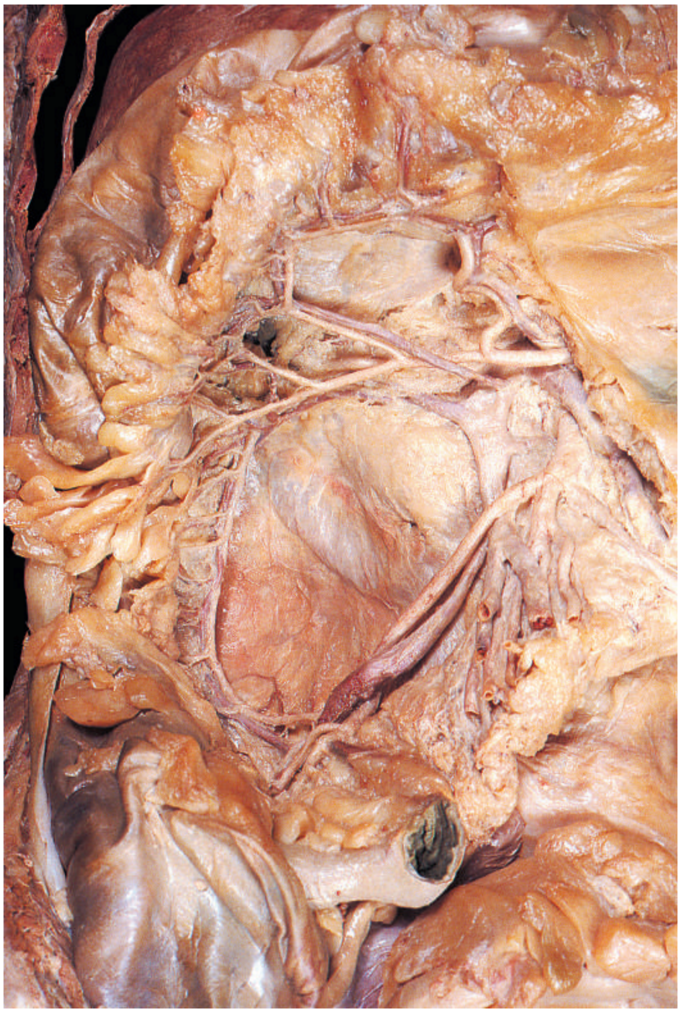
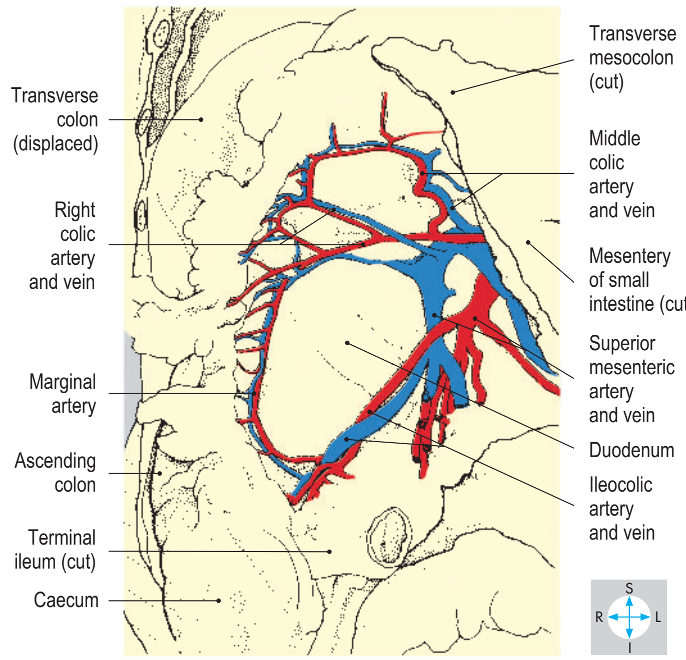



Fig. 4.75 Blood supply to the caecum, ascending and transverse colon. The transverse mesocolon and the mesentery of the small intestine have been dissected to reveal the ileocolic, right colic and middle colic vessels.

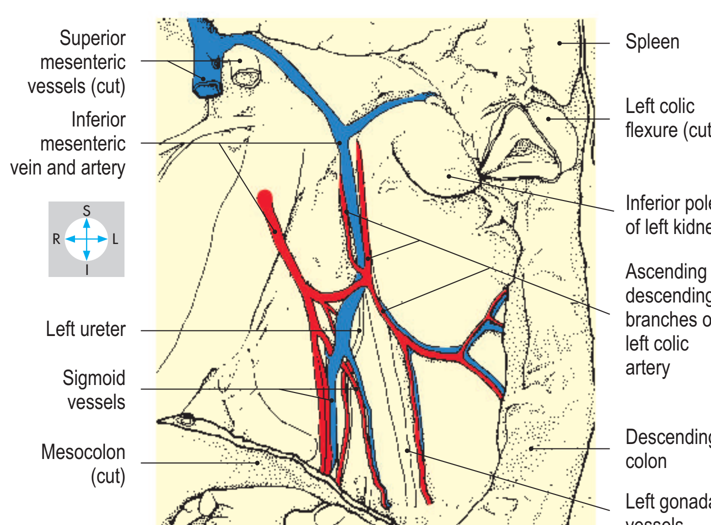



Fig. 4.76 Blood supply to the left colic flexure, descending colon and sigmoid colon. Removal of peritoneum from the posterior abdominal wall to the left of the aorta displays the inferior mesenteric vessels.

Portal Venous System

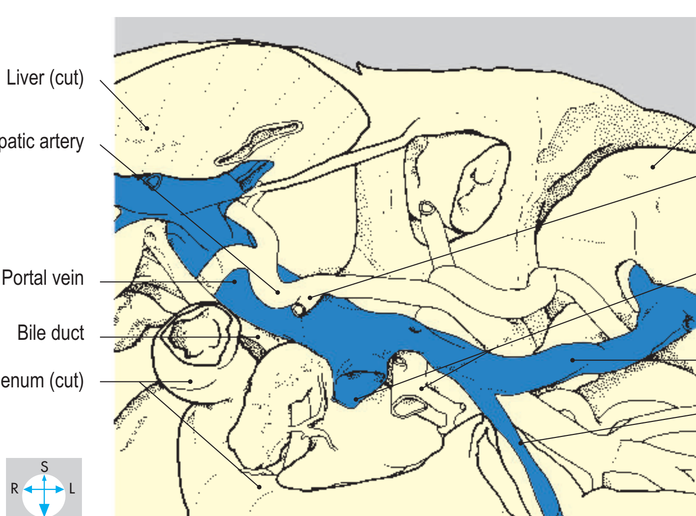
The hepatic portal venous system drains blood from most of the alimentary tract (including the abdominal oesophagus, stomach, small and large intestines), pancreas and spleen. Blood from these organs is drained by the superior mesenteric and splenic veins which unite to form the portal vein (Fig. 4.77). This large vein approaches the porta hepatis with the proper hepatic artery, and branches of both vessels enter the liver and further subdivide. The liver is a common site of secondary infection or cancer because blood is conveyed to it from so many other organs. After traversing the liver, blood from both sources is drained by the hepatic veins, which enter the inferior vena cava (Fig. 4.92).

Tributaries

The superior mesenteric vein (Fig. 4.78) receives blood from most of the small intestine and the proximal half of the large intestine. It drains the duodenum distal to the major papilla, the jejunum and ileum, the caecum and appendix, and the ascending and most of the transverse colon. The vein accompanies the superior mesenteric artery within the root of the mesentery and its tributaries generally correspond to the branches of the artery.

The splenic vein (Fig. 4.78) drains the spleen and parts of the pancreas and stomach. It arises at the hilum of the spleen and runs to the right in the splenorenal ligament behind the tail of the pancreas. The vein continues behind the body of the pancreas and

Fig. 4.77 Portal and splenic veins. Most of the pancreas has been removed and the superior duodenum turned aside.



usually receives the inferior mesenteric vein and other tributaries corresponding to the branches of the splenic artery.

The inferior mesenteric vein drains the upper part of the anal canal, the rectum, the sigmoid and descending parts of the colon and the distal part of the transverse colon. The vein initially accompanies the corresponding artery but in the latter part of its course, it ascends the posterior abdominal wall independently, passing to the left of the duodenojejunal junction. The vessel usually terminates by joining the splenic vein behind the body of the pancreas (Fig. 4.77), but it may enter the superior mesenteric vein (Fig. 4.78).

Portal vein

The portal vein is formed behind the neck of the pancreas by the union of the superior mesenteric and splenic veins (Fig. 4.77). It runs upwards and to the right behind the gastroduodenal artery and the first part of the duodenum. The vein then enters the free border of the lesser omentum accompanied anteriorly by the bile duct and the proper hepatic artery (Fig. 4.44). Near the porta hepatis, the vein divides into left and right branches, which enter the liver. Several small veins enter the portal vein directly, including the left and right gastric veins and the cystic vein.

Portacaval anastomoses

There are numerous anastomoses between the tributaries of the portal venous system and those of the systemic venous system. In health, these portacaval anastomoses are microscopic; but if there is obstruction of blood flow through the portal vein or liver, they may dilate and give rise to characteristic clinical features. For example, in the wall of the lowest part of the oesophagus, veins draining into the left gastric vein communicate with tributaries of the azygos venous system. Portal vein obstruction can cause gross swelling of these oesophageal veins (oesophageal varices), which may bleed profusely.

Similarly, paraumbilical veins accompanying the round ligament of the liver communicate with the portal vein at the porta hepatis and with veins of the anterior abdominal wall around the umbilicus. Portal vein obstruction may result in dilatation of the subcutaneous veins of the abdominal wall. Other sites of portacaval anastomoses include the anal canal and retroperitoneal parts of the intestines.

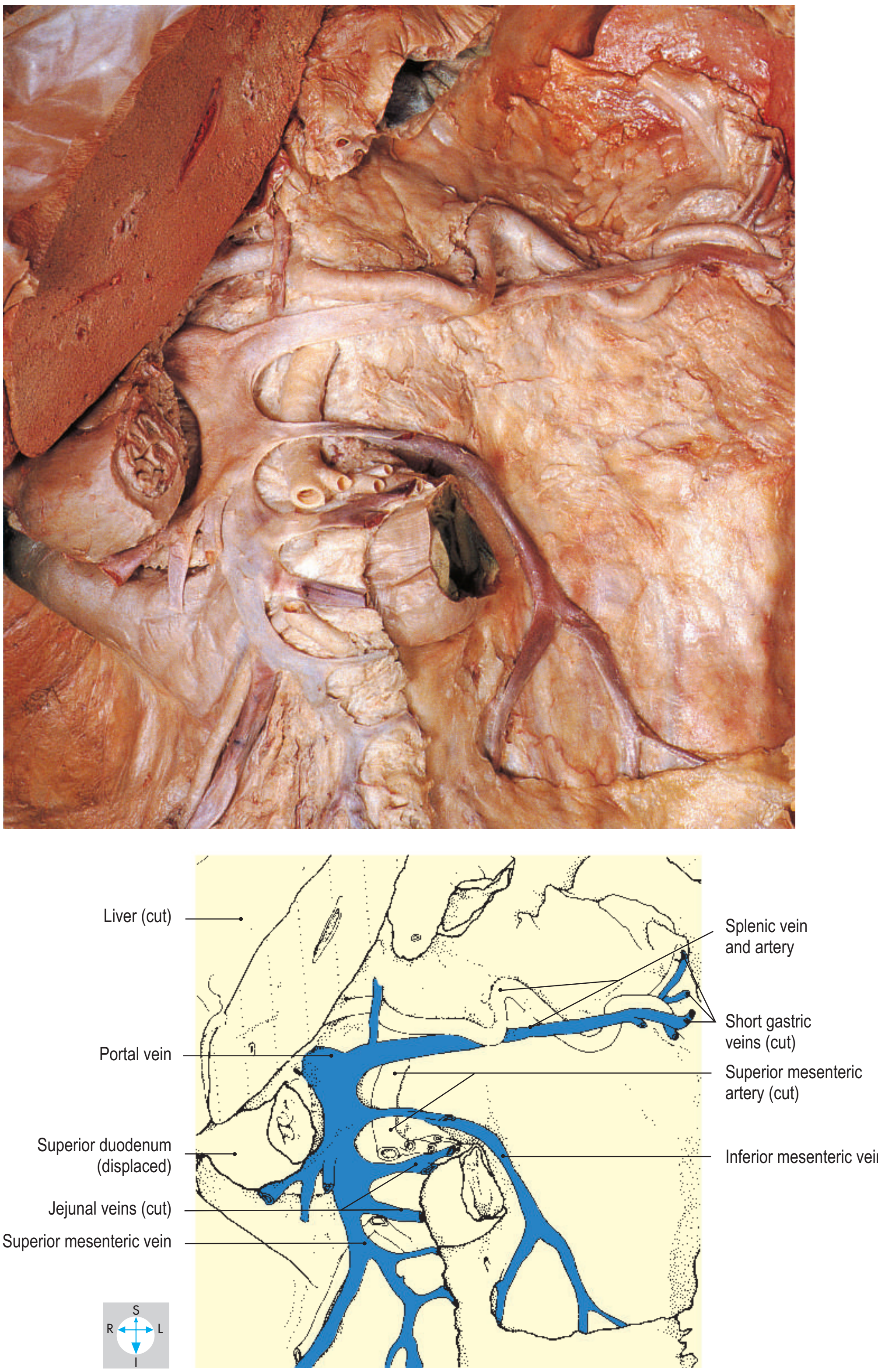


Fig. 4.78 Tributaries of the portal vein. In this specimen the inferior mesenteric vein joins the superior mesenteric vein.

Kidneys and Suprarenal Glands

Kidneys

The two kidneys lie behind the peritoneum on either side of the upper lumbar vertebrae (Fig. 4.79). They are embedded in fat in the paravertebral gutters of the posterior abdominal wall and are placed obliquely, with their anterior surfaces directed slightly laterally (Fig. 4.80). The left kidney usually lies at a higher level than the right.

Each kidney is bean-shaped, flattened anteroposteriorly and approximately 11 cm long. The anterior and posterior surfaces are gently convex and the superior and inferior poles are rounded. The lateral border is convex, while the indented medial border bears an aperture, the hilum (Figs 4.81 & 4.82), which is traversed by the renal pelvis or ureter, the renal vessels, lymphatics and

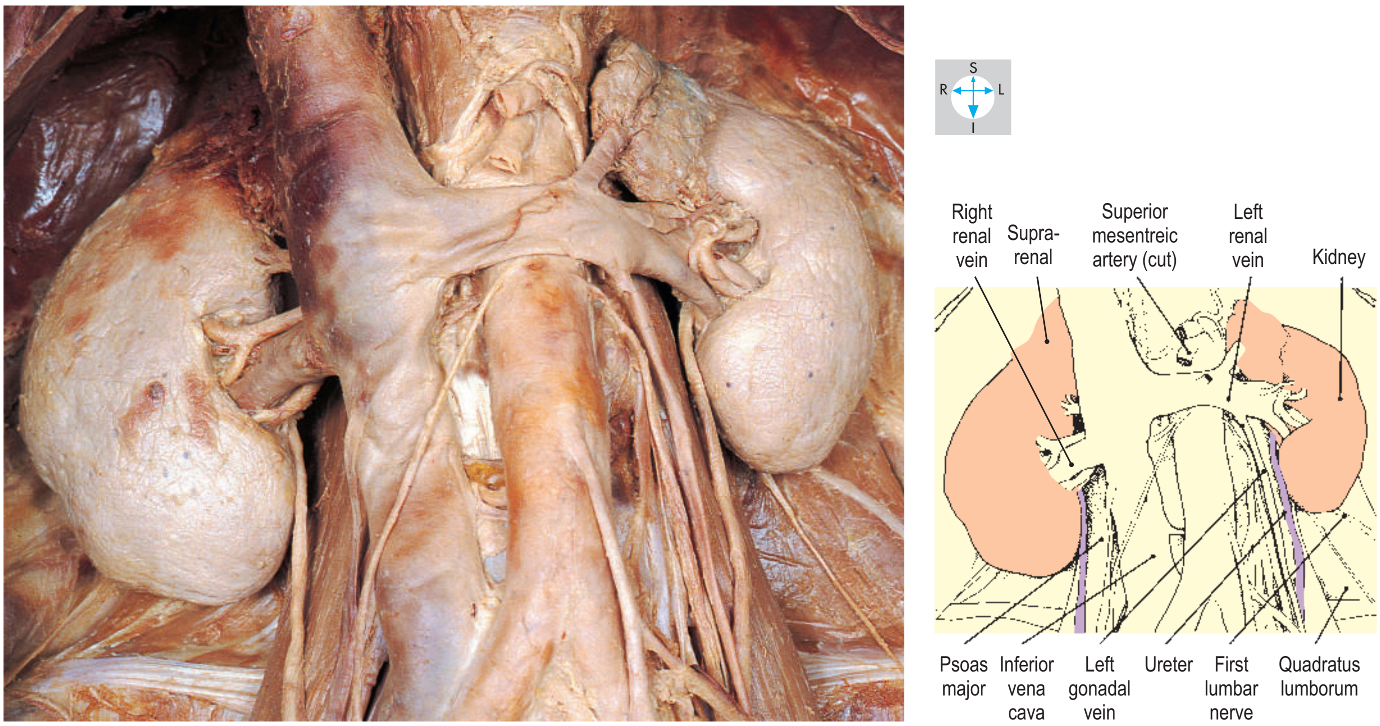


Fig. 4.79 Kidneys, suprarenal glands and some of the vessels associated with them.

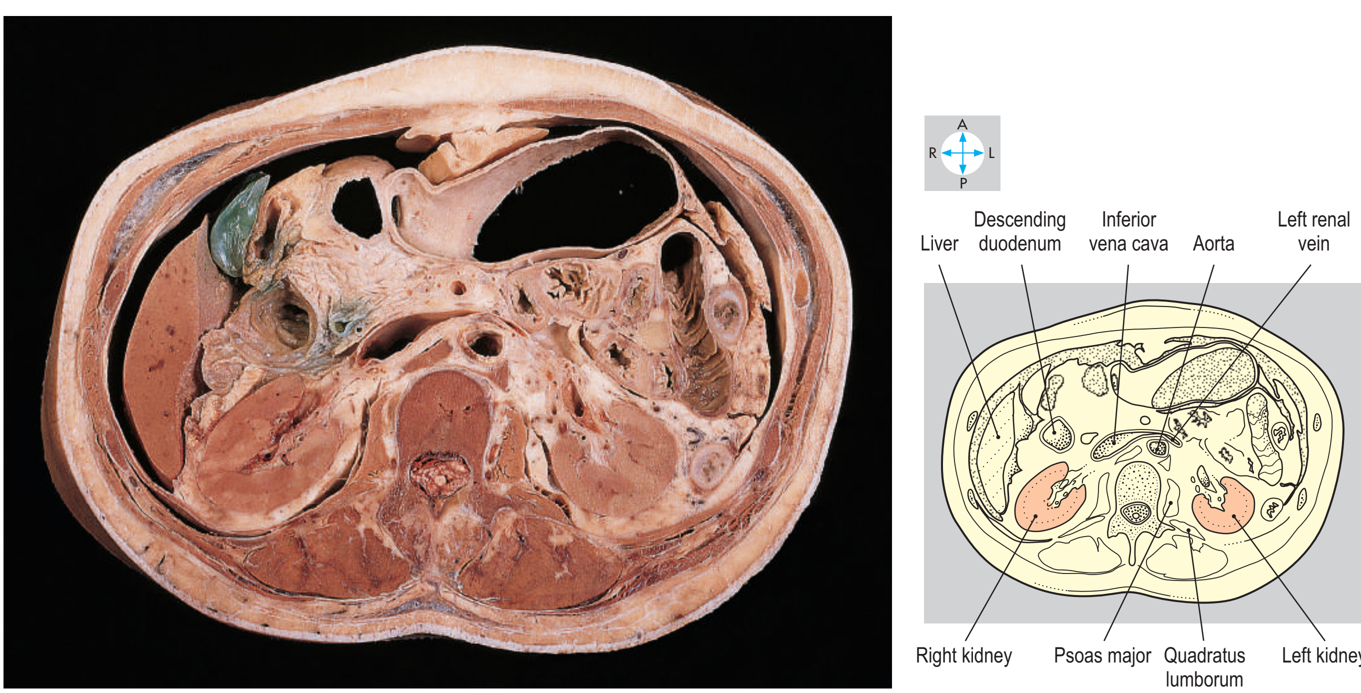


Fig. 4.80 Transverse section at the level of the first lumbar vertebra showing some relations of the kidneys. The spleen is not evident in this specimen. Inferior aspect. (Compare Fig. 4.109.)

autonomic nerves. The hilum leads into a cavity within the kidney, the renal sinus, which is occupied by the calices and renal pelvis (Fig. 4.83), the renal blood vessels and a quantity of fat.

Covered by a thin capsule, the kidney comprises an outer cortex and an inner medulla. The medulla contains numerous pyramids, the apices of which project into the renal sinus as the renal papillae. Urine discharged from the papillae is collected by about 10 trumpet-shaped chambers, the minor calices (Fig. 4.83), which unite to form two or three major calices. These fuse into the single, funnel-shaped renal pelvis, which lies posterior to most of the vessels and is continuous with the ureter. Either of the kidneys and ureters may be duplicated and the two embryonic organs may fuse resulting in a 'horseshoe kidney'.

Perirenal tissues

Each kidney is surrounded by a layer of perinephric (perirenal) fat enveloped in a thin sheet of connective tissue, the renal fascia (Fig. 4.84). This fascia also encloses the suprarenal gland and the proximal part of the ureter. From the inferior pole of the kidney, the renal fascia tapers downwards into the iliac fossa. Around the fascia is a further layer of fat (paranephric or pararenal fat) lying against the posterior abdominal muscles and covered anteriorly by the peritoneum. The perirenal fascia can impede the spread of infection or cancer.

Relations of kidneys

The right and left kidneys have similar posterior relations (Fig. 4.80). The superior poles lie against the diaphragm and the

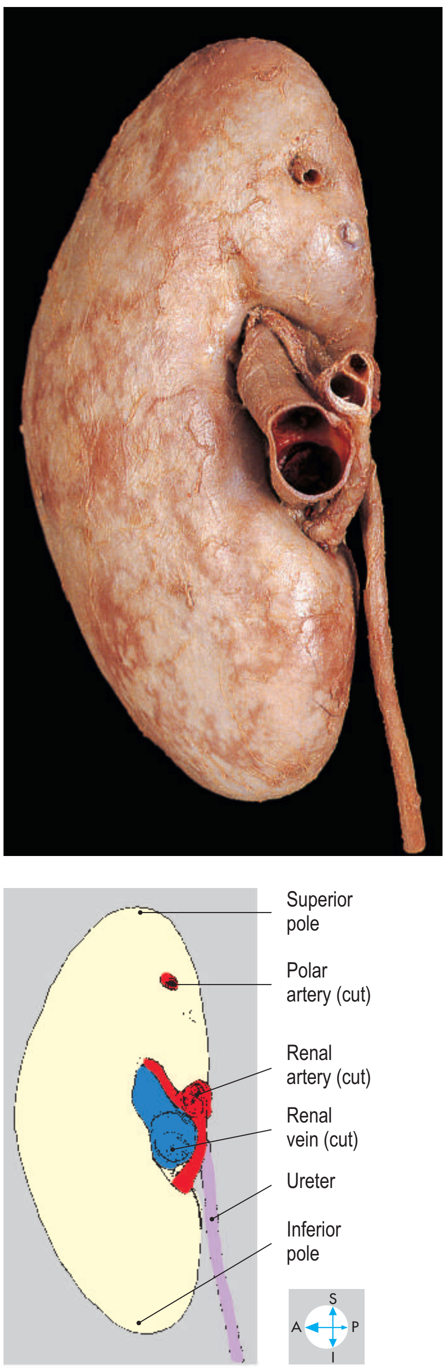


Fig. 4.81 Medial aspect of the right kidney showing the renal vessels passing through the hilum.

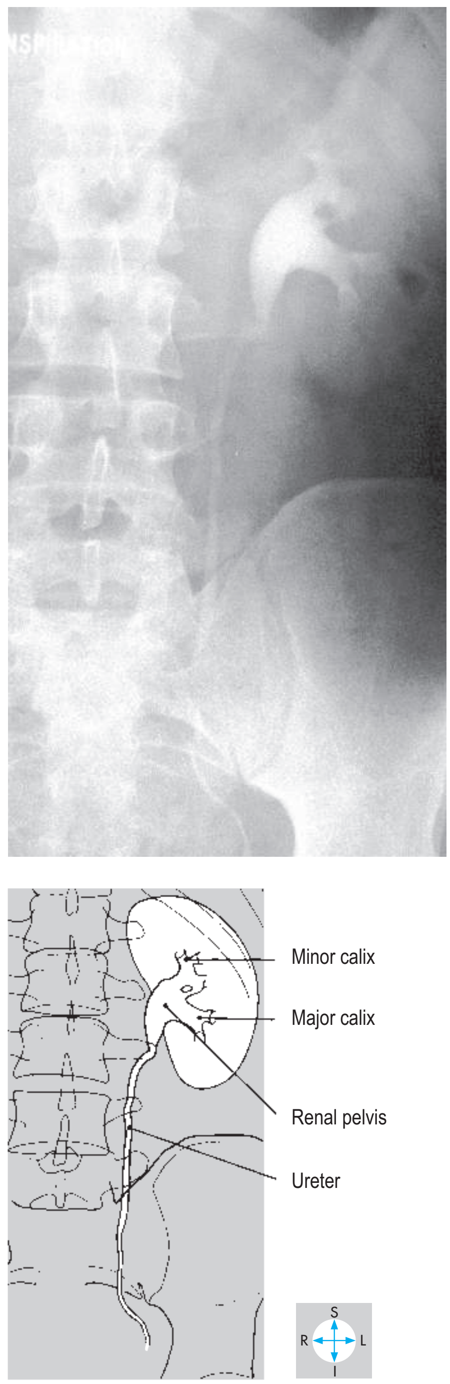


Fig. 4.82 Intravenous urogram showing detail of the pelvicaliceal system.

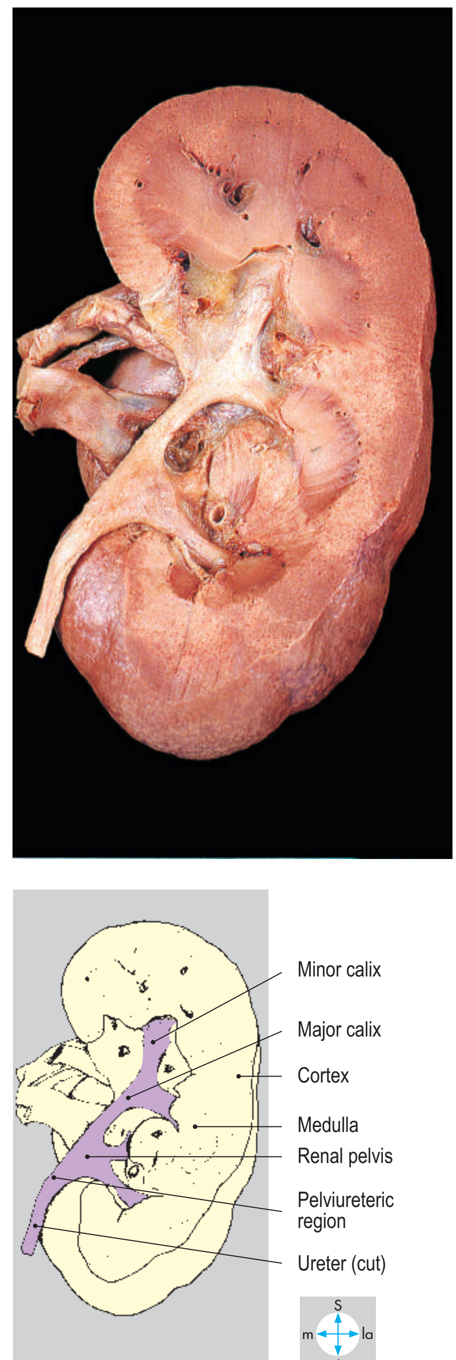


Fig. 4.83 Right kidney dissected from behind to show the renal pelvis and calices.

twelfth ribs, below which run the subcostal nerves and vessels. On the left the upper pole is also related, through the diaphragm, to the pleura and eleventh rib. The medial border of each kidney overlaps psoas major (Fig. 4.79), while the inferolateral portion is related to quadratus lumborum and transversus abdominis and to the first lumbar nerve.

The anterior relations of the kidneys are asymmetric. On the right, from above downwards, they include the bare area of the liver, the second part of the duodenum (Fig. 4.80), the right flexure of the colon and coils of jejunum. The medial border of the right kidney is related to the inferior vena cava, the renal vessels and the upper part of the ureter (Fig. 4.84).

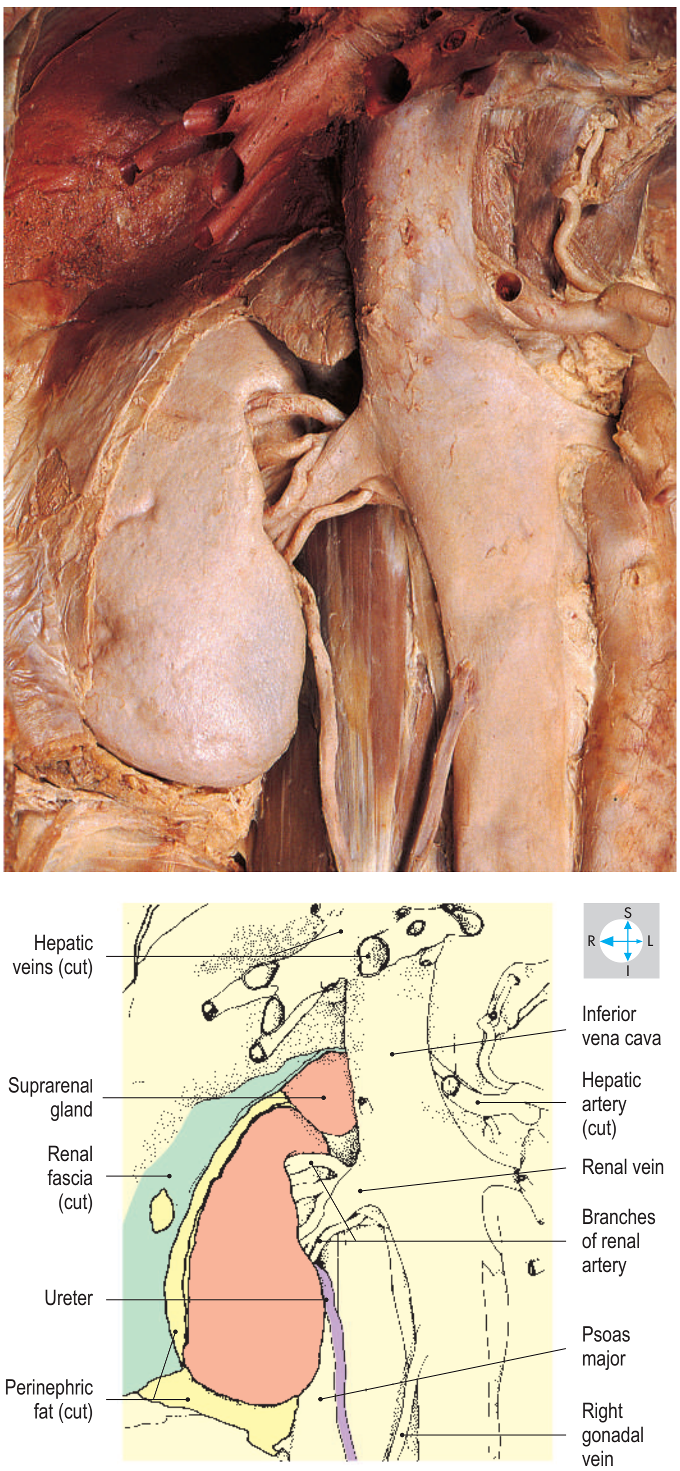


Fig. 4.84 Right kidney and suprarenal gland seen within the renal fascia and perinephric fat, part of which has been removed.

On the left, from above downwards, the anterior relations include the stomach and spleen, the splenic vessels, the tail of the pancreas, the left colic flexure and coils of jejunum. The medial border relates to the suprarenal gland, the renal and suprarenal vessels, the left gonadal vein and the proximal part of the ureter (Fig. 4.87).

Renal vessels

At the level of the first lumbar vertebra the aorta usually supplies one renal artery to each kidney (Fig. 4.85). Each artery lies behind the corresponding vein, and the artery on the right crosses behind the inferior vena cava. However, there are often supernumerary (anomalous, aberrant or accessory) renal arteries arising from the aorta above or below the typical vessel. Regardless of its origin, each renal artery divides as it approaches the kidney and all the branches usually traverse the hilum. However, a polar artery may occasionally be found entering the medial border of the organ above or below the hilum (Figs 4.81 & 4.87). Stenosis of a renal artery can lead to systemic arterial hypertension.

Several veins unite near the renal hilum, anterior to the arteries, forming the renal vein. On the right, the vein runs a short course to terminate in the inferior vena cava. The left renal vein is longer and usually receives the suprarenal and gonadal veins before passing in front of the aorta to reach the inferior vena cava (Fig. 4.79). Because of its termination, the left gonadal vein may become dilated if the renal vein is obstructed. In the male, this can lead to swelling of the pampiniform plexus within the scrotum (varicocele; p. 150).

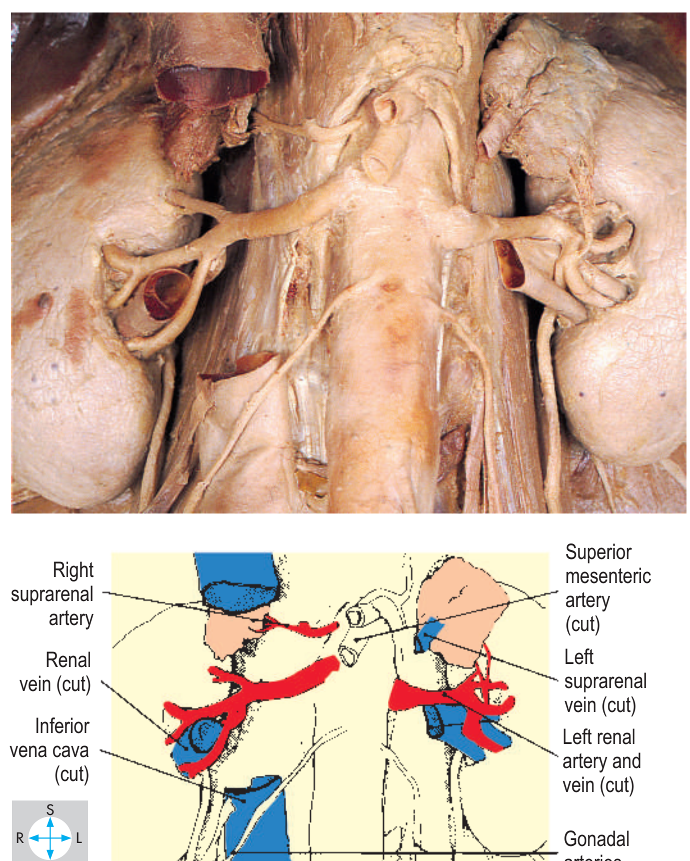


Fig. 4.85 Renal arteries exposed by removal of the renal veins and a portion of the inferior vena cava.

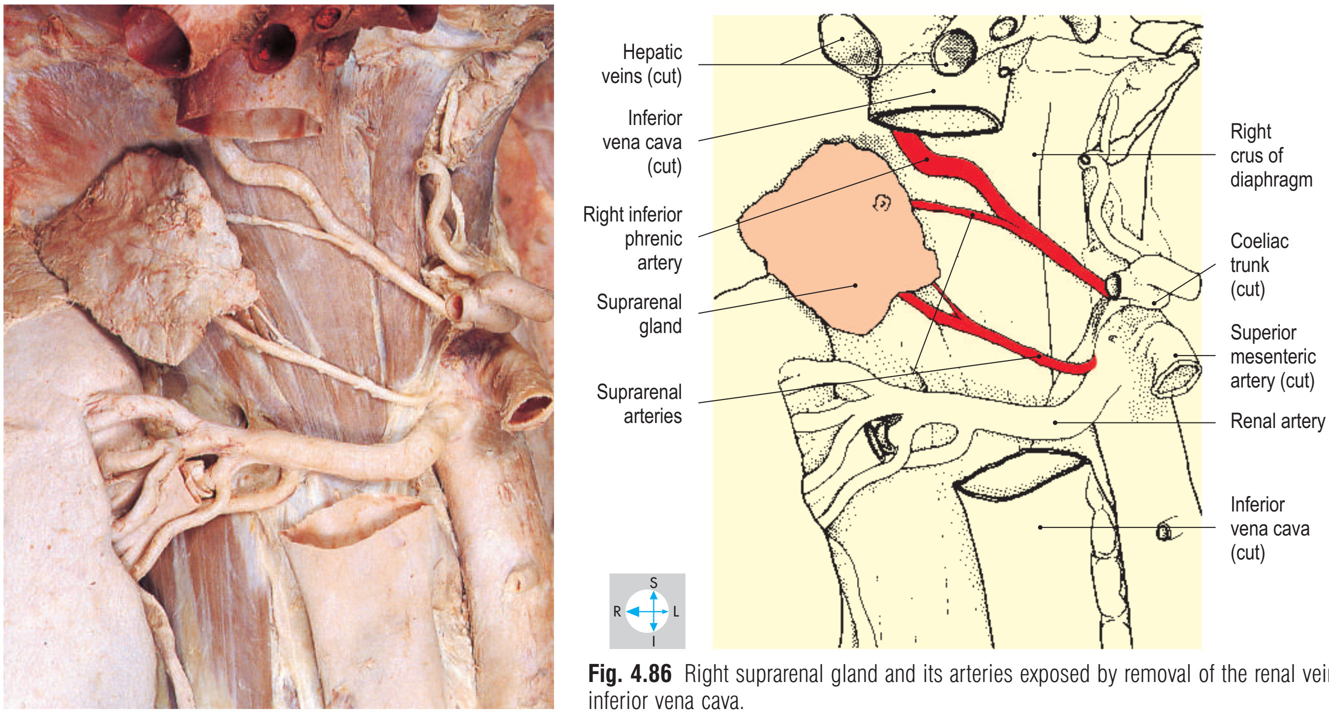


Fig. 4.86 Right suprarenal gland and its arteries exposed by removal of the renal vein and a portion of the inferior vena cava.

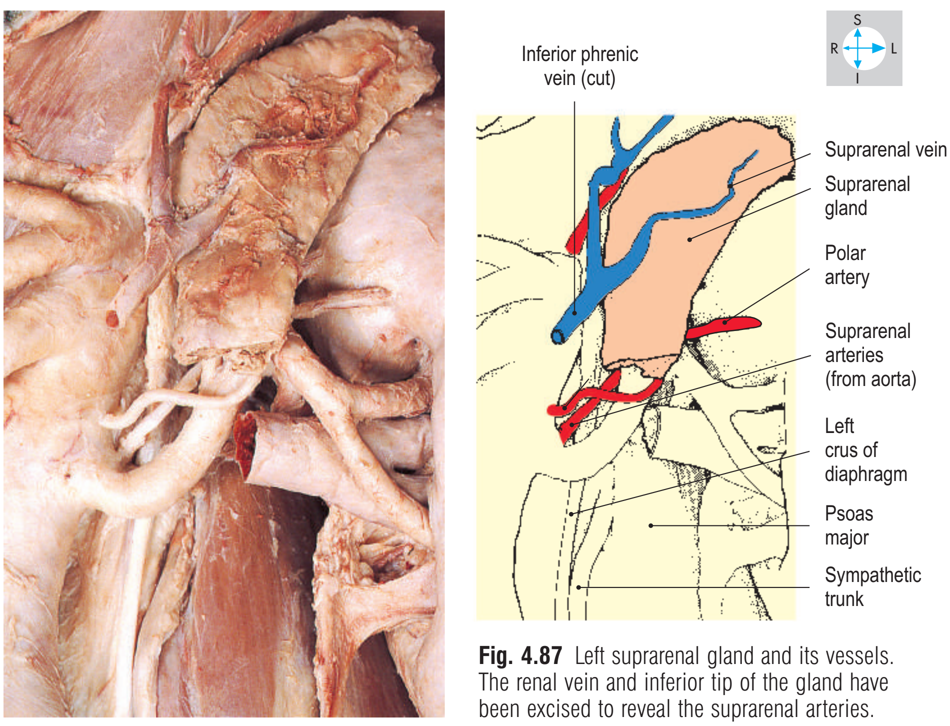


Fig. 4.87 Left suprarenal gland and its vessels. The renal vein and inferior tip of the gland have been excised to reveal the suprarenal arteries.

Suprarenal glands

The suprarenal glands lie adjacent to the superior poles of the kidneys, embedded in the perinephric fat. On the right, the gland is tetrahedral and occupies the angle between the superior pole of the kidney and the inferior vena cava (Fig. 4.86). The left gland is crescentic and is applied to the medial border of the kidney above the hilum (Fig. 4.87).

The blood supply to the suprarenal glands is provided by branches of the renal and inferior phrenic arteries and the aorta. The right suprarenal vein is very short and enters the inferior vena cava directly while that on the left descends to enter the left renal vein.

The medulla of each suprarenal gland is richly innervated by preganglionic sympathetic nerves from the adjacent part of the sympathetic trunk.

Abdominal parts of ureters

From the pelviureteric region, each ureter descends through the retroperitoneal tissues of the posterior abdominal wall as far as the pelvic brim. Here it crosses in front of the external iliac vessels and continues down the lateral wall of the pelvis (p. 222). Within the abdomen, the ureter lies on psoas major (Fig. 4.84), behind which are the lumbar transverse processes (Fig. 4.82).

The right ureter commences behind the descending duodenum and is crossed by the root of the mesentery, the gonadal vessels and branches of the superior mesenteric artery and accompanying veins. This ureter is also related to coils of small intestine, and sometimes to the caecum and appendix. The left ureter is covered initially by the pancreas and is subsequently crossed by the gonadal vessels, branches of the inferior mesenteric artery and vein (Fig. 4.76) and coils of small intestine and sigmoid colon. At the pelvic brim, it passes behind the root of the sigmoid mesocolon.

Renal calculi may impact where the ureters narrow at the pelviureteric junction, near the pelvic brim and at the entrance to the bladder.

The blood supply to the abdominal part of the ureter is derived from branches of the renal artery, supplemented by minute peritoneal vessels.

Abdominal Aorta

The aorta enters the abdomen behind the median arcuate ligament of the diaphragm at the level of the twelfth thoracic vertebra. It descends behind the peritoneum, inclining slightly to the left of the midline to its bifurcation in front of the fourth lumbar vertebra (Fig. 4.89). Throughout its course, the abdominal aorta is accompanied by lymph vessels and nodes and is surrounded by a plexus of autonomic nerves (pp 196–199).

Posterior to the aorta lie the left lumbar veins, the anterior longitudinal ligament and the lumbar vertebral bodies. Anterior relations, from above downwards, include the body of the pancreas, the splenic and left renal veins, the horizontal duodenum, the root of the mesentery and coils of small intestine.

To the right of the aorta lie the right crus of the diaphragm and the inferior vena cava (Fig. 4.89). On the left are the left diaphragmatic crus, suprarenal gland and kidney.

Degenerative arterial disease often affects the abdominal aorta, which may become narrowed or may dilate (abdominal aortic aneurysm) and rupture causing fatal internal haemorrhage.

Visceral branches

Three arteries arise from the anterior aspect of the aorta to supply the alimentary organs, while three pairs of lateral branches pass to the suprarenals, kidneys and gonads, respectively.

The coeliac and superior mesenteric arteries arise at the levels of the twelfth thoracic and first lumbar vertebrae, respectively, while the smaller inferior mesenteric artery takes origin at the level of the third lumbar vertebra (Fig. 4.89).

Details of the course and distribution of each of these arteries are given on pp 161, 177, 182.

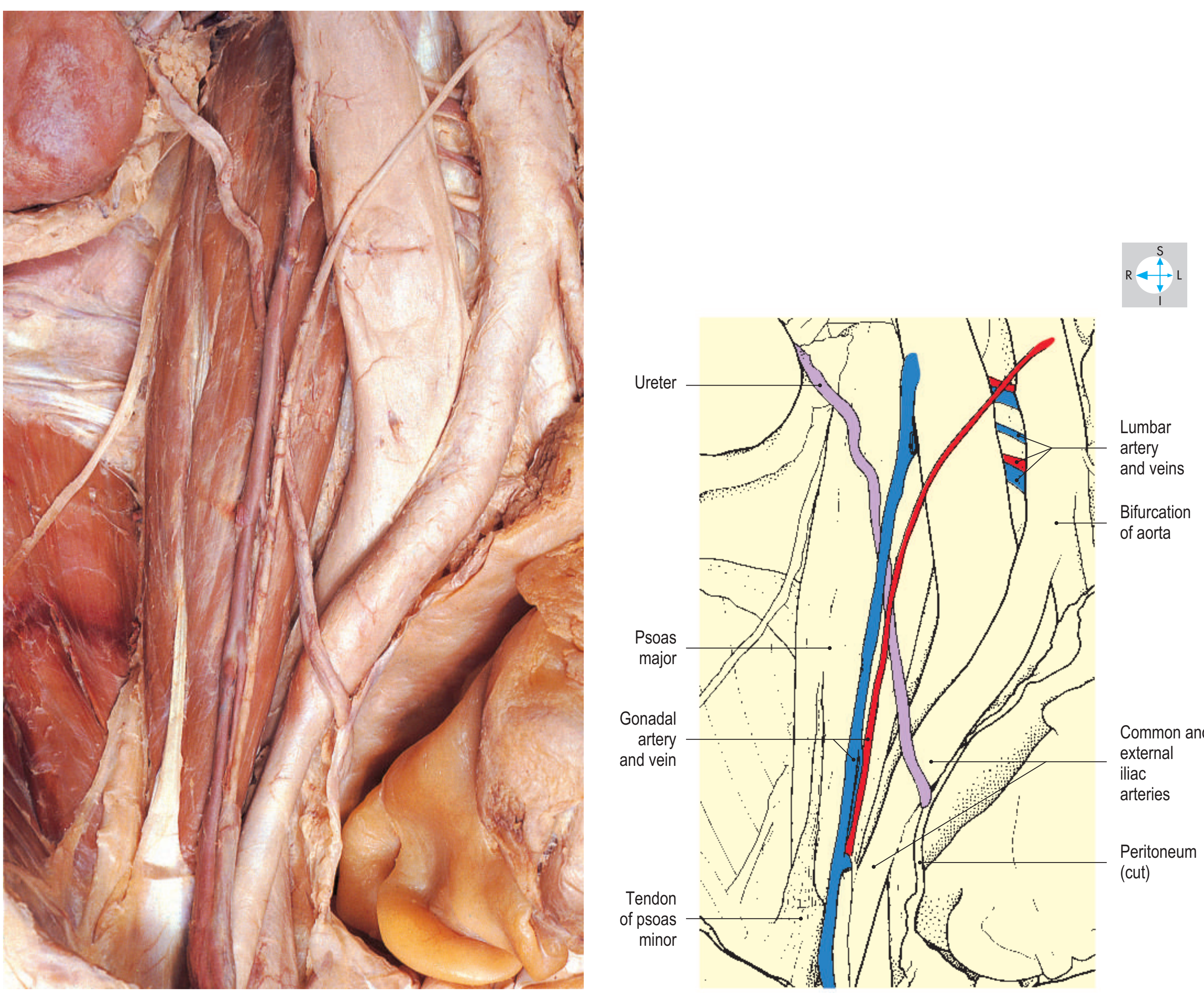


Fig. 4.88 Right gonadal vessels within the abdomen. Several lumbar vessels are also seen.

The suprarenal branches of the aorta (Fig. 4.89) are small and variable and are often supplemented by branches from the inferior phrenic and renal arteries (Figs 4.86 & 4.92). The renal arteries usually arise at the level of the first lumbar vertebra but variations are common (p. 189).

The long and slender gonadal (testicular or ovarian) arteries usually arise from the aorta just below the renal arteries (Fig. 4.89). The gonadal artery on the right crosses in front of the inferior vena cava, and the arteries of both sides incline downwards and laterally through the retroperitoneal tissues on the psoas major muscles (Fig. 4.88). Each artery is accompanied by one or more gonadal veins and crosses anterior to the ureters but posterior to blood vessels supplying the intestines. Inferiorly, the testicular artery follows the psoas major round the pelvic brim and enters the deep inguinal ring (Fig. 4.23). The ovarian artery crosses the external iliac vessels and pelvic brim to reach the ovary within the pelvis (p. 221).

Parietal branches

These vessels supply the diaphragm and the posterior walls of the abdomen and pelvis. The paired inferior phrenic arteries are the first branches of the aorta within the abdomen (Figs 4.86, 4.89 & 4.92) and often furnish small branches to the suprarenal glands before arching upwards and laterally on the abdominal surface of the diaphragm.

Four pairs of lumbar arteries usually arise from the posterolateral aspect of the aorta and supply the posterior abdominal wall (Figs 4.88, 4.90 & 4.103). The arteries on the right cross behind the inferior vena cava to curve round the side of the corresponding vertebral body deep to psoas major.

A single small vessel, the median sacral artery, arises from the back of the aortic bifurcation and descends behind the left common iliac vein to reach the anterior surface of the sacrum (Fig. 4.90).

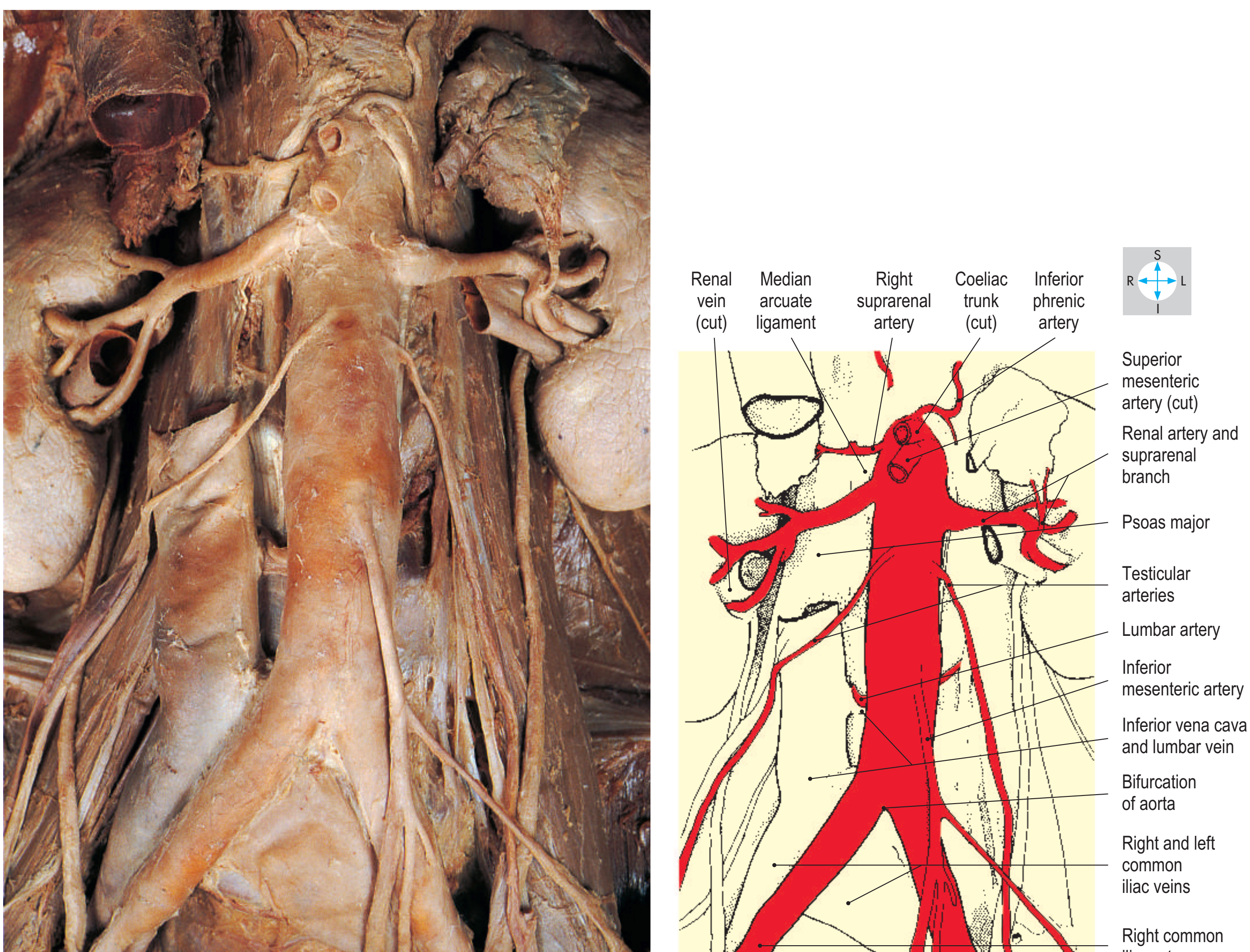


Fig. 4.89 Abdominal aorta and its branches, seen after removal of the renal veins and part of the inferior vena cava.

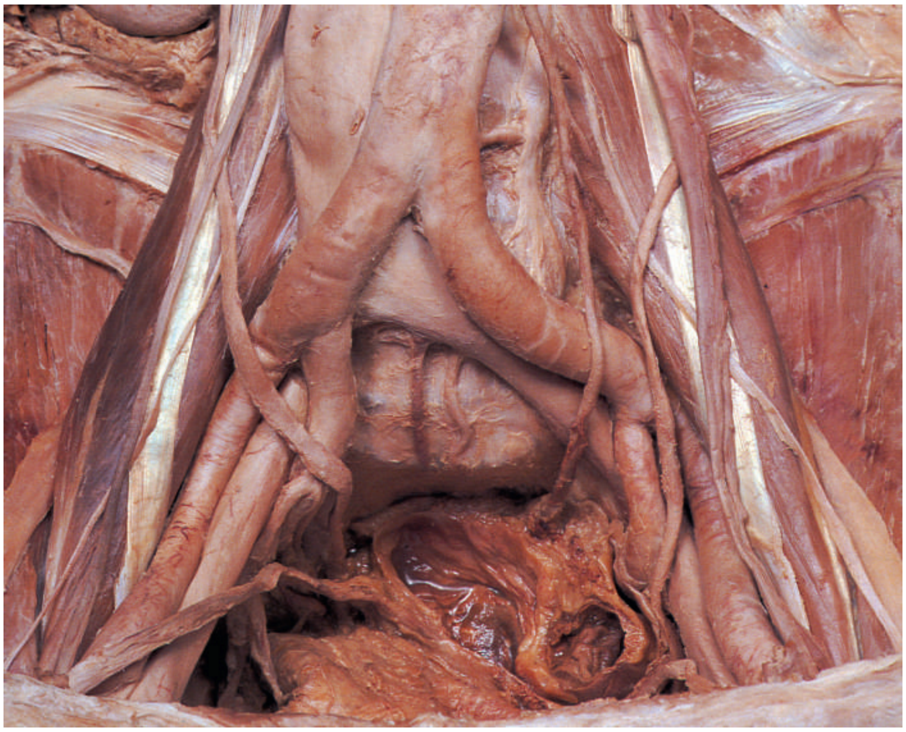
Iliac Vessels

Common and external iliac vessels

The aortic bifurcation gives rise to the two common iliac arteries, which incline downwards and laterally on the medial aspects of psoas major (Fig. 4.90). The vessels terminate in front of the sacroiliac joints by dividing into internal and external iliac arteries. The right common iliac artery crosses in front of the left common iliac vein, while that on the left is crossed by the inferior mesenteric vessels. The ureter crosses either the lower end of the common iliac artery or the commencement of its external branch (Fig. 4.90). The internal iliac artery begins at the bifurcation of the common iliac artery and descends on the lateral wall of the pelvis (p. 238).

The external iliac artery curves round the pelvic brim (Fig. 4.90) and, passing behind the inguinal ligament, enters the thigh as the femoral artery (Fig. 6.19). The external iliac artery is accompanied on its medial side by the corresponding vein and posterolaterally by psoas major. The external iliac vessels are crossed by the ovarian vessels in the female and by the ductus deferens in the male. Near the inguinal ligament the artery gives off the inferior epigastric artery, which runs upwards and medially, medial to the deep inguinal ring (Figs 4.18 & 4.23).

Each external iliac vein begins behind the inguinal ligament as the continuation of the femoral vein (Fig. 4.90). It receives the inferior epigastric vein, ascends on the medial side of the corresponding artery and joins the internal iliac vein (p. 145) to form the common iliac vein. The two common iliac veins continue upwards and medially, passing behind the right common iliac artery, by which they may be compressed, before uniting to form the inferior vena cava.



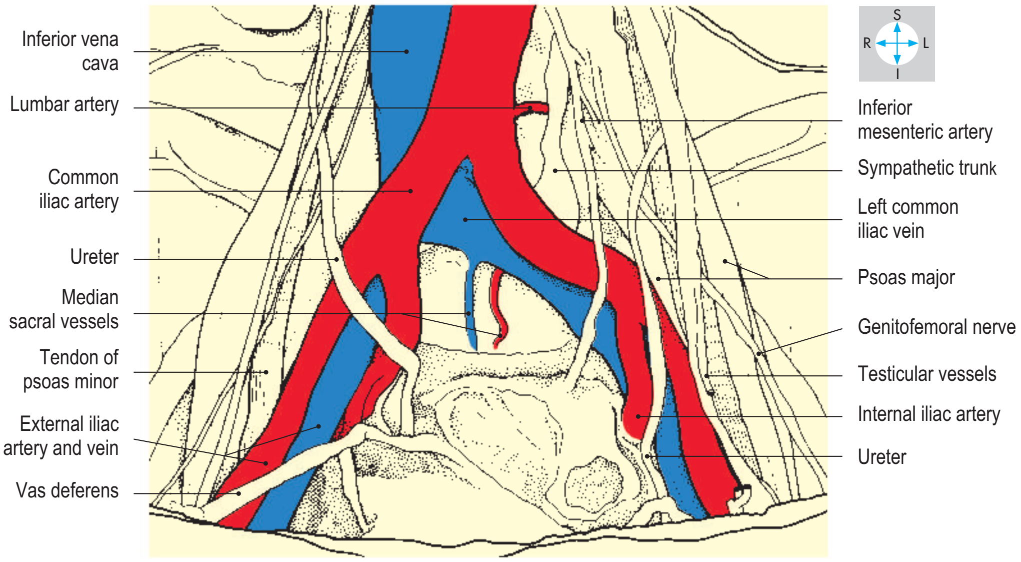


Fig. 4.90 Male pelvis and lower abdomen showing the common and external iliac vessels and some of their relations.

Inferior Vena Cava

The inferior vena cava is formed at the level of the fifth lumbar vertebra, a little to the right of the midline (Fig. 4.91). It ascends the posterior abdominal wall and pierces the central tendon of the diaphragm to enter the thorax at the level of the eighth thoracic vertebra (Fig. 4.92).

Behind the inferior vena cava lie the lumbar vertebral bodies, the anterior longitudinal ligament, the right sympathetic chain and right psoas major muscle. In addition, the right renal and right lumbar arteries cross behind the vena cava (Figs 4.88 & 4.89) and most of the right suprarenal gland lies posterior to the vessel (Fig. 4.92).

Near its commencement, the inferior vena cava is covered anteriorly by peritoneum and coils of small intestine. Superiorly, it is crossed by the root of the mesentery, the right gonadal artery (Fig. 4.88) and the third part of the duodenum (Fig. 4.52). It continues behind the omental foramen (Fig. 4.38) and then grooves the posterior surface of the liver (Fig. 4.58) before piercing the diaphragm.

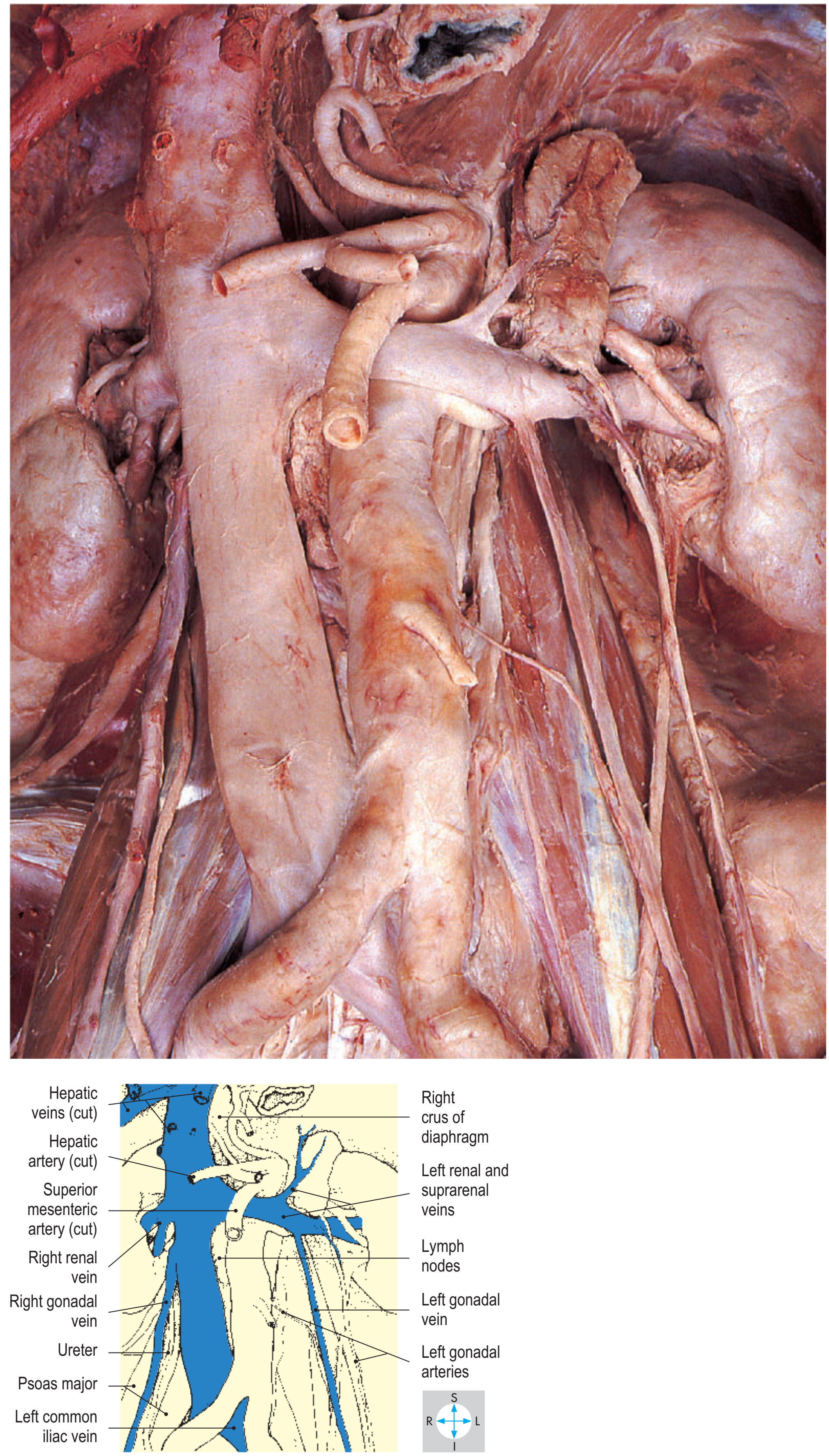


Fig. 4.91 Course and principal tributaries of the inferior vena cava.

To the right of the vena cava lie the gonadal vessels, the ureter, the kidney and renal vessels (Fig. 4.91) and the right lobe of the liver. To the left lie the aorta with its associated lymph nodes, the right crus of the diaphragm and the caudate lobe of the liver.

Tributaries

The venous drainage of the suprarenal glands, the kidneys and the gonads is asymmetric. On the right, each of these organs is drained by a vein that passes directly into the inferior vena cava (Figs 4.91 & 4.92) but on the left, the renal vein receives the suprarenal and gonadal veins before crossing in front of the aorta to reach the vena cava. Immediately before its passage through the diaphragm the inferior vena cava receives several large hepatic veins (Fig. 4.92).

The parietal tributaries of the inferior vena cava drain the diaphragm and the posterior pelvic and abdominal walls. The lumbar and median sacral veins (Figs 4.88 & 4.90) accompany the corresponding arteries, the upper lumbar veins often communicating with the renal, suprarenal, azygos and hemiazygos veins. Two or more inferior phrenic veins drain the undersurface of the diaphragm (Fig. 4.92).

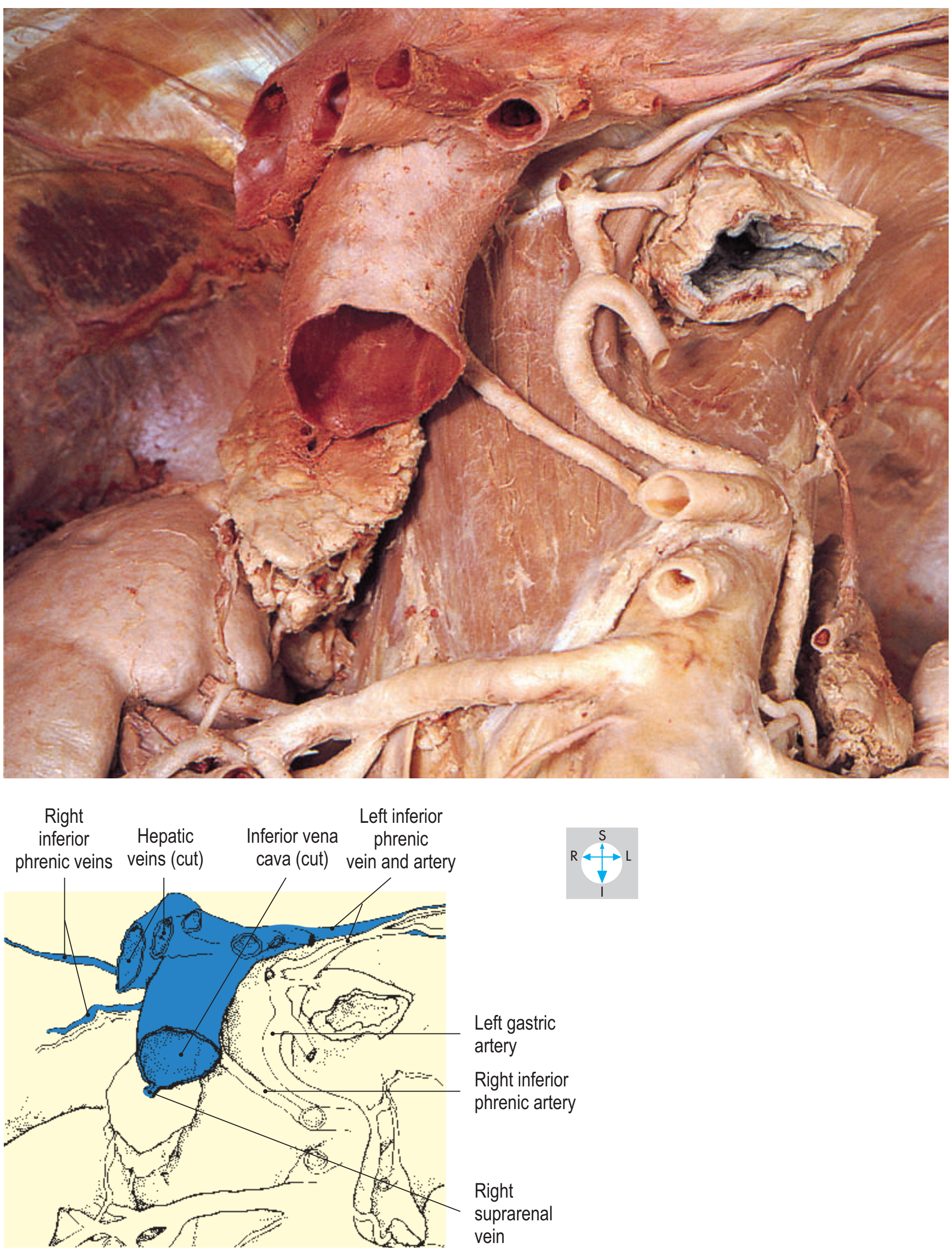


Fig. 4.92 Upper part of inferior vena cava showing its tributaries. In this specimen, the left inferior phrenic artery arises from the left gastric artery.

Lymphatics of the Abdomen

The lymphatic vessels and nodes of the abdomen drain the abdominal and pelvic organs as well as the pelvic walls and the lower part of the abdominal wall. (The upper part of the abdominal wall is drained by the internal thoracic and axillary nodes; p. 145.) In addition, the abdominal lymphatics receive lymph from the lower limb, the gonads and the perineum.

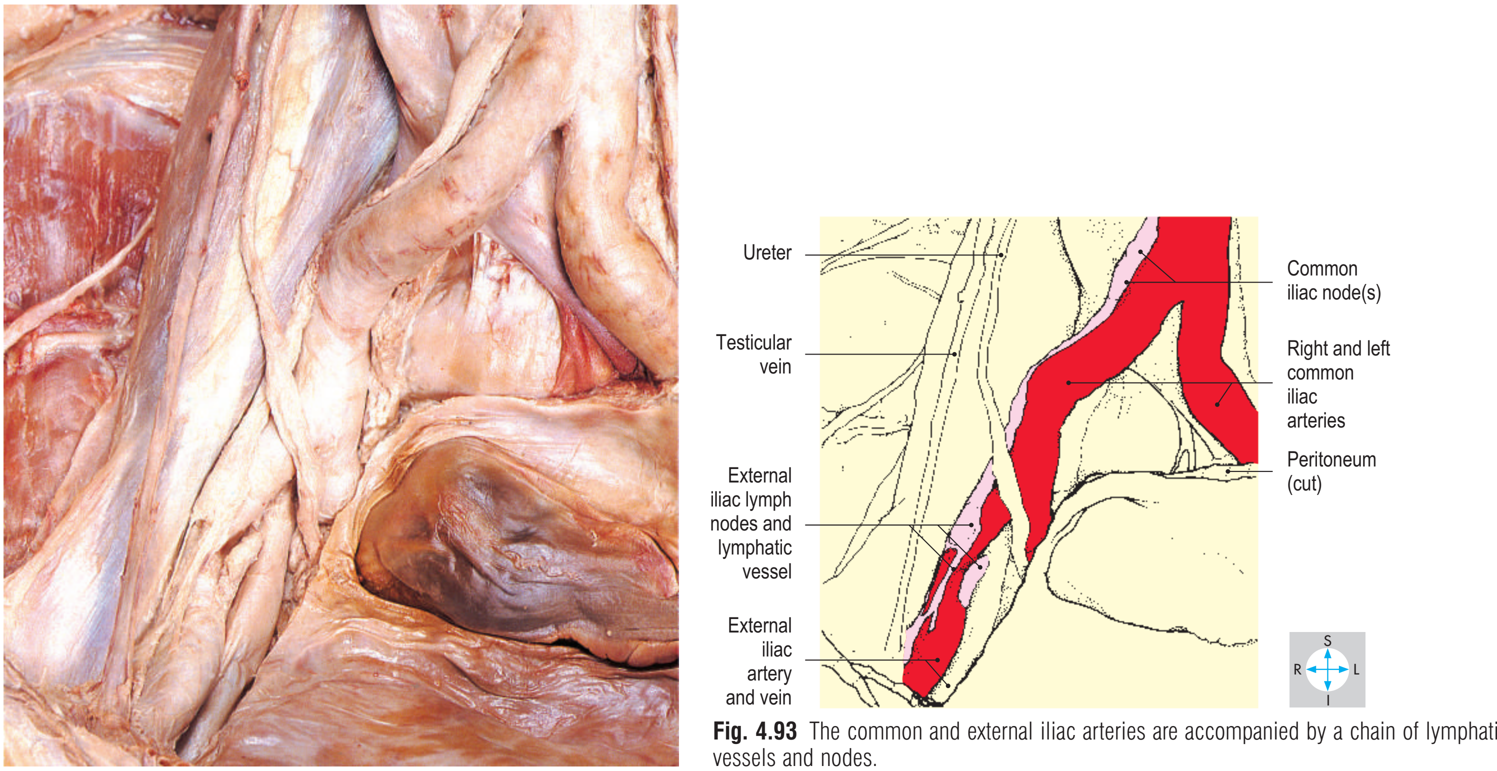


Fig. 4.93 The common and external iliac arteries are accompanied by a chain of lymphatic vessels and nodes.

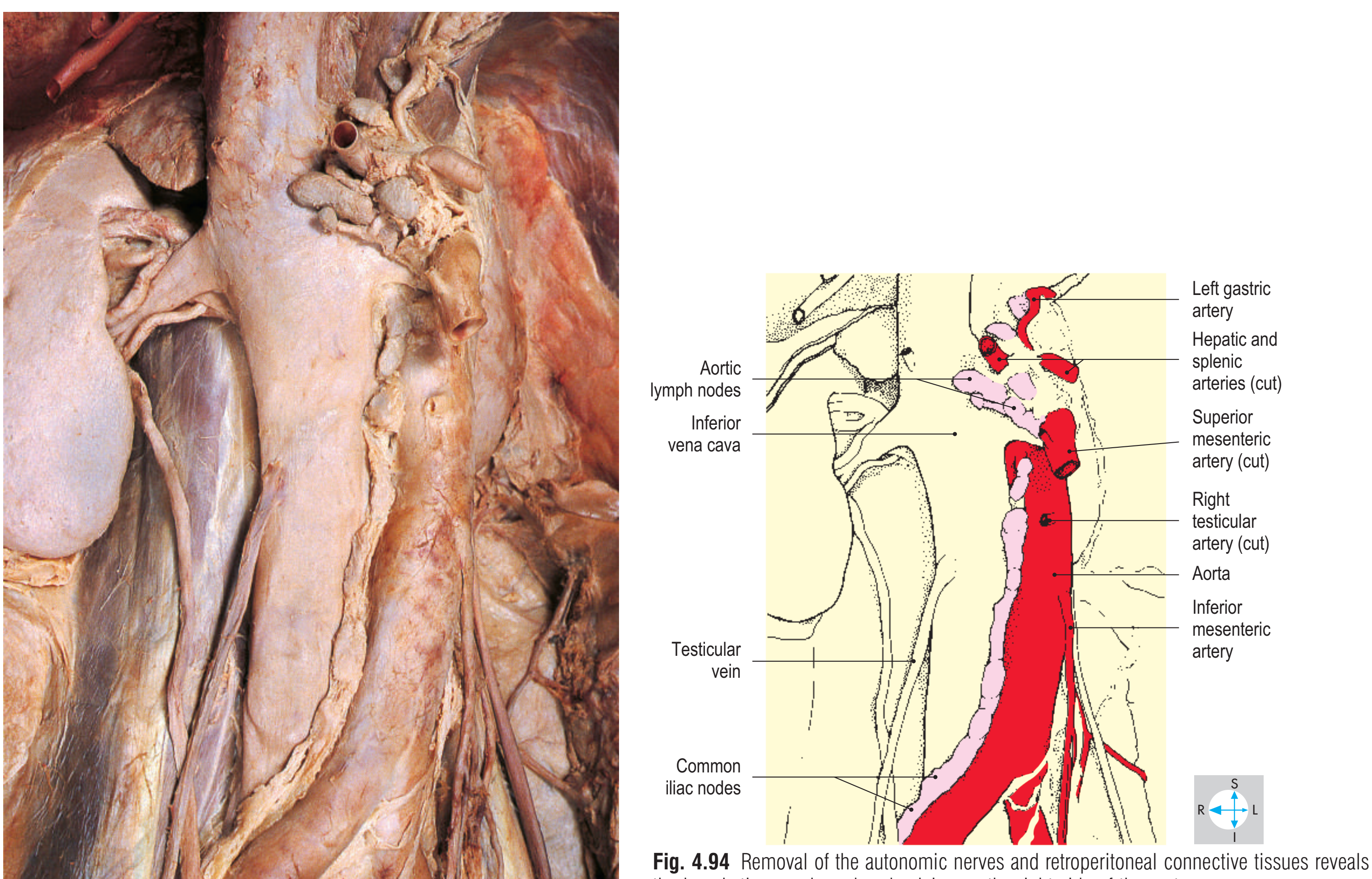


Fig. 4.94 Removal of the autonomic nerves and retroperitoneal connective tissues reveals the lymphatic vessels and nodes lying on the right side of the aorta.

Some lymph nodes are situated adjacent to the organs they drain and include those of the liver and spleen and in the hila of the kidneys. The lymphatic vessels draining most of the abdominal organs accompany blood vessels and pass to nodes grouped around the aorta. Often, lymph passes through intermediate nodes situated along the courses of the arteries. Most of the lymph from the abdominal walls and viscera eventually drains into the thoracic duct.

Because of their deep position, most intra-abdominal lymph nodes are not palpable in the living subject, even when enlarged.

Iliac lymph nodes

The external iliac nodes (Fig. 4.93) receive lymph from the lower limb and perineum via the deep inguinal nodes. In addition, the iliac nodes drain the deeper layers of the abdominal wall below the level of the umbilicus via lymphatic vessels accompanying the inferior epigastric vessels. Lymph from the superficial tissues of the lower abdominal wall reaches the external iliac nodes, having passed first to superficial and then to deep inguinal nodes.

The internal iliac nodes drain the pelvic walls and floor and some of the pelvic organs, including the bladder, lower part of the rectum, prostate and uterus. However, lymph from most of the rectum, sigmoid colon and ovaries drains to the aortic nodes. From the external and internal iliac nodes lymph passes to nodes alongside the common iliac artery (Fig. 4.93) and subsequently to the aortic nodes.

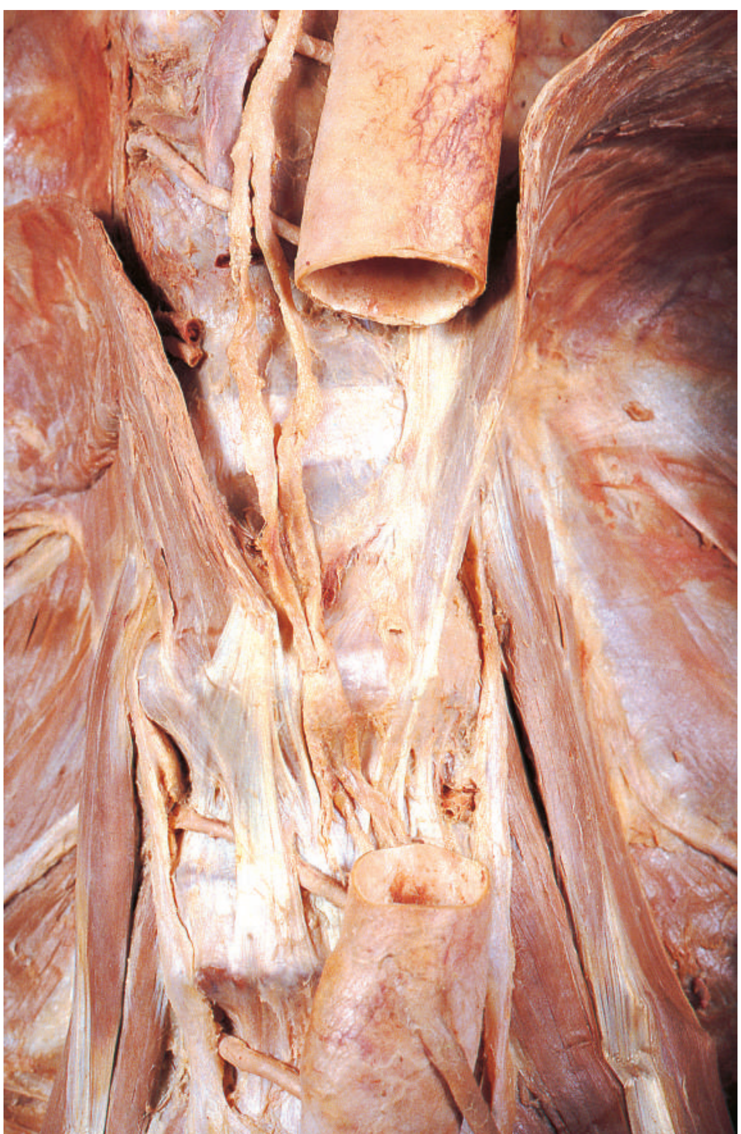
Aortic nodes

The major abdominal lymphatic vessels and their associated nodes are arranged alongside the aorta (Fig. 4.94). The nodes on each side of the aorta receive lymph from the common iliac nodes, posterior abdominal wall, gonads, kidneys and suprarenal glands, while nodes lying immediately anterior to the aorta drain the digestive organs.

Nodes around the origin of the inferior mesenteric artery drain lymph from most of the rectum and the sigmoid and descending parts of the colon. Nodes lying adjacent to the origins of the superior mesenteric and coeliac arteries drain the spleen, pancreas, liver, stomach, small intestine and the large intestine as far as the splenic flexure.

Cisterna chyli

Efferent lymphatics from the aortic nodes drain into the cisterna chyli (Fig. 4.95). This fusiform sac lies at the level of the upper two lumbar vertebrae, adjacent to the right crus of the diaphragm. It lies behind the right border of the aorta and opens superiorly into the thoracic duct. The duct ascends through the aortic opening of the diaphragm and continues through the thorax to drain into the great veins in the root of the neck (p. 62).



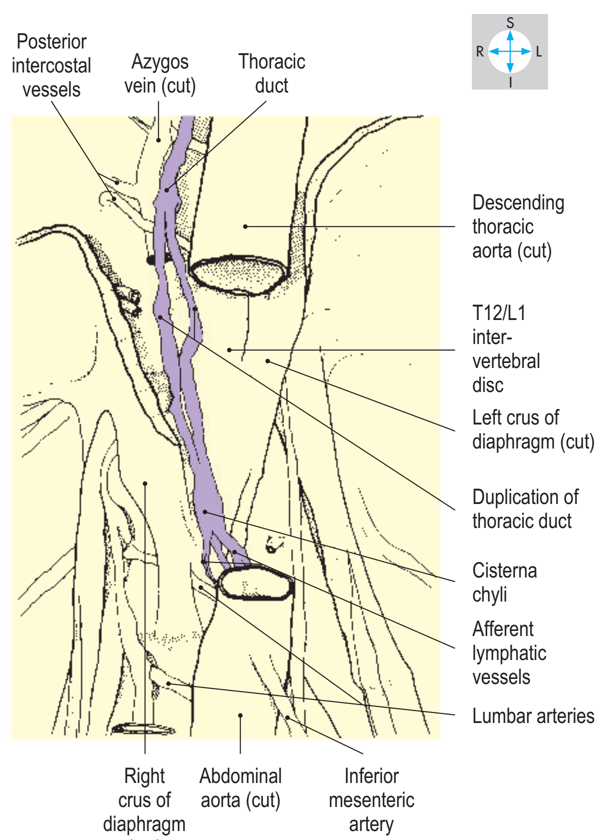


Fig. 4.95 Cisterna chyli, revealed by removal of parts of the crura of the diaphragm and a segment of aorta.

Autonomic Nerves of the Abdomen

The autonomic innervation to the abdominal viscera is provided by perivascular plexuses of nerves accompanying the arterial supply to each organ. The plexuses comprise sympathetic and parasympathetic fibres of both motor and sensory type. The autonomic nerves control glandular secretion, smooth muscle activity and vasomotor tone; they are also sensory, mediating the distension of hollow organs and the tension on mesenteries.

Parasympathetic nerves

Most of the parasympathetic supply is provided by the vagus (X cranial) nerves, but there are small contributions to the distal part of the colon from branches of the pelvic splanchnic nerves that arise from the sacral spinal nerves. The vagi and the pelvic splanchnic nerves carry preganglionic parasympathetic fibres, which synapse with postganglionic fibres in the walls of the relevant organs.

From the oesophageal plexus (p. 62) two or more vagal trunks (gastric nerves) emerge and accompany the oesophagus through the diaphragm. The anterior trunk, derived mostly from the left vagus nerve (Fig. 4.96), enters the abdomen in front of the oesophagus and gives branches to the anterior surface of the stomach and to the liver. The posterior trunk, derived mostly from the right vagus, descends behind the oesophagus and supplies the posterior surface of the stomach and the coeliac plexus. From this plexus, some vagal fibres pass inferiorly to the root of the superior mesenteric artery. The perivascular plexuses that accompany branches of the coeliac and superior mesenteric arteries convey these vagal fibres to all parts of the digestive system as far distally as the splenic flexure of the colon.

The remainder of the large intestine receives its parasympathetic supply from branches of the pelvic splanchnic nerves (nervi erigentes). These ascend through plexuses in the pelvis (p. 236) and cross the left common iliac vessels in the root of the sigmoid mesocolon to reach the root of the inferior mesenteric artery. By accompanying branches of this artery, parasympathetic fibres from the sacral segments of the spinal cord supply the descending and sigmoid parts of the colon and the rectum.

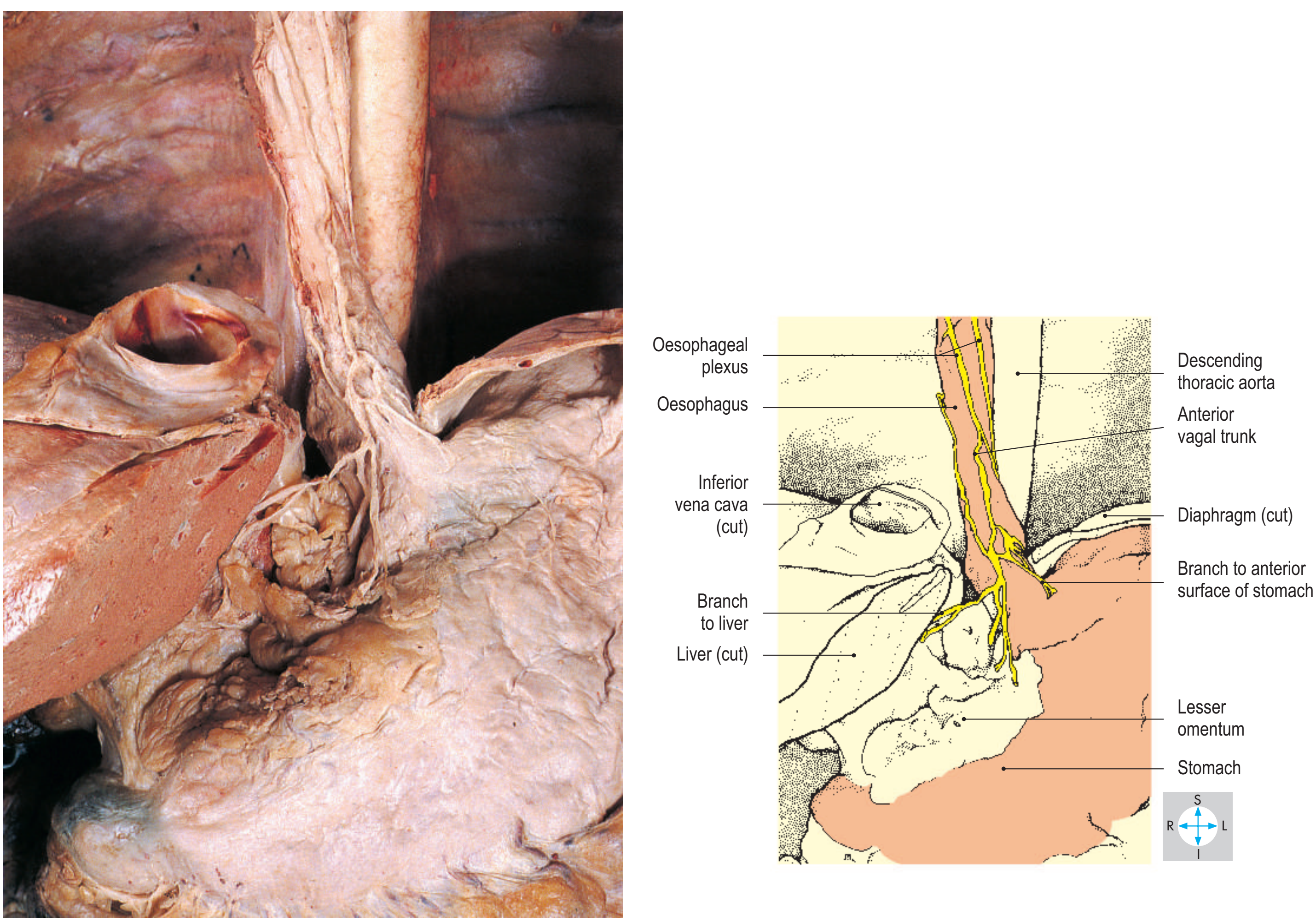


Fig. 4.96 Anterior vagal trunk, revealed by removal of part of the diaphragm and exposure of the lower oesophagus.

Sympathetic nerves

The sympathetic system in the abdomen comprises two gangliated trunks and a network of nerves (the aortic or prevertebral plexuses) covering the surface of the aorta.

Each sympathetic trunk enters the abdomen behind the medial arcuate ligament of the diaphragm (Fig. 4.97) and descends along the medial border of psoas major, the trunk on the right lying posterior to the inferior vena cava. Each trunk passes behind the common iliac vessels and crosses the pelvic inlet at the ala of the sacrum.

Within the abdomen, each trunk bears five lumbar ganglia. Only the upper two ganglia receive fibres from the central nervous system. These preganglionic sympathetic fibres are conveyed in white rami communicantes arising from the first and second lumbar spinal nerves. Some preganglionic fibres synapse in the sympathetic trunk, while others pass into branches of the trunk and synapse nearer the target organs.

Each ganglion of the trunk gives a branch, a grey ramus communicans, to the corresponding spinal nerve. The postganglionic sympathetic fibres in the grey rami are distributed to the body wall and the lower limb. In addition, the ganglia supply branches (containing both pre- and postganglionic fibres) to the abdominal and pelvic organs. Branches from the upper ganglia reinforce the aortic plexuses, while the lumbar splanchnic nerves descend from the lower ganglia and cross anterior to the common iliac vessels (Fig. 4.98). The lumbar splanchnic nerves from the right and left trunks unite below the bifurcation of the aorta to form the hypogastric plexus from which branches descend to reach the pelvic autonomic plexuses (p. 236).

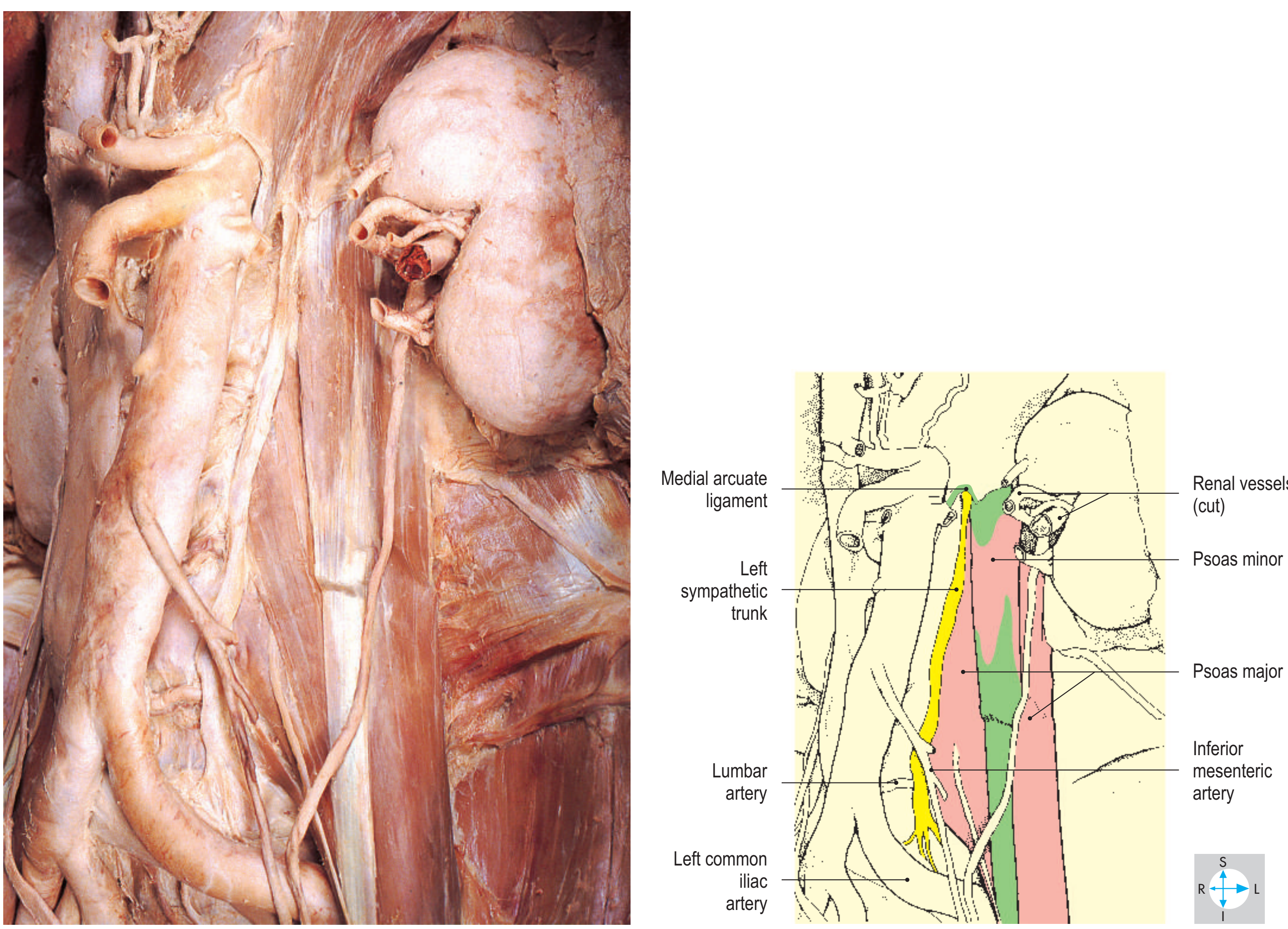


Fig. 4.97 Lumbar portion of the left sympathetic trunk after removal of the aortic plexuses of nerves.

Aortic plexuses

The dense network of autonomic nerves (both parasympathetic and sympathetic) that invests the abdominal aorta (Fig. 4.98) has several component plexuses, which are named according to the larger branches of the aorta. These are the coeliac, aorticorenal, renal, superior mesenteric, intermesenteric and inferior mesenteric plexuses. From these perivascular plexuses, nerves are distributed to the abdominal organs.

The parasympathetic fibres in the aortic plexuses are derived mainly from the posterior vagal trunk, which enters the abdomen on the wall of the oesophagus, while the sympathetic fibres are provided principally by the thoracic splanchnic nerves (p. 64). These branches of the thoracic portions of the sympathetic trunks pierce the crura of the diaphragm to reach the coeliac plexus. Additional sympathetic fibres are provided by the upper ganglia of the lumbar sympathetic chain. Within the aortic plexuses are numerous small ganglia in which the pre- and postganglionic sympathetic fibres synapse.

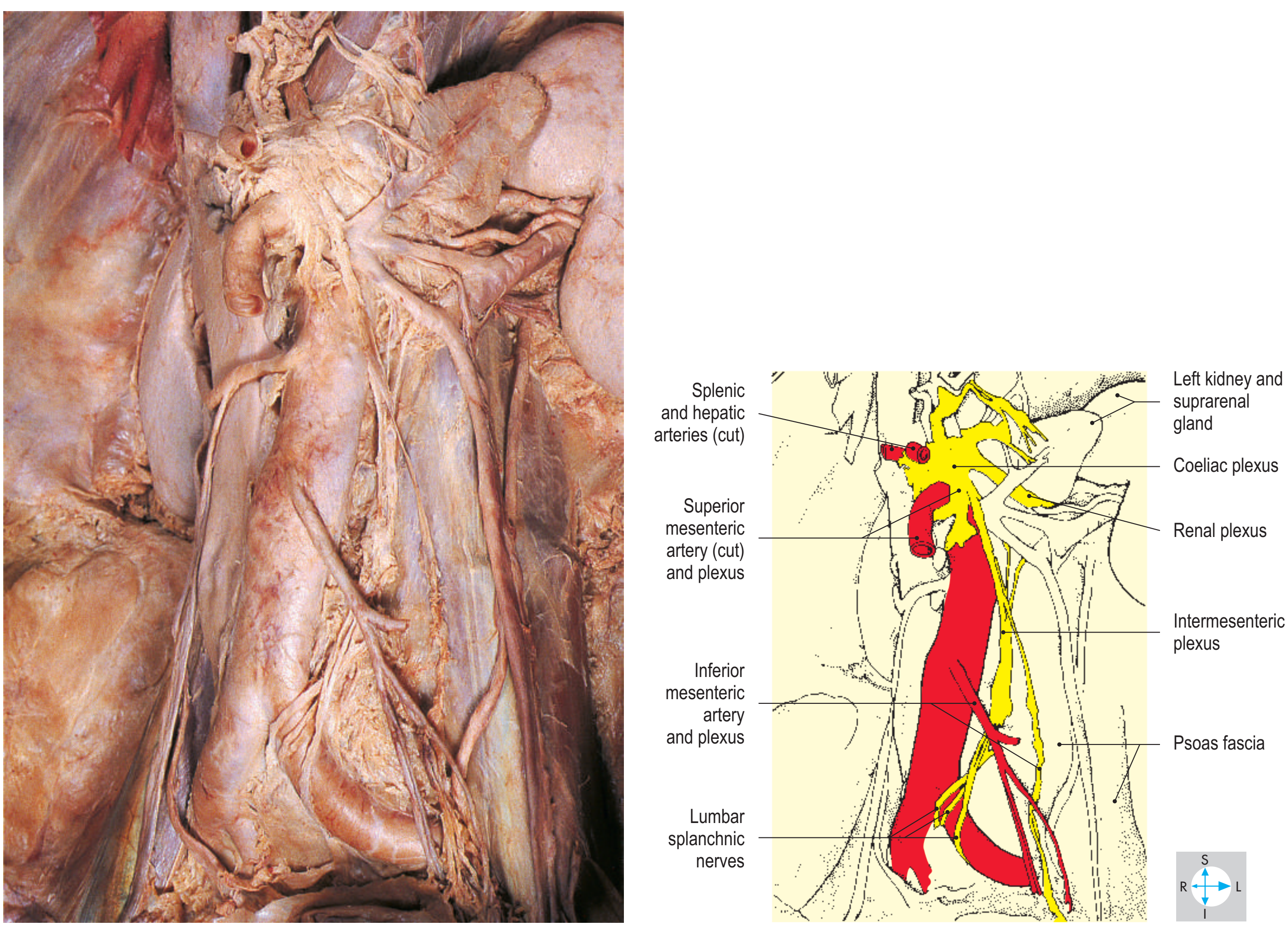


Fig. 4.98 Aortic plexuses of autonomic nerves after removal of aortic nodes and lymph vessels.

Posterior Abdominal Wall

Posterior to the abdominal cavity lie the lumbar spine, the psoas, iliacus and quadratus lumborum muscles, and associated fasciae and nerves (Fig. 4.99). The posterior abdominal wall extends inferiorly to the pelvic brim and superiorly to the attachment of the diaphragm (p. 203), while laterally it merges with the anterolateral abdominal wall. The lumbar spine and the postvertebral muscles (erector spinae) are considered in Chapter 8.

Muscles

Psoas major

This long fusiform muscle (Fig. 4.99) attaches to the sides of the last thoracic and all five lumbar vertebral bodies, to the intervening discs and to the fronts of the lumbar transverse processes. At the side of each lumbar vertebral body, psoas major attaches to a fascial tunnel conveying a lumbar artery and vein (Fig. 4.103).

The muscle inclines downwards, passing behind the inguinal ligament to enter the anterior compartment of the thigh (Fig. 4.100). The psoas major tendon, which also receives most of the fibres of iliacus, passes in front of the hip joint capsule, from which it is separated by a bursa (Fig. 6.68), and attaches to the lesser trochanter of the femur.

Psoas major is innervated by the anterior rami of the upper lumbar nerves and its principal actions are flexion and medial rotation of the hip joint. In addition, the muscle flexes the lumbar spine both anteriorly and laterally. Within the substance of psoas major the anterior rami of the lumbar nerves form the lumbar plexus, whose branches emerge from the lateral, anterior and medial surfaces of the muscle.

Psoas minor

When present, this small muscle lies on the anterior surface of psoas major and gives way to a long narrow tendon (Fig. 4.99), which attaches to the iliopubic eminence of the hip bone.

Iliacus

This fan-shaped muscle attaches to the upper portion of the abdominal surface of the ilium and adjacent part of the sacrum (Fig. 4.100). Most of its fibres attach to the tendon of psoas major although some reach the femur below the lesser trochanter. The muscle is innervated by the femoral nerve (Fig. 4.103) and assists psoas major in flexing the hip joint.

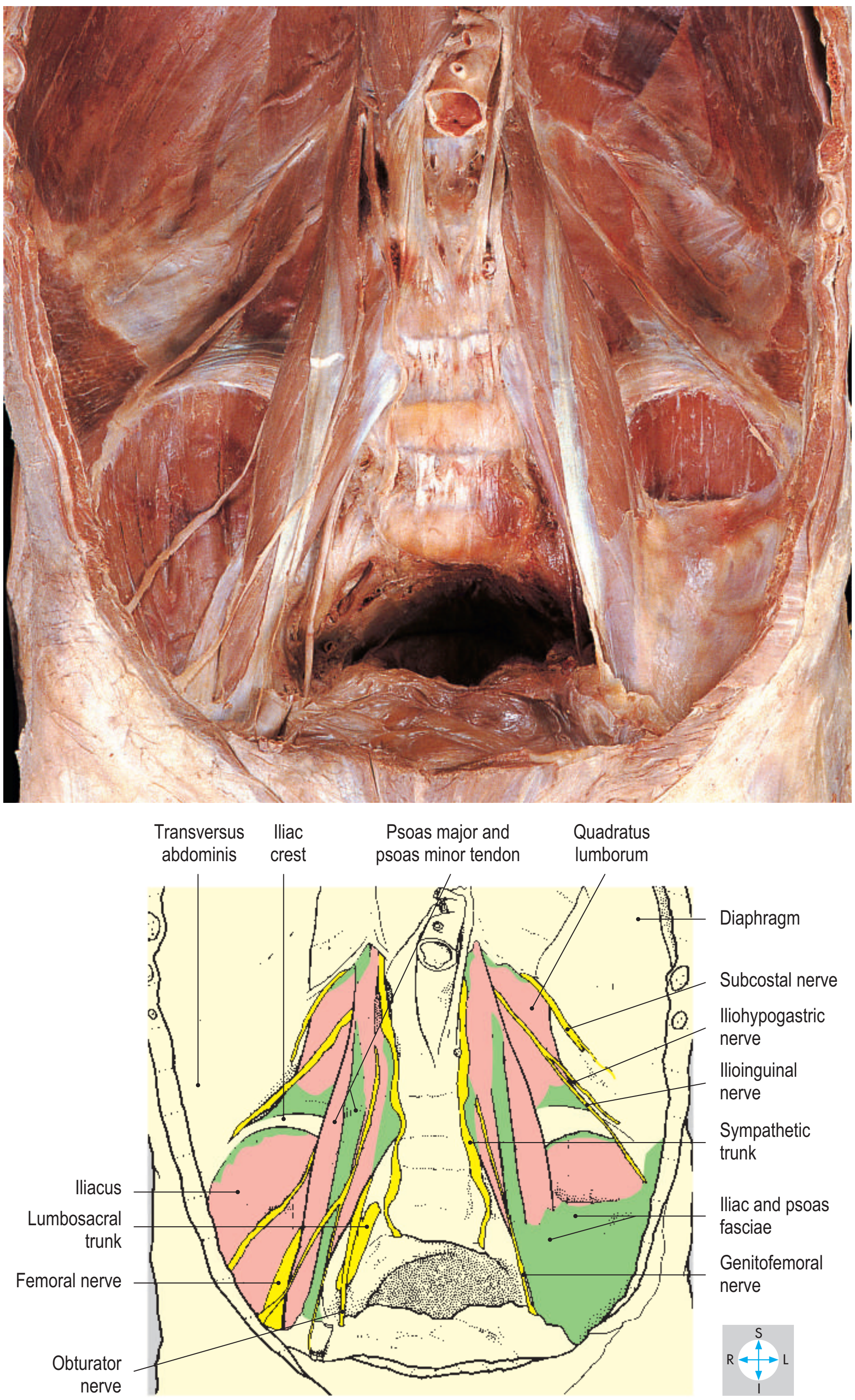


Fig. 4.99 Removal of the abdominal contents reveals the muscles and nerves of the posterior abdominal wall. On one side, some iliac and psoas fasciae have been preserved.

Quadratus lumborum

Quadratus lumborum (Fig. 4.99) is anchored inferiorly to the iliolumbar ligament and adjacent part of the iliac crest. Superiorly, it reaches the medial part of the lower border of the twelfth rib. There are intermediate attachments to the transverse processes of the upper four lumbar vertebrae. This muscle is innervated by the subcostal nerve and anterior rami of the upper three lumbar nerves and is a lateral flexor of the lumbar spine. When the diaphragm contracts during inspiration, quadratus lumborum stabilizes the twelfth rib.

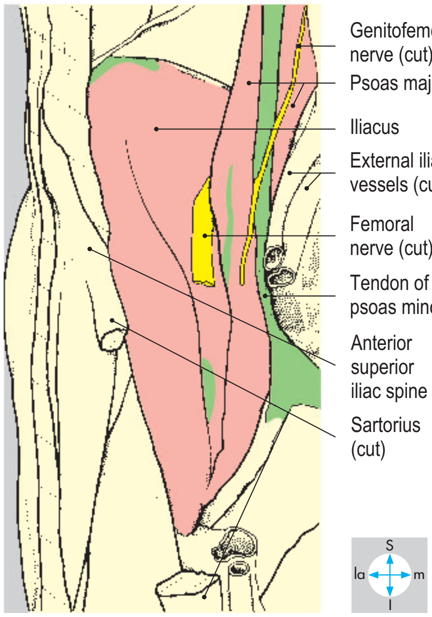


Fig. 4.100 Iliacus and psoas major, seen after removal of the inguinal ligament and part of sartorius. The psoas minor tendon descends to the iliopubic eminence of the hip bone.

Fasciae

The psoas and iliac fasciae form a continuous layer covering the anterior surfaces of their respective muscles (Fig. 4.99). The psoas fascia fuses superiorly with the diaphragmatic fascia and laterally and inferiorly with the transversalis fascia. Fascial thickenings over the upper parts of psoas major and quadratus lumborum form the medial and lateral arcuate ligaments (lumbocostal arches), which provide attachment for the diaphragm (Fig. 4.103). Fascial layers covering the anterior and posterior surfaces of quadratus lumborum fuse to form the thoracolumbar fascia which gives attachment to transversus abdominis. The psoas fascia can direct the spread of tuberculosis from the lumbar vertebrae into the anterior triangle of the thigh, producing a psoas abscess.

Nerves

On each side of the midline the sympathetic trunk enters the abdomen behind the medial arcuate ligament of the diaphragm and descends on the medial border of psoas major (Fig. 4.97). The anterior rami of the subcostal and lumbar nerves emerge through their respective intervertebral foramina and enter the substance of psoas major. All spinal nerves within psoas receive grey rami communicantes from the sympathetic trunk, but only the last thoracic and upper two lumbar nerves supply white rami to the trunk.

Subcostal (T12) nerve

This nerve follows the lower border of the twelfth rib and enters the abdomen behind the lateral arcuate ligament of the diaphragm (Fig. 4.103). It crosses the anterior surface of quadratus lumborum and continues on the deep surface of transversus abdominis. The nerve pierces transversus to enter the neurovascular plane of the abdominal wall, and its subsequent course is similar to that of the lower intercostal nerves (p. 145).

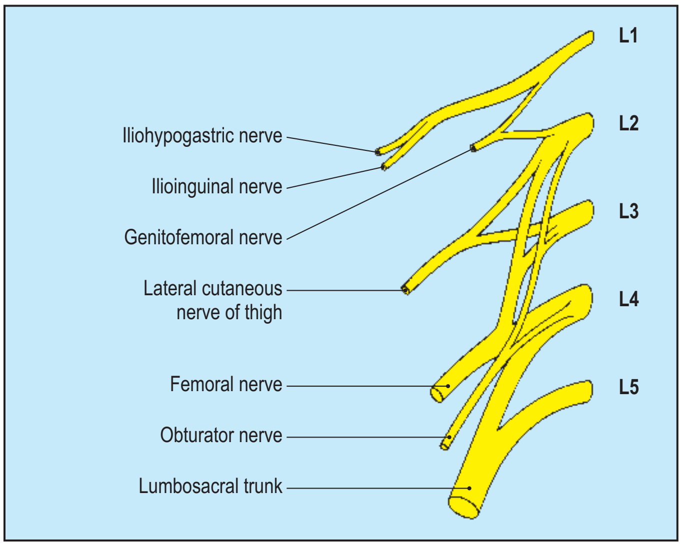


Fig. 4.101 Diagrammatic representation of the lumbar plexus to show the origins of each of its branches.

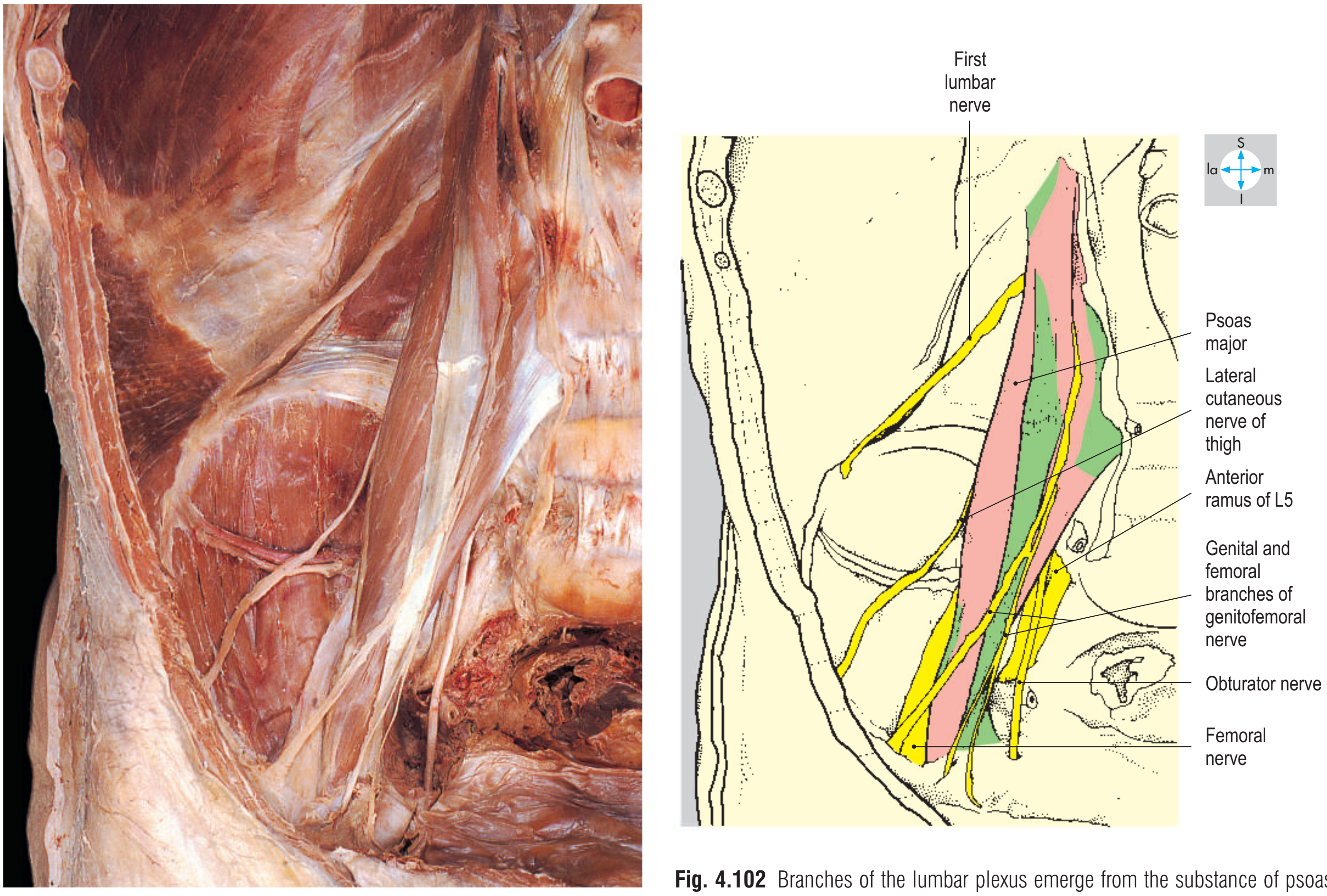


Fig. 4.102 Branches of the lumbar plexus emerge from the substance of psoas major.

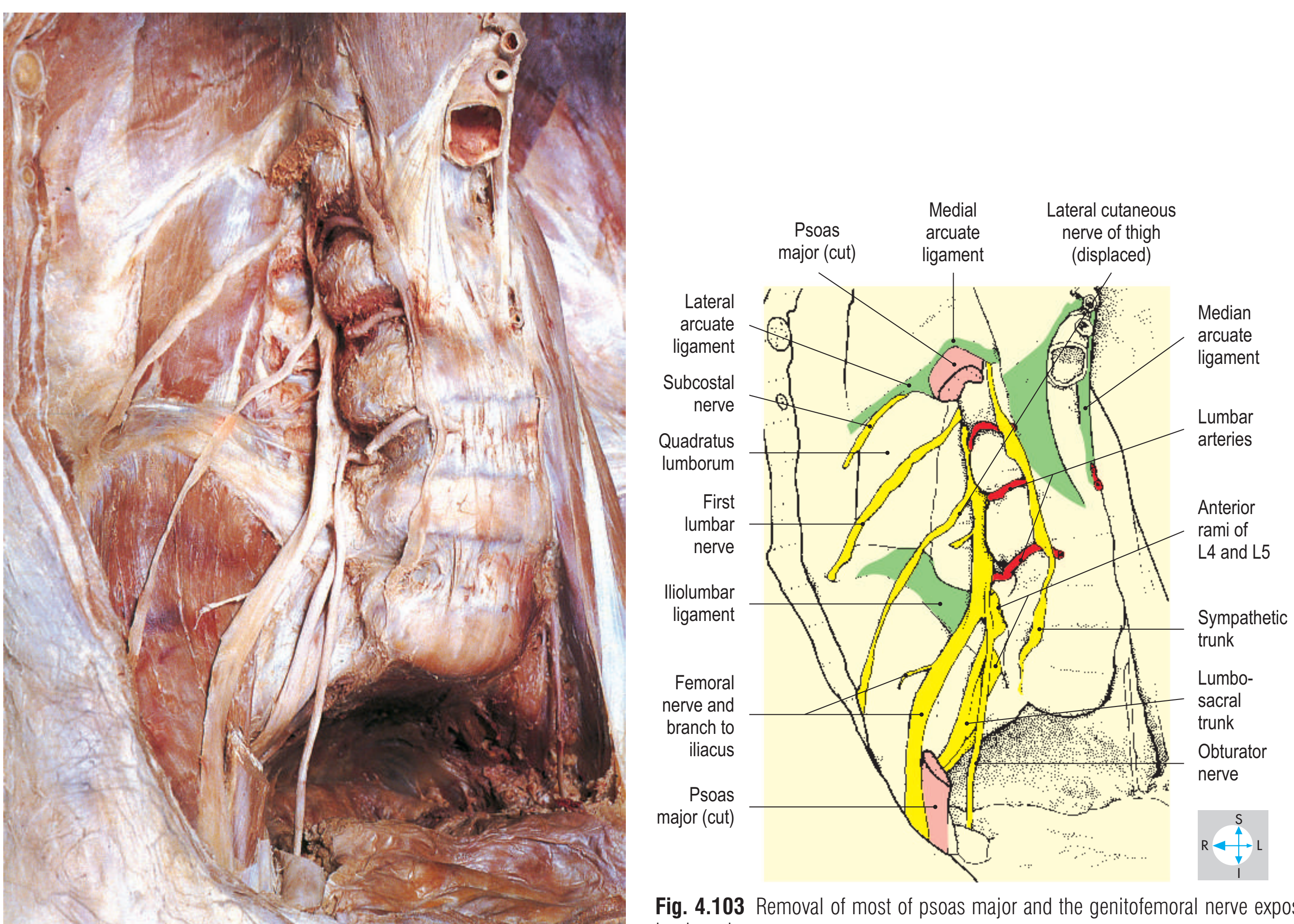


Fig. 4.103 Removal of most of psoas major and the genitofemoral nerve exposes the lumbar plexus.

Lumbar plexus

Within psoas major the anterior rami of the upper four lumbar nerves form the lumbar plexus, whose branches are distributed to the lower part of the abdominal wall, the lower limb and the sacral plexus in the pelvic cavity (Figs 4.101 & 4.104).

First lumbar nerve

Although a few first lumbar (L1) fibres contribute to the genitofemoral nerve (Fig. 4.101), most form a nerve that emerges from the lateral border of psoas major and crosses the anterior surface of quadratus lumborum (Fig. 4.103).

After a variable distance, this nerve divides into iliohypogastric and ilioinguinal branches, which continue into the anterolateral abdominal wall. Their paths and distribution are considered on p. 145.

Genitofemoral (L1, L2) nerve

This nerve emerges through the anterior surface of psoas major on which it descends, dividing into two branches (Fig. 4.101). The genital branch enters the deep inguinal ring and innervates the cremaster muscle, while the femoral branch passes behind the inguinal ligament to reach the subcutaneous tissue covering the femoral triangle (Fig. 6.9).

Lateral cutaneous (L2, L3) nerve of thigh

Emerging from the lateral side of psoas major, this nerve inclines across the anterior surface of iliacus (Fig. 4.102). It passes behind or through the inguinal ligament close to the anterior superior iliac spine (a site of possible entrapment) and supplies skin on the anterolateral aspect of the thigh (Figs 6.9 & 6.21).

Femoral (L2, L3, L4) nerve

This large nerve appears at the lateral border of psoas major and descends in the gutter between this muscle and iliacus (Fig. 4.102). It innervates iliacus (Fig. 4.103), passes behind the inguinal ligament lateral to the femoral artery and enters the anterior compartment of the thigh (Figs 6.8 & 6.18, p. 262).

Obturator (L2, L3, L4) nerve

Descending vertically within psoas major, this nerve emerges from the medial border of the muscle near the pelvic brim (Figs 4.102 & 4.103). It passes behind the common iliac vessels and runs downwards and forwards on the lateral pelvic wall, as far as the obturator canal (p. 237). Within the canal it divides into anterior and posterior branches, which enter the medial compartment of the thigh (p. 266).

Lumbosacral trunk

Fibres from the fourth lumbar anterior ramus join those of the fifth to form the lumbosacral trunk (Fig. 4.103). The trunk emerges from the medial side of psoas major and crosses the sacroiliac joint to enter the pelvis, where it contributes to the formation of the sacral plexus (p. 237).

Diaphragm

The diaphragm is a musculotendinous partition separating the thoracic and abdominal cavities. Its periphery consists of skeletal muscle fibres, which merge centrally with an aponeurotic tendon (Fig. 4.104). The diaphragm has a pronounced convexity towards the thorax and has two domes or cupolas, the right usually lying at a higher level than the left (Figs 4.105 & 4.106).

Musculature

Peripherally, the diaphragmatic muscle is attached to the sternum, the costal margin and the vertebral column. The sternal attachment is by two small slips to the posterior surface of the xiphisternum. The costal attachment is to the inner surfaces of the lower ribs (usually 7–12) and costal cartilages (Fig. 4.105) by slips that interdigitate with those of transversus abdominis.

The diaphragm attaches to the vertebral column by two crura (pillars), one on each side of the abdominal aorta (Fig. 4.104). Both crura are anchored to the sides of the upper two lumbar vertebral bodies while the longer right crus is also attached to the third lumbar vertebra. The crura are linked in front of the aorta by the median arcuate ligament (Fig. 4.104), the fibres interdigitating as they ascend towards the central tendon. Lateral to each crus the diaphragm attaches to the transverse process of the first lumbar vertebra by the medial arcuate ligament (lumbocostal arch) and to the twelfth rib by the lateral arcuate ligament.

A triangular gap, the lumbocostal triangle (Fig. 4.104), often exists between the fibres attaching to the last rib and those arising from the vertebral column. This is a site where abdominal organs may herniate into the thorax.

Central tendon

The muscle fibres of the diaphragm converge on the margins of the central tendon, a V-shaped area of dense fibrous tissue with its apex directed towards the xiphisternum and its lateral parts running backwards into the domes (Fig. 4.104). The central tendon gives attachment to the fibrous pericardium and is pierced by the inferior vena cava (Figs 4.104 & 4.106).

Structures passing between the thorax and abdomen

Apertures in the diaphragm transmit the inferior vena cava and the oesophagus. The opening for the inferior vena cava (caval opening) lies to the right of the midline, and the oesophageal opening (hiatus) is slightly to the left (Fig. 4.104). During quiet breathing these openings lie at the levels of the eighth and tenth thoracic vertebrae, respectively. The caval opening pierces the central tendon and transmits the right phrenic nerve as well as the vena cava. The oesophageal opening, which also transmits the vagal trunks and branches of the left gastric vessels, is surrounded by muscle fibres of the right crus, which can constrict the oesophagus (Fig. 4.104). Weakness of this musculature may permit regurgitation of gastric contents or herniation of part of the stomach into the thorax (hiatus hernia). Patients may have difficulty with swallowing (dysphagia). The left phrenic nerve pierces the left dome adjacent to the apex of the heart, while on each side the thoracic splanchnic nerves pass through the crura to reach the

coeliac plexus. The left crus may also be pierced by the hemiazygos vein.

The aorta enters the abdomen by descending behind rather than through the diaphragm and is accompanied by the thoracic duct and azygos vein (Fig. 4.107). The three vessels pass behind the median arcuate ligament and in front of the twelfth thoracic vertebral body. The subcostal nerves and vessels enter the abdomen behind the lateral arcuate ligaments anterior to quadratus lumborum, while the sympathetic trunks descend behind the medial arcuate ligaments anterior to psoas major (Fig. 4.104). Close to the xiphisternum, the superior epigastric vessels (branches of the internal thoracic vessels) pass between the sternal and costal slips of the diaphragm to enter the rectus sheath. Around the periphery of the diaphragm, intercostal nerves and vessels pass between the muscular slips to leave the lower intercostal spaces and reach the abdominal wall.

Movements

The diaphragm is an important muscle of inspiration and also assists the muscles of the abdominal walls and pelvic floor in raising the pressure within the abdomen and pelvis. Thus, the diaphragm contracts during acts of lifting and straining (e.g. defecation and childbirth).

Its shape and position vary with body position and the phase of ventilation. During full inspiration, the central tendon descends to approximately the level of the tenth thoracic vertebra. This descent, which is enhanced by an upright body posture, enlarges the thoracic cavity. When the diaphragm relaxes during expiration, its central tendon is pushed superiorly by intra-abdominal pressure, compressing the thoracic contents. With the body recumbent or head downwards, this upwards displacement is accentuated by the weight of the abdominal organs.

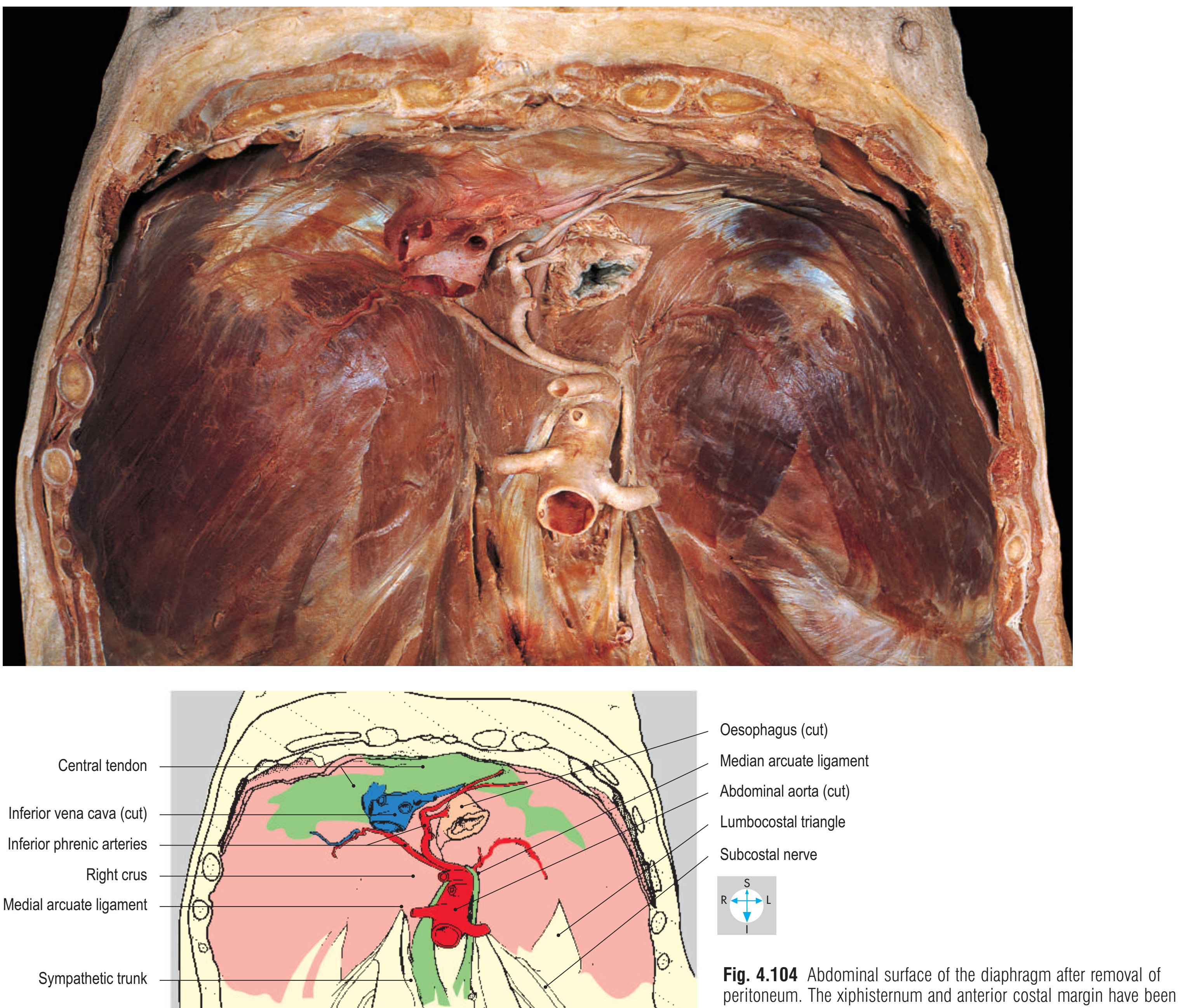


Fig. 4.104 Abdominal surface of the diaphragm after removal of peritoneum. The xiphisternum and anterior costal margin have been excised, including part of the anterior periphery of the diaphragm.

Nerve supply

The right and left phrenic nerves provide the motor and main sensory supply to the diaphragm. The phrenic nerves arise in the neck, from the third, fourth and fifth cervical nerves (p. 236). Each nerve descends through the thorax (p. 60) and divides into terminal branches that pierce the diaphragm and innervate it from the abdominal surface.

Each phrenic nerve provides the motor supply to its own half of the diaphragm. In addition, each phrenic nerve carries sensory fibres from the pericardium and from pleura and peritoneum covering the central portion of the diaphragm. Stimulation of these fibres, for example by blood from a ruptured spleen, may produce pain referred to the shoulder region because the skin over the shoulder is also supplied by the fourth cervical segment of the spinal cord. By contrast, the pleura and peritoneum clothing the peripheral parts of the diaphragm are innervated by sensory branches of the lower intercostal nerves.

Blood supply

The major blood supply is provided by the inferior phrenic arteries (Fig. 4.104), which are usually direct branches of the aorta (Fig. 4.92). The corresponding veins drain into the inferior vena cava. Also, the musculophrenic vessels (terminal branches of the internal thoracic vessels; Fig. 2.17) supply the periphery of the diaphragm.

Relations

The inferior surface of the diaphragm is in contact with abdominal organs including the liver, kidneys, spleen and stomach. Its thoracic surface is related to the heart and lungs and their associated pericardium and pleura (Figs 4.105 & 4.106). Upward and downward excursions of the diaphragm cause corresponding movements of all the organs related to it. During the later stages of expiration, the periphery of the diaphragm comes into contact with the chest wall as the costodiaphragmatic recesses deepen (Fig. 4.105).

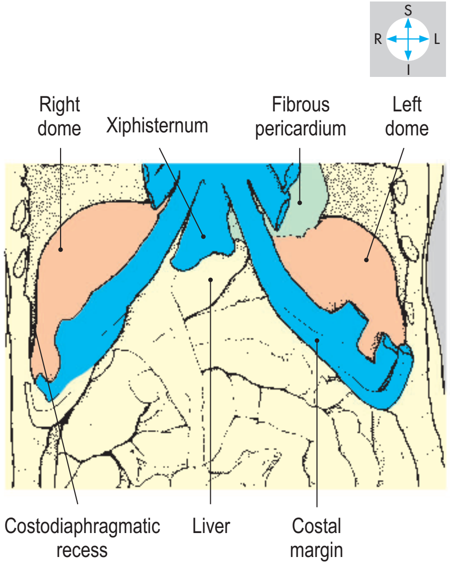
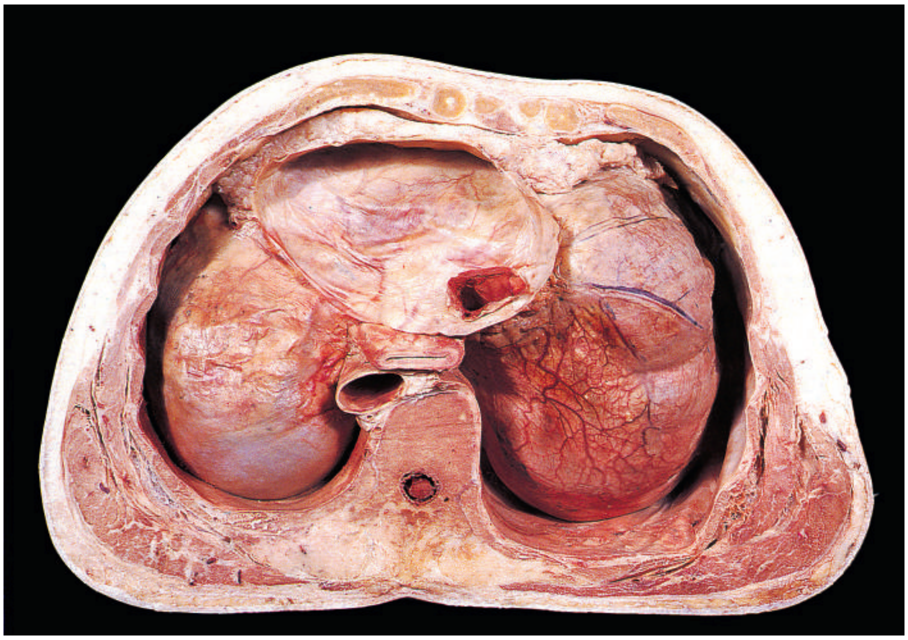


Fig. 4.105 The anterior chest and abdominal walls have been removed (except for the costal margins) to reveal the diaphragm. The abdominal organs are undisturbed but both lungs and the diaphragmatic pleura have been removed.



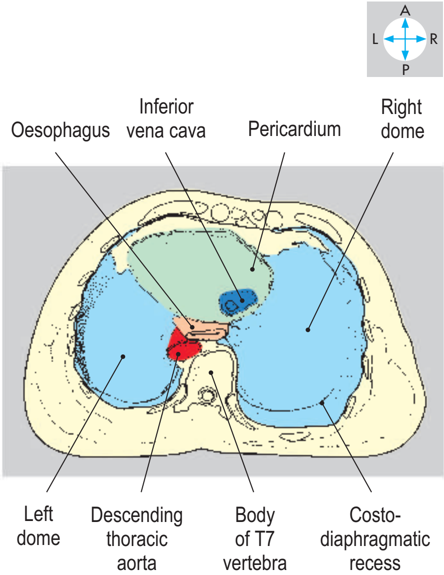


Fig. 4.106 Thoracic surface of the diaphragm. The parietal pleura remains in situ and the base of the fibrous pericardium has been retained.

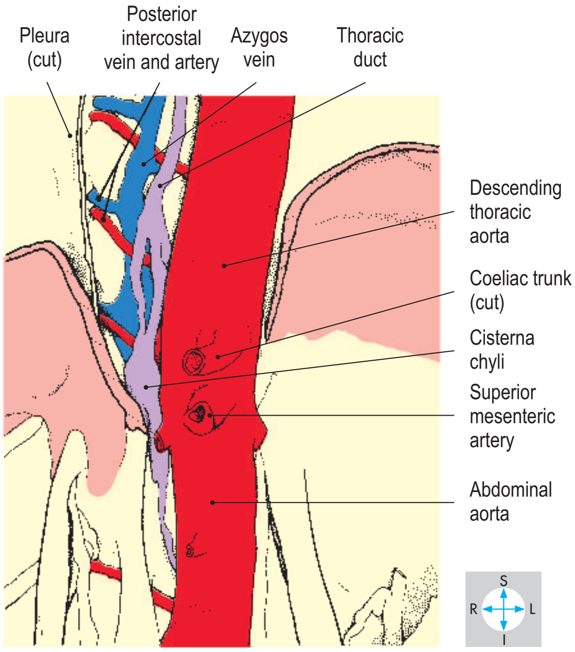


Fig. 4.107 The aortic opening of the diaphragm has been opened by division of the median arcuate ligament and removal of parts of both crura. The aorta is accompanied by the azygos vein and thoracic duct.

Exam Skills

Each of the incomplete statements below is followed by five suggested answers or completions. Decide which are true and which are false. The answers are supplied on p. 417.

1. The rectus abdominis muscle:

a) is a powerful flexor of the lumbar spine.
b) is attached to the costal margin.
c) has a lateral border that crosses the ninth costal cartilage.
d) has the inferior epigastric artery as an anterior relation.
e) lies anterior to the inguinal canal.

2. The superior mesenteric artery:

a) arises from the abdominal aorta at the level of the third lumbar vertebra.
b) passes anterior to the horizontal (third part of) duodenum.
c) supplies branches to the head of the pancreas.
d) gives a middle colic branch.
e) supplies branches to the sigmoid colon.

3. The omental bursa (lesser sac):

a) extends superiorly behind the quadrate lobe of the liver.
b) extends to the left as far as the hilum of the spleen.
c) communicates with the greater peritoneal sac via an opening that lies posterior to the portal vein.
d) is closely related to the pancreas.
e) has the gastrosplenic ligament forming part of its posterior wall.

4. The spleen:

a) develops in the dorsal mesogastrium.
b) lies deep to ribs 9, 10 and 11.
c) may be related at its hilum to the tail of the pancreas.
d) is retroperitoneal.
e) receives its arterial supply from a branch of the superior mesenteric artery.

5. The inferior vena cava:

a) lies anterior to the right sympathetic trunk (chain).
b) passes anterior to the omental foramen.
c) has the right gonadal vein as a direct tributary.
d) pierces the diaphragm at the level of the tenth thoracic vertebra.
e) usually passes anterior to the right renal artery.

6. The diaphragm:

a) contracts during forced expiration.
b) derives part of its motor nerve supply from intercostal nerves.
c) is in direct contact with the liver.
d) derives some arterial supply from the internal thoracic arteries.
e) has an oesophageal opening (hiatus) through which passes the left phrenic nerve.

7. The right kidney:

a) is related posteriorly to the twelfth rib.
b) has a hilum that is directed medially and forwards.
c) is related anteriorly to the head of the pancreas.
d) moves downwards during expiration.
e) is embedded in perirenal fat.

8. Regarding the scrotum:

a) the tunica vaginalis lies posterior to the testis.
b) the epididymis lies medial to the ductus (vas) deferens.
c) the dartos muscle is striated.
d) the ilioinguinal nerve supplies some of the skin.
e) lymph from the subcutaneous tissues drains to inguinal nodes.

9. The body of the pancreas:

a) lies anterior to the splenic vein.
b) has the root of the transverse mesocolon attached to its anterior border.
c) is intraperitoneal.
d) lies at the level of the first lumbar vertebra.
e) receives branches from the splenic artery.

10. The right ureter:

a) lies anterior to the internal iliac artery.
b) is closely related at its commencement to the descending (second part of) duodenum.
c) receives some of its arterial supply from the right renal artery.
d) crosses anterior to the right gonadal vessels.
e) may pass close to the vermiform appendix.

11. The caecum:

a) possesses taeniae coli.
b) usually lies in the right iliac fossa.
c) receives its blood supply from the superior mesenteric artery.
d) usually has the vermiform appendix attached to its lateral side.
e) receives the terminal ileum.

12. Direct relations of the abdominal aorta include:

a) the left renal vein.
b) the descending (second part of) duodenum.
c) the anterior longitudinal ligament.
d) left lumbar veins.
e) the head of the pancreas.

13. Peritoneum related to the liver includes:

a) the falciform ligament, which attaches to the anterior abdominal wall.
b) the left triangular ligament, which attaches to the diaphragm.
c) the lesser omentum, within which lie the gastric vessels.
d) the hepatorenal recess (or pouch) between the liver and the right kidney.
e) the right triangular ligament, which is continuous with the coronary ligaments.

14. The psoas major muscle:

a) attaches to the bodies of all the lumbar vertebrae.
b) laterally flexes the lumbar spine.
c) is innervated by the femoral nerve.
d) has the obturator nerve emerging from its medial surface.
e) extends the hip joint.

15. The liver:

a) usually extends below the costal margin.
b) lies partly in the left hypochondrium.
c) is in direct contact with the left dome of the diaphragm.
d) receives blood from the spleen.
e) has a quadrate lobe which is superior to the porta hepatis.

16. The inguinal canal:

a) has a roof formed by the lowest fibres of the internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles.
b) has a deep ring that lies lateral to the inferior epigastric vessels.
c) transmits the broad ligament of the uterus.
d) has a superficial ring through which the ilioinguinal nerve emerges.
e) transmits testicular lymphatic vessels to the deep inguinal nodes.

Clinical Case Skills

The answers are supplied on p. 418.

Case Study 1

In the space of 2 months, a 2-year-old boy was taken three times to the family doctor because his mother had noticed a swelling in his scrotum. On the first two occasions, the doctor had found nothing abnormal but the third time he found a mass and sent the boy into hospital for observation. On arrival in the ward, no lump could be found but while having a drink of water the boy spluttered, coughed and began to scream. Now a cylindrical mass was apparent in the lower half of his right groin and extended into the scrotum anterior to the right testis. By the time a surgeon arrived, the boy had begun to vomit. The surgeon said an operation was needed.

Questions:

1. What is the diagnosis?
2. Explain how a structure can move from the abdomen into the scrotum.
3. Why did the lump come and go?
4. What anatomical structure does the mass comprise?
5. Why did the boy vomit during the episode in hospital?
6. What will the surgeon do?

Case Study 2

A 20-year-old woman had an accident in her car. While not wearing a seatbelt, she collided with a tree. The paramedics found her trapped in the driving seat, partially conscious, pale and sweaty, with a weak and rapid pulse. They set up an intravenous drip and took her promptly to hospital. On arrival she was able to tell the doctors about pains in both her abdomen and her left shoulder. The pulse was still rapid and the blood pressure low. Her abdomen was tender, especially on the left side. Preparations were made for a blood transfusion and an abdominal operation. When she recovered from the anaesthetic, she was informed her spleen had been removed.

Questions:

1. The doctors suspected their patient had intra-abdominal bleeding. What was the evidence?
2. The spleen is commonly damaged in victims of blunt trauma to the abdomen. Why is this?
3. Into which part of the peritoneal cavity did the bleeding occur?

Case Study 3

A man in his 50s, who had always been fond of alcohol, especially spirits, visited his family physician with a 6-month history of vague ill-health. He had been prompted to seek advice because a few days earlier, he had noticed his skin looked yellow.

The physician was confronted by a pale and poorly man with mild jaundice. Examining his patient's abdomen, the physician found a tender mass, dull to percussion, in the right hypochondrium, which projected 2 cm below the costal margin and descended when a deep breath was taken. The physician gave his patient some stern advice about his diet, which included a ban on any further alcohol intake. He took a blood sample and asked the man to return in a few days.

Questions:

1. What diagnosis did the doctor make?
2. What features led him to this diagnosis?
3. Why did the mass move during inspiration?

The laboratory reported a raised serum bilirubin concentration and other results consistent with liver failure, but the man did not return and failed to respond to the physician's attempts to get in touch. More than a year later, the patient was found dead on the floor of his home in a pool of blood. The post-mortem report mentioned jaundice, ascites, nodularity and hardness of the liver. Varices had been found in the lower oesophagus, one of which had burst. A lot of clotted blood and partially digested food were found in the lungs, pharynx and mouth. The causes of death were asphyxia and shock.

4. How can liver disease produce varices in the oesophagus?
5. Where else might varicose veins be expected in such a patient?

Case Study 4

A 45-year-old man arrived at the Emergency Department complaining of agonizing pain in the abdomen that had lasted 4 hours. He had tried unsuccessfully to gain relief by defecating and emptying his bladder. He was pale, unable to keep still and begging for pain relief. He indicated the current site of the pain in the right iliac fossa but it had started in the small of the back on the right side and radiated into his groin. The physician found mild tenderness in the right iliac fossa, normal bowel sounds and no fever.

A rectal examination was normal. A sample of urine looked rather dark to the naked eye, and tested positive for blood.

Questions:

1. What is the anatomical origin of the pain?
2. Why was a rectal examination performed?

The patient was given an injection of a powerful analgesic and was admitted to a surgical ward. There he was encouraged to drink as much water as possible and all his urine was collected. A plain radiograph was taken of the abdomen and the doctors carefully examined this, along the line of the right ureter, for the shadow of a calculus in the ureter.

3. What is the course of the ureter, as seen on a radiograph?

An intravenous urogram was performed.

4. What anatomical structures should this investigation depict?

The patient passed his stone the following day. The pain subsided once the calculus entered the bladder and it travelled easily along the urethra into the collecting vessel.

Observation Skills

Identify the structures indicated. The answers are supplied at the foot of the page.

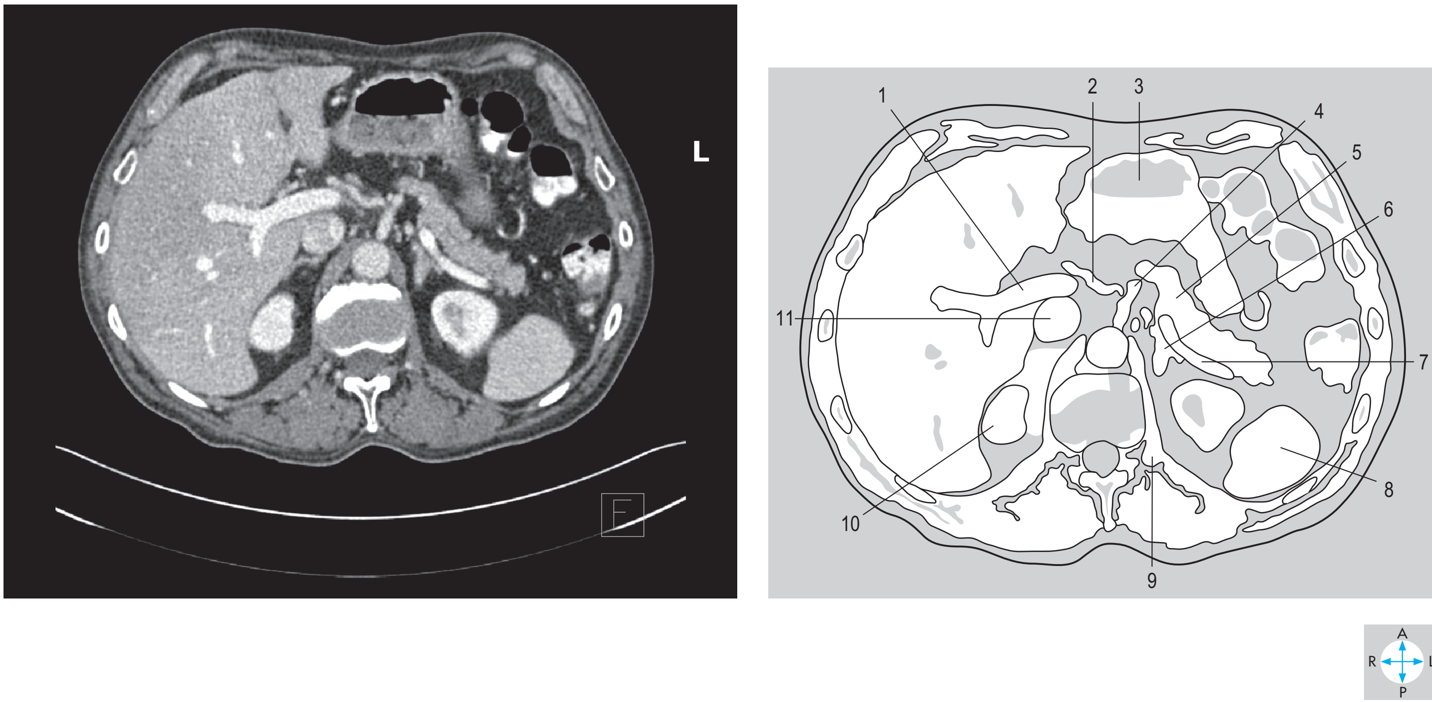


Fig. 4.108 Transverse CT image at the level of the twelfth thoracic vertebra.

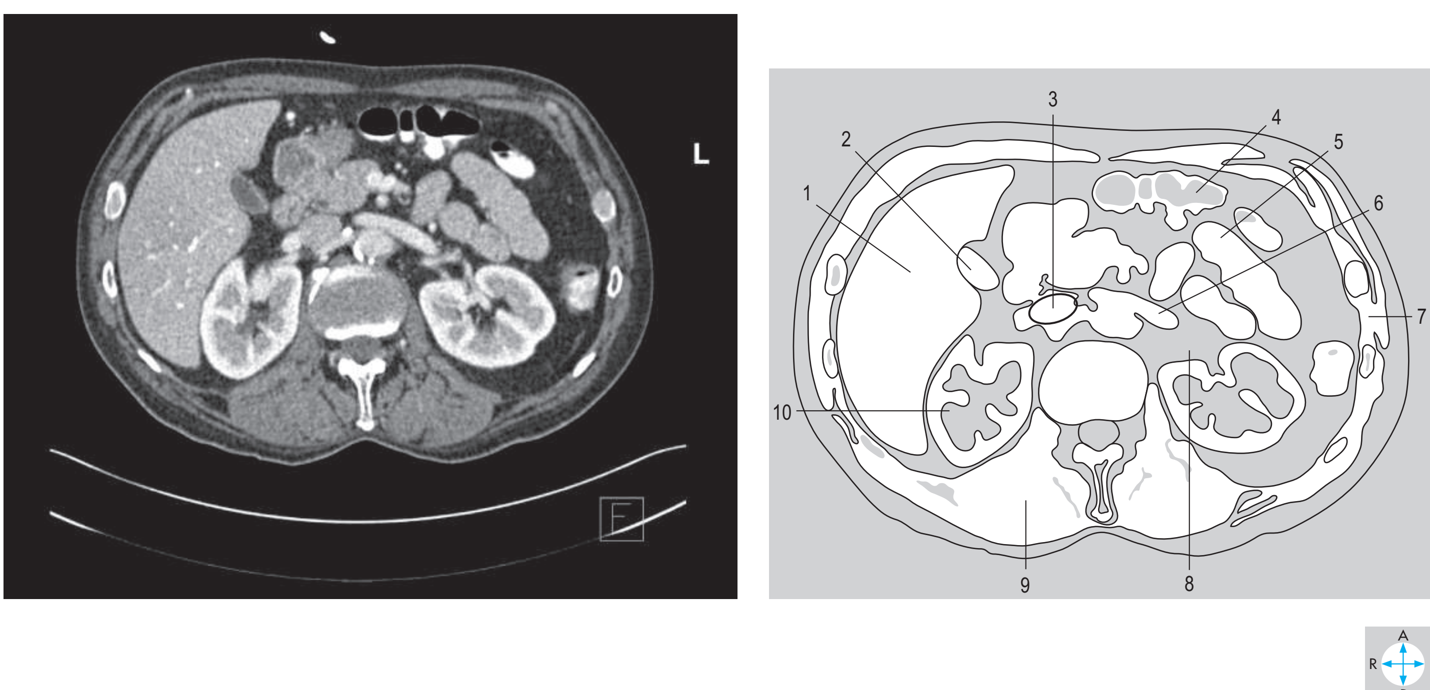


Fig. 4.109 Transverse CT image at the level of the second lumbar vertebra.

Answers:

Fig. 4.108 1 = portal vein; 2 = common hepatic artery; 3 = stomach; 4 = coeliac trunk; 5 = body of pancreas; 6 = left suprarenal gland; 7 = splenic vein; 8 = spleen; 9 = left crus of diaphragm; 10 = superior pole of right kidney; 11 = inferior vena cava.

Fig. 4.109 1 = liver; 2 = gall bladder; 3 = inferior vena cava; 4 = transverse colon; 5 = small intestine; 6 = left renal vein; 7 = intercostal muscles; 8 = branches of left renal artery; 9 = erector spinae muscle; 10 = right kidney.

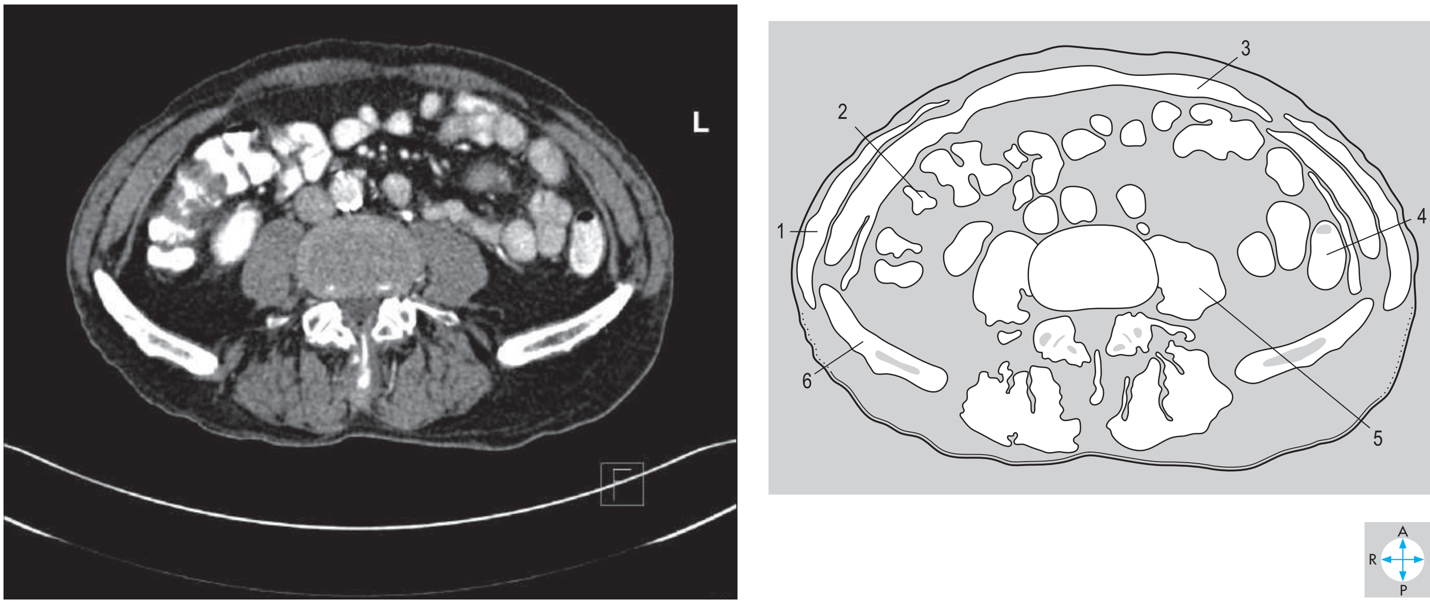


Fig. 4.110 Transverse CT image at the level of the fourth lumbar vertebra. (Compare Fig. 4.112.)

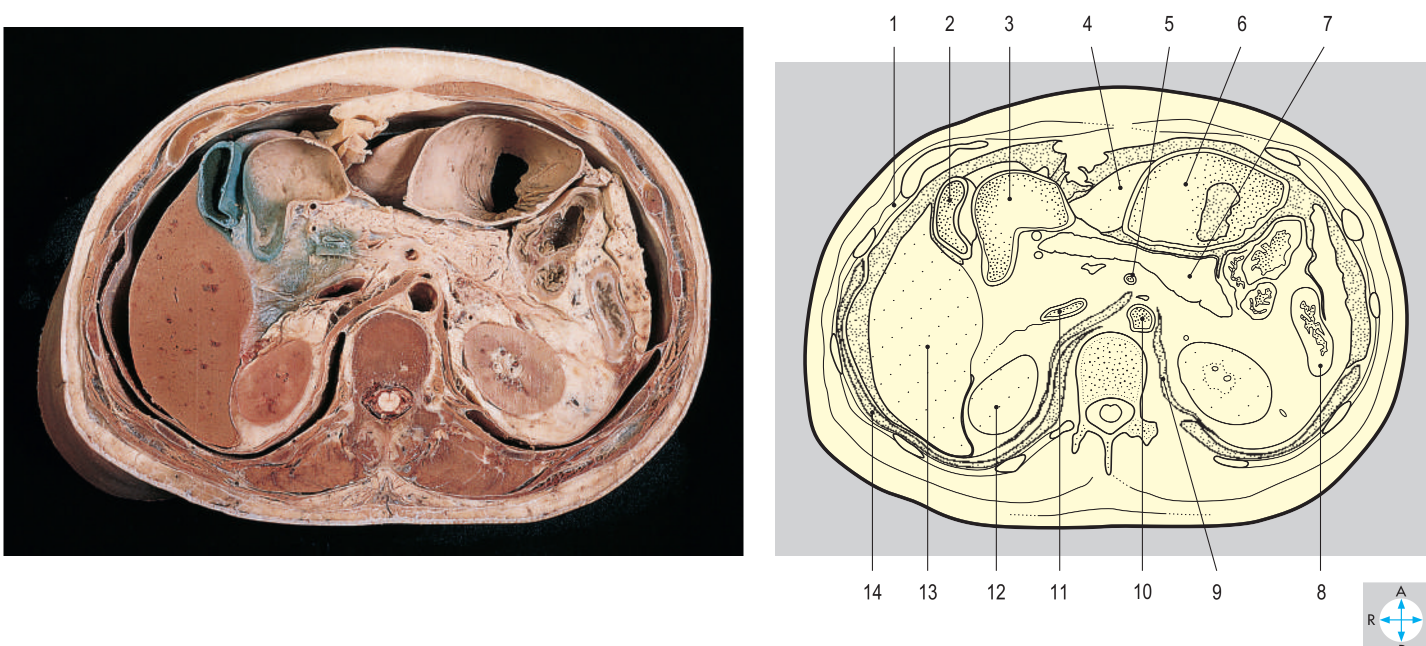


Fig. 4.111 Transverse section at the level of the twelfth thoracic vertebra. Inferior aspect.

Answers:

Fig. 4.110 1 = external oblique; 2 = transverse colon; 3 = rectus abdominis; 4 = descending colon; 5 = psoas major; 6 = ilium (not to be confused with ileum).
Fig. 4.111 1 = intercostal muscles; 2 = fundus of gall bladder; 3 = descending duodenum; 4 = left lobe of liver; 5 = superior mesenteric artery; 6 = stomach; 7 = pancreas; 8 = descending colon; 9 = left crus of diaphragm; 10 = abdominal aorta; 11 = inferior vena cava; 12 = right kidney; 13 = right lobe of liver; 14 = costodiaphragmatic recess.

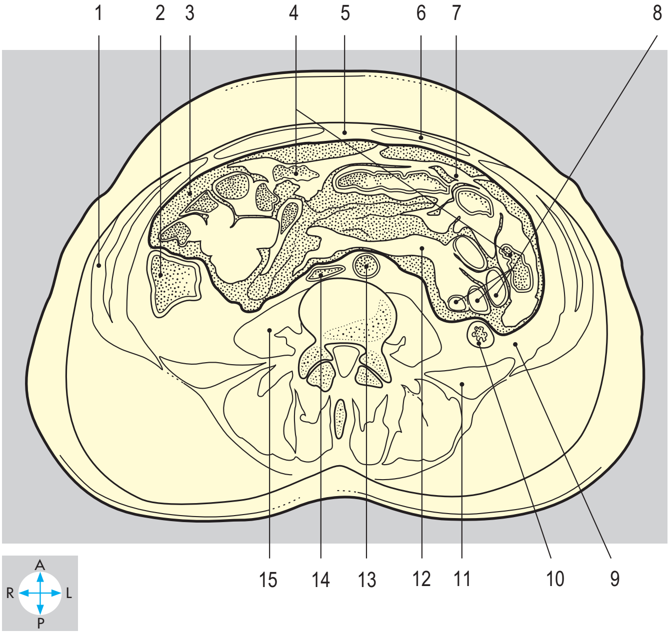


Fig. 4.112 Transverse section at the level of the intervertebral disc between the third and fourth lumbar vertebrae. Inferior aspect. (Compare Fig. 4.110.)

Answers:

Fig. 4.112 1 = external abdominal oblique; 2 = ascending colon; 3 = peritoneal cavity; 4 = transverse colon; 5 = linea alba; 6 = rectus abdominis; 7 = greater omentum; 8 = small intestine; 9 = retroperitoneal fat; 10 = descending colon; 11 = quadratus lumborum; 12 = mesentery of small intestine; 13 = abdominal aorta; 14 = inferior vena cava; 15 = psoas major.

Chapter 5

PELVIS AND PERINEUM

Introduction

The pelvic cavity is in direct continuity with the abdominal cavity. It extends downwards and backwards within the confines of the bony pelvis as far as the pelvic floor (pelvic diaphragm), inferior to which lies the perineum. Some anatomists and surgeons refer to the false pelvis or greater pelvis (below the iliac crests but above the pelvic inlet) and the true pelvis or lesser pelvis (below the inlet). This chapter deals only with the true pelvis and these other expressions will not be used again.

Pelvis

The pelvic cavity is a basin-shaped region below and behind the pelvic inlet (Fig. 5.1). It is surrounded by the bones of the pelvic girdle supplemented by muscles, ligaments and fascia. The anterior wall, near the pubic symphysis, is shallow while the posterior wall, the sacrum, is deep and concave. Each lateral wall is lined by the obturator internus, a broad muscle covered on its medial surface by fascia. Above this muscle are two apertures providing access for nerves and vessels entering the lower limb. The greater sciatic foramen leads into the gluteal region, the obturator canal into the thigh.

The organs in the pelvis include the bladder and lower ureters, the rectum and possibly coils of small intestine and the sigmoid colon. The male pelvis also contains the prostate (inferior to the bladder) and seminal vesicles (posterior to the bladder) and parts of the ductus deferentes (Fig. 5.5). In the female, the reproductive organs are interposed between the bladder and rectum and include the vagina, the uterus, uterine tubes and ovaries (Fig. 5.6). In the infant, the pelvic cavity is comparatively shallow and therefore parts of the bladder and uterus may lie above the pelvic brim. In the adult, however, the bladder and uterus often lie below the pelvic inlet (brim), though they rise into the abdomen when distended with urine or enlarged by pregnancy.

The peritoneum of the greater sac covers the superior parts of the pelvic organs. In the male it dips into a single pouch between the bladder and rectum while in the female it forms two deeper pouches, anterior and posterior to the uterus. The peritoneum that drapes over each uterine tube is called the broad ligament and the ovary attaches to its posterior aspect (Fig. 5.8).

The arterial supply to most of the pelvic organs is provided by the internal iliac artery (Fig. 5.2), but the rectum and ovaries are supplied by the inferior mesenteric artery and the ovarian arteries, respectively, from the abdominal aorta. Similarly, most venous blood passes to the internal iliac veins but the rectum drains to the portal venous system via the inferior mesenteric vein, while the ovarian veins enter the inferior vena cava and left renal vein. Much of the lymph from the pelvic organs passes to the internal iliac nodes, but the rectum and ovaries drain to aortic nodes in the abdomen.

Many of the nerves in the pelvis, including the sacral plexuses, are applied to the pelvic walls and are merely in transit to the lower limb. The pelvic organs themselves receive autonomic innervation via the left and right pelvic plexuses, which surround the branches of the internal iliac arteries. The parasympathetic contribution to these plexuses comes from the pelvic splanchnic nerves, branches of the second, third and fourth sacral spinal nerves, while the sympathetic innervation is provided by the hypogastric plexus, which descends from around the aortic bifurcation.

The gutter-shaped pelvic floor is formed largely by the left and right levator ani muscles. They arise from the pelvic wall, chiefly from the fascia covering the obturator internus muscles, slope downwards and fuse in the midline. There is a narrow midline gap near the pubic symphysis traversed by the urethra and vagina. The central part of the pelvic floor is pierced by the rectum, turning downwards and backwards to become the anal canal.

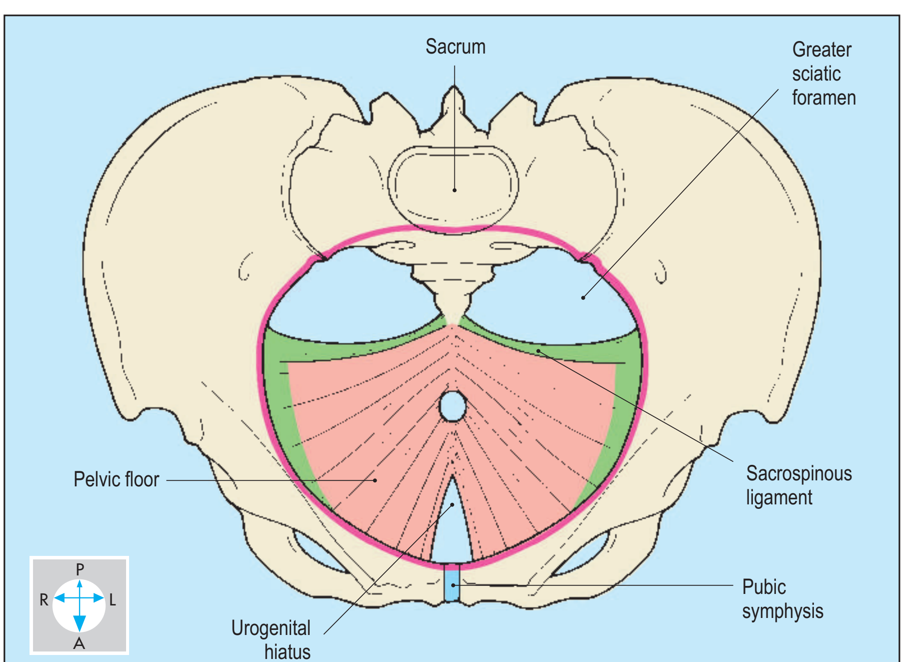


Fig. 5.1 Oblique anterosuperior view of pelvis to show pelvic inlet (pink line) and floor.

Perineum

The perineum is the shallow region that includes the anal canal and the external genitalia. It is bounded by the pelvic outlet: the inferior margins of the bones of the pelvis and their associated ligaments (Fig. 5.3). The region extends forwards to the pubic symphysis, backwards to the coccyx and laterally to the ischial tuberosities. The roof of the perineum is formed by the two levator ani muscles, the floor is the skin and each lateral wall is similar to that of the pelvis: the pubis and ischium are covered by the obturator internus muscle.

The posterior half of the perineum, the anal triangle, contains the anal canal, its sphincters and a fat-filled space on each side, the ischioanal (ischiorectal) fossa. Each fossa communicates with the gluteal region via a small aperture, the lesser sciatic foramen. The anterior half of the perineum, the urogenital triangle, includes the external genitalia. In the female, the lower parts of the vagina and urethra are surrounded by the vulva (labia majora and minora and the clitoris), while in the male the distal part of the urethra is enclosed by the penis. Below the root of the penis is the scrotum. Although the scrotum is part of the perineum it is described with the testis and inguinal canal in Chapter 4 (p. 149).

Most structures in the perineum, including the scrotum but excluding the testes, are supplied by the pudendal nerve and the internal pudendal vessels (Fig. 5.2). The neurovascular bundle arises in the pelvis but does not pierce the levator ani to reach the perineum. Instead, it traverses the greater sciatic foramen, the gluteal region and the lesser sciatic foramen. The nerve and vessels then run forward through the perineum, giving branches to the anal canal, the scrotum or labia and the penis or clitoris. Most of the lymph from these structures passes to the inguinal nodes, which are also the main site of drainage for the lower parts of the vagina and anal canal, but the testes drain to aortic lymph nodes in the abdomen.

The pudendal nerve gives motor branches to many striated muscles in the perineum, including the external anal and urethral sphincters. In addition, it supplies sensory branches to the anal canal, vagina, urethra and most of the perineal skin.

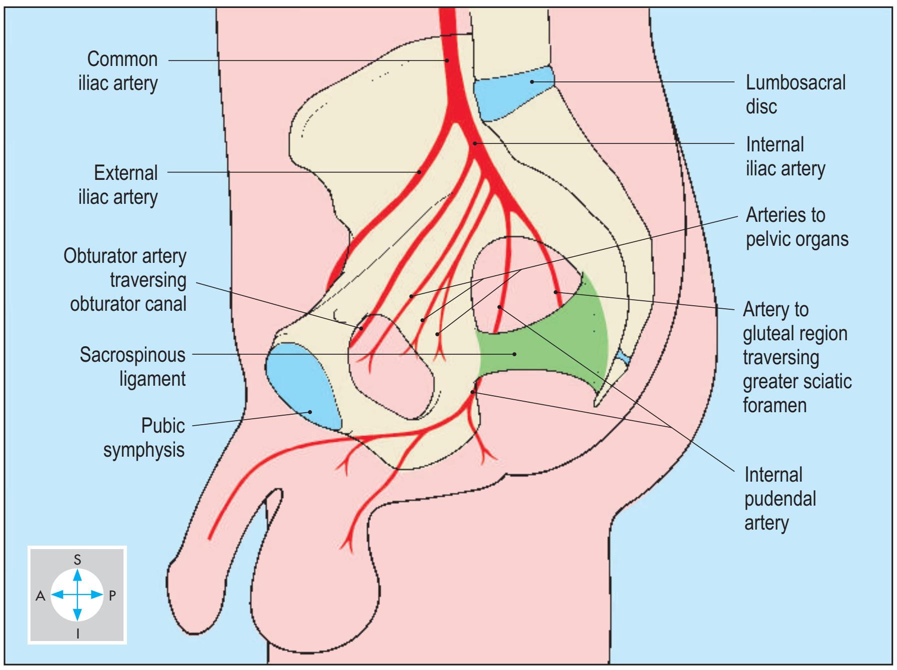


Fig. 5.2 The internal iliac artery and some of its branches to the pelvis, perineum and lower limb.

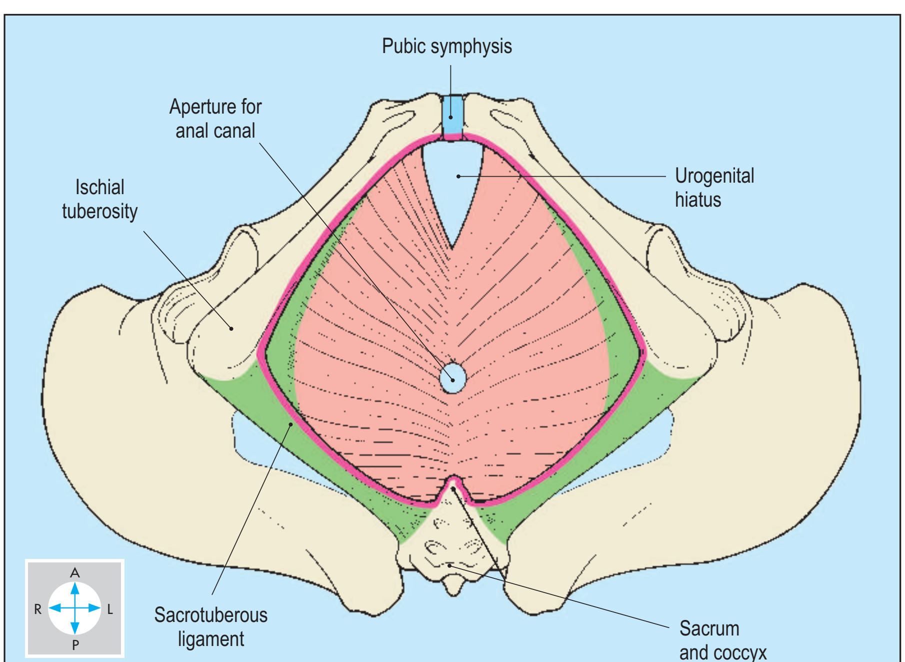


Fig. 5.3 Inferior view of pelvic outlet (pink line) and boundaries of perineum.

Pelvic Cavity

Although the pelvic cavity is in direct continuity with the abdominal cavity, the two regions are delineated by the pelvic inlet (pelvic brim). This lies at approximately 45° to the horizontal and comprises the sacral promontory posteriorly, the arcuate and pectineal lines laterally and the pubic crests and upper border of pubic symphysis anteriorly (Figs 5.1 & 5.26).

The bony walls of the pelvis give attachment to two pairs of muscles. The obturator internus and piriformis muscles arise within the pelvis but their tendons pass out into the gluteal region to reach the femur. The fascia covering the medial surface of obturator internus is dense and provides attachment for the pelvic floor. The piriformis muscles spring from the anterior surface of the sacrum and are partially covered by the large nerves comprising the sacral plexuses (Fig. 5.4).

In both sexes, the pelvic cavity contains the rectum and bladder along with the lower parts of the ureters and loops of small or large intestine. The remaining organs differ between the sexes. The male reproductive organs found within the pelvis (Fig. 5.5) are the prostate, seminal vesicles and ductus deferentes. Those of the female (Fig. 5.6) are the ovaries, uterine tubes, uterus and upper part of vagina.

Peritoneum

Peritoneum lines the lateral and posterior pelvic walls and covers most of the pelvic organs (Figs 5.5 & 5.6). In both sexes peritoneum passes from the anterior abdominal wall onto the upper surface of the bladder. In the male, it descends on the posterior surface of the bladder and then passes onto the rectum, forming a recess, the rectovesical pouch (Fig. 5.14). In the female, peritoneum is reflected from the bladder onto the anterior surface of the body of the uterus, forming the vesicouterine pouch (Fig. 5.6). It covers the fundus of the uterus and on each side passes over the uterine tube, forming the broad ligament. From the posterior surface of the uterus, peritoneum passes over the vault of the vagina onto the anterior wall of the rectum, forming the rectouterine pouch (of Douglas). Fluid may collect in the rectovesical pouch of the male or the rectouterine pouch of the female and, if infected, may form a pelvic abscess.

Between the peritoneum and the pelvic organs, and intervening between the organs, lies the extraperitoneal fat or pelvic fascia (Fig. 5.7 and p. 235). This tissue is important in the spread of infection.

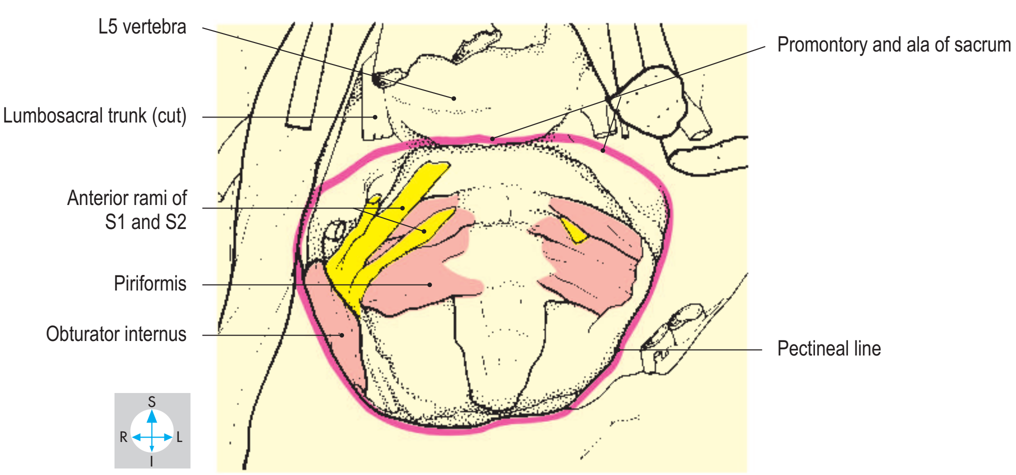


Fig. 5.4 Pelvis and lower abdomen after removal of all the organs and most of the vessels to demonstrate the pelvic inlet (pink line) and cavity.

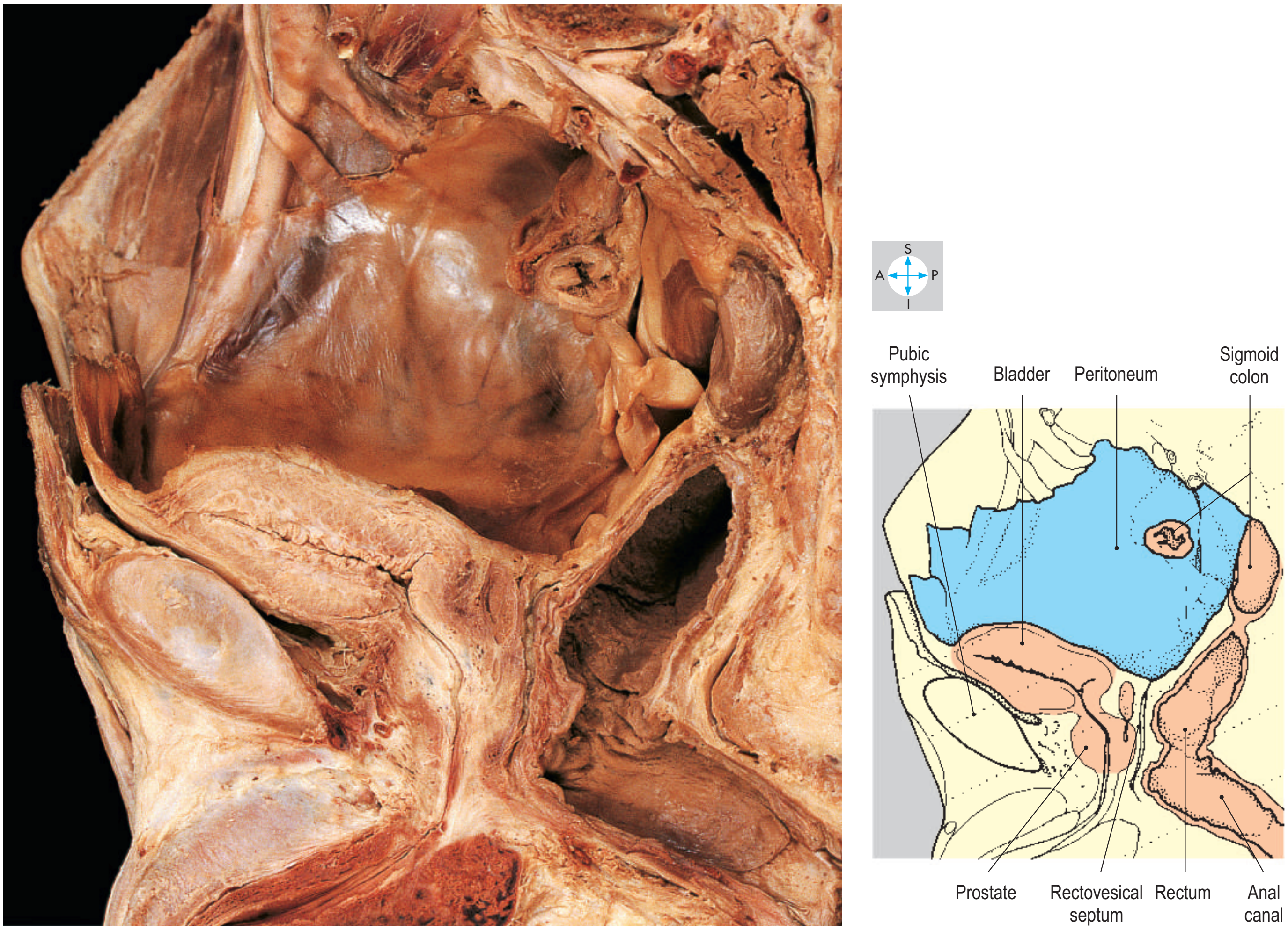


Fig. 5.5 Median sagittal section through the male pelvis to show the peritoneum and the principal pelvic viscera.

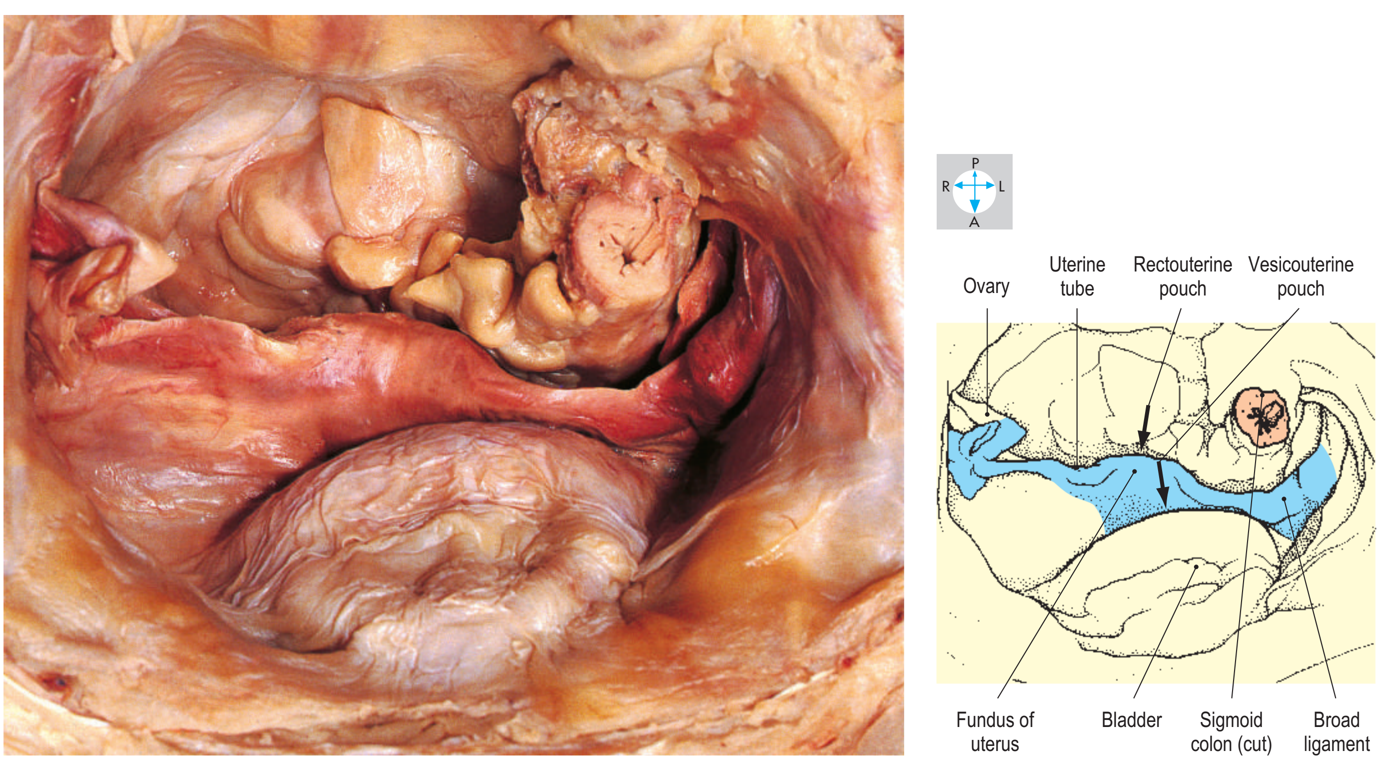


Fig. 5.6 Superior view of peritoneum and organs within the female pelvis. The small intestine and most of the sigmoid colon have been removed.

Rectum

The rectum is the distal portion of the large intestine and lies in the posterior part of the pelvic cavity. It is continuous with the sigmoid colon at the rectosigmoid junction in front of the third piece of the sacrum (Fig. 5.7), where there is often an acute angulation. The rectum curves downwards and forwards, lying first on the anterior surface of the sacrum and then on the upper surface of the pelvic floor. It deviates to either side of the midline and these lateral flexures become pronounced when the organ is distended. The lowest part of the rectum, the ampulla, is its most dilatable portion. Turning abruptly downwards and backwards, the rectum pierces the pelvic floor and terminates at the anorectal junction, where it is continuous with the anal canal (Fig. 5.5). The sharp angulations at the anorectal and rectosigmoid junctions must be navigated with care during endoscopy.

Unlike the colon, the rectum is devoid of appendices epiploicae and has no taeniae, the longitudinal muscle being distributed uniformly around its circumference. The mucous membrane projects into the rectal lumen as three shelves, which form the horizontal folds.

Relations

The upper two-thirds of the rectum are related to the most inferior portion of the peritoneal cavity. The upper third of the organ is covered anteriorly and on both sides by peritoneum, while the middle third, lying behind the rectouterine or rectovesical pouch, has peritoneum only on its anterior surface.

Posterior to the upper part of the rectum are the sacrum, coccyx and the piriformis muscles, while its lower part rests on the levator ani muscles. Descending behind the organ are the superior rectal vessels (Fig. 5.7), the hypogastric plexus of autonomic nerves and, on each side of the midline, the sympathetic trunk and sacral plexus. Lateral to the rectum lie the pelvic plexuses of autonomic nerves and the ureters.

Anterior to the upper portion of the rectum lie those parts of the sigmoid colon and ileum that descend into the pelvic cavity. The anterior relations of the rectal ampulla are of clinical interest because they may be palpated on rectal examination. In the male, these are the prostate (Fig. 5.5), the base of the bladder, the seminal vesicles and ampullae of the ductus. These structures are separated from the rectum by the rectovesical septum. In the female, the rectal ampulla lies adjacent to the vagina. Therefore, rectal examination permits palpation of the cervix of the uterus.

Blood supply

The arterial supply to the rectum is derived principally from the superior rectal artery (Fig. 5.7), the continuation of the inferior mesenteric artery (p. 182). This supply may be supplemented by middle rectal branches from the internal iliac arteries. Venous blood drains into the portal venous system via the superior rectal vein and its continuation, the inferior mesenteric vein. In addition, middle rectal veins drain into the internal iliac veins. As the superior and middle rectal veins interconnect, the wall of the rectum is a site of portacaval anastomosis (p. 185).

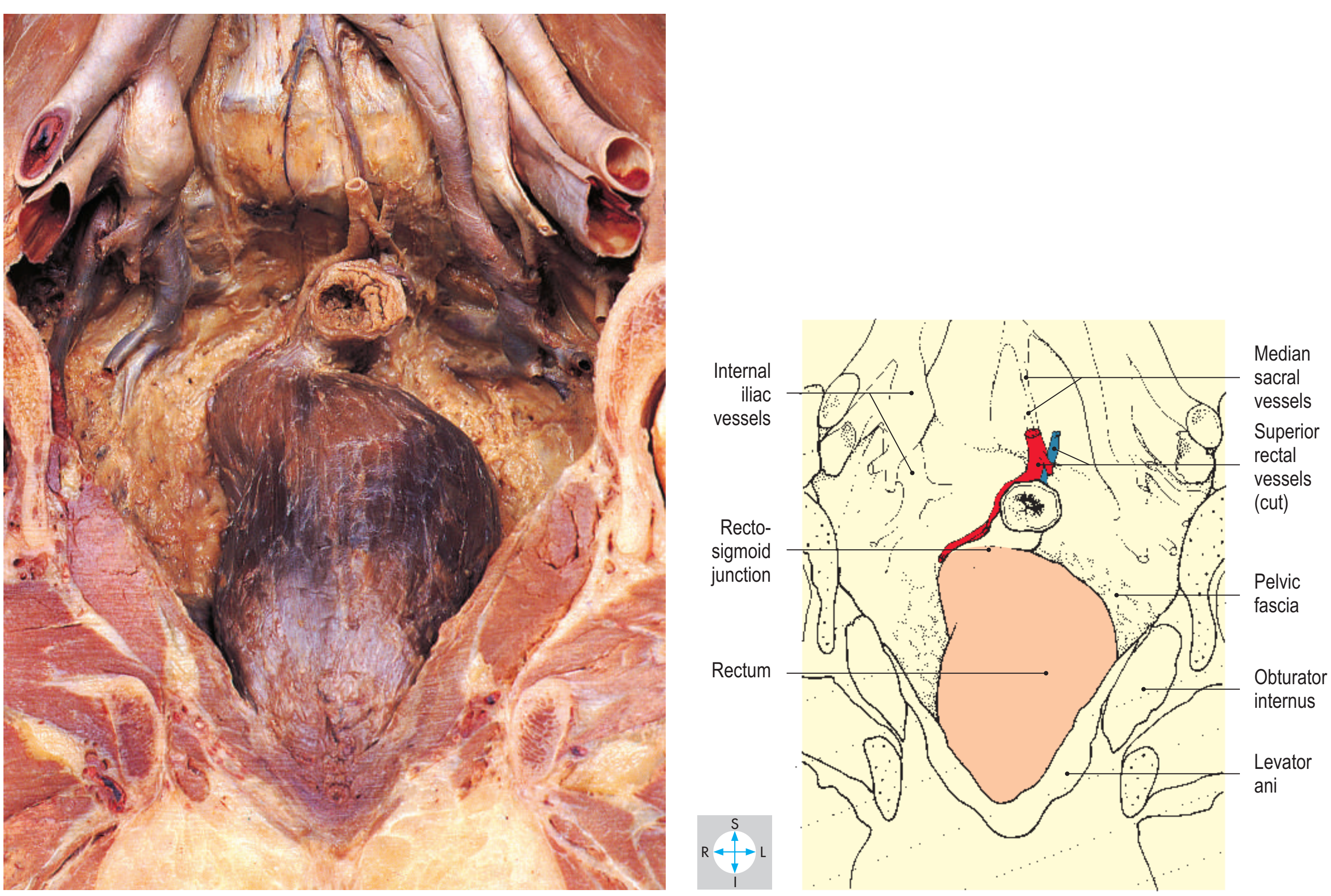


Fig. 5.7 Anterior aspect of rectum seen in a male pelvis sectioned coronally. All peritoneum has been removed.

Female Internal Reproductive Organs

The female internal organs of reproduction include the uterus and vagina and the paired ovaries and uterine (fallopian) tubes. The uterus and ovaries are particularly affected by atrophy (shrinkage) after the menopause.

Uterus

The uterus is a pear-shaped organ approximately 8 cm in length. Its major component is the body (or corpus), which remains somewhat enlarged after pregnancy. Inferiorly, the uterus tapers into the cylindrical neck or cervix, which protrudes into the upper part of the vagina (Fig. 5.9).

The uterus is most commonly positioned with its body lying on the superior surface of the bladder (Fig. 5.8). As the bladder fills and empties, the uterine body moves on the relatively immobile cervix. Thus, when the bladder is empty the uterine body is anteflexed (bent forwards on the cervix), but when the bladder is distended the uterus may become retroflexed.

Body

The uterine body possesses anteroinferior and posterosuperior surfaces. The right and left borders give attachment to the broad ligaments and superiorly give origin to the uterine tubes (Figs 5.8 & 5.11). The rounded upper end of the organ between the attachments of the tubes is called the fundus.

On the posterosuperior surface of the uterus lie the sigmoid colon or coils of ileum. Both surfaces are covered with peritoneum, which continues laterally as the broad ligament (Fig. 5.11). Adjacent to the uterus within each broad ligament is the uterine artery and its associated plexus of veins. On each side, the ligament of the ovary and the round ligament of the uterus attach to the uterine body close to the origin of the uterine tube. These ligaments, remnants of the fetal gubernaculum, run laterally within the broad ligament, often raising ridges in the peritoneum. The ligament of the ovary attaches to the medial pole of the ovary, while the round ligament of the uterus runs to the lateral pelvic wall and turns forwards in the extraperitoneal tissues. Crossing the external iliac vessels, the round ligament of the uterus enters the deep inguinal ring (Fig. 5.8), traverses the inguinal canal and terminates in the subcutaneous tissues of the labium majus (Fig. 4.24).

The wall of the uterine body comprises a thick layer of smooth muscle (myometrium) lined by a vascular mucosa (endometrium), the thickness of which varies with the phases of the menstrual cycle. The uterine cavity is narrow in sagittal section but triangular in coronal section, being widest where the uterine tubes enter (Figs 5.10 & 5.11). Tapering inferiorly, the cavity communicates via the internal os with the cervical canal.

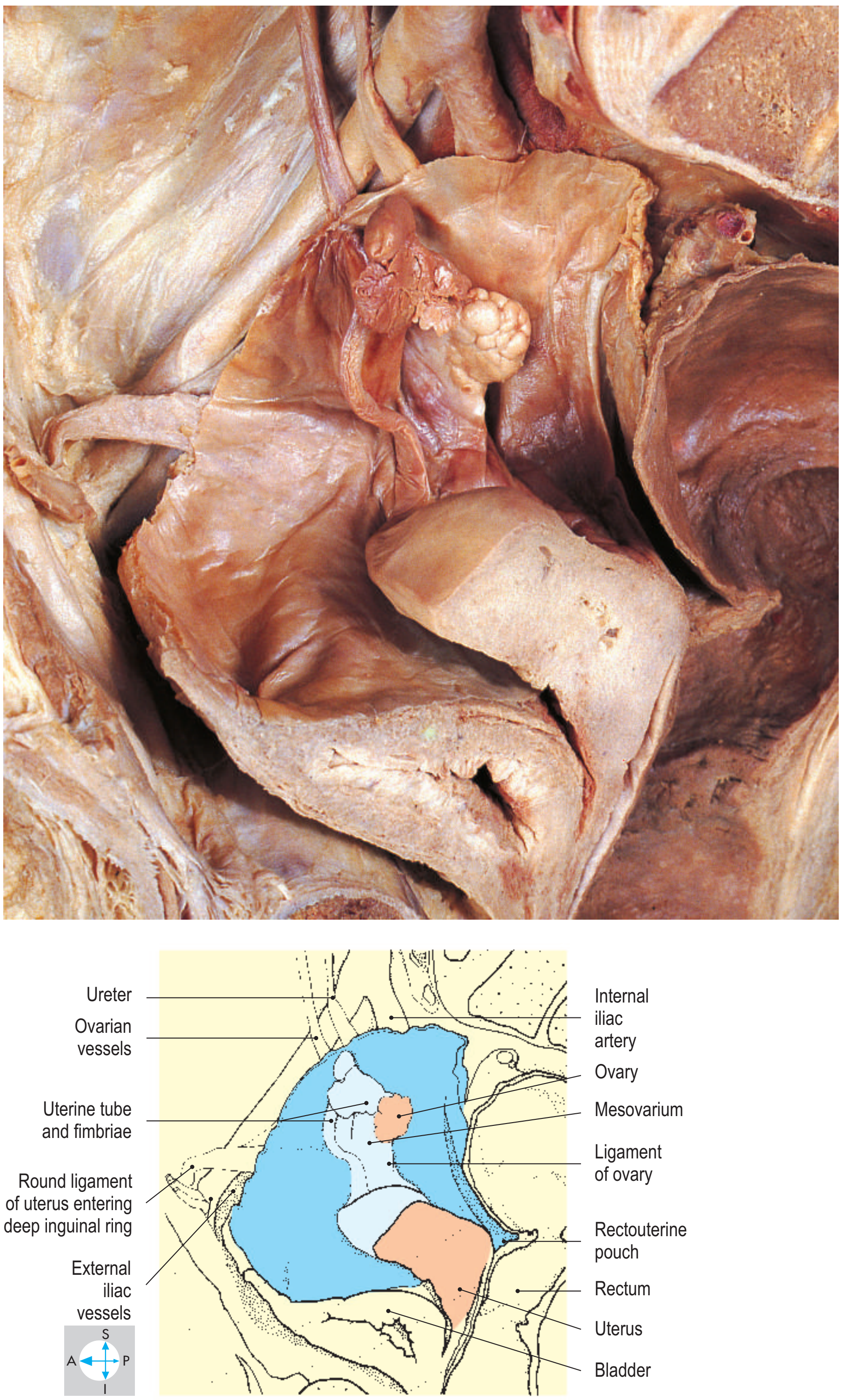


Fig. 5.8 Right ovary and broad ligament.

Cervix

The uterine cervix is thick-walled and has a narrow lumen, the cervical canal (Figs 5.9 & 5.11). The canal communicates superiorly with the uterine cavity via the internal os and opens inferiorly into the vagina at the external os. The external os is circular before the first vaginal delivery but thereafter presents an oval aperture. Although approximately in line with the body of the uterus, the cervix lies roughly at right angles to the long axis of the vagina (a position called anteversion). Structures close to the cervix are vulnerable to the local spread of cervical carcinoma. Approximately half of the cervix lies above the vagina (the supravaginal part) and is covered posteriorly by peritoneum passing from the uterine body onto the vault of the vagina. The root of the broad ligament is attached to this part of the cervix and contains the uterine artery (Fig. 5.13). The vessel runs medially above the ureter then turns upwards at the side of the cervix near the lateral fornix of the vagina. Anteriorly, the supravaginal part of the cervix is related to the posterior surface of the bladder. The lower half of the cervix protrudes through the anterior wall of the vagina, making it available for clinical examination including cervical smear testing. Structures close to the cervix, including both ureters, are vulnerable to the local spread of cervical carcinoma.

The uterine body and cervix are supplied by branches of the uterine artery, a branch of the internal iliac artery. Venous blood passes into the uterine venous plexus, which drains into the internal iliac vein (Fig. 5.13).

Uterine tubes

The paired uterine tubes, each approximately 10 cm long, run in the free upper borders of the broad ligaments (Figs 5.8, 5.10 & 5.11) and convey ova from the ovaries to the uterine cavity. Near the ovary, the lumen of each tube communicates with the peritoneal cavity via its pelvic aperture. This opening leads into the funnel-shaped infundibulum, which bears a series of finger-like processes, the fimbriae, one of which attaches to the ovary. The infundibulum leads into the ampulla, which forms the comparatively wide lateral part of the uterine tube. The medial part of the tube, the isthmus, is narrower and continues through the uterine wall as the intramural part of the tube.

The blood supply to the medial part of the uterine tube is provided by terminal branches of the uterine artery. This vessel runs laterally in the upper part of the broad ligament and anastomoses with the ovarian artery, which supplies the lateral portion of the tube. Venous blood drains into veins that accompany the arteries.

Fertilization of ova normally occurs in the uterine tube, usually within its ampulla.

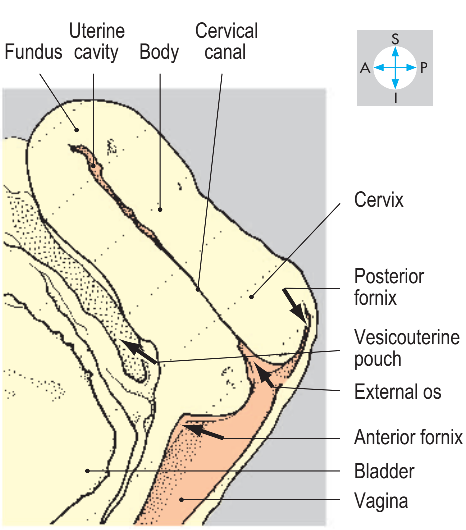
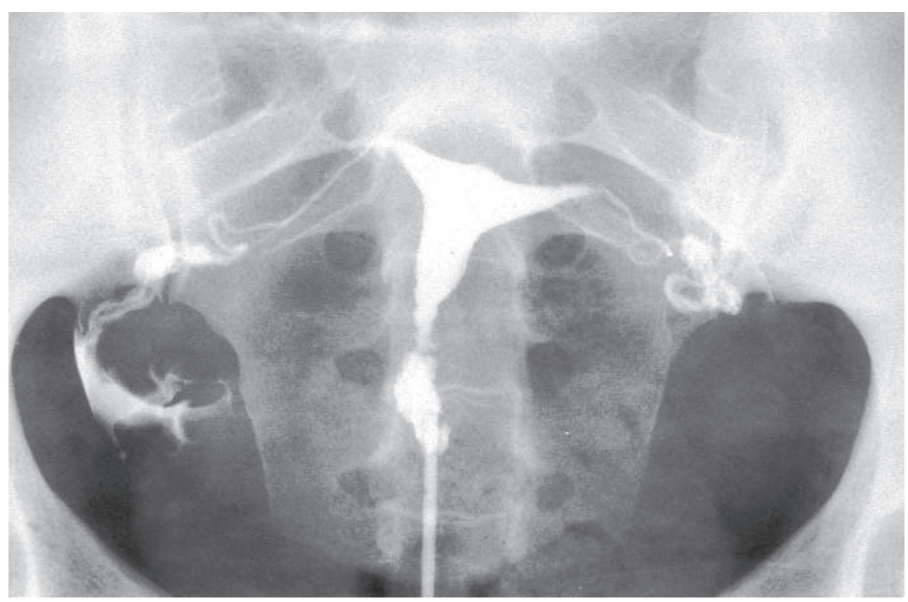


Fig. 5.9 Uterus and vagina in sagittal section.



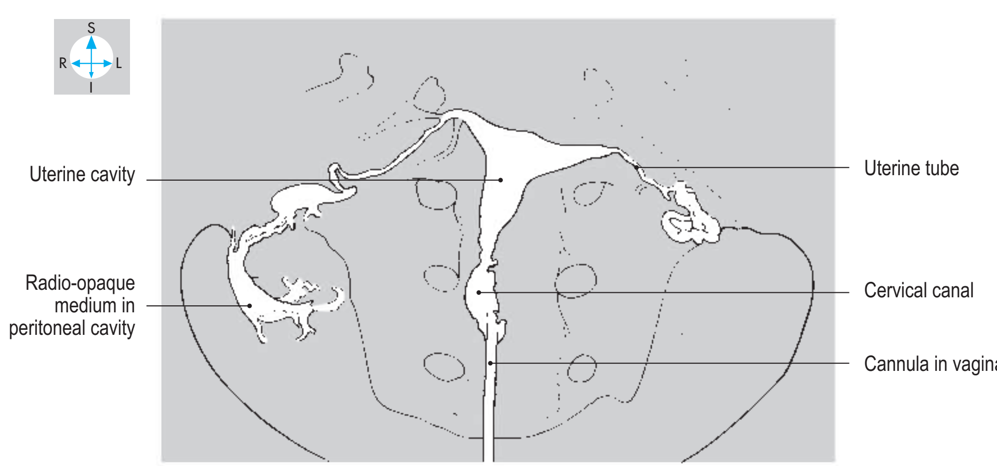


Fig. 5.10 Hysterosalpingogram. Radio-opaque medium has been injected, via a cannula in the vagina, into the uterus and along the uterine tubes.

Damage to the tubes, often as a result of inflammation (salpingitis), is a common cause of infertility. Sometimes an ectopic pregnancy occurs: a developing blastocyst may fail to reach the uterine cavity but implants and grows within the uterine tube. Rupture of the tube then leads to internal haemorrhage.

Ovaries

The ovaries lie close to the lateral pelvic walls, suspended from the posterior surfaces of the broad ligaments (Fig. 5.8). Each ovary is ovoid, approximately 4 cm long and 2 cm broad, with one pole directed medially towards the uterus and the other laterally towards the fimbriated end of the uterine tube. Each ovary is attached to the broad ligament by a sleeve of peritoneum, the mesovarium, which conveys the ovarian vessels. However, most of the ovarian surface is devoid of peritoneum. The ligament of the ovary attaches to the medial pole of the organ and runs within the broad ligament to reach the side of the uterine body. The ovary may lie in a shallow depression, the ovarian fossa, on the lateral pelvic wall between the external and internal iliac vessels. The ureter and the obturator nerve and vessels descend close to the ovary (Figs 5.13 & 5.16). Ovarian disease that spreads to involve the parietal peritoneum at this site, or the obturator nerve itself, may produce pain referred to the medial side of the thigh.

The ovary is supplied by the ovarian artery (Fig. 5.13), a direct branch of the abdominal aorta (p. 190). After crossing the pelvic brim, this vessel traverses the suspensory ligament of the ovary (infundibulopelvic ligament) to enter the broad ligament and divides into terminal branches within the mesovarium. The ovary is drained by numerous veins (the pampiniform plexus), which unite to form the ovarian vein. On the right, the ovarian vein terminates in the inferior vena cava, while the left ovarian vein usually joins the left renal vein (p. 194).

Vagina

The vagina is a midline tubular organ approximately 8–10 cm long, which slopes downwards and forwards (Figs 5.8 & 5.9). Its upper two-thirds, including the blind-ending vault, lie in the pelvic cavity. The vagina pierces the pelvic floor and terminates inferiorly by opening into the vestibule between the labia minora (p. 246). The anterior and posterior vaginal walls lie in mutual contact so that the lumen forms a transverse cleft. The lining possesses numerous transverse ridges (rugae; Fig. 5.12).

The uterine cervix pierces the upper part of the anterior vaginal wall and an anular groove surrounds the intravaginal part of the cervix. This groove is deepest superiorly where it is termed the posterior fornix (Fig. 5.9). On either side are the lateral fornices, while below the cervix is the comparatively shallow anterior fornix (Fig. 5.12).

Anteriorly, the vagina is closely applied to the posterior wall of the bladder and urethra. Posteriorly lie the rectouterine pouch of peritoneum and the ampulla of the rectum (Fig. 5.13). Lateral to its inferior third are the medial borders of the levator ani muscles, which provide important support to the vagina and uterus. Weakness of the pelvic floor musculature may lead to prolapse (descent of the uterus into the vagina).

The blood supply to the vagina is provided by branches of the uterine arteries and occasionally by vessels arising directly from the internal iliac arteries (Fig. 5.32). Venous blood passes into an extensive venous plexus surrounding the upper vagina and eventually reaches the internal iliac veins.

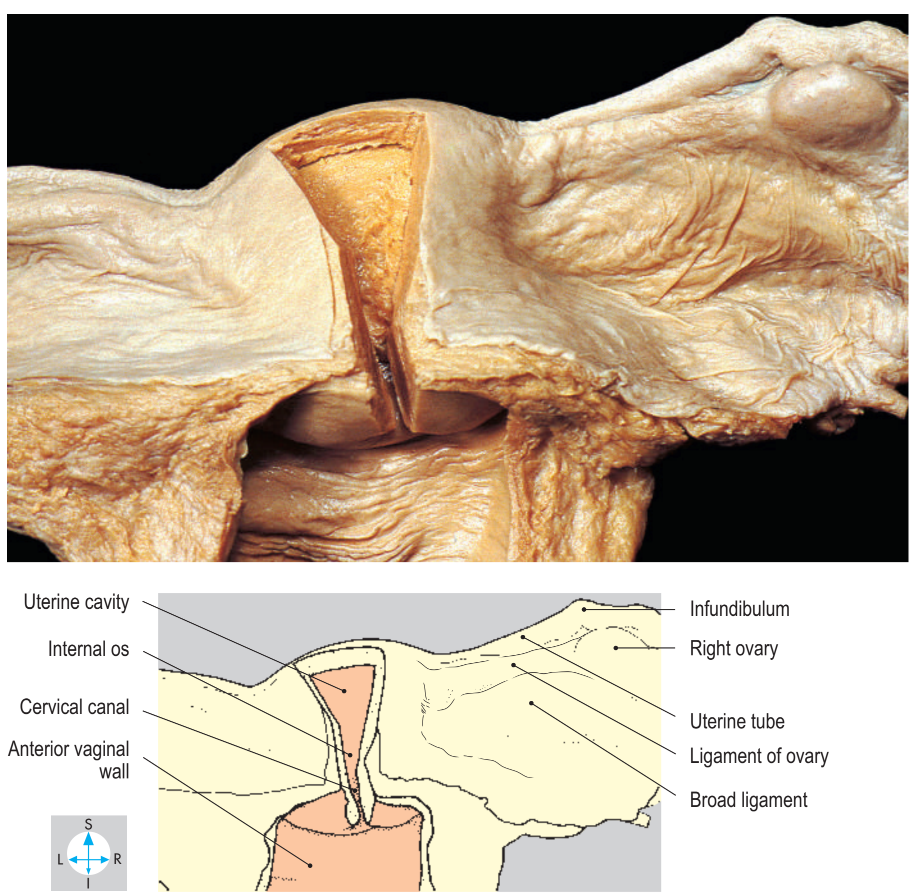


Fig. 5.11 Posterior aspect of uterus and broad ligaments. The uterine cavity, cervical canal and vagina have been exposed by removal of parts of their posterior walls.

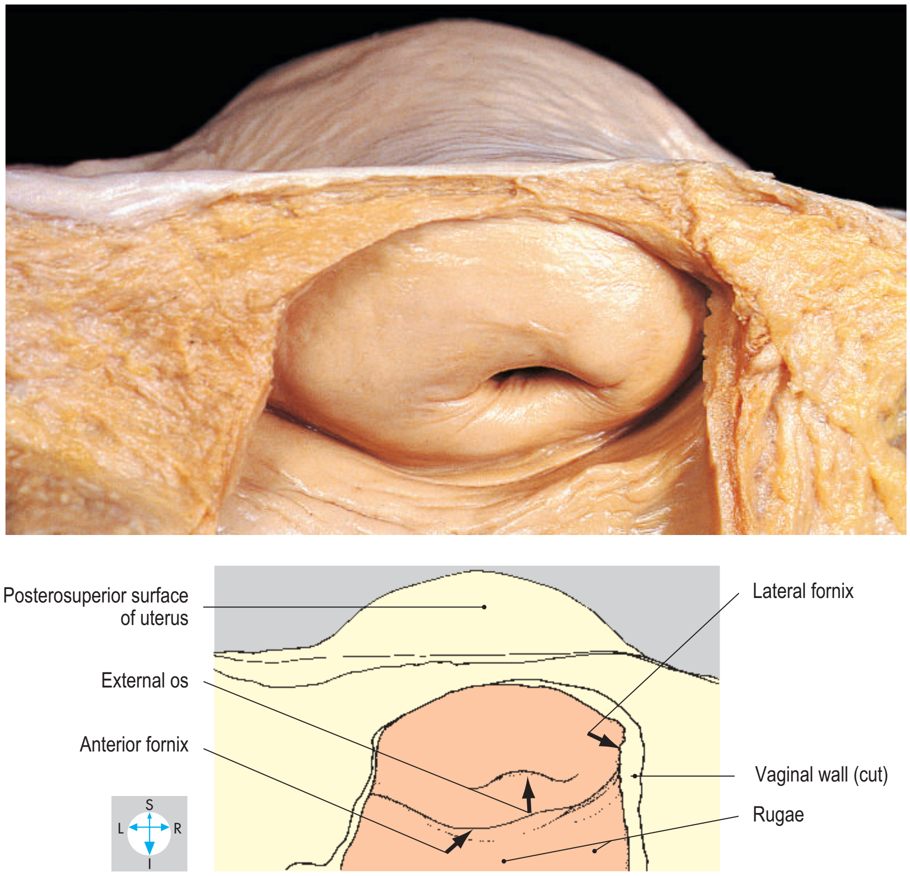


Fig. 5.12 Intravaginal part of the cervix revealed by removal of the posterior wall of the vagina.

Pelvic Ureters

Each ureter enters the pelvis by crossing in front of the common iliac vessels or the commencement of the external iliac vessels (Fig. 5.14). The ureter passes downwards and backwards before curving forwards to reach the posterior surface of the bladder. The ureter crosses the medial aspect of the obturator nerve and vessels and the superior vesical vessels before running forwards along the levator ani muscle. The pelvic peritoneum covers the medial aspect of the ureter and separates it from the rectum, sigmoid colon or coils of ileum.

In the male, the ureter passes under the ductus deferens and terminates near the seminal vesicle (Fig. 5.15). In the female, the ureter descends on the lateral pelvic wall, outside the peritoneum but close to the ovary as far as the ischial spine, where it turns medially across the pelvic floor to reach the base (root) of the broad ligament. Here it crosses under the uterine artery and passes close to the uterine cervix (Fig. 5.13). The ureter is vulnerable to damage during hysterectomy.

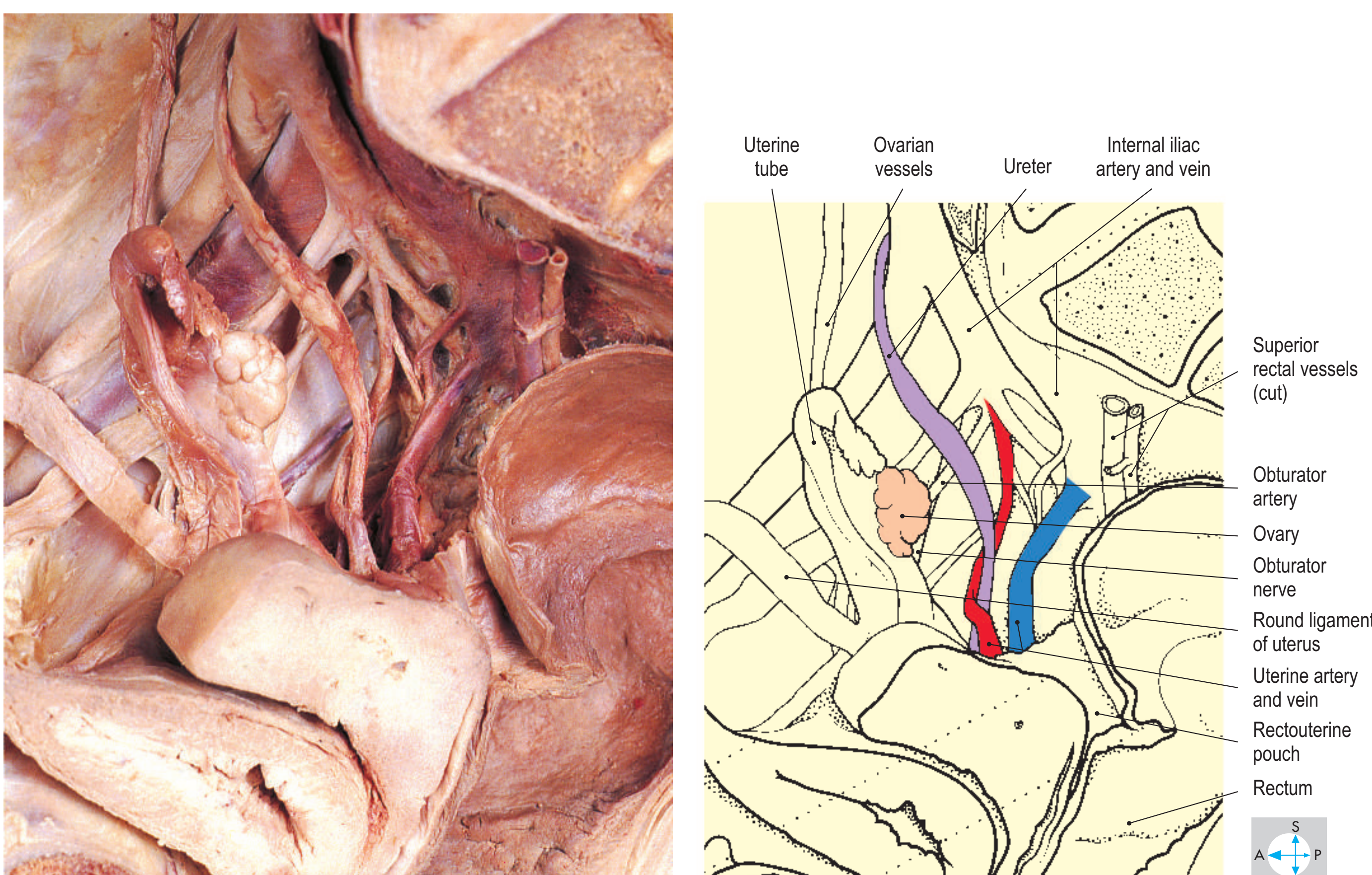


Fig. 5.13 Uterine vessels and the ureter after removal of peritoneum from the lateral pelvic wall.

Bladder

The urinary bladder lies in the anterior part of the pelvic cavity. When distended, the organ has an approximately spherical shape, but when empty, it assumes the form of a tetrahedron with four angles and four surfaces. The two posterolateral angles receive the ureters while the inferior angle, the bladder neck, is continuous with the urethra. The anterior angle gives attachment to a fibrous cord, the median umbilical ligament (Fig. 5.17). This remnant of the fetal allantois ascends in the extraperitoneal tissues of the anterior abdominal wall to the umbilicus. If it remains patent, urine may leak from the umbilicus.

The superior surface and the two inferolateral surfaces expand considerably as urine accumulates but the comparatively small posterior surface or base remains relatively fixed. This surface lies between the entrances of the ureters and the bladder neck.

The wall of the bladder consists of smooth muscle (detrusor) whose thickness gradually decreases as the organ fills. Although the interior of the distended bladder is smooth, the mucosa becomes rugose when the organ empties (Fig. 5.17), except in the region of the trigone. This is the triangular area between the ureteric orifices and the internal urethral meatus (Fig. 5.14). The ureters pierce the musculature of the bladder wall obliquely and open at slit-like orifices.

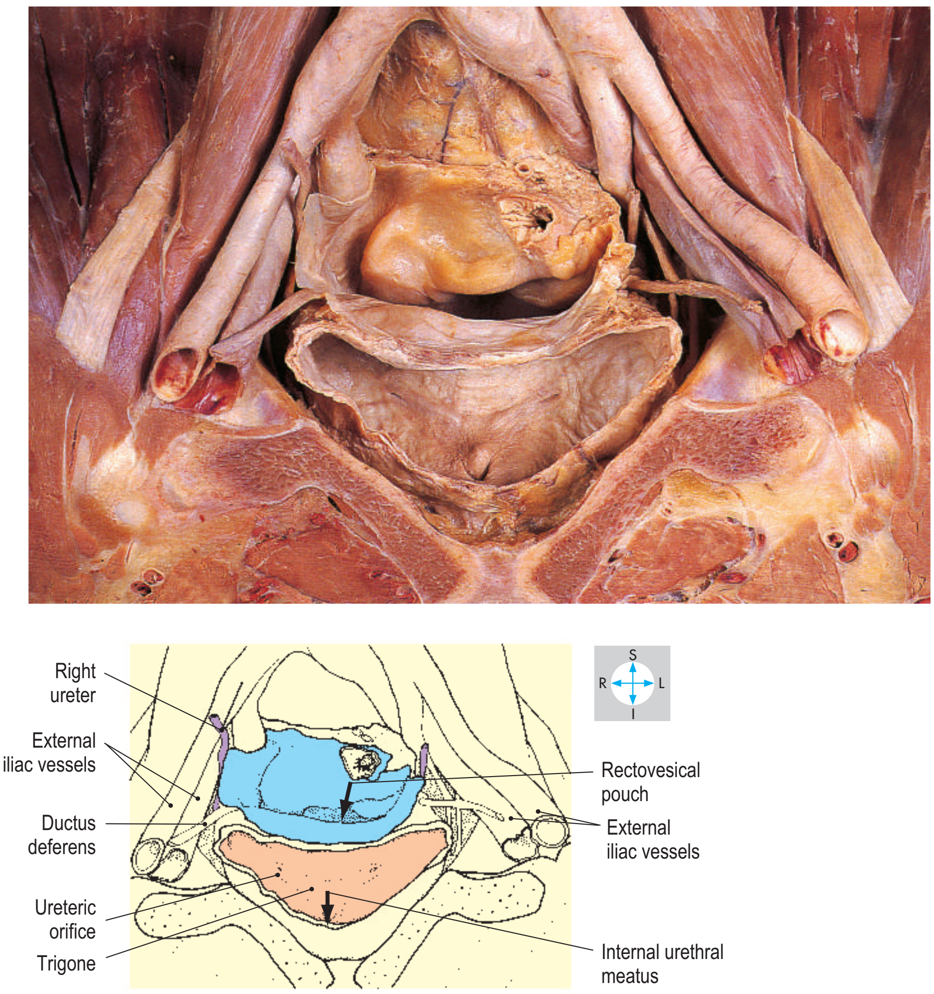
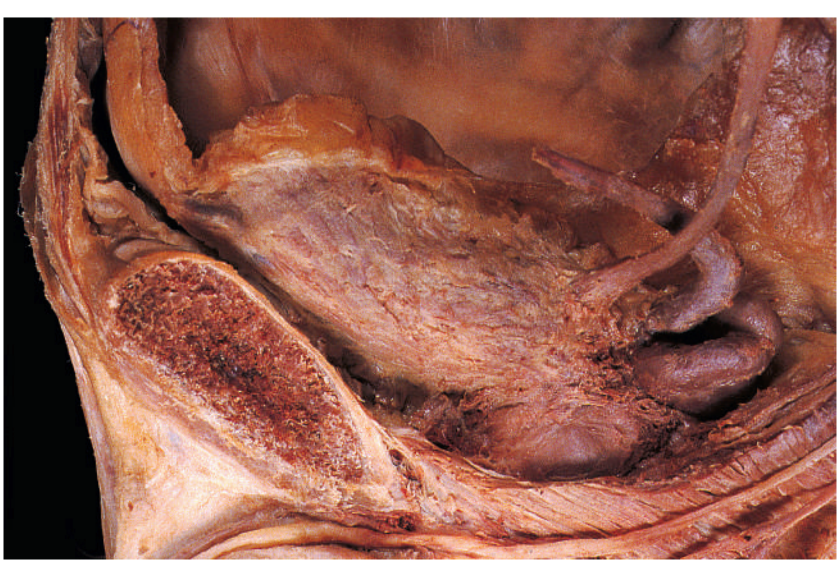


Fig. 5.14 Coronal section through the male pelvis to show the interior of the bladder and some of its relations.



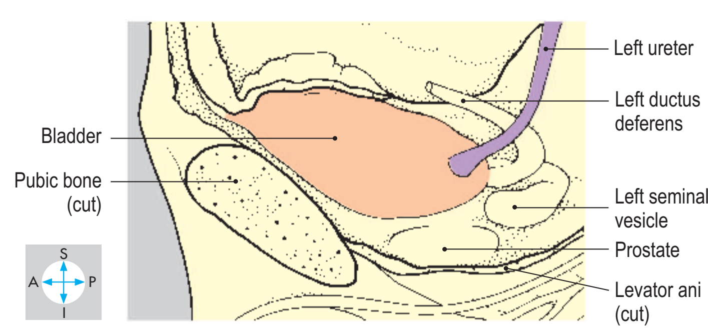


Fig. 5.15 Lateral view of the male bladder after removal of the left pelvic wall.

Relations

The superior surface of the bladder is covered with peritoneum (Fig. 5.17) on which rest coils of ileum and sigmoid colon. In both sexes, the inferolateral surfaces lie against the obturator internus and levator ani muscles and their associated fascial coverings. Between the bladder and these muscles run the obturator nerve and vessels and the superior vesical vessels (Fig. 5.16). Anterior to the bladder is the retropubic space, filled with adipose tissue and veins (Fig. 5.17). The empty bladder lies behind the pubic bones but as it fills, it rises above the level of the pubic crests and comes into contact with the lower part of the anterior abdominal wall. The distended bladder intervenes between the parietal peritoneum and the abdominal wall (Fig. 4.30) and can be accessed through a lower abdominal incision without opening the peritoneum.

In the male, the seminal vesicle and the ampulla of the ductus deferens are applied to each side of the posterior surface. Peritoneum descends a short distance on this surface before being reflected onto the anterior surface of the rectum to form the rectovesical pouch (Fig. 5.14). Below the level of this pouch, the bladder is related to the rectovesical septum and the ampulla of the rectum. Inferior to the male bladder lie the prostate and the prostatic plexus of veins.

In the female, the posterior part of the superior surface of the bladder is related to the body of the uterus (Fig. 5.17). Peritoneum passes from the superior surface of the bladder onto the uterine body, forming the vesicouterine pouch. Against the posterior surface of the female bladder lie the cervix of the uterus and the anterior wall of the vagina. The inferior angle of the bladder in the female lies at a lower level than in the male and is closely related to the two levator ani muscles.

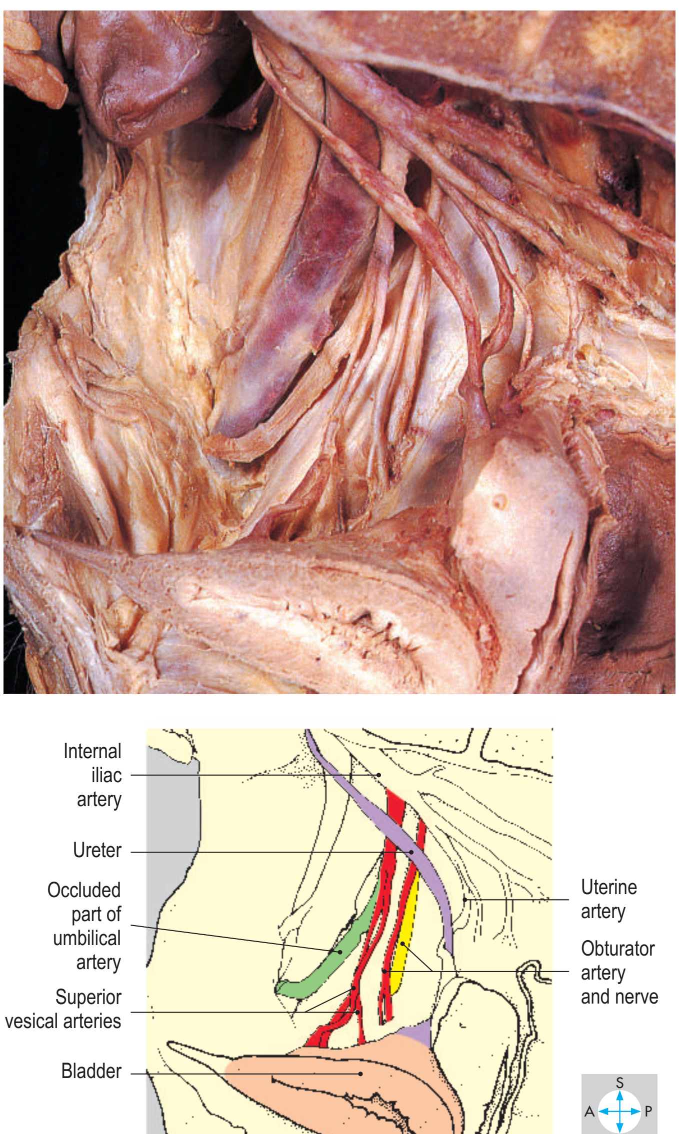


Fig. 5.16 Arterial supply and relations of the bladder in a female pelvis.

Blood supply

The bladder is supplied by branches of the internal iliac arteries. On each side, the patent part of the umbilical artery gives off one or more superior vesical arteries (Fig. 5.16). The bladder receives additional supply from the inferior vesical and obturator arteries. In the female, the uterine and vaginal arteries also contribute to the vascular supply of the bladder.

Venous blood passes into an extensive network of veins, the vesical plexus, which communicates with the prostatic or vaginal plexus and drains into the internal iliac veins.

Nerve supply

The motor innervation to the detrusor muscle is by parasympathetic nerves conveyed in the pelvic splanchnic nerves and the pelvic plexus of autonomic nerves (Fig. 5.30). In the male, the smooth muscle surrounding the bladder neck (preprostatic sphincter) is innervated by sympathetic nerves derived from the hypogastric plexus. The parasympathetic motor innervation stimulates contraction of the bladder at the time of micturition, while the sympathetic supply to the male bladder neck prevents reflux during ejaculation.

Female Urethra

The female urethra is a fibromuscular tube 3–4 cm long and begins at the internal urethral meatus of the bladder. Embedded in the anterior wall of the vagina, it inclines downwards and forwards through the pelvic floor (Fig. 5.18) and terminates in the vestibule at the external meatus between the clitoris and the vaginal opening.

The urethra passes close to the posterior aspect of the pubic symphysis (Fig. 5.17), to which it is attached by the pubourethral ligaments. The middle third of the urethra is encircled by striated muscle fibres of the external urethral sphincter, whose tone is the principal factor in maintaining continence of urine. Occlusive force on the urethra is also provided by contractions of the levator ani muscles (Fig. 5.18). Micturition occurs when bladder pressure is higher than urethral pressure and is produced by contraction of the detrusor muscle of the bladder wall accompanied by relaxation of the external urethral sphincter. Stress incontinence (leakage of urine during everyday activities that raise intra-abdominal pressure) may occur following vaginal delivery due to weakening of pelvic floor muscles.

The arterial supply to the urethra is provided by the inferior vesical arteries, and venous drainage is to the vesical plexus of veins. The mucosa receives its sensory nerve supply from the pudendal nerve, derived from the second, third and fourth sacral segments, which also innervate the external urethral sphincter.

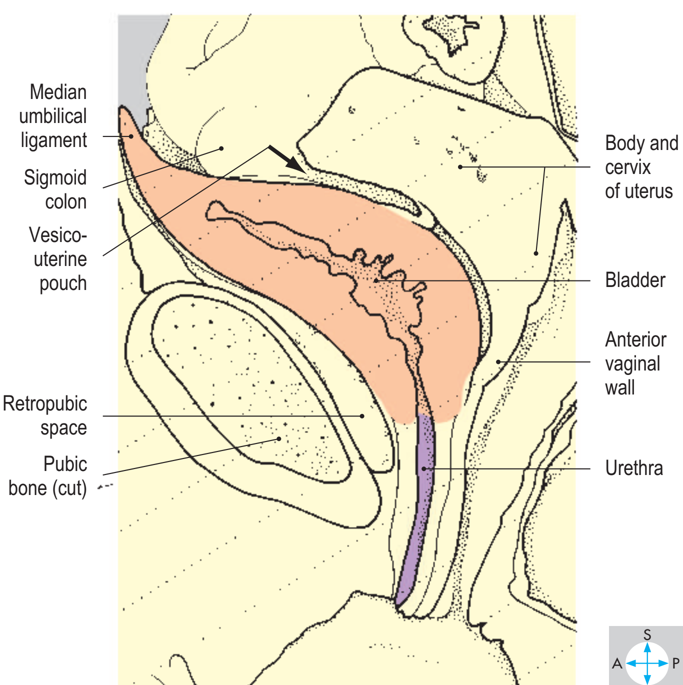


Fig. 5.17 Median sagittal section through the female pelvis to show the bladder and some of its relations.

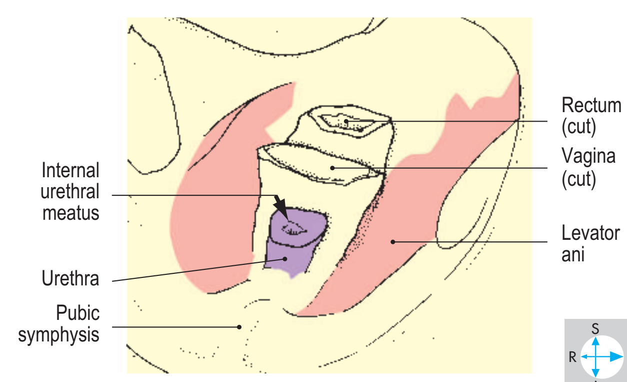


Fig. 5.18 Female urethra and its relation to the vagina and the levator ani muscles.

Male Urethra

The male urethra is a fibromuscular tube approximately 20 cm long. Beginning at the internal urethral meatus of the bladder, it descends through the prostate and the pelvic floor and enters the bulb of the penis (Fig. 5.19). It then traverses the corpus spongiosum and glans of the penis and terminates at the external urethral meatus. In the male the urethra not only drains urine from the bladder but also receives secretions from the prostatic ducts, the ejaculatory ducts and the ducts of the bulbourethral glands.

The male urethra is described in three parts: prostatic, intermediate (membranous) and spongy. The prostatic and intermediate parts pass downwards, while the spongy part turns forwards in the bulb of the penis (Fig. 5.19). A catheter or cystoscope must be manoeuvred carefully at this angulation to avoid urethral damage. Although the spongy and prostatic parts can be readily dilated, the external meatus and the intermediate urethra are comparatively narrow.

Prostatic urethra

Passing downwards through the prostate, the prostatic urethra is approximately 3 cm long. A midline ridge, the urethral crest, projects from the posterior wall, producing bilateral grooves, the prostatic sinuses (Fig. 5.20). Opening into each sinus are numerous prostatic ducts. The urethral crest is most prominent near its midpoint, where it presents a rounded elevation, the seminal colliculus. A midline orifice on the colliculus leads into a blind-ending sac, the prostatic utricle, which is a remnant of the ducts that give rise to the uterus in the female embryo. On each side of the utricle is the opening of the ejaculatory duct. Prostatic surgery, which disrupts the bladder neck and weakens the urethral sphincters, may impair urinary continence.

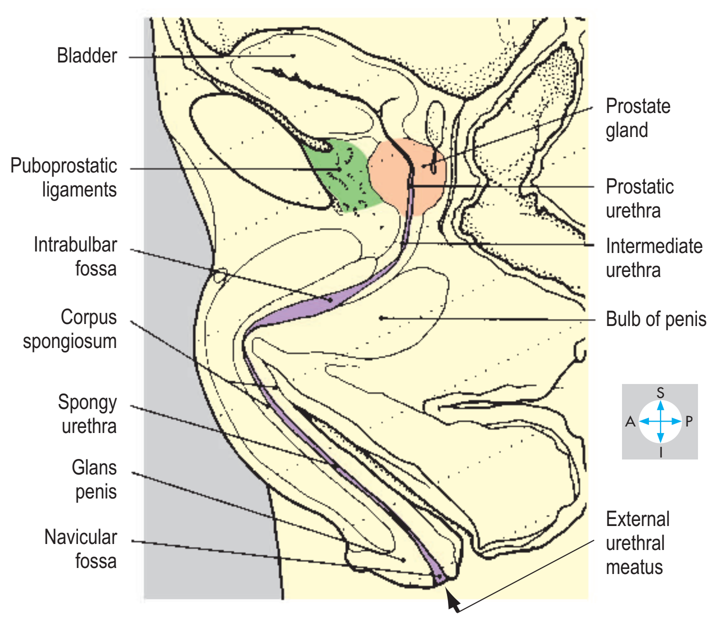


Fig. 5.19 Male urethra in sagittal section.

Intermediate (membranous) urethra

Emerging from the anterior aspect of the apex of the prostate, the intermediate urethra descends through the pelvic floor and pierces the perineal membrane. It is approximately 2 cm long and its mucosa is folded, giving the lumen a stellate appearance on cross-section. Encircling the intermediate urethra is the striated muscle of the external urethral sphincter (Fig. 5.21), the main structure responsible for urinary continence. Lateral to the sphincter are the medial borders of the levatores ani.

Posterolateral to the intermediate urethra are the paired bulbourethral glands, each about 1 cm in diameter (Fig. 5.21). Their ducts pierce the perineal membrane and open into the spongy urethra. An additional posterior relation of the intermediate urethra is the ampulla of the rectum, while anteriorly lies the lower border of the pubic symphysis, to which the urethra is anchored by the pubourethral ligaments.

Spongy (penile) urethra

The spongy urethra is approximately 15 cm in length, commencing in the bulb of the penis and traversing the erectile tissue of the corpus spongiosum and glans (Fig. 5.19). The mucosa presents numerous small recesses or lacunae and most of its lumen forms a transverse slit. Within the bulb, the urethra is wider, forming the intrabulbar fossa. The lumen is also expanded within the glans to form the navicular fossa, which opens at the surface as a vertical slit, the external meatus. Urine may leak (extravasation) into the superficial perineal pouch if the spongy urethra is torn by perineal trauma or pelvic fracture (p. 244).

Blood supply

The prostatic and intermediate parts of the urethra receive blood from the inferior vesical arteries. The spongy part is supplied by the internal pudendal artery via the dorsal arteries of the penis and the arteries to the bulb. Venous blood passes into the prostatic venous plexus and the internal pudendal veins.

Nerve supply

The principal sensory innervation of the mucosa is provided by the pudendal (S2, S3 & S4) nerve, a branch of the sacral plexus. The same spinal cord segments innervate the external sphincter.

Male Internal Organs of Reproduction

The organs of reproduction in the male comprise the paired testes, epididymides, ductus (vasa) deferentia, seminal vesicles, ejaculatory ducts and bulbourethral glands, as well as the prostate and penis. The superficial organs (the external genitalia) include the penis (p. 245) and the testes and epididymides within the scrotum (pp 149–151).

The reproductive organs described here are those that lie within the pelvis, namely the prostate, the seminal vesicles, the intrapelvic parts of the ductus deferentia (Fig. 5.22) and the ejaculatory ducts.

Prostate

The prostate is an approximately spherical organ lying immediately below the bladder (Fig. 5.23). The flattened superior surface (base) is applied to the neck of the bladder and is pierced by the urethra, which descends through the gland and emerges near the blunt apex. The part of the prostate behind the urethra and above and between the ejaculatory ducts (see below) is sometimes described as the median lobe (Fig. 5.24).

Anteriorly, the prostate is anchored by the puboprostatic ligaments (Fig. 5.19) to the inferior border of the pubic symphysis. Inferior to the organ lies the intermediate urethra (Fig. 5.23) surrounded by the external urethral sphincter, and posteriorly are the rectovesical septum and the ampulla of the rectum. On each side of the prostate is the medial border of levator ani.

The gland often enlarges with advancing age (benign prostatic hypertrophy) and is a site of malignant change (prostatic carcinoma), which may metastasize to the vertebral column (p. 397). Both conditions may obstruct the prostatic part of the urethra. The gland is palpable on rectal examination and may be biopsied through the rectal wall.

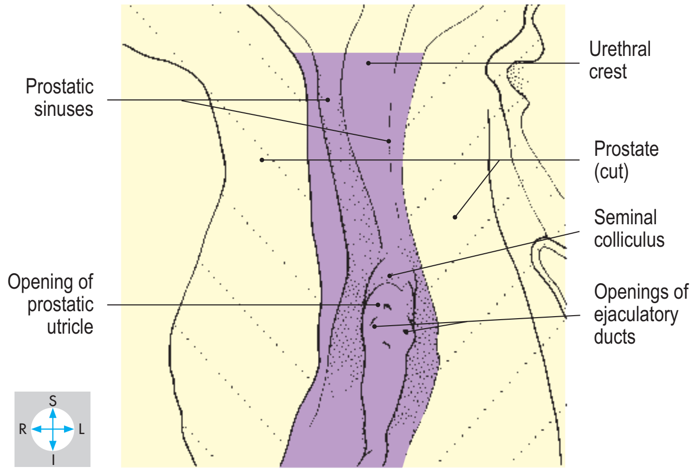


Fig. 5.20 Prostatic urethra opened through its anterior wall to show the urethral crest and seminal colliculus.

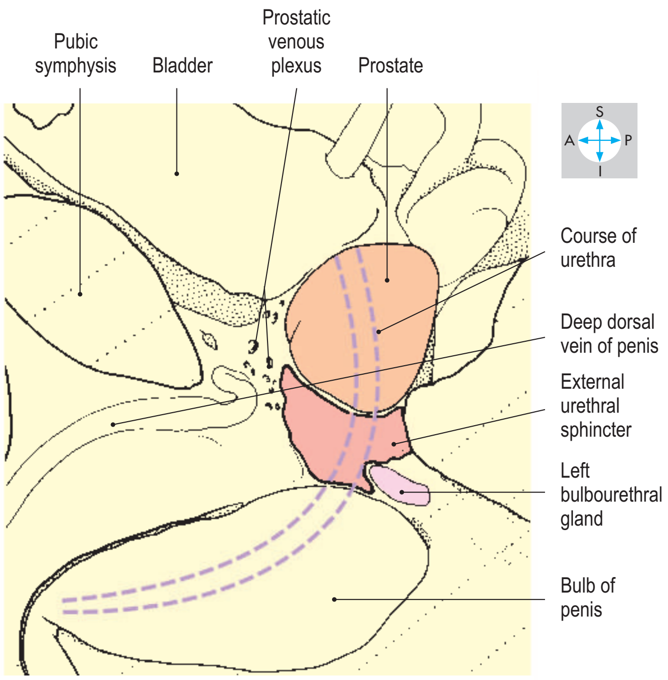


Fig. 5.21 The left pelvic wall and levator ani have been removed to show the prostate gland, external urethral sphincter, left bulbourethral gland and bulb of the penis.

Seminal vesicle

Each seminal vesicle is a sacculated gland approximately 3 cm long, lying lateral to the ampulla of the ductus deferens (Figs 5.24 & 5.25). The seminal vesicles lie in front of the rectum and rectovesical pouch of peritoneum (Fig. 5.23) and extend up the posterior wall of the bladder as far as the terminal parts of the ureters (Fig. 5.25).

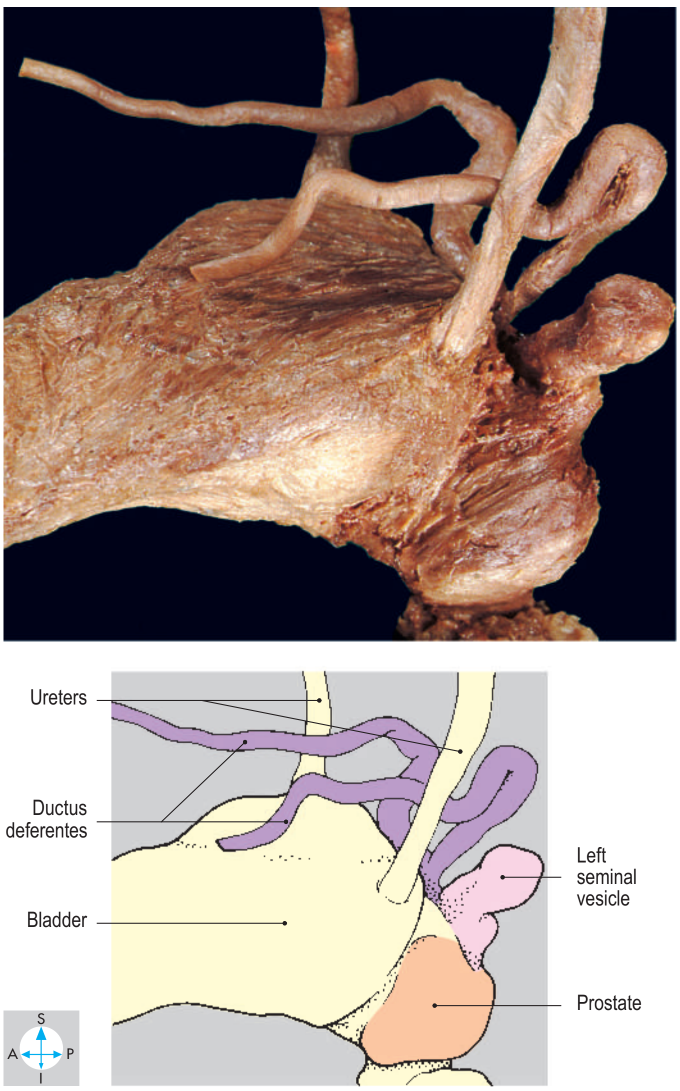


Fig. 5.22 Lateral view of the prostate, left seminal vesicle and both ductus deferentes.

Ductus (vas) deferens

Each ductus (vas) deferens begins at the tail of the epididymis in the scrotum, ascends within the spermatic cord and traverses the inguinal canal (pp 146–148). After emerging from the deep inguinal ring, the ductus runs along the lateral pelvic wall, covered by peritoneum, and passes medial to the superior vesical vessels and obturator nerve and vessels. The ductus then crosses above the ureter (Figs 5.22 & 5.23) and turns downwards and medially, posterior to the bladder (Fig. 5.23). The terminal part of the ductus is dilated to form the ampulla, which lies medial to the seminal vesicle. The ampulla is related posteriorly to the peritoneum of the rectovesical pouch and to the rectovesical septum and rectum.

Bulbourethral gland

The bulbourethral glands (Fig. 5.21) lie adjacent to the intermediate urethra and are described on p. 227.

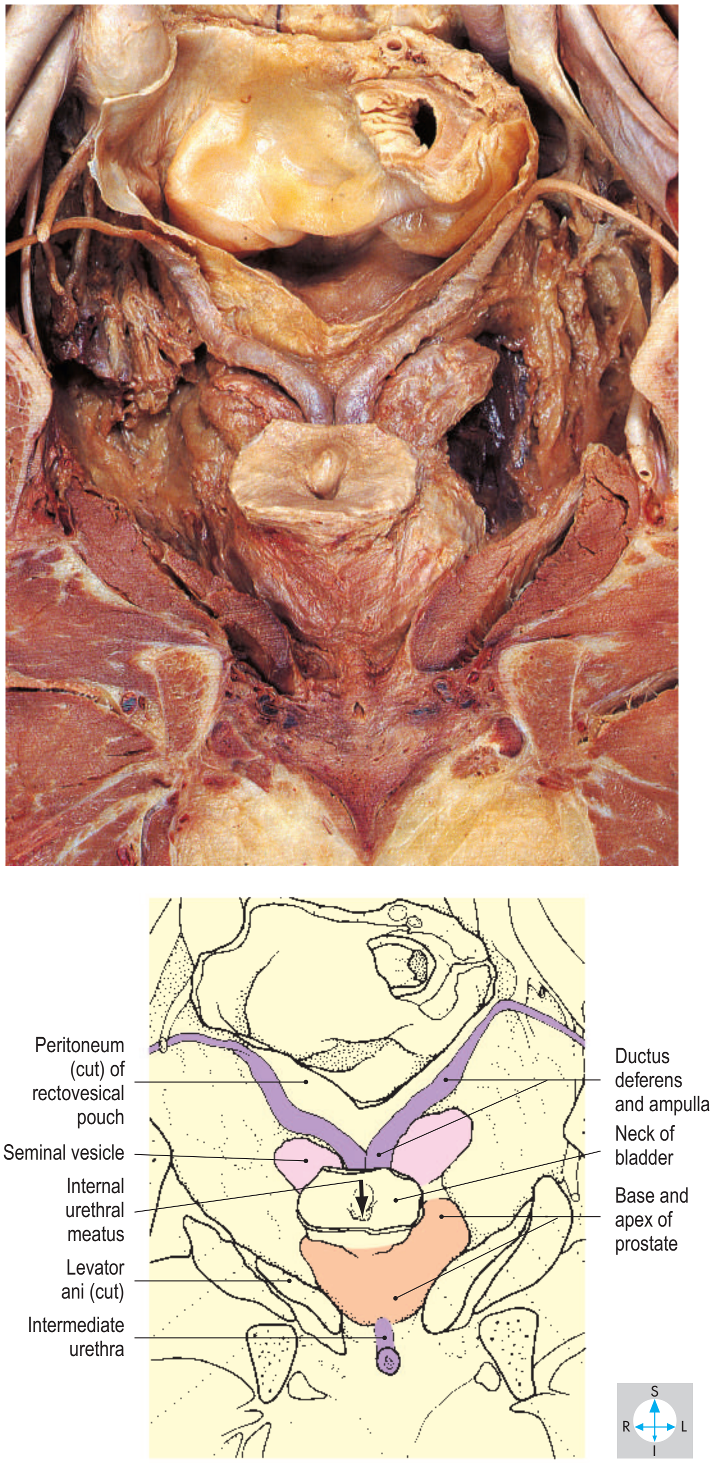


Fig. 5.23 Coronal section of the pelvic walls and floor. Most of the bladder has been removed to reveal the prostate, the seminal vesicles and both ductus deferentes.

Ejaculatory duct

The duct of each seminal vesicle joins the ampulla of the corresponding ductus deferens to form the ejaculatory duct (Fig. 5.24). The right and left ducts pierce the prostate and run downwards, forwards and medially through its substance to open into the prostatic urethra at slit-like orifices on the summit of the seminal colliculus.

Blood supply

The artery to the ductus deferens is usually a small vessel that arises from the superior vesical artery and accompanies the ductus as far as the epididymis. The ampulla of the ductus, the seminal vesicle and prostate are supplied by the inferior vesical artery. From the internal reproductive organs, blood passes into the venous plexus (Fig. 5.21) surrounding the prostate to drain into the internal iliac veins.

Ejaculation

Semen contains spermatozoa from the testes and secretions from the ampullae of the ductus, the seminal vesicles and prostate. Under the control of the sympathetic nervous system, contraction of smooth muscle in the ductus, seminal vesicles and prostate propels secretions into the prostatic urethra. Semen is then expelled from the urethra by contractions of the bulbospongiosus muscles, which compress the bulb of the penis (p. 245). Reflux of semen into the bladder is prevented by contraction of the smooth muscle in the wall of the bladder neck, the preprostatic sphincter.

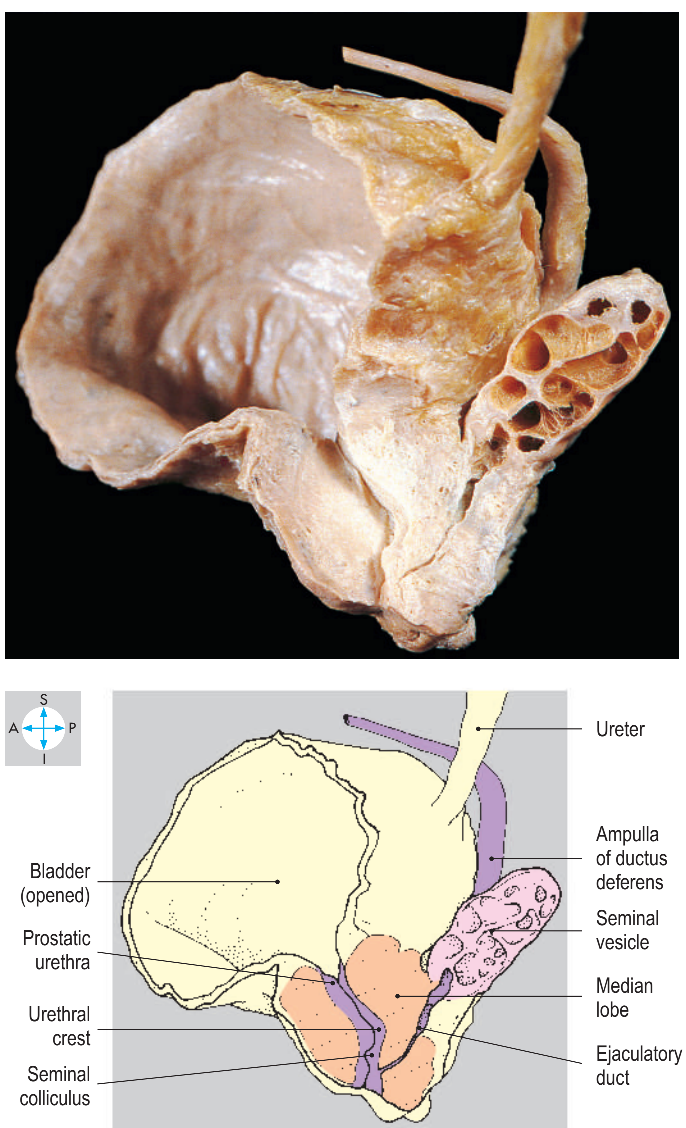


Fig. 5.24 Dissection of prostate and left seminal vesicle.

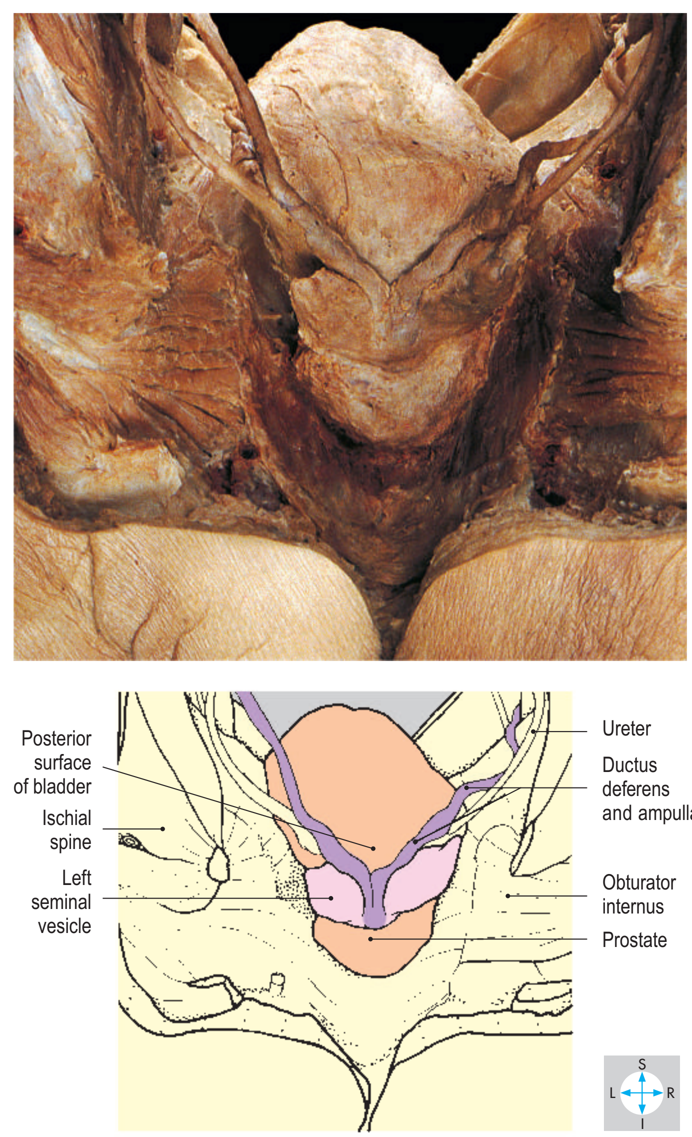


Fig. 5.25 Removal of the rectum and the posterior wall of the pelvis exposes the bladder, prostate, seminal vesicles and ductus deferentes.

Pelvic Wall and Floor

The pelvic wall is formed by the bones of the pelvic girdle and their associated ligaments, muscles and fascia. The bony component comprises the right and left hip bones anterolaterally and the sacrum and coccyx posteriorly. The pelvic cavity is usually wider and shallower in females because of the differences in the shapes of the surrounding bones.

Hip bone

Only the medial or pelvic surface of the hip bone is considered here; the external surface is described on p. 269. Each hip bone is formed by the fusion of three components: ilium, ischium and pubis (Figs 5.26 & 5.27). The anterosuperior part of the ilium contributes to the abdominal wall and gives attachment to iliacus. The lower portion of the ilium extends below the pelvic inlet and contributes to the lateral wall of the pelvis. On the posterior part of the bone is the auricular surface, which articulates with the corresponding surface of the sacrum at the sacroiliac joint.

The ischium has a rounded tuberosity inferiorly, which bears body weight in the sitting position. Posteriorly is the pointed spine, which separates the greater and lesser sciatic notches, while anteriorly the ramus of the ischium ascends to fuse with the inferior pubic ramus.

The pubic bone has an iliopubic ramus that merges with the ilium near the iliopubic eminence, and an inferior ramus, which is continuous below the obturator foramen with the ramus of the ischium. The bodies of the right and left pubic bones articulate at the pubic symphysis.

The obturator foramen is a large aperture, which is almost completely occluded by the obturator membrane (Fig. 5.27). Superiorly, the membrane leaves a small gap, the obturator canal, which provides access between the pelvis and the medial compartment of the thigh.

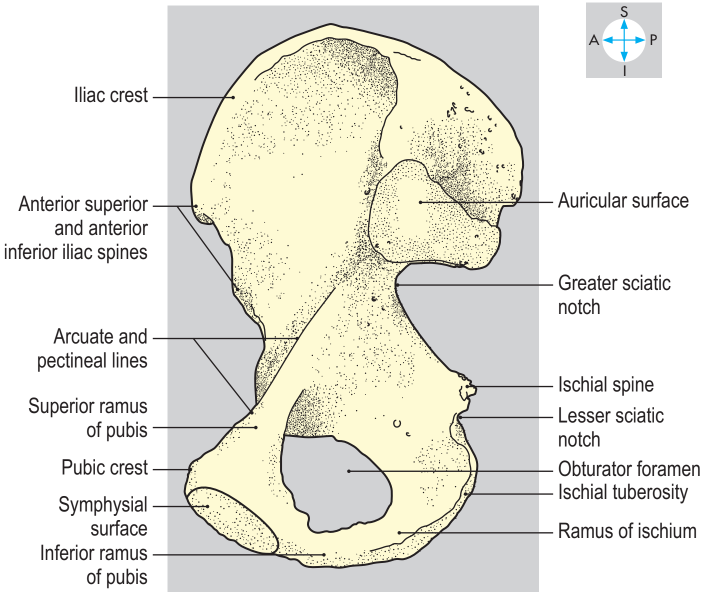


Fig. 5.26 Medial surface of right hip bone.

Pelvic floor

The pelvic floor (or diaphragm) is a muscular partition separating the cavity of the pelvis above from the perineum below. It slopes downwards towards the midline, forming a trough that inclines downwards and forwards (Figs 5.28 & 5.29). In the midline anteriorly, a narrow triangular gap, the urogenital hiatus, between the muscle fibres transmits the urethra in both sexes and the vagina in the female (Figs 5.1 & 5.18). Posteriorly, the pelvic floor is pierced by the anal canal.

The pelvic floor is formed principally by the right and left levator ani muscles, which are supplemented posteriorly by the coccygeus muscles (Fig. 5.29). The coccygeus muscle is applied to the medial surface of the sacrospinous ligament. Medially, it attaches to the lateral border of the sacrum and coccyx, and laterally to the ischial spine.

Each levator ani muscle has a linear attachment to the pelvic wall. The attachment commences anteriorly on the pelvic surface of the body of the pubis and continues backwards as the tendinous arch along the obturator fascia as far as the ischial spine (Fig. 5.29). The levator ani muscle has two parts: the anterior part comprises pubococcygeus and the posterior part is iliococcygeus.

Pubococcygeus runs backwards and downwards. Its most anterior fibres lie near the midline and pass close to the urethra. In the male, they support the prostate (Fig. 5.23); in the female, they attach to the vagina (Fig. 5.18). The intermediate fibres of pubococcygeus, puborectalis, reach the anal canal and either attach to its wall or loop behind the anorectal junction. The posterior fibres attach to the coccyx or fuse in the midline with fibres from the other side at the anococcygeal raphe.

The fibres of iliococcygeus pass downwards and medially below those of pubococcygeus and attach to the coccyx and to the anococcygeal raphe.

The levator ani muscles support the pelvic contents, actively maintaining the positions of the pelvic viscera. In particular, the pubococcygeus muscles compress the urethra and vagina and provide support for the bladder and uterus. The levator ani fibres that loop behind the anal canal help to maintain the angulation of the anorectal junction and play an important role in the continence of faeces. During defecation, the fibres attaching to the wall of the anal canal pull the organ upwards. Levator ani and coccygeus are innervated from above by the fourth sacral nerve and from below by branches of the pudendal nerve. The levator ani may be weakened by multiple vaginal deliveries, predisposing to stress incontinence (of urine) and uterine prolapse.

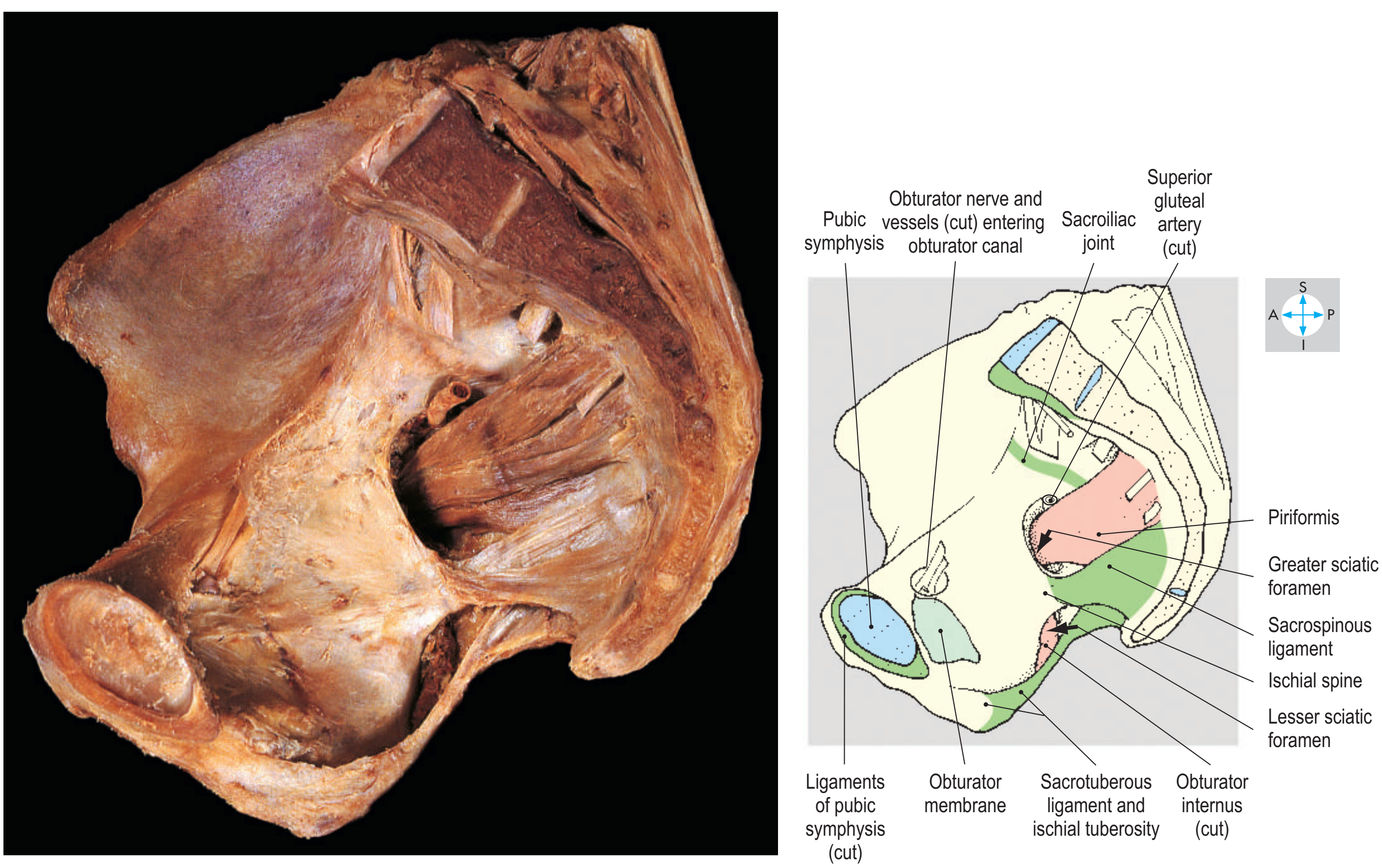


Fig. 5.27 Right hemipelvis showing the pubic symphysis, the obturator membrane, the ligaments and the foramina.

Joints

The pelvic girdle forms a stable ring because its constituent bones are bound together at the two sacroiliac joints and the pubic symphysis.

The symphysis is a secondary cartilaginous joint containing a pad of fibrocartilage, the interpubic disc (Fig. 5.28), that separates the bodies of the right and left pubic bones. The joint is stabilized by ligaments attached around the articular margins.

The sacroiliac joints allow very little movement because the articulating surfaces of their synovial cavities are irregular and behind each cavity is the thick posterior interosseous ligament. Each joint is further supported by the anterior and posterior sacroiliac ligaments and iliolumbar, sacrospinous and sacrotuberous ligaments. Body weight acting downwards through the lumbosacral disc tends to rotate the sacrum, tipping its lower part backwards, a movement prevented by the sacrospinous and sacrotuberous ligaments (Fig. 5.27).

The iliolumbar ligament attaches medially to the transverse process of the fifth lumbar vertebra and laterally to the iliac crest and front of the sacroiliac joint. The sacrospinous ligament passes from the lateral margins of the sacrum and coccyx to the ischial spine. The larger sacrotuberous ligament passes from the side and dorsum of the sacrum and the posterior surface of the ilium to the ischial tuberosity. These two ligaments convert the greater and lesser sciatic notches into the greater and lesser sciatic foramina (Fig. 5.27). Pregnancy-related hormones may produce ligamentous laxity, especially at the joints of the pelvic girdle, reducing joint support and contributing to lumbar and pelvic pain during pregnancy.

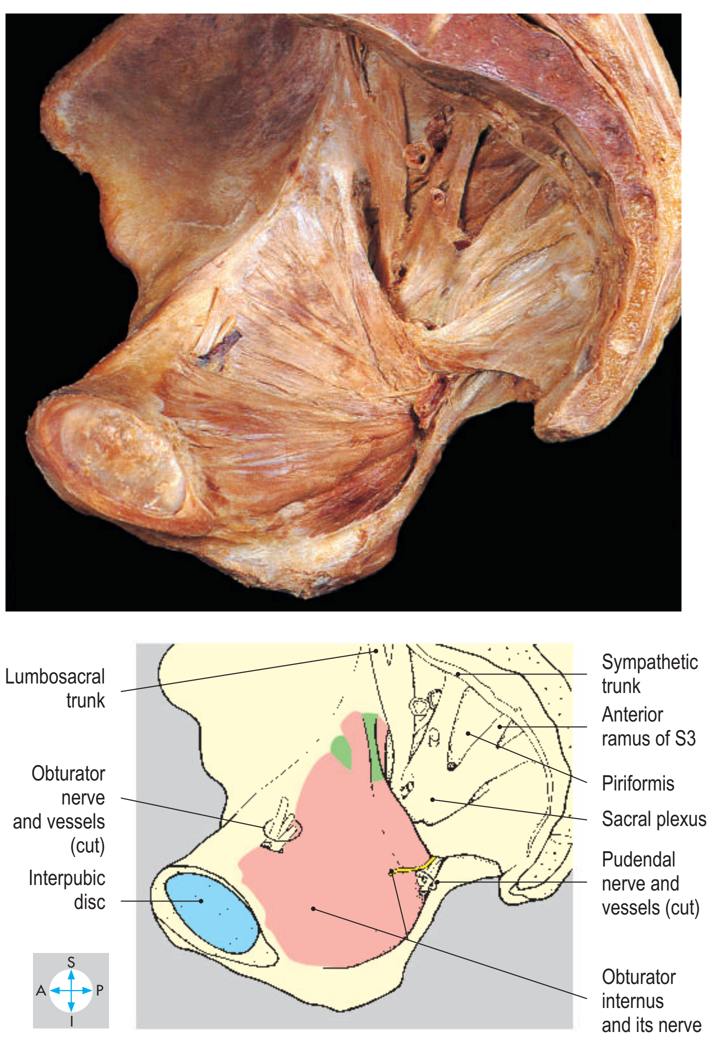


Fig. 5.28 Right hemipelvis showing the pelvic attachment of obturator internus.

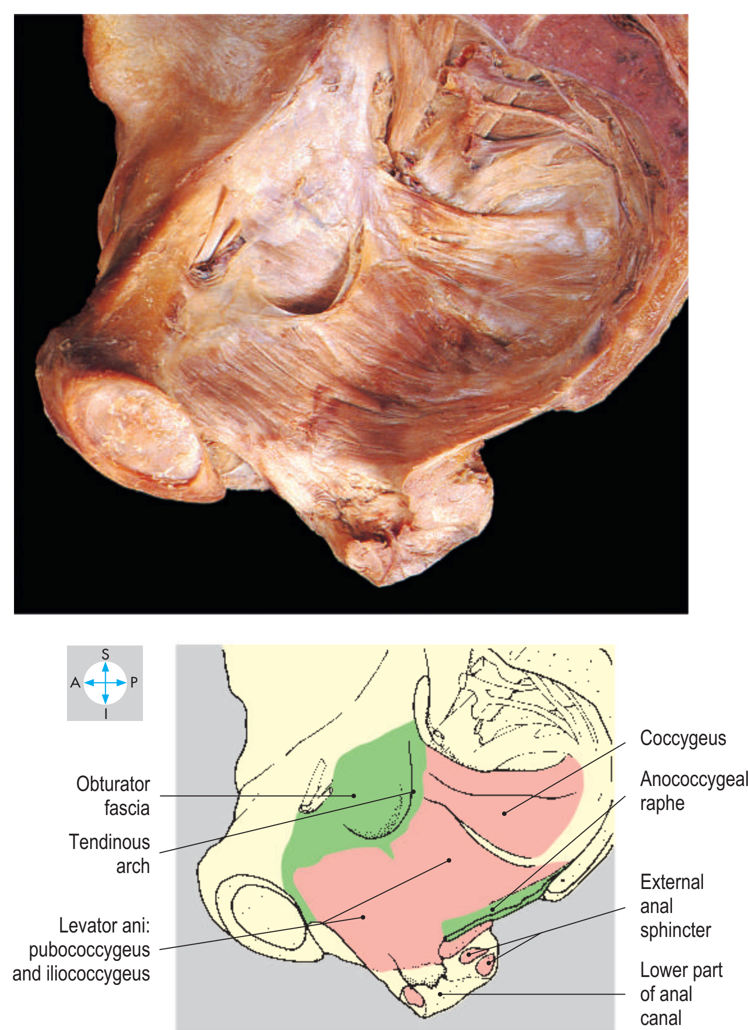


Fig. 5.29 Right levator ani and part of the anal canal, seen in a median sagittal section of the pelvis.

Muscles

Piriformis is a flat muscle attached to the pelvic surfaces of the second, third and fourth pieces of the sacrum (Fig. 5.27). Running laterally through the greater sciatic foramen, it enters the buttock and attaches to the upper part of the greater trochanter of the femur (p. 271). Piriformis rotates the hip joint laterally and is innervated by the first and second sacral nerves. Numerous vessels and nerves accompany the muscle through the greater sciatic foramen (Fig. 5.28).

Obturator internus is a fan-shaped muscle with an extensive attachment to the margins of the obturator foramen and the pelvic surface of the obturator membrane (Fig. 5.28). The muscle fibres converge on the lesser sciatic foramen to form a tendon, which turns laterally to enter the gluteal region. The tendon is attached to the medial aspect of the greater trochanter (p. 271). The muscle laterally rotates the hip joint. The nerve to obturator internus (L5, S1 & S2) enters the muscle within the perineum, having traversed the greater and lesser sciatic foramina.

Pelvic fascia

This term includes the fascial lining of the pelvic walls and the extraperitoneal connective tissue surrounding the pelvic viscera (Fig. 5.7). The pelvic surfaces of obturator internus (Fig. 5.29), piriformis and levator ani are covered by fascia that is continuous superiorly with the transversalis and iliac fasciae. Between the pelvic organs, the pelvic fascia mostly comprises a loose meshwork of connective tissue. Pelvic infections can spread widely through these looser tissues. The fascia is condensed anterior to the rectum to form the rectovesical septum; and some of the arteries to the pelvic organs, notably the uterine and vaginal vessels, are accompanied by thickened bands of fascia termed ligaments. Radiating from the uterine cervix to the pelvic walls are the transverse cervical (lateral sacral), uterosacral ligaments and pubocervical ligaments, the latter passing below the bladder neck to reach the cervix.

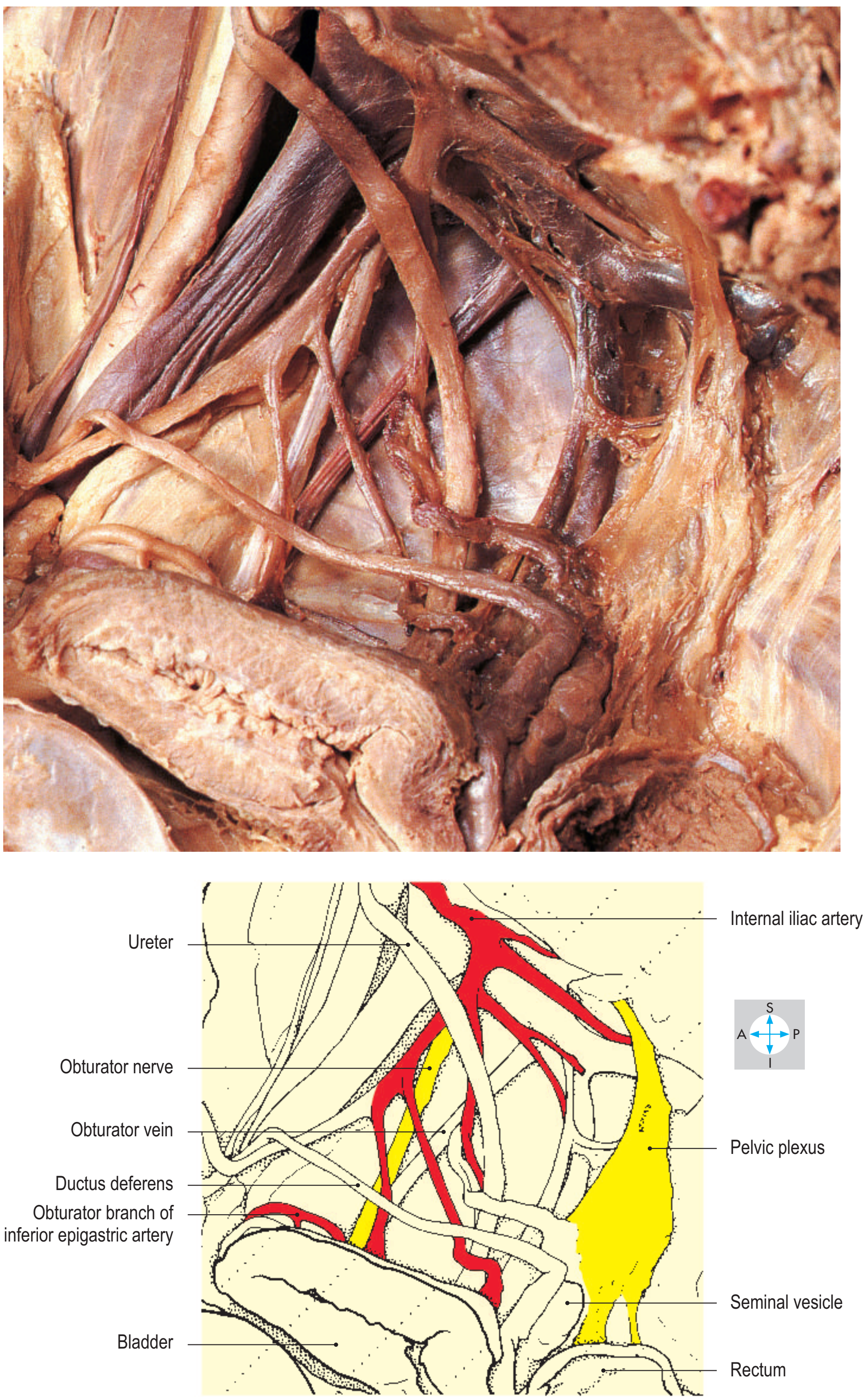


Fig. 5.30 Right pelvic plexus of autonomic nerves. In this specimen the obturator artery is a branch of the inferior epigastric artery rather than the internal iliac artery.

Pelvic Nerves

Autonomic nerves

The pelvic organs receive their autonomic innervation via the right and left pelvic plexuses, which lie adjacent to the internal iliac arteries and their branches (Fig. 5.30). Nerves pass from the plexuses to the bladder, reproductive organs and the rectum by accompanying the arteries to these organs. The plexuses and their branches contain efferent fibres from both the parasympathetic and sympathetic systems, which reach the pelvis from different parts of the spinal cord.

Parasympathetic nerves

The parasympathetic component of the pelvic plexuses is provided by the pelvic splanchnic nerves (nervi erigentes), which leave the spinal cord in the second, third and fourth sacral nerves. The parasympathetic fibres control micturition, dilation of the erectile tissues in both sexes, and defecation. The pelvic plexuses also provide the parasympathetic innervation of the descending and sigmoid parts of the colon. These fibres ascend into the abdomen in the hypogastric plexus and are distributed with the branches of the inferior mesenteric artery. Extensive dissections during surgical excision of the prostate gland or the rectum may damage the parasympathetic innervation (cavernous nerves) to the erectile tissues, resulting in erectile dysfunction (impotence).

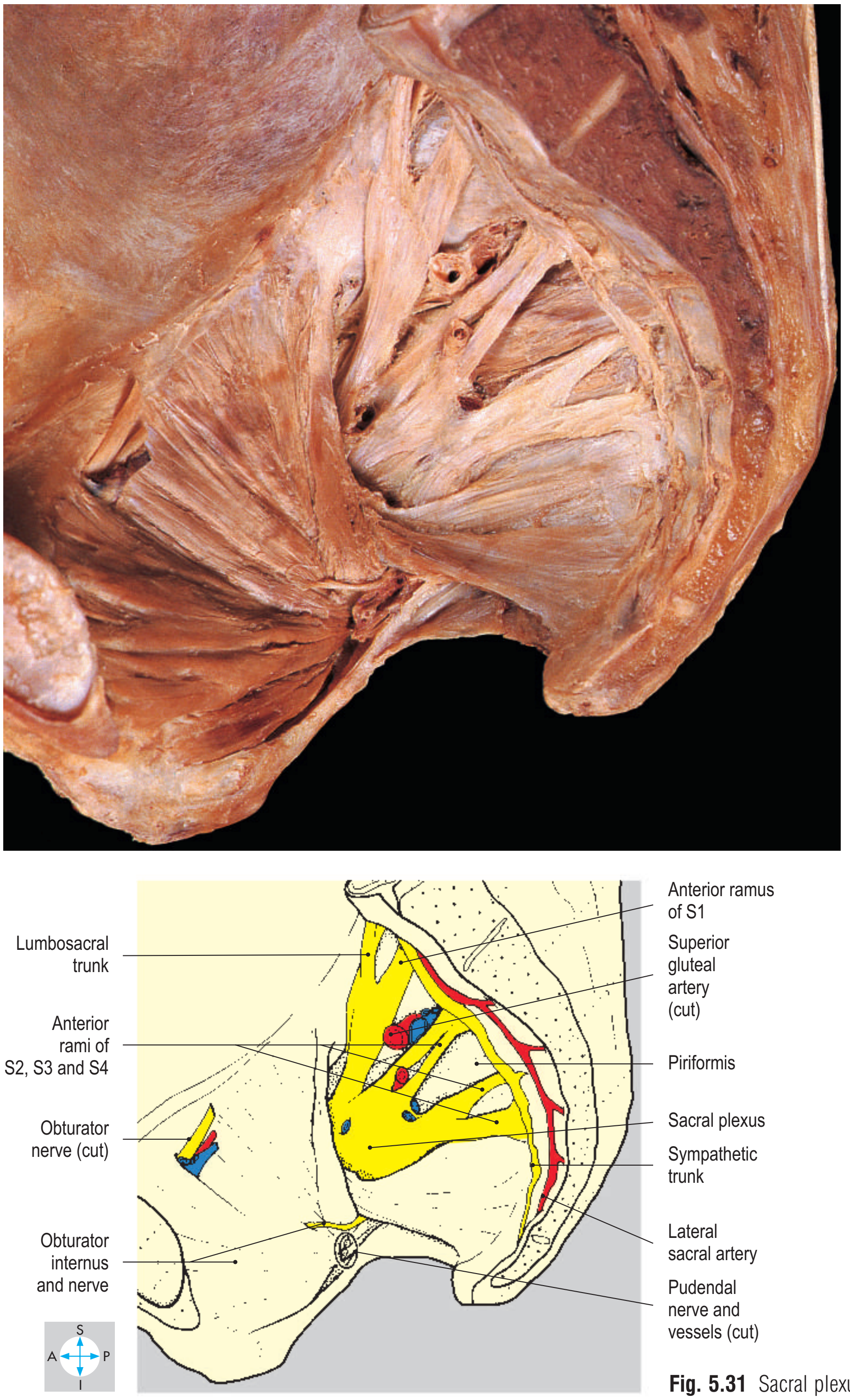


Fig. 5.31 Sacral plexus and pelvic portion of the sympathetic trunk.

Sympathetic nerves

The sympathetic fibres destined for the pelvic autonomic plexuses arise from the lower thoracic and upper lumbar segments of the spinal cord and pass through the lumbar portions of the sympathetic trunks on the posterior abdominal wall. From here, they descend in the hypogastric plexus to reach the pelvis. Sympathetic fibres innervate the smooth muscle of the reproductive organs in both sexes, and in the male are responsible for coordinating ejaculation (p. 231).

The two sympathetic trunks pass from the posterior abdominal wall (p. 198) into the pelvis by crossing behind the common iliac vessels. Descending in front of the sacrum and piriformis muscles (Fig. 5.31), they incline towards the midline and fuse on the anterior surface of the coccyx. Each trunk bears three or four ganglia and provides grey rami communicantes, consisting of postganglionic fibres, to the sacral nerves. These fibres supply blood vessels and sweat glands in the areas innervated by the appropriate sacral nerves.

Spinal nerves

The lower lumbar and upper sacral spinal nerves are predominantly concerned with the innervation of the lower limb. However, a few fibres derived from these spinal nerves are distributed to the pelvic walls and floor and to the perineum.

Obturator nerve

This branch of the lumbar plexus (Fig. 4.101) emerges from the medial border of psoas major and enters the pelvis by crossing in front of the ala of the sacrum. It descends lateral to the common and internal iliac vessels and the ureter (Fig. 5.30) and reaches the medial surface of obturator internus. The nerve approaches the obturator vessels from above and continues with them through the obturator canal (Fig. 5.31) into the medial compartment of the thigh (p. 266). On the lateral pelvic wall, the obturator nerve may be closely related to the ovary (p. 221 and Fig. 5.13). Here, ovarian disease may spread to involve the pelvic peritoneum or the nerve itself, producing pain referred to the medial side of the thigh.

Sacral and coccygeal nerves

The anterior rami of the first four sacral nerves emerge through the anterior sacral foramina and merge to form the sacral plexus (Fig. 5.31). The fifth sacral nerve and the coccygeal nerves are small and do not contribute to the plexus. All the sacral and coccygeal nerves receive grey rami communicantes from the sympathetic trunk.

Sacral plexus

This plexus lies on the posterior pelvic wall in front of piriformis (Fig. 5.31), covered anteriorly by the pelvic fascia. The plexus is formed by the anterior rami of the upper four sacral nerves and is supplemented by the lumbosacral trunk, which carries fibres from the fourth and fifth lumbar nerves (p. 203). The branches of the sacral plexus are distributed to the lower limb, pelvic walls and floor, and perineum.

Those branches that leave the pelvis accompany piriformis through the greater sciatic foramen to enter the buttock (pp 270, 271). The nerve to obturator internus and the pudendal nerve then pass forwards through the lesser sciatic foramen to gain the perineum (Fig. 5.28).

Pelvic Blood Vessels and Lymphatics

The pelvic walls and floor and the pelvic organs receive most of their arterial supply from branches of the internal iliac artery, which also provides branches to the perineum and lower limb. The rectum, however, receives its principal supply from the superior rectal artery (pp 182, 218 & 238), while the posterior wall of the pelvis is supplied by the median sacral artery (Fig. 5.31). The ovaries are supplied by the ovarian branches of the abdominal aorta (p. 190).

Internal iliac artery and branches

The internal iliac artery arises in front of the sacroiliac joint as one of the terminal branches of the common iliac artery (Fig. 5.32). The internal iliac artery runs downwards and backwards on the lateral pelvic wall, giving rise to visceral and parietal branches.

Visceral branches

Before birth, the largest branch of the internal iliac artery is the umbilical artery, which conveys blood to the placenta. In the adult, only its proximal part is patent. It runs forwards, adjacent to the bladder, giving one or more superior vesical branches (Fig. 5.32) and a slender branch to the ductus deferens. Distally, the vessel becomes a fibrous cord, the occluded part of the umbilical artery or medial umbilical ligament, which continues through the extraperitoneal tissues of the anterior abdominal wall to the umbilicus (Fig. 4.30). The inferior vesical artery occurs only in the male and supplies the lower part of the bladder, the prostate, the seminal vesicle and the pelvic ureter. The uterine artery runs medially in the root of the broad ligament, crosses above the ureter (Fig. 5.13) and supplies the vagina and the uterine cervix, body and tube. The artery follows the lateral border of the body of the uterus, then runs laterally in the broad ligament, close to the uterine tube, and terminates by anastomosing with the ovarian artery.

The vagina is supplied by branches of the uterine artery together with one or two small vaginal arteries from the internal iliac artery.

The middle rectal artery (Fig. 5.32) supplies the muscle coat of the rectum and in the male, may give additional branches to the prostate and seminal vesicles.

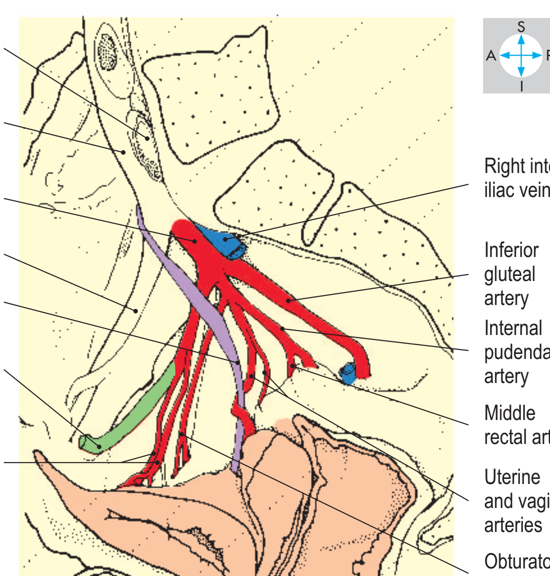


Fig. 5.32 Right internal iliac artery and some of its branches.

Parietal branches

The obturator artery runs downwards and forwards, with the corresponding vein and nerve, to enter the obturator canal. It supplies the proximal part of the medial compartment of the thigh and the hip joint (Figs 5.28 & 5.32). Occasionally, the obturator artery takes origin from the inferior epigastric artery and descends into the pelvis to reach the obturator canal. Such a vessel, an accessory or abnormal obturator artery (Fig. 5.30), passes close to the femoral ring. In the latter case, it may be damaged during femoral hernia operations (Figs 4.23 & 5.30, femoral ring).

The superior and inferior gluteal arteries pass through the greater sciatic foramen into the buttock, the superior artery running above piriformis (Fig. 5.31) and the inferior below (p. 271).

The internal pudendal artery provides the principal arterial supply to the perineum. The artery passes through the greater sciatic foramen into the gluteal region, curves round the ischial spine and then passes forwards through the lesser sciatic foramen into the perineum (p. 241).

The iliolumbar artery ascends the posterior abdominal wall to anastomose with the lower lumbar arteries.

The lateral sacral artery (Fig. 5.31) supplies the posterior wall of the pelvis and anastomoses with the median sacral artery.

Internal iliac vein and tributaries

The branches of the internal iliac artery are accompanied by veins that drain the buttock and perineum, the pelvic walls and most of the pelvic organs. These veins unite to form the internal iliac vein (Fig. 5.33), which ascends on the lateral pelvic wall posterior to the artery. The vein terminates by joining the external iliac vein to form the common iliac vein.

Most of the veins emerging from the pelvic organs anastomose freely, forming extensive venous plexuses (the vesical, prostatic, uterine and vaginal plexuses). While most blood from these plexuses passes into the internal iliac vein, some enters either the superior rectal vein via portacaval anastomoses or the vertebral venous plexus via the anterior sacral foramina. Prostatic carcinoma can spread via these venous plexuses to the sacral and lumbar vertebrae.

Pelvic lymphatics

Lymph from the pelvis is drained by lymphatic vessels that accompany the arteries. Most of the lymph drains into nodes adjacent to the internal iliac artery and then into efferent vessels that pass to the common iliac nodes (p. 196). However, lymphatic vessels from the ovaries and the rectum pass directly to the aortic nodes, and some vessels from the body of the uterus accompany the round ligament through the inguinal canal to terminate in the superficial inguinal nodes.

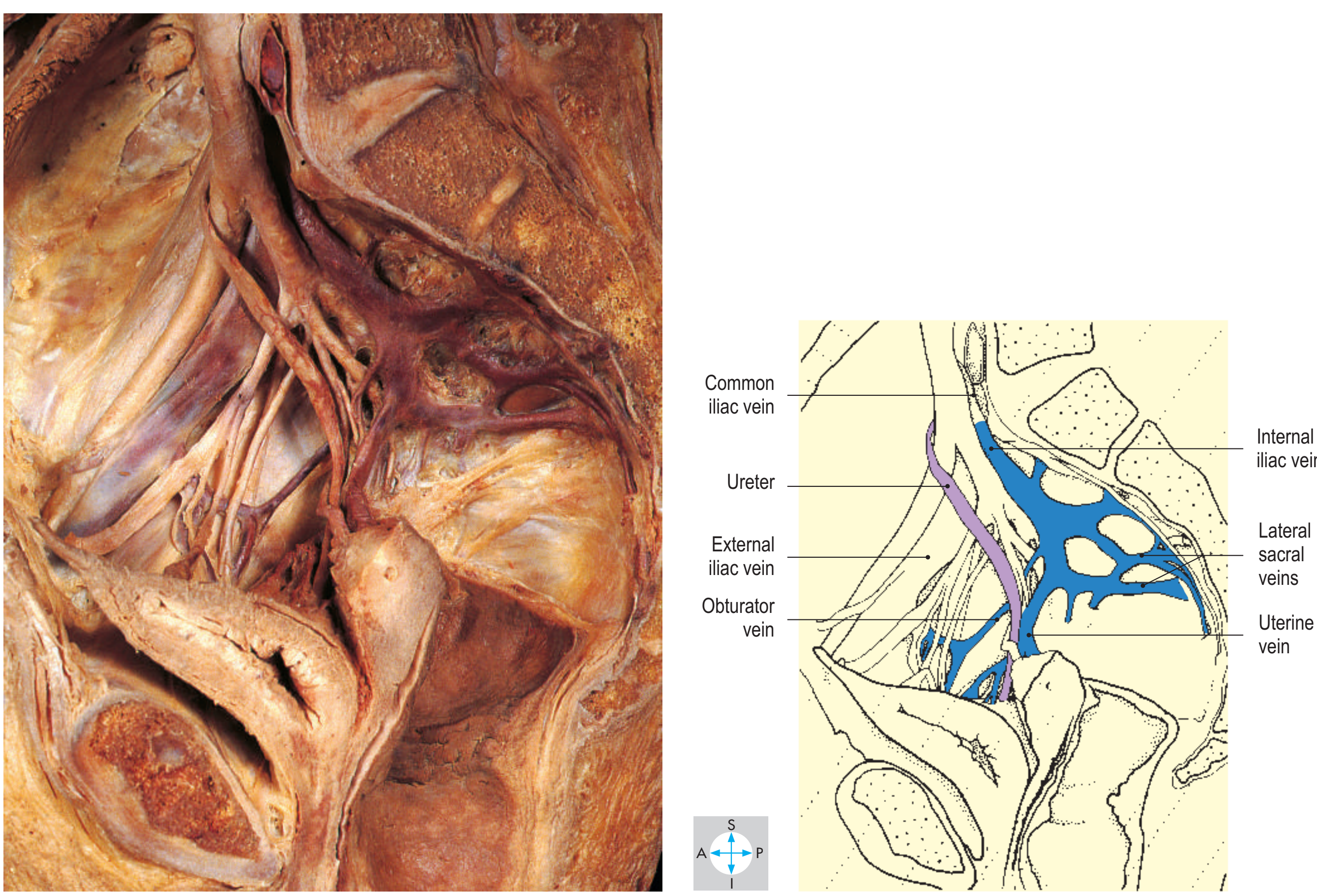


Fig. 5.33 Right internal iliac vein and tributaries.

Perineum

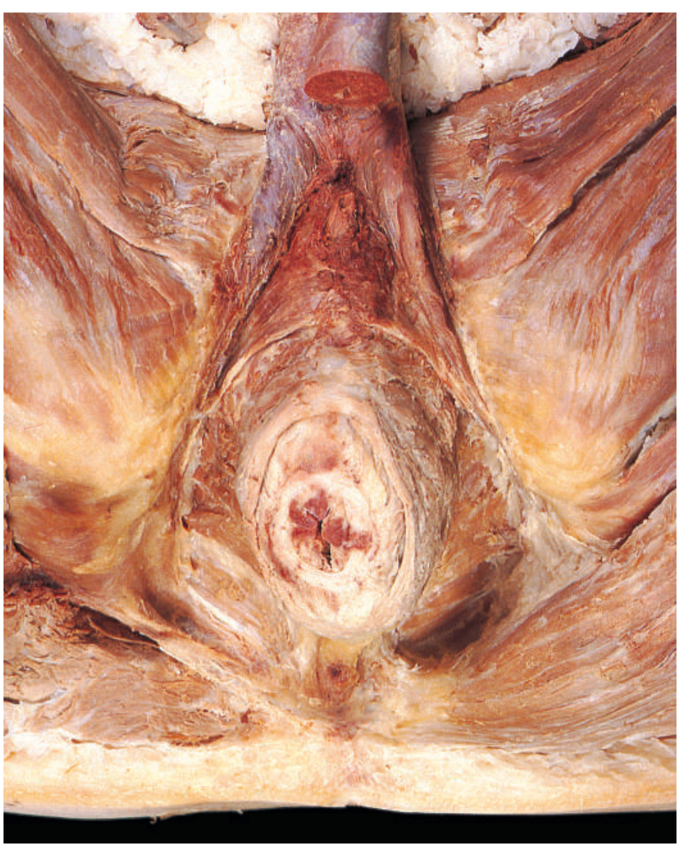
Below the pelvic floor lies the perineum, a superficial region traversed by the anal canal and the lower parts of the genital and urinary tracts. The perineum is diamond-shaped, extending anteriorly to the pubic symphysis, posteriorly to the coccyx and laterally to the ischial tuberosities (Figs 5.34 & 5.3). On each side, the region is bounded by the conjoined rami of the ischium and pubis and by the sacrotuberous ligament, which is overlapped by the inferior border of gluteus maximus. Inferiorly, the perineum is bounded by skin. By convention, the perineum is divided into two triangular areas by a line joining the ischial tuberosities. Posteriorly is the anal triangle, containing the anal canal and the ischioanal (ischiorectal) fossae, and anteriorly lies the urogenital triangle, containing the external genitalia.

Anal canal

The anal canal is the terminal part of the intestine and is approximately 4 cm long. Beginning at the anorectal junction, it passes downwards and backwards as far as the anus (Fig. 5.5). Its upper part is lined by mucous membrane bearing several longitudinal ridges, the anal columns; the lower part is lined by skin. The smooth muscle coat of the rectum continues into the wall of the anal canal and thickens to form the internal anal sphincter. Striated fibres from the levator ani muscles (Fig. 5.35) blend with the outer layers of the wall and continue as far as the perianal skin.

In addition, the lower two-thirds of the anal canal are encircled by the external anal sphincter (Fig. 5.36), composed of striated muscle fibres. This sphincter comprises three parts, of which the uppermost, the deep part, blends with the levator ani muscles. Inferior to this lies the superficial part, attached posteriorly to the coccyx and anococcygeal raphe and anteriorly to the posterior border of the perineal membrane. The most inferior component of the sphincter, the subcutaneous part, encircles the anal opening. Continence of faeces is not dependent on the external sphincter alone; the fibres of the levator ani muscles that maintain the anorectal angulation play a major role.

The anal canal is supplied by inferior rectal branches (Fig. 5.36) from the pudendal nerve, which innervate the external sphincter and the cutaneous lining (p. 243). The internal sphincter and the mucous membrane lining the upper part are innervated, like the rectum, by autonomic nerves. The blood supply is provided by inferior rectal branches of the internal pudendal artery. The anal canal is a site of portacaval anastomosis because venous blood passes not only via inferior rectal veins to the internal iliac veins but also into the superior rectal vein (p. 185). These anastomoses dilate in the presence of portal hypertension. The lining of the lower part of the anal canal has a rich nerve supply. Tears of the mucosa of the lower part of the anal canal may result in painful fissures. Lymph drains from the upper part of the canal to the internal iliac nodes, but from the lower part, it passes to the superficial inguinal nodes. Therefore, a patient with an anal tumour may present with inguinal lymphadenopathy. Lymph drains from the upper part of the canal to the internal iliac nodes, but from the lower part, it passes to the superficial inguinal nodes.



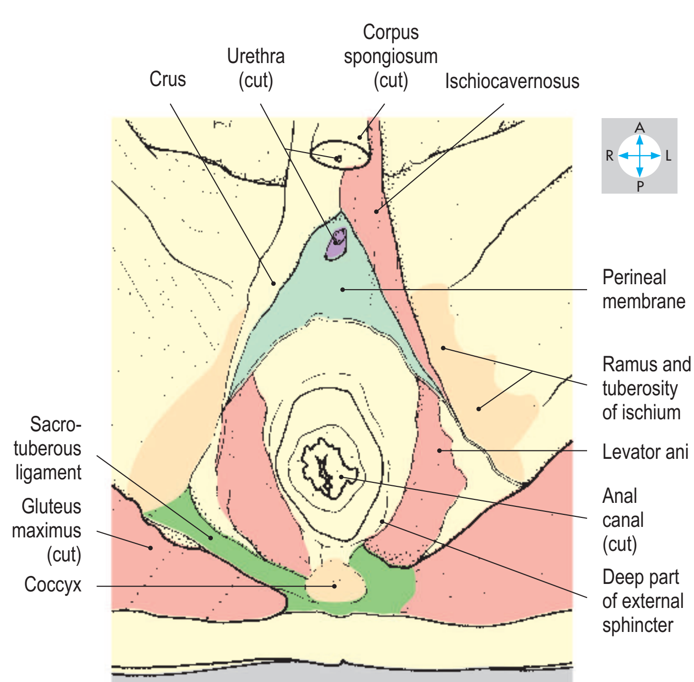


Fig. 5.34 Deep dissection of male perineum. The bulb of the penis has been removed to expose the perineal membrane. Gluteus maximus has been resected on one side to reveal the sacrotuberous ligament.

Ischioanal (ischiorectal) fossa

On each side of the anal canal is a fat-filled space extending laterally as far as obturator internus, upwards to the levator ani muscle and downwards to the perianal skin (Fig. 5.35). The fossae communicate behind the anal canal. Anteriorly, each fossa tapers and continues above the perineal membrane and external urethral sphincter almost to the pubic symphysis. Entering each fossa from the gluteal region via the lesser sciatic foramen are the nerve to obturator internus, the pudendal nerve (Fig. 5.37) and the internal pudendal artery with its venae comitantes. Although infection in this fossa (ischiorectal abscess) often requires surgical incision, the vessels and nerves supplying the anal canal are protected by their superior location within the fossa and are rarely damaged.

The nerve to obturator internus arises from the sacral plexus and supplies the muscle from within the ischioanal fossa (Fig. 5.28).

The pudendal nerve and the internal pudendal vessels pass along the lateral wall of the fossa in a fascial tunnel, the pudendal canal. Branches from the nerve and artery traverse the upper part of the fossa to supply the anal canal and the posterior part of the scrotum or labium majus (Fig. 5.36).

Internal pudendal artery

This vessel provides most of the arterial blood to the perineum. Arising from the internal iliac artery within the pelvis (Fig. 5.32), it enters the buttock through the greater sciatic foramen and then traverses the lesser sciatic foramen to enter the ischioanal fossa. The artery runs forwards along the lateral wall of the fossa in the pudendal canal and gives off inferior rectal branches and posterior scrotal or labial branches. The artery continues above the perineal membrane, where it provides branches to the bulb of the penis or vestibule and crus of the penis or clitoris, and terminates by dividing into deep and dorsal arteries of the penis or clitoris. In the male, the dorsal artery passes below the pubic symphysis and continues along the dorsum of the penile shaft (Fig. 5.37), lateral to the deep dorsal vein, and gives branches to the erectile tissue of the corpus cavernosum. The deep artery pierces the perineal membrane and supplies the erectile tissue of the corpus cavernosum. In the female, there are comparable but smaller branches to the clitoris. The internal pudendal artery and its branches are accompanied by venae comitantes, which drain into the internal iliac vein.

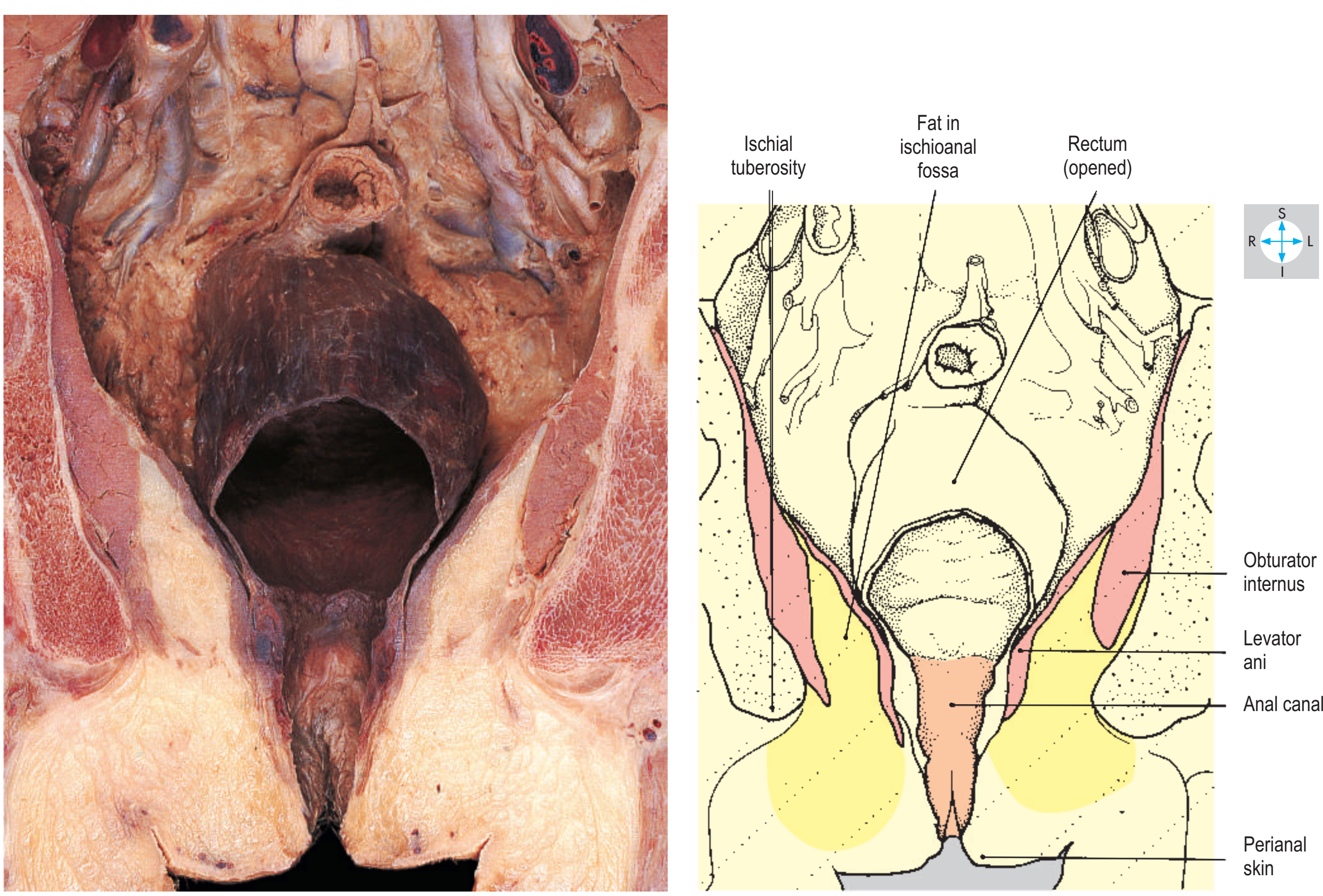


Fig. 5.35 Coronal section through anal canal and ischioanal fossae. Anterior aspect.

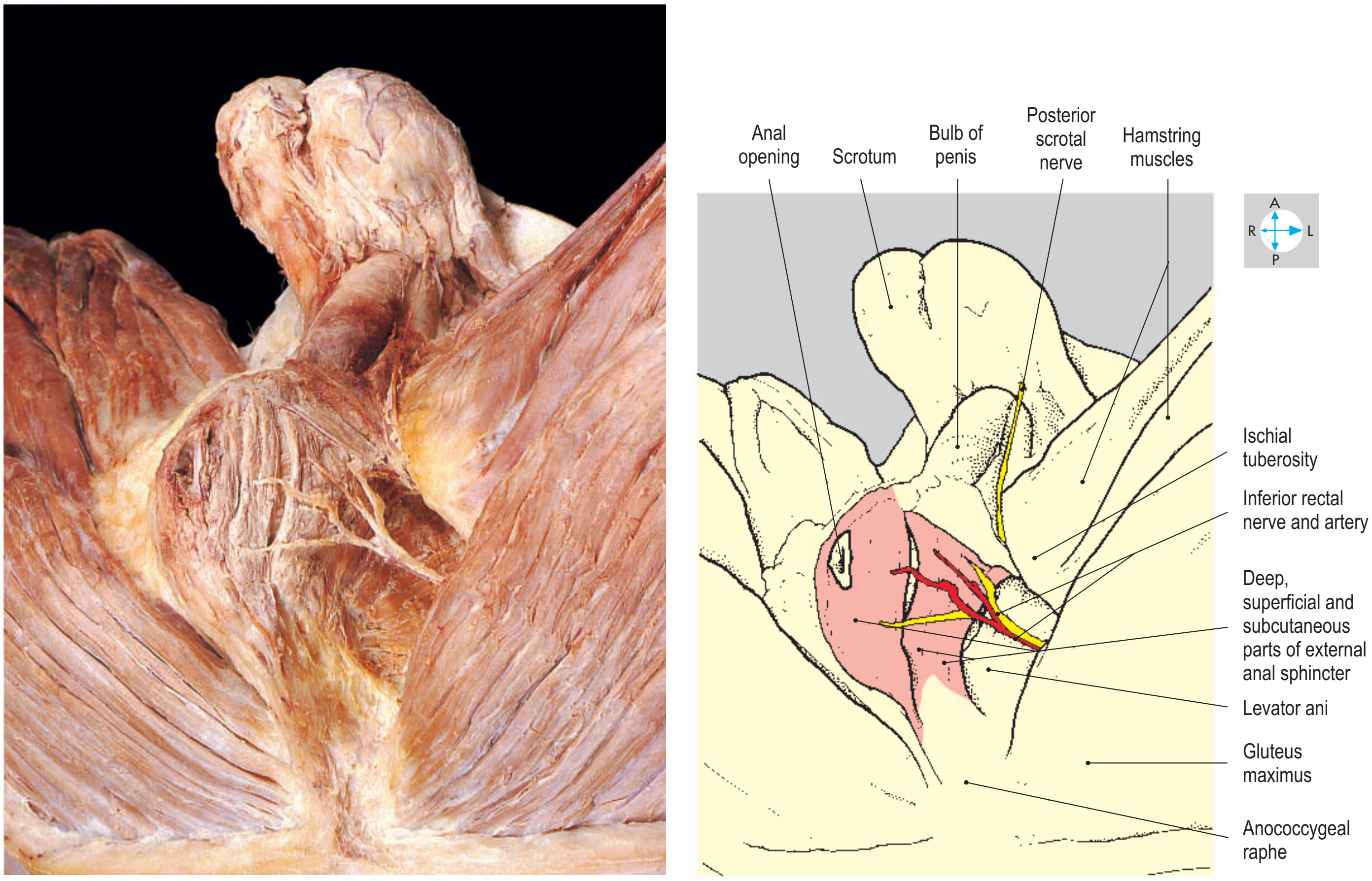


Fig. 5.36 Oblique view of the anal triangle to show the parts of the external anal sphincter and the inferior rectal nerve and artery.

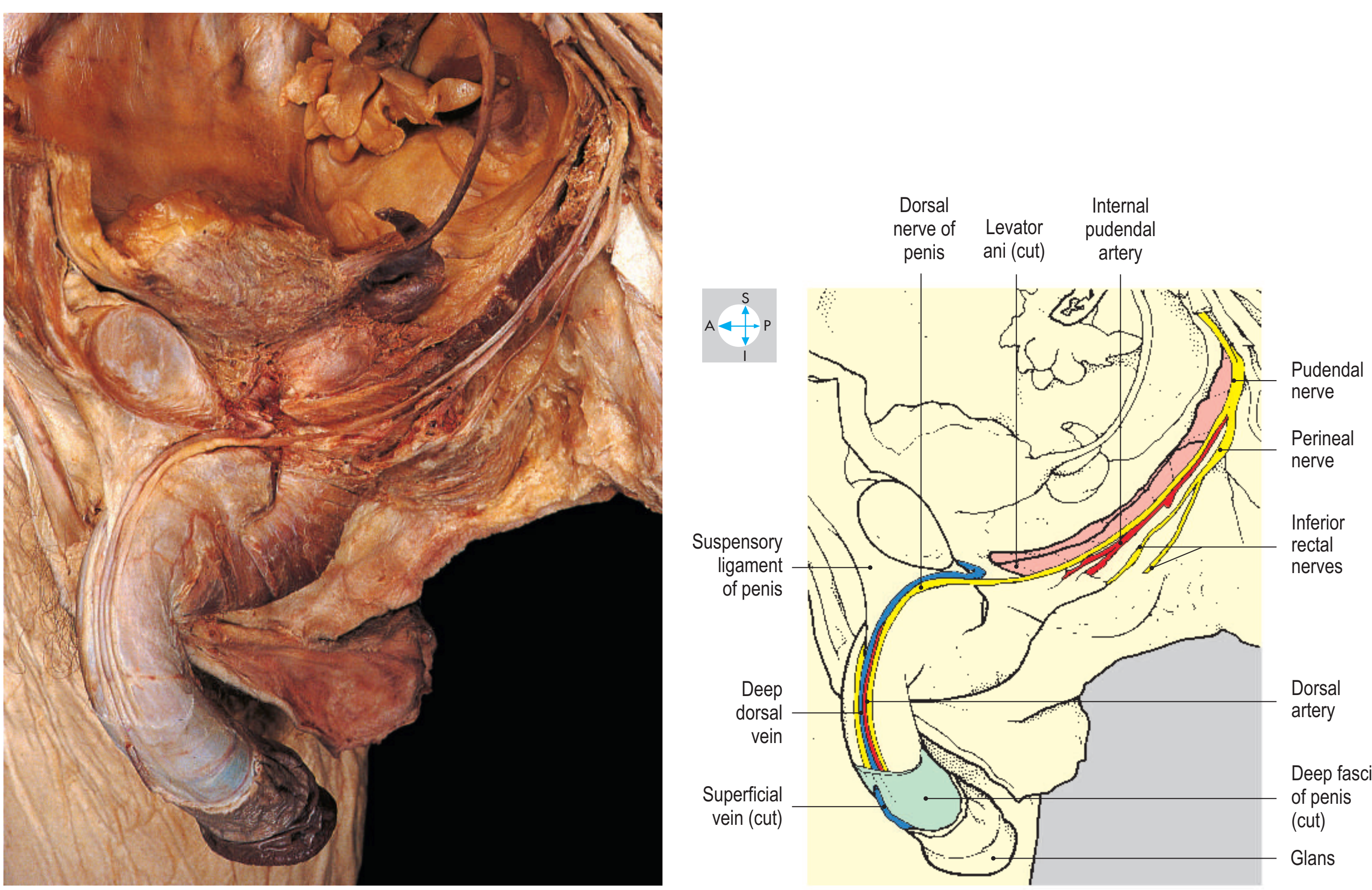


Fig. 5.37 Left pudendal nerve, exposed by removal of the lateral wall of the pelvis.

Pudendal nerve

The pudendal nerve provides the principal innervation to the perineum. It arises from the sacral plexus (S2, S3 & S4) and accompanies the internal pudendal artery into the perineum. In the ischioanal fossa, the nerve divides into the dorsal nerve of the penis (or clitoris) and the perineal nerve (Fig. 5.37).

The perineal nerve supplies an inferior rectal branch to the anal canal and posterior scrotal or labial branches to the skin of the genitalia (Fig. 5.36). On reaching the anterior part of the perineum, the perineal nerve gives branches to all muscles in the superficial perineal pouch, as well as sensory branches to the urethra.

The dorsal nerve of the penis continues forwards with the internal pudendal artery above the perineal membrane and below the pubic symphysis. It runs along the dorsum of the penis, lateral to the dorsal artery (Fig. 5.39), and innervates the skin of the distal two-thirds of the organ. The dorsal nerve of the clitoris has a similar course and distribution.

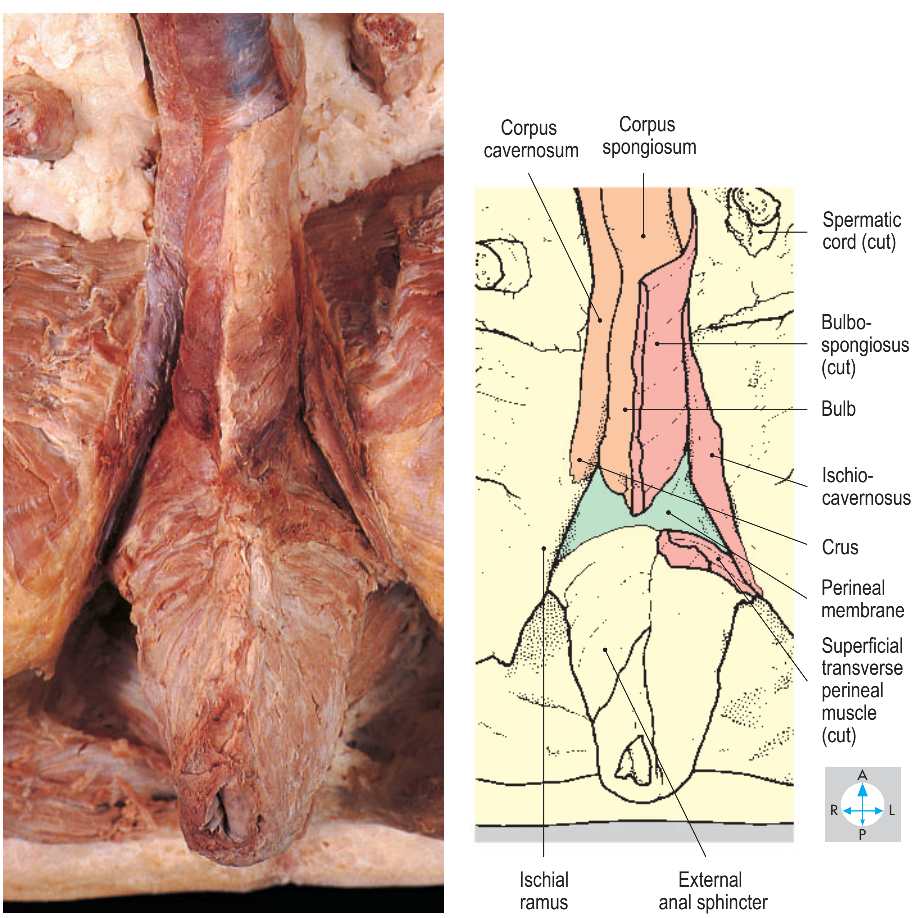


Fig. 5.38 Root of penis. The right ischiocavernosus and bulbospongiosus muscles have been removed to expose the crus and the bulb of the penis.

Male External Genitalia

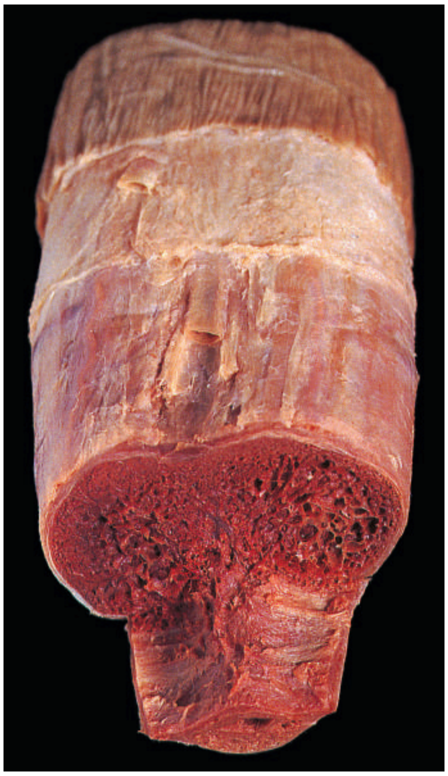
The male external genitalia comprise the scrotum and the penis. An account of the scrotum and its contents is given on pp 149–151. The penis consists of a shaft, which is free, and a root, which lies in the superficial perineal pouch, attached to the inferior surface of the perineal membrane.

Perineal membrane and pouches

The perineal membrane is a shelf of dense fascia spanning the triangular interval between the right and left ischial rami and inferior pubic rami (Fig. 5.34). The membrane has a long free posterior margin and a short anterior margin that is separated from the pubic symphysis by a small gap transmitting the deep dorsal vein of the penis. The central part of the membrane is pierced by the urethra and bulbourethral ducts.

At the root of the penis and around the neck of the scrotum, the membranous layer of perineal subcutaneous tissue attaches laterally to the ischial and pubic rami. Posteriorly, the fascia is anchored to the free edge of the perineal membrane. The space contained by the membranous layer of the penis and the scrotum is called the superficial perineal pouch. This pouch communicates with the subcutaneous tissues of the anterior abdominal wall but not with the ischioanal fossae, the thighs or pelvic cavity. If the spongy part of the urethra is ruptured, urine may escape into the superficial pouch (superficial extravasation of urine, p. 140).

On the pelvic aspect of the perineal membrane lie the external urethral sphincter and bulbourethral glands in a space often called the deep perineal pouch. The term urogenital diaphragm is a misnomer sometimes applied to the deep perineal pouch and its boundaries.



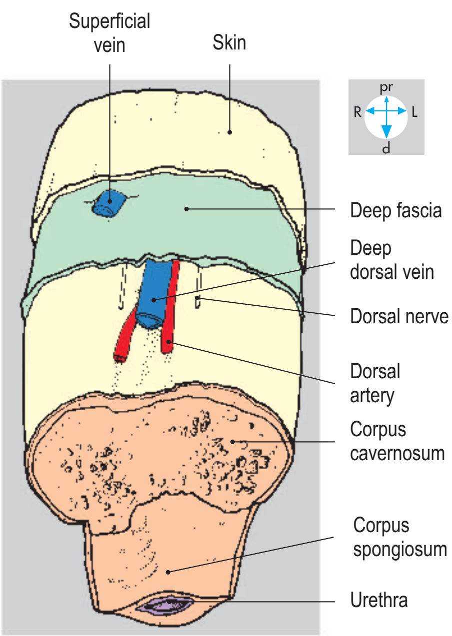


Fig. 5.39 'Step' dissection of the shaft of the penis to show the three corpora and the dorsal vessels.

Penis

The erectile tissue of the shaft of the penis consists of the paired corpora cavernosa, lying in apposition, and the midline corpus spongiosum.

The corpus spongiosum is uniform in diameter except at its extremity, where it expands into the glans (Fig. 5.19), whose prominent margin forms the corona of the penis. Proximally, the corpus spongiosum continues into the root of the penis to form the bulb, which is attached to the inferior surface of the perineal membrane (Fig. 5.38). The urethra pierces the perineal membrane, enters the bulb from above and curves downwards and forwards. It traverses the corpus spongiosum and glans (Fig. 5.19) and terminates at the external urethral meatus near the apex of the glans.

Dorsal to the corpus spongiosum are the paired corpora cavernosa (Fig. 5.39), which extend distally as far as the concave proximal surface of the glans. Proximally, the corpora cavernosa continue inferior to the pubic symphysis and diverge as the crura. Each crus tapers posteriorly and is attached to the inferior surface of the perineal membrane and the adjacent rami of the pubis and ischium (Figs 5.34 & 5.38).

Fascial layers and skin

The three corpora of the penis are enveloped by a sleeve of deep fascia, which also covers the dorsal vessels and nerves of the organ (Fig. 5.39). Proximally, the deep fascia is anchored to the front of the pubic symphysis by the suspensory ligament of the penis (Fig. 5.37), while distally it terminates at the corona by fusing with the corpora. Covering the deep fascia is the superficial fascia.

The subcutaneous tissue of the penis is membranous, devoid of fat and traversed by superficial nerves and vessels (Fig. 5.39). Proximally, it is continuous with the subcutaneous tissue of the anterior abdominal wall and can be traced around the scrotum, where it contains smooth muscle, the dartos.

The cutaneous covering of the penis is freely mobile except over the glans to which it is adherent. The skin is reflected distally beyond the corona over the glans to form the hood-like prepuce or foreskin. This is attached to the undersurface of the glans by a vascular fold, the frenulum. Removal of the foreskin (circumcision) is commonly performed for both medical and religious reasons.

Muscles

Surrounding the bulb of the penis are the paired bulbospongiosus muscles (Fig. 5.38). Their fibres attach to the perineal membrane and pass downwards and backwards to meet at a midline raphe and blend posteriorly with the external anal sphincter. The bulbospongiosus muscles contract during ejaculation and the terminal stages of micturition to compress the urethra and expel its contents.

Covering each crus is the ischiocavernosus muscle (Fig. 5.38). From the posterior end of each crus, a small superficial transverse perineal muscle runs medially to the penile bulb. All the penile muscles are innervated by the perineal branch of the pudendal nerve.

Vessels

The erectile tissues of the penis have a rich blood supply. Each internal pudendal artery (p. 241) provides branches to the bulb and to the corresponding crus before terminating as the dorsal and deep arteries. The deep artery traverses the length of the corpus cavernosum, while the artery to the bulb continues along the corpus spongiosum to reach the glans. Diseases affecting these arteries or their autonomic supply may lead to erectile dysfunction (impotence). The principal venous drainage is via the midline deep dorsal vein, which runs beneath the deep fascia (Fig. 5.39). This vein is accompanied by the dorsal arteries and passes inferior to the pubic symphysis into the pelvic cavity, where it terminates in the prostatic venous plexus (Fig. 5.21). From this plexus, blood drains into either the internal iliac veins or the internal pudendal veins.

Erection of the penis is controlled by parasympathetic nerves (the pelvic splanchnic nerves or nervi erigentes) from the sacral segments of the spinal cord. Stimulation of these nerves causes arterial dilatation and simultaneous venous constriction. This results in engorgement of the erectile tissues leading to enlargement and stiffening of the penis. Diseases affecting these arteries or their autonomic supply may lead to erectile dysfunction.

The skin of the penis and the front of the scrotum are supplied by the external pudendal branches of the femoral arteries. The superficial veins of the penis and the anterior part of the scrotum drain via the external pudendal veins, which are tributaries of the great saphenous vein (Fig. 6.11). The posterior part of the scrotum is supplied by posterior scrotal branches from the internal pudendal artery, and venous blood passes into the internal pudendal veins.

Cutaneous innervation

The pudendal nerve supplies most of the penis and scrotum via its dorsal and posterior scrotal branches. However, the anterior part of the scrotum and the proximal part of the shaft of the penis are innervated by the ilioinguinal nerve, which descends from the superficial inguinal ring (Fig. 4.21).

Lymphatic drainage

Lymph from the superficial tissues of the penis and scrotum passes to the superficial inguinal nodes, while that from the deeper tissues is conveyed via lymphatic vessels accompanying the internal pudendal artery and passes to the internal iliac nodes.

Female External Genitalia

Clitoris and bulbs of vestibule

The perineal membrane is thinner in the female than in the male and is pierced by both the vagina and the urethra. Attached to the inferior surface of the membrane is erectile tissue similar to that in the male, namely the crura of the clitoris and the bulbs of the vestibule covered by the thin ischiocavernosus and bulbospongiosus muscles, respectively (Figs 5.40 & 5.41). The right and left crura attach to the medial margins of the ischial and pubic rami. Passing forwards and medially they merge beneath the pubic symphysis to form the shaft of the clitoris. This turns downwards and backwards towards the urethral opening, and its tip is capped by the glans of the clitoris.

The paired bulbs of the vestibule surround the urethral and vaginal openings (Fig. 5.41). Anteriorly, they taper and fuse into a midline structure that terminates as the glans of the clitoris. The posterior end of each bulb is expanded and covers the greater vestibular (Bartholin's) gland. This gland is approximately 1 cm in diameter and drains into a minute duct, which opens into the vestibule lateral to the vaginal opening. The gland may be the site of cyst formation (Bartholin's cyst) or may become infected (Bartholin's abscess) requiring surgical intervention. Superficial transverse perineal muscles pass laterally from the bulbs of the vestibule to the ischial tuberosities.

Labia

The most superficial parts of the female external genitalia are the skin folds, the labia majora (Fig. 5.40). These meet anteriorly at the mons pubis. The mons is a pad of fat overlying the pubic symphysis and covering most of the clitoris. Between the labia majora lie the two labia minora, which become more prominent anteriorly. The labia minora fuse in the midline, forming two folds of skin around the glans of the clitoris. The hood-like anterior fold comprises the prepuce of the clitoris and the smaller posterior fold forms the frenulum. Posteriorly, the labia minora are united by a delicate fold, the fourchette, which is usually torn during vaginal delivery.

Vestibule

The labia minora enclose a cleft, the vestibule, into which the vagina and urethra open (Fig. 5.41). The vaginal opening (introitus) is an anteroposterior slit, usually surrounded by a fringe of skin, the hymen. The external urethral meatus lies approximately 1 cm anterior to the vaginal opening.

The term vulva is used to describe the mons pubis, the labia majora and minora, the clitoris and vestibule.

Cutaneous innervation and blood supply

The mons pubis and the anterior parts of the labia are innervated by the ilioinguinal nerves (Fig. 4.24). The posterior part of the vulva receives cutaneous innervation from the labial branches of the pudendal nerves, supplemented by branches of the posterior cutaneous nerves of the thighs and the perineal branches of the fourth sacral nerves. Anaesthetic injected near the ischial spines will produce pudendal nerve block, which is sometimes used during childbirth.

The skin and subcutaneous tissues are supplied by the internal pudendal artery and the superficial and deep external pudendal branches of the femoral artery. Most of the venous blood passes into the venae comitantes of the internal pudendal artery, but anteriorly some blood drains by external pudendal veins into the great saphenous vein. Lymph from the skin and superficial tissues, including the vestibule and lower vagina, passes to the superficial inguinal nodes (Fig. 6.11), while lymphatics from deeper structures follow the course of the arteries to reach the internal iliac nodes.

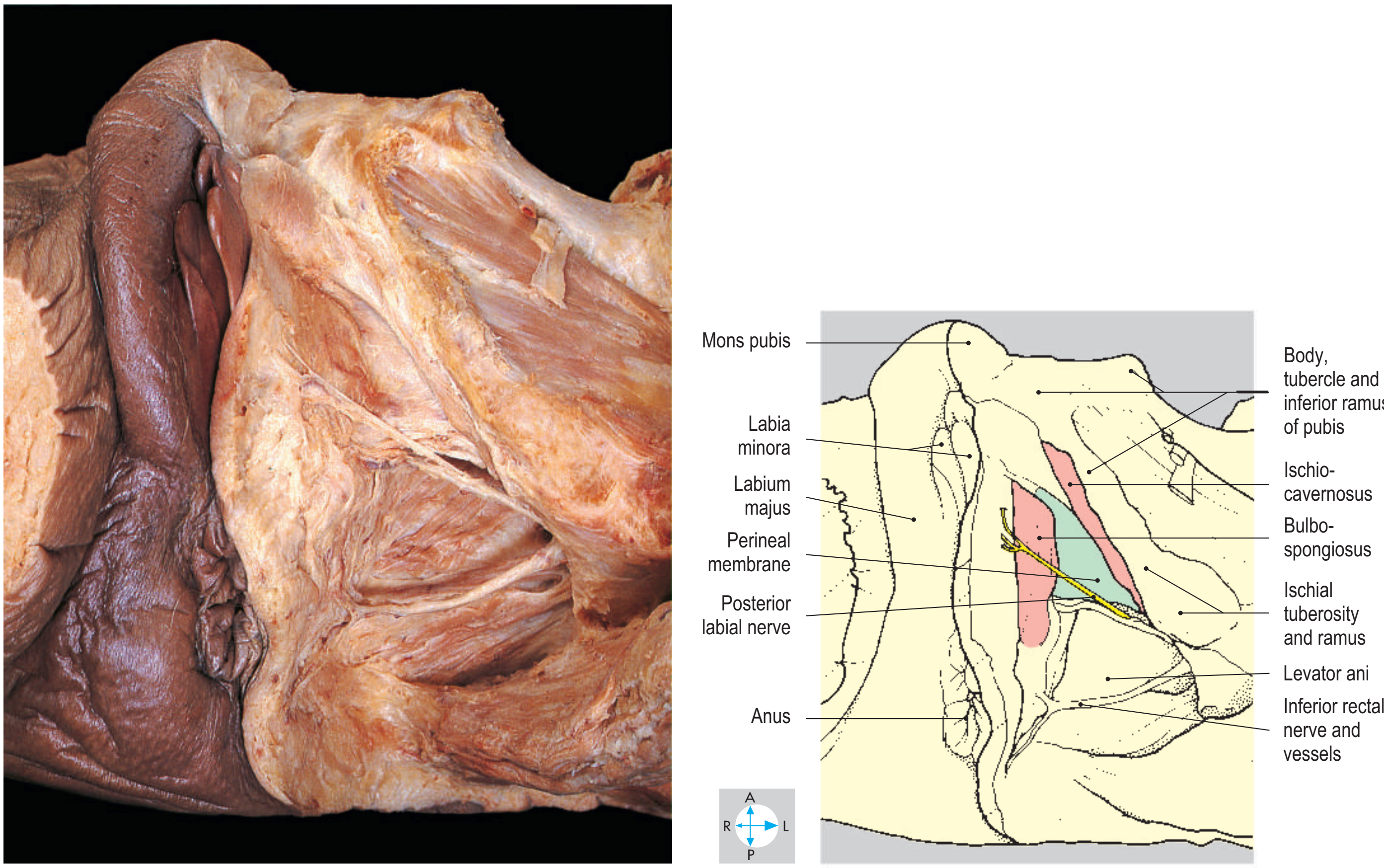


Fig. 5.40 Superficial dissection of one side of the female perineum, showing the muscles and cutaneous nerves.

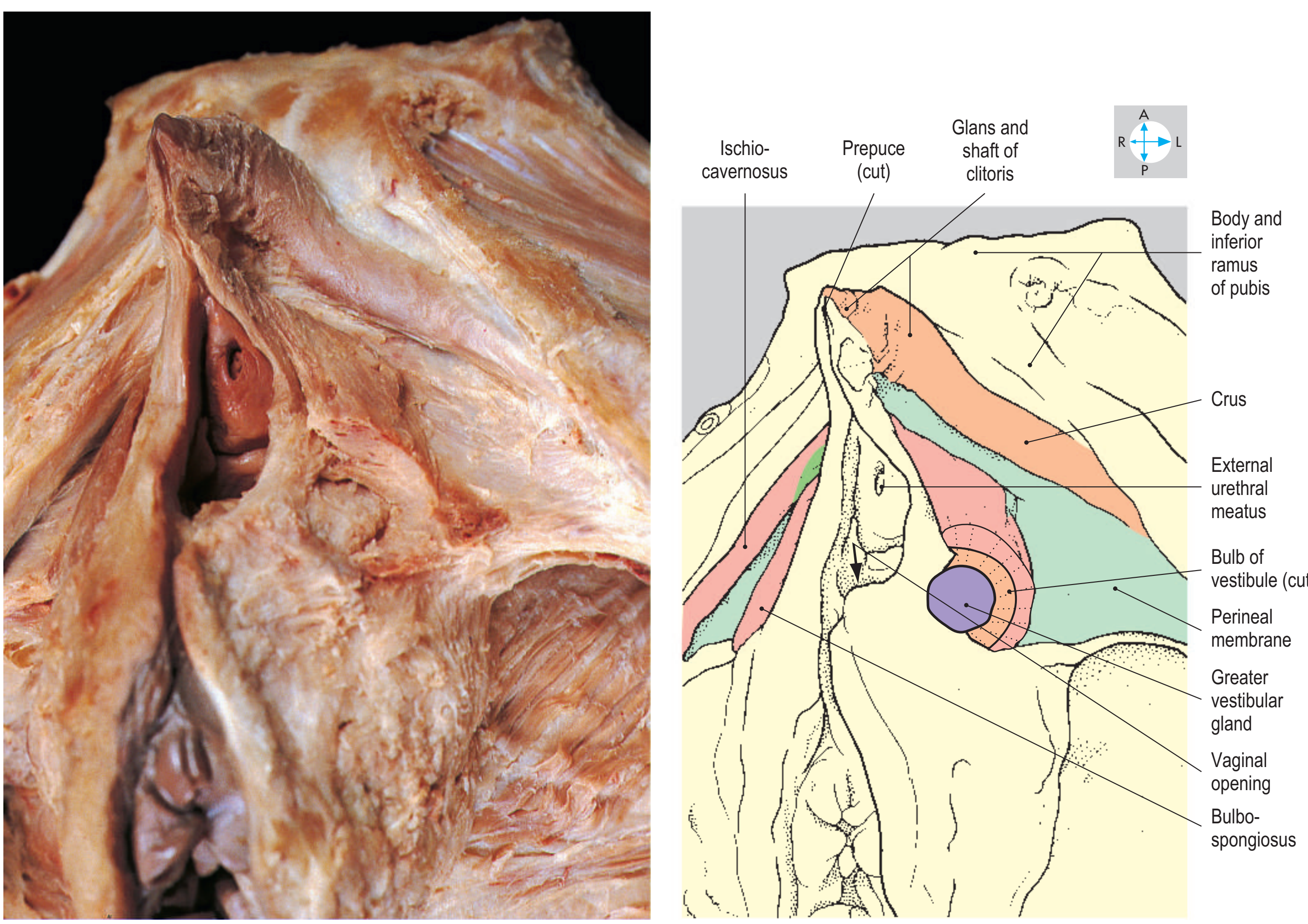


Fig. 5.41 Deeper dissection of the female perineum. The glans, shaft and left crus of the clitoris have been exposed. The left bulb of the vestibule has been cut to reveal the greater vestibular gland.

Exam Skills

Each of the incomplete statements below is followed by five suggested answers or completions. Decide which are true and which are false. The answers are supplied on p. 417.

1. The ovary:

a) receives its principal arterial supply from the internal iliac artery.
b) lies in the angle between the internal and external iliac vessels.
c) is attached by the mesovarium to the anterior surface of the broad ligament.
d) may lie in close proximity to the obturator nerve.
e) has a surface which is devoid of peritoneal covering.

2. Peritoneum in the female pelvis:

a) forms the round ligament of the uterus.
b) forms the mesovarium.
c) covers the posterior fornix of the vagina.
d) covers the anterior and lateral surfaces of the whole length of the rectum.
e) is in direct contact with the ureters.

3. The piriformis muscle:

a) attaches to the pelvic surface of the sacrum.
b) passes through the lesser sciatic foramen.
c) attaches to the greater trochanter of the femur.
d) has the pelvic plexus on its anterior surface.
e) is a medial rotator of the hip joint.

4. Concerning the lumbar and sacral plexus:

a) the obturator nerve carries fibres from spinal segments L2, L3 and L4.
b) the femoral nerve emerges from the anterior surface of the psoas major muscle.
c) the pudendal nerve provides the motor supply to the external anal sphincter.
d) sympathetic fibres leave the spinal cord in spinal nerves S2, S3 and S4.
e) the lumbosacral trunk carries fibres from spinal segments L4 and L5.

5. The uterus:

a) is supplied with blood by branches of the internal iliac artery.
b) is supported by the broad ligaments.
c) has most of its lymphatics draining into inguinal nodes.
d) is closely related to the ureters.
e) pierces the anterior wall of the vagina.

6. The obturator internus muscle:

a) attaches to the medial surface of the obturator membrane.
b) has a tendon that enters the gluteal region inferior to the ischial spine.
c) is innervated by the first and second lumbar nerves.
d) contributes to the lateral wall of the ischioanal (ischiorectal) fossa.
e) attaches to the lesser trochanter of the femur.

7. Branches of the internal iliac artery in the female include:

a) the superior gluteal artery.
b) the ovarian artery.
c) the uterine artery.
d) the superior vesical artery.
e) the superior rectal artery.

8. The prostate:

a) is surrounded by a plexus of veins.
b) lies within the deep perineal pouch (space).
c) is pierced by the ejaculatory ducts.
d) lies posteroinferior to the base of the bladder.
e) is innervated by branches from the pudendal nerves.

9. The urinary bladder in the female:

a) has peritoneum on its anterior surface.
b) has the urachus attached to its apex.
c) has a rich parasympathetic nerve supply.
d) is drained by internal iliac lymph nodes.
e) is closely related to the body of the uterus.

10. The bulb of the penis:

a) is attached to the superior surface of the perineal membrane.
b) contains the penile urethra.
c) is compressed by the bulbospongiosus muscle.
d) receives blood from the deep artery of the penis.
e) continues as the corpus cavernosus.

11. The ductus (vas) deferens:

a) begins at the tail of the epididymis.
b) ascends within the spermatic cord.
c) passes above the ureter to reach the posterior aspect of the bladder.
d) terminates as an ampulla, which lies lateral to the seminal vesicle.
e) is innervated by the obturator nerve.

12. Regarding the hip bone:

a) the ischial spine gives attachment to the sacrospinous ligament.
b) the anterior superior iliac spine gives attachment to the inguinal ligament.
c) the obturator foramen is traversed by the nerve to obturator internus.
d) articulates with the sacrum by means of a synovial joint.
e) the lacunar ligament is attached to the pectineal line.

13. The uterine (fallopian) tube:

a) runs within the free border of the broad ligament of the uterus.
b) receives some of its arterial supply from the ovarian artery.
c) has a lumen which is narrowest where it pierces the uterine wall.
d) is closely related to the ureter.
e) opens directly into the peritoneal cavity.

14. The parasympathetic nerves of the pelvis:

a) arise from S2, S3 and S4 spinal cord segments.
b) ascend through the hypogastric plexus to supply the sigmoid colon.
c) are involved in the micturition reflex.
d) carry the nervous impulse responsible for ejaculation.
e) innervate the rectum.

15. The greater vestibular gland:

a) lies in the deep perineal pouch.
b) has a duct which opens into the vestibule of the vagina.
c) is closely related to the bulb of the vestibule.
d) is covered by bulbospongiosus.
e) lies in the labium majus.

16. Rupture of the penile bulbar urethra gives rise to extravasation of urine into:

a) the subcutaneous tissue of the scrotum.
b) the subcutaneous tissue of the penis.
c) the subcutaneous tissue of the thigh.
d) the subcutaneous tissue of the lower anterior abdominal wall.
e) the ischioanal (ischiorectal) fossa.

Clinical Case Skills

The answers are supplied on p. 419.

Case Study 1

A 30-year-old woman went into labour at the end of her first pregnancy and was admitted to an obstetric unit. For the first few hours, she was provided with pain relief by injections of analgesic and the inhalation of an oxygen/nitrous oxide mixture. But after 10 hours of uterine contraction it was decided she was making insufficient progress and the baby should be delivered by forceps. The obstetrician told her he was going to anaesthetize her birth canal by means of two injections and he proceeded to carry out bilateral pudendal blocks. Using a special needle, he palpated for features of the patient's bony pelvis from within the vagina in order to place the anaesthetic fluid near the pudendal nerves.

Questions:

1. What cutaneous structures does the pudendal nerve innervate?
2. What bony features did the obstetrician palpate?

Case Study 2

A 25-year-old woman was brought to her family doctor one morning because she had woken up feeling weak and had fainted soon after getting up. She had had a poor night's sleep because of vague lower abdominal pains. The doctor could find very little when he examined her abdomen apart from suprapubic tenderness on the right side. However, he was worried about her and arranged for admission into hospital. There she was given an intravenous drip and closely observed. A gynaecologist examined her and performed a vaginal examination. He asked her whether she had any pain in her neck or shoulders. Three hours after admission she had an emergency operation. The right uterine tube was found to contain a pregnancy which had ruptured. This was removed, as was a large volume of blood and clot in the peritoneal cavity. A blood transfusion was given.

Questions:

1. Explain the abdominal tenderness noted by the family doctor.
2. What might the gynaecologist have noted during the vaginal examination?
3. Why did the gynaecologist ask about pain in the neck and shoulders?

Case Study 3

A 30-year-old woman with three children, aged 6 years, 3 years and 4 months, complained of incontinence of urine when she laughed. Only a small amount of urine escaped on each occasion but it was distressing to her. Questioning revealed that she also passed urine involuntarily when coughing or when lifting the baby. She was worried she might need an operation. After excluding an infection in the bladder, her doctor referred her to a nurse who specialized in incontinence, to see whether nonoperative treatment might be successful. The nurse told the patient that exercises may help solve the problem. She explained how to do the exercises and encouraged her to perform them several times a day.

Questions:

1. In terms of physics and anatomy what makes any person of either sex continent of urine?
2. What are the most important structures contributing to urinary continence in women?
3. Why are women rather prone to this complaint?
4. Which nerves stimulate contraction of the smooth muscle of the bladder wall?

Case Study 4

A 60-year-old man consulted his doctor because he had noticed blood in his stools. The doctor suspected cancer of the colon or rectum and proceeded to examine his neck, chest and abdomen. He did a rectal examination and referred the man to a surgeon for a further opinion. The specialist did a similar examination, carefully percussed the abdomen and ordered a number of investigations, including a chest radiograph, blood tests for liver function, sigmoidoscopy and barium enema.

Questions:

1. Why did the doctor examine the man's neck?
2. Why did the surgeon percuss the abdomen?
3. Rectal cancer can invade any structure directly related to the rectum in both sexes. Which structures could become involved in this way?

Observation Skills

Identify the structures indicated. The answers are supplied at the foot of the page.

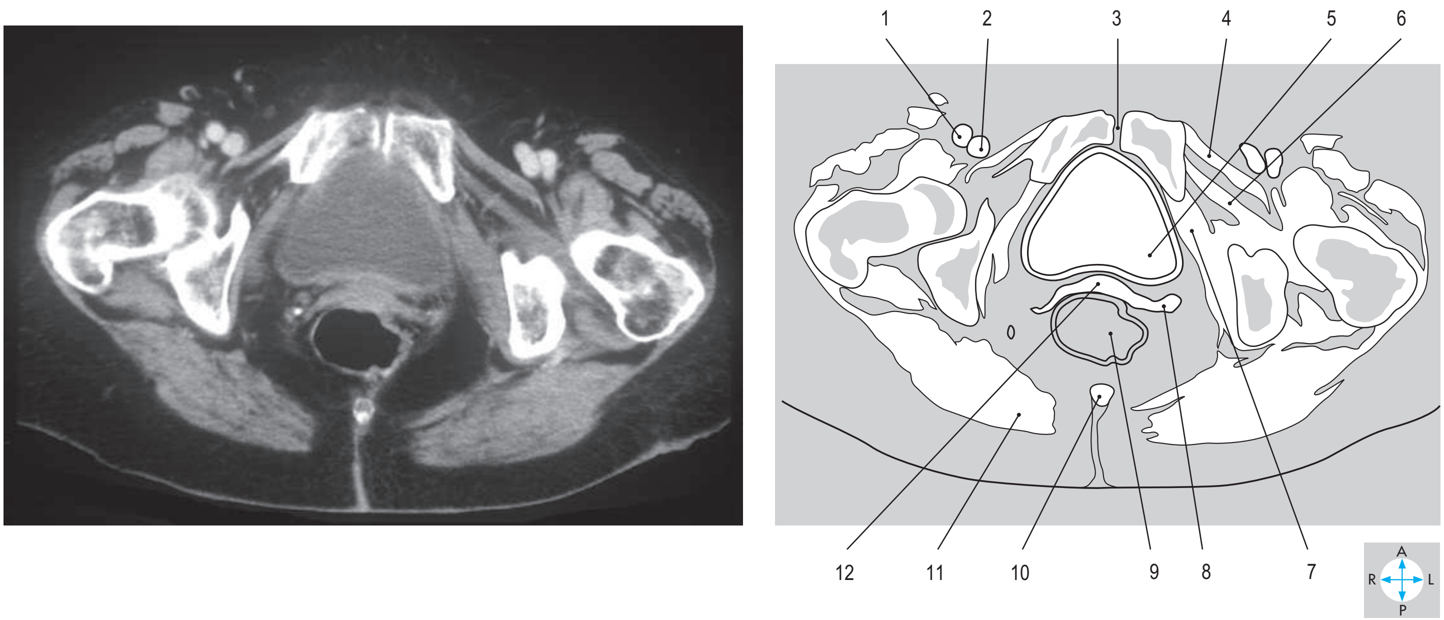


Fig. 5.42 Transverse CT image at the level of the pubic symphysis. (Compare Fig. 5.44.)

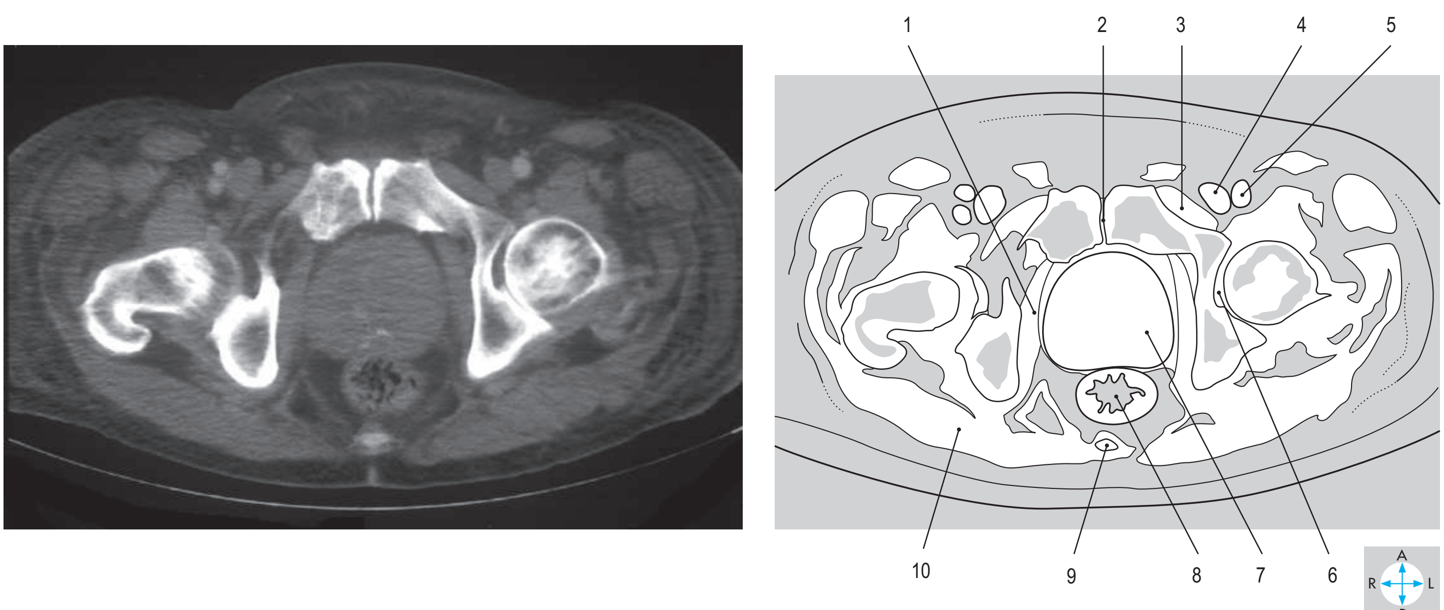


Fig. 5.43 Transverse CT image at the level of the pubic symphysis. (Compare Fig. 5.46.)

Answers:
Fig. 5.42 1 = femoral artery; 2 = femoral vein; 3 = pubic symphysis; 4 = pectineus; 5 = urinary bladder (distended); 6 = obturator externus; 7 = obturator internus; 8 = uterine tube; 9 = rectum (distended); 10 = coccyx; 11 = gluteus maximus; 12 = fundus of uterus.

Answers:
Fig. 5.43 1 = obturator internus; 2 = pubic symphysis; 3 = pectineus; 4 = femoral vein; 5 = femoral artery; 6 = acetabular fossa; 7 = prostate (enlarged); 8 = anal canal; 9 = coccyx; 10 = gluteus maximus.

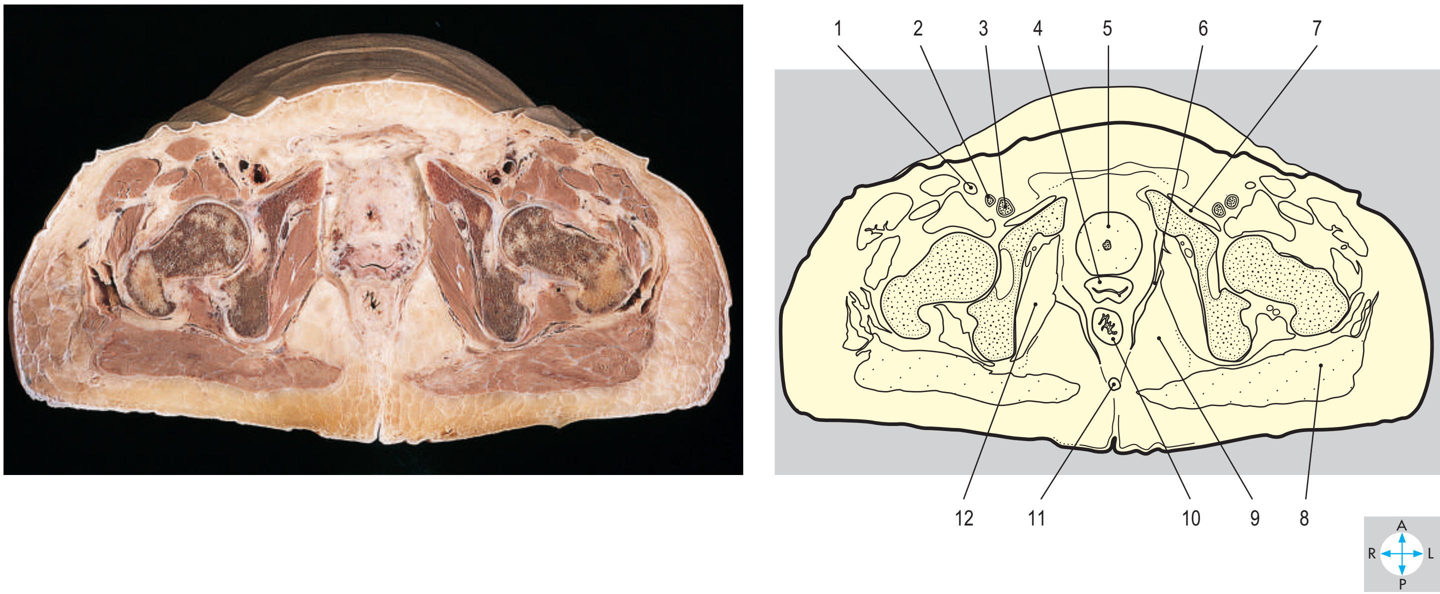


Fig. 5.44 Transverse section just superior to the level of the pubic symphysis. Inferior aspect. (Compare Fig. 5.42.)

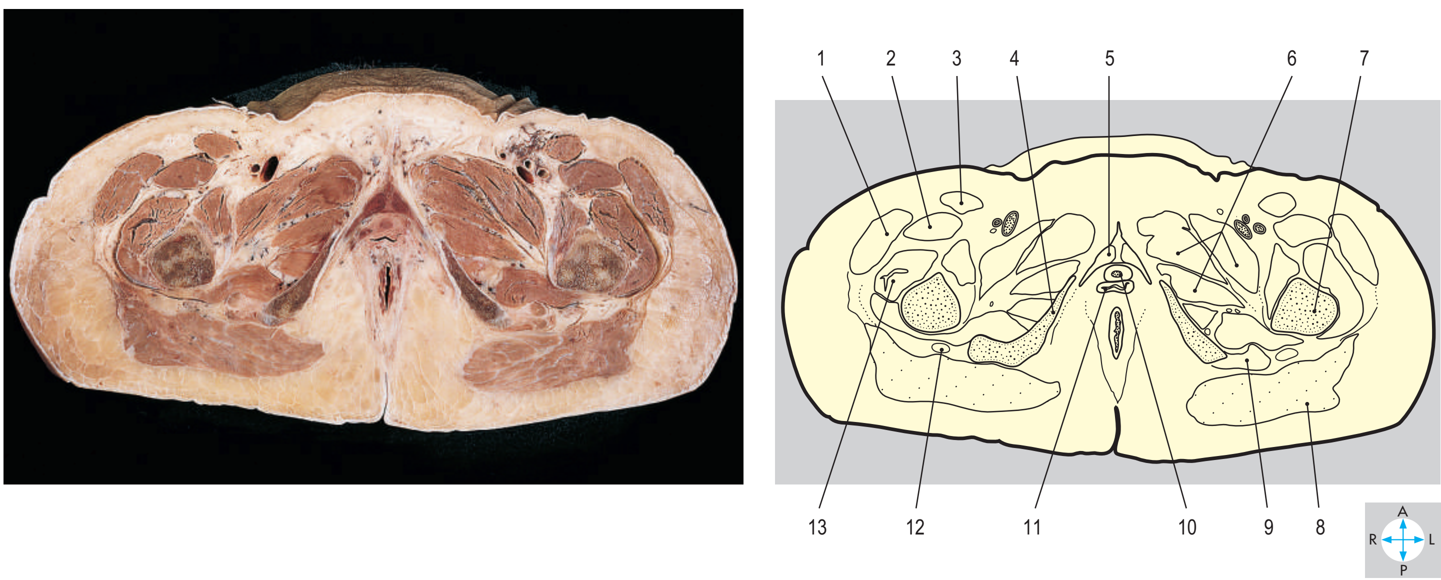


Fig. 5.45 Transverse section at the level of the ischiopubic rami. Inferior aspect.

Answers:
Fig. 5.44 1 = femoral nerve; 2 = femoral artery; 3 = femoral vein; 4 = vagina; 5 = neck of bladder; 6 = levator ani; 7 = pectineus; 8 = gluteus maximus; 9 = ischioanal fossa; 10 = anal canal; 11 = coccyx; 12 = obturator internus.

Answers:
Fig. 5.45 1 = tensor fasciae latae; 2 = rectus femoris; 3 = sartorius; 4 = ischiopubic ramus; 5 = crus of clitoris; 6 = adductor muscles; 7 = shaft of femur; 8 = gluteus maximus; 9 = tendons of hamstring muscles; 10 = urethra; 11 = vagina; 12 = sciatic nerve; 13 = vastus lateralis.

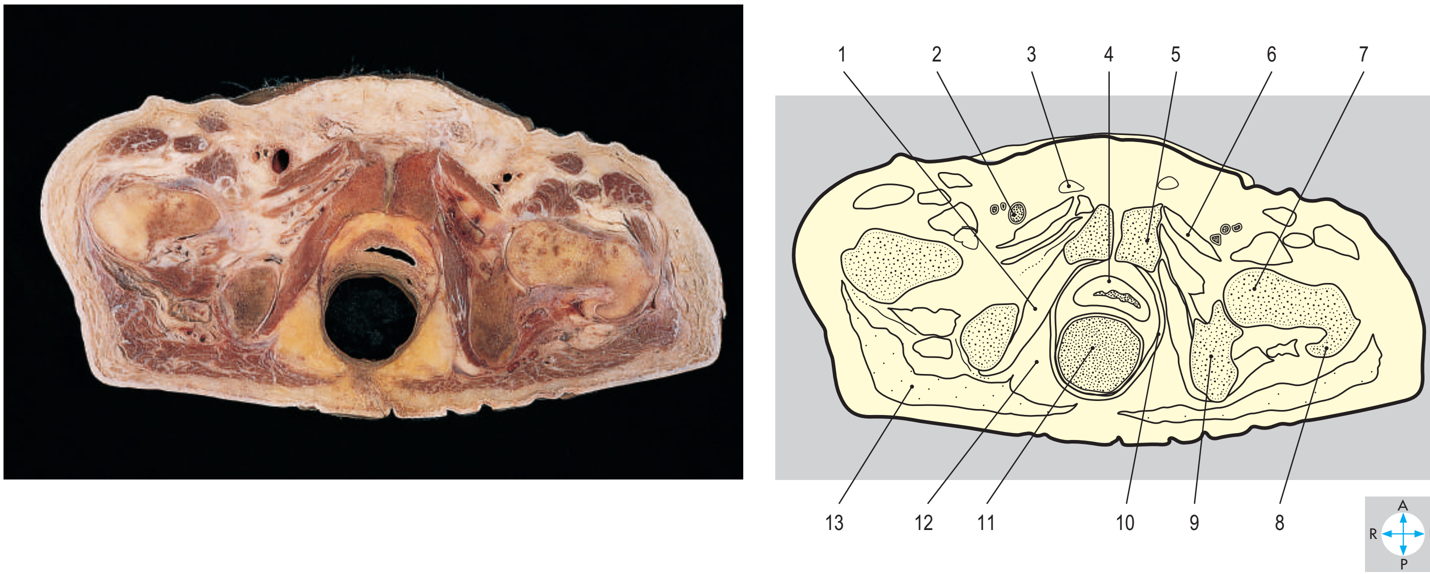


Fig. 5.46 Transverse section at the level of the pubic symphysis. Inferior aspect. (Compare Fig. 5.43.)

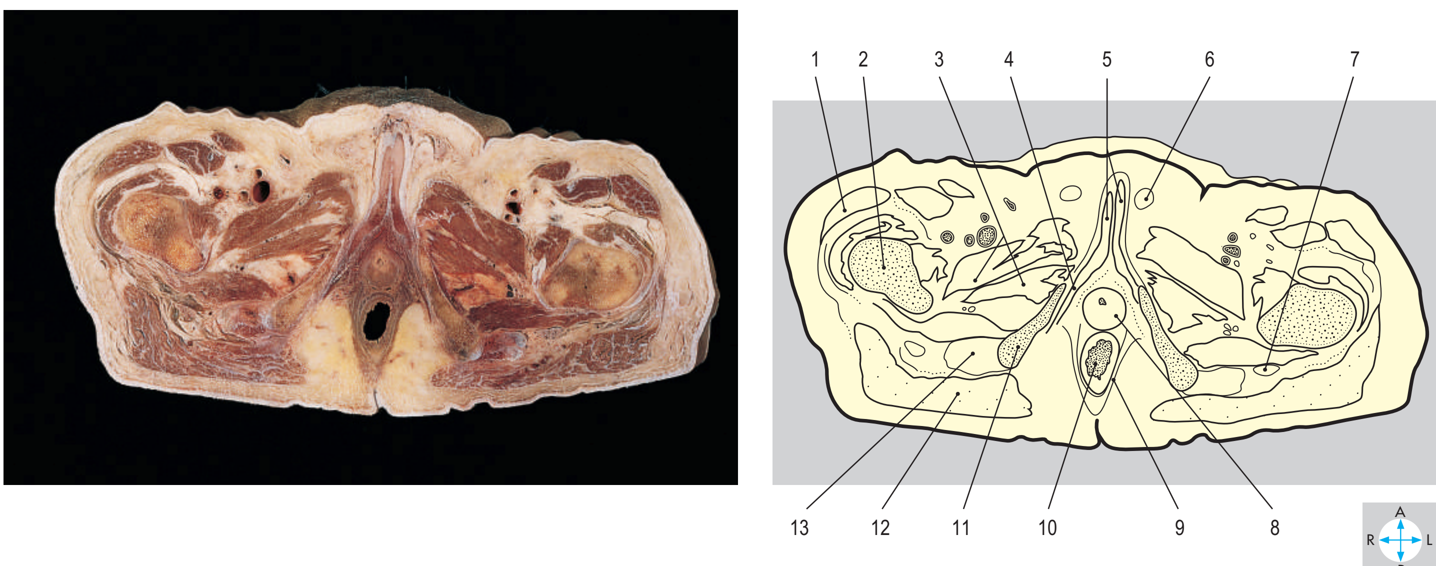


Fig. 5.47 Transverse section at the level of the ischiopubic rami. Inferior aspect.

Answers:

Fig. 5.46 1 = obturator internus; 2 = femoral vein; 3 = spermatic cord; 4 = neck of bladder; 5 = pubis; 6 = pectineus; 7 = head of femur; 8 = greater trochanter; 9 = ischial tuberosity; 10 = levator ani; 11 = rectum (distended); 12 = ischioanal fossa; 13 = gluteus maximus.

Answers:

Fig. 5.47 1 = tensor fasciae latae; 2 = femur; 3 = adductor muscles; 4 = crus of penis; 5 = corpora cavernosa; 6 = spermatic cord; 7 = sciatic nerve; 8 = bulb of penis; 9 = levator ani; 10 = anal canal; 11 = ischiopubic ramus; 12 = gluteus maximus; 13 = tendons of hamstring muscles.

Chapter 6

LOWER LIMB

Introduction

The lower limb supports the body during standing and locomotion. The hip (coxal) bone (Fig. 6.1) provides attachment for muscles of the buttock and thigh, which link the limb to the trunk. The hip joint, between the acetabulum of the hip bone and the head of the femur, is multiaxial and provides versatility of movement.

The femur (Fig. 6.1) is surrounded by the muscles of the thigh and buttock. Its lower end with the patella and upper end of the tibia form the knee joint, a hinge joint. The tibia and fibula, surrounded by the leg muscles, form at their lower ends a socket, which articulates with the talus at the ankle joint, also a hinge.

The foot contains three groups of bones: the tarsals posteriorly, the metatarsals more anteriorly and the phalanges within the toes. The skeleton of the foot is adapted for bipedal standing and walking.

The limb is covered by skin, subcutaneous tissue containing vessels and nerves and by deep fascia. Intermuscular septa separate the muscles into different compartments (Figs 6.2 & 6.3). Each compartment contains muscles with common actions and is supplied by a neurovascular bundle. The thigh has anterior, posterior and medial compartments, whereas the leg has anterior, posterior and lateral compartments. The foot has only two: the dorsum and the sole.

The principal vessels and nerves enter the limb from the abdomen or pelvis by three different routes (Fig. 6.4): posterior to the inguinal ligament from the abdomen to the anterior compartment of the thigh; through the obturator canal between the pelvis and the medial compartment of the thigh; via the greater sciatic foramen, where the pelvis communicates with the gluteal region.

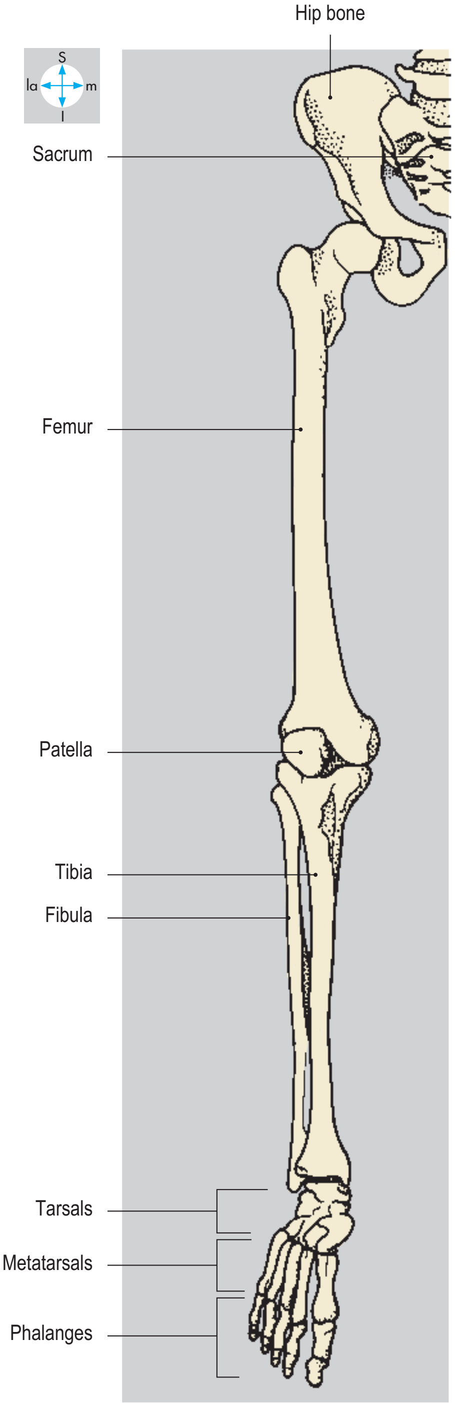


Fig. 6.1 The skeleton of the lower limb.

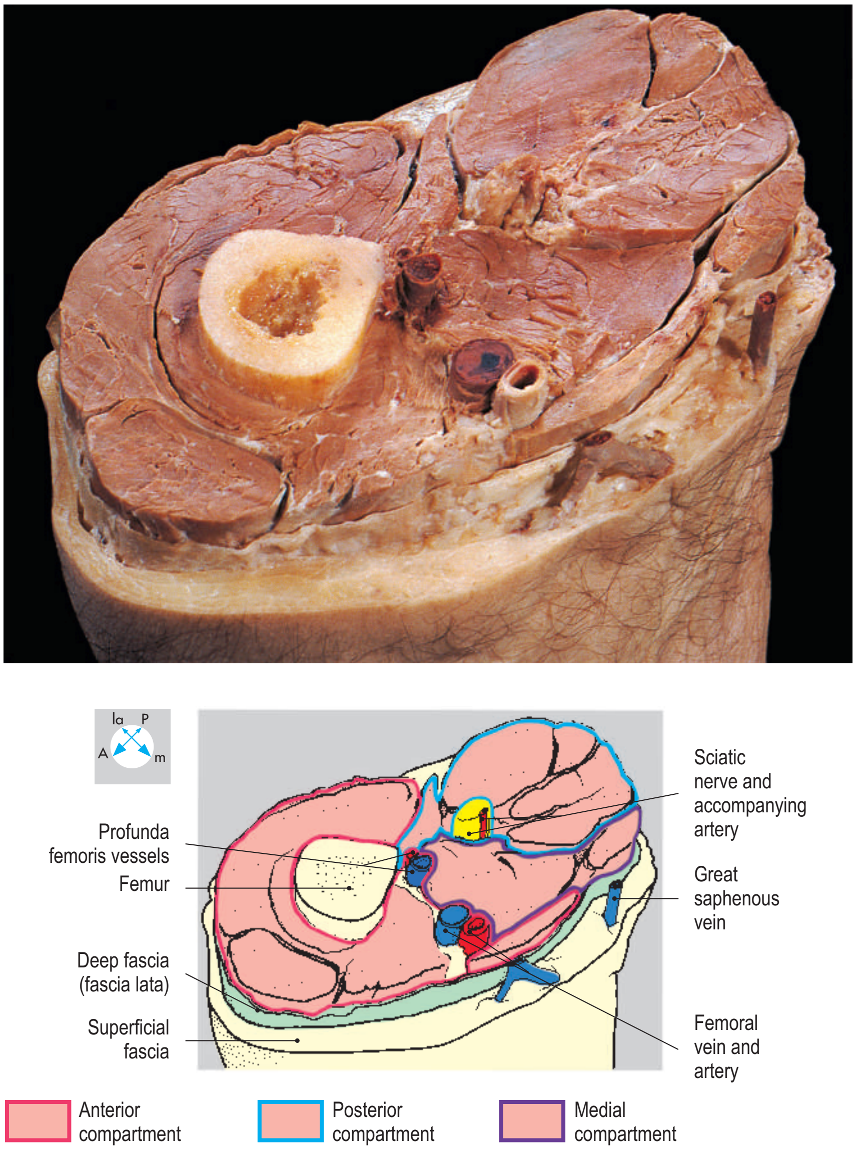


Fig. 6.2 'Step' dissection through the midthigh, showing the relation of the compartments.

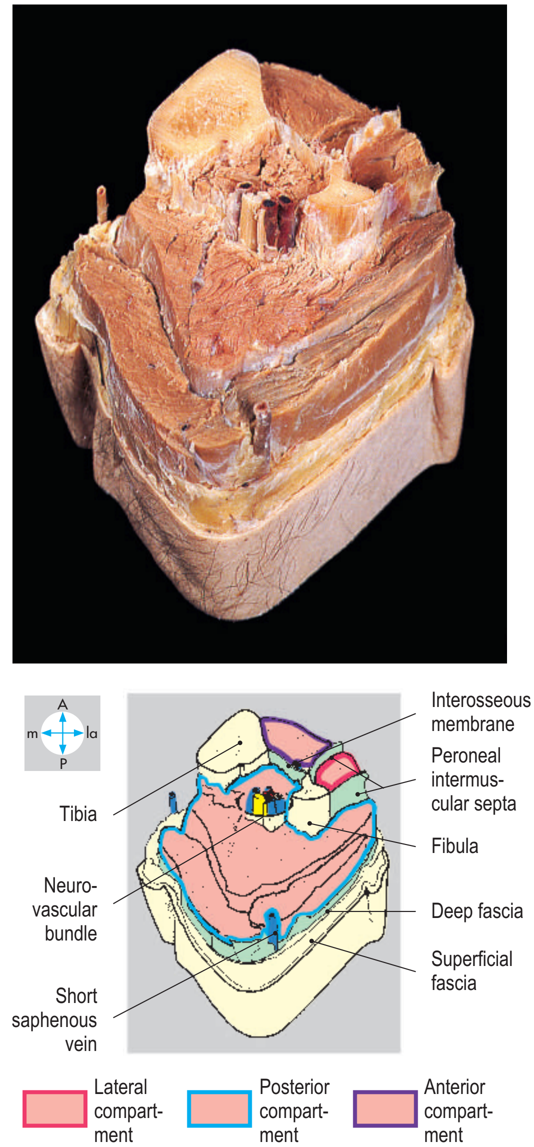


Fig. 6.3 'Step' dissection through the midcalf, showing the relationships of the compartments.

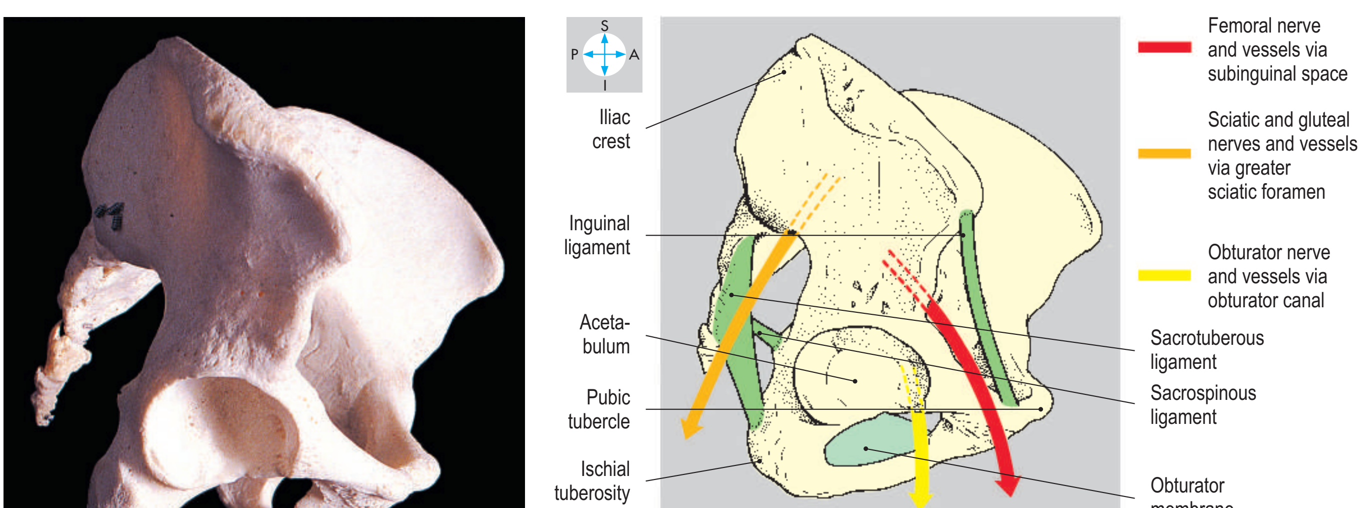


Fig. 6.4 Sites of access of the principal nerves and vessels from the abdomen and pelvis into the root of the lower limb.

Superior and inferior gluteal arteries from the internal iliac artery supply the gluteal region. However, the main supply to the limb is provided by the continuation of the external iliac artery, the femoral artery (Fig. 6.5). This traverses the anterior compartment of the thigh and passes behind the knee to become the popliteal artery, which divides into anterior and posterior tibial branches. The anterior tibial artery passes into the anterior compartment of the leg and continues onto the dorsum of the foot as the dorsalis pedis artery. The posterior tibial artery traverses the posterior compartment of the leg and divides into medial and lateral plantar arteries which supply the sole (plantar compartment) of the foot. Anastomoses occur between arteries in the sole and on the dorsum of the foot.

The superficial and deep veins are linked by communicating (perforating) veins. The superficial veins arise in the foot from the dorsal venous arch (Fig. 6.6). Medially, the great saphenous vein ascends the leg and thigh and drains into the femoral vein just below the inguinal ligament. From the lateral side of the foot the short saphenous vein passes behind the ankle and across the calf to enter the popliteal vein. Deep veins begin distally as venae comitantes, which unite to form the popliteal vein (Fig. 6.6). This becomes the femoral vein in the thigh and continues deep to the

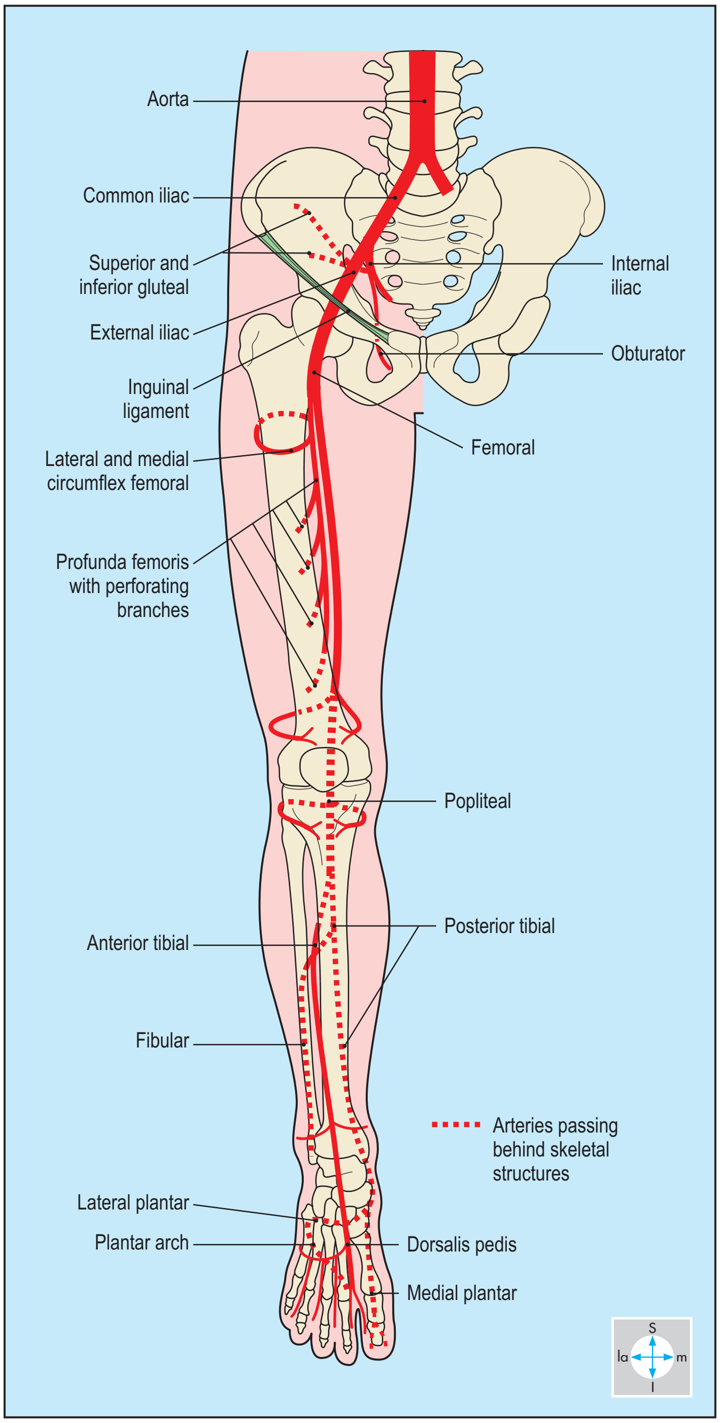


Fig. 6.5 Principal arteries of the lower limb.

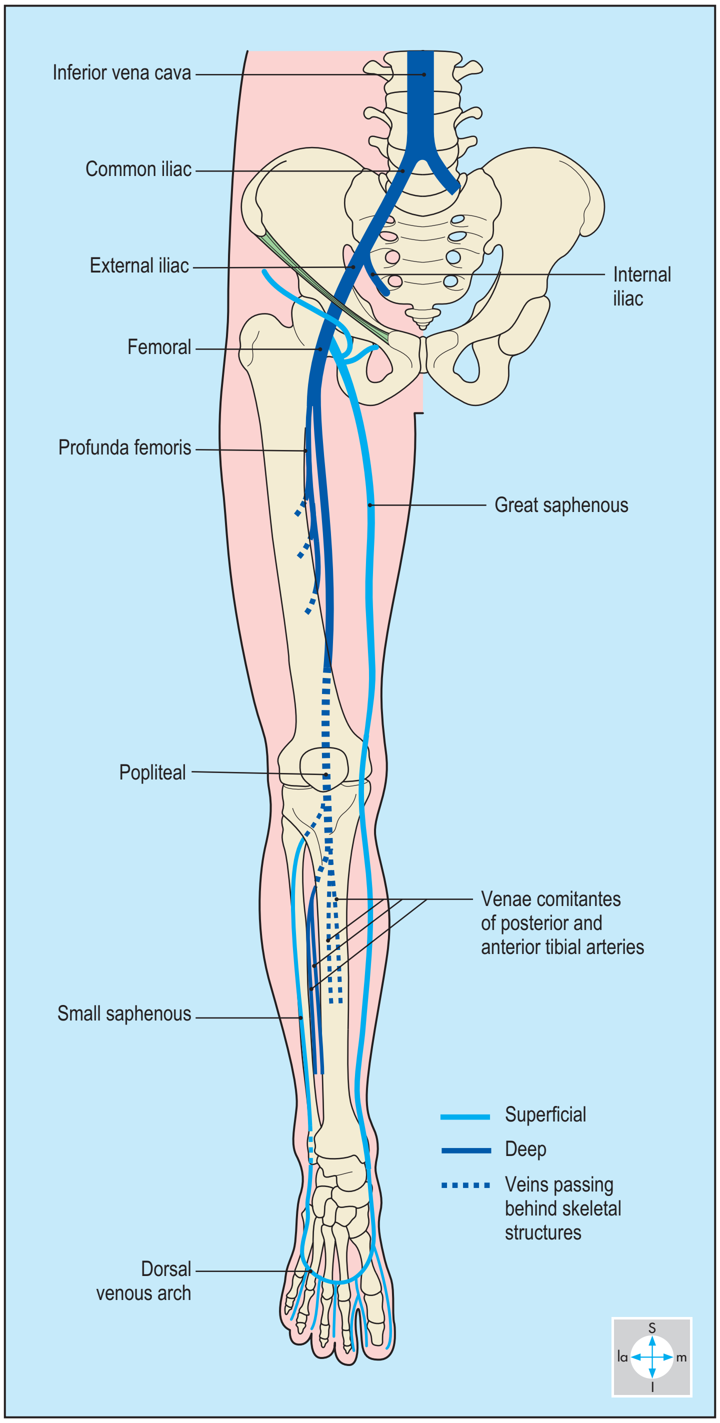


Fig. 6.6 Veins of the lower limb.

inguinal ligament as the external iliac vein. Gluteal veins accompany the corresponding arteries and drain into the internal iliac vein.

There are both superficial and deep lymphatics. The superficial lymphatics accompany the superficial veins. Those with the great saphenous vein terminate in superficial inguinal nodes (Fig. 6.7), which drain into deep inguinal nodes. Lymphatics following the short saphenous vein drain into nodes in the popliteal fossa. The deep lymphatics accompany arteries in the muscle compartments. Those from the leg and foot drain into the popliteal nodes whence lymphatics ascend with the femoral artery to the deep inguinal nodes whose efferents pass to the external iliac group.

The nerves of the lower limb are derived from the lumbar and sacral plexuses. The femoral nerve supplies the anterior compartment of the thigh, while the obturator nerve innervates the medial compartment (Fig. 6.8). The sciatic nerve and its branches supply the posterior compartment of the thigh and all compartments of the leg and foot.

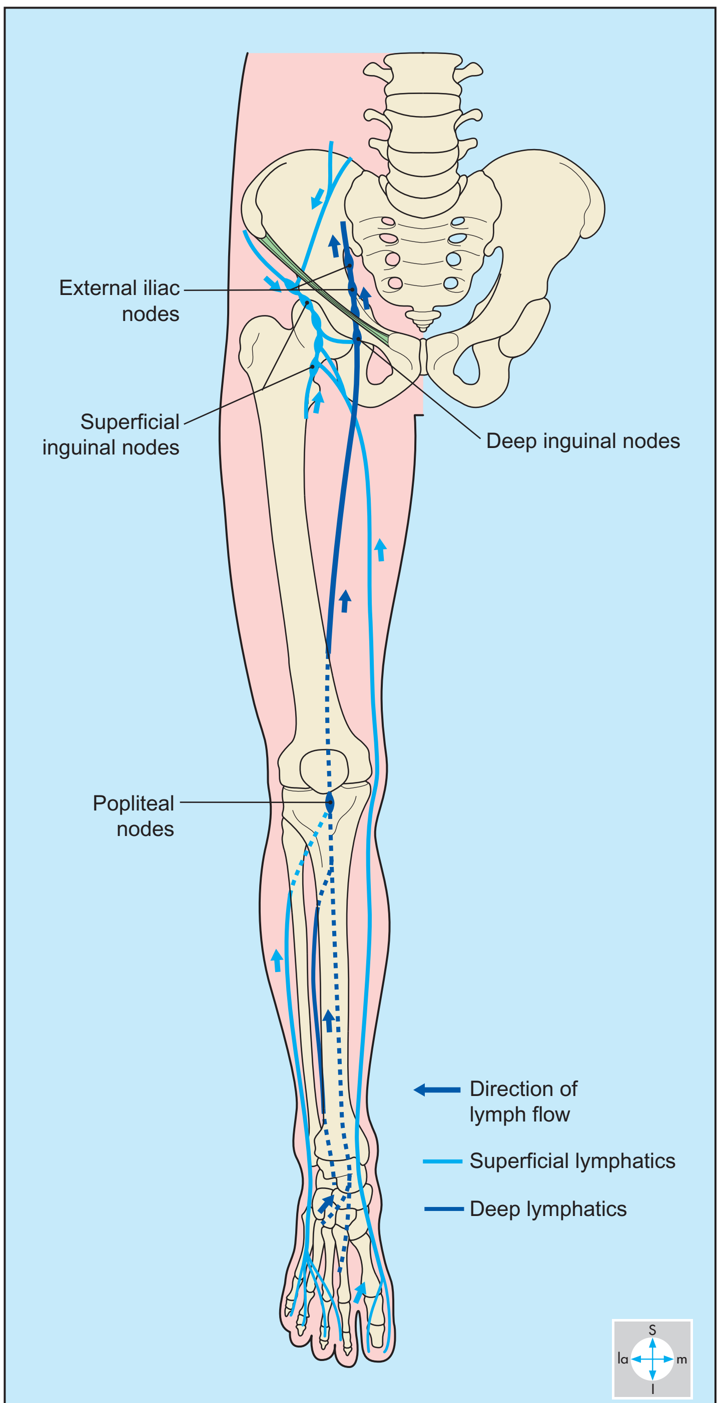


Fig. 6.7 Lymphatics and lymph nodes of the lower limb.

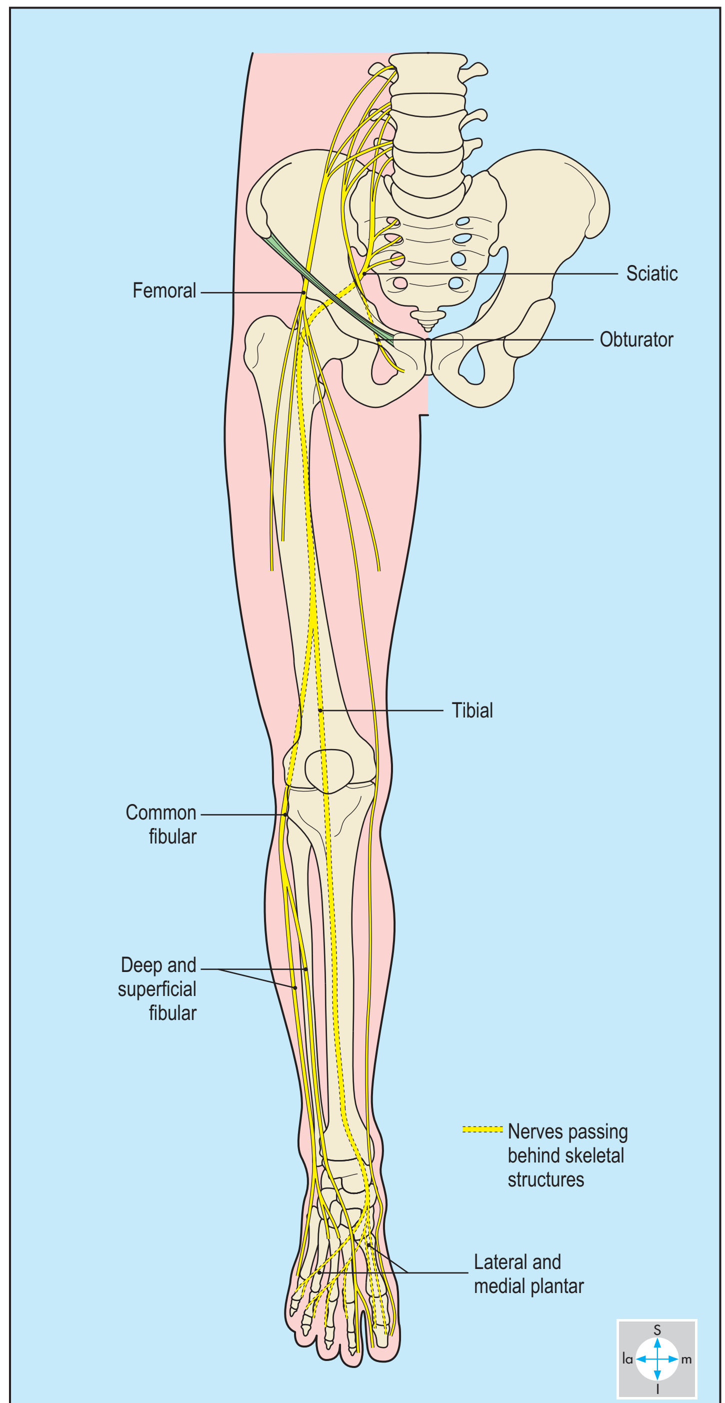


Fig. 6.8 Principal nerves of the lower limb.

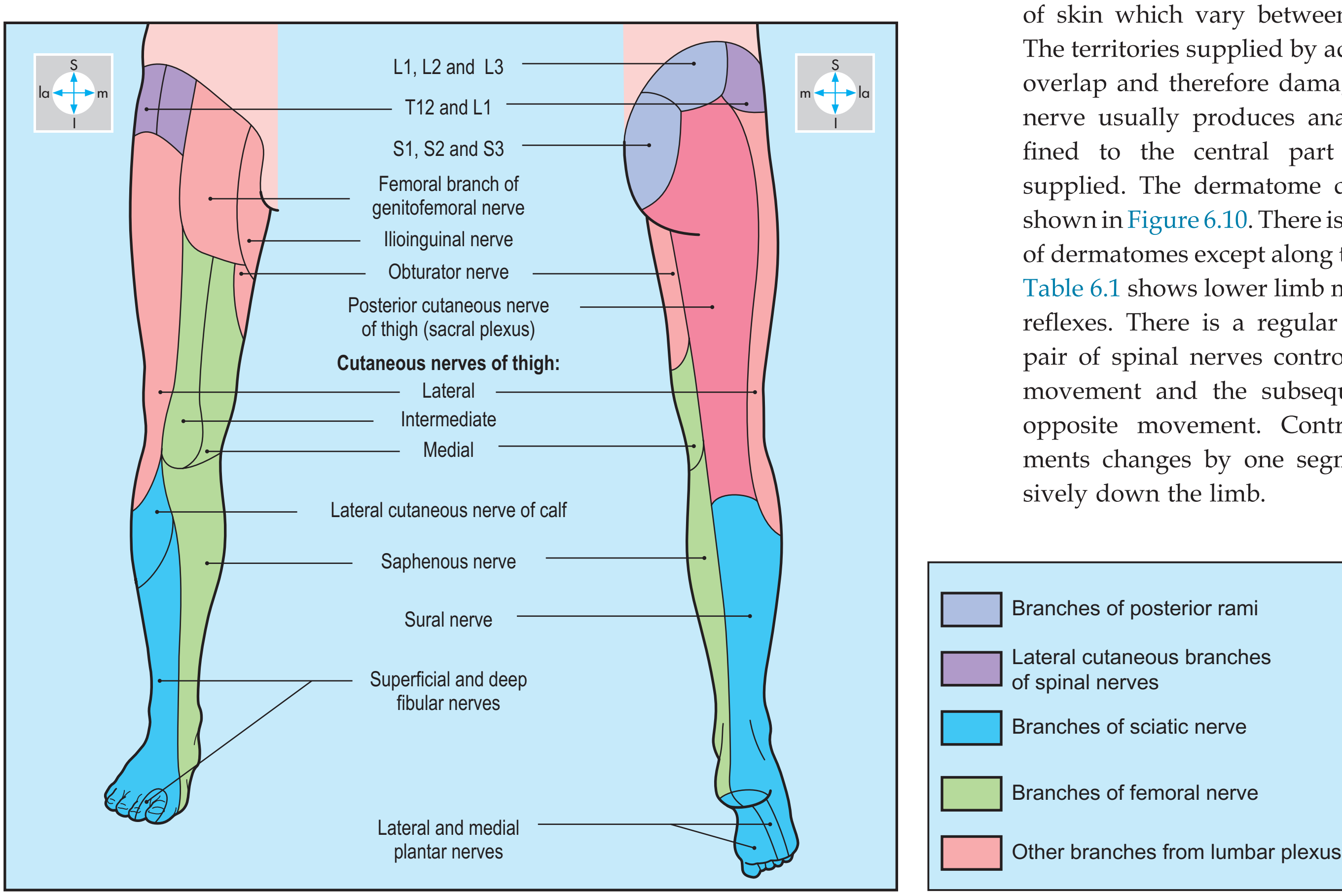


Fig. 6.9 Areas of distribution of cutaneous nerves in the lower limb.

Cutaneous nerves (Fig. 6.9) supply areas of skin which vary between individuals. The territories supplied by adjacent nerves overlap and therefore damage to a single nerve usually produces anaesthesia confined to the central part of the area supplied. The dermatome distribution is shown in Figure 6.10. There is some overlap of dermatomes except along the axial lines. Table 6.1 shows lower limb myotomes and reflexes. There is a regular pattern. One pair of spinal nerves control a particular movement and the subsequent pair the opposite movement. Control of movements changes by one segment progressively down the limb.

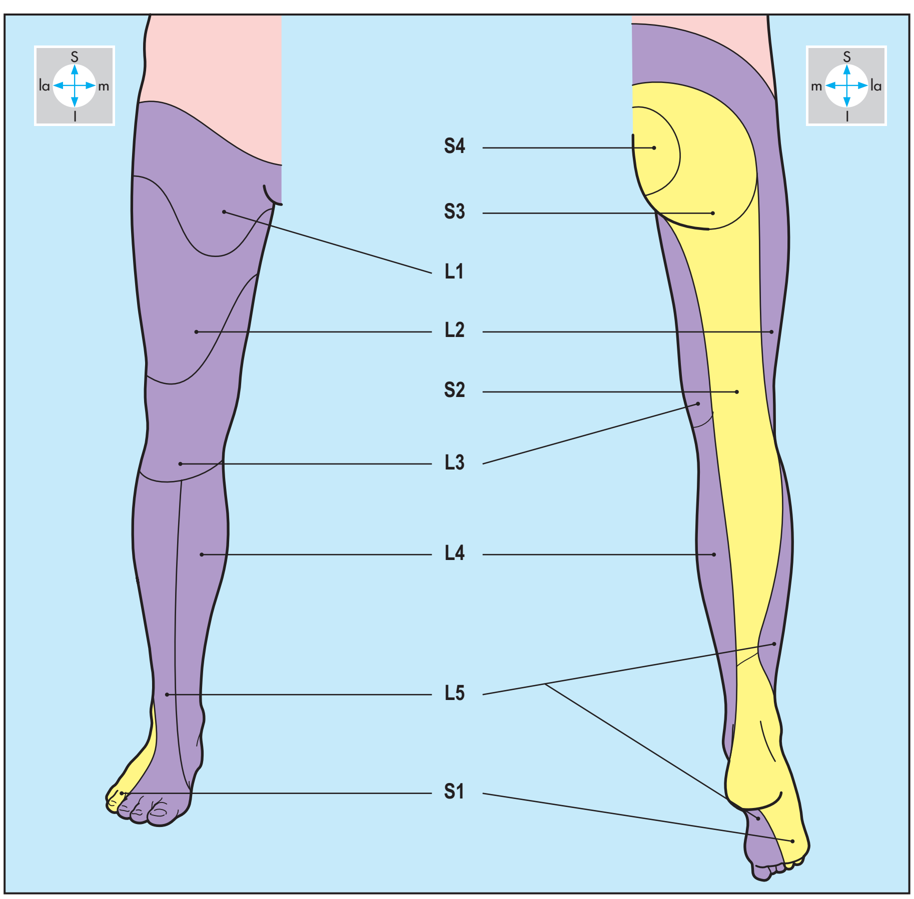


Fig. 6.10 The dermatomes of the lower limb.

Table 6.1 Segmental innervation for lower limb movements

Hip (coxal joint)		
Action	Flexion	Extension
Spinal segments	L2, L3	L4, L5
Knee (genu)		
Action	Extension	Flexion
Spinal segments	L3, L4	L5, S1
Reflex	Quadriceps (knee) jerk	–
Ankle (talocrural joint)		
Action	Dorsiflexion	Plantarflexion
Spinal segments	L4, L5	S1, S2
Reflex	–	Gastrocnemius (ankle) jerk
Subtalar joint (talocalcaneonavicular joint)		
Action	Inversion	Eversion
Spinal segments	L4	L5 and S1

L, lumbar; S, sacral.

Anterior Compartment of the Thigh

The anterior compartment is the largest in the thigh, occupying the region between the inguinal ligament and the knee. Lateral and anteromedial intermuscular septa separate the contents from the posterior (hamstring) and medial (adductor) compartments, respectively (Fig. 6.2). The anterior compartment (Fig. 6.12) contains quadriceps femoris, sartorius and the tendon of iliopsoas, and is innervated by the femoral nerve. The femoral artery and vein, the principal vessels of the lower limb, traverse the compartment and leave via the opening in adductor magnus to gain the popliteal fossa.

Subcutaneous tissue (superficial fascia)

The subcutaneous tissue contains the great (long) saphenous vein and its tributaries with their accompanying arteries, superficial inguinal lymph nodes and cutaneous nerves. The great saphenous vein ascends on the medial side of the thigh (Fig. 6.11) and passes through the saphenous opening in the fascia lata to empty into the femoral vein. The great saphenous vein drains the superficial tissues of the entire limb except the lateral side of the leg and foot. Near its termination, the vein receives tributaries, which drain the buttock, the perineum and the abdominal wall below the umbilicus. These tributaries are accompanied by corresponding branches of the femoral artery.

The superficial inguinal lymph nodes, often palpable in the living, lie just distal and parallel to the inguinal ligament and adjacent to the termination of the great saphenous vein (Fig. 6.11). These nodes receive lymph from the same superficial tissues as those drained by the great saphenous vein and its tributaries. Efferent lymphatics from the superficial nodes pass through the fascia lata and drain into the

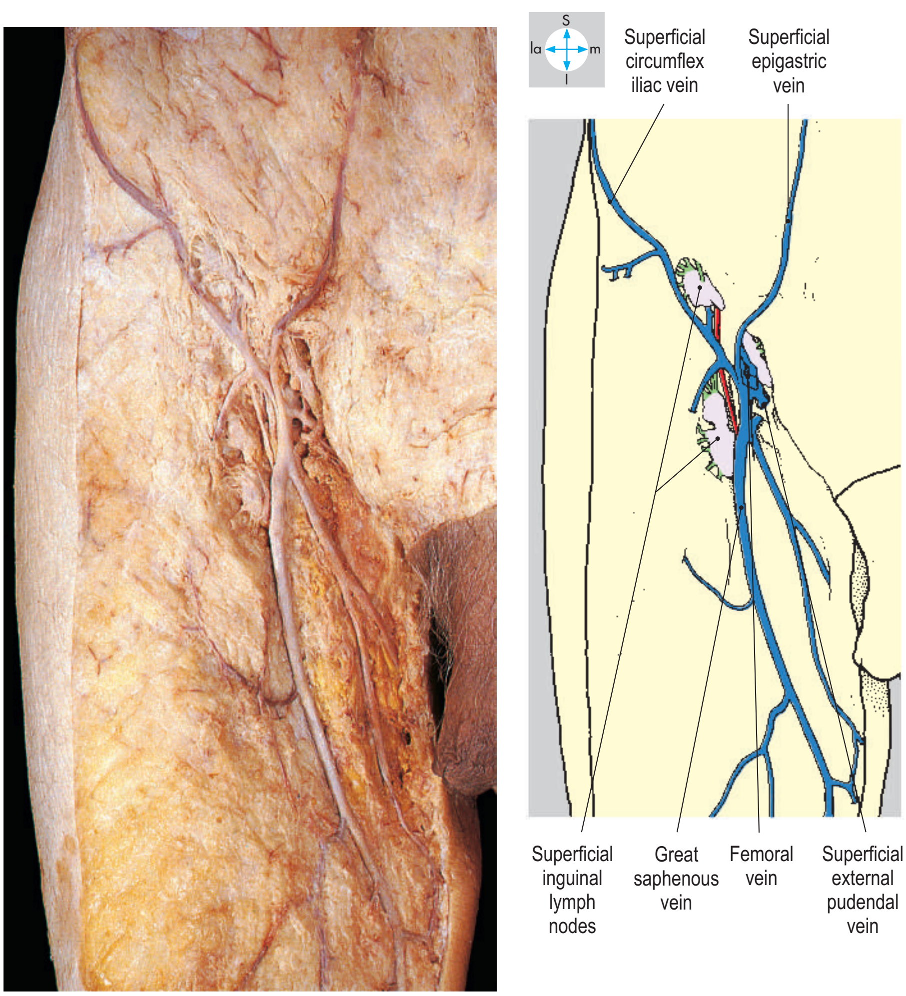


Fig. 6.11 Great saphenous vein, its tributaries and the superficial inguinal lymph nodes lying in subcutaneous tissue.

Fig. 6.12 Muscles of the anterior compartment of thigh after removal of the skin and fascia lata.

deep inguinal nodes within the femoral triangle and femoral canal, where nodes are a focal point in lymphatic drainage of the lower limb (p. 257).

The lateral cutaneous nerve of the thigh (L2 & L3) (Fig. 6.17) pierces the inguinal ligament close to the anterior superior iliac spine, where it may become entrapped, causing pain in the thigh (meralgia paraesthetica). It supplies skin as far as the knee. The intermediate and medial cutaneous nerves of the thigh arise from the femoral nerve and supply the anterior and medial surfaces of the thigh. Usually, the obturator nerve gives a cutaneous supply to the medial side of the thigh. The femoral branch of the genitofemoral nerve (L1 & L2) passes beneath the inguinal ligament to supply skin over the femoral triangle, and the ilioinguinal nerve emerges through the superficial inguinal ring to supply the adjacent medial aspect of the thigh.

Fascia lata

The fascia lata (deep fascia) completely invests the thigh, providing attachment for muscles and associated intermuscular septa in the anterior compartment. It attaches superiorly to the inguinal ligament and iliac crest, and inferiorly is continuous with the deep fascia of the leg. Below and lateral to the pubic tubercle is the saphenous opening, which transmits the terminal part of the long saphenous vein.

Over the lateral aspect of the thigh, the fascia lata is particularly thick, forming the iliotibial tract. Gluteus maximus and tensor fasciae latae are attached to its upper part (Fig. 6.30).

Muscles

Quadriceps femoris

The four parts of quadriceps femoris, namely rectus femoris, vastus lateralis, vastus intermedius and vastus medialis, cover the front and sides of the femur (Figs 6.12, 6.13 & 6.14). Rectus femoris is attached by a straight head to the anterior inferior iliac spine and by a reflected head to the ilium above the acetabulum.

Vastus lateralis attaches to the intertrochanteric line, the lateral lip of the linea aspera and the lateral supracondylar ridge of the femur (Figs 6.15 & 6.16). Vastus intermedius attaches to the upper two-thirds of the anterior and lateral surfaces of the femoral shaft, while vastus medialis anchors to the spiral line and medial lip of the linea aspera. Distally, these four muscles form a common tendon, which attaches to the upper border (base) of the patella. From the lower border (apex) of the patella, the tendon continues as the patellar ligament (Fig. 6.75) to attach to the tibial tubercle.

Quadriceps femoris is a powerful anti-gravity muscle, extending the knee joint during standing, walking and running. In addition, rectus femoris flexes the hip. The lower fibres of vastus medialis stabilize the position of the patella (p. 300). Quadriceps femoris is supplied by branches of the femoral nerve.

Sartorius

This strap-like muscle is attached proximally to the anterior superior iliac spine and descends obliquely across the thigh (Fig. 6.12), crosses the posteromedial side of the knee and, with gracilis and semitendinosus, attaches to the upper end of the subcutaneous surface of the tibia (Fig. 6.79). Sartorius flexes and laterally rotates the hip and flexes the knee. It is supplied by the femoral nerve.

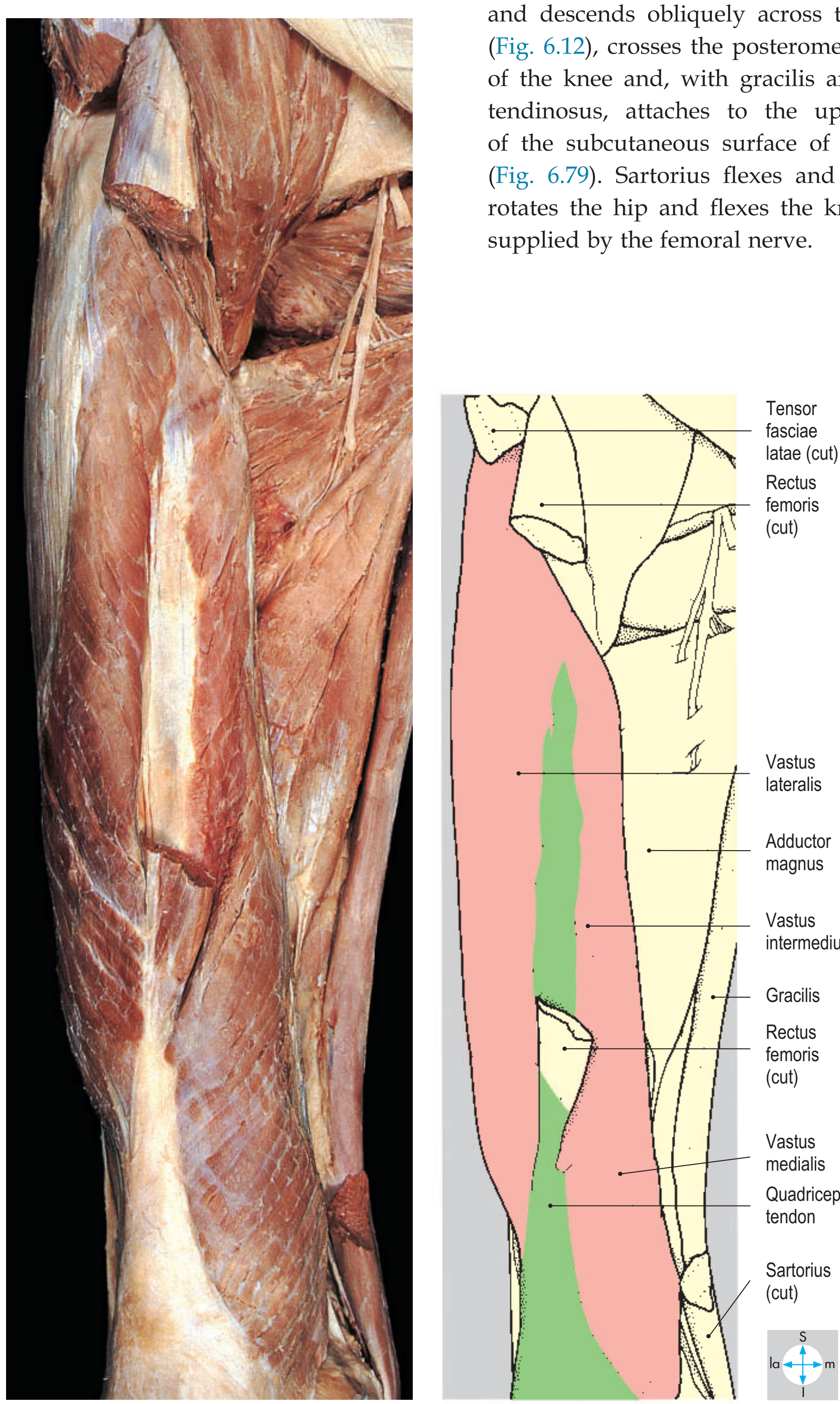


Fig. 6.13 Quadriceps femoris. Vastus intermedius is partially revealed by removal of rectus femoris. Pectineus and adductors longus and brevis have been excised.

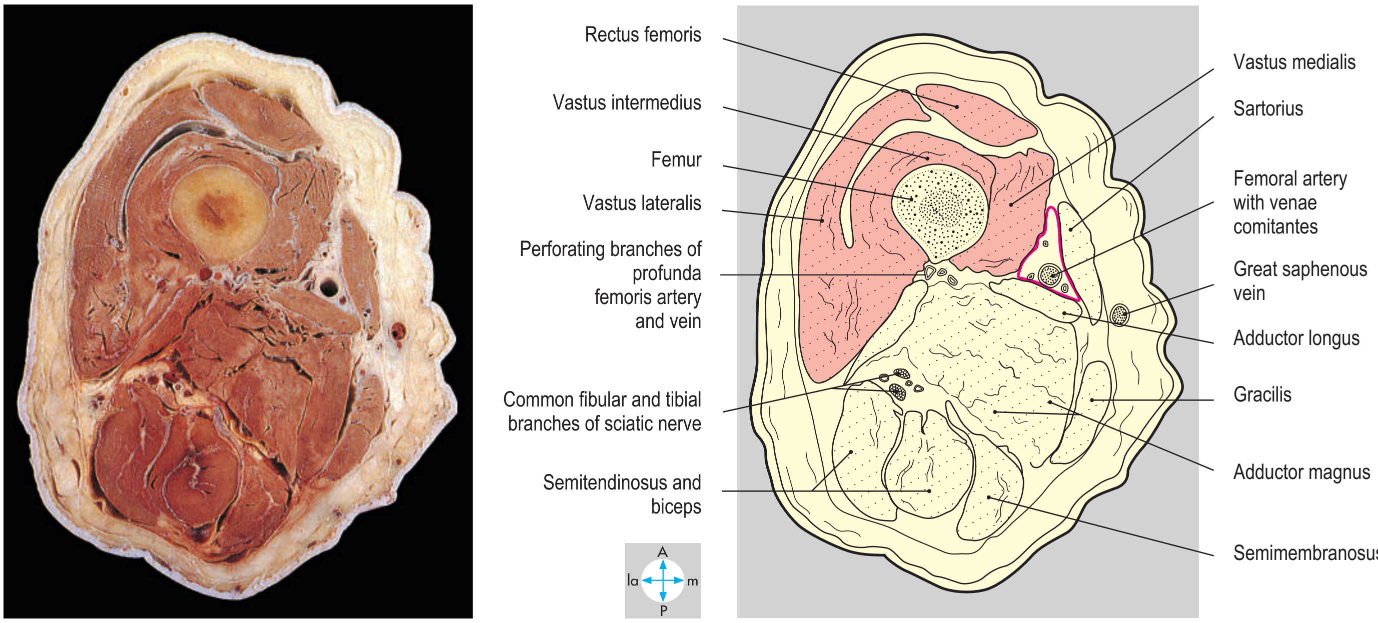


Fig. 6.14 Transverse section through the thigh to show the adductor canal (pink) and components of quadriceps femoris. Inferior aspect.

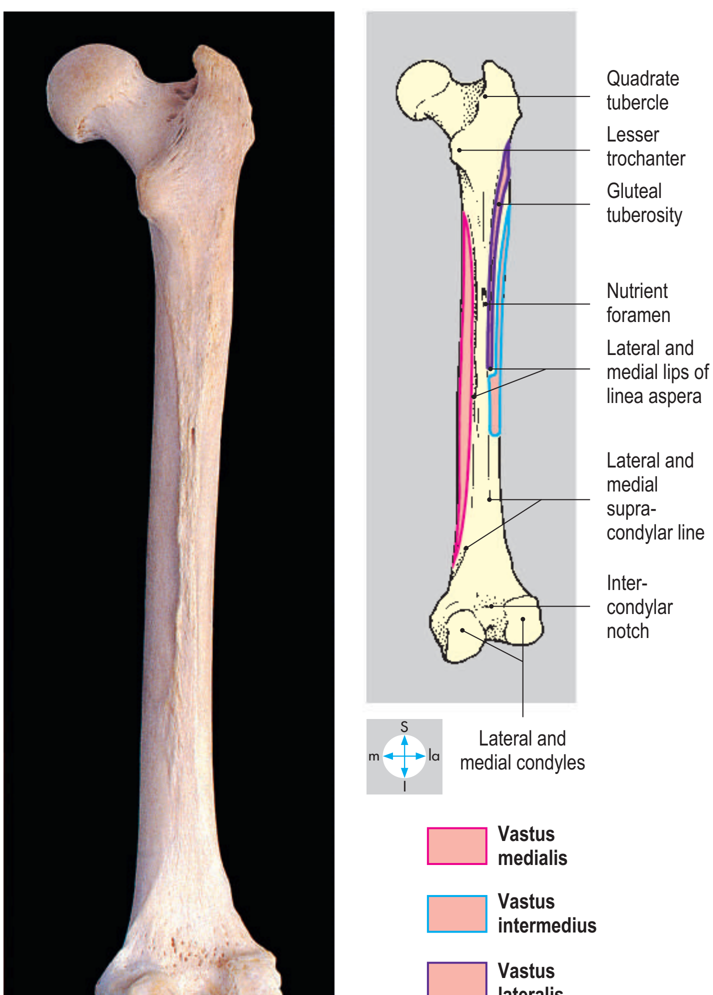


Fig. 6.15 Femoral attachments (posterior view) of the vasti muscles.

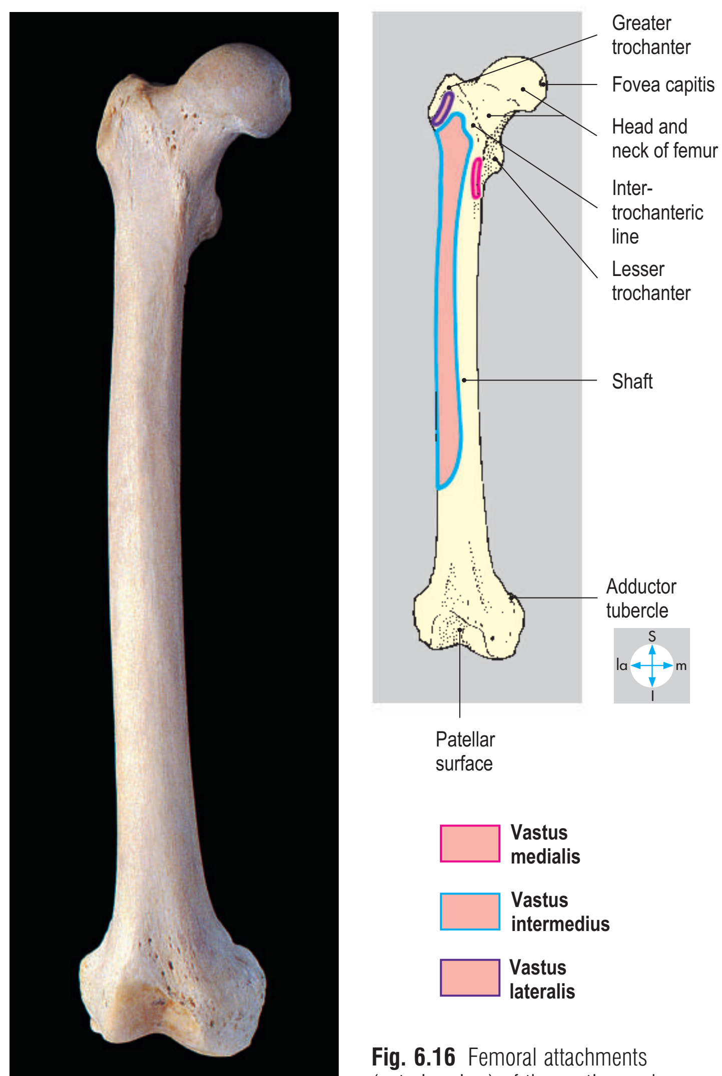


Fig. 6.16 Femoral attachments (anterior view) of the vasti muscles.

Femoral triangle

The femoral triangle occupies the upper medial part of the anterior compartment of the thigh. Its upper boundary is the inguinal ligament; its lateral limit is the medial border of sartorius and its medial boundary is the medial border of adductor longus (some authors use the lateral border in their definition). The roof is fascia lata and the floor comprises iliopsoas, pectineus and adductor longus (Fig. 6.17). The triangle contains the femoral vessels and nerve, and the deep inguinal lymph nodes.

Adductor (subsartorial) canal

This canal is an intermuscular space linking the femoral triangle with the popliteal fossa. Triangular in cross-section, it lies beneath sartorius, occupying the groove between vastus medialis and adductor longus, and at its lower end adductor magnus (Fig. 6.14). Through the canal run the femoral artery and vein and nerve to vastus medialis and the saphenous nerve (Fig. 6.18).

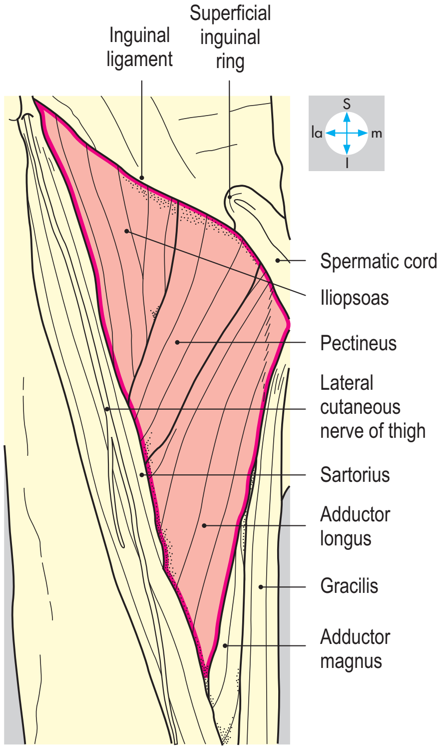


Fig. 6.17 Boundaries and floor of the femoral triangle.

Femoral vessels

The femoral artery, a continuation of the external iliac, is the main artery of the lower limb. It enters the anterior compartment behind the midpoint of the inguinal ligament where it is relatively superficial, easily palpable and accessible for catheterization to perform arteriograms. It is also vulnerable to penetrating or stab wounds. It descends through the femoral triangle (Fig. 6.19) and the adductor canal and continues through the opening in adductor magnus as the popliteal artery (p. 274).

The femoral artery or its main branches supplies all three compartments of the thigh. Subcutaneous branches of the artery traverse the saphenous opening or pierce the fascia lata to accompany the superficial veins in the groin (Fig. 6.11). The largest deep branch is the profunda femoris artery (Fig. 6.20), which arises from the posterolateral aspect of the femoral artery about 4 cm below the inguinal ligament and runs distally behind the femoral artery, leaving the triangle by passing between pectineus and adductor longus. The profunda femoris and its perforating branches pass through the adductor muscles and contribute to the anastomosis in the posterior compartment of the thigh. One of the perforating arteries gives a large nutrient branch to the femur.

Close to its origin, the profunda femoris artery usually gives medial and lateral circumflex femoral branches (Fig. 6.20). The medial circumflex artery winds round the medial aspect of the femur between iliopsoas and pectineus to join the cruciate anastomosis (p. 271), and the lateral circumflex artery encircles the femur, passing laterally deep to sartorius and rectus femoris.

The femoral vein is the continuation of the popliteal vein at the opening in adductor magnus. In the adductor canal, it lies behind the femoral artery and continues through the femoral triangle, lying medial to the artery (Fig. 6.19). Passing deep to the inguinal ligament the femoral vein becomes the external iliac vein. Tributaries of the femoral vein, except the great saphenous vein, correspond to the branches of the femoral artery.

Femoral sheath

The femoral artery and vein are invested in a thick fascial sleeve, the femoral sheath, derived from the transversalis and iliac fasciae. The sheath passes deep to the inguinal ligament and tapers inferiorly, blending with the adventitia of the vessels about 2.5 cm distal to the ligament.

Two vertical septa divide the sheath into three compartments. The femoral artery lies laterally, while the femoral vein occupies the intermediate compartment. The medial compartment is called the femoral canal (Fig. 6.20) and contains fat and lymph nodes. The upper limit of the femoral canal is the femoral ring (Fig. 4.23), an aperture bounded in front by the inguinal ligament and behind by the superior ramus of the pubis, while laterally lies the femoral vein and medially the lacunar ligament. A femoral hernia descends through the femoral ring to enter the femoral canal.

Femoral nerve

The femoral nerve (L2, L3 & L4) enters the thigh beneath the inguinal ligament, lying on iliopsoas lateral to the femoral sheath (Fig. 6.19). After a brief course in the femoral triangle, it divides into several superficial and deep branches. The superficial branches are the intermediate and medial cutaneous nerves of the thigh and the nerves to sartorius and pectineus. The deep branches include the nerves supplying rectus femoris and the vasti, and the saphenous nerve, which enters the adductor canal.

Deep inguinal lymph nodes

The deep inguinal lymph nodes lie in the femoral triangle medial to the femoral vein. They receive lymph from the superficial inguinal nodes and from all parts of the limb deep to the investing fascia. They also drain the glans of the penis or clitoris. Efferent vessels pass proximally through the femoral canal to reach the external iliac nodes.

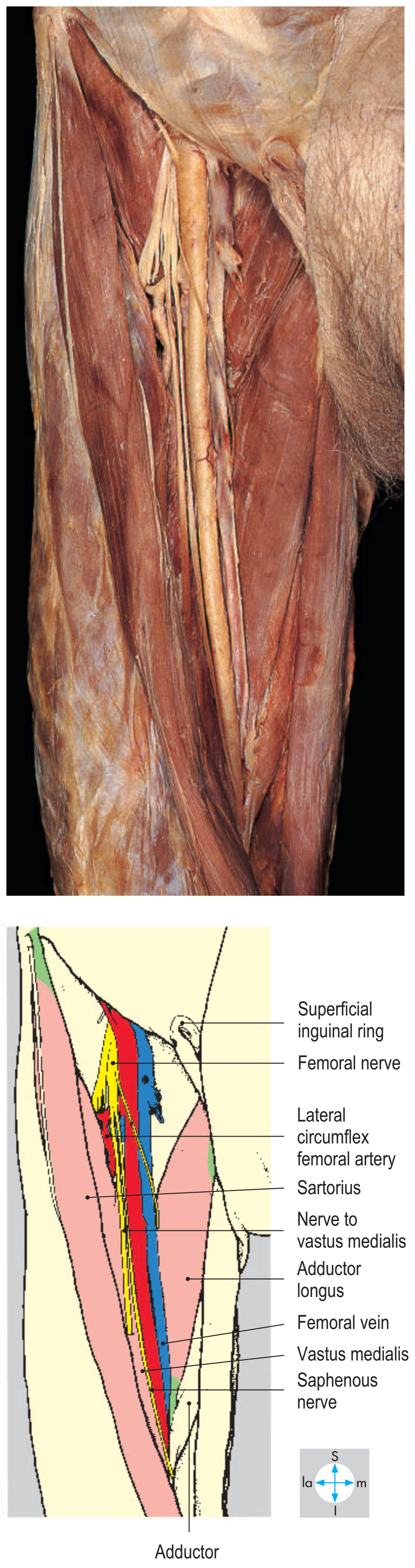


Fig. 6.18 Contents and boundaries of the adductor canal, exposed by displacement of sartorius laterally.

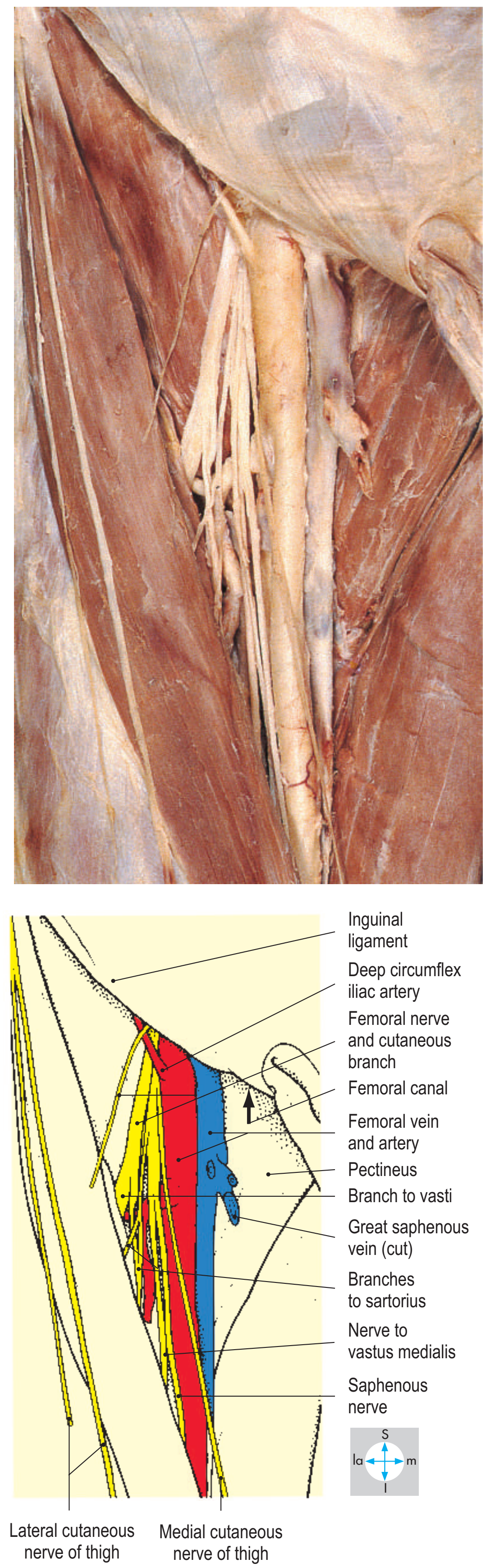


Fig. 6.19 Contents of the femoral triangle exposed by removal of its roof (fascia lata). The deep inguinal lymph nodes lie within the femoral canal.

Fig. 6.20 Profunda femoris vessels seen after removal of segments of the femoral artery and vein.

Medial Compartment of the Thigh

The medial compartment of the thigh is wedge-shaped and lies between the anterior and posterior compartments. It contains pectineus, adductors longus, brevis and magnus, gracilis and obturator externus. The obturator nerve and vessels and the profunda femoris vessels, together with their perforating branches, supply the compartment.

Muscles

The muscles are arranged in three layers. The anterior layer consists of pectineus, adductor longus and gracilis, from lateral to medial (Fig. 6.21). Deep to these, forming the intermediate layer, is adductor brevis (Figs 6.22 & 6.23). The posterior layer consists of obturator externus and adductor magnus (Figs 6.24 & 6.25). The proximal attachments of these muscles are to the outer surface of the bony pelvis between the superior pubic and ischial rami. In

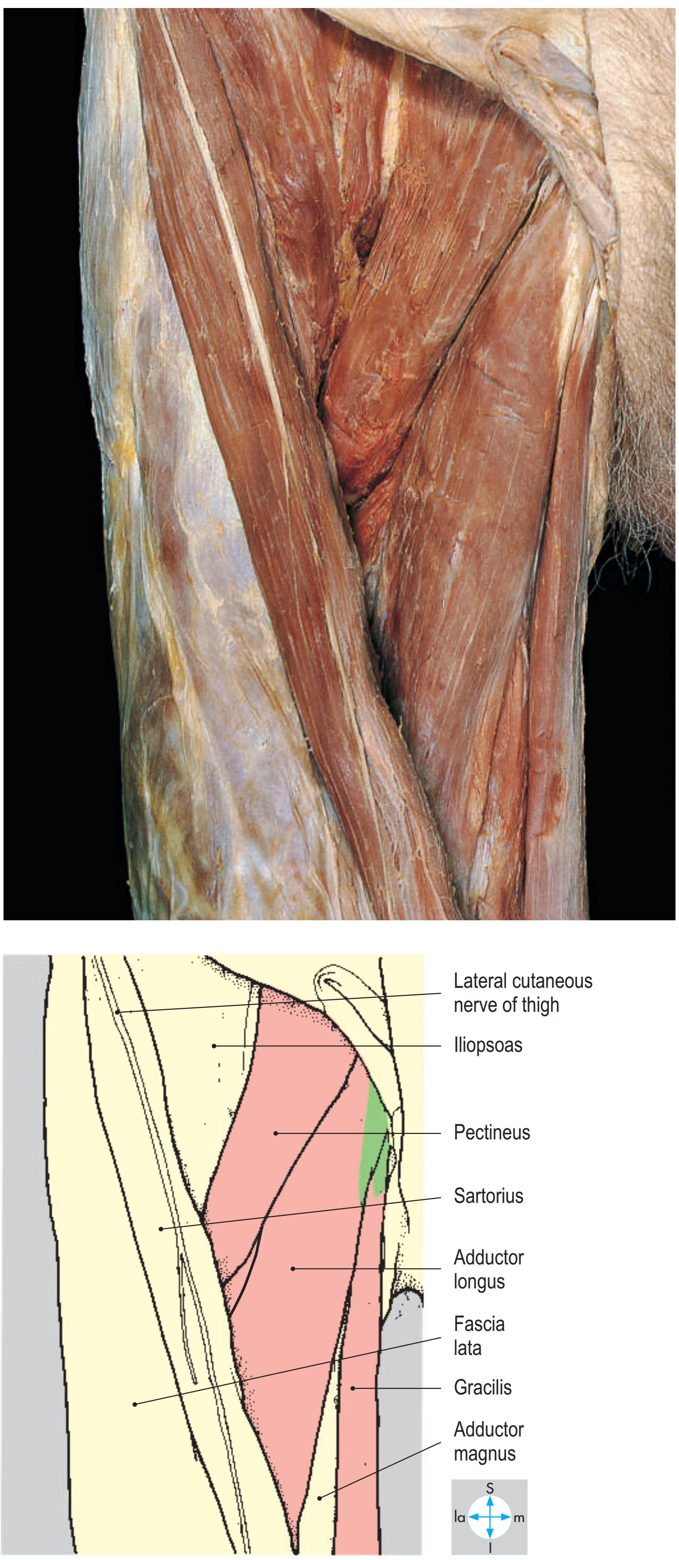


Fig. 6.21 Anterior layer of muscles of the medial compartment of thigh.

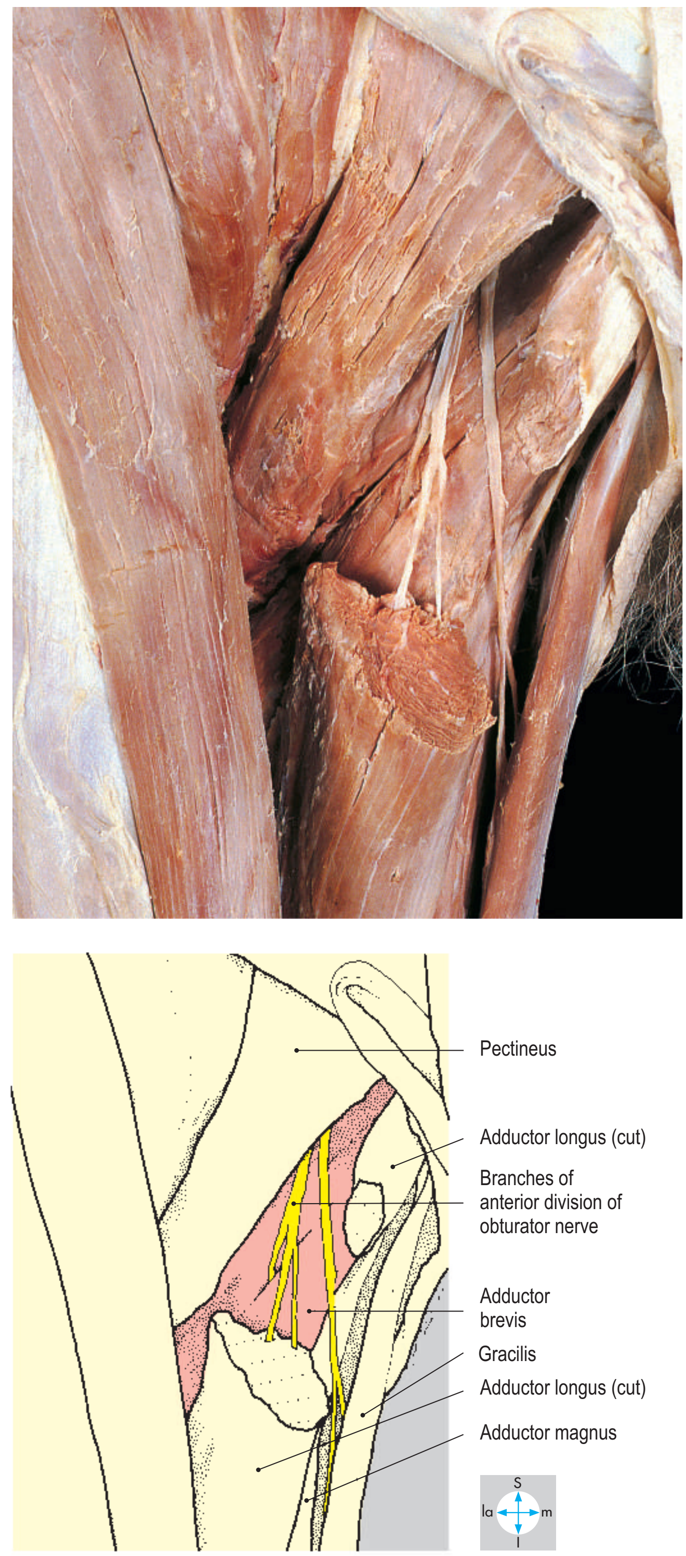


Fig. 6.22 Adductor brevis and branches of the anterior division of the obturator nerve, revealed by removal of part of adductor longus.

addition, obturator externus is attached to the obturator membrane.

The more anterior muscles have higher attachments than those of the deeper layers (Fig. 6.26). Distally, the muscles attach to the femur, except for gracilis (Fig. 6.79), which descends below the knee to gain the proximal end of the subcutaneous surface of the tibia in company with sartorius and semitendinosus. Obturator externus passes laterally below and behind the capsule of the hip joint (Figs 6.25 & 6.70) to the trochanteric fossa on the medial aspect of the greater trochanter. Pectineus and adductors longus, brevis and magnus slope downwards and laterally to attach in the region of the linea aspera, the sequence being related to the layer in which the muscle lies (Fig. 6.27). Adductor magnus has the longest attachment, extending from the gluteal tuberosity above to the adductor tubercle below.

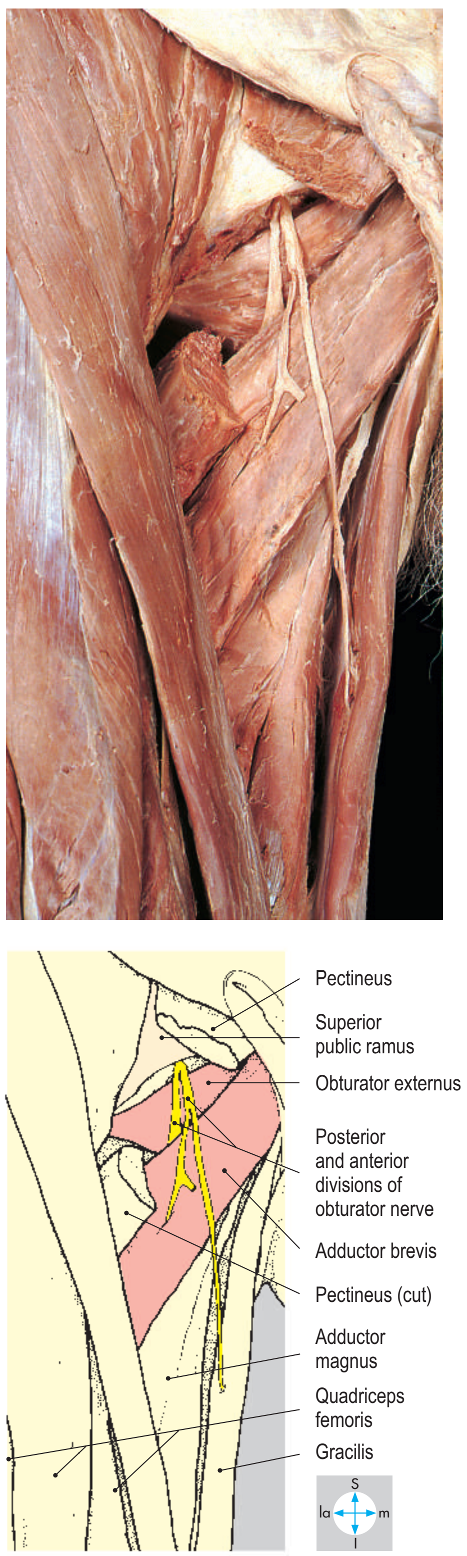


Fig. 6.23 Division of the obturator nerve, revealed by removal of adductor longus and part of pectineus. In this specimen the posterior division lies in front of obturator externus but it usually lies behind or may fan through it.

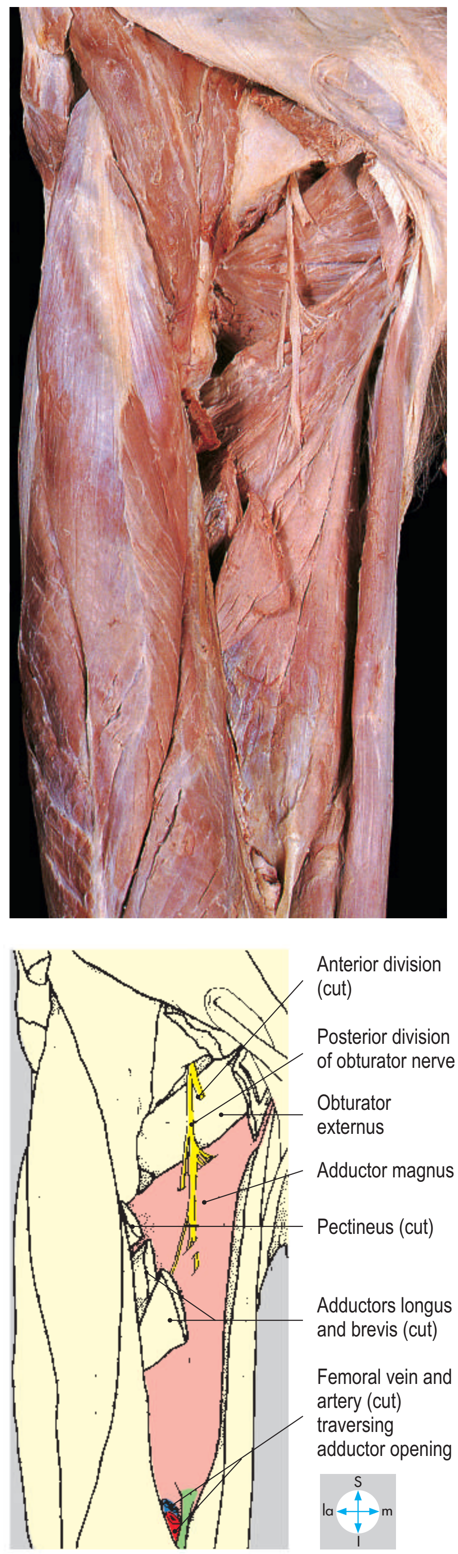


Fig. 6.24 Adductor magnus and the posterior division of the obturator nerve. Adductor brevis has been removed.

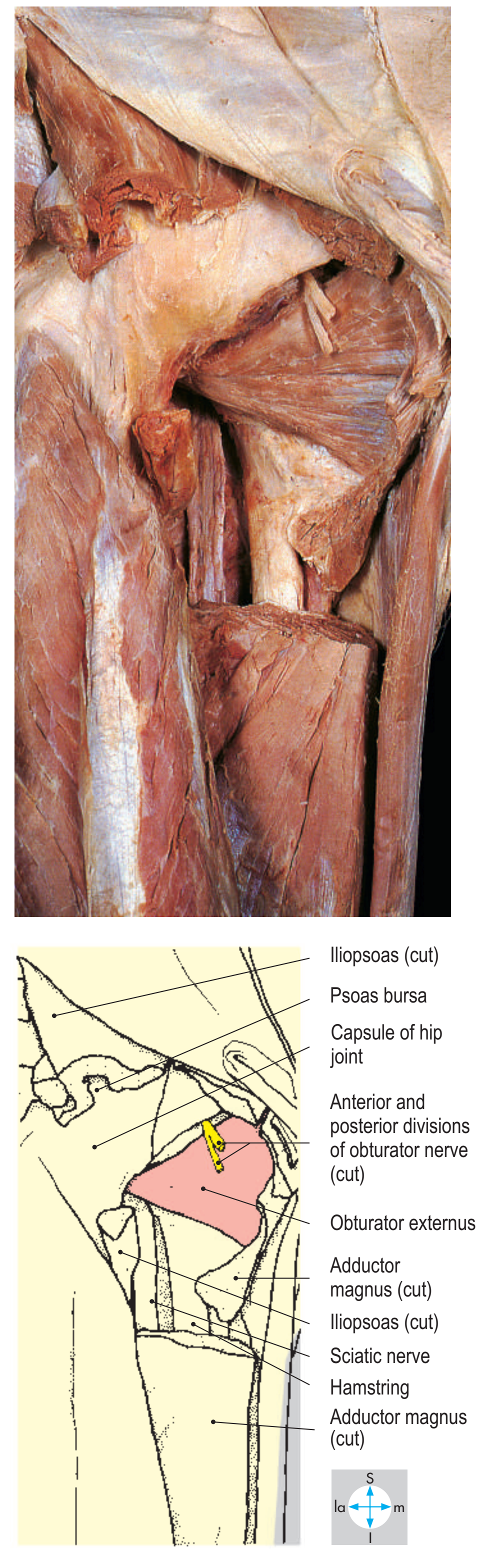


Fig. 6.25 Obturator externus, completely revealed by removal of parts of iliopsoas and adductor magnus.

All the muscles in the compartment, except obturator externus, adduct the hip joint. During walking they stabilize the femur, while the abductors of the hip prevent tilting of the pelvis (p. 270). In addition, pectineus and adductor longus are medial rotators and obturator externus a lateral rotator. Pectineus assists flexion at the hip joint and gracilis flexes and medially rotates the knee joint.

All the muscles in the medial compartment except pectineus are innervated by the obturator nerve. Pectineus usually has a supply from the femoral nerve but may also be supplied by the obturator nerve, and the ischial part of adductor magnus receives fibres from the tibial part of the sciatic nerve.

Obturator nerve

The obturator nerve gains the compartment through the obturator canal and promptly divides into anterior and posterior divisions (Fig. 6.23). The former passes anterior to obturator externus, while the posterior division usually pierces and supplies the muscle before emerging onto its surface. The two divisions then descend, respectively, anterior and posterior to adductor brevis. The anterior division supplies adductors longus and brevis and gracilis (Fig. 6.22), and gives sensory branches to the hip joint and to skin on the medial side of the thigh. The posterior division lies on and supplies adductor magnus (Fig. 6.24) and gives sensory branches, which accompany the femoral artery through the opening in adductor magnus to supply the knee joint. Since the obturator nerve innervates the hip and knee joints, disease in one joint may cause referred pain in the other. Pelvic pathology, including tumours pressing on the obturator nerve (pp 222, 234, 235) may also cause referred pain in the hip, knee and medial side of the thigh.

Vessels

The blood supply is derived from the profunda femoris artery and its perforating branches, supplemented by the obturator artery and other branches of the femoral artery. The obturator artery is small and forms an arterial circle around the margins of the obturator membrane, supplying the proximal parts of the muscles. An acetabular branch passes beneath the transverse acetabular ligament and accompanies the round ligament to the head of the femur. Venae comitantes accompanying the arteries in the compartment drain into the profunda femoris or internal iliac veins.

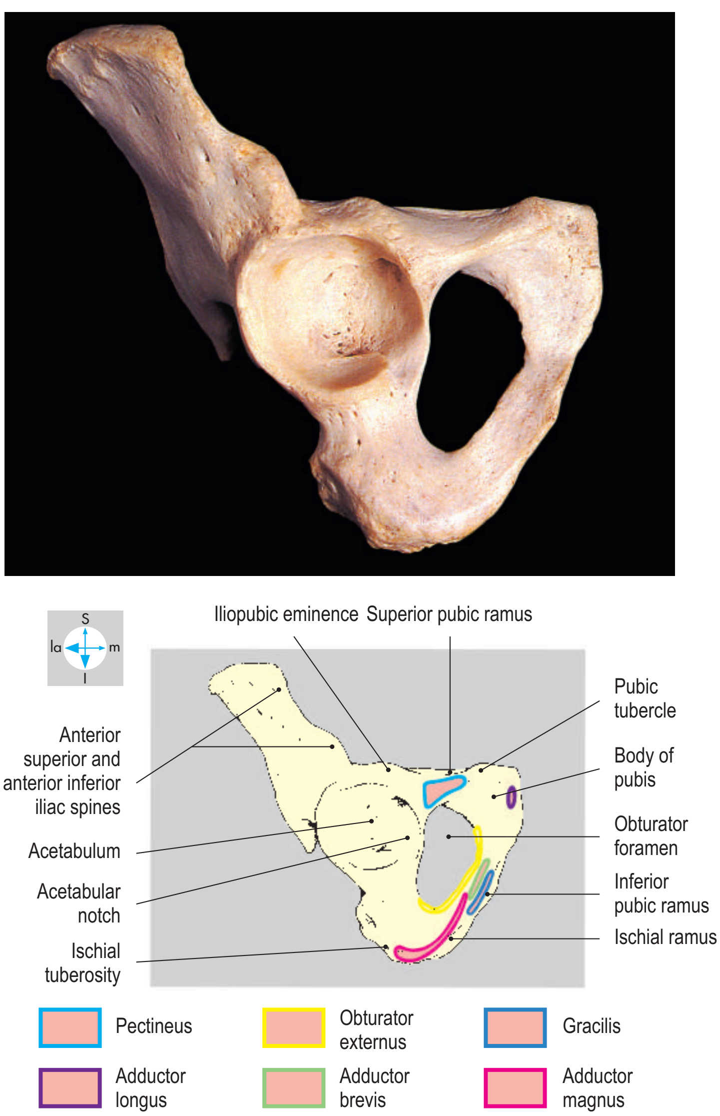


Fig. 6.26 Attachments of the muscles of the medial compartment of the thigh to the hip bone.

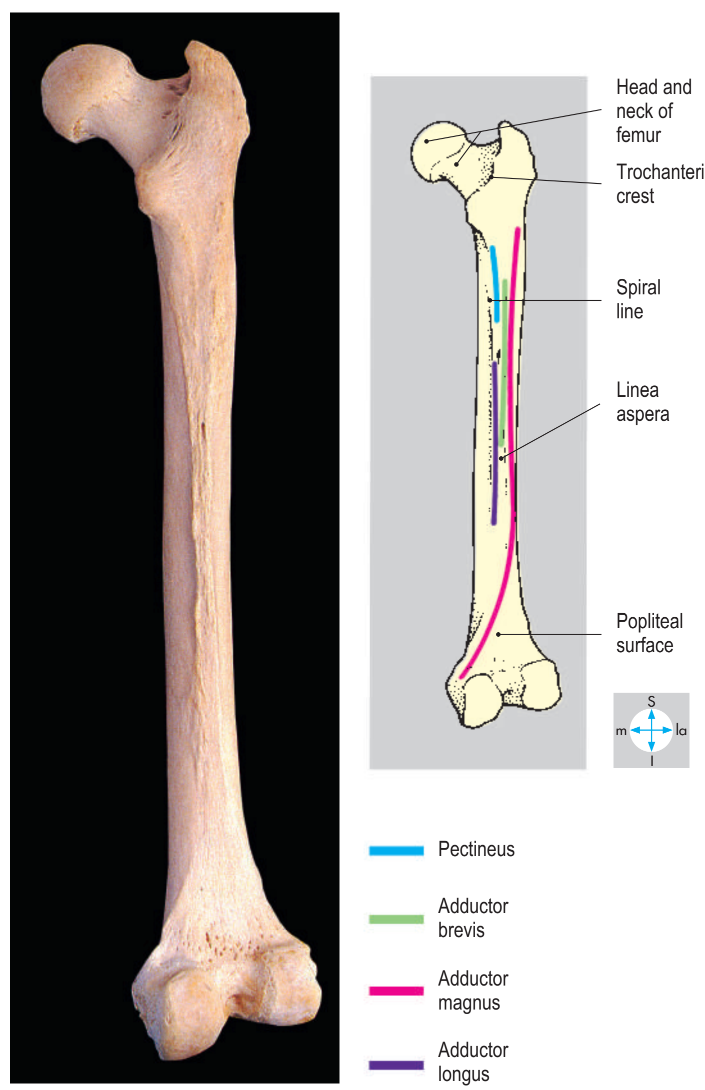


Fig. 6.27 Femoral attachments of the muscles of the medial compartment of the thigh.

Gluteal Compartment

The gluteal region or buttock forms part of the root of the limb. It overlies the dorsum of the ilium, ischium and sacrum and is continuous proximally with the lower trunk and distally with the posterior compartment of the thigh. Three substantial muscles (gluteus maximus, medius and minimus), covered by deep fascia and a thick layer of subcutaneous fat, form the bulk of the buttock and account for its surface contour. The gluteal fold, a prominent surface feature, lies at the junction of the buttock and thigh.

Gluteus maximus

This very large trapezoidal muscle is the most superficial in the buttock. Its fibres slope downwards and laterally (Fig. 6.28) and its lower edge passes obliquely across the gluteal fold. Some of

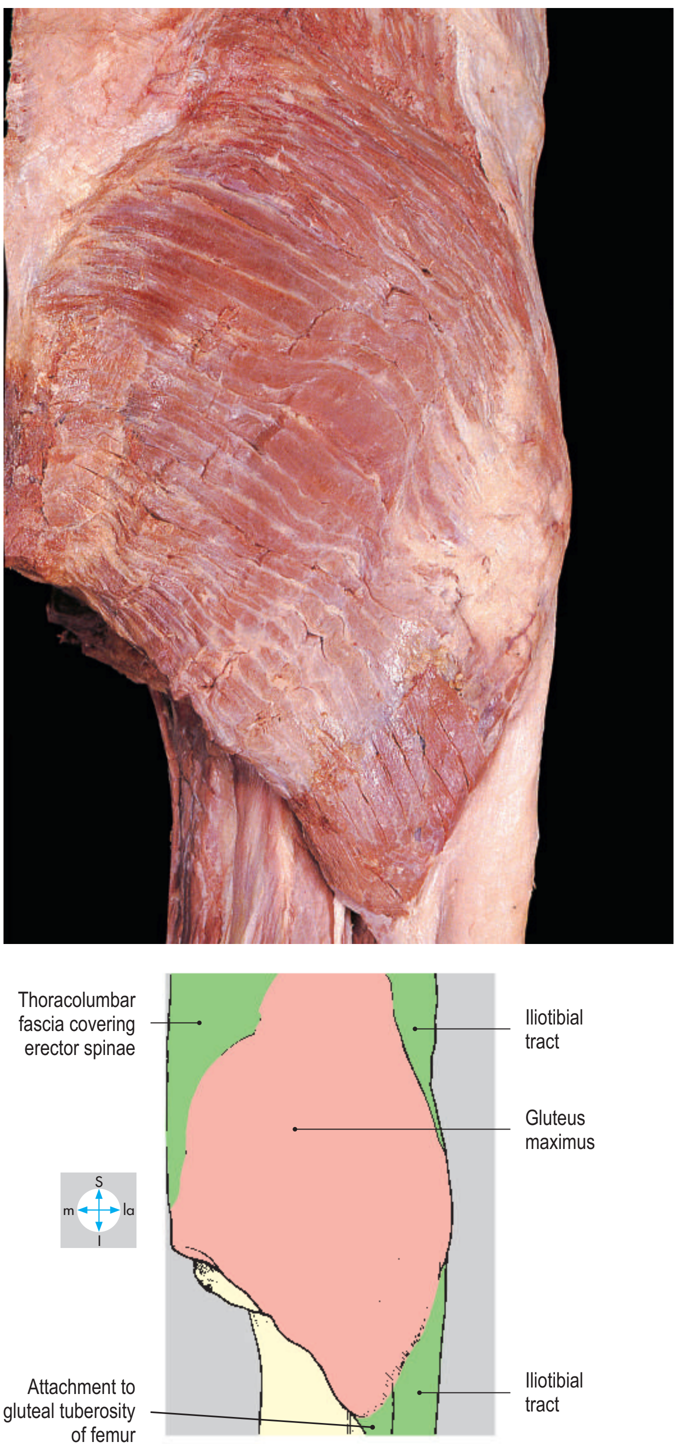


Fig. 6.28 The attachments of gluteus maximus include the thoracolumbar fascia and the iliotibial tract.

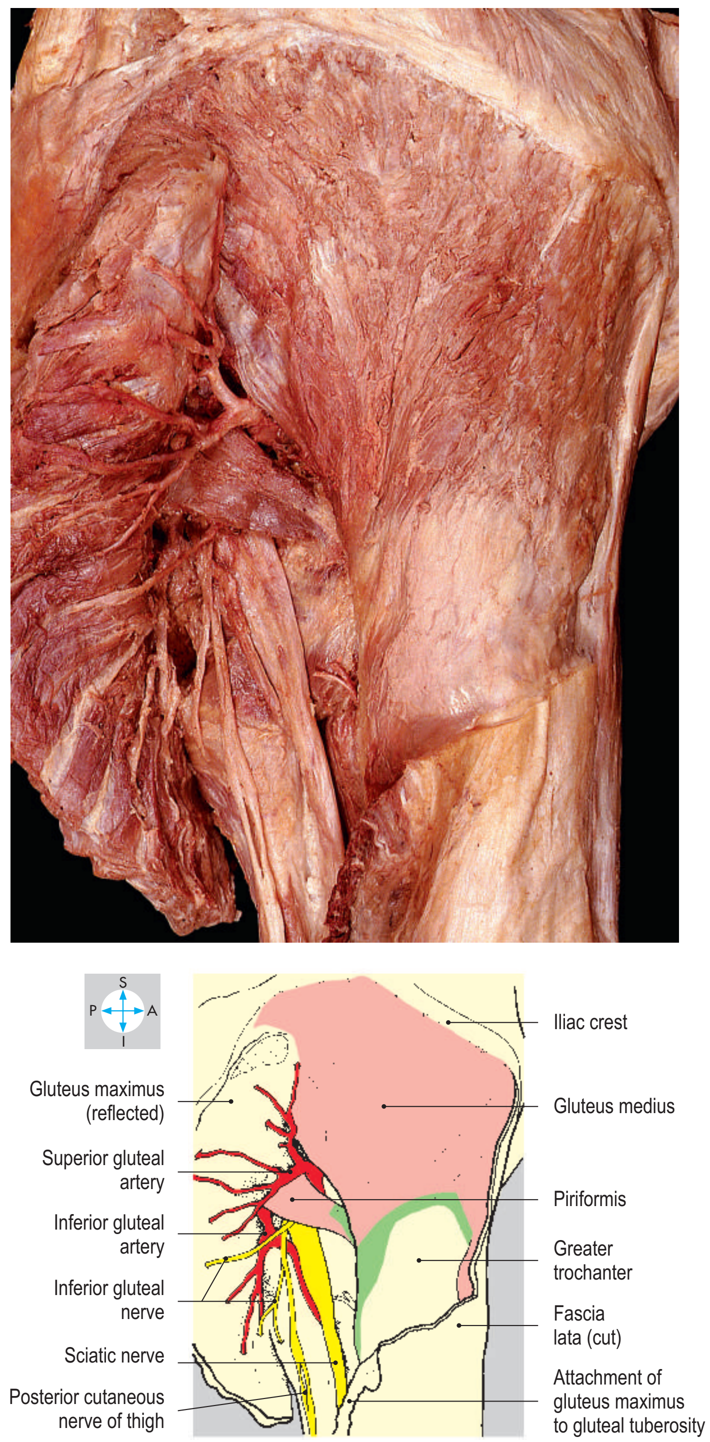


Fig. 6.29 Reflection of gluteus maximus exposes gluteus medius and neurovascular structures.

the sensory nerves to the skin of the buttock penetrate the medial part of the muscle, while others emerge around its upper and lower borders. Proximally, the muscle has an extensive attachment: to the ilium behind the posterior gluteal line, to the lower part of the sacrum, to the coccyx, to the sacrotuberous ligament and to the thoracolumbar (lumbar) and gluteal fasciae. A synovial bursa is usually present where it crosses the ischial tuberosity. Distally, some of the deeper fibres are attached to the gluteal tuberosity of the femur (Fig. 6.29), but most of the muscle is attached through the iliotibial tract (Fig. 6.30) to the anterior surface of the lateral tibial condyle. The nerve supply is from the inferior gluteal nerve (L5, S1 & S2).

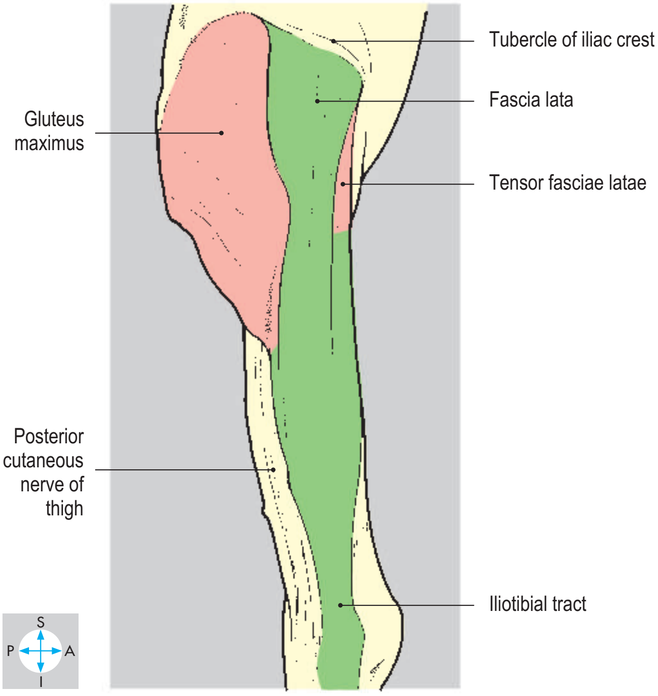


Fig. 6.30 Attachment of gluteus maximus and tensor fasciae latae to the iliotibial tract.

Gluteus maximus is a strong extensor of the thigh, especially during running and climbing, and also produces abduction at the hip joint. As an antigravity muscle, it extends the trunk on the hip, and through the iliotibial tract, it extends and stabilizes the knee joint and the supporting limb during walking and standing.

Tensor fasciae latae

This small muscle is attached proximally to the ilium between the anterior superior iliac spine and iliac tubercle (Fig. 6.31) and distally to the anterior border of the iliotibial tract (Fig. 6.30), which it tenses. It is supplied by the superior gluteal nerve.

Structures deep to gluteus maximus

The arrangement of these structures is clarified by noting whether they enter the buttock above or below the piriformis muscle (Fig. 6.29), which itself enters via the greater sciatic foramen (Fig. 6.36).

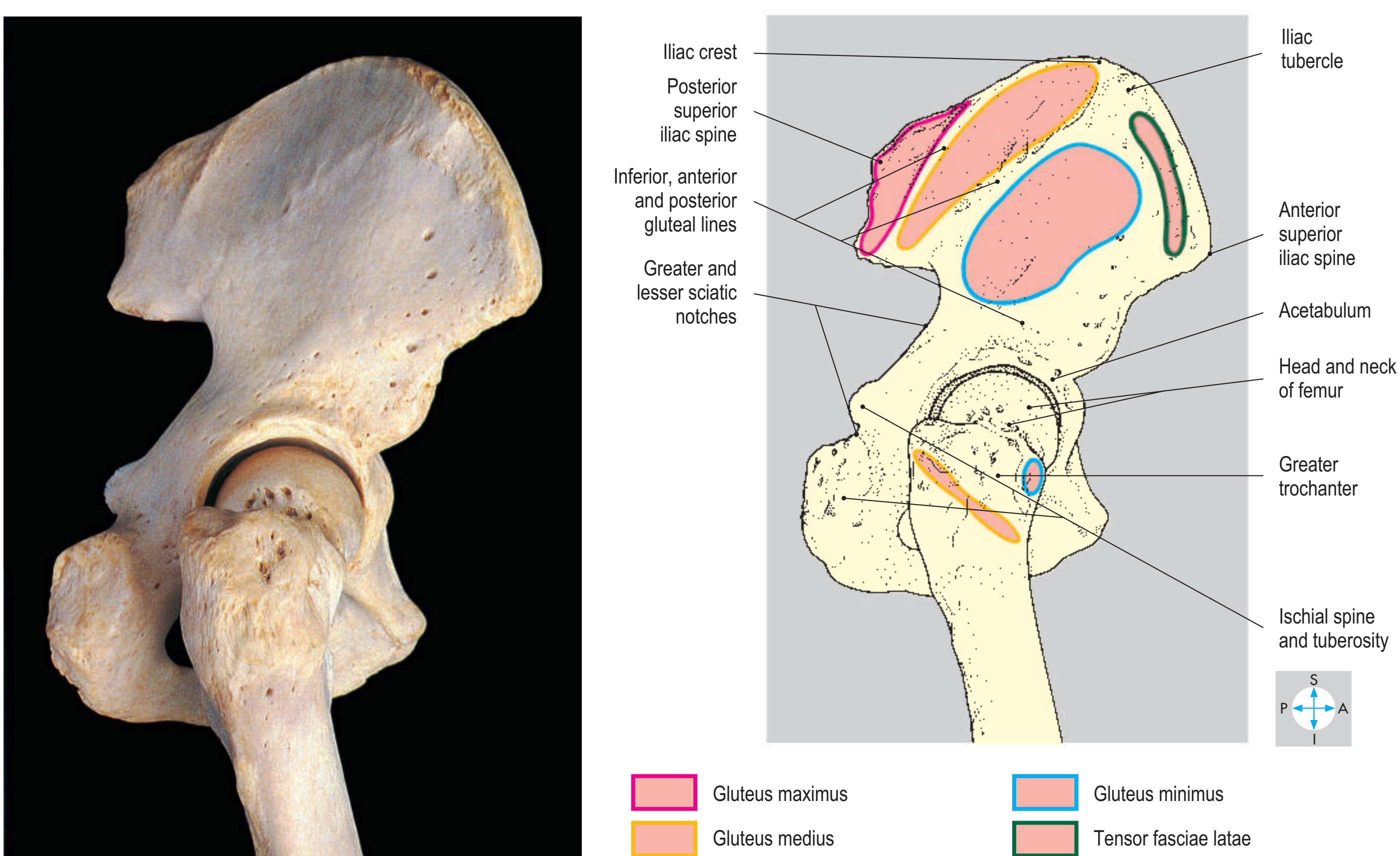


Fig. 6.31 Attachments of the gluteal muscles to the ilium and the greater trochanter.

Structures entering above piriformis

The superior gluteal nerve (L4, L5 & S1) arises within the pelvis from the lumbosacral plexus and enters the buttock through the greater sciatic foramen (Fig. 6.36), running laterally between gluteus medius and gluteus minimus (Fig. 6.32). It supplies both muscles and terminates in tensor fasciae latae.

The superior gluteal artery arises from the posterior aspect of the internal iliac artery. It enters the buttock accompanying the corresponding nerve and divides into a superficial branch, which supplies the overlying gluteus maximus (Fig. 6.29) and two deep branches, an upper and lower, which supply gluteus medius and minimus (Fig. 6.32). The deep branches also contribute to anastomoses around the greater trochanter and anterior superior iliac spine. The accompanying veins form an extensive plexus between the muscles and drain into the internal iliac vein.

Gluteus medius and minimus

These fan-shaped muscles lie superior to piriformis. Gluteus medius (Fig. 6.29) is attached proximally to the dorsum of the ilium between the posterior and anterior (middle) gluteal lines and to the gluteal fascia, which separates it from gluteus maximus. Distally, it is attached to the lateral surface of the greater trochanter. Gluteus minimus lies immediately deep to gluteus medius and attaches proximally to the dorsum of the ilium between the anterior and inferior gluteal lines (Fig. 6.31) and distally to the anterior surface of the greater trochanter (Fig. 6.32). Both are supplied by the superior gluteal nerve.

Although both gluteus medius and minimus medially rotate the femur at the hip joint, their importance is in abduction. During walking, gluteus medius and minimus of the supporting limb contract, pulling on the pelvis from their femoral attachments to prevent tilting of the pelvis towards the unsupported side. Failure of this mechanism is the basis of Trendelenburg's sign of hip instability with a dipping gait. It may result from a defective acetabulum (usually congenital) or loss of function in these muscles.

Structures entering below piriformis

These are: three nerves laterally, the sciatic nerve, nerve to quadratus femoris and posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh; medially the internal pudendal artery, pudendal nerve and nerve to obturator internus; and in intermediate position, the inferior gluteal nerve and vessels.

The sciatic nerve (Fig. 6.33), the largest nerve in the lower limb, arises from the spinal nerves L4, L5, S1, S2 and S3 and supplies the entire limb, except for the gluteal structures and the medial and anterior compartments of the thigh. It leaves the greater sciatic foramen about halfway between the posterior superior iliac spine and ischial tuberosity and curves laterally and downwards, crossing the midpoint between the ischial tuberosity and greater trochanter. Its location must be remembered to avoid damaging the nerve when making intramuscular injections into the buttock. The nerve is separated from the capsule of the hip joint by obturator internus and the gemelli, quadratus femoris and the upper border of adductor magnus (Fig. 6.33). A branch of the inferior gluteal artery accompanies the nerve.

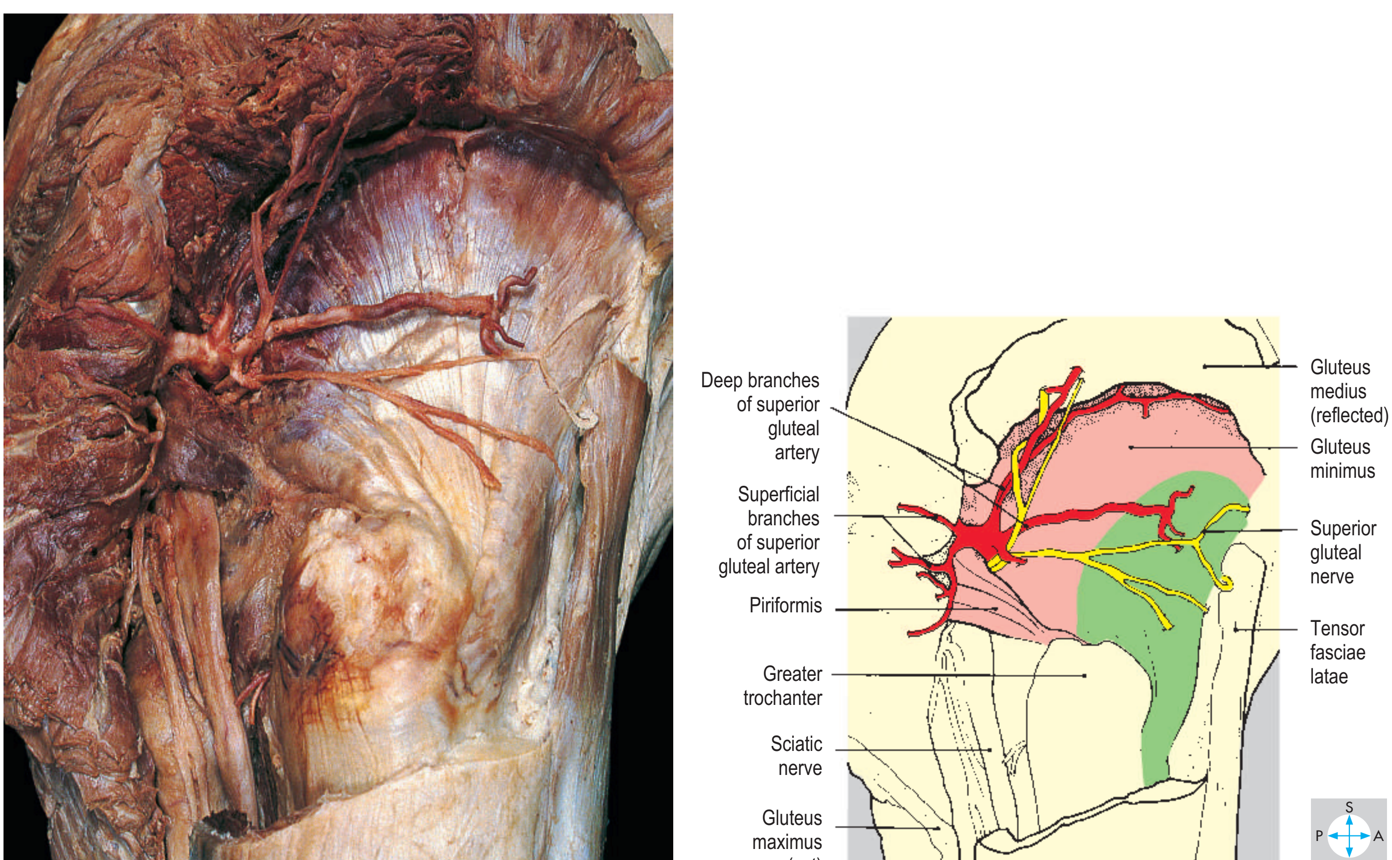


Fig. 6.32 Reflection of gluteus medius reveals gluteus minimus and the superior gluteal artery and nerve entering the buttock above piriformis.

The nerve to quadratus femoris (L4, L5 & S1) lies deep to the sciatic nerve, obturator internus and the gemelli and supplies the inferior gemellus, quadratus femoris and the hip joint.

Superficial and medial to the sciatic nerve is the posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh (Fig. 6.33), which arises from spinal nerves S1, S2 and S3. Within the buttock, its perineal branch runs forwards to supply the skin on the posterior part of the scrotum or labium majus. Other branches curl round the lower border of gluteus maximus to supply the skin over the buttock.

The inferior gluteal nerve and vessels occupy an intermediate position. The nerve turns immediately posteriorly to supply gluteus maximus.

The inferior gluteal artery, a branch of the internal iliac artery, accompanies the nerve and supplies gluteus maximus (Fig. 6.29) and the short lateral rotators of the hip joint and contributes to the trochanteric and cruciate anastomoses. Venae comitantes accompany the artery and drain into the internal iliac system.

The pudendal nerve (S2, S3 & S4), internal pudendal vessels, and nerve to obturator internus (L5, S1 & S2), also supplying the superior gemellus, enter beneath the medial part of piriformis (Fig. 6.33). Their course in the buttock is brief before turning forwards into the lesser sciatic foramen, crossing the sacrospinous ligament or ischial spine to enter the pudendal canal (Fig. 6.36 and p. 243).

Short muscles of the buttock

The short muscles of the buttock are, from above downwards, piriformis, obturator internus with the gemelli, and quadratus femoris (Fig. 6.33). Piriformis arises from the ventral surface of the sacrum (p. 235) and runs laterally through the greater sciatic foramen to converge on the medial border of the greater trochanter. It is innervated within the pelvis by spinal nerves L5, S1 and S2. Obturator internus attaches to the lateral wall of the pelvic cavity (Fig. 6.72), including the obturator membrane, and runs backwards towards the lesser sciatic foramen, where its tendon makes a right-angled turn to run laterally across the buttock to the medial aspect of the greater trochanter above the trochanteric fossa. The superior and inferior gemelli are small muscles arising from the upper and lower margins of the lesser sciatic notch to fuse with the obturator internus tendon.

Quadratus femoris attaches to the lateral margin of the ischial tuberosity and to the quadrate tubercle of the femur and the subjacent shaft. Being behind the hip joint, all the short muscles laterally rotate the hip.

Cruciate arterial anastomosis

The cruciate anastomosis lies at the lower border of quadratus femoris and receives contributions from above, the inferior gluteal artery; below, the first perforating artery; and on each side, the medial and lateral circumflex femoral arteries.

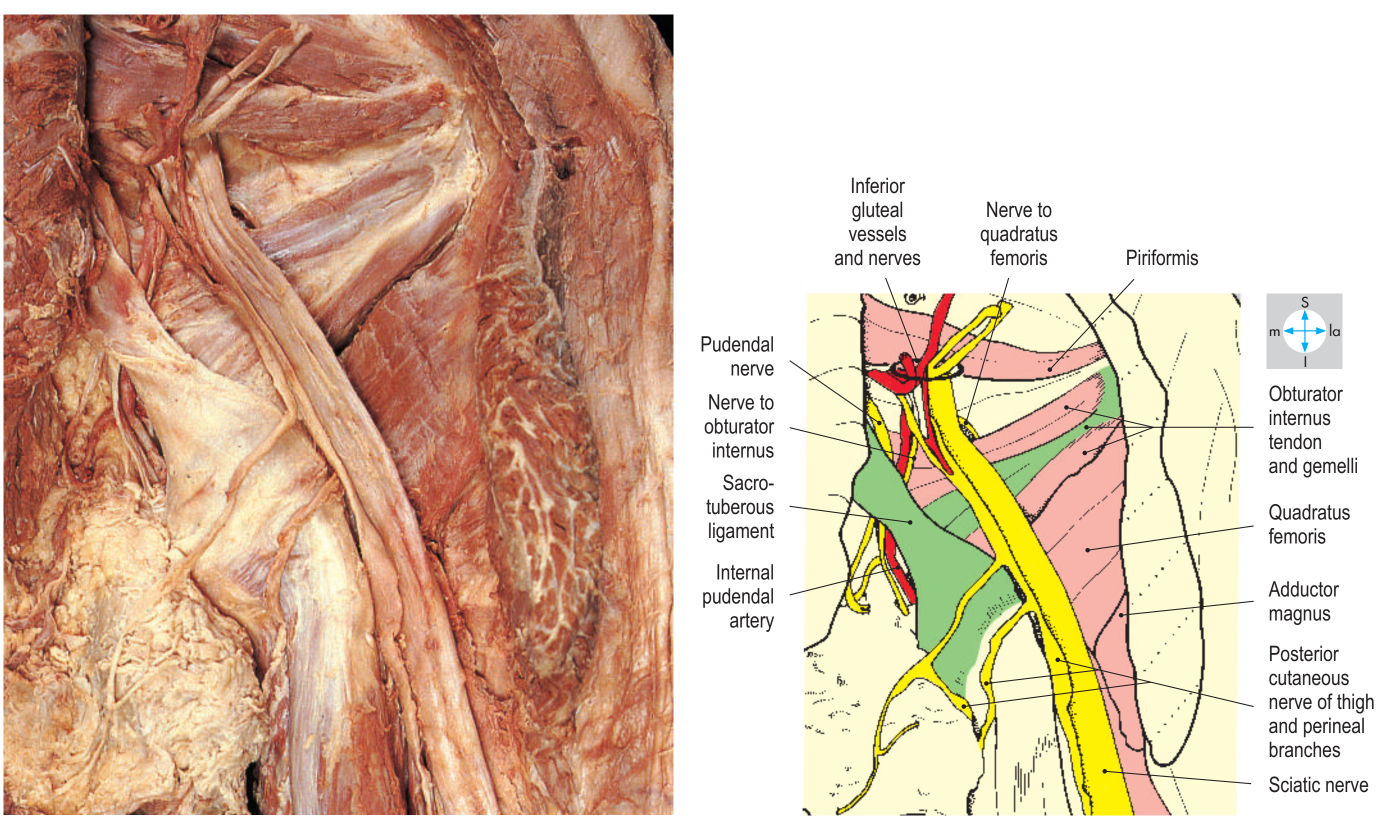


Fig. 6.33 Structures emerging below piriformis and the course and relations of the sciatic nerve.

Posterior Compartment of the Thigh

The posterior compartment is enclosed by the fascia lata (Fig. 6.34) and extends from the gluteal region above to the popliteal fossa below. It contains the posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh, hamstring muscles, sciatic nerve and terminal branches of the profunda femoris artery.

Hamstring muscles

These three muscles, semimembranosus, semitendinosus and biceps femoris (long head) (Fig. 6.35), attach proximally to the ischial tuberosity (Fig. 6.36) and distally to the upper end of the tibia or fibula and are innervated by the sciatic nerve. They span the entire length of the femur and act on two joints, the hip for extension and the knee for flexion. After flexion of the trunk, the hamstrings act as antigravity muscles by pulling on the ischial tuberosities, thus extending the trunk into an upright position at the hip. Tears of the hamstrings occur in sports involving jumping, running and kicking.

Semimembranosus

This muscle is attached to the upper and lateral parts of the ischial tuberosity by a wide, flat tendon, which is overlapped by the tendons of biceps and semitendinosus close to the tuberosity, and descends on the medial side of the popliteal fossa to its

Fig. 6.34 Nerves and veins of the posterior compartment of thigh, seen through a 'window' cut in the fascia lata. This small saphenous vein continues proximally to terminate in the great saphenous vein.

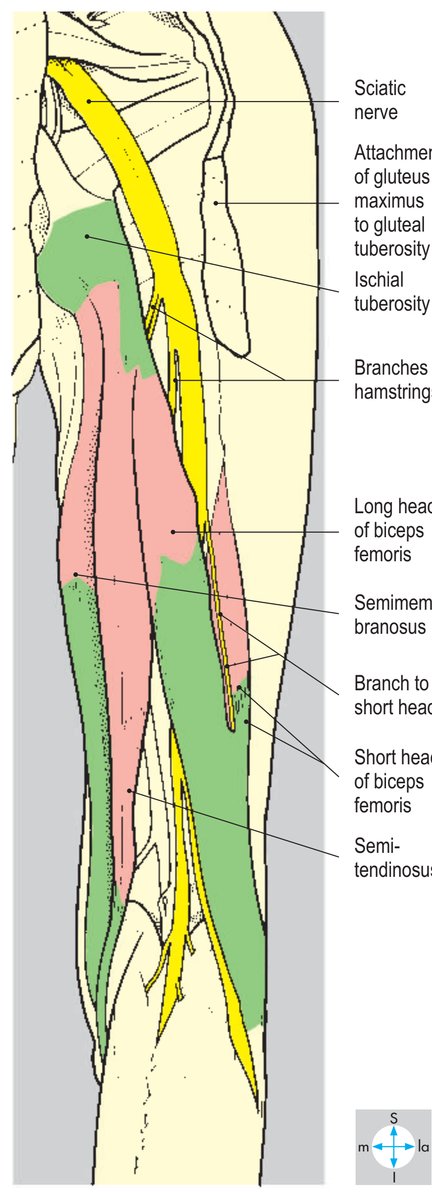


Fig. 6.35 Principal contents of the posterior compartment of thigh, seen after removal of deep fascia.

main attachment into a horizontal groove on the posteromedial aspect of the medial tibial condyle. Some of its fibres pass upwards and laterally behind the knee joint to form the oblique posterior ligament; others descend to reinforce the fascia over popliteus (Fig. 6.39).

Semitendinosus

Proximally, semitendinosus is attached to the medial part of the ischial tuberosity. It descends on the medial side of the popliteal fossa, forming a narrow tendon, which overlies semimembranosus, and attaches to the medial surface of the upper end of the tibial shaft close to the attachments of sartorius and gracilis (Fig. 6.79). Besides contributing to the common actions of the hamstring group, semitendinosus and semimembranosus produce medial rotation of the leg at the knee.

Biceps femoris

This muscle has two heads. Proximally, the long head is attached to the medial part of the ischial tuberosity close to the semitendinosus and descends to the lateral side of the popliteal fossa, where it fuses with the short head, which originates from the lateral lip of the linea aspera and lateral supracondylar ridge of femur (Fig. 6.35). Inferiorly, the tendon of biceps is attached to the head of the fibula. In addition to the general actions of the hamstrings, biceps produce lateral rotation of the leg at the knee.

Sciatic nerve

The sciatic nerve emerges at the lower border of gluteus maximus lying just beneath the deep fascia, passes deep to the long head of biceps and descends in the midline of the limb. In the distal third of the thigh, it usually divides into two terminal branches, the tibial and common fibular (common peroneal) nerves, which continue into the popliteal fossa (Fig. 6.40). Division may occur more proximally in the thigh, within the buttock or even the pelvis. In the latter case, the common fibular nerve may pass through the piriformis where it may be compressed. Proximally, fibres from the medial (tibial) part of the sciatic nerve supply the hamstrings (Fig. 6.35) and the ischial head of adductor magnus. More distally, a branch from the lateral (common fibular) part of the nerve supplies the short head of biceps.

Posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh

The nerve enters the thigh superficial and slightly medial to the sciatic nerve and

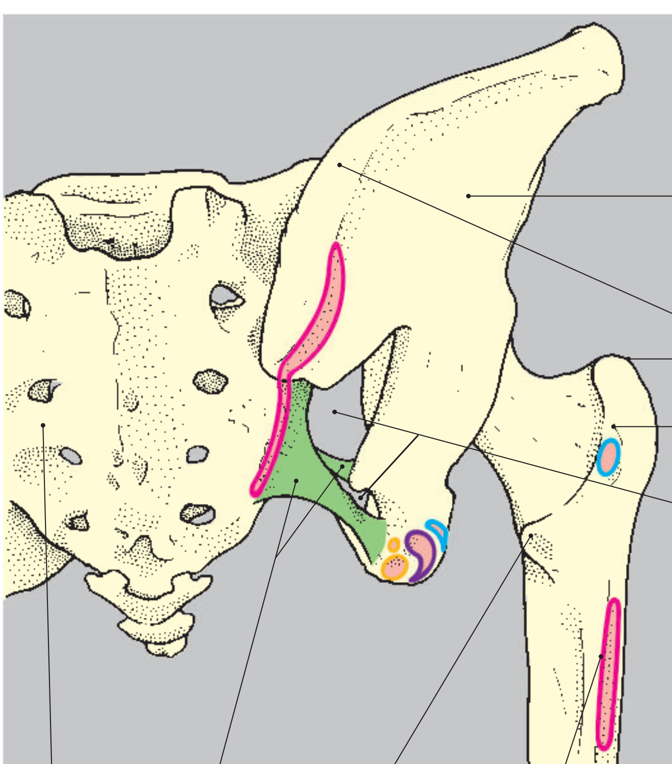


Fig. 6.36 Posterior view of sacrum and bony pelvis showing sacrotuberous and sacrospinous ligaments with the greater and lesser sciatic foramina.

descends beneath the fascia lata to the upper part of the popliteal fossa (Fig. 6.37). Apart from branches arising near the lower border of gluteus maximus, the nerve gives sensory fibres to the skin on the back of the thigh, popliteal fossa and proximal part of leg.

Profunda femoris artery

Perforating branches of the profunda femoris artery penetrate adductor magnus and terminate in the posterior compartment. They anastomose with branches from the inferior gluteal artery above and the popliteal artery below.

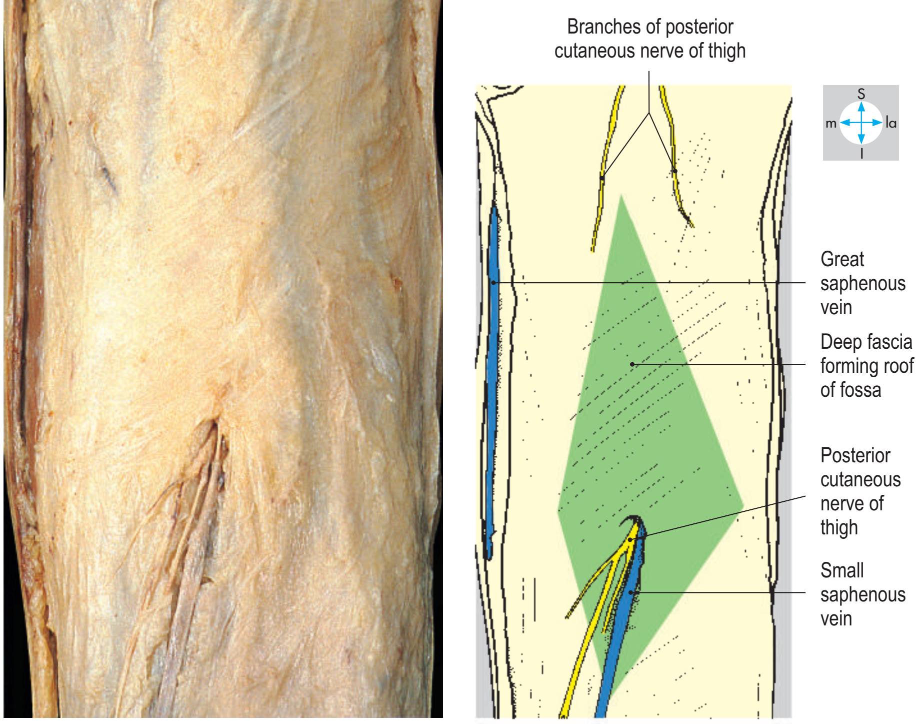


Fig. 6.37 Removal of skin and subcutaneous tissue reveals the cutaneous nerves. The small saphenous vein and accompanying nerve pierce the roof of the popliteal fossa.

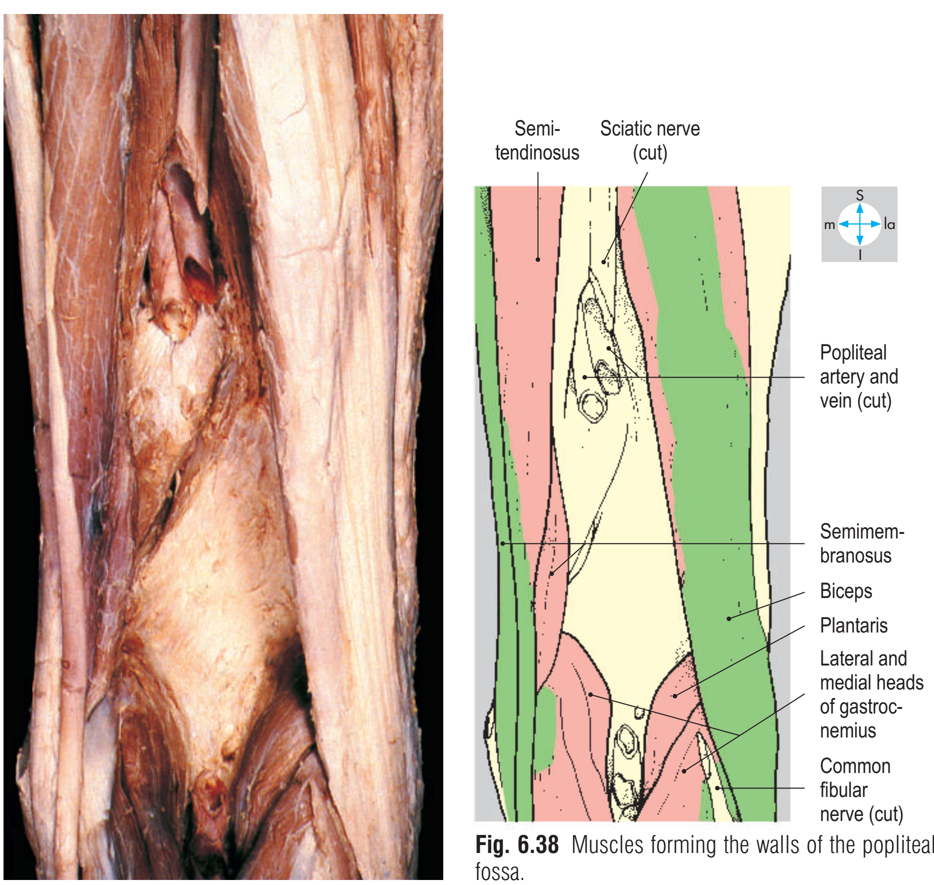


Fig. 6.38 Muscles forming the walls of the popliteal fossa.

Popliteal Fossa

The popliteal fossa is a diamond-shaped space behind the knee joint. It contains the principal blood vessels and nerves passing between the thigh and the leg. It has a roof, four walls and a floor.

Roof

The roof is formed by the investing layer of deep fascia. In the subcutaneous tissue overlying the roof are the posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh, which continues into the proximal part of the leg, and the small saphenous vein (Fig. 6.37). The vein usually penetrates the roof to drain into the popliteal vein but may drain more proximally into the great saphenous vein (Fig. 6.34).

Walls

The walls overhang the fossa. Superiorly, they are formed by the diverging tendons of the hamstrings, namely semitendinosus and semimembranosus lying medially and biceps laterally. Inferiorly are the medial and lateral heads of gastrocnemius, which converge at the inferior angle (Fig. 6.38). Adjacent to the lateral head of gastrocnemius is the small plantaris muscle. On each side of the popliteal fossa the hamstring tendons overlap the heads of gastrocnemius, and between the medial head of gastrocnemius and semimembranosus there is frequently a bursa (Fig. 6.39).

Contents

The principal contents of the fossa are embedded in fat and comprise the popliteal artery and vein together with the two terminal branches of the sciatic nerve, the common fibular and tibial nerves (Fig. 6.40). These vessels and nerves are responsible for the blood and nerve supply of most of the leg and foot.

The popliteal artery lies deepest and is the continuation of the femoral artery from the thigh. It enters through the opening in adductor magnus and descends vertically on the floor of the fossa to the inferior angle, where it leaves beneath the fused heads of gastrocnemius. The artery is so

deep that it is difficult to palpate unless the knee is flexed to relax the boundaries and roof of the fossa. The artery supplies the surrounding muscles and also forms a substantial plexus of articular branches anastomosing symmetrically around the knee joint (Fig. 1.27).

The popliteal vein lies superficial to the artery and is formed at the inferior angle of the fossa by the union of the venae comitantes that accompany the tibial arteries in the leg. It continues proximally with the artery through the opening in adductor magnus to enter the adductor canal and become the femoral vein.

The tibial and common fibular nerves (Fig. 6.40), entering the fossa from the posterior compartment of the thigh, lie just beneath the roof, superficial to the popliteal vessels. The tibial nerve enters from beneath the hamstrings and descends vertically, bisecting the fossa, and leaves beneath the gastrocnemius at the inferior angle of the fossa, where it enters the posterior compartment of the leg. The tibial nerve is mainly motor in its distribution, supplying gastrocnemius, plantaris, popliteus and soleus. All these branches arise within the fossa. The nerve also gives sensory branches to the knee joint and a large cutaneous branch, which passes into the calf to form the sural nerve. The common fibular nerve descends under cover of the tendon of biceps to reach the lateral angle of the fossa, where it enters the lateral (fibular or peroneal) compartment of the leg. Here it winds around the neck of the fibula where it is vulnerable to damage and compression, resulting in foot-drop. It supplies sensory branches to the knee joint and two cutaneous nerves, one to the lateral side of the calf and the other, the lateral sural cutaneous nerve, joining the sural nerve in the calf.

The remaining contents of the popliteal fossa are the deeply placed popliteal lymph nodes, which lie close to the popliteal artery. They drain the deep structures of the leg and foot and the knee joint and receive superficial lymphatics, which accompany the short saphenous vein from the lateral side of the foot and leg.

Floor

The floor of the fossa is formed, from above downwards, by the popliteal surface of the femur, the capsule of the knee joint reinforced by the oblique popliteal ligament and popliteus (Fig. 6.39).

Popliteus

This muscle is attached to a triangular area on the posterior surface of the proximal end of the tibia above the soleal line. The tendon passes upwards and laterally, penetrating the capsule of the knee joint (Fig. 6.77) to become attached to a pit below the lateral epicondyle of the femur. Its action is to 'unlock' the knee joint by producing lateral rotation of the femur on the tibia during flexion of the joint from the fully extended position. Popliteus is supplied by the tibial nerve.

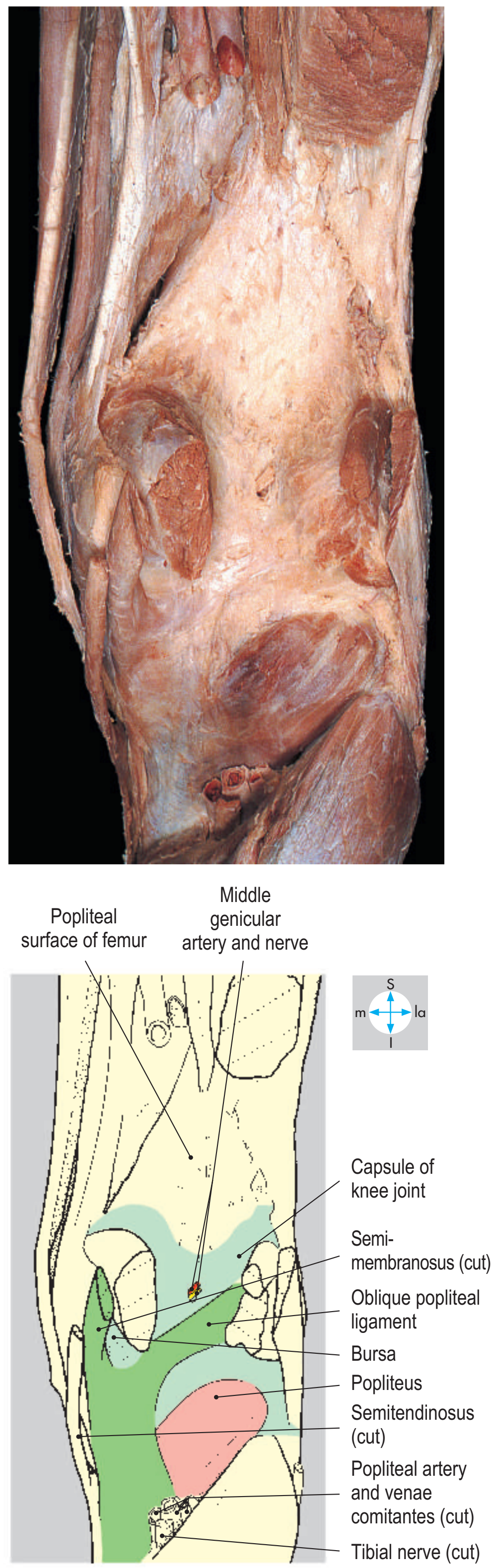


Fig. 6.39 Floor of popliteal fossa, seen after removal of walls and contents of the fossa.

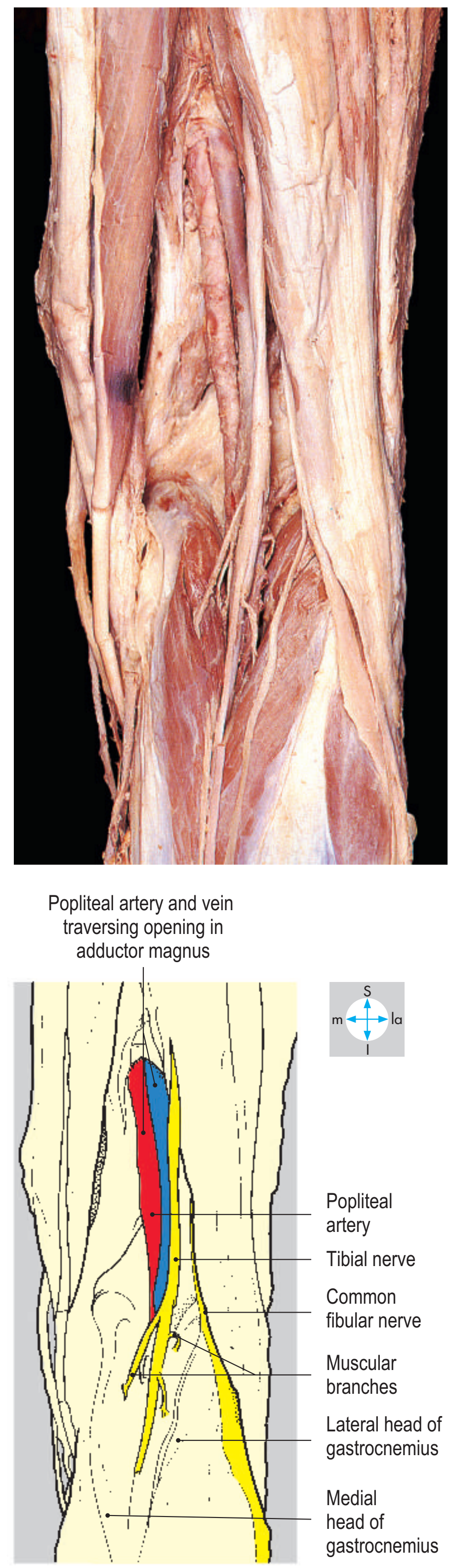


Fig. 6.40 Principal vessels and nerves of the popliteal fossa, revealed by removal of fat.

Posterior Compartment of the Leg

The compartment extends from the popliteal fossa above to the ankle below. Gastrocnemius and soleus account for its bulk (Fig. 6.41) and the characteristic contour of the calf. Their common tendon is conspicuous as it passes towards the ankle. Deeper are tibialis posterior and the two long flexors of the toes, flexor hallucis longus and flexor digitorum longus, whose tendons all pass distally into the foot. The posterior tibial artery and its venae comitantes and the tibial nerve pass distally between soleus and the long flexors to enter the foot, where they supply structures in the sole.

Superficial structures and deep fascia

The small (short) saphenous vein begins on the lateral side of the foot as a continuation of the dorsal venous arch. Passing behind the lateral malleolus (Fig. 6.42) it ascends in the midline of the calf and usually terminates by piercing the fascial roof of the popliteal fossa (Fig. 6.37). The vein has frequent communication with the great saphenous vein and important communicating (perforating) veins, which pierce the investing deep fascia to link up with the deep veins of the calf, particularly just above the ankle.

The sural nerve is formed principally from the cutaneous branch of the tibial nerve and descends from the popliteal fossa to pierce the deep fascia in the proximal part of the calf. Here it is joined by the sural communicating branch of the common fibular nerve and continues distally with the small saphenous vein posteroinferior to the lateral malleolus to reach the foot (Fig. 6.42). The nerve supplies skin over the lower two-thirds of the calf and on the lateral side of the ankle and foot.

The deep fascia is continuous proximally with the popliteal fascia, and distally near the heel is thickened in two places. The first forms a thick band stretching between the tibia and fibula over which the tendo calcaneus passes, separated by a bursa. The second thickening, the flexor retinaculum, bridges the gap between the medial malleolus and the medial surface of

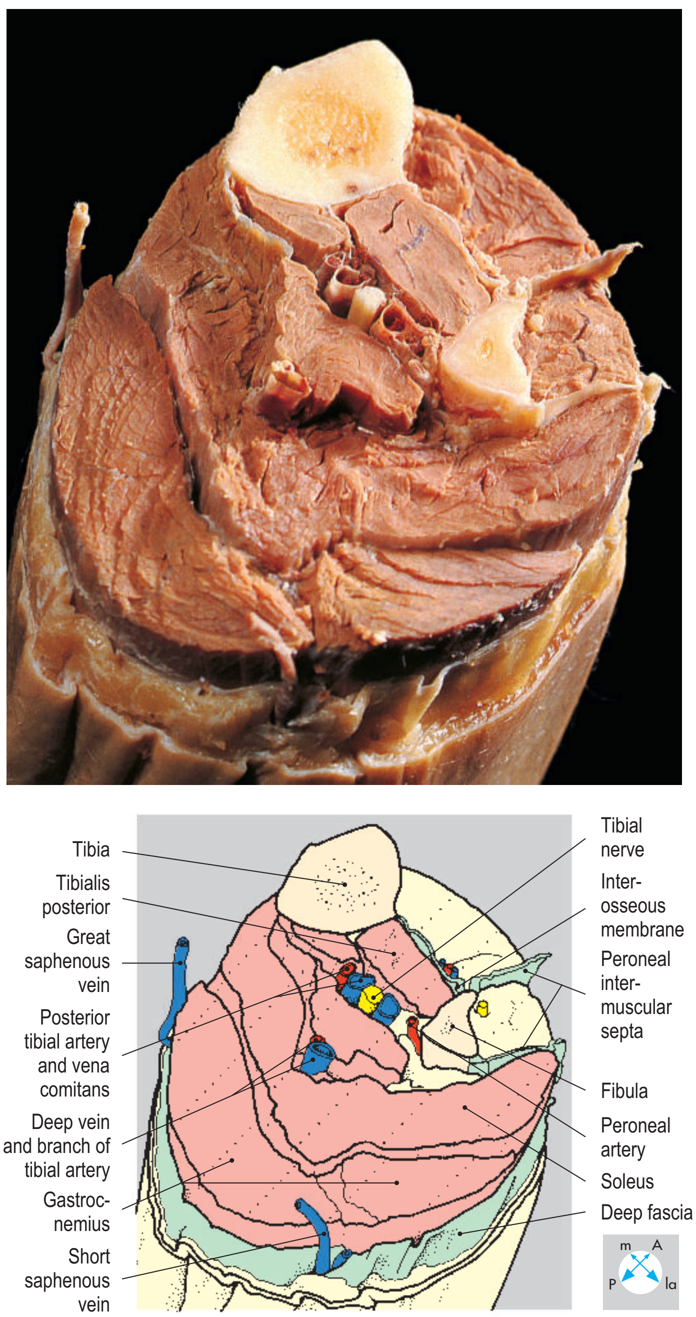


Fig. 6.41 'Step' dissection showing the muscle layers in the upper third of the leg and the location of principal nerves and vessels.

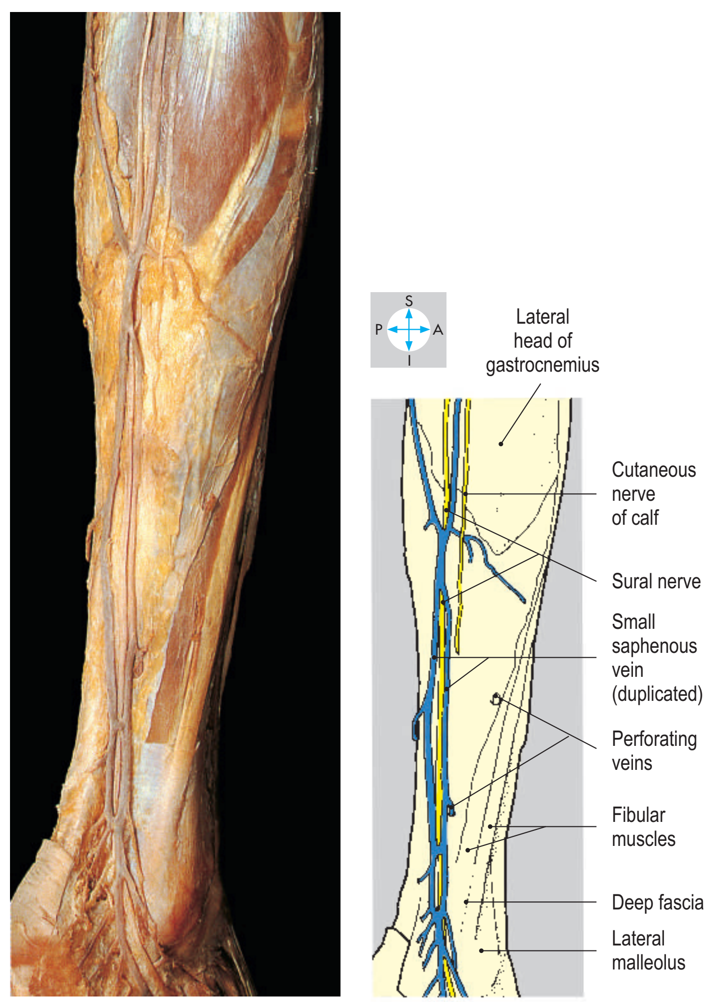


Fig. 6.42 Small saphenous vein and sural nerve. Perforating veins pierce the deep fascia to connect with deep veins in the calf muscles.

the calcaneus, completing a fibro-osseous tunnel similar to the carpal tunnel of the wrist. It is the gateway into the sole of the foot for the tendons of the deep muscles of the compartment and the neurovascular bundle. The tibial nerve may be compressed in the tunnel, causing pain in the heel and foot.

Superficial muscles

Gastrocnemius

The muscle has medial and lateral heads attached to the respective femoral condyles. The medial head is the larger and its fibres extend more distally. The two heads share a common aponeurosis, which overlies that of the subjacent soleus (Fig. 6.43). The long parallel fibres of gastrocnemius provide a large range of movement and are used especially during walking and running. Because of its femoral attachments, it is a weak flexor of the knee joint.

Soleus

This muscle attaches to the soleal line on the posterior border of the tibia, from where it arches across to the posterior aspect of the head and upper shaft of the fibula (Figs 6.44 & 6.45). Its short multipennate fibres are continually in action during standing.

The aponeuroses of gastrocnemius and soleus form the tendo calcaneus (Achilles), which attaches to the middle third of the posterior surface of the calcaneus, and via this tendon the two muscles are the principal flexors of the foot at the ankle joint. The tendon, separated from the upper part of the calcaneus, is easily palpable and is used clinically to obtain the stretch reflex or ankle jerk (S1 & S2).

Plantaris

This muscle attaches to the lower end of the femur close to the lateral head of gastrocnemius. Its long thin tendon passes deep to the medial head of gastrocnemius (Fig. 6.45) between the aponeuroses of gastrocnemius and soleus to insert into the posterior surface of the calcaneus

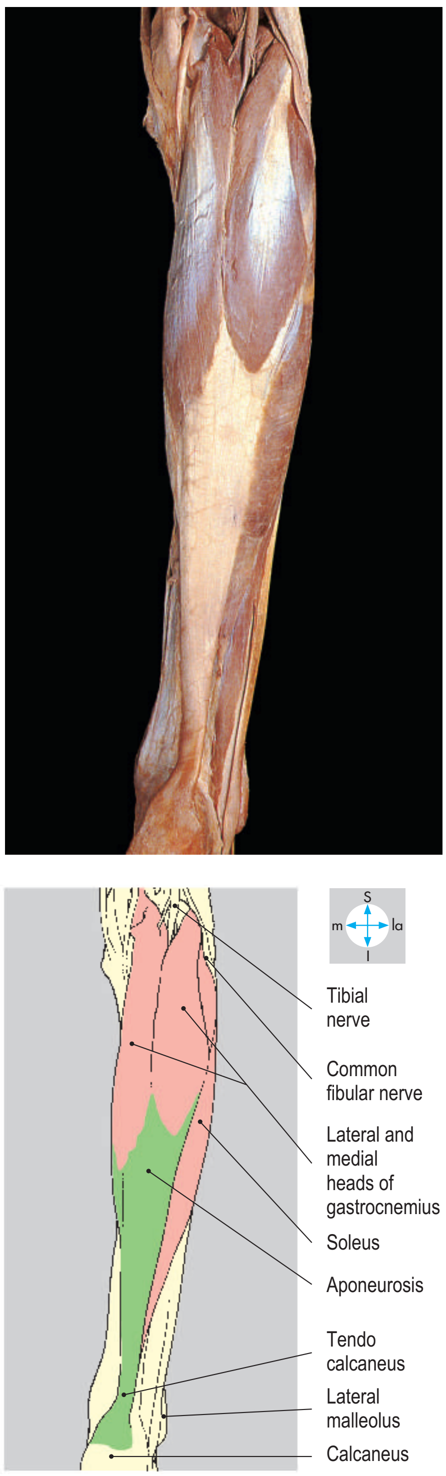


Fig. 6.43 Removal of the deep fascia reveals the superficial flexor muscles, gastrocnemius and soleus.

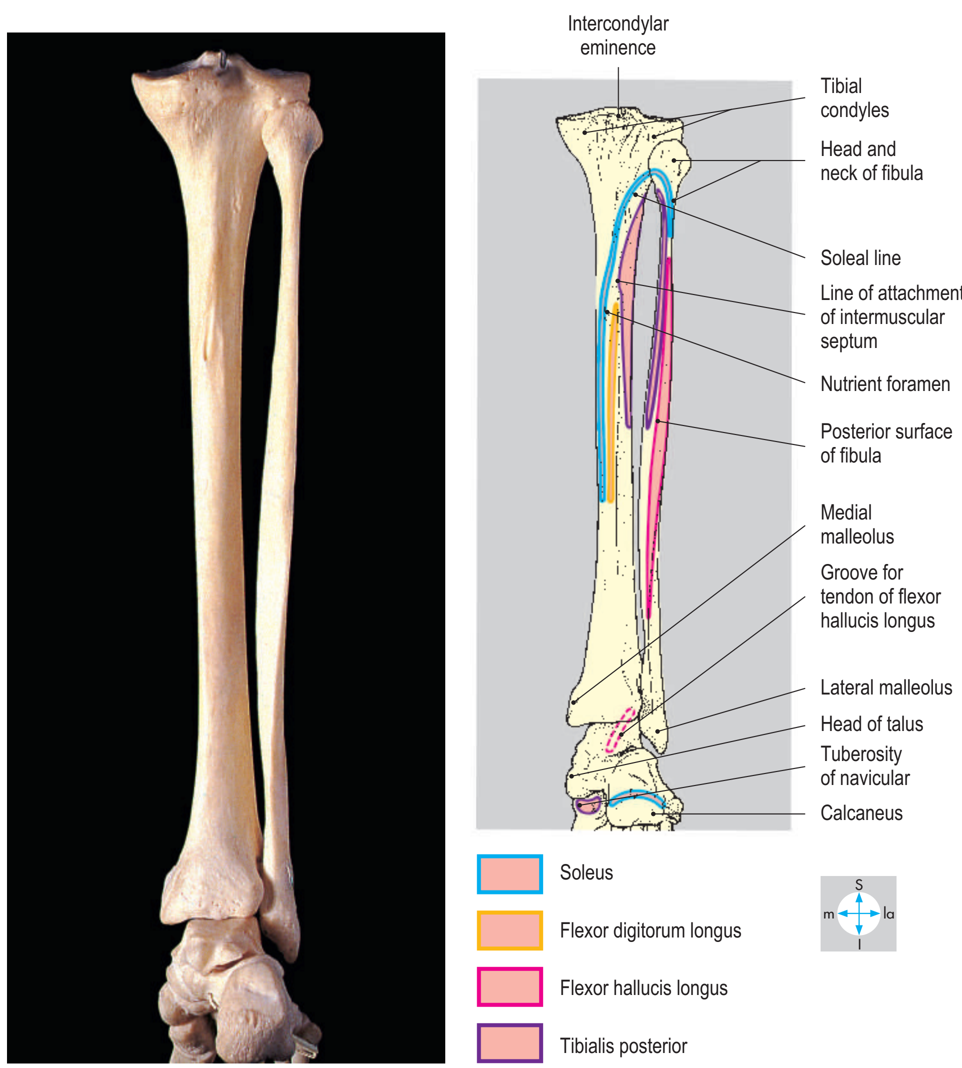


Fig. 6.44 Posterior view of bones of leg and foot. The diagram shows attachments of muscles of posterior compartment.

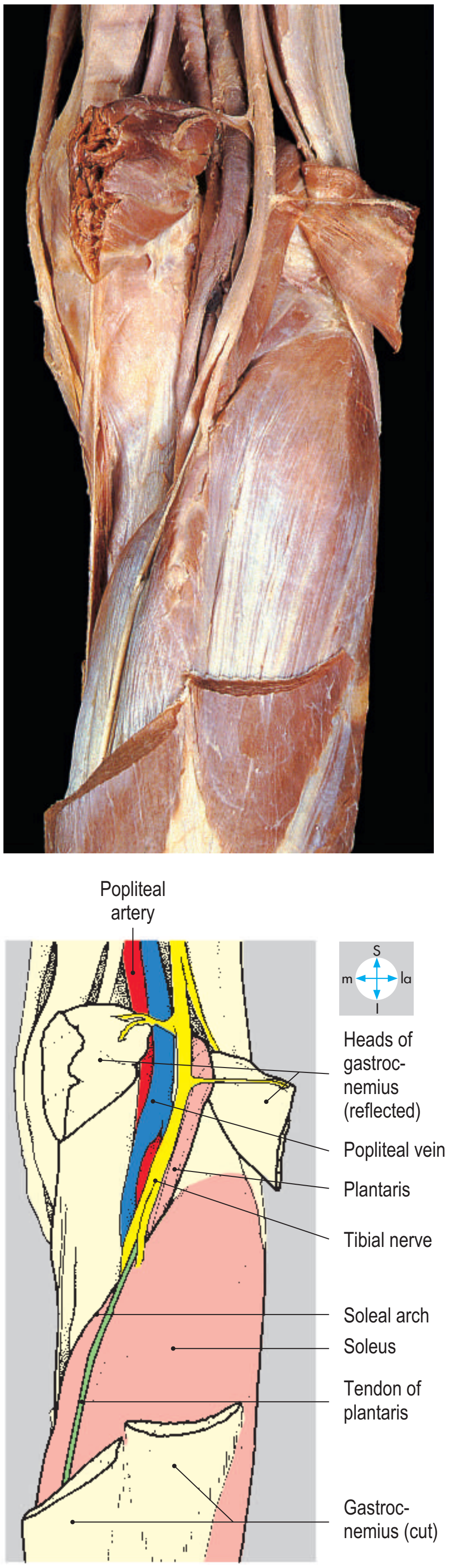


Fig. 6.45 Partial removal of the two heads of gastrocnemius reveals soleus and the neurovascular bundle passing beneath the soleal arch to enter the calf.

medial to the tendo calcaneus. It is a weak flexor of the knee and ankle joints.

Gastrocnemius, soleus and plantaris are supplied by the tibial nerve in the popliteal fossa (Fig. 6.40). Soleus is further supplied by the tibial nerve as it passes beneath the soleal arch.

Neurovascular structures

Posterior tibial artery

At the lower border of popliteus, the popliteal artery divides into two terminal branches, the anterior tibial artery (p. 290) and the larger posterior tibial artery. The latter, accompanied by its venae comitantes, passes deep to the soleal arch and descends on the fascia of tibialis posterior (Fig. 6.41) between flexor digitorum longus and flexor hallucis longus. Near the ankle, the artery lies on the distal end of the tibia and the capsule of the ankle joint, where its pulsations are easily felt. Passing beneath the flexor retinaculum, it gives calcaneal branches to the superficial tissues of the heel and then divides into medial and lateral plantar arteries. It provides branches to the muscles in the calf and also a large nutrient artery to the tibial shaft.

The most conspicuous branch, the fibular (peroneal) artery, arises just beyond the soleal arch (Fig. 6.46) and passes distally and laterally deep to flexor hallucis longus and upon the fascia of tibialis posterior. It gives muscular branches and a nutrient branch to the fibula. The fibular artery terminates behind the lateral malleolus as lateral calcaneal branches supplying the tissues of the heel. In the lower part of the leg, a communicating artery links the fibular and posterior tibial arteries.

A perforating branch of the fibular artery passes forwards through the interosseous membrane into the anterior compartment of the leg. When the anterior tibial artery is small, this perforating artery may substitute for it distally, continuing into the foot as the dorsalis pedis artery.

Tibial nerve

The tibial nerve enters the compartment from the popliteal fossa by passing beneath the soleal arch. Usually, the posterior tibial artery lies medially as it descends through the calf on the fascia of tibialis posterior and on the distal end of the tibia (Fig. 6.46). Similar to the artery, as it enters the foot it often terminates beneath the flexor retinaculum as two branches, the medial and lateral plantar nerves. It supplies soleus and the deep leg muscles and gives sensory branches to skin over the ball of the heel.

Deep muscles

Lying deep to soleus are flexor digitorum longus, flexor hallucis longus and tibialis posterior (Figs 6.41 & 6.46). Proximally, their attachments are limited by the origin of soleus from the tibia and fibula. Their tendons enter the foot beneath the flexor retinaculum.

Flexor digitorum longus arises from the posterior surface of the tibia (Fig. 6.44) and from the fascia covering tibialis posterior. In the foot, the tendon divides into four slips, which are attached to the bases of the terminal phalanges of the lateral toes. The muscle flexes the toes and assists in plantar flexion of the ankle joint.

Flexor hallucis longus is larger than flexor digitorum longus (Fig. 6.46) and has extensive attachments to the posterior surface of the shaft of the fibula (Fig. 6.44), the posterior intermuscular septum and the fascia covering tibialis posterior. Its muscle fibres characteristically extend almost as far as the ankle (Fig. 6.46) and give way to a tendon, which passes beneath the flexor retinaculum to insert into the base of the distal phalanx of the great toe. It is a powerful flexor of the hallux, especially in forward propulsion of the foot at the take-off point during walking. Plantar flexion at the ankle joint is also assisted.

Tibialis posterior is the deepest muscle in the compartment and attaches to the posterior surface of the tibia (Fig. 6.44), to the medial surface of the fibula and to the upper two-thirds of the interosseous membrane. Passing under the flexor retinaculum, where it is the most medial structure, the tendon enters the foot to attach principally to the tuberosity of the navicular and by small slips to the other tarsal bones. Together with tibialis anterior its action is to invert the foot. It is also a weak plantar flexor of the ankle joint.

All three deep muscles of the calf are supplied by the tibial nerve. Further details of the tendons in the sole of the foot are given on p. 282.

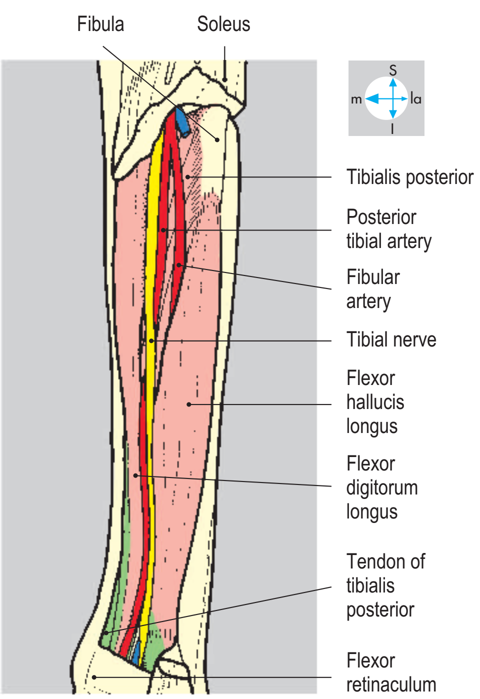


Fig. 6.46 Removal of the superficial flexor group shows the deep muscles of the compartment and the main neurovascular bundle.

Sole of the Foot

The sole of the foot contains the plantar aponeurosis, intrinsic muscles, tendons originating from muscles in the leg, and plantar vessels and nerves. The tendons, accompanied by the vessels and nerves, enter the sole deep to the flexor retinaculum (Fig. 6.48) in the tarsal tunnel, between the medial aspect of the calcaneus and the medial malleolus. The skin of the sole is thick and heavily keratinized and is firmly attached to the deep fascia by fibrous septa which traverse and loculate the subcutaneous fat. In the heel, it forms a weight-bearing fat pad.

Plantar aponeurosis

The plantar aponeurosis, the deep fascia of the sole covering the superficial layer of muscles, is especially thick in its central portion. Posteriorly, the aponeurosis is attached to the medial and lateral calcaneal tubercles. Anteriorly, it widens and diverges into five digital slips (Fig. 6.47), which attach to the fibrous flexor sheaths and plantar metatarsal plates (Fig. 6.96). These plates give the aponeurosis indirect attachment to the bases of all the proximal phalanges, providing an important support for the longitudinal arches of the foot (Figs 6.98–6.102). Inflammation of the aponeurosis (plantar fasciitis) is a cause of pain in the foot.

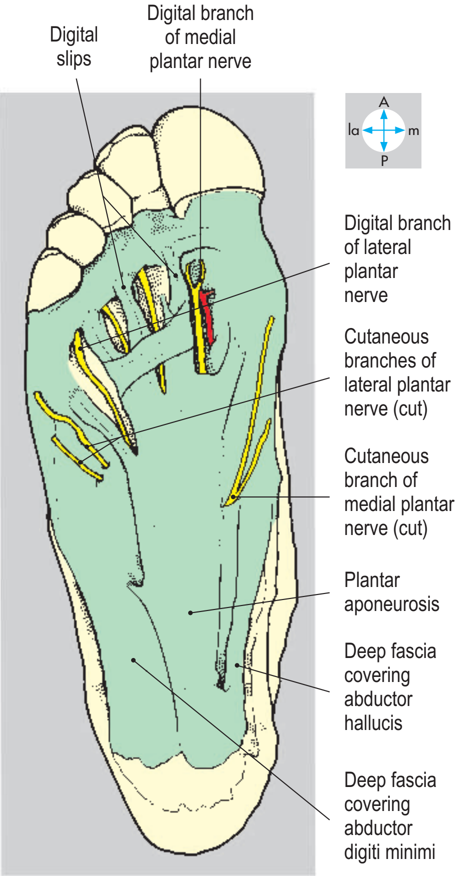


Fig. 6.47 Plantar aponeurosis, deep fascia and cutaneous nerves, revealed by removal of the skin of the sole.

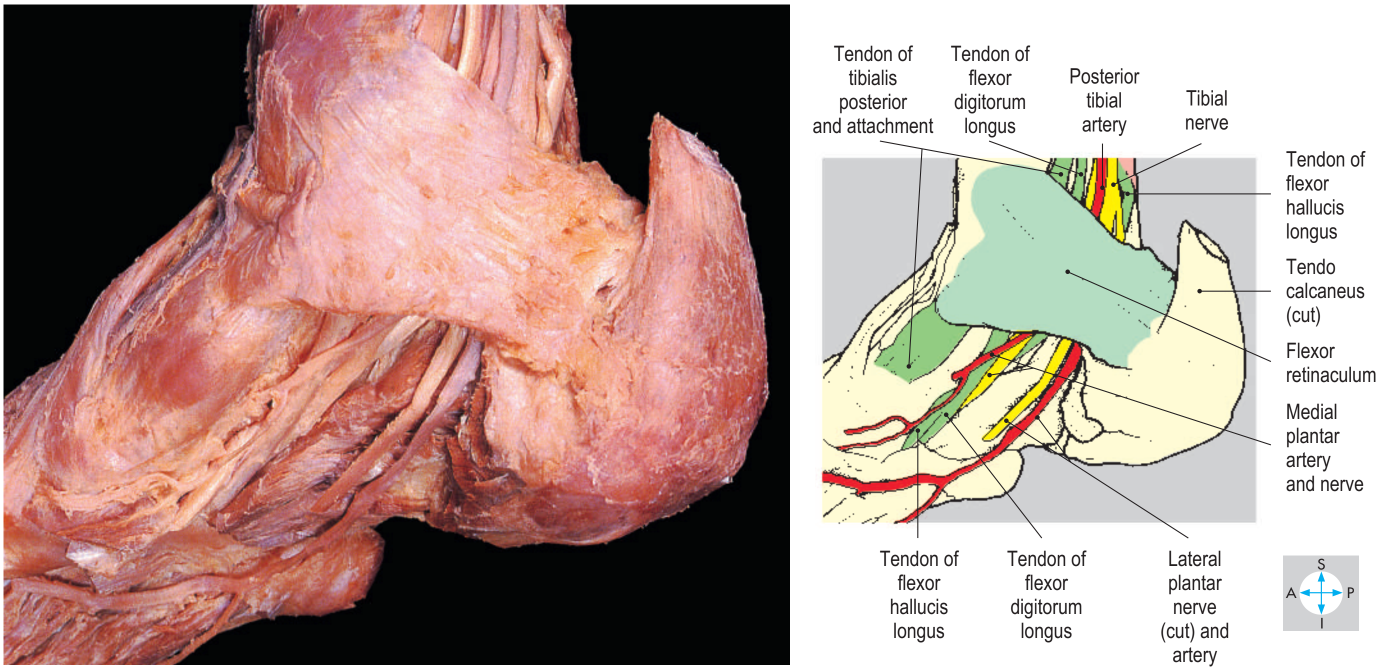


Fig. 6.48 Long tendons and the principal vessels and nerves from the posterior compartment of the leg pass deep to the flexor retinaculum to enter the sole of the foot.

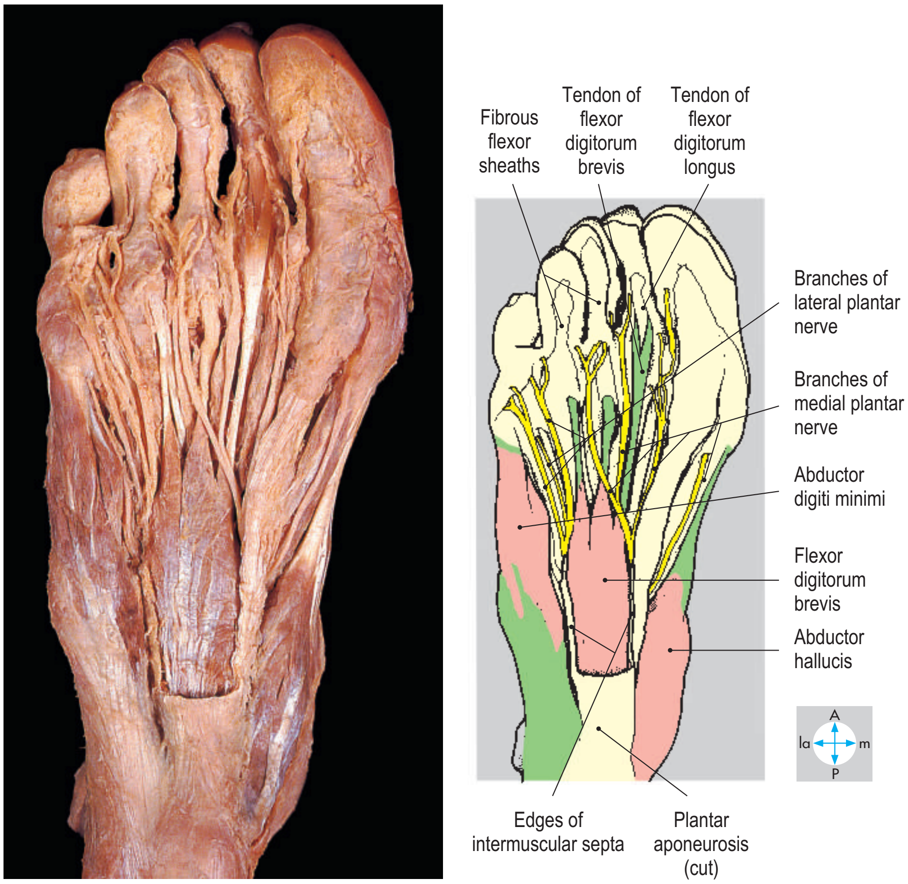


Fig. 6.49 Superficial intrinsic muscles and plantar nerves after removal of deep fascia, part of the plantar aponeurosis and second fibrous tendon sheath. In this specimen, flexor digitorum brevis has only three tendons.

Muscles and tendons

The muscles and tendons in the sole of the foot are arranged in four layers.

Superficial intrinsic muscles

This layer comprises three muscles, which span the length of most of the foot and attach to the deep surface of the plantar aponeurosis. Abductor hallucis (Fig. 6.49) lies on the medial side of the foot and arises from the medial calcaneal tubercle and the adjacent flexor retinaculum. Its tendon passes to the great toe with the medial tendon of flexor hallucis brevis and attaches to the medial side of the base of the proximal phalanx. It is supplied by the medial plantar nerve.

Flexor digitorum brevis lies centrally (Fig. 6.49) and attaches to the medial calcaneal tubercle (Fig. 6.50). It has four tendons, which pass forwards to enter the fibrous flexor sheaths of the lateral four toes. Each tendon splits to allow the passage of the long flexor tendon (Figs 6.49 & 6.51), then reunites to attach to the flexor surface of the middle phalanx. Flexor digitorum brevis aids flexion of the proximal parts of the toes and is supplied by the medial plantar nerve.

Abductor digiti minimi traverses the lateral border of the sole (Fig. 6.49) and is attached posteriorly to the medial and lateral calcaneal tubercles. Entering the little toe, its tendon attaches to the lateral side of the proximal phalanx. The muscle is supplied by the lateral plantar nerve.

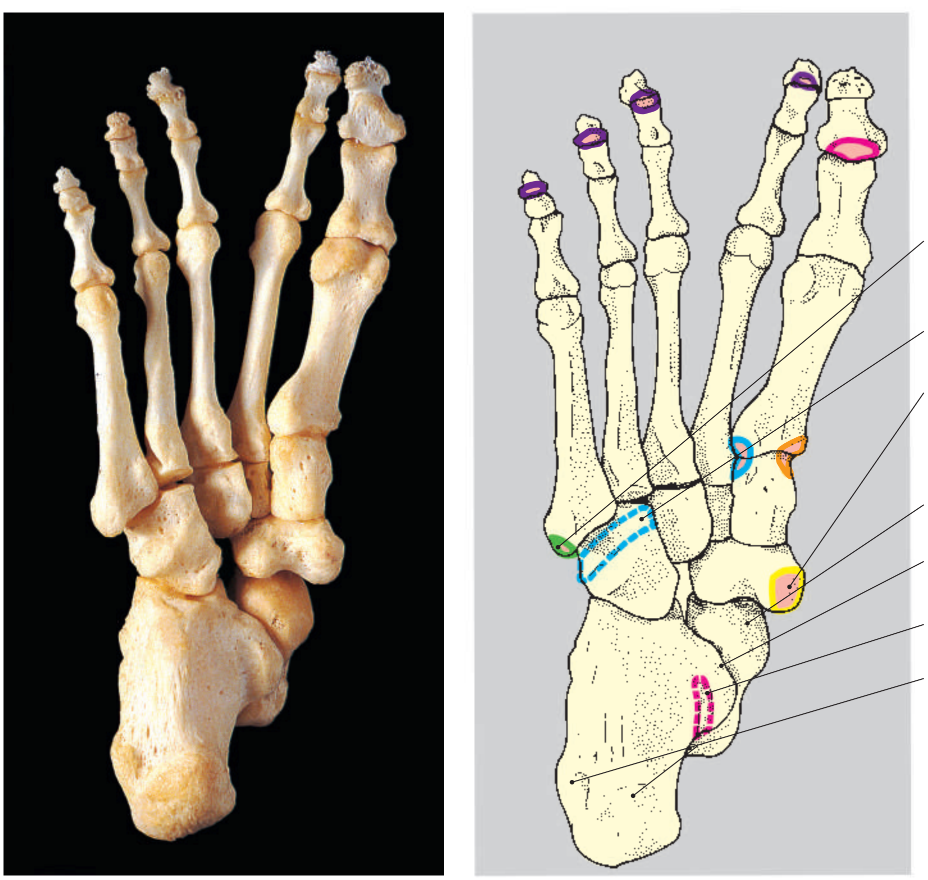


Fig. 6.50 Plantar view of bones of foot showing attachments of some long tendons.

Long flexor tendons and associated intrinsic muscles

This layer includes the tendons of two long flexor muscles, which arise in the leg, namely flexor hallucis longus and flexor digitorum longus. Attached to the tendon of flexor digitorum longus (Fig. 6.52) are quadratus plantae (flexor accessorius) and the four lumbricals.

The tendon of flexor hallucis longus grooves the posterior surface of the talus and curves forwards inferior to the sustentaculum tali and the spring (plantar calcaneonavicular) ligament. It passes deep to the tendon of flexor digitorum longus, to which it is usually attached. The tendon of flexor hallucis longus continues forwards inferior to the head of the first metatarsal, where it passes between the sesamoid bones in the two tendons of the flexor hallucis brevis (see below) and enters the fibrous flexor sheath of the great toe to reach its attachment to the base of the distal phalanx (Fig. 6.52). The actions and innervation of flexor hallucis longus are described on p. 279.

The tendon of flexor digitorum longus passes forwards medial to the sustentaculum tali and divides into four tendons, one for each of the lateral four toes (Figs 6.51 & 6.52). Each tendon enters its fibrous flexor sheath and passes through the flexor digitorum brevis tendon before attaching to the base of the terminal phalanx. The actions and innervations of flexor digitorum longus are considered on p. 279.

Quadratus plantae (flexor accessorius) (Figs 6.51 & 6.52) is quadrangular and is anchored posteriorly to the medial and lateral tubercles of the calcaneus. Anteriorly, the muscle attaches to the tendons of flexor digitorum longus. By pulling on these tendons, it can flex the toes irrespective of the position of the ankle. Its nerve supply is from the lateral plantar nerve.

The lumbricals are four small muscles attached proximally to the tendons of flexor digitorum longus (Fig. 6.52). Distally, each slender tendon winds around the medial side of the appropriate digit to attach to the extensor expansion and base of the proximal phalanx. The lumbricals extend the lateral four toes but flex the metatarsophalangeal joints. The first lumbrical is supplied by the medial plantar nerve and the remainder by the lateral plantar nerve.

Deep intrinsic muscles

The three muscles in this layer are located in the anterior part of the foot (Fig. 6.53), adjacent to the metatarsals. Flexor hallucis brevis and adductor hallucis lie medially and are attached to the great toe, while flexor digiti minimi brevis lies laterally and acts on the little toe.

Flexor hallucis brevis lies along the medial side of the foot and is attached posteriorly to the cuboid and the three cuneiforms. Passing forwards on either side of the flexor hallucis longus tendon (Fig. 6.52), the muscle gives rise to two short tendons, which lie inferior to the first metatarsophalangeal joint. Each tendon contains a sesamoid bone (Figs 6.101 & 6.102) and enters the great toe to attach to the appropriate side of the base of the proximal phalanx. Flexor hallucis brevis flexes the proximal phalanx and is innervated by the medial plantar nerve.

Adductor hallucis (Fig. 6.53) consists of an oblique head which is attached to the bases of the second, third and fourth metatarsals, and a transverse head which lies across the anterior part of the sole, attached to the deep transverse metatarsal ligaments and the lateral three metatarsophalangeal joints. The two heads converge and attach to the lateral tendon and sesamoid of flexor hallucis

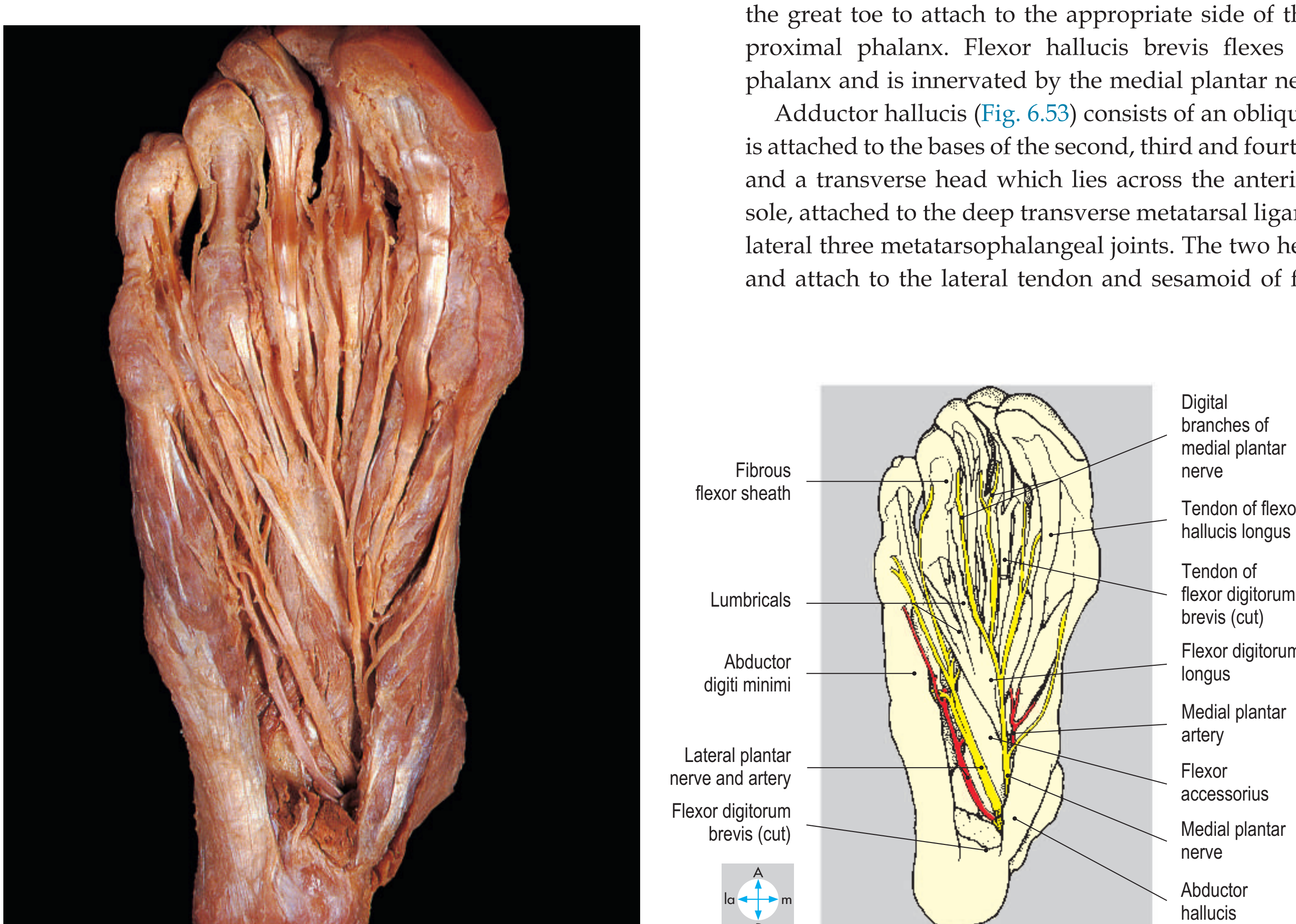


Fig. 6.51 Removal of flexor digitorum brevis has revealed the plantar nerves and arteries, which enter the sole deep to abductor hallucis.

brevis. Adductor hallucis assists flexor hallucis brevis and may help to support the transverse arch of the foot. It is supplied by the lateral plantar nerve.

Flexor digiti minimi brevis lies along the plantar surface of the fifth metatarsal (Fig. 6.53), attaching posteriorly to the base of the bone and anteriorly to the lateral side of the base of the proximal

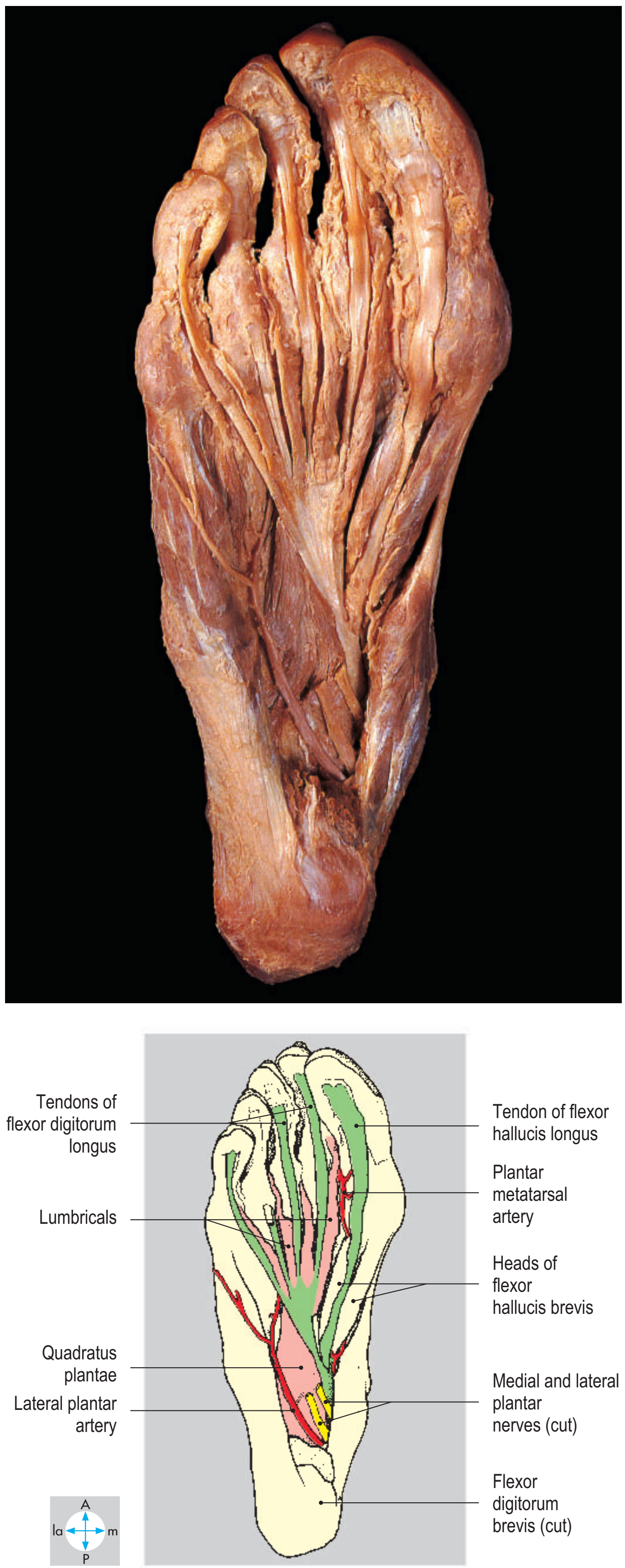


Fig. 6.52 Tendons of flexor digitorum longus, flexor hallucis longus, quadratus plantae and the lumbricals, after removal of medial and lateral plantar nerves and the tendons of flexor digitorum brevis.

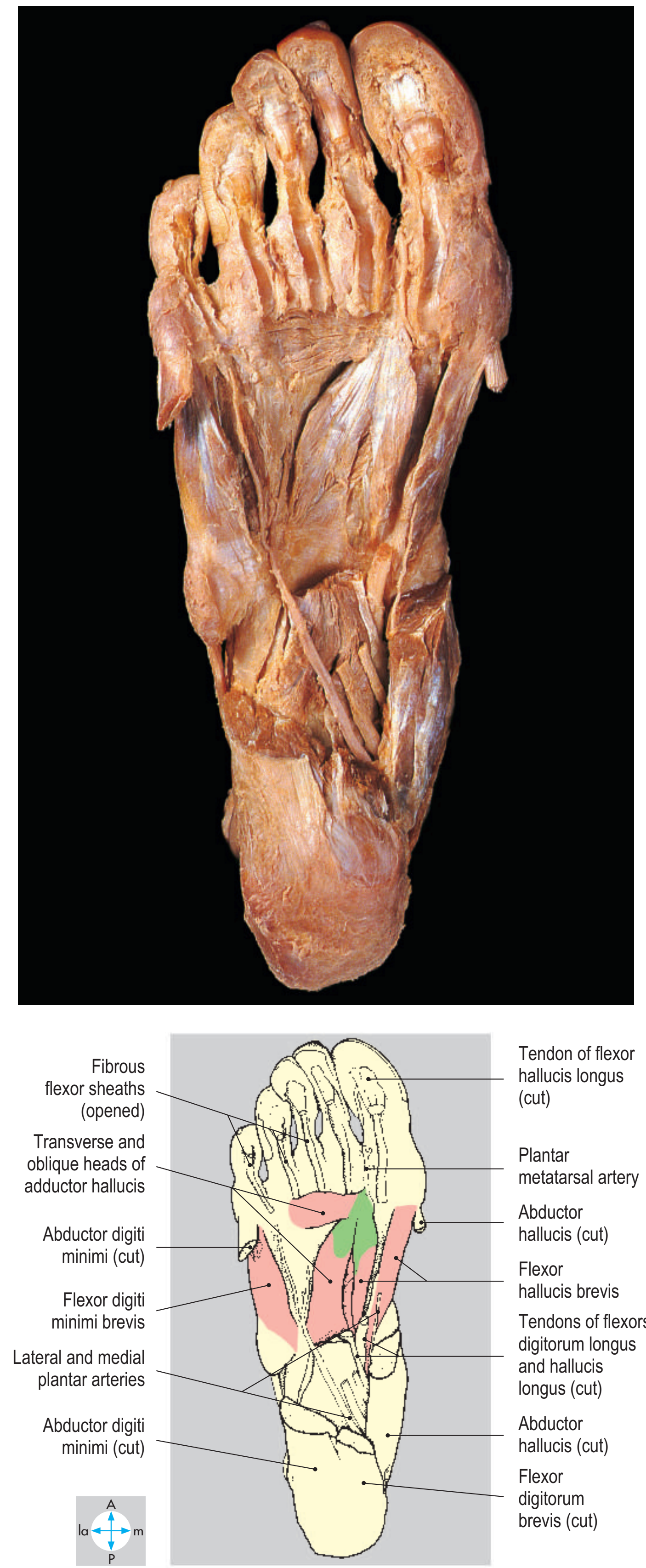


Fig. 6.53 Deep intrinsic muscles, revealed by removal of long flexor tendons and abductors of the great and little toes.

phalanx of the little toe. The muscle flexes the proximal phalanx and is innervated by the lateral plantar nerve.

Interossei and tendons of fibularis (peroneus) longus and tibialis posterior

Lying deeply in the sole, attached to the metatarsals, the three plantar interosseous muscles (Fig. 6.54) attach by single heads to the plantar borders of the third, fourth and fifth metatarsals. The four dorsal interossei (Fig. 6.55) are bicipital and attach to contiguous surfaces of the shafts of the metatarsals. The tendons pass forwards dorsal to the deep transverse metatarsal ligaments and attach to the bases of the proximal phalanges and dorsal extensor expansions. These muscles are supplied by the lateral plantar nerve. They assist extension of the phalanges and flexion of the

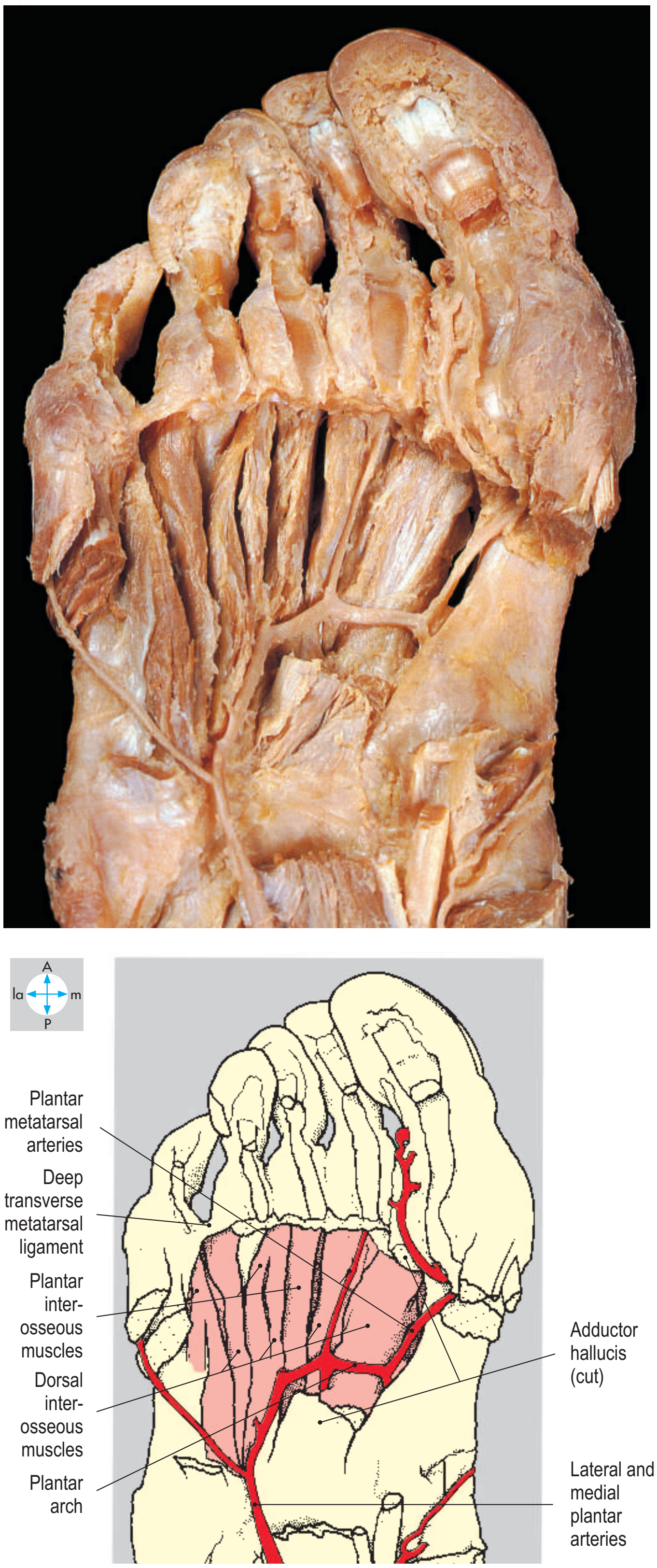


Fig. 6.54 Interosseous muscles and the plantar arterial arch, exposed by removing adductor hallucis.

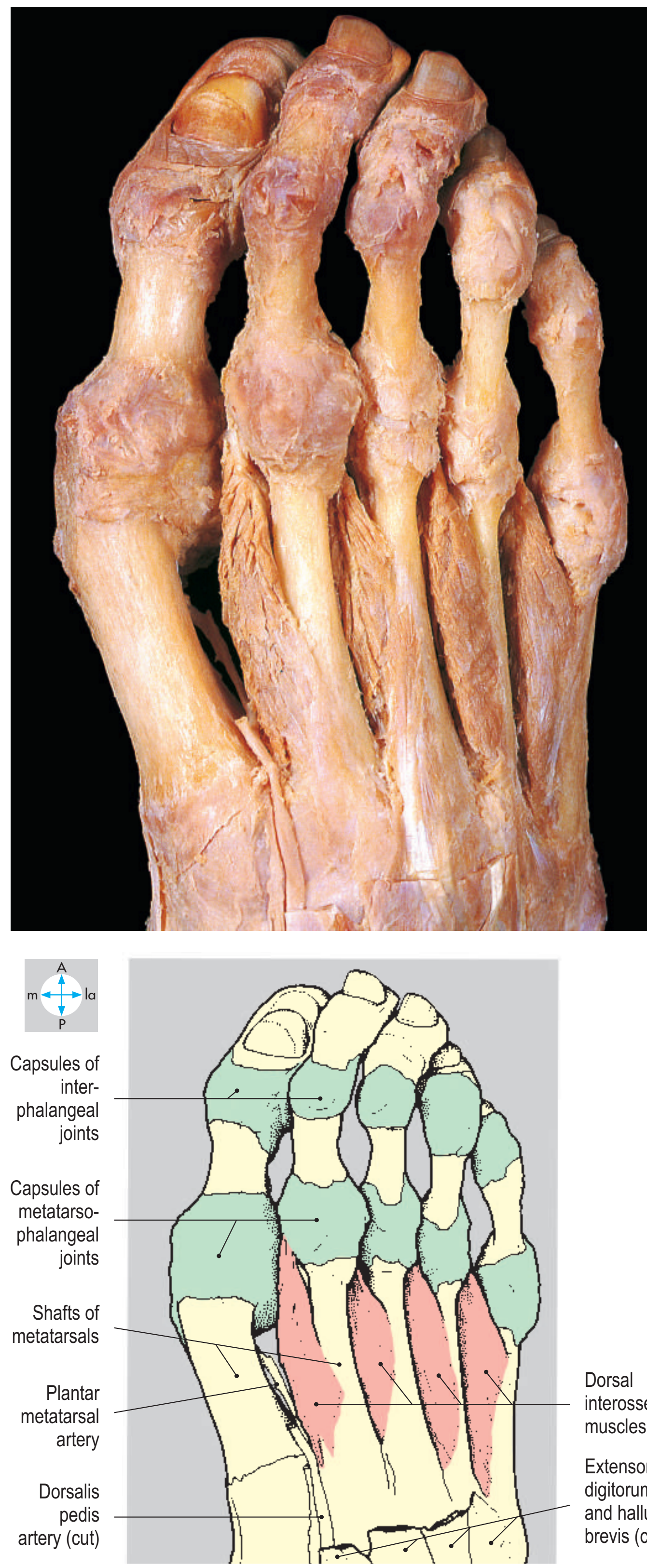


Fig. 6.55 Dorsal aspect of the foot showing the dorsal interosseous muscles after partial removal of extensor digitorum brevis. Extensor expansions have been removed to show joint capsules.

metatarsophalangeal joints. Their attachments indicate that plantar interossei should adduct and dorsal interossei should abduct the toes, but these movements are often poorly developed, especially in the shod foot.

The tendons of fibularis (peroneus) longus and tibialis posterior (Fig. 6.56) pass deeply into the sole to reach their attachments on tarsal and metatarsal bones. The fibularis longus tendon enters the lateral side of the sole and is retained in a groove inferior to the cuboid by the long plantar ligament. The tendon passes forwards and medially to reach the lateral aspect of the base of the first metatarsal and adjacent medial cuneiform (compare with tibialis anterior, p. 288). The tendon of tibialis posterior enters the medial aspect of the foot deep to the flexor retinaculum (Figs 6.48 & 6.56), attaches to the tuberosity of the navicular and sends additional slips to other tarsal bones and the metatarsal bases. These two tendons may help to support the medial longitudinal arch. The other actions of fibularis longus and tibialis posterior and their innervation are considered on pp 279, 290.

Blood supply

Deep to the flexor retinaculum, the tibial artery divides into medial and lateral plantar branches (Fig. 6.51). Passing forwards, the medial plantar artery runs deep to the superficial intrinsic muscles, gives off plantar cutaneous branches, which pass between abductor hallucis and flexor digitorum brevis, and terminates by supplying digital branches to the medial (and occasionally lateral) side of the great toe. The larger lateral plantar artery passes forwards and laterally (Fig. 6.54) deep to the superficial intrinsic muscles towards the base of the fifth metatarsal. Here the artery inclines medially and deeply to form the plantar arch, lying on the interossei and bases of the metatarsals. A perforating branch between the first and second metatarsals usually links the arch with the dorsalis pedis artery (p. 290). From the arch, plantar metatarsal arteries (Fig. 6.54) pass distally to the webs of the toes where they divide into digital branches. Venae comitantes accompany medial and lateral plantar arteries and their branches.

Nerve supply

Cutaneous branches of the tibial nerve supply the skin over the heel. Deep to the flexor retinaculum the tibial nerve divides into medial and lateral branches, which supply their respective sides of the sole (Figs 6.48 & 6.51). The larger medial plantar nerve accompanies the corresponding artery and gives cutaneous branches to the medial three and one-half digits, including the nail beds. The nerve also supplies abductor hallucis, flexor hallucis brevis, flexor digitorum brevis and the first lumbrical.

The lateral plantar nerve accompanies the corresponding artery (Fig. 6.51), supplying quadratus plantae and abductor digiti minimi and giving cutaneous branches to the sole. Near the base of the fifth metatarsal it divides into superficial and deep branches, which supply the remaining muscles of the sole. The deep branch accompanies the plantar arch and terminates in adductor hallucis. In addition to muscular branches, the superficial branch also gives cutaneous branches to the lateral one and one-half toes.

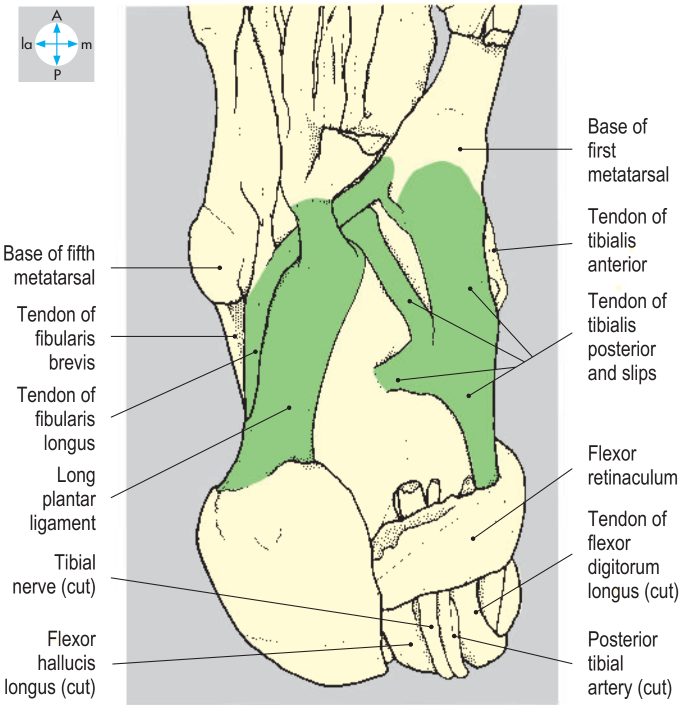


Fig. 6.56 Deep dissection of sole to show long plantar ligament and tendons of fibularis longus and tibialis posterior.

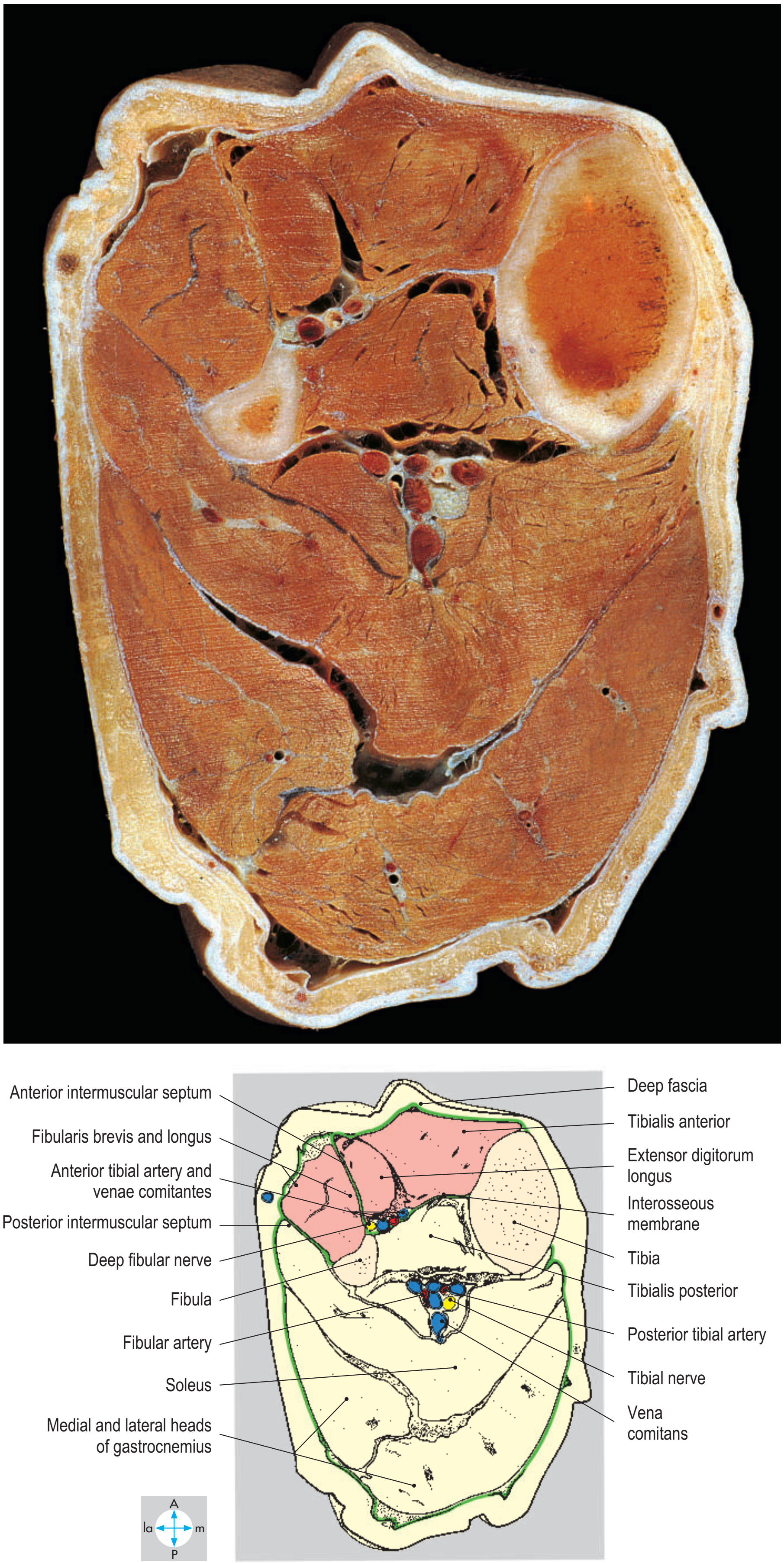


Fig. 6.57 Transverse section through the leg showing anterior and lateral compartments and their contents. Inferior aspect.

Anterior and Lateral Compartments of the Leg and Dorsum of the Foot

Anterior compartment of leg and dorsum of foot

The anterior compartment of the leg contains muscles that extend the ankle joint and toes and evert and invert the foot. Its neurovascular bundle comprises the anterior tibial artery and its venae comitantes and the deep fibular nerve (Fig. 6.57). The cutaneous branches of the superficial fibular nerve are also present.

On the dorsum of the foot are the long extensor tendons, the dorsalis pedis artery, the dorsal venous arch and, more laterally, the bellies of extensor digitorum brevis and extensor hallucis brevis. The medial and lateral malleoli lie on each side of the ankle.

Superficial structures

The dorsal venous arch (Fig. 6.58) drains blood from the toes and sole of the foot. From its medial end the great (long) saphenous vein passes in front of the medial malleolus where it is palpable and accessible, and then ascends to the posteromedial aspect of the knee. From the lateral side of the arch, the small saphenous vein passes behind the lateral malleolus and ascends to the popliteal fossa (p. 274). The saphenous nerve accompanies the great saphenous vein (Fig. 6.59), supplying skin on the medial side of the leg and medial border of the foot as far as the ball (metatarsophalangeal joint) of the great toe. The sural nerve accompanies the small saphenous vein (Fig. 6.58) and supplies skin along the lateral border of the foot and little toe.

The superficial fibular (superficial peroneal) nerve enters the anterior compartment of the leg from the lateral (fibular or peroneal) compartment at the anterior border of fibularis longus (Fig. 6.60). Shortly after piercing the deep fascia it divides into medial and lateral branches, which supply the skin of the leg and dorsum of the foot (Fig. 6.58). On reaching the toes, the medial branch supplies the medial side of the great toe and the contiguous aspects of the second and third toes, while the lateral branch innervates

the adjacent sides of the third, fourth and fifth toes. Thus, all of the digital skin is innervated by the superficial fibular nerve, except for the cleft between the great and second toes (supplied by the deep fibular [peroneal] nerve; Fig. 6.58) and the lateral aspect of the little toe (supplied by the sural nerve).

The skin and subcutaneous tissues over the anteromedial surface of the tibia are comparatively thin and have a sparse blood supply. As a consequence, lacerations in this region may heal relatively slowly. The subcutaneous tissues of the ankle are a common site for accumulation of tissue fluid (oedema).

Deep fascia

In the region of the ankle and foot there are thickenings of the investing deep fascia forming retinacula (Fig. 6.60), which prevent bowstringing of the long extensor tendons during muscular contraction. As the tendons pass beneath the retinacula to reach the foot they are enveloped in synovial membrane. By convention, superior and inferior extensor retinacula are described (Fig. 6.64). The superior retinaculum forms a broad band passing between the anterior borders of the tibia and fibula. The inferior retinaculum is Y-shaped, with its stem attached to the upper surface of the calcaneus.

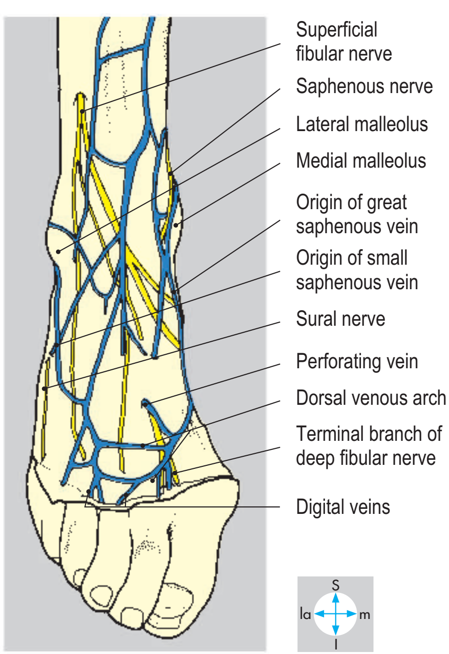


Fig. 6.58 Superficial nerves and veins on the dorsum of the ankle and foot.

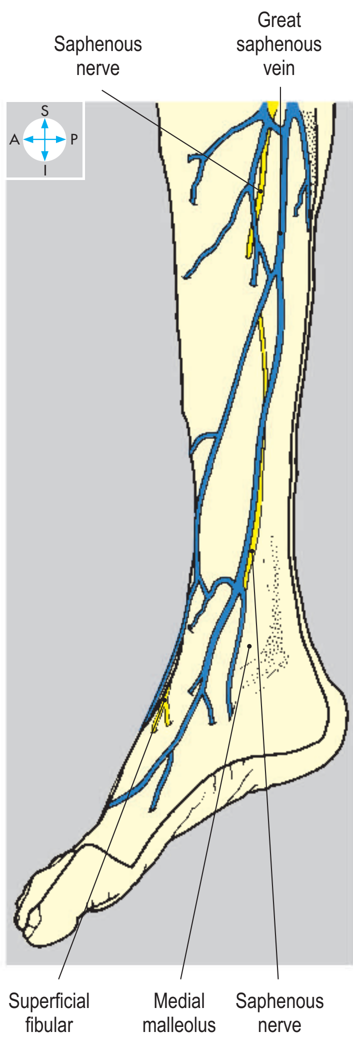


Fig. 6.59 Superficial veins and nerves on the medial surface of the leg and foot.

Muscles

The muscles in the anterior compartment are tibialis anterior, extensor hallucis longus, extensor digitorum longus and fibularis (peroneus) tertius. All are supplied by the deep fibular nerve. Tibialis anterior is the most medial (Figs 6.57 & 6.60), attaching to the lateral condyle and anterolateral surface of the shaft of the tibia, the adjacent interosseous membrane and the deep fascia overlying the muscle. Distally, its tendon crosses the anterior border of the lower end of the tibia and attaches to the base of the first metatarsal and adjacent part of the first cuneiform bone (Fig. 6.61). The muscle inverts the foot and dorsiflexes the ankle joint.

The other three muscles all attach to the narrow anterior surface of the fibula and adjacent interosseous membrane. Extensor digitorum longus (Fig. 6.57) is attached to the proximal three-quarters of the bone, fibularis tertius (when present) to the distal quarter, and extensor hallucis longus is overlapped by them medially at midshaft level. In addition, extensor digitorum longus attaches to the anterior intermuscular septum and overlying deep fascia.

The proximal part of extensor hallucis longus is overlapped by adjacent muscles, but in the lower part of the leg, its tendon emerges lateral to that of tibialis anterior. As it descends towards the ankle, the tendon crosses from the lateral to the medial side of the neurovascular bundle.

In the foot, the tendon of extensor hallucis longus runs forwards to the great toe (Fig. 6.62), where it attaches to the base of the distal phalanx. It is a powerful extensor of the toe, dorsiflexor (extensor) of the foot and assists inversion. Lateral to extensor hallucis longus, the muscle belly of extensor digitorum longus gives way distally to four tendons, which pass to the dorsal aspects of the lateral four toes. Each tendon forms an extensor expansion that divides into three slips. The central slip attaches to the base of the middle phalanx, while the two lateral slips combine to insert into the base of the distal phalanx (Fig. 6.62). Extensor digitorum longus extends the lateral four toes and dorsiflexes the foot. Fibularis tertius is a continuation of the belly of extensor digitorum longus. It attaches to the lateral border of the fifth metatarsal (Fig. 6.62) and everts the foot and dorsiflexes the ankle.

The muscles of the anterior compartment of the leg are active during walking in both the supporting and swing phases. In the weight-bearing limb they help to incline the leg forwards, while the foot remains stationary on the ground. In the swinging limb, the muscles maintain the ankle in dorsiflexion, thereby preventing the foot from dropping.

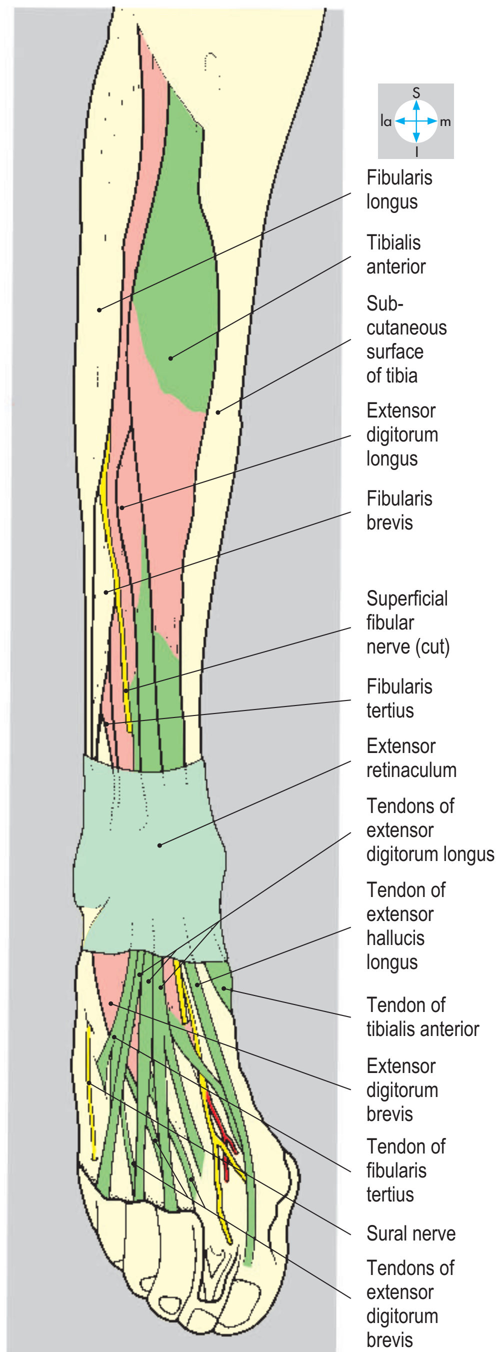


Fig. 6.60 Muscles of the anterior compartment of the leg and tendons on the dorsum of the foot, seen after removal of deep fascia. The extensor retinaculum has been retained.

On the dorsum of the foot, extensor digitorum brevis and extensor hallucis brevis (Fig. 6.62) are attached to the upper surface of the calcaneus and overlying stem of the inferior extensor retinaculum. Extensor digitorum brevis gives rise to three short tendons, which pass deep to the long extensor tendons of the lateral three toes (Fig. 6.62) and attach to the dorsal extensor expansions of the second, third and fourth toes. The tendon of extensor hallucis brevis attaches to the base of the proximal phalanx of the great toe. The muscles assist extension of the toes, particularly when the long extensors are flexing the leg forwards on the foot just before it is lifted from the ground during walking. The nerve supply is the deep fibular nerve.

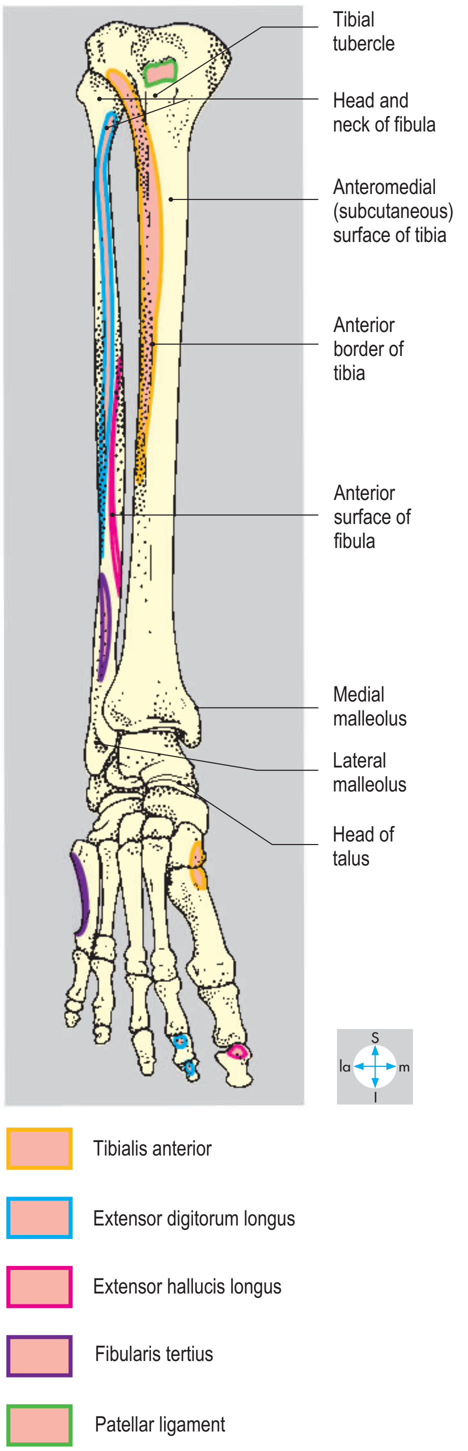


Fig. 6.61 Anterior view of bones of leg and foot showing attachments of muscles of anterior compartment.

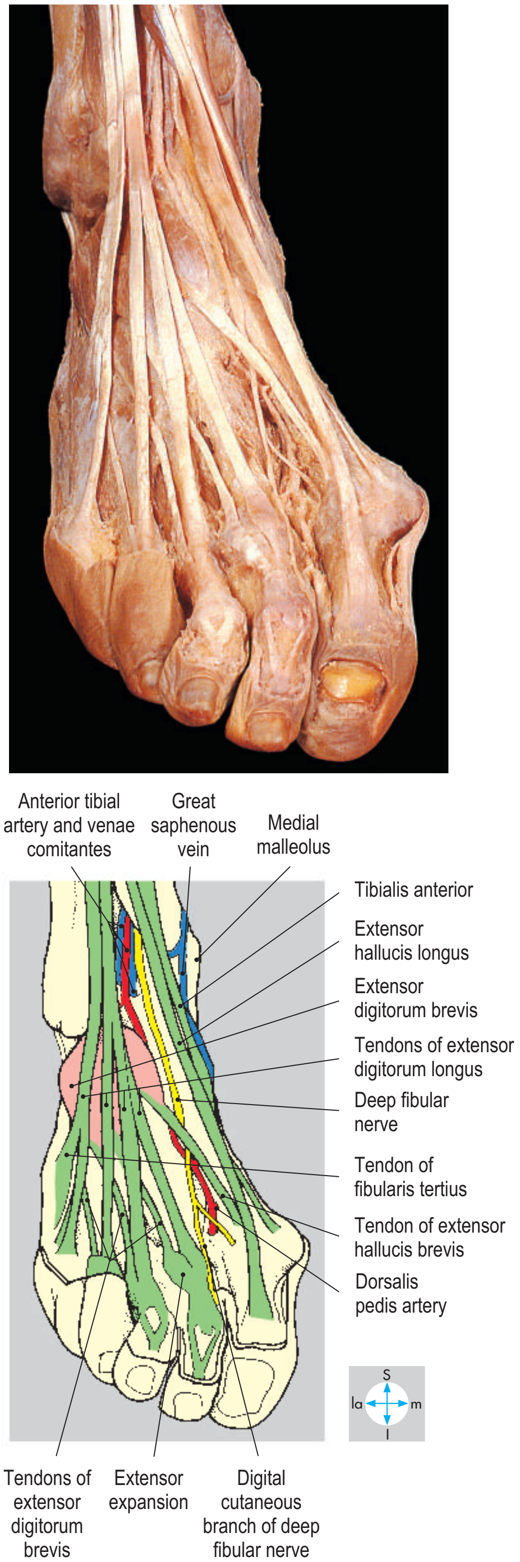


Fig. 6.62 Principal structures on the dorsum of the ankle and foot seen after removal of the extensor retinaculum.

Neurovascular bundle

This comprises the deep fibular nerve and the anterior tibial artery, with its venae comitantes (Fig. 6.57). The artery, a terminal branch of the popliteal artery (p. 278), reaches the anterior compartment after passing through the interosseous membrane (Figs 6.76 & 6.83). It then descends on the anterior surface of the membrane (Fig. 6.63) and at the ankle lies midway between the two malleoli. It continues distally as the dorsalis pedis artery on the lateral side of the extensor hallucis longus tendon (Fig. 6.62), where its pulsations are palpable in the living foot.

At the proximal end of the first intermetatarsal space, the dorsalis pedis artery gives a deep branch that passes between the two heads of the first dorsal interosseous muscle to join the plantar arch (p. 285). This arrangement provides an anastomosis between the anterior and posterior tibial arteries. The dorsalis pedis artery terminates as the first dorsal metatarsal artery, supplying the great toe and adjacent border of the second toe and the arcuate artery. It turns laterally beneath the extensor tendons across the bases of the metatarsals and gives metatarsal arteries, which divide to supply adjacent borders of the remaining three digits.

The deep fibular (peroneal) nerve, a terminal branch of the common fibular nerve, winds around the neck of the fibula deep to fibularis (peroneus) longus (Fig. 6.63). The nerve accompanies the anterior tibial vessels into the foot and supplies all muscles in the anterior compartment. In the foot, the nerve is close to the dorsalis pedis artery, usually lying lateral to the artery but sometimes medial to it (Fig. 6.62). It gives a branch to extensors digitorum and hallucis brevis and the tarsal joints and terminates by supplying the skin between the great and second toes (Fig. 6.62).

Lateral compartment of leg

The lateral (fibular or peroneal) compartment of the leg extends from the head of the fibula above to the lateral malleolus below. Its principal contents are the fibularis longus and brevis muscles (Fig. 6.64). Fibularis (peroneus) longus is attached to the upper two-thirds of the lateral surface of the fibula and fibularis (peroneus) brevis to the lower two-thirds, with brevis being the more anterior. Both muscles are attached to the two crural intermuscular septa and the overlying deep fascia (Fig. 6.57). On reaching the ankle the tendons pass behind and then below the lateral malleolus, restrained by the superior and inferior fibular retinacula and surrounded by synovial membrane (Fig. 6.64). The tendon of fibularis brevis passes forwards above the fibular trochlea of the calcaneus to attach to the base of the fifth metatarsal. The fibularis longus tendon passes forwards below the fibular trochlea and turns medially into the sole of the foot where it lies in a groove on the cuboid bone (Fig. 6.65). It attaches to the lateral side of the base of the first metatarsal and the adjacent first cuneiform.

Fibularis longus and brevis are evertors of the foot and weak plantar flexors of the ankle joint. Their nerve supply is the superficial fibular nerve, a terminal branch of

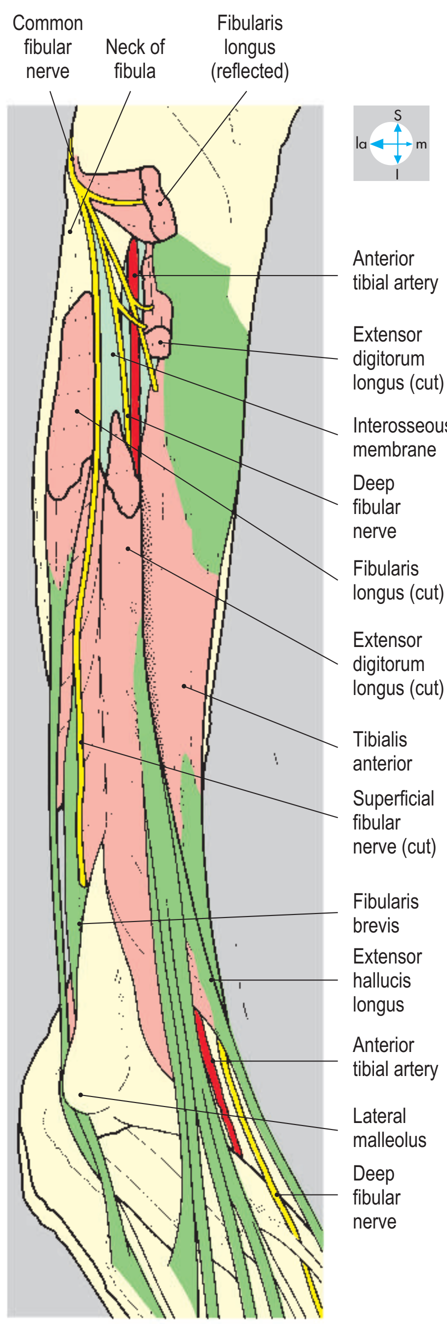


Fig. 6.63 The common fibular nerve and its branches and the anterior tibial artery, seen after deep dissection of both compartments.

the common fibular nerve, which enters the lateral compartment by winding around the neck of the fibula. Here it is palpable and may sometimes be compressed.

Branches of the fibular artery, which arises from the posterior tibial artery (p. 278), pierce the posterior intermuscular septum to supply fibularis longus and brevis.

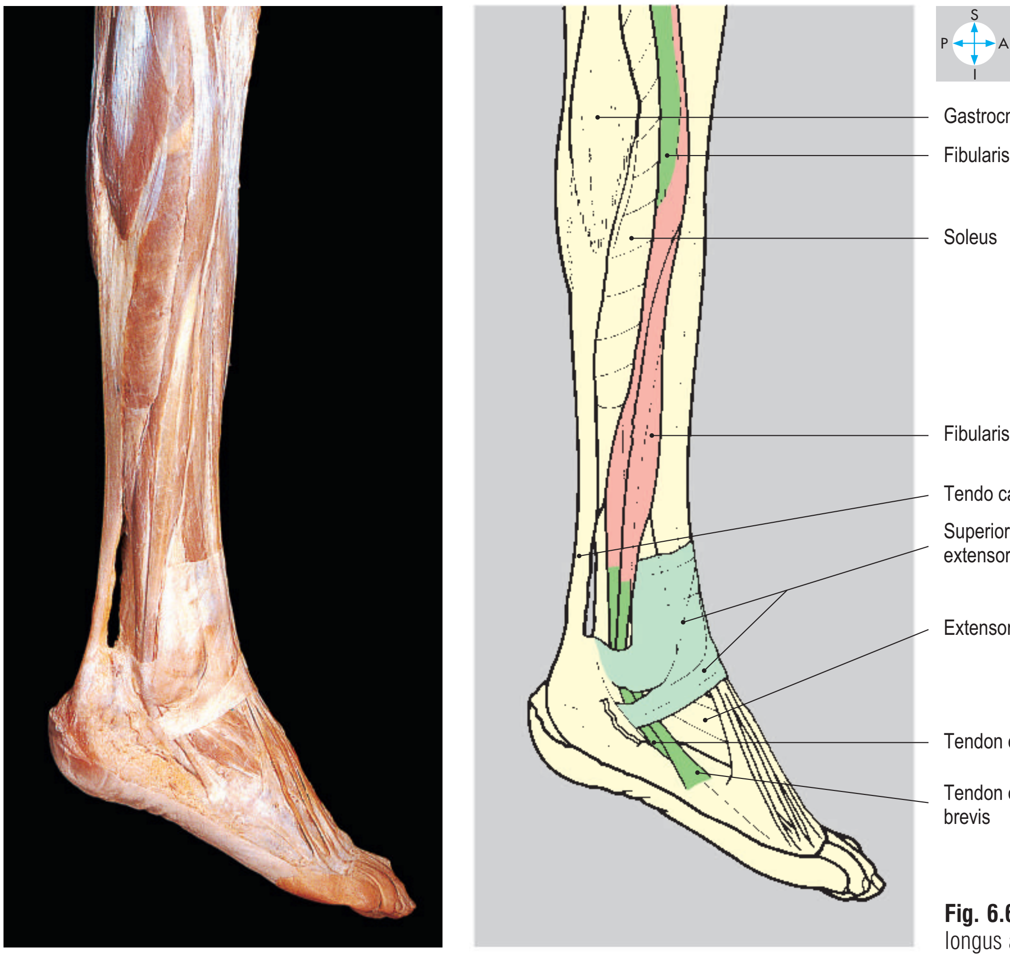


Fig. 6.64 Lateral aspect of the leg and foot showing fibularis longus and brevis.

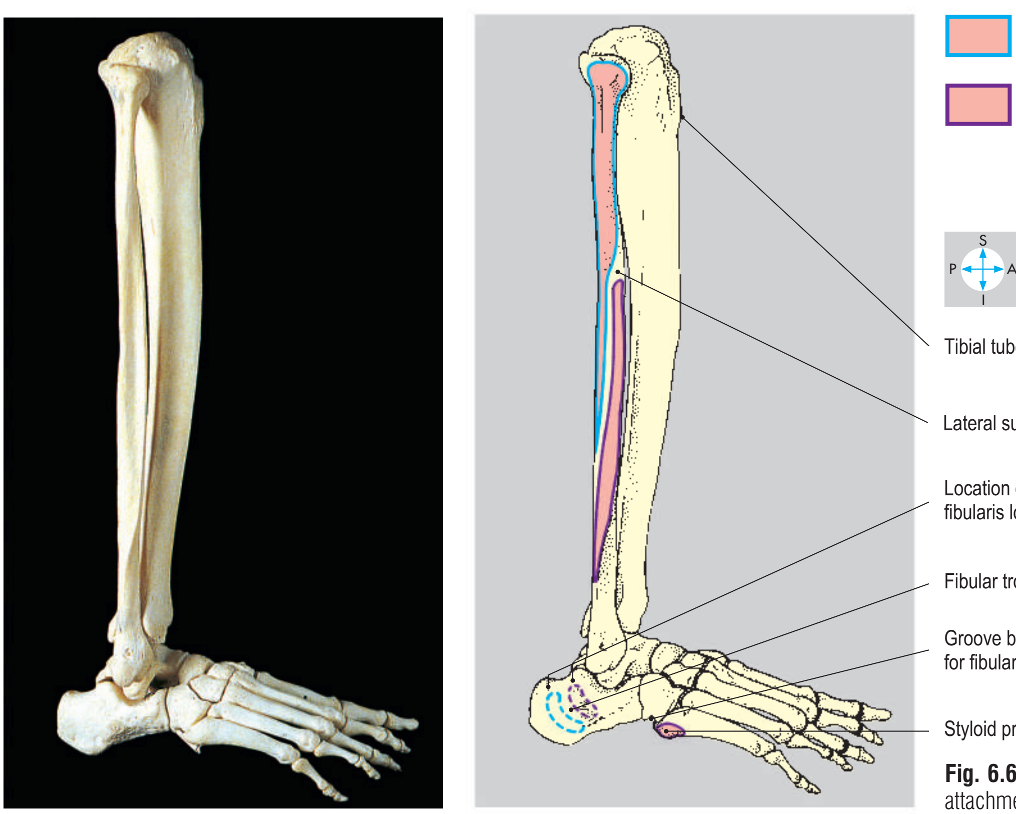


Fig. 6.65 Lateral view of bones of leg and foot showing attachment of muscles of lateral compartment.

Hip Joint

The hip joint is a synovial ball-and-socket joint between the head of the femur and the acetabulum of the hip bone (Fig. 6.66).

Articular surfaces

The femoral head, covered by hyaline cartilage, forms two-thirds of a sphere and has a central pit (fovea; Fig. 6.66) giving attachment to the round ligament (ligamentum teres). The head surmounts the femoral neck, whose base abuts the medial side of the greater trochanter. The acetabulum is a deep socket with a C-shaped articular area covered with hyaline cartilage and a fat-filled nonarticular area (acetabular fossa), the margins of which give attachment to the base of the ligamentum teres (Fig. 6.67). The acetabulum is deficient inferiorly at the acetabular notch (Fig. 6.66), where blood vessels, bridged by the transverse acetabular ligament, enter the joint. A fibrocartilaginous labrum, attached to the margins of the acetabulum and the transverse ligament, helps to deepen the socket.

Capsule

Medially, the fibrous capsule is attached to the outer margin of the labrum; laterally the capsule attaches to the intertrochanteric

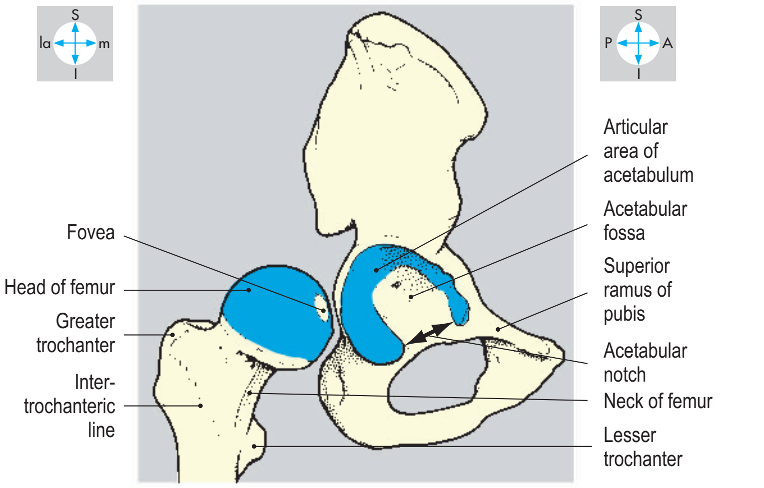


Fig. 6.66 Articular surfaces of the hip joint comprise the acetabulum of the hip bone and the head of the femur.

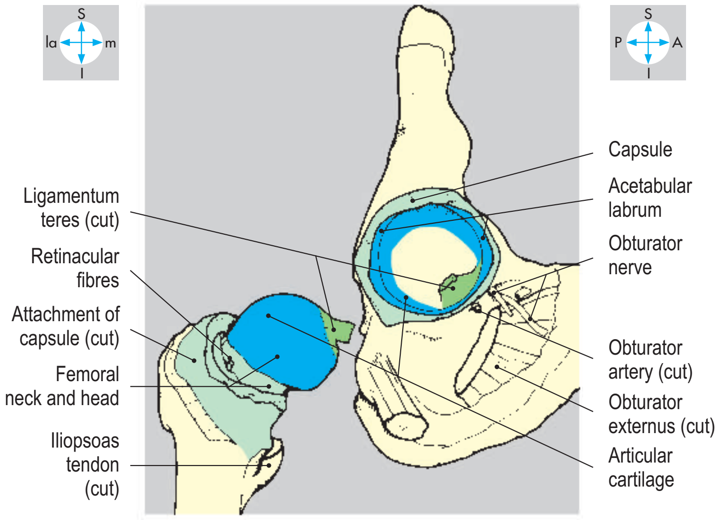


Fig. 6.67 Internal features, revealed by disarticulation of the joint after cutting the ligaments and joint capsule.

line (Figs 6.66 & 6.68) at the root of the femoral neck and to the femoral shaft just above the lesser trochanter. From the femoral attachment of the capsule, retinacular fibres derived from the deep part of the capsule (Fig. 6.67) are reflected medially over the neck to the margins of the head. Posteriorly, the line of attachment of the capsule is such that only the upper (medial) half of the femoral neck lies within the joint.

Ligaments

The iliofemoral, pubofemoral and ischiofemoral ligaments are capsular thickenings that spiral downwards and laterally from the hip bone to the femur. The strong iliofemoral ligament (Fig. 6.68) is an inverted Y-shape, the stem attaching to the anterior inferior iliac spine and the limbs to the upper and lower ends of the intertrochanteric line.

The pubofemoral ligament (Fig. 6.68) passes from the iliopubic eminence to the femoral neck just above the lesser trochanter. The ischiofemoral ligament lies posteriorly (Fig. 6.70) and reaches the root of the greater trochanter.

Within the joint is the ligament of the head of the femur (ligamentum teres femoris) (Figs 6.67 & 6.69), which has the form of a flattened cone, the base attaching to the margins of the acetabular fossa and transverse acetabular ligament and the apex to the fovea on the femoral head.

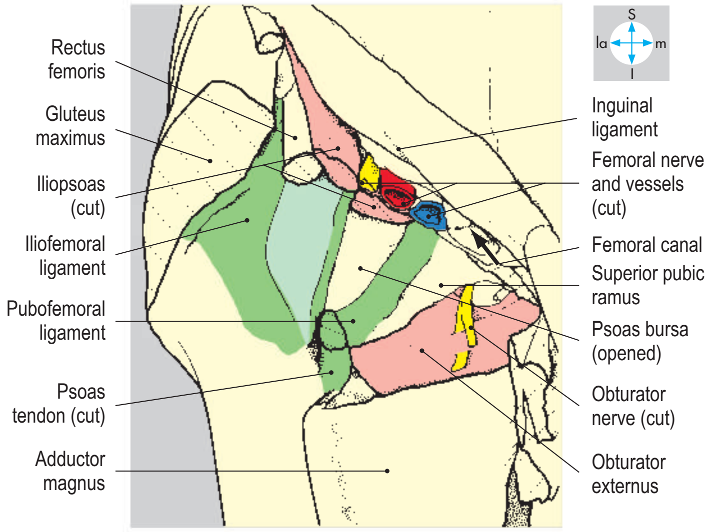


Fig. 6.68 Anterior surface of the joint capsule, its associated ligaments and immediate relations.

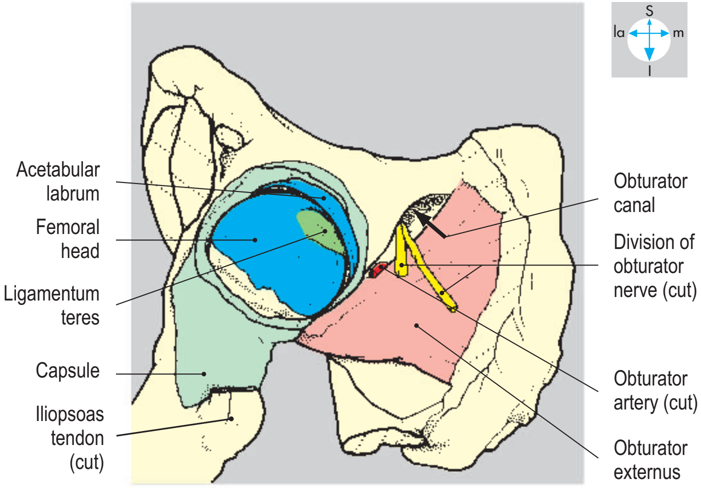


Fig. 6.69 Joint capsule opened anteriorly to show the interior of the joint. The femur has been abducted and externally rotated.

Synovial membrane and bursae

Synovial membrane lines the interior of the capsule and the non-articular surfaces of the joint, clothes the ligament of the head of the femur and is reflected over the retinacular fibres and the femoral neck as far as the head. The iliopsoas tendon and anterior aspect of the capsule are separated by a large bursa (Fig. 6.68), which often is in communication with the joint cavity.

The tendon of obturator externus is separated from the capsule by a smaller bursa, which may also communicate with the joint.

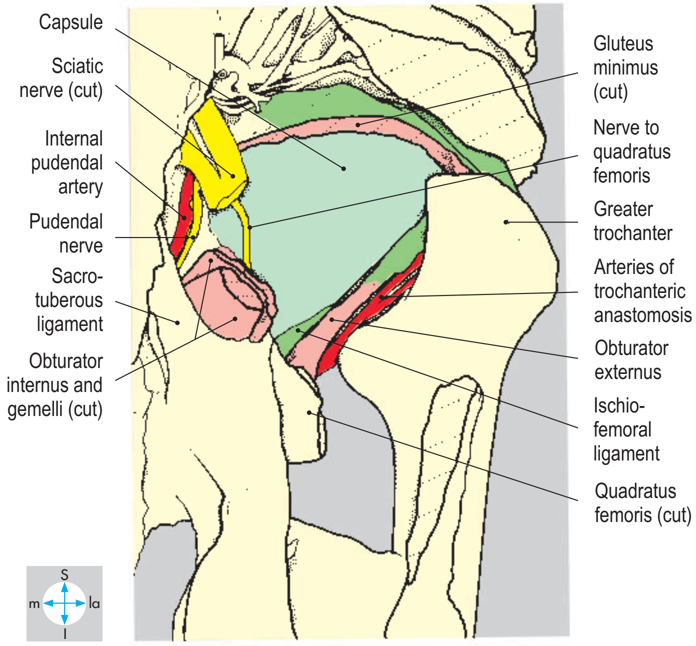


Fig. 6.70 Posterior surface of the joint capsule, the ischiofemoral ligament and close relations.

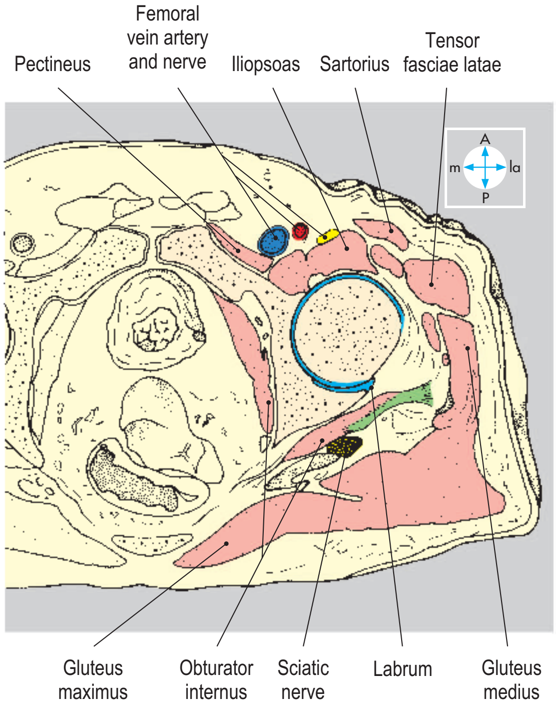


Fig. 6.71 Transverse section through the hip joint showing its relations. Superior aspect. (Compare Fig. 5.42.)

Movements

The hip joint is multiaxial and permits flexion, extension, abduction, adduction, medial and lateral rotation and circumduction.

Flexion is produced by iliopsoas, assisted by sartorius, rectus femoris and pectineus. Gluteus maximus and the hamstrings are extensors. Abductors of the hip include gluteus medius and minimus, while adduction is produced by adductors longus, brevis and magnus, pectineus and gracilis. Medial rotation is produced by iliopsoas, tensor fasciae latae and the anterior fibres of gluteus minimus and medius. Lateral rotation is produced by piriformis, quadratus femoris, obturator externus and internus and the gemelli.

Stability

The hip joint is very stable, largely because of its bony morphology and the deep fit of the femoral head into the acetabulum. Other important factors include the ligaments and the tone of the muscles crossing the joint. The ilio-, pubo- and ischiofemoral ligaments all limit extension and medial rotation. The iliofemoral ligament, in particular, prevents hyperextension, especially in the upright posture when body weight acts behind the transverse axis of the hip joint and tilts the pelvis backwards. The ligament of the head of the femur limits adduction of the hip.

Relations

The joint is deeply placed behind the midpoint of the inguinal ligament. Laterally, the greater trochanter covers the neck of the femur and is palpable on the lateral side of the thigh. Medially, only the thin bone of the acetabular fossa (Figs 6.71 & 6.72) separates the head of the femur from structures within the pelvis that are vulnerable following acetabular fracture accompanied by medial displacement of the femoral head. Posteriorly lie structures of the gluteal region (Fig. 6.70), including the sciatic nerve, which may be damaged in posterior dislocation. Anteriorly, the joint is covered by the iliopsoas and the femoral vessels and nerve. Obturator externus and the adductor muscles lie inferiorly (Fig. 6.72), while superiorly are gluteus medius and minimus.

Blood supply

The arterial supply of the hip joint, especially that of the head and neck of the femur, is of particular clinical importance. The joint receives branches from the obturator artery, superior and inferior gluteal arteries, and medial and lateral circumflex femoral arteries, either directly or from the trochanteric anastomosis they form. From this anastomosis (Fig. 6.70), nutrient arteries travel in the retinacular fibres to enter foramina on the upper part of the femoral neck and terminate in the head. As only the upper half of the neck is covered posteriorly by the joint capsule, fractures at this site may be classified as either intra- or extracapsular. Intracapsular fractures that tear the retinacular fibres may deprive the head of the femur of much of its blood supply, resulting in avascular necrosis. Additional blood supply comes from a branch of the obturator artery conveyed in the ligament of the head of the femur to the femoral head, and from one of the perforating branches of the profunda femoris artery via a nutrient artery that enters the shaft to supply the femoral neck and head.

Nerve supply

Nerves to the joint include the nerve to rectus femoris from the femoral nerve, branches from the anterior division of the obturator nerve, and the nerve to quadratus femoris from the sacral plexus.

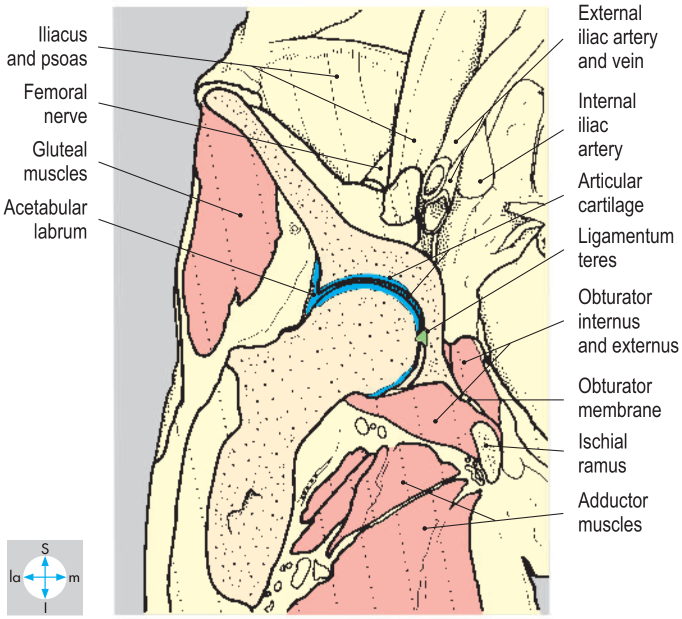


Fig. 6.72 Coronal section through the hip joint showing its relations.

Knee Joint

The knee joint is a synovial joint between the distal end of the femur, proximal end of the tibia and posterior aspect of the patella (Fig. 6.73). It is a hinge joint with a wide range of flexion and extension and limited lateral and medial rotation. The joint is relatively superficial anteriorly, medially and laterally where some of its bony features are palpable. Posteriorly, the joint is inaccessible, being deeply placed in the floor of the popliteal fossa (Fig. 6.74).

Anteriorly, the patellar ligament (Fig. 6.75) passes from the apex of the patella to the tibial tubercle. It is easily palpable and is used clinically for the stretch reflex (knee jerk, L3 & L4).

Articular surfaces

The medial and lateral condyles of the femur have articular surfaces, covered by hyaline cartilage, which extend over their inferior and posterior aspects and articulate with the respective condyles on the tibia (Fig. 6.73). On the front of the femur lies the patellar articular surface, while posteriorly a deep intercondylar fossa separates the two condyles. The articular areas on the tibial condyles are separated by the intercondylar eminence, the lateral articular area being flatter and smaller than the medial area (Fig. 6.73).

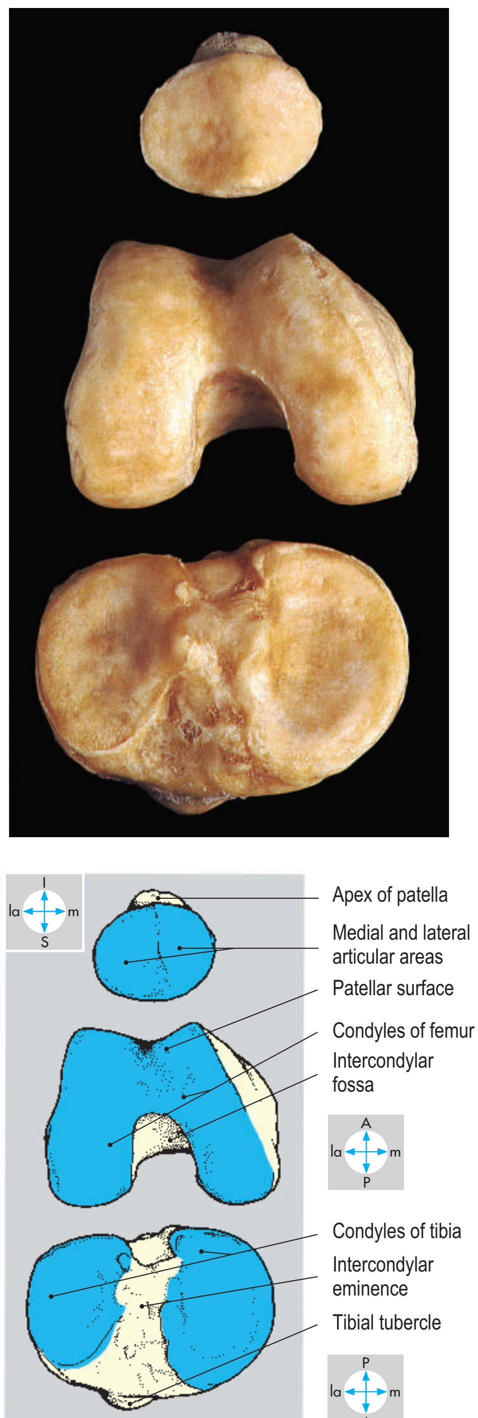


Fig. 6.73 Articular surfaces of the patella, femur and tibia.

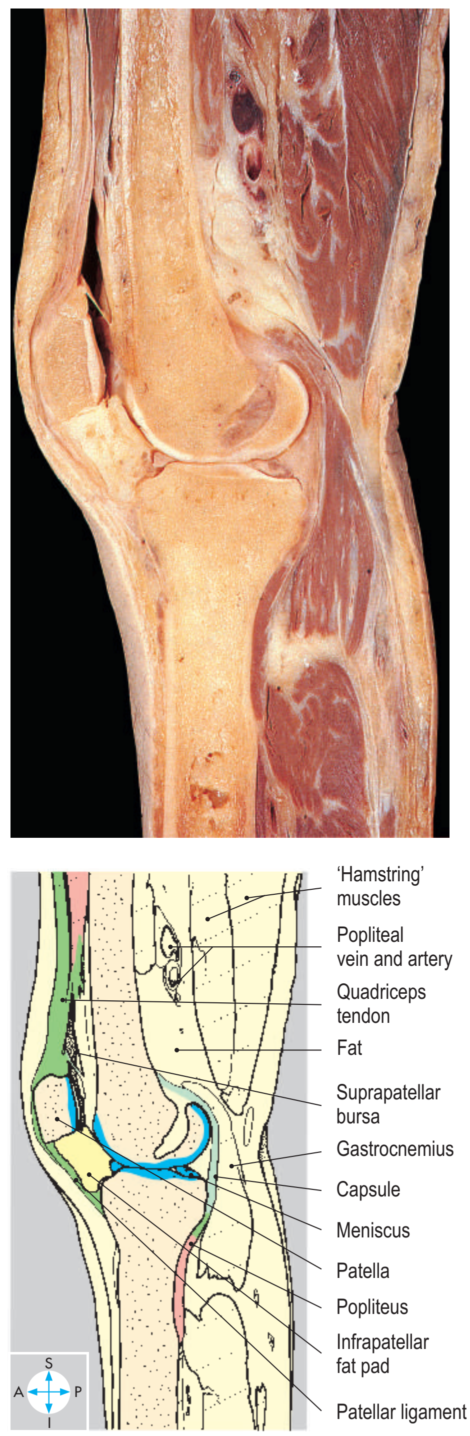


Fig. 6.74 Sagittal section through the knee joint showing the articular surfaces and relations.

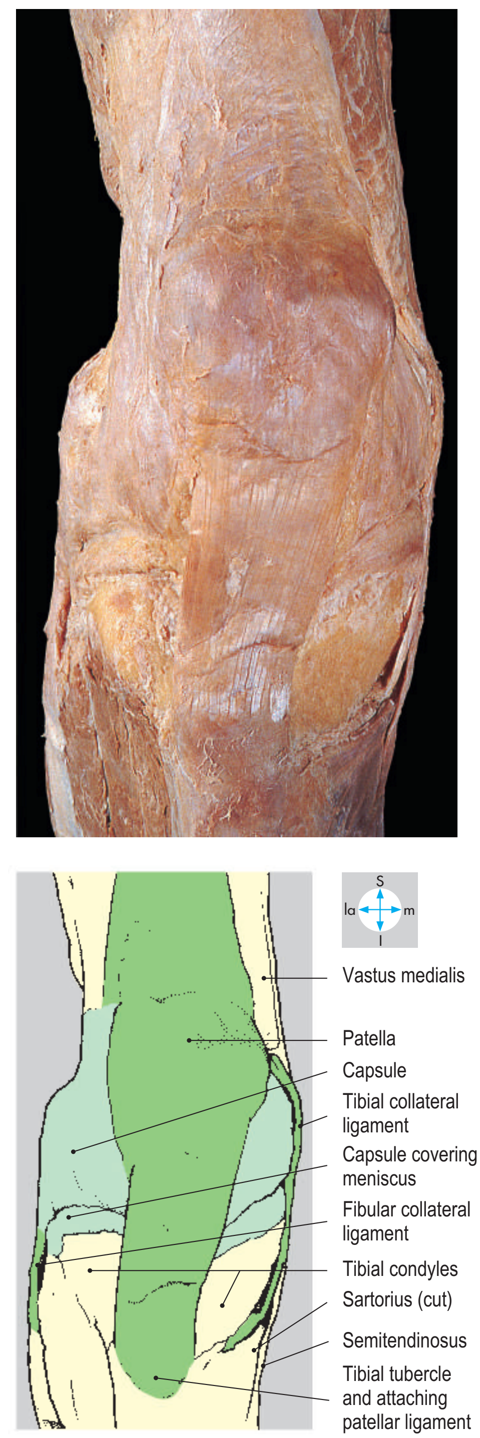


Fig. 6.75 Superficial dissection from the anterior aspect to show patellar ligament, capsule, and collateral ligaments.

Capsule

The capsule is thin anteriorly and posteriorly but is reinforced on each side by strong collateral ligaments. On the sides of the femur, the capsule attachment extends up to the epicondyles. Posteriorly, it attaches along the superior margins of the condyles (Figs 6.76 & 6.78) and the intercondylar line, while anteriorly it extends proximally (Figs 6.75, 6.79 & 6.81) to accommodate the synovial membrane that forms the suprapatellar bursa (pouch).

On the sides of the tibia, the capsule attaches close to the articular margins. Those parts of the capsule on each side of the joint that loosely anchor the outer borders of the menisci to the tibia are called the coronary ligaments. Posteriorly, the capsular attachment inclines downwards to include the posterior part of the intercondylar area, while anteriorly the attachment deviates inferiorly as far as the tibial tubercle. On the patella, the capsule is attached close to the articular margins.

Posteriorly, part of the insertion of semimembranosus forms the oblique popliteal ligament, which passes upwards and laterally (Figs 6.76 & 6.77), reinforcing the capsule. Where the posterior part of the capsule is pierced by popliteus, it thickens to form the arcuate ligament (Fig. 6.76).

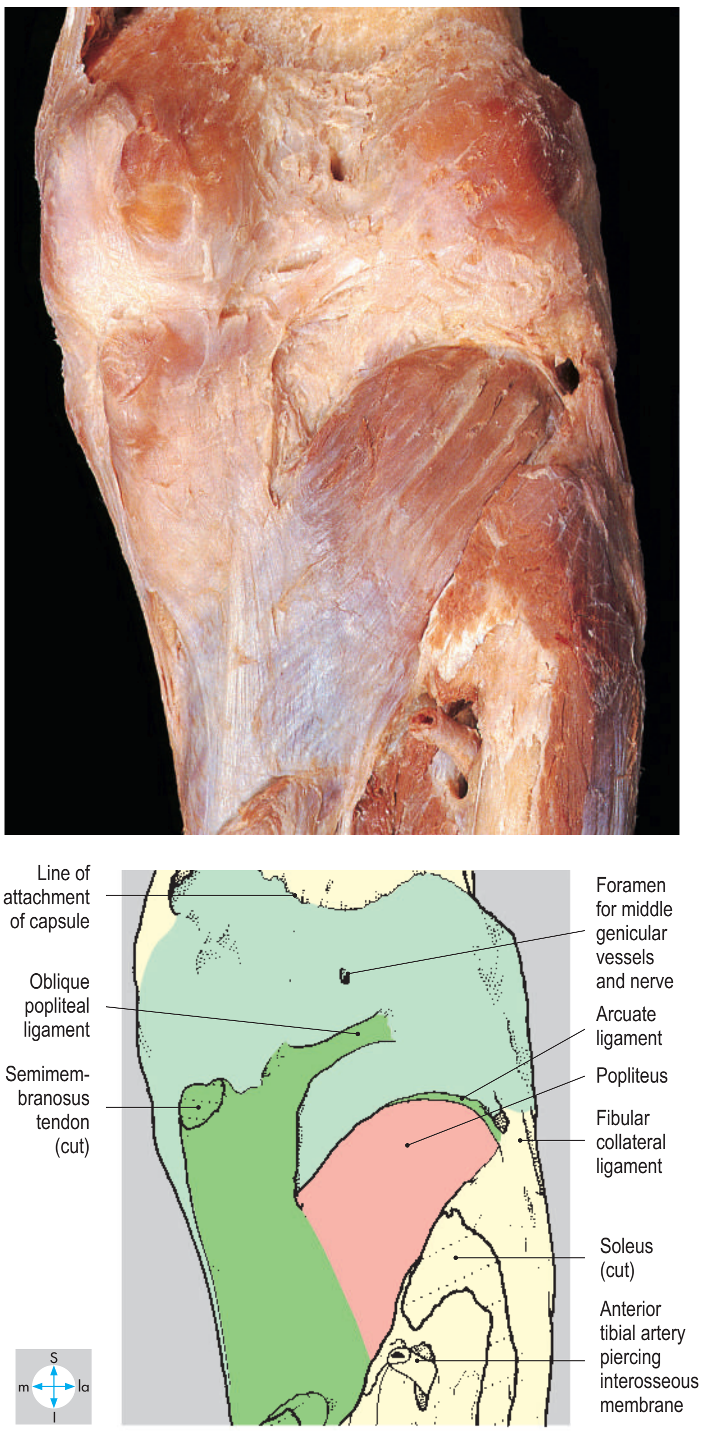


Fig. 6.76 Posterior aspect of joint showing capsule, popliteus and semimembranosus insertion.

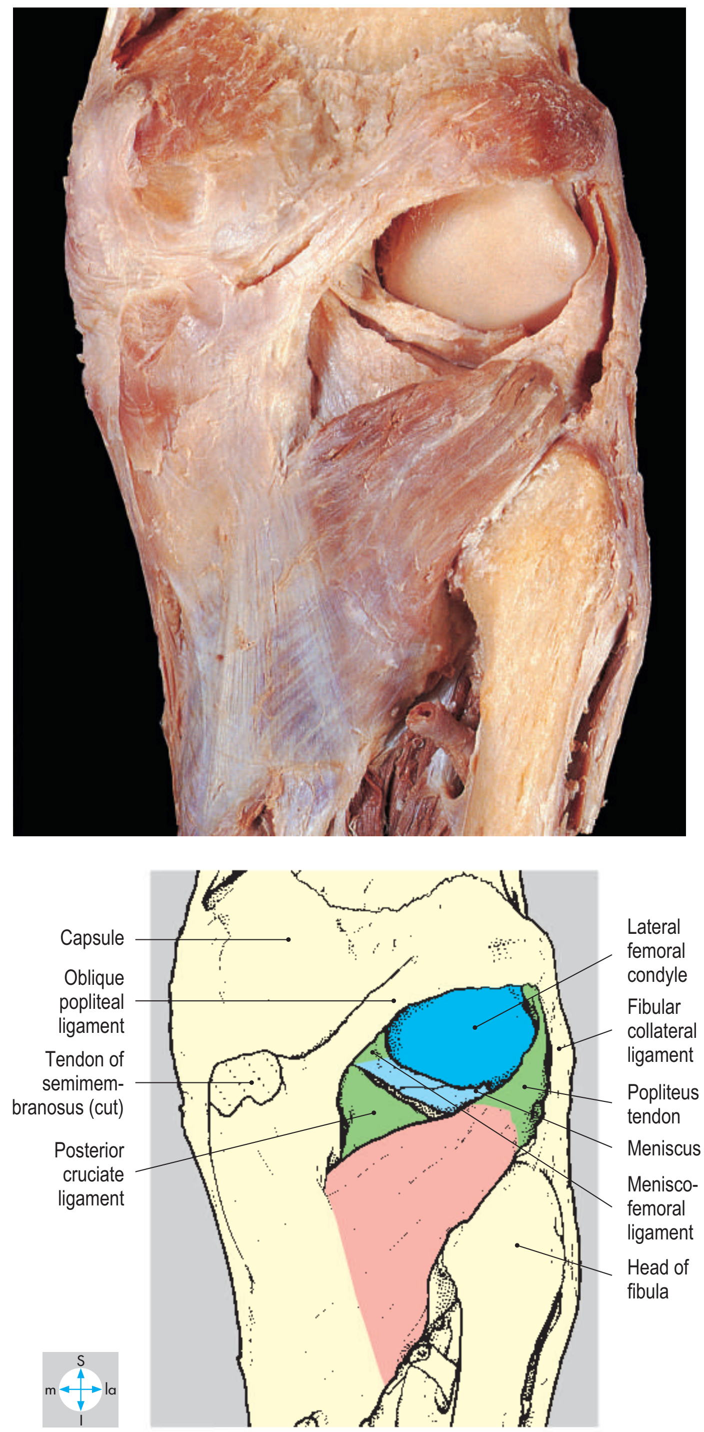


Fig. 6.77 Partial removal of capsule to reveal the meniscofemoral and posterior cruciate ligaments and the tendon of popliteus.

Collateral ligaments

On the medial side of the joint, the thick tibial collateral ligament (Fig. 6.79) broadens as it descends from the medial femoral epicondyle to the upper part of the subcutaneous surface of the tibia. Its deep aspect is attached to the outer margin of the medial meniscus (Fig. 6.78), which diminishes mobility of the meniscus, making it more susceptible to tears. On the lateral side the cord-like fibular collateral ligament (Fig. 6.80) descends from the lateral epicondyle of the femur to the styloid process and head of the fibula, separated from the lateral meniscus by the popliteus tendon (Fig. 6.78).

Intracapsular ligaments

The intracapsular ligaments comprise the anterior and posterior cruciate ligaments and the meniscofemoral ligament.

The cruciate ligaments (Fig. 6.78) are named according to their attachment to the intercondylar eminence of the tibia (Fig. 6.82). The anterior ligament passes upwards, backwards and laterally to attach to the medial surface of the lateral condyle of the femur.

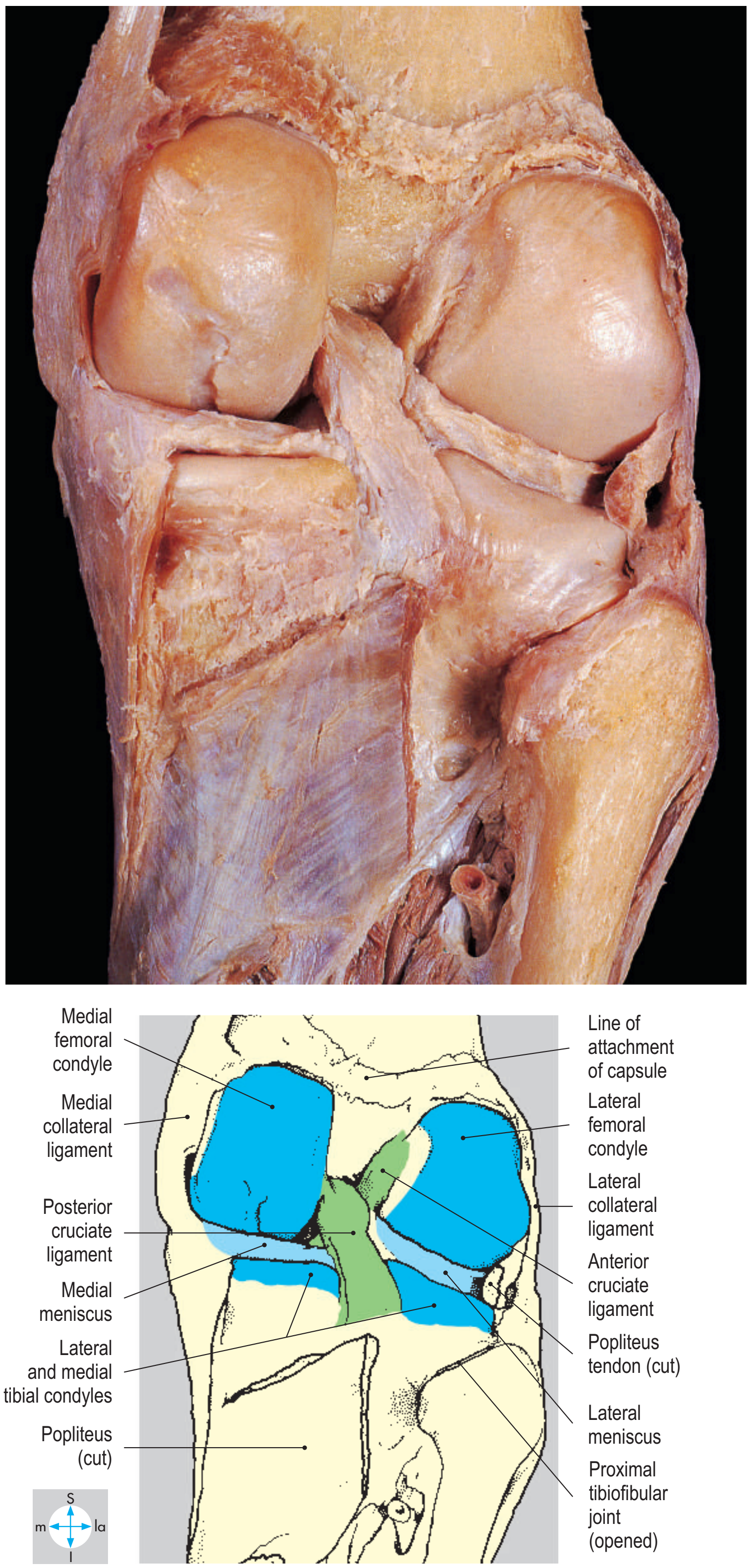


Fig. 6.78 The posterior part of the capsule has been removed to show the cruciate ligaments and menisci.

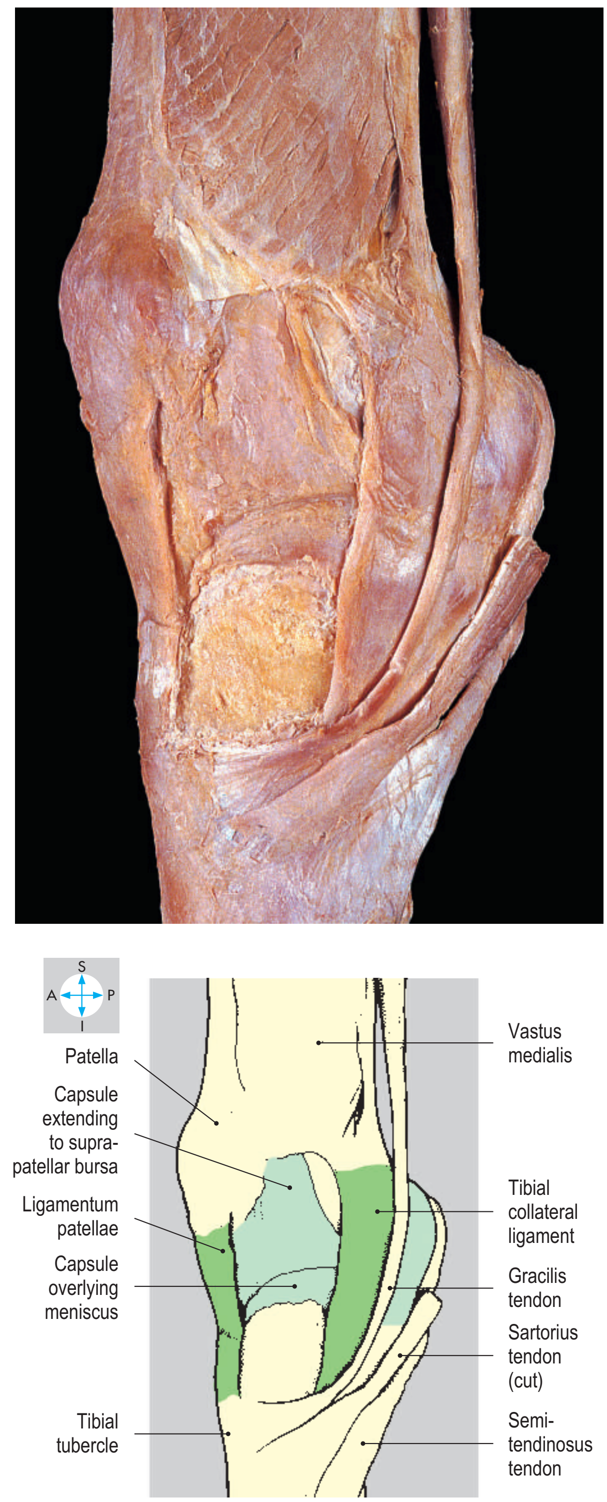


Fig. 6.79 Superficial dissection from the medial aspect showing the tibial collateral ligament, capsule and insertions of sartorius, gracilis and semitendinosus.

The posterior ligament passes upwards, forwards and medially (Fig. 6.78) to attach to the lateral surface of the medial femoral condyle. The meniscofemoral ligament is adjacent to the posterior cruciate ligament (Fig. 6.77) and attaches the posterior border of the lateral meniscus close to the femoral attachment of the posterior cruciate ligament. It stabilizes the meniscus during rotation of the femur on the tibia. Although within the capsule, the cruciate and meniscofemoral ligaments are covered by reflections of synovial membrane and are therefore not within the synovial cavity.

Menisci

The medial and lateral menisci are C-shaped (Fig. 6.82) with their anterior and posterior horns attached to the intercondylar eminence of the tibia and their outer borders to the joint capsule (coronary ligaments). The menisci differ in size and shape, the medial being narrower though slightly larger, so that its horns embrace those of the lateral meniscus. Also, the medial is attached to the medial collateral ligament and in cross-section is deeper than the lateral meniscus. A transverse ligament (Fig. 6.82) connects the anterior horn of the medial meniscus with the anterior aspect of the lateral meniscus.

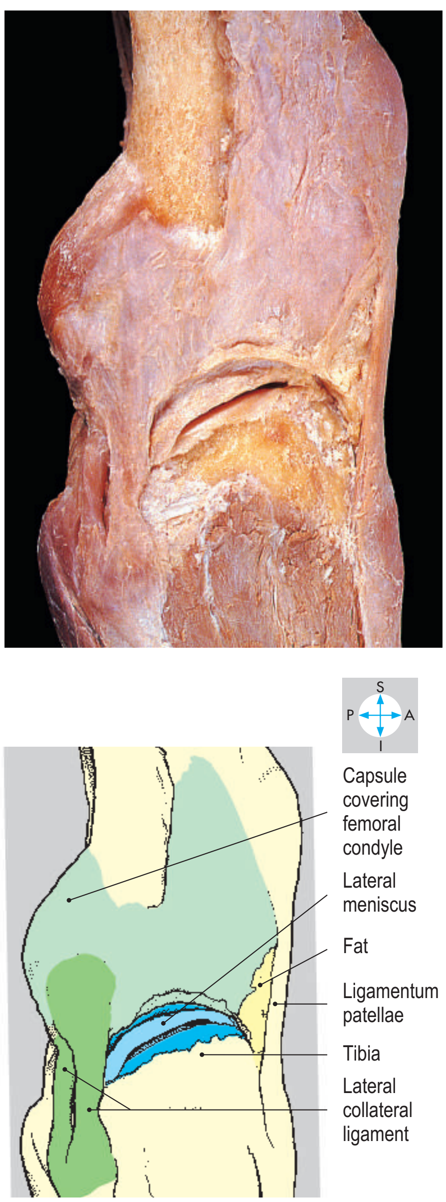


Fig. 6.80 Lateral aspect of joint showing the collateral ligament and the meniscus, revealed by removing part of the capsule.

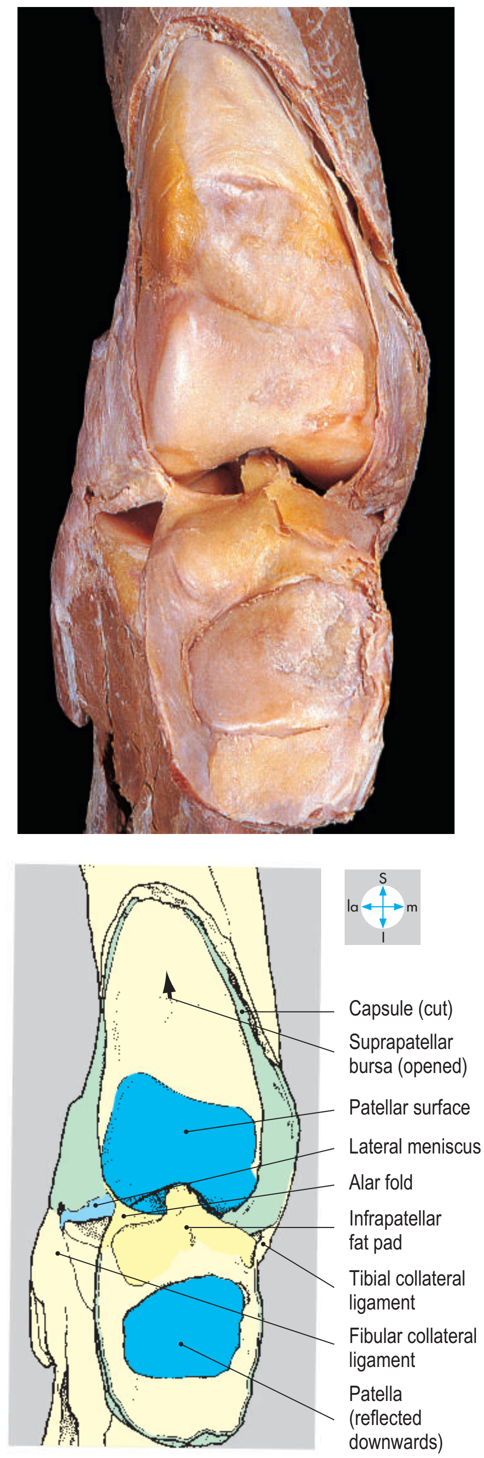


Fig. 6.81 Interior of joint, revealed by opening the capsule anteriorly and reflecting the patella downwards.

Infrapatellar fat pad

Deep to the patellar ligament is a quantity of fat (Fig. 6.74), which bulges the synovial membrane into the interior of the joint. Folds of synovial membrane, the alar folds (Fig. 6.81), extend on either side from the main pad. Another fold, the ligamentum mucosum, lies in the midline between the anterior part of the intercondylar notch and the lower margin of the patella.

Synovial membrane and bursae

Synovial membrane lines the interior of the capsule but does not cover the menisci. On the femur, it is attached to the margins of the intercondylar notch and covers the front and sides of the cruciate ligaments. Synovial membrane also covers the infrapatellar fat pad and the tendon of popliteus.

The suprapatellar bursa (Fig. 6.81; Fig. 6.74) is a large pouch of synovial membrane, passing a hand's breadth proximal to the upper border of the patella, deep to quadriceps. Part of vastus intermedius attaches to it. Since the bursa is continuous with the synovial cavity of the joint, it provides a route for injecting fluid into or withdrawing fluid from the joint. After injuries to the joint, fluid accumulates (effusion) in the suprapatellar bursa, causing typical fullness around the knee and the basis for the patellar-tap test. Several other bursae lie near the knee joint and may enlarge, causing swelling. Bursae between the capsule and the two heads of gastrocnemius often communicate with the knee joint, while that beneath the medial head may also communicate with the overlying semimembranosus bursa. Other bursae, which do not communicate with the joint, are the pre- and infrapatellar bursae beneath the skin covering the patella and patellar ligament, respectively. These may also enlarge.

Popliteus

From its tibial attachment, the popliteus passes upwards and laterally (Fig. 6.76), penetrating the posterior aspect of the capsule of the knee joint deep to the arcuate ligament. Within the joint, its tendon, covered by synovial membrane, attaches to the posterior border of the lateral meniscus and to the femur (Fig. 6.77) immediately

below the lateral epicondyle. Popliteus is supplied by the tibial nerve and its actions are considered below.

Movements

The principal movements of the knee joint are flexion and extension. Flexion is produced mainly by the hamstrings (semimembranosus, semitendinosus and biceps) assisted by the two heads of gastrocnemius. Extension is produced by quadriceps femoris acting through the patellar ligament. Gluteus maximus, acting through the iliotibial tract, maintains stability of the knee in the extended position.

Because of the shape of the articular surfaces, the femur rotates medially during the later stages of extension. The lateral condyle and meniscus (moving in unison because of the meniscofemoral ligament) glide forwards on the lateral tibial condyle, while the medial condyle completes its movement of extension on the medial meniscus. Full extension is achieved with completion of medial rotation and further movement is prevented by tension in the collateral and oblique posterior ligaments. During the early stages of flexion, lateral rotation of the femur on the tibia is produced by popliteus, which also pulls the lateral meniscus posteriorly. During flexion and extension the patella glides over the patellar surface of the femur.

Slight active rotation of the tibia on the femur can occur when the knee is in a flexed but non-weight-bearing position. Sartorius, gracilis and semitendinosus rotate medially, while biceps femoris rotates laterally.

Stability

The knee joint is very stable. The most important factors are muscle tone, especially in quadriceps and the ligaments. The cruciate ligaments stabilize the femur on the tibia, preventing excessive anteroposterior movement. The collateral ligaments assist medial and lateral stability, while the iliotibial tract stabilizes the knee during extension. All of these ligaments, together with the oblique posterior ligament, prevent hyperextension. Cruciate and collateral ligament injuries together with meniscal tears commonly occur in sports, particularly following twisting movements, during which the foot is anchored to the ground.

Owing to angulation of the femur relative to the tibia, contraction of quadriceps femoris tends to displace the patella laterally. This displacement is prevented, first by the lowest fibres of vastus medialis, which insert into the medial patellar border and whose active contraction resists lateral movement of the patella, and second by the large size and prominence of the lateral femoral condyle, making lateral patellar movement mechanically difficult. Occasionally, the lateral femoral condyle fails to develop normally, resulting in patellar instability.

Innervation

Branches from the femoral, obturator and sciatic nerves supply the joint, sensory fibres from the femoral nerve travelling with the branches to the vasti and sartorius. Genicular branches from the tibial and common fibular divisions of the sciatic nerve, together with fibres from the posterior division of the obturator nerve, also supply the joint.

Blood supply

The knee joint receives its blood supply from the extensive genicular anastomosis derived mainly from branches of the

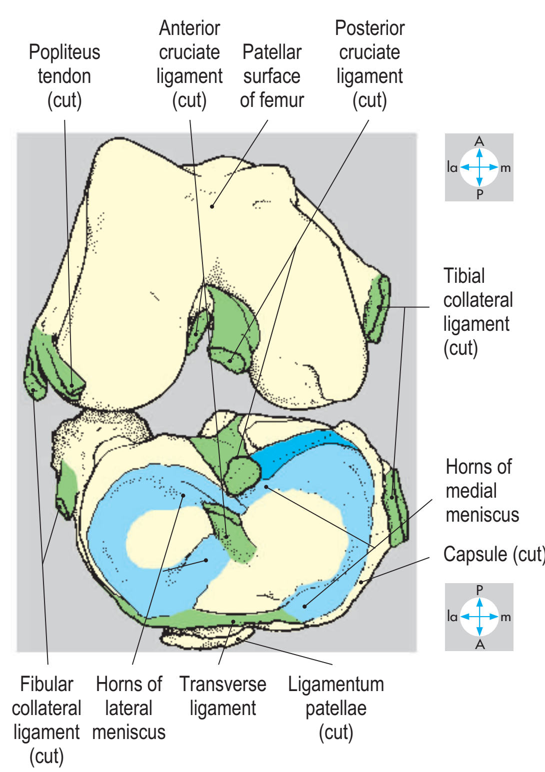


Fig. 6.82 Disarticulation of joint reveals menisci and attachments of cruciate ligaments.

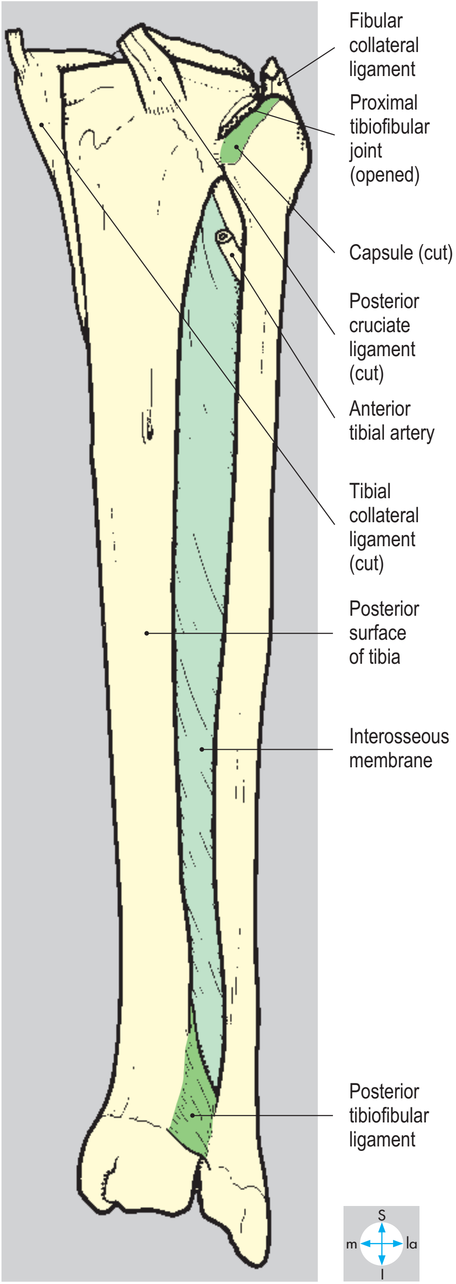


Fig. 6.83 Posterior view of tibia and fibula to show tibiofibular joints and interosseous membrane. The lower part of the tibiofibular ligament has been removed.

popliteal, anterior and posterior tibial arteries (Fig. 1.27). Dislocation of the knee may damage the popliteal artery and seriously compromise the blood supply to the leg and foot. It may also damage the tibial and common peroneal (fibular) nerves causing loss of sensation and movement below the level of the knee.

Tibiofibular Joints

The tibia and fibula articulate at proximal and distal tibiofibular joints and are also connected by an interosseous membrane (Fig. 6.83), which unites the interosseous borders of the bones and separates the flexor and extensor compartments of the leg.

The proximal tibiofibular joint is a plane synovial articulation between the lateral condyle of the tibia and head of the fibula, and is supplied by the common fibular nerve. The capsule is reinforced by anterior and posterior ligaments, and the synovial cavity does not communicate with the knee joint.

The opposed triangular surfaces at the lower ends of the tibia and fibula are bound together by an interosseous ligament, forming the fibrous distal tibiofibular joint, which is strengthened by anterior and posterior tibiofibular ligaments. The transverse ligament, an inferior extension of the posterior ligament, contributes to the articular socket of the ankle joint (Fig. 6.85), whose cavity frequently extends for a short distance between the tibia and fibula. The ankle is stabilized by the ligaments of the distal tibiofibular joint, which prevent separation of the malleoli. Innervation is by the deep fibular and tibial nerves.

Very little movement occurs at the tibiofibular joints, but slight rotation of the fibula may accompany flexion and extension of the ankle.

Ankle Joint

The ankle joint is a synovial hinge joint between the lower ends of the tibia and fibula and the upper part of the talus (Fig. 6.84), and all the articular surfaces are covered by hyaline cartilage. The proximal articular surface comprises the distal end of the tibia and the medial and lateral malleoli, which together form a deep socket (Fig. 6.85), completed posteriorly by the posterior tibiofibular ligament (see below). The socket is wider anteriorly than posteriorly and is completely congruous with the upper part of the talus, which is reciprocally wedge-shaped (Figs 6.84 & 6.86). The articular surface on the lateral side of the talus is more extensive than that on the medial side.

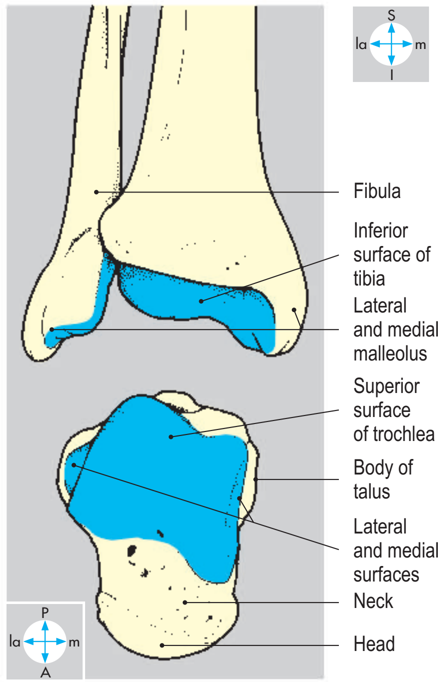


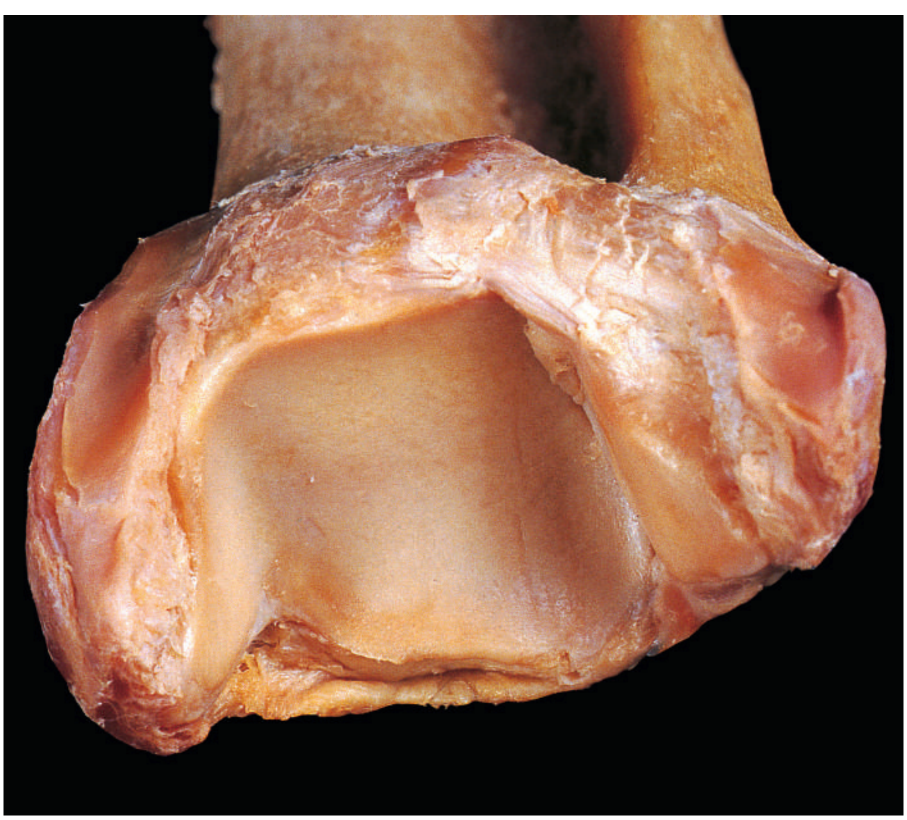
Fig. 6.84 Bones of the ankle joint showing their articular surfaces.

Capsule and synovial membrane

The fibrous capsule attaches to the margins of the articular surfaces, but anteriorly extends forwards onto the neck of the talus (Fig. 6.86). The capsule is thin anteriorly and posteriorly, but is reinforced on each side by ligaments. Synovial membrane lines the capsule internally and covers the intracapsular part of the neck of the talus.

Ligaments

The posterior tibiofibular ligament spans the gap between the distal ends of the tibia and fibula, contributing to the articular socket posteriorly (Fig. 6.85). There are two collateral ligaments. The medial (deltoid)



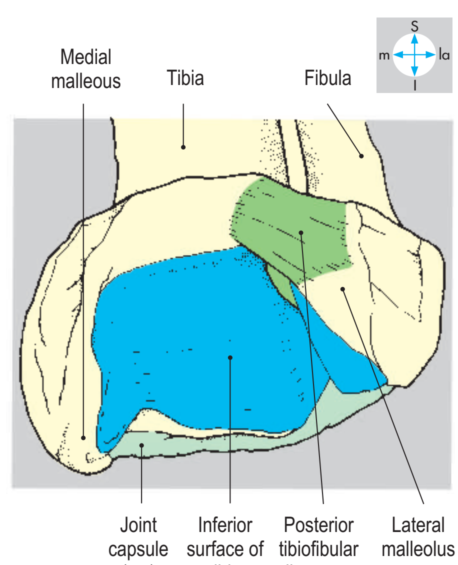
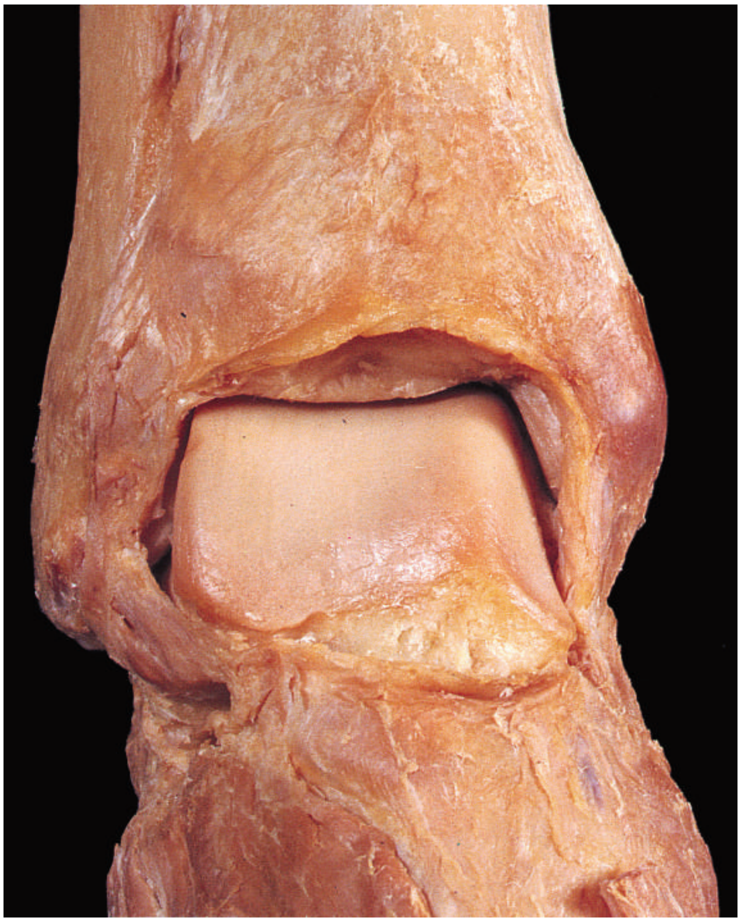


Fig. 6.85 Oblique inferior view of the wedge-shaped articular socket of the ankle joint.

ligament (Fig. 6.89) is attached by its apex to the tip of the medial malleolus. Its deeper fibres descend to the margin of the articular surface on the medial side of the talus and its longer superficial fibres attach to the tuberosity of the navicular, the medial border of the spring (plantar calcaneonavicular) ligament and the sustentaculum tali.

The lateral ligament has three components: the anterior and posterior talofibular and the calcaneofibular ligaments (Figs 6.87 & 6.88). All attach to the lateral malleolus. The anterior talofibular ligament passes forwards to the lateral side of the neck of the talus, the posterior talofibular ligament medially to the posterior tubercle of the talus, and the calcaneofibular downwards and backwards to the side of the calcaneus. Tearing of the medial and/or lateral collateral ligaments occurs with fractures of one or both malleoli. They are known by the clinical eponym of Pott's fracture.



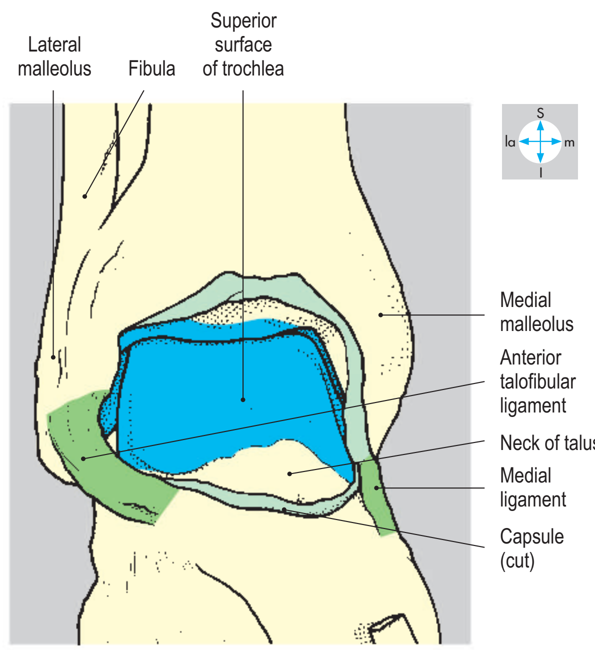


Fig. 6.86 Anterior view of the ankle joint showing articular surfaces, revealed by removal of the capsule.

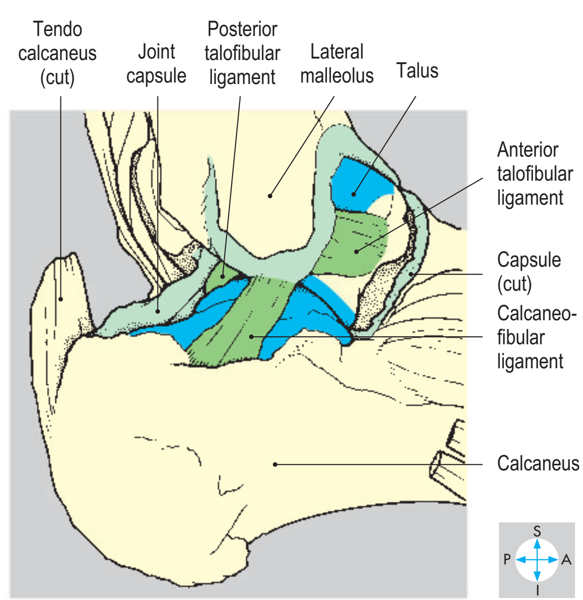


Fig. 6.87 Lateral aspect of joint to show lateral collateral ligament.

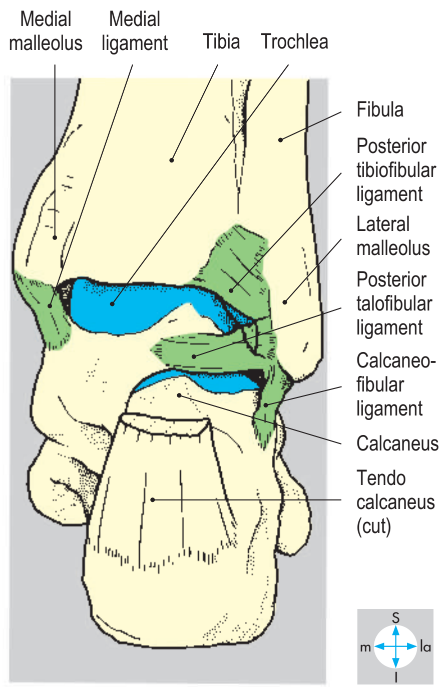


Fig. 6.88 Posterior view of the ankle joint showing the articular surface of talus after removal of the capsule.

Movements

Only extension (dorsiflexion) and flexion (plantar flexion) occur at the ankle joint, around a transverse axis between the malleoli. Plantar flexion is produced by soleus and gastrocnemius, assisted by tibialis posterior, flexors hallucis longus and digitorum longus, and fibularis longus and brevis. Extension (dorsiflexion) is produced by tibialis anterior, extensors hallucis longus and digitorum longus, and fibularis tertius.

Stability

The joint is very stable due to the wedge shape of the articulating surfaces and the strong collateral ligaments. During standing and walking, body weight tends to displace the tibiofibular socket forwards so that it becomes closely packed against the wider anterior part of the talus, which further enhances stability during dorsiflexion. Excessive forward displacement of the tibia and fibula on the talus is prevented by the posterior fibres of the medial (deltoid) ligament and by the calcaneofibular and posterior talofibular ligaments. However, in plantar flexion the narrow part of the talus articulates with the wider anterior part of the socket, allowing some side-to-side movement. In this position, forced inversion of the foot may damage the anterior talofibular ligament, one form of sprained ankle.

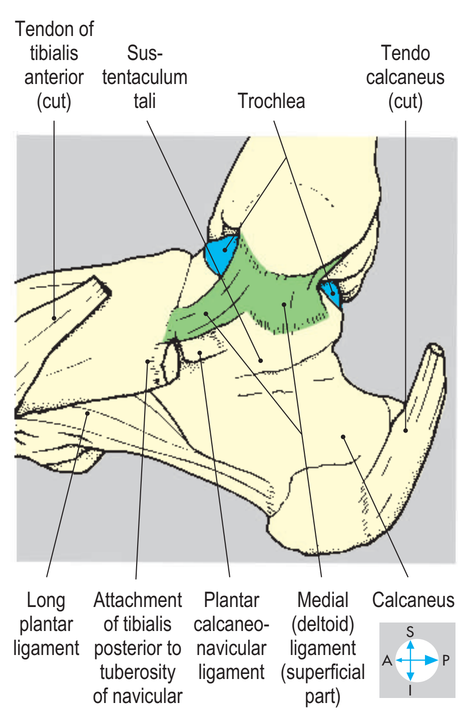


Fig. 6.89 Medial (deltoid) ligament (superficial part) of the ankle joint.

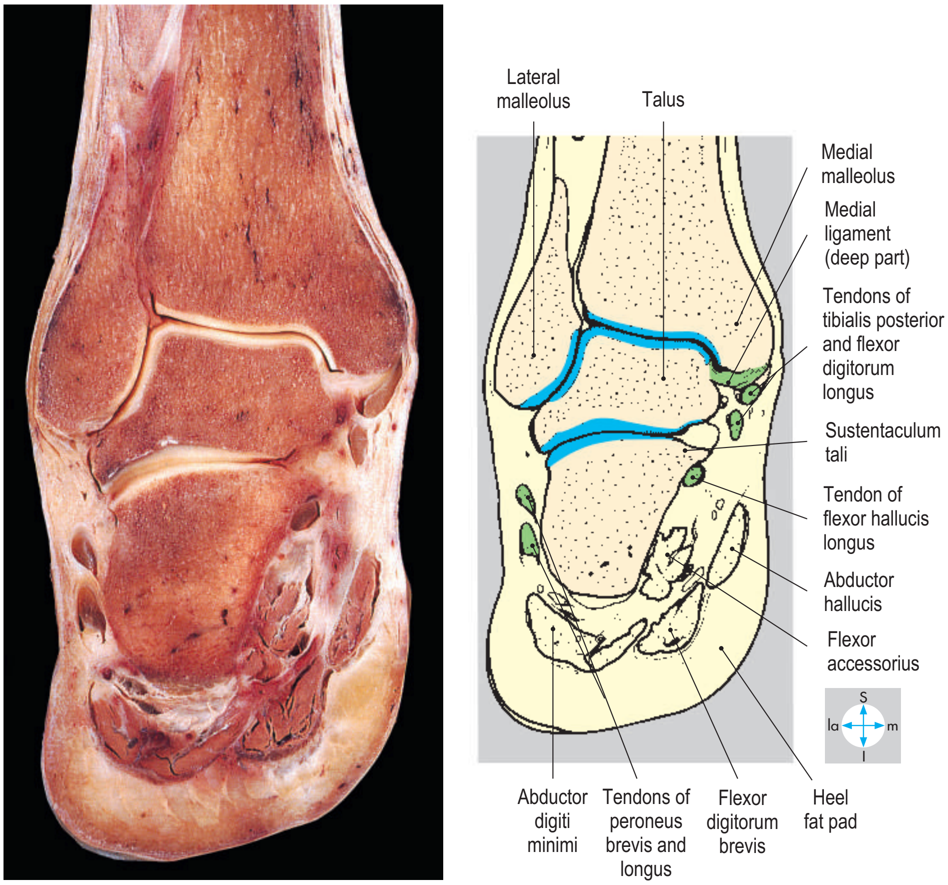


Fig. 6.90 Coronal section through ankle and talocalcaneal joints showing their relations.

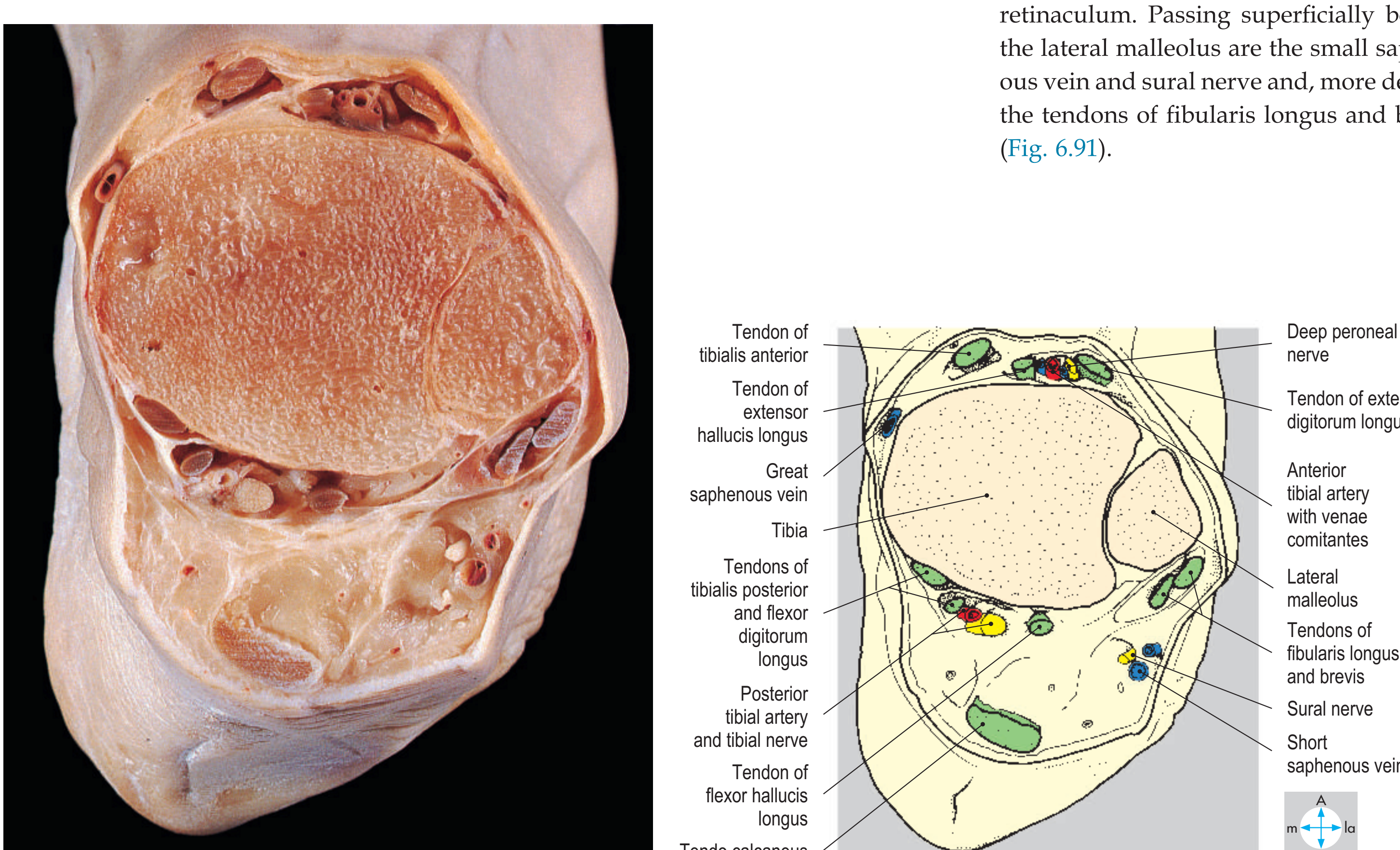


Fig. 6.91 Transverse section immediately above the ankle joint cavity showing relations.

Blood and nerve supply

Branches of the anterior and posterior tibial arteries, including the fibular, anastomose at the level of the malleoli and supply the joint. Innervation is from the deep fibular and tibial nerves.

Relations

The sides of the joint, the bony malleoli, are superficial (Fig. 6.90) and easily palpable. Passing subcutaneously in front of the joint are branches of the superficial fibular nerve and, just anterior to the medial malleolus, the saphenous nerve and great saphenous vein. On a deeper plane are the tendons of tibialis anterior and extensor hallucis longus, the dorsalis pedis artery, the deep fibular nerve, and the tendons of extensor digitorum longus and fibularis tertius (Fig. 6.91).

Posteriorly, the tendo calcaneus (Achilles) lies separated from the joint capsule by a bursa and pad of fat. Behind the medial malleolus are the tendons of tibialis posterior, flexor digitorum longus and flexor hallucis longus (Fig. 6.90), accompanied by the tibial nerve and posterior tibial artery (Fig. 6.91). Passing below the medial malleolus, they enter the foot beneath the flexor retinaculum. Passing superficially behind the lateral malleolus are the small saphenous vein and sural nerve and, more deeply, the tendons of fibularis longus and brevis (Fig. 6.91).

Joints of the Foot

These joints include those between the tarsal bones, the metatarsals and the phalanges. They are all synovial and have shapes related to their movements.

Tarsal joints

Although the tarsal joints are articulations between individual bones, they are usually classified into groups according to their locations (Fig. 6.92). The posterior tarsal group involves the talus and calcaneus; the midtarsals are between the talus and navicular on the medial side of the foot and between the calcaneus and cuboid on the lateral side; the anterior tarsals include the navicular, three cuneiforms and cuboid. All these joints are extremely stable.

Talocalcaneal joint

There are two articulations between the talus and calcaneus, each with a separate synovial cavity. Posteriorly is a saddle joint between the convex surface on the middle third of the calcaneus and the reciprocally concave surface on the body of the talus (Fig. 6.93). Anteriorly, two small flat facets on the anterior part of the calcaneus, including the sustentaculum tali, articulate with corresponding facets beneath the head of the talus (Fig. 6.93).

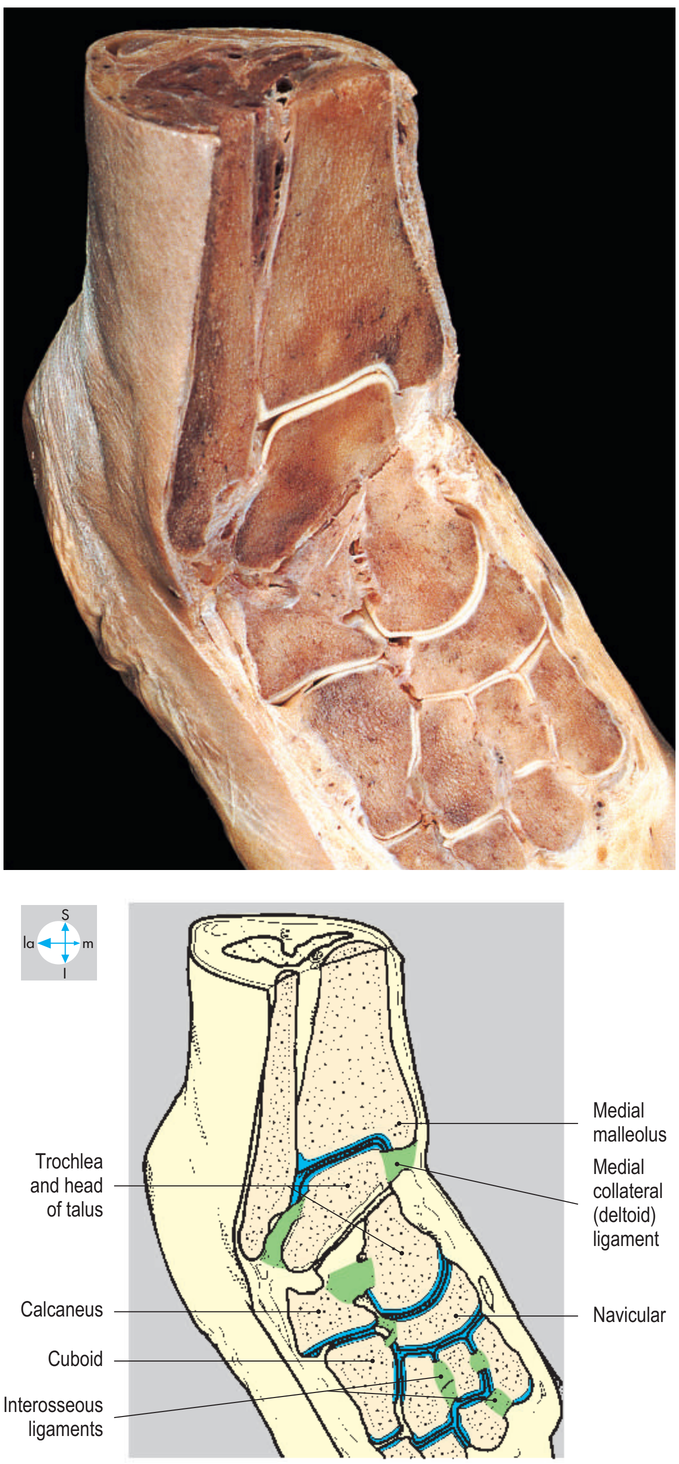


Fig. 6.92 Sections in two different planes through the ankle and foot to show ankle and tarsal joints.

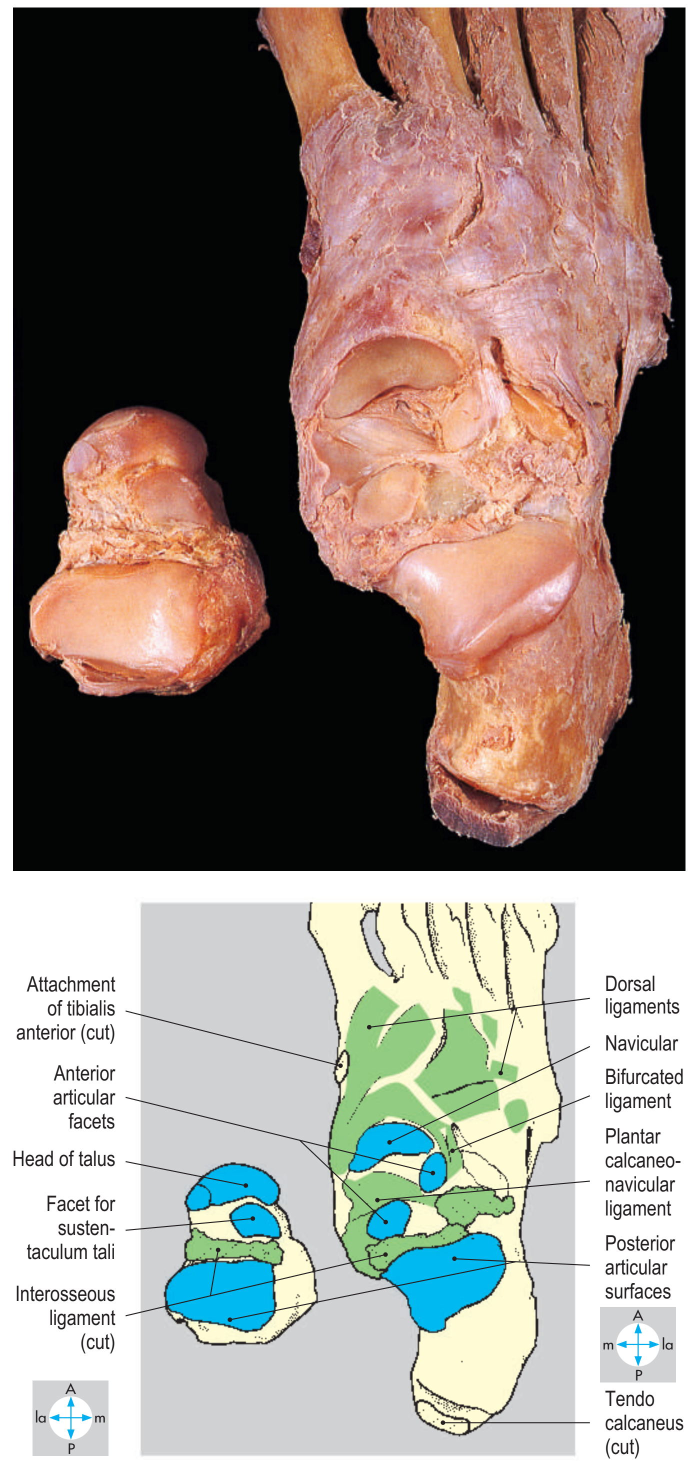


Fig. 6.93 Talocalcaneal and talonavicular joints. The talus has been disarticulated and turned over.

Talonavicular joint

The head of the talus forms a ball-and-socket joint with the posterior surface of the navicular. This joint shares a common synovial cavity with the anterior part of the talocalcaneal articulation. The combined joint, which involves the head of the talus, is termed the talocalcaneonavicular joint. The posterior talocalcaneal and talocalcaneonavicular joints form the subtalar joint.

Calcaneocuboid joint

At this plane joint, the flat anterior surface of the calcaneus articulates with the posterior surface of the cuboid (Fig. 6.92).

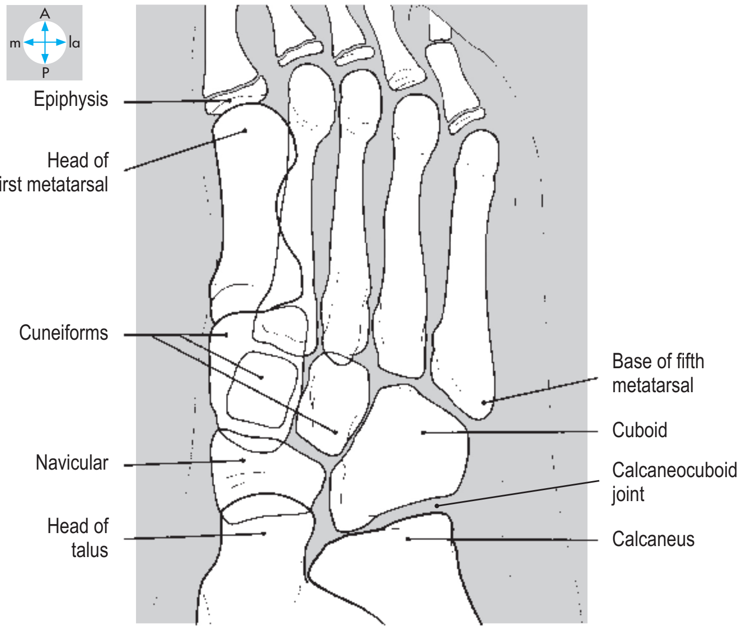


Fig. 6.94 Radiograph of juvenile foot showing tarsal bones and joints.

Other tarsal joints

Plane joints occur between the opposing surfaces of the navicular, the three cuneiforms and the cuboid (Fig. 6.92) and their synovial cavities freely communicate.

Capsules and ligaments

The fibrous capsules are attached around the margins of the articular surfaces. Short ligaments on the dorsum of the joints (Fig. 6.93) reinforce the capsules and, with the interosseous ligaments (Fig. 6.92), keep the articulating surfaces closely opposed. The strong interosseous talocalcaneal ligament (Fig. 6.93) in the sinus tarsi holds the talus and calcaneus together. The stem of the bifurcated ligament attaches to the anterior part of the calcaneus and its limbs to the navicular and cuboid. Beneath the tarsals, the long and short plantar ligaments (Fig. 6.56) unite the plantar surfaces of the calcaneus and cuboid. The plantar calcaneonavicular (spring) ligament (Fig. 6.93) unites the navicular and sustentaculum tali, supporting the head of the talus and completing the socket by which the head articulates with the navicular and calcaneus.

Movements

The most mobile of the tarsal joints is the talocalcaneonavicular joint. Its ball-and-socket shape permits rotation around an oblique axis, which passes upwards, forwards and medially through the neck and head of the talus. This rotation, together with gliding movements at the other tarsal joints, enables the anterior part of the foot to twist in respect to the more posterior part. These twisting movements involve raising either the medial or lateral border of the foot. Raising the medial border is called inversion and is produced by tibialis anterior and posterior, assisted by extensor hallucis longus. Raising the lateral border is called eversion and is brought about by fibularis longus, brevis and tertius.

Because of the oblique axis of the talocalcaneonavicular joint, inversion is always accompanied by plantar flexion and adduction of the foot, while eversion is accompanied by dorsiflexion and abduction. These additional movements can be compensated by simultaneous movements at other joints. Thus, the plantar flexion accompanying inversion can be offset by slight dorsiflexion at the ankle joint, while adduction can be offset by lateral rotation of the leg at the knee and hip joints.

Innervation

The tarsal joints are innervated by branches of the medial and lateral plantar nerves and the deep fibular nerve.

Tarsometatarsal and intermetatarsal joints

These are plane joints in which the bases of the fourth and fifth metatarsals articulate with the cuboid, while the bases of the first, second and third metatarsals articulate with the respective cuneiforms (Fig. 6.94). Dorsal, plantar and interosseous ligaments reinforce the joint capsules. These joints allow gliding movements during alterations in the height of the arches. Innervation is by plantar and deep fibular nerves.

Metatarsophalangeal and interphalangeal joints

In each of the ball-and-socket metatarsophalangeal joints, the metatarsal head articulates with the base of the proximal phalanx and the associated fibrocartilaginous plantar plate (Figs 6.95 & 6.96). A capsule enclosing the articular surfaces is reinforced on each side by a collateral ligament and dorsally by the extensor expansion. The principal movements are flexion and extension with only minimal abduction or adduction. The first metatarsophalangeal joint is especially important, bearing body weight during walking. Two sesamoid bones (Figs 6.101 & 6.102) are usually present in the plantar plate of this joint, closely associated with the insertions of the intrinsic muscles of the great toe (p. 282).

The interphalangeal joints (Figs 6.95 & 6.97) are hinge joints, allowing flexion and extension. The muscles moving these joints are described on p. 282. The joints of the toes are innervated by digital branches of the medial and lateral plantar nerves.

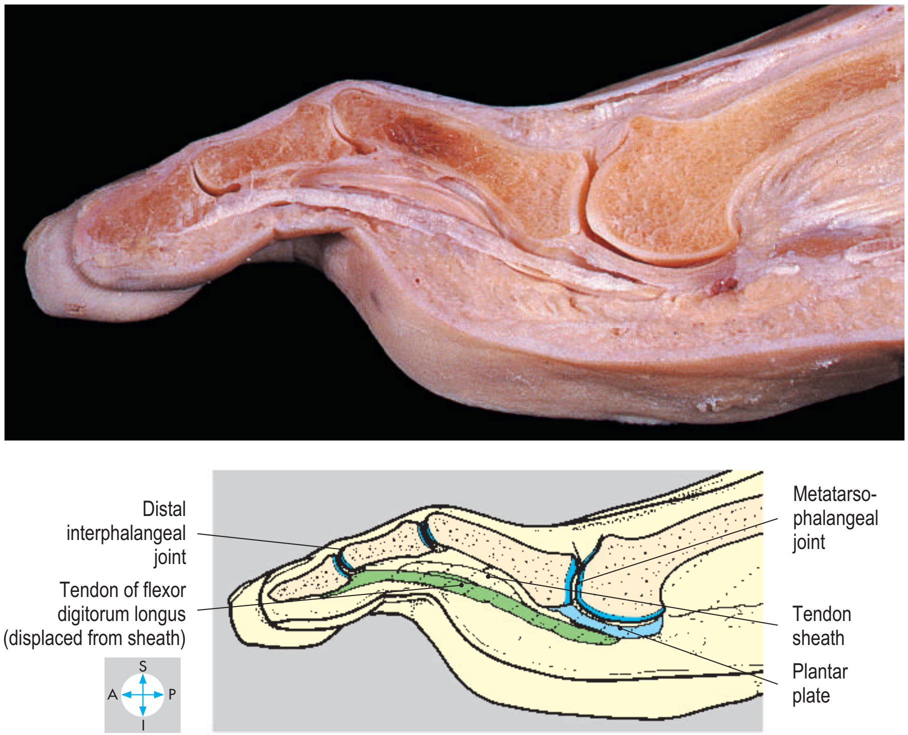


Fig. 6.95 Sagittal section through the third toe showing the metatarsophalangeal and interphalangeal joints.

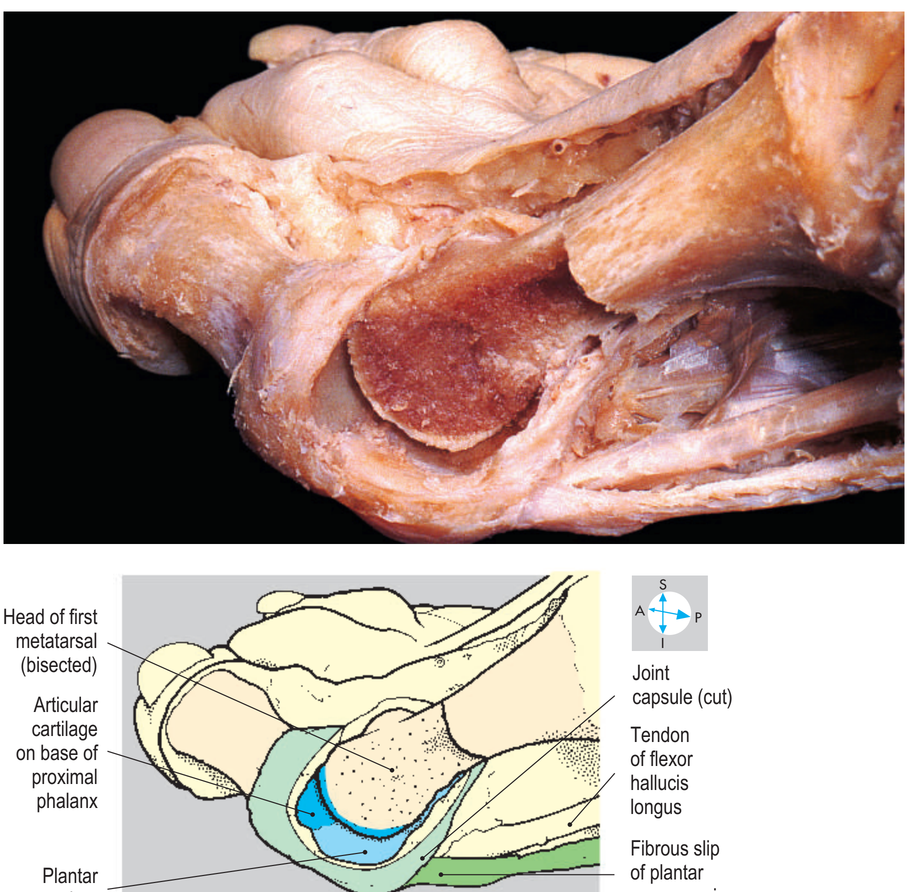


Fig. 6.96 Internal features of the first metatarsophalangeal joint. Part of the capsule and the distal part of the metatarsal bone have been removed.

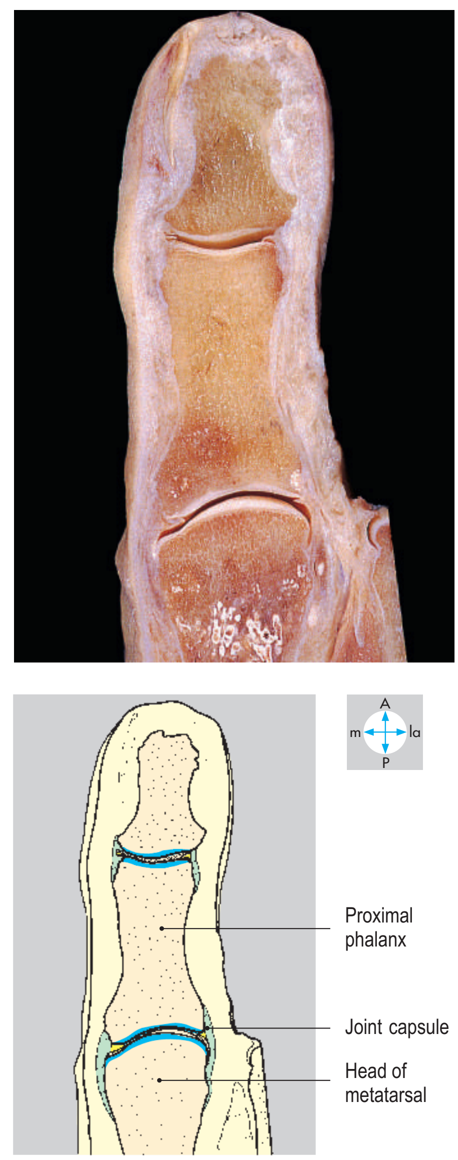


Fig. 6.97 Longitudinal section through the great toe showing its joints.

Arches of the Foot

The tarsal and metatarsal bones form two longitudinal arches, medial and lateral. The medial arch is higher, forming the instep of the foot, and consists of the calcaneus, talus, navicular, three cuneiforms, and medial three metatarsals (Figs 6.98, 6.99 & 6.100). The lateral arch comprises the calcaneus, cuboid and lateral two metatarsals (Fig. 6.98). Each arch has an anterior and a posterior pillar, which together transmit body weight to the ground. The posterior pillar of each arch is the same, namely the tubercles on the inferior surface of the calcaneus. However, the anterior pillars are separate, being formed by the heads of the appropriate metatarsals. The arches are important in relation to human bipedalism, as they enhance forward propulsion.

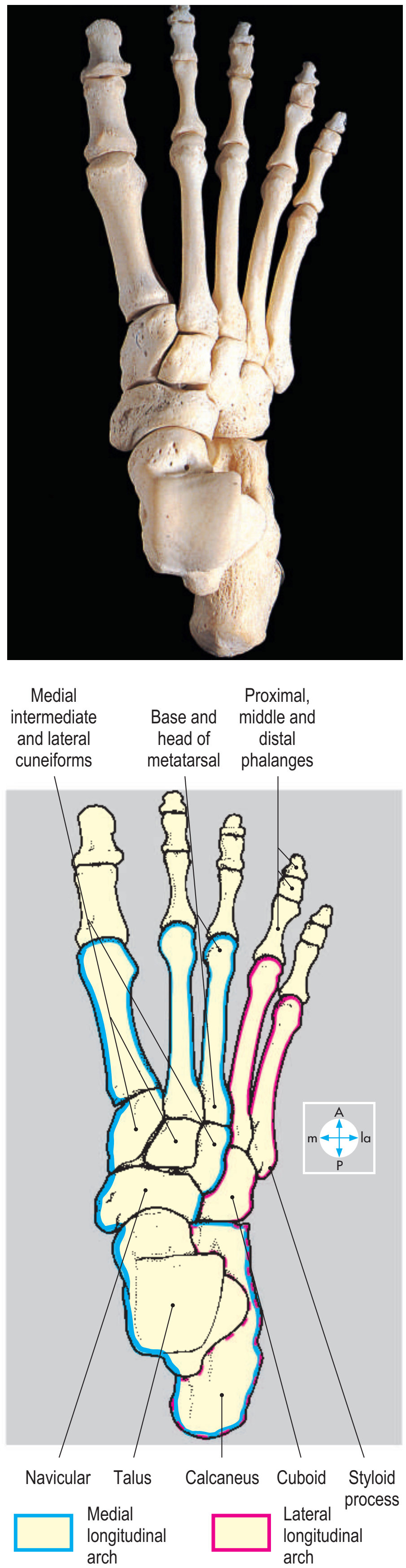


Fig. 6.98 Dorsal aspect of the bones of the foot showing the medial and lateral longitudinal arches.

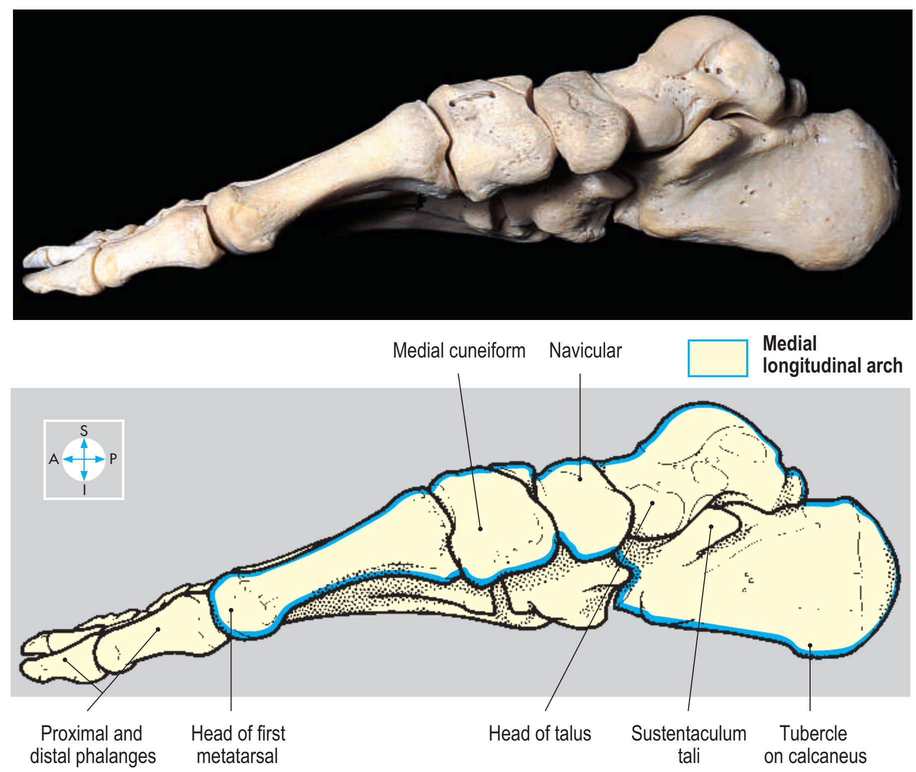


Fig. 6.99 Medial aspect of the bones of the foot to show the medial longitudinal arch.

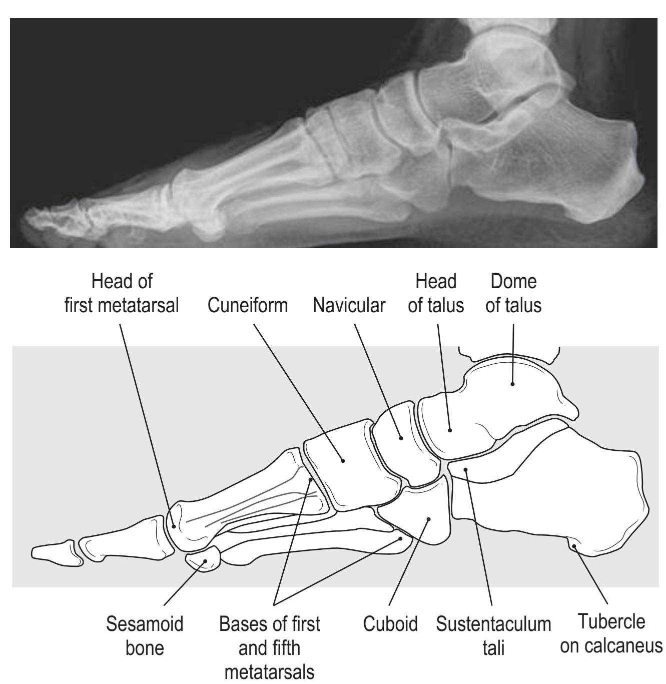


Fig. 6.100 Radiograph of foot showing longitudinal arches.

Stability

Factors in maintaining the arches include skeletal structure, ligaments, the plantar aponeurosis, and tendons and muscles. Skeletal structure is important in the medial arch, where at its highest point the head of the talus articulates in a wedge-like manner with the navicular anteriorly and the sustentaculum tali posteriorly (Figs 6.101 & 6.102). The head of the talus is supported inferiorly by the plantar calcaneonavicular (spring) ligament (Figs 6.93, 6.101), lying immediately above the tendon of flexor hallucis longus and a slip from the tendon of tibialis posterior, which passes backwards to the sustentaculum tali (Fig. 6.56). Tibialis anterior, through the attachment of its tendon to the first cuneiform and first metatarsal, may also support the medial arch, which it raises during inversion.

The lateral arch is supported by the long and short plantar ligaments and the tendon of fibularis longus. Both longitudinal arches derive support from the long flexor tendons of the toes and from the plantar aponeurosis, whose digital slips gain indirect attachment to the proximal phalanges (Fig. 6.96). When the heel rises from the ground the aponeurosis is passively tightened by extension of the toes at the metatarsophalangeal joints, thereby raising the longitudinal arches.

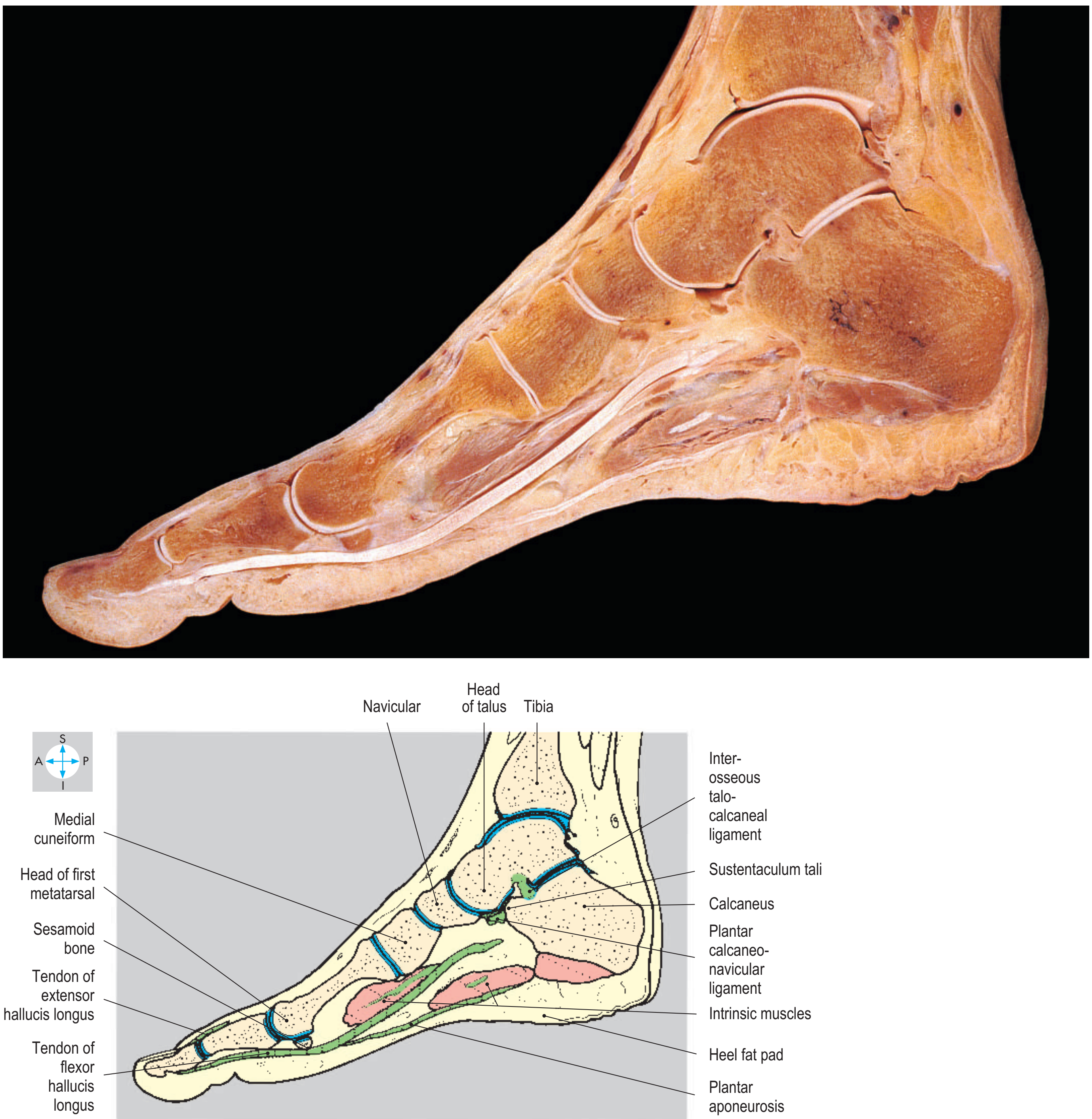


Fig. 6.101 Sagittal section of foot showing the medial longitudinal arch.

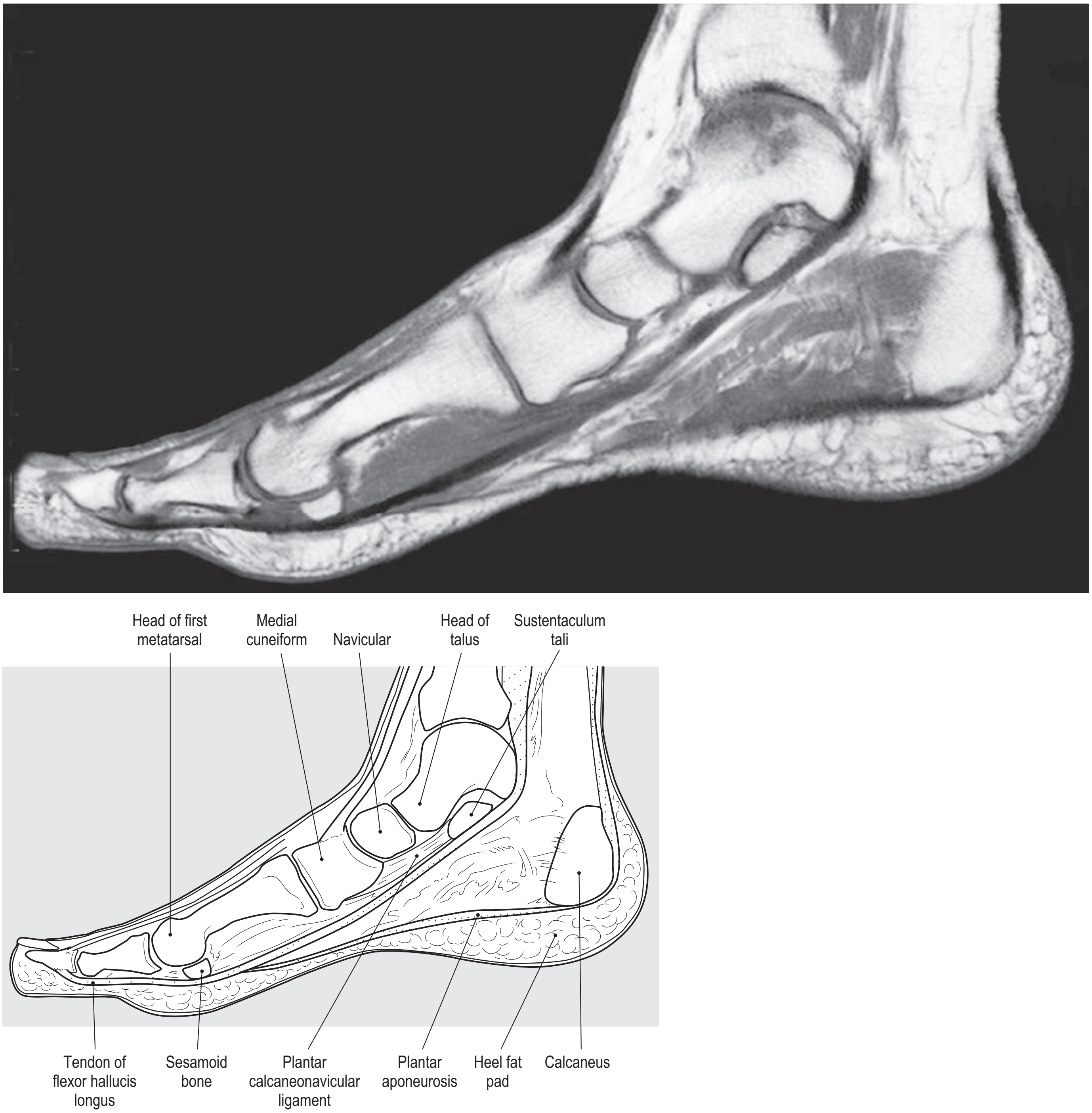


Fig. 6.102 MRI sagittal scan of foot and ankle.

Exam Skills

Each of the incomplete statements below is followed by five suggested answers or completions. Decide which are true and which are false. The answers are supplied on p. 417.

1. The gluteus maximus muscle:

a) has distal attachment principally to the iliotibial tract.
b) has a bursa separating it from the ischial tuberosity.
c) extends the hip and flexes the knee.
d) is supplied by the inferior gluteal nerve.
e) is attached to the sacrotuberous ligament.

2. Gluteus minimus muscle:

a) attaches to the anterior surface of the greater trochanter.
b) is supplied by the superior gluteal nerve.
c) is covered by the gluteus medius.
d) laterally rotates the hip.
e) during walking contracts in the weight-bearing limb.

3. Concerning nerves in the lower limb:

a) the sciatic nerve passes through the greater sciatic foramen.
b) the obturator nerve innervates the obturator internus.
c) the femoral nerve lies in the femoral sheath.
d) the lateral cutaneous nerve of the thigh passes through the inguinal ligament.
e) the genitofemoral nerve innervates skin on the anterior surface of the thigh.

4. Dermatomes in the lower limbs are located:

a) over the femoral triangle for L1.
b) along the medial border of the foot for L5.
c) over the gluteal region for S3.
d) over the footprint on the sole of the foot for S1.
e) on the lateral side of the leg for L4.

5. Concerning muscles in the thigh:

a) adductor longus separates the femoral from the profunda vessels.
b) vastus medialis forms the lateral wall of the adductor canal.
c) vastus intermedius attaches to the capsule of the knee joint.
d) iliopsoas forms the medial part of floor of the femoral triangle.
e) obturator externus lies below the capsule of the hip joint.

6. The femoral nerve:

a) has root origins from L2, L3 and L4 spinal cord segments.
b) lies lateral to the femoral artery.
c) gives cutaneous branches to the lateral side of the thigh.
d) supplies the sartorius muscle.
e) has a branch passing distally to supply the medial side of the foot.

7. The obturator nerve:

a) supplies obturator externus.
b) innervates the gracilis muscle.
c) has two divisions separated by adductor brevis.
d) supplies skin on the medial side of the thigh.
e) gives branches to the knee and hip joints.

8. Concerning the hip joint:

a) iliopsoas is a powerful flexor and medial rotator.
b) posterior dislocation endangers the sciatic nerve.
c) the surface marking lies just below the midinguinal point.
d) the iliofemoral ligament prevents backward tilting of the pelvis.
e) the neck of the femur lies intracapsular.

9. Concerning the patella:

a) the medial femoral condyle provides stability.
b) when dislocated it displaces laterally.
c) dislocation is more common in the female.
d) vastus medialis is attached to its medial border.
e) the prepatellar bursa is subcutaneous.

10. Concerning arteries in the lower limb:

a) the femoral artery is palpable at the midpoint of the inguinal ligament.
b) the popliteal artery lies close to the capsule of the knee joint.
c) the anterior tibial artery arises in the posterior compartment of the leg.
d) the posterior tibial artery passes behind the lateral malleolus.
e) the dorsalis pedis artery anastomoses with the plantar arch.

11. Concerning venous drainage of the lower limb:

a) communicating (perforating) veins direct blood from superficial to deep veins.
b) the great saphenous vein lies anterior to the medial malleolus.
c) the deep veins below the level of the knee comprise venae comitantes.
d) the small saphenous vein is accompanied by the sural nerve.
e) the superficial epigastric vein drains directly into the femoral vein.

12. Regarding the femoral sheath and its contents:

a) fascia iliaca forms the posterior part of the sheath.
b) the femoral vein lies in the lateral compartment.
c) branches of the ilioinguinal nerve pass anteriorly.
d) the femoral canal and ring are in the medial compartment.
e) pectineus muscle lies posteriorly.

13. Concerning the lymphatic system of the lower limb:

a) the main drainage is to inguinal lymph nodes.
b) skin on the lateral side of the foot drains into popliteal nodes.
c) superficial inguinal nodes drain the lower part of the anal canal.
d) lymph from the lower limb will reach the lumbar lymph trunk.
e) deep parts of the buttock drain into the deep inguinal nodes.

14. Concerning inversion and eversion of the foot:

a) inversion is produced by tibialis anterior.
b) inversion is produced by tibialis posterior.
c) inversion and eversion involve the subtalar joints.
d) inversion is produced by fibularis (peroneus) tertius.
e) eversion is produced by fibularis (peroneus) longus.

15. Concerning the knee joint:

a) the suprapatellar bursa reaches a hand's breadth above the patella.
b) the popliteus muscle attaches to the medial meniscus.
c) the tibial collateral ligament attaches to the medial meniscus.
d) the oblique popliteal ligament is derived from semimembranosus tendon.
e) the collateral ligaments limit extension.

16. Concerning the ankle joint:

a) forced eversion may tear the anterior talofibular ligament.
b) the calcaneofibular ligament prevents forward displacement.
c) the capsule extends onto the neck of the talus.
d) part of the innervation is from the deep fibular (peroneal) nerve.
e) it is less stable when plantar flexed.

Clinical Case Skills

The answers are supplied on p. 419.

Case Study 1

A 24-year-old athletic male soccer player was brought to the Emergency Department with a history of having fallen hard during a game and twisting his knee after being tripped.

On examination, he was lying with his left knee partially flexed. It was beginning to swell with fullness visible at the sides and above the patella, together with a slight patellar tap. All passive movements were painful. There was localized pain on deep pressure just medial to the patellar ligament over the joint line, and also severe pain over the joint line on the medial border of the knee. It became excruciating with firm medial-ward pressure applied over the lateral side of the joint at the same time as attempted abduction of the leg at the knee.

A plain frontal radiograph, including a film taken while manoeuvring the joint as described with attempted abduction of the leg at the knee, showed inequality of the femur/tibia joint line with widening on the medial side.

Questions:

1. What is the anatomical basis for patellar tap?
2. What structure was injured to be the cause of pain on deep pressure medial to the patellar ligament?
3. What structure was injured to explain pain on the medial border of the knee, accentuated by pressure over the lateral side with concomitant abduction of the leg?
4. Which ligaments are extracapsular and which are intracapsular? What are their roles in stabilizing the joint?

Case Study 2

A 45-year-old female shop assistant complained of pain and aching in her right leg over a period of several years. The symptoms were particularly bad at the end of the day. Recently, a lump had appeared in the left groin, which disappeared when she lay down on her bed, but reappeared on rising in the morning, and it became bigger when she coughed.

The patient was tall and not overweight. On standing, a large tortuous vein appeared beneath the skin, extending from the foot up the medial side of the limb into the groin. There was also a swelling, the size of an egg, just below the medial part of the crease in the groin. It disappeared when the patient was recumbent and especially if the limb was elevated.

The swelling, lying below and lateral to the pubic tubercle, had a smooth surface, was soft and uniform, and could be easily compressed. A direct impulse and thrill could be felt when the patient coughed. A large varicose vein was present along the whole length of the medial side of the limb. Trendelenburg's test was positive.

Questions:

1. Which vein was varicose?
2. What structure was giving rise to the swelling in the groin, and why was there a thrill over it when the patient coughed?
3. What mechanism is important in venous return from the lower limb and at what levels in the limb does it operate?
4. Swellings in the groin are common. What other structures may cause swellings here?

Case Study 3

The patient was a 60-year-old man with diabetes. For more than a year he had experienced increasing difficulty in walking due to cramps and pain in the calves of his legs. Although the pain was easier when he rested, it was becoming severe even at rest and interfered with his sleep at night. In the past 2 months he had noticed a black area at the end of his right big toe, which was getting worse.

The skin of both lower limbs, especially below the knee, was shiny, thin and hairless. No arterial pulses could be felt in the limb on the right side. The skin over the distal half of the right hallux was shrunken and black, being gangrenous with a sharp line of demarcation separating it from the more proximal part of the toe.

An arteriogram showed severe and widespread narrowing with irregularity of the walls and occlusion of the main artery just above the adductor tubercle. Extensive collaterals were present above and around the knee.

Questions:

1. Where is an arteriogram performed in the lower limb and why?
2. Where are the locations for detecting arterial pulsation in the lower limb?
3. What comprises the genicular anastomosis and which arteries contribute?

Case Study 4

A 20-year-old man presented to the neurology clinic with a 5-month history of weakness in the left leg and numbness in the left foot. There was a 6-month previous history of a chest infection during an overseas holiday, for which he was given two intramuscular injections in the left gluteal region.

The patient walked without any obvious limp although slight foot-drop was evident on the left side. There was weakness of plantar flexion, and further weakness on flexing the hallux. Midcalf wasting was evident on the left side. Diminished pain and touch sensation was noted over the left sole of the foot and the ankle-jerk reflex was absent.

Motor nerve conduction studies showed slowing of conduction in the left common fibular (peroneal) nerve compared with the right side, and sensory nerve conduction studies showed slowing in the left sural nerve compared with the right side.

Questions:

1. What nerve supplies the posterior compartments in the lower limb, and which of its branches supplies the muscles of the posterior compartment of the leg?
2. What does wasting of the calf muscles indicate about the level of the lesion?

Observation Skills

Identify the structures indicated. The answers are supplied at the foot of the page.

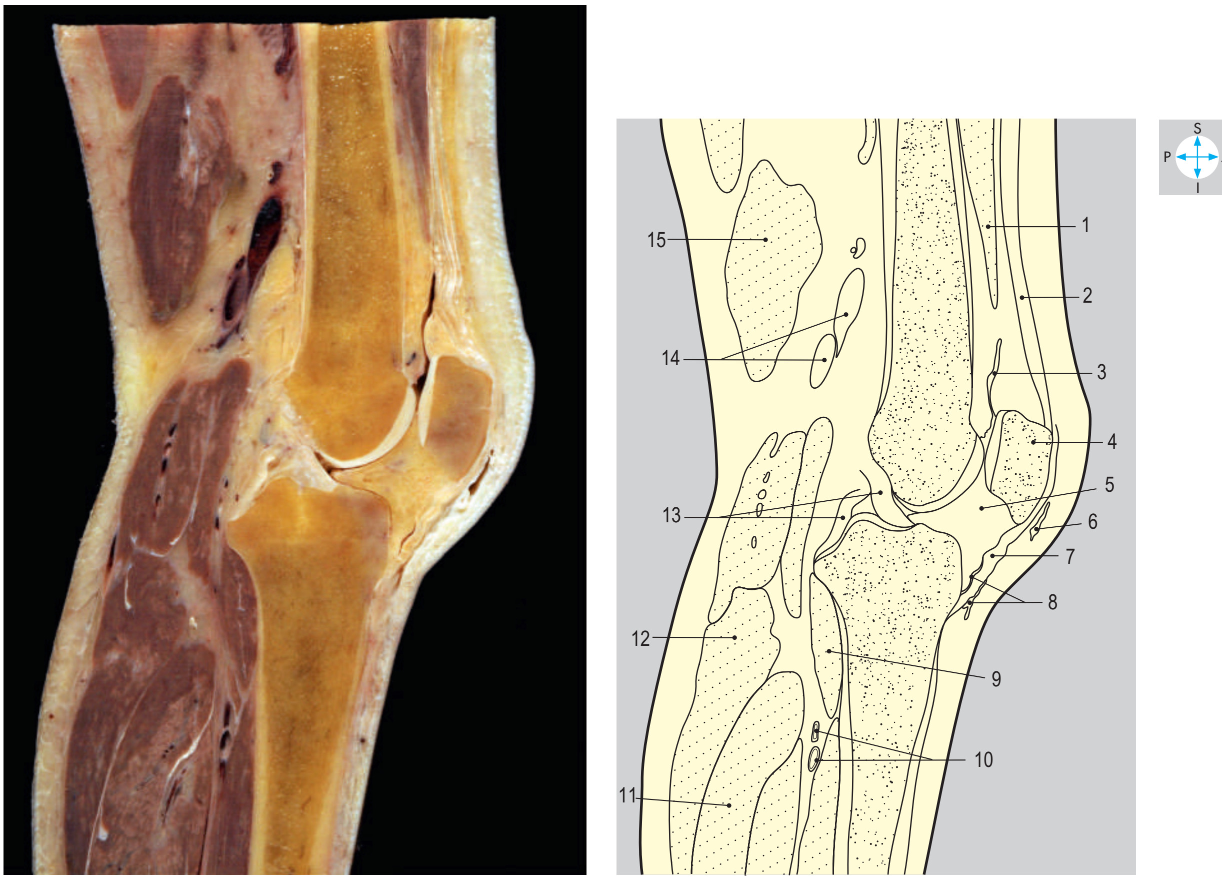


Fig. 6.103 Sagittal section of knee.

Answers:

Fig. 6.103 1 = vastus intermedius; 2 = quadriceps tendon; 3 = suprapatellar bursa; 4 = patella; 5 = infrapatellar fatpad; 6 = prepatellar bursa; 7 = patellar ligament; 8 = infra patellar bursae superficial and deep; 9 = popliteus; 10 = popliteal artery and vein; 11 = soleus; 12 = gastrocnemius; 13 = anterior and posterior cruciate ligaments; 14 = popliteal artery and vein; 15 = hamstring.

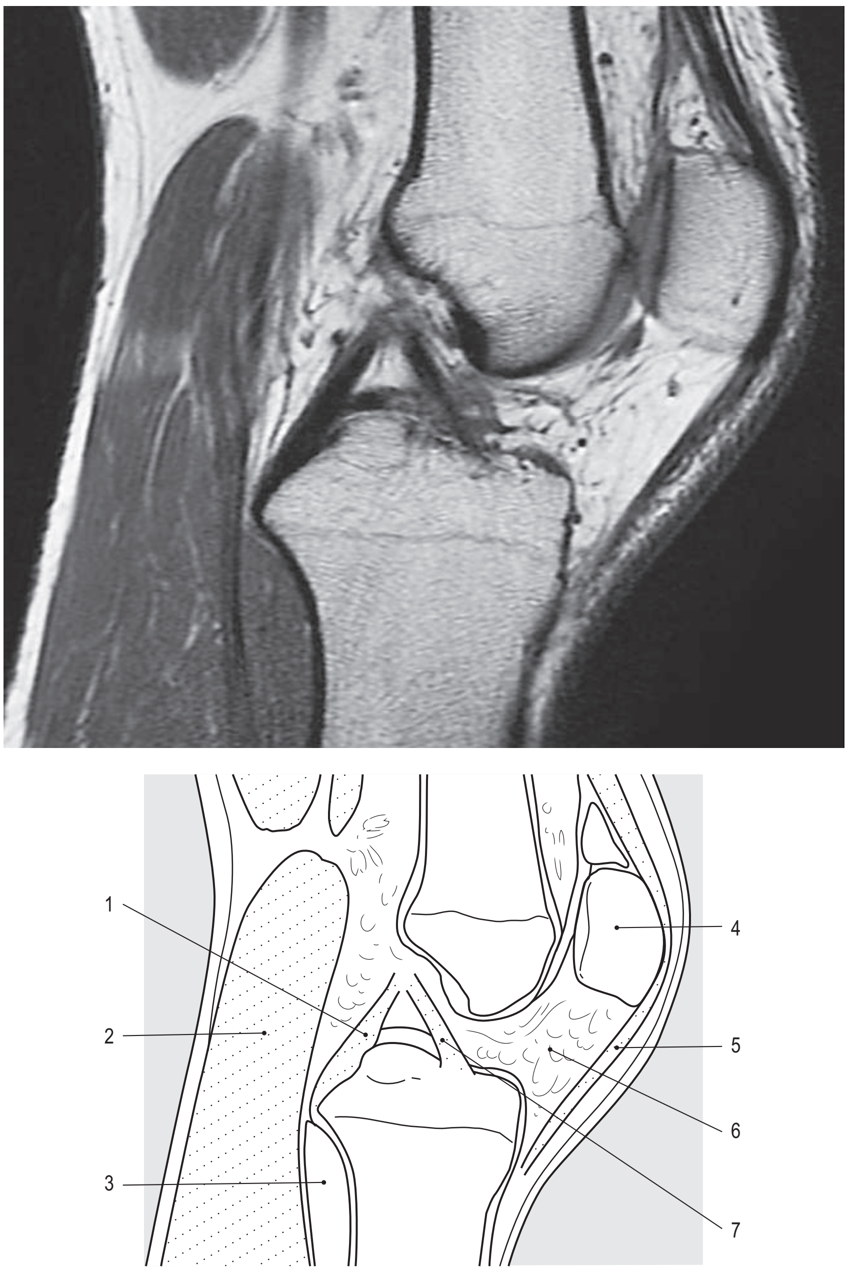


Fig. 6.104 Sagittal MRI section of knee.

Answers:

Fig. 6.104 1 = posterior cruciate ligament; 2 = gastrocnemius; 3 = popliteus; 4 = patella; 5 = patellar ligament; 6 = infrapatellar fatpad; 7 = anteriour cruciate ligament.

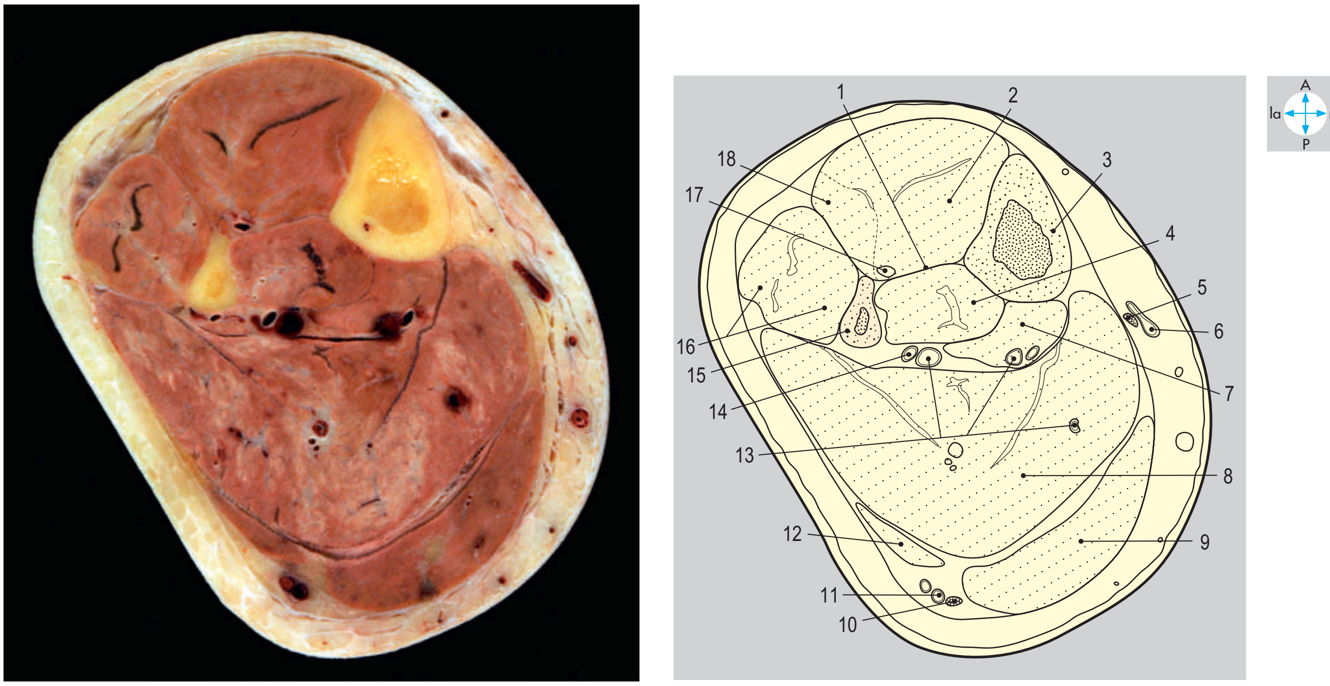


Fig. 6.105 Transverse section of leg.

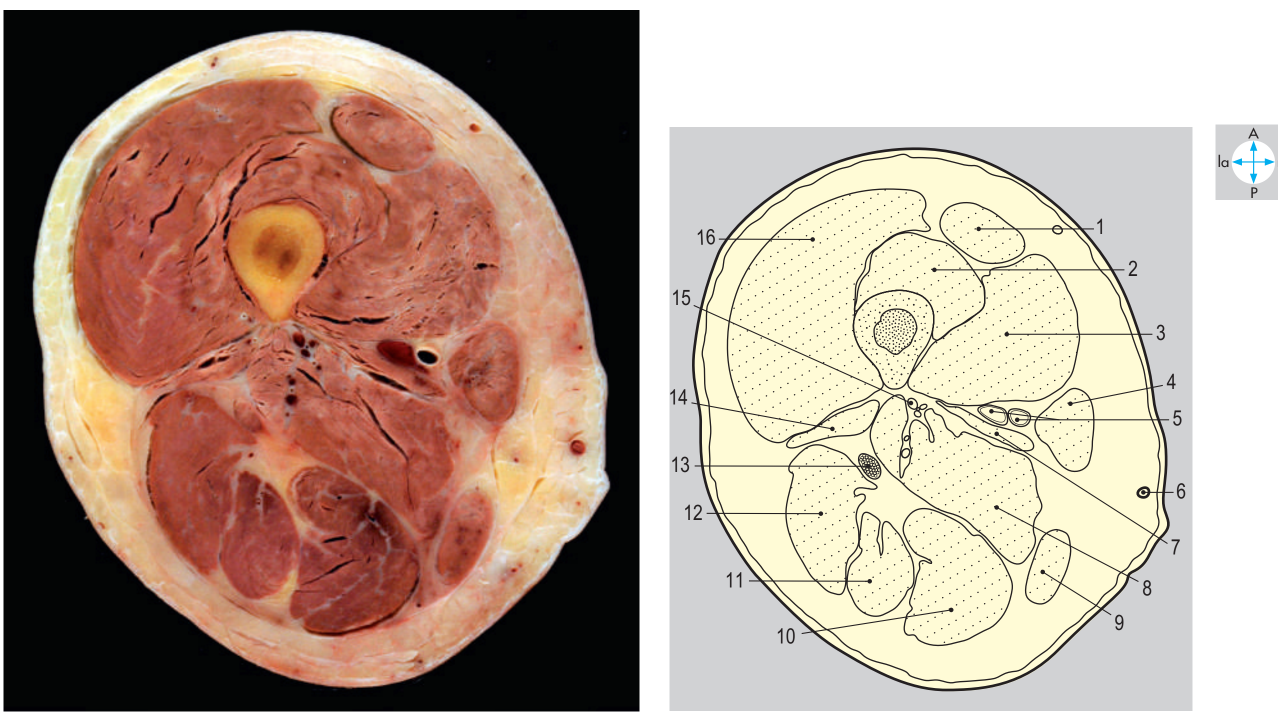


Fig. 6.106 Transverse section of thigh.

Answers:

Fig. 6.105 1 = interosseous membrane; 2 = tibialis anterior; 3 = tibia; 4 = tibialis posterior; 5 = saphenous nerve; 6 = great saphenous vein; 7 = flexor digitorum longus; 8 = soleus; 9 = medial head of gastrocnemius; 10 = sural nerve; 11 = small saphenous vein; 12 = lateral head of gastrocnemius; 13 = deep veins; 14 = posterior tibial artery; 15 = fibula; 16 = peroneal muscles; 17 = anterior tibial artery; 18 = extensor digitorum longus.

Fig. 6.106 1 = rectus femoris; 2 = vastus intermedius; 3 = vastus medialis; 4 = sartorius; 5 = femoral artery and vein; 6 = great saphenous vein; 7 = adductor longus; 8 = adductor magnus; 9 = gracilis; 10 = semimembranosus; 11 = semitendinosus; 12 = long head of biceps femoris; 13 = sciatic nerve; 14 = short head of biceps femoris; 15 = profunda femoris vessels; 16 = vastus lateralis.

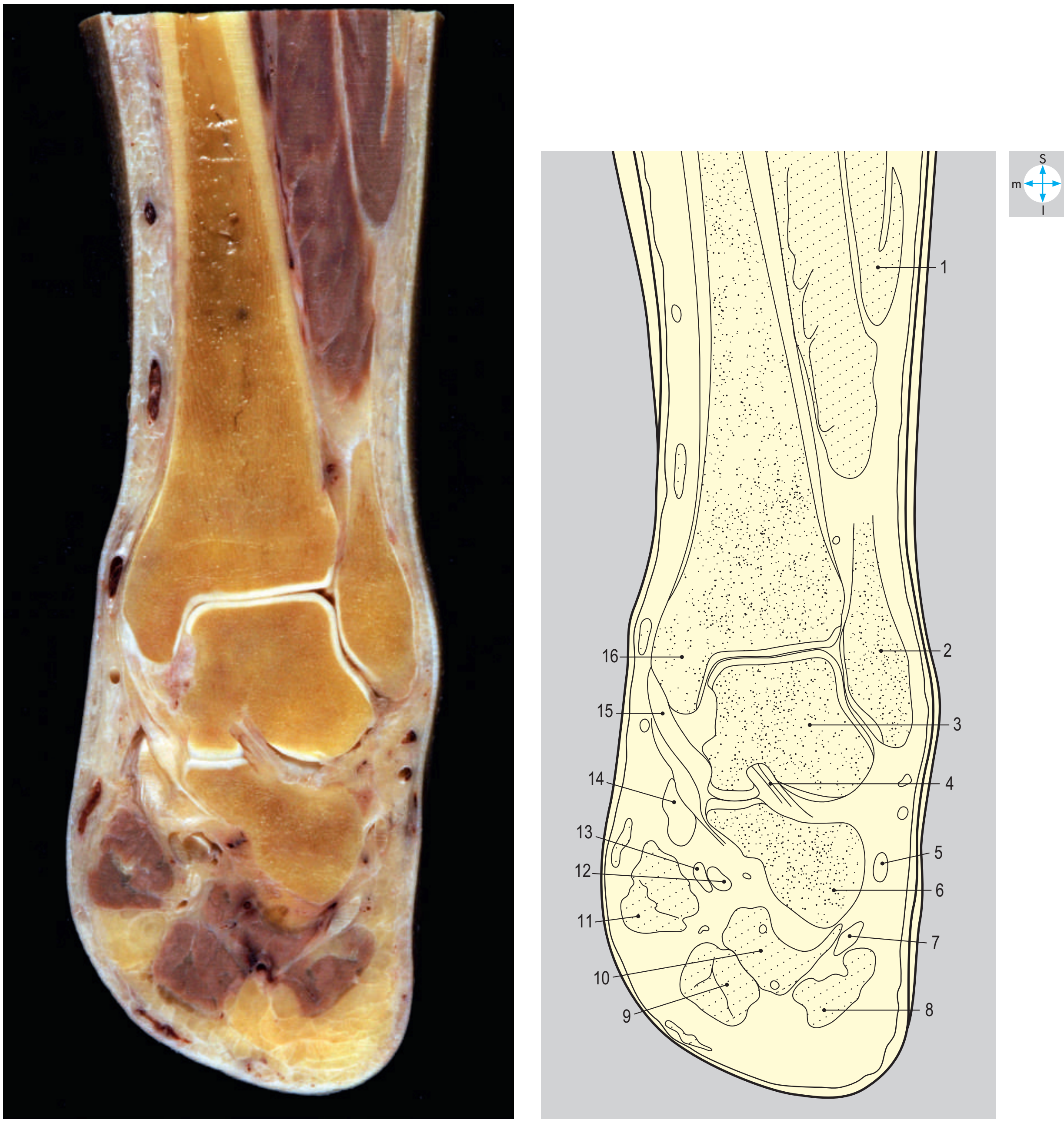


Fig. 6.107 Coronal section of ankle.

Answers:

Fig. 6.107 1 = peroneal muscles; 2 = lateral malleolus; 3 = body of talus; 4 = interosseous talocalcaneal ligament; 5 = fibularis brevis tendon; 6 = calcaneum; 7 = fibularis longus tendon; 8 = abductor digiti minimi; 9 = flexor digitorum brevis; 10 = quadratus plantae; 11 = abductor hallucis; 12 = flexor hallucis longus tendon; 13 = flexor digitorum longus tendon; 14 = tibialis posterior tendon; 15 = medial ligament; 16 = medial malleolus.

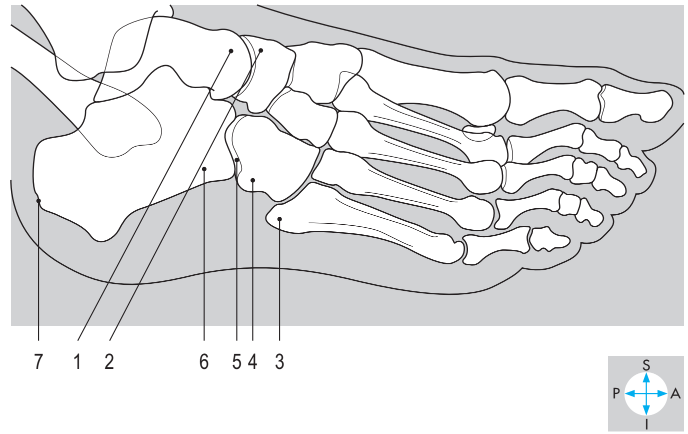


Fig. 6.108 Oblique radiograph of ankle and anteroposterior radiograph of foot.

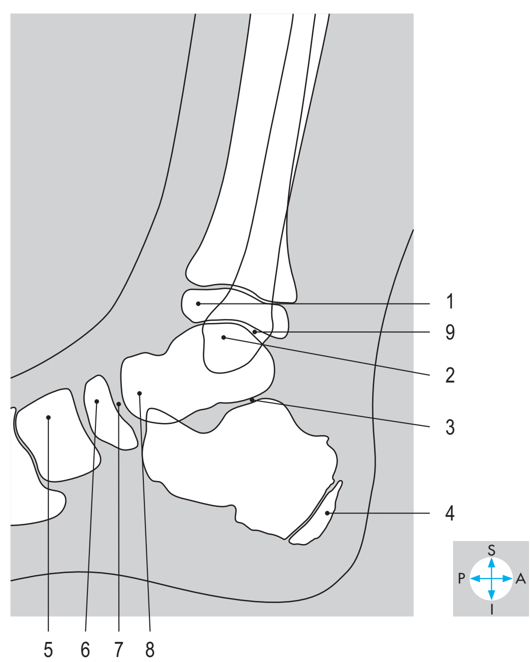


Fig. 6.109 Lateral radiograph of juvenile ankle.

Answers:

Fig. 6.108 1 = head of talus; 2 = navicular; 3 = base of fifth metatarsal; 4 = cuboid; 5 = calcaneocuboid joint; 6 = calcaneum; 7 = tubercle for tendo calcaneus.

Fig. 6.109 1 = epiphysis on distal end of tibia; 2 = dome of talus; 3 = subtalar joint; 4 = posterior traction epiphysis on calcaneum; 5 = medial cuneiform; 6 = navicular; 7 = talonavicular joint; 8 = head of talus; 9 = ankle joint.

Chapter 7

HEAD AND NECK

Introduction

The bones of the head and neck include the skull, the mandible and the cervical vertebrae (Fig. 7.1). The skull (cranium) comprises the neurocranium, which contains the brain and meninges, and the bones of the face (viscerocranium), attached to the anterior aspect of the neurocranium and clothed by soft tissues. The facial bones enclose the orbits, the nose and paranasal air sinuses, and the mouth and pharynx. The mandible articulates with the neurocranium at the temporomandibular joints.

The neck is the junctional region between the head and the thorax and the upper limbs, and is bounded above by the mandible and the base of the skull and below by the superior thoracic aperture (thoracic inlet) and pectoral girdle. The neck contains the seven cervical vertebrae and associated muscles, parts of the alimentary and respiratory tracts and the thyroid gland. In the midline immediately anterior to the vertebrae is the pharynx, which continues as the cervical oesophagus. Anterior to these are the larynx and upper trachea with the thyroid gland. On each side of the organs, major vessels pass between the thorax and the head, accompanied by nerves and lymphatics. The cervical vertebrae support the skull, allowing it to be moved in relation to the trunk. Within the cervical vertebral column lies the vertebral canal, containing the spinal cord enclosed by meninges. The neck is enclosed by investing fascia, subcutaneous tissue and skin.

Arising from the brainstem are 12 pairs of cranial nerves (Fig. 7.2), which provide innervation for structures in the head and neck. One cranial nerve, the vagus (X), is distributed not only to the head and neck but also to structures in the thorax and abdomen. Eight pairs of segmental spinal nerves arise from the cervical part of the spinal cord. The upper cervical spinal nerves are distributed to the head and neck, whereas the lower ones descend into the upper limbs and thorax. Dermatomes of the head and neck are derived from the trigeminal (V) nerve and from cervical spinal nerves (Fig. 7.3).

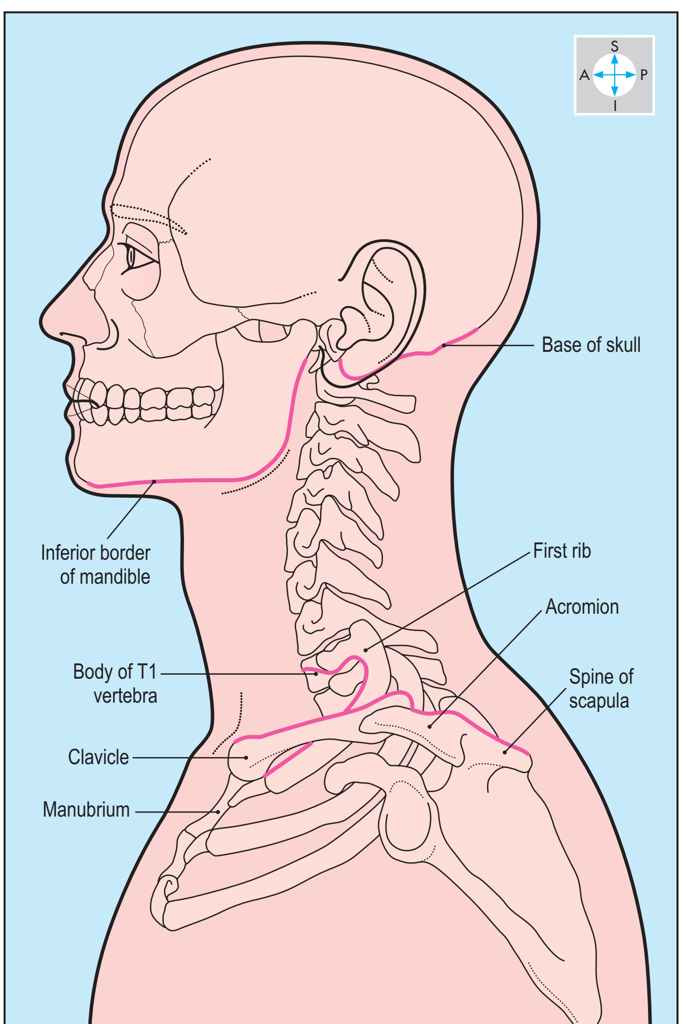


Fig. 7.1 Skeleton of head and neck. Boundary of neck (pink line).

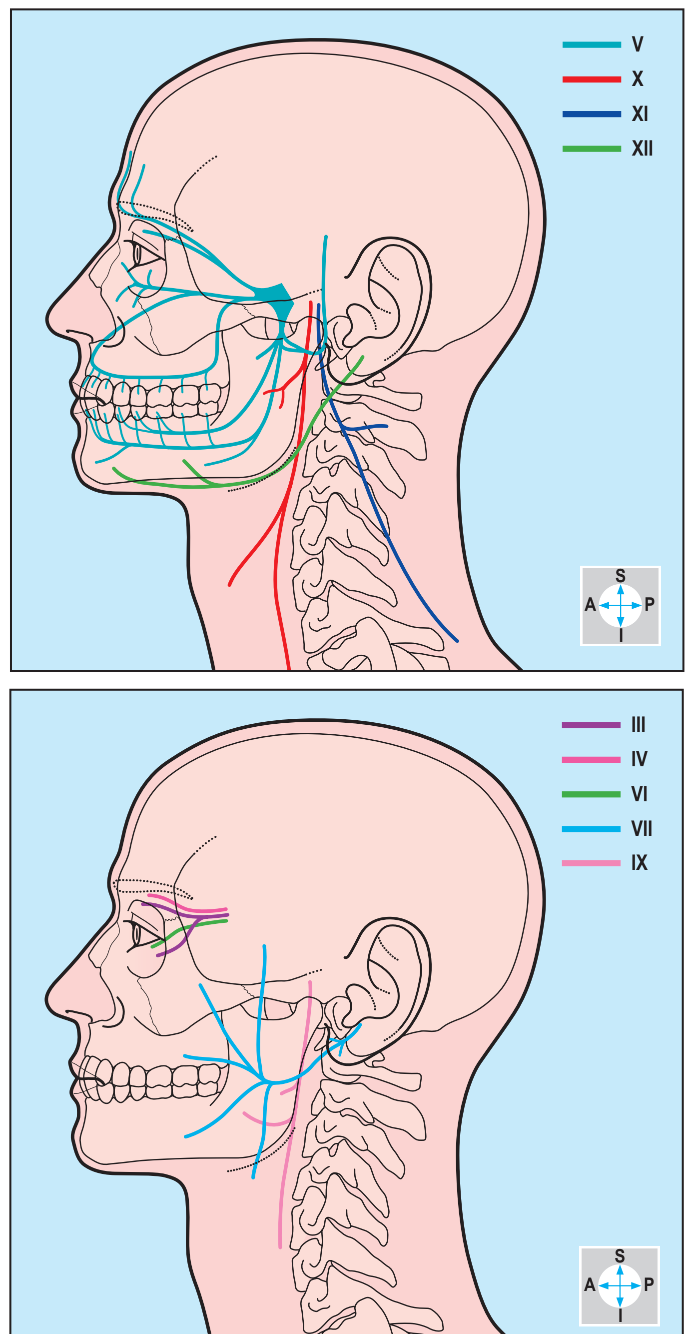


Fig. 7.2 Extracranial parts of cranial nerves III–VII and IX–XII.

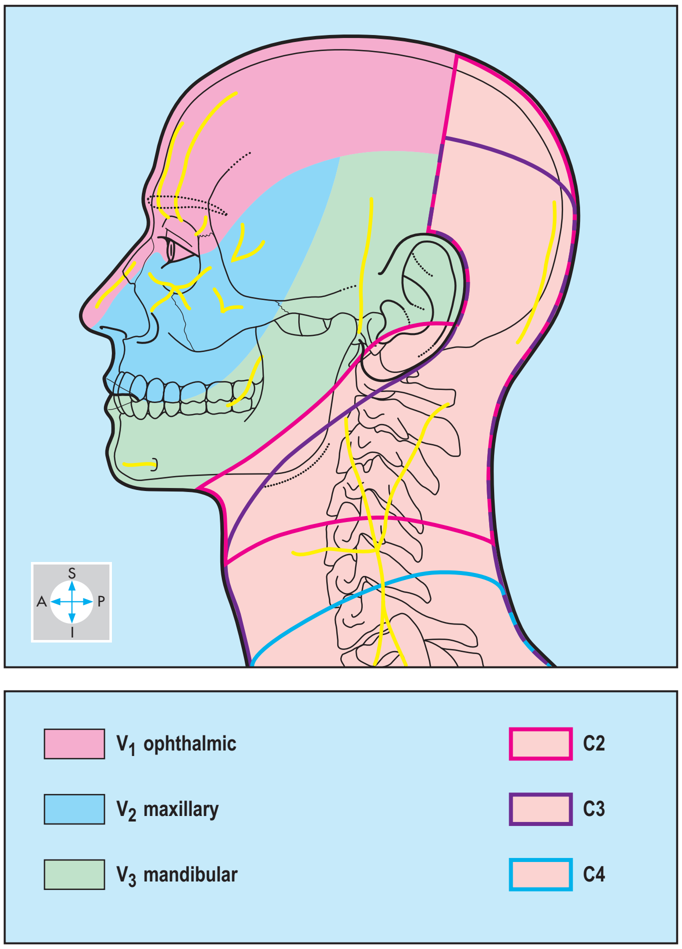


Fig. 7.3 The dermatomes of the head and neck. Cutaneous nerves are shown in yellow.

The arterial supply to the head and neck (Fig. 7.4) is derived from the paired common carotid and vertebral arteries. Each common carotid artery divides to form an internal carotid artery, supplying the contents of the neurocranium and the orbit, and an external carotid artery which supplies the face, most of the scalp and the upper part of the neck. Branches from the subclavian arteries supply structures in the root of the neck. Each vertebral artery ascends through foramina in the transverse processes of the cervical vertebrae and enters the skull via the foramen magnum to assist in the supply to intracranial structures.

Venous drainage (Fig. 7.4) occurs through superficial and deep systems, which communicate in several places. Superficial veins of the face, scalp and neck drain via the external jugular veins into the subclavian veins. Blood from deeper structures of the face and from within the neurocranium drains through the internal jugular veins into the brachiocephalic veins.

Lymph drains through a chain of lymph vessels and nodes lying along the internal jugular vein and is returned to the venous system, usually at the junction of internal jugular and subclavian veins.

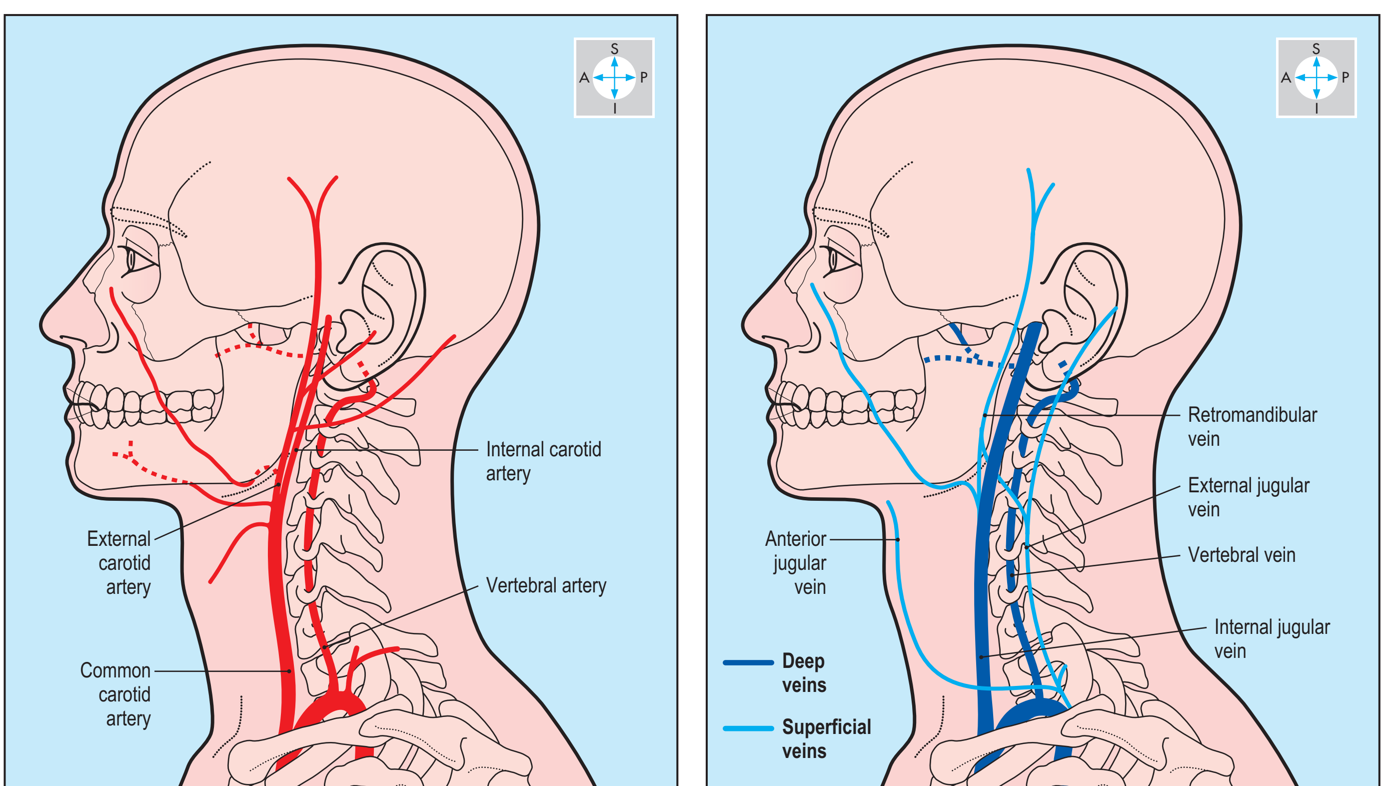
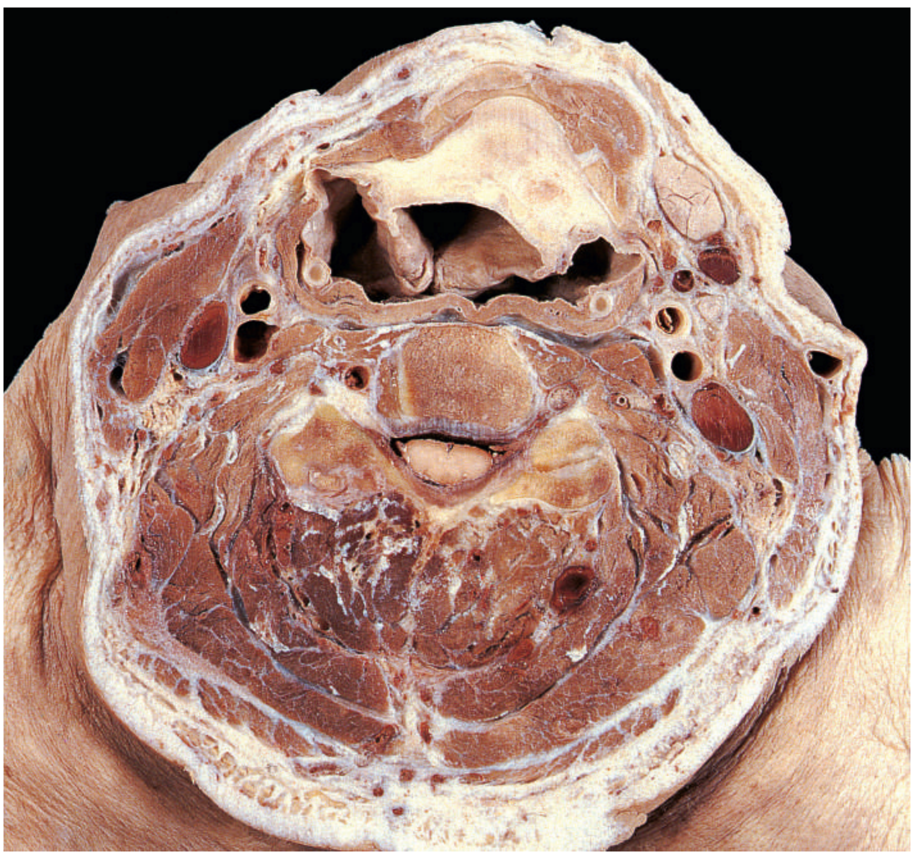


Fig. 7.4 The main arteries and veins of the head and neck.

Neck

Fascial layers

These are complex and are divided into four components: investing fascia, prevertebral fascia, pretracheal fascia and carotid sheaths (Fig. 7.5). The investing fascia is analogous to deep fascia in the limbs. Deep to the skin and superficial tissues, it surrounds the neck, extending from the pectoral girdle below to the base of the skull and mandible above, and splits to enclose trapezius and sternocleidomastoid. Superiorly, the investing fascia is attached to the superior nuchal lines and to the mastoid processes. Between the mastoid process and the angle of the mandible the fascia encloses the parotid gland. Its superficial layer passes superiorly over the surface of the gland to attach to the zygomatic arch; on its deep surface the fascia is thickened to form the stylomandibular ligament. Inferiorly, the investing fascia is attached to the spine of the scapula, the acromion, the superior border of the clavicle, and the manubrium.



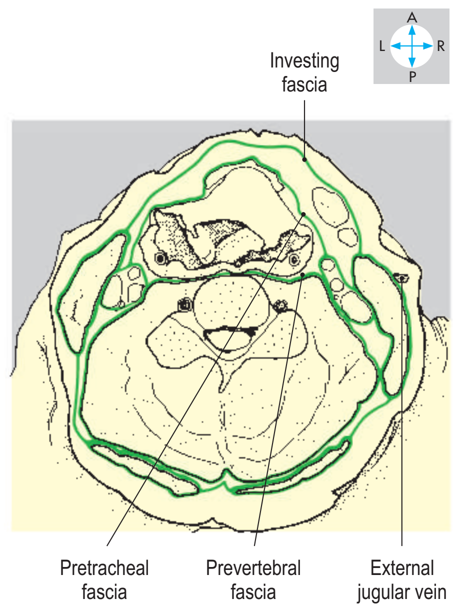
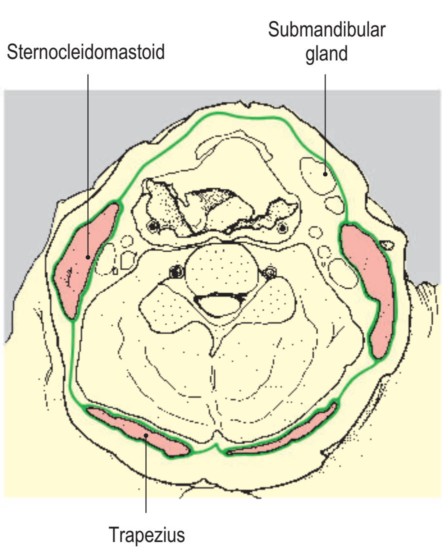
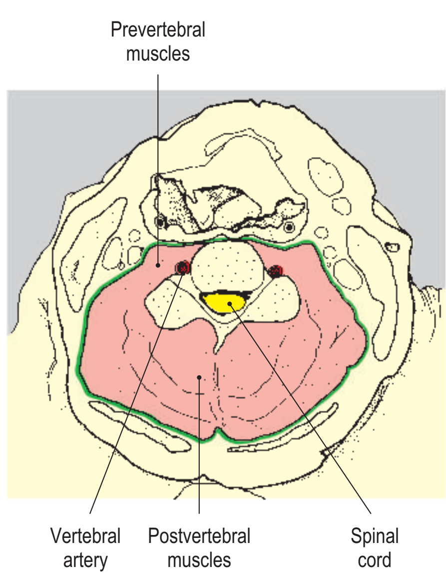


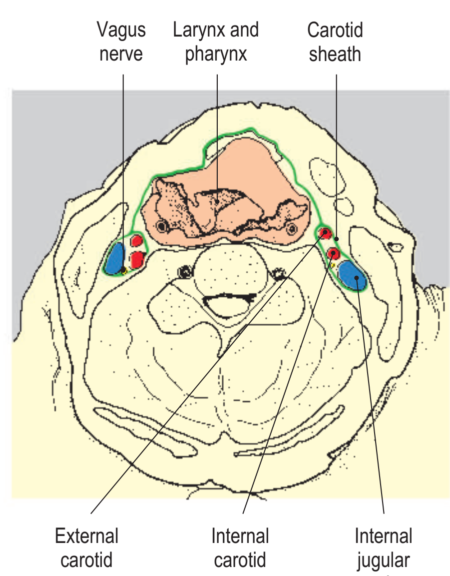
Fig. 7.5 Transverse section at the level of the fourth cervical vertebra showing the layers of cervical fascia (green lines). Superior aspect. (Compare Fig 7.95.) The layers are shown separately in the diagrams below.



The investing fascia and its enclosures.



The prevertebral fascia and its enclosures.



The pretracheal fascia and carotid sheaths and their enclosures.

The prevertebral fascia encloses the vertebral column, pre- and postvertebral muscles and origins of the cervical and brachial plexuses. Superiorly, it attaches to the base of the skull and inferiorly, it extends into the superior mediastinum.

The pretracheal fascia covers the anterior and lateral aspects of the trachea and larynx, limited superiorly by the hyoid bone and by the oblique lines on the thyroid cartilage. It splits to enclose the thyroid gland and inferiorly fuses with the adventitia of the aortic arch in the superior mediastinum. Posterolaterally on each side, the pretracheal fascia blends with the carotid sheath.

Each of the two carotid sheaths contains a common, an internal and part of an external carotid artery, a vagus nerve and an internal jugular vein. The sheaths are attached to the base of the skull around the jugular and carotid foramina and pass inferiorly to the aortic arch and brachiocephalic veins to fuse with the adventitia covering these vessels.

Infection can track superiorly and inferiorly between these fascial layers.

For purposes of anatomical description, the superficial part of each side of the neck is divided into anterior and posterior triangles separated by sternocleidomastoid.

Sternocleidomastoid (sternomastoid)

This muscle passes obliquely upwards and backwards from the manubrium and the medial end of the clavicle to the mastoid process and superior nuchal line of the skull (Fig. 7.6). One sternocleidomastoid acting alone turns the head towards the opposite shoulder, whereas acting together both muscles protrude the head forwards. Sternocleidomastoid is innervated by the spinal part of the accessory nerve (XI).

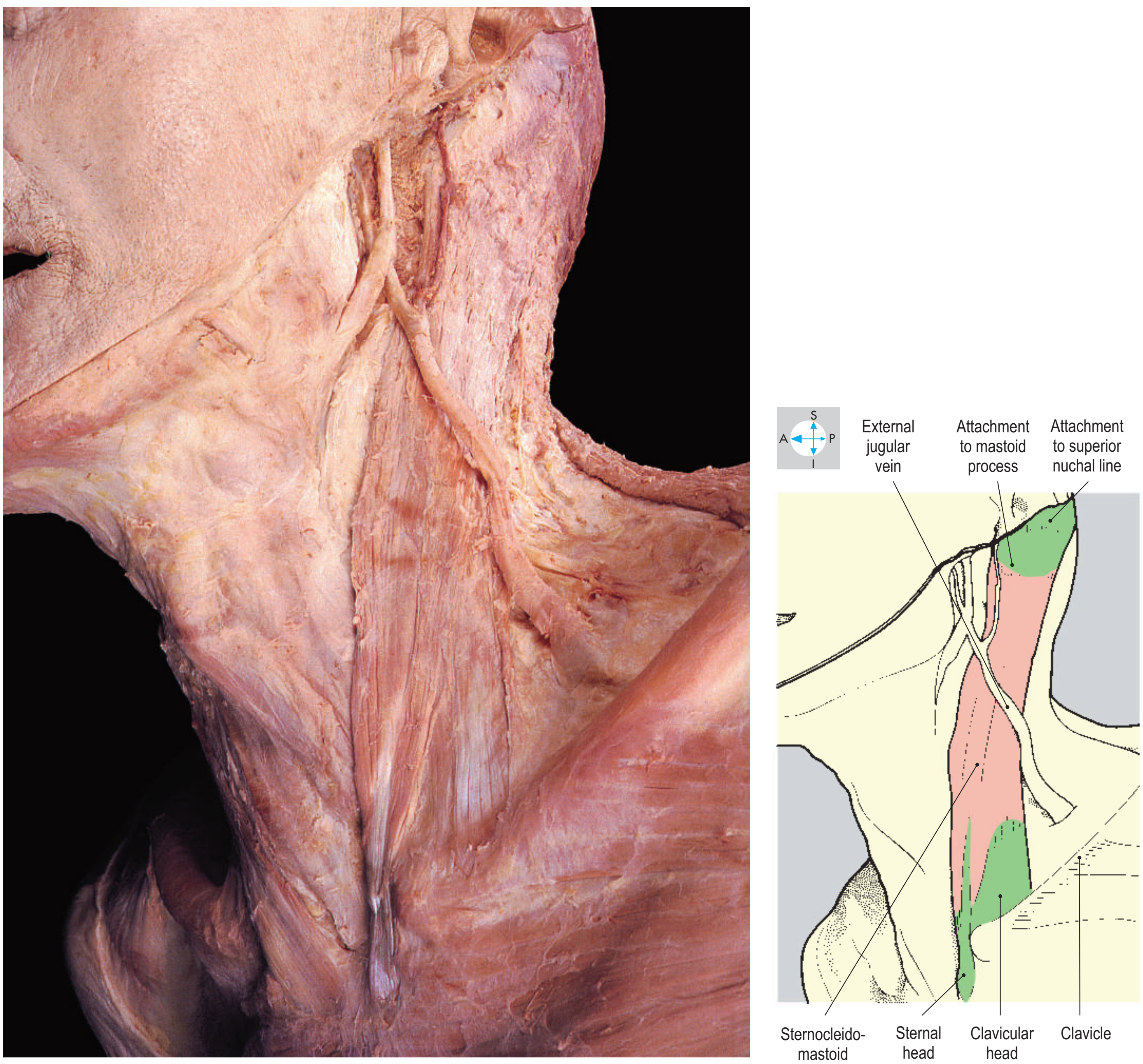


Fig. 7.6 Oblique view of the neck showing sternocleidomastoid after removal of the investing fascia covering sternocleidomastoid and trapezius.

Posterior triangle of neck

This triangle is bounded anteriorly by sternocleidomastoid and posteriorly by trapezius. Inferiorly, the upper border of the clavicle forms the base, while superiorly, the attachments of sternocleidomastoid and trapezius converge onto the superior nuchal line to form the apex of the triangle. The posterior triangle does not lie in a flat plane but spirals so that the inferior portion is directed anteriorly, while the apex faces posterolaterally.

Roof

The roof of the triangle is formed by the investing fascia, which spans the interval between trapezius and sternocleidomastoid. The external jugular vein initially lies vertically over the sternocleidomastoid just beneath the skin and then passes onto the roof of the lower part of the triangle. The vein pierces the roof just above the clavicle to enter the triangle and drain into the subclavian vein. Cutaneous branches of the cervical plexus also lie superficial to the roof of the triangle (Fig. 7.7).

Floor

The floor of the posterior triangle is formed by the prevertebral fascia covering the paravertebral muscles, which are, from above downwards, splenius capitis, levator scapulae and scalenus posterior, medius and anterior (Fig. 7.8). Deep to the prevertebral fascia are the subclavian artery, the three trunks of the brachial plexus and the cervical plexus. Continuing laterally to reach the axilla, the brachial plexus and the subclavian artery are enclosed in a prolongation of the prevertebral fascia, the axillary sheath. Injection of local anaesthetic inside the axillary sheath blocks sensation from the upper limb. Deep to the scalene muscles, subclavian vessels and brachial plexus are the pleura and apex of the lung. These are vulnerable to accidental penetration during cannulation of the subclavian vessels.

Contents

Between the floor and the roof of the triangle lie the contents (Fig. 7.9), which include a number of vascular structures, the spinal part of the accessory (XI) nerve, components of the cervical plexus and supraclavicular and occipital lymph nodes. The spinal part of the accessory nerve passes obliquely across the triangle from beneath the posterior border of sternocleidomastoid to leave deep to the anterior border of trapezius. It supplies both of these muscles. In the lower part of the triangle the inferior belly of omohyoid passes towards its scapular attachment. Two branches of the thyrocervical trunk, namely the transverse cervical and suprascapular arteries, also pass laterally across the triangle to the scapula. At the apex of the triangle the occipital artery emerges to supply part of the scalp. The subclavian vein is sometimes visible just above the clavicle.

Cervical plexus

The cervical plexus is formed from the anterior rami of the first four cervical spinal nerves and supplies the paravertebral muscles with segmental branches. It provides a branch from C1 to the hypoglossal nerve and branches from C2 and C3, which all contribute to the ansa cervicalis. The phrenic nerve, the principal innervation of the diaphragm, is formed from C3, C4 and C5 and runs vertically downwards on the anterior surface of scalenus anterior, behind the prevertebral fascia.

Sensory branches from the cervical plexus (Fig. 7.7) pass through the triangle and emerge by piercing the roof near the

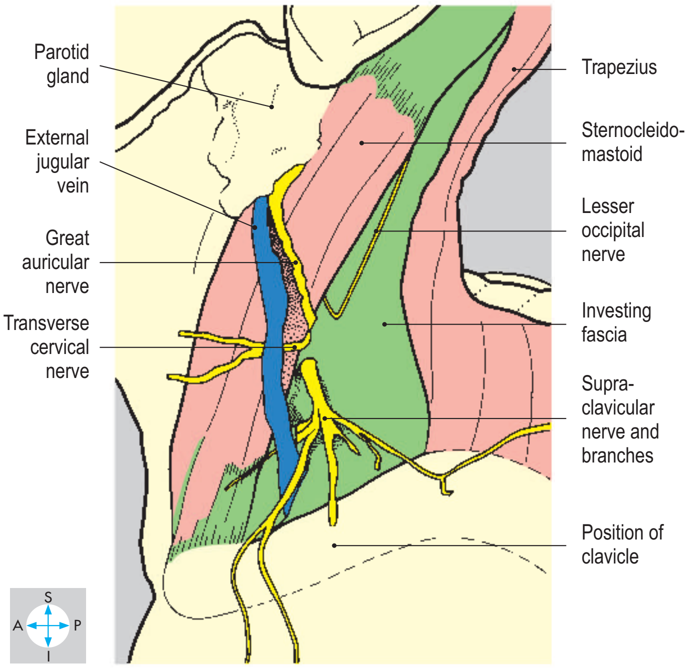


Fig. 7.7 Boundaries and roof of the posterior triangle of the neck. The external jugular vein and cutaneous branches of the cervical plexus, lying superficial to the roof, are also present.

midpoint of the posterior border of sternocleidomastoid. These convey sensation from the neck, the lower part of the face and pinna, the side of the scalp and the upper part of the thoracic wall. The lesser occipital nerve (C2) ascends along the posterior border of sternocleidomastoid and supplies the side of the occipital region of the scalp. The great auricular nerve (C2 & C3) runs vertically upwards across sternocleidomastoid and conveys sensation from the lower part of the pinna and the skin over the parotid gland. The transverse cervical nerve (C2 & C3) passes horizontally, supplying the skin over sternocleidomastoid and the anterior triangle. Finally, the supraclavicular nerves (C3 & C4) radiate downwards to convey sensation from skin over the upper part of the anterior thoracic wall and the shoulder region.

Anterior triangle of neck

By convention, the two anterior triangles of the neck extend medially to the midline. Posterolaterally, each triangle is bounded by the anterior border of sternocleidomastoid and superiorly by the inferior border of the mandible. That part of the triangle above the hyoid bone will be described with the mylohyoid and related structures.

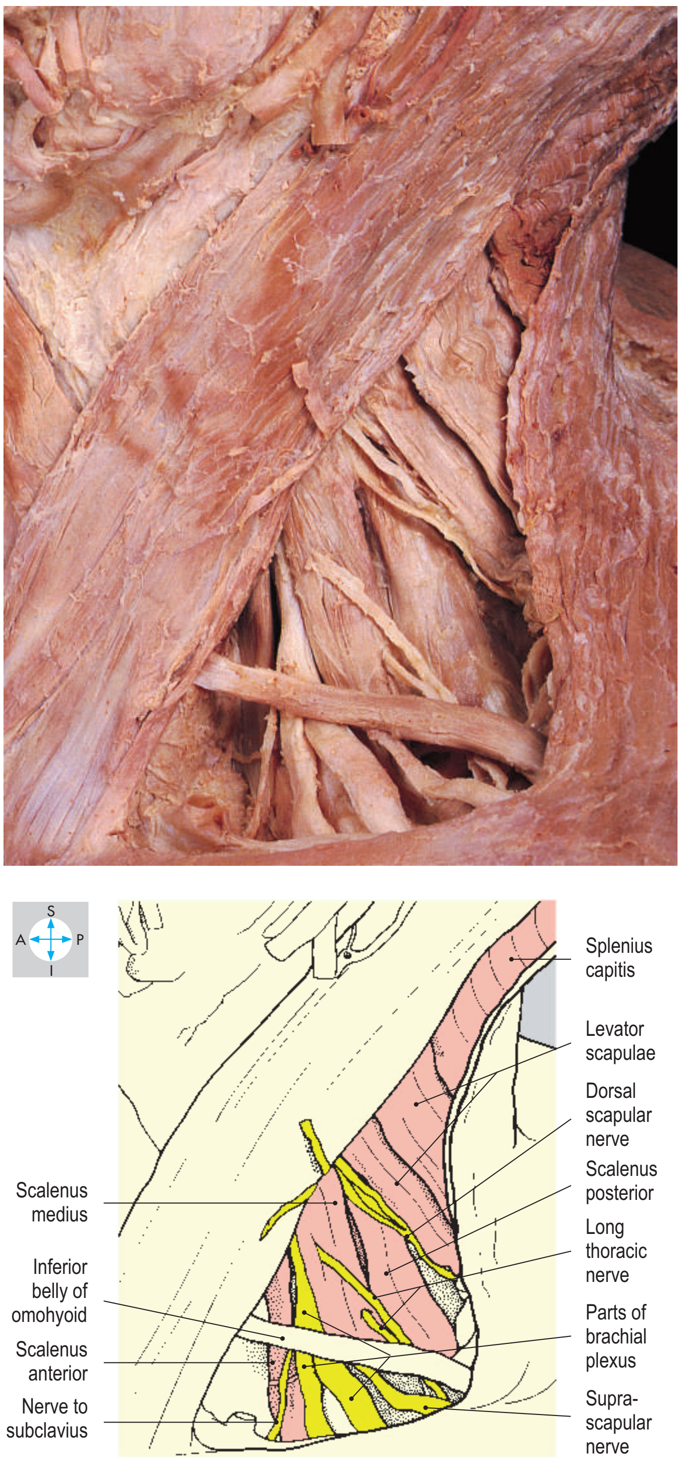


Fig. 7.8 Floor of the posterior triangle from which the prevertebral fascia has been removed. The inferior belly of the omohyoid muscle, one of the contents of the triangle, is still present.

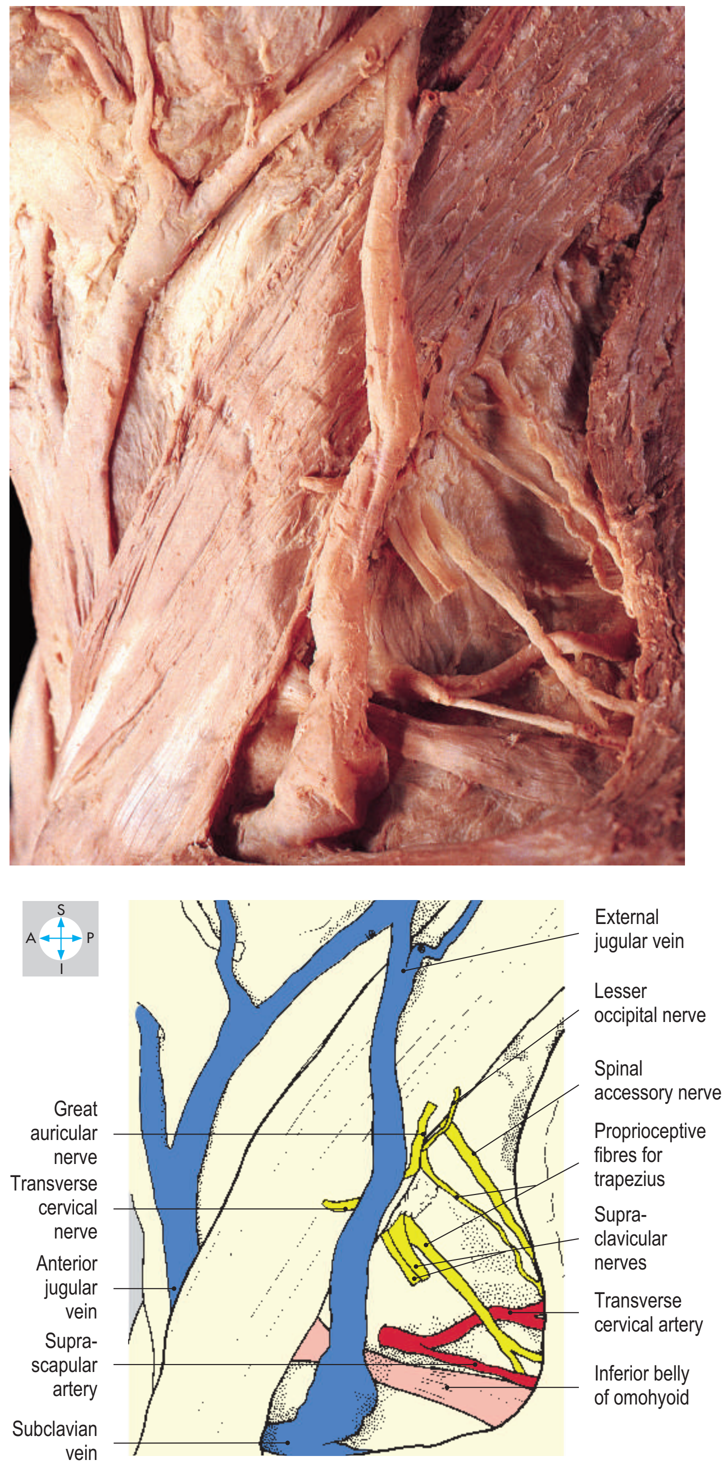


Fig. 7.9 Contents of the posterior triangle. The external jugular vein is in continuity with the anterior jugular system.

Roof

The roof of the anterior triangle (Fig. 7.10) is formed by the investing fascia of the neck. Superficial to the fascia are platysma (p. 336) and the anterior jugular vein. This vessel pierces the roof and passes deep to sternocleidomastoid to drain into the external jugular vein just before its termination in the subclavian vein. The cutaneous innervation of the skin over the triangle has already been described (p. 326).

Floor

The floor of the anterior triangle is composed of the pretracheal fascia and posterolaterally, the carotid sheath. The thyroid gland (Fig. 7.13) is enclosed by the pretracheal fascia, while the larynx and trachea lie deep to it. Laterally, the carotid arteries, internal jugular vein and vagus (X) nerve all lie within the carotid sheath.

Contents

The contents of the anterior triangle (Fig. 7.11) comprise infrahyoid or strap muscles (sternohyoid, sternothyroid, thyrohyoid and omohyoid) and their immediate nerve supply. The most superficial muscle, sternohyoid, is attached inferiorly to the deep surface of the manubrium and superiorly to the lower border of the body of the hyoid bone. Deep to sternohyoid are both sternothyroid and thyrohyoid. Sternothyroid extends from the manubrium to the oblique line on the lamina of the thyroid cartilage. In the same plane, thyrohyoid runs from the thyroid cartilage to the inferior edge of the body of the hyoid bone. Omohyoid consists of two bellies linked by an intermediate tendon. The inferior belly is attached to the suprascapular ligament and the adjacent part of the scapula. It crosses the posterior triangle and ends deep to sternocleidomastoid in the intermediate tendon, which is anchored to the clavicle by a loop of investing fascia. The superior belly continues upwards to its attachment on the lower border of the hyoid bone lateral to the other muscles.

All four muscles are supplied segmentally by branches from the first three cervical spinal nerves. Thyrohyoid is supplied by fibres from C1 that have travelled with the hypoglossal (XII) nerve; the remaining muscles are supplied via the ansa cervicalis. The infrahyoid muscles depress the hyoid bone and the larynx.

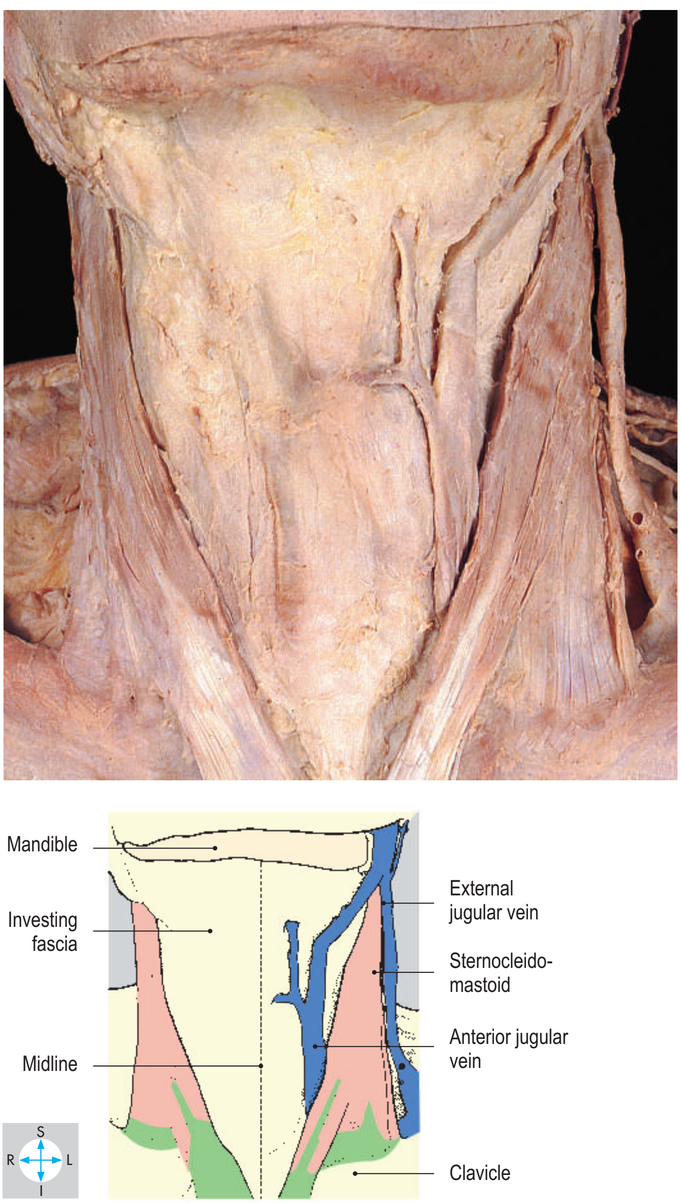


Fig. 7.10 Boundaries and roofs of both anterior triangles of the neck. The midline is the division between the two triangles.

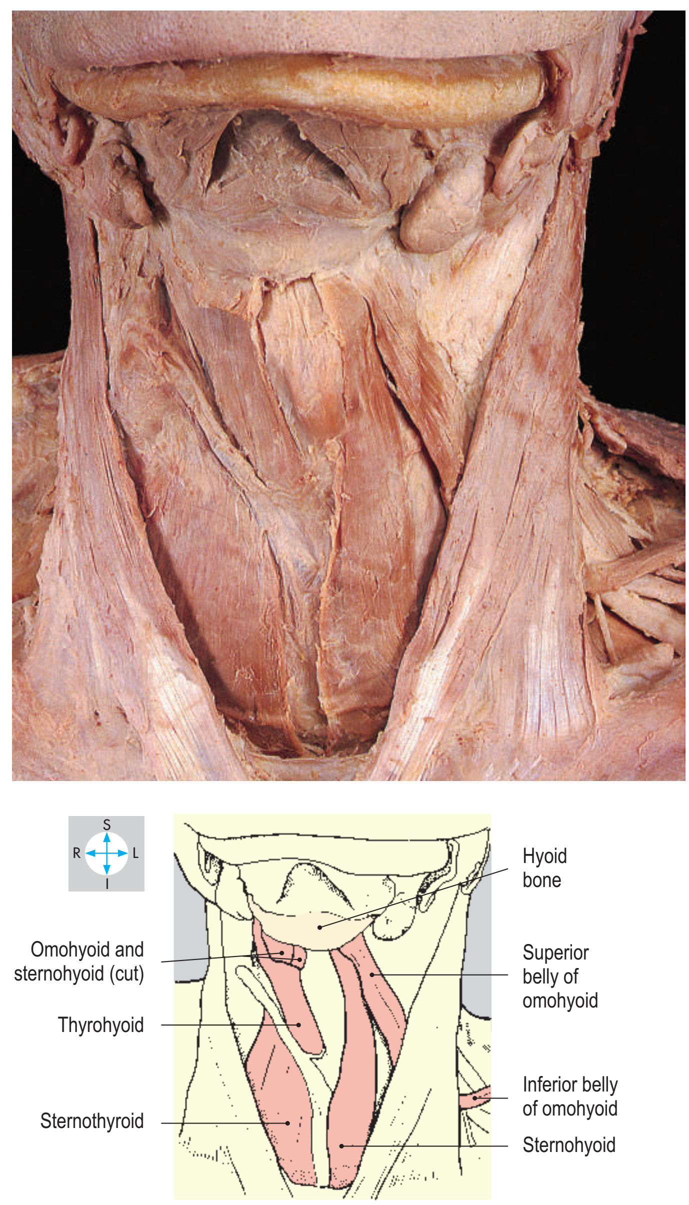


Fig. 7.11 Contents of the anterior triangle. The right omohyoid and sternohyoid muscles have been removed to show the deeper thyrohyoid and sternothyroid muscles.

Ansa cervicalis

Under cover of sternocleidomastoid two nerves, the roots of the ansa, unite to form a loop, the ansa cervicalis (Fig. 7.12), which provides the motor supply to the strap muscles. The superior root (descending limb) from the hypoglossal nerve consists solely of C1 fibres and descends to join the inferior root, C2 and C3 fibres from the cervical plexus, to form the ansa.

Thyroid gland

The thyroid gland (Fig. 7.13) is a vascular endocrine gland enclosed by the pretracheal fascia and closely applied to the anterior and lateral surfaces of the trachea. The fascia links the gland to the larynx, so that during swallowing both structures are elevated simultaneously. The two lateral lobes of the gland are joined across the midline by a narrow isthmus at the level of the third tracheal ring. A single pyramidal lobe is often present and projects upwards from the isthmus. Each lateral lobe is pear-shaped with its superior extremity reaching the oblique line on the thyroid cartilage, while its lower pole lies at the level of the fifth tracheal ring.

Lying anterior to the isthmus of the gland are the sternothyroid muscles and the anterior jugular veins. The lateral lobes are covered anterolaterally by the other infrahyoid muscles and the anterior borders of the sternocleidomastoid muscles. Posterolaterally lie the carotid sheaths, while posteromedially are the trachea, larynx and oesophagus. In the interval between the oesophagus and trachea the recurrent laryngeal nerves course upwards towards the larynx where they are vulnerable during thyroid or parathyroid surgery. A superior and an inferior parathyroid gland are embedded in the posterior surface of each lateral lobe.

The thyroid gland is a highly vascular organ and is supplied on each side by superior and inferior thyroid arteries. The superior thyroid artery, from the external carotid artery, descends to the upper pole of the gland. The inferior thyroid artery, from the thyrocervical trunk of the subclavian artery, ascends to enter the posterolateral aspect of the gland from behind the carotid sheath. A venous plexus on the surface of the gland drains via superior and middle thyroid veins into the internal jugular veins and via inferior thyroid veins to the left brachiocephalic vein. Lymph drains from the gland into the jugular chain of nodes.

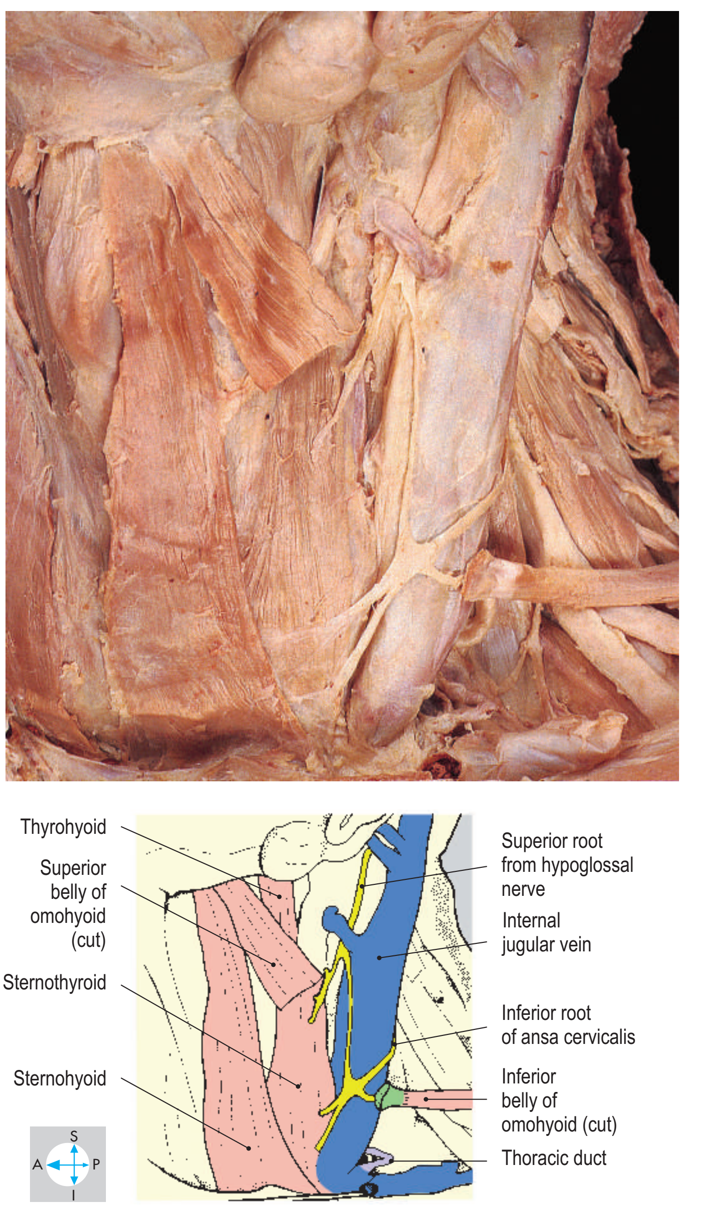


Fig. 7.12 Ansa cervicalis, lying on the internal jugular vein, and its branches to the strap muscles.

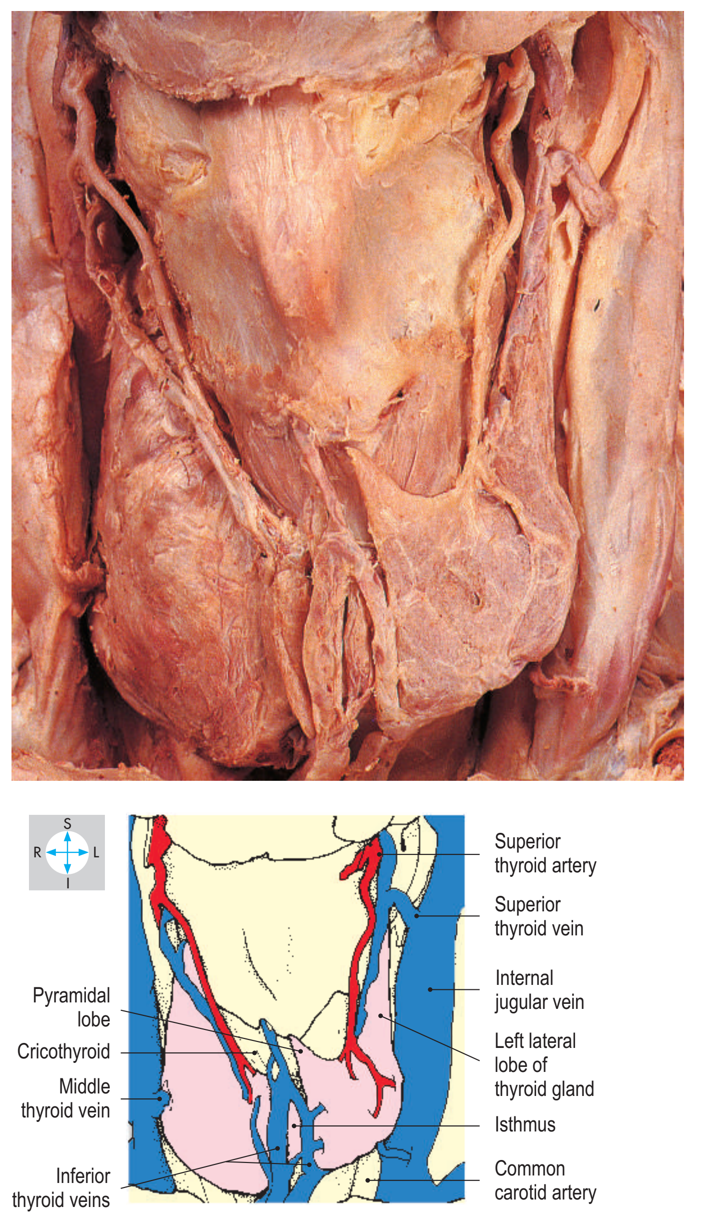


Fig. 7.13 Thyroid gland and its immediate blood supply, revealed by removal of the pretracheal fascia.

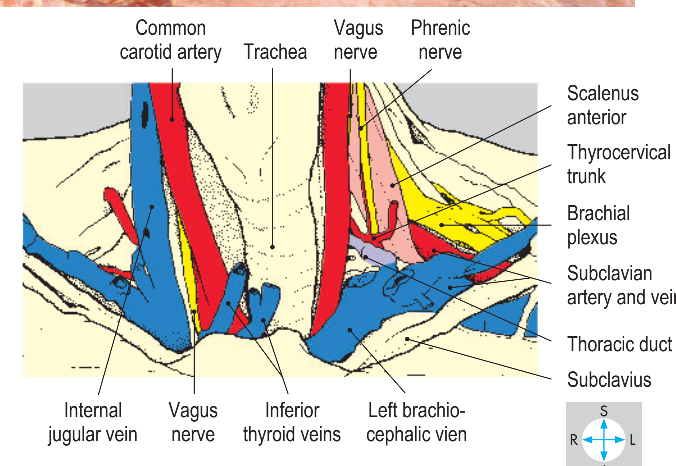


Fig. 7.14 Root of the neck after removal of the clavicles, pretracheal fascia, thyroid gland, carotid sheaths and left internal jugular vein.

Root of neck

The root of the neck is the region immediately above the superior thoracic aperture (p. 322). In the midline are the trachea and oesophagus, descending into the superior mediastinum (Fig. 7.14) between the apices of the lungs, which are each covered with pleura and a suprapleural membrane (Fig. 7.15). The other major structures in the root of the neck are vessels and nerves, which will be described in relation to scalenus anterior and its attachment to the scalene tubercle of the first rib (p. 28).

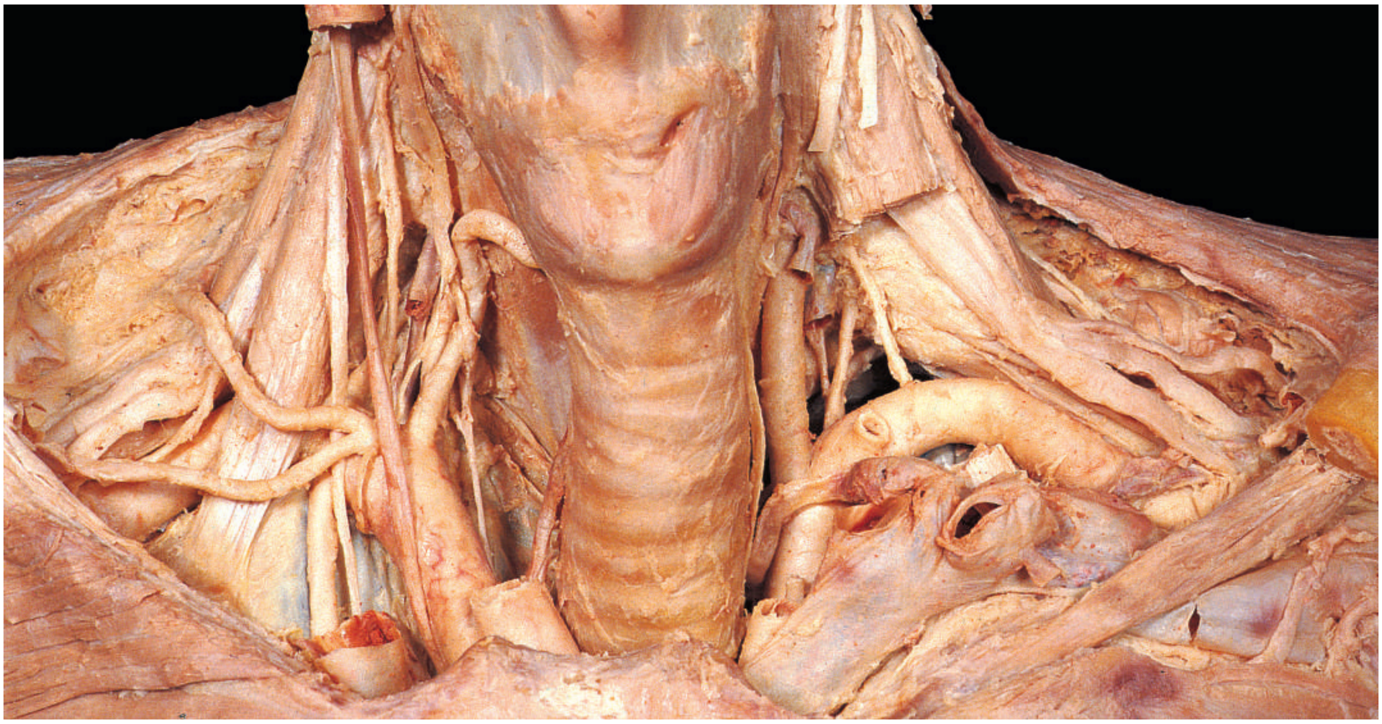
Veins

Each subclavian vein (Fig. 7.14) begins at the outer border of the first rib as the continuation of the axillary vein (p. 80). The vessel passes over the rib in front of the attachment of scalenus anterior and receives the external jugular vein from above. The subclavian and internal jugular veins unite at the medial border of scalenus anterior to form the brachiocephalic vein, which enters the thorax anteriorly alongside the trachea. On each side of the neck a major lymphatic trunk terminates by drainage into the angle where the subclavian and internal jugular veins unite. On the left, this lymphatic vessel is the thoracic duct, which arches laterally over the apex of the lung from its position alongside the oesophagus. The duct passes between the carotid sheath and the vertebral vessels, crossing in front of the phrenic nerve and the subclavian artery. The thoracic duct is the ultimate drainage channel for lymph from the lower limbs, pelvis, abdomen, left upper limb and the left side of the thorax, head and neck. On the right side of the neck, the smaller right lymphatic trunk terminates similarly, draining lymph only from the right upper limb and the right side of the thorax, head and neck. Cannulating the thoracic duct allows collection of lymphocytes for immunological investigation and treatment.

Arteries

The left common carotid and left subclavian arteries emerge from the thorax on the left of the trachea and oesophagus (Fig. 7.14). On the right, the brachiocephalic trunk divides at the level of the superior thoracic aperture to form the right common carotid and right subclavian arteries (Fig. 7.14). Each common carotid artery ascends into the neck within its sheath and gives no branches before its termination. Each subclavian artery passes laterally over the upper surface of the first rib posterior to scalenus anterior and continues into the axilla as the axillary artery (p. 79).

Three branches of the subclavian artery, internal thoracic, thyrocervical and vertebral arteries (Figs 7.14 & 7.15), arise medial to scalenus anterior. The internal thoracic artery (p. 34) descends into the thorax to supply the anterior thoracic and abdominal walls. The thyrocervical trunk is short and divides into three branches, the inferior thyroid (p. 329), suprascapular and transverse cervical arteries. The latter two vessels cross the posterior triangle of the neck. The suprascapular artery supplies the scapula and related structures and the transverse cervical artery supplies superficial structures in the posterior part of the neck. The vertebral artery (Fig. 7.15) inclines upwards and backwards medial to scalenus anterior and crosses in front of the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra, before continuing superiorly



through the foramina transversaria of the upper six cervical vertebrae, to enter the skull through the foramen magnum (p. 376).

The costocervical trunk (Fig. 7.15) arises from the subclavian artery behind scalenus anterior and arches backwards over the suprapleural membrane as far as the neck of the first rib, where it divides to form the superior intercostal artery supplying the upper two intercostal spaces (p. 35) and the deep cervical artery, which supplies the muscles of the back of the neck.

Nerves

The vagus (X) and phrenic nerves, both sympathetic chains and parts of both brachial plexuses all traverse the root of the neck. Each vagus nerve (Fig. 7.14) descends within the carotid sheath and enters the superior mediastinum between the main arterial and venous structures medial to the phrenic nerve. On the right side of the neck, the recurrent laryngeal nerve arises from the vagus, hooking under the subclavian artery to ascend in the groove formed by the lateral surfaces of the trachea and oesophagus. On the left, the recurrent laryngeal nerve follows a similar course but arises from the vagus in the thorax (p. 62).

The phrenic nerve (Fig. 7.15), formed from the anterior rami of the third, fourth and fifth cervical spinal nerves, passes inferiorly on the anterior surface of scalenus anterior beneath the prevertebral fascia. It leaves the medial side of the muscle near its lower end and enters the thorax between the main arterial and venous structures lateral to the vagus nerve.

The sympathetic trunks (Fig. 7.15), covered by the prevertebral fascia, lie alongside the bodies of the cervical vertebrae. In the neck each trunk bears only three sympathetic ganglia, the superior, middle and inferior. The lowest ganglion fuses frequently with the first thoracic ganglion to form the stellate (cervicothoracic) ganglion. The trunk continues into the thorax in front of the neck of the first rib. The middle and inferior cervical sympathetic ganglia are often linked by a nerve, the ansa subclavia, which curves around the subclavian artery.

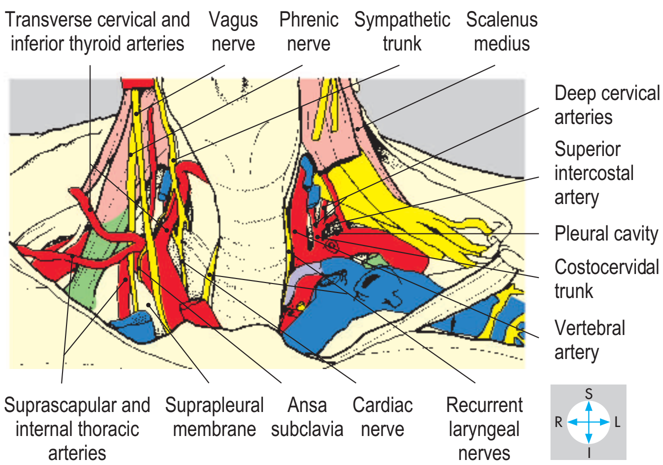


Fig. 7.15 Deeper structures of the root of neck, revealed by removal of most of the left vagus and phrenic nerves, the left scalenus anterior, both common carotid arteries and the large veins.

The brachial plexus (Fig. 7.14) originates from the anterior rami of the lowest four cervical and first thoracic spinal nerves which, partly covered by scalenus anterior, constitute the roots of the plexus. They combine to form the trunks of the plexus, which emerge from behind the lateral border of the muscle. The plexus continues into the upper limb enclosed with the axillary artery in a prolongation of the prevertebral fascia called the axillary sheath. (A detailed account of the brachial plexus is given on p. 180.)

Scalene muscles

Scalenus anterior (Fig. 7.15) is attached superiorly to the transverse processes of the third, fourth, fifth and sixth cervical vertebrae. Inferiorly, it attaches to the scalene tubercle on the first rib (p. 28). Behind it lie scalenus medius (Fig. 7.15) and scalenus posterior, which arise from the transverse processes of the lower six cervical vertebrae and attach inferiorly to the upper surfaces of the first and second ribs, respectively. These muscles are supplied segmentally by cervical spinal nerves. They elevate the first and second ribs and laterally flex the neck.

Contents of the Carotid Sheath

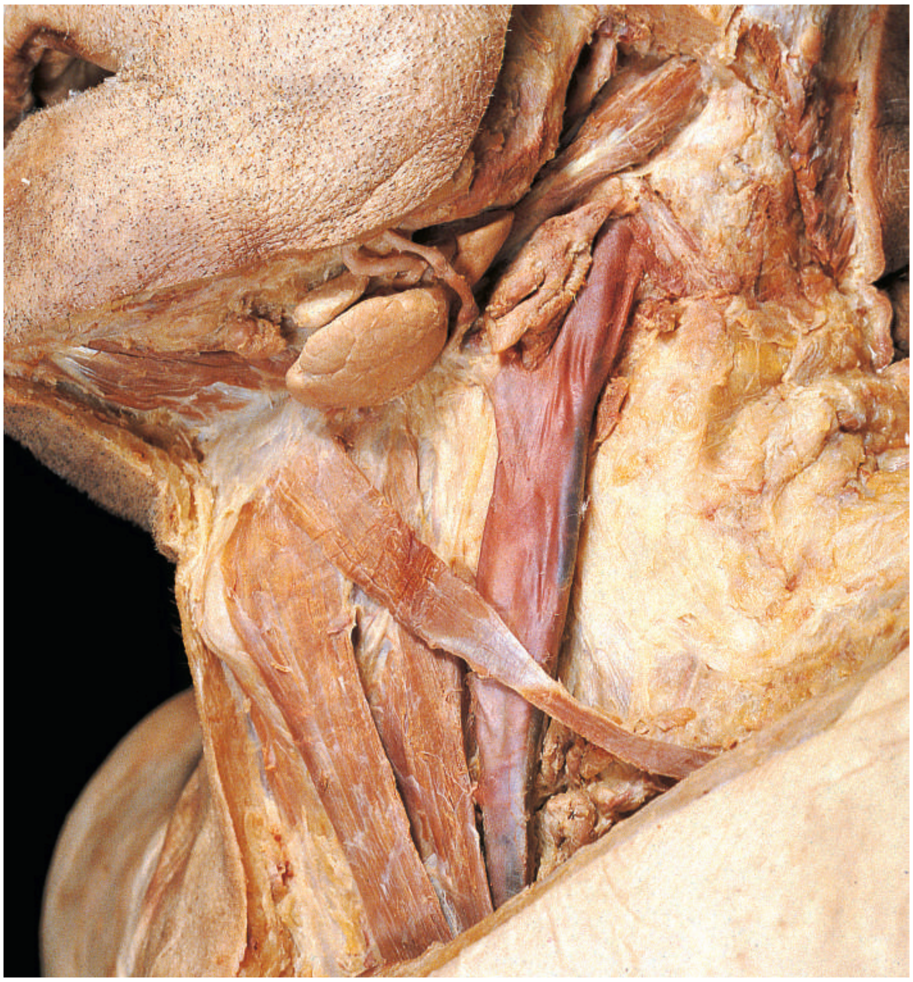
The carotid sheaths form part of the fascial layers of the neck (pp 324, 325) and extend from the base of the skull into the superior mediastinum. Each sheath contains the common, the internal and part of the external carotid arteries, the internal jugular vein and parts of the glossopharyngeal (IX), vagus (X) and accessory (XI) nerves.

Carotid arteries

The common carotid artery arises on the left from the aortic arch and on the right from the brachiocephalic artery, then ascends within its sheath into the neck. At the upper border of the thyroid cartilage it divides into internal and external carotid arteries (Fig. 7.17). At its origin the internal carotid artery is dilated to form the carotid sinus. The vessel ascends within the carotid sheath without branching and, in company with its sympathetic nerve plexus, enters the carotid canal. In the cranial cavity the internal carotid artery terminates as the anterior and middle cerebral arteries (p. 377), having given rise to the ophthalmic artery, which supplies the contents of the orbit.

The external carotid artery leaves the carotid sheath, inclines superolaterally and enters the deepest part of the parotid gland, where it divides into terminal branches at the level of the neck of the mandible. Separating the external and internal carotid arteries are the styloid process, stylopharyngeus, the glossopharyngeal (IX) nerve and the pharyngeal branch of the vagus (X) nerve.

The external carotid artery usually has eight branches (Fig. 7.17), supplying much of the extracranial portion of the head and upper part of the neck. The ascending pharyngeal artery arises on the medial aspect of the external carotid artery and ascends on the lateral surface of the pharynx. The next branch, the superior thyroid artery, inclines downwards and forwards from the anterior surface of the external carotid to supply the thyroid gland and the larynx. The lingual artery passes forwards from the anterior surface of the external carotid artery into the base of the tongue (p. 351). The facial artery, another anterior branch, supplies the tonsil and descends under the body of the mandible, grooving the



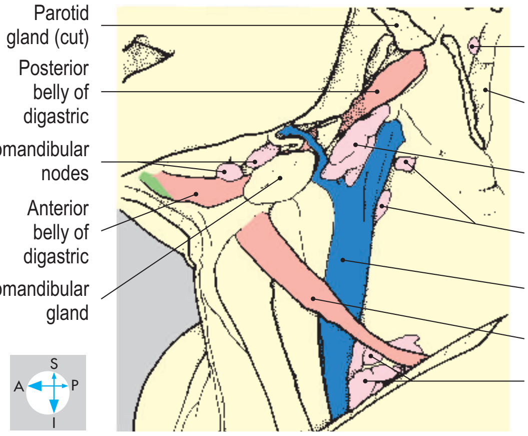


Fig. 7.16 Internal jugular vein and some cervical lymph nodes, revealed after removal of sternocleidomastoid and part of the parotid gland.

submandibular gland and emerging from beneath the mandible at the anterior border of masseter to supply the face (Fig. 7.35).

Arising from the posterior surface of the external carotid artery, the occipital artery passes upwards and backwards deep to sternocleidomastoid (Figs 7.17 & 7.24). The vessel crosses the apex of the posterior triangle of the neck to supply the posterior part of the scalp. The posterior auricular artery arises below the pinna and passes upwards and backwards to supply the pinna and the scalp.

The terminal branches of the external carotid artery, the superficial temporal and maxillary arteries, arise within the parotid gland. The former supplies the lateral part of the scalp, while the maxillary artery supplies the infratemporal fossa, pterygopalatine fossa and lateral wall of the nose. Postganglionic sympathetic nerve fibres accompany the external carotid artery and its branches.

Internal jugular vein

The internal jugular vein (Figs 7.16 & 7.17) is formed below the jugular foramen after the union of the sigmoid and inferior petrosal dural venous sinuses. The vein descends through the neck within the carotid sheath and receives the facial, lingual, pharyngeal, and superior and middle thyroid veins. The internal jugular vein also communicates with the external jugular system via the anterior branch of the retromandibular vein. It terminates by uniting with the subclavian vein to form the brachiocephalic vein.

Nerves

Within the carotid sheath lie the glossopharyngeal (IX), vagus (X) and accessory (XI) nerves, which leave the skull via the jugular foramen. The glossopharyngeal nerve passes inferiorly, leaves the sheath and winds around the posterolateral surface of stylopharyngeus to enter the posterior third of the tongue. The nerve supplies stylopharyngeus and gives a sensory branch, which innervates the carotid sinus (p. 352).

The vagus (X) nerve (Fig. 7.17) bears two sensory ganglia, one in the jugular foramen and one below the base of the skull, between which the nerve receives the

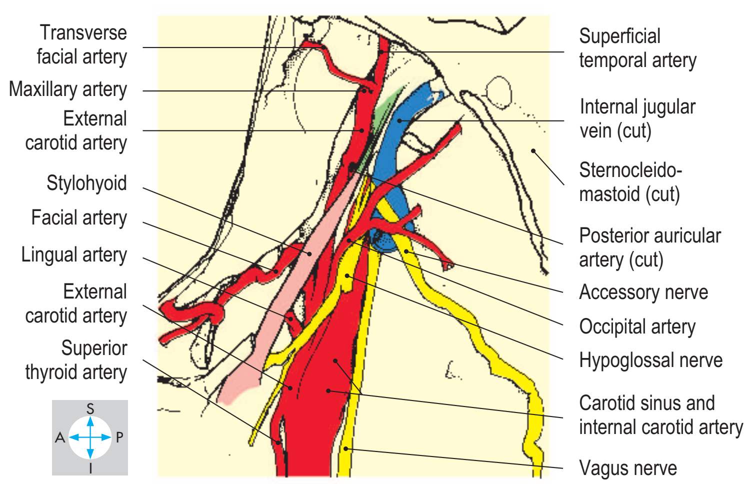


Fig. 7.17 Branches of the external carotid artery and the vagus, accessory and hypoglossal nerves, after removal of part of the internal jugular vein, carotid sheath and posterior belly of digastric.

cranial part of the accessory nerve. The vagus nerve descends in the posterior part of the carotid sheath between the carotid artery and internal jugular vein and gives rise to pharyngeal, superior laryngeal and cardiac branches before traversing the superior thoracic aperture. The pharyngeal branch passes forwards between the internal and external carotid arteries to the outer surface of the pharynx, contributing to the pharyngeal plexus. The superior laryngeal nerve accompanies the superior thyroid artery and vein supplying the larynx. The cardiac branches of the vagus join those from the sympathetic trunk and descend into the thorax. The right vagus gives a recurrent laryngeal branch in the neck which curves around the right subclavian artery and passes superiorly to reach the larynx (p. 331). The left recurrent laryngeal nerve arises from the left vagus nerve in the thorax and passes around the aortic arch before ascending into the neck.

The accessory (XI) nerve (Fig. 7.17) is formed by the fusion of cranial and spinal roots in the posterior cranial fossa. In the jugular foramen the nerve divides into a cranial part joining the vagus nerve and a spinal part which supplies sternocleidomastoid and trapezius.

Lymphatics

Lymphatic vessels from structures in the head and neck accompany the vascular supply and drain into superficial or deep groups of lymph nodes.

Superficial lymph nodes

Several groups of superficial nodes form an incomplete ring around the lower part of the head. The submental nodes lie between the anterior bellies of the two digastric muscles, draining lymph from the tip of the tongue and the mental region. The submandibular group (Fig. 7.16) lies on the superficial surface of the submandibular gland and receives lymph from the submental nodes, from the remainder of the anterior two-thirds of the tongue, from the floor of the mouth (including the gums and teeth), and from the nose, face and anterior part of the scalp. The parotid nodes lie on or within the parotid gland, the mastoid group (Fig. 7.16) on the lateral surface of the mastoid process, and the occipital lymph nodes at the apex of the posterior triangle of the neck. These three groups drain the remainder of the face and scalp, including the external ear. Lymph from all the superficial nodes drains into the deep cervical nodes.

Deep cervical lymph nodes

The deep cervical or jugular lymph nodes (Fig. 7.16) form a chain in and around the carotid sheath. Two of the deep cervical nodes are of particular clinical significance. The jugulodigastric node receives lymph mainly from the tongue and tonsil and the jugulo-omohyoid node drains the tongue. From the deep cervical nodes lymph drains inferiorly, via the jugular lymphatic trunk, usually into the thoracic duct on the left and into the right lymphatic duct on the right. Removal of these nodes by careful surgical dissection can successfully treat locally metastatic cancer.

Superficial Structures of the Face and Scalp

The subcutaneous tissue of the face and scalp is highly vascular and is traversed by several nerves. Most of the nerves are sensory to skin and include branches of the trigeminal (V) and upper cervical spinal nerves. In addition, there are branches that are motor from the facial (VII) nerve to a group of muscles in the subcutaneous tissues of the face, scalp and front of the neck, known as the muscles of facial expression.

Muscles of facial expression

In general, these muscles are arranged as sphincters or dilators around the orifices of the face (Fig. 7.18). Most are anchored to bone at one end and attached to skin at the other.

Palpebral fissure

The sphincter of the palpebral fissure (the gap between the eyelids) is orbicularis oculi, which is divided into inner palpebral and outer orbital parts. The palpebral part lies within the eyelids and is attached to the medial and lateral palpebral ligaments. The orbital portion is attached only to the medial palpebral ligament, and its fibres lie around the orbital margin. Both parts close the palpebral fissure, the palpebral part gently and the orbital part forcefully as when 'screwing up the eyes'. The palpebral part also helps sweep tears medially across the cornea from lacrimal gland to lacrimal canaliculi. The dilator components are provided by levator palpebrae superioris within the orbit (p. 380), and by occipitofrontalis in the scalp. The latter muscle has two bellies, occipital and frontal, linked by an extensive intermediate tendon, the epicranial aponeurosis, which forms a mobile layer over the vault of the skull. From its posterior extremity the occipital belly (occipitalis) descends to its attachment on the highest nuchal line of the occipital bone (Fig. 7.19); from its anterior end the frontal belly (frontalis) descends in the forehead and its fibres interdigitate with those of orbicularis oculi and attach to skin near the

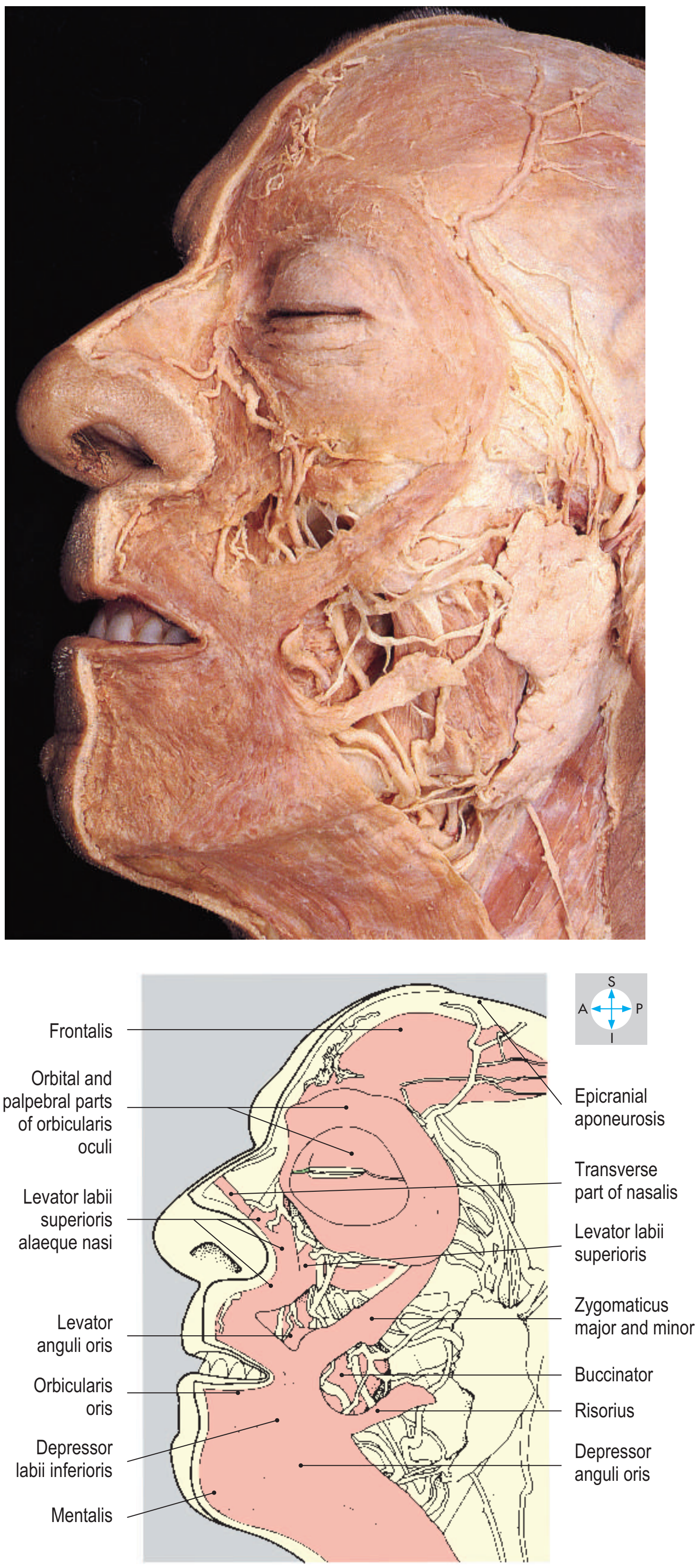


Fig. 7.18 Muscles of facial expression. The skin and subcutaneous fat have been removed.

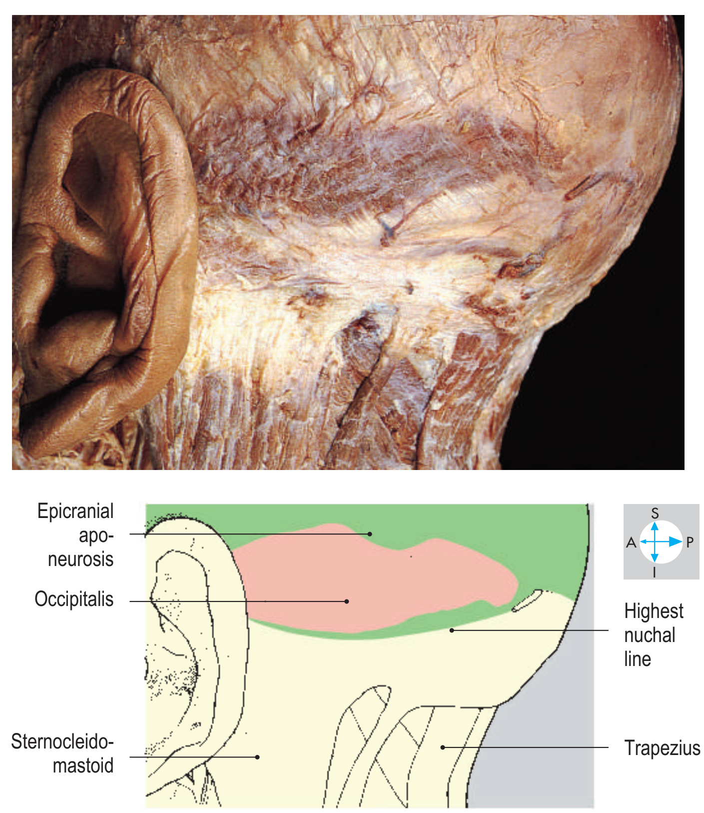


Fig. 7.19 Posterior view to show occipitalis and part of the epicranial aponeurosis.

eyebrow. Occipitalis fixes the epicranial aponeurosis allowing frontalis to raise the eyebrows.

Nostril

Around each nostril is nasalis with two feeble parts, alar and transverse, which dilate and compress the nostrils, respectively.

Mouth

Orbicularis oris, the sphincter of the mouth, is embedded in the lips and attaches near the midline to the mandible and maxilla. In addition, there are dilators around the mouth whose fibres continue into orbicularis oris. The most medial dilator of the upper lip is levator labii superioris alaeque nasi. This muscle attaches near the medial margin of the orbit and runs to the alar cartilage of the nose and to the upper lip. Levator labii superioris is attached to bone beneath the orbital margin, whereas levator anguli oris lies slightly deeper and its fibres incline towards the angle of the mouth. Two of the dilator muscles take attachment from the zygoma: zygomaticus major and minor. Attached to the mandible are three muscles, called, from lateral to medial, depressor anguli oris, depressor labii inferioris and mentalis.

The buccinator muscle (Figs 7.18 & 7.20) lies deep to the other dilator muscles in the wall of the cheek. Anteriorly, it blends with the deep surface of orbicularis oris. Posteriorly, it gains attachment to the outer surface of the mandible from the level of the first to the third molar teeth. Passing behind the third molar tooth, buccinator is attached to the pterygomandibular raphe and the pterygoid hamulus. The muscle attachment continues forwards along the outer surface of the maxilla as far as the first upper molar tooth. Buccinator controls the size of the vestibule of the mouth (that part of the buccal cavity lying between the cheek and the teeth).

The platysma (Fig. 7.21), the most extensive muscle of facial expression, descends in the subcutaneous tissue of the neck from the inferior border of the mandible and fades out on the anterior surface of the thorax. A few fibres may run horizontally from the angle of the mouth as risorius. Platysma is most easily seen in action during respiratory distress when the skin of the neck is pulled taut.

Ear

In the human, the auricular muscles are almost vestigial.

Facial nerve

All the muscles of facial expression derive their motor nerve supply from the facial (VII) nerve. Occipitalis and some of the

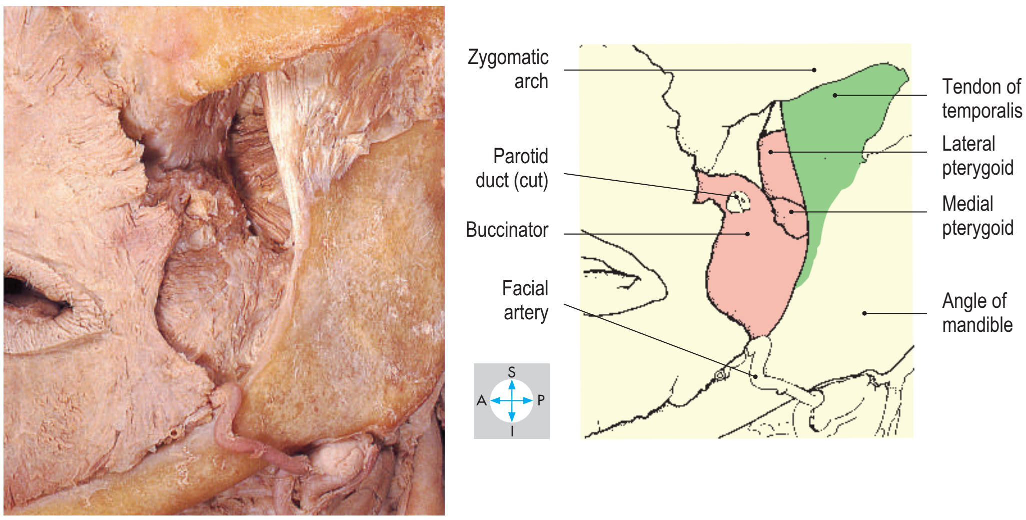


Fig. 7.20 Buccinator seen after removal of some superficial facial muscles, the parotid gland and most of its duct, and masseter.

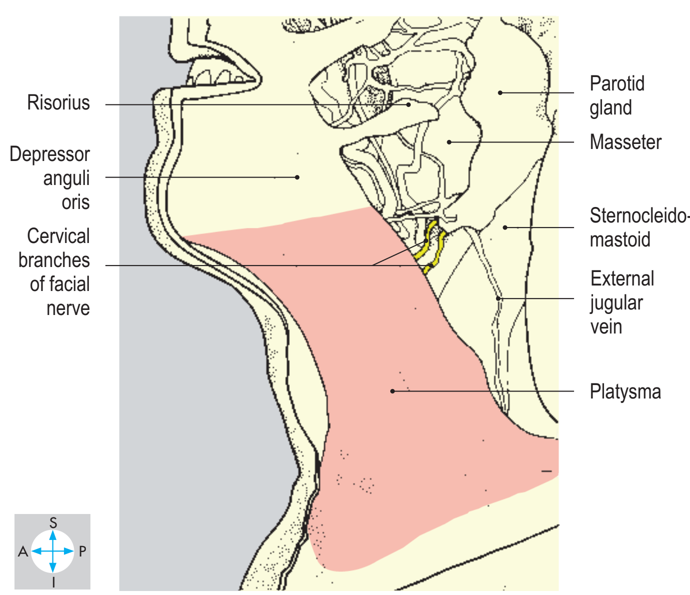


Fig. 7.21 Platysma, the largest muscle of facial expression, and its nerve supply.

auricular muscles are innervated by the posterior auricular branch of the nerve (p. 340); the remaining muscles are supplied by the five sets of branches (Fig. 7.22) that emerge from the anterior border of the parotid gland (p. 339). The temporal branch of the facial nerve ascends to supply the remaining auricular muscles and frontalis. The zygomatic branch is directed towards the eye and supplies muscles above and below the palpebral fissure. The third branch, the buccal, runs horizontally forwards to innervate buccinator and the muscles of the upper lip. The mandibular branch supplies the muscles of the lower lip, dipping below the mandible in its course. The cervical branch descends to supply platysma.

Blood supply of face

Most of the superficial structures of the face obtain their blood supply from the facial artery (Fig. 7.22), a branch of the external carotid artery. The facial artery enters the face by hooking under the inferior border of the mandible, where it is easily palpated. The vessel then pursues a tortuous course across the face towards the inner angle of the orbit. The area of the face in front of the ear is supplied by the transverse facial artery, an anterior branch of the superficial temporal artery. Emerging from the orbit to supply the forehead are the supraorbital and supratrochlear branches of the ophthalmic artery.

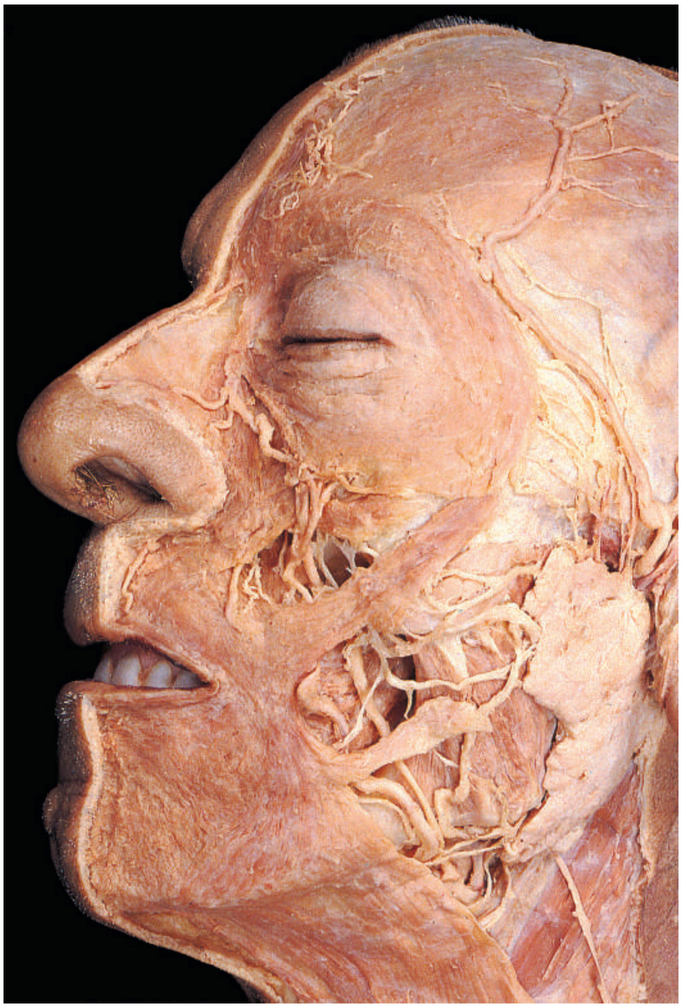
Blood from the face drains into the facial vein (Fig. 7.22), which accompanies the facial artery. The vein also receives the supratrochlear and supraorbital veins and thus communicates with ophthalmic veins in the orbit. Blood from the lateral part of the face drains into the superficial temporal vein.

Sensory supply

The sensory nerve supply of the face is conveyed in branches of the three divisions of the trigeminal (V) nerve (Fig. 7.23).

Scalp

The scalp (Fig. 7.24) extends from the superior nuchal line posteriorly to the superior orbital margin anteriorly, and to the external



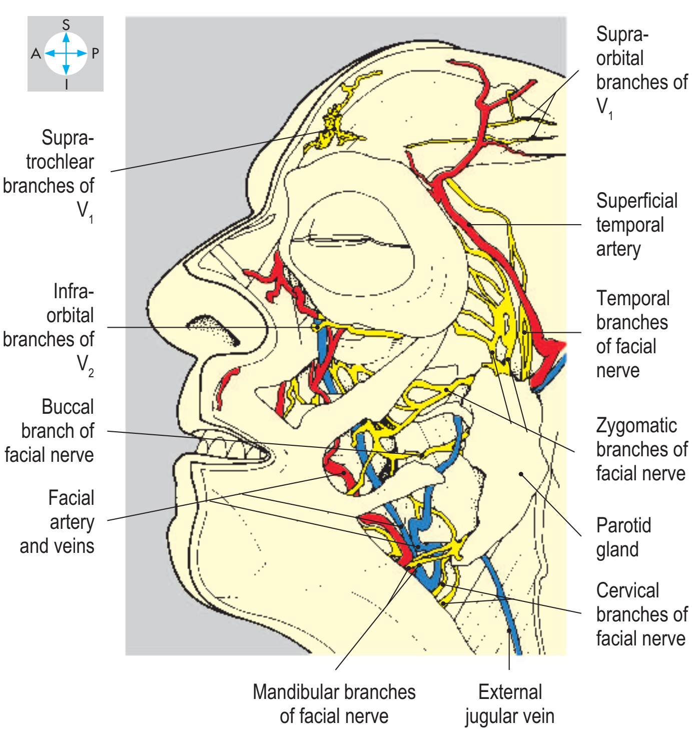


Fig. 7.22 Neurovascular structures of the face. In this specimen the facial vein is duplicated, a common variation.

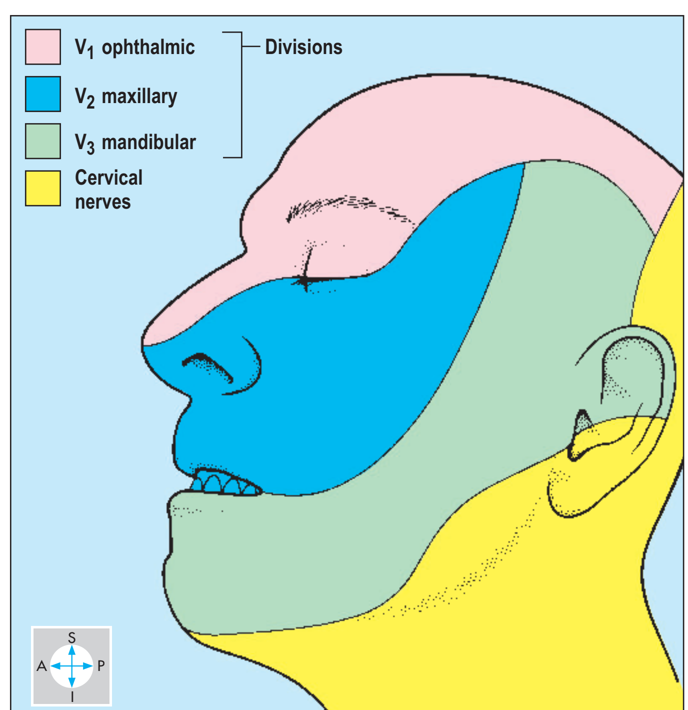


Fig. 7.23 Dermatomes of the face. Areas of the face are supplied with sensory fibres from the different divisions of the trigeminal nerve.

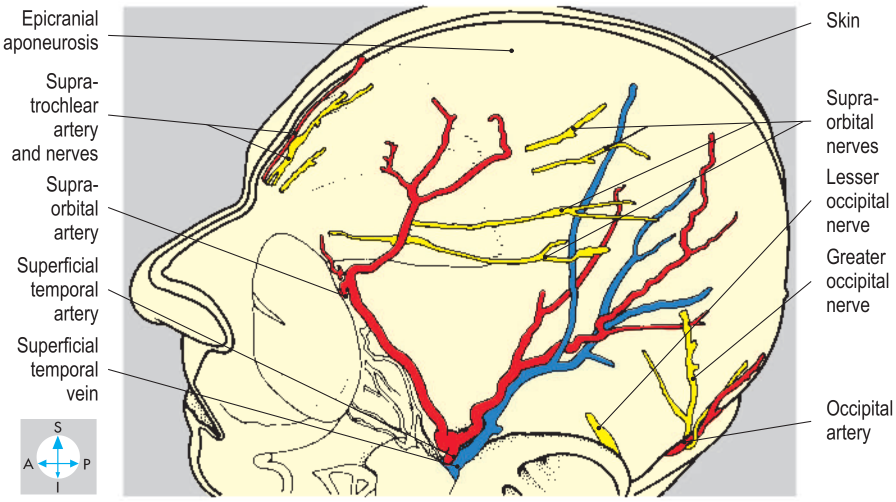


Fig. 7.24 Vessels and nerves of the scalp lying on the epicranial aponeurosis.

acoustic meatus and zygomatic arch laterally. It comprises two functional layers applied to the outer surface of the vault of the skull. Close to the bones lies the pericranium, which forms the periosteum of the skull. This is loosely attached over each constituent bone but is firmly bound to the sutures so that subperiosteal bleeding is limited to the area of the bones involved. Superficial to the pericranium, but separated from it by a layer of loose connective tissue, lie the epicranial aponeurosis (intermediate tendon of occipitofrontalis) and the skin of the scalp, firmly bound to each other so that they move as one over the underlying pericranium and skull.

The arteries and nerves that supply the scalp enter at its circumference and because they accompany each other, they will be described together, starting anteriorly. Near the midline are the supratrochlear and supraorbital nerves, arteries and veins. The nerves are derived from the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal (V) nerve. The vessels communicate with their ophthalmic counterparts within the orbit.

Lateral to the orbit the zygomaticotemporal nerve from the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve, accompanied by its vessels, ascends a short distance into the scalp. Just in front of the ear, the auriculotemporal nerve from the mandibular division of the fifth cranial nerve passes into the scalp. The superficial temporal artery and vein follow a similar course.

The area of the scalp behind the ear is supplied by the lesser occipital nerve (C2 anterior ramus) accompanied by the posterior auricular artery and vein. Posteriorly near the midline the scalp receives the greater occipital nerve (C2 posterior ramus) and the occipital artery and vein.

In addition, venous blood may drain via the diploic veins of the skull into the intracranial venous sinuses. Scalp wounds bleed profusely, making suturing difficult. To diminish bleeding, circumferential pressure may be temporarily applied with an elastic bandage.

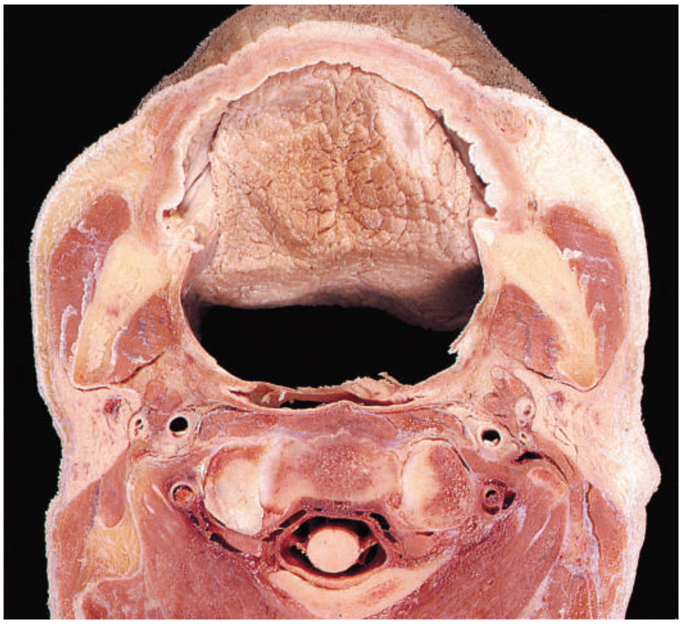
Parotid Gland

The parotid is the largest of the salivary glands and is pyramidal in shape (Fig. 7.25). Its base faces laterally between the anterior border of sternocleidomastoid and the ramus of the mandible, while its apex lies deeply against the styloid process. The gland extends upwards between the external acoustic meatus and the temporomandibular joint, movements of which may be painful when the parotid is inflamed.

The parotid gland is deeply indented in front by the mandible, masseter and medial pterygoid. Deep to the gland are the infratemporal fossa and the styloid apparatus, the latter separating it from the carotid sheath and the pharyngeal wall.

The investing fascia of the neck splits into two layers to enclose the gland (p. 324). The superficial layer attaches above to the zygomatic arch, while anteriorly it merges with the tissues of the cheek. The deep layer is attached to the tympanic part of the temporal bone and is thickened between the styloid process and the angle of the mandible to form the stylomandibular ligament. Swelling in the parotid is particularly painful because of the toughness of the surrounding fascia and its position between the mandible in front and the temporal bone behind.

The parotid duct (Fig. 7.26) passes forwards across the surface of masseter, turns medially and pierces buccinator to open obliquely into the vestibule of the mouth opposite the upper



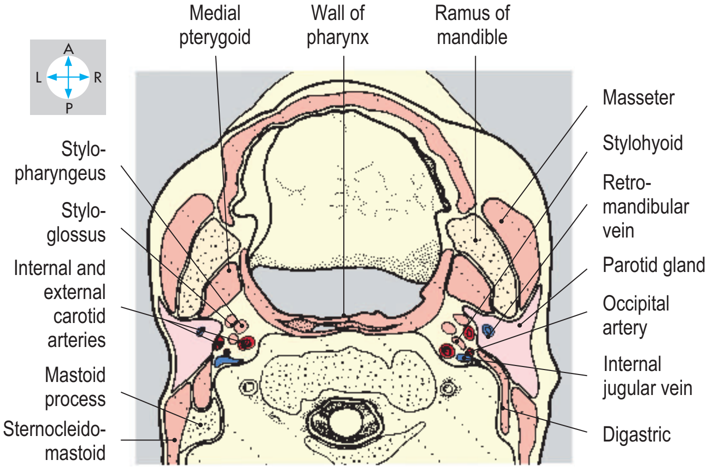


Fig. 7.25 Transverse section of the head through the parotid glands. Superior aspect. (Compare Fig. 7.93.)

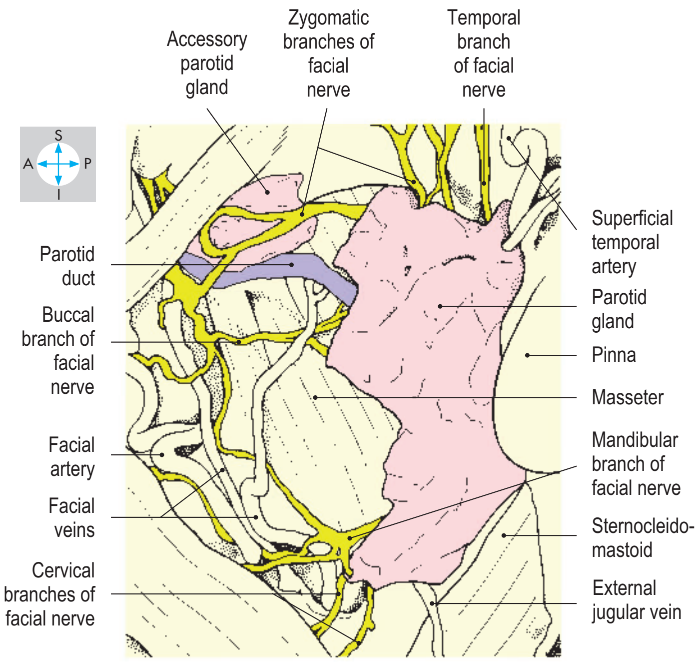


Fig. 7.26 Parotid gland and branches of the facial nerve, exposed by the removal of the superficial layer of parotid fascia.

second molar tooth. This oblique passage through the mucosa compresses the duct when intraoral pressure is raised. When masseter contracts, the duct may be palpated over the anterior edge of the muscle. An accessory part of the gland may lie alongside the duct.

Structures traversing parotid gland

Of these, the most superficial are branches of the facial (VII) nerve that run forwards to the face and pass superficial to the retromandibular vein and its tributaries. The deepest is the termination of the external carotid artery.

Facial (VII) nerve

The facial nerve emerges from the skull through the stylomastoid foramen and turns forwards to enter the posterior surface of the parotid gland. Before penetrating the gland, it gives two branches. The posterior auricular branch passes behind the external acoustic meatus to supply occipitalis and the auricular muscles. The other supplies the posterior belly of digastric and stylohyoid. Within the gland, the facial nerve forms a plexus from which five groups of branches (Fig. 7.26) emerge at the periphery of the gland to supply the muscles of facial expression (p. 335). This plexus divides the gland into superficial and deep parts. Tumours confined to one of these parts only can be removed without damage to the facial nerve.

Retromandibular vein

Within the parotid gland, the superficial temporal and maxillary veins unite to form the retromandibular vein (Fig. 7.27). Inferiorly, this short vein terminates as anterior and posterior divisions, which escape from the gland. The anterior division joins the facial vein, which drains into the internal jugular vein. The posterior division unites with the posterior auricular vein to form the external jugular vein (p. 326).

Termination of external carotid artery

Entering the parotid from below, the external carotid artery ascends through the gland and at the level of the neck of the mandible divides into the maxillary and superficial temporal arteries (Fig. 7.28). The former runs anterosuperiorly to leave the

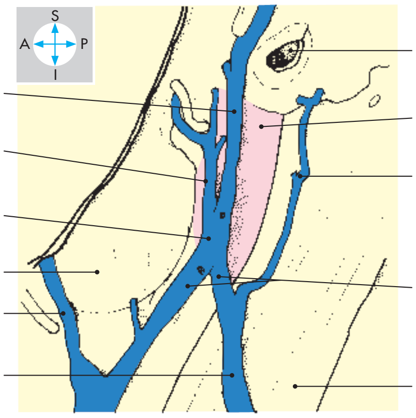
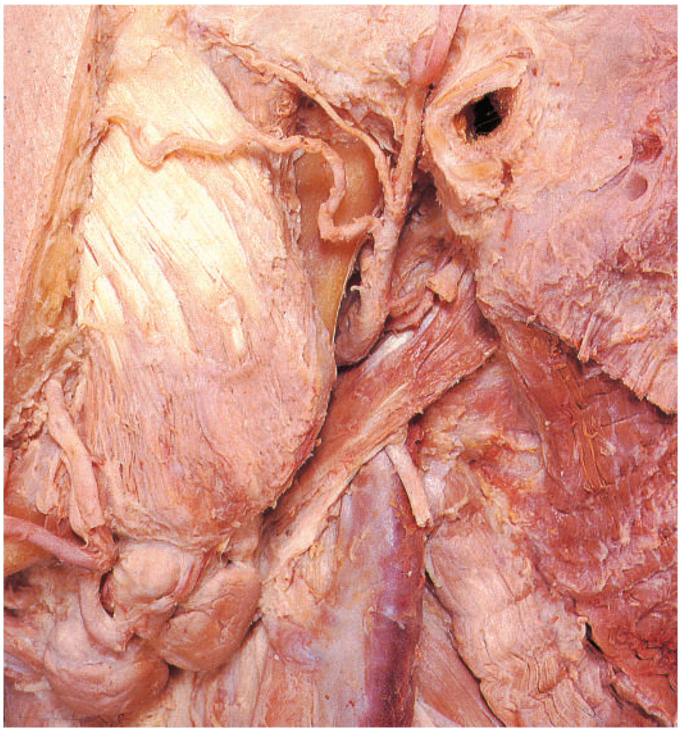


Fig. 7.27 Retromandibular vein and its communications, seen after removal of the superficial portion of the parotid gland.



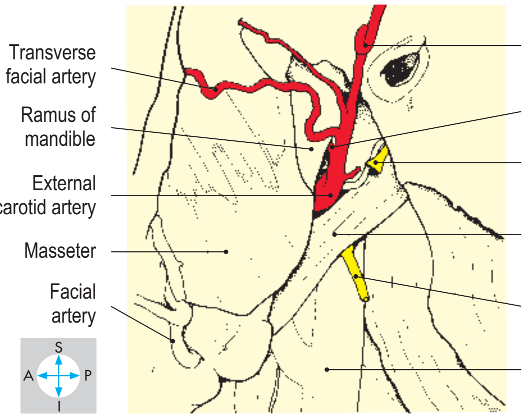


Fig. 7.28 External carotid artery and its terminal branches, revealed by complete excision of the parotid gland.

gland and enter the infratemporal fossa. The superficial temporal artery continues upwards between the external acoustic meatus and the temporomandibular joint to supply the temple. Its pulsation can be felt just above the joint.

Several lymph nodes lie just under the fascia covering the parotid gland or within the gland itself.

Neurovascular supply

The gland receives its vascular supply from the vessels traversing it. Parasympathetic secretomotor fibres follow a tortuous route to the gland. The preganglionic fibres arise from the inferior salivatory nucleus in the brainstem and pass in the tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal (IX) nerve to the tympanic plexus in the middle ear, leaving the skull in the lesser petrosal nerve to synapse in the otic ganglion (p. 345). Postganglionic parasympathetic fibres travel to the gland in the auriculotemporal branch of the mandibular (V_3) division. By contrast, postganglionic sympathetic nerves are conveyed in the plexus accompanying the external carotid artery.

Masseter, Temporalis and Infratemporal Fossa

Masseter

Masseter (Fig. 7.29) attaches along the length of the zygomatic arch and its fibres slope downwards and backwards to the lateral surface of the ramus of the mandible adjacent to the angle (Fig. 7.31). This muscle is a powerful elevator of the mandible and is easily palpated when the teeth are clenched. It is supplied by the masseteric branch of the mandibular (V_3) division of the trigeminal nerve.

Temporalis

Temporalis (Fig. 7.30) is a large fan-shaped muscle occupying the temporal fossa and taking attachment from the area of bone bounded by the inferior temporal line. The more superficial fibres arise from the temporal fascia that covers the muscle and is attached to the superior temporal line. All the fibres descend deep to the zygomatic arch to attach to the coronoid process and anteromedial aspect of the ramus of the mandible (Fig. 7.31). Temporalis elevates the mandible, as in closing the mouth, and its posterior fibres retract the mandible. The deep temporal branches of the mandibular (V_3) division of the trigeminal nerve supply the muscle from its deep surface.

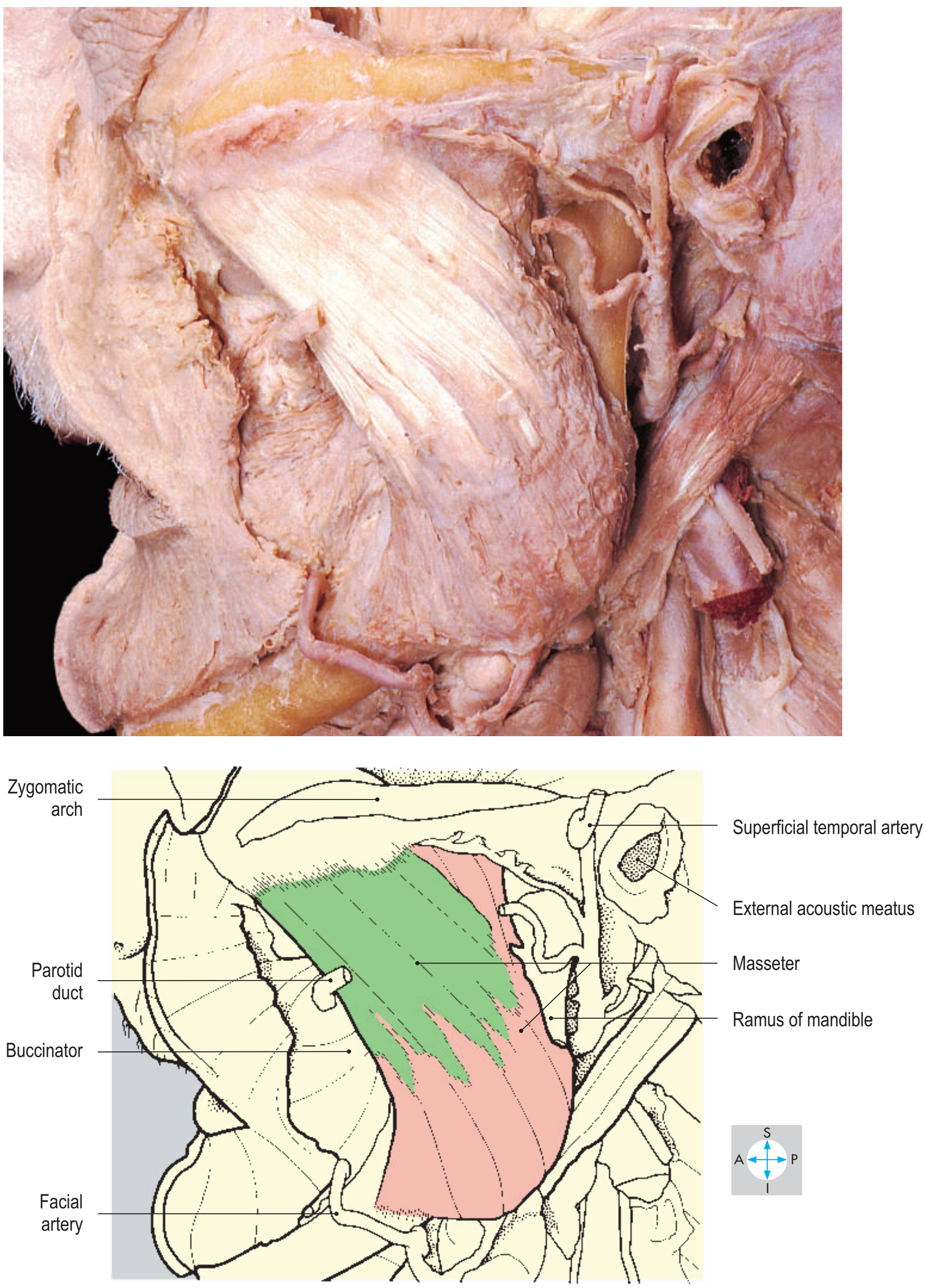


Fig. 7.29 Masseter, showing its attachment to the zygomatic arch and the angle of the mandible, after removal of the parotid gland.

Infratemporal fossa

This fossa lies deep to the ramus of the mandible and is limited on its medial aspect by the lateral wall of the pharynx and the medial pterygoid plate of the sphenoid bone. The fossa is bounded by the posterior surface of the maxilla in front and by the styloid process and its attached muscles behind. The roof is provided by the temporal and sphenoid bones in the base of the skull while inferiorly the fossa is continuous with the neck.

Within the fossa are the two pterygoid muscles, the mandibular (V_3) division of the trigeminal nerve and its branches, and the maxillary vessels and their branches. Adjacent to the fossa is the temporomandibular joint.

Pterygoid muscles

Each of the lateral and medial pterygoid muscles (Figs 7.32–7.34) has two attachments to the skull. The upper head of the lateral pterygoid attaches to the inferior surface of the greater wing of the sphenoid. The lower head attaches to the lateral surface of the lateral pterygoid plate. Both heads converge on the neck of the mandible and the capsule of the temporomandibular joint. The lateral pterygoid pulls forward both the neck of the mandible and the articular disc, thus depressing the mandible and opening the mouth.

The lower head of the lateral pterygoid is clasped by the two heads of the medial pterygoid. The deep head of the latter is larger and attaches to the medial surface of the lateral pterygoid plate. The superficial head is attached to the tuberosity of the maxilla. The fibres of both heads incline obliquely downwards, backwards and laterally to attach to the medial surface of the angle of the mandible. The muscle is a powerful elevator of the mandible.

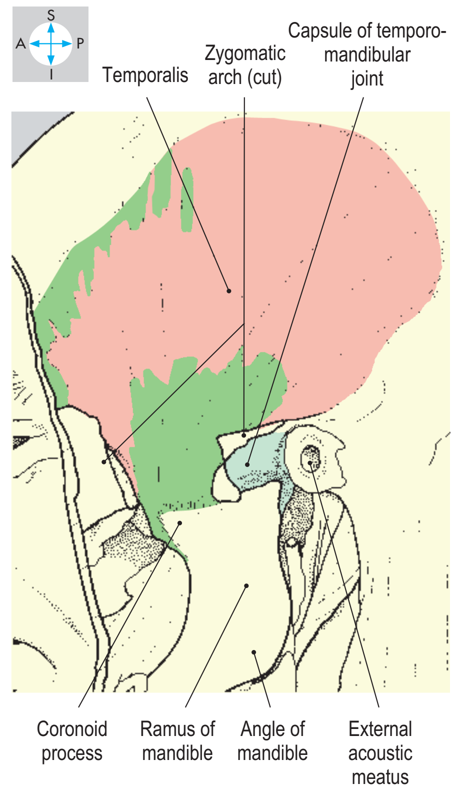



Fig. 7.30 Temporalis, seen after removal of masseter, part of the zygomatic arch and the temporal fascia.

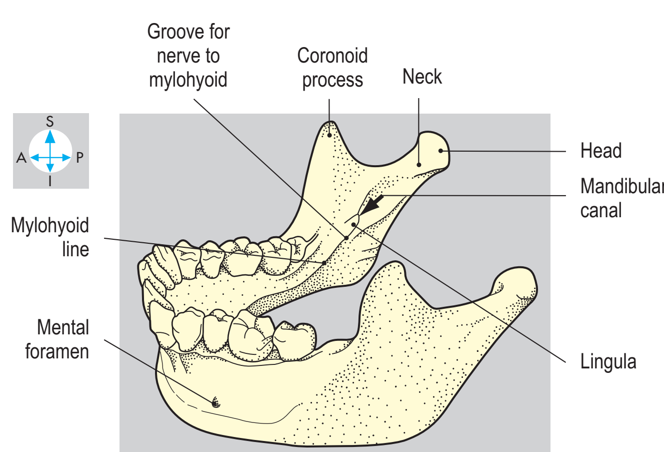



Fig. 7.31 Mandible. The right wisdom tooth is partially erupted.

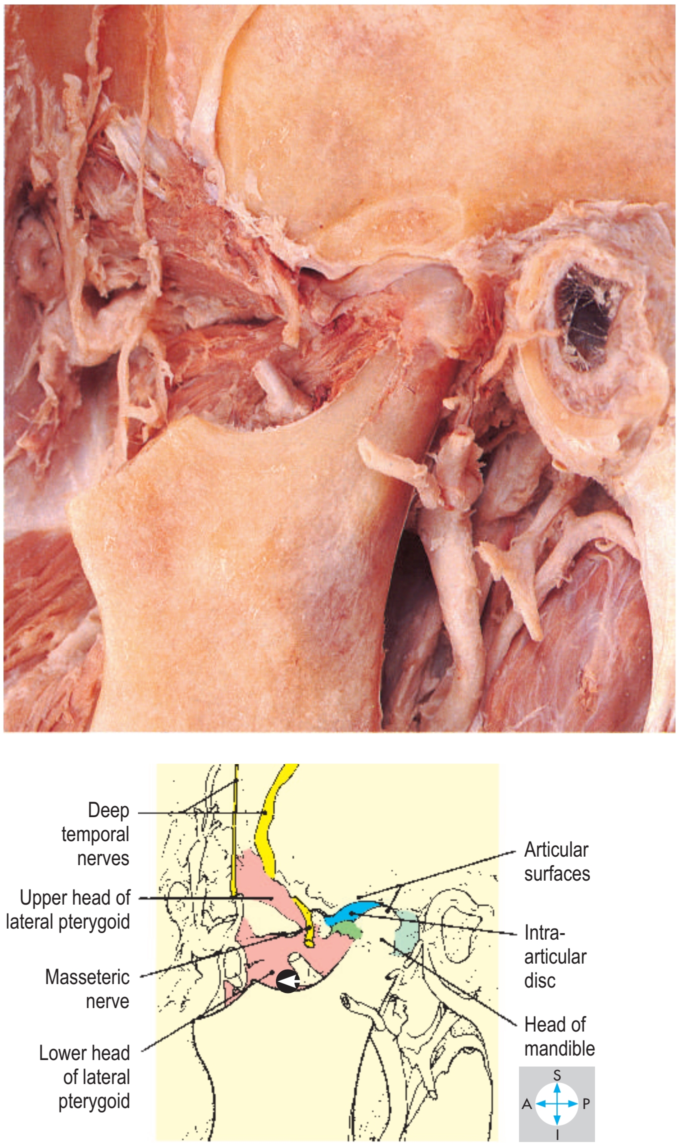


Fig. 7.32 Temporomandibular joint opened by excision of the lateral part of its capsule.

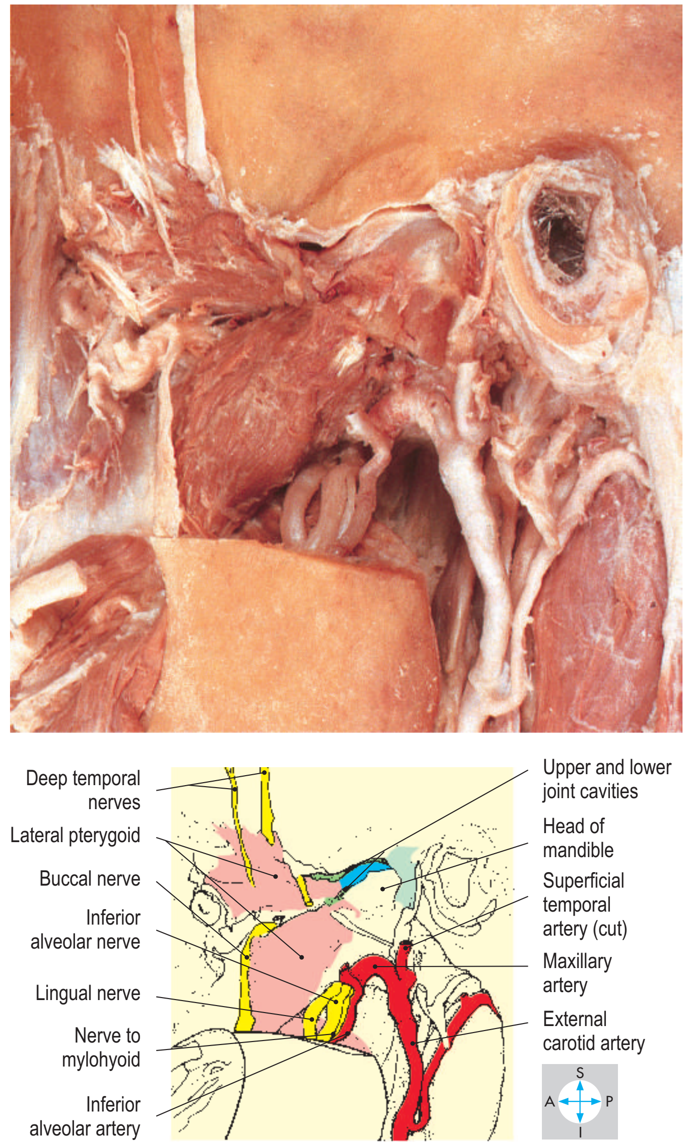


Fig. 7.33 Contents of the infratemporal fossa seen after excision of part of the mandible. In this specimen, the maxillary artery passes deep to lateral pterygoid.

Temporomandibular joint

The temporomandibular joint (Fig. 7.32) is a synovial joint. The head of the mandible articulates with the articular fossa and eminence of the temporal bone. Fibrocartilage covers the articular surfaces and also forms an articular disc, which divides the joint into two separate cavities. Within these cavities, the non-cartilaginous surfaces are lined with synovial membrane.

The fibrous capsule surrounding the joint is attached to the margin of the articular cartilage and to the neck of the mandible. Anteriorly, it receives the attachment of the lateral pterygoid while its deep surface is firmly adherent to the periphery of the articular disc.

Laterally, the capsule (Fig. 7.30) is thickened to form the lateral ligament, which inclines posteroinferiorly from the root of the zygomatic arch to the neck of the mandible. Two accessory ligaments lie medial to the joint, although not in contact with the capsule. The sphenomandibular ligament extends from the spine of the sphenoid to the lingula adjacent to the mandibular foramen. The stylomandibular ligament, a thickening of the parotid fascia, passes from the styloid process to the angle of the mandible.

The joint receives its nerve supply from the auriculotemporal and masseteric branches of the mandibular (V_3) division of the trigeminal nerve.

Movements at the joint include elevation, depression, protraction and retraction of the mandible. The head of the mandible does not merely rotate in the articular fossa but also moves forwards onto the articular eminence of the temporal bone, taking the articular disc with it. The alternate protraction and retraction of right and left sides produces the grinding movements used in chewing. The muscles responsible for these movements are known collectively as the muscles of mastication. The mouth is closed by contraction of masseter, temporalis and medial pterygoid. The lateral pterygoid protracts the mandible and, assisted by digastric and mylohyoid (p. 348), also opens the mouth. Retraction is produced by the posterior fibres of temporalis. When the mandible is fully depressed, the joint is relatively unstable and dislocation

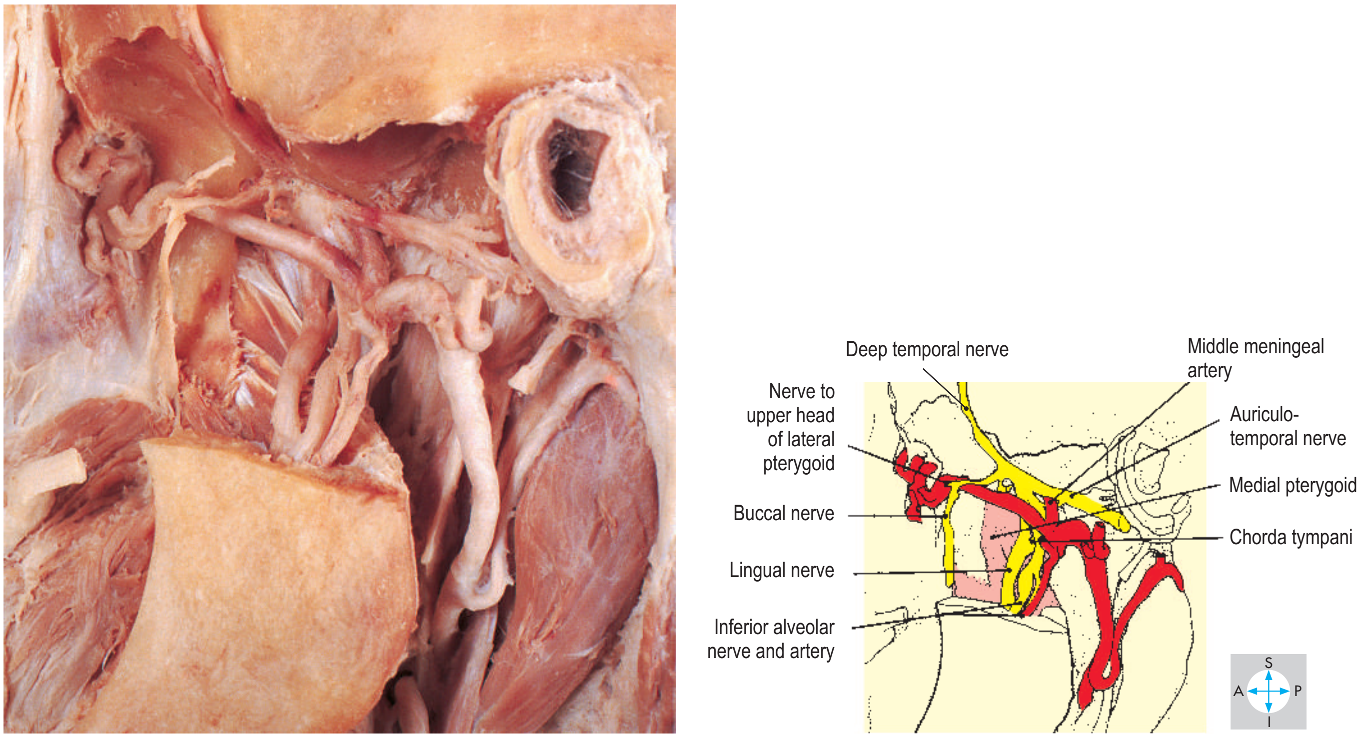


Fig. 7.34 Branches of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve and the maxillary artery, revealed by removal of the mandibular head and lateral pterygoid.

may occur, the head of the mandible moving in front of the articular eminence and resulting in an inability to close the mouth.

Mandibular (V_3) division of trigeminal nerve

The mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (Figs 7.33 & 7.34) contains sensory and motor fibres and enters the infratemporal fossa through the foramen ovale in the sphenoid. Two small branches arise from the short main trunk of the nerve. The first branch ascends through the foramen spinosum to receive sensation from the meninges of the middle cranial fossa. The other branch is motor, supplying the medial pterygoid and giving a small branch that passes through the otic ganglion (lying just medial to the main trunk of the mandibular division) to supply tensor tympani and tensor veli palatini.

The main trunk descends between the lateral pterygoid and tensor veli palatini muscles, dividing into anterior and posterior divisions. The anterior division is mainly motor and gives masseteric, deep temporal, lateral pterygoid and buccal branches. The masseteric nerve (Fig. 7.32) curves laterally above the lateral pterygoid to enter the deep surface of masseter. Two or three deep temporal nerves (Fig. 7.33) ascend deep to temporalis, which they supply, and further branches enter the deep surface of the lateral pterygoid. The buccal nerve (Figs 7.33 & 7.34) is a sensory branch that passes forwards between the two heads of the lateral pterygoid to supply the skin over the cheek and the mucosa lining the cheek, which it reaches by piercing, but not supplying, buccinator.

The posterior division of the main trunk is mainly sensory and has three branches, the auriculotemporal, lingual and inferior alveolar nerves. The auriculotemporal nerve (Fig. 7.34) arises by two roots, which clasp the origin of the middle meningeal artery. The nerve passes backwards before turning superiorly behind the temporomandibular joint to ascend in company with the superficial temporal vessels. It gives secretomotor branches to the parotid gland (p. 339) and conveys sensation from the temporal region, the upper half of the pinna and most of the external acoustic meatus.

The lingual nerve (Figs 7.33 & 7.34) inclines downwards and forwards between the pterygoids, deviating medially to pass below the superior constrictor of the pharynx. In the floor of the mouth it runs forwards lateral to the hyoglossus muscle, at whose anterior border it again turns medially to pass inferior to the submandibular duct and enter the base of the tongue. It conveys general sensation from the anterior two-thirds of the tongue. Near the lower border of the lateral pterygoid the lingual nerve is joined by the chorda tympani (a branch of the facial nerve). Arising within the temporal bone, the chorda tympani emerges from the petrotympanic fissure. It carries taste fibres, which have travelled in the lingual nerve from the anterior two-thirds of the tongue and preganglionic parasympathetic fibres destined for the submandibular ganglion (p. 352).

The inferior alveolar nerve (Figs 7.33 & 7.34) descends medial to the lateral pterygoid and gives rise to a motor branch that curves downwards to supply mylohyoid and the anterior belly of digastric. The inferior alveolar nerve then enters the mandibular foramen in the ramus of the mandible and runs forwards in the mandibular canal, supplying the lower teeth and alveolar ridge. Its mental branch emerges from the mental foramen to supply skin overlying the chin. Local anaesthetic injected near the inferior alveolar nerve as it enters the mandibular foramen will block

sensation from the lower teeth and gums on that side of the mouth. Often there is loss of sensation in the same side of the tongue because of the proximity of the lingual nerve.

Maxillary artery

This artery (Figs 7.33 & 7.34) arises in the parotid gland (p. 339) as a terminal branch of the external carotid artery, passes antero-superiorly across the infratemporal fossa, usually lateral to the lateral pterygoid, and traverses the pterygomaxillary fissure to enter the pterygopalatine fossa where terminal branches arise. These correspond to branches of the maxillary nerve (p. 353).

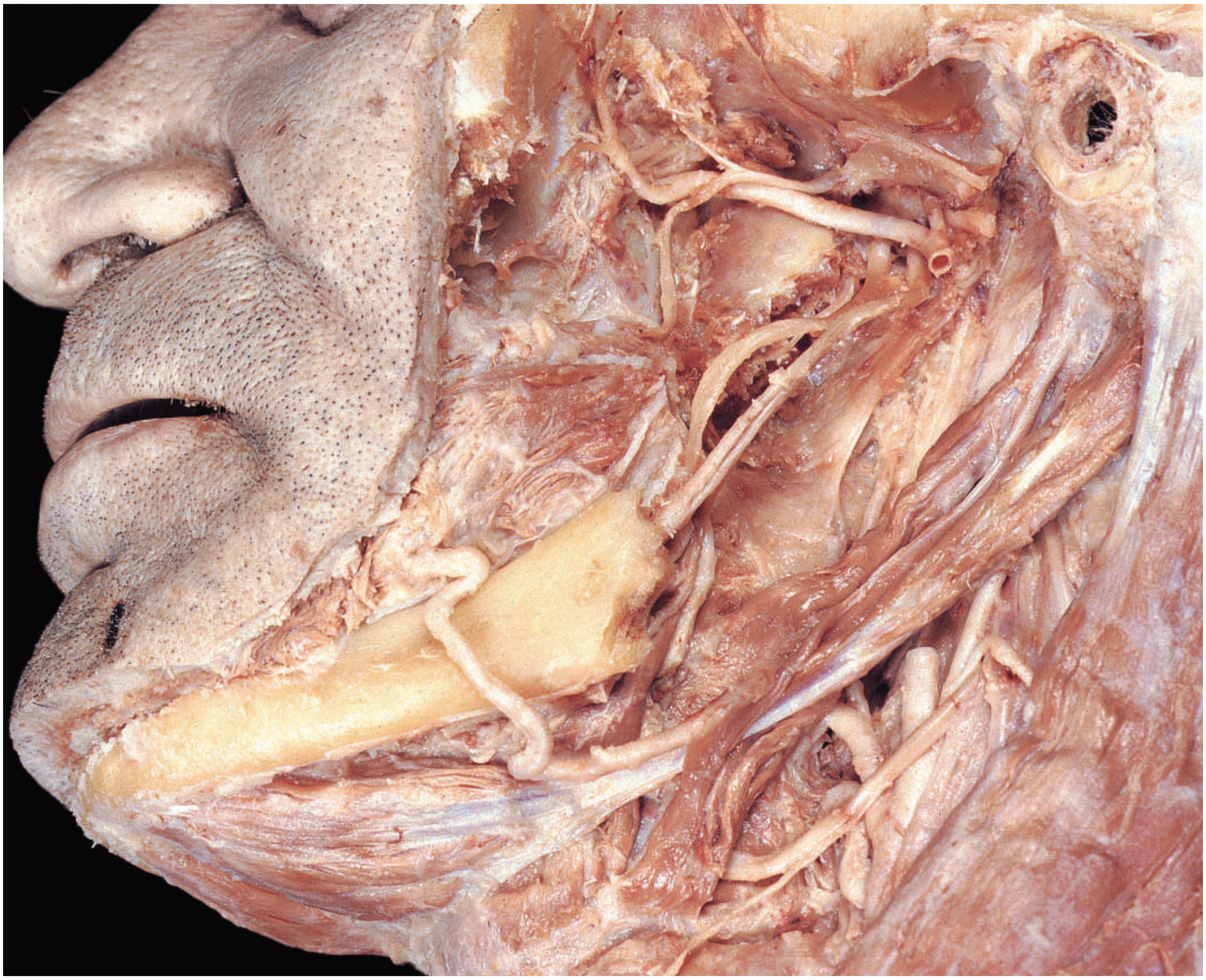
In the infratemporal fossa, the maxillary artery gives branches to supply masseter, temporalis and the pterygoid muscles. In addition, the middle meningeal artery arises deep to the lateral pterygoid, embraced by the two roots of the auriculotemporal nerve. It traverses the foramen spinosum and within the cranium supplies the meninges of the middle cranial fossa and the cranial vault.

The maxillary artery also gives rise to the inferior alveolar artery, which accompanies the nerve into the mandibular canal. Further small branches supply the middle ear and the lining of the external acoustic meatus.

Pterygoid venous plexus

Veins within the pterygopalatine fossa form a plexus that extends through the pterygomaxillary fissure into the infratemporal fossa, where the plexus is related to the pterygoid muscles. This pterygoid plexus has important connections to the cavernous sinus in the skull and infraorbital and ophthalmic veins. The plexus drains by the maxillary vein into the retromandibular vein (p. 340).

Digastric and Styloid Muscles



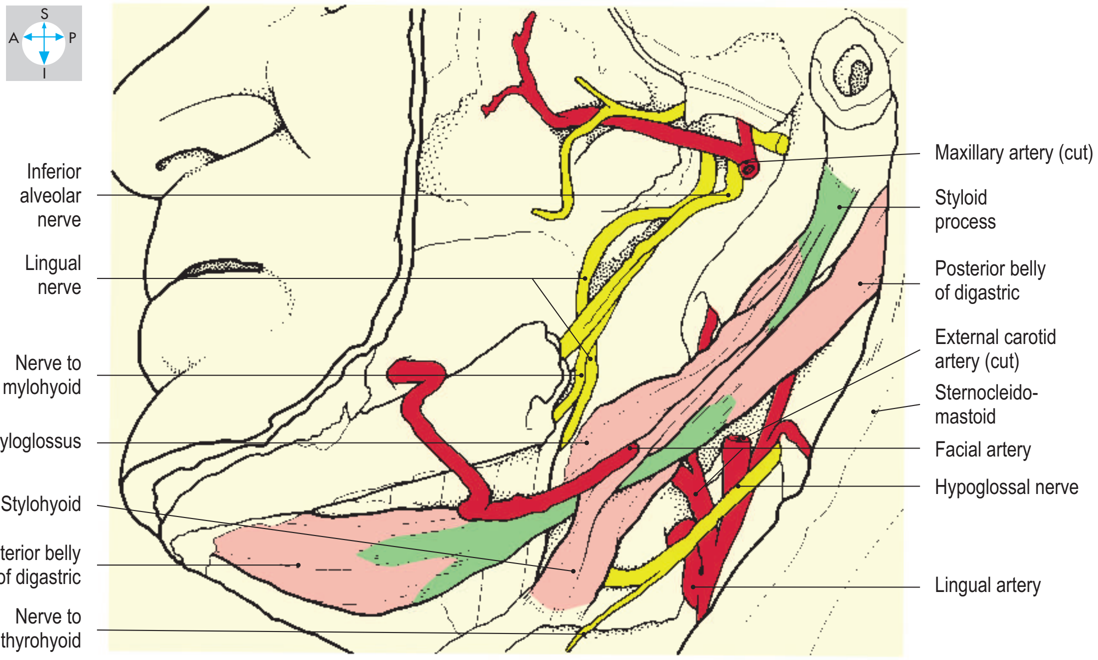


Fig. 7.35 Digastric and stylohyoid seen after removal of part of the mandible. The superficial part of the submandibular gland has also been excised.

Digastric

The digastric muscle (Fig. 7.35) consists of anterior and posterior bellies united by an intermediate tendon. The posterior belly attaches to the medial surface of the mastoid process and inclines forwards and downwards, becoming continuous with the intermediate tendon close to the hyoid bone. This tendon pierces stylohyoid and is anchored by a fascial sling to the hyoid bone. The anterior belly continues forwards from the intermediate tendon to attach to the inferior border of the mandible near the midline. Digastric elevates the hyoid bone during swallowing and assists mylohyoid and the lateral pterygoid in depressing the mandible when opening the mouth. The posterior belly is innervated by the facial (VII) nerve (p. 340). The anterior belly receives its motor supply from the mandibular (V_3) division of the trigeminal nerve via the mylohyoid branch of the inferior alveolar nerve (p. 345).

Muscles of styloid process

Three muscles, stylohyoid, stylopharyngeus and styloglossus, attach to the styloid process but diverge to reach the hyoid bone, the pharynx and the tongue, respectively.

Stylohyoid (Fig. 7.35) inclines downwards and forwards from the posterior surface of the styloid process to attach to the body of the hyoid bone alongside the lesser horn. The muscle or its tendon is pierced by the intermediate tendon of digastric near the hyoid bone. Stylohyoid elevates the hyoid and is innervated by the facial (VII) nerve.

Stylopharyngeus (Fig. 7.36) is attached to the medial side of the root of the styloid process and passes inferomedially on the lateral surface of the superior pharyngeal constrictor. It enters the wall of the pharynx between the superior and middle constrictors and blends with the other longitudinal muscles of the pharynx. The muscle elevates the pharynx and larynx during swallowing and is the only muscle innervated by the glossopharyngeal (IX) nerve.

Styloglossus (Fig. 7.36) inclines anteromedially from the tip of the styloid process and upper end of the stylohyoid ligament and passes between the superior and middle constrictors of the pharynx to enter the tongue. It elevates and retracts the tongue and, in common with other muscles of the tongue, is supplied by the hypoglossal (XII) nerve.

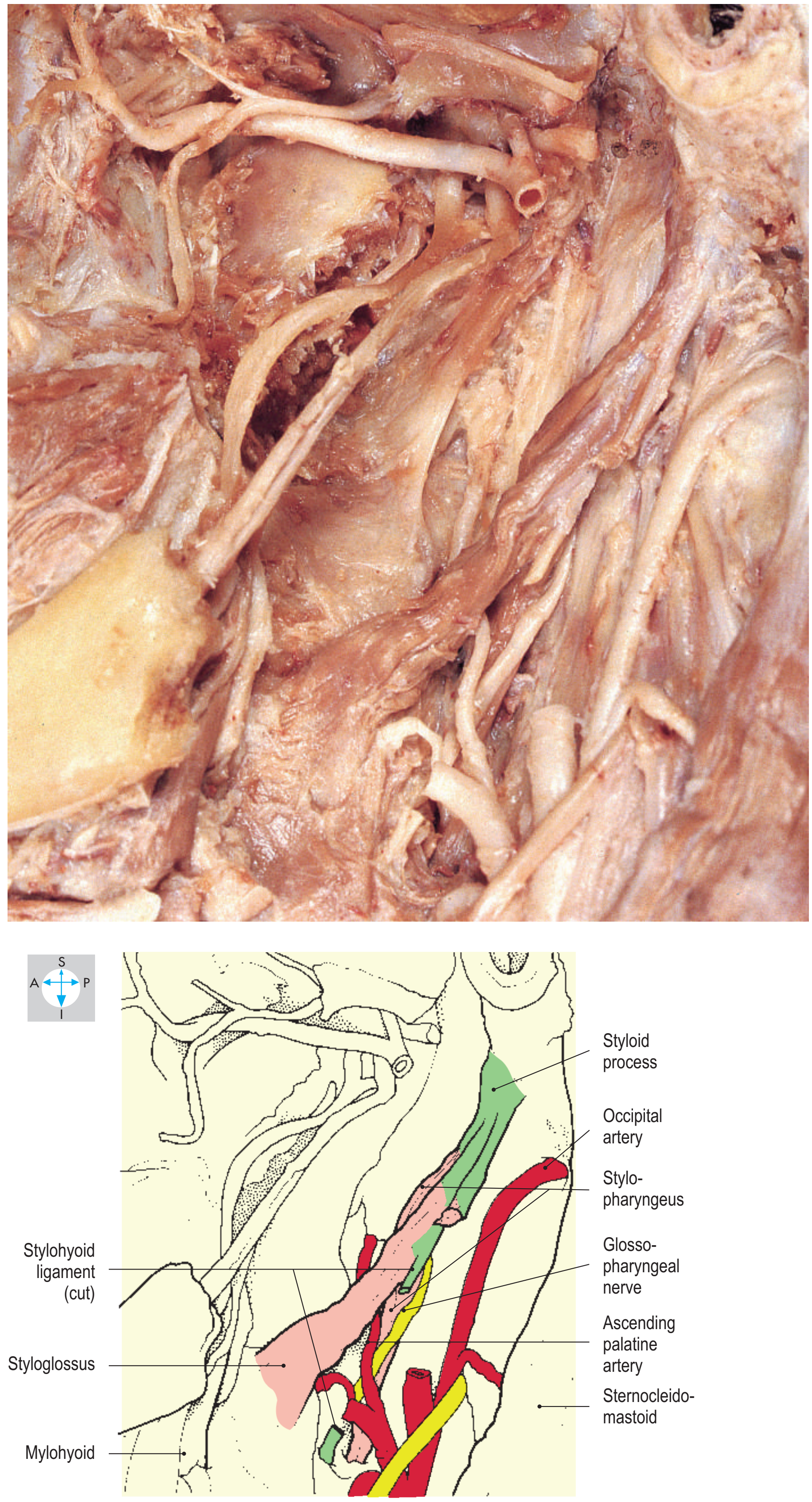
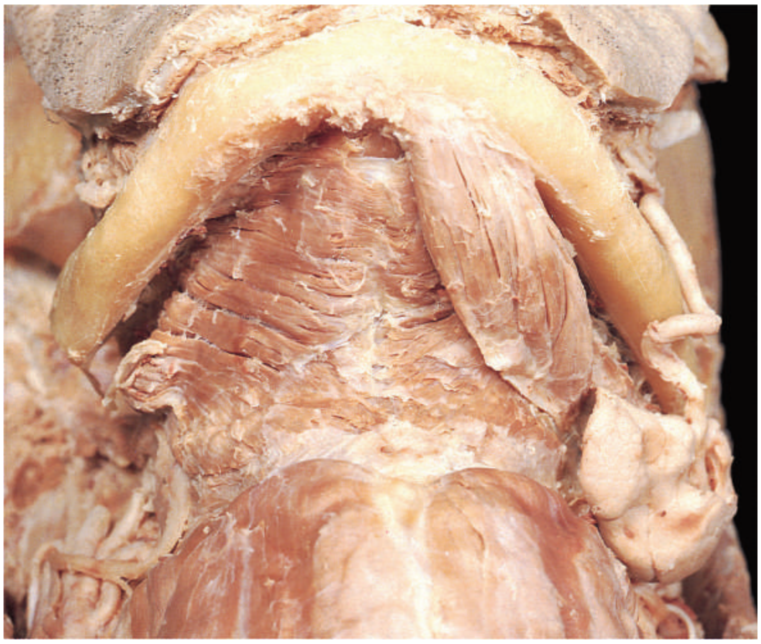


Fig. 7.36 Stylopharyngeus and styloglossus seen after excision of digastric, stylohyoid and the middle portion of the stylohyoid ligament.

Mylohyoid and Related Structures



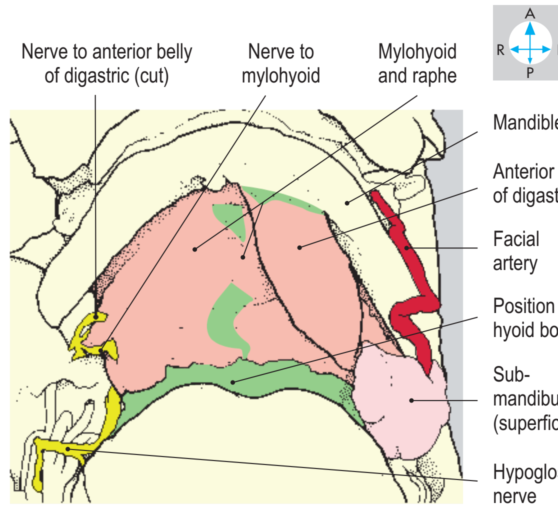
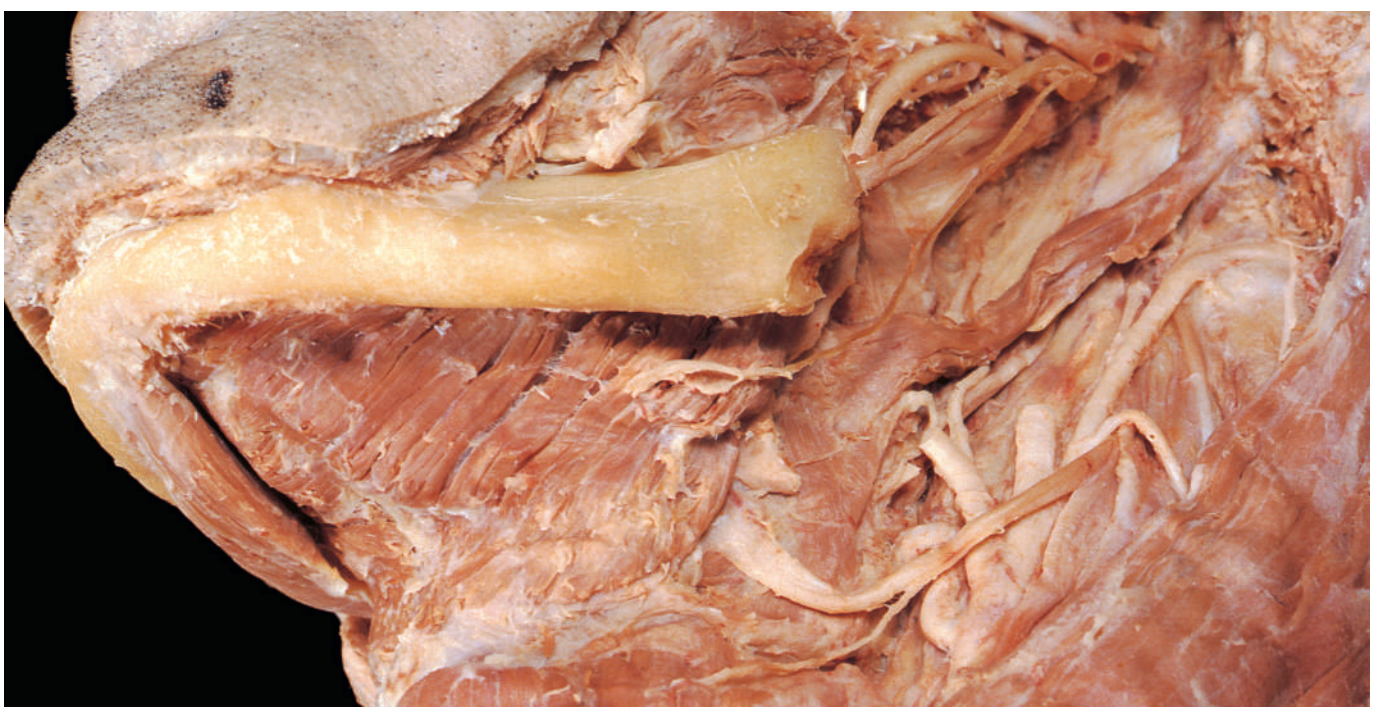


Fig. 7.37 Mylohyoid, revealed by removal of the right anterior belly of digastric and superficial part of the right submandibular gland.



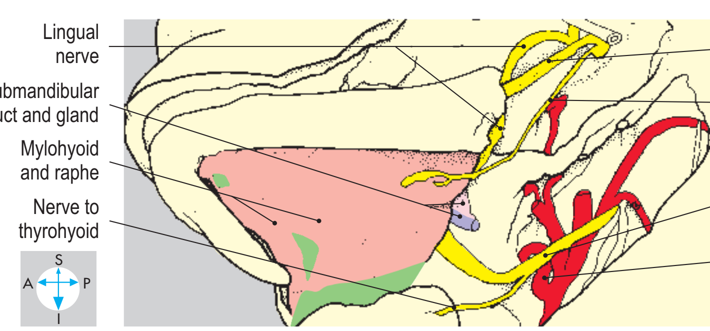
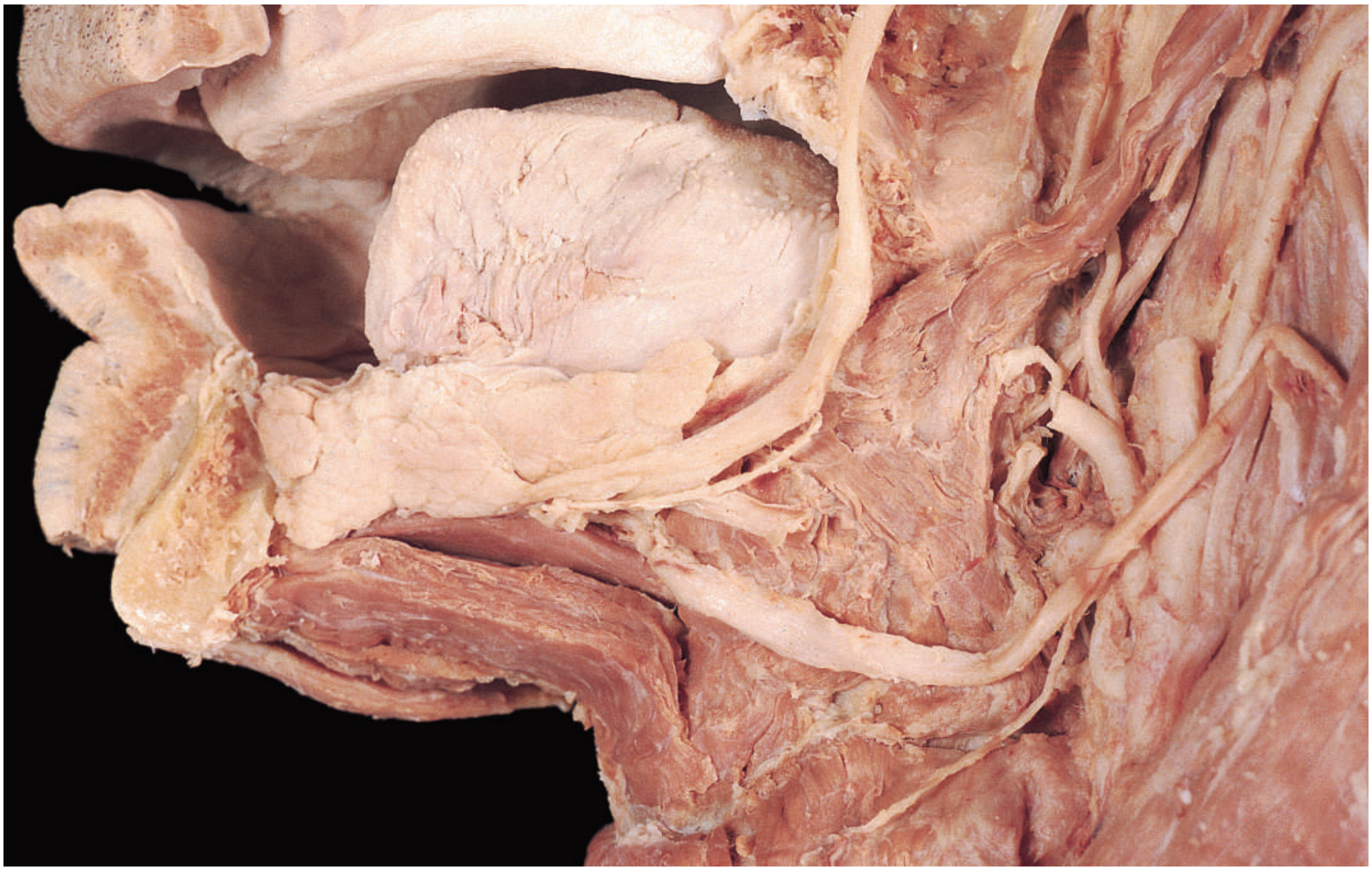


Fig. 7.38 The hypoglossal nerve, lingual nerve and submandibular duct passing above mylohyoid.



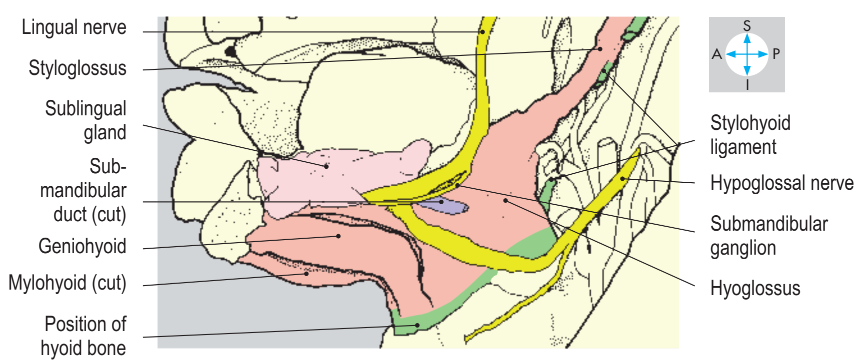


Fig. 7.39 Structures deep to mylohyoid, seen after partial removal of the mylohyoid and the mandible. The submandibular ganglion is elongated in this specimen.

Suspended from the body of the mandible is a thin sheet of muscle formed by the two mylohyoid muscles. The fibres of each muscle incline downwards and medially, meeting each other in the midline to form a shallow gutter. This gutter slopes downwards and backwards and ends at the free posterior borders of the two muscles on either side of the hyoid bone.

Each mylohyoid separates the superficial tissues in the upper part of the neck from the tongue and related structures within the mouth. Below the muscle lie the anterior belly of digastric (p. 348), part of the platysma (p. 336), the facial artery and vein, and the larger superficial part of the submandibular salivary gland (Fig. 7.37). This gland curves around the posterior border of mylohyoid so that its deep part and the submandibular duct lie above the muscle. Also located on the superior aspect of mylohyoid are the sublingual glands, the tongue with its vessels and nerves and the geniohyoid muscles.

Mylohyoid

This muscle (Figs 7.37 & 7.38) takes attachment from the mylohyoid line on the inner aspect of the body of the mandible. Most of its fibres reach a midline raphe, where they interdigitate with those from the opposite side. However, the posterior fibres descend to the body of the hyoid bone. The mylohyoid muscles raise the hyoid bone and the tongue during swallowing; they also help to depress the mandible when the hyoid bone is fixed from below. The muscle is innervated by the mylohyoid nerve, a branch of the inferior alveolar nerve from the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (V_3).

Geniohyoid

Above mylohyoid geniohyoid (Fig. 7.39) lies close to the midline, passing from the inferior mental spine (inferior genial tubercle) on the mandible to the body of the hyoid bone. Innervated by C1 spinal nerve fibres that are conveyed in the hypoglossal nerve, geniohyoid either elevates the hyoid or depresses the mandible.

Tongue

The tongue is a muscular organ and lies mostly within the oral cavity, although its posterior part projects into the oropharynx.

Surface features

The tongue is covered by mucosa, which is reflected anteriorly and laterally onto the inferior surface. Under the tip of the tongue the mucous membrane forms a midline

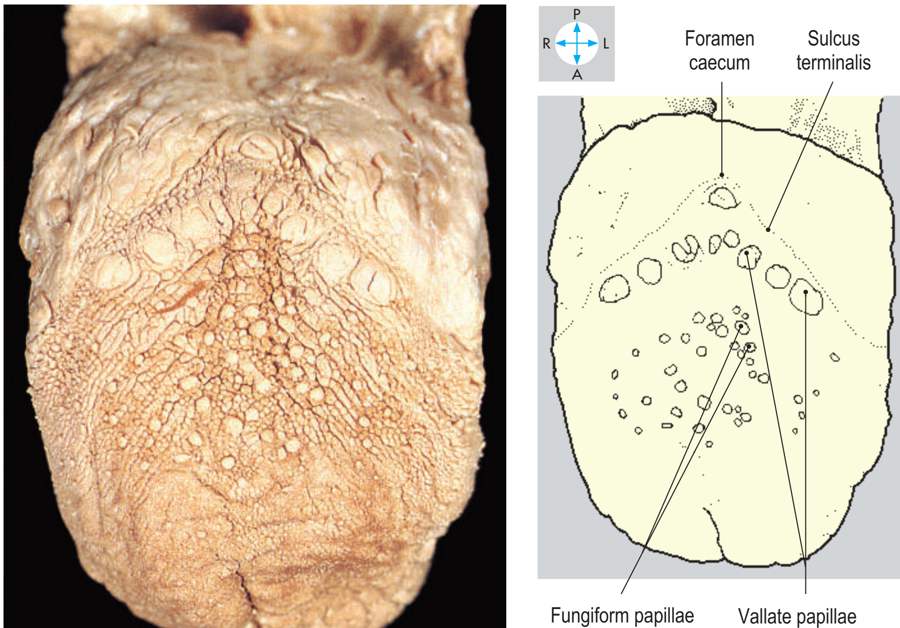


Fig. 7.40 Surface features of the tongue.

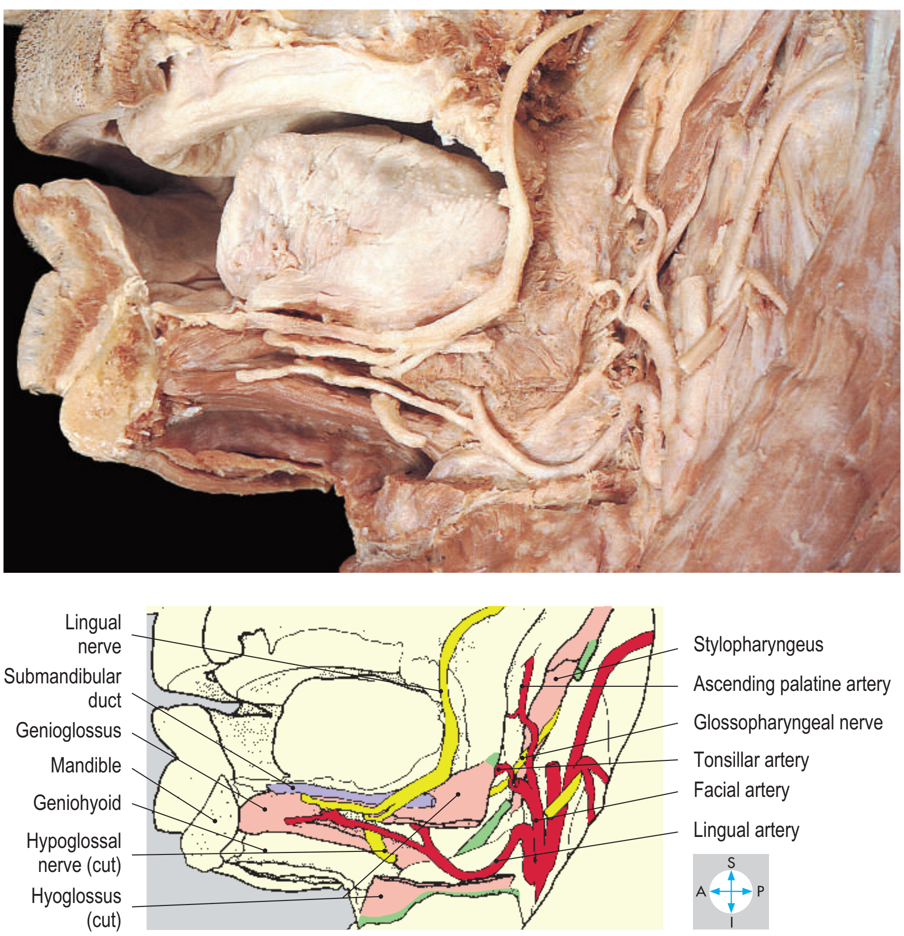


Fig. 7.41 Deeper structures in the base of the tongue, revealed after removal of the sublingual gland and part of hyoglossus.

fold, the frenulum. The upper surface of the tongue (Fig. 7.40) is divided into anterior two-thirds and posterior one-third by a V-shaped groove, the terminal sulcus. A midline depression, the foramen caecum, lies at the apex of the groove. A row of round elevations, the vallate papillae, lies just in front of the sulcus. From the mucosa of the tongue, somatic sensory and taste fibres pass centrally to reach the brain. From the anterior two-thirds of the tongue (and adjacent oral mucosa), these fibres travel in the lingual nerve (p. 345). Somatic sensory fibres continue to the brain in the mandibular (V_3) division of the trigeminal nerve. However, taste fibres leave the lingual nerve and are conveyed via the chorda tympani nerve to the facial (VII) nerve (p. 345). Both taste and somatic sensory nerve fibres from the posterior third of the tongue (including the vallate papillae) are conveyed in the glossopharyngeal (IX) nerve.

Muscles

The musculature of the tongue, divided into two functional halves by a fibrous septum, consists of both extrinsic and intrinsic muscles. In general, the extrinsic muscles alter the position of the tongue and the intrinsic muscles alter its shape.

The extrinsic muscles comprise styloglossus (p. 348), hyoglossus and genioglossus. Hyoglossus (Fig. 7.39) is attached to the body and greater horn of the hyoid bone and its fibres pass upwards and forwards to reach the side of the tongue. Hyoglossus depresses the tongue, particularly at the sides. Genioglossus (Figs 7.41 & 7.42) forms much of the bulk of the tongue, its fibres radiating from the superior mental spine (superior genial tubercle). The superior fibres reach the tip, while the inferior fibres pass into the posteroinferior part of the organ. Genioglossus draws the tongue forwards and downwards and its anterior fibres retract the tip.

Palatoglossus descends from the soft palate and enters the side of the tongue posteriorly. Although it helps to elevate the tongue, it is usually considered to be a muscle of the palate (p. 362).

The intrinsic muscles comprise interlacing longitudinal, transverse and vertical groups of fibres on either side of the midline fibrous septum. The shape of the tongue is changed by integrated contractions of the various groups.

The hypoglossal (XII) nerve (Fig. 7.39) supplies all the muscles of the tongue, both intrinsic and extrinsic. (The nerve supply to palatoglossus is described with the other muscles of the palate; p. 362.) Damage to the hypoglossal nerve causes the tongue to deviate to the injured side when protruded.

Blood supply

Arising from the front of the external carotid artery, the lingual artery (Fig. 7.41)

loops upwards above the greater horn of the hyoid bone and continues forwards into the base of the tongue deep to hyoglossus. Having supplied structures in the tongue, the lingual artery terminates in the tip. Venous drainage follows a reciprocal course into the internal jugular vein.

Submandibular and sublingual glands

The superficial part of the submandibular salivary gland (Fig. 7.37) lies inferior to mylohyoid and extends below the medial surface of the mandible. It is continuous around the posterior border of mylohyoid with the smaller deep part (Fig. 7.38) of the gland that lies above the muscle. The lateral surface of the superficial part of the gland is indented by the facial artery as the vessel arches forwards to reach the inferior border of the mandible (p. 337).

From the deep part of the gland the submandibular duct passes forwards and medially to open close to the midline at the base of the frenulum of the tongue. A number of small sublingual glands (Fig. 7.39) lie beneath the mucosa adjacent to the submandibular duct. These glands are drained by ducts that open either into the submandibular duct or directly into the mouth. Calculi in the submandibular duct can often be palpated through the mucosa of the floor of the mouth. Both the sublingual and submandibular glands receive postganglionic parasympathetic secretomotor fibres from the submandibular ganglion (Fig. 7.39). Preganglionic fibres reach the submandibular ganglion from the facial nerve by way of the chorda tympani and lingual nerves.

Hypoglossal (XII) nerve

The twelfth cranial nerve (Fig. 7.38) leaves the skull through the hypoglossal canal and descends between the internal jugular vein and internal carotid artery to turn forwards close to the origin of the occipital artery from the external carotid artery, where the superior root of the ansa cervicalis (p. 329) arises. The hypoglossal nerve then continues forwards across the loop of the lingual artery and passes between mylohyoid and hyoglossus to enter the tongue whose muscles it supplies. The branches given to thyrohyoid and geniohyoid are composed of C1 fibres which are distributed via the hypoglossal nerve.

Glossopharyngeal (IX) nerve

The glossopharyngeal nerve (Fig. 7.41) emerges from the skull through the jugular foramen. Initially contained within the carotid sheath, the nerve curves forwards around the stylopharyngeus muscle (which it also supplies) and passes between the superior and middle constrictors of the pharynx to enter the posterior part of the tongue. The glossopharyngeal nerve conveys both somatic and taste sensation from the posterior third of the tongue, oropharynx and lateral parts of the soft palate. The nerve has an autonomic sensory branch, the carotid sinus nerve, which ascends from the carotid sinus and carotid body. In addition, a tympanic branch passes to the tympanic plexus in the middle ear. The lesser petrosal nerve arises from this plexus.

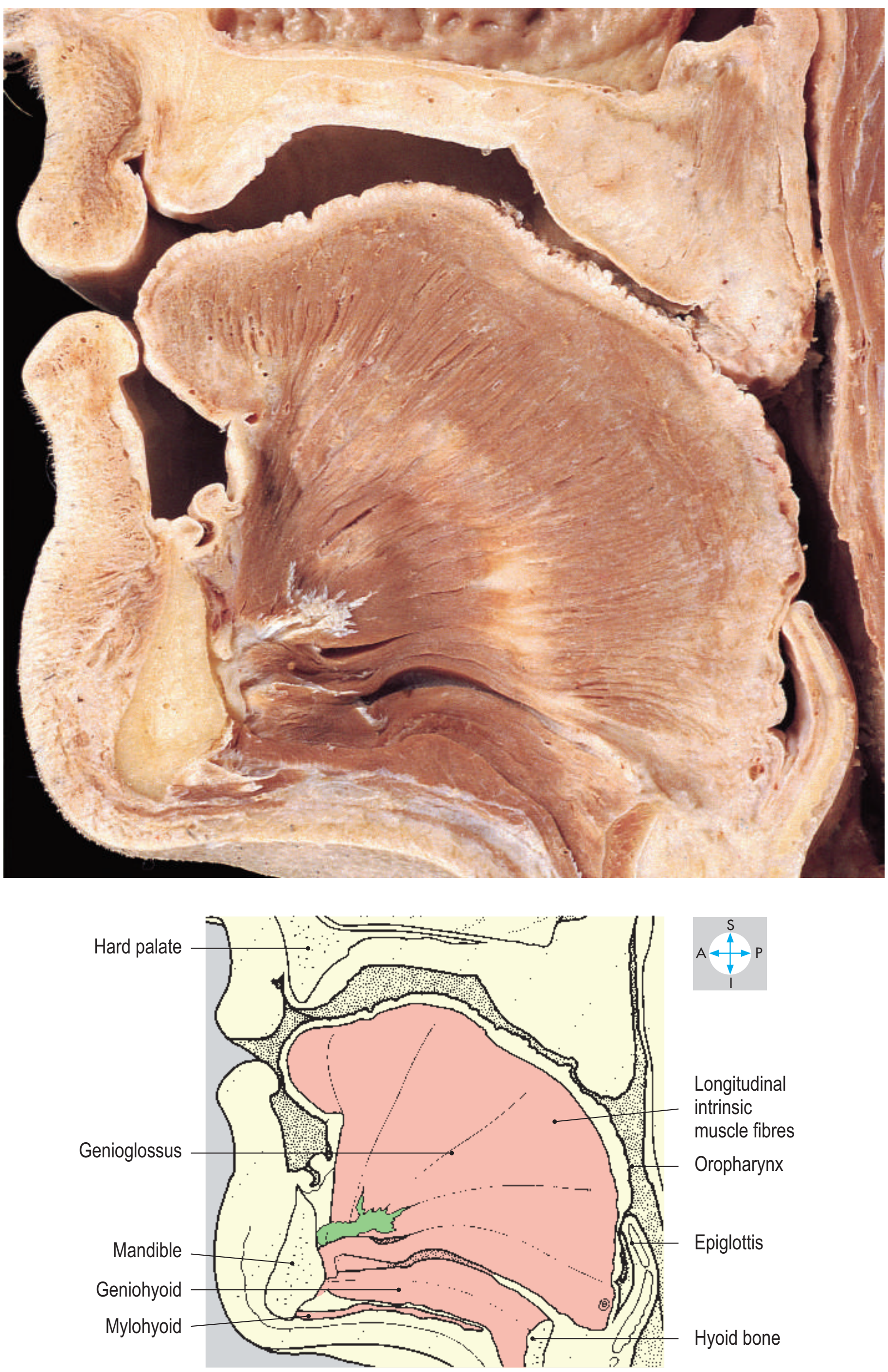


Fig. 7.42 Sagittal section through the tongue and surrounding structures.

Pterygopalatine Fossa

The pterygopalatine fossa lies between the pterygoid process of the sphenoid bone posteriorly, the palatine bone medially and the maxilla anteriorly (Fig. 7.43). It is slit-like and opens laterally through the pterygomaxillary fissure into the infratemporal fossa. It contains part of the maxillary (V_2) division of the trigeminal nerve, the pterygopalatine ganglion and its branches and the termination of the maxillary artery, together with accompanying veins and lymphatics. The pterygopalatine fossa communicates with the middle cranial fossa through the foramen rotundum, with the foramen lacerum through the pterygoid canal, with the orbit through the inferior orbital fissure, with the walls of the nasal cavity through the sphenopalatine foramen and with the palate via the greater and lesser palatine canals.

Maxillary (V_2) division of the trigeminal nerve

The maxillary division (Fig. 7.44) leaves the cranial cavity through the foramen rotundum, crosses the pterygopalatine fossa and continues forwards through the inferior orbital fissure into the orbit. It terminates as the infraorbital nerve, which traverses the infraorbital canal to reach the face. The maxillary division has several branches arising in the pterygopalatine fossa and the floor of the orbit. In the pterygopalatine fossa (Fig. 7.45), two branches suspend the pterygopalatine ganglion from the parent nerve. Also arising in the fossa are the posterior superior alveolar nerves (Figs 7.44 & 7.45), which descend in the posterior wall of the maxillary air sinus to reach the upper molar teeth. In the floor of the orbit, the middle and anterior superior alveolar nerves (Fig. 7.44) arise and descend in the lateral and anterior walls of the maxilla. Collectively, the superior alveolar nerves

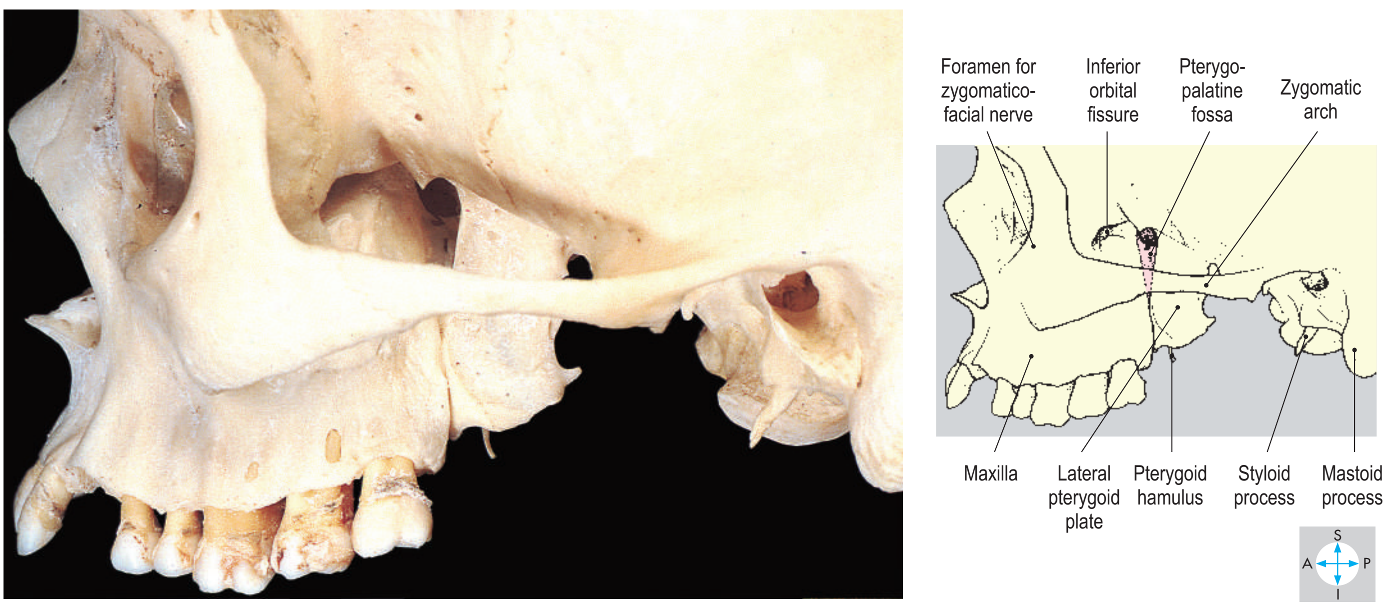


Fig. 7.43 The pterygopalatine fossa, bounded by the maxilla and lateral pterygoid plate.

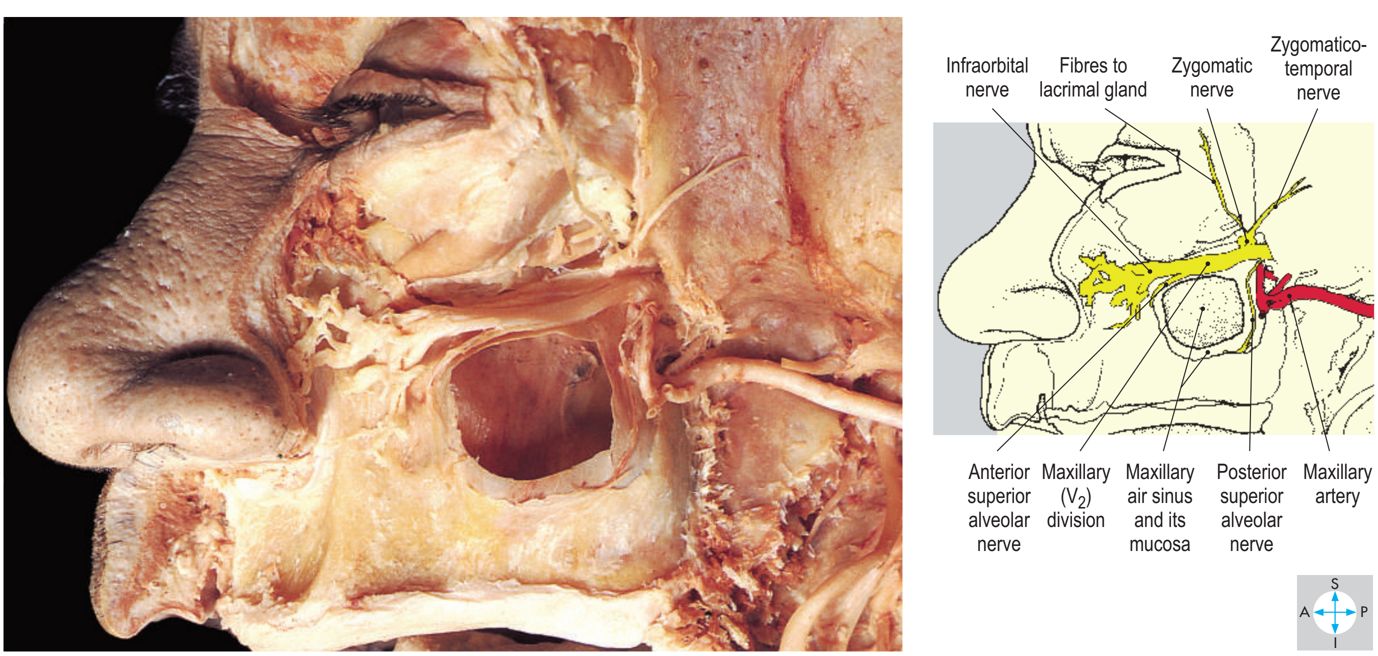
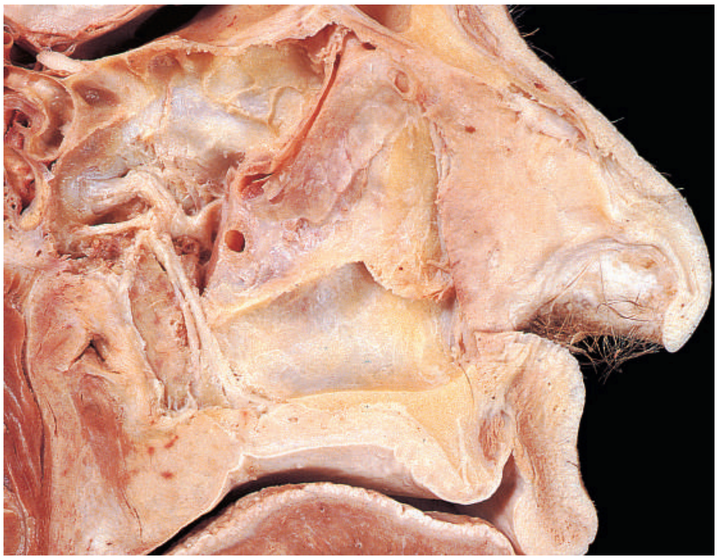


Fig. 7.44 The maxillary nerve and artery, seen after excision of part of the lateral walls of the orbit and maxillary air sinus.

supply the maxilla and its air sinus, the alveolar ridge and all the upper teeth. The zygomatic nerve (Fig. 7.44) also arises in the floor of the orbit and ascends on the lateral wall, dividing into zygomaticotemporal and zygomaticofacial nerves. These branches pierce the zygomatic bone to supply the overlying facial skin. A branch from the zygomaticotemporal nerve conveys postganglionic parasympathetic fibres from the pterygopalatine ganglion to the lacrimal gland. The infraorbital nerve (Fig. 7.44) emerges onto the face through the infraorbital foramen and supplies the skin of the cheek, lower eyelid, upper lip and lateral surface of the external nose.



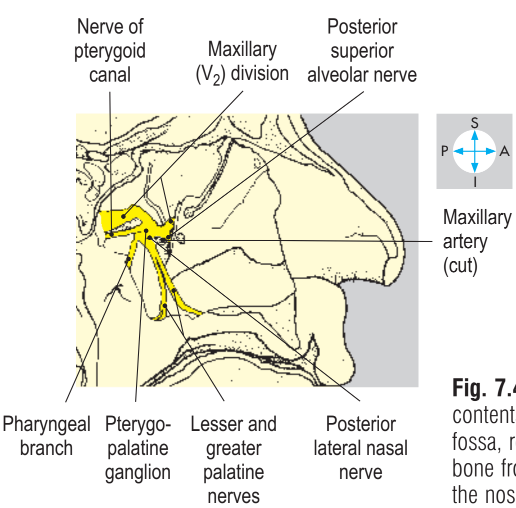


Fig. 7.45 Medial view of the contents of the pterygopalatine fossa, revealed by removal of bone from the lateral wall of the nose.

Pterygopalatine ganglion

The pterygopalatine ganglion (Fig. 7.45) is suspended from the maxillary division in the pterygopalatine fossa and transmits sensory, parasympathetic and sympathetic nerve fibres. Sensory fibres originating in the palate, nose and nasopharynx pass through the ganglion without synapsing to enter the maxillary division. Preganglionic parasympathetic fibres destined for the ganglion leave the brain in the facial (VII) nerve and travel via the greater petrosal nerve. These fibres emerge from the petrous temporal bone and pass along the floor of the middle cranial fossa to enter the foramen lacerum, where they accompany postganglionic vasomotor sympathetic fibres from the carotid plexus as the nerve of the pterygoid canal to reach the pterygopalatine ganglion. In the ganglion the parasympathetic fibres synapse, and postganglionic fibres are distributed through the appropriate branches of the ganglion to the mucous glands in the nose and palate. Secretomotor parasympathetic fibres destined for the lacrimal gland enter the maxillary division and travel in its zygomatic branch. The ganglion earns its nickname, the ‘hay fever ganglion’, by virtue of its parasympathetic component. Sympathetic fibres are also distributed in the branches of the ganglion.

There are five groups of branches from the pterygopalatine ganglion (Fig. 7.45): posterior lateral nasal, pharyngeal, nasopalatine, and greater and lesser palatine. Posterior lateral nasal nerves, entering via the sphenopalatine foramen, supply the lateral wall of the nasal cavity. The pharyngeal branch innervates the nasopharynx. The nasopalatine nerve (Fig. 7.46) crosses the anterior surface of the body of the sphenoid bone to enter the nasal

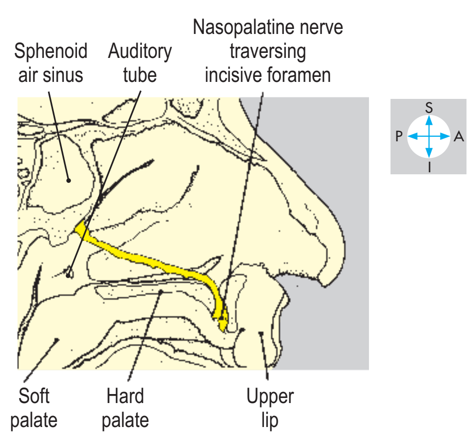


Fig. 7.46 Sagittal section showing the left nasopalatine nerve in situ after removal of the nasal septum.

septum, then angles anteroinferiorly in a groove on the upper edge of the vomer, eventually passing through the incisive canal onto the lower surface of the anterior part of the hard palate. The nerve conveys sensation from the front of the palate and the inferior part of the nasal septum. The greater and lesser palatine nerves traverse the palatine canal to emerge from the appropriate palatine foramina on the lower surface of the hard palate. The greater palatine nerve supplies the hard palate, while the lesser innervates the soft palate.

Vessels

The maxillary artery (Figs 7.44 & 7.45) enters the pterygopalatine fossa from the infratemporal fossa and divides into its terminal branches which accompany the branches of the ganglion and bear corresponding names. Venous blood drains into the pterygoid plexus, which continues into the infratemporal fossa and communicates with the cavernous sinus via the inferior and superior orbital fissures.

Nasal Cavities and Paranasal Air Sinuses

Nasal cavities

The paired nasal cavities lie centrally within the facial skeleton, medial to the orbits and the maxillary air sinuses (Fig. 7.47). They are separated from the oral cavity by the palate, from the anterior cranial fossa by the cribriform plates and from each other by the midline nasal septum. Anteriorly, the cavities lead into the vestibules, which are surrounded by the cartilaginous external nose and open onto the face at the nostrils. Posteriorly, the nasal cavities are limited by the free edge of the nasal septum at the choanae (posterior nasal apertures), which open into the nasopharynx. Each cavity is partially subdivided by three shelf-like projections from the lateral wall, the superior, middle and inferior conchae (turbinates Fig. 7.48). The parts of the nasal cavity beneath each of these are called correspondingly the superior, middle and inferior meatuses, while above the superior concha is the sphenoethmoidal recess. Into this recess and the meatuses drain the paranasal air sinuses and the nasolacrimal duct. Respiratory epithelium lines the cavity and paranasal air sinuses while the vestibule has a stratified squamous epithelium bearing nasal vibrissae (hairs).

Bony walls

The medial wall is the nasal septum (Fig. 7.49), common to both cavities and formed superiorly by the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid. This plate continues upwards as the crista galli, which projects into the anterior cranial fossa. The bony septum is completed posteroinferiorly by the vomer. Anteriorly, the septum is composed of hyaline cartilage which extends into the external nose.

The roof of each cavity comprises, from in front backwards, the nasal and frontal bones, the cribriform plate of the ethmoid and, finally, the body of the sphenoid bone containing the sphenoidal air sinuses. Olfactory (I) nerves from the olfactory mucosa traverse the many small foramina in the cribriform plate to reach the olfactory bulbs in the anterior cranial fossa (Fig. 7.50). These nerves are vulnerable to damage in head injuries with fracture of the cribriform plates, disrupting the sense of smell. Leakage of cerebrospinal fluid from the nose may also result from these fractures.

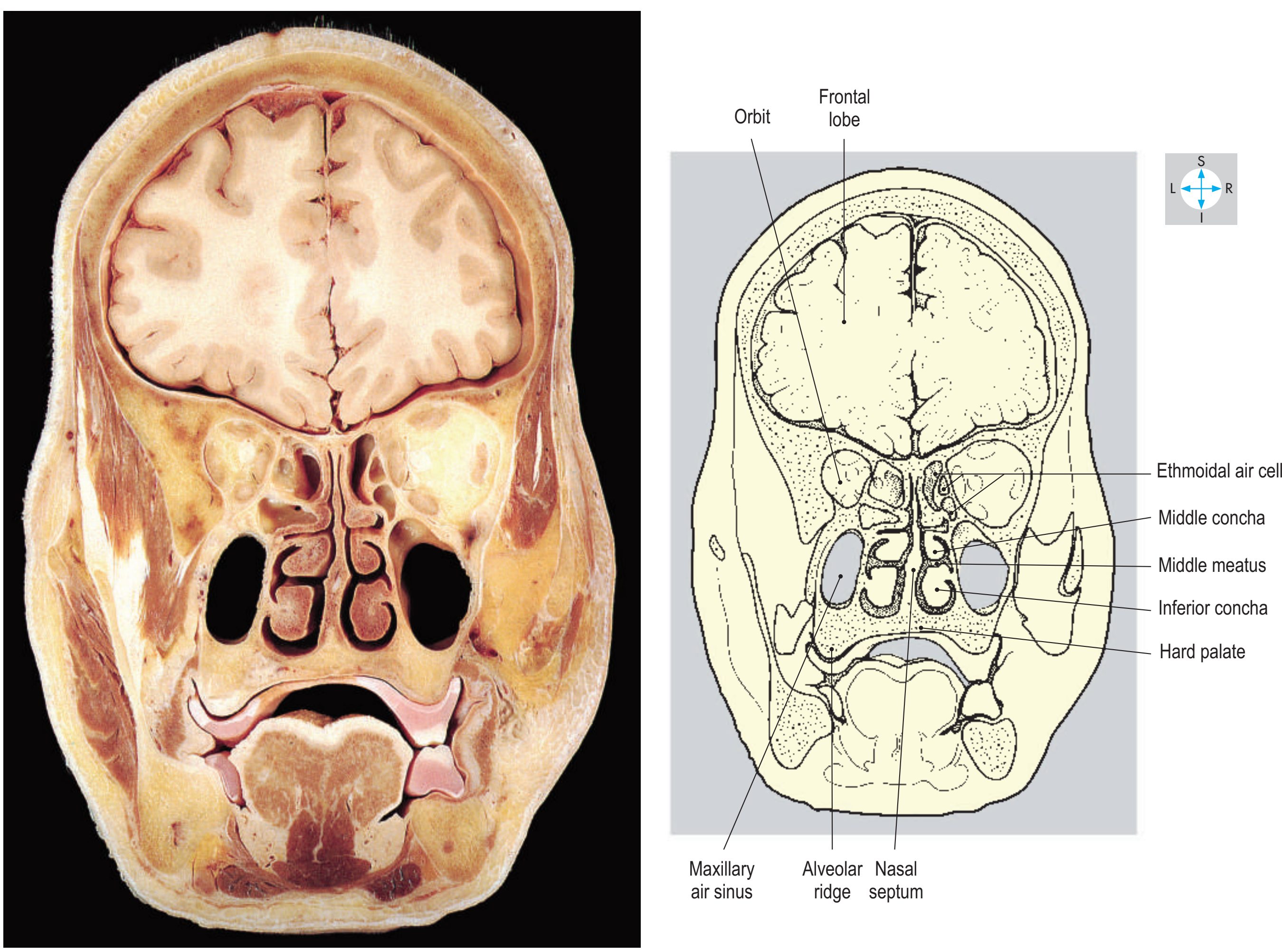


Fig. 7.47 Coronal section showing the orbits and nasal cavities. Posterior aspect. (Compare Figs 7.84 & 7.92.)

The floor of each nasal cavity is formed by the hard palate, consisting of the palatine process of the maxilla and the horizontal process of the palatine bone.

Numerous bones contribute to the lateral wall (Figs 7.48, 7.50 & 7.51), including the inferior concha and the maxilla, lacrimal, ethmoid, palatine and sphenoid bones. The maxilla forms the anteroinferior portion of the lateral wall and contains the maxillary air sinus. Between the maxilla and the ethmoid, part of the lacrimal bone covers the nasolacrimal canal, which opens into the inferior meatus. Each labyrinth (lateral mass) of the ethmoid is attached to the lateral part of the cribriform plate and contains numerous air cells. From the medial surface of the labyrinth project the small superior and the larger middle conchae. The ethmoidal air cells bulge into the middle meatus, forming the bulla, beneath which a curved groove, the hiatus semilunaris, separates the ethmoid from the maxilla. Forming the posterior limit of the hiatus semilunaris is the vertical plate of the palatine bone. The most posterior component of the lateral wall is the medial pterygoid plate of the sphenoid. Overlying the maxilla and palatine bones is a separate bone, the inferior concha.

Sensory nerve supply

The somatic sensory nerve supply to the walls of the nasal cavity is derived mainly from the maxillary (V_2) division of the trigeminal nerve. The posterior lateral nasal nerves from the pterygopalatine ganglion (p. 354) supply most of the lateral wall, while the nasopalatine nerve supplies the septum. Lesser and greater palatine nerves supply the posterior part of the lateral wall and the floor. In addition, fibres from the ophthalmic (V_1) division reach the nasal cavity via the anterior ethmoidal nerve. This nerve

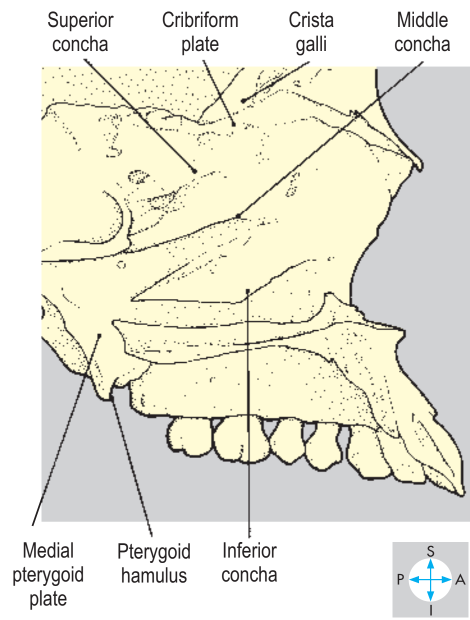


Fig. 7.48 Bony lateral wall of nasal cavity after sagittal section and removal of the septum.

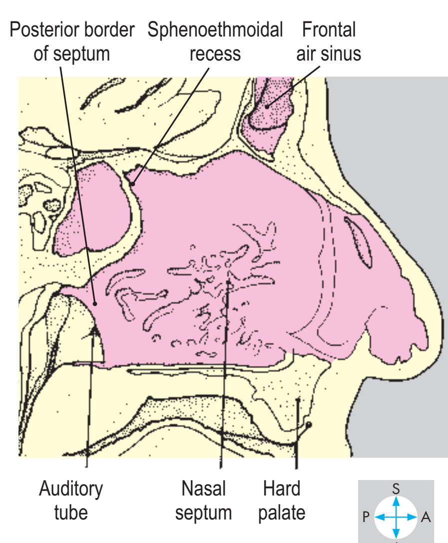


Fig. 7.49 Sagittal section just to right of midline with intact nasal septum.

supplies the anterosuperior parts of the septum and the lateral wall and continues as the external nasal nerve to supply the midline part of the external nose.

Blood supply

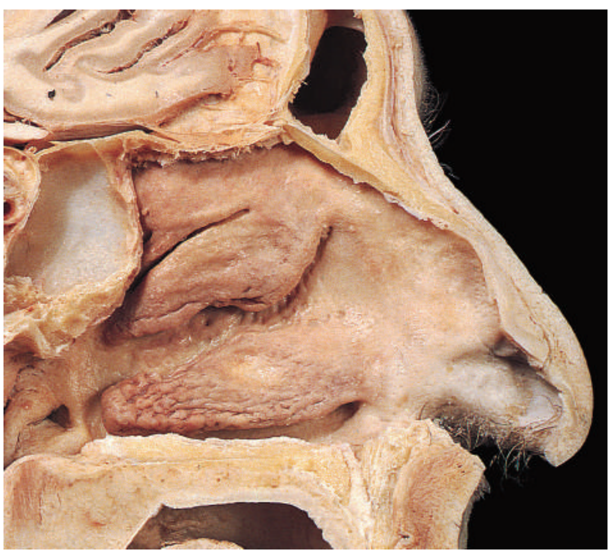
Most of the blood supply to the walls of the nasal cavity is provided by branches of the maxillary artery. These vessels arise in the pterygopalatine fossa and are named according to the branches of the pterygopalatine ganglion they accompany. The anteroinferior part of the nasal septum is highly vascular (Little's area) and commonly gives rise to nasal haemorrhage (epistaxis).

Venous blood passes to the pterygoid plexus, the facial vein and the ophthalmic veins.

Paranasal air sinuses

There are four paired groups of paranasal air sinuses (Figs 7.51–7.54) contained within the frontal, maxillary, ethmoid and sphenoid bones. Each sinus communicates with the nasal cavity, is lined with mucous membrane and normally contains air. The frontal air sinuses are situated in the vertical and horizontal parts of the frontal bone, closely related to the frontal lobes of the brain. They are variable in size and open into the middle meatus at the infundibulum, the most anterior part of the hiatus semilunaris. The frontal air sinus is supplied by the supraorbital branch of the ophthalmic (V_1) division of the trigeminal nerve.

The maxillary air sinus (antrum) occupies the body of the maxilla, lying above the oral cavity and alveolar ridge and below



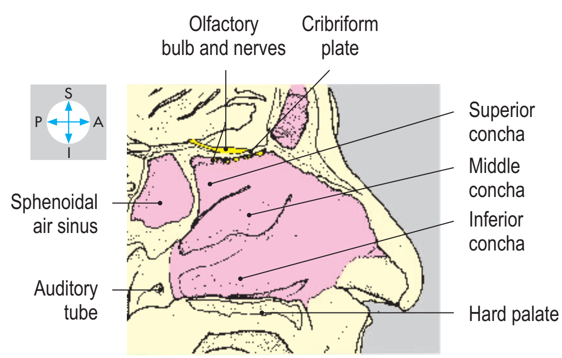


Fig. 7.50 Sagittal section with the nasal septum removed to show the lateral wall of the nasal cavity.

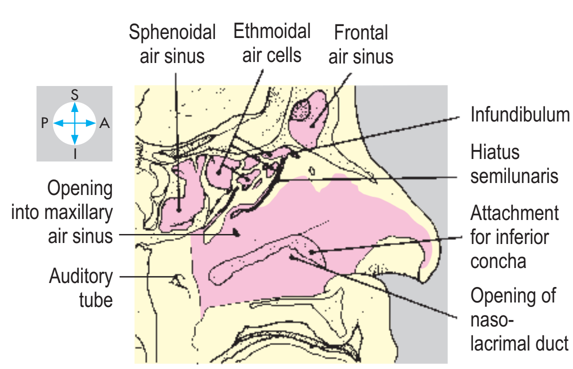


Fig. 7.51 Sagittal section after removal of the conchae, the ethmoid bulla and the upper part of the lateral nasal wall.

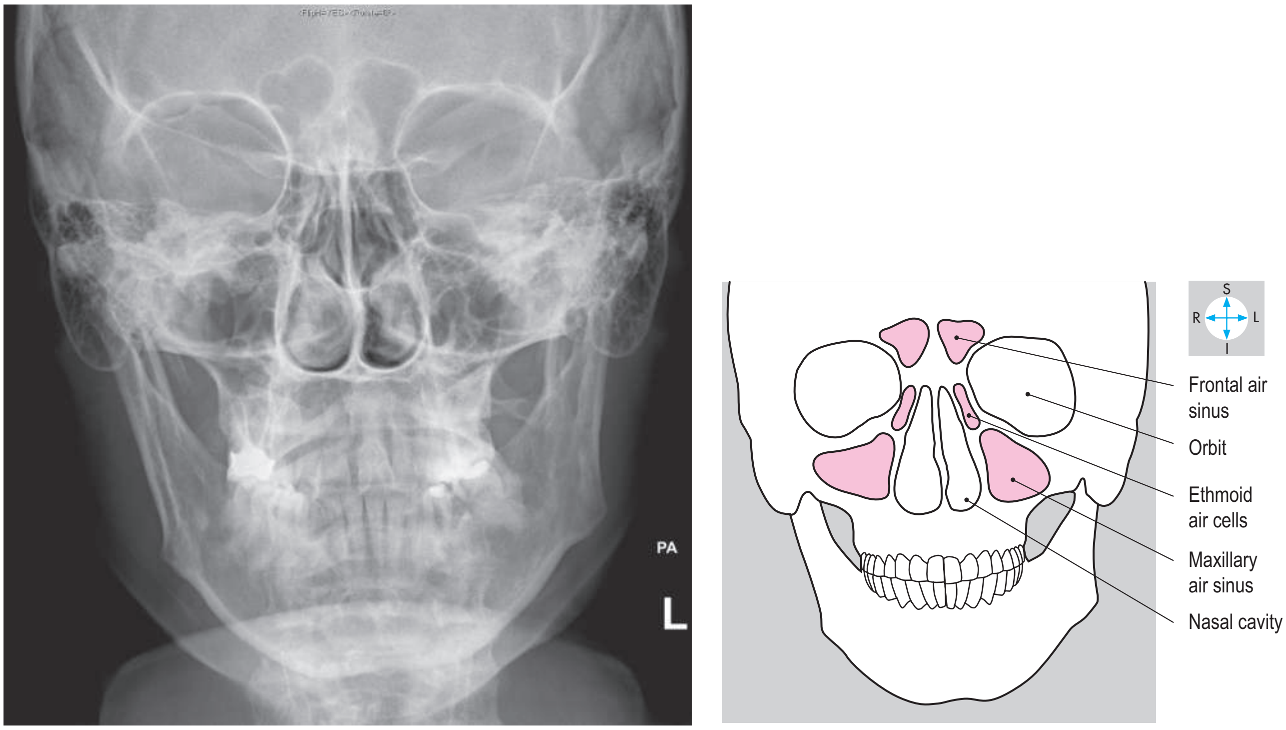


Fig. 7.52 Skull radiograph showing paranasal air sinuses.

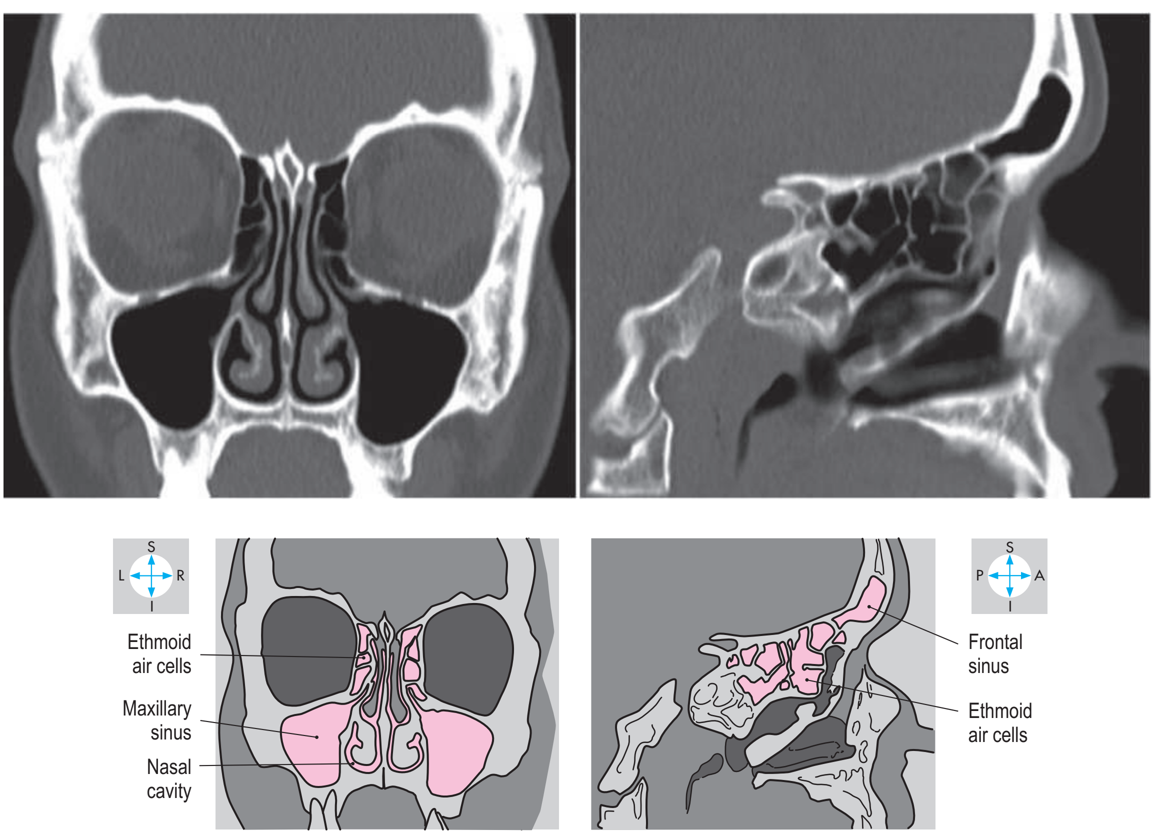


Fig. 7.53 Coronal and sagittal CT scans showing paranasal air sinuses.

the orbit. Its opening at the posterior end of the hiatus semilunaris lies high on the medial wall of the antrum, permitting limited drainage for contents such as mucus or pus. Sensory innervation is from the superior alveolar nerves.

The ethmoidal air sinuses are subdivided into three groups of air cells, which communicate with the nose through many tiny foramina. The anterior cells open into the floor of the hiatus, while the middle cells open onto the bulla, both groups being supplied by the anterior ethmoidal nerve. The posterior group, innervated by the posterior ethmoidal nerve, drains into the superior meatus under the superior concha.

The sphenoidal air sinuses lie just below the sella turcica in the body of the sphenoid, through the anterior wall of which they open into the sphenoethmoidal recess. The sensory supply is from the pharyngeal branch of the pterygopalatine ganglion. The pituitary gland can be accessed surgically through the sphenoidal air sinus.

Infection of the paranasal air sinuses (sinusitis) causes thickening of the mucosal lining, which may block the openings into the nasal cavities.

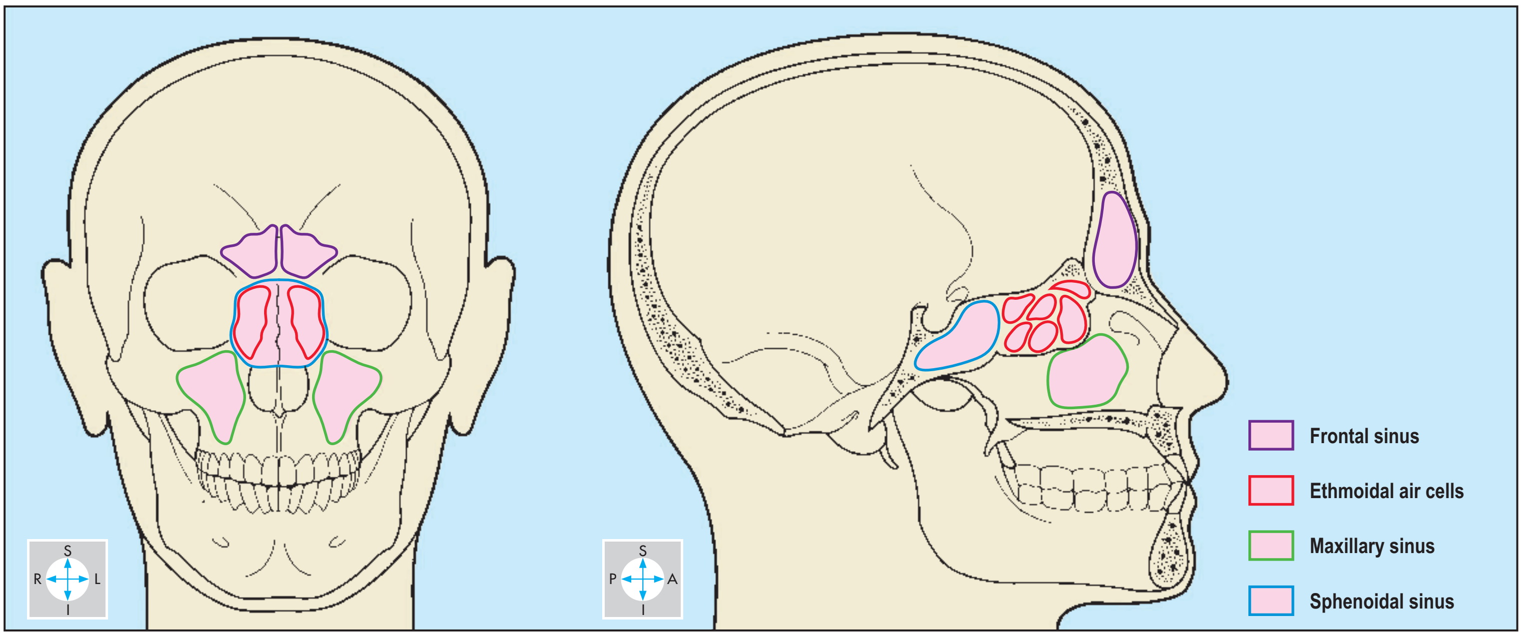


Fig. 7.54 Position of the paranasal air sinuses.

Palate

The palate consists of hard and soft parts covered by mucous membrane (Fig. 7.55). The hard palate separates the oral and nasal cavities while posteriorly the soft palate separates the nasopharynx from the oropharynx.

Hard palate

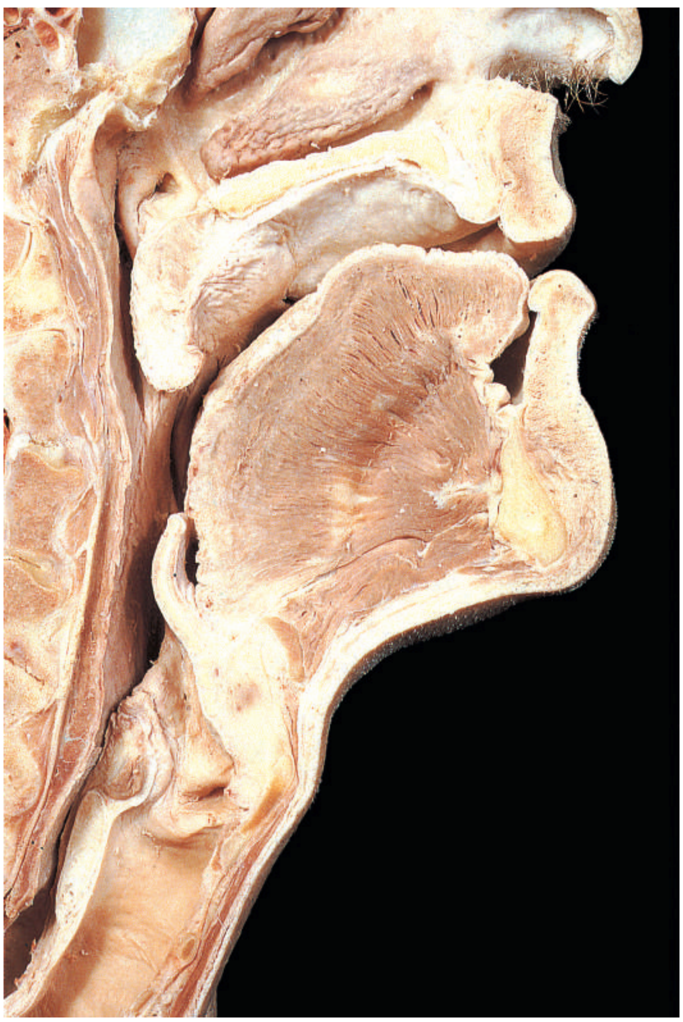
The bones that comprise the hard palate are the palatine processes of the maxillae anteriorly and the horizontal plates of the palatine bones posteriorly (Fig. 7.82). The hard palate is bounded in front and laterally by the superior alveolar ridge. The soft palate is attached to the free posterior border of the hard palate. Sensory fibres reach the palate in branches of the maxillary (V_2) division of the trigeminal nerve. The nasopalatine nerve emerges from the incisive foramen and supplies the anterior part of the hard palate. The greater palatine nerve gains the hard palate via the greater palatine foramen and innervates its posterior portion.

Soft palate

The soft palate projects into the cavity of the pharynx from its attachment to the posterior edge of the hard palate. When elevated, it separates the oropharynx from the nasopharynx. Five paired muscles attach to the soft palate and contribute to its structure. In the midline the uvula projects downwards from its posterior free border.

Muscles

Tensor veli palatini (Fig. 7.57) attaches to the scaphoid fossa and spine of the sphenoid and to the lateral surface of the cartilaginous portion of the auditory (Eustachian) tube. Its fibres descend between the lateral and medial pterygoid plates on the lateral aspect of the pharyngeal wall and give way to a tendon just above



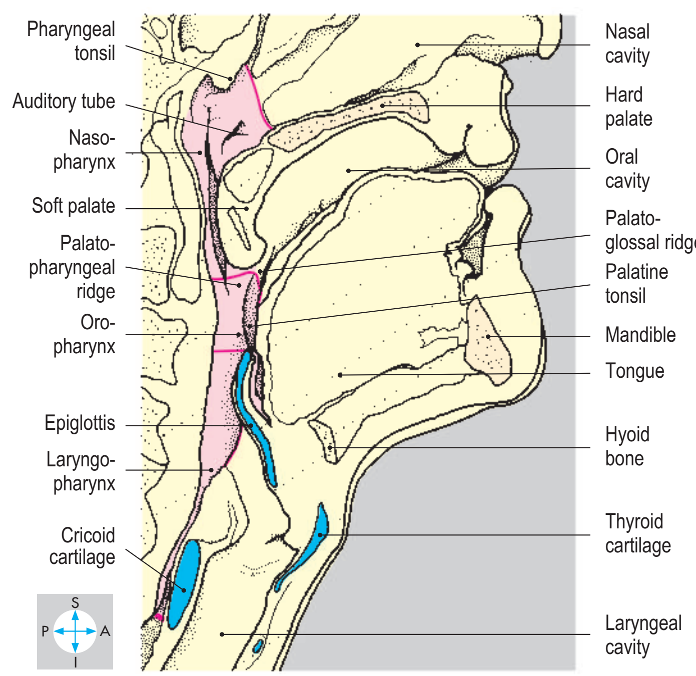
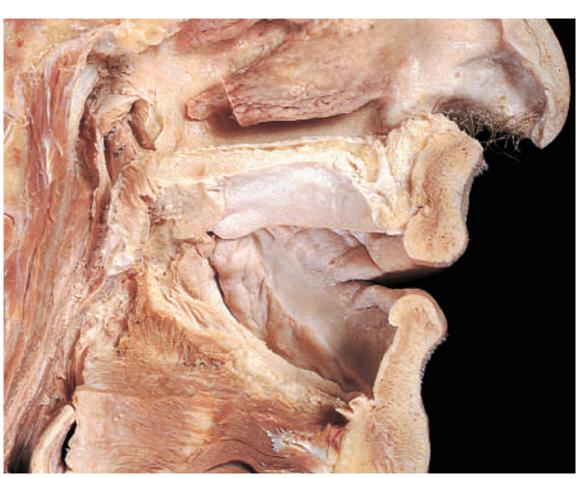


Fig. 7.55 Sagittal section through palate and pharynx showing communication with the nasal, oral and laryngeal cavities. Red line, boundaries of subdivisions of pharynx.



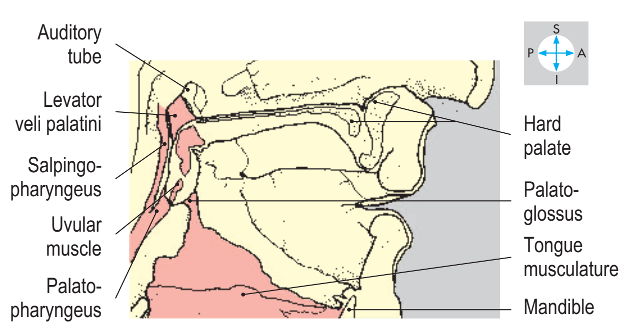


Fig. 7.56 Further dissection of Fig. 7.55 to show some of the muscles of the soft palate.

the pterygoid hamulus. The tendon hooks under the hamulus and turns medially to enter the soft palate, where it forms the palatine aponeurosis by fanning out and attaching to the posterior border of the hard palate. The palatine aponeurosis forms the basic structure of the soft palate to which other muscles gain attachment. Tensor veli palatini is supplied by the mandibular (V_3) division of the trigeminal nerve and tenses the soft palate.

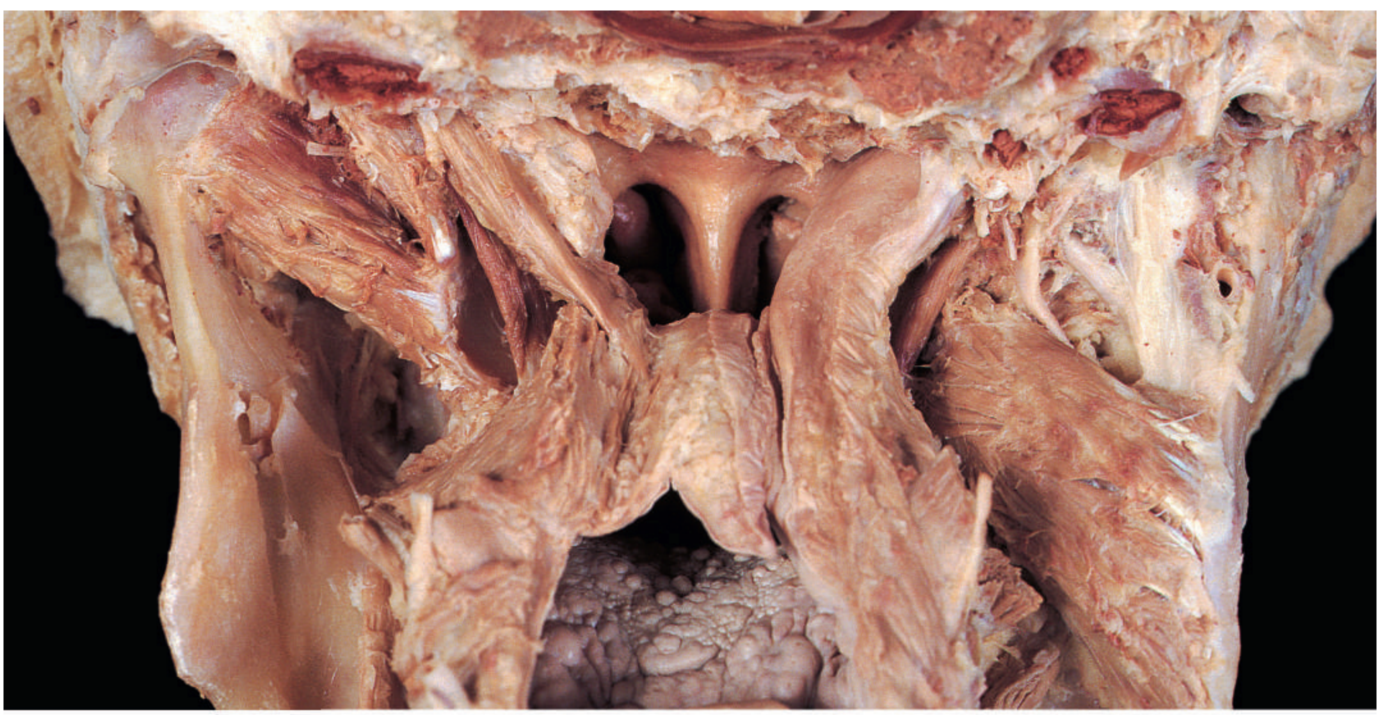
Levator veli palatini (Figs 7.56 & 7.57) attaches to the inferior surface of the petrous temporal bone just medial to the opening of the auditory tube and to the adjacent part of the tube. Its fibres descend medial to the medial pterygoid plate within the pharynx and attach to the upper surface of the palatine aponeurosis. The muscle is innervated by the pharyngeal plexus (p. 364). Levator veli palatini elevates the soft palate during swallowing, preventing regurgitation of food into the nasal cavities.

Palatoglossus (Fig. 7.56) descends from the inferior surface of the palatine aponeurosis and inclines slightly forwards to enter the posterolateral part of the tongue. The position of palatoglossus is evident on the inner surface of the oral cavity as a mucosal elevation, the palatoglossal ridge (anterior pillar of the fauces; Fig. 7.55). The two palatoglossal ridges form the oropharyngeal isthmus, which marks the posterior boundary of the oral cavity. Innervated by fibres from the pharyngeal plexus, palatoglossus lowers the soft palate, raises the posterior part of the tongue and moves the palatoglossal ridge towards the midline, thus narrowing the isthmus.

Palatopharyngeus (Figs 7.56 & 7.57) attaches to the undersurface of the soft palate. Most of its fibres run posteroinferiorly as part of the longitudinal layer of muscle inside the pharynx and form the palatopharyngeal ridge (posterior pillar of the fauces). On contraction, these fibres depress the soft palate. Other fibres pass horizontally backwards, raising the mucosa into a ridge, against which the soft palate is elevated. Palatopharyngeus receives its motor supply from the pharyngeal plexus.

The uvular muscle (Figs 7.56 & 7.57), also supplied by the pharyngeal plexus, lies entirely within the soft palate and elevates the uvula. In cases of unilateral paralysis of the soft palate, the uvula rises asymmetrically, being pulled away from the paralysed side.

Sensory and secretomotor innervation to the soft palate is from the lesser palatine nerves of the maxillary (V_2) division of the trigeminal nerve, supplemented laterally on the undersurface of the palate by the glossopharyngeal (IX) nerve.



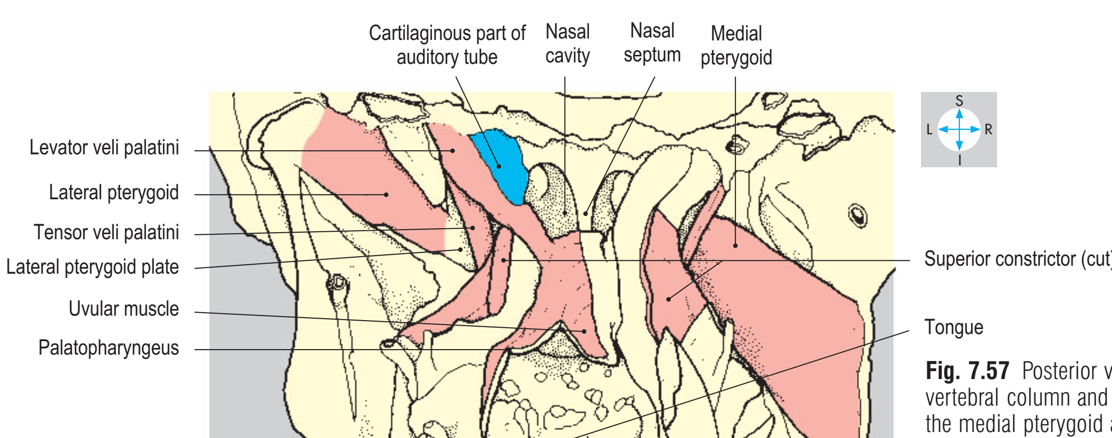


Fig. 7.57 Posterior view of soft palate after removal of cervical vertebral column and posterior wall of pharynx. On the left side, the medial pterygoid and the mucosa of the soft palate have been removed to reveal the muscles.

Pharynx

The pharynx is a muscular tube, which is continuous inferiorly with the oesophagus and into which the nasal, oral and laryngeal cavities open (Fig. 7.60). For descriptive purposes, the pharynx is divided into nasopharynx, oropharynx and laryngopharynx (hypopharynx Fig. 7.55). The nasopharynx is attached to the base of the skull and is bounded anteriorly by the choanae. Inferiorly, it is continuous with the oropharynx at the level of the soft palate. The oropharynx begins anteriorly at the palatoglossal ridge and extends inferiorly to the level of the upper border of the epiglottis, where it is in continuity with the laryngopharynx. The laryngopharynx lies behind the laryngeal inlet, the arytenoids and the cricoid lamina, and on either side of the inlet forms recesses, the piriform fossae (Fig. 7.61). In normal deglutition, these fossae are traversed by fluid and food which pass behind the cricoid cartilage in the terminal part of the laryngopharynx. Foreign bodies such as fish bones may lodge in these recesses during swallowing. At the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage, it is continuous with the oesophagus. The musculature of the pharynx consists of incomplete outer circular and inner longitudinal layers. The pharyngobasilar fascia lies internal to the muscle coat and is lined by mucous membrane.

Muscles

The circular layer of muscles comprises three overlapping constrictors, attaching posteriorly to the midline raphe (Figs 7.58 & 7.59), which is suspended from the pharyngeal tubercle of the occipital bone.

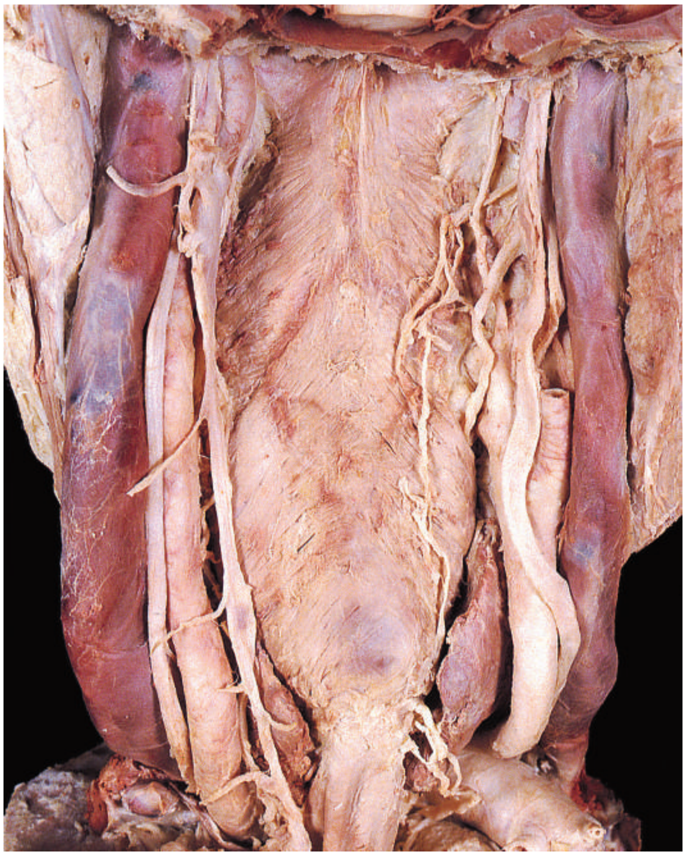
The superior constrictor attaches anteriorly to the lower part of the medial pterygoid plate, the pterygomandibular raphe (in company with buccinator; p. 336) and the posterior end of the mylohyoid line on the mandible. Posteriorly, its fibres attach to the pharyngeal tubercle and the pharyngeal raphe.

The middle constrictor attaches to the lower part of the stylohyoid ligament and to the angle between the greater and lesser horns of the hyoid bone. Posteriorly, it attaches to the raphe, the upper fibres overlapping those of the superior constrictor.

The inferior constrictor has an anterior attachment to the oblique line on the thyroid cartilage, the lateral surface of the cricoid cartilage and the intervening fascia covering the cricothyroid muscle. Its superior fibres curve upwards to the pharyngeal raphe, overlapping those of the middle constrictor. The lower fibres, known as cricopharyngeus, pass horizontally around the lumen of the pharynx below the raphe.

The inner longitudinal layer consists of the stylopharyngeus, palatopharyngeus and salpingopharyngeus muscles. Stylopharyngeus (p. 348) attaches to the styloid process and lies lateral to the superior constrictor. Its fibres descend between the superior and middle constrictors (Fig. 7.59) to blend with the other longitudinal muscles on the medial surface of the two lower constrictors. Palatopharyngeus inclines posteroinferiorly from the soft palate, while salpingopharyngeus descends from the auditory tube, both muscles lying on the inner surface of the constrictors (Fig. 7.56). The longitudinal muscles attach inferiorly to the posterior border of the lamina of the thyroid cartilage.

During swallowing, the pharyngeal constrictors contract sequentially from above downwards to propel the bolus of food into the oesophagus. Simultaneously, the longitudinal muscles shorten the pharynx and elevate the larynx, thus closing its inlet against the base of the tongue. Due to the shape of the epiglottis, the bolus tends to traverse the piriform fossae. At the same time, the soft palate is raised to prevent food entering the nasopharynx and the cricopharyngeus relaxes to allow the bolus to enter the oesophagus.



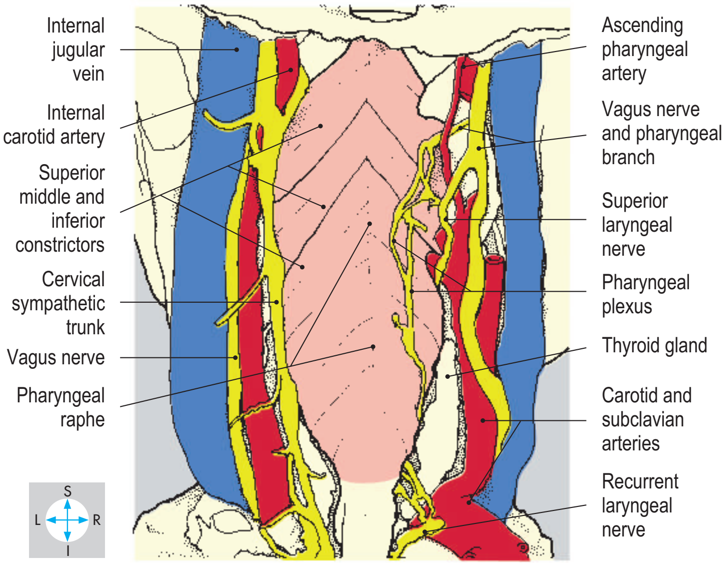


Fig. 7.58 Posterior view of pharyngeal musculature after removal of cervical vertebral column, posterior part of the skull, right sympathetic trunk and part of the right internal carotid artery.

Nerve supply

The pharyngeal plexus (Fig. 7.58) consists of nerve fibres lying on the outer surface of the pharynx and receives the pharyngeal branches of the glossopharyngeal (IX) and vagus (X) nerves. The motor component of the plexus is derived from the cranial part of the accessory (XI) nerve via the vagus nerve. It supplies the muscles of the pharynx, except for stylopharyngeus (glossopharyngeal nerve; p. 352).

Sensory fibres from the glossopharyngeal nerve traverse the plexus to supply the oropharynx and mediate the gag reflex. The vagal fibres of the plexus, assisted by those travelling in the laryngeal nerves (p. 370), innervate the laryngopharynx. The sensory innervation of the nasopharynx is supplied by the maxillary (V_2) division of the trigeminal nerve via its pharyngeal branch from the pterygopalatine ganglion.

Pharyngobasilar fascia and auditory tube

The inner surface of the pharyngeal musculature is lined by the pharyngobasilar fascia. This fascial sheet completes the wall of the pharynx superiorly and forms a continuous attachment to the base of the skull. Inferiorly, the fascia becomes gradually thinner, blending with the epimysium of the pharyngeal muscles.

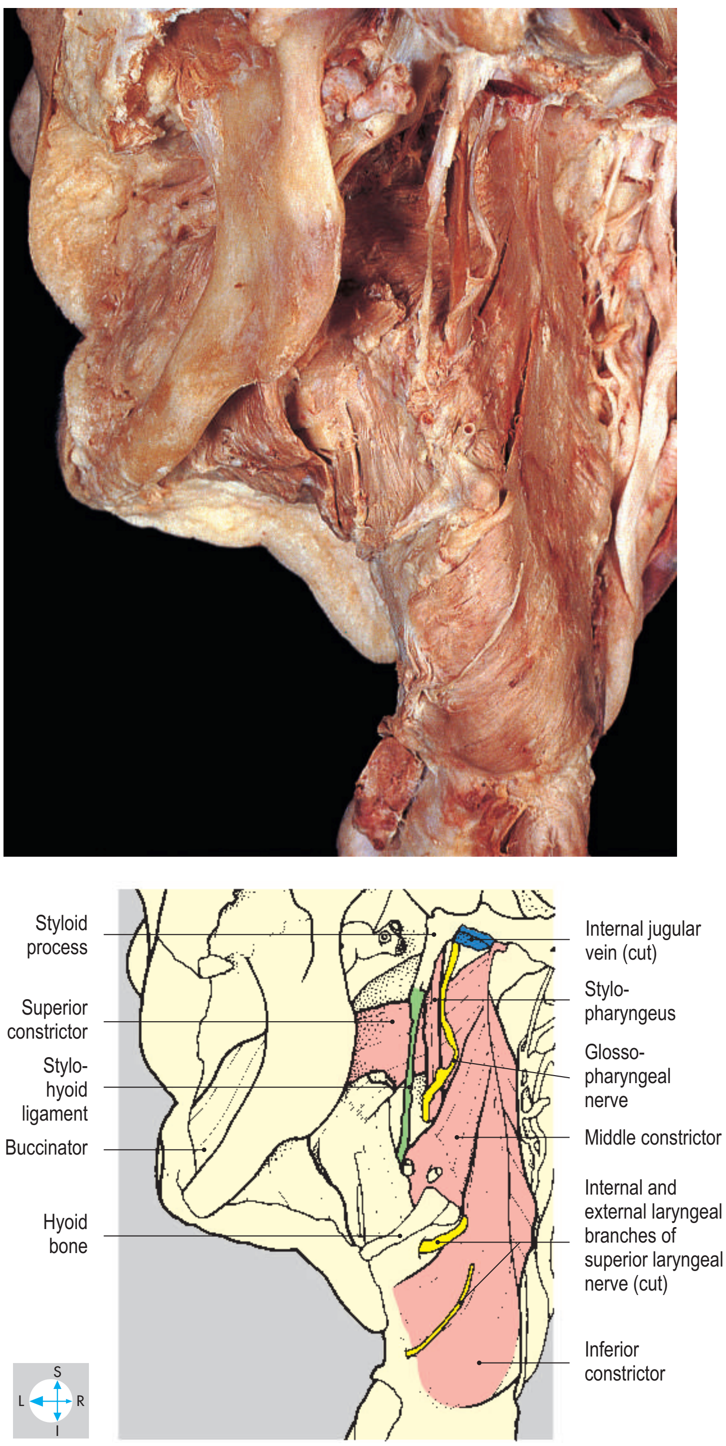


Fig. 7.59 Oblique posterior view of pharyngeal musculature.

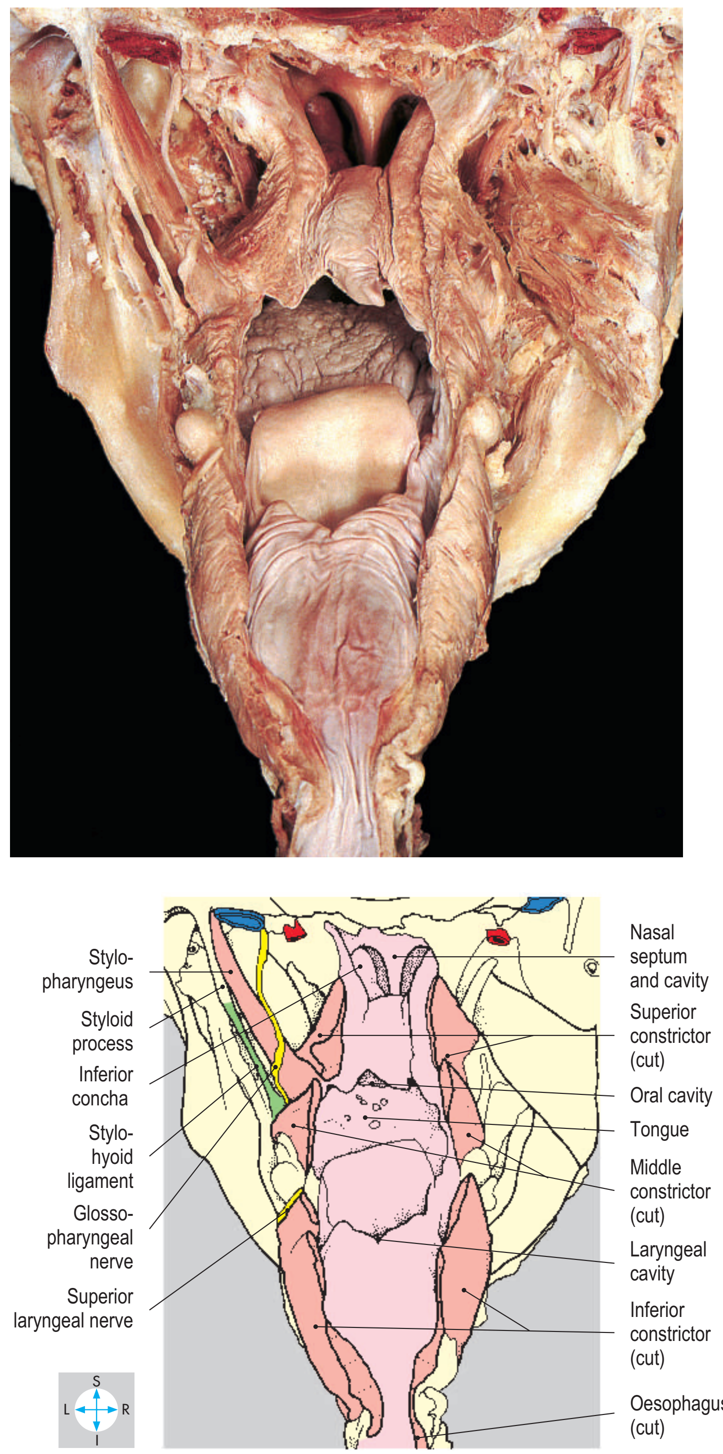


Fig. 7.60 Interior of the pharynx. This specimen retains medial pterygoid on the right and the styloid apparatus on the left.

The auditory (Eustachian) tube (Figs 7.55–7.57) opens into the nasopharynx above the superior constrictor by piercing the pharyngobasilar fascia. Laterally, the auditory tube leads into the cavity of the middle ear.

Lymphoid tissue

An incomplete ring of lymphoid tissue, the pharyngeal lymphoid ring (Waldeyer's ring) (Fig. 7.55), lies in the wall of the pharynx between the mucosa and the muscles. This tissue is often subject to infection, particularly in children. On each side, a palatine tonsil lies between the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal ridges and has a rich blood supply, including its own tonsillar branch from the facial artery. The adenoids, or pharyngeal tonsils, are situated near the roof of the nasopharynx, close to the auditory tubes with their tubal tonsils. When enlarged, the adenoids and tubal tonsils may obstruct one or both tubes, giving rise to middle ear disease. The lingual tonsil lies under the mucosa of the posterior third of the tongue and comprises a diffuse collection of small lymphoid follicles.

Blood supply

The arterial supply to the pharynx is derived from branches of the facial, lingual and maxillary arteries (p. 333). The ascending pharyngeal artery (Fig. 7.58) is a direct branch of the external carotid artery and passes upwards medial to the styloid muscles on the lateral surface of the pharynx. Venous blood drains into the pterygoid plexus and the internal jugular vein.

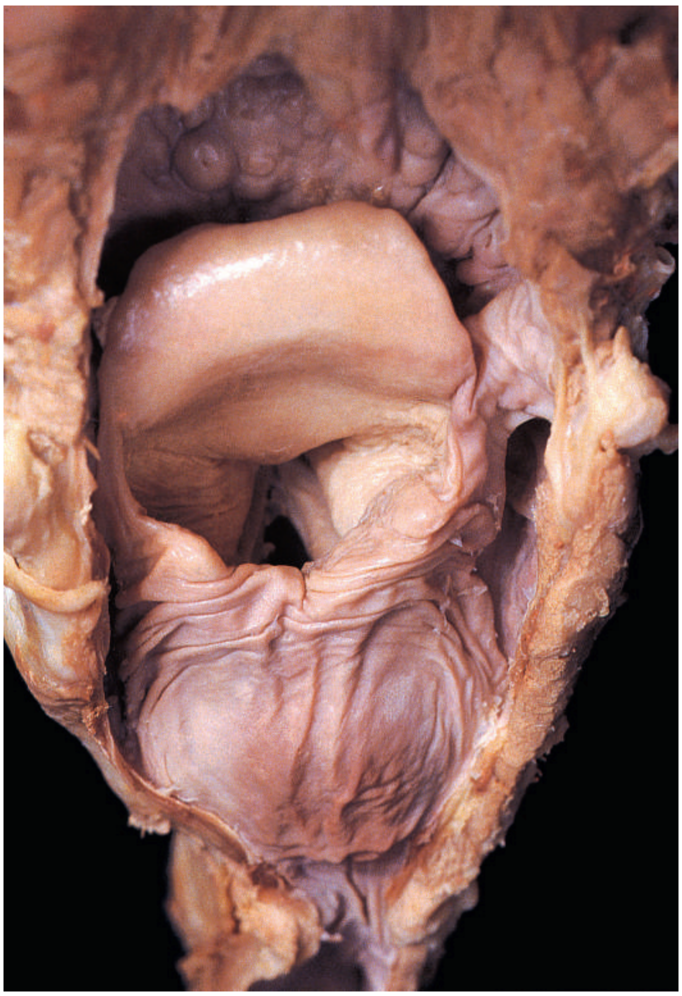
Larynx

The larynx acts as a sphincter guarding the lower respiratory tract and is responsible for phonation. It lies in the neck and its inlet is continuous with the laryngopharynx (Figs 7.61 & 7.62). Inferiorly, the larynx is continuous with the trachea. It consists of a framework of cartilages and bone, which supports the vocal and vestibular folds and the muscles that move them. Anteriorly lie the infrahyoid strap muscles.

Skeleton

The skeleton of the larynx comprises the thyroid, cricoid and arytenoid cartilages, the epiglottis and the hyoid bone.

The thyroid cartilage (Figs 7.67 & 7.68) has two flat laminae joined anteriorly to form the midline laryngeal prominence (Adam's apple). The posterior margin of each lamina is free and bears a superior and an inferior horn. The tips of the inferior horns articulate by tiny synovial joints with the lateral surfaces of the cricoid cartilage.



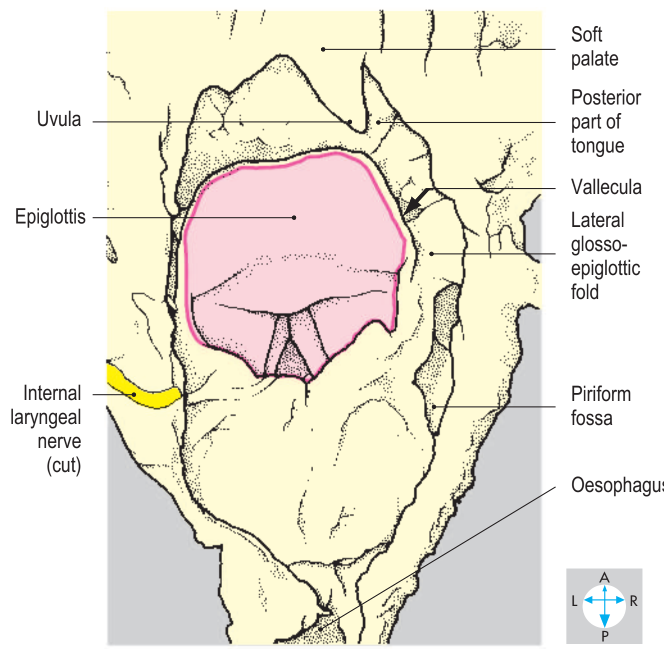
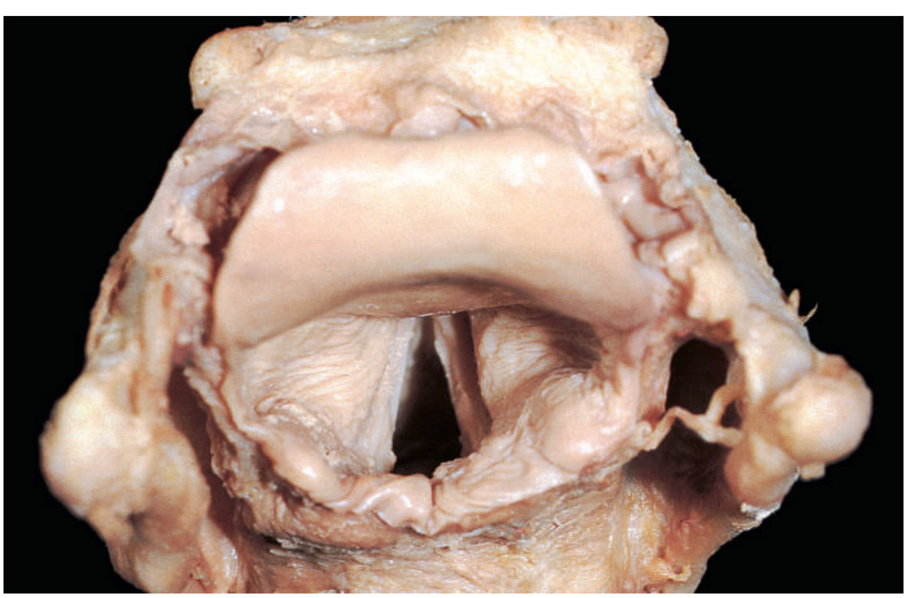


Fig. 7.61 Posterosuperior view of the larynx, seen through the opened laryngopharynx. The lumen of the larynx is visible through the laryngeal inlet (pink line).



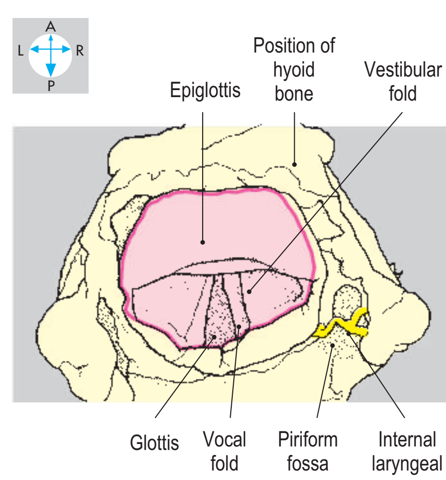


Fig. 7.62 Superior view into the larynx. The mucosa lining the laryngopharynx has been removed to reveal the internal laryngeal nerve (laryngeal inlet, pink line).

The cricoid cartilage (Figs 7.67 & 7.71) lies below the thyroid cartilage and is signet ring-shaped, with a narrow anterior arch and a wide posterior lamina. Its inferior border lies horizontally, while the superior border slopes upwards posteriorly. Movement at the cricothyroid joints allows the arch of the cricoid to tip upwards, while the lamina tips backwards.

In addition to its articulations with the thyroid cartilage, the upper border of the cricoid lamina bears articular surfaces, one on each side of the midline, for synovial joints with the two arytenoid cartilages. Each arytenoid (Figs 7.64, 7.67 & 7.71) is pyramidal in shape, with its base on the cricoid lamina and its apex superiorly. It has four surfaces (medial, posterior, anterolateral

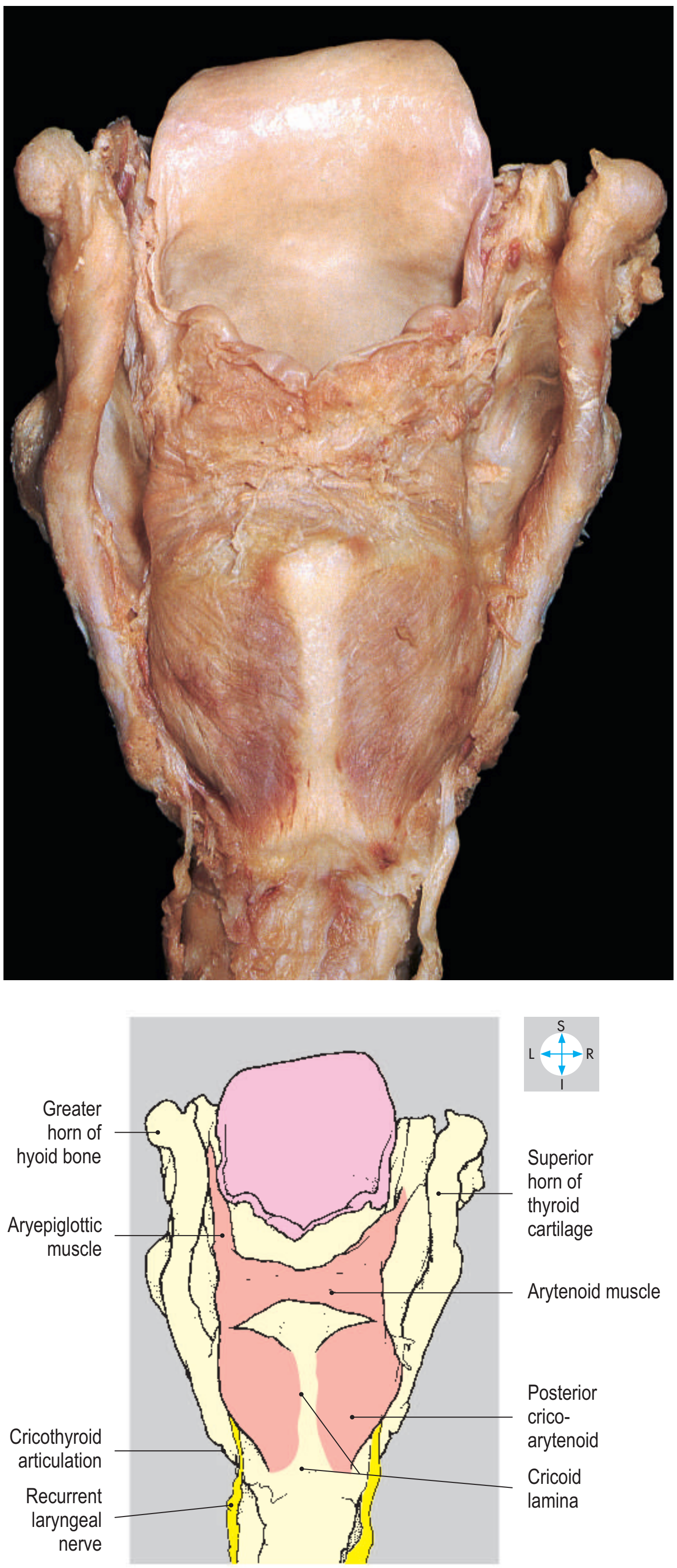


Fig. 7.63 Some of the intrinsic muscles of the larynx, seen after removal of the mucosa of the laryngopharynx.

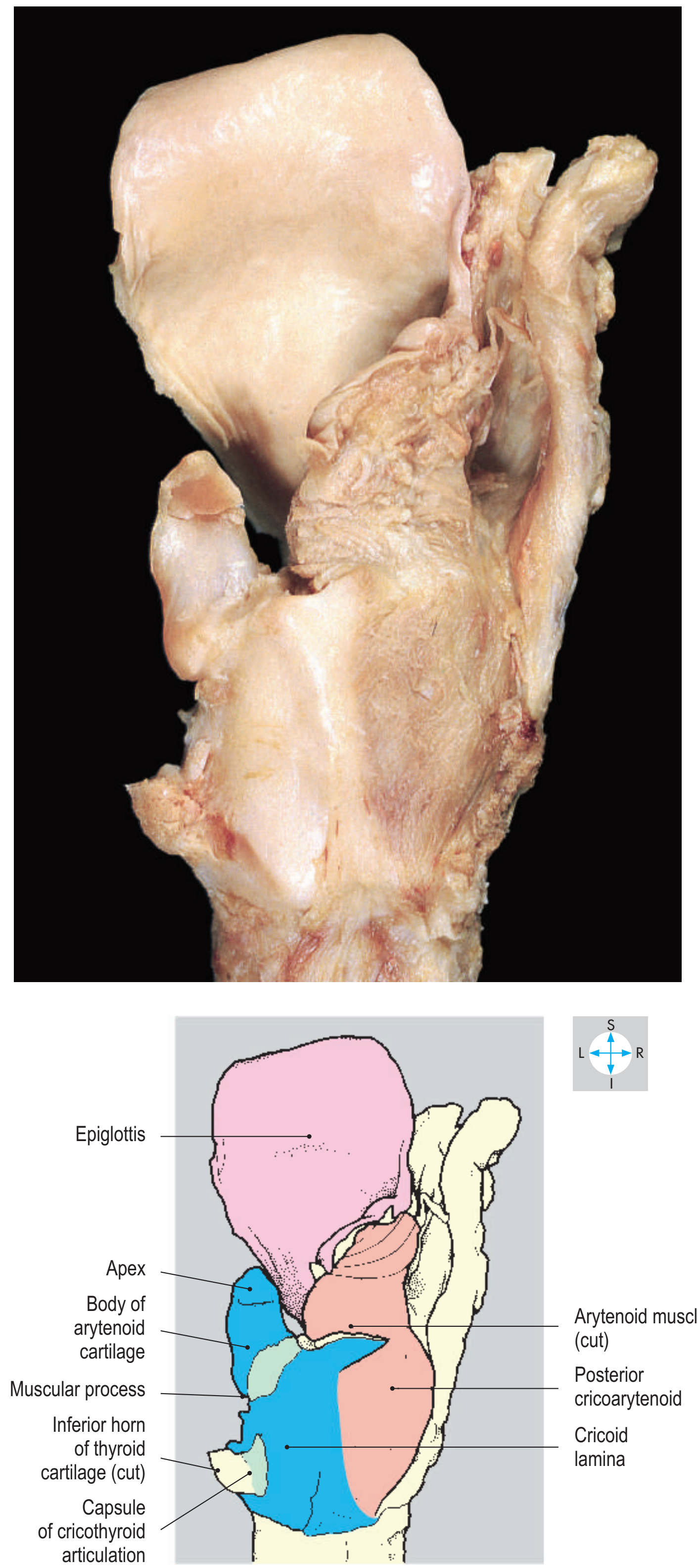


Fig. 7.64 Cricoid and arytenoid cartilages, exposed by removal of most of the soft tissues on the left of the larynx.

and inferior) and two processes. Anteriorly lies the vocal process, to which the vocal fold is attached, while its muscular process projects laterally. Each arytenoid is able to rotate around its own vertical axis. In addition, the arytenoids can slide laterally and downwards away from the midline on the slope of the articular surface on the cricoid.

The epiglottis (Figs 7.64 & 7.67) is attached in the midline to the inner surface of the thyroid cartilage, just below the laryngeal prominence. It extends upwards and backwards behind the tongue to which it is attached in the midline by the median glosso-epiglottic fold. From each side of the epiglottis a lateral glosso-epiglottic fold (Fig. 7.61) extends to the side of the tongue. These folds bound a recess on each side of the midline, the vallecula (Fig. 7.61), which is a site where swallowed foreign bodies may lodge. The epiglottis overlies the laryngeal inlet when the larynx is raised against the tongue when swallowing.

The hyoid bone (Figs 7.62 & 7.67) is the uppermost skeletal element of the larynx. It consists of a midline body bearing greater horns projecting posteriorly. On each side a lesser horn is located on the upper surface where the body and greater horn unite.

Membranes and ligaments

Several membranes are attached to the laryngeal framework and fill the gaps between the skeletal structures. The conus elasticus (cricovocal membrane) (Fig. 7.66) is elastic and attaches inferiorly to the upper border of the cricoid cartilage. In the midline anteriorly, it reaches the inferior border of the thyroid cartilage, forming the inelastic cricothyroid ligament. Posteriorly it is attached to the vocal processes of the arytenoids. The membrane has a free upper border, which runs between the arytenoids and the thyroid cartilage and forms the basis of the vocal folds (true vocal cords).

The inelastic quadrangular (aryepiglottic) membrane (Fig. 7.66) attaches posteriorly to the body and apex of the arytenoid and anteriorly to the lower part of the lateral edge of the epiglottis. It has a lower free border which forms the vestibular fold (false vocal cord), while the upper free edge forms the aryepiglottic fold (part of the laryngeal inlet).

The thyrohyoid membrane (Fig. 7.68) fills the gap between the thyroid cartilage and the hyoid bone. Its posterior free edges are thickened to form the lateral thyrohyoid ligaments, while the midline thickening is the median thyrohyoid ligament.

Mucous membrane (Fig. 7.65) lines the interior of the larynx. The epithelium is of the respiratory type, except over the vocal and aryepiglottic folds where it is stratified and squamous. A pouch of mucous membrane protrudes laterally between the vocal and vestibular folds, forming the saccule. It contains numerous mucous glands, the secretions of which moisten the vocal folds.

Intrinsic muscles

The intrinsic laryngeal muscles control the position and tension of the vocal and aryepiglottic folds, therefore modifying the shape of the airway through the larynx, acting both at the glottis (rima glottidis), the gap between the vocal folds, and at the inlet (Fig. 7.62). During swallowing, both openings narrow, but in coughing and phonation only the glottis narrows. The glottis

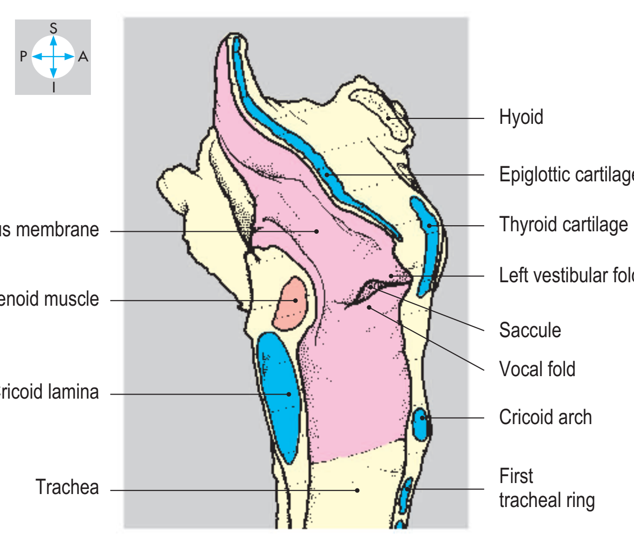


Fig. 7.65 Median sagittal section showing the lumen and mucous membrane of the larynx.

widens during inspiration, especially when deep. The muscles are symmetrical in their arrangement.

The cricothyroid muscle (Fig. 7.68) attaches to the anterolateral surface of the cricoid cartilage and to the inferior edge of the thyroid cartilage and adjacent part of the inferior horn. It raises the arch of the cricoid cartilage, tipping the lamina backwards and thereby increasing the tension and length of the vocal folds. This has the effect of raising the pitch of the voice and narrowing the glottis.

The thyroarytenoid muscle (Fig. 7.70) attaches to the posterior surface of the thyroid cartilage adjacent to the conus elasticus. Its fibres pass posteriorly to gain the vocal process and adjacent body of the arytenoid cartilage. The muscle opposes the action of cricothyroid, drawing the arytenoids forwards and relaxing the vocal folds. Part of the muscle (vocalis) lies in the free edge of the vocal fold. The vocalis gives rigidity to the edge of the fold and also modifies tension differentially along its length.

Fig. 7.66 Membranes and folds of the larynx, revealed by removal of most of the mucosa.

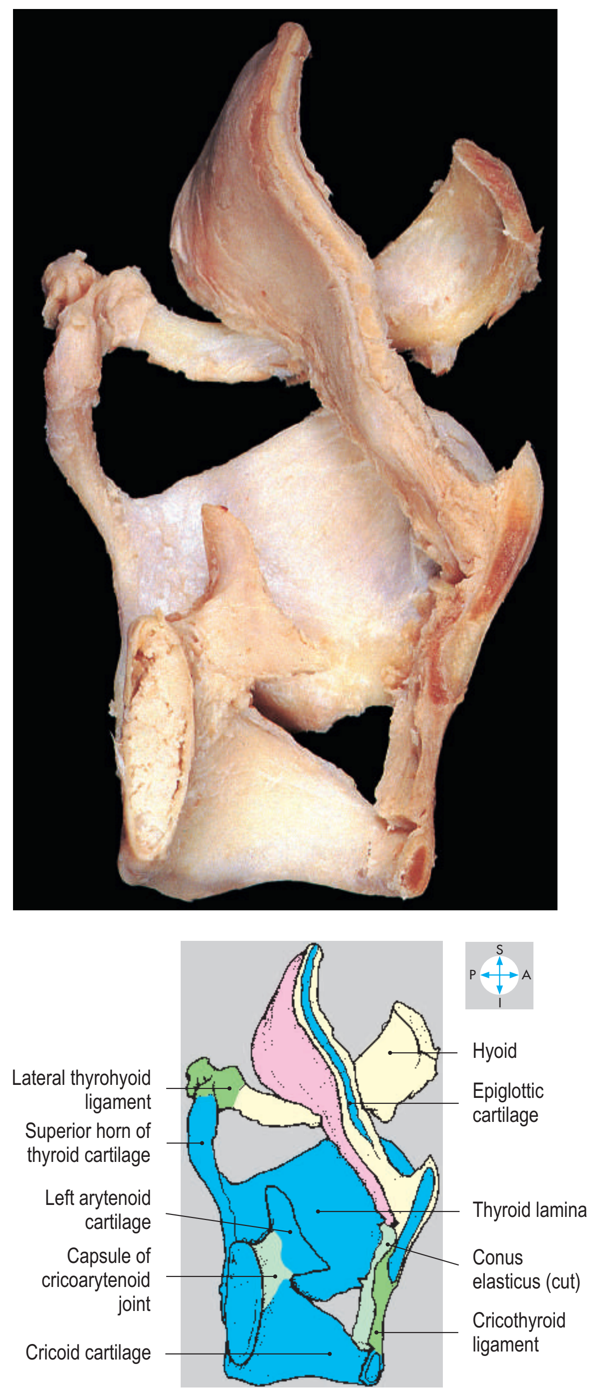


Fig. 7.67 Bisected skeleton of the larynx, revealed by removal of membranes.

Two muscles attach to the muscular process of each arytenoid. The lateral cricoarytenoid (Fig. 7.69) attaches to the lateral surface of the cricoid, its fibres passing posterosuperiorly to reach the muscular process of the arytenoid. The muscle rotates the arytenoid around its vertical axis, adducting the vocal folds and thereby closing the glottis. The posterior cricoarytenoid (Figs 7.63 & 7.69) inclines anterosuperiorly from the lamina of the cricoid to the muscular process of the arytenoid. Its action opposes that of the lateral cricoarytenoid, rotating the arytenoid so that the folds are abducted and the glottis opened. Simultaneous contraction of the lateral and posterior cricoarytenoid muscles separates the arytenoids by sliding them down the cricoid lamina.

The arytenoid muscle (Figs 7.63 & 7.65) spans the gap between the bodies of the arytenoid cartilages and has transverse and oblique parts. The muscle approximates the arytenoids, closing the glottis. The oblique arytenoids continue anterosuperiorly in the aryepiglottic fold as the aryepiglottic muscles (Fig. 7.69). These assist in closing the laryngeal inlet and are important during swallowing.

Nerve supply

The larynx is supplied by the right and left superior and recurrent laryngeal branches of the vagus (X) nerves. Each recurrent laryngeal nerve (Figs 7.68 & 7.69) ascends from the root of the neck

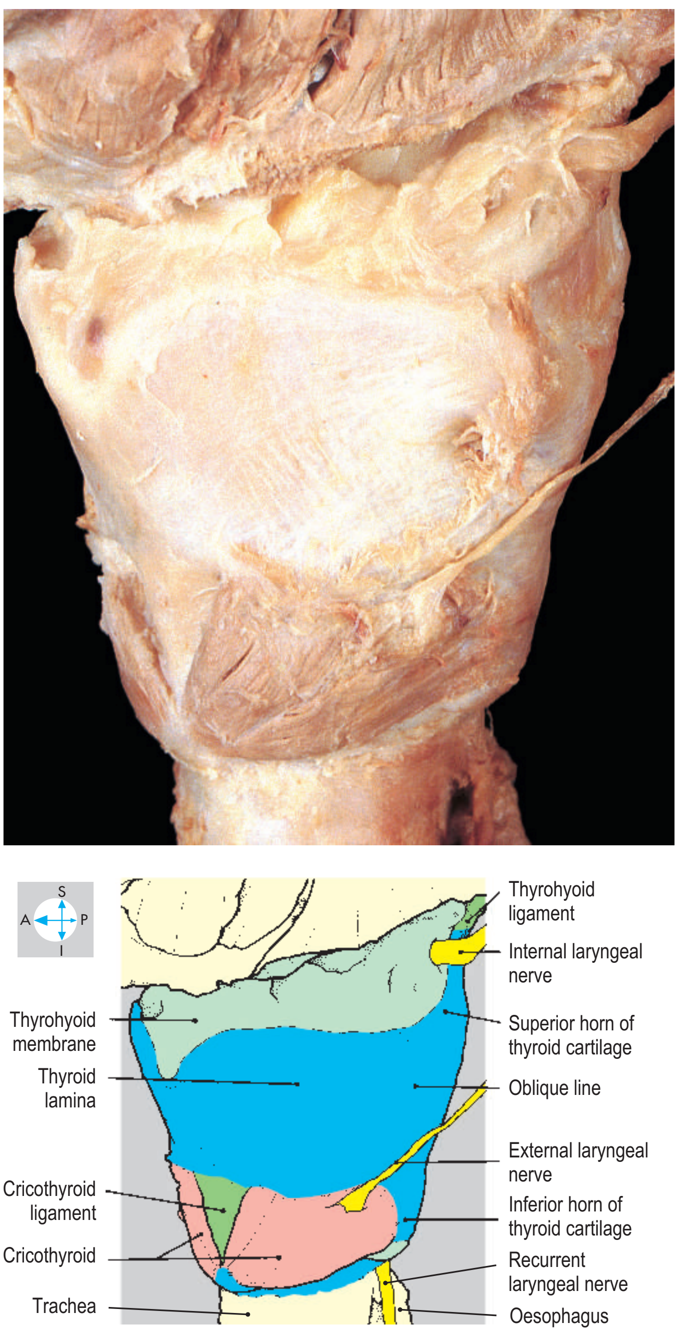


Fig. 7.68 Anterolateral view of the larynx.

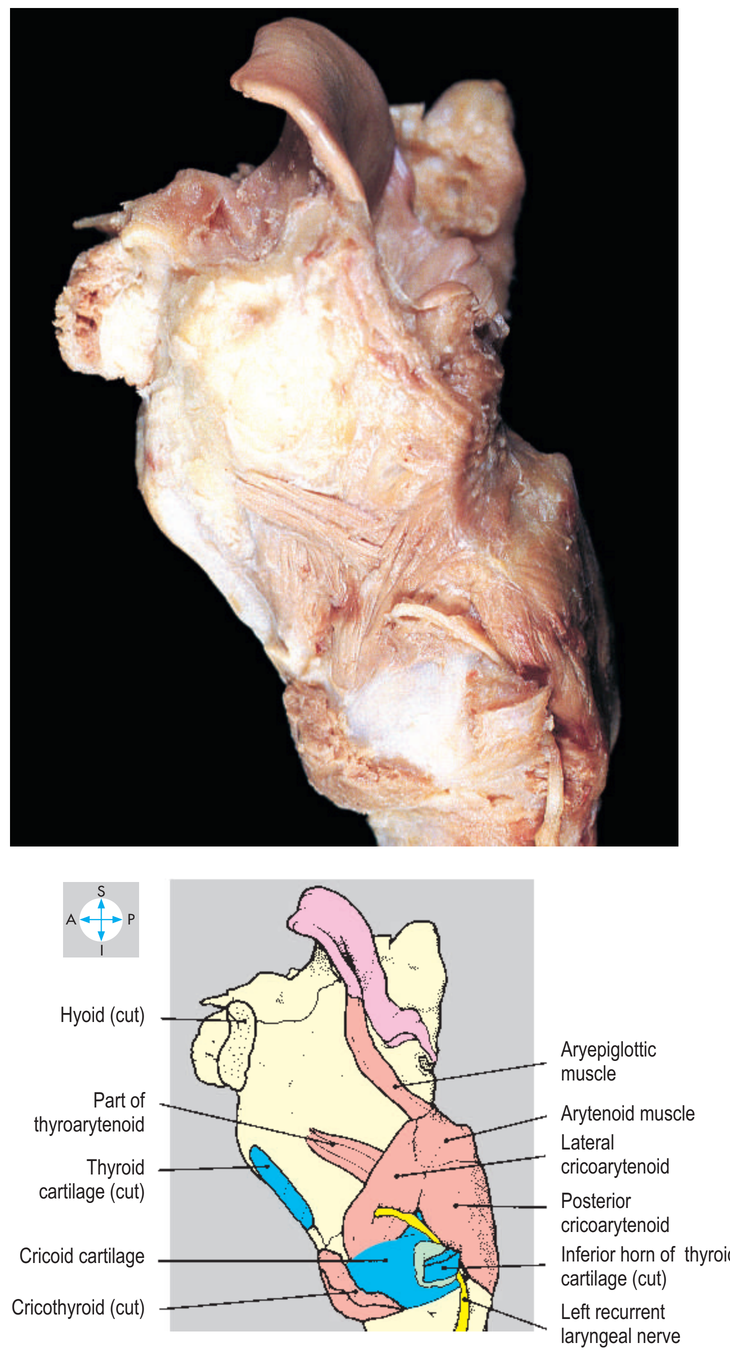


Fig. 7.69 Deeper intrinsic muscles seen after removal of half of the thyroid cartilage and the hyoid bone.

(p. 331) in the groove between the trachea and oesophagus. Passing beneath the lower border of the inferior constrictor, the nerve enters the larynx behind the cricothyroid joint.

It supplies motor fibres to all of the intrinsic muscles (except cricothyroid) and carries sensory fibres from all of the structures within the larynx and laryngopharynx below the level of the vocal folds.

The superior laryngeal nerve (Figs 7.58 & 7.68) arises from the vagus nerve just below the skull and descends to the thyrohyoid membrane where it divides, forming a motor external laryngeal branch and a sensory internal laryngeal branch. The external laryngeal nerve (Fig. 7.68) descends on the outer surface of the larynx to supply the cricothyroid muscle. The internal laryngeal branch (Figs 7.62 & 7.68) pierces the thyrohyoid membrane and provides sensory fibres to the larynx and laryngopharynx above the vocal folds. These sensory nerves contribute to the cough reflex.

Blood supply

The laryngeal branches of the superior and inferior thyroid arteries (Figs 7.13 & 7.15) supply the larynx, while venous blood drains via superior and middle thyroid vessels into the internal jugular veins.

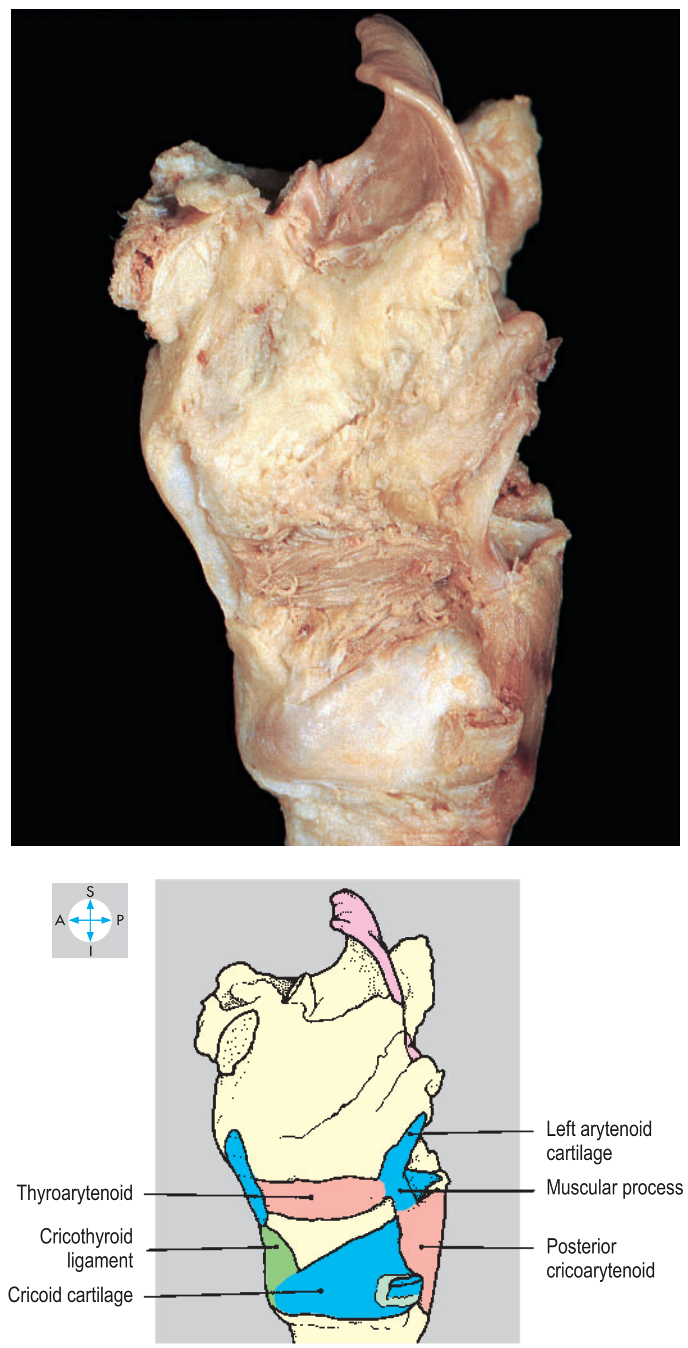


Fig. 7.70 Thyroarytenoid and the arytenoid cartilage after excision of the lateral cricoarytenoid, arytenoid and aryepiglottic muscles.

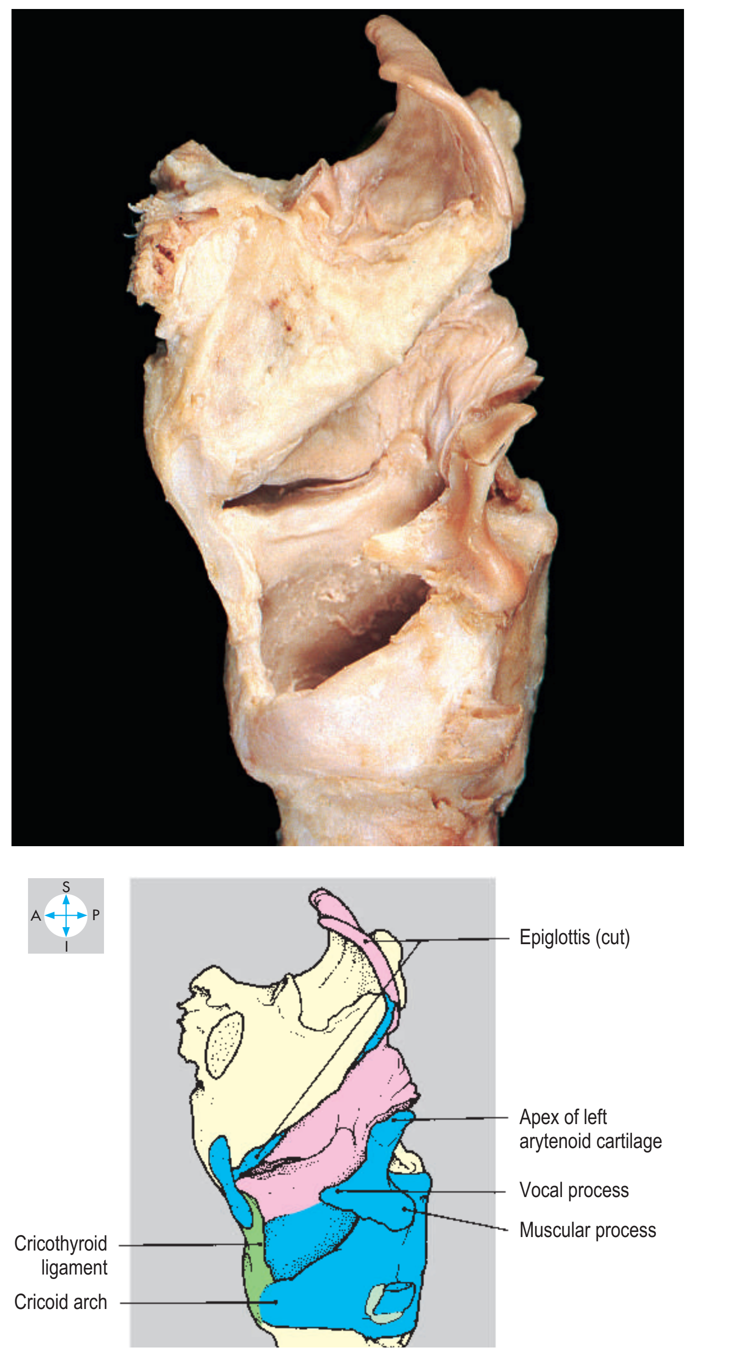


Fig. 7.71 Cartilages of the larynx, revealed by removal of muscles and membranes on the left side.

Cranium and Contents

The part of the skull that contains the brain and its immediate relations is called the neurocranium. Although the detailed anatomy of the central nervous system is outside the scope of this book, there are some important surface features of the brain (Figs 7.73 & 7.74) to which reference should be made when considering the bony features of the interior of the cranium.

Bony features

The vault of the skull consists of four flat bones. Anteriorly is the frontal bone, posteriorly, the occipital bone and on each side is a parietal bone (Fig. 7.72). The frontal and parietal bones meet along the coronal suture, and the two parietal bones meet along the midline sagittal suture. Posteriorly, the parietal bones meet the occipital bone at the lambdoid suture. The undersurface of the vault bears a long shallow midline groove for the superior

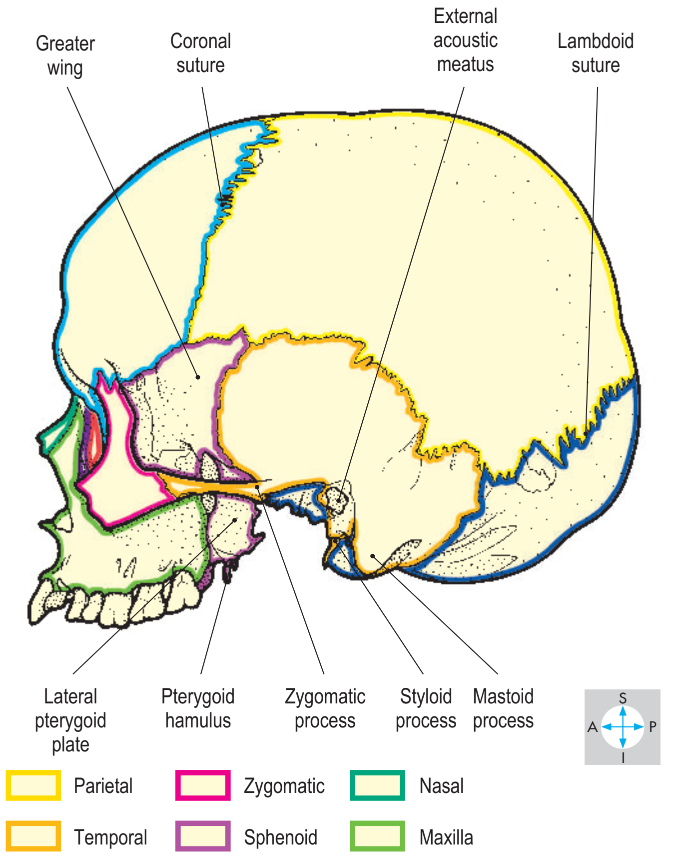
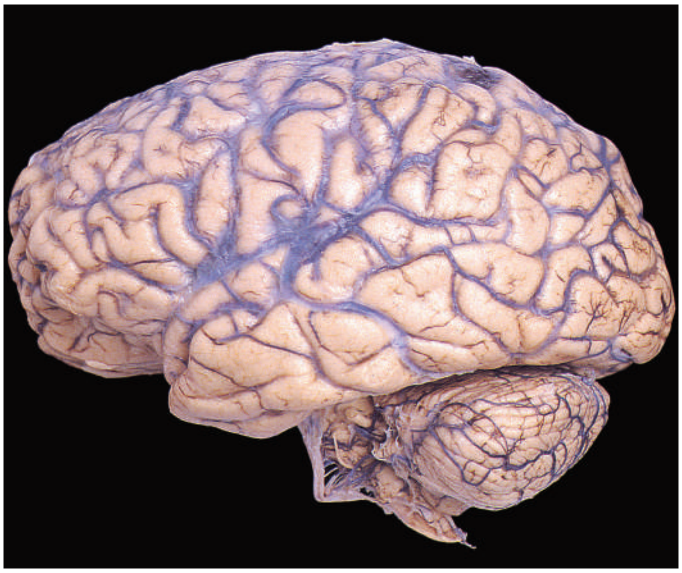


Fig. 7.72 Lateral view of the skull (without the mandible) showing the component bones.



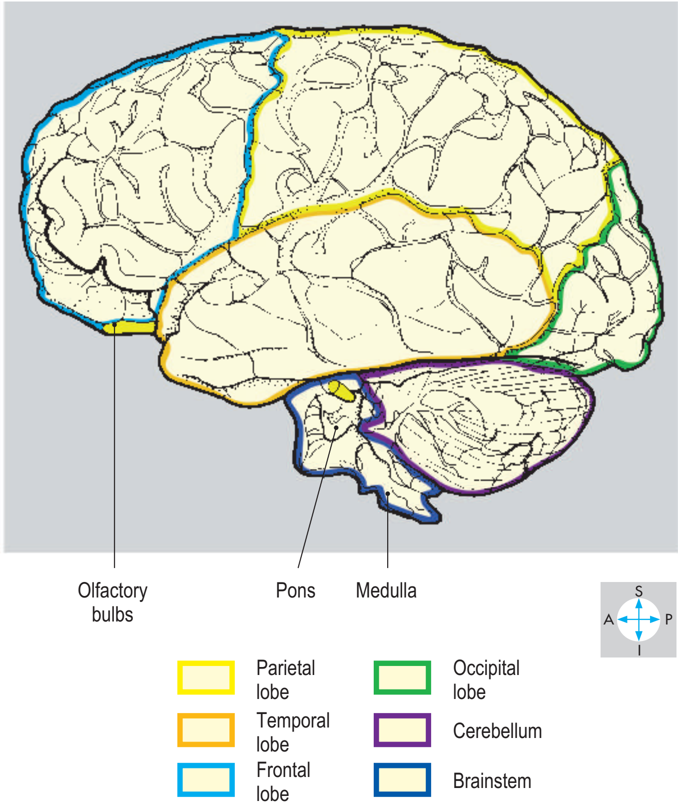


Fig. 7.73 Lateral view of the brain showing the cerebral hemisphere and the hindbrain.

sagittal venous sinus (see below), which terminates at a prominence, the internal occipital protuberance (Fig. 7.75). Below the level of each parietal bone, the greater wing of the sphenoid bone and the squamous part of the temporal bone complete the lateral wall of the vault.

The cranial base is characterized by the anterior, middle and posterior fossae, arranged in step-like sequence (Fig. 7.75), the anterior being superior. The anterior fossa, which accommodates the frontal lobes of the brain, is formed by the frontal bone laterally, the cribriform plates and crista galli of the ethmoid bone medially and is completed posteriorly by the lesser wings of the sphenoid bone. The numerous small foramina in the cribriform plates communicate with the nasal cavity (p. 356).

The middle fossa, occupied by the temporal lobes of the brain, is formed by the greater wings and body of the sphenoid bone. Posteriorly, the fossa is bounded by the petrous part of each temporal bone, while anteriorly the fossa is completed by the lesser wings of the sphenoid. Each of the lesser wings is perforated by the optic canal, which continues forwards into the orbit. Between the lesser and greater wings is the superior orbital fissure, which also provides access to the orbit. The greater wing is traversed by the foramen rotundum (opening into the pterygopalatine fossa; p. 353) and the foramina ovale and spinosum (both opening into the infratemporal fossa; Fig. 7.82). Lying in the angle between the greater wing and body of the sphenoid and the apex of the petrous part of the temporal bone is the foramen lacerum, which forms part of the roof of the infratemporal fossa. In the midline the body of the sphenoid is hollowed, forming the sella turcica. This is limited by the paired anterior and posterior clinoid processes and accommodates the pituitary gland.

The posterior cranial fossa contains the cerebellum, the pons and the medulla oblongata which is in continuity through the foramen magnum with the spinal cord. The floor of this fossa is formed mostly by the occipital bone, supplemented anteriorly by the body of the sphenoid and the posterior surface of the petrous part of each temporal bone. Anterior to the foramen magnum, the occipital and sphenoid bones fuse to form a smooth incline, the clivus, on which the brainstem lies. The internal acoustic meatus opens onto the posterior surface of the petrous part of the temporal bone while in the suture between this bone and the occipital bone is the jugular foramen. Running horizontally from the internal occipital protuberance is a groove for the transverse venous

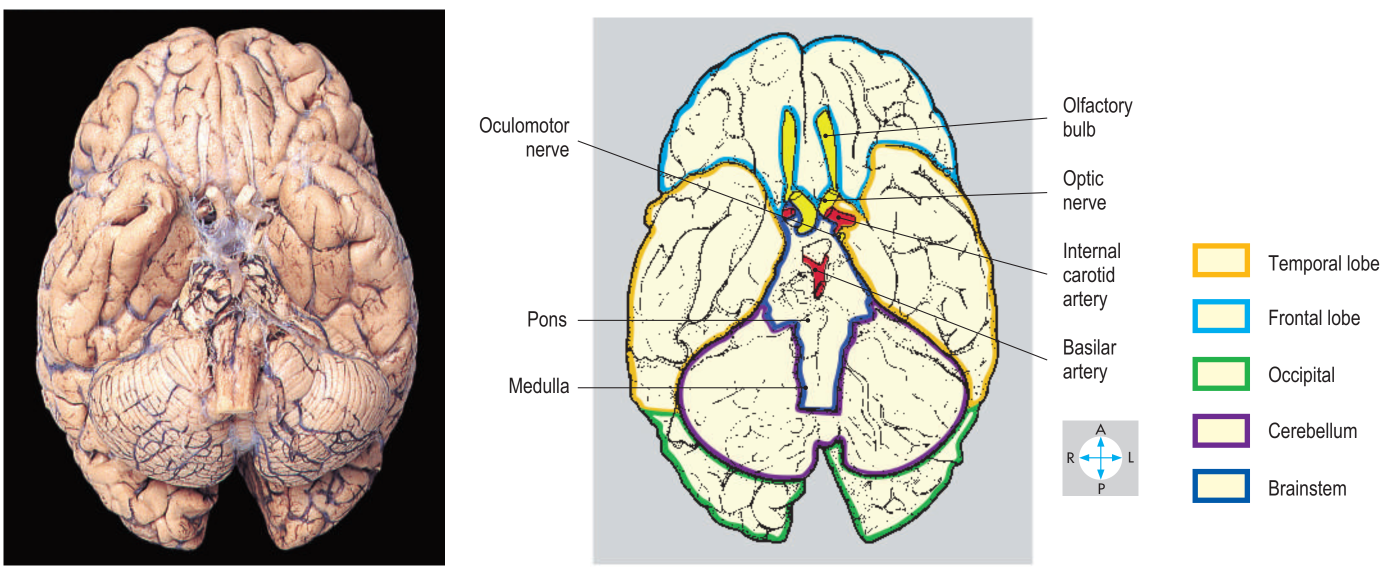


Fig. 7.74 Inferior surface of the brain.

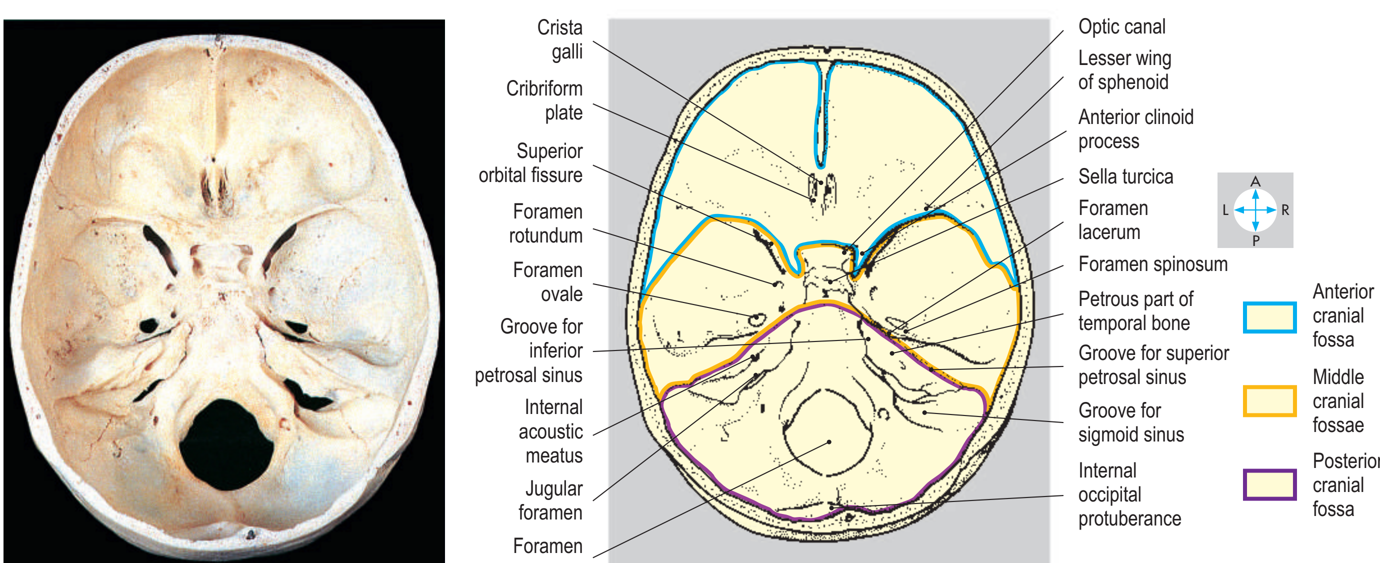


Fig. 7.75 Base of the skull from above showing the cranial fossae.

sinus. An S-shaped groove for the sigmoid sinus (Fig. 7.75) links the groove for the transverse sinus with the jugular foramen. The hypoglossal canal traverses the occipital bone anterolateral to the foramen magnum (Fig. 7.82).

Meninges

Surrounding the brain are three membranes, the meninges, which comprise the dura mater, arachnoid mater and pia mater.

Dura mater

The dura mater consists of outer periosteal and inner meningeal layers. The periosteal dura attaches to and closely follows the bony contours of the cranial cavity and is continuous through the sutures and foramina with the periosteum (pericranium) on the outer surface of the skull. Although generally bound to the periosteal dura, the meningeal dura is raised in places as a double layer, forming the dural folds.

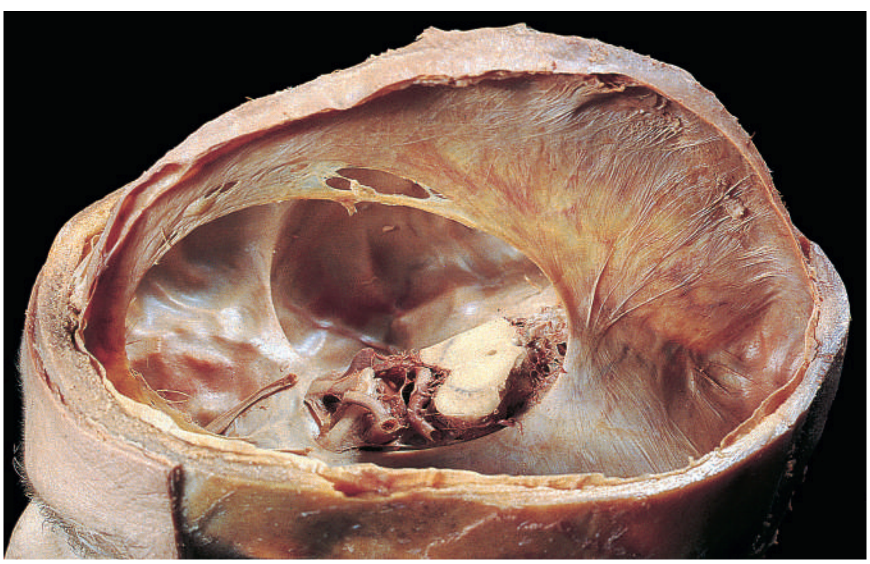
The largest of these folds is the midline falx cerebri (Figs 7.76 & 7.77), which projects downwards between the two cerebral hemispheres.

Anteriorly, the falx cerebri is attached to the crista galli of the ethmoid bone. It arches over the corpus callosum and gains further attachment to the frontal, parietal and occipital bones. Posteriorly, the falx ends by attaching to another dural fold, the tentorium cerebelli (Figs 7.76–7.78). The tentorium forms an incomplete roof over the posterior cranial fossa and separates the occipital lobes of the cerebrum from the cerebellum. Each side of the tentorium slopes upwards towards its midline attachment to the falx cerebri. Anteriorly, there is a large aperture in the tentorium through which the brainstem passes. The thickened free edge of the tentorium surrounding this aperture continues forwards to reach the anterior clinoid process. The attached border of the tentorium runs laterally from the internal occipital protuberance along a horizontal groove on the inner surface of the occipital bone, then continues medially along the superior border of the petrous part of the temporal bone to reach the posterior clinoid process. Posteriorly, the small falx cerebelli descends vertically from the tentorium and partially separates the two cerebellar hemispheres. The sella turcica in the middle fossa has a roof of dura called the diaphragma sellae, which is attached to the four clinoid processes and has a central aperture for the pituitary stalk.

Dural venous sinuses

Lying between the two layers of dura are endothelium-lined venous channels (Fig. 7.77). These dural venous sinuses, which often groove the adjacent bones, collect blood from the brain and meninges. They also drain cerebrospinal fluid that has been secreted into the subarachnoid space by the choroid plexuses of the brain. A characteristic of these sinuses is the absence of valves.

The superior sagittal sinus lies in the attached margin of the falx cerebri (Figs 7.76 & 7.77). The sinus drains posteriorly and has along its length several dilatations called lacunae. These lacunae possess arachnoid granulations through which the reabsorption of cerebrospinal fluid takes place. The sinus also receives numerous cerebral veins. At the internal occipital protuberance the superior sagittal sinus turns laterally, usually to the right, and continues as the transverse sinus in the attached margin of the tentorium cerebelli (Fig. 7.78). Just before reaching the petrous part of the temporal bone, the sinus turns inferiorly to continue as the sigmoid sinus (Fig. 7.79). This follows an S-shaped course to reach the jugular foramen, through which it is continuous with the internal jugular vein.



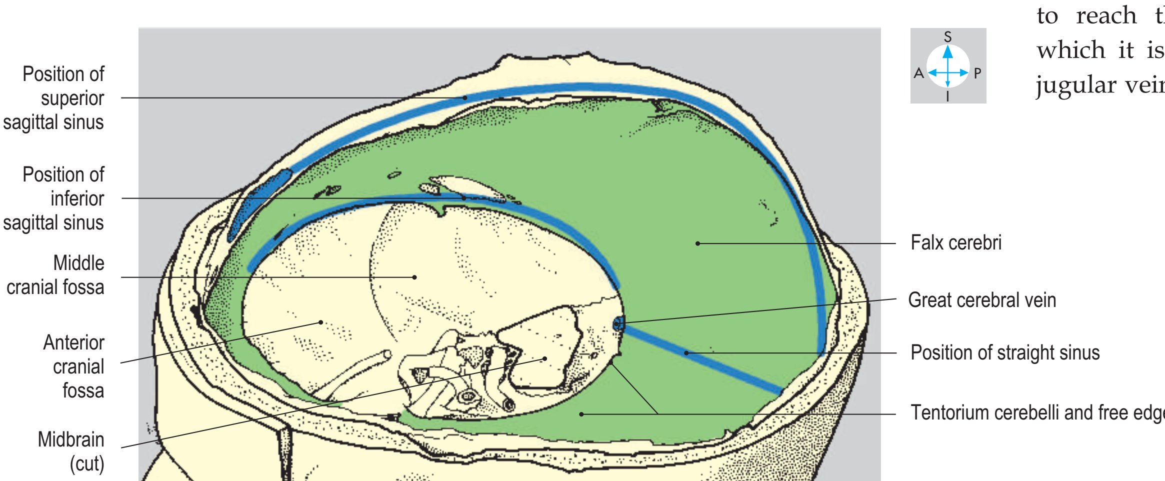


Fig. 7.76 Falx cerebri and tentorium cerebelli, revealed by removal of the vault of the cranium, associated dura and the cerebral hemispheres.

The smaller inferior sagittal sinus lies in the free border of the falx cerebri (Fig. 7.76). The sinus runs posteriorly and at the tentorium cerebelli is joined by the great cerebral vein, which drains the deeper structures of the cerebral hemispheres. The union of these vessels forms the straight sinus (Figs 7.76–7.78), which continues posteriorly in the attachment of the falx cerebri to the tentorium as far as the internal occipital protuberance. Here, the straight sinus usually turns to the left to form the transverse sinus, whose course mirrors that on the opposite side. This region is known as the confluence of sinuses.

The cavernous venous sinuses (Figs 7.79 & 7.80) lie on either side of the pituitary gland and the body of the sphenoid bone. They contain numerous interconnected venous spaces, producing a spongy appearance. The two sinuses communicate with each

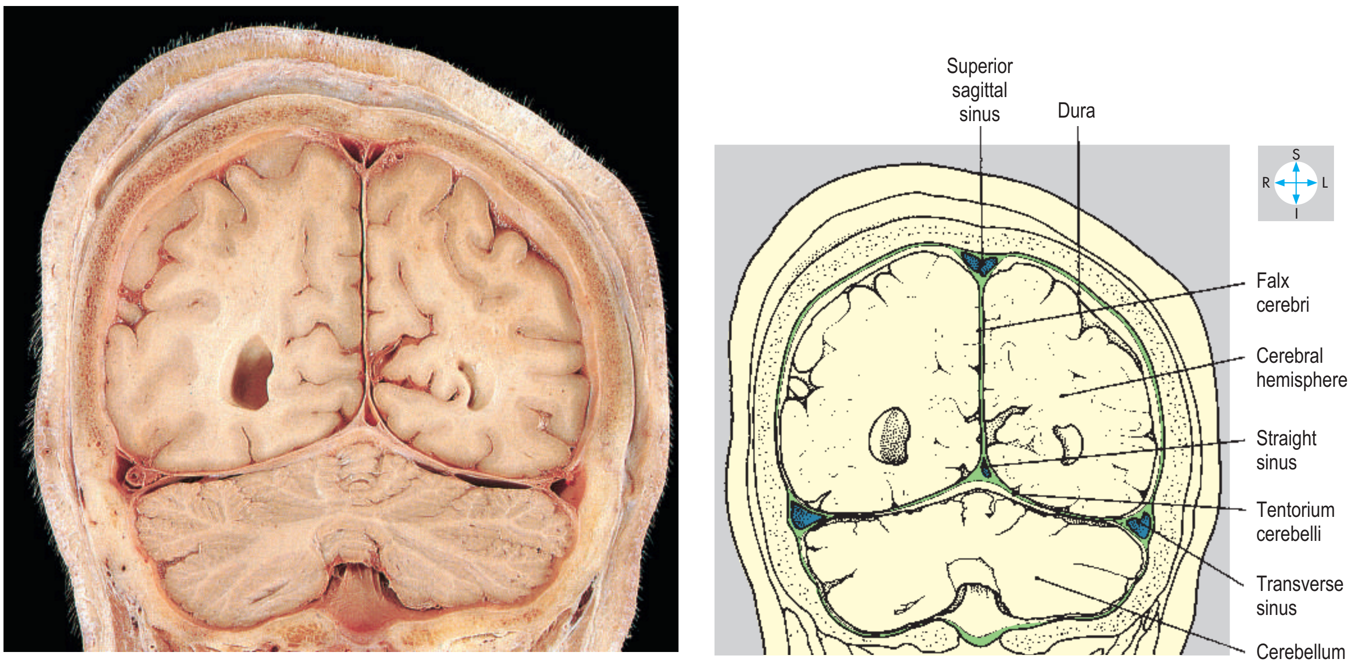


Fig. 7.77 Coronal section through the posterior cranial fossa, showing dura and its folds and venous sinuses. Anterior aspect.

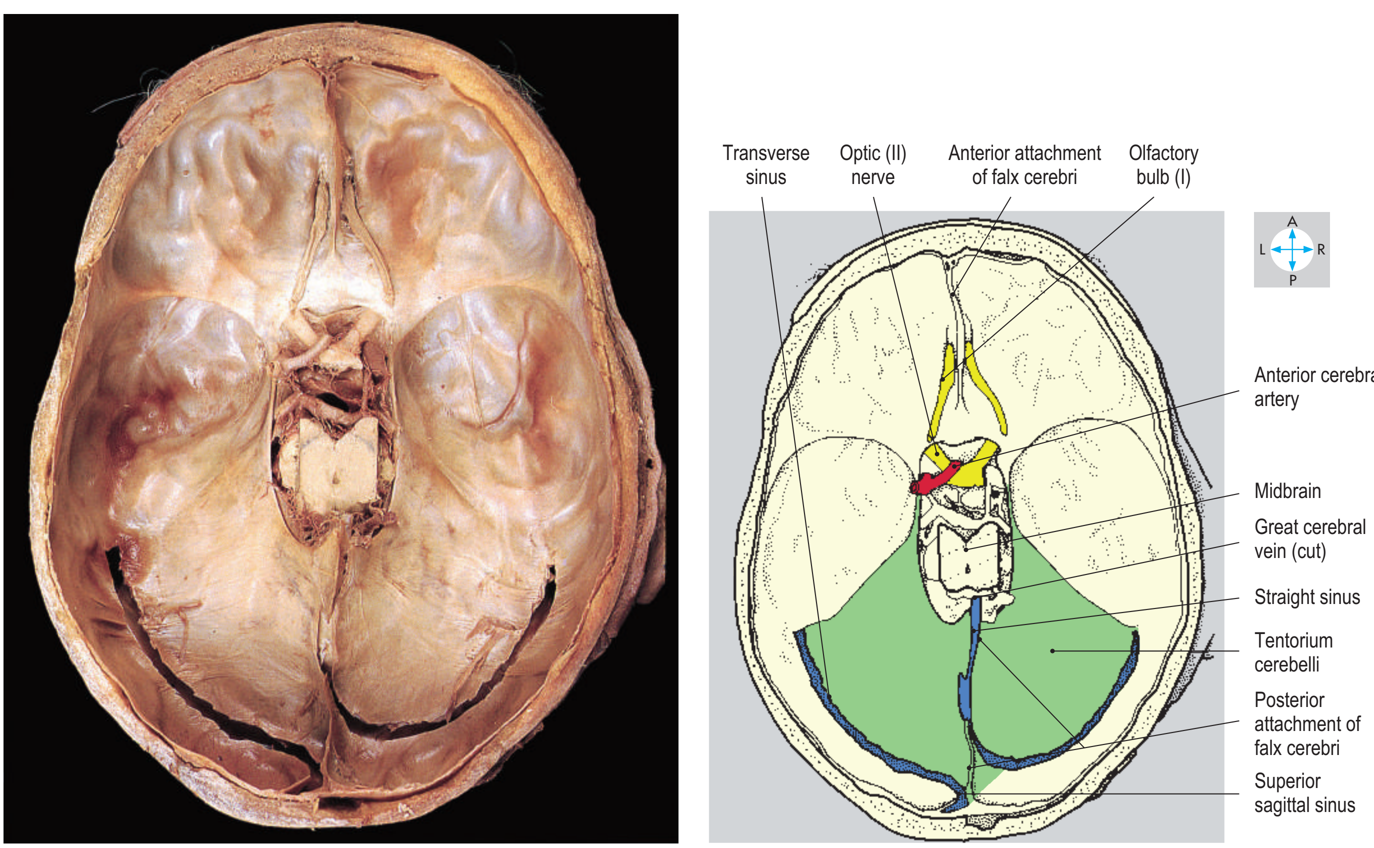


Fig. 7.78 Superior view of the tentorium cerebelli after removal of the falx cerebri and cerebral hemispheres. The venous sinuses have been opened. The straight sinus turns to the right and the superior sagittal sinus to the left in this specimen.

other and receive blood from vessels that pass through the superior and inferior orbital fissures from the ophthalmic veins and pterygoid venous plexuses. Posteriorly each cavernous sinus drains via the superior and inferior petrosal sinuses. The superior petrosal sinus runs along the superior border of the petrous part of the temporal bone to terminate in the junction of the transverse and sigmoid sinuses. The inferior petrosal sinus descends into the posterior cranial fossa and unites with the sigmoid sinus in the jugular foramen to form the internal jugular vein.

Arachnoid mater

The arachnoid mater, the middle of the meningeal layers, is loosely attached to the dura mater, generally following its folds. The arachnoid is separated from the deeper pia mater by the subarachnoid space, which contains cerebrospinal fluid and is traversed by the arteries of the brain and the cranial nerves. Delicate fibres from the arachnoid mater cross the subarachnoid space and attach to the pia mater.

Pia mater

The pia mater is the innermost of the meninges and clings to the surface of the brain, dipping into its numerous grooves or sulci.

Meningeal vessels

Of the many arteries entering the cranium to supply the meninges, one of particular importance is the middle meningeal artery, which arises from the maxillary artery (p. 346) and enters through the foramen spinosum. This vessel runs laterally across the floor of the middle cranial fossa, grooving the bone, and divides on the squamous part of the temporal bone into frontal (anterior) and parietal (posterior) branches (Fig. 7.79). These branches arch superiorly on the inner surface of the lateral part of the skull and supply the meninges lining most of the vault. Meningeal veins follow the arteries and communicate with the dural venous sinuses and with veins lying outside the skull.

Bleeding from veins or arteries between the meningeal layers can raise intracranial pressure. An extradural (epidural) haematoma results from extravasation between the dura and the skull. A subdural haematoma is produced by bleeding between the dura and arachnoid layers, where normally no space exists. Blood leaking from the vessels that cross the subarachnoid space will give rise to a subarachnoid haemorrhage, the blood intermingling with cerebrospinal fluid.

Arterial supply to the brain

The brain receives arterial blood from the vertebral and internal carotid arteries (Fig. 7.80). The vertebral arteries (p. 330) enter the posterior cranial fossa through the foramen magnum. Passing upwards and forwards they unite in the midline on the clivus to form the basilar artery. Branches to the brainstem and cerebellum arise from the vertebral and basilar arteries before the latter divides at the upper border of the pons to form the left and right posterior cerebral arteries. Before supplying the posterior part of the cerebral hemisphere, each of these vessels gives rise to a

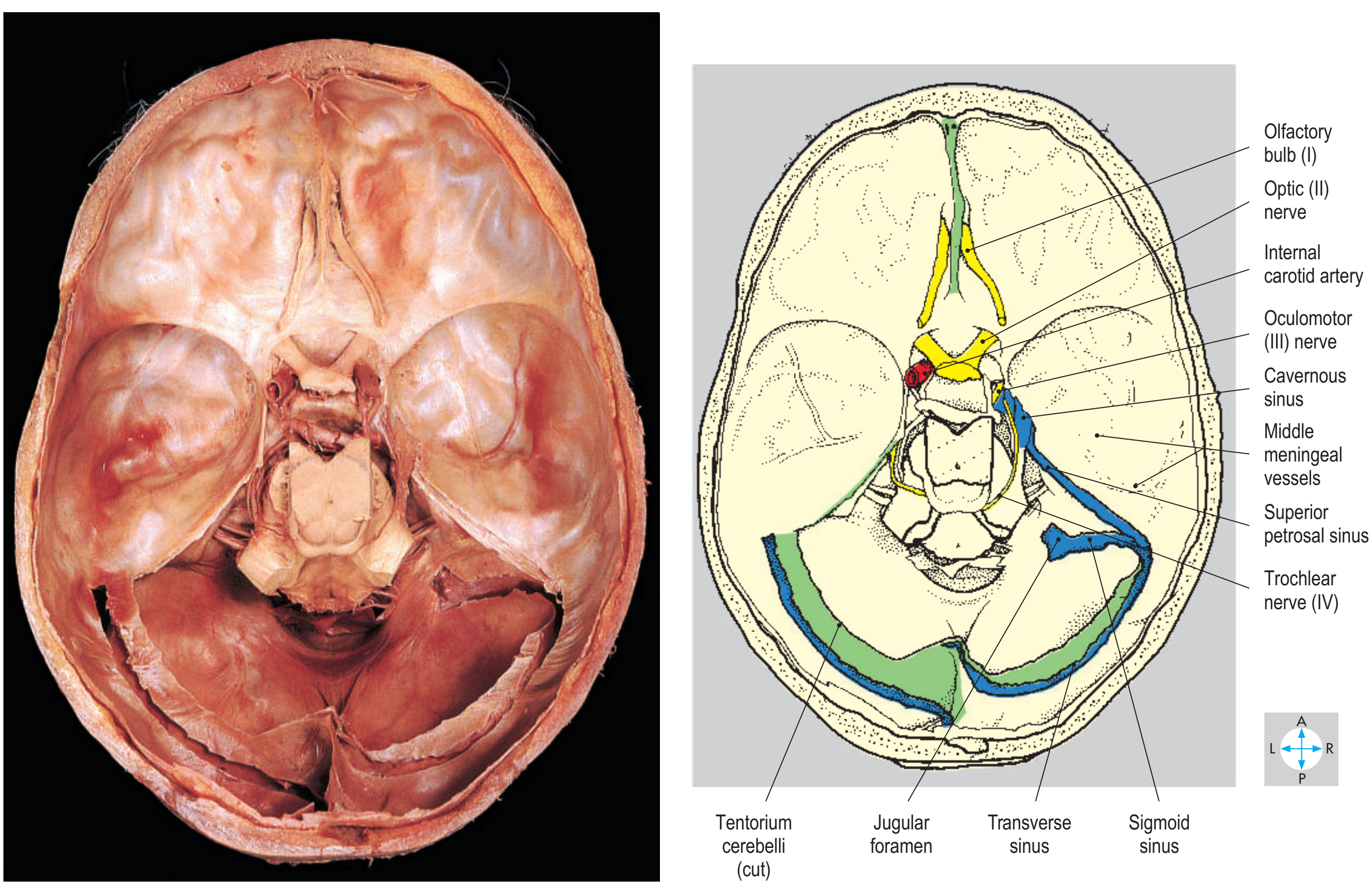


Fig. 7.79 Interior of posterior cranial fossa after removal of tentorium cerebelli and cerebellum. The venous sinuses have been further opened.

posterior communicating artery, which passes forwards to form part of the cerebral arterial circle (circle of Willis) by anastomosing with the internal carotid artery.

The internal carotid artery traverses the carotid canal (Fig. 7.82) to enter the middle cranial fossa, emerging from the upper part of the foramen lacerum. The artery turns anteriorly to enter the cavernous sinus, then continues superiorly to leave the sinus through its roof. Here, near the anterior clinoid process, the ophthalmic artery arises and accompanies the optic nerve through the optic canal into the orbit. The internal carotid artery terminates as the anterior and middle cerebral arteries. The middle cerebral artery supplies the lateral portion of the cerebral hemisphere,

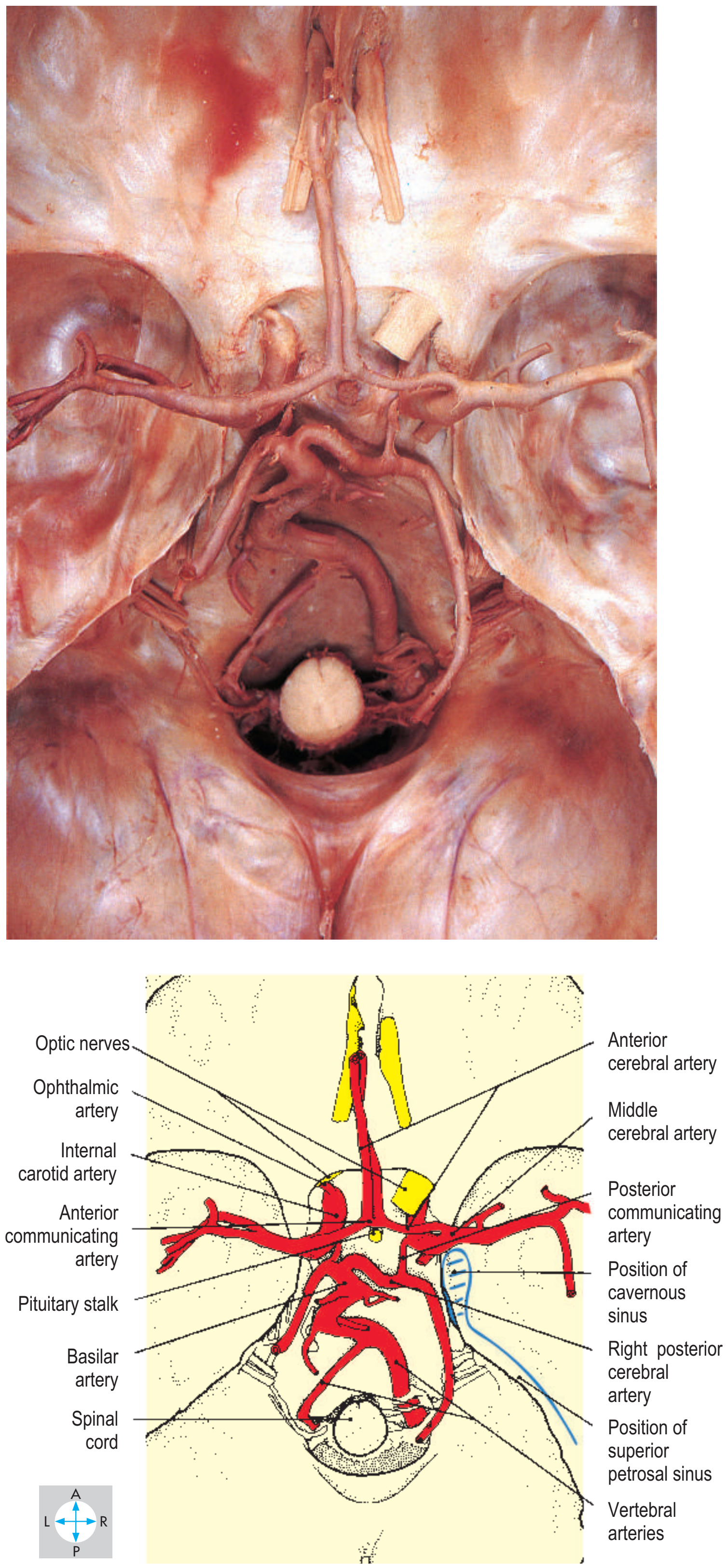


Fig. 7.80 Arterial circle, exposed by complete removal of the brain. The basilar and vertebral arteries are asymmetrical in this specimen.

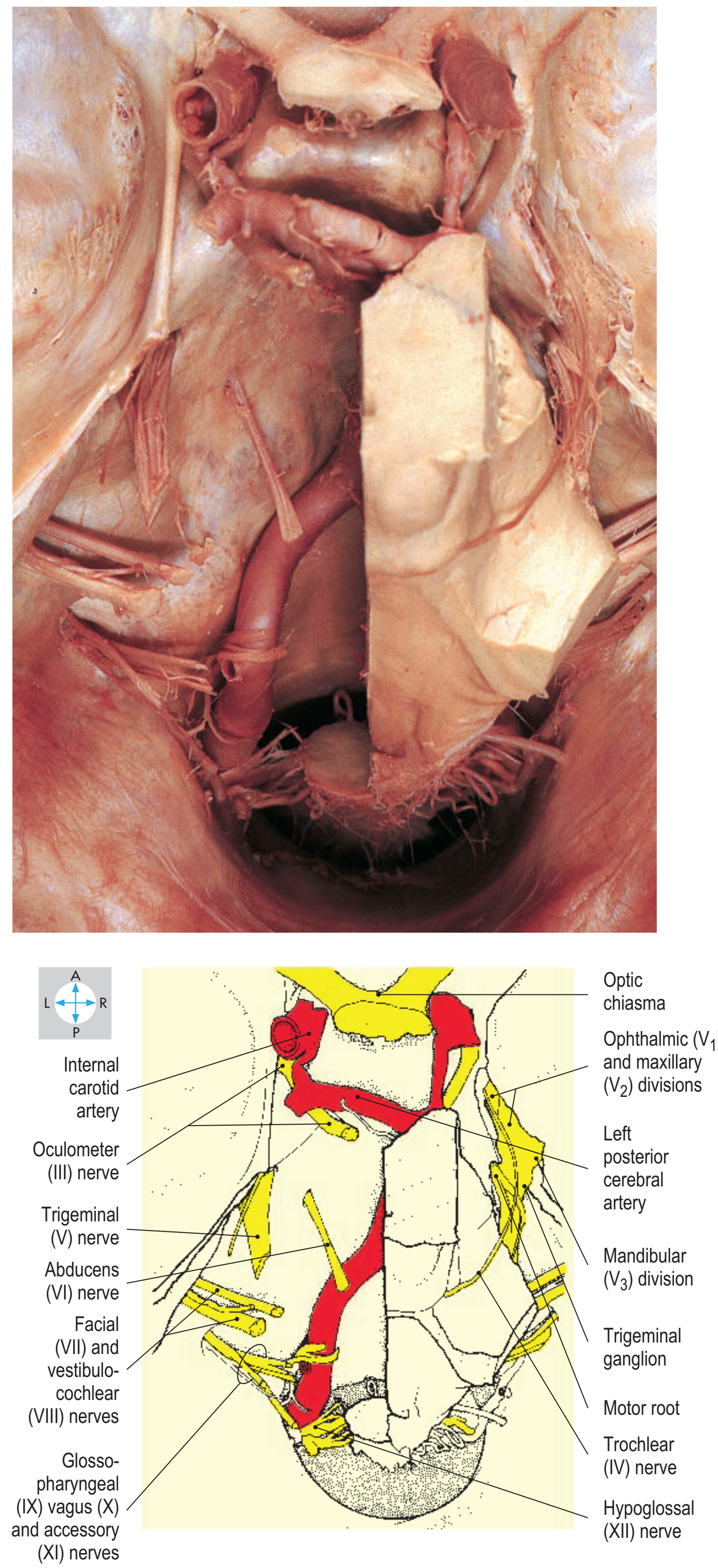


Fig. 7.81 Cranial nerves revealed by removal of most of the brain. The dura over the right trigeminal ganglion has been excised.

while the anterior cerebral artery ascends between the frontal lobes to supply the medial surface of the hemisphere.

The cerebral arterial circle is formed between the branches of the internal carotid and vertebral arteries (Fig. 7.80). The two anterior cerebral arteries are joined by the anterior communicating artery. On each side, an anastomosis, via the posterior communicating artery, between the posterior cerebral branch of the basilar artery and the internal carotid artery completes the cerebral arterial circle. Aneurisms of the cerebral arterial circle are subject to rupture and subsequent subarachnoid haemorrhage.

Cranial nerves

The 12 pairs of cranial nerves enter or leave the skull through various foramina (Figs 7.79 & 7.81). The olfactory (I) nerves emerge from the nasal cavity as a number of short branches, which traverse the cribriform plates and terminate in the olfactory bulbs.

The optic (II) nerve leaves the orbit via the optic canal and joins the optic chiasma immediately anterior to the pituitary stalk. From the chiasma the optic tracts pass backwards to enter the brain.

Three cranial nerves enter the orbit through the superior orbital fissure. To reach the fissure the oculomotor (III) and trochlear (IV) nerves run forwards in the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus, while the abducens (VI) nerve passes through the cavity of the sinus. Infection from the face can spread through veins to the cavernous sinus, which may thrombose, causing damage to the abducens nerve and double vision.

The ganglion of the sensory part of the trigeminal (V) nerve lies covered in dura in a small depression on the apex of the petrous part of the temporal bone. The three divisions of the nerve converge on the anterior surface of the ganglion. From the orbit the branches of the ophthalmic (V_1) division traverse the superior orbital fissure, coalesce and continues backwards, embedded in the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus, to reach the ganglion. The maxillary (V_2) division leaves the pterygopalatine fossa via the foramen rotundum and passes backwards along the lower edge of the sinus to the ganglion. The sensory part of the mandibular (V_3) division, accompanied by the motor root of the trigeminal nerve, ascends from the infratemporal fossa through the foramen ovale. The motor root passes beneath and not through the ganglion to traverse the foramen ovale.

The facial (VII) nerve enters, and the vestibulocochlear (VIII) nerve emerges from, the internal acoustic meatus in the petrous part of the temporal bone.

Three nerves leave via the jugular foramen to enter the carotid sheath, namely the glossopharyngeal (IX), vagus (X) and accessory (XI) nerves.

Finally, the hypoglossal (XII) nerve traverses the hypoglossal canal.

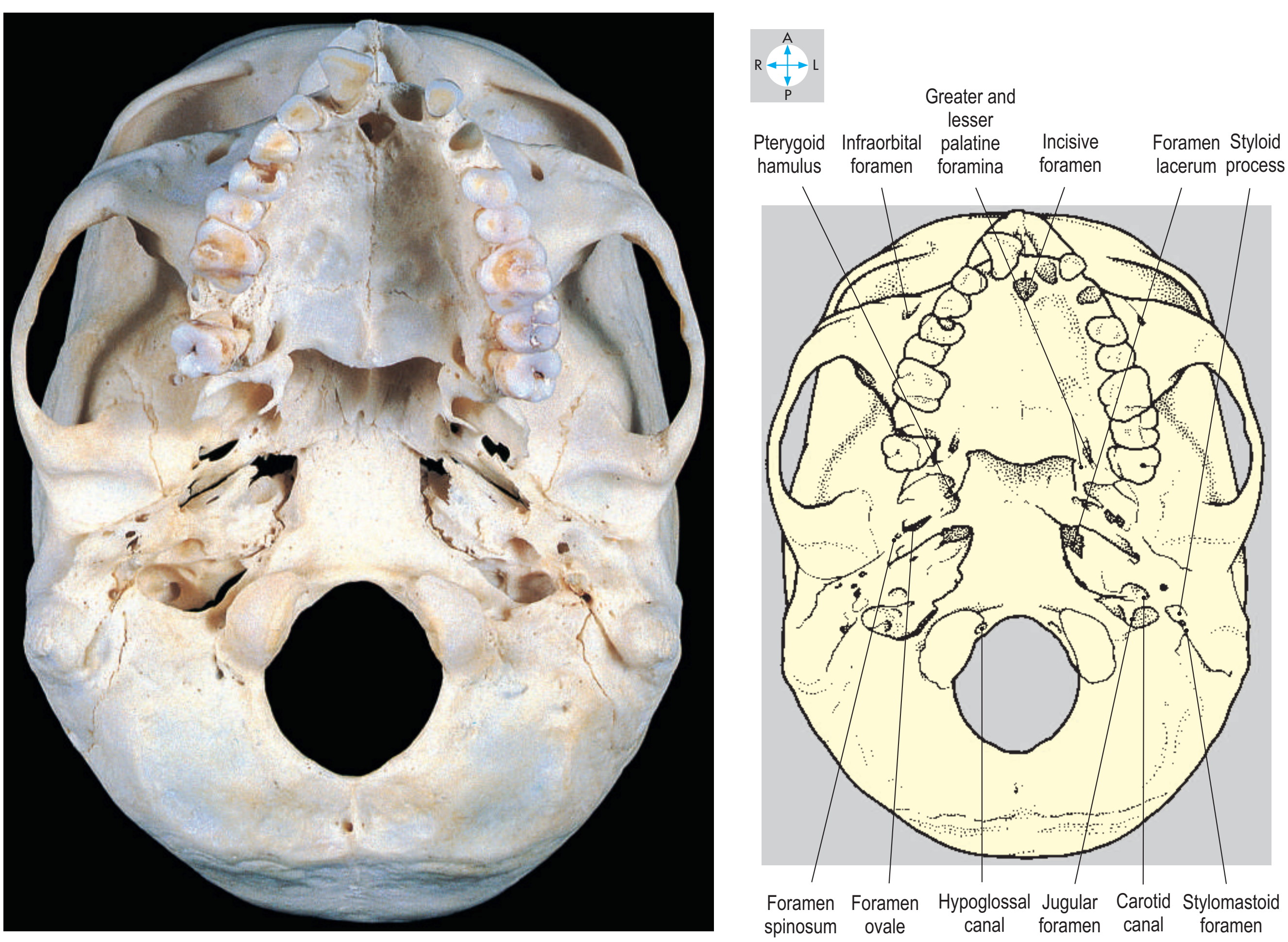


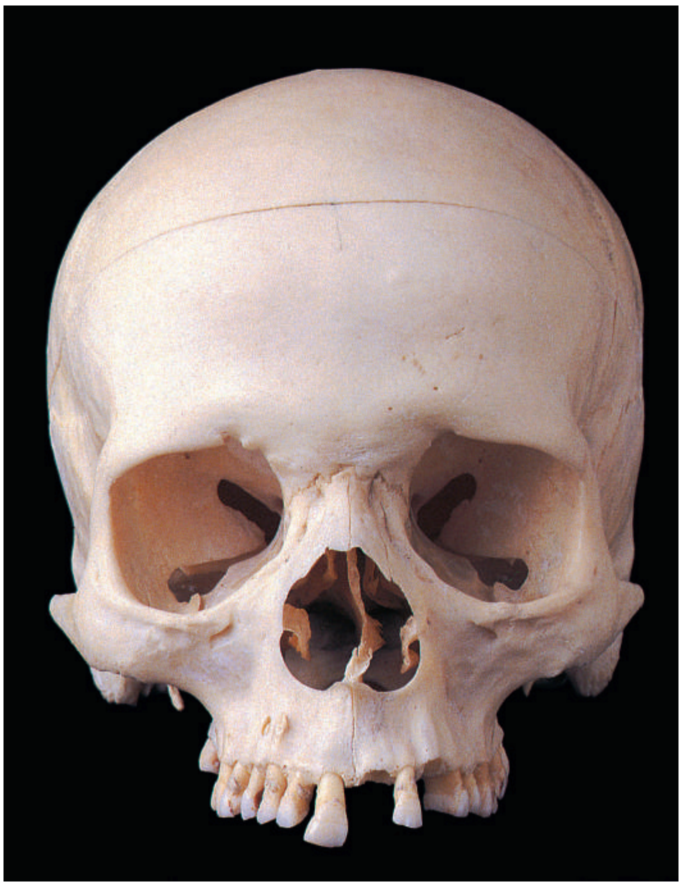
Fig. 7.82 Inferior view of the base of the skull showing the principal foramina.

Orbit

The orbit is a pyramidal cavity, the apex of which is directed posteriorly and base anteriorly (Fig. 7.83). Its bony walls separate it from the anterior cranial fossa above, the ethmoidal air cells and nasal cavity medially, the maxillary air sinus inferiorly and the lateral surface of the face and temporal fossa laterally (Fig. 7.84). Anteriorly, the orbit presents a roughly rectangular aperture which is closed by the eyelids. Within the orbit are the eyeball, the extraocular muscles, cranial nerves II, III, IV, V (ophthalmic and maxillary divisions) and VI, and blood vessels, lymphatics and fat.

Bony walls

The roof of the orbit (Fig. 7.85) comprises the frontal bone, which anteriorly contains the frontal air sinuses. The lateral wall is formed anteriorly by the zygomatic bone and posteriorly by the greater wing of the sphenoid bone. The floor consists of the maxilla anteriorly and the greater wing of the sphenoid



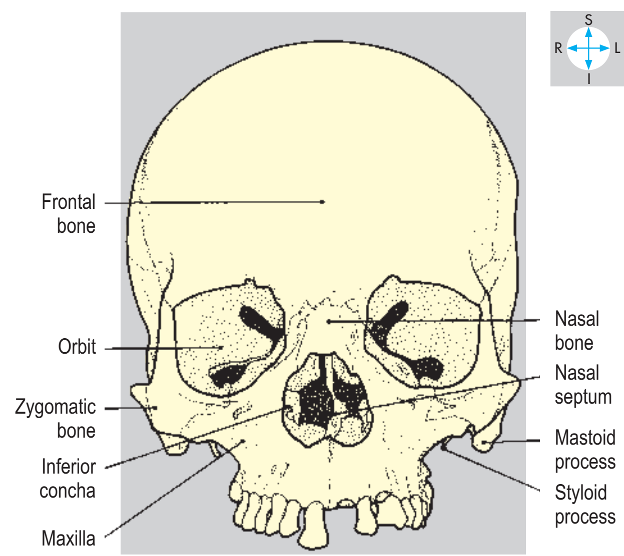
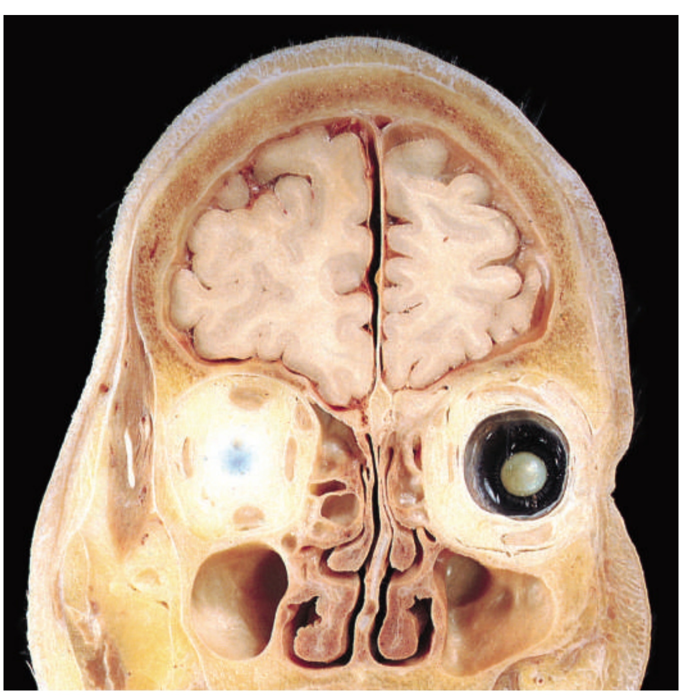


Fig. 7.83 Anterior view of the skull without the mandible.



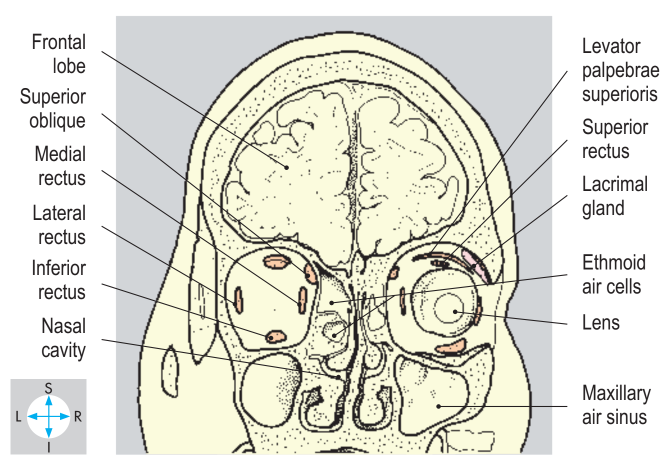


Fig. 7.84 Coronal section showing the extraocular muscles and the relations of the orbits. The section through the right orbit passes more anteriorly than on the left. Posterior aspect. (Compare Figs 7.47 & 7.92.)

posteriorly. From anterior to posterior the medial wall comprises the maxilla, lacrimal, ethmoid and sphenoid bones. The medial walls of the two orbits lie parallel to the median plane while their lateral walls are directed forwards and laterally so that they lie at right angles to one another.

Several foramina and the superior and inferior orbital fissures (Fig. 7.85) allow various structures to enter and leave the orbit. On the medial wall, close to the orbital margin, is a depression called the lacrimal groove, bounded by the maxilla and the lacrimal bone. The nasolacrimal canal descends from this groove and opens into the inferior meatus of the nasal cavity. Anterior and posterior ethmoidal foramina perforate the medial wall and allow communication with the lateral wall of the nasal cavity. At the apex of the orbit are the optic canal and the superior and inferior orbital fissures, through which the orbit is in continuity with the middle cranial and pterygopalatine fossae.

Fascial layers

Movement of the eyeball is facilitated by its fascial sheath, the vagina bulbi (fascia bulbi) (Fig. 7.90), which invests it but does not adhere to the sclera and is incomplete anteriorly. The vagina bulbi is attached to the eyeball around the margin of the cornea. Thickenings of the inferior part of the fascia (the suspensory ligament) extend laterally and medially to attach to the orbital walls (check ligaments). The fascia is pierced by the six muscles that move the eyeball. Anteriorly the orbit is closed by the orbital septum, which forms the fibrous layer of the eyelids.

Eyelids, conjunctiva and lacrimal apparatus

Within each eyelid, the orbital septum is thickened to form a tarsal plate (Figs 7.86 & 7.87) and is perforated between the eyelids by the palpebral fissure. Anterior to the septum lies orbicularis oculi and skin. Levator palpebrae superioris is attached to the upper edge of the superior tarsal plate while a few fibres of inferior rectus are attached to the lower edge of the inferior tarsal plate. Posteriorly each plate has tarsal (meibomian) glands and is covered by conjunctiva. The conjunctival epithelium is reflected onto the surface of the eyeball, where it blends with the margin of the cornea. Each eyelid carries a double row of eyelashes together with associated sebaceous glands (which when inflamed form a stye). The lashes on each eyelid extend medially as far as a small elevation containing a central aperture, the lacrimal punctum, leading into the lacrimal canaliculus. The canaliculi carry tear fluid to the lacrimal sac in the lacrimal groove, and the sac in turn drains via the nasolacrimal duct, in the nasolacrimal canal, into the nasal cavity beneath the inferior concha (Fig. 7.51).

The lacrimal gland (Figs 7.86, 7.87 & 7.89) lies in the superolateral angle of the orbit behind the upper eyelid and is deeply indented by the lateral border of the tendon of levator palpebrae superioris. Small ducts open from the deep surface of the gland into the conjunctival sac. Fluid produced by the gland passes medially towards the lacrimal puncta across the surface of the cornea, assisted by blinking of the eyelid. Reflex blinking is initiated if the cornea is touched or becomes dry. Evaporation of the fluid is retarded by the oily secretion of the tarsal glands.

Extraocular muscles

Within the orbit most muscles comprise only striated fibres, but those that move the eyelids also contain smooth fibres under sympathetic control. Damage to this supply results in a drooping upper eyelid, ptosis.

The extraocular muscles are the four recti, the two obliques and one muscle which attaches to the upper eyelids, levator palpebrae superioris (Figs 7.86–7.88). This is the uppermost muscle in the orbit, and from its attachment to the lesser wing of the sphenoid it passes forwards to form a wide tendon, which enters the upper eyelid and blends with the superior tarsal plate.

The medial, lateral, superior and inferior recti (Figs 7.87, 7.88, 7.90 & 7.91) attach posteriorly to the common tendinous ring that surrounds the optic canal and part of the superior orbital fissure. Passing forwards, these four muscles attach to the eyeball immediately behind the corneoscleral junction in positions corresponding to their names. Collectively, they form a cone with its apex at

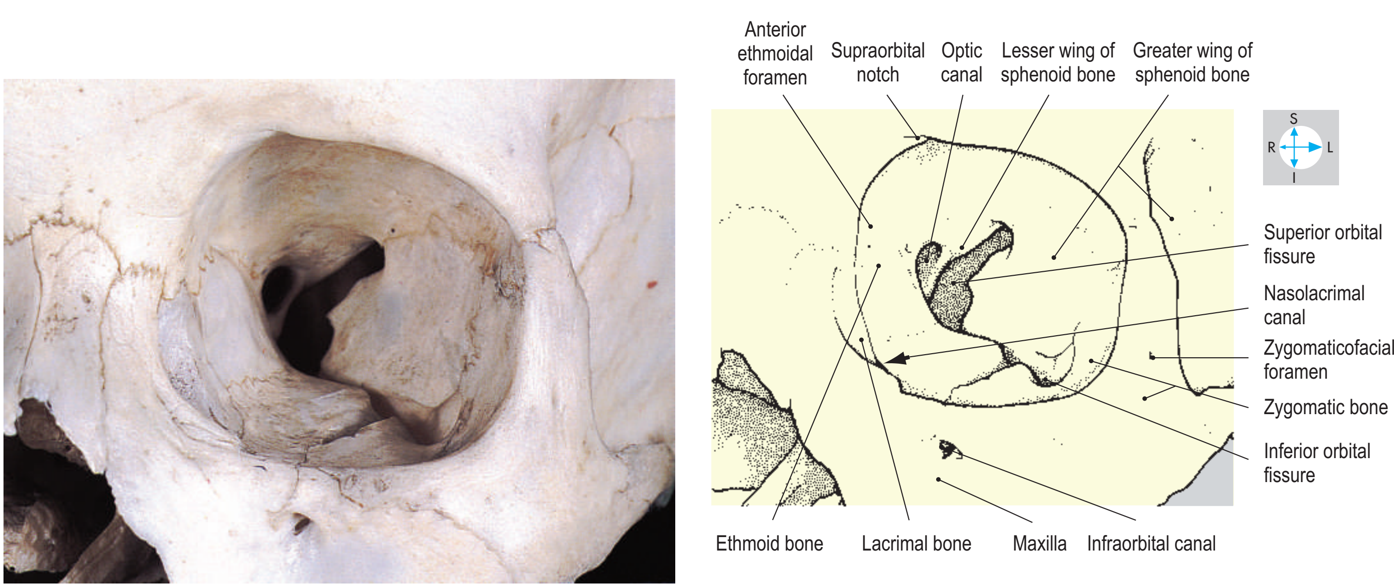


Fig. 7.85 Bony walls, fissures and foramina of the left orbit.

the optic canal and its base around the equator of the eyeball. Nerves and vessels entering the orbit run their course either within or outside this cone of muscle.

Superior oblique (Fig. 7.89) has a posterior attachment to the lesser wing of the sphenoid adjacent to the common tendinous ring. The muscle passes anteriorly along the junction between the medial wall and the roof of the orbit and forms a tendon which traverses a loop of fibrous tissue, the trochlea, which lies at the superomedial angle of the orbital margin and allows the tendon of superior oblique to turn backwards across the upper surface of the eyeball. The tendon lies beneath superior rectus and attaches to the superolateral part of the eyeball behind the equator.

Inferior oblique (Figs 7.86 & 7.87), lying entirely in the anterior part of the orbit, attaches to the floor of the orbit just lateral to the

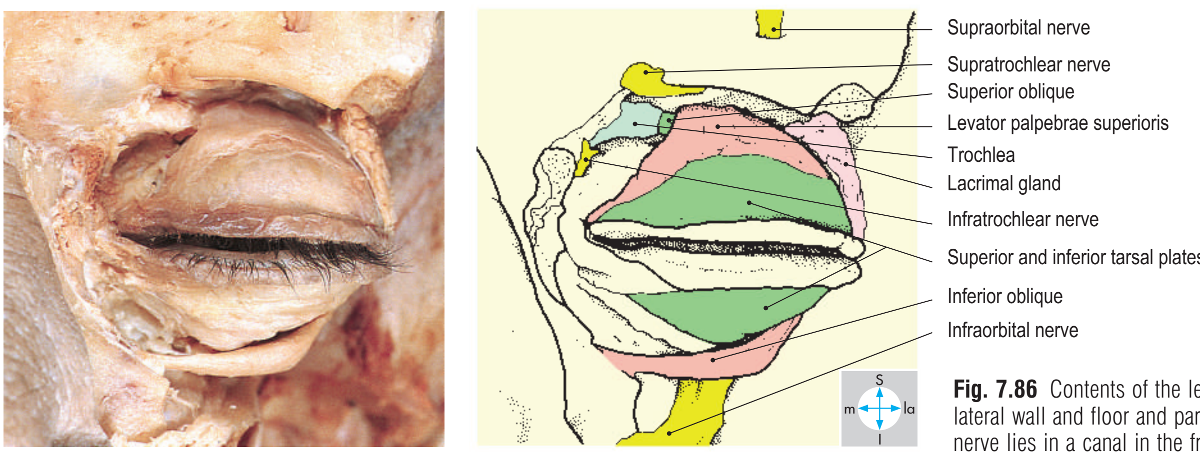


Fig. 7.86 Contents of the left orbit, revealed by removal of its lateral wall and floor and parts of the eyelids. The supraorbital nerve lies in a canal in the frontal bone.

Fig. 7.87 Lateral view of specimen in Fig. 7.86.

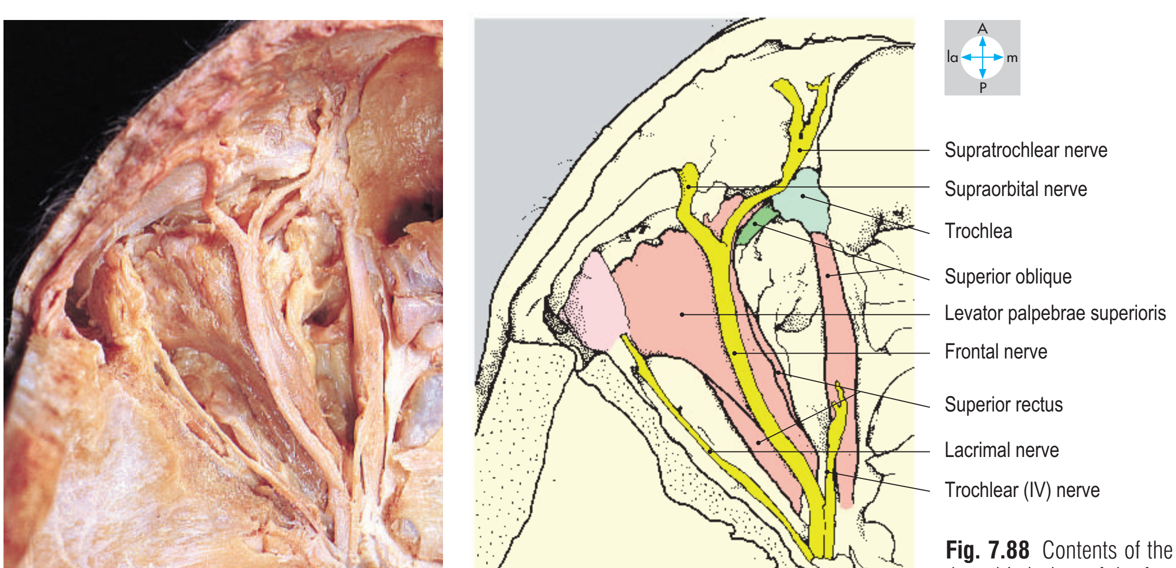


Fig. 7.88 Contents of the orbit seen from above after removal of the orbital plate of the frontal bone.

nasolacrimal canal. The muscle passes posterolaterally below the inferior rectus to attach to the inferolateral part of the eyeball behind the equator.

Three cranial nerves supply these muscles. The abducens (VI) nerve (Figs 7.90 & 7.91) innervates lateral rectus, while the trochlear (IV) nerve (Fig. 7.88) supplies superior oblique. All the remaining muscles receive motor branches from the oculomotor (III) nerve (Figs 7.89 & 7.91).

Movements of the eyeball and eyelid

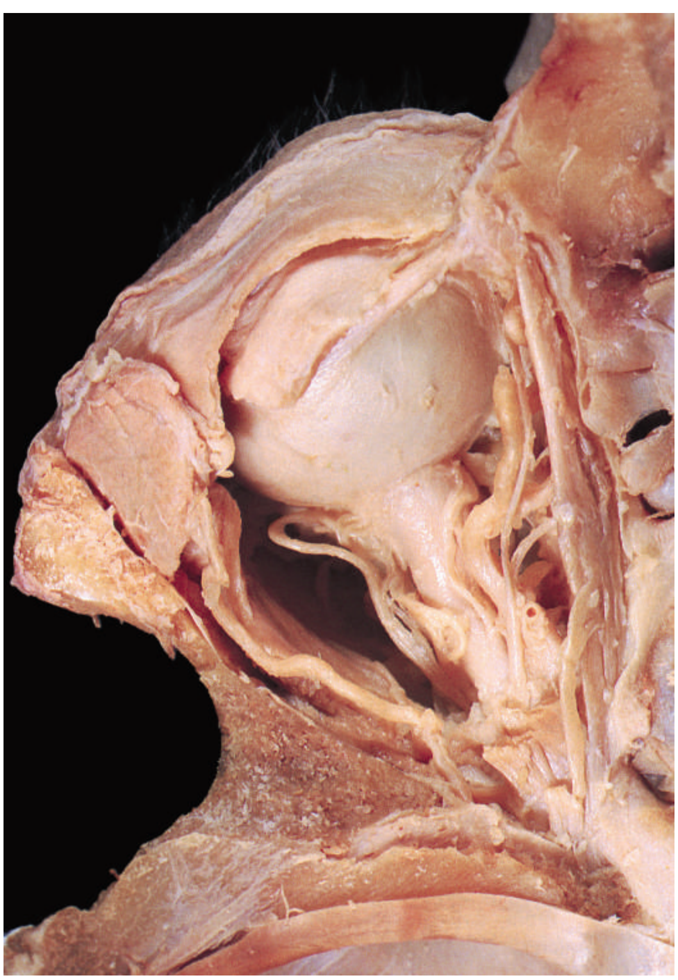
In defining the actions of individual extraocular muscles, it is assumed that the eyeball is positioned so that the gaze is directed forwards into the distance. Within its fascial sheath, the eyeball is rotated by the extraocular muscles, which displace the gaze upwards (elevation), downwards (depression), medially (adduction) and laterally (abduction). Rotation about an anteroposterior axis (torsion) may also occur. Collectively, the extraocular muscles also contribute to the stability of the eyeball, the recti tending to pull the globe backwards and the obliques tending to pull it forwards.

The only actions of the medial and lateral recti are adduction and abduction, respectively. Superior rectus elevates and adducts while inferior rectus depresses and adducts. Both oblique muscles produce abduction, the inferior oblique elevating the gaze and the superior oblique depressing it. Eye movements in general involve the coordinated contraction and relaxation of several individual muscles, and elevation and depression are accompanied by movement of the eyelids. Levator palpebrae superioris raises the upper eyelid (opposed by the orbicularis oculi), while inferior rectus depresses the lower eyelid.

Nerves

Several nerves reach the orbit from the middle cranial and pterygopalatine fossae. The optic (II) nerve (Fig. 7.89), which conveys visual sensation, traverses the optic canal with the ophthalmic artery. Enveloped by meninges and cerebrospinal fluid, the nerve passes forwards and laterally within the cone of rectus muscles and enters the eyeball just medial to its posterior pole. Increased intracranial pressure is transmitted through the cerebrospinal fluid to the eye, giving rise to the clinical sign called papilloedema. Other nerves reach the orbit through the orbital fissures.

The oculomotor (III) nerve (Figs 7.89 & 7.91) enters the cone of muscles via the superior orbital fissure. It has superior and inferior divisions, which are often formed before entering the orbit. The superior division supplies the superior rectus and levator palpebrae superioris while the inferior division gives branches to inferior rectus, inferior oblique, medial rectus and the ciliary ganglion. Sympathetic fibres to the smooth muscle in levator palpebrae superioris and inferior rectus enter the oculomotor (III) nerve in the cavernous sinus and travel with its branches to these muscles. Damage to this pathway results in Horner's syndrome, including ptosis.



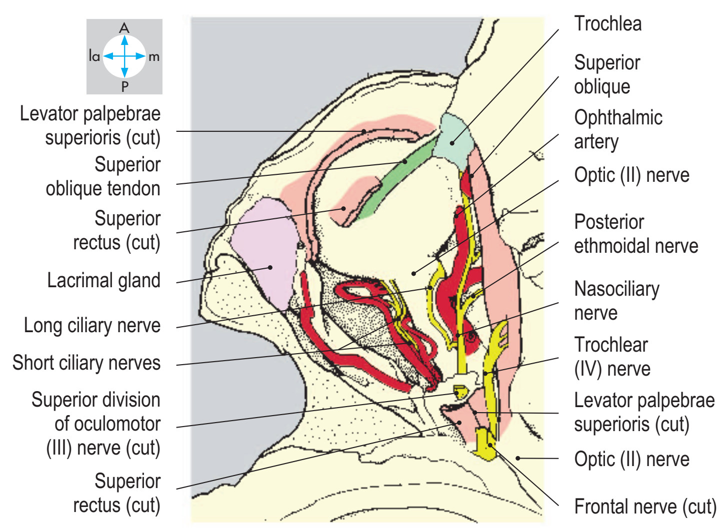


Fig. 7.89 Structures of the orbit seen following excision of superior rectus, levator palpebrae superioris and the superior division of the oculomotor nerve along with a quantity of orbital fat.

The trochlear (IV) nerve (Fig. 7.89) enters the orbit via the superior orbital fissure, passing above the muscle cone to supply superior oblique.

The abducens (VI) nerve (Figs 7.90 & 7.91) gains the orbit via the superior orbital fissure and passes forwards on the inner surface of lateral rectus, which it supplies.

The ophthalmic (V_1) division of the trigeminal nerve divides into lacrimal, frontal and nasociliary nerves, each of which enters the orbit through the superior orbital fissure. The lacrimal nerve (Fig. 7.88) passes forwards, outside the muscle cone, along the angle between the roof and lateral wall of the orbit. It is joined by parasympathetic secretomotor fibres from the zygomatic nerve (p. 354), which are destined for the lacrimal gland. In addition, the lacrimal nerve conveys sensation from the lacrimal gland and the lateral part of the upper eyelid.

The frontal nerve (Fig. 7.88) lies on the upper surface of levator palpebrae superioris and divides into supraorbital and supratrochlear nerves. The supraorbital nerve (Figs 7.86 & 7.88) curves around the upper part of the orbital margin, occupying the supraorbital notch, and conveys sensation from the upper eyelid,

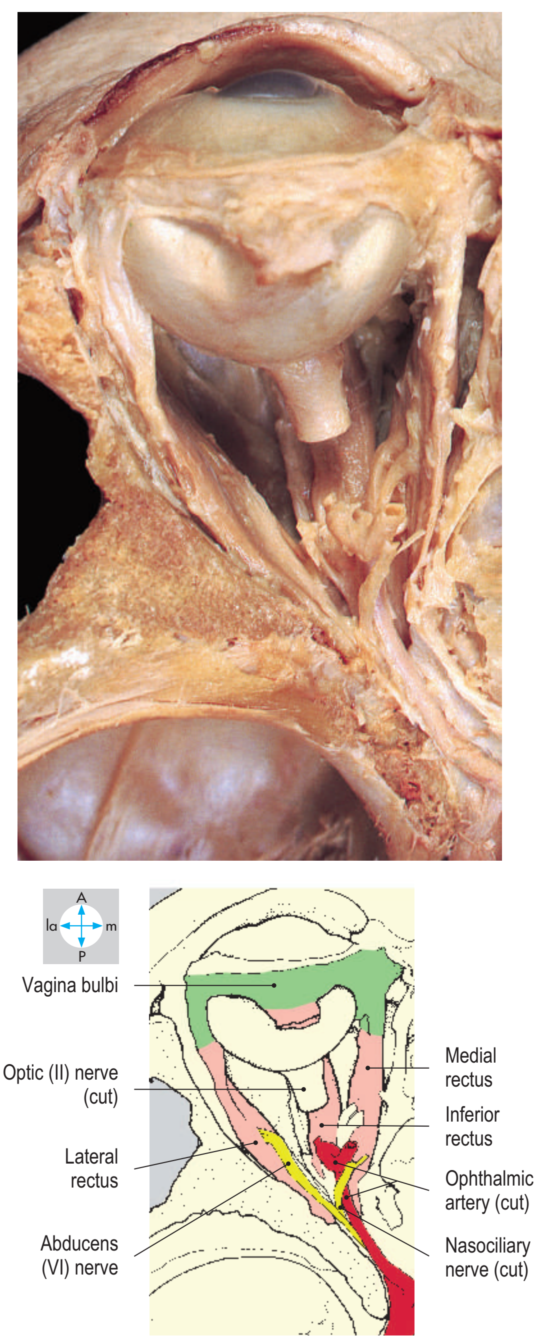


Fig. 7.90 Muscles of the orbit seen after removal of the upper eyelid, part of the optic nerve, and superior oblique.

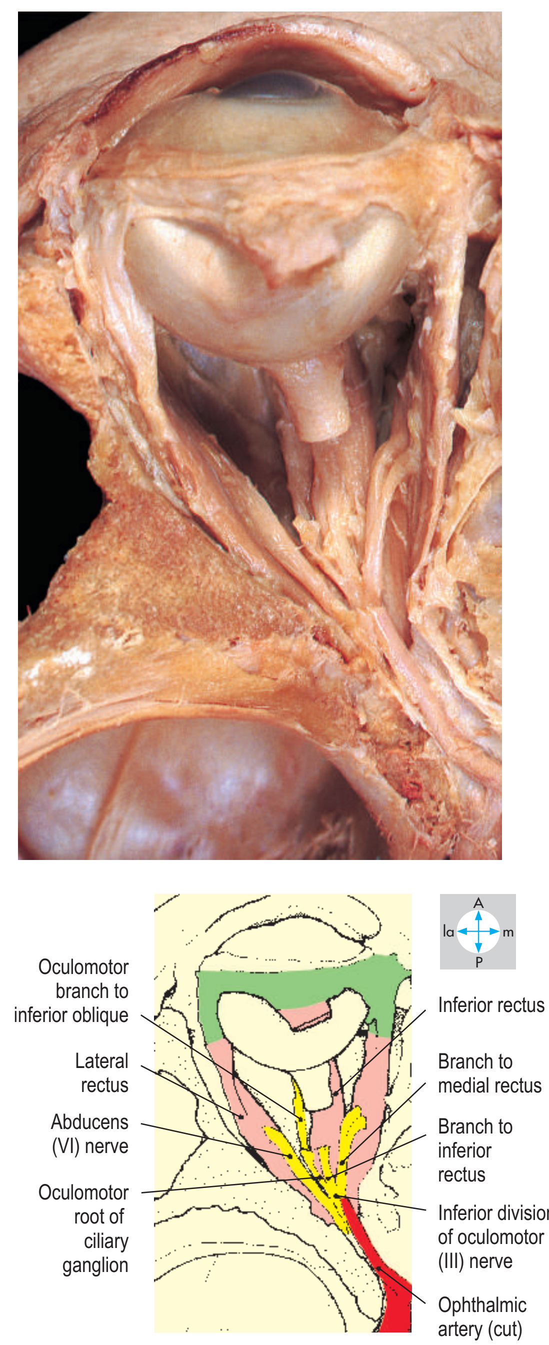


Fig. 7.91 Inferior division of the oculomotor nerve, revealed by excision of the distal part of the ophthalmic artery and the nasociliary nerve.

forehead, scalp and frontal air sinus. The supratrochlear nerve (Figs 7.86 & 7.88) lies more medially, leaving the orbit just above the trochlea to supply sensory fibres to the medial part of the upper eyelid, forehead and scalp.

The nasociliary nerve (Fig. 7.89), lying within the muscle cone, crosses above the optic (II) nerve and continues forwards along the medial wall of the orbit to terminate below the trochlea. Its branches include one to the ciliary ganglion, two long ciliary nerves, posterior and anterior ethmoidal nerves and the infratrochlear nerve. The long ciliary nerves, which carry sympathetic vasoconstrictor fibres that join the nasociliary nerve in the cavernous sinus, pass forwards to supply vessels within the eyeball. The posterior and anterior ethmoidal nerves leave through their respective foramina, supplying ethmoidal air cells. The anterior ethmoidal nerve passes between the frontal and ethmoid bones and emerges on the upper surface of the cribriform plate. Leaving the anterior fossa, the nerve penetrates the plate to run on the inner surface of the nasal bone as the external nasal nerve and eventually reaches the tip of the nose. It conveys sensation from a strip of nasal skin close to the midline and from the nasal septum. The infratrochlear nerve supplies the medial part of the upper eyelid (Fig. 7.86).

Autonomic nerves

The ciliary ganglion lies just behind the eyeball, lateral to the optic (II) nerve. It receives sensory fibres from the nasociliary nerve, sympathetic fibres from the internal carotid plexus in the cavernous sinus and parasympathetic fibres from the oculomotor (III) nerve. Only the last synapse in the ganglion. From the anterior part of the ganglion, short ciliary nerves (Fig. 7.89) pass forwards into the eyeball, conveying general sensory fibres from the eyeball (including the cornea), parasympathetic fibres to the ciliary muscle and sphincter pupillae and sympathetic fibres to dilator pupillae.

Vasoconstrictor sympathetic fibres reach the eyeball in the long ciliary branches of the nasociliary nerve. Other intraorbital sympathetic fibres travel in the oculomotor (III) nerve to the smooth muscle component of levator palpebrae superioris and inferior rectus. Parasympathetic fibres reach the lacrimal gland via the lacrimal nerve, which communicates with the zygomatic branch of the maxillary (V_2) division of the trigeminal nerve. The cell bodies of these fibres lie in the pterygopalatine ganglion (p. 354).

Vessels

The ophthalmic artery (Figs 7.89 & 7.90), a branch of the internal carotid artery in the middle cranial fossa, enters the orbit through the optic canal inferior to the optic (II) nerve. The artery then accompanies the nasociliary nerve, passing above the optic nerve and continuing forwards along the medial wall of the orbit. Its first branch, the central retinal artery, enters the optic nerve and passes into the eyeball to supply the retina. Occlusion of this artery results in blindness. Other branches of the ophthalmic artery accompany those of the ophthalmic (V_1) division of the trigeminal nerve. In addition, there are posterior and anterior ciliary branches to the eyeball and branches to the extraocular muscles.

Venous blood from the eyeball and adjacent structures drains into inferior and superior ophthalmic veins. The superior ophthalmic vein terminates posteriorly in the cavernous venous sinus while the inferior vein passes through the inferior orbital fissure into the pterygoid venous plexus in the pterygopalatine fossa. Both superior and inferior ophthalmic veins communicate with veins on the face.

Exam Skills

Each of the incomplete statements below is followed by five suggested answers or completions. Decide which are true and which are false. The answers are supplied on p. 417.

1. The internal carotid artery:

a) arises from the brachiocephalic artery on the right.
b) traverses the foramina transversaria of cervical vertebrae 1–6.
c) has a branch entering the orbit.
d) forms the basilar artery.
e) gives rise to the anterior cerebral artery.

2. In the larynx:

a) sensation from the vestibular fold travels in the superior laryngeal nerve.
b) contraction of cricothyroid lowers pitch.
c) the cricoid cartilage forms a complete ring.
d) interarytenoid muscle adducts the vocal folds.
e) the vocal fold is covered with respiratory epithelium.

3. The internal jugular vein:

a) is a continuation of the sigmoid sinus.
b) drains into the brachiocephalic vein.
c) receives blood from the lingual vein.
d) communicates with the retromandibular vein.
e) has the ansa cervicalis on its anterolateral surface.

4. The head of the mandible:

a) is moved medially by lateral and medial pterygoid acting together.
b) is separated from the temporal bone by an intra-articular disc.
c) is moved posteriorly by the lateral pterygoid muscle.
d) is moved posteriorly by temporalis.
e) most often dislocates backwards.

5. The intracranial dura mater:

a) is easily separated into endosteal and meningeal layers.
b) forms the tentorium cerebelli.
c) contains the sigmoid sinus in the free edge of the falx cerebri.
d) is separated from the arachnoid mater by cerebrospinal fluid.
e) forms the diaphragma sellae.

6. The thyroid gland:

a) has an isthmus at the level of the second and third tracheal rings.
b) receives blood from a branch of the subclavian artery.
c) is enclosed in prevertebral fascia.
d) is closely related to both recurrent laryngeal nerves.
e) rises on swallowing.

7. The hypoglossal nerve:

a) leaves the skull through the jugular foramen.
b) conveys touch sensation from the anterior two-thirds of the tongue.
c) innervates the genioglossus muscle.
d) carries C1 fibres for the ansa cervicalis.
e) when damaged results in the protruded tongue deviating to the damaged side.

8. Transection of the facial nerve in the internal acoustic meatus gives rise to:

a) paralysis of buccinator.
b) loss of taste in the anterior two-thirds of the tongue.
c) paralysis of masseter.
d) loss of secretion by the parotid gland.
e) paralysis of stapedius.

9. The maxillary air sinus:

a) extends below the level of the hard palate.
b) has a sensory supply from the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve.
c) is indented by the root of the canine tooth.
d) has a roof formed by the floor of the orbit.
e) opens into the inferior meatus.

10. The maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve:

a) is related to the cavernous venous sinus.
b) conveys sensation from the lower eyelid.
c) passes through the foramen rotundum.
d) conveys sensation from part of the nasal septum.
e) conveys sensation from the hard palate.

11. The vagus nerve:

a) passes through the jugular foramen.
b) is contained in the carotid sheath.
c) conveys touch sensation from the laryngopharynx.
d) is motor to the stylopharyngeus muscle.
e) carries fibres destined for the submandibular gland.

12. In the neck:

a) the phrenic nerve crosses posterior to the subclavian artery.
b) the left vagus nerve gives rise to the recurrent laryngeal nerve.
c) the scalenus anterior muscle lies posterior to the subclavian vein.
d) the thoracic duct drains into the junction of the subclavian and internal jugular veins on the left.
e) the sternohyoid muscle is supplied by the ansa cervicalis.

13. The glossopharyngeal nerve:

a) is motor to the pharyngeal constrictor muscles.
b) traverses the parotid gland.
c) conveys touch sensation from the posterior third of the tongue.
d) is motor to stylopharyngeus.
e) carries sensory fibres from the larynx.

14. Concerning the nasal cavity and its walls:

a) the nasolacrimal duct opens in the middle meatus.
b) the inferior concha is part of the ethmoid bone.
c) the septum is supplied by the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve.
d) the vomer forms the anterior part of the septum.
e) the sphenoidal air sinus opens into the middle meatus.

15. Concerning the cranial cavity:

a) the superior sagittal sinus drains into the transverse sinus.
b) bleeding from the middle meningeal artery gives rise to extradural/epidural haematoma.
c) the trigeminal ganglion is closely related to the apex of the petrous temporal bone.
d) the internal carotid artery gives rise to the posterior cerebral artery.
e) the temporal lobe lies in the anterior cranial fossa.

16. Concerning the orbit:

a) lateral rectus is supplied by the fourth cranial nerve.
b) superior oblique produces adduction of the eye.
c) the oculomotor nerve carries parasympathetic fibres to sphincter pupillae.
d) secretomotor fibres for the lacrimal gland travel in the nasociliary nerve.
e) the ophthalmic artery enters through the superior orbital fissure.

Clinical Case Skills

The answers are supplied on p. 420.

Case Study 1

A 50-year-old woman presented to her doctor with a pain-free swelling in the right side of her face. Examination indicated that this was a benign parotid tumour, and the woman had a partial parotidectomy at a later date. On recovering from the anaesthetic, the patient was observed to dribble from the right side of her mouth and to have difficulty with closing her right eye. Over a period of a few weeks both these signs disappeared, but the patient now noticed that when she ate, she experienced sweating from the skin overlying the area from which the tumour was removed.

Questions:

1. How would you test for normal function in the parotid gland?
2. Why did the patient experience problems with her mouth and eye after surgery?
3. Why did the initial postsurgery symptoms recover?
4. Explain why the patient experienced sweating with eating.

Case Study 2

The morning after a particularly good party, a 20-year-old student awoke and yawned widely. He heard a click and found that he could not close his mouth. He also experienced sharp, severe pain on both sides of his face just in front of the ear. The student was now unable to speak clearly or eat.

Questions:

1. What had happened?
2. What anatomical features are responsible for the condition?
3. On anatomical grounds, what is the treatment?

Case Study 3

A 35-year-old woman visited her doctor with weight loss, anxiety and tremor. The doctor observed that she had exophthalmos (protruding eyes) and correctly made the diagnosis of thyrotoxicosis (overactive thyroid gland). In order to examine the gland, he stood behind the sitting patient and felt her neck just below the laryngeal prominence.

Questions:

1. What would the doctor ask the patient to do in order to make his examination of the gland complete?
   The prescribed treatment in this patient was partial thyroidectomy. Following surgery the patient was noticed to have a husky voice.
2. What is the likely cause of the change in voice?
3. How may the surgeon have avoided the problem?
4. What other nearby structures are particularly liable to damage in this operation?

Case Study 4

A general practitioner referred a 14-year-old boy to hospital for urgent admission. The boy had suffered acne for some months and in the previous few days had experienced an exacerbation of the condition. He admitted to squeezing pustules on his left cheek and 36 hours later noticed double vision on looking to the left. In the previous few hours he had pain in the middle third of his face on the left and then complained of double vision on looking in most directions.

Questions:

1. What was the diagnosis?
2. Why did the boy experience double vision on looking to the left?
3. What is the anatomical explanation for the progression of events?
4. If allowed to progress untreated, what would be the likely next problem?

Observation Skills

Identify the structures indicated. The answers are supplied at the foot of the page.

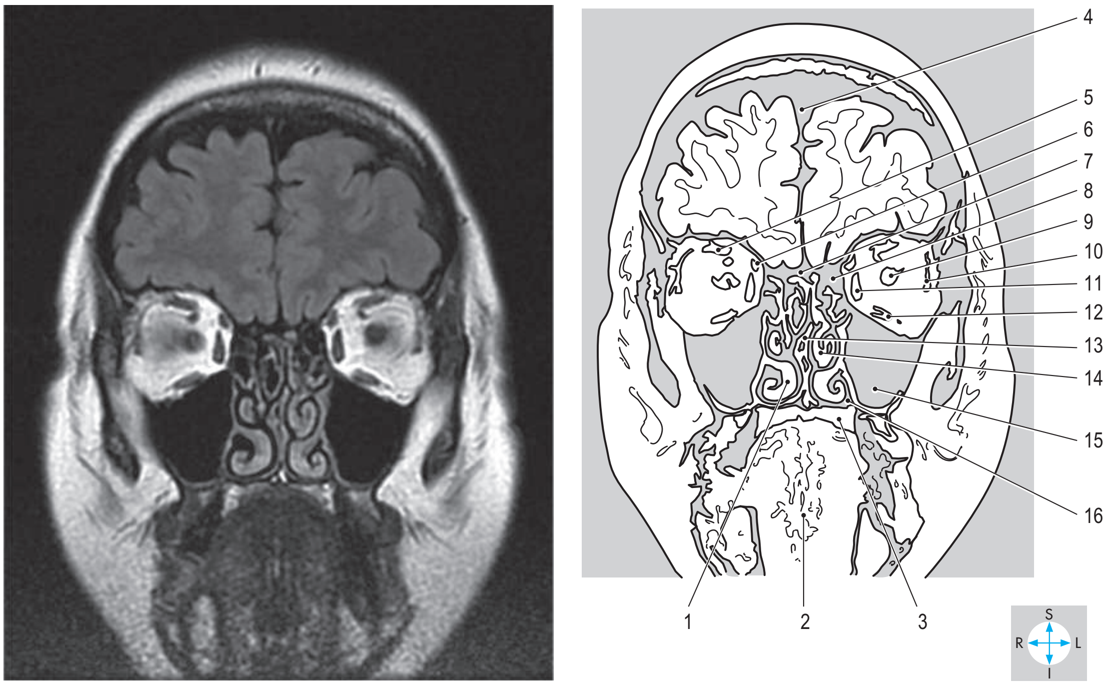


Fig. 7.92 Coronal MR image showing the orbits and nasal cavities. (Compare Figs 7.47 & 7.98.)

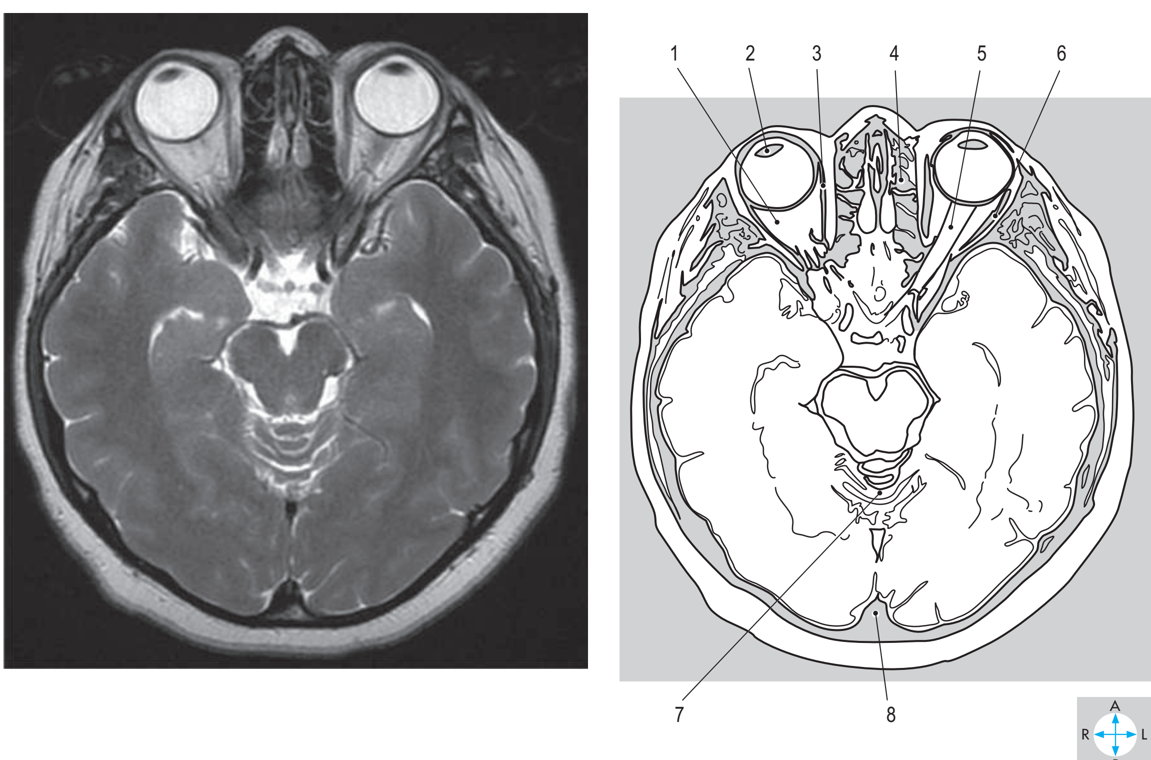


Fig. 7.93 Transverse MR image showing the orbits. (Compare Fig. 7.100.)

Answers:

Fig. 7.92 1 = inferior concha (turbinate); 2 = tongue; 3 = hard palate; 4 = longitudinal cerebral fissure containing falx cerebri; 5 = superior rectus; 6 = superior oblique; 7 = cribriform plate; 8 = ethmoid air cells; 9 = optic nerve; 10 = lateral rectus; 11 = medial rectus; 12 = inferior rectus; 13 = nasal septum; 14 = middle concha (turbinate); 15 = maxillary sinus (antrum); 16 = nasal cavity.

Fig. 7.93 1 = retrobulbar fat; 2 = lens; 3 = medial rectus; 4 = ethmoid air cells; 5 = optic nerve; 6 = lateral rectus; 7 = cerebellum; 8 = posterior cerebellar notch (containing falx cerebelli).

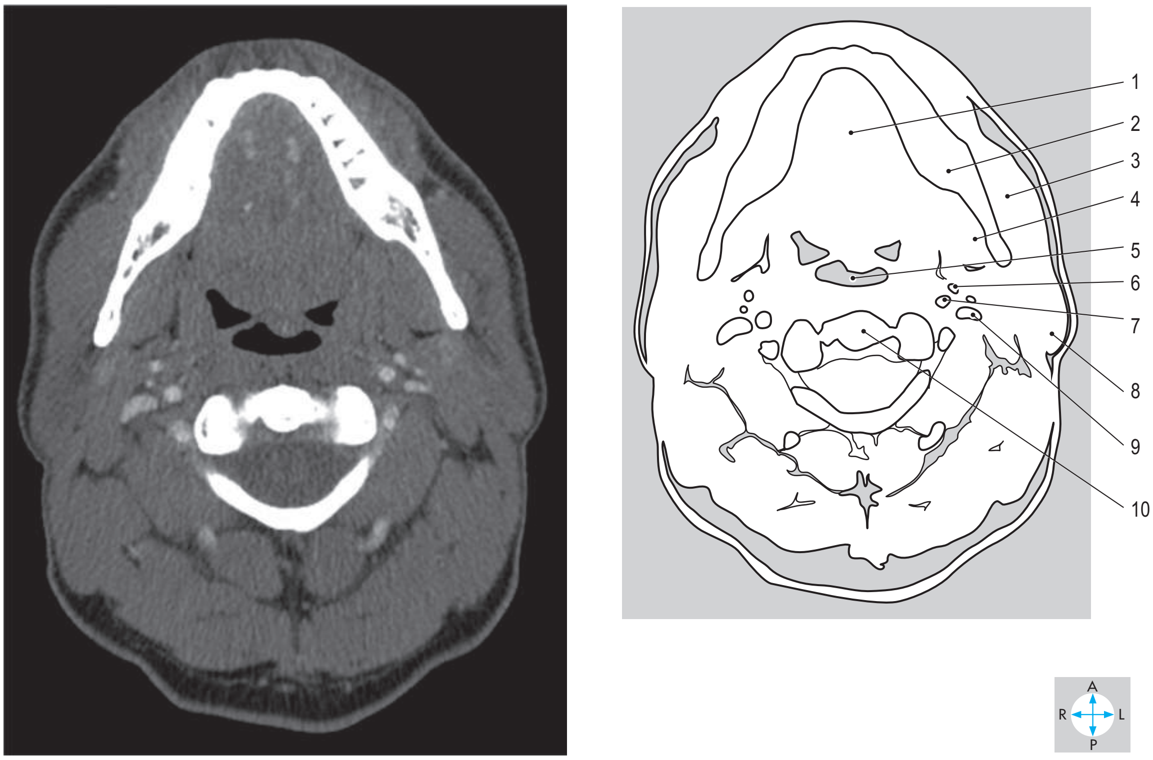


Fig. 7.94 Transverse CT image at the level of the second cervical vertebra. (Compare Figs 7.25 & 7.102.)

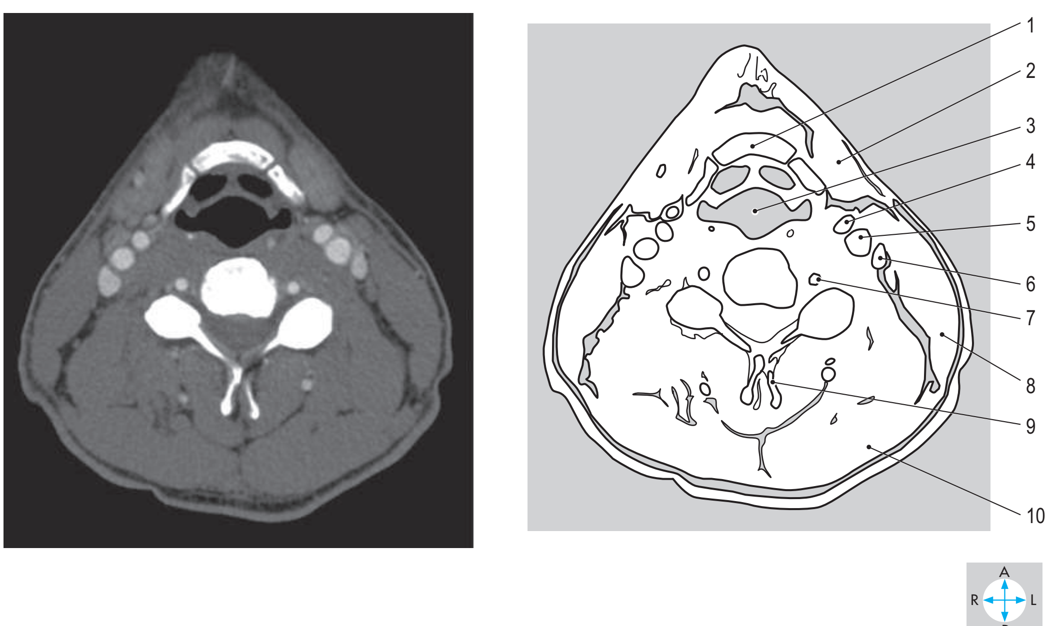


Fig. 7.95 Transverse CT image at the level of the fifth cervical vertebra. (Compare Fig. 7.5.)

Answers:

Fig. 7.94 1 = muscles of tongue; 2 = mandible; 3 = masseter; 4 = medial pterygoid muscle; 5 = oropharynx; 6 = styloid process; 7 = internal carotid artery; 8 = parotid gland; 9 = internal jugular vein; 10 = odontoid process (dens) of axis.

Fig. 7.95 1 = hyoid bone; 2 = submandibular salivary gland; 3 = laryngopharynx; 4 = external carotid artery; 5 = internal carotid artery; 6 = internal jugular vein; 7 = vertebral artery; 8 = sternocleidomastoid; 9 = bifid spinous process; 10 = trapezius.

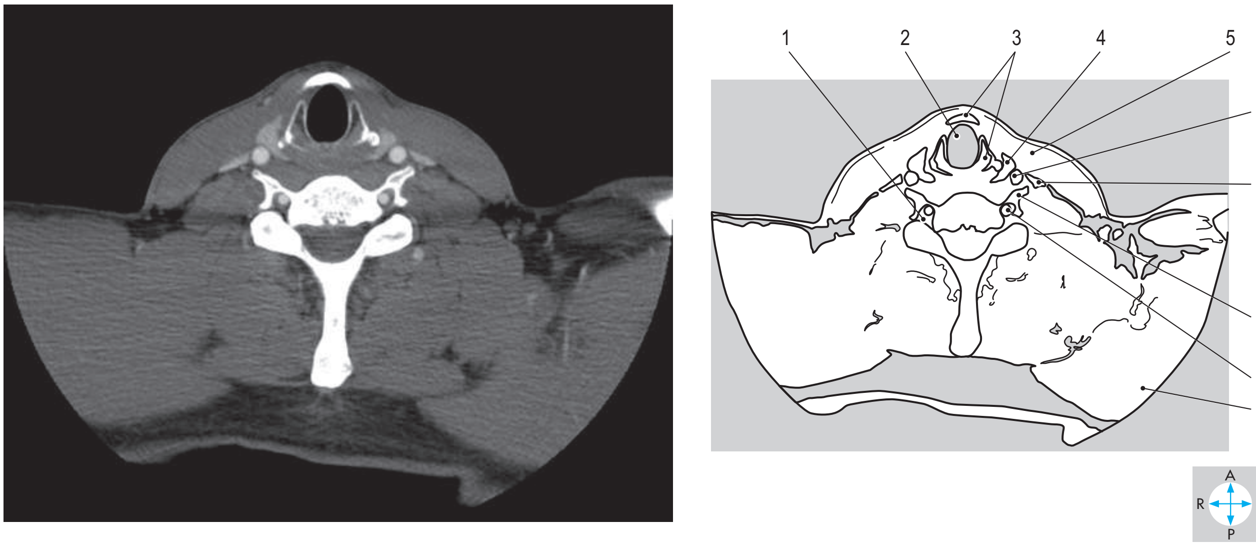


Fig. 7.96 Transverse CT image at the level of the sixth cervical vertebra. (Compare Fig. 7.103.)

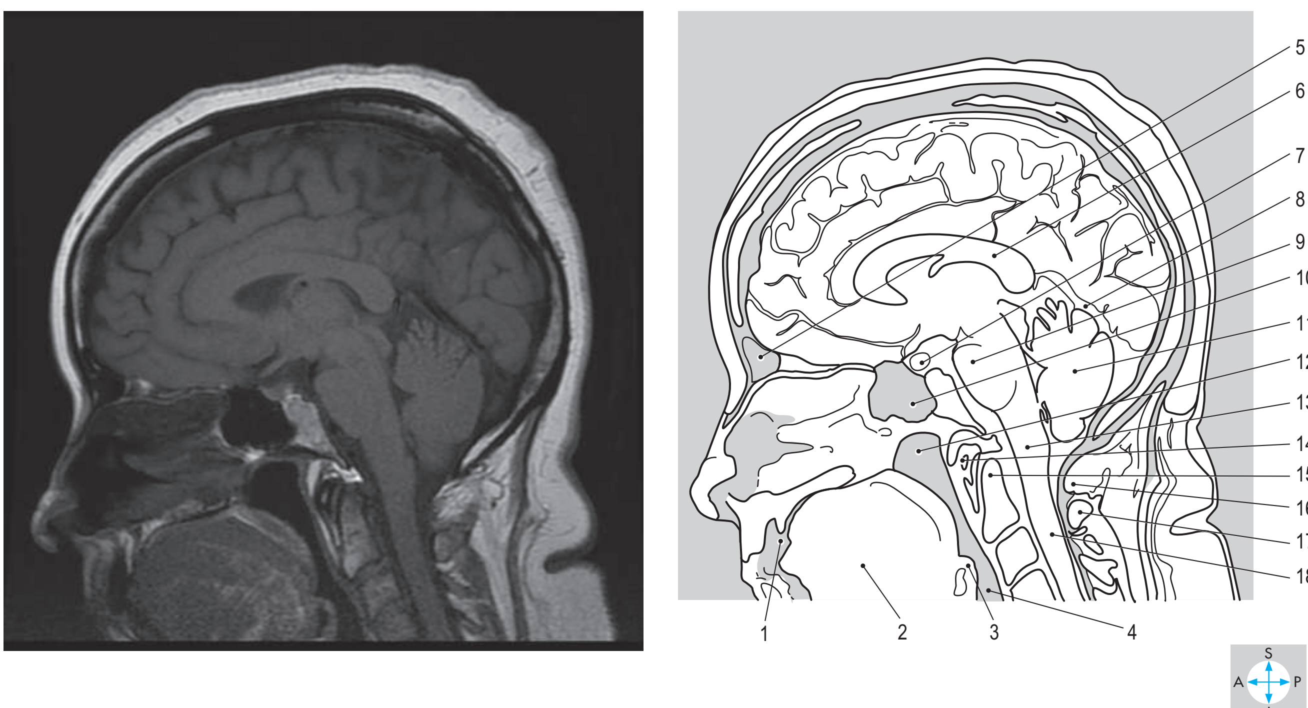


Fig. 7.97 Sagittal MR image of the head near the midline.

Answers:

Fig. 7.96 1 = foramen transversarium; 2 = larynx just above trachea; 3 = cricoid cartilage; 4 = thyroid gland; 5 = sternocleidomastoid; 6 = common carotid artery; 7 = internal jugular vein; 8 = anterior tubercle; 9 = vertebral artery; 10 = trapezius.

Fig. 7.97 1 = oral cavity; 2 = muscles of tongue; 3 = epiglottis; 4 = laryngopharynx; 5 = frontal air sinus; 6 = corpus callosum; 7 = pituitary gland; 8 = tentorium cerebelli; 9 = pons; 10 = sphenoid air sinus; 11 = cerebellum; 12 = nasopharynx; 13 = medulla oblongata; 14 = anterior arch of atlas; 15 = odontoid process (dens); 16 = posterior arch of atlas; 17 = posterior lamina of axis; 18 = spinal cord.

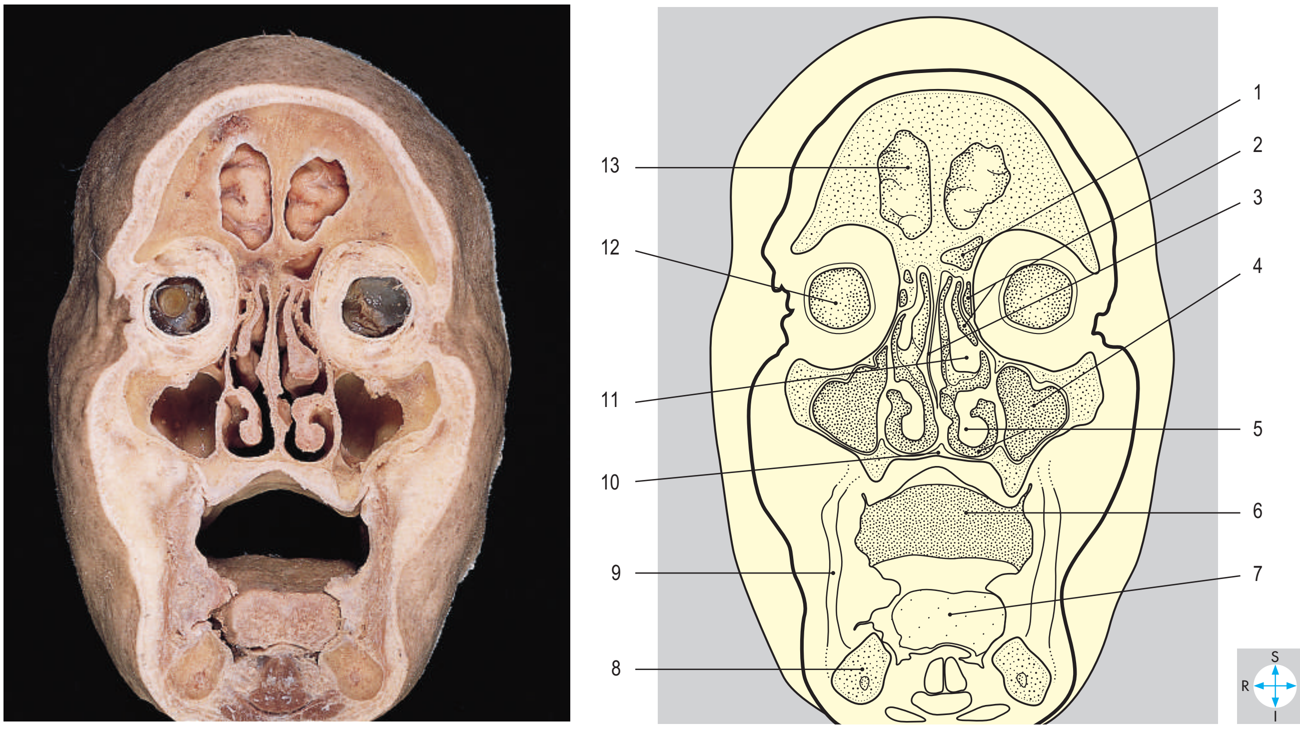


Fig. 7.98 Coronal section showing the orbits and nasal cavities. Anterior aspect. (Compare Fig. 7.92.)

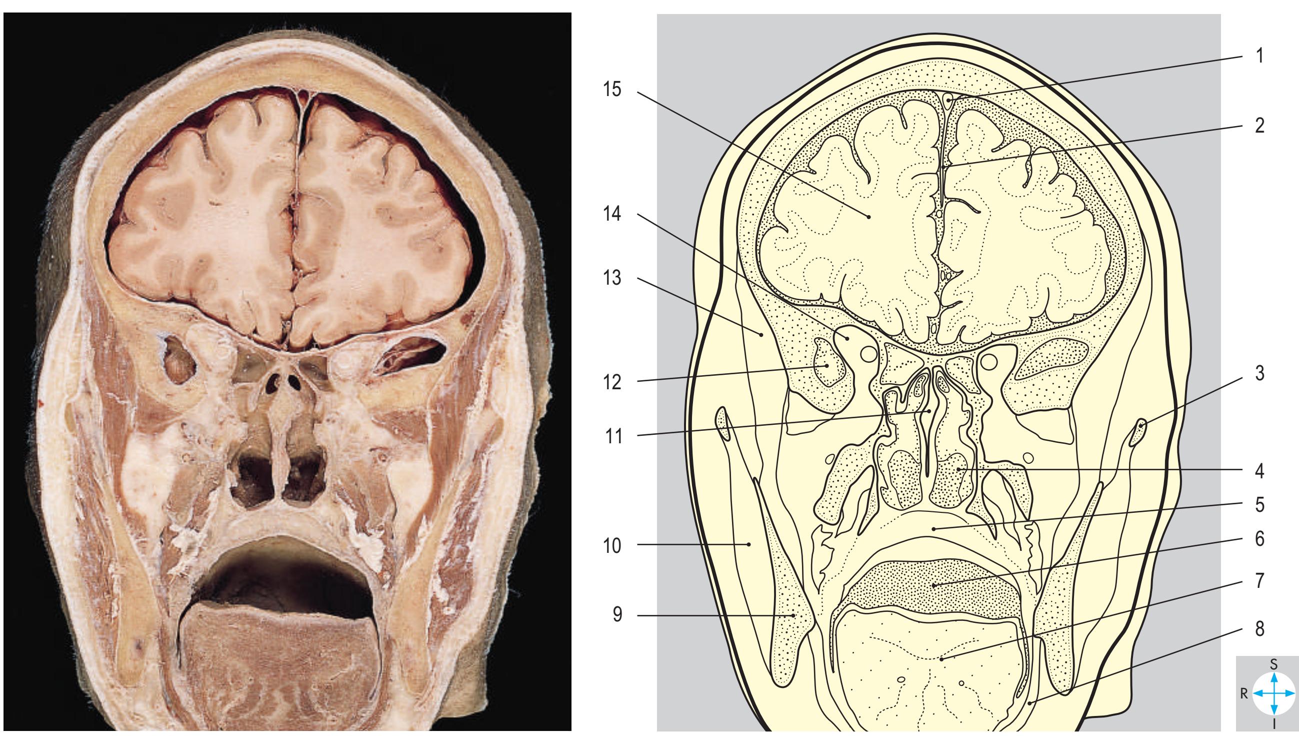


Fig. 7.99 Coronal section at the choanae showing the soft palate. Anterior aspect.

Answers:

Fig. 7.98 1 = frontal sinus; 2 = ethmoid air cells; 3 = nasal septum; 4 = maxillary sinus; 5 = inferior concha and meatus; 6 = oral cavity (distended); 7 = tongue; 8 = mandible; 9 = buccinator; 10 = hard palate; 11 = middle concha; 12 = eyeball; 13 = frontal lobe.

Fig. 7.99 1 = superior sagittal sinus; 2 = falx cerebri; 3 = zygomatic arch; 4 = nasopharynx; 5 = soft palate; 6 = oral cavity (distended); 7 = tongue; 8 = mylohyoid; 9 = mandible; 10 = masseter; 11 = nasal septum; 12 = temporal lobe; 13 = temporalis; 14 = apex of orbit; 15 = cerebral hemisphere.

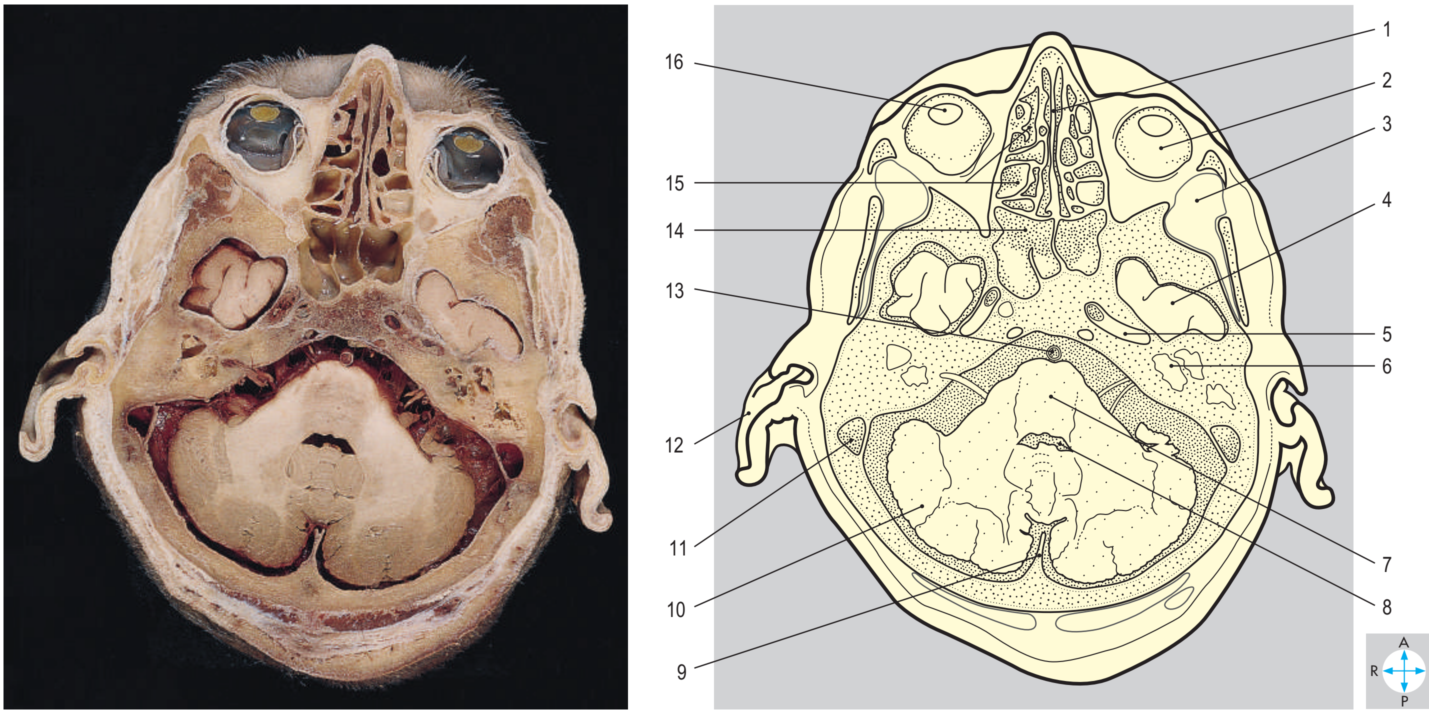


Fig. 7.100 Transverse section showing the orbits and posterior cranial fossa. Inferior aspect.

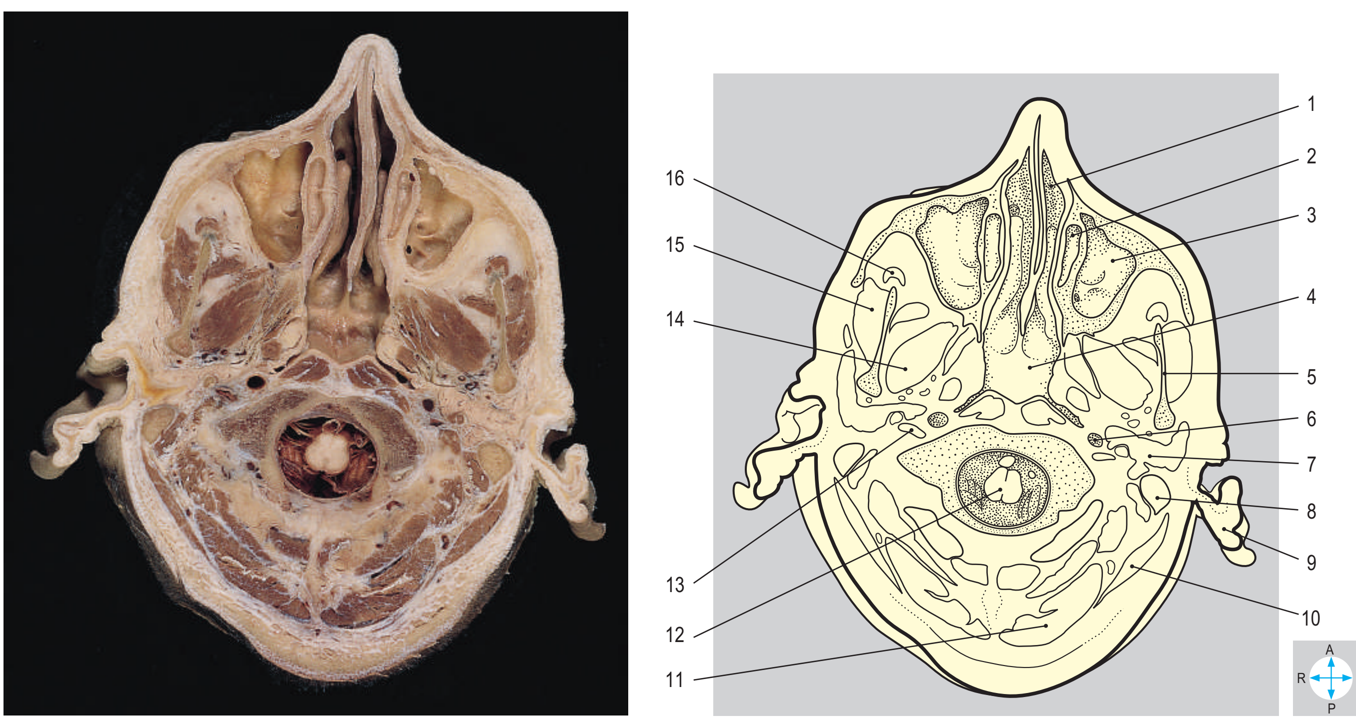


Fig. 7.101 Transverse section showing the maxillary sinuses and nasal cavities. Inferior aspect.

Answers:

Fig. 7.100 1 = nasal septum; 2 = eyeball; 3 = temporalis; 4 = temporal lobe; 5 = carotid canal; 6 = inner ear; 7 = pons; 8 = fourth ventricle; 9 = falx cerebelli; 10 = cerebellum; 11 = sigmoid sinus; 12 = pinna; 13 = basilar artery; 14 = sphenoid sinus; 15 = ethmoid air cells; 16 = lens.

Fig. 7.101 1 = nasal cavity; 2 = ethmoid air cells; 3 = maxillary sinus; 4 = nasopharynx; 5 = mandible; 6 = internal carotid artery; 7 = parotid gland; 8 = mastoid process; 9 = pinna; 10 = sternocleidomastoid; 11 = trapezius; 12 = cervical spinal cord; 13 = internal jugular vein; 14 = lateral pterygoid; 15 = masseter; 16 = temporalis.

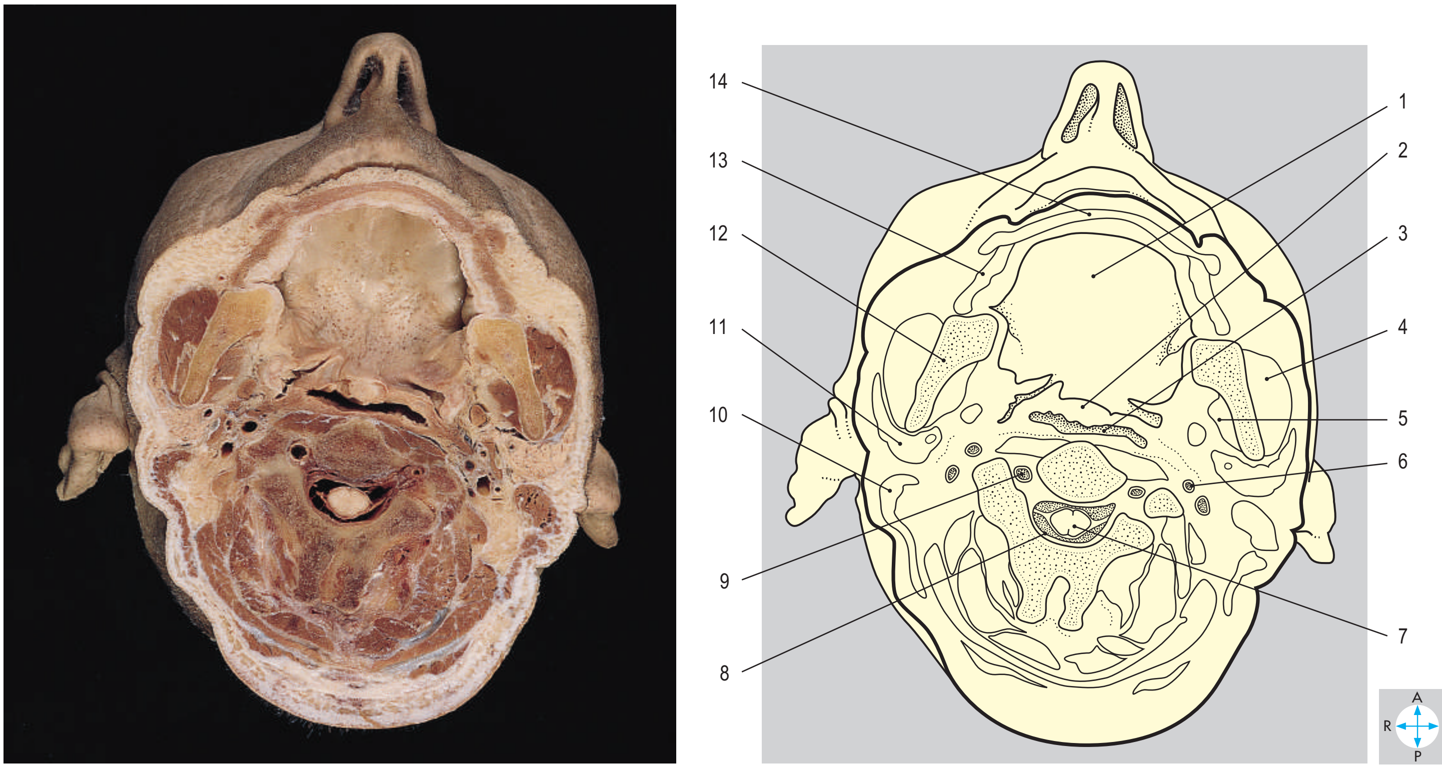


Fig. 7.102 Transverse section at the level of the second cervical vertebra. Inferior aspect.

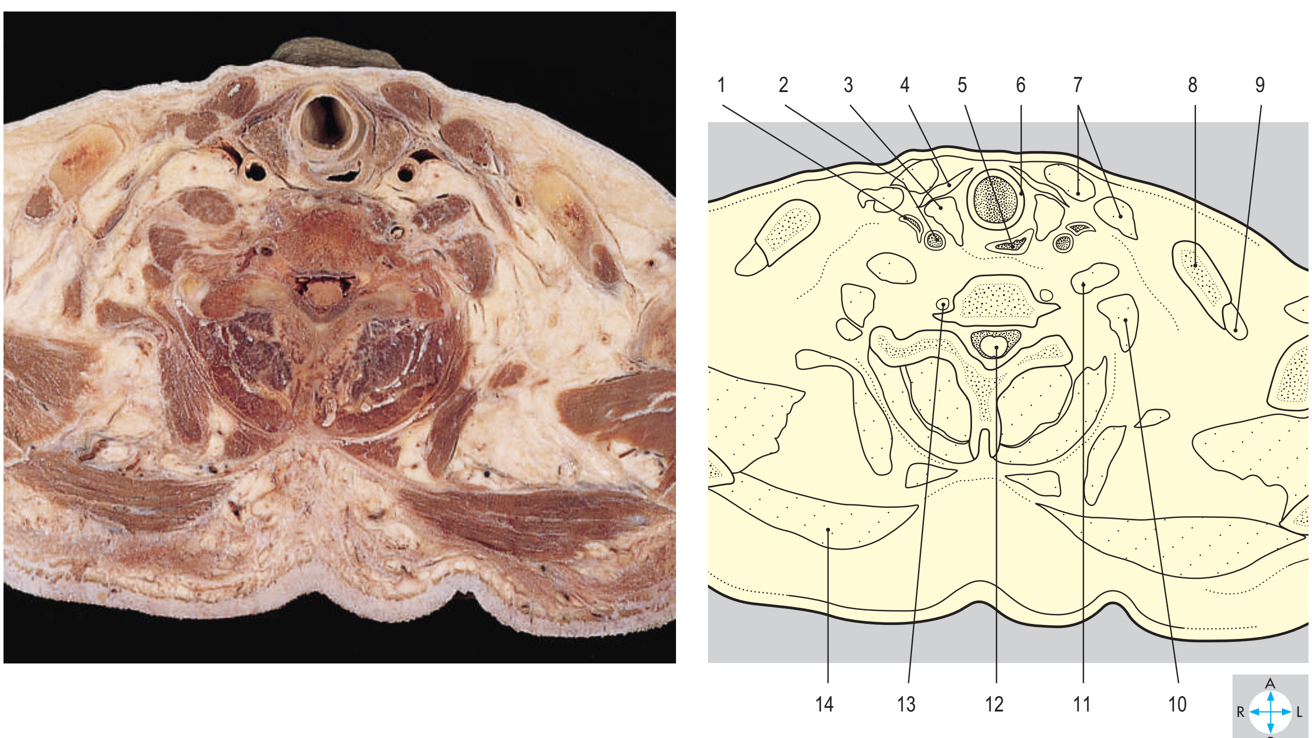


Fig. 7.103 Transverse section at the level of the sixth cervical vertebra. Inferior aspect. (Compare Fig. 7.95.)

Answers:

Fig. 7.102 1 = hard palate; 2 = soft palate; 3 = oropharynx; 4 = masseter; 5 = medial pterygoid; 6 = internal carotid artery; 7 = cervical spinal cord; 8 = dura mater; 9 = vertebral artery; 10 = sternocleidomastoid; 11 = parotid gland; 12 = mandible; 13 = buccinator; 14 = orbicularis oris in lower lip.

Fig. 7.103 1 = internal jugular vein; 2 = common carotid artery; 3 = thyroid gland; 4 = strap muscle; 5 = laryngopharynx; 6 = cricoid cartilage; 7 = sternocleidomastoid; 8 = clavicle; 9 = subclavius; 10 = scalenus medius; 11 = scalenus anterior; 12 = spinal cord; 13 = vertebral artery; 14 = trapezius.

Chapter 8

BACK

Introduction

The back consists of the vertebrae, the intervertebral joints and ligaments, and the muscles that clothe their posterior and lateral aspects (Fig. 8.1). The vertebral column encloses the spinal cord and its meninges.

The vertebral column comprises vertebrae, which are classified regionally as: cervical (7); thoracic (12); lumbar (5); sacral (5 vertebrae fused to form the sacrum); and coccygeal (3–5) (Fig. 8.5). Typically, a vertebra consists of a body, two pedicles, two laminae, two transverse processes and a single spinous process (Fig. 8.6). The body and vertebral arch, formed by the pedicles and laminae, surround the vertebral canal which encloses the meninges and spinal cord (Fig. 8.8). Pairs of superior and inferior articular processes form synovial joints with corresponding processes on adjacent vertebrae. The vertebral bodies are united by fibrocartilaginous discs (Fig. 8.5) and anterior and posterior longitudinal ligaments (p. 404). Each vertebra usually possesses features characteristic of its region.

The vertebral column is curved anteroposteriorly. In the adult, the thoracic and sacral/coccygeal vertebrae form curves that are concave anteriorly (primary or kyphotic curves), whereas in the cervical and lumbar regions the curves are concave posteriorly (secondary or lordotic curves) (Fig. 8.5). Usually, a healthy vertebral column has no lateral curves. Scoliosis, which is an abnormal lateral curve of the column that often includes some rotation, may be associated with abnormal development of a vertebra, vertebral fracture or abnormal muscle activity.

The movements between adjacent vertebrae are relatively limited, although summation enables the vertebral column as a whole to achieve a wide range of motion (Figs 8.2–8.4). Both flexion and extension occur throughout the length of the vertebral column, particularly in the cervical region. Lateral flexion is greatest in the cervical and lumbar regions and rotation occurs mainly in the upper thoracic region.

The muscles of the back (Fig. 8.7) may be classified into superficial, intermediate and deep groups. The superficial muscles (trapezius, latissimus dorsi, levator scapulae, rhomboid major and minor) act mainly on the shoulder girdle (pp 100, 102).

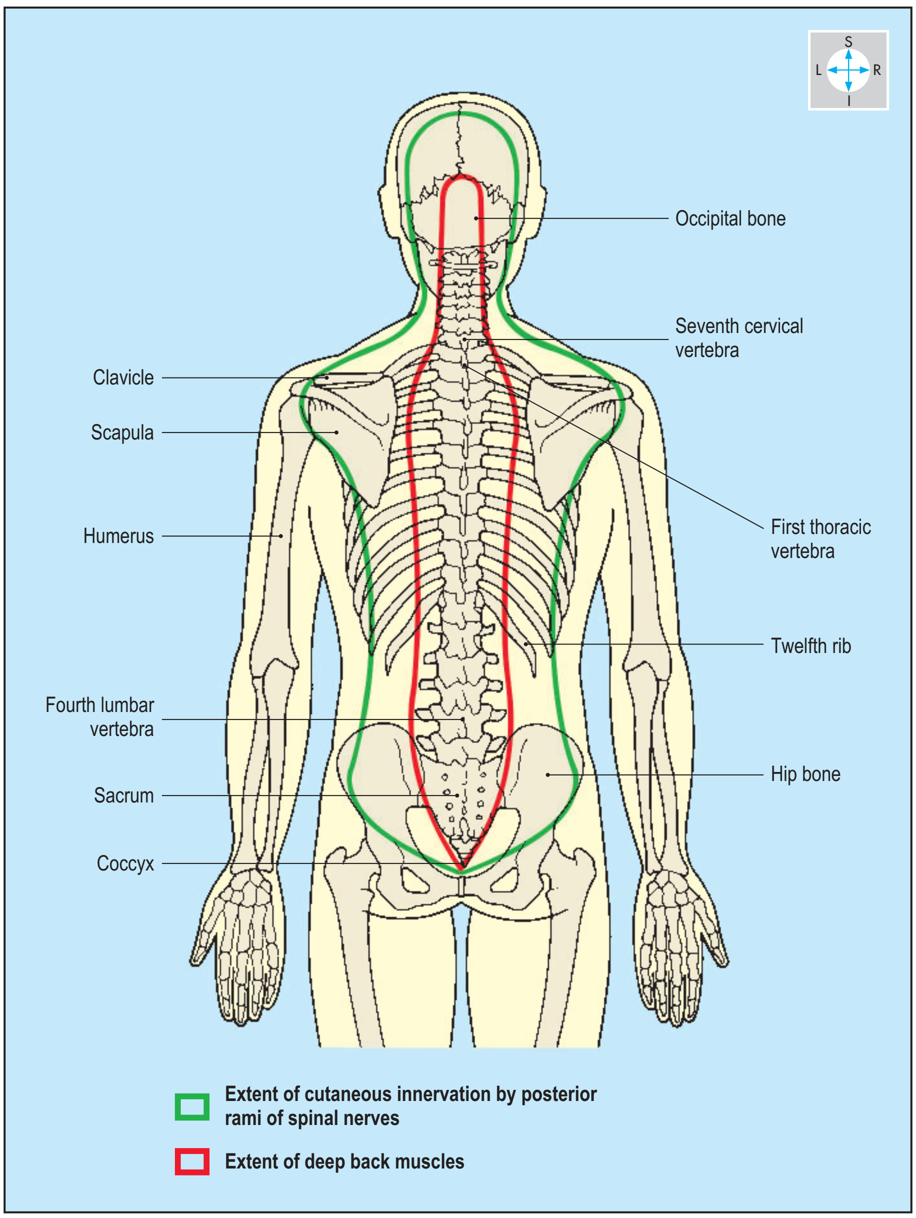


Fig. 8.1 Posterior aspect of the back.

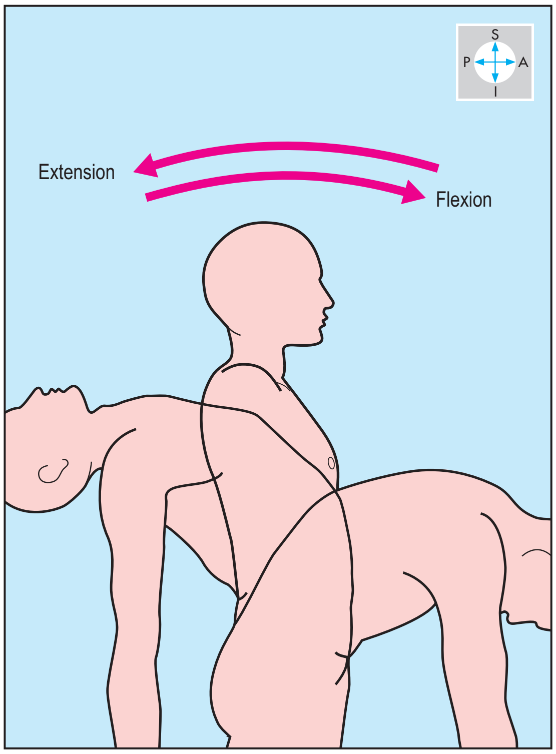


Fig. 8.2 Flexion and extension of the vertebral column from the anatomical position.

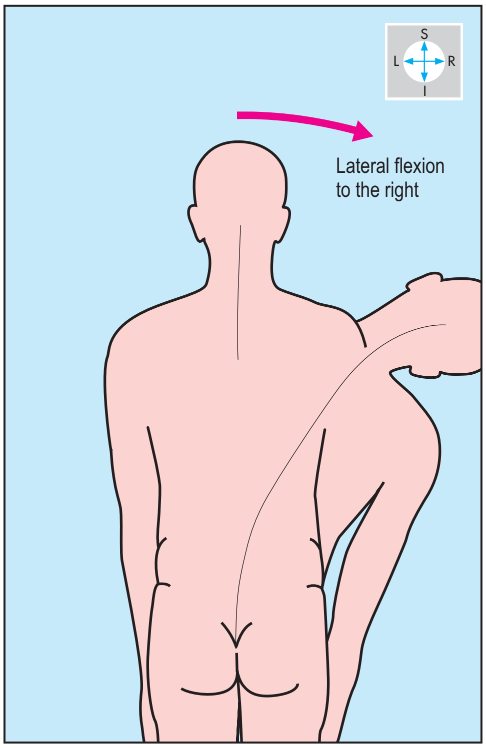


Fig. 8.3 Lateral flexion of the vertebral column to the right from the anatomical position.

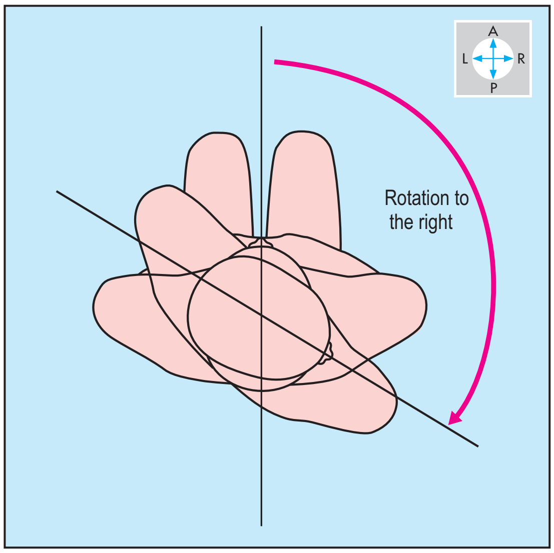


Fig. 8.4 View from above of a seated person showing rotation of the vertebral column to the right. The head rotates with respect to the shoulders, and the shoulders rotate with respect to the pelvis.

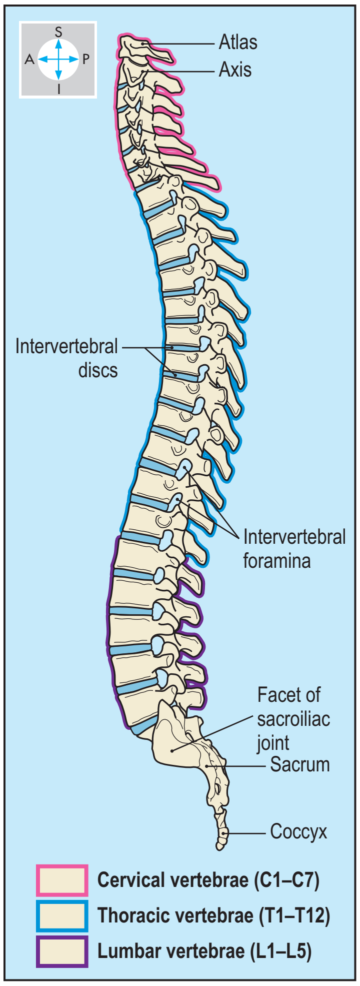


Fig. 8.5 Lateral view of the vertebral column.

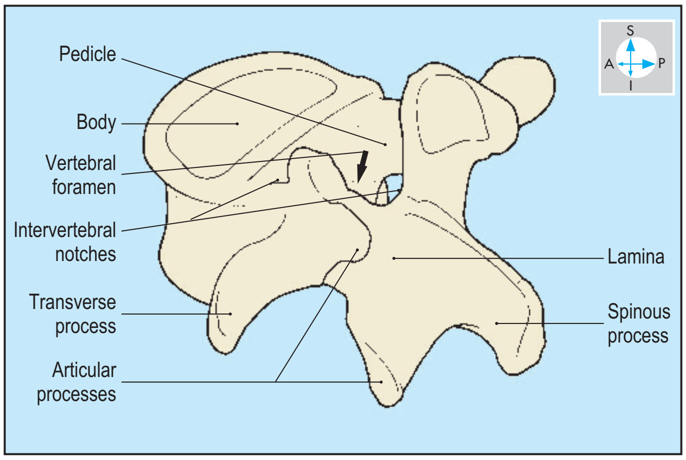


Fig. 8.6 Oblique view of a lumbar vertebra to show its processes, vertebral foramen and intervertebral notches.

The intermediate group (the two serratus posterior muscles) are respiratory.

The deep muscles (p. 406), including splenius, erector spinae and transversospinalis, interconnect the base of the skull, the sacrum and the intervening vertebrae. Erector spinae is subdivided into named components, including iliocostalis, longissimus and spinalis, which usually span several vertebrae. Deep to erector spinae is the transversospinalis, whose components usually run obliquely, attaching adjacent vertebrae (Fig. 8.7). Transversospinalis comprises semispinalis, multifidus and rotatores. The deep muscles are all supplied by the posterior rami of the spinal nerves (Fig. 8.8). Cutaneous branches of the posterior rami penetrate muscles to reach the skin (Figs 8.1 & 8.9).

Within the vertebral canal, three meningeal layers, the dura mater, the arachnoid mater and the pia mater, invest the spinal cord (Fig. 8.34). The dura mater is the outer layer and attaches to the foramen magnum where it is continuous with the cranial dura. Inferiorly, the dura attaches to the second sacral vertebra. The arachnoid mater is applied to the inner aspect of the dura. The pia is a vascular layer which closely invests the spinal cord and spinal nerve roots. Between the arachnoid and the pia is the subarachnoid space containing cerebrospinal fluid.

The spinal cord, within its meningeal coverings, is continuous above with the medulla oblongata. In the adult, it extends inferiorly to the level of the second lumbar vertebra. The cord gives rise to paired spinal nerves: 8 cervical; 12 thoracic; 5 lumbar; 5 sacral; and 3 coccygeal. The leash of lumbar, sacral and coccygeal nerve roots descends beyond the lower end of the cord and is known as the cauda equina (Fig. 8.35). The spinal nerves emerge from the vertebral canal through the intervertebral foramina (Fig. 8.10), and divide into posterior and anterior rami (Fig. 8.8; Table 8.1). The posterior rami supply the deep muscles of the back and the overlying skin (Figs 8.1 & 1.36). Vertebrae, weakened by bone disease or growth of metastatic tumours, may fracture causing pain and injury to the nerve roots or to the spinal cord itself.

The vertebral arch develops from right and left parts, which normally fuse across the midline posteriorly. Failure of fusion, most commonly in the lumbar region, results in spina bifida. Often the condition affects only the bones (spina bifida occulta) but more severe forms may leave the spinal meninges exposed or involve maldevelopment of the spinal cord, associated with weakness or paralysis of muscles in the lower limbs.

The vertebral column receives arterial blood from anastomosing branches of many arteries including vertebral, posterior intercostal, lumbar and lateral sacral arteries. Venous blood drains by corresponding veins. The venous plexus in the extradural space (the internal vertebral plexus) and that within the back muscles (the external venous vertebral plexus) communicate via veins in the intervertebral foramina. The plexuses and the veins into which they drain possess no valves. These channels provide routes for blood to return to the heart, bypassing blockages of the inferior vena cava. The plexuses also allow diseases of pelvic organs, for example tumours of the prostate gland, to spread to the vertebrae.

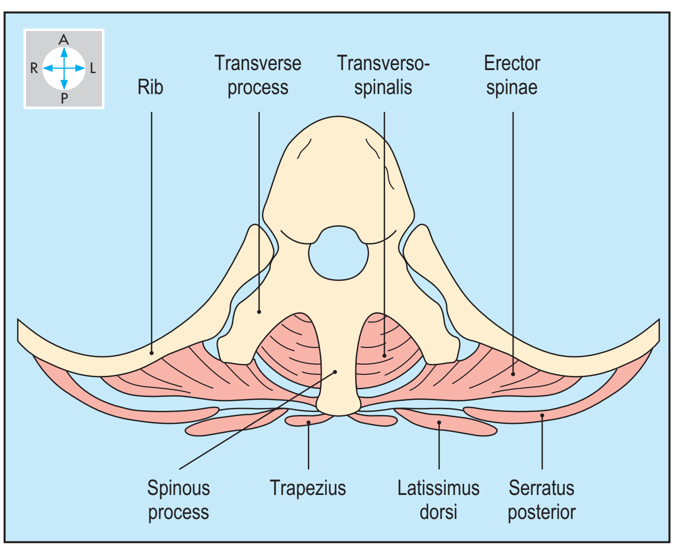


Fig. 8.7 A thoracic vertebra with the main groups of back muscles. Inferior aspect.

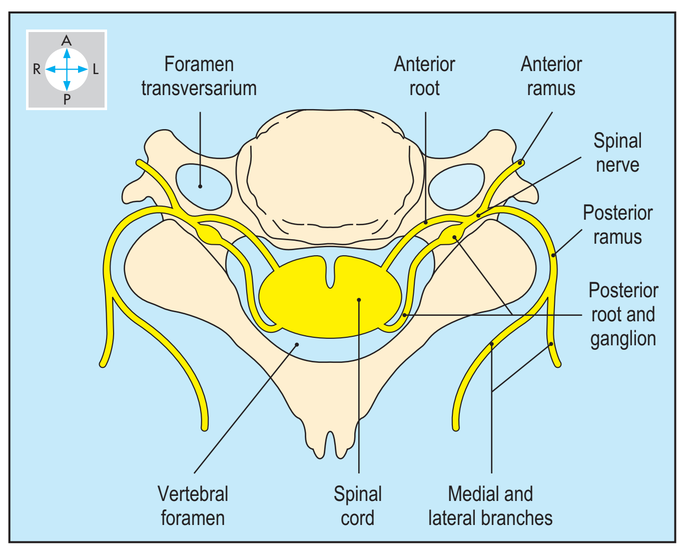


Fig. 8.8 A cervical vertebra with the spinal cord and a pair of spinal nerves. Inferior aspect.

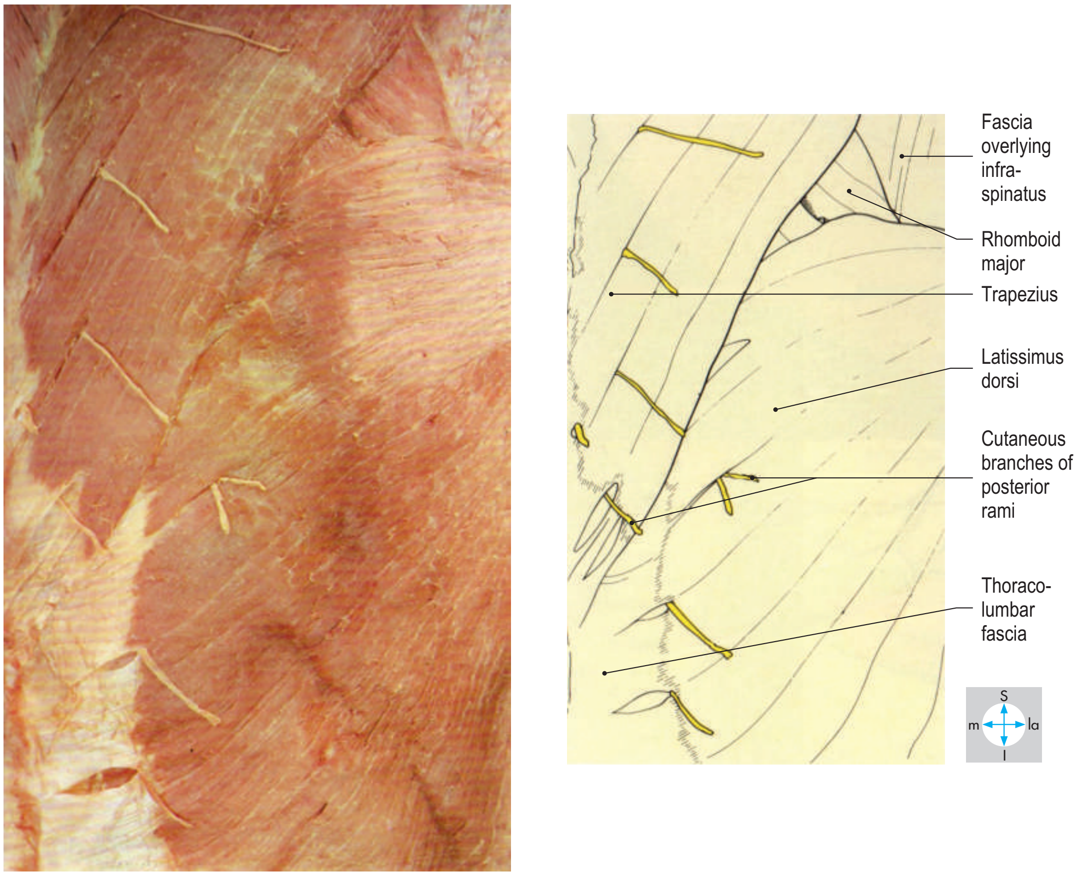


Fig. 8.9 Cutaneous branches of the posterior rami supply skin on the dorsum of the trunk. The nerves shown pierce trapezius and latissimus dorsi.

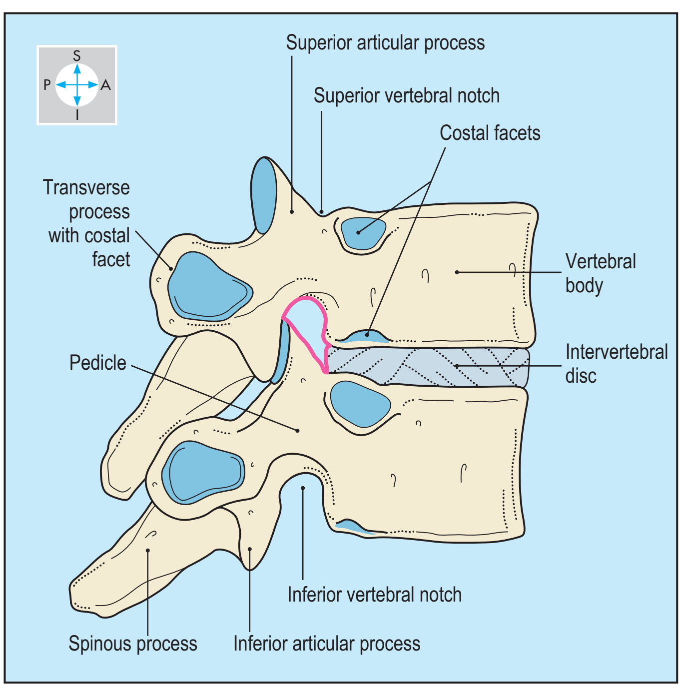


Fig. 8.10 Intervertebral foramen (pink) between two typical thoracic vertebrae. The facet joints between the superior and inferior articular processes of adjacent vertebrae lie posterior to the segmental nerve in the foramen.

Table 8.1 Summary of the main areas of distribution of the anterior rami of spinal nerves

Spinal nerves	Principal areas of distribution
Cervical 1–4	Via the cervical plexus (p. 326) to the neck, and via the phrenic nerves (p. 60) to the diaphragm.
Cervical 5–8 and thoracic 1	Via the brachial plexus (p. 80) to the upper limbs.
Thoracic 1–11	Via the intercostal nerves (p. 35) to the thoracic and abdominal walls.
Thoracic 12	Via the subcostal nerves (p. 201) to the lower abdominal wall.
Lumbar 1	Via ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves (p. 145) to the lower abdominal wall.
Lumbar 1–4	Via the lumbar plexus (p. 203) to the lower limbs.
Lumbar 4 and 5	Via the lumbosacral trunk (p. 203) to the sacral plexus.
Sacral 1–4	Via the sacral plexus (p. 237) to the pelvis and lower limbs.
Sacral 5 and coccygeal 1	Via the coccygeal plexus (p. 237) to skin over the coccyx.

Vertebrae and Joints

Cervical vertebrae

The seven cervical vertebrae are relatively small and enclose a wide vertebral canal with adequate space for the cervical part of the spinal cord. Each transverse process is perforated by a foramen transversarium transmitting the vertebral vessels. The spinous processes all give attachment to a strong midline elastic ligament, the ligamentum nuchae.

Four of the cervical vertebrae (numbers 3–6) have a typical appearance whereas the first, second and seventh are modified. The typical vertebrae (Fig. 8.11) possess short bifid spines and their transverse processes have anterior and posterior tubercles. Often the upper and lower surfaces of the vertebral bodies are not flat but curve upwards at their lateral edges. The facets on the superior articular processes face obliquely backwards and upwards and therefore rotation and lateral flexion always occur together.

The first cervical vertebra, the atlas (Fig. 8.12), has anterior and posterior arches, relatively large transverse processes and two lateral masses. The atlas has no body and its spinous process is represented by a tubercle. On the superior surface of each lateral mass is a concave facet, which articulates with the convex occipital condyle of the skull. The atlanto-occipital joints permit flexion and extension (nodding movements).

The second cervical vertebra, the axis (Fig. 8.13), possesses some of the features of a typical cervical vertebra but it has a unique vertical projection, the dens (odontoid process). This projects superiorly from the upper surface of its body and represents the body of the atlas. The dens articulates by a synovial joint with a facet on the posterior surface of the anterior arch of the atlas, where it is retained by the alar, apical and transverse ligaments (Figs 8.15 & 8.16). The planes of the lateral atlantoaxial joints and the pivot joint of the dens (Fig. 8.14) allow rotation of the head as in looking from side to side.

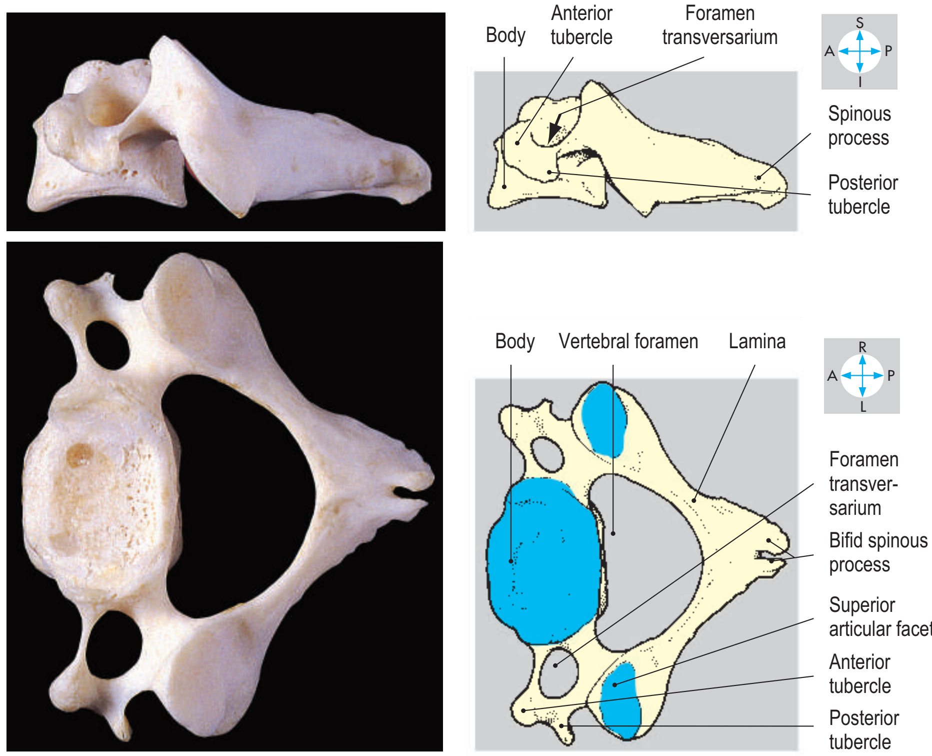


Fig. 8.11 Lateral and superior views of a typical (fourth) cervical vertebra.

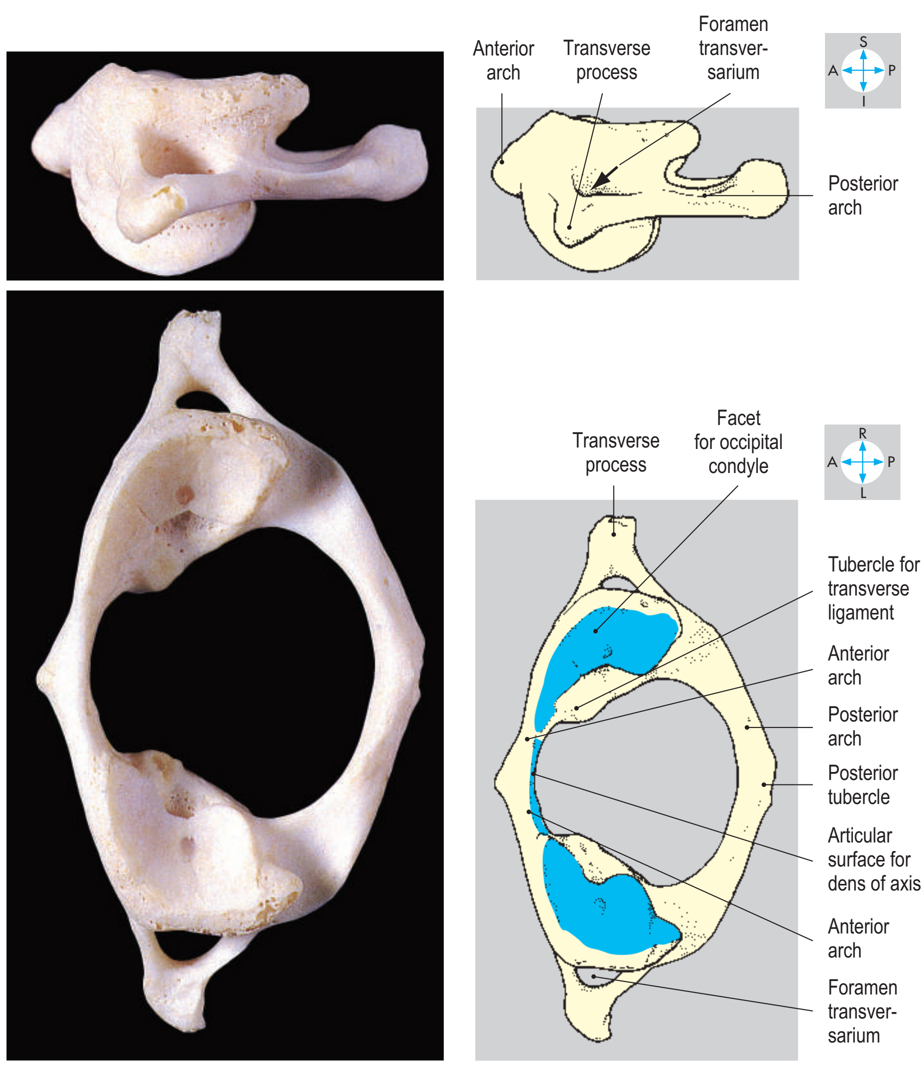


Fig. 8.12 Lateral and superior views of the first cervical vertebra, the atlas.

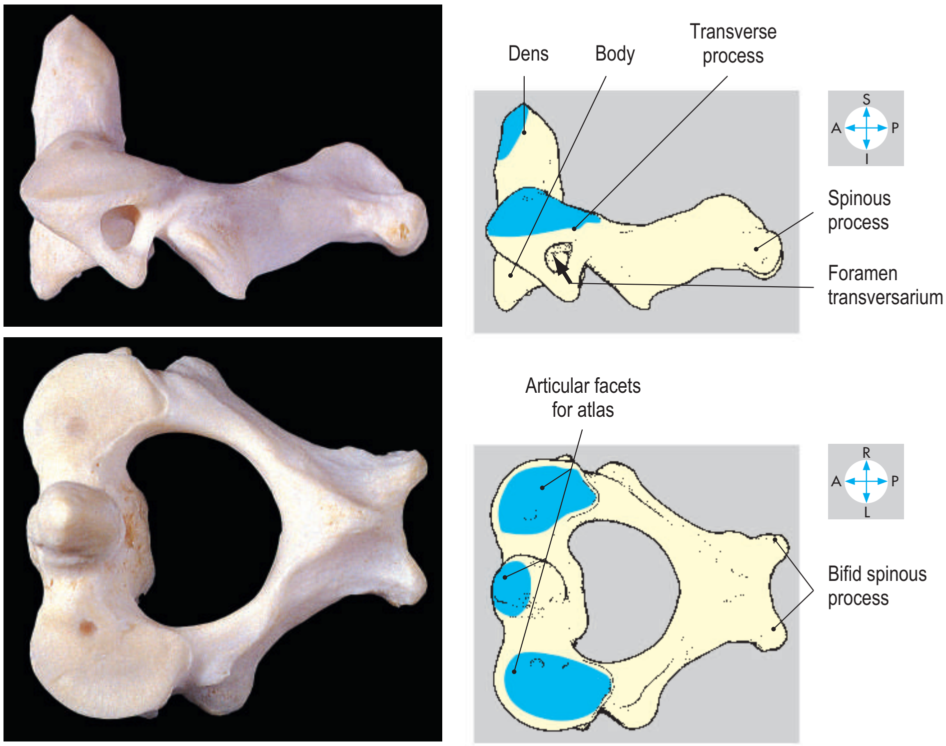


Fig. 8.13 Lateral and superior views of the second cervical vertebra, the axis.

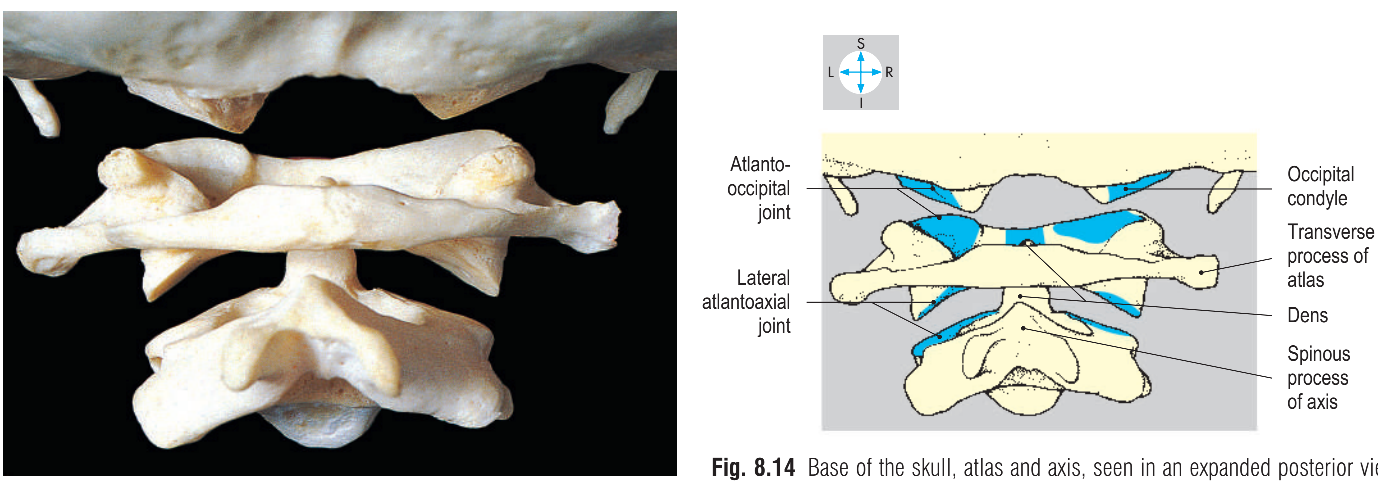


Fig. 8.14 Base of the skull, atlas and axis, seen in an expanded posterior view.

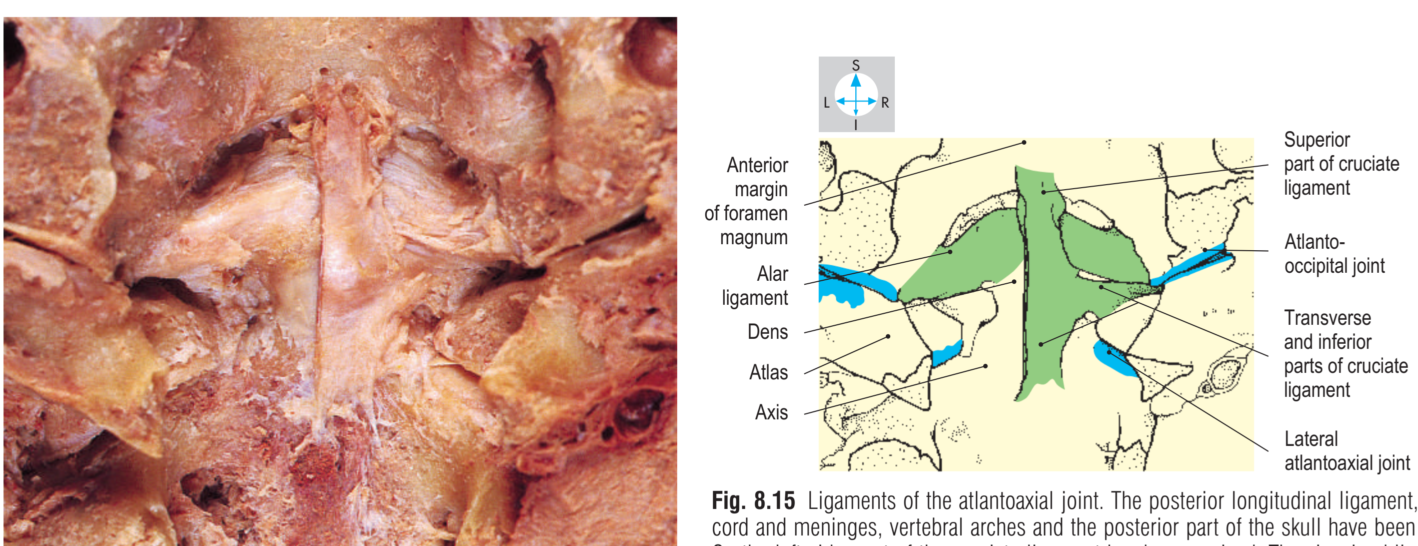


Fig. 8.15 Ligaments of the atlantoaxial joint. The posterior longitudinal ligament, spinal cord and meninges, vertebral arches and the posterior part of the skull have been removed. On the left side, part of the cruciate ligament has been excised. The view is oblique.

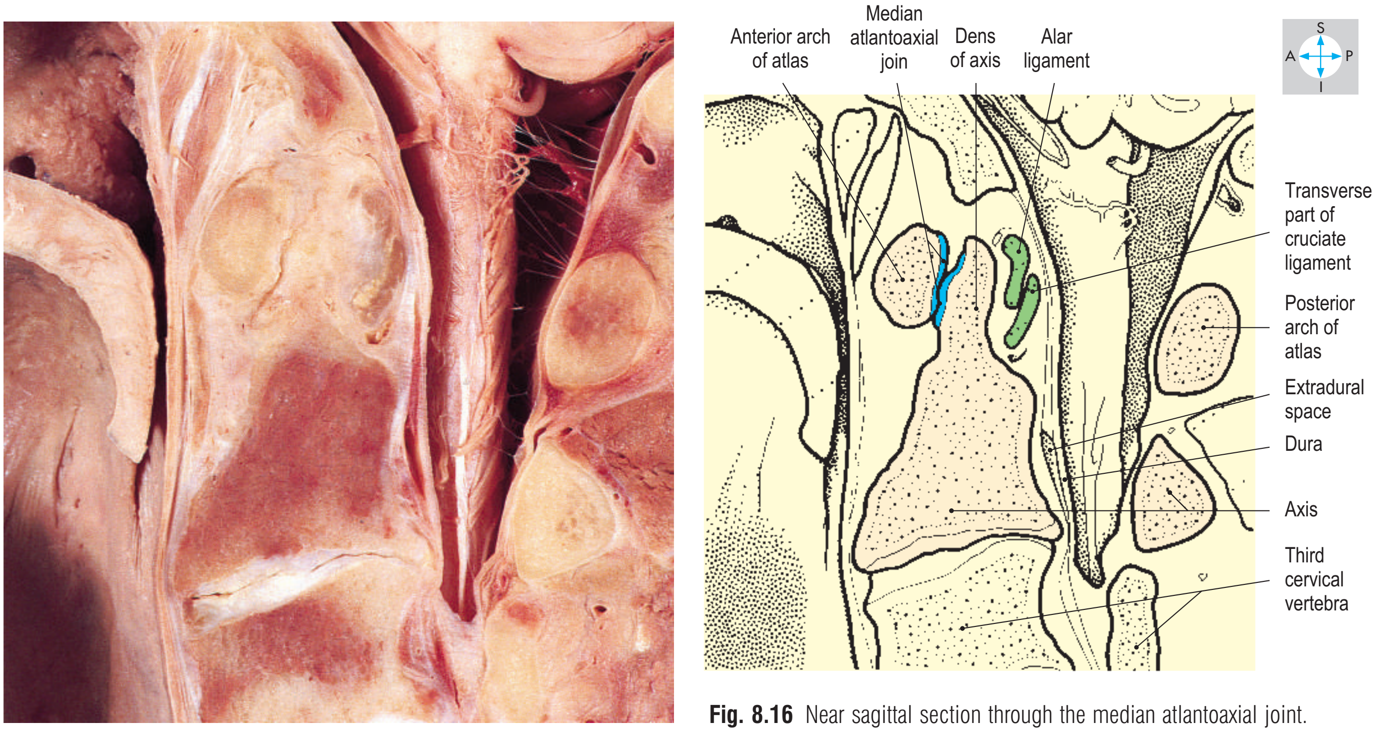


Fig. 8.16 Near sagittal section through the median atlantoaxial joint.

The seventh cervical vertebra (Fig. 8.17) possesses a long, non-bifid spine, which provides the inferior attachment for the ligamentum nuchae. The spinous process is easily palpable and hence, the vertebra is called the vertebra prominens. The foramina transversaria of this vertebra are traversed by the vertebral veins but not by the arteries. The costal element of the seventh vertebra, represented by the anterior tubercle and the bar of bone in front of the transverse foramen, may form a cervical rib. The subclavian artery and the first thoracic nerve root may be stretched and distorted as they pass over (superior to) a cervical rib, leading to arterial damage and pain referred along the medial side of the upper limb.

The joints of the whole cervical column allow movements of extension, rotation and lateral flexion. These movements are brought about by the prevertebral and postvertebral muscles (Fig. 8.18), assisted by sternocleidomastoid and trapezius. The prevertebral muscles comprise the scalene group (p. 331) and the longus colli group. The latter passes from the base of the skull down the anterior surface of the vertebral column into the thorax. The prevertebral muscles are much smaller than the postvertebral group which has an antigravity action in keeping the head upright.

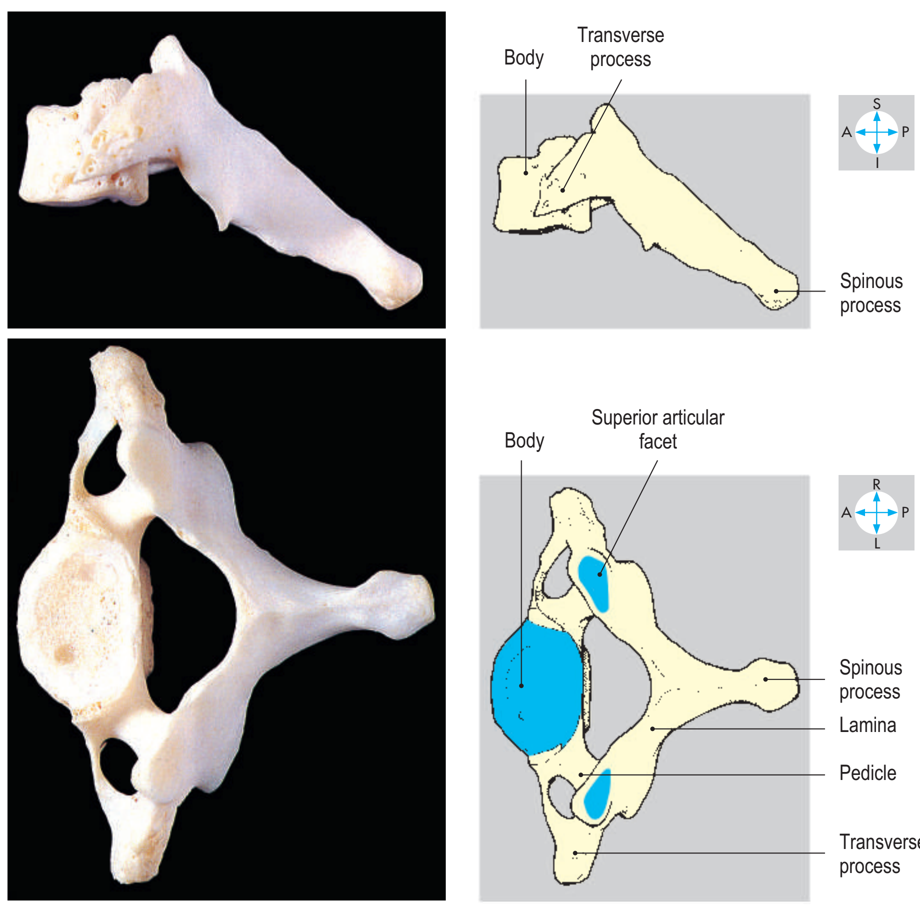
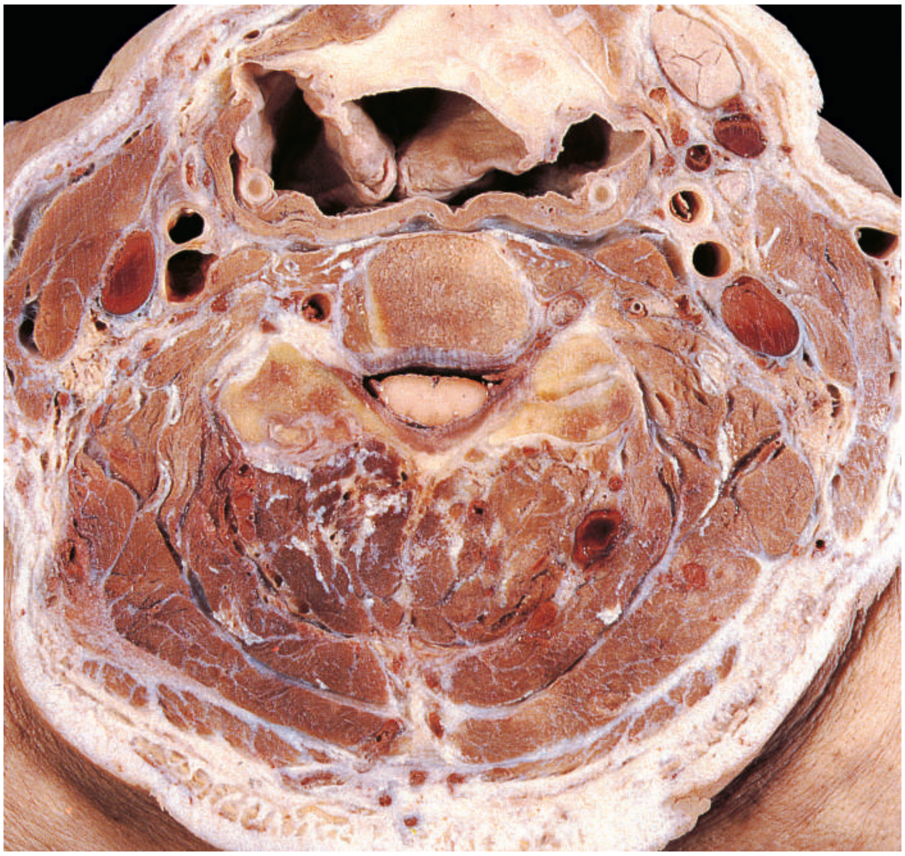


Fig. 8.17 Lateral and superior views of the seventh cervical vertebra, the vertebra prominens.

Arthritis involving joints of the cervical spine is often associated with the formation of bony outgrowths (osteophytes), which may compress the nerve roots that contribute to the brachial plexus (p. 80). Injuries to the cervical column, particularly involving fracture or dislocation of vertebrae, may result in spinal cord injury leading to quadriplegia or death. The atlantoaxial joint is particularly liable to disruption in hyperextension injuries.



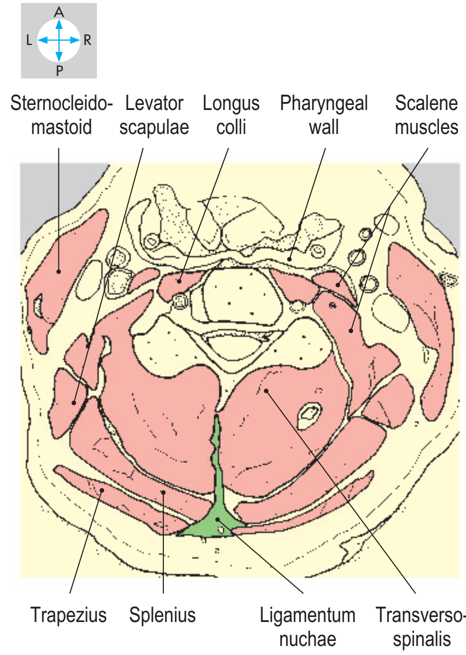
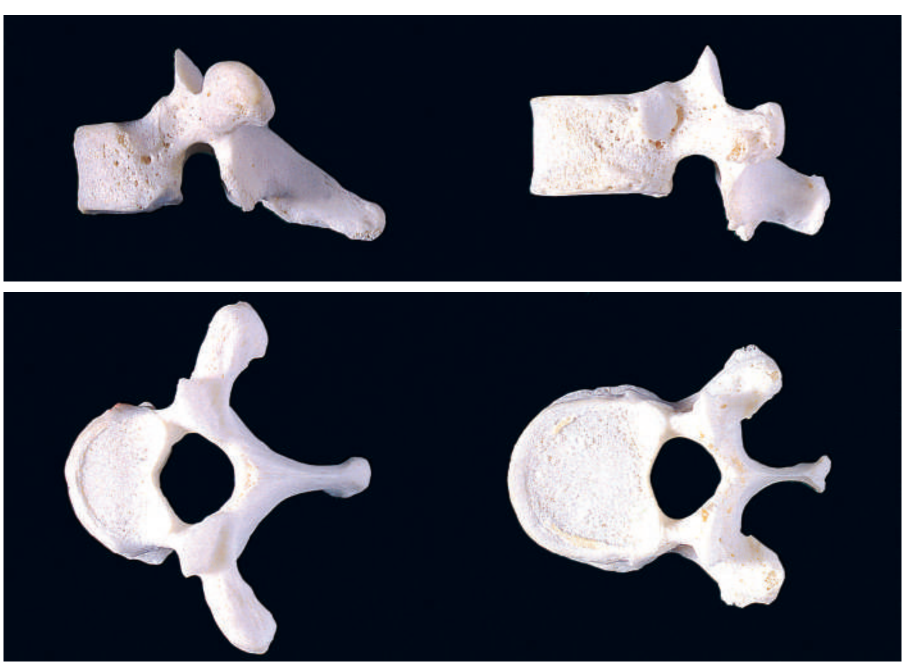


Fig. 8.18 Transverse section at the level of the fourth cervical vertebra, showing the muscles of the neck. Superior aspect. (Compare Fig. 7.94.)

Thoracic vertebrae

The bodies of the 12 thoracic vertebrae increase in size from above downwards. The bodies bear characteristic costal facets (Fig. 8.19), which form synovial joints with the heads of the ribs. Typically a vertebral body possesses one pair of facets (superior and inferior costal facets) on each side adjacent to the attachment of the pedicle. The upper facet receives the rib whose number corresponds to the vertebra, while the lower facet articulates with the rib below. However the tenth, eleventh and twelfth vertebrae possess facets on each side, which are for articulation with their own ribs. The vertebral canal is smaller than in any other region.

The transverse processes project laterally and backwards and typically each bears near its tip a facet for the tubercle of the corresponding rib. The spinous processes are long and slope steeply downwards. The plane of the joints between the facets on the articular processes is almost vertical and permits rotation. However, all movements in the thoracic region are restricted by the rib cage.



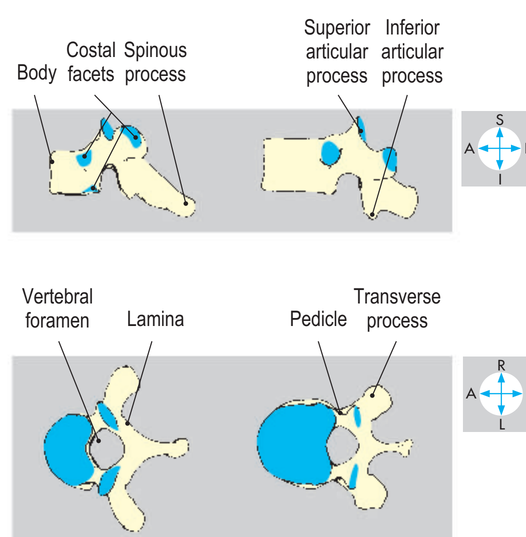


Fig. 8.19 Lateral and superior views of the second and tenth thoracic vertebrae.

Lumbar vertebrae

The upper four lumbar vertebrae are very similar. The vertebral foramina are moderate in size (Fig. 8.20) but the bodies are comparatively large, with concave sides. The transverse processes taper and are directed laterally and slightly backwards. The spinous processes are deep and rectangular. Facets on the superior articular processes face medially and 'grasp' the laterally directed inferior facets of the vertebra above, permitting wide ranges of flexion, extension and lateral flexion but severely restricting rotation.

The fifth lumbar vertebra has shorter transverse processes and a less angular spinous process. Its inferior articular facets are widely separated and face anteriorly. They articulate with the sacrum (Fig. 8.21) and prevent forward displacement of the vertebra. A fracture or developmental defect between the superior and inferior articular processes of the fifth lumbar vertebra will allow its body to slip anteriorly, a condition called spondylolisthesis, which may stretch or compress the cauda equina (p. 411). One or both transverse processes may be fused with the upper part of the sacrum (sacralization of the fifth lumbar vertebra), which can cause difficulty in the interpretation of radiographs.

Sacral and coccygeal vertebrae

The sacrum is a triangular bone formed by the fusion of five vertebrae (Figs 8.21 & 8.22). The upper surface of the sacrum resembles that of a lumbar vertebra and carries the lumbosacral disc. Below the apex of the sacrum lies the coccyx (Fig. 8.23), which may be a small single bone or up to four rudimentary vertebrae. The coccyx and the sacrum usually articulate via a small intervertebral disc, although they may be fused. The sacrum slopes backwards and downwards and is concave anteriorly. The bone in the female has relatively small joint surfaces and larger alae, while in the male the larger sacral promontory often creates a heart-shaped pelvic inlet (p. 214). The fused pedicles and laminae enclose the sacral canal, triangular in cross-section, which opens posteroinferiorly at the V-shaped sacral hiatus. The canal contains the lower part of the cauda equina, comprising the roots of the sacral and coccygeal nerves. The anterior rami of the upper four sacral nerves pass into the pelvis via the anterior sacral foramina and contribute to the sacral plexus. The posterior rami traverse the posterior sacral foramina (Fig. 8.22). Lateral to the foramina are the lateral masses, each of which bears an auricular surface for articulation with

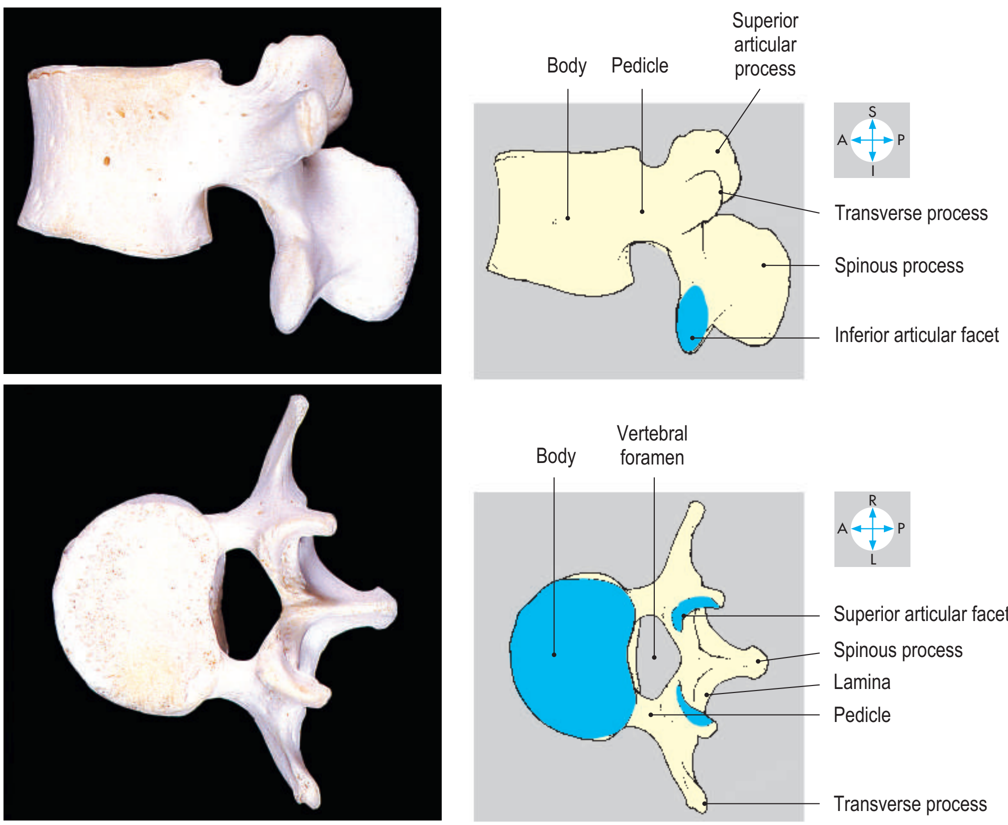


Fig. 8.20 Lateral and superior views of a typical (third) lumbar vertebra.

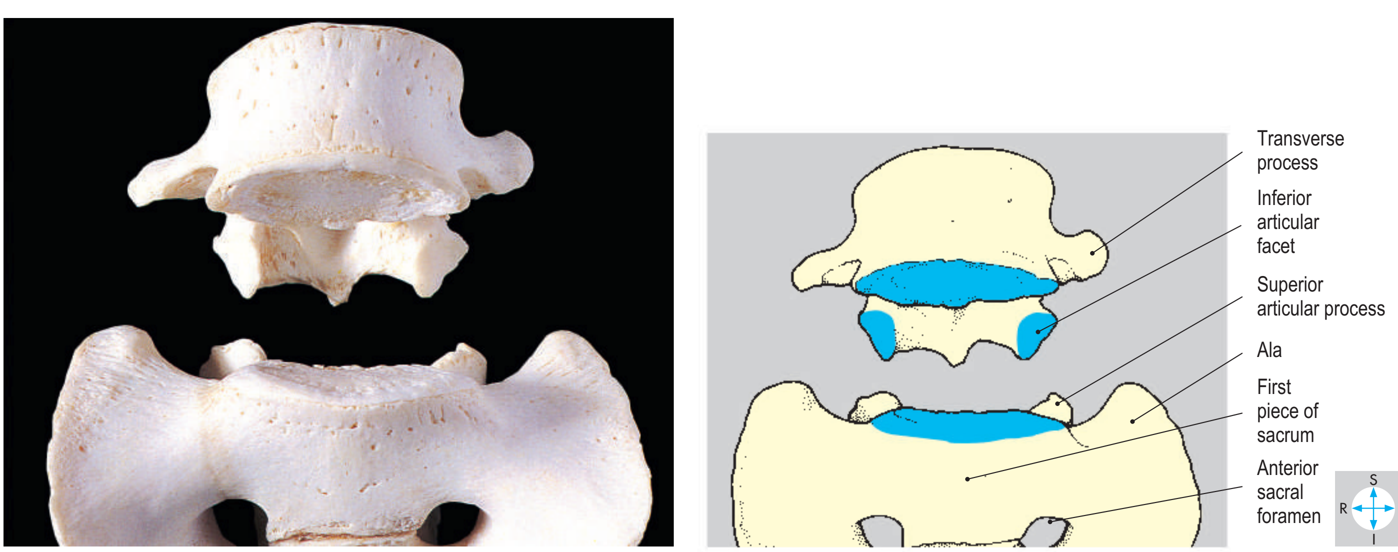


Fig. 8.21 Fifth lumbar vertebra and the upper part of the sacrum, seen in an expanded anterior view.

the ilium (Fig. 8.23). Anaesthetic may be injected through the sacral hiatus and the caudal canal into the epidural space to anaesthetize the cauda equina.

The sacroiliac joint is synovial but allows very little movement because of the irregularity of the articulating surfaces and the thick posterior interosseous ligament. Each joint is further supported by the anterior and posterior sacroiliac ligaments and the iliolumbar, sacrospinous and sacrotuberous ligaments. Body weight, acting downwards through the lumbosacral disc, tends to rotate the lower part of the sacrum backwards, a movement prevented by the sacrospinous and sacrotuberous ligaments (Fig. 8.25).

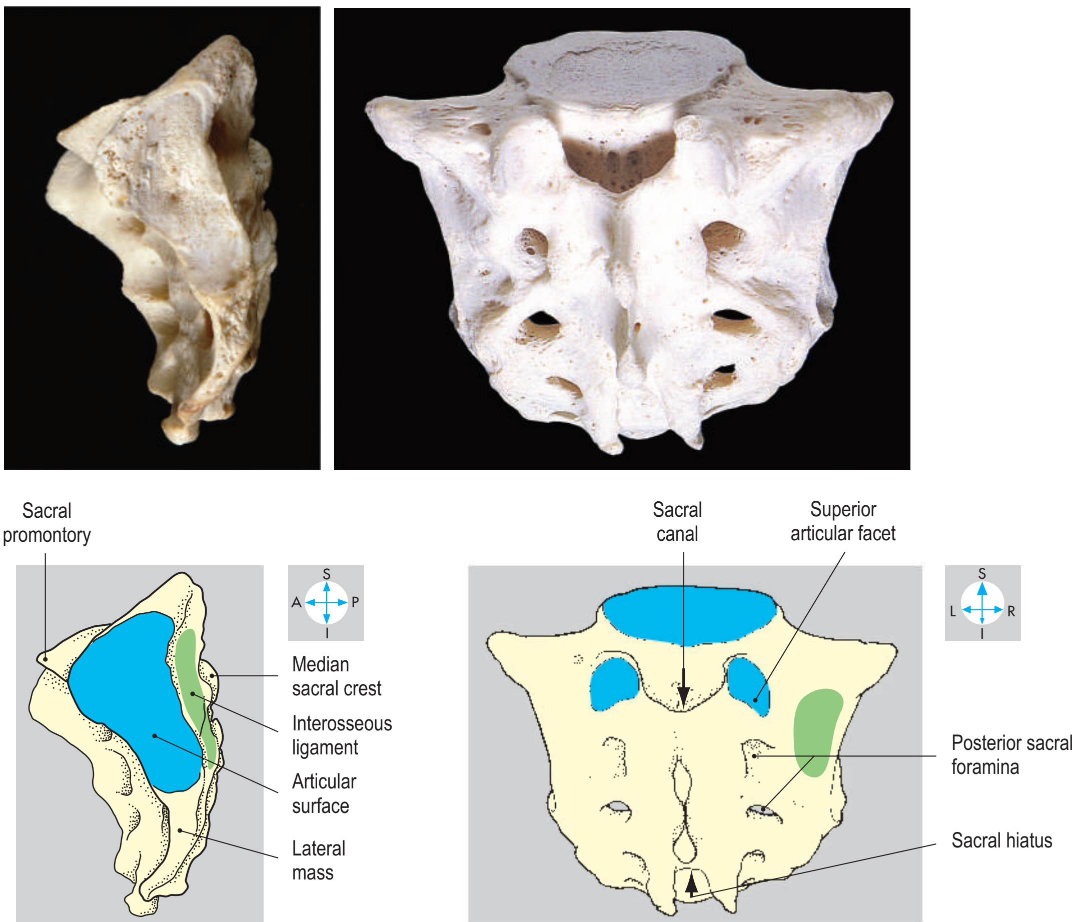


Fig. 8.22 Lateral and posterosuperior views of the sacrum.

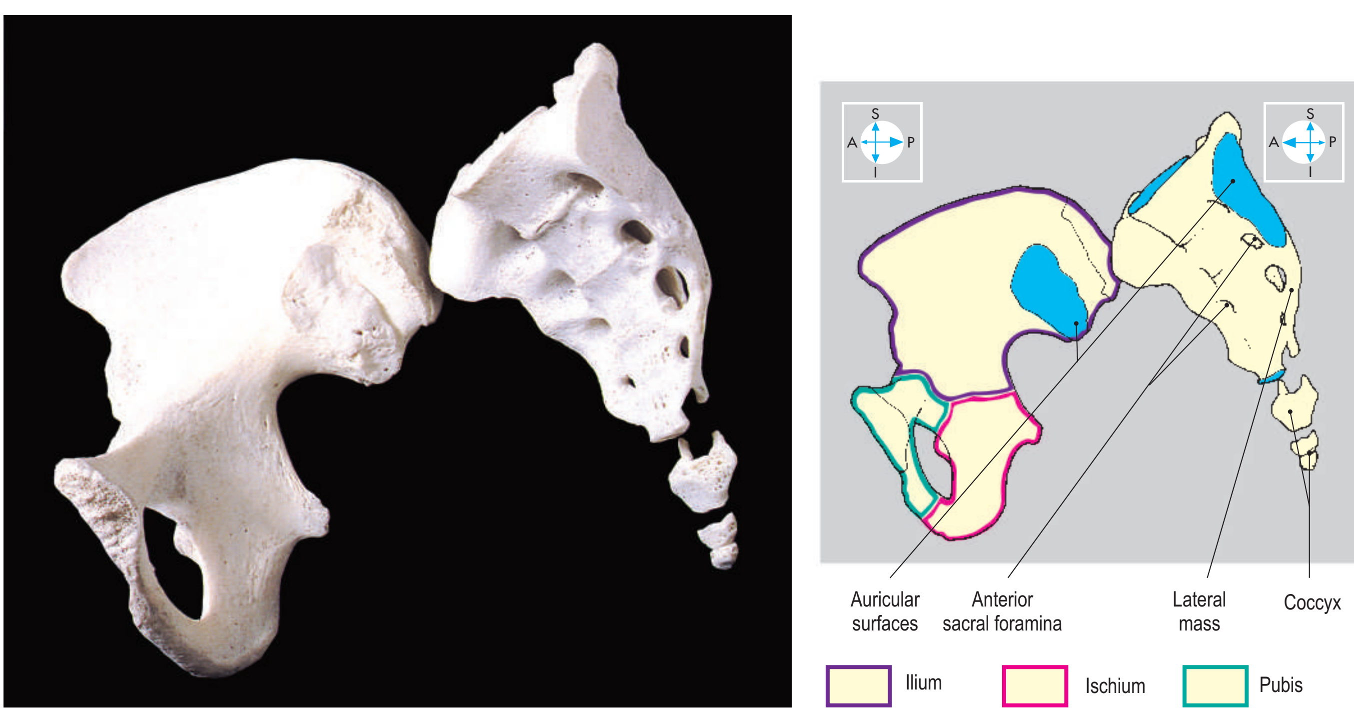


Fig. 8.23 Oblique view of the sacrum, coccyx and right hip bone.

Table 8.2 Features of typical vertebrae in the regions of the vertebral column

	Vertebral bodies	Transverse processes	Vertebral foramina	Articular processes	Spinous processes
Cervical vertebrae	Small	**Foramina transversaria present**	Triangular	Joints in coronal plane and oblique, allowing lateral flexion with rotation	**Bifid** Short
Thoracic vertebrae	Heart-shaped **Costal facets present**	**Costal facets present** No foramina transversaria Incline posterolaterally	Circular	Joints in vertical plane and oblique, allowing rotation	Long Sloping
Lumbar vertebrae	Massive Kidney-shaped	**No costal facets** Incline laterally and slightly posteriorly	Triangular	Joints vertical in sagittal plane, preventing rotation	Thick Rectangular
Sacral segments	**Fused**	**Fused**	Canal		Tubercles

In individual subjects, the features of particular vertebrae may vary.

The different features of vertebrae from the regions of the column are summarised in Table 8.2.

Facet joints

The plane synovial joints between the facets of adjacent superior and inferior articular processes are called zygapophysial or facet joints. The joints in the different regions of the vertebral column allow different movements, determined by the orientations of the articular processes.

Intervertebral discs

Intervertebral discs connect adjacent vertebral bodies (Fig. 8.24) and act as fibrocartilaginous joints along the whole length of the vertebral column. Like the vertebral bodies, the discs gradually increase in size from above downwards, the largest being the lumbosacral disc between the fifth lumbar vertebra and the sacrum (Fig. 8.25). The discs contribute about one-fifth of the length of the vertebral column. Each disc consists of a laminated anulus fibrosus surrounding a gelatinous nucleus pulposus (Fig. 8.28). The nucleus pulposus lies closer to the posterior surface of the disc and thus is more liable to posterior herniation when the disc is damaged. This herniation, often called a slipped disc, may occur near the midline and compress the spinal cord or cauda equina. Posterolateral herniation may compress nerves near the intervertebral foramen (p. 396) and cause muscle weakness and referred pain. Usually, the herniation affects nerve roots passing through the intervertebral foramen below the affected disc. In the cervical region, herniation most commonly occurs between vertebrae C6–C7, affecting nerve C7, and between vertebrae C7–T1, affecting nerve C8. Compression of nerve C7 may produce pain in the dermatome C7 (p. 74) and weakness of extension of the elbow and wrist joints. Compression of nerve C8 may produce pain in the dermatome C8 (p. 74) and weakness of finger movements. In the lumbar spine, herniation most commonly occurs between vertebrae L4–L5, affecting nerve L5, and between vertebrae L5–S1, affecting nerve S1. Compression of nerve L5 may produce pain in the L5 dermatome (p. 258) and weakness of ankle dorsiflexion and extension of the great toe. Compression of nerve S1 may produce pain in the S1 dermatome (p. 258) and weakness of plantar flexion. Pain referred from the back into the lower limb is often called sciatica.

Intervertebral ligaments

The intervertebral discs are reinforced by posterior and anterior longitudinal ligaments (Figs 8.26 & 8.27). These ligaments attach to vertebral bodies and intervertebral discs and anchor inferiorly to the sacrum and superiorly to the cervical vertebrae or skull. Whiplash injuries involving excessive extension-flexion are caused by rear-end car crashes. There may be damage to the joints and ligaments of the cervical spine, including the anterior longitudinal ligament, resulting in cervical pain and restricted movement.

Other ligaments interconnect the laminae, spinous processes and transverse processes of adjacent vertebrae. Ligamenta flava interconnect the laminae within the vertebral canal. The high content of elastic tissue gives these ligaments their yellow appearance and they assist return of the vertebral column to the erect position following flexion. Supraspinous and interspinous ligaments connect adjacent spinous processes of thoracic and lumbar vertebrae. It is through these ligaments that a needle is inserted to withdraw cerebrospinal fluid during lumbar puncture.

The supraspinous and interspinous ligaments are replaced in the cervical region by the ligamentum nuchae, which attaches to the skull at the external occipital protuberance and crest and to the spinous processes of all the cervical vertebrae. Intertransverse ligaments connect the transverse processes of adjacent vertebrae. The lumbosacral joint is reinforced by the iliolumbar ligament, which attaches the transverse process of the fifth lumbar vertebra to the iliac crest (Fig. 8.28).

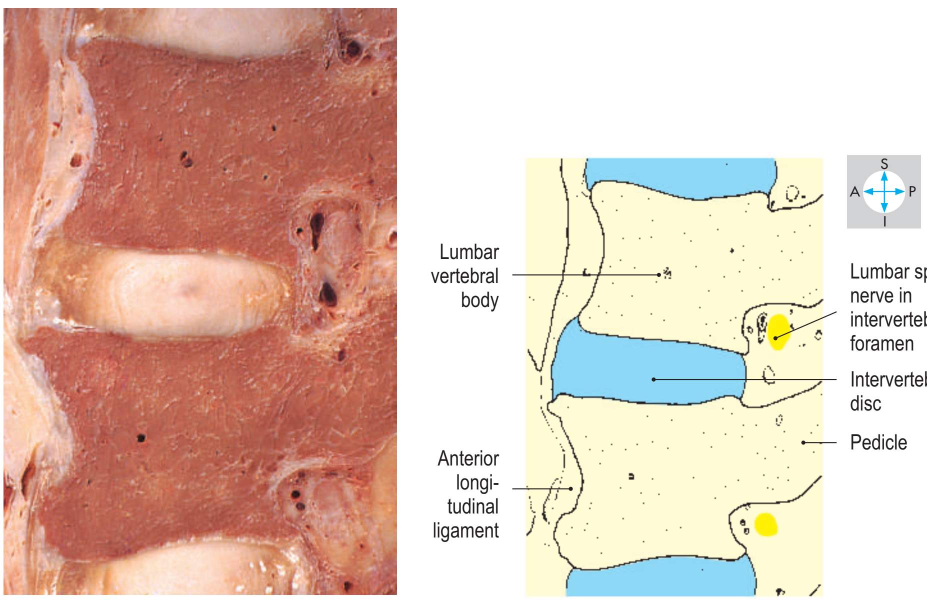


Fig. 8.24 Sagittal section of the lumbar vertebral column.

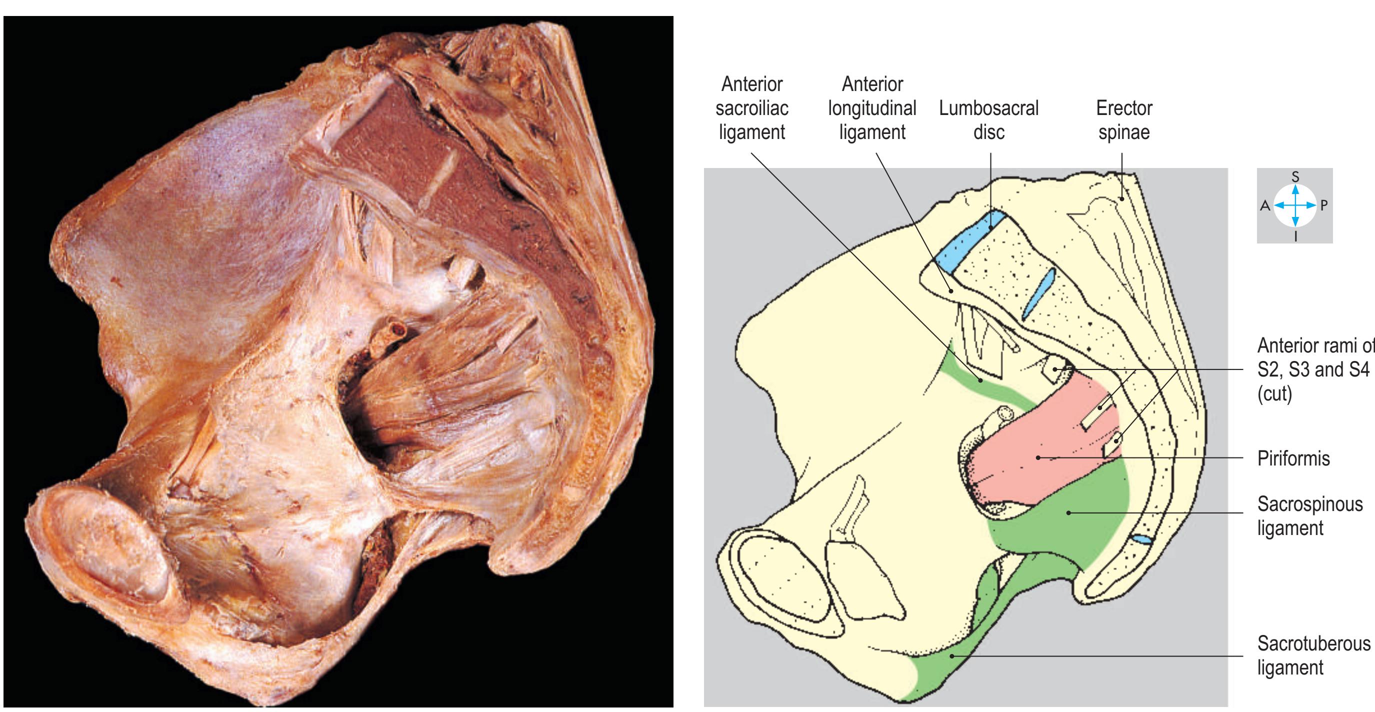


Fig. 8.25 Right hemipelvis, showing the sacrum and coccyx in sagittal section.

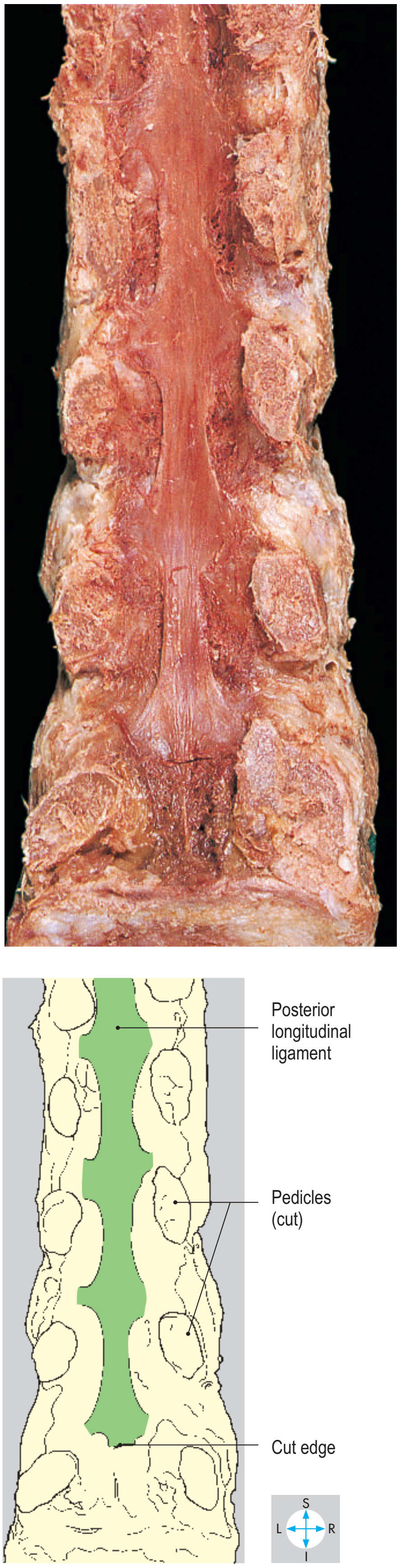


Fig. 8.26 Posterior longitudinal ligament, exposed by removal of the vertebral arches, meninges and spinal cord.

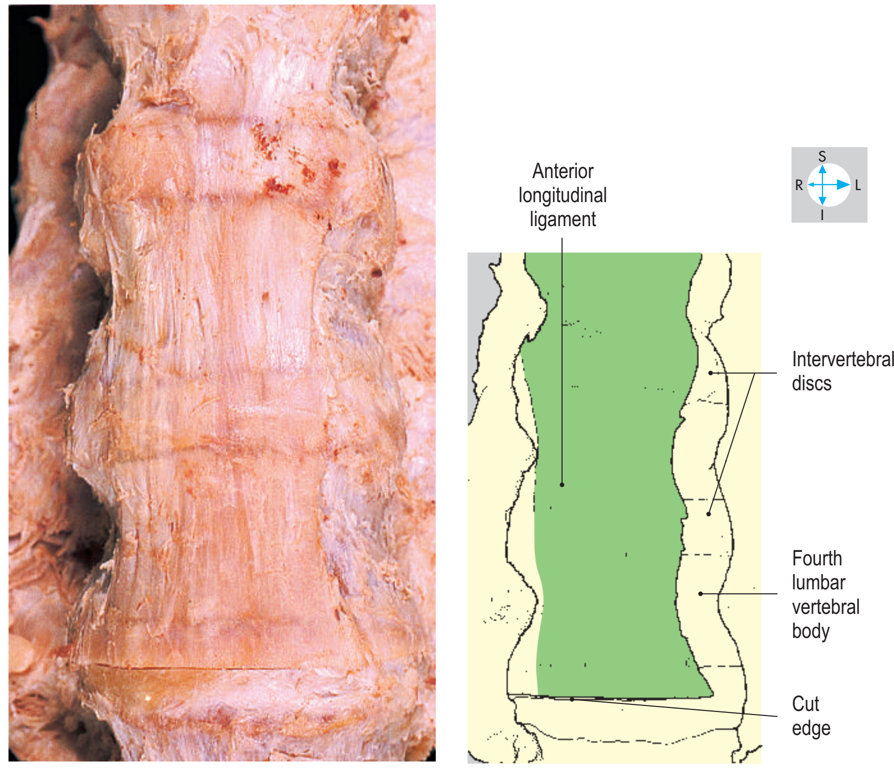


Fig. 8.27 Oblique view of anterior longitudinal ligament of the lumbar spine.

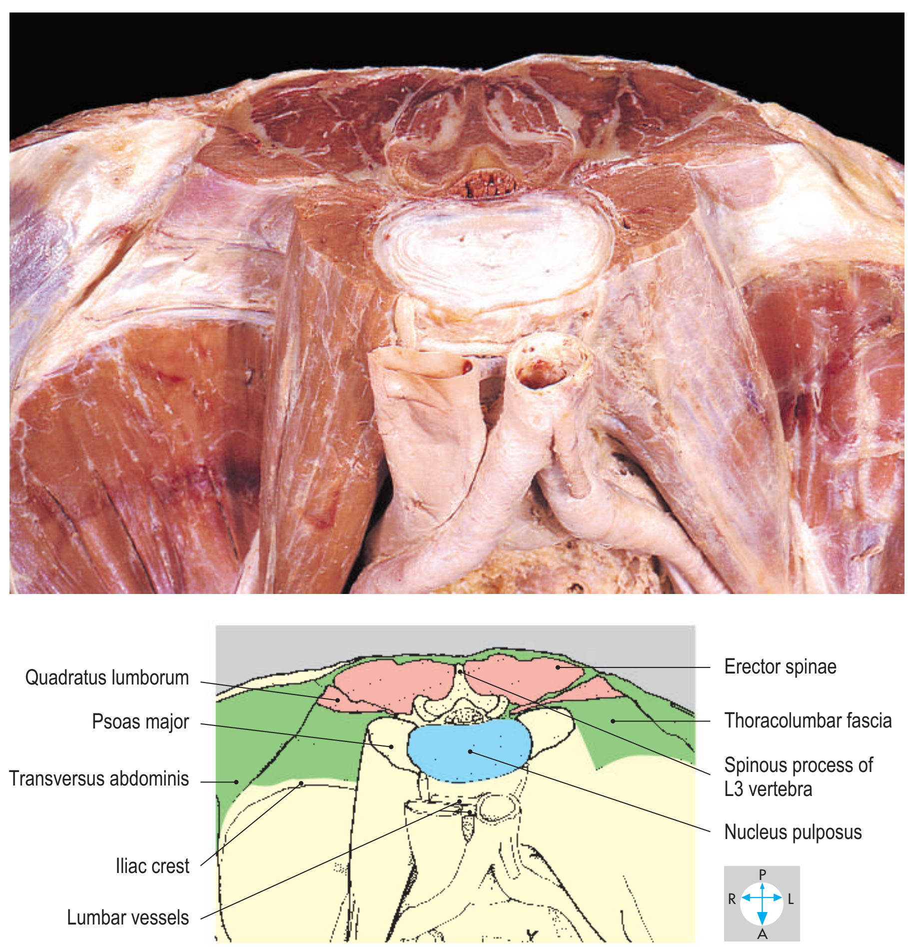


Fig. 8.28 Oblique view of a transverse section of the lumbar spine and muscles at the level of the disc between the third and fourth lumbar vertebrae.

Muscles

The muscles of the erector spinae group are covered in the lumbar region by the thoracolumbar fascia, in the lumbar and thoracic regions by the serratus posterior muscles and in the neck by the splenius muscles.

In the lumbar region, the thoracolumbar fascia is trilaminar and encloses erector spinae posteriorly and quadratus lumborum anteriorly (Fig. 8.28). At the lateral margins of both muscles, the laminae of the fascia fuse and give attachment to the transversus abdominis (Fig. 8.28).

Serratus posterior superior and inferior (Figs 8.29 & 8.30) are weak respiratory muscles, which connect lower cervical and upper thoracic spines with upper ribs, and lower thoracic and upper lumbar spines with lower ribs, respectively. They are supplied by branches of anterior rami of thoracic spinal nerves (intercostal nerves).

Splenius muscles

Splenius (Fig. 8.31) attaches medially to the lower part of the ligamentum nuchae and to the upper thoracic spinous processes. The superior part, splenius capitis, attaches laterally to the mastoid process and superior nuchal line. The inferior part, splenius cervicis, attaches laterally to the transverse processes of the upper cervical vertebrae.

Erector spinae

On each side, erector spinae (Fig. 8.33) occupy the groove between the spinous and transverse processes of vertebrae. The muscle attaches inferiorly to the posterior surface of the sacrum and the posterior part of the iliac crest. In the lumbar region it forms a prominent vertical muscle mass (Fig. 8.37) and attaches to the spinous and transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae. In the upper lumbar region the

Fig. 8.29 Serratus posterior superior. The upper limb girdle and its muscles have been removed.

Fig. 8.30 Serratus posterior inferior revealed by removal of latissimus dorsi.

muscle divides into three columns. The lateral column forms iliocostalis, which attaches to the angles of the ribs and transverse processes of the lower cervical vertebrae. The intermediate column forms the longissimus, which attaches to the ribs and the transverse processes of the thoracic and cervical vertebrae. The medial part of the erector spinae forms the spinalis, which attaches to the spinous processes of the upper lumbar, thoracic and lower cervical vertebrae.

Erector spinae is innervated by branches from the posterior rami of spinal nerves.

Transversospinalis

The muscles of this group lie obliquely (Fig. 8.32), covered by erector spinae (Fig. 8.7). They interconnect transverse processes and spinous processes of vertebrae at higher levels. Semispinalis forms the longest and most superficial member of this group and interconnects lower thoracic transverse processes and upper thoracic and cervical spinous processes. Multifidus lies deep to semispinalis. Its fibres attach the transverse process of each vertebra to the spinous processes of one to three vertebrae above. The deepest fibres of transversospinalis form the rotatores, which connect the lamina of one vertebra to the transverse process of the vertebra below. The rotatores are best developed in the thoracic region.

The transversospinalis muscles are supplied by the posterior rami of the spinal nerves.

Actions

Simultaneous contraction of the deep muscles of both sides extends the vertebral column and regulates or prevents flexion. Unilateral contraction produces lateral flexion and rotation, assisted by the abdominal oblique muscles. The deep muscles have a very important role in achieving and maintaining the fully upright posture.

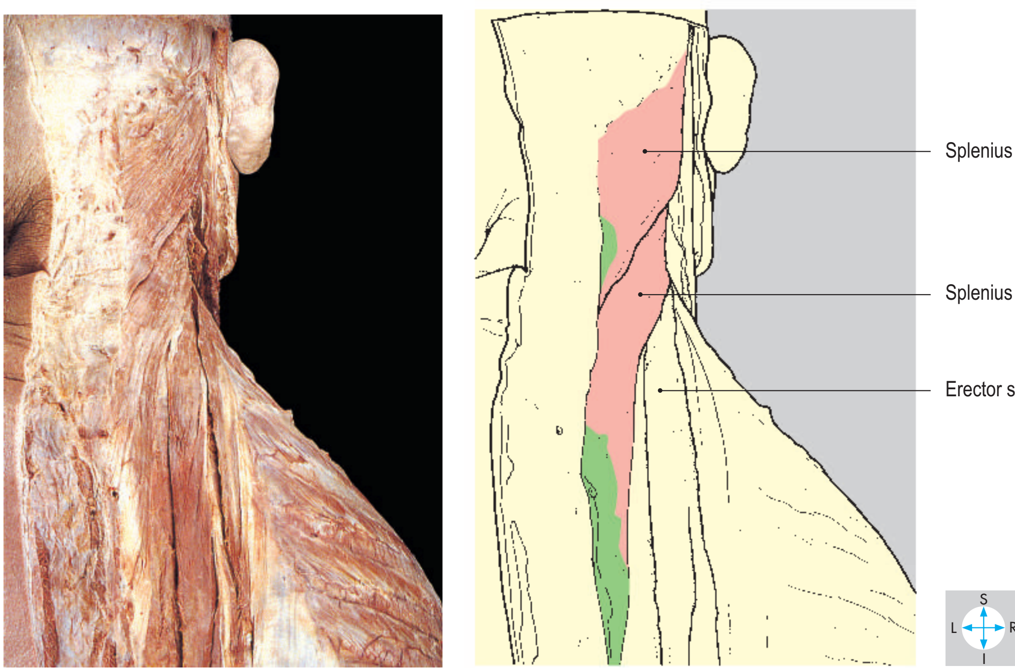


Fig. 8.31 Splenius cervicis and capitis after excision of serratus posterior superior.

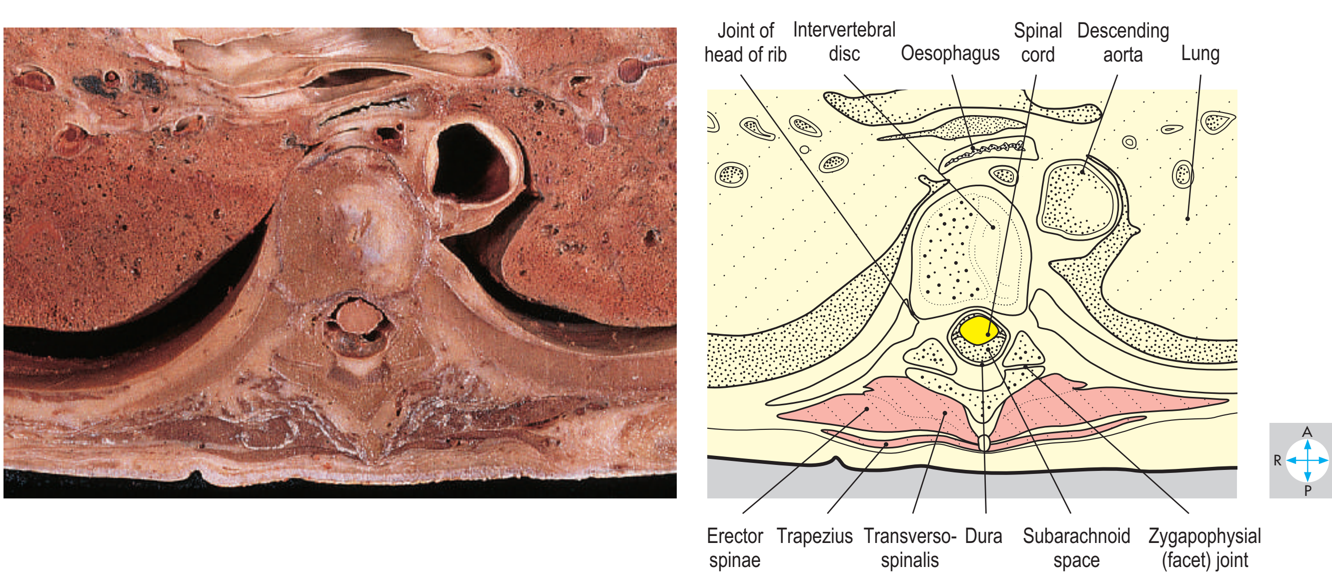


Fig. 8.32 Transverse section at the level of the sixth thoracic vertebra to show the back muscles and the vertebral foramen. Inferior aspect.

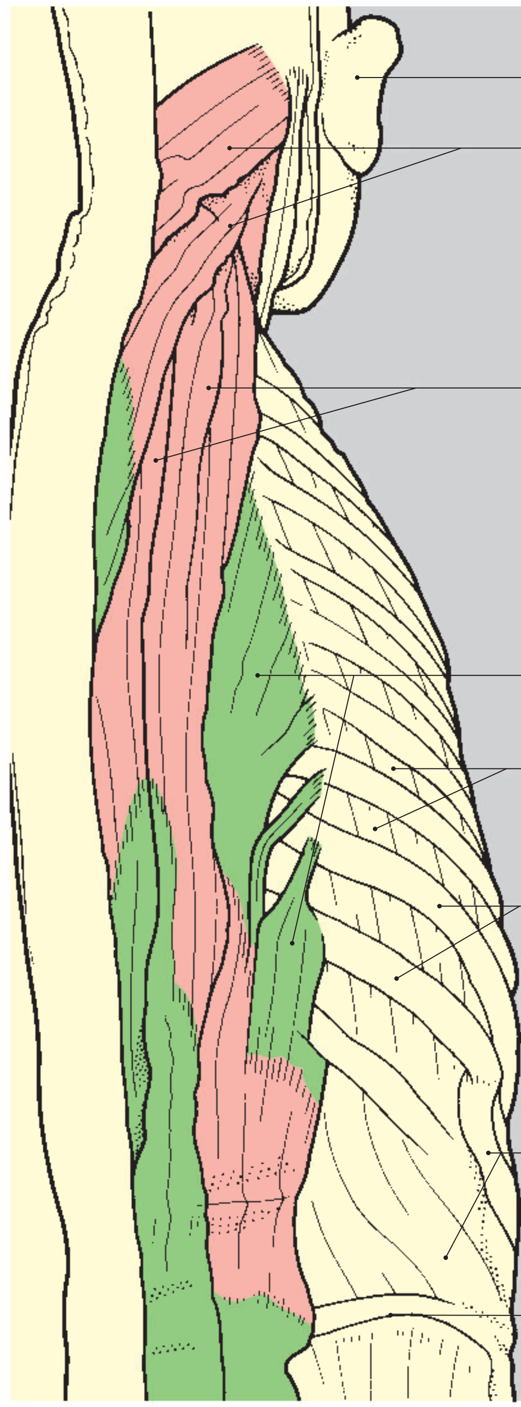


Fig. 8.33 Splenius and erector spinae exposed by removal of overlying muscles and fasciae.

Meninges

The spinal cord is surrounded by three membranes (dura mater, arachnoid mater and pia mater; Fig. 8.34), which are continuous through the foramen magnum with the cranial meninges.

Dura mater

The dura mater surrounding the spinal cord forms a sheath that corresponds to the inner (meningeal) layer of the cranial dura (p. 374). The spinal dura is separated from the periosteum of the vertebral canal by the extradural (epidural) space (Figs 8.16 & 8.32), which contains fat, vessels and loose connective tissue. Anaesthetic agents are instilled into this space to produce epidural anaesthesia. Spinal dura is attached to the margins of the foramen magnum and via fibrous slips to the posterior longitudinal ligament within the vertebral canal. Inferiorly the dura covers the filum terminale (Fig. 8.35). At the level of the second sacral vertebra the dura attaches to the filum terminale and these continue onto the back of the coccyx to fuse with the periosteum.

Each spinal nerve root is surrounded by a sleeve of dura mater which extends through the intervertebral foramen before fusing with the epineurium of the spinal nerve.

Arachnoid mater

The arachnoid mater is a delicate membrane that surrounds the spinal cord and the nerves within the vertebral canal. Above it, is continuous with the cranial arachnoid through the foramen magnum and below it ends at the level of the second

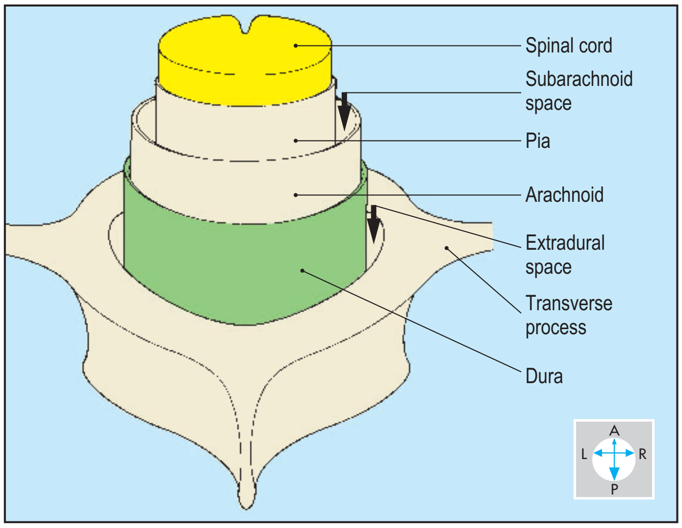


Fig. 8.34 Spinal meninges.

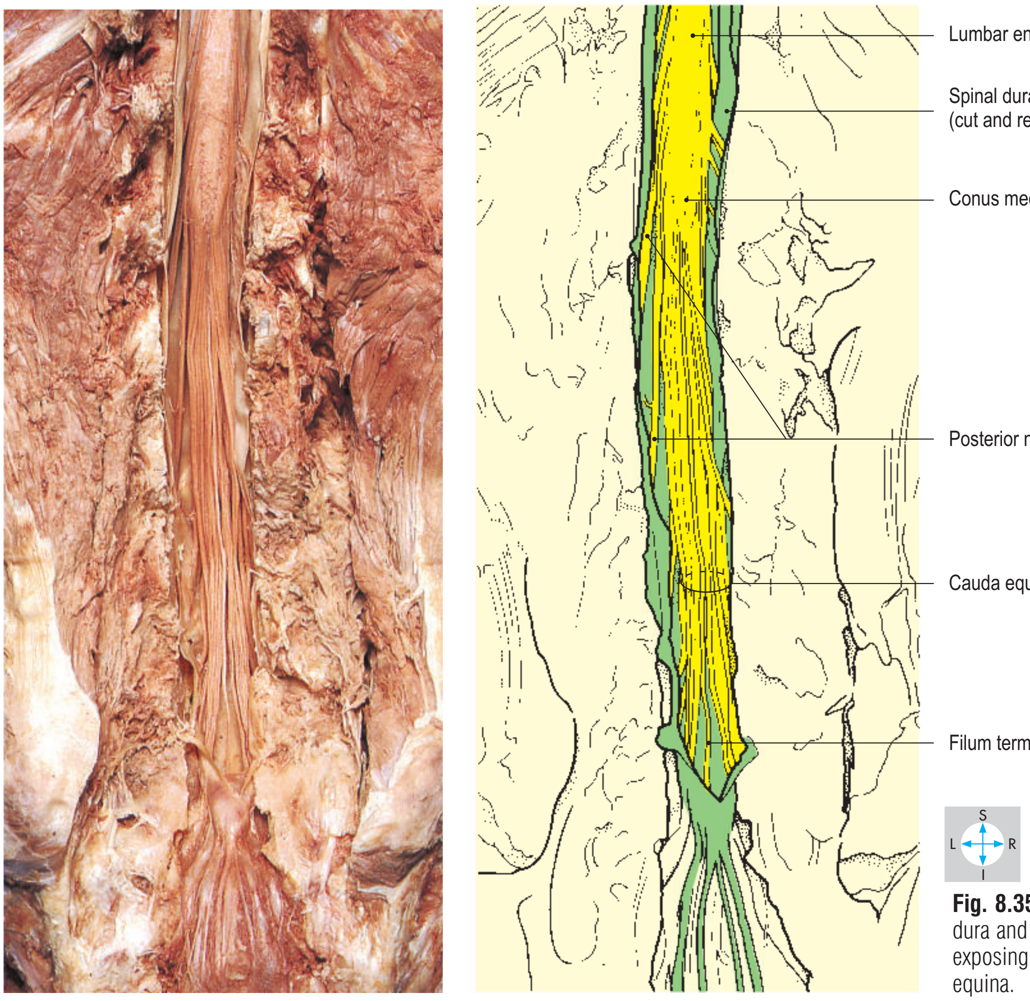


Fig. 8.35 Erector spinae and neural arches removed; spinal dura and arachnoid opened posteriorly and reflected laterally, exposing the lumbar enlargement, conus medullaris and cauda equina.

sacral vertebra. The arachnoid is connected to the pia mater by numerous delicate strands that cross the subarachnoid space between the two meninges. This space is filled with cerebrospinal fluid and also contains blood vessels, which supply the spinal cord. The cerebrospinal fluid is produced in the ventricular system of the brain and circulates in the subarachnoid space around the spinal cord and brain (p. 376). Cerebrospinal fluid is usually sampled by inserting a needle between the arches of the third and fourth or fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae. In this procedure, which is called a spinal tap or lumbar puncture, the needle is carefully orientated to pass between the spinous processes and enter the subarachnoid space below the termination of the spinal cord so that there is no danger of damage to the spinal cord. In spinal anaesthesia, anaesthetic agents may be injected into the subarachnoid space via a lumbar puncture technique. In a midline puncture, the needle would traverse skin, superficial tissues, supraspinous and interspinous ligaments, the epidural space, the dura and arachnoid mater.

Pia mater

The pia mater is a highly vascular layer that closely invests the spinal cord and nerves. On each side, the pia mater is attached to the dura by the ligamentum denticulatum between the anterior and posterior spinal roots. The pia surrounds the termination of the spinal cord (conus medullaris) and continues as the filum terminale as far as the posterior surface of the coccyx.

Spinal Cord

Surface features

At the level of the upper border of the atlas, the spinal cord is directly continuous with the medulla oblongata. Inferiorly, the cord usually extends as far as the first lumbar intervertebral disc, where it terminates as the conus medullaris. In transverse section, the spinal cord is oval, with its smaller diameter anteroposteriorly. The cord is especially wide at the cervical and lumbar enlargements due to increased numbers of nerve cell bodies within the spinal cord, which innervate the upper and lower limbs.

On the anterior aspect of the cord lies the anterior median fissure, whereas posteriorly, there is a relatively shallow posterior median sulcus. On each side, a posterolateral sulcus marks the site of attachment of the posterior nerve roots.

Spinal nerve roots

The spinal nerves are attached to the spinal cord by anterior and posterior nerve roots (Fig. 8.36). The region of the spinal cord to which one pair of anterior and posterior nerve roots attaches is called a spinal segment (Table 8.3).

Each anterior spinal root emerges from the cord as a series of small rootlets, while similar branches from each posterior spinal root sink into the posterolateral sulcus. The anterior and posterior roots cross the subarachnoid space and unite in the appropriate intervertebral foramen to form a spinal nerve. Each posterior root is characterized by a ganglion just proximal to the union of anterior and posterior roots.

Because the spinal cord is shorter than the vertebral column, the lower spinal nerve roots descend within the vertebral canal before leaving through their intervertebral foramina (Table 8.3). These lumbar, sacral and coccygeal nerve roots are clustered around the conus medullaris and filum terminale to form the cauda equina (Figs 8.35 & 8.37). Compression of the cauda equina, for example by a large central prolapse of an intervertebral disc, may disrupt bladder function and sphincter control and also produce bilateral sensory and motor abnormalities in the lower limbs.

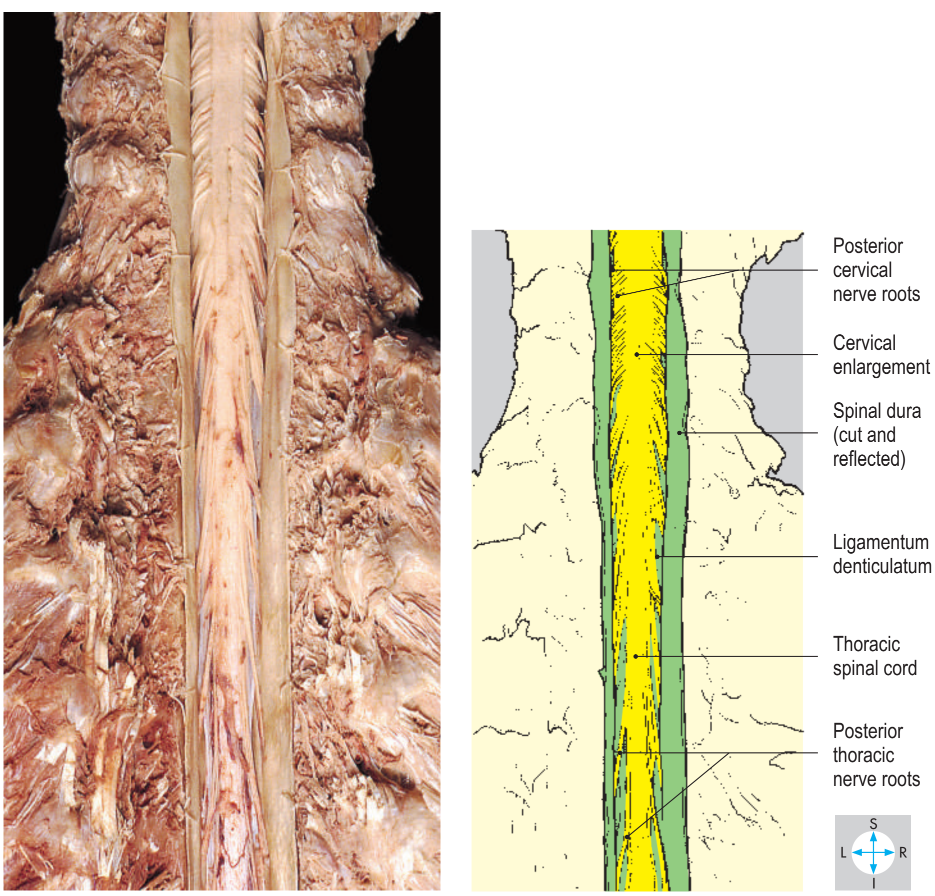


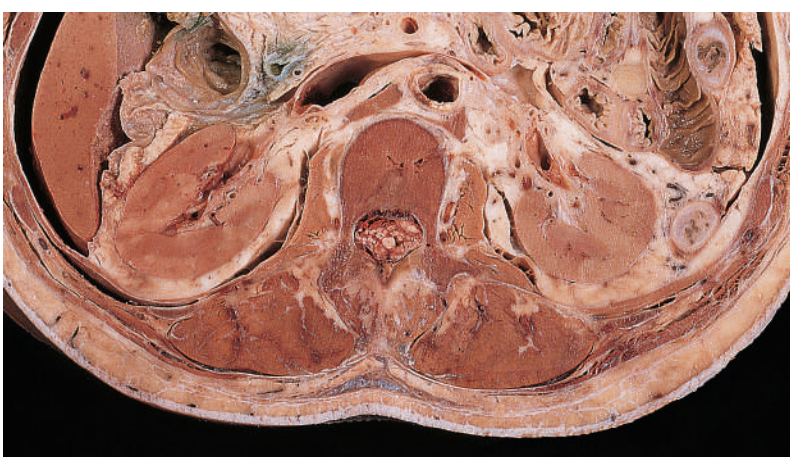
Fig. 8.36 Cervical spinal cord and dorsal nerve roots. Erector spinae and neural arches removed; the spinal dura has been reflected laterally.

Table 8.3 Levels of spinal cord segments and meninges

Spinal cord	Level in vertebral canal	Meninges
C1 segment	Foramen magnum of skull	
Cervical enlargement	C4–T2 bodies	
C8 segment	C7 body	
L3 segment	T12 body	
Lumbosacral enlargement	T12, L1 bodies	
Lowest extent of spinal cord in adults	L2 body	
Lowest extent of spinal cord in infants	L3 body	
	L3-S2 bodies	Subarachnoid space below spinal cord containing cauda equina
	L3/L4 and L4/L5 spaces	Obtain sample of CSF by lumbar puncture
	S3 segment	Lowest extent of subarachnoid space

Blood supply

The spinal cord receives its arterial supply from anterior and posterior spinal arteries that arise from vertebral arteries and are reinforced by branches of the deep cervical, intercostal and lumbar arteries. These vessels form a longitudinal anastomosis that runs the length of the spinal cord. One main branch from an upper lumbar or lower thoracic artery often provides an important supply to the spinal cord. Damage to this vessel, the artery of Adamkiewicz, may threaten the viability of part of the spinal cord. For example, lumbar arteries may become blocked in aortic aneurysm disease, resulting in spinal cord ischaemia leading to paraplegia with paralysis and loss of sensation in both lower limbs. The venous return from the spinal cord drains into a series of longitudinal anastomosing channels, which empty into veins corresponding to the arteries.



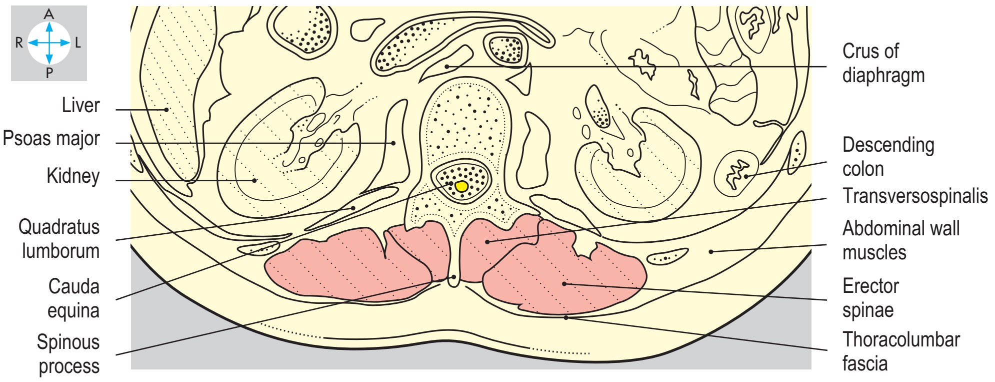


Fig. 8.37 Transverse section at the level of the first lumbar vertebra to show the back muscles and the contents of the vertebral foramen. Inferior aspect.

Exam Skills

Each of the incomplete statements below is followed by five suggested answers or completions. Decide which are true and which are false. The answers are supplied on p. 417.

1. During walking and/or running the following normally occur:

a) lateral flexion at the lumbar intervertebral joints.
b) movement at the hip joints.
c) contraction of the gluteal muscles.
d) movement at the sacroiliac joints.
e) rotation of the thoracic vertebral column.

2. Concerning the joints between the atlas and the axis:

a) they are all synovial.
b) they allow rotation of the head.
c) they are supported by the alar ligaments.
d) dislocation is usually fatal.
e) they are closely related to the first cervical nerves.

3. The sacroiliac joint:

a) is a fibrous joint.
b) allows rotation in which the lower part of the sacrum moves anteriorly.
c) is stabilized by the sacrotuberous ligament.
d) is a posterior relation of the common iliac artery.
e) is stabilized by the iliolumbar ligament.

4. The lumbar region of the vertebral column:

a) is the least mobile region of the spinal column.
b) has vertebrae which possess mamillary processes.
c) is flexed by the rectus abdominis.
d) has a secondary curvature.
e) has spinous processes which overlap the body of the adjacent vertebra below.

5. The spinal cord:

a) gives rise to eight pairs of cervical spinal nerves.
b) is continuous above with the medulla oblongata.
c) is intimately related to the pia mater.
d) extends throughout the length of the vertebral canal.
e) is separated from CSF by the arachnoid mater.

6. The intervertebral disc between vertebrae L3 and L4:

a) is the smallest intervertebral disc.
b) is related anteriorly to the abdominal aorta.
c) provides attachment for psoas major.
d) is related posteriorly to the cauda equina.
e) is closely related to the second lumbar nerves.

7. The atlas vertebra:

a) has no spinous process.
b) possesses no foramina transversaria.
c) has a vertebral body.
d) permits nodding movements at its joints with the cranium.
e) has large transverse processes.

8. Intervertebral discs:

a) occur between the bodies of adjacent vertebrae.
b) are intimately related to the anterior and posterior longitudinal ligaments.
c) are secondary cartilaginous joints.
d) form part of the borders of the intervertebral foramina.
e) contribute to the curvatures of the vertebral column.

9. The sacrum:

a) usually consists of fused components of five vertebrae.
b) is concave anteriorly.
c) is attached by ligaments to the ilium and ischium.
d) forms synovial joints with the articular processes of the fifth lumbar vertebra.
e) possesses on each side an ala which is crossed by the anterior ramus of the fifth lumbar nerve.

10. The thoracic vertebral column:

a) has a primary curvature which is concave anteriorly.
b) includes 12 vertebrae.
c) articulates with the heads of ribs.
d) throughout its length is related anteriorly to the oesophagus.
e) permits lateral flexion which is restricted by the ribs.

11. The thoracolumbar fascia:

a) provides attachment for transversus abdominis.
b) encloses psoas major muscle.
c) has no attachment to bone.
d) provides attachment for external abdominal oblique muscle.
e) provides attachment for latissimus dorsi.

12. The spinal dura mater:

a) is attached to the vertebral periosteum.
b) lies deep to the spinal arteries.
c) lies superficial to the vertebral venous plexus.
d) terminates at the level of vertebra L2.
e) attaches to the margins of the foramen magnum.

13. A typical cervical vertebra possesses:

a) two pairs of synovial joints.
b) a bifid spinous process.
c) a relatively wide vertebral foramen.
d) a relatively small body.
e) foramina transversaria.

14. The vertebral canal:

a) transmits the vertebral artery.
b) contains ligamenta flava.
c) contains a venous plexus.
d) is narrowed by rotation of the head.
e) lies anterolateral to the cervical vertebral discs.

15. The following relate to lumbar puncture at vertebral level L4/L5:

a) the spinal cord terminates at a higher vertebral level.
b) at this level the ligaments are thinner and easier to penetrate.
c) there is no overlap of the spinous processes.
d) the spinal nerves that exit from the vertebral column below this level are of little importance.
e) the subarachnoid space extends inferiorly to below vertebral level L5.

16. The joints between vertebrae C4 and C5 allow:

a) rotation.
b) flexion with rotation.
c) pure extension.
d) lateral flexion.
e) lateral flexion with rotation.

Clinical Case Skills

The answers are supplied on p. 420.

Case Study 1

A 45-year-old man began to experience headaches, which spread over the back of his head. He had no previous medical problems other than a whiplash injury following a car accident several years previously. His physician paid particular attention to the man's neck and found nothing remarkable on examination other than some restriction of neck movement. Cervical spine radiographs were reported to show early degenerative changes with occasional small osteophytes.

A physiotherapist friend visited the man and was disappointed to find him sitting slumped in a low easy chair but straining forwards and upwards to watch television. The friend tactfully suggested that it might be more comfortable if the television were placed at a lower level and how comfortable cushions were when placed in the hollow of the back. When the physiotherapist called again, she was pleased to discover that the television had been repositioned, the cushions were in use and the man had not experienced any more headaches. He later became re-employed as a gardener.

Questions:

1. At which joints do the movements in the cervical spine occur?
2. Which curvatures are present in the normal vertebral column and what are the effects of sitting as described?
3. What was the cause of the pain felt over the back of the head?

Case Study 2

A 40-year-old man had suffered from intermittent low backache, which started soon after he had helped a neighbour move furniture 2 years previously. He had some tingling along the outside of his left leg, which usually lasted for only a few days. He found that lying flat on the carpeted floor of his living room relieved his backache.

A few days later when bending he felt a sudden severe pain in his back, and tingling along the outside and back of his left leg below the knee. His physician found the man's spine was held in a curve convex to the right and noted that any movement of his lumbar spine produced pain and was restricted by muscle spasm. His lower limbs showed no sensory deficit or muscle weakness and his reflexes were normal apart from an absent left ankle jerk. Straight leg raising aggravated the backache and subsequently, radiography of his lumbar spine showed probable disc space narrowing at L5/S1. Magnetic resonance imaging confirmed a small posterolateral disc protrusion at that level.

Questions:

1. Which dermatome is associated with the posterolateral surface of the leg below the knee?
2. Which segmental level is tested by the ankle jerk?
3. Which spinal nerve traverses the intervertebral foramen immediately below L5 vertebra?
4. What are the boundaries of an intervertebral foramen?
5. Why should disc protrusion at L4/L5 involve S1 nerve?

Case Study 3

A 50-year-old man had been unwell for about 3 months and was losing weight. He suddenly developed severe abdominal pain and was admitted to hospital with suspected peritonitis.

The surgeon took a detailed history and discovered that, although abdominal pain was the main feature, the patient had had backache for several weeks and this was now worse. The abdomen revealed no distension or localized signs and normal bowel sounds were heard. Results of blood tests showed that the white cell count was normal but that haemoglobin was low. Chest and abdominal radiographs were accompanied by additional films because the radiologist had noticed spinal disease. Several vertebrae showed areas of increased bone formation (sclerosis), others showed areas of bone destruction (lysis) and T10 and T11 showed collapse of their bodies. Subsequent tests revealed high plasma levels of acid and alkaline phosphatases and the man was referred to a urologist who obtained fragments of prostatic tissue-containing tumour.

Questions:

1. What was the cause of the 'abdominal' pain?
2. What is the route of spread of disease from pelvic organs such as the prostate to the vertebral bodies?
3. Why was the patient anaemic?

Case Study 4

A previously healthy 30-year-old mother collapsed after taking her children to school. In the Emergency Department, she appeared confused and complained bitterly of a severe generalized headache and that the room lights were too bright. Abnormal findings on physical examination were limited to blood pressure 180/110 and apparent restriction of cervical spine movements.

After admission to hospital a neurologist confirmed photophobia, neck stiffness and raised blood pressure. He performed a lumbar puncture and found blood in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF).

Questions:

1. Where is CSF located?
2. How are samples of CSF usually obtained?
3. What is a safe vertebral level to attempt lumbar puncture and what layers are traversed?
4. Why was the patient's neck stiff even though she had no history of cervical spine disease?

Observation Skills

Identify the structures indicated. The answers are supplied at the foot of the page.

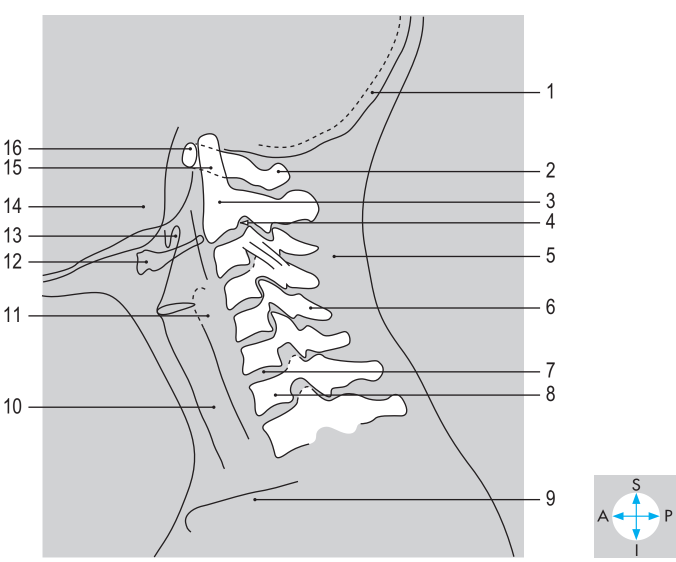


Fig. 8.38 Lateral radiograph of cervical spine.

Answers:

Fig. 8.38 1 = occipital bone; 2 = posterior arch of atlas; 3 = body of axis; 4 = intervertebral foramen; 5 = soft tissue shadow of postvertebral muscles; 6 = spinous process of fifth cervical vertebra; 7 = intervertebral disc; 8 = body of seventh cervical vertebra; 9 = clavicle; 10 = tracheal air shadow; 11 = calcification in laryngeal cartilage; 12 = hyoid bone; 13 = epiglottis; 14 = mandible; 15 = odontoid process; 16 = anterior arch of atlas.

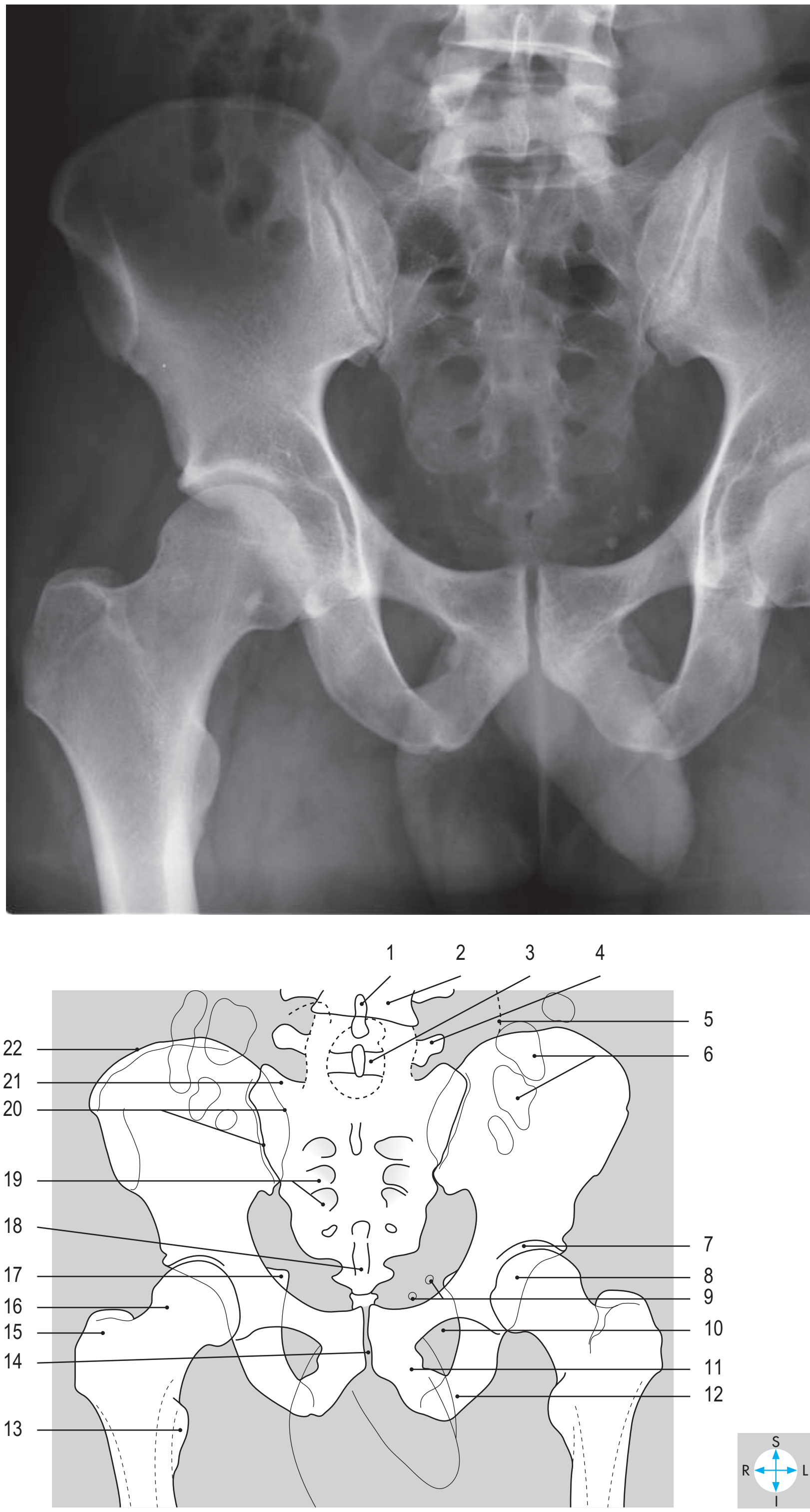


Fig. 8.39 Anteroposterior radiograph of male pelvis and lumbar spine.

Answers:

Fig. 8.39 1 = spinous process; 2 = body of fourth lumbar vertebra; 3 = lamina; 4 = transverse process; 5 = edge of soft tissue shadow of psoas major; 6 = gas in colon; 7 = coxal joint; 8 = head of femur; 9 = phleboliths; 10 = obturator foramen; 11 = inferior ramus of pubis; 12 = ischial tuberosity; 13 = lesser trochanter; 14 = pubic symphysis; 15 = greater trochanter; 16 = neck of femur; 17 = ischial spine; 18 = coccyx; 19 = sacral foramina; 20 = sacroiliac joint; 21 = lateral mass of sacrum; 22 = iliac crest.

Exam and Clinical Case Skills Answers

Thorax

1. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) F
2. a) F; b) T; c) T: d) T; e) T
3. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) F
4. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
5. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) F; e) T
6. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
7. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) F
8. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) F; e) T
9. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
10. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) F
11. a) F; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) T
12. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
13. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) F; e) F
14. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
15. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
16. a) F; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) F

Upper Limb

1. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) T
2. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
3. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) T
4. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
5. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
6. a) F; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) T
7. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) F; e) T
8. a) F; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) F
9. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) F
10. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) F; e) T
11. a) T; b) F; c) F; d) F; e) F
12. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
13. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) F
14. a) F; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) F
15. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
16. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F

Abdomen

1. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) F
2. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
3. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
4. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) F
5. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) F; e) T
6. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
7. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) F; e) T
8. a) F; b) F; c) F; d) T; e) T
9. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) T
10. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
11. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
12. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) F
13. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
14. a) T; b) T: c) F; d) T; e) F
15. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
16. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) F

Pelvis and Perineum

1. a) F; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) T
2. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
3. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) F
4. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) F; e) T
5. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) T
6. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) F
7. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) F
8. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) F
9. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
10. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
11. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) F
12. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) T
13. a) T; b) T: c) T; d) F; e) T
14. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
15. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
16. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) F

Lower Limb

1. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) T
2. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
3. a) T; b) F; c) F; d) T; e) T
4. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
5. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
6. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) T
7. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
8. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
9. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
10. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
11. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
12. a) T; b) F; c) F; d) T; e) T
13. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
14. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
15. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) T
16. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T

Head and Neck

1. a) F; b) F; c) T; d) F; e) T
2. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) F
3. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
4. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) F
5. a) F; b) T; c) F; d) F; e) T
6. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) T; e) T
7. a) F; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) T
8. a) T; b) T; c) F; d) F; e) T
9. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) F
10. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
11. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) F
12. a) F; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) T
13. a) F; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) F
14. a) F; b) F; c) F; d) F; e) F
15. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) F
16. a) F; b) F; c) T; d) F; e) F

Back

1. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
2. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
3. a) F; b) F; c) T; d) T; e) T
4. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
5. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) F
6. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) F
7. a) T; b) F; c) F; d) T; e) T
8. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
9. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
10. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) T
11. a) T; b) F; c) F; d) F; e) T
12. a) F; b) F; c) F; d) F; e) T
13. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T
14. a) F; b) T; c) T; d) F; e) F
15. a) T; b) F; c) T; d) F; e) T
16. a) T; b) T; c) T; d) T; e) T

Thorax

Case Study 1

1. The physical examination should be directed at the (i) axilla, (ii) opposite breast, (iii) supra- and infraclavicular regions and (iv) the parasternal region. Malignancies of the breast commonly spread via lymphatics to these areas.
2. Pectoralis major.
3. During surgery the nerve supply to the serratus anterior (long thoracic nerve) must have been damaged.
4. Surgery removes most of the lymphatic drainage of the limb through the axilla.

Case Study 2

1. The left recurrent laryngeal nerve has been damaged by the lesion, thereby affecting the innervation of laryngeal muscles.
2. Left phrenic nerve, aortic arch, left bronchus, left pulmonary artery and vein.
3. Phrenic nerve.
4. The left upper lobe would collapse as air is absorbed from the bronchial tree within the lobe.

Case Study 3

1. Pain referred via autonomic nerves to the eighth cervical and first thoracic spinal cord segments.
2. Reduction in coronary blood flow causes damage to heart muscle and conduction tissue.
3. The right coronary artery usually supplies both SA and AV nodes.
4. Between the right and left coronary arteries in the coronary sulcus and between the anterior and posterior interventricular arteries at the apex of the heart.

Case Study 4

1. Coarctation of the aorta at a site beyond the origin of the left subclavian artery.
2. Intercostal arteries. Blood was flowing from the anterior into the posterior intercostal arteries and then into the descending thoracic aorta.
3. Both anterior and posterior intercostal arteries in the first two intercostal spaces are branches from vessels which arise proximal to the coarctation (internal thoracic artery and costocervical trunk, respectively).
4. Yes. Turbulence caused by the narrowed segment of the aorta particularly during ventricular contraction.

Upper Limb

Case Study 1

1. Mitral valve, left ventricle, aortic valve, ascending aorta, aortic arch, brachiocephalic, right subclavian and axillary arteries.
2. Sudden reduction of arterial lumen at major branches such as profunda brachii.
3. Lack of sensation and movement are obvious: amputation of her hand would probably have been necessary.
4. Anastomoses and collaterals involving branches of the scapular arteries.

Case Study 2

1. Loss of muscle bulk (wasting) in lower motor neurone problems: median nerve in carpal tunnel.
2. Cut thumb without pain: impaired sensation of anterior thumb, index, middle fingers.
3. Incisions parallel to Langer’s lines following skin creases produce less obvious scars.
4. Recurrent branch of median nerve, in hand and ulnar nerve.

Case Study 3

1. Shallow glenoid fossa, lax joint capsule.
2. Axillary nerve at surgical neck: cutaneous sensation over insertion of deltoid.
3. To prevent external rotation, which produces instability.
4. Pain promotes disuse atrophy (wasting) resulting in muscle weakness making further injury more likely.
5. Strength of rotator cuff muscles acting as ‘adjustable ligaments’.

Case Study 4

1. Superficial extensor muscles of the forearm at common extensor origin and supracondylar ridge.
2. Extension with lateral deviation (abduction) at the wrist joint.
3. Extensors carpi radialis longus and brevis.
4. Any powerful grip requires extension at the wrist produced by three carpal extensor muscles.

Abdomen

Case Study 1

1. Indirect inguinal hernia
2. There must be a persistent processus vaginalis along the inguinal canal into the scrotum: a tubular communication between the general peritoneal cavity and the tunica vaginalis anterior to the testis.
3. The hernia had been present only at times of high intra-abdominal pressure (e.g. during coughing or crying). The intestine can slide to and fro along the processus vaginalis.
4. Most likely a loop of small intestine.
5. The gut loop became trapped in the hernial sac and its lumen became obstructed.
6. He will replace the gut in the abdomen and close off the processus at the deep inguinal ring.

Case Study 2

1. In addition to the general signs of shock there was the tender abdomen and the pain in the left shoulder, the latter very likely a referred pain from irritation (by blood) of the inferior surface of the diaphragm.

2. The organ is readily ruptured because of its delicate consistency. It may be trapped against the left lower ribs that lie posterior to it. It has a rich blood supply and may therefore bleed profusely.
3. Greater sac.

Case Study 3

1. Hepatitis due to alcohol poisoning.
2. In addition to the history, the liver is enlarged and tender.
3. The liver lies immediately inferior to the diaphragm and it therefore descends when the diaphragm contracts.
4. Obstruction to portal blood flow through the liver leads to a rise in pressure in the portal vein and its tributaries. Portacaval anastomoses dilate, providing alternative routes for blood to reach the heart. One site of anastomosis is in the wall of the oesophagus where submucosal veins (oesophageal varices) become dilated.
5. In the wall of the rectum and anal canal; within the falciform ligament and in the abdominal wall radiating from the umbilicus (caput medusae); between the posterior abdominal wall and any retroperitoneal digestive organ, such as the duodenum.

Case Study 4

1. The right ureter: he has ureteric colic: the pain of a kidney stone passing down the ureter.
2. The patient has signs indicating a problem with the genitourinary system. Rectal examination enables the prostate gland, part of that system, to be palpated. In addition, it might help to suggest or eliminate other causes of such pain: an inflamed appendix within the pelvis would produce tenderness to the right of the rectum.
3. A vertical line near the tips of the lumbar vertebral transverse processes, across the sacroiliac joint and then sweeping past the ischial spine to curve medially towards the bladder.
4. The films will show the bladder, and provided the kidney is excreting, the kidney itself, the calices, renal pelvis and ureter on each side.

Pelvis and Perineum

Case Study 1

1. The pudendal nerve supplies most of the perineum. It gives branches to the skin around the anus (inferior rectal branches) and to most of the vulva (posterior labial branches).
2. The ischial spines, around which the pudendal nerves runs to enter the perineum from the gluteal regions.

Case Study 2

1. The pregnancy was in the right uterine tube and the bleeding was irritating the adjacent peritoneum.
2. Tenderness in the right vaginal fornix. The dilated and bleeding uterine tube lay close to the vagina.
3. He suspected bleeding into the peritoneal cavity. If the patient is being nursed lying flat, blood might track from the pelvis to the subphrenic area to give the classic referred pain due to the phrenic nerve's innervation of the inferior surface of the diaphragm.

Case Study 3

1. The maintenance of a higher pressure in the urethra than in the bladder.
2. The external urethral sphincter (sphincter urethrae) and the levator ani (pelvic floor). These muscles compress the urethra and support its upper part within the pelvic cavity where it is subjected to the same increases in pressure, for example during laughing, as the bladder. The planned exercises are intended to strengthen these muscles.
3. The pelvic floor is stretched during childbirth. Thus the gap between the pubococcygeus muscles gets wider and the bladder sinks to a lower level. The prostate contributes to urinary continence in men, unless it is diseased or damaged.
4. Parasympathetic nerves arising from the spinal cord segments S2, 3 and 4.

Case Study 4

1. The cancer may already have spread via the lymphatic vessels accompanying the mesenteric vessels and abdominal aorta, then the thoracic duct, to the root of the neck.
2. He may have been testing for enlargement of the liver, a likely site for blood-borne secondary cancer because of the portal venous system.
3. The sacrum, vagina, prostate and bladder.

Lower Limb

Case Study 1

1. Applying firm downward pressure over the quadriceps just above the patella forces fluid from the suprapatellar pouch behind the patella towards the general synovial cavity. The extra fluid accumulates behind the patella, which 'floats' forwards away from the femur. On displacing the patella backwards it can be felt to tap against the patella surface of the femur.
2. The medial meniscus.
3. The tibial collateral ligament.
4. Extracapsular: ligamentum patellae, tibial and fibular collateral, oblique popliteal ligament. Intracapsular: anterior and posterior cruciate, oblique popliteal. Collaterals provide medial and lateral stability and limit overextension. Cruciates provide anteroposterior stability and resist over-extension, as does the oblique popliteal ligament. The meniscofemoral ligament holds the lateral meniscus onto the lateral femoral condyle as the femur rotates.

Case Study 2

1. Great saphenous vein.
2. The swelling is a ballooning out of the wall of the great saphenous vein just where it goes deeply to drain into the femoral vein. The thrill on coughing results from

transmission of a pressure wave down the venous system as the result of raised intra-abdominal pressure.

3. The 'muscle pump' mechanism operates in the foot, calf and thigh. Muscle contractions squeeze and empty the deep veins, the blood being propelled upwards towards the heart, valves ensuring unidirectional flow.
4. Other causes of lumps in the groin include: inguinal lymph nodes, inguinal and femoral herniae, incomplete or maldescended testis, psoas abscess or bursitis, lipoma.

Case Study 3

1. Femoral artery, which is located superficially just below the mid-point of the inguinal ligament.
2. Femoral in the groin, popliteal behind the knee, posterior tibial behind medial malleolus, dorsalis pedis on dorsum of foot.
3. Superior medial, superior lateral, inferior medial and inferior lateral genicular from popliteal; recurrent genicular from anterior and posterior tibials; descending genicular from femoral.

Case Study 4

1. Sciatic nerve. Tibial nerve.
2. Involvement of anterior horn cell, anterior nerve root, spinal nerve or its anterior ramus. These comprise the lower motor neurone, characterized by muscle wasting and flaccid paralysis.

Head and Neck

Case Study 1

1. Give the patient something acidic to suck, and then observe the opening of the parotid duct (in the cheek, opposite the second upper molar tooth) for the production of secretions.
2. The facial nerve, motor nerve to muscles of facial expression, lies within the parotid gland and is often disturbed during surgery.
3. The nerve was not interrupted, more likely just stretched, so recovery of function occurred.
4. Some parasympathetic nerve fibres to the parotid gland were interrupted during surgery, and during the healing process they were able to innervate sweat glands in the skin. Thus, when they would be expected to stimulate salivation, they gave rise to 'gustatory sweating'.

Case Study 2

1. The student had dislocated his temporomandibular joints on both sides.
2. The head of the mandible has moved farther forwards than usual, and is now in front of the articular prominence of the joint. Contraction of muscles normally associated with closure of the mouth only raises the head more firmly in front of the prominence.
3. Relaxing the closing muscles, and putting downward pressure on the mandible to allow the head to slip back into the fossa of the joint.

Case Study 3

1. He would ask the patient to swallow. Swallowing raises the larynx, and as the thyroid gland is enclosed in the pretracheal fascia which is itself attached to the larynx, the thyroid gland also rises on swallowing.
2. The recurrent laryngeal nerve lies posterior to the thyroid gland and is likely to be damaged during surgery.
3. Good surgical practice is to positively identify a vulnerable structure, so that subsequent manipulation of tissues avoids damage to it.
4. The parathyroid glands also lie embedded in the posterior surface of the lateral lobes of the thyroid gland.

Case Study 4

1. Cavernous venous sinus thrombosis on the left side.
2. The abducent nerve (VI) runs through the body of the cavernous sinus, and supplies the lateral rectus muscle of the orbit which abducts the eye.
3. Infection from the pustules on the surface of the face has been carried by the veins of the face through the ophthalmic veins, or deep facial veins to the cavernous sinus where thrombosis has occurred. Infection enters the veins when pustules are squeezed.
4. The thrombosis has already involved oculomotor, trochlear and maxillary nerves, and will probably begin to affect the arterial supply to the orbit. Ultimately, meningitis and death are the probable outcomes without treatment.

Back

Case Study 1

1. Atlantoaxial, rotation; atlanto-occipital, nodding; other intervertebral joints, flexion, extension, lateral flexion with rotation.
2. Cervical convex anteriorly, thoracic concave anteriorly, lumbar convex anteriorly: loss of normal lumbar and cervical curves, but increased extension of upper cervical joints.
3. Irritation of roots of upper cervical nerves.

Case Study 2

1. Fifth lumbar.
2. First sacral.
3. Fifth lumbar.
4. Upper and lower vertebral notches (pedicles), intervertebral disc, facet joint.
5. First sacral nerve roots lie close to L5 disc as they pass inferolaterally.

Case Study 3

1. Pain referred from lower thoracic spine involving nerves T10, T11, T12.
2. Valveless veins linking pelvic venous plexuses, internal and external vertebral plexus, basivertebral veins.
3. Normal haemopoetic marrow in vertebrae replaced by metastatic tumour.

Case Study 4

1. In the subarachnoid space bathing spinal cord and brain, and in the ventricular system of brain.
2. By lumbar puncture with the vertebral column flexed to open the interval between vertebral arches.
3. Inferior to the conus medullaris between vertebrae L3/L4 or L4/L5. Skin, fascia, supra- and interspinous ligaments or ligamenta flava, extradural space, dura, arachnoid.
4. Neck movements stimulate reflex contraction of muscles because meningeal irritation by the subarachnoid bleeding increases sensitivity of dural receptors.

Alternative Terms

Eponyms

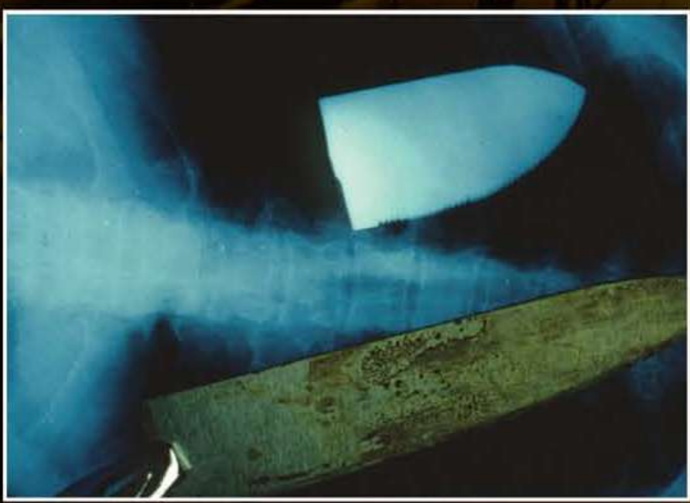
Achilles tendon	Tendo calcaneus
Adam's apple	Laryngeal prominence
Alcock's canal	Pudendal canal
Astley Cooper's ligaments (breast)	Suspensory ligaments of breast
Aschoff–Tawara node	Atrioventricular node
Bartholin's gland	Greater vestibular gland
Bell's nerve	Long thoracic nerve
Bigelow's ligament	Iliofemoral ligament
Buck's fascia	Deep fascia of penis
Camper's fascia	Fatty layer of subcutaneous tissue of abdominal wall
Cloquet's node	Deep inguinal node in femoral canal
Colles' fascia	Membranous layer of subcutaneous tissue of perineum
Cooper's fascia	Cremasteric fascia
Cooper's ligaments (breast)	Suspensory ligaments of breast
Cowper's glands	Bulbourethral glands
Denonvilliers' fascia	Rectovesical septum
Douglas, Line of	Arcuate line of rectus sheath
Douglas, Pouch of	Rectouterine pouch
Drummond, Marginal artery of	Marginal artery of colon
Dupuytren's fascia	Palmar aponeurosis
Eustachian tube	Auditory tube
Fallopian tube	Uterine tube
Galen, Vein of	Great cerebral vein
Gasserian ganglion	Trigeminal ganglion
Gimbernat's ligament	Lacunar ligament
Harvey's ligament	Ligamentum arteriosum
Highmore, Antrum of	Maxillary air sinus
His, Bundle of	Atrioventricular bundle
Houston's valve	Horizontal/transverse rectal fold
Hunter's canal	Adductor canal, subsartorial canal
Jacobson's nerve	Tympanic branch of glossopharyngeal nerve
Keith–Flack, Node of	Sinuatrial node
Koch's node	
Langerhans, islets of	Pancreatic islets
Langer's lines	Cleavage lines of skin
Lisfranc, Tubercle of	Scalene tubercle
Lister's tubercle	Dorsal tubercle of radius
Lockwood, Ligament of	Suspensory ligament part of vagina bulbi (of eyeball)
Louis, Angle of	Sternal angle
Marshall's vein	Oblique vein of left atrium
Meckel's cave	Trigeminal cave
Meckel's diverticulum	Ileal diverticulum
Meibomian glands	Tarsal glands
Morison, Pouch of	Hepatorenal recess
Müller's muscle	Smooth muscle component of levator palpebrae superioris
Nuck, Canal of	Processus vaginalis
Oddi, Sphincter of	Hepatopancreatic ampullary sphincter
Pacchionian bodies	Arachnoid granulations
Peyer's patches	Aggregated lymphoid nodules in ileum
Poupart's ligament	Inguinal ligament
Purkinje fibres	Cardiac conducting tissue
Retzius, Cave of	Retropubic space
Rosenmüller, Fossa of	Pharyngeal recess
Santorini's duct	Accessory pancreatic duct
Scarpa's fascia	Membranous layer of subcutaneous tissue of abdominal wall
Scarpa's triangle	Femoral triangle
Sibson's fascia	Suprapleural membrane
Spence, Tail of	Axillary tail of breast
Stensen's (Stenoni) duct	Parotid duct
Tenon's capsule	Vagina bulbi, Fascia bulbi (of eyeball)
Thebesian veins	Small cardiac veins
Vater, Ampulla of	Hepatopancreatic ampulla
Vidian nerve	Nerve of pterygoid canal
Waldeyer's ring	Pharyngeal lymphoid ring
Wharton's duct	Submandibular duct
Willis, Circle of	Cerebral arterial circle
Winslow, Foramen of	Omental or epiploic foramen
Wirsung, Duct of	Main pancreatic duct
Wrisberg, Ligament of	Meniscofemoral ligament

Older terms still used in clinical practice

Anterior primary ramus	Anterior ramus (of spinal nerve)
Auditory nerve	Vestibulocochlear nerve
Circumflex nerve	Axillary nerve
Common femoral artery	Femoral artery
Common peroneal nerve	Common fibular nerve
Costophrenic recess	Costodiaphragmatic recess
Dental nerves	Alveolar nerves
Descendens cervicalis	Inferior root of ansa cervicalis
Descendens hypoglossi	Superior root of ansa cervicalis

Dorsal nerve	Thoracic nerve
Dorsal vertebra	Thoracic vertebra
Innominate artery/vein	Brachiocephalic artery/vein
Innominate bone	Hip bone
Internal mammary artery	Internal thoracic artery
Ischiorectal fossa	Ischioanal fossa
Left anterior descending artery (LAD)	Anterior interventricular artery
Lesser sac	Omental bursa
Lienogastric ligament	Gastrosplenic ligament
Lienorenal ligament	Splenorenal ligament
Ligamentum teres	Round ligament
Lumbocostal arch	Arcuate ligament
Pelvic colon	Sigmoid colon
Peroneal artery	Fibular artery
Pharyngotympanic tube	Auditory tube
Posterior facial vein	Retromandibular vein
Posterior primary ramus	Posterior ramus (of spinal nerve)
Spiral groove	Radial groove (of humerus)
Sternocostalis	Transversus thoracis
Sternomastoid	Sternocleidomastoid
Subsartorial canal	Adductor canal
Superficial fascia	Subcutaneous tissue
Superficial femoral artery	Femoral artery
Supinator longus	Brachioradialis
Suprasternal notch	Jugular notch
Uterovesical pouch	Vesicouterine pouch

Color Atlas of Forensic Medicine and Pathology



Edited by
Charles A. Catanese

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group

Table of Contents

Preface

While death investigation, and what we have come to understand as "forensic pathology," has been practiced in one way or another back to antiquity, official designation of forensic pathology as a subspecialty by the American Board of Pathology dates back only to 1956. The subspecialty comprises a small band of trainees in pathology and at any given time there are only 400 to 500 full-time practitioners of the specialty in the United States.

Furthermore, as a recognized subspecialty, forensic pathology is young enough that each of its full-time practitioners can trace his or her roots back to one of the six individuals who sat for that original examination back in 1956. For many of the authors of this volume, that family tree goes from Lester Adelson through Charles Hirsch and ultimately to us. We acknowledge and are proud of the fact that we stand on the shoulders of giants.

Our collective experiences as trainees and staff at the Office of the Chief Medical Examiner in New York City under the tutelage of Dr. Charles S. Hirsch has made us the forensic pathologists we are today. Our mentor's emphasis on precision and accuracy in description of findings, translation of these descriptions into language easily understood by a broad range of end users, and the public health importance of our work has left an indelible imprint that we desire to pass on to others. It is our hope that this atlas reflects these qualities.

With sincerest gratitude,

Thomas Andrew
Fellowship Class of 1992

Michael J. Caplan
Gerard Catanese
Bruce Levy
Fellowship Class of 1993

Thomas Gilson
Charles A. Catanese
Fellowship Class of 1995

Barbara K. Bollinger
Jonathan Lucas
Fellowship Class of 2000

Sudden Natural Death in a Forensic Setting

1

CHARLES CATANESE AND AMY V. RAPKIEWICZ

Introduction

This chapter offers a brief overview of some common and some not so common natural deaths that typically may occur in a medical examiner system. Also demonstrated are examples that may alter appearance of tissue such as formaldehyde fixation and variation due to different types of photographic imagery. There are also examples of normal organs in both a fresh and formaldehyde fixed state that can be used by the reader to compare with diseased organs.

Deaths under this category are often unexpected and sometimes unwitnessed. There is often a suspicion of foul play. Families may say, "But Doctor, he was in fine health. I saw him an hour ago. It cannot be natural. Somebody must have harmed him," etc. Because of the sudden, often unexpected nature of these deaths, it is best to do an autopsy to clarify exactly what happened. This decision to autopsy depends on many factors, including the decedent's age, medical history, family wishes, decedent's wishes (wills, etc.), religious beliefs, circumstance at time of death, resources of a particular system, etc. As one becomes less certain of the cause of death, the level of suspicion will increase. At some point, the decision to autopsy becomes obvious and absolutely necessary. This decision is based on experience, knowledge, and sound judgment. Not infrequently, seemingly natural deaths can have unnatural or traumatic previous circumstances; therefore, when uncertain, an autopsy is best performed. In many medical examiner systems, the majority of deaths end up being certified as natural.

Sudden death is defined in different ways. It may indicate a death that occurs within 24 hours of the onset of symptoms. It may also indicate the death occurred within 1 hour or even within seconds. There are not many diseases that can cause death within minutes of the onset of symptoms. Natural death means the manner of death is exclusively or 100% natural. If there is a 1% component of another manner of death, it is no longer natural. If there are multiple components of different manners of death commingled in a case investigation, the following rule will apply: a homicide overrides all, then an accident, then a therapeutic complication. A suicide requires the establishment of intent to do harm to oneself. For example, someone with end-stage metastatic liver cancer ingests 100 acetaminophen tablets to commit suicide. In the process of waiting to die, he decides to walk to a store. On the way, he trips in a pothole, falls in the street, strikes his head, and has an expanding subdural hemorrhage. While he is lying there waiting for EMS, a stolen car fleeing the scene of a robbery runs him over, lacerates his heart in half, and he dies within seconds. The manner of death in the case would be homicide. The death occurred as a result of being run over by a car during an illegal act. A lacerated heart is universally fatal regardless of the other violent and natural processes. The death certificate should include only the trauma from the car. If the trauma from the car was not lethal by itself, one may add "other finding" to part two of the cause of death, but the manner would remain homicide.

Heart Disease

Heart disease leading to ventricular irritability to create a lethal arrhythmia is the most significant cause of death in this category. The most common arrhythmia leading to sudden cardiac death is ventricular fibrillation. Ventricular tachyarrhythmias are most commonly seen within 12 hours of a myocardial infarction. Critical coronary atherosclerosis and hypertension are by far the leading causes of these processes. Some diseases that contribute to atherosclerosis and arteriosclerosis formation include hyperlipidemia, high blood pressure, diabetes mellitus, obesity, cigarette smoking, stress, and sedentary life style.

Having 75% or greater blockage in any of the epicardial vessels is considered critical stenosis and is consistent with being alive one second and having loss of consciousness leading to death the next. Hypertensive cardiovascular disease is usually essential in origin from an intrinsic abnormality of sodium metabolism. Other significant causes of hypertension include many types of kidney disease including adult polycystic kidney disease and renal artery stenosis. Hypertension may be sporadic and missed on routine doctor appointments. High blood pressure is also associated with small-vessel coronary artery disease, as is diabetes mellitus, which is a reasonable cause of death by itself. Once people reach a pivotal point of myocardial irritability and go

into ventricular fibrillation they usually have approximately 15 seconds of consciousness left. Prior to losing consciousness, decedents may reach up to chest or neck and mention a fluttering sensation in the chest. They may have pressure, pain, or no expectation of what is to come. Ventricular irritability associated with coronary artery ischemia is due to lack of oxygen and nutrients reaching the conducting system of the heart. If the heart is not cardioverted back to a normal rhythm within 4–6 minutes, there is usually irreversible brain damage.

Another major cause of ventricular irritability leading to fatal arrhythmia is hypertension. Concentric left ventricular hypertrophy usually defined at autopsy as having a left ventricular wall thickness greater than 1.5 cm for most average-sized adults is a known risk factor for sudden cardiac death. Left ventricular thickness is best measured approximately 2 cm below the mitral valve annulus and excludes trabeculations and papillary muscles. As the disease process causing cardiac hypertrophy advances, heart failure may ensue with chamber dilatation. Although the overall heart size is enlarged, the left ventricle wall thickness may be less than 1.4 cm. Although hypertensive disease is the major risk factor for the development of left ventricular hypertrophy, other risk factors include aortic stenosis, either congenital or acquired. The hearts of patients with hypertensive or arteriosclerotic cardiovascular disease typically show evidence of prior infarction and interstitial fibrosis. Both findings also predispose to myocardial irritability and fatal (tachy)arrythmias.

Complications other than tachyarrhythmia and pump failure of myocardial infarctions can result in sudden cardiac death; the most common include the myocardial rupture syndromes including ventricular wall and papillary wall rupture. Typically, these insults occur approximately 1 week following a myocardial infarction, the point at which there is removal of necrotic myocytes by macrophages. Hemopericardium with ensuing cardiac tamponode can occur following ventricular free wall rupture; this scenario is rapidly fatal in most cases, causing decreased venous return to the heart with jugular venous distention.

In young patients, particularly athletes, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy is not an uncommon cause of sudden death. These patients can be asymptomatic prior to the sudden event or may have past episodes of palpitations or syncope. Typically, macroscopic heart evaluation shows cardiac hypertrophy with significant asymmetry of the subaortic septal region, which poses as an outflow obstruction. Microscopic sections from this region show variable degrees of myocyte disarray, fibrosis, myocyte hypertrophy, and small-vessel disease. The disease is due to an autosomal dominant mutation in the cardiac sarcomere apparatus, most commonly the myosin heavy chain, but many mutations have been described.

Arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy can present with sudden unexpected death. At autopsy, the right ventricle is thinned, with microscopic evaluation showing significant transmural infiltration by fibrofatty tissue.

Myocarditis due to a variety of causes including viral, bacterial, fungal, parasitic, autoimmune, and hypersensitivity can present as sudden death. The degree of activity, myonecrosis, and the location of the inflammation (i.e., conduction system involvement) are important in determining the significance of the infiltrates. Notably, eosinophils are seen quite commonly in hypersensitivity myocarditis and can be a clue to the underlying etiology.

Dilated cardiomyopathy is common, and has many etiologies that include idiopathic arteriosclerotic disease, hypertensive cardiovascular disease, alcoholism, elevated catecholamines, myocarditis, postpartum, doxorubicin, endocrinopathies, and genetic diseases. The heart typically is enlarged with a globoid configuration. The microscopic analysis shows interstitial fibrosis.

Rare infiltrative cardiac disease such as amyloidosis, hemochromatosis, primary or metastatic tumors, and sarcoidosis can result in sudden death. Microscopic evaluation in these cases is necessary, with particular attention to nodal tissues.

S. aureus is the most common organism found in infective endocarditis (IE). *S. aureus* endocarditis is associated with the highest mortality and risk of embolism. Increasing age, periannular abscess, heart failure, and absence of surgical therapy were identified in multivariate analysis as independent poor prognostic factors for increased mortality in patients with *S. aureus* IE. Other risk factors for the development of IE include congenital or acquired anatomic valve abnormalities such as stenosis. Impaired cardiac conductivity and function with heart failure not infrequently develops in patients with multiple septic myocardial emboli and infarcts due to IE, particularly with paravalvular abscess formation. According to a recent study of a cohort of 606 cases of infective endocarditis, 99 cases have embolization, of which 32 cases involve the central nervous system (CNS) with significantly higher mortality (65%) than those without CNS emboli.

Recently, genetic abnormalities have been found to underlie many of the intrinsic abnormalities of conducting systems including Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome (WPW) and long Q-T syndrome. Sudden death in WPW is thought to occur as a result of an induction of ventricular tachycardia via an atrioventricular reentry pathway. Long-QT syndrome can also present

with sudden death. Investigations are ongoing around the association of sudden infant death syndrome with long-QT syndrome. Recent data is suggesting that a genetic basis for the arrhythmogenic disease with the identification of the long-QT genes.

Sudden death related to cardiac valve pathology other than endocarditis is relatively uncommon, as valve replacement surgery has become a standard therapy. Patients with aortic stenosis, especially when acutely symptomatic, can experience sudden cardiac death. Most cases of aortic stenosis are caused by either rheumatic heart disease or valve calcification, which can occur on trileaflet or congentially (uni)bicuspid valves. The mechanism for death in severe aortic stenosis (valve area <1cm2) appears to be through left ventricular hypertrophy and subsequent myocardial instability. In rare instances of severe aortic valve calcification, the deposits can erode the region and involve the conduction system. Mitral valve prolapse has long been associated with sudden cardiac death. The underlying etiology is not well understood, but seems to most frequently involve a severe valve deformity with a redundant, thickened, myxomatous mitral valve and ventricular arrhythmias such as ventricular fibrillation. On histologic sectioning, the mitral valve will show deposition of acid mucopolysacchrides.

Coronary artery anomalies are not uncommon but only certain anomalies result in ischemia such as anomalous origin of a coronary artery from the opposite sinus (ACAOS), anomalous left coronary artery from the pulmonary artery (ALCAPA), ostial atresia/stenosis, and coronary artery fistulas. Left-sided ACAOS can result in acute takeoff angles with an increased risk of sudden death during or shortly after exercise. Besides the acute angle take off, there maybe ridge like defect at the coronary ostea further decreasing blood flow in times of accelerated heart rates with increased oxygen demand. Myocardial tunneling is another anomalous coronary artery distribution that maybe associated with increased arrhythmogenic potential. There is debate about the significance of this anomaly. Some still believe it may be significant when a large portion of the epicardial coronary artery dips deeply into the left ventricle wall for a considerable distance, during times of rapid muscle contraction.

Vascular Disease

Causes of sudden death associated with vascular disease include those that lead to occlusion, narrowing, or rupture of a blood vessel. Atherosclerotic aneurysms can rupture, leading to rapid loss of consciousness and death. These aneurysms can occur just about anywhere, but are by far most common in the abdominal aorta. Most abdominal aortic aneurysms occur below the renal artery. The risk of rupture increases with the size of the aneurism, smoking history, and hypertension. The annual risk of rupture over 7 cm in size is 33%. Retroperitoneal rupture is typically associated with hematoma formation, whereas rupture into the abdominal cavity can be rapidly fatal, with hemoperitoneum and shock. Patients who have a ruptured aortic aneurysm and reach the hospital have a 50% mortality rate, with the overall mortality rate greater than 85%.

Aortic dissection is characterized by an intimal tear followed by a dissection of blood within the wall of the aorta, most commonly the tunica media. Rupture of this dissecting aortic hematoma may lead to hemothoraces, hemopericardium, or fatal arrhythmia. Aortic dissection is a major cause of sudden death, mostly in patients over 50 years of age with the underlying risk factor being essential hypertension. However, pregnant women and patients with connective-tissue diseases such as Marfan's syndrome also make up a significant affected patient population. Aortic dissection can also occur following accidental or iatrogenic trauma to the aortic intima. In younger patients and those with connective tissue disease, microscopy may reveal cystic medial degeneration of the aortic media.

Most spontaneous subarachnoid hemorrhages (SAH) (90%) are caused by ruptured intracranial saccular (berry) aneurysms. SAH occurs at a peak age of 55–60 years. Rupture of an intracranial aneurysm is believed to account for 0.4 to 0.6% of all deaths. SAH is associated with a greater than 50% mortality rate. Some hospital-based studies suggest that approximately 10% of patients with aneurismal SAH die prior to reaching the hospital, 25% die within 24 hours of SAH onset, and about 45% die within 30 days. It is not unusual to perform forensic autopsies where death was almost instantaneous and outside of a hospital. The mechanism of death in such cases is cardiac arrhythmia, which is described in greater depth later. Most intracranial aneurysms (approximately 85%) are located in the anterior circulation, predominately on the circle of Willis. Risk factors for both SAH and intracranial aneurysms are similar and include hypertension, cigarette smoking, and alcohol consumption. Atherosclerosis is an independent risk factor for the development of intracranial aneurysms. The natural history of subarachnoid hemorrhage shows that rupture often occurs when they reach a size over 7 mm. Rupture of an aneurysm releases blood directly into the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) under arterial pressure. The blood spreads quickly within the CSF, rapidly increasing intracranial pressure. A major symptom associated with SAH includes patients describing the worst headache of one's life. Increased intracranial

pressure is associated with the Cushing's triad (hypertension, bradycardia, and abnormal respiration). SAH is associated with cerebral edema and subsequent herniation. Tonsillar and central transtentorial herniation is associated with compression of cardiovascular and respiratory centers in the medulla and as such is rapidly fatal. Other less common causes of subarachnoid hemorrhages include angiomas and arteriovenous malformations. Ruptured berry aneurysms are the most common natural cause of SAH, whereas trauma is the most common overall cause. Ruptured berry aneurysms are a leading cause of sudden death in women during sexual activity, whereas for men it is heart disease.

Cerebrovascular accidents (episodes), which include ischemic or intracerebral hemorrhage, can lead to sudden death. I recommend not using the term "accident" because there is nothing accidental about this process and its use often adds confusion in forensic proceedings. The terms "stroke" or "event" as an alternative is less confusing to nonmedical personnel. Thromboembolic events can underlie ischemic cerebral events and are associated with heart disease, valvular pathology, or carotid artery disease. Hypertension is a major risk factor for intraparenchymal hemorrhage and may lead to increased intracranial pressure, herniation, and death.

The greatest percentage of thrombi resulting in pulmonary embolism is thought to originate in the deep veins of the lower extremities. Deep-venous thrombosis can also occur in the pelvis or other locations. Fragments of blood clot may break off and embolize to the pulmonary arteries. An occlusion greater than 50 to 75% of the large pulmonary vessels results in a rise of the pulmonary artery pressure greater than 40 mmHg. This rise of pulmonary arterial pressure is accompanied by an increase in right ventricular diastolic, right atrial, and systemic venous pressures, with a decrease in cardiac output resulting in sudden death. Patients who have multiple small pulmonary emboli or in situ thrombus formation over time may present with increasing shortness of breath and right-sided heart failure. Because the lungs have dual circulation, infarctions are less common unless there is significant underlying natural disease with decreased cardiac function.

Various types of vasculitis or blood vessel inflammation can cause wall thickening, thrombosis, dissection, and rupture. Mesenteric thrombosis may be associated with polyarteritis nodosum and other autoimmune conditions.

Other Causes of Sudden Death

Rare undiagnosed brain tumors may present with sudden death. Infiltration or edema formation into the key respiratory/cardiac centers of the brain with possible herniation are two mechanisms. Early or late stage malignancies may sometimes metastasize to the heart and interfere with the conducting system, causing a fatal arrhythmia. Other causes of sudden death in patients with malignancies include cardiovascular events such as acute myocardial infarction, therapeutic complications (i.e., anaphylaxis), and metabolic derangements. Rare causes of sudden death in patients with tumors or malignancies include erosion of large vessels or visci with fatal hemorrhage. A colloid cyst of the third ventricle may lead to sudden death and is usually associated with premortem postural headaches. In certain positions, the cyst will act like a ball valve and suddenly block the flow of cerebral spinal fluid, resulting in acute obstructive hydrocephalus. One may be fine standing but develop symptoms when he or she lies down. This buildup of cerebral spinal fluid pressure can cause a fatal arrhythmia. Bacterial pneumonia with the combination of hypoxia and bacterial toxins and end products can cause sudden death.

Status asthmaticus and sudden asphyxic asthma are life-threatening forms of asthma. These cases are not unusual in a forensic setting. Status asthmaticus is defined as an acute attack of respiratory failure due to airway inflammation, edema, and mucous plugging. Sudden asphyxic asthma is due to brochospasm rather than airway inflammation. Viral infections and other causes have been implicated as precipitants of these potentially fatal complications. Grossly in both cases, the lungs may appear so much hyperaerated that at times rib indentations will show. Thick mucus plugs may obstruct the upper airways. Sudden death in asthmatic patients is thought to be secondary to fatal arrhythmia, occurring as a consequence of global hypoxia and right heart failure.

There is a condition known as sudden unexpected death in epilepsy (SUDEP). The mechanism is unclear but this phenomenon occurs in up to 18% of patients with epilepsy, presumably in those with subtherapeutic levels of anticonvulsants. Autonomic dysfunction has been proposed as a mechanism. Other mechanisms for death in patients with epilepsy include accidental/traumatic incidents such as drowning and choking that occur during a seizure. Hypoxia as a result of respiratory compromise can result in ischemic cardiac events. This may be part of the final mechanism of death in epileptic patients experiencing status epilepticus. Another interesting point to remember is that there is often very rapid rigor mortis formation in deaths directly following static epilepticus due to substantial adenosine triphosphate (ATP) depletion associated with prolonged muscle contractions from prolonged convulsions. Usually there are few pathologic findings that explain the sudden death

in epileptic patients. Autopsy findings may include bite marks to the tongue with hemorrhage or a voided urinary bladder. There may be no finding at all. These are nonspecific findings and seizure activity may also occur prior to many other nonepilepsy-related deaths.

Fatal anaphylaxis can result from exposure to insect stings, foods, latex, drugs, chemicals, and exercise. This mast cell-mediated systemic reaction results in severe angioedema and bronchoconstriction of the upper respiratory tract along with hypotension resulting in respiratory and circulatory collapse. Death caused by anaphylaxis is primarily due to airway obstruction when laryngeal edema fills the rich lymphatic supply of the epiglottic folds. Increased mast cell tryptase levels in the patient's serum can be detected that peaks approximately 15 to 60 minutes after the onset of anaphylaxis and then declines with a half-life of about 2 hours.

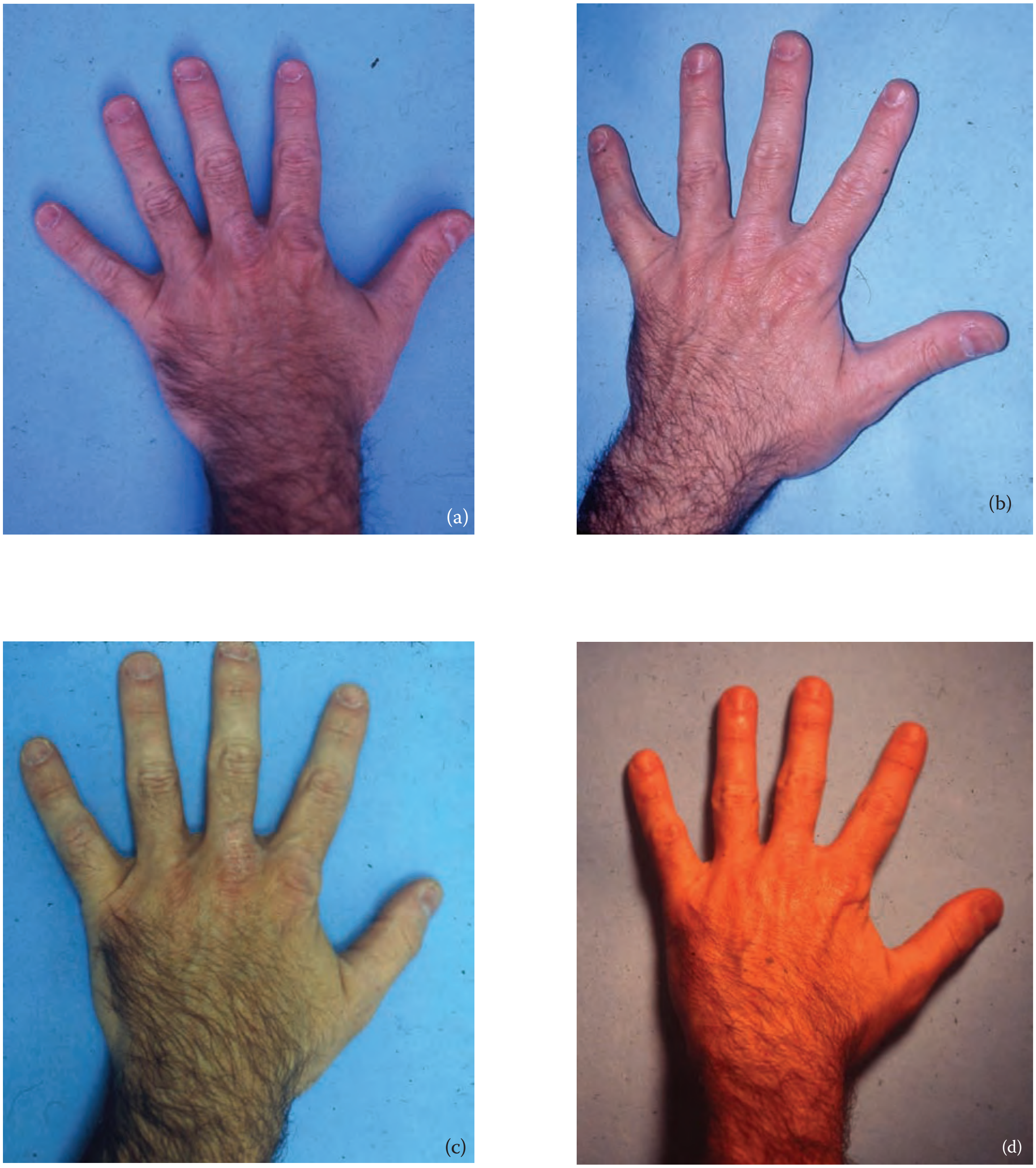
The mortality for gastrointestinal bleeding (GI) in the case of ruptured esophageal varices most commonly encountered in patients with portal hypertension is high. Intra-aortic balloon pumps are lifesaving procedures but only if the patient presents in a timely fashion. Other causes of fatal upper gastrointestinal bleeding include stomach and duodenal ulcers; in this scenario the source is arterial as opposed to venous in esophageal varices. Fatal lower gastrointestinal bleeding can be seen in patients with angiodysplasia, diverticulitis, and carcinoma; however, this scenario is less common than upper GI bleeding.

Mostly complications of morbid obesity are thought to underlie the association with sudden death. Hypertension, left ventricular hypertrophy, and cardiomegaly are all independent risk factors for sudden death. Postural asphyxia may occur as a result of obesity. Morbid obesity is a reasonable cause of death by itself due to stress on the heart. An individual who is three times the expected body weight has roughly three times the vasculature with three times the blood volume to pump. In times of other stress, this can have devastating consequences on the heart, with death by arrhythmia.

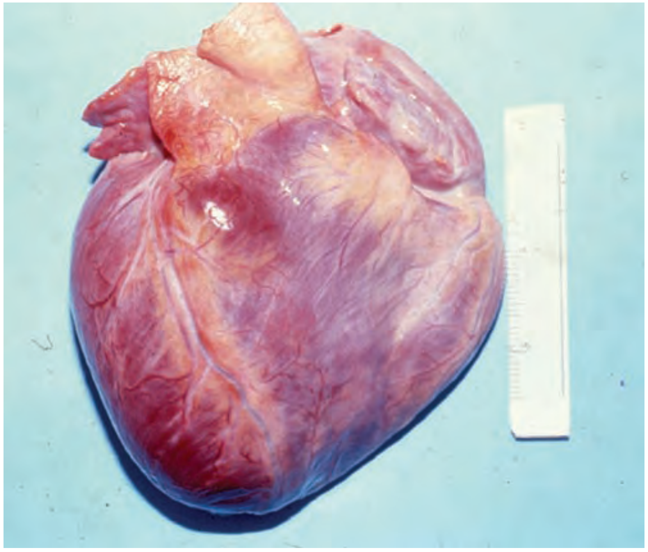
Waterhouse–Friderichsen syndrome was first described as occurring in patients with meningococcemia and is characterized by severe bacteremia and bilateral adrenal hemorrhages. This combination results in overwhelming shock and, if untreated, sudden death can occur. Organisms other than *N. meningitis,* such as *E.Coli,* have been reported to produce this syndrome.

Multiorgan failure and death can be seen in sickle cell anemia patients with an acute crisis. Precipitants may include infection, dehydration, hypoxia, physical excretion, vaso-occlusion, or fat embolus following bone infarction. This acute hemolytic sickling crisis results in severe hypoxemia with end organ failure. Patients with sickle cell anemia have auto-infracted spleens and are much more susceptible to encapsulated organisms such as pneumococcal bacteria. Even patients with sickle cell trait may develop crisis in times of great physical exertion with dehydration, such as basic training in the army or boot camp.

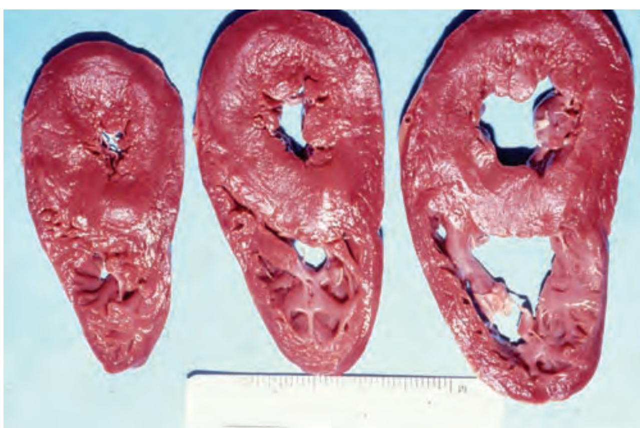
Natural disease processes may weaken the body, making fatal traumatic injury more likely. Osteoporosis from aging, Cushing syndrome, steroid use, and other natural disease processes will make bones more fragile and allow fractures to occur more easily.



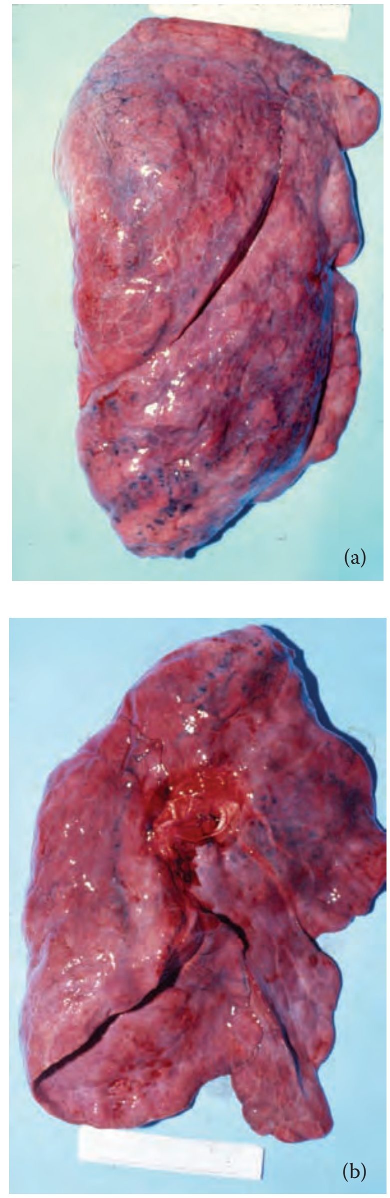
When examining photographic evidence it may be important to have knowledge of the type of camera, film, and lighting used when documenting different disease states. These four photos demonstrate different types of lighting causing variation in picture color. Figure (a) was taken in overcast sunlight, (b) with camera flash, (c) under fluorescent light, and (d) with a Tungsten filament regular light bulb. If your opinion is that a photographic image is not interpretable, it is perfectly acceptable to say that you cannot render an opinion based on this two-dimensional image.



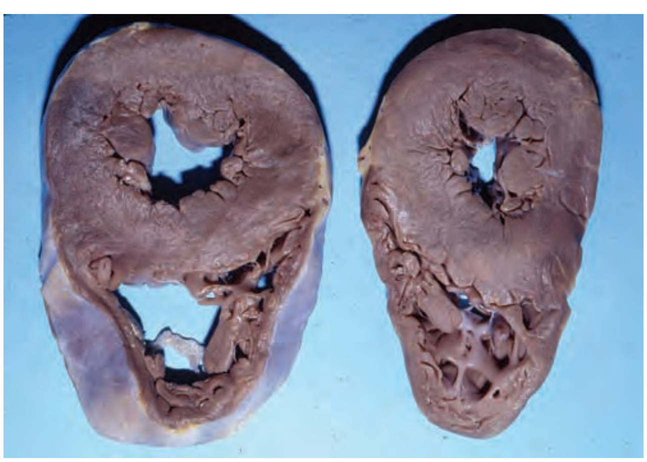
Normal fresh heart.



Sections of a normal fresh heart showing right and left ventricle.

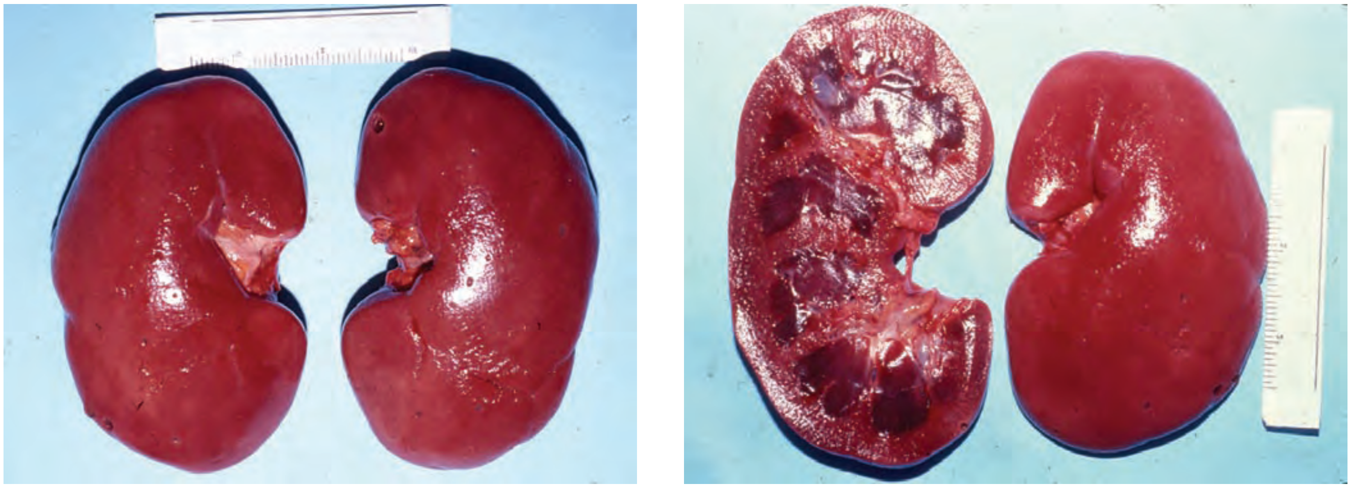


Normal fresh left lung (a) demonstrating two lobes. Right lungs (b) have three lobes.



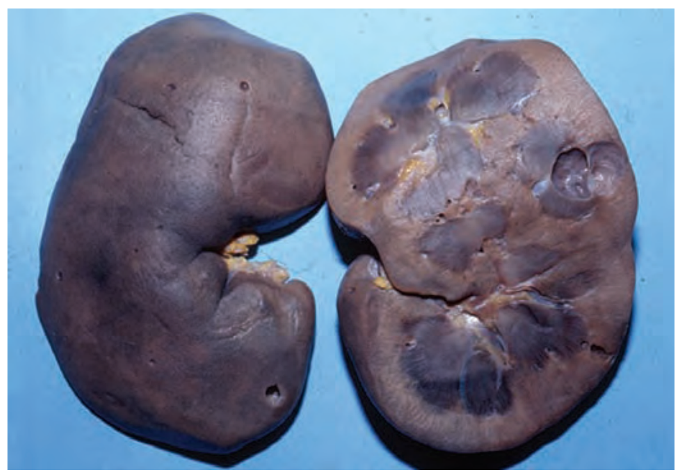
Sections of normal right and left ventricle after formaldehyde fixation.

Normal lung fixed in formaldehyde.

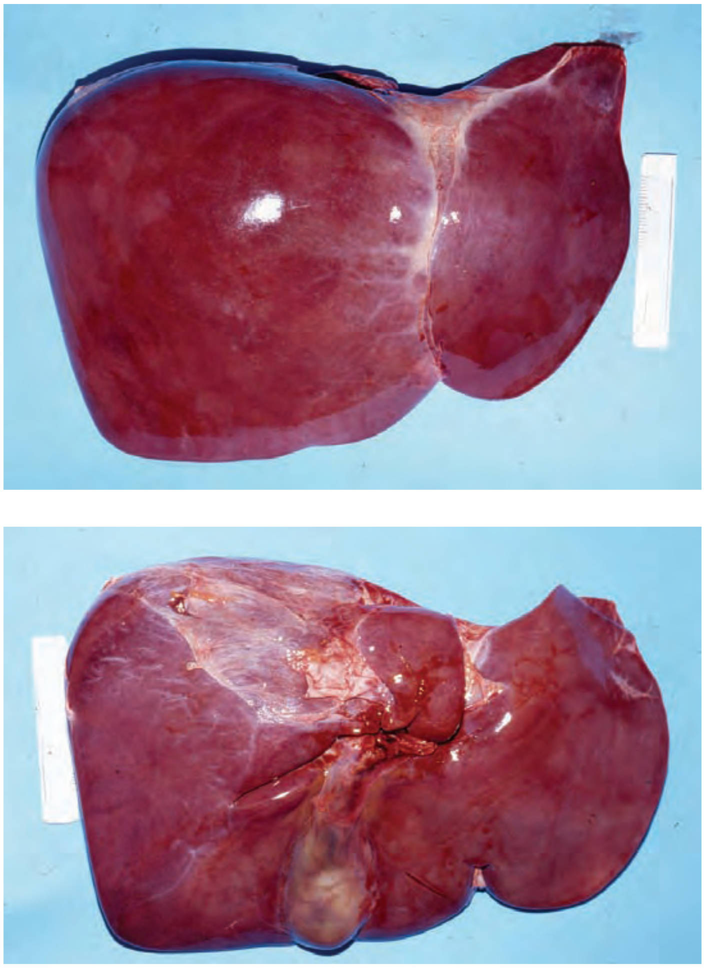


Normal fresh kidneys.

Non-fixed fresh kidneys. Note the pale discoloration resulting from fatal blood loss prior to death due to a gunshot wound.

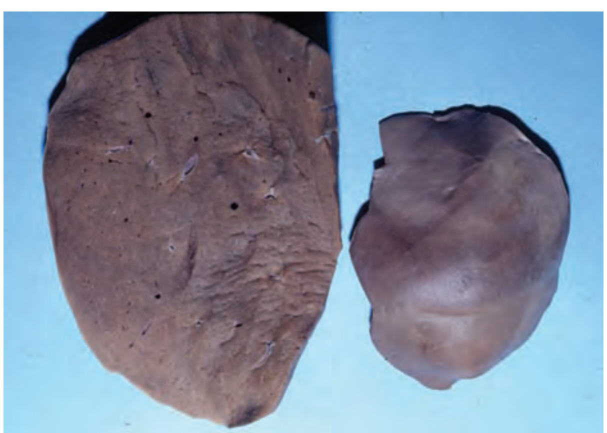


Normal kidney fixed in formaldehyde.

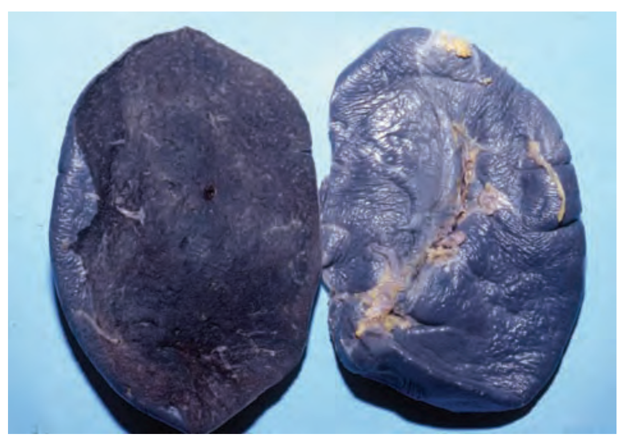


Normal fresh liver.

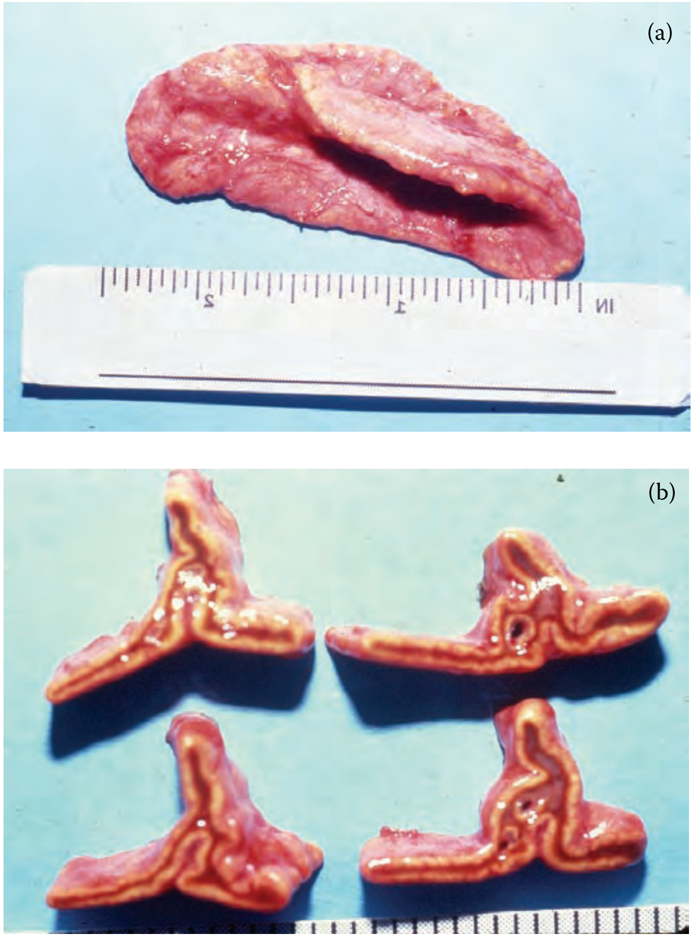
Normal fresh spleen.



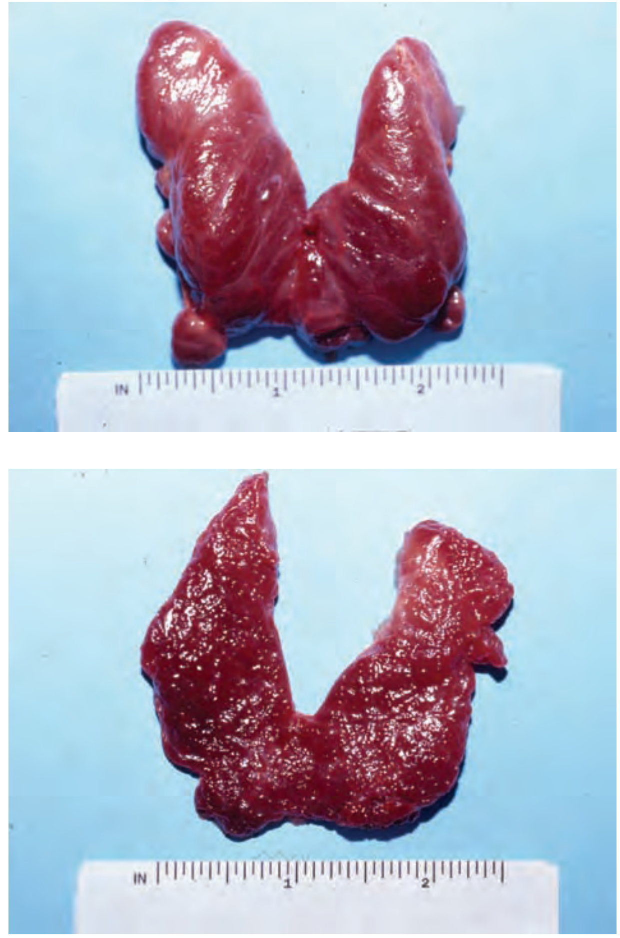
Normal liver fixed in formaldehyde.



Normal spleen fixed in formaldehyde.

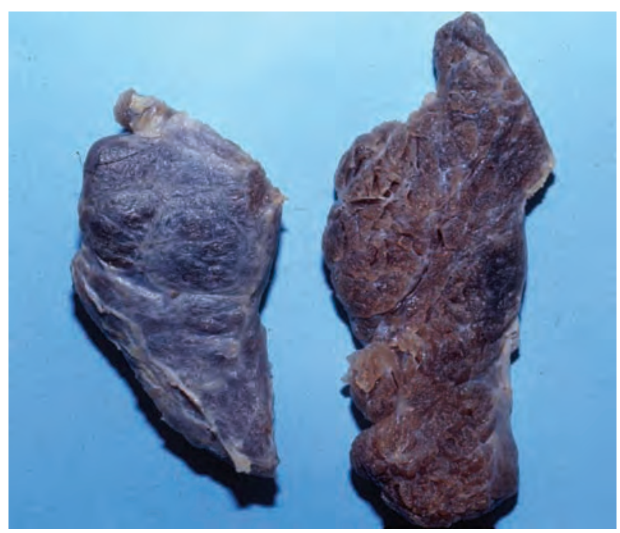


Normal fresh adrenal gland intact (a) and sectioned (b).

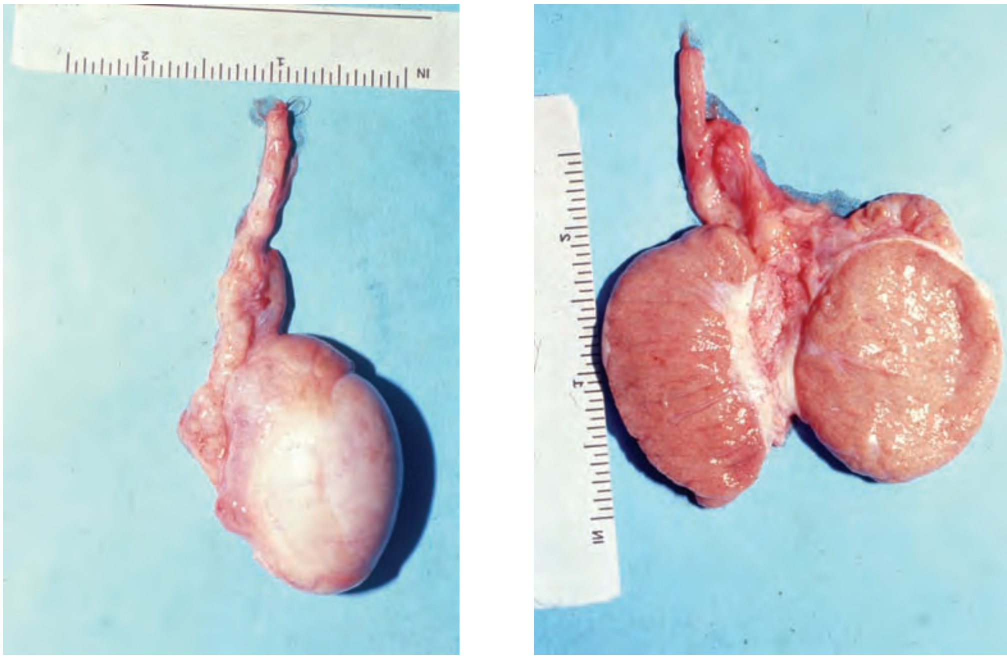


Normal fresh thyroid gland.

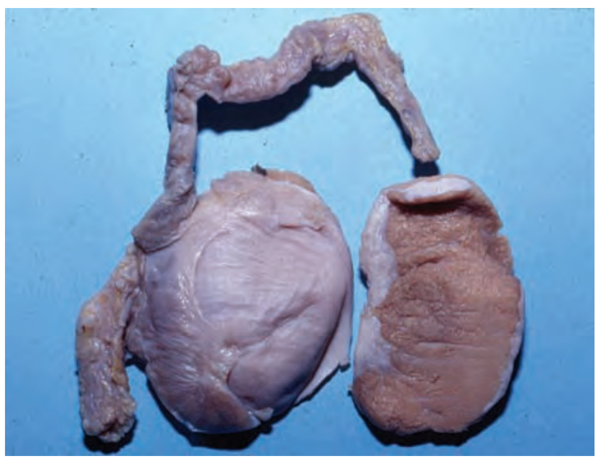
Normal adrenal gland section fixed in formaldehyde.



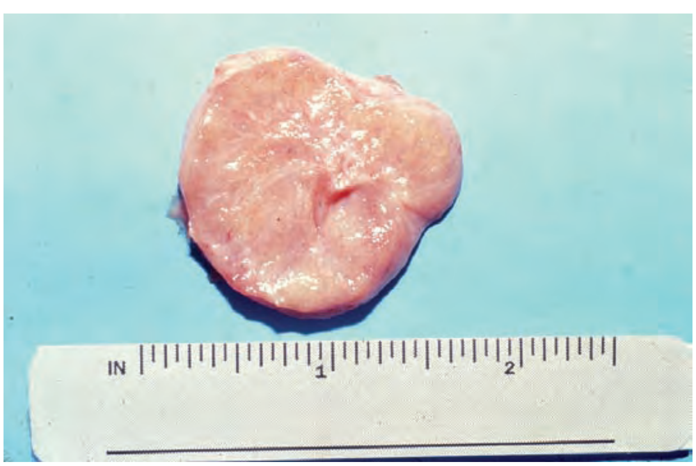
Normal thyroid fixed in formaldehyde.



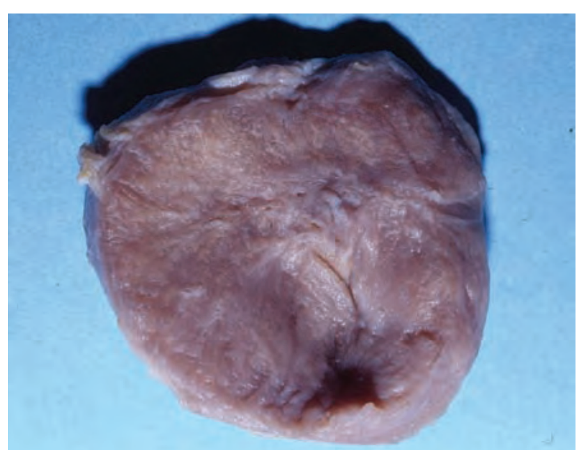
Normal fresh testes.



Normal testes fixed in formaldehyde.

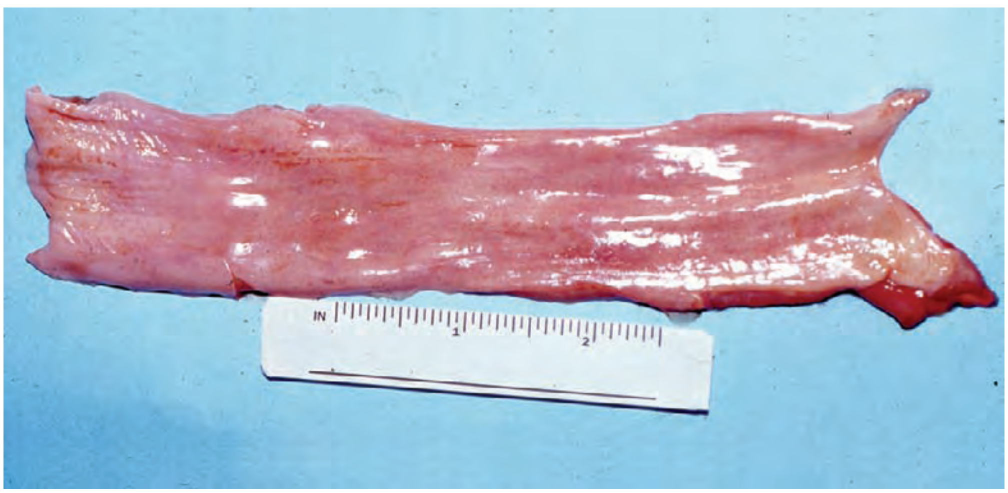


Normal fresh prostate.

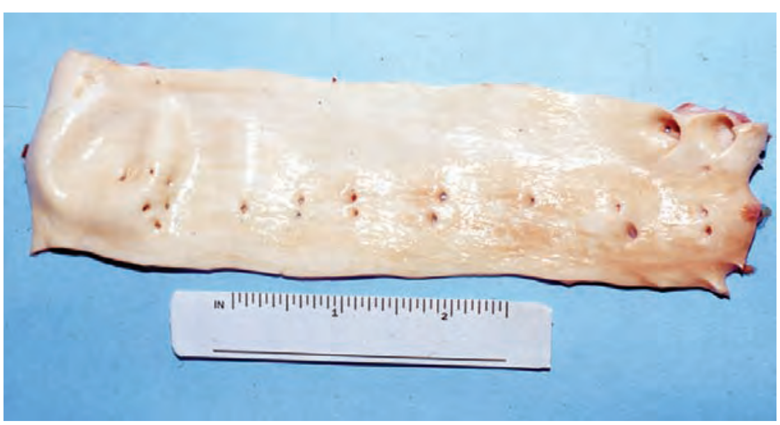


Normal prostate fixed in formaldehyde.

Normal fresh pancreas.



Normal fresh esophagus.



Aorta with slight atherosclerosis. Note the fatty streaks on the intimal surface.

Normal fresh bladder.

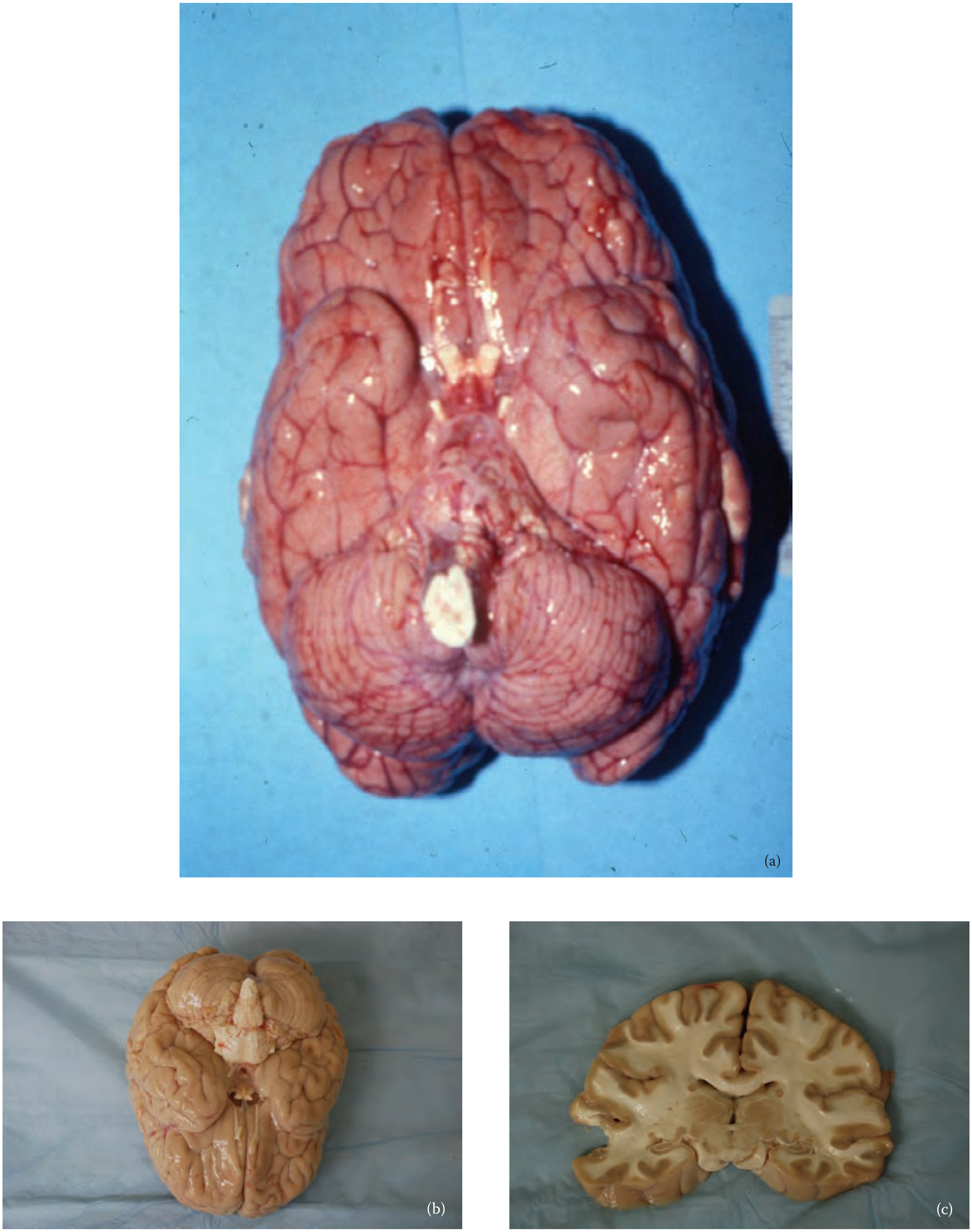
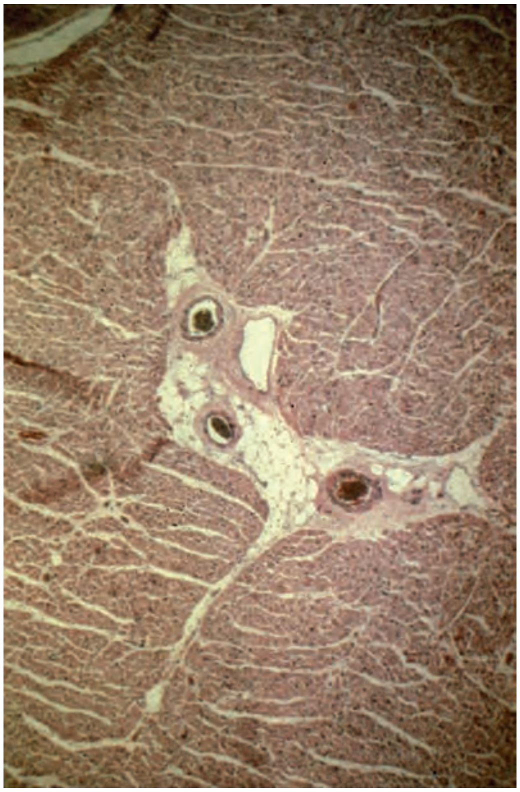


Figure (a) demonstrates congestion of fresh brain. Note the slight pink color. Figures (b) and (c) demonstrate fresh brain in an individual who exsanguinated from a ruptured aortic aneurysm. Note the pale discoloration due to blood loss.

This figure depicts a decedent with an endotracheal tube in the right side of his mouth. It also demonstrates the "purple head sign," a common finding in victims of sudden death, particularly cardiac death. The explanation for this finding is not known in entirety but is attributed to uncontrolled terminal sympathetic nervous system discharges, which open free capillary sphincters and produce a gush of capillary blood.

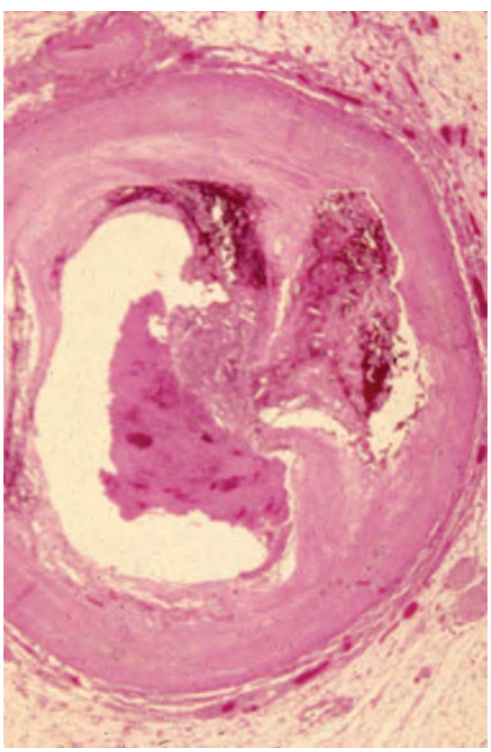
Morbid obesity. This is a legitimate cause of death and can stand alone on a death certificate.

Petechiae associated with heart disease and resuscitation.

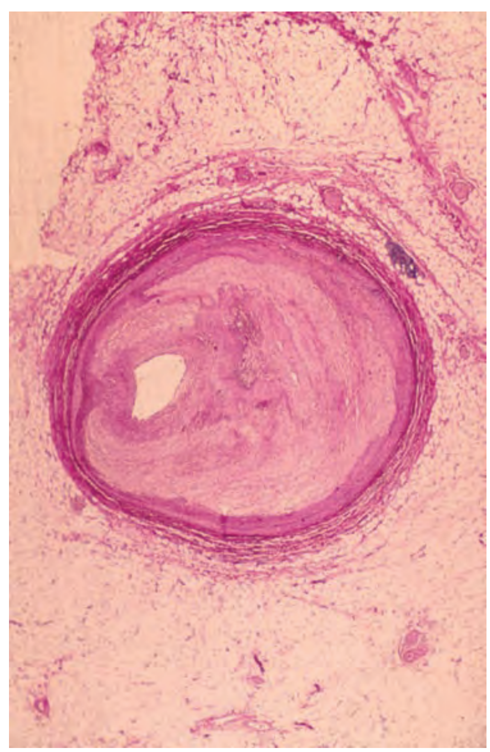


Low-power magnified view of small coronary arteries with thrombosis.

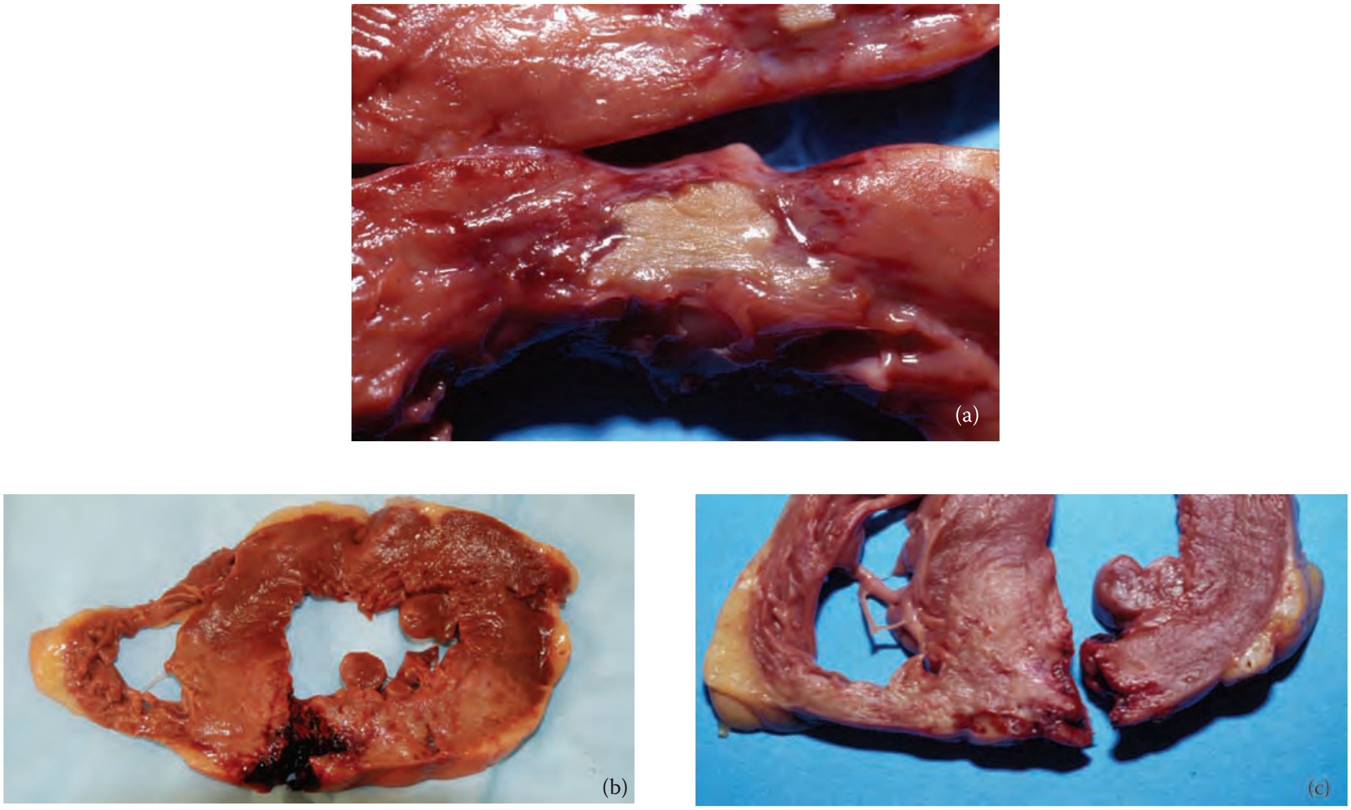
Epicardial vessel with complete occlusion by organizing thrombus. Note the adjacent epicardial hemorrhage.



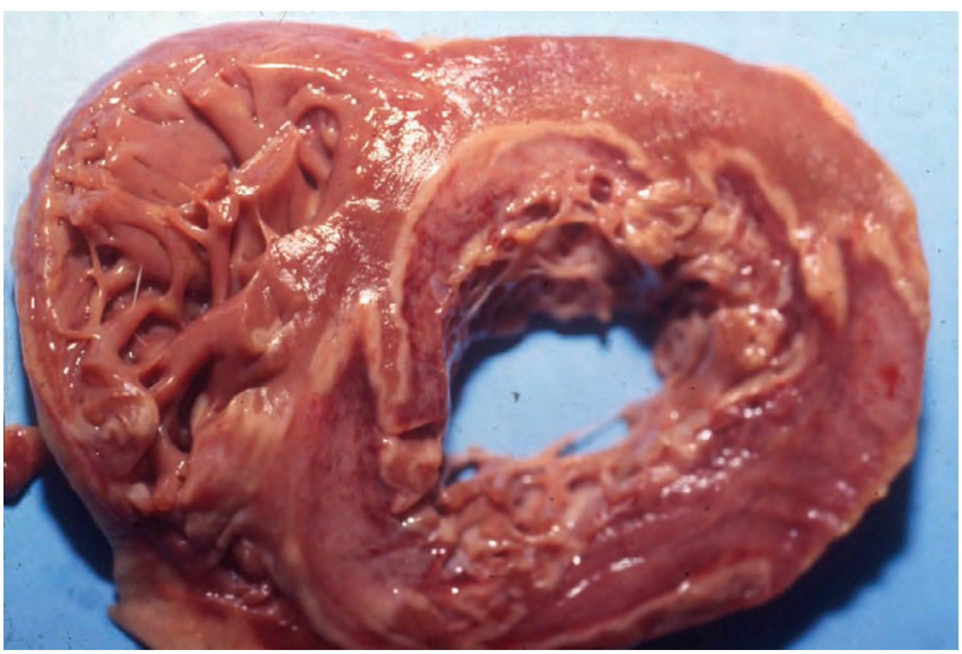
Coronary artery with a ruptured atherosclerotic plaque and thrombus formation.



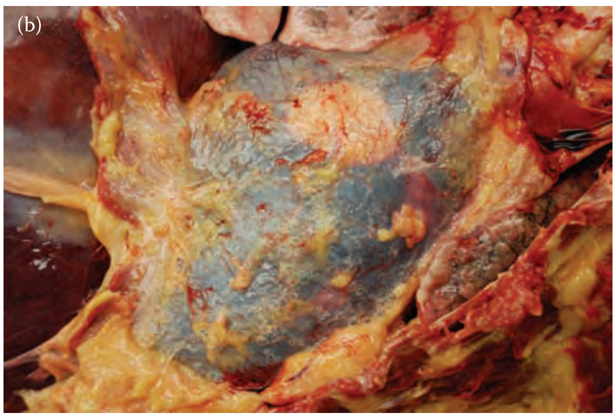
Marked coronary atherosclerosis in an epicardial vessel.

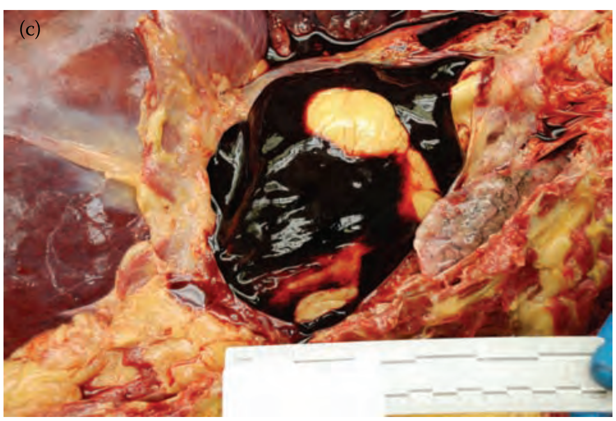


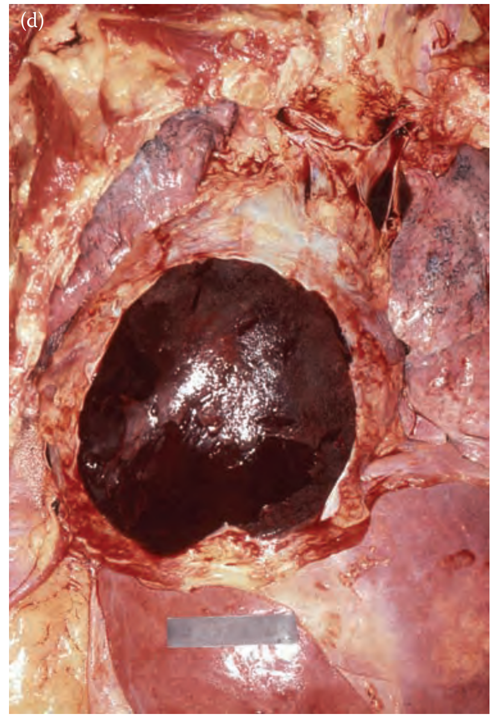
An acute myocardial infarction. Note the yellow discoloration due to necrosis. This infarction is approximately 3 to 6 days old. In Figure (b) and (c), there is a transmural acute myocardial infarction with rupture.



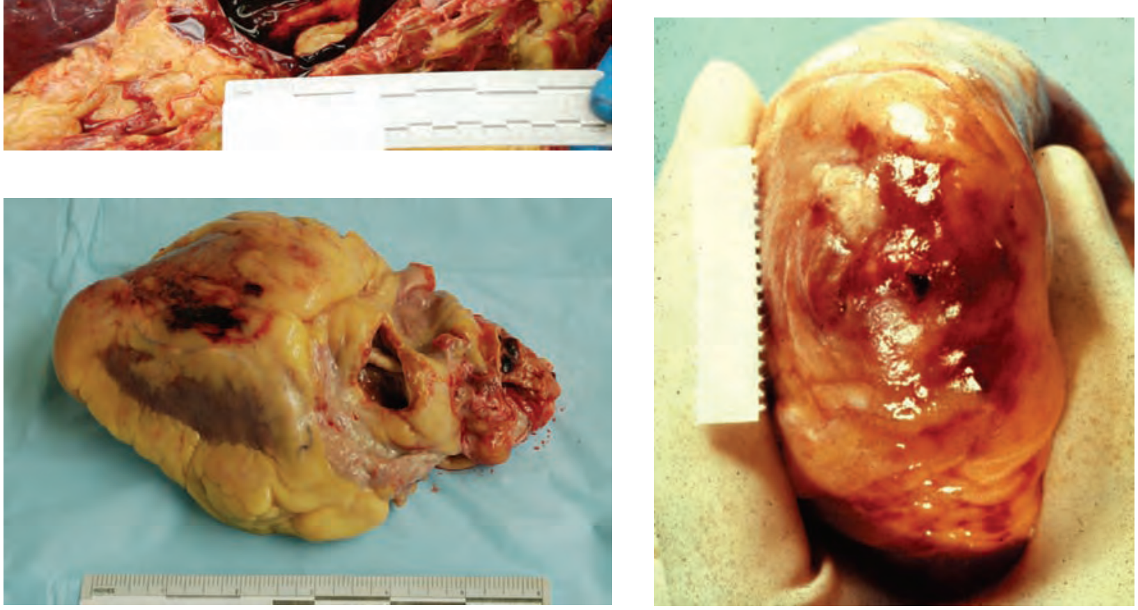
Acute myocardial infarction.



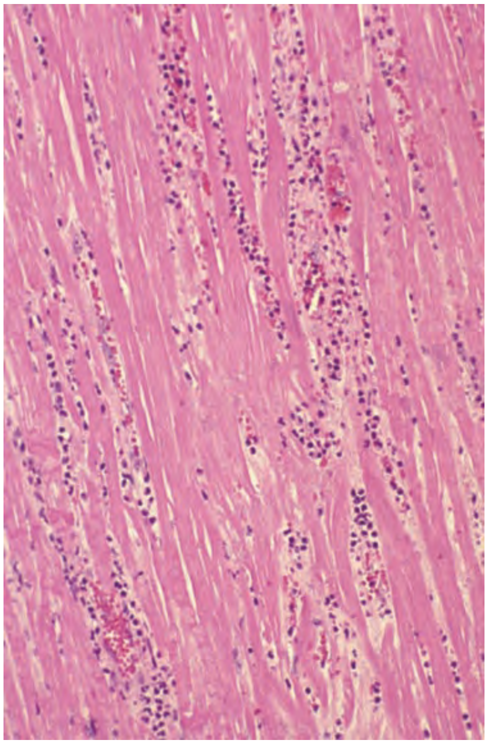




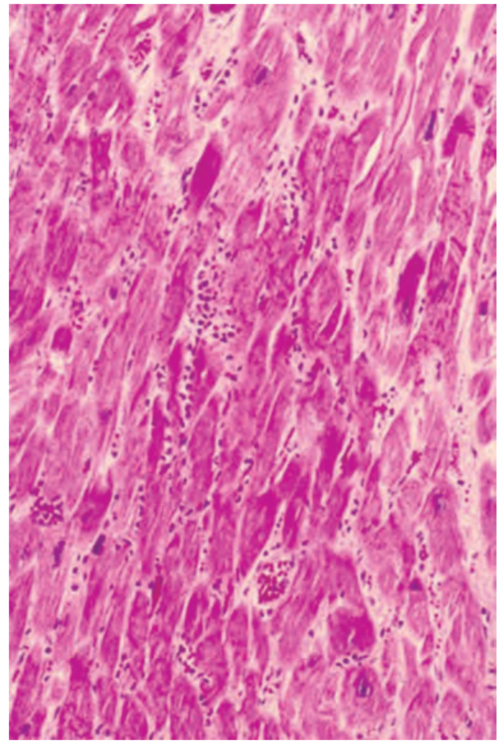
View of the thoracic cavity looking downward at the heart during autopsy (a) and (b). Note the purple discoloration of the pericardial sac due to underlying accumulation of blood. Note the two different examples with large blood clot encasing the heart after the pericardial sac was removed (c) and (d). This demonstrates a cardiac tamponade following an acute ruptured myocardial infarction.



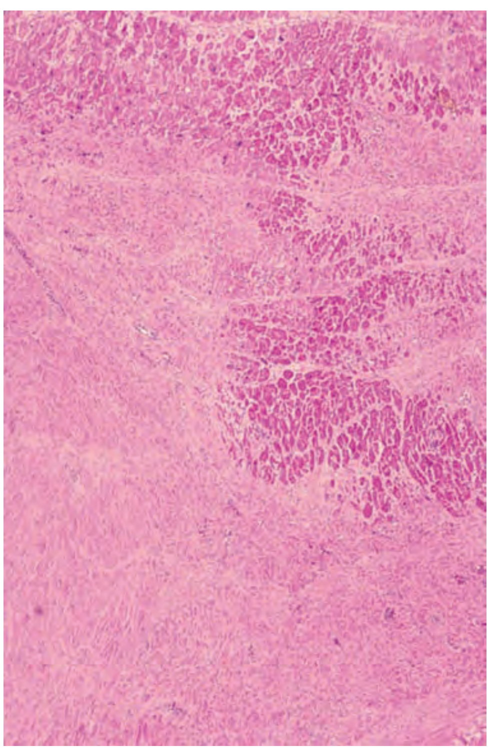
Two examples of hearts demonstrating acute ruptured myocardial infarction. Note the adjacent hemorrhage and perforation site. This resulted in cardiac tamponade and sudden death.



This microscopic section of heart muscle reveals an acute myocardial infarction with hemorrhage, polymorphonuclear cell infiltrates, and myocardial necrosis.

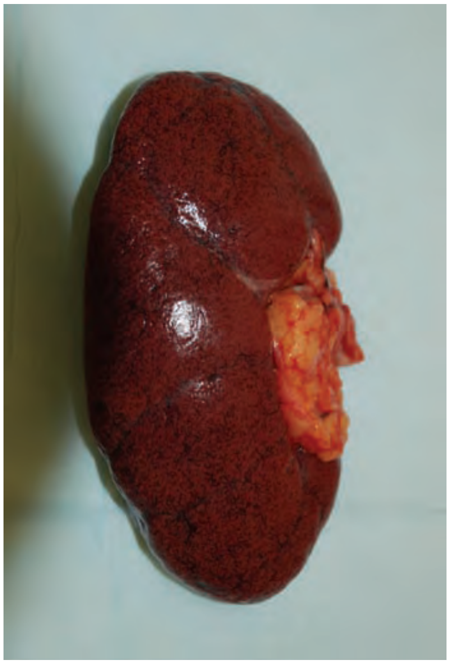


This acute myocardial infarction demonstrates coagulative necrosis with contraction bands. There are also polymorphonuclear cell infiltrates.

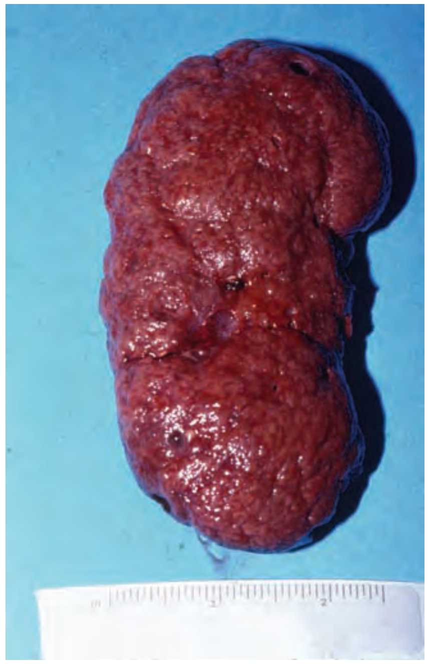


This histopathologic section of myocardium reveals an old infarction with fibrosis.

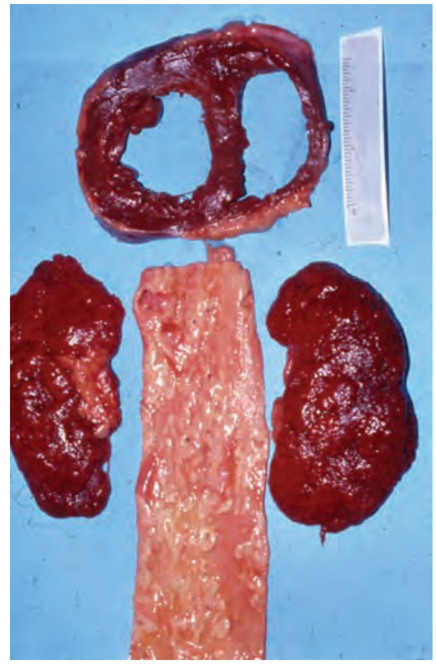
This low-power view of heart muscle reveals patchy areas of fibrosis consisting of healed hypoperfusion infarctions secondary to a remote trauma with severe shock. Also note the perivascular fibrosis.



Early to moderate nephro-arteriolosclerosis.

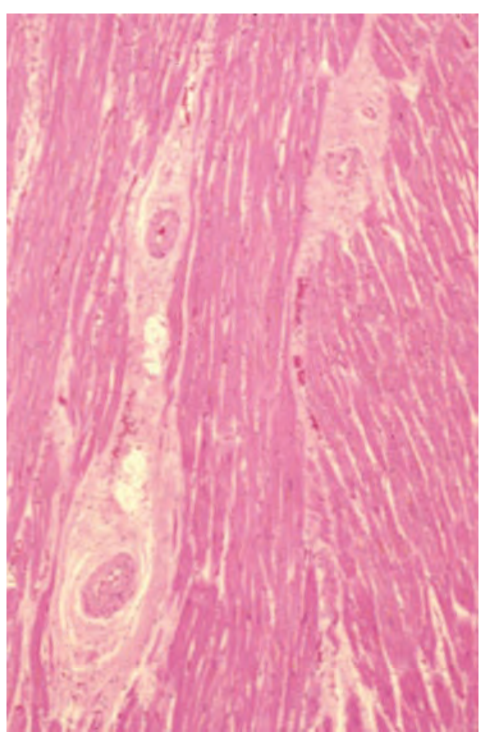


Moderate to marked nephro-arteriolosclerosis.

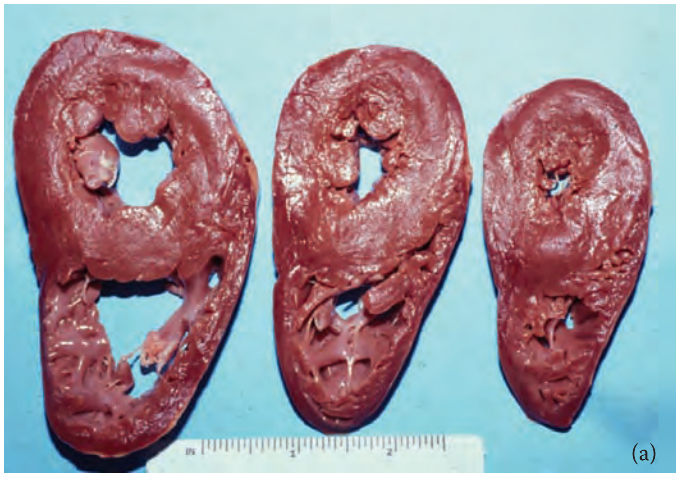


Nephro-arteriolosclerosis associated with hypertensive cardiovascular disease. Note the cardiac hypertrophy and biventricular dilatation in this failing heart. There is also moderate atherosclerosis of the aorta. Note the markedly granular subcapsular kidney surfaces and cortical scarring also associated with this process.

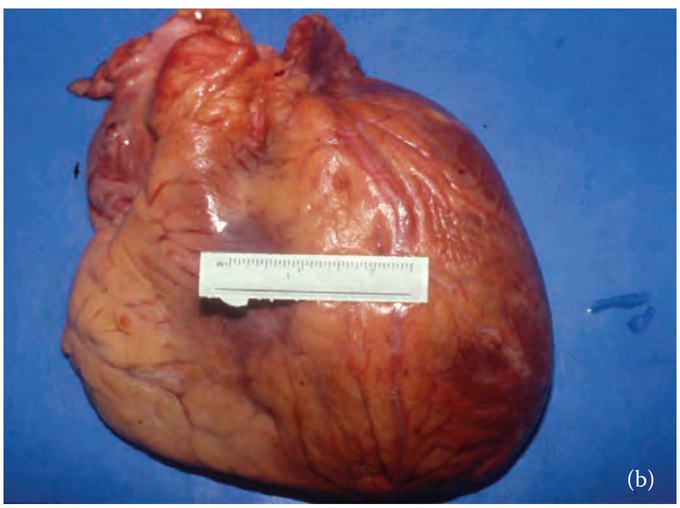
Arteriovenous hemodialysis grafts for treatment of chronic renal failure due to hypertensive cardiovascular disease.

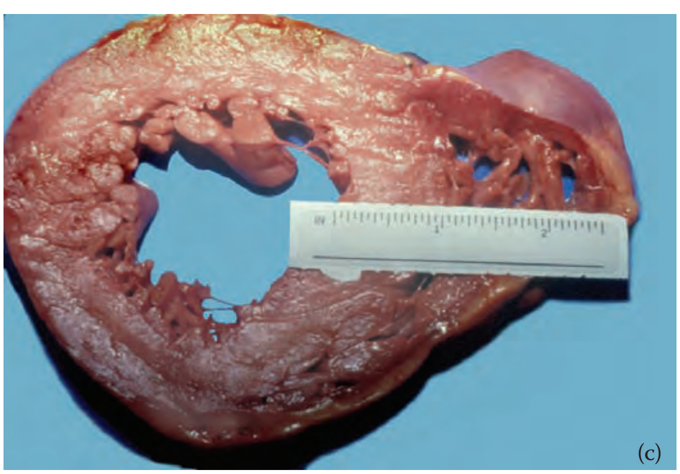


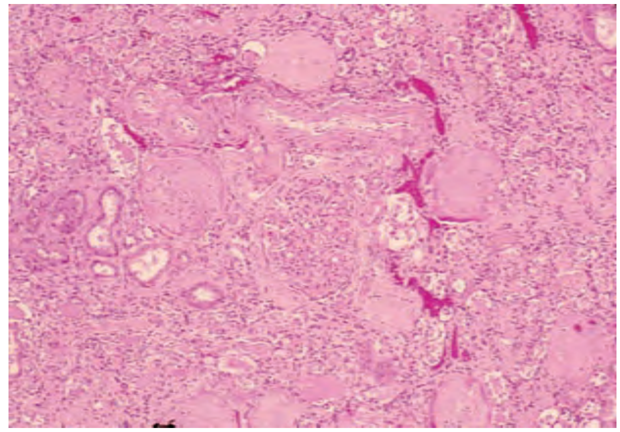
This microscopic image of myocardium reveals significant perivascular fibrosis and small vessel disease in a patient who had a long history of hypertensive cardiovascular disease and diabetes mellitus.



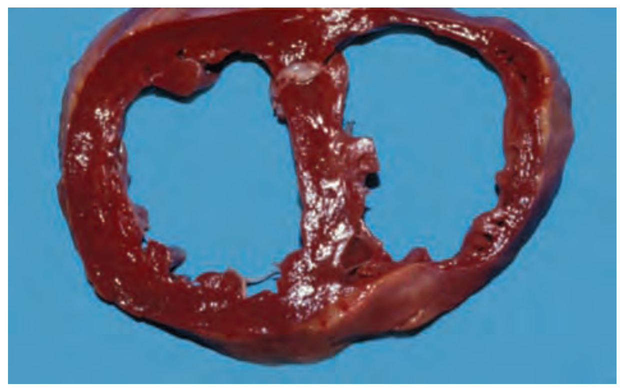
Normal cross sections of heart (a). Compare this image to the ones below. Figure (b) shows a markedly enlarged heart due to hypertensive cardiovascular disease. This heart is diffusely enlarged and shows cardiac hypertrophy. Figure (c) is a markedly hypertrophied heart with extreme concentric left ventricle hypertrophy. This individual had severe hypertension.



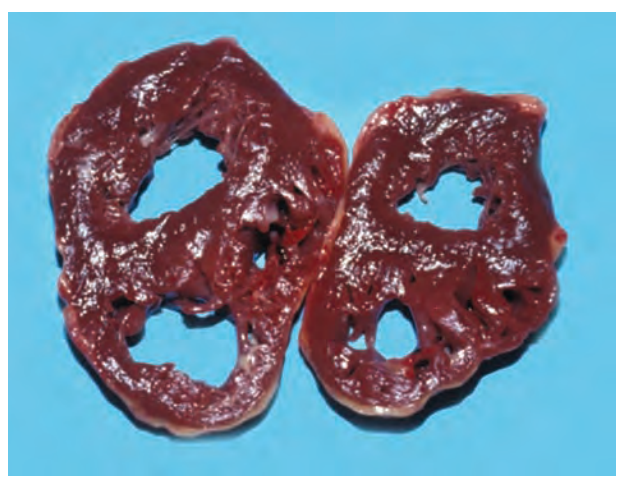




This is a microscopic section of kidney showing fibrosis, arteriolosclerosis, and nephrosclerosis due to hypertensive cardiovascular disease.

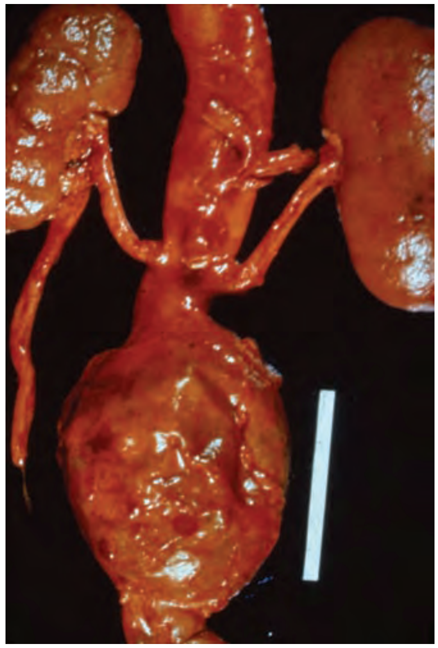


The right and left ventricles show marked dilatation. This individual died of a peripartum cardiomyopathy. A dilated cardiomyopathy or end stage hypertensive cardiovascular disease with cardiac failure will appear the same grossly.



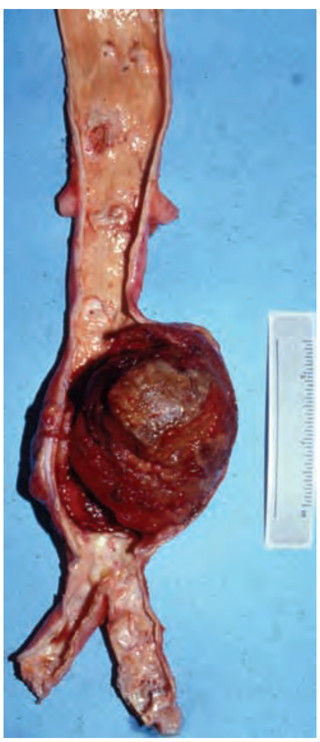
The sections of these ventricles reveal marked right ventricle hypertrophy. This individual had end-stage primary pulmonary fibrosis with cor pulmonale and cardiac failure.

The intimal lining of an aorta with marked atherosclerosis in a decedent with a longstanding history of smoking, diabetes, high cholesterol, and high blood pressure.



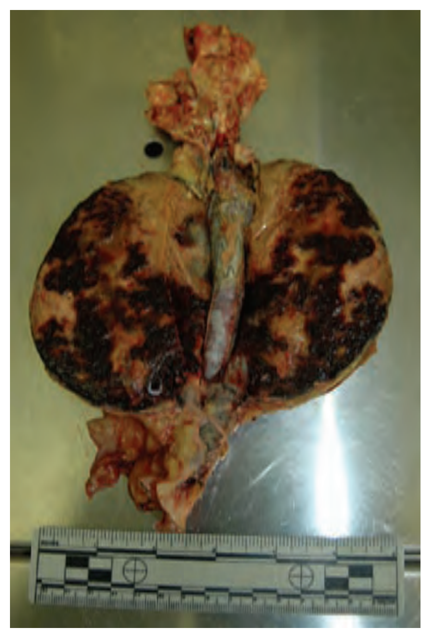
Abdominal aortic atherosclerotic aneurysm shown in its typical location inferior to the renal arteries and above the iliac bifurcation.

An abdominal atherosclerotic aneurysm with a rupture at its anterior aspect and visible thrombosis.

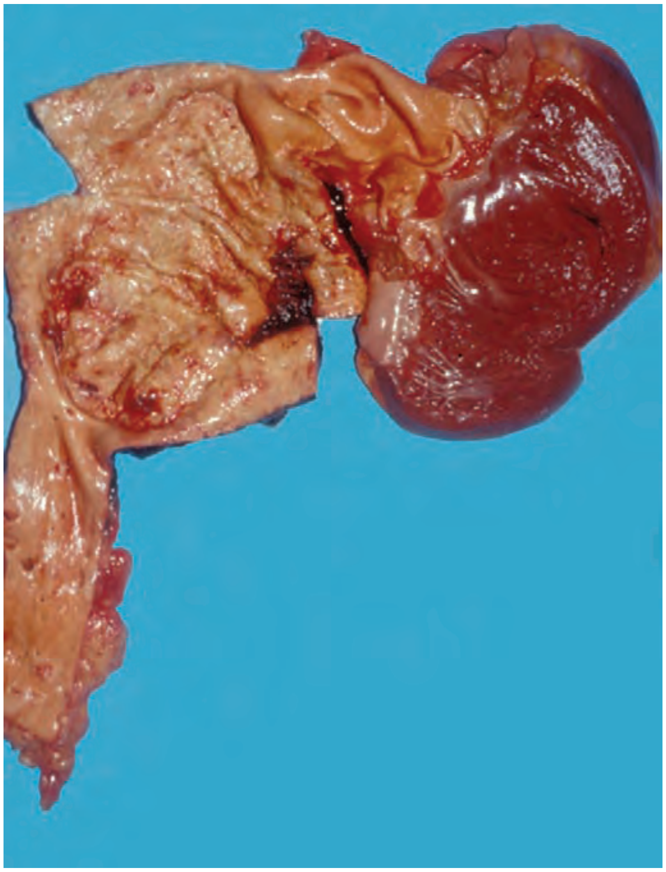


This abdominal aortic aneurysm that has been opened to remove half of the vessel wall and show the underlying intimal surface with moderate atherosclerosis except for the region of the aneurysm, which has marked atherosclerosis and a large overlying thrombus.

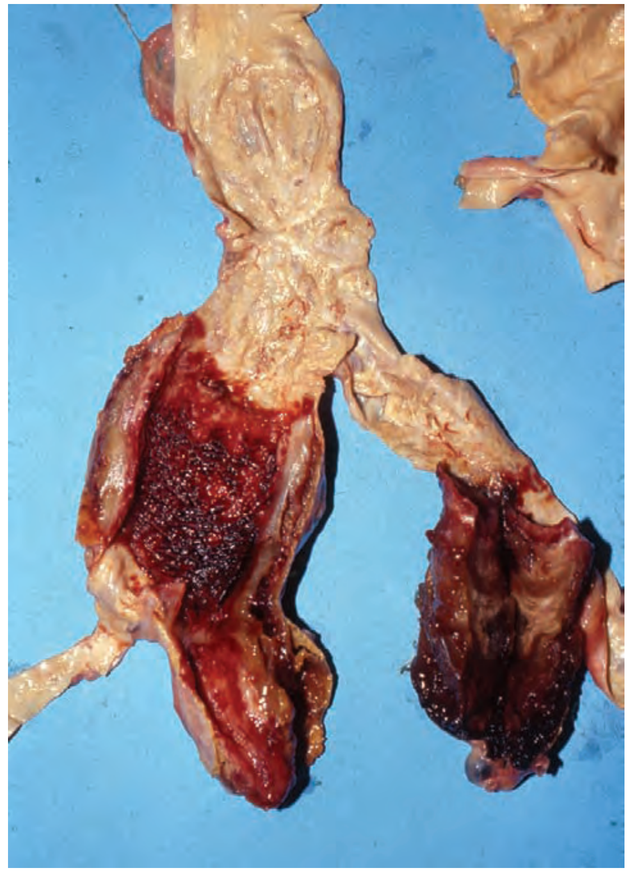
This abdominal aortic aneurysm has been cross sectioned to show the partial obstruction of the aneurysm by organizing thrombosis. The lumen is demonstrated by fresh red blood clot at its surface and the thrombus is demonstrated by the light grey regions adjacent to the right and left wall.



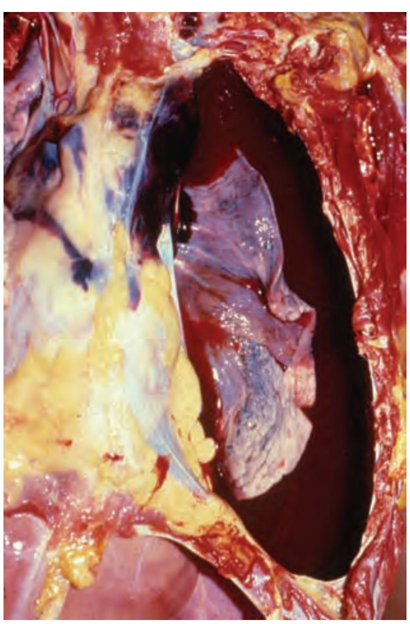
Abdominal aortic aneurysm with vascular graft repair.



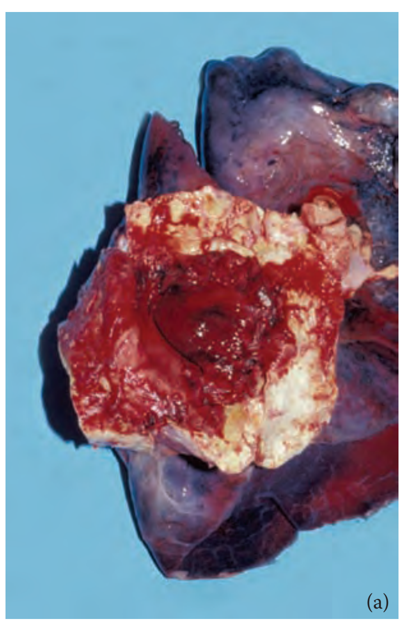
Thoracic aortic atherosclerotic aneurysm. This is not the typical location for such an aneurysm. Also note the aneurysm begins distal to the root of the aorta.

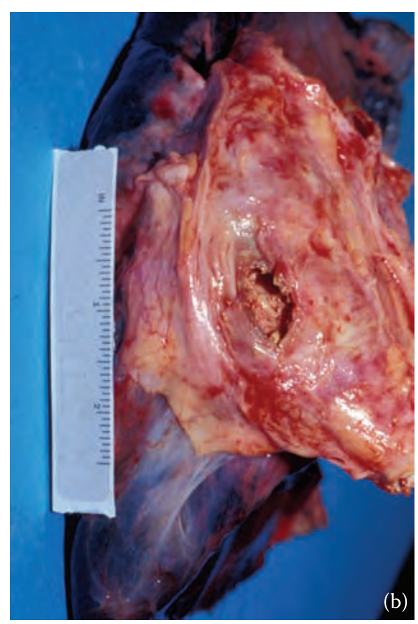


This demonstrates a decedent who had multiple atherosclerotic aneurysms including both iliac arteries.

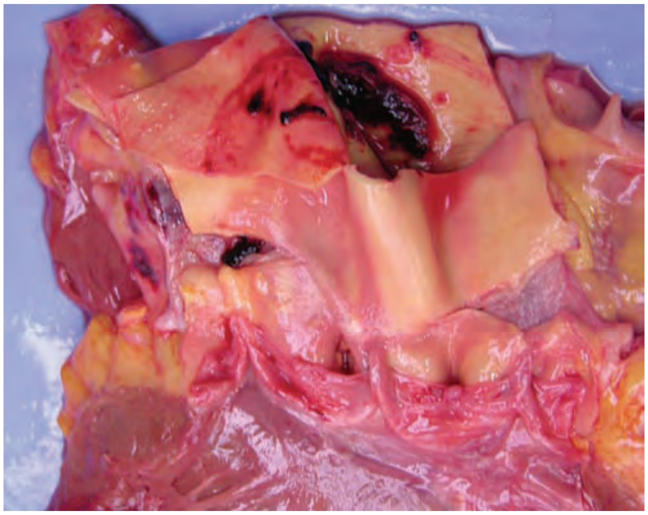


Hemothorax from a ruptured thoracic atherosclerotic aneurysm.

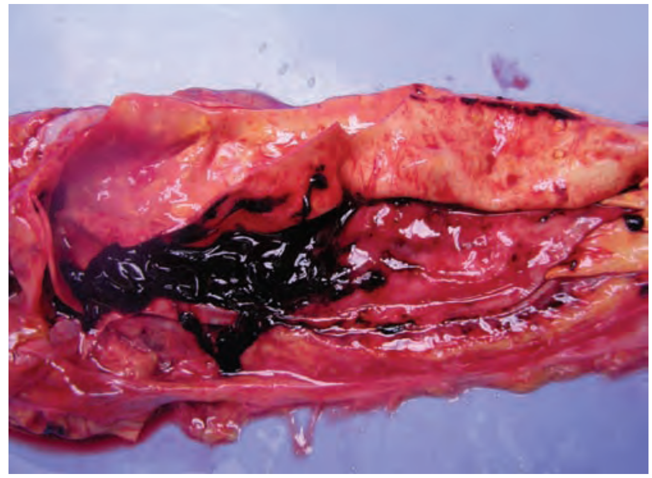




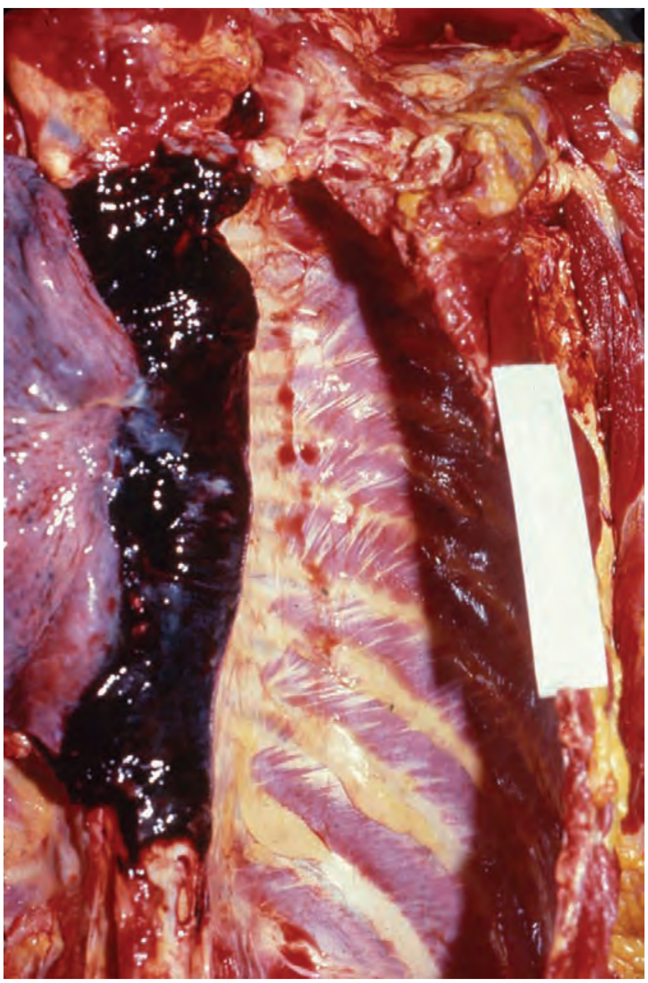
Thoracic atherosclerotic aortic aneurysm adherent to lung with rupture into the lung parenchyma causing massive hemoptysis. Note that Figure (b) demonstrates the rupture site with adherent blood clot removed.



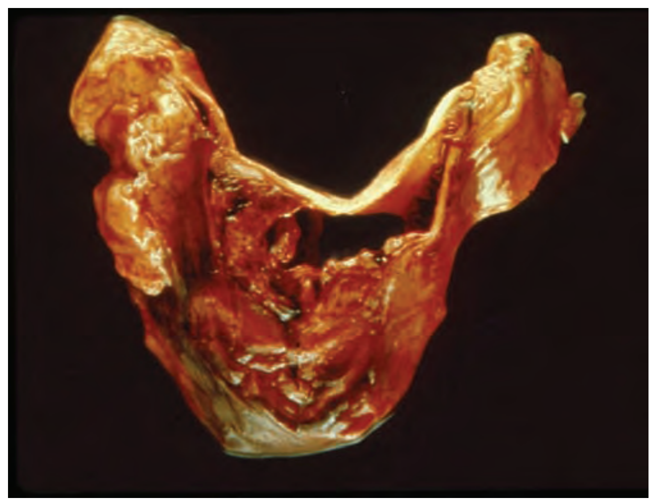
Intimal tear of the ascending aorta with dissection. Note blood tracking through the separated media.



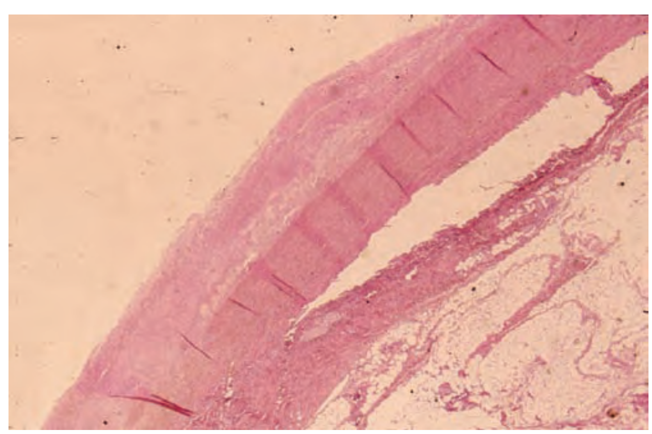
Aortic dissection with exposed separated media with blood clot in a person with Marfan's syndrome.



An in situ aortic dissection. Note the hemorrhage extending from the root of the aorta down the paravertebral region shown by dark red hemorrhagic discoloration. This decedent had severe hypertensive cardiovascular disease.

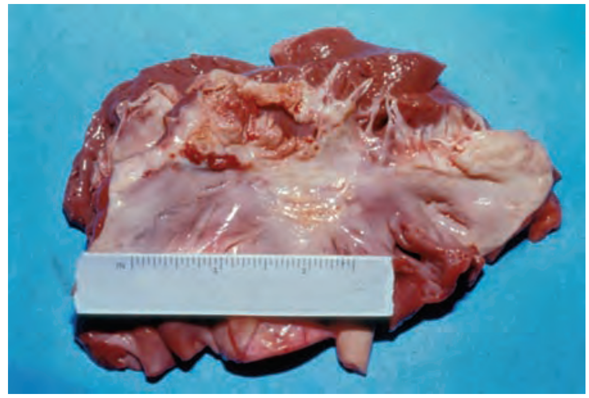


Cross section of aorta revealing a double-barrel lumen. The superior aspect of this figure shows an opened aorta with the exposed lumen. Directly inferior to this is the separated media and adventitia with a second lumen that is partially thrombosed.

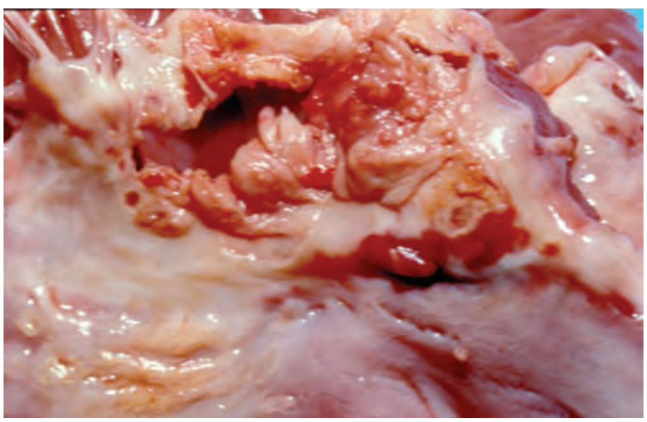


Microscopic view of an aortic dissection.

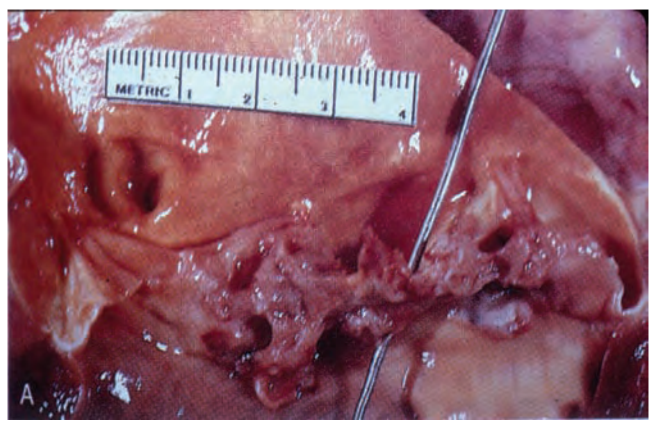
This endocardial surface shows large nonbacterial thrombotic endocarditis associated with a hypercoagulable state from metastatic adenocarcinoma. Special stains were negative for microorganisms.



This perforated mitral valve is secondary to acute bacterial endocarditis. This individual first went to the emergency room approximately a day and a half before with the complaint of fever and chest pain. He was sent home with antibiotics and later returned with severe pulmonary edema and died shortly after.

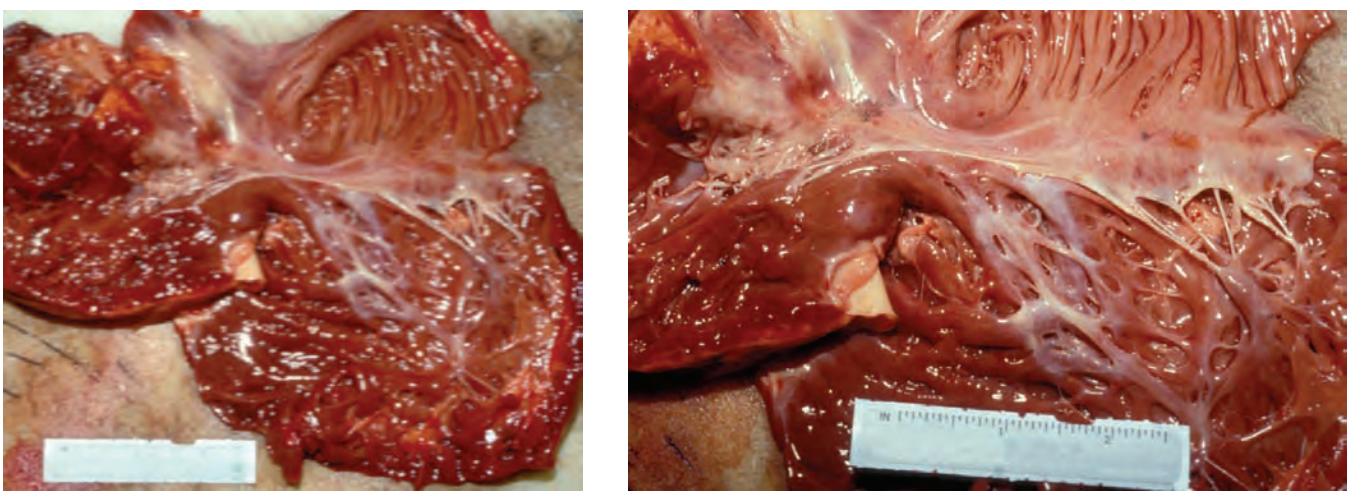


Close-up view of an acute infectious endocarditis with valve perforation. Gram stain revealed numerous gram positive organisms.

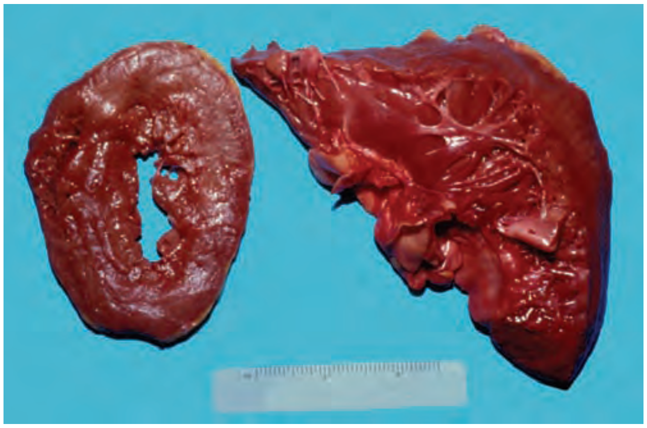


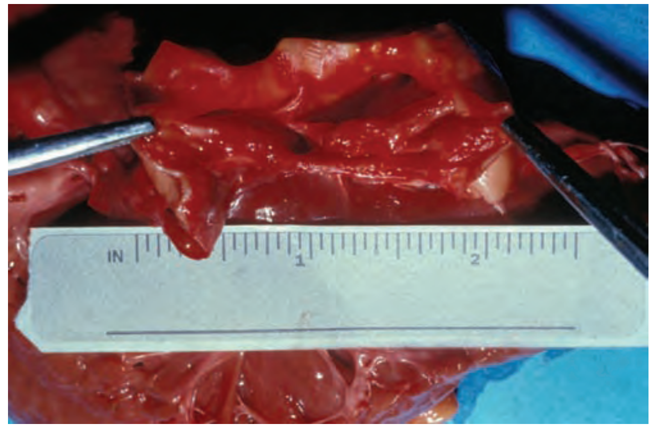
Acute infectious endocarditis with valve leaflet perforation.

Remote cardiac valve damage from rheumatic fever.

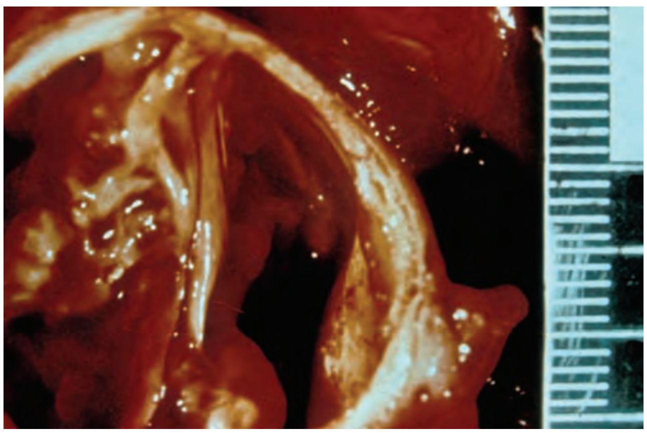


These figures are views of a remotely damaged tricuspid valve secondary to chronic intravenous drug abuse and past endocarditis. Note the fibrosis of the adjacent endocardium secondary to regurgitive turbulent blood flow. The decedent was known to have a longstanding cardiac murmur.

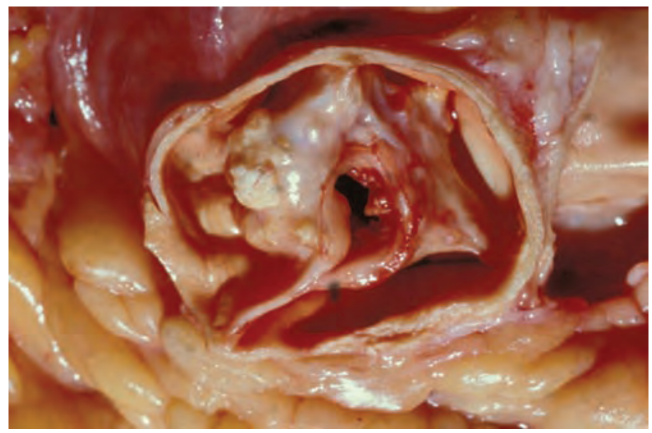




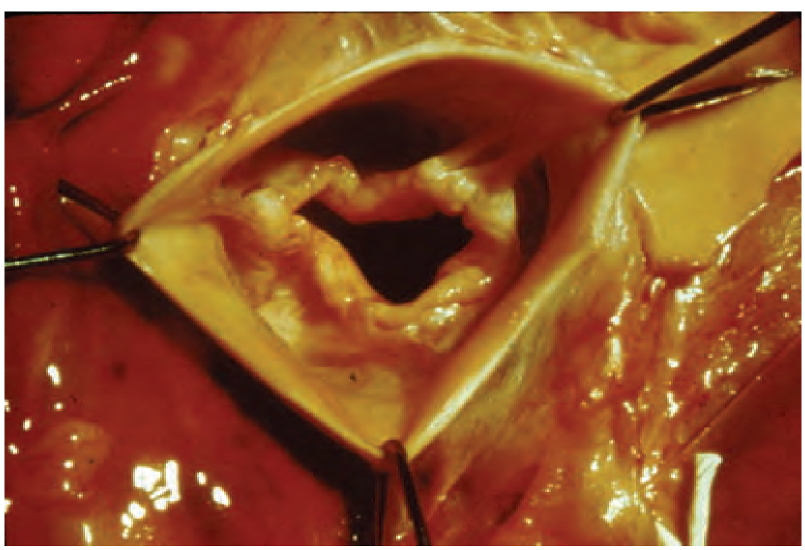
These figures show a markedly hypertrophic heart with concentric left ventricle hypertrophy and a congenital subaortic band causing marked aortic stenosis and sudden cardiac death at age 42 years. The decedent had decided years earlier not to have a valve replacement.



Bicuspid aortic valve. With advancing age and atherosclerosis, these valves may become markedly stenotic and increase one's risk for sudden cardiac death.

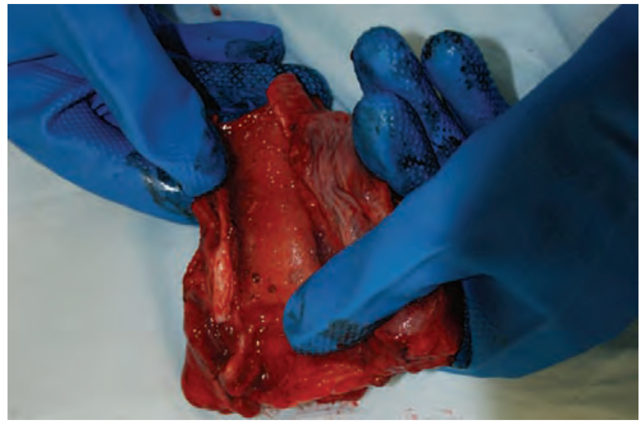


Markedly stenotic bicuspid aortic valve from an older individual with a longstanding history of atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease.



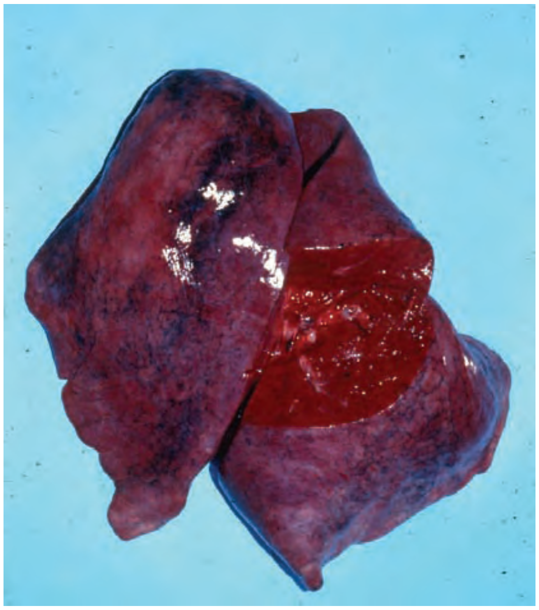
Severely stenotic and insufficient aortic valve associated with childhood rheumatic fever. Correction of aortic stenosis will decrease the risk of sudden cardiac death.

A fulminant pulmonary edema with foam extending from the mouth and nose due to congestive heart failure.

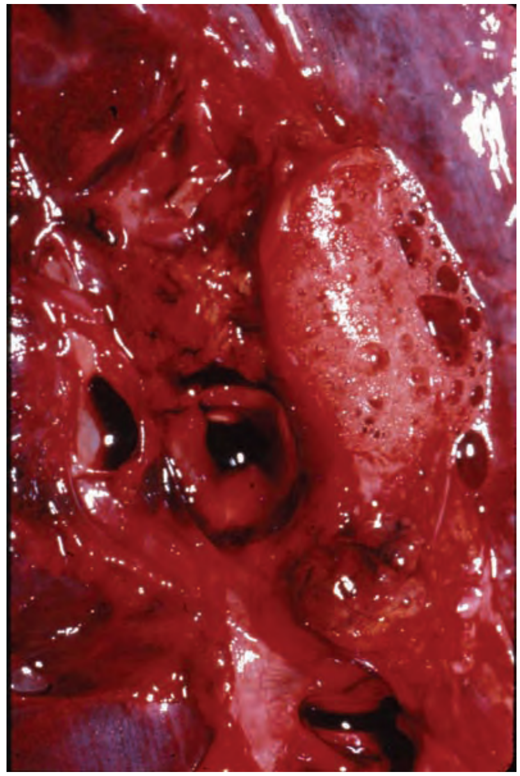


Note the frothy fluid from pulmonary edema extending into the laryngeal airway.

Pitting edema of the leg due to congestive heart failure.

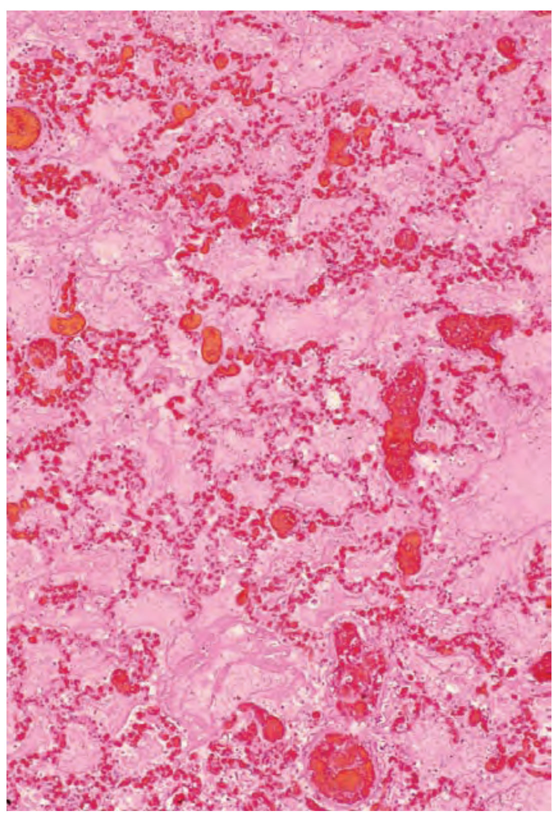


Lung with marked congestion and edema. Note the diffuse purple discoloration.



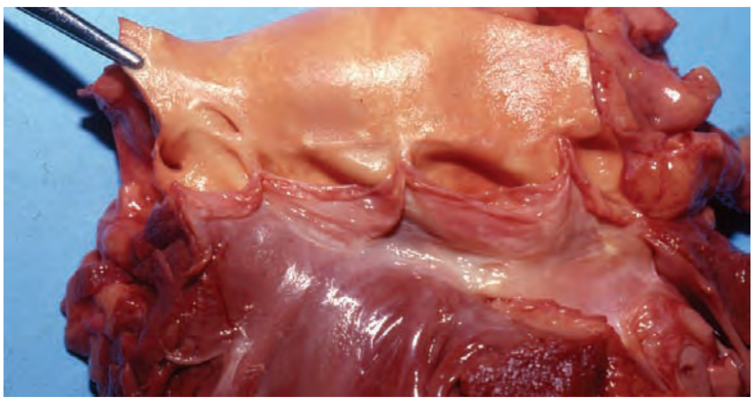
Marked pink to red frothy fluid extending from the cut parenchyma of a lung due to fulminant pulmonary edema.

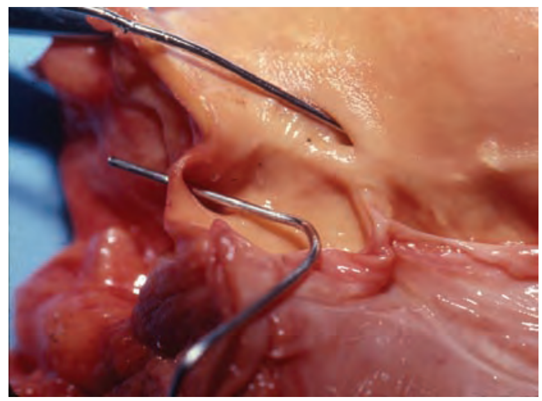
Cut section of a lung with pulmonary edema.



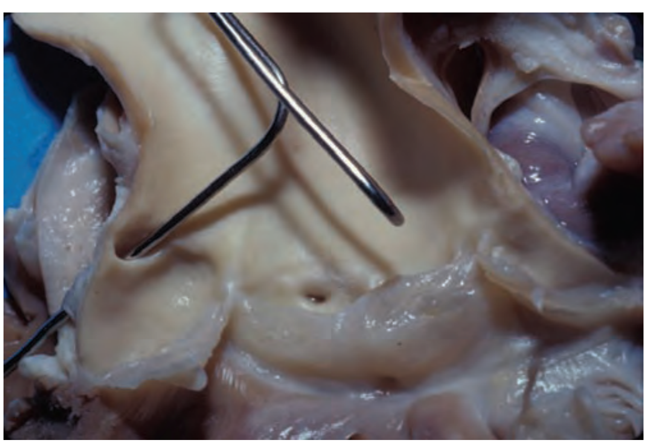
Microscopic view of lung with acute fulminant pulmonary edema.

These two figures demonstrate a coronary artery anomaly with acute angle takeoff and luminal narrowing in a 15-year-old who died suddenly during a basketball game. There was no history of blunt impacts to the chest during the game. There was no past history of syncopal episodes or chest discomfort.

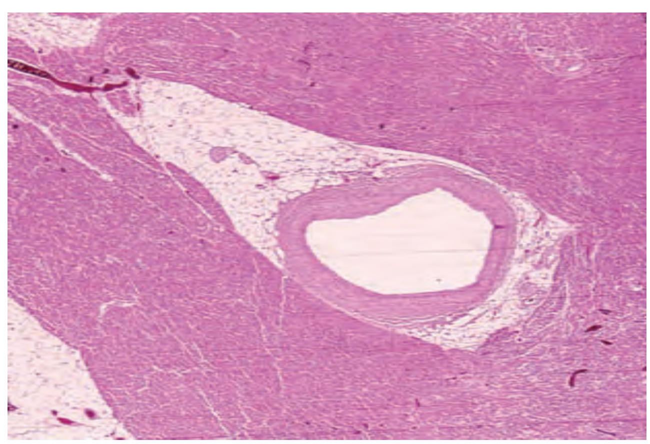




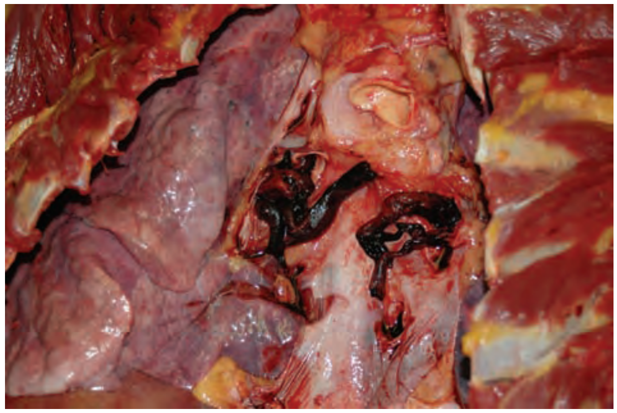
A coronary artery anomaly with acute angle takeoff and luminal narrowing. This individual died a sudden cardiac death shortly after exertion.

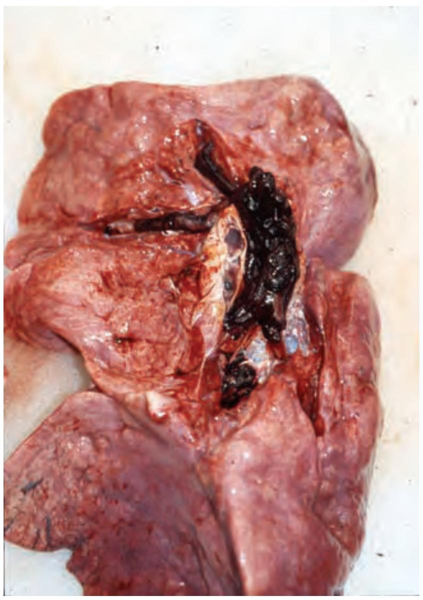


This coronary anomaly reveals a bicuspid aortic valve with superior displacement of one of the coronary ostia. This child died of trauma sustained in a motor vehicle accident and this finding was incidental.



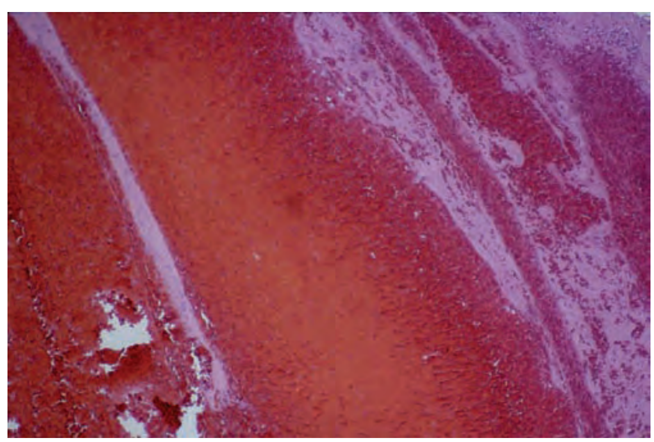
This low-power histopathologic view demonstrates "myocardial tunneling" where the left anterior descending coronary artery dipped deeply into the left ventricle wall.



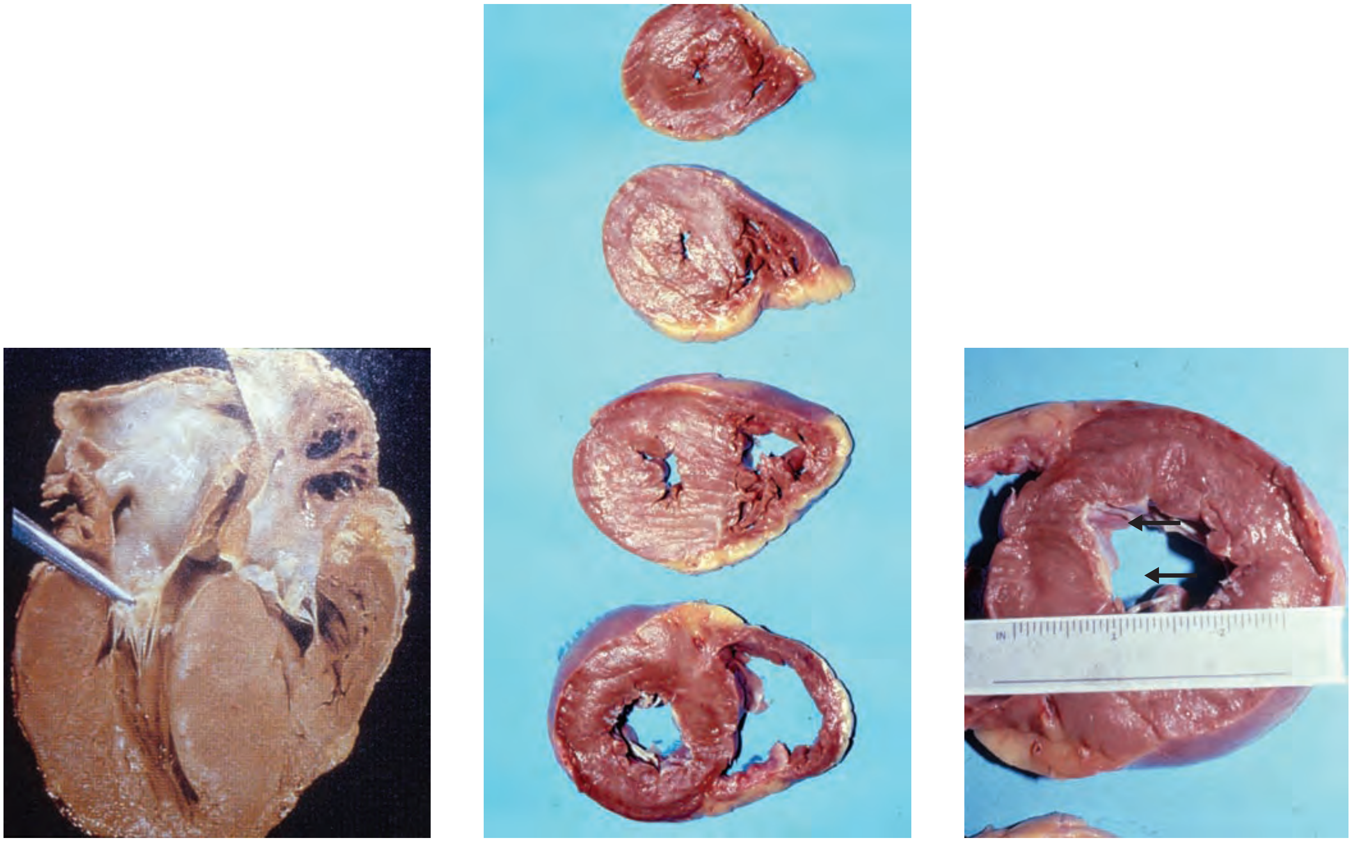


Pulmonary thromboembolus in an obese woman who was on birth control pills and smoked cigarettes.

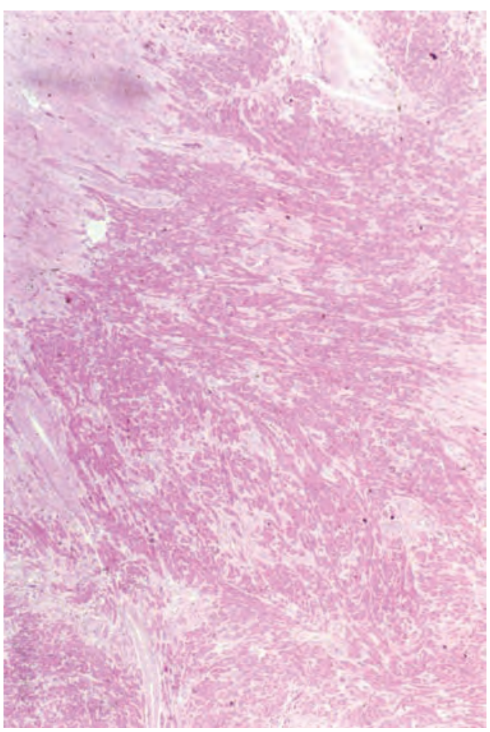
Incision of the lower leg with dissection of the gastrocnemius muscle demonstrating multiple deep venous thrombi in an individual who underwent organ donation with removal of bone and soft tissue from each leg. Note the plastic tubing left by the organ donor network.



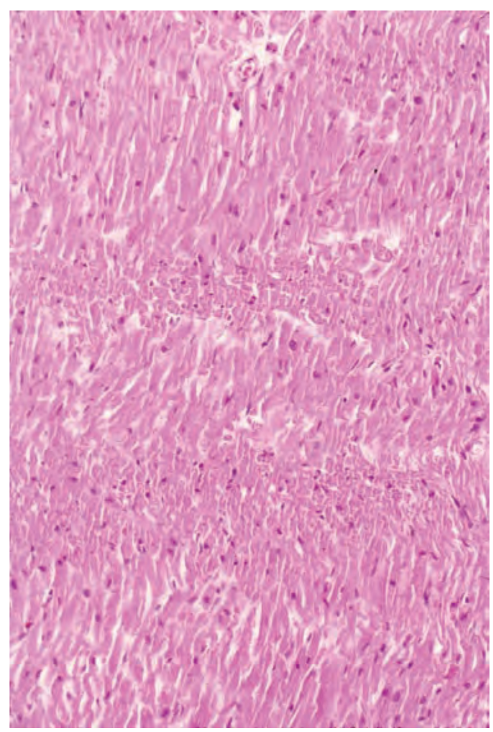
Microscopic view of a pulmonary thromboembolus. Note the laminated alternating lighter fibrin bands referred to as the lines of Zahn.



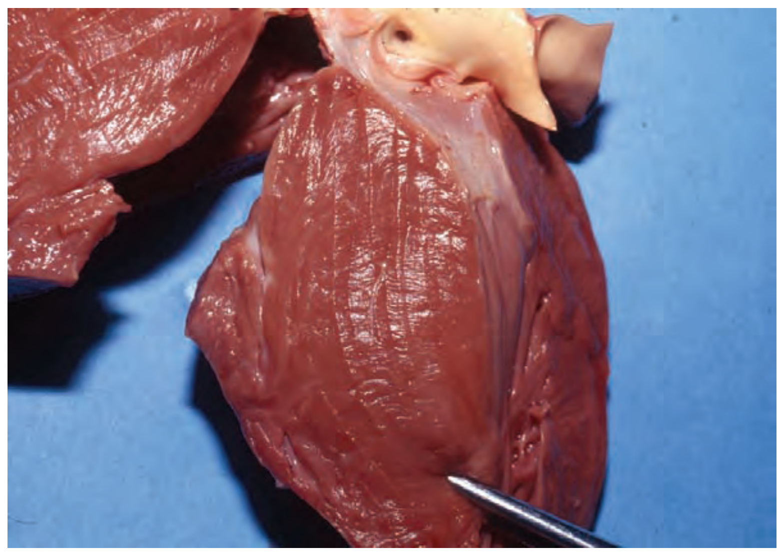
These are different views of two hearts with the classical variant of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Note the large degree of asymmetric left ventricle hypertrophy.

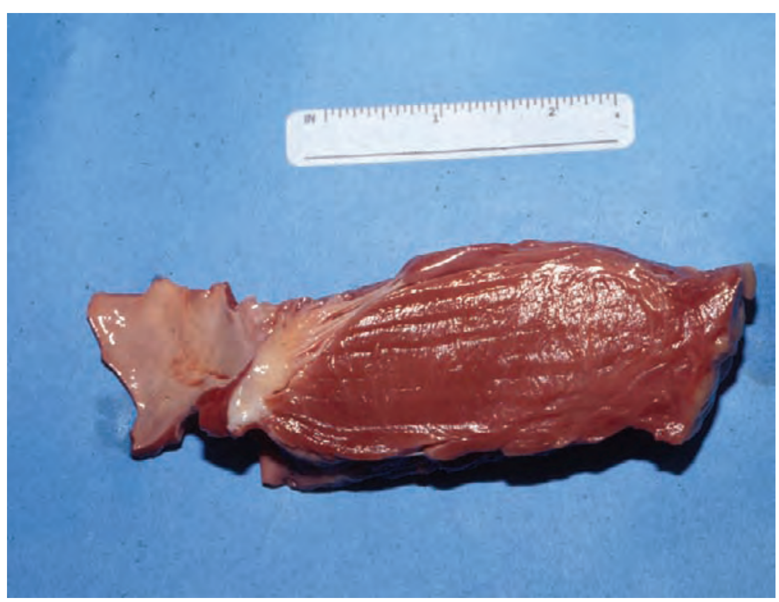


Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy with myocyte fiber disarray and fibrosis.

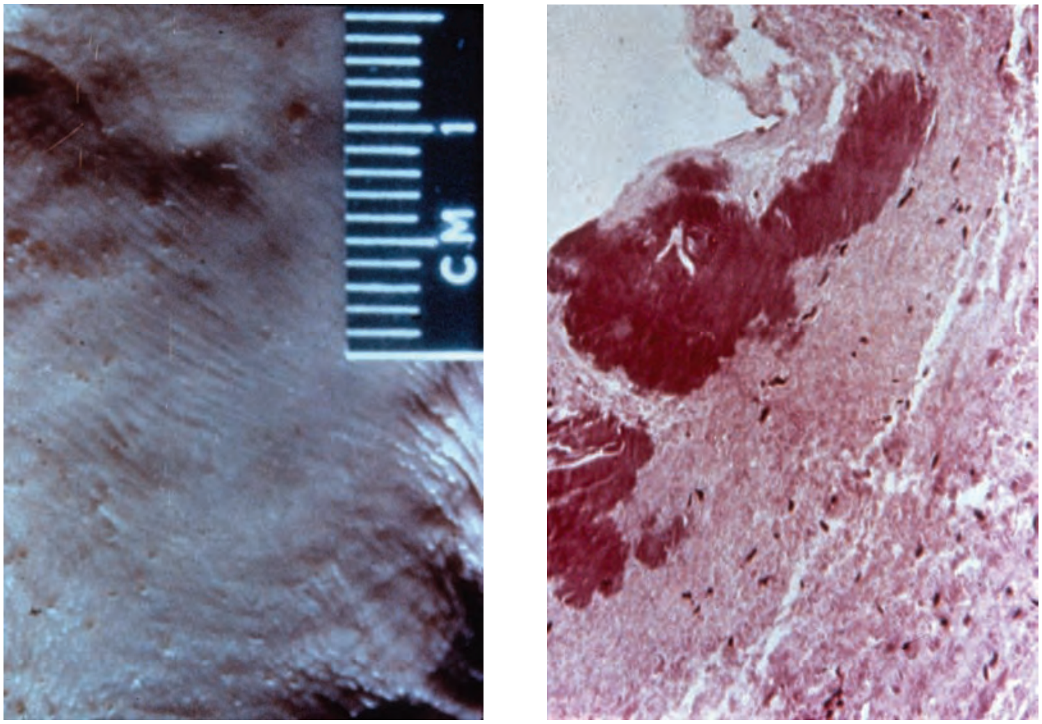


Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy with myocyte fiber bundle disorganization.

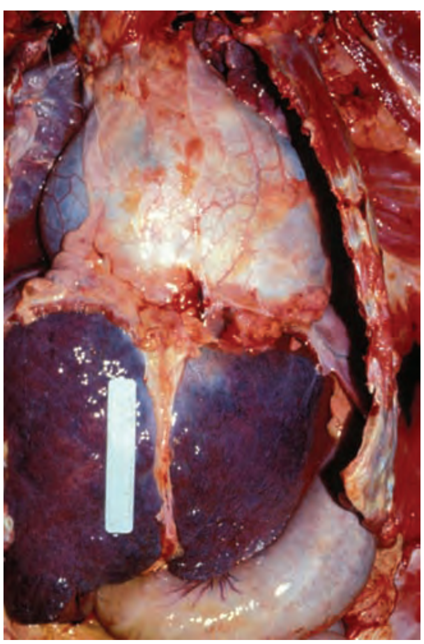




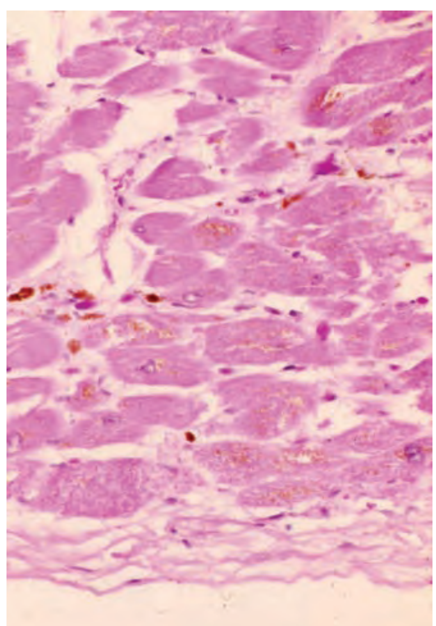
Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Note the marked septal hypertrophy with asymmetry.



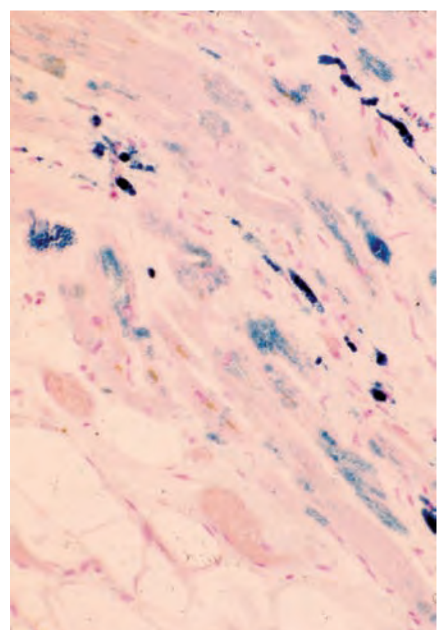
Note the waxy pink myocardial discoloration in this individual with amyloidosis.



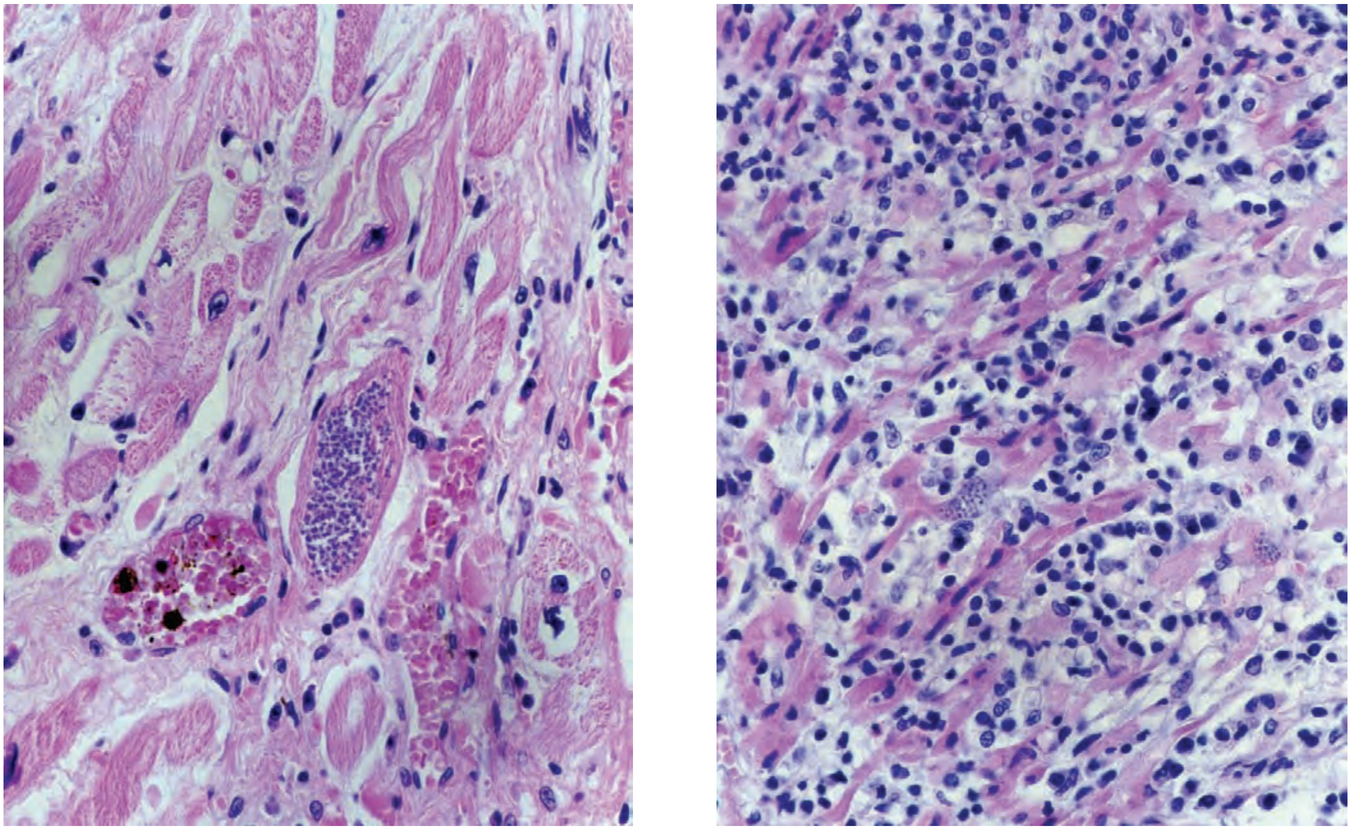
This decedent's pericardial sac was full of several hundred cc's of yellow-pink fluid. The gradual buildup of this fluid over a long period was due to advanced secondary hemochromatosis.



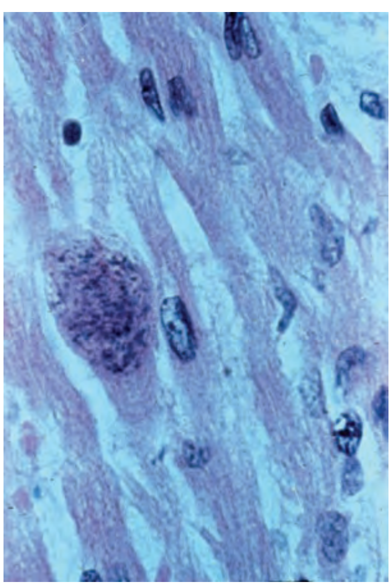
Microscopic section of heart showing iron deposition from secondary hemachromatosis associated with blood transfusions for treatment of beta-thalassemia major.



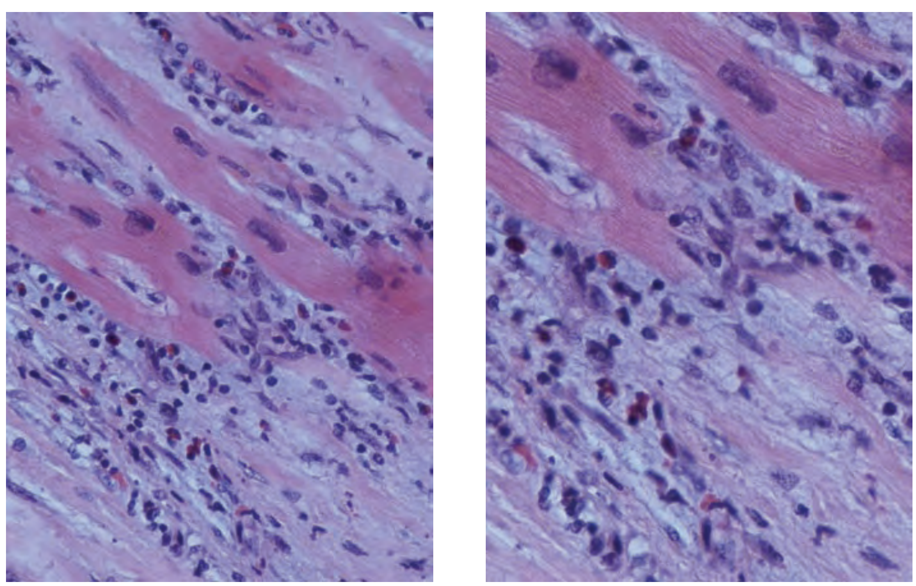
Microscopic section of heart with Prussian blue staining of iron deposits in the heart of the same individual with secondary hemochromatosis.



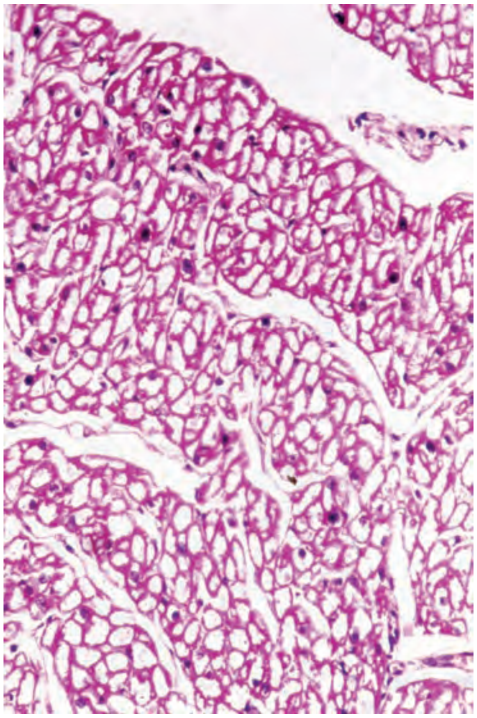
These microscopic myocardial views demonstrate Chagas' disease. Note the extensive chronic inflammation.



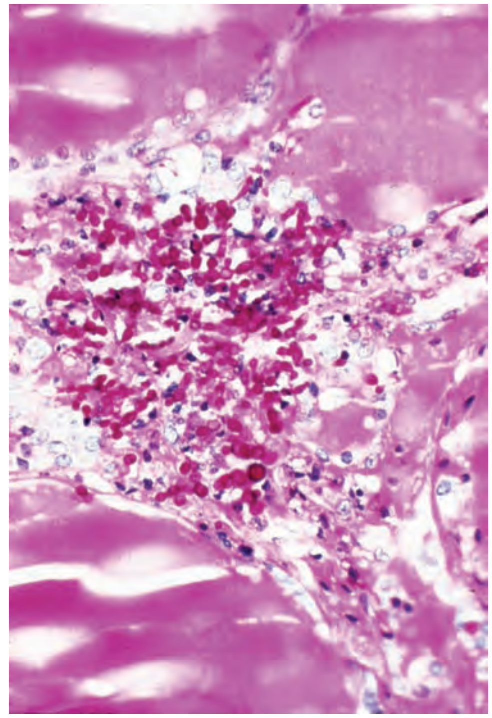
Myocarditis secondary to toxoplasmosis in an individual with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.



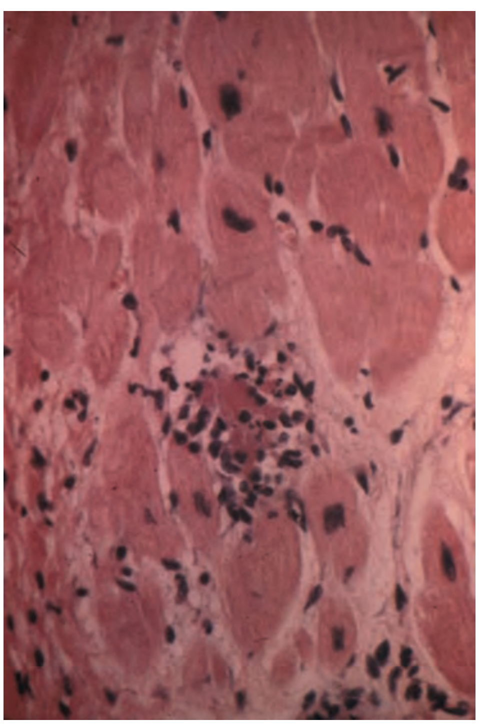
Eosinophilic myocarditis associated with a hypersensitivity drug reaction.



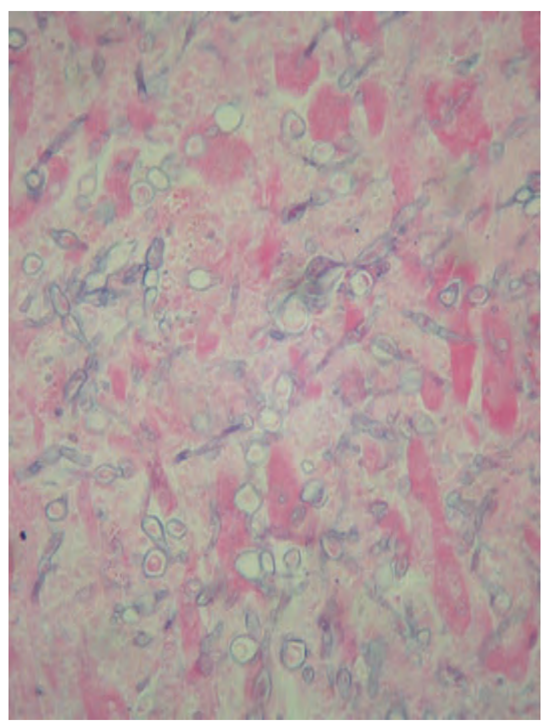
Microscopic view of myocardium in an individual who died of Pompe's disease. Note the many artifactual empty vacuoles following processing leading to glycogen loss.



This candidal myocarditis was found in an individual with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.

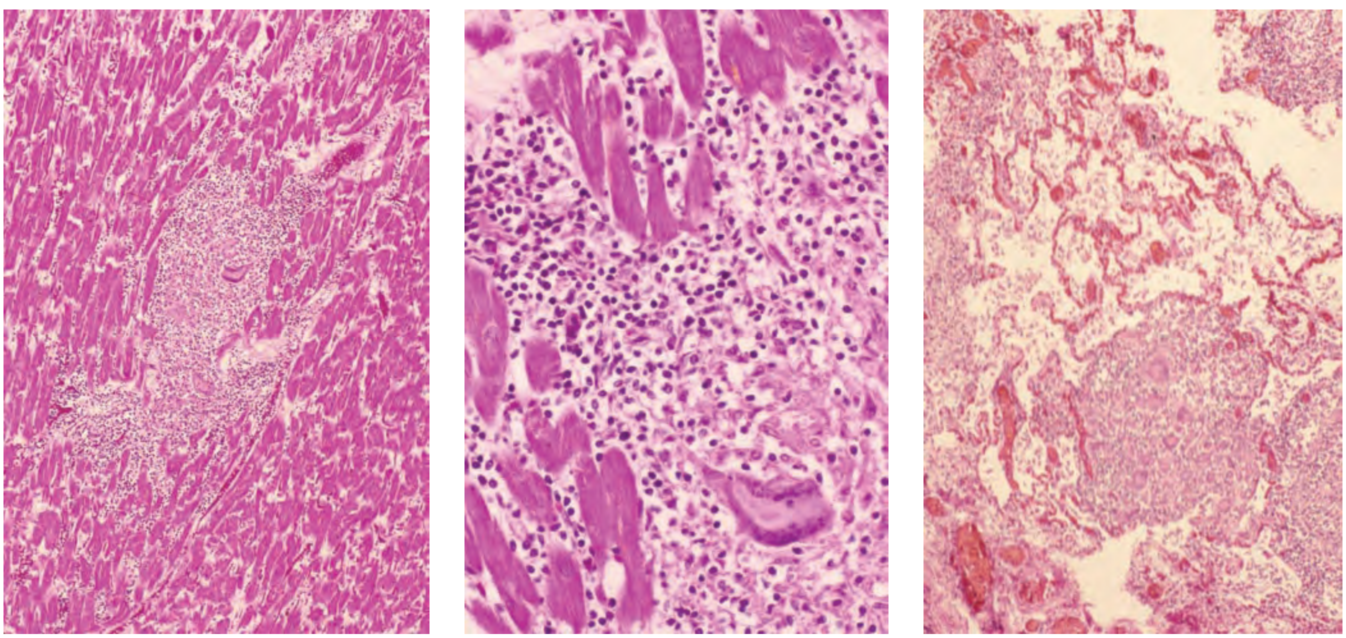


This focal viral myocarditis demonstrates myocardial necrosis with inflammation made up predominately of lymphocytes.

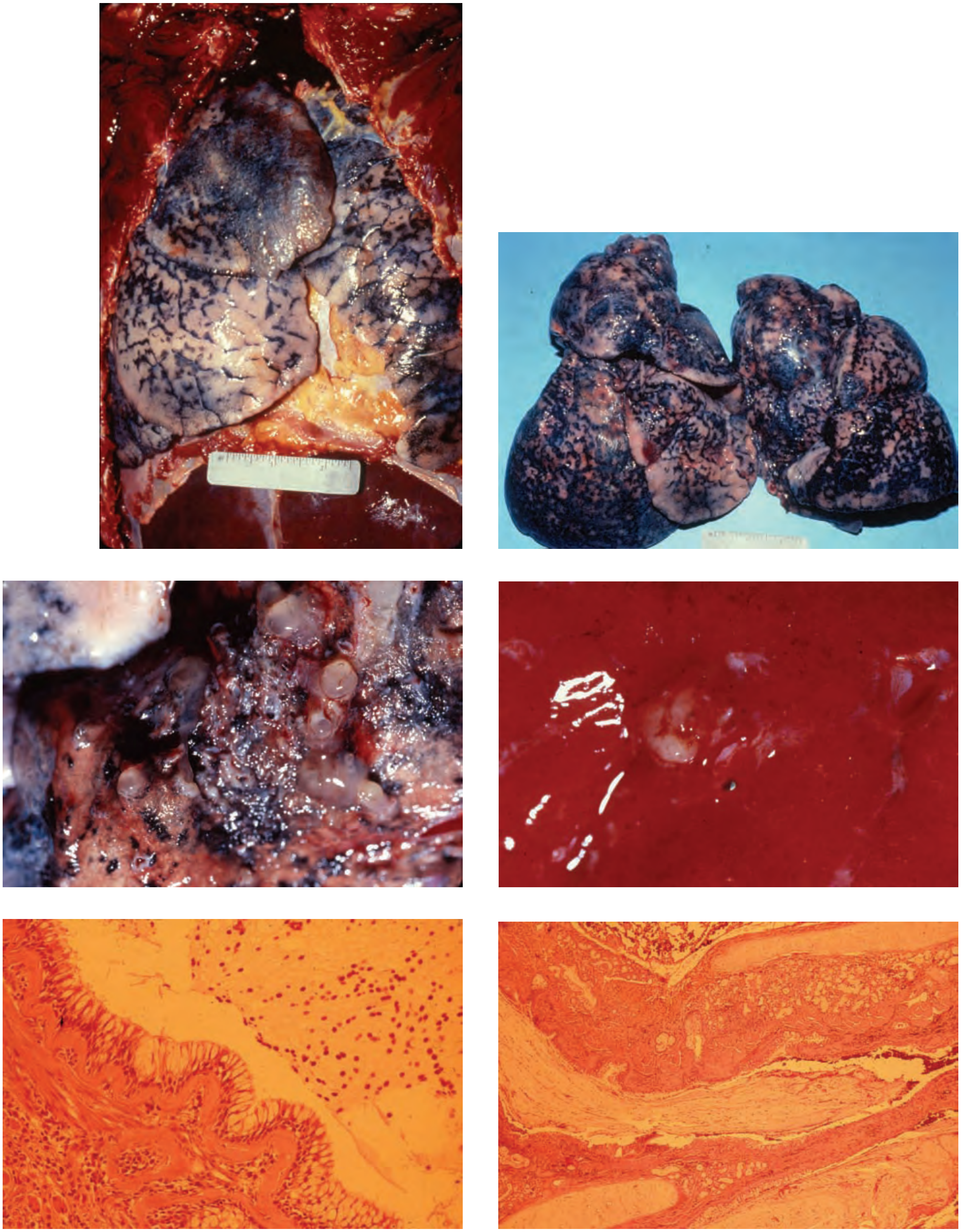


Aspergillosis myocarditis from an immunocompromised individual who underwent a recent bone marrow transplant.

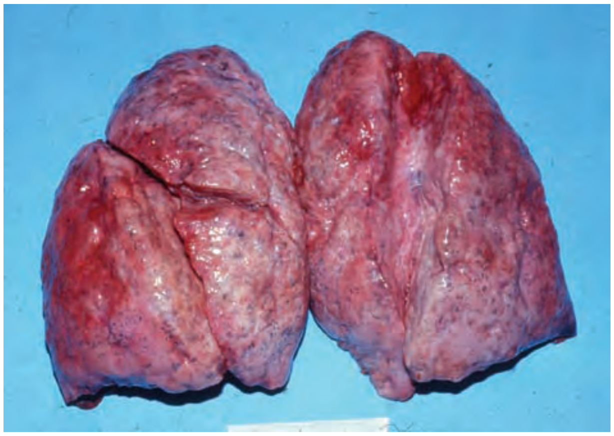
Macroscopic section of myocardium from an individual who died of cardiac sarcoidosis.

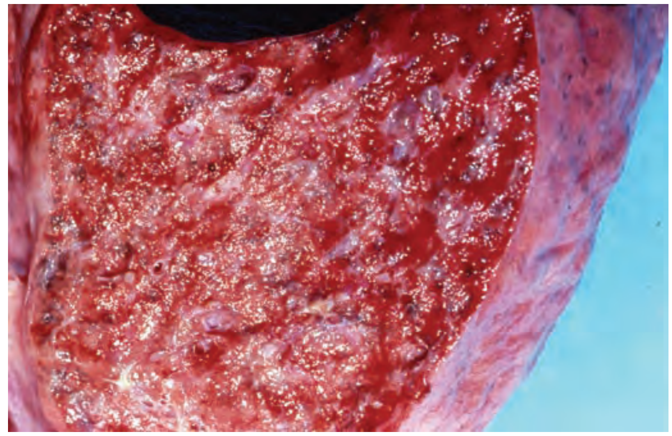


Sarcoidosis. Note the noncaseating granulomas consisting of chronic inflammation, epitheloid cells, lymphocytes, and giant cells found throughout the body. These views demonstrate examples from the heart and lungs.

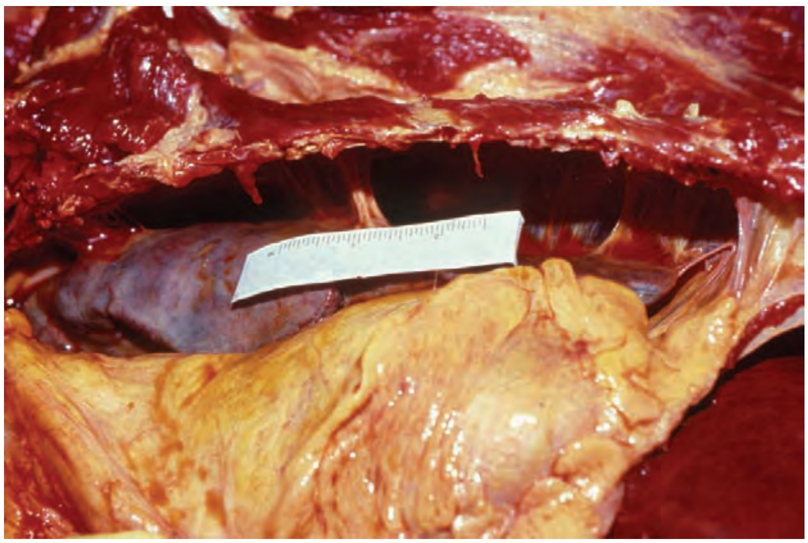


These figures demonstrate acute and chronic bronchial asthma. Note the lungs within the thoracic cavity are hyperaerated and expand to overlie the pericardial sac. Upon removal of the lung, they appear markedly hyperaerated. If these lungs were placed in a water bath they would float almost entirely on the surface. Cut section through the parenchyma reveals thick copious mucoid secretions within the bronchial distribution. Microscopic section reveals increased amounts of goblet cells and smooth muscle. There is a large mucous plug within the airway with numerous eosinophils. The parenchyma also has numerous inflammatory cells, predominantly eosinophils.



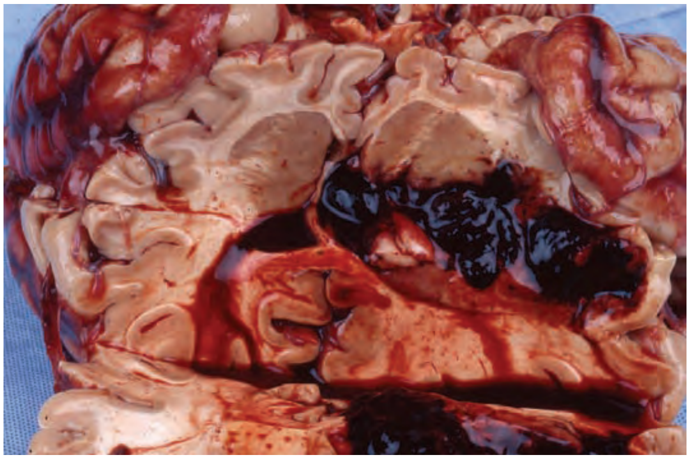


Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) with hyperaeration and emphysematous change.

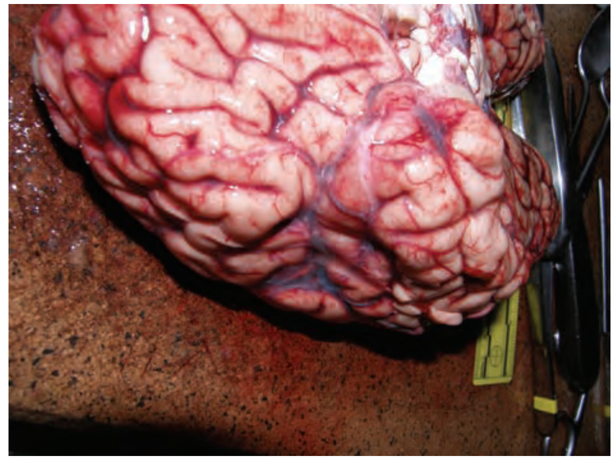


Pleural adhesions most likely due to past bouts of pneumonia.

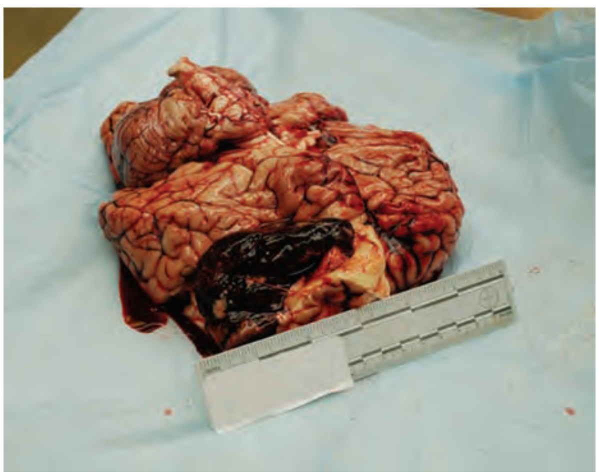
Bolus emphysema in a person with COPD. These bullae may occasionally rupture and cause a pneumothorax.



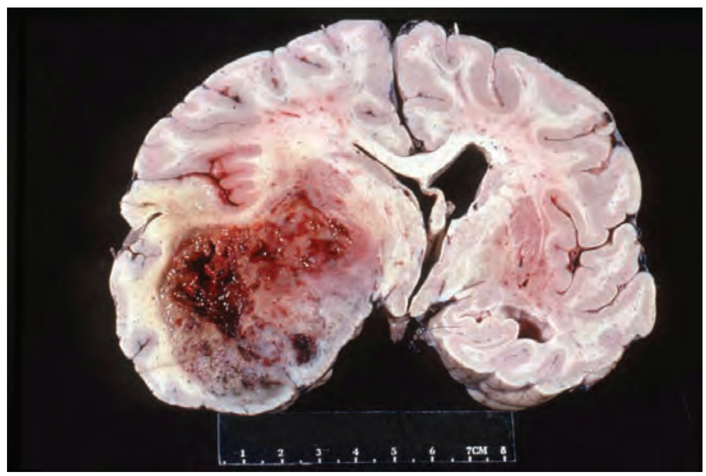
Hypertensive intracerebral hemorrhage. Mostly caused by rupture of a small intraparenchymal vessel.



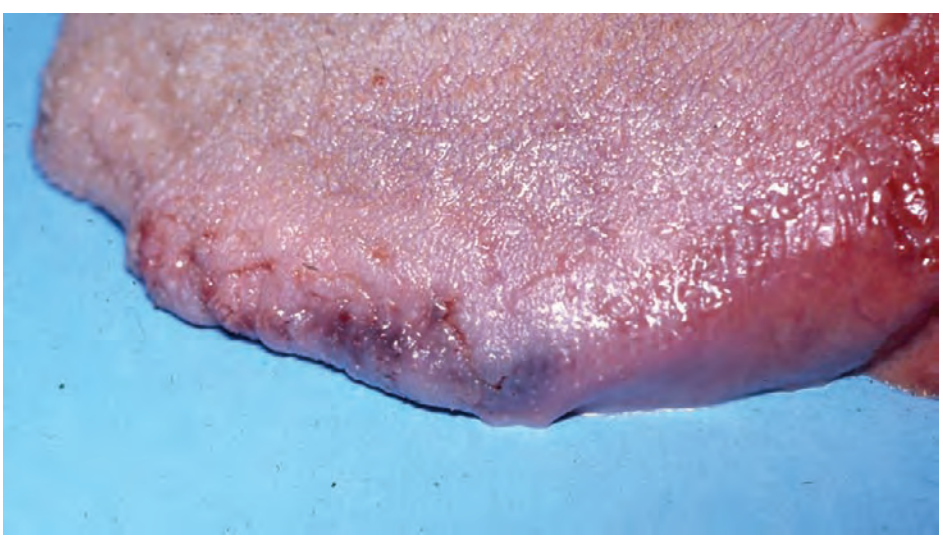
Old healed stroke. Note the indentation of the cerebral hemisphere.



Intracerebral hemorrhage due to ruptured A-V malformation.

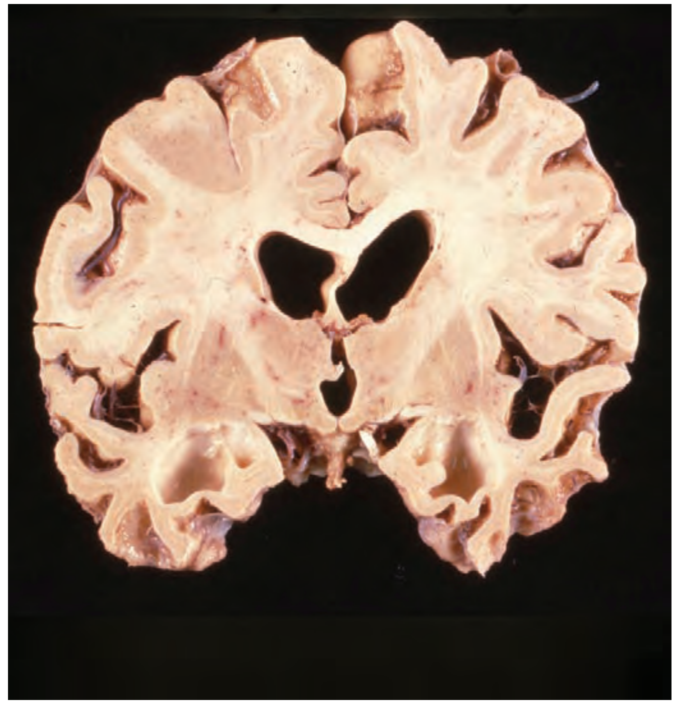


Astrocytoma causing significant compression of the surrounding structures.

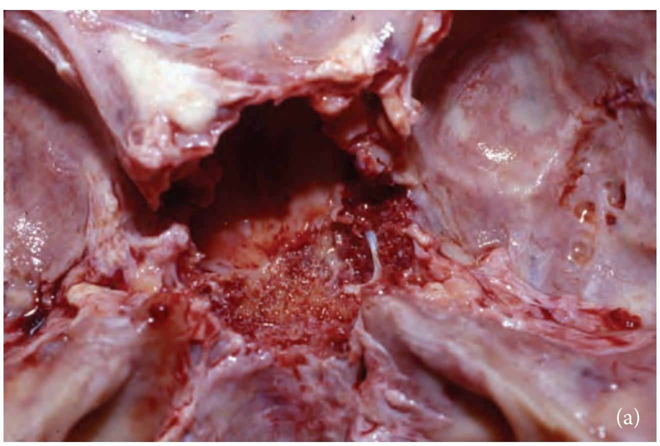


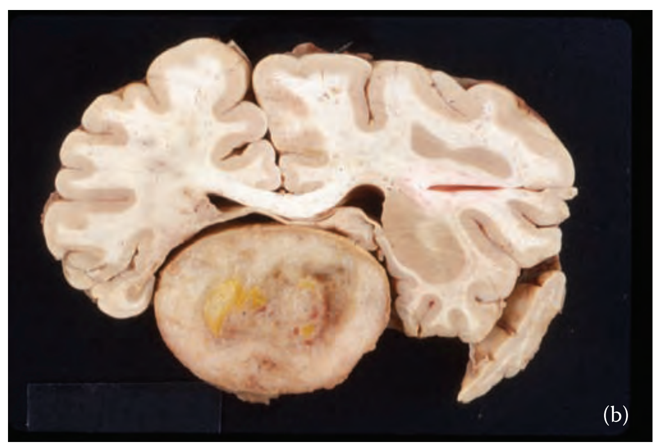
Bite marks to tongue with hemorrhage from an individual who died of epilepsy. This was the only finding at autopsy.

Anterior cranial fossa meningioma.

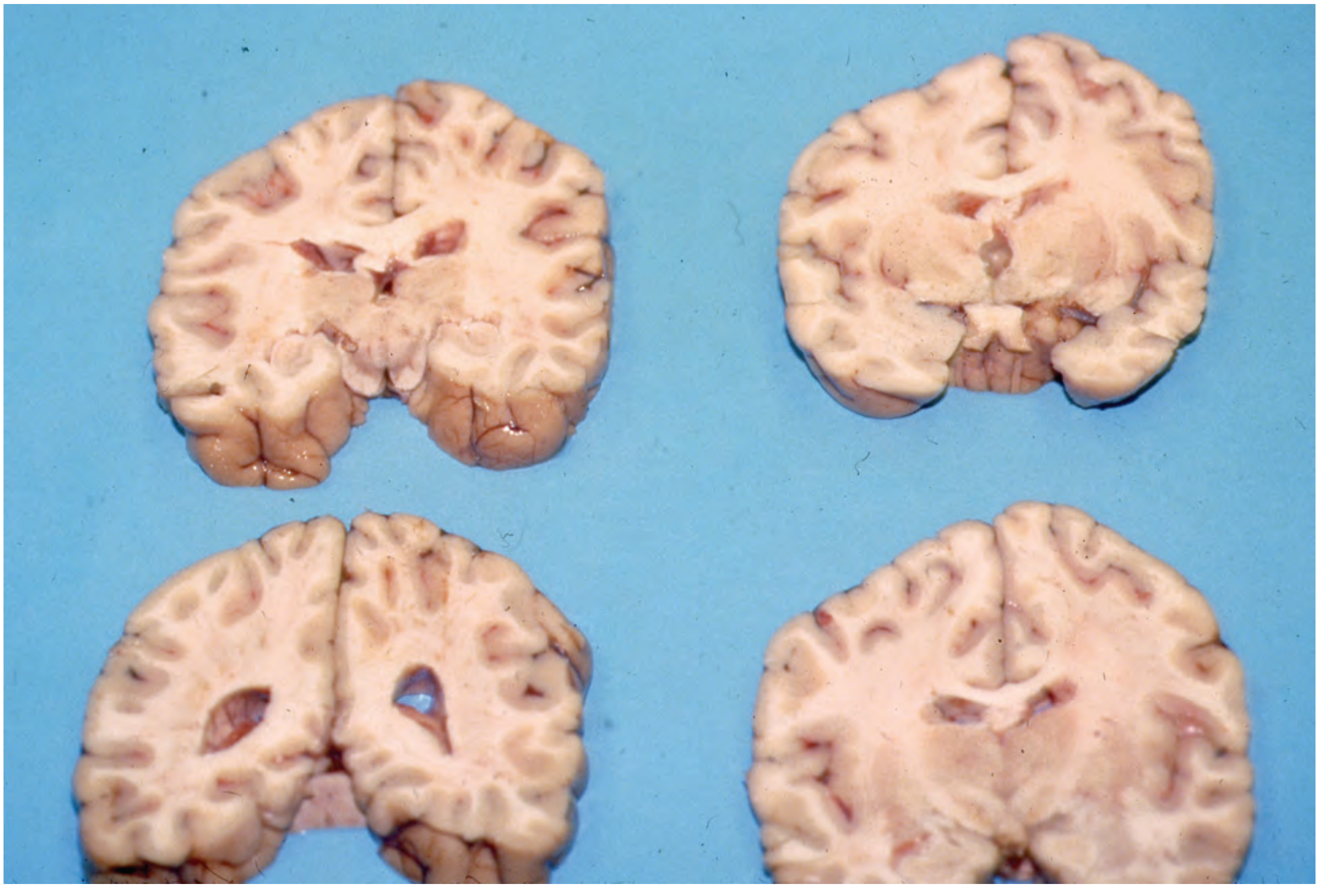


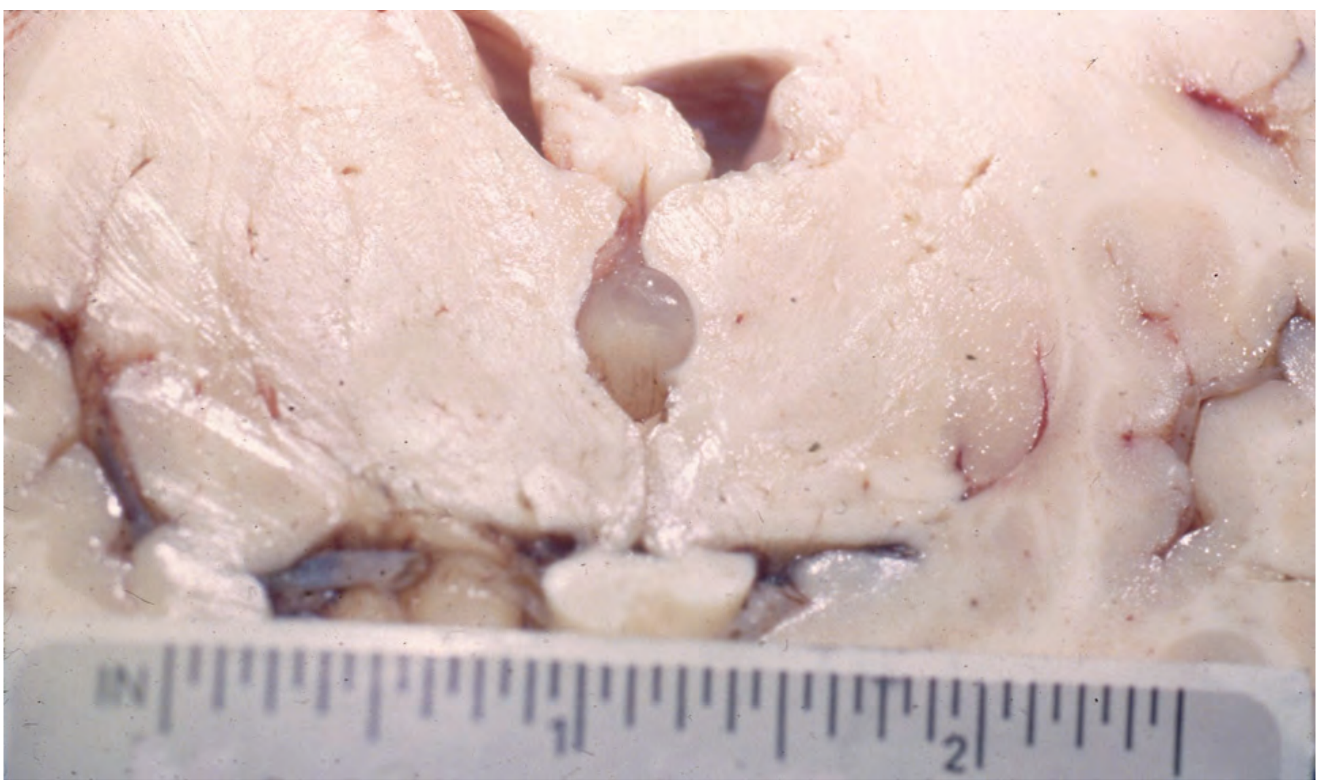
Pick's disease. Note the asymmetric atrophy of the frontal, temporal, and parietal lobes. This form of chronic dementia occurs far less frequently than Alzheimer's disease.



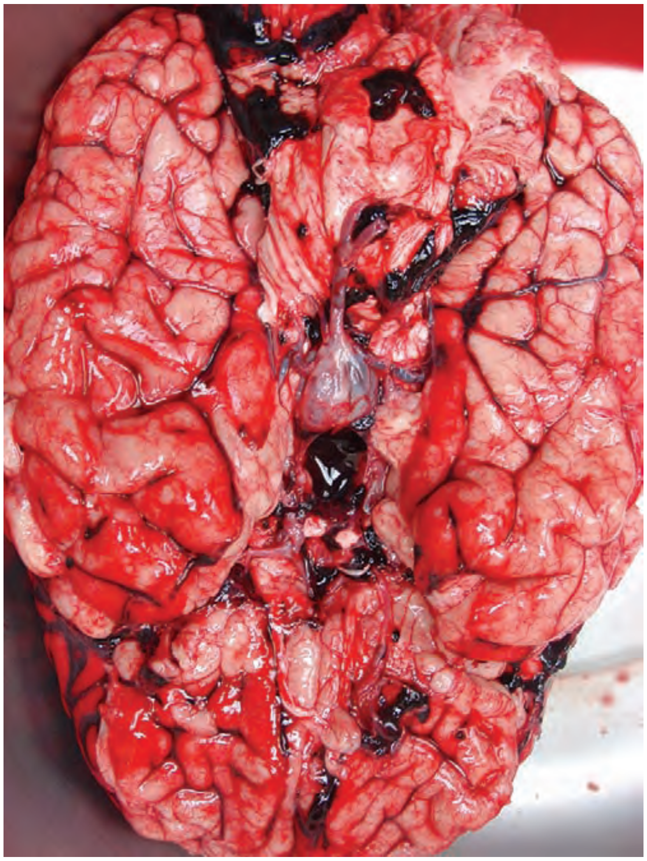


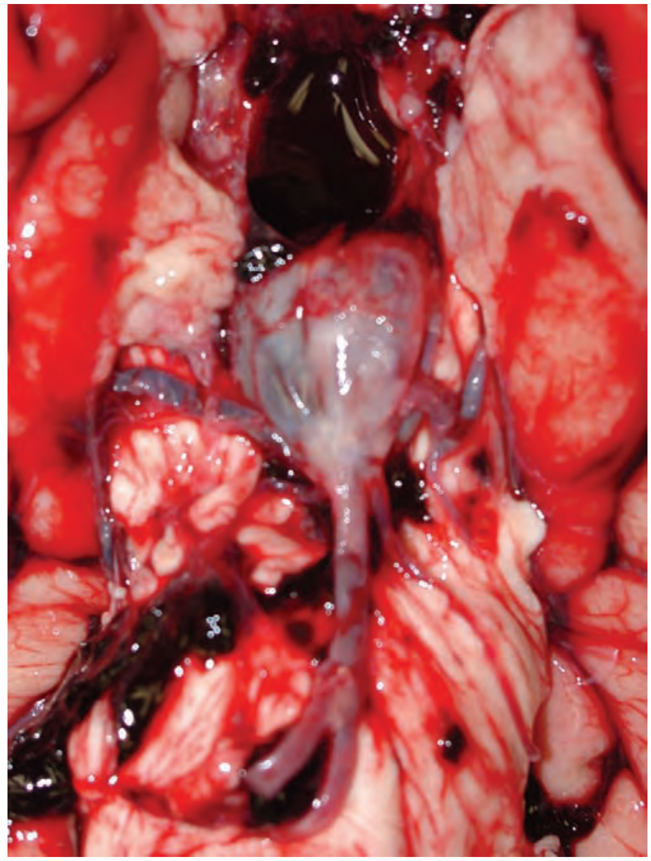
Two separate cases of pituitary adenoma. Figure (a) depicts a large erosion into the sela turcica and (b) demonstrates a large adenoma viewed on a cross section of a cut formaldehyde-fixed brain. These adenomas may vary largely in size.

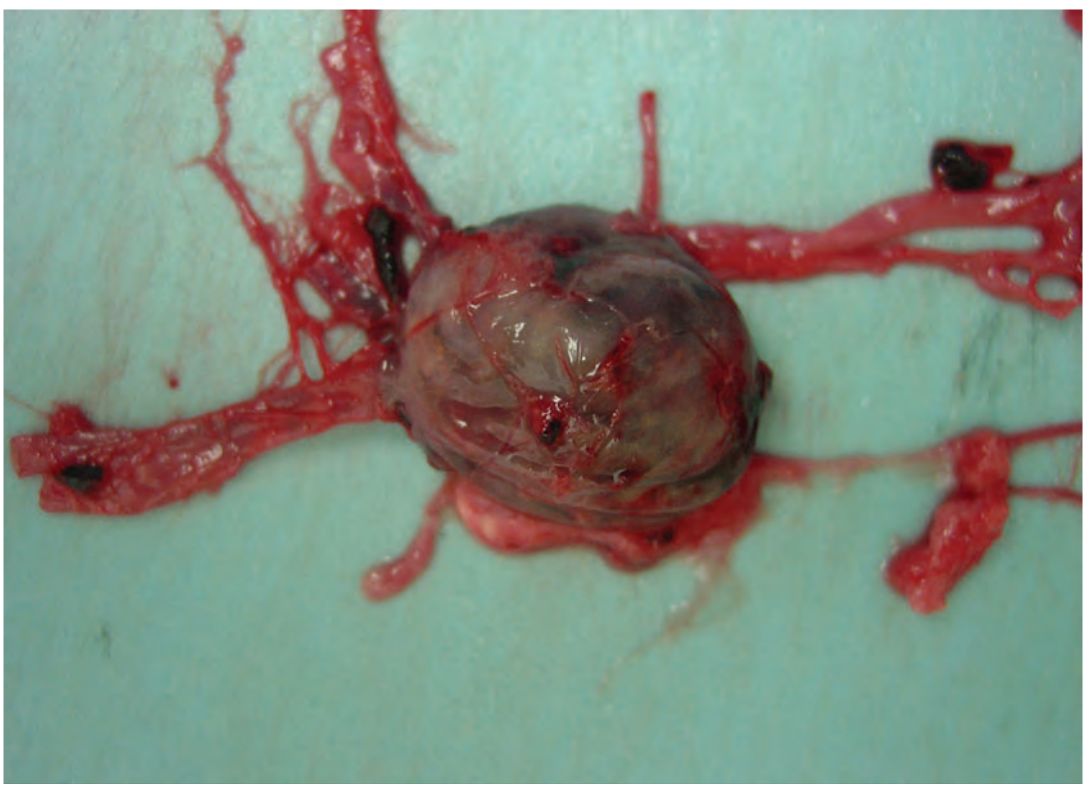




Colloid cyst of the third ventricle. This decedent had a history of severe headache with postural changes. This may be associated with sudden cardiac death following a buildup of cerebrospinal fluid pressures associated with central nervous system cardiac center disruption and fatal arrhythmia.





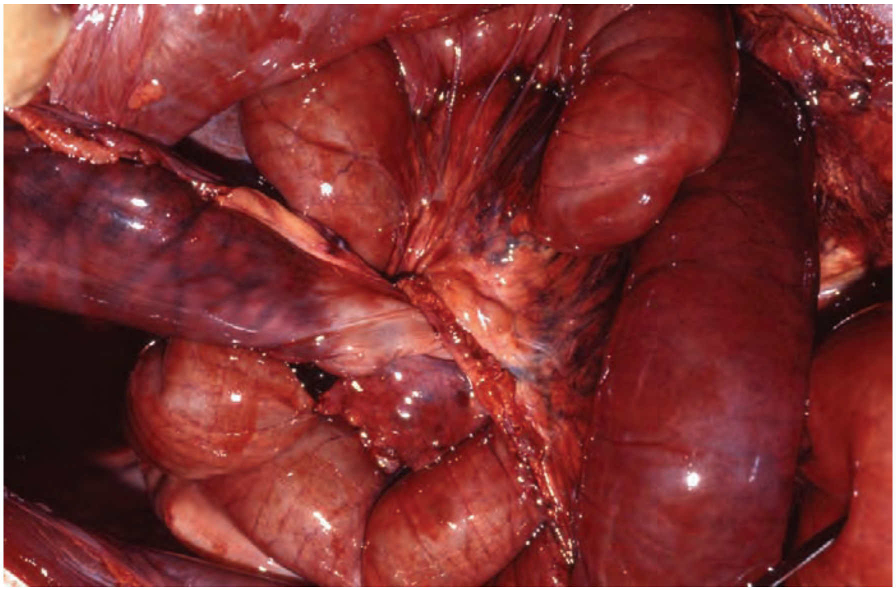


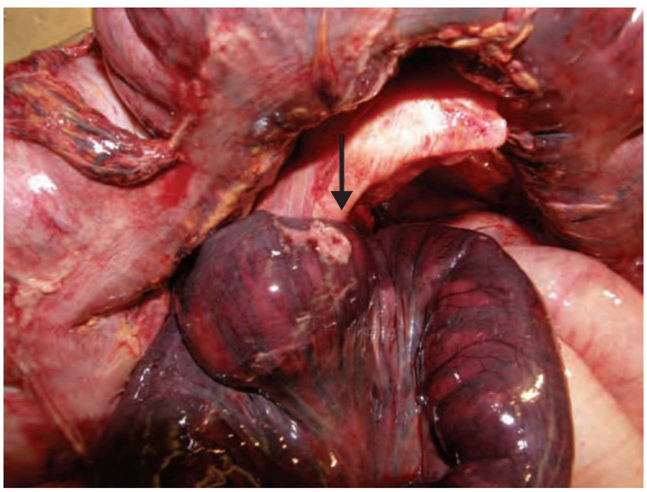
Sudden death associated with ruptured saccular cerebral artery aneurysm with subarachnoid hemorrhage. These are examples of giant berry aneurysms, which are greater than 2.5 centimeters in greatest dimension. Small saccular aneurysms may rupture the same way. The jolt of increased pressure from arterial blood through the subarachnoid space at the base of the brain may disrupt the cardiac centers, causing fatal arrthymia.

Decubital ulceration or pressure sore. This is often associated with poor patient care.

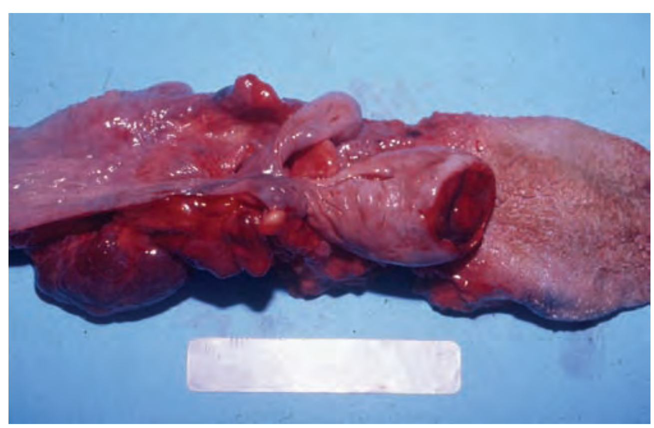
Healing ankle ulceration associated with peripheral vascular disease.

Dry gangrene associated with peripheral vascular disease due to long-term diabetes mellitus.

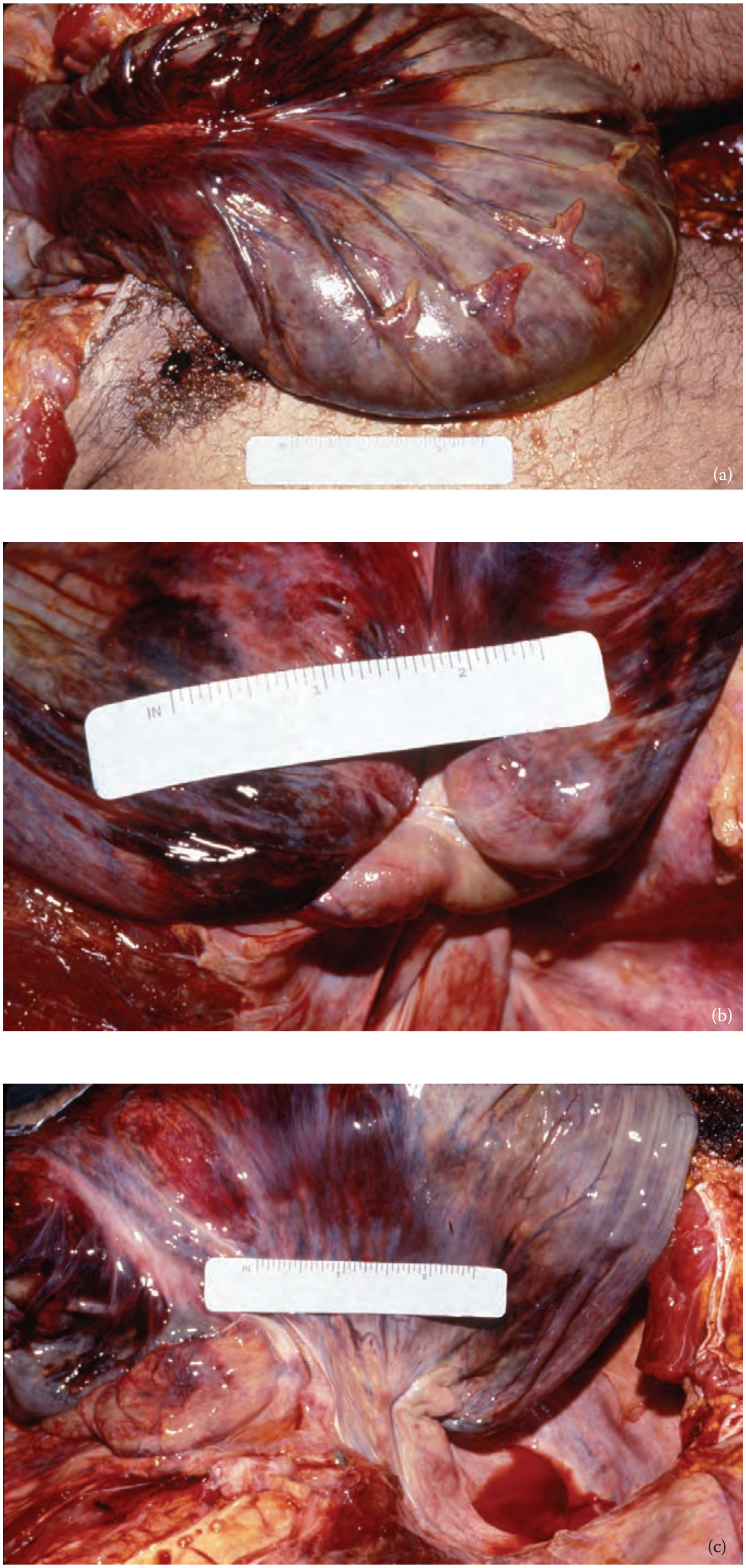




Ischemic bowel due to small intestine volvulus with vascular compromise. The arrow indicates purulent exudate at the serosal surface.

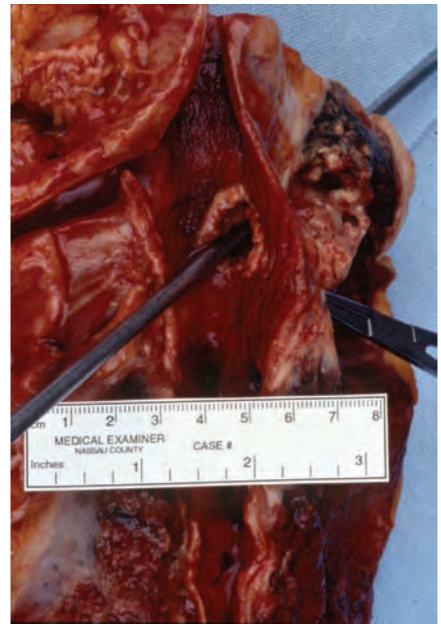


This decedent had a longstanding history of difficulty swallowing. She was seen to gesture as though she could not breathe and then collapsed. Autopsy revealed a large benign esophageal polyp that obstructed the upper airway. Note the ulceration at the tip of the polyp from constant rubbing. During this last episode she was unable to clear the obstruction.

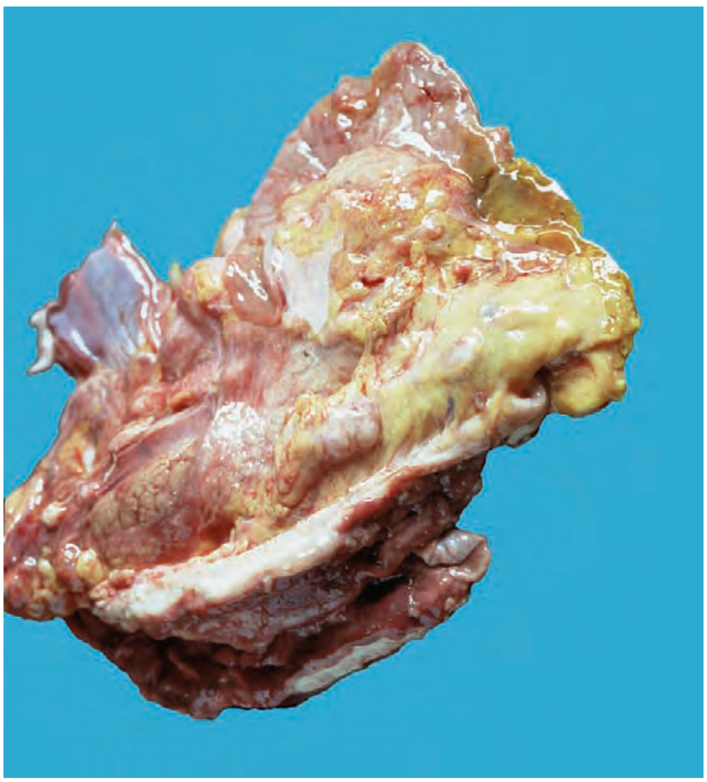


Cecal volvulus. Note the red discoloration of the serosal surface. Figure (a) demonstrates cecal enlargement due to obstruction, (b) demonstrates the cecal volvulus with rotation and obstruction, and (c) demonstrates this region untwisted.

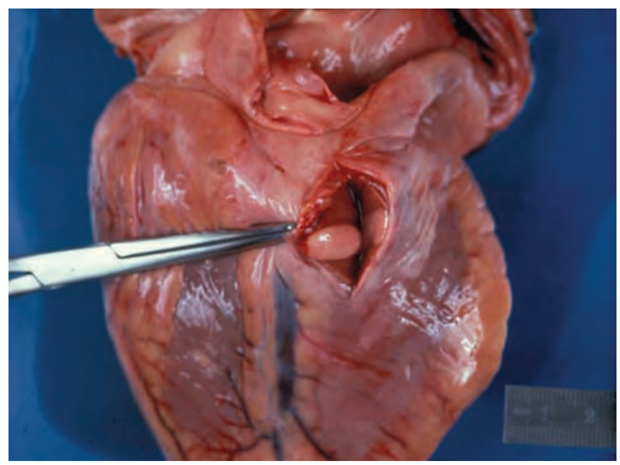
This individual never sought medical attention for her breast carcinoma and died at home.



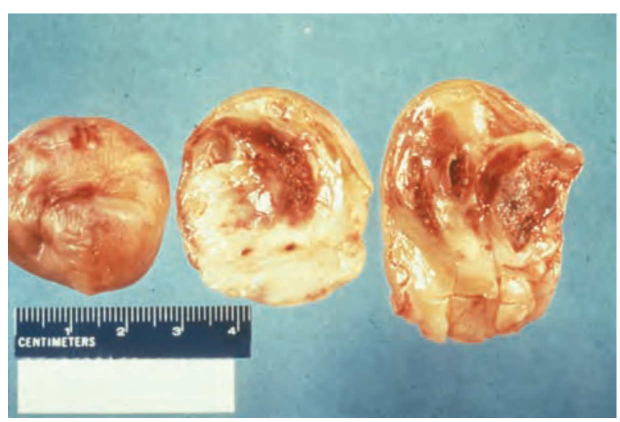
Bronchogenic carcinoma with erosion through the airway.



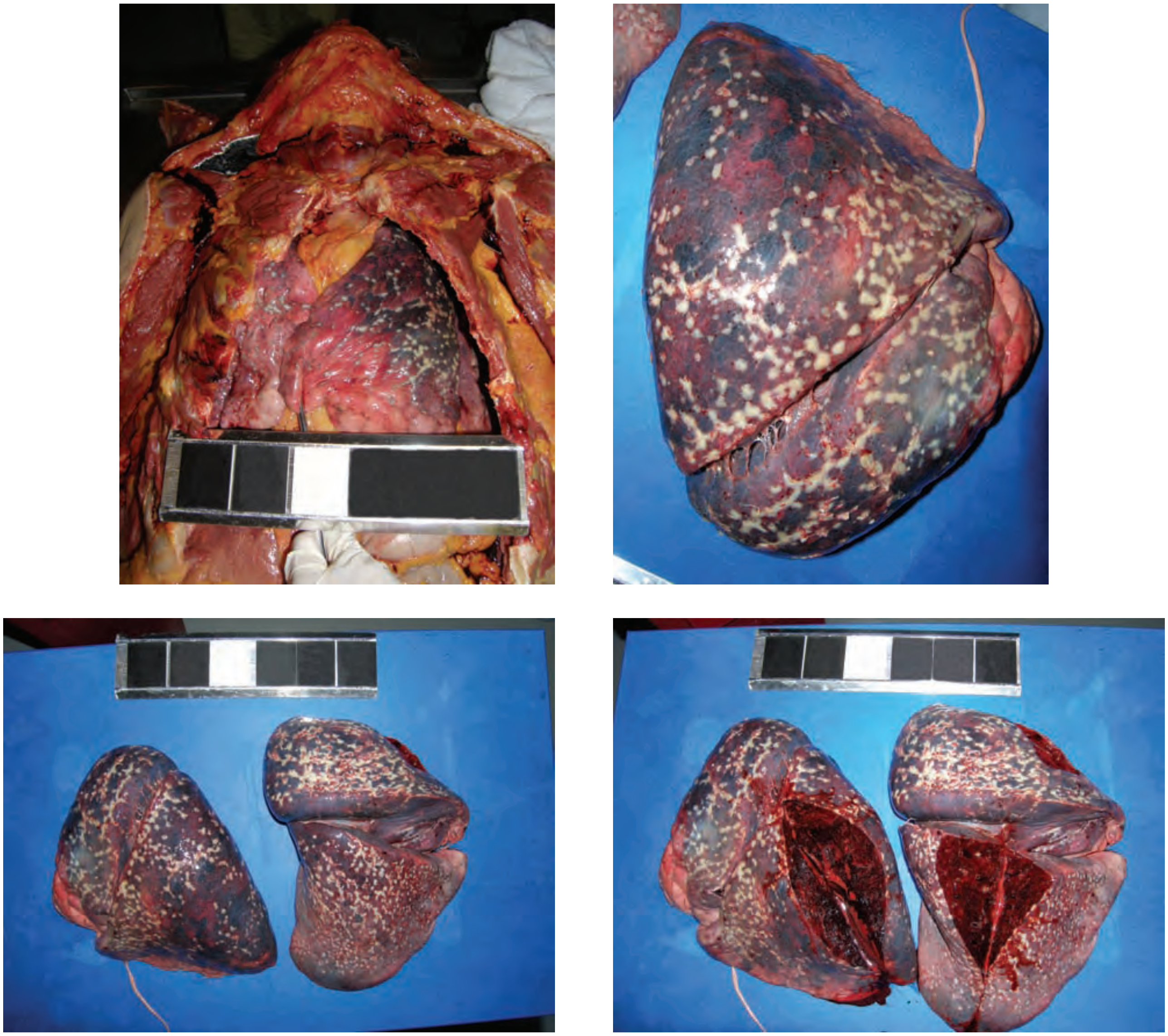
This individual never sought medical attention for his gastric cancer and died at home.



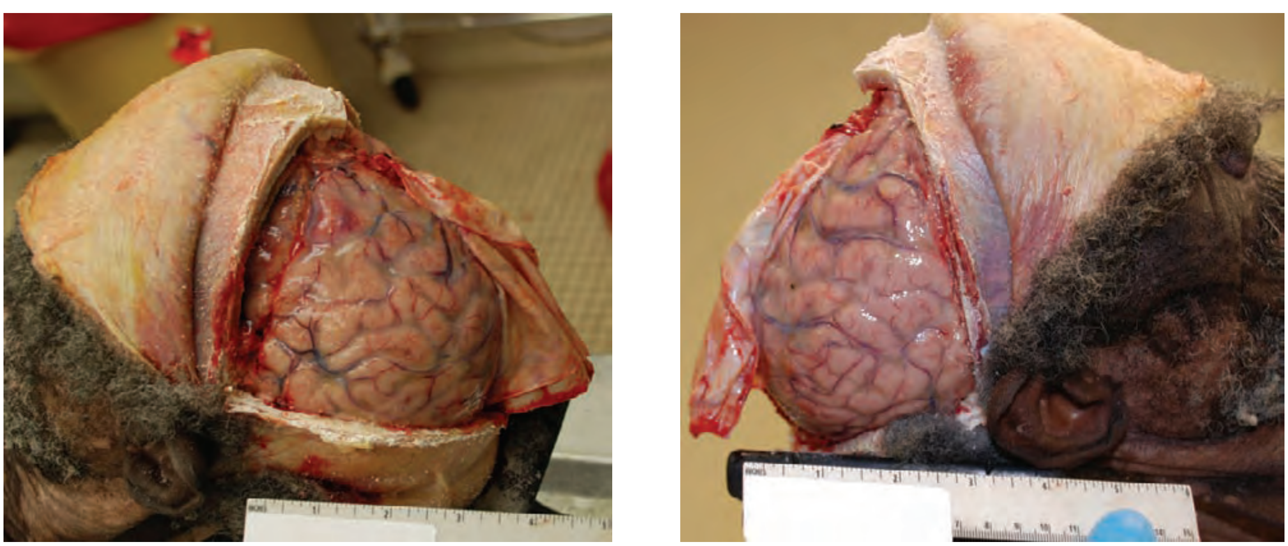
Metastatic bronchogenic carcinoma of the lung. Note the metastatic nodule in the heart muscle causing fatal arrhythmia.



Primary rhabdomyosarcoma of the heart.



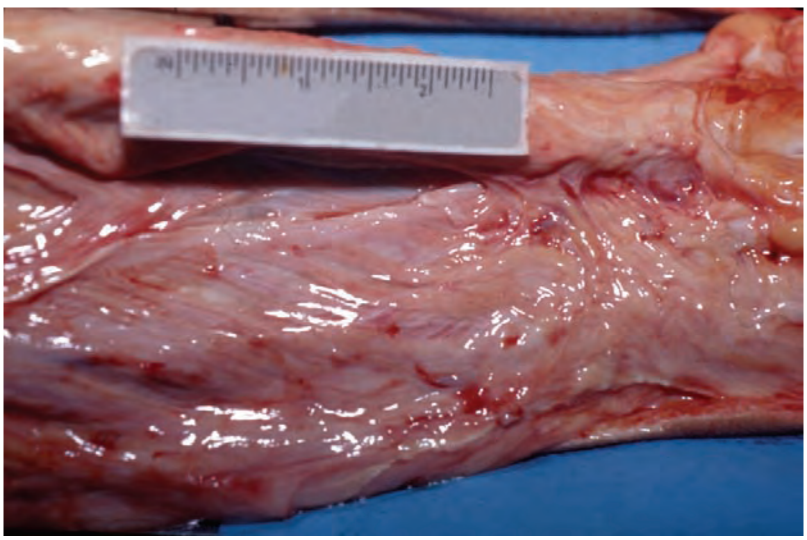
Multiple healed granulomas most likely from a past fungal infection.



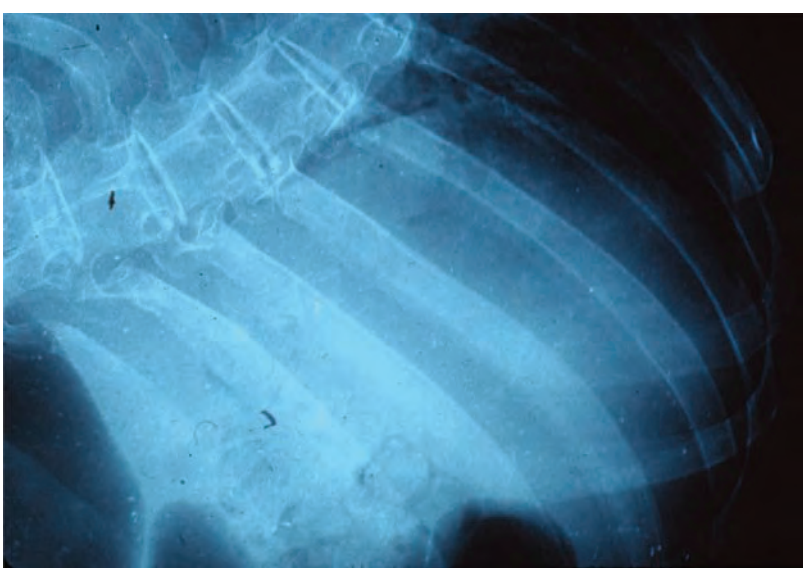
Cryptococcal meningitis in an individual with AIDS caused by intravenous drug use.

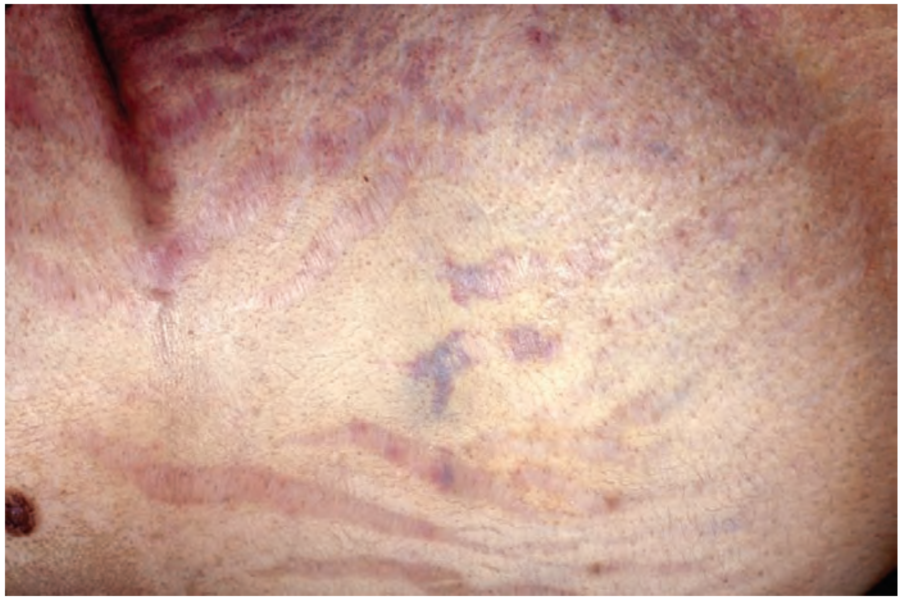
Neurofibromatosis type 1. Note the numerous neurofibromas at the surface of the body. These tumors may be found throughout the body. Death may occur by tumor growth leading to damage of adjacent structures such as the gastrointestinal track with obstruction, central nervous system with compression, renal artery with hypertension, etc.



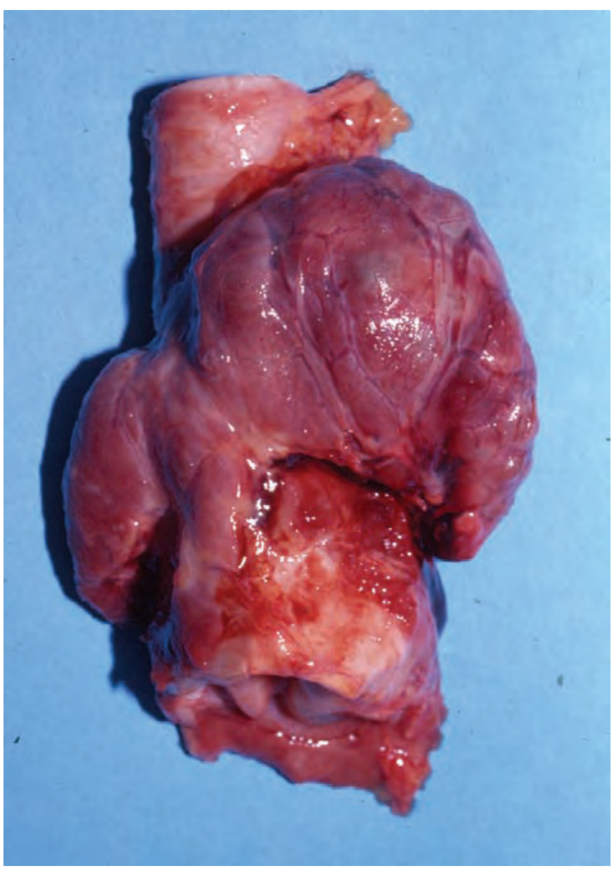
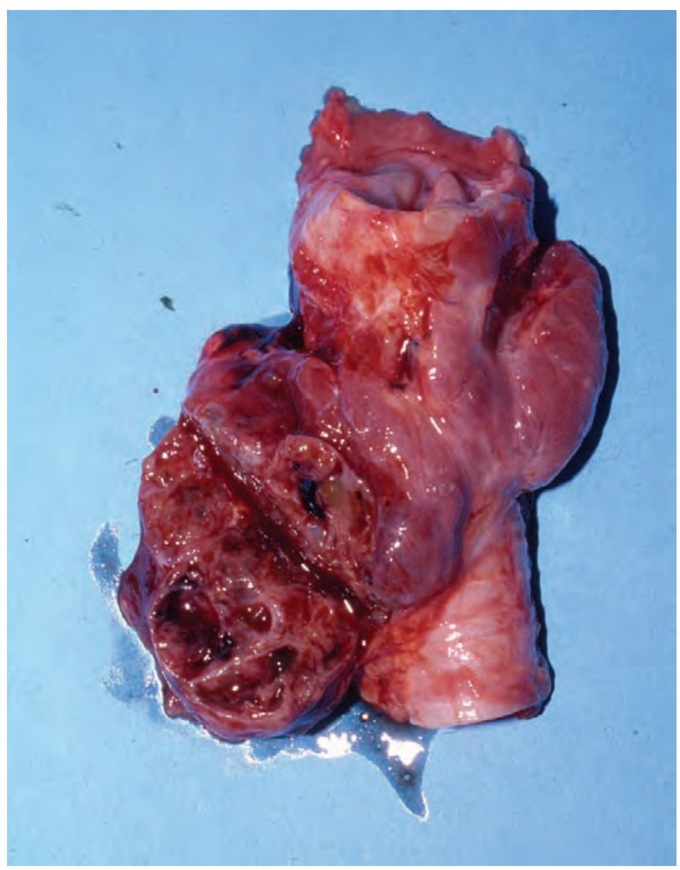



This decedent had Duchenne's muscular dystrophy and was bedridden for many years. He developed severe osteoporosis. While being removed from bed one day by a new caregiver, he sustained bilateral femur fractures and died shortly after.

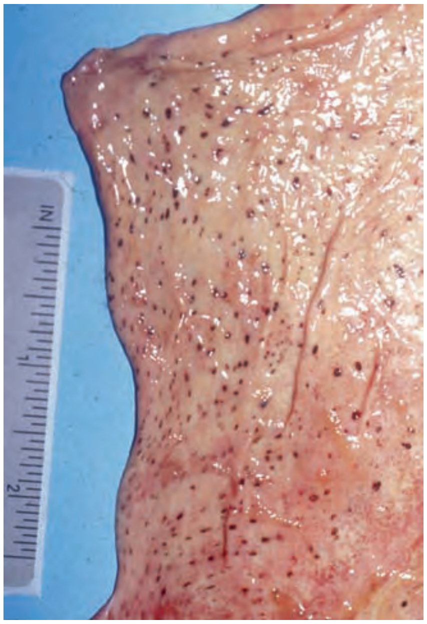


Cushing's syndrome due to hypercortisolism. Note the "moon face," "truncal obesity" and purple striates at the lower abdomen. This syndrome is also associated with glucose intolerance. From a forensic standpoint and interpreting injuries, it is important to know this is associated with osteoporosis, increased bruisability, and poor healing.

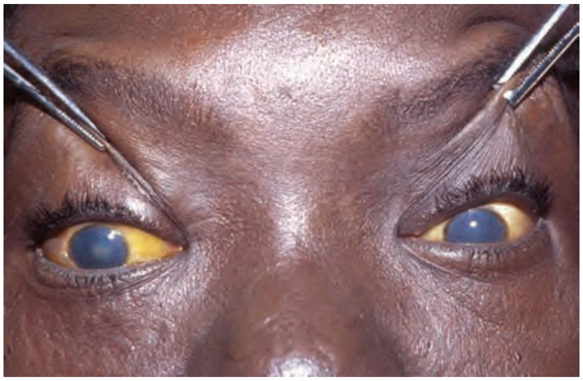



Goiter with hyperthyroidism may lead to thyrotoxicosis and sudden cardiac death due to tachyarrthymia.

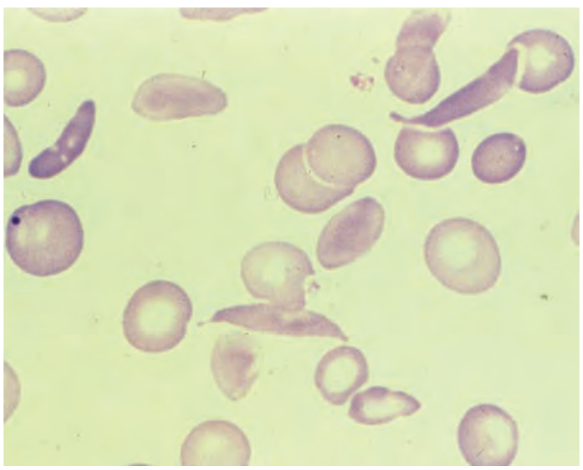


This portion of gastric mucosa reveals multiple small areas of hemorrhage in an individual with hypothermia. "Leopard skinning" of the gastric mucosa and acute pancreatitis are often seen with cases of marked hypothermia followed by short-term survival.

This individual had his fingers and toes amputated years before following extensive hypothermic injury with frostbite.

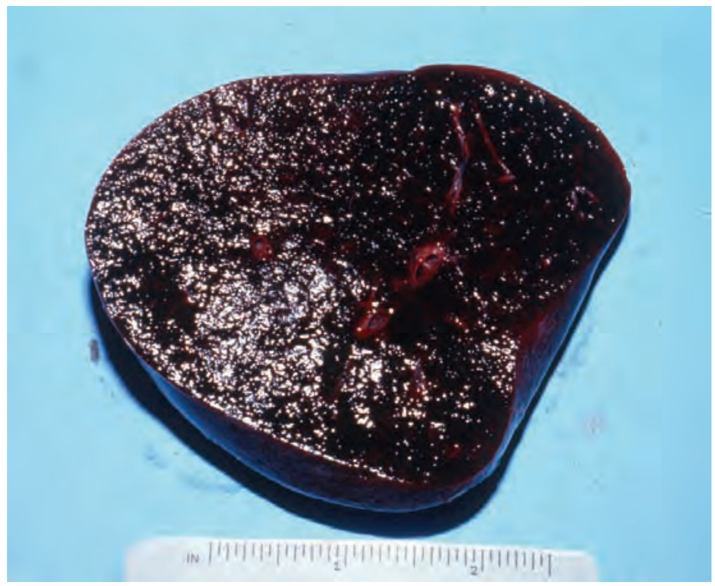


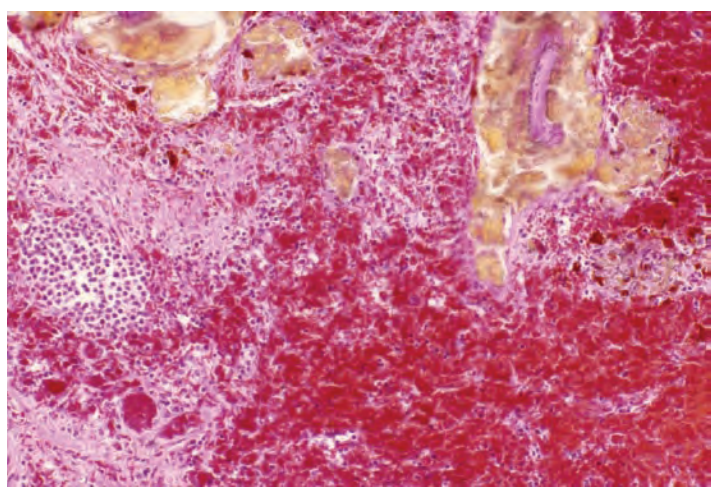
Jaundice due to hemolysis associated with sickle cell crisis.



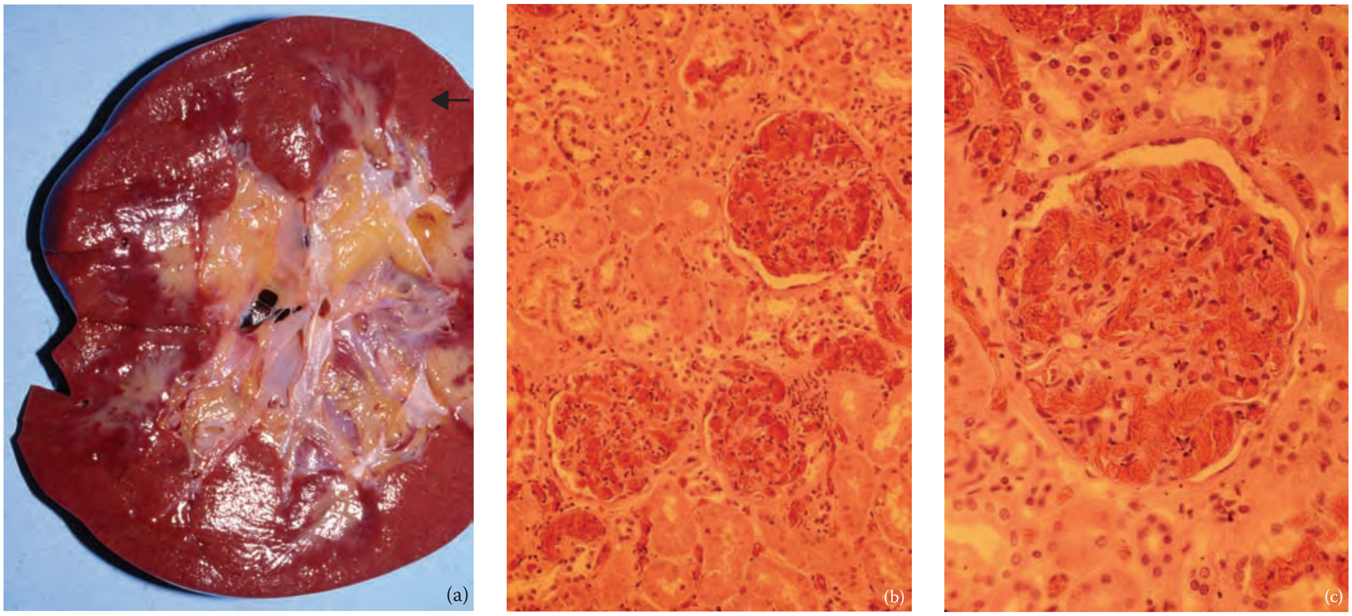
Sickle cell anemia. Peripheral blood smear showing sickled cells.

Sickle cell crisis. Note the dark red-black sludge within the gall bladder from hemolysis.

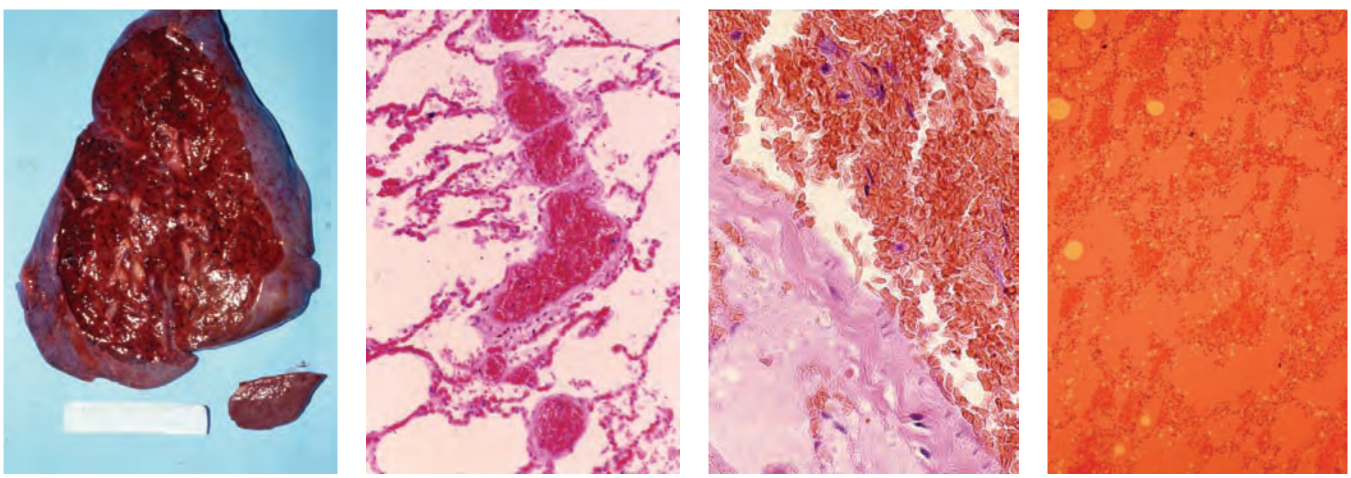




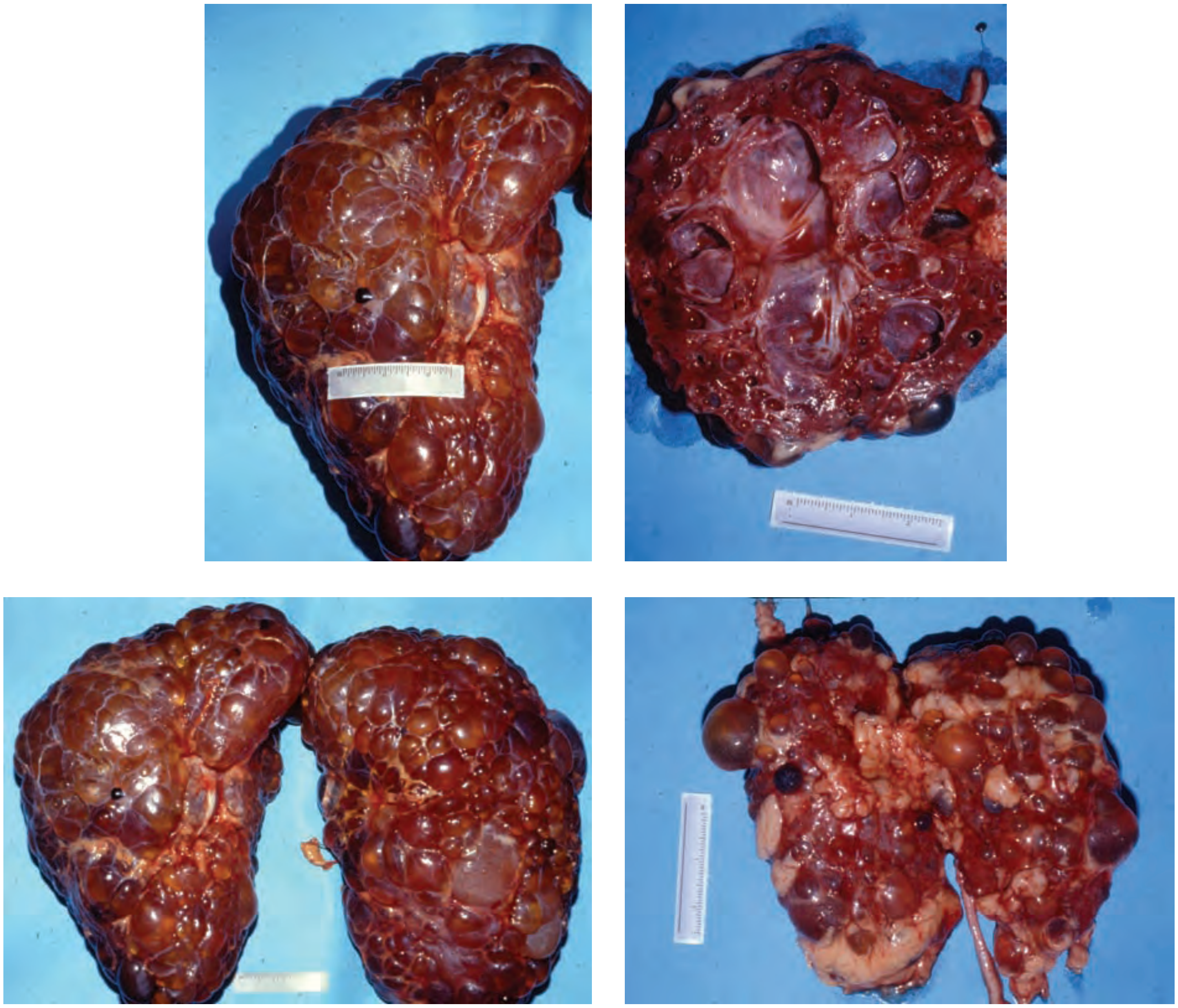
Autoinfarction of spleens from adult individuals with sickle cell anemia. These spleens are typically shrunken and firm. Note the histopathology sections with marked congestion fibrosis and Gamna-Gandy bodies from iron pigments with calcium salts.



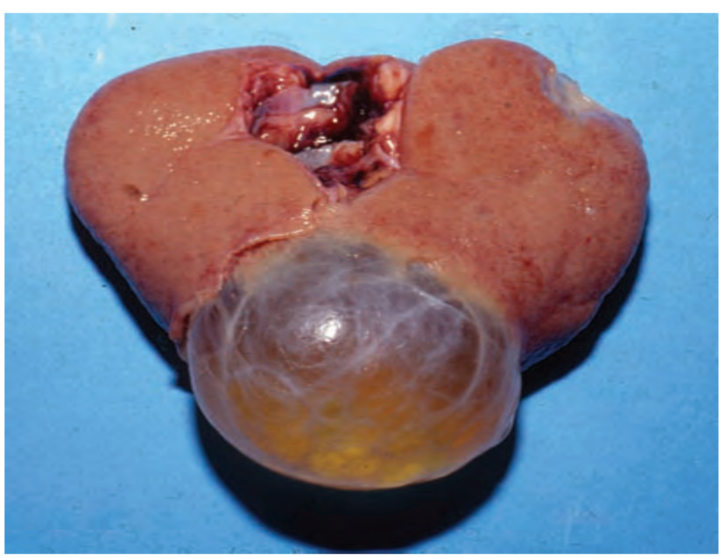
Sickle cell anemia with crisis. Kidney with papillary necrosis (a) and congestion (b) and (c).



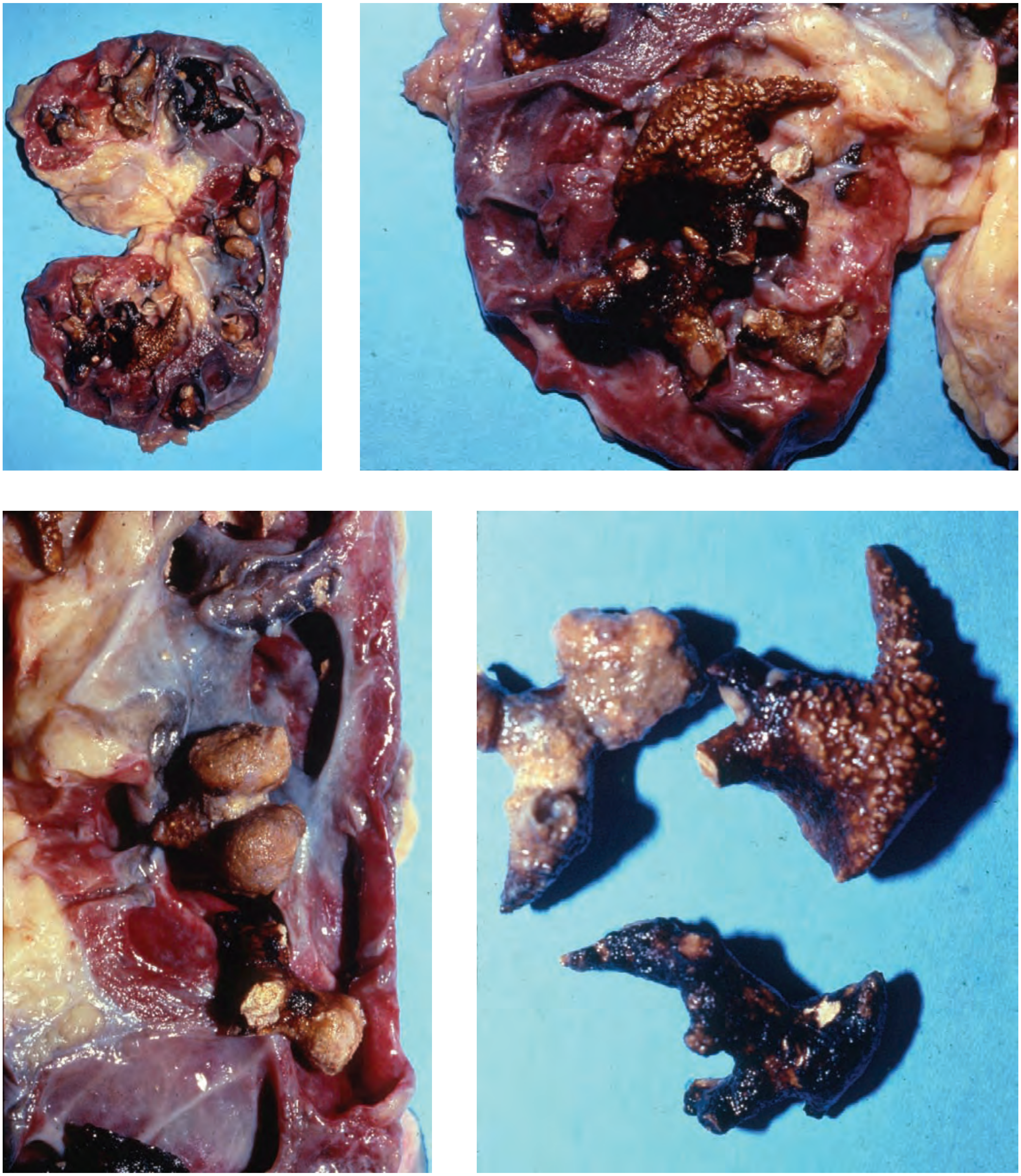
Sickle cell anemia with crisis. Lung with marked congestion and pulmonary edema.



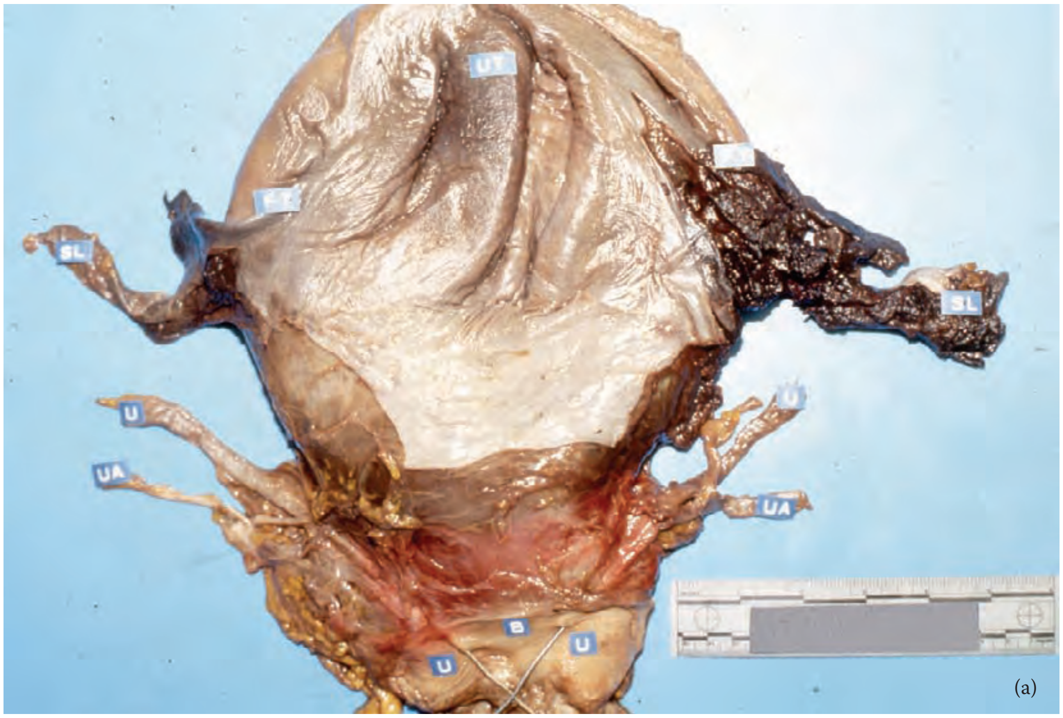
Adult polycystic kidney disease. This autosomal dominant disorder is another significant cause of hypertension. These kidneys weighed over 3000 grams each. There is also an association with cysts in other organs and intracranial berry aneurysms.



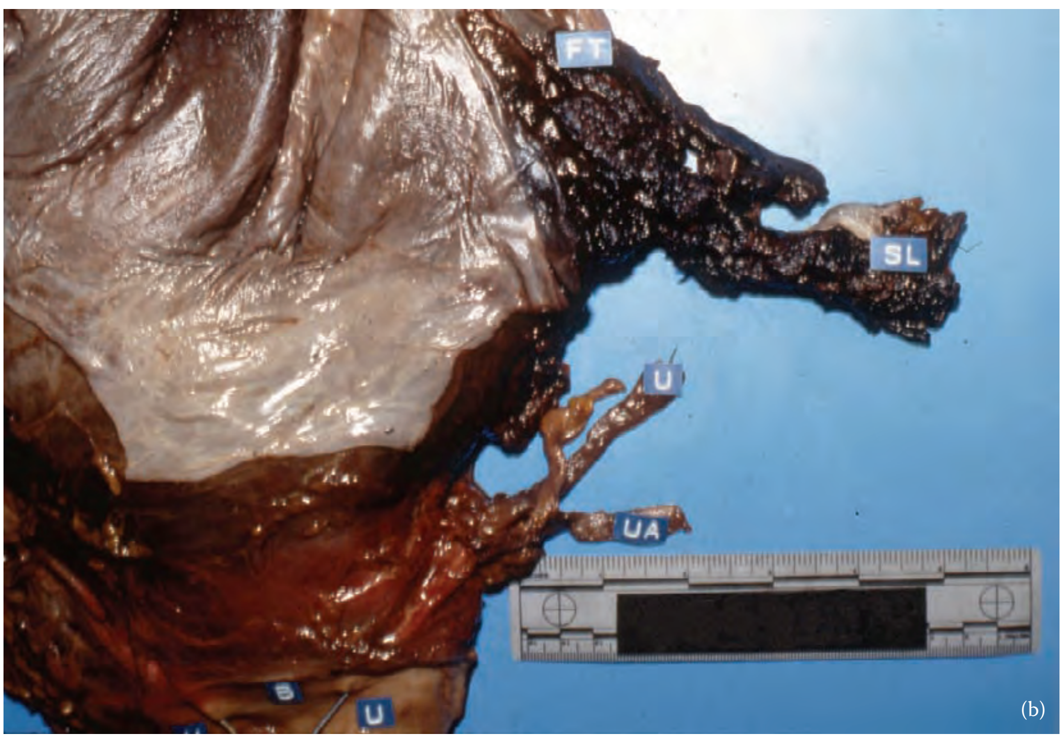
Simple benign cyst.



Chronic pyelonephritis with “stag horn calculi” associated with urea splitting bacterial infection such as proteus or staphylococci causing magnesium ammonium phosphate salt precipitation. It is also important to know that acute obstructive urolithiasis with urosepsis can be rapidly fatal.



(a)



(b)

This is a postpartum death involving a 30-year-old nurse. This woman was known to be colonized by group A beta-hemolytic streptococcus (strepococcus pyogenes). Approximately 8 hours following an uneventful delivery, she began to complain of back and pelvic pain. Within 4 hours she was in full-blown shock and was refractory to resuscitative measures. Death was pronounced approximately 14 hours following her delivery. Figure (a) depicts the gravid uterus and confluent brown-black discoloration of the left adnexa, which proved microscopically to show areas of necrosis with numerous clusters of bacterial cocci and scant neutrophilic infiltrates. Postmortem cultures of multiple organs, including lungs, liver, spleen, uterus, and peritoneal fluid, all grew group A beta-hemolytic streptococcus betahemolitic streptococcus. This "toxic shock like" death due to group A streptococcus has given rise to the term "flesh-eating bacteria."

Therapeutic Interventions, Complications, and Accidents

2

MICHAEL J. CAPLAN AND CHARLES A. CATANESE

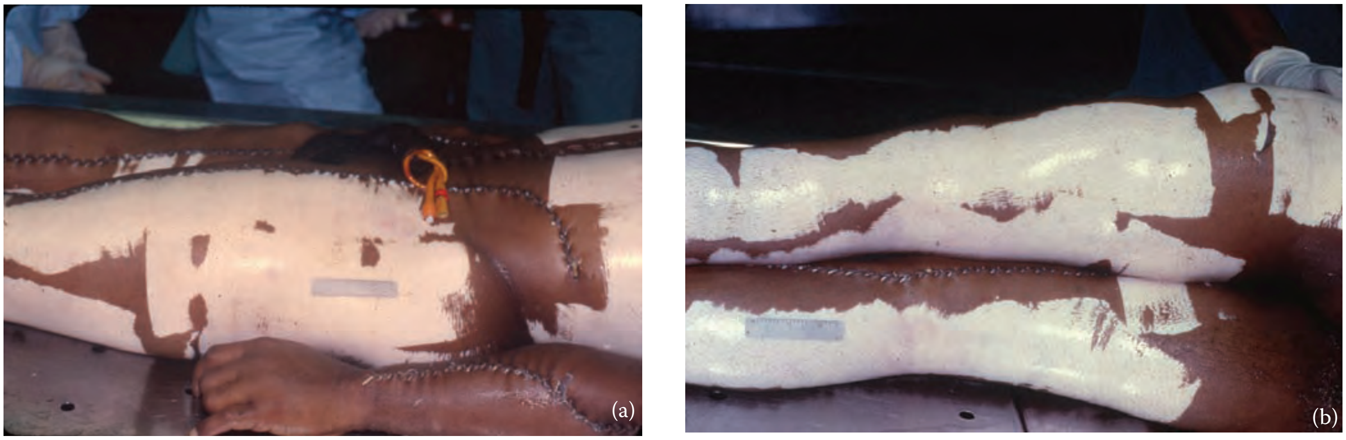
The evaluation of deaths related to complications of diagnostic and therapeutic procedures has traditionally been a problematic area for forensic pathologists and death investigators. The reasons for this are multiple: (1) these deaths often blur the boundaries dividing medicolegal and hospital death investigation; (2) many forensic pathologists do not feel comfortable approaching the often complex and highly technical issues present today in modern medicine; and (3) at least some forensic pathologists believe that these types of death belong more appropriately within the domain of the hospital autopsy. Despite this ongoing controversy, most forensic pathologists and death investigators will, at some point during their careers, be forced to handle these types of deaths.

If a patient dies either during or sometime following a diagnostic and therapeutic procedure, the first question in the diagnostic algorithm or decision tree becomes: Was the death in any way related to the procedure or was the procedure simply an artifact, with the death attributable to some underlying natural disease process or injury? For example, if a 65-year-old man who has stubbornly refused surgical intervention of a known 8-cm-diameter abdominal aortic aneurysm suddenly collapses and manages to make it to the operating room but dies before repair can be attempted, the "intraoperative death" is simply an artifact of modern medical resuscitation and transport technologies. In such a case, the medical intervention or procedure played no part in the death, and the cause of death would be worded as "ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm due to atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease, manner: natural." On the other hand, if an otherwise healthy individual underwent an elective procedure, for example, a bunionectomy, and died on the operating table, to ascribe the death to "hallux valgus" would be as ridiculous as it was erroneous. It is for cases like this that the concept of therapeutic complication merits consideration for a place in manner-of-death certification.

Once it is determined that the death was related somehow to the procedure, the next question in the algorithm becomes: Was the death a result of a known or predictable (albeit rare or unusual) complication of a properly performed diagnostic procedure or appropriately administered therapy, or did it ensue from a procedural error? When the former scenario exists, the term *therapeutic complication* is preferred, because that is a neutral designation as opposed to the term "therapeutic misadventure," which is inflammatory and prejudicial. When the latter situation is present, the manner of death is most accurately designated *accident.* Many examples of legitimate therapeutic complications exist. In the case of a 64-year-old man who sustained a non-ST (non-Q wave) segment elevation myocardial infarct, and who was treated with the antiplatelet drug eptifibatide (Integrilin), a platelet glycoprotein IIb-IIIa antagonist, he suffered intractable pulmonary hemorrhage and ultimately succumbed to respiratory failure. Pulmonary hemorrhage has been a recently reported complication of eptifibatide therapy. No error was committed in this case; rather, the decedent experienced an unusual yet known (documented) complication of appropriate therapy for his non-ST elevation MI. Therefore, the cause of death would be worded as: "Complications of pulmonary hemorrhage following eptifibatide (Integrilin) treatment for non-ST (non-Q wave) segment elevation myocardial infarct (due to atherosclerotic heart disease)" and the manner, therapeutic complication. On the other hand, if a middle-aged woman underwent a surveillance colonoscopy and presented days later with peritoneal signs and was found to have *E. coli* bacteremia and sepsis due to peritonitis resulting from inadvertent perforation of the colon during the procedure, the death certificate would read: "*E. coli* sepsis due to peritonitis due to colonic perforation complicating surveillance colonoscopy." However, because this complication is not an accepted sequela of an appropriately performed diagnostic or therapeutic procedure, but rather, an unintentional error, the manner of death in this case is most accurately deemed accident. Admittedly, there are cases that fall within the murky zone between natural and therapeutic complication and between therapeutic complication and accident. In such cases, all that one can do is exercise one's best objective clinical judgment. It is important to recognize and remember that death certificates are not immutable documents that are "written in stone"; rather, they can be amended should more accurate information regarding the circumstances of death become available at a later time.

While the concept of therapeutic complication is an invaluable tool in the assessment of these types of deaths, the practical applicability of the term to the death certificate has enjoyed less success. Only two known jurisdictions—Cuyahoga County, Ohio, and New York City—include "therapeutic complication" as a choice in the manner of death on the death certificate. Therefore, when a death fits the criteria for therapeutic complication as the manner, but the particular jurisdiction does not include it on the death certificate, then the manner defaults to natural. One other option is to list "therapeutic complication" in parentheses after "natural," but this probably is not common practice. Thus, for the indefinite future, forensic pathologists will be resigned to using the term as a conceptual tool in the evaluation of these most challenging deaths.

These figures show one of many possible artifacts associated with organ donation that may be mistaken for injuries. Note (a) the hemorrhagic discoloration around each eye (periorbital) and (c) the plastic insert in the opened eye following tissue removal. Medical record review and clinician interview revealed that these periorbital hemorrhages were not present at the time of admission.



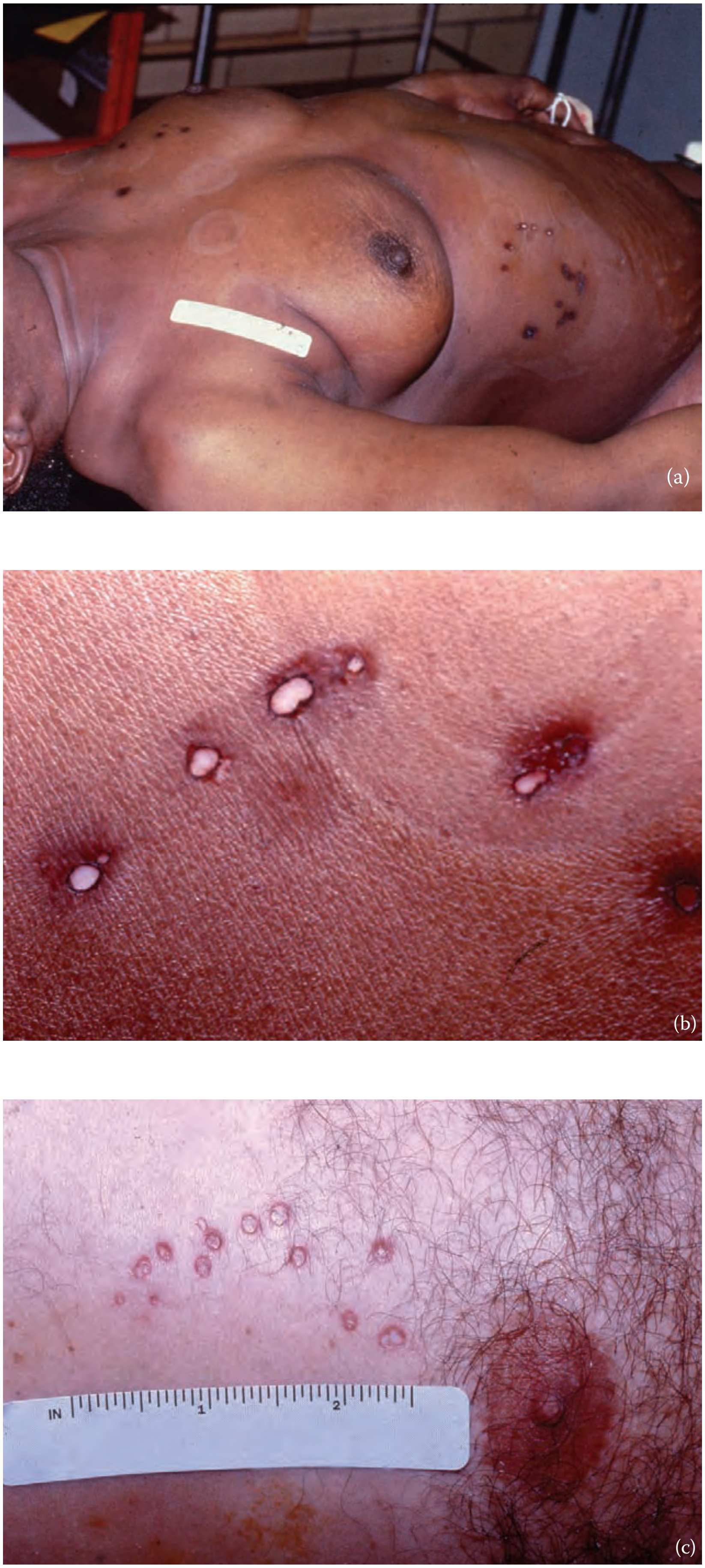
Tissue procurement of superficial skin.

Postmortem tissue procurement and full thickness skin.

Sutured incisions following long bone, soft tissue, and saphenous veins removal for postmortem tissue procurement.

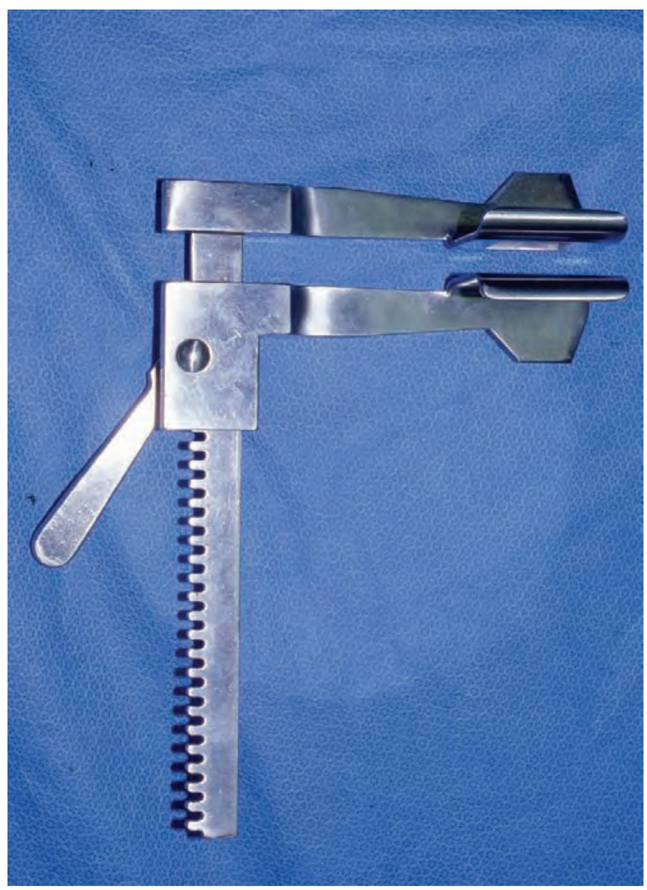
Figures (a) and (b) show ill-defined, parallel, vertically oriented gray-brown marks on the forehead. These are artifacts of transport. The child's head was stabilized with a strap while flown by helicopter from an outside hospital to a tertiary pediatric center. Figure (c) shows reflected scalp and well-defined sagittal and lamboidal sutures without features of subgaleal contusions or skull fractures.

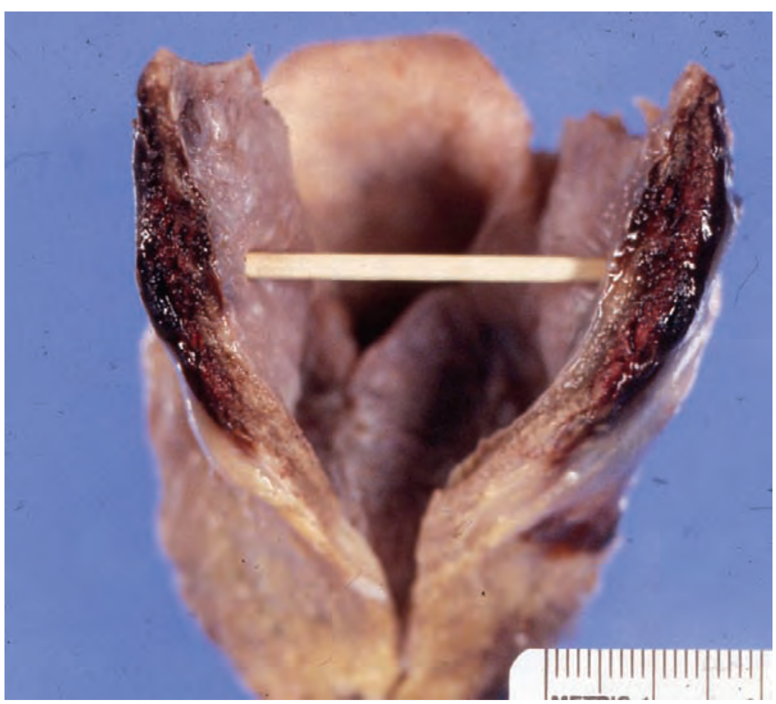
This individual was ejected from a car during a collision. She was taken to the hospital in an unconscious state and remained so until her death. There was initial speculation that she was struck by another motor vehicle due to the "tire-like" patterns on her legs (a–c). Further investigation revealed these injuries were not present at the time of arrival to the emergency department. She survived in the hospital for approximately 2 days. There was a pelvic fracture with blood seeping into the legs, extensive generalized edema, and disseminated intravascular coagulation (b). Pressure boots were placed to decrease the risk of deep venous thrombosis (d). This pattern of ecchymosis was caused by the pressure boots in conjunction with the complications of the injuries.



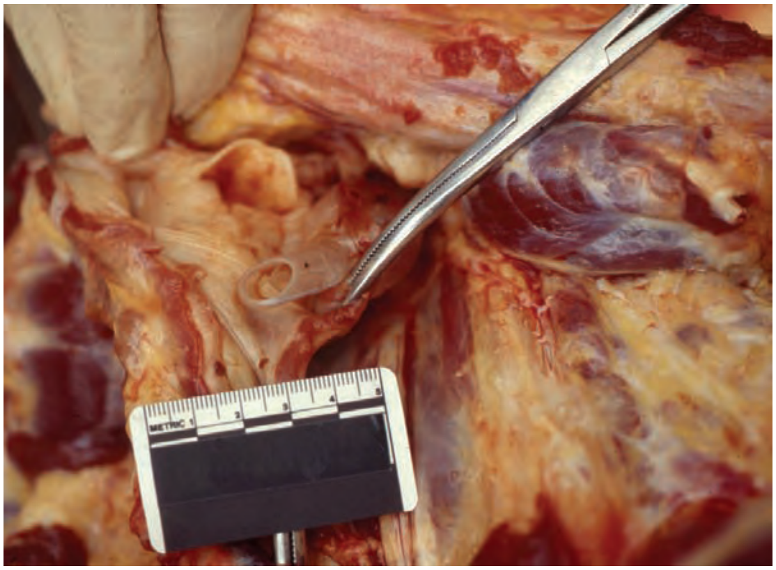
Figures (a), (b), and (c) show electrical burns caused by defibrillation with damaged cardioversion paddles during attempted resuscitation.

These figures show perimortem injuries to the anterior chest, axillary regions, and the anterior aspects of the upper arms associated with incorrect placement of a rib splitter during a thoracotomy.

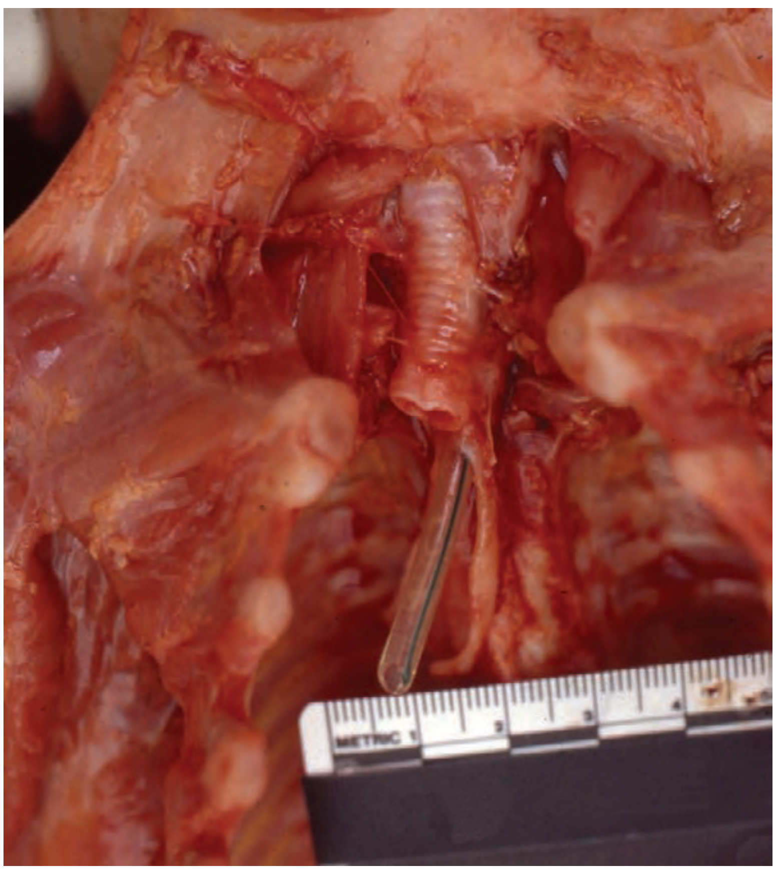




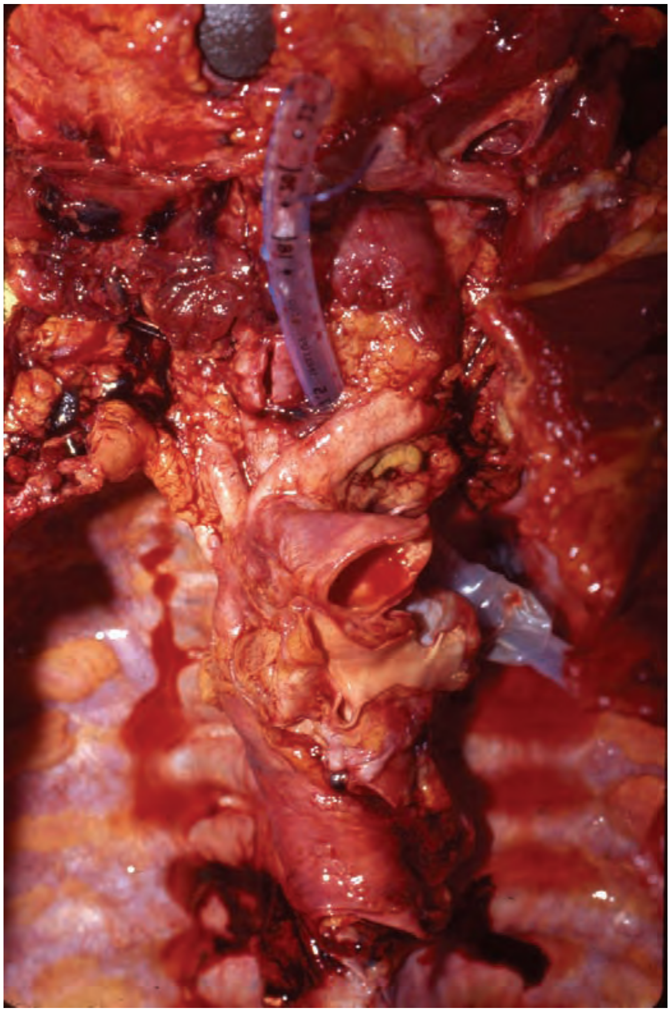
These figures demonstrate the posterior pharyngeal/esophageal cut surface with intramural hemorrhage. This is an artifact encountered frequently during resuscitative measures. The rich esophageal venous plexus tends to be a very hemorrhagic area following intubation.



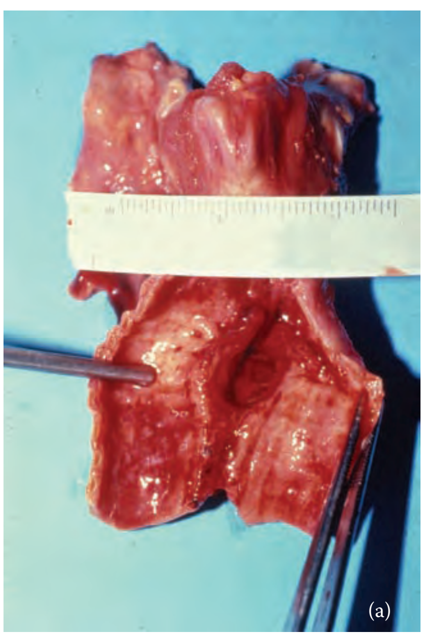
This demonstrates an esophageal intubation with the tip of the endotracheal tube protruding from the esophageal lumen. The epiglottis can be seen slightly behind the endotracheal tube, confirming an esophageal intubation.



This autopsy involved an infant who succumbed to sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS). The close-up photograph depicts an esophageal intubation, with the endotracheal tube clearly within the esophageal lumen and the concentric tracheal rings visible slightly anterior to and (anatomically) to the right of the tube. Esophageal intubation is not an uncommon finding associated with resuscitation and usually plays no substantial contributory role in the death; however, it should always be documented as part of a complete autopsy and may, in some situations, be a quality control measure for Emergency Medical Services (EMS) personnel and paramedics. Esophageal intubations during an elective procedure, on the other hand, are very important and potentially causal or contributory to the death.

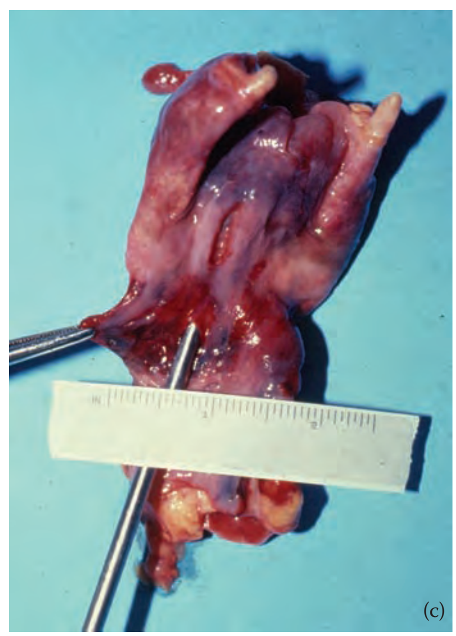


This endotracheal tube was inserted through the trachea and paratracheal soft tissues into the thoracic cavity during resuscitation.



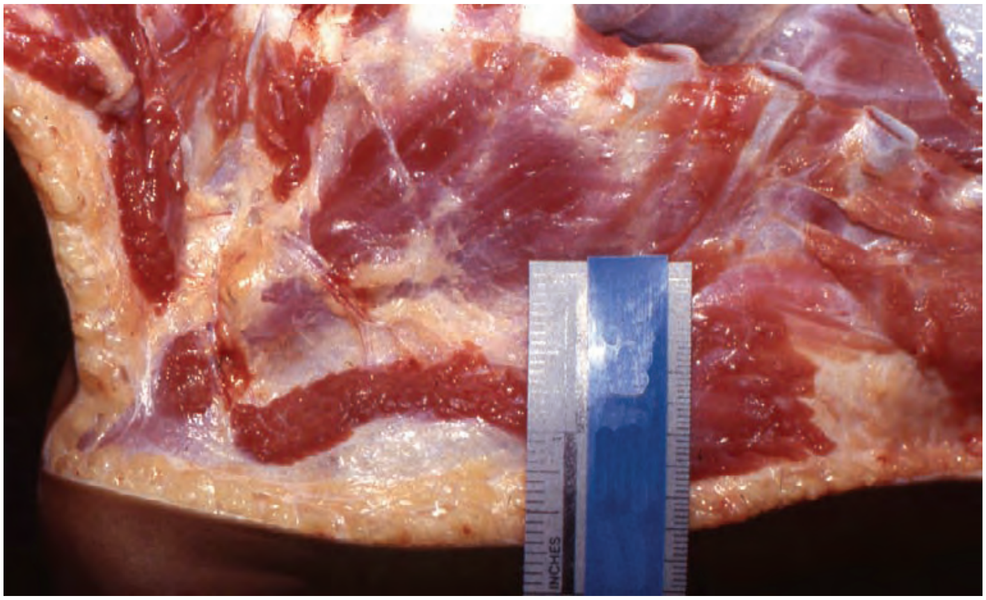
(a)

(b)

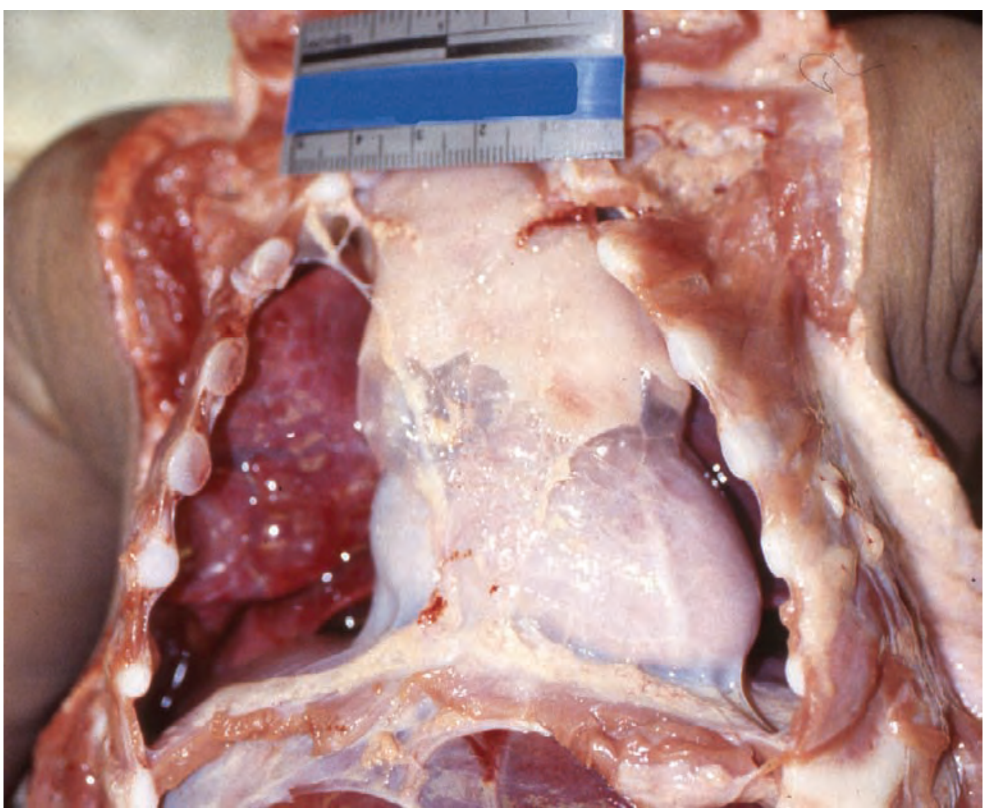


(c)

A tracheostomy tube was inserted through the posterior aspect of the trachea (a) into the esophagus (b) (traumatic tracheoesophageal fistula). Note the perforations on the posterior surface of the trachea (a) and the anterior aspect of the esophagus (b).

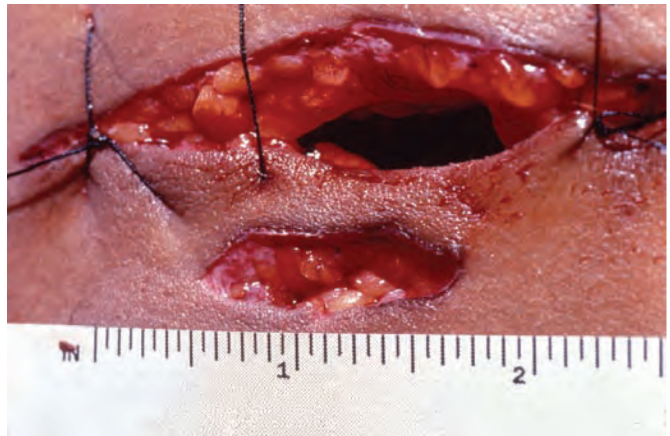


This is a view of the chest wall of an 18-month-old toddler with a history of tracheomalacia and subaortic stenosis who required a tracheostomy. During a bout of crying, the tracheostomy tube became dislodged, and after nurses attempted to reposition it, the baby rapidly developed subcutaneous emphysema, followed by bilateral tension pneumothoraces. Autopsy demonstrated marked subcutaneous emphysema, including periorbital swelling. The tube had been removed before the autopsy, precluding assessment of its placement. This particular view demonstrates air bubbles within the subcutaneous fat. It is important that all tubes remain in the body for objective postmortem (autopsy) evaluation of their placement.



Subcutaneous emphysema. Anterior chest with air bubbles throughout the mediastinal soft tissues. This may be commonly observed with vigorous resuscitation or trauma. Palpation of these regions often reveals crepitus.

One must be careful while examining injuries altered by therapeutic intervention. This picture demonstrates a catheter placed into an injured blood vessel through a stab wound.



This demonstrates a stab wound adjacent to a sutured chest tube incision. This may make injury interpretation more challenging.

Healing infected incision. This individual died of septic complications of his initial trauma. Had it not been for this trauma, the infection that took his life would not have occurred. The manner of death in this case was ruled accidental.

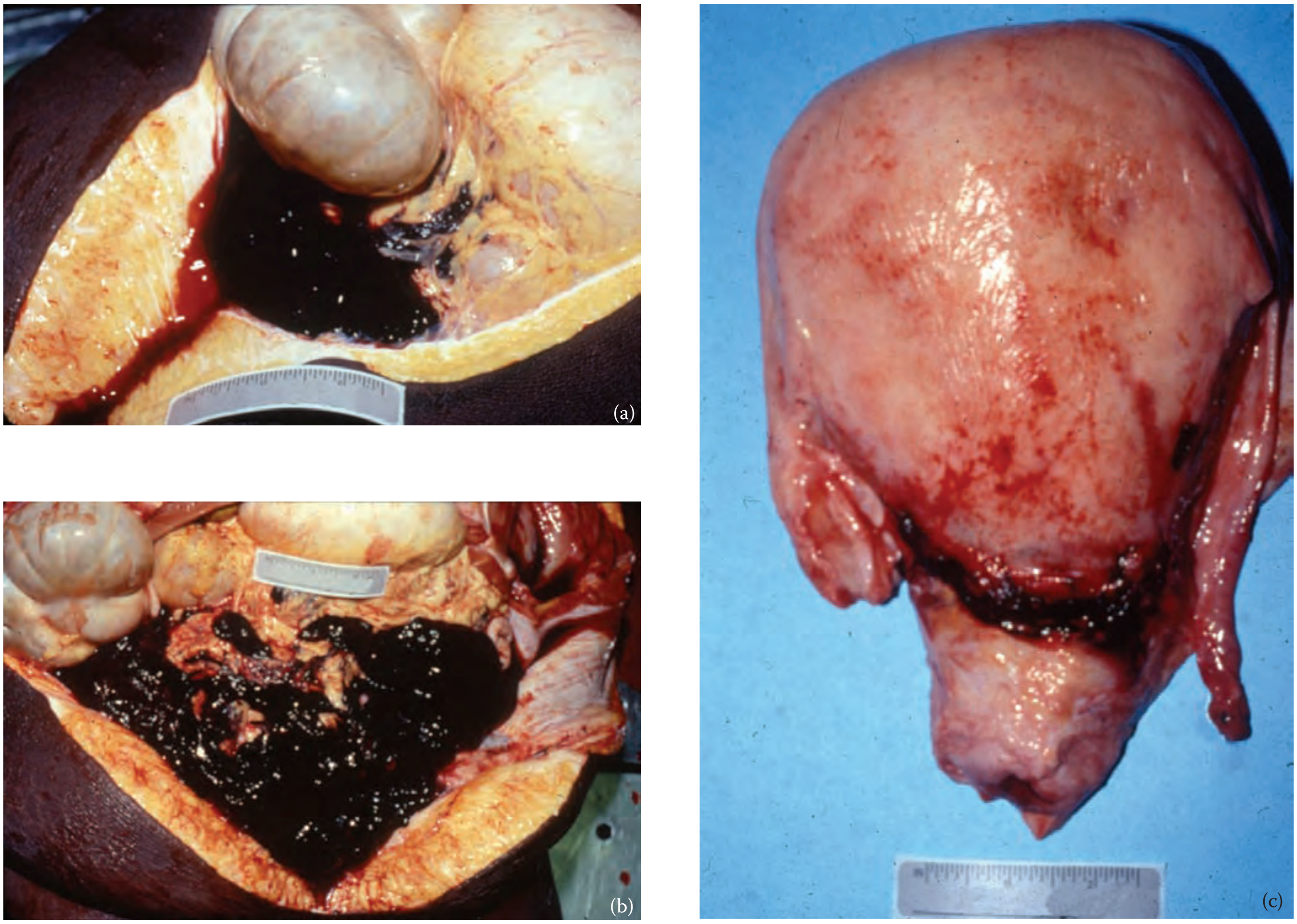
This demonstrates a stab wound that the clinicians converted along one side (edge) into a thoracotomy incision. If at all possible, this should never be done, because it makes injury interpretation much more difficult.

This is a "cutdown site" used for vascular access by a hospital emergency department (ED) physician, created by a transverse incision within the antecubital fossa This decedent had also sustained stab and incised wounds in other parts of the body. Again, this illustrates the importance of having a complete medical record and discussions with the treating ED physicians or trauma surgeons to properly differentiate between therapeutic interventions and injuries sustained before such therapeutic interventions.

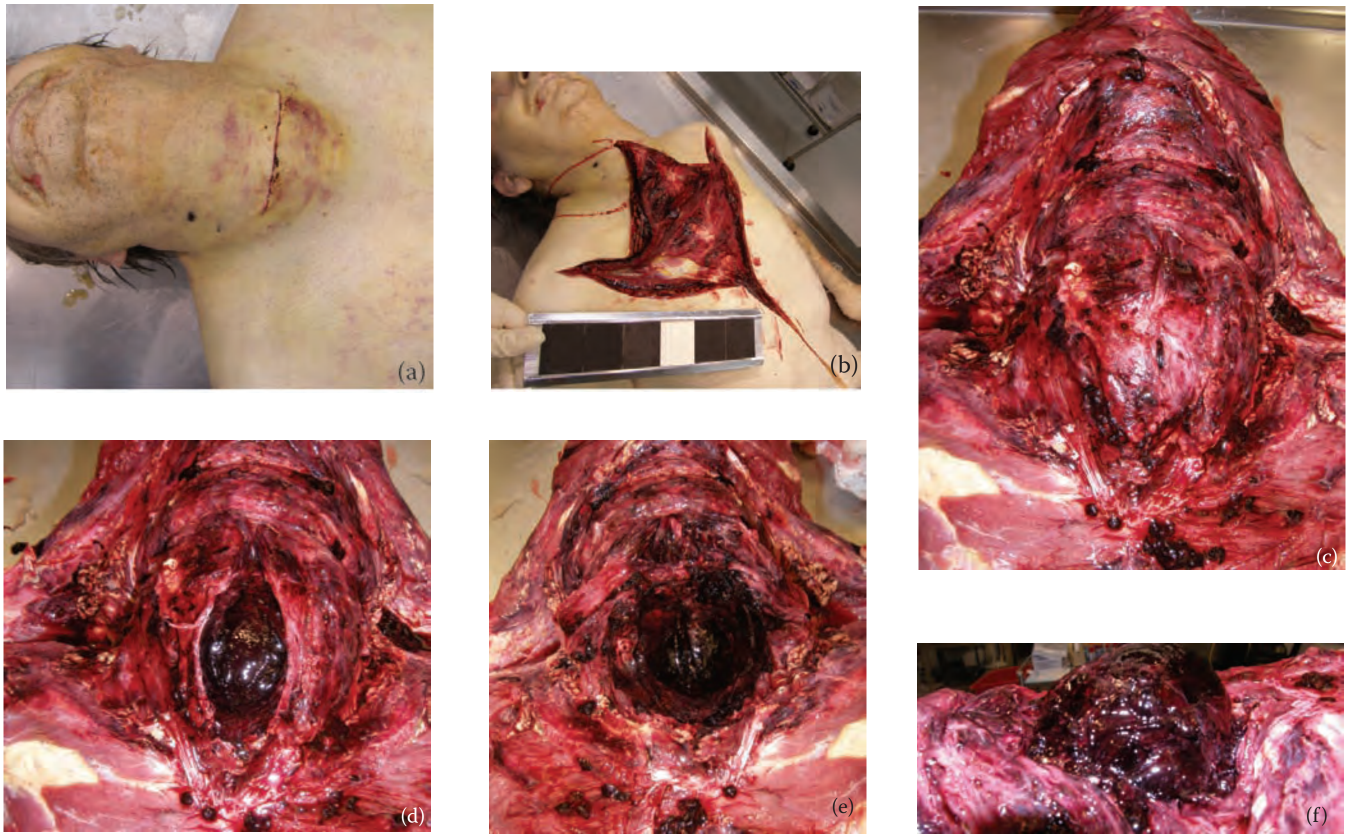
This chest tube was inserted through a previously existing perforation. Notice, however, that along the left margin of this perforation (from the 7–11 o'clock positions), there is a distinct abrasion. Further investigation established that the chest tube was inserted through a previously sustained entrance gunshot wound, thus explaining the abraded margin of this perforation.

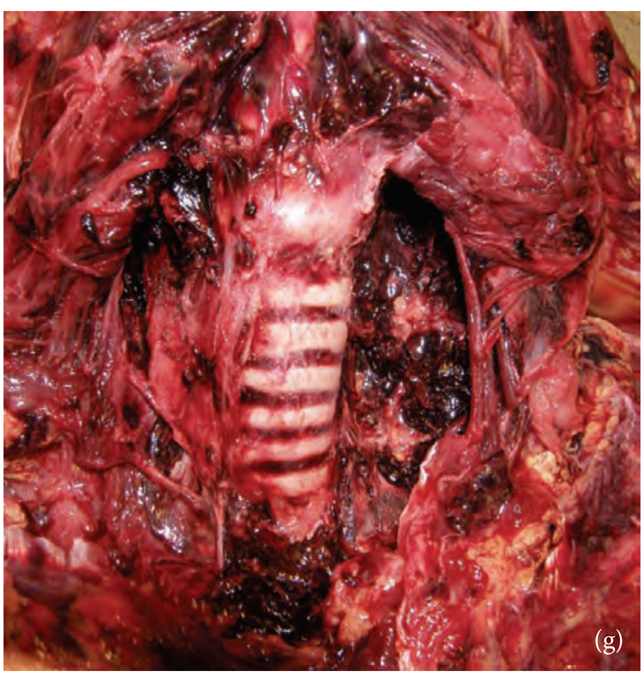

Arteriovenous hemodialysis grafts with healing needle puncture marks.

These individuals exsanguinated in their residences following ruptures of their infected arteriovenous dialysis grafts.

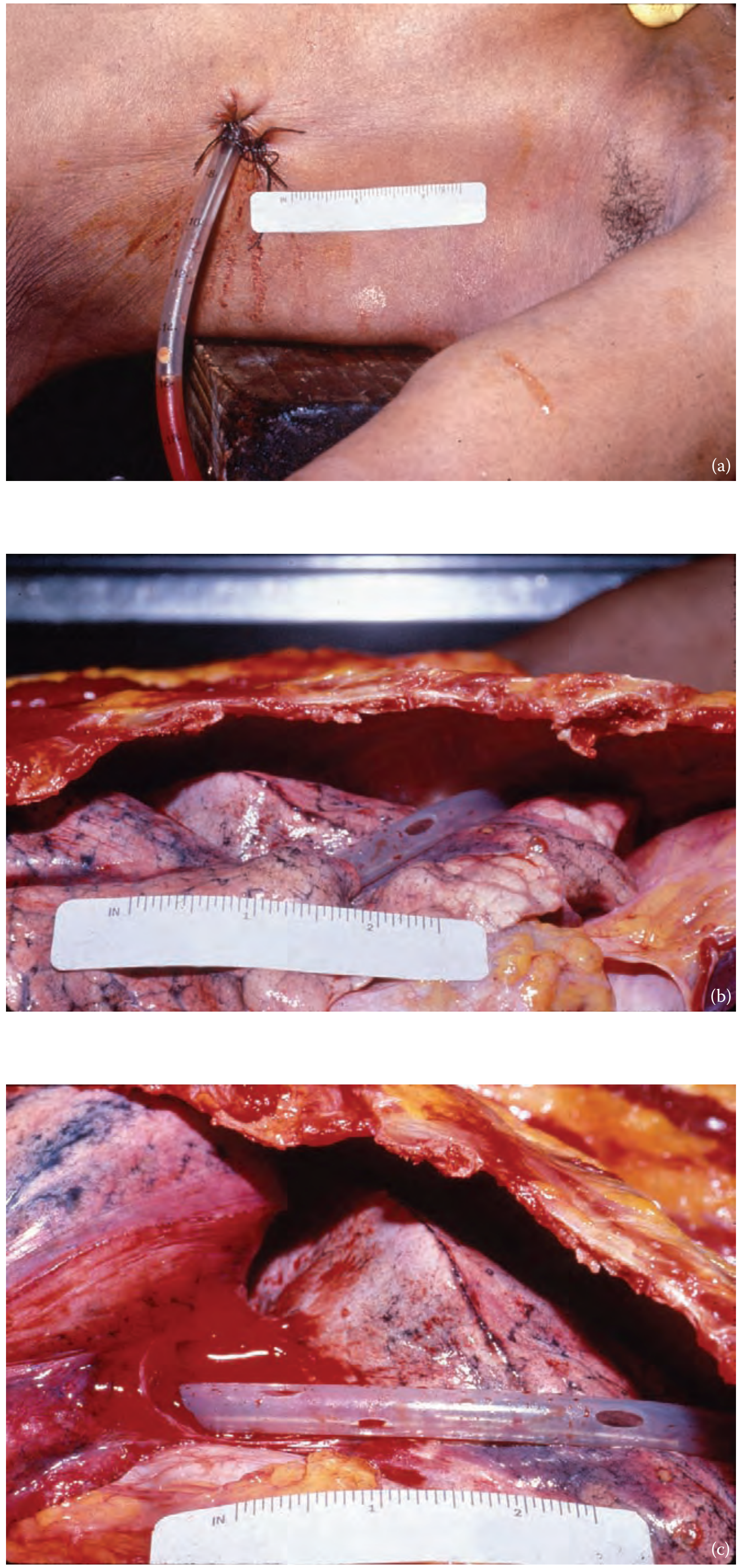


This woman underwent (a) Cesarean section (c) for an otherwise unremarkable term pregnancy hours before going into hemorrhagic shock while in the recovery room. Autopsy disclosed a large hemoperitoneum with clotted blood extending from a bleeding abdominal wall vein (a) and (b).

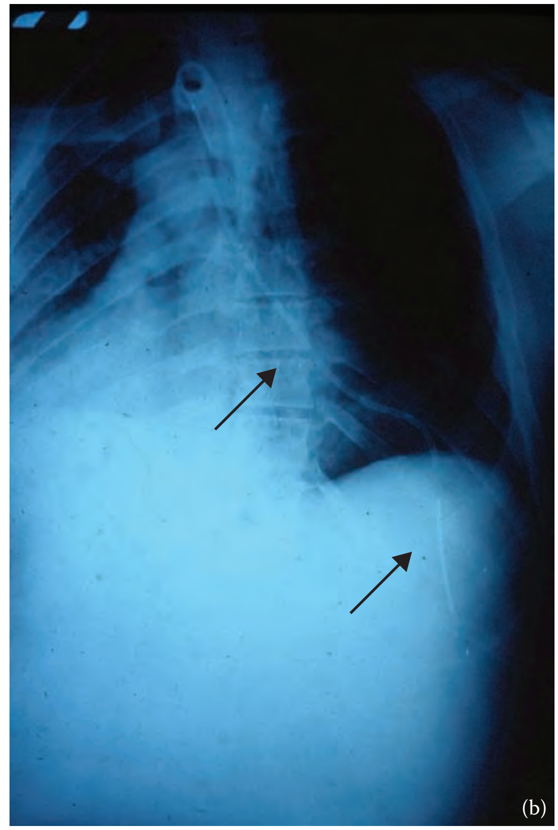




These figures show an individual who died of hemorrhagic complications following (a) a thyroidectomy. A large accumulation of clotted blood collapsed his airway while he was sedated at home. He was found unresponsive lying on a sofa. Note the hemmorhage and larger blood clot in the anterior neck and chest.



These figures show a patient who was admitted in cardiac arrest following an acute asthma attack. Chest tube placement was inserted through the lung parenchyma during resuscitation. Approximately 150 mL of liquid blood were recovered from the left hemithorax, indicating that this injury was perimortem and iatrogenic.



This individual underwent placement of a nasogastric tube that perforated the esophagus and entered the right thoracic cavity (hemithorax). The injury went unnoticed for many hours. The decedent was fed through the nasogastric tube, which is demonstrated by the accumulation of yellow fluid within the thoracic cavity. Autopsy revealed a fibrinous pleuritis and an early pneumonia.

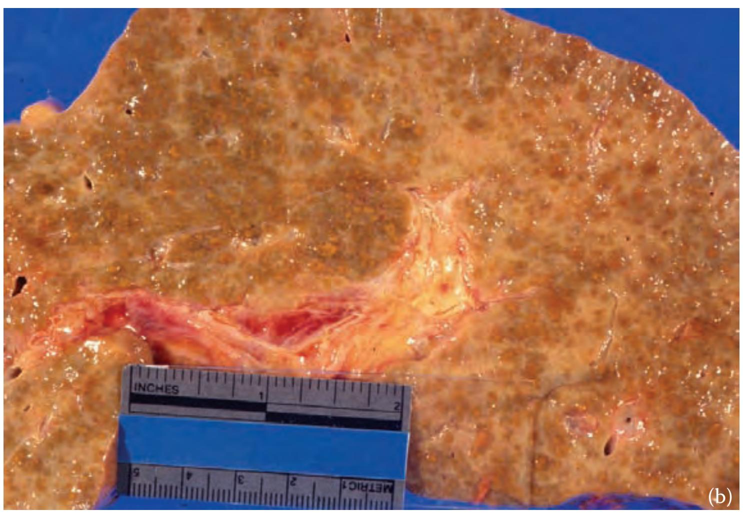
Percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy feeding tube.

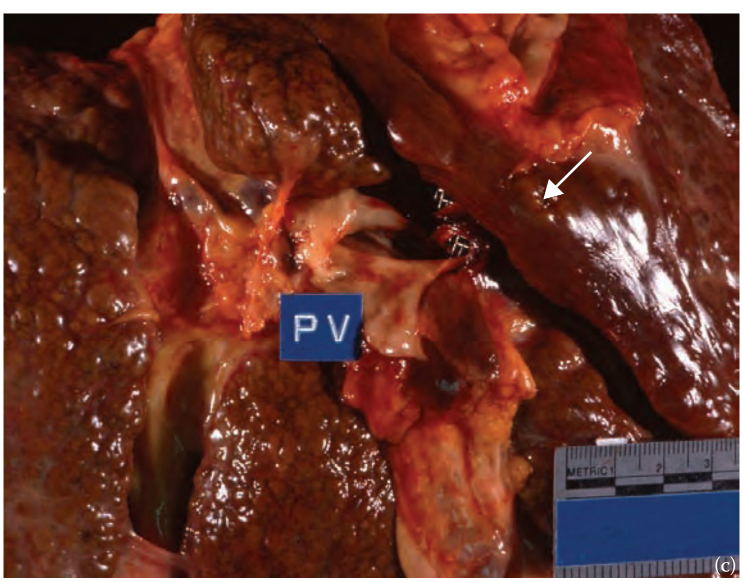
Panoramic view illustrating the anterior gastric wall, with a probe through the previous PEG site, also demarcated by an arrow, and the other arrow demonstrating greater omentum with fibrinous exudate. Similarly appearing exudate can also be seen on the anterior surface of the gastric body and fundus.

This is a close-up anterior view of the stomach, demonstrating the previous PEG site through the anterior gastric wall, as well fibrinous exudate on the surface of the greater omentum, with both features demarcated by arrows.

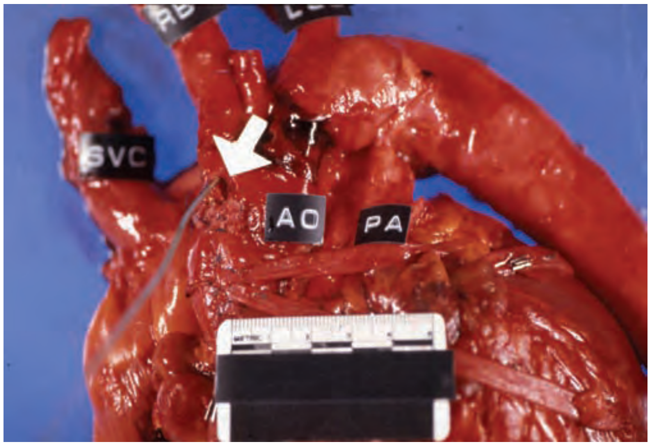
This depicts the parietal peritoneum with a gray, shaggy, fibrinous exudate.

This case involved an elderly woman with a history of dementia who could no longer live independently and was made a ward of the state. She was hospitalized for long-term intermediate care. She had undergone percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG) tube insertion due to insufficient oral intake (a). She underwent a tube replacement for leakage. Later that evening, she experienced acute onset of abdominal pain that was complicated by increasing abdominal distension, green discoloration of the abdominal wall site, and purulent drainage from the tube site. The remainder of her course was characterized by respiratory distress, aspiration of gastric contents, hypotension, and tachypnea, culminating in systemic inflammatory response syndrome with lactic acidosis, multisystem organ failure, and hemodynamic instability, refractory to aggressive resuscitative measures. Autopsy revealed intraperitoneal placement of the gastrostomy tube with intraperitoneal administration of enteral feedings and a collection of approximately 700 mL of turbid peritoneal fluid with extensive fibrinous adhesions. Microscopic examination confirmed an exuberant fibrinous exudate with scattered clusters of bacterial cocci and yeast, as well as birefringent material. The cause of death was certified as complications of peritonitis following intraperitoneal placement of gastrostomy tube during tube change, following percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy insertion for insufficient oral intake related to atherosclerotic cerebral vascular disease and dementia. The manner of death was certified as accident.

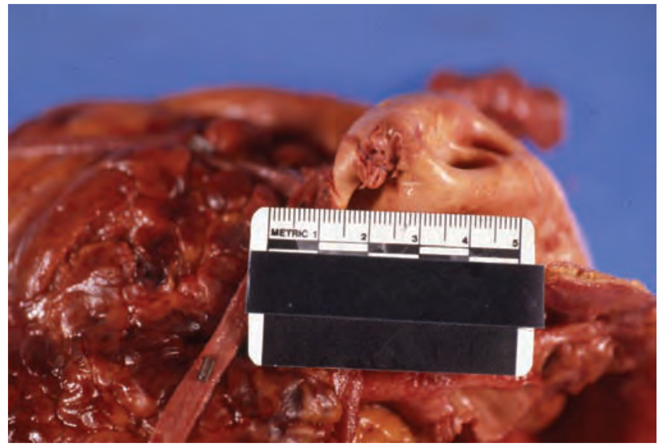




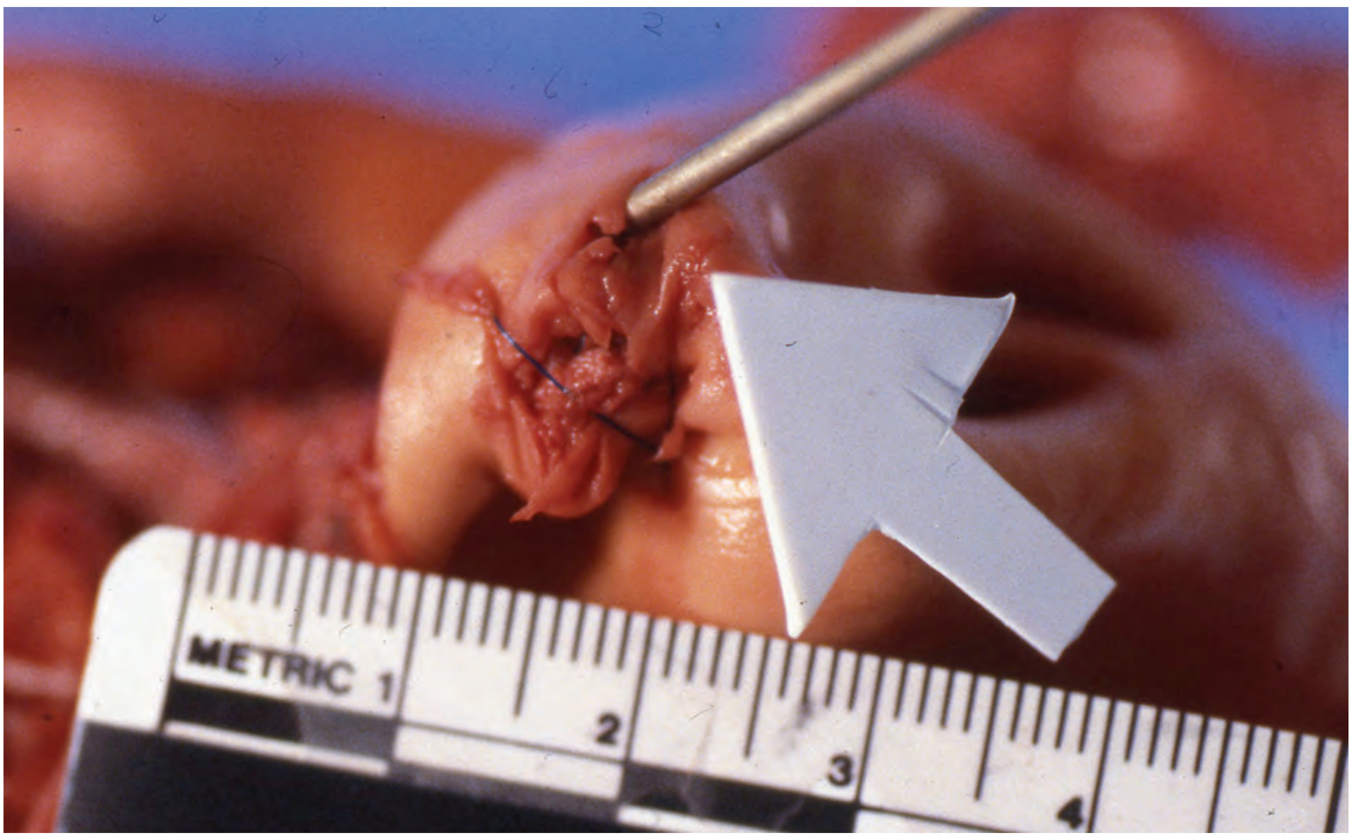
This was a middle-aged woman with primary biliary cirrhosis who underwent a transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS) for decompression of high portal venous pressure (portal hypertension). The picture (a) depicts a large hemoperitoneum, with greater omentum, stomach, and intestines floating on top of a pool of blood. There was advanced end-stage cirrhosis (b), with confluent scar enveloping and entrapping regenerative parenchymal nodules. Liver diseases such as this are associated with an increased risk of hemorrhagic complications due to coagulopathy and portal hypertension. This fatal hemorrhage resulted from laceration of a portal vein branch occurring during stent placement (c).



Note the probe inserted through the perforation site, which is also demonstrated with the arrow.

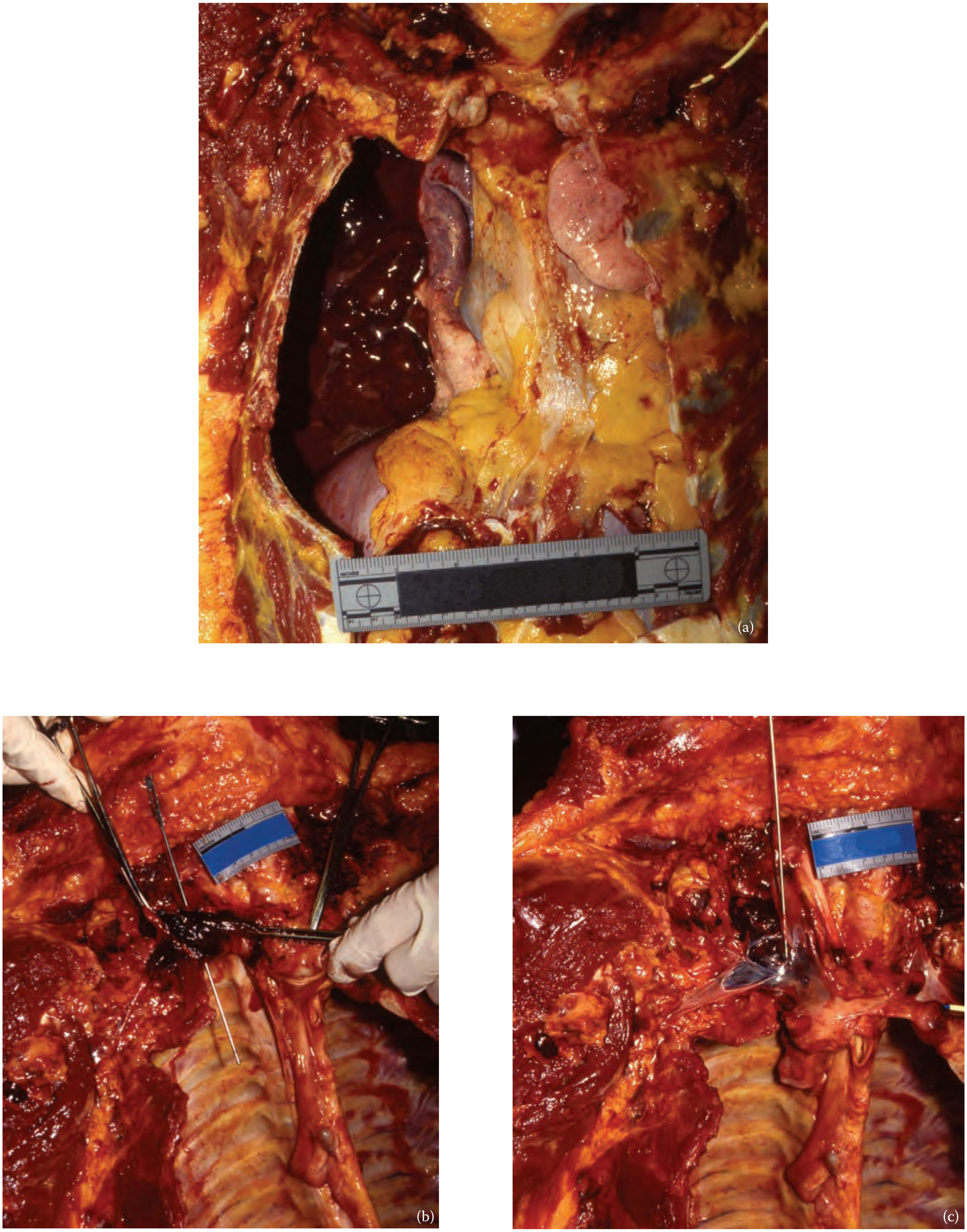


This image demonstrates the sutured cannulation site as well as one of the bypass grafts.



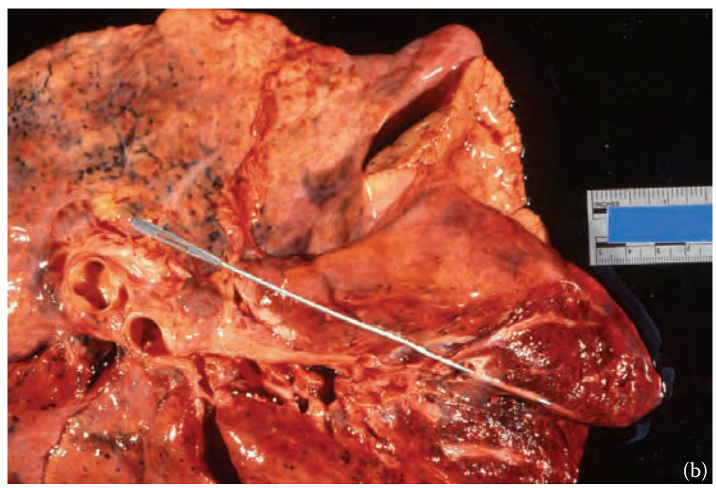
Close-up of perforation site demonstrated by probe and arrow.

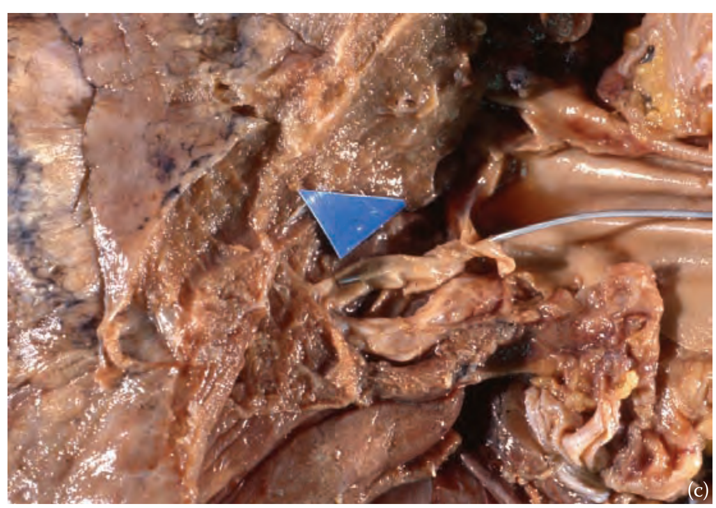
This case involved a patient who underwent six-vessel coronary artery bypass grafting that was followed by intractable postoperative hemorrhage. The pericardial and left pleural drainage exceeded 1 liter within the first postoperative hour. The patient became hypotensive, requiring emergent re-exploration that was refractory to resuscitative efforts. Autopsy revealed an approximately 3-mm perforation of the ascending aorta, immediately above and distal to a sutured aortic cardiopulmonary bypass cannulation site, with residual bilateral hemothoraces. (left: 1,100 mL and right: 450 mL). The cause of death was certified as intractable hemorrhage with perforation at the aortic cannulation site complicating coronary artery bypass grafting for atherosclerotic coronary artery disease. Hypertensive heart disease was listed as a contributory cause (heart weight: 690 grams and body weight: 120 kgs). The manner of death was certified as therapeutic complication.



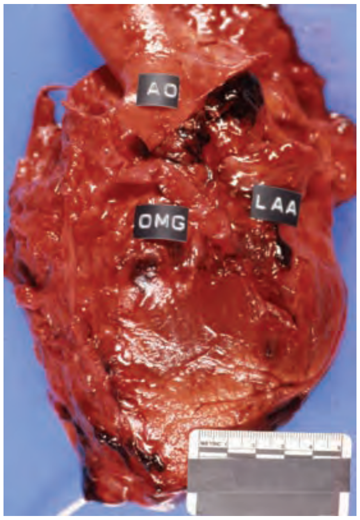
Right hemothorax (a) due to perforation of right internal jugular vein complicating catheter insertion. Note the probe (b) and (c) demonstrating the perforation through the right internal jugular vein and the hemorrhage within the anterior overlying soft tissues.


(a)

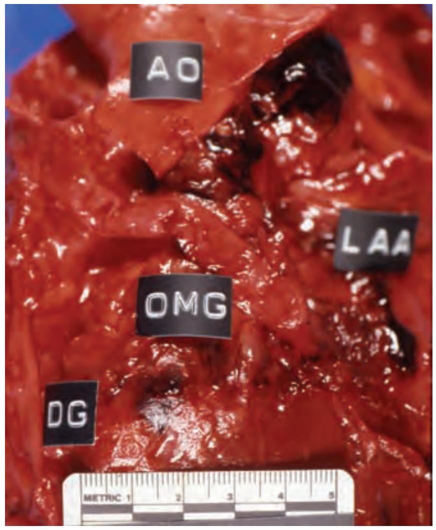

(b)


(c)

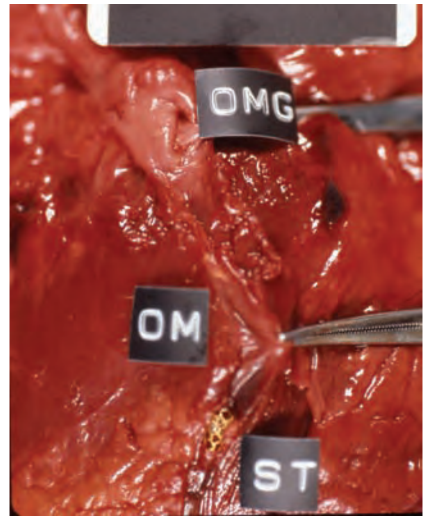
This case involved complications of a transbronchial biopsy in an individual who was HIV-positive and was slightly thrombocytopenic (platelet count: approximately 75,000/uL). The procedure was followed by extensive pulmonary hemorrhage, which culminated in respiratory compromise and death. Figure (a) demonstrates a Swan-Ganz catheter within the pulmonary arterial system. Figures (b) and (c) is a close-up view with a probe through a perforation of one of the large branches of the right main pulmonary artery with the arrow head demarcating the tip of the probe.



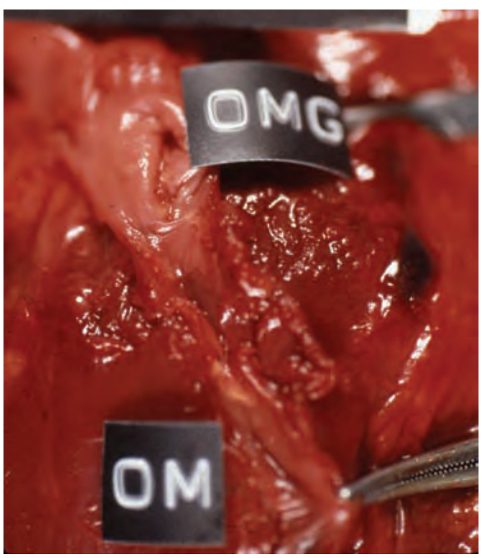
Heart with labels illustrating the aorta (AO), obtuse marginal graft (OMG), and left atrial appendage (LAA).



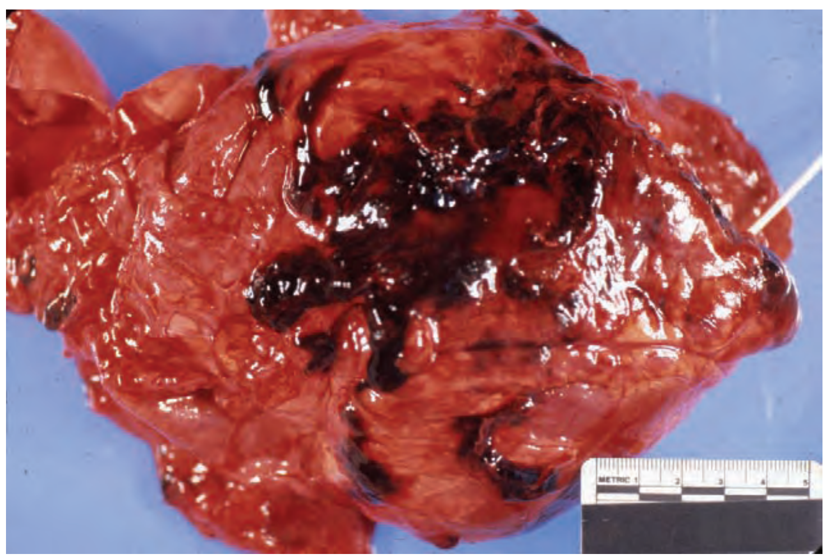
Close-up view of grafts.



This image demonstrates the relationship of obtuse marginal graft and native obtuse marginal vessel, as well as a stent protruding through the lacerated native obtuse marginal artery.

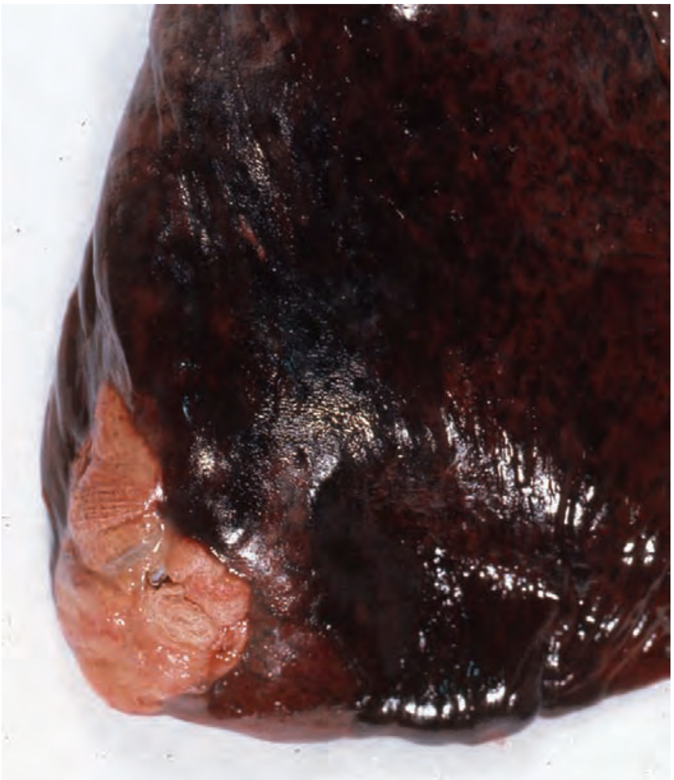


Close-up view of the junction between the obtuse marginal graft and the native obtuse marginal artery demonstrating the irregularity in the arterial wall.



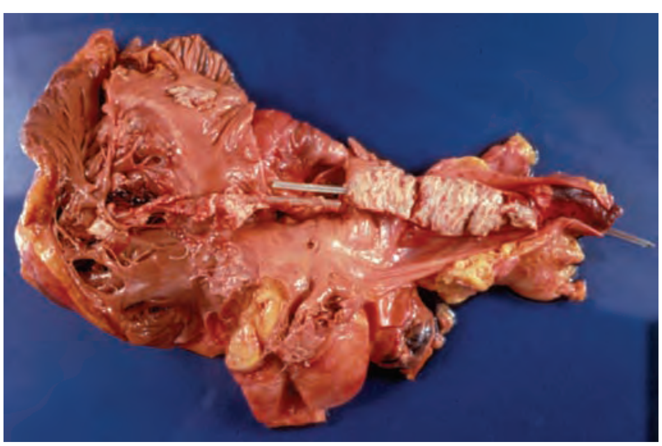
Posterior view of heart demonstrating confluent epicardial hemorrhage associated with this procedure.

These pictures demonstrate a complication of coronary artery bypass grafting. In this case, a stent perforated the native obtuse marginal branch of the left circumflex artery immediately distal to the anastomosis between the graft and native vessel.



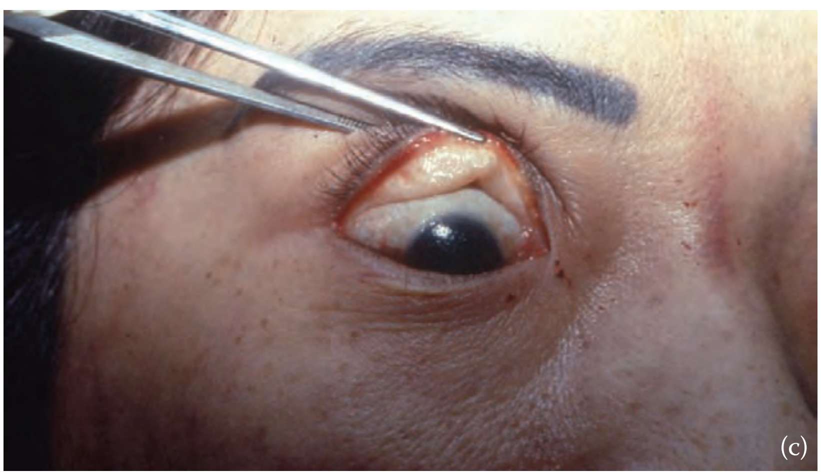
This depicts the lower lobe of the left lung with congestion and pneumonia. Note at the inferolateral aspect of the left lower lobe is a fragment of gauze that was inadvertently left behind during another operation months earlier. The gauze is adherent to the surface with overlying adhesions and adjacent purulent exudate.

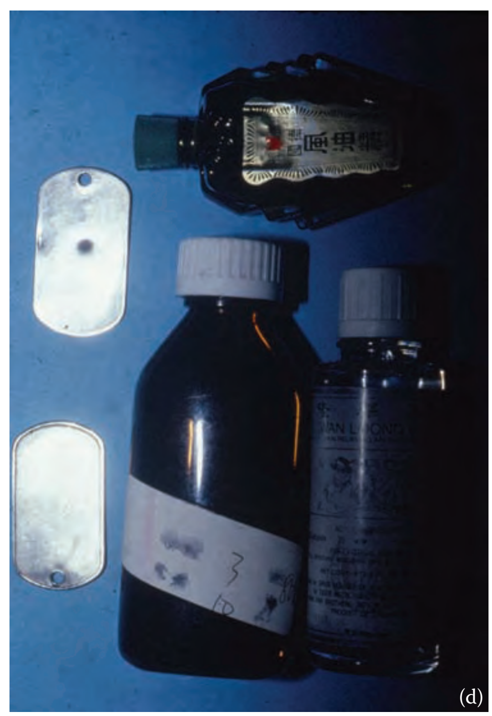
This individual was in a motor vehicle accident and sustained a skull fracture involving the cribriform plate. A nasogastric tube was inserted that inadvertently penetrated the cranium. The tube was placed on intermittent suction. Aspirated brain matter is visible at the end of the tube.



This demonstrates a large gray-tan thrombus encasing a pacemaker lead extending from the heart.

In busy trauma centers, the body is sometimes received with multiple instruments used for resuscitative efforts. This photograph was taken after the body bag was opened at the morgue. It is always important to be careful of sharps that have been inadvertently left behind.





This Vietnamese woman died of Takayasu arteritis that was complicated by a ruptured aortic aneurysm. She was treated at home by her grandmother with Southeast Asian folklore remedies, including coining, which involves rubbing of hot oils and medicine onto skin (d). Note the unusual location of the coin marks at her neck (a) and (b). At first this was mistaken for manual strangulation. There were no internal neck injuries and no scleral or conjunctival hemorrhages (c).

Substance Abuse and Poisoning

CHARLES A. CATANESE AND LAURA M. LABAY

3

Introduction

The term substance abuse is most simply defined as the excessive use of one or numerous drugs. In general, most people typically have some level of access to several types of drugs, including legitimately prescribed medications, and on average, will benefit from their appropriate use. However, the term substance abuse can be applied to a variety of situations or circumstances. For example, one person may intentionally be abusing a multitude of substances including illicit drugs, prescribed medications, and over-the-counter remedies (i.e., supplements, herbals, diet aids, etc.). This is in direct contrast to another individual who may be taking only a single medication, but deliberately using it in a manner that is not consistent with normal therapeutic use. It stands to reason that when individuals begin to abuse one or more substances, and use them in an uncontrolled manner without the appropriate oversight, that they place themselves in a potentially harmful or lethal situation.

In a forensic or medicolegal setting it often becomes a matter of necessity to interpret drug findings and render an opinion regarding the toxicological, physiological, and pathological impact the drugs may have had upon an individual. To this end, it is important to evaluate and consider a host of factors. These factors are not always straightforward or quantifiable, but nevertheless include the drug's inherent physical and chemical properties, the dosage of the drug used, the frequency of the drug intake, the route of drug administration, the concentration of drug and drug metabolite found, the person's tolerance level to the drug and any medical conditions or disease states the person may have experienced.

It is important to recognize that for a particular drug to ultimately produce a toxic or lethal effect, it must be present in an individual at a sufficient concentration for a sufficient length of time. However, while references and other texts are available that help to classify drug concentrations as "therapeutic," "toxic," or "lethal," interpretation is often not so simple. For example, postmortem methadone concentrations are often challenging to interpret because the range of blood concentrations detected in people enrolled in narcotic maintenance programs may overlap the blood concentrations found in overdose or lethal situations.

Also, some drugs, depending on their physical and chemical properties and their concentrations in the body, will exert their most toxic or lethal effects in an acute manner, while others will take a longer period of time to act. In general, deaths associated with substance abuse may be related to acute or chronic complications. *Acute substance abuse* indicates that the death was related to direct toxic effects of the drug shortly after administration. In a *delayed overdose,* the drug produces damage to the body over hours or days following acute intoxication, with complications that may include coma, sepsis, brain swelling, and herniation. This process may evolve over days with the drug(s) metabolized from the body. The underlying process that set off this sequence of events is the acute intoxication.

Depending on the type of drug and its half-life there may be no or minimal amounts of drug left in the blood or other tissues at the time of death. However, the possibility exists that the drug or its metabolite(s) could still be detected and identified in the urine. In these circumstances, it is important to take into account that urine is really a pooled specimen collected in the bladder over a period of time and that a quantitative result represents only the average drug–urine concentration over the period of time that the urine was produced. Therefore, this type of specimen does not accurately reflect the blood–drug concentration at any single point in time. Rather, a positive finding of a drug or drug metabolite in urine indicates prior exposure only to that particular drug and in this regard it is relevant to consider other information (e.g., case history, medical records, anatomical findings, etc.) as well.

If a decedent suffered trauma while intoxicated and developed an *epidural* or *subdural hemorrhage*, you would expect to find the drug present in these samples even after many days. *Chronic sequela* associated with substance abuse include complications of infections such as HIV disease, hepatitis, hepatic cirrhosis, and endocarditis. Injection of ground-up oral medications may lead to pulmonary failure, with multiple foreign body granulomas and fibrosis demonstrated on histopathologic section. There are many other complications, including Wernicke's-Korsakoff's encephalopathy, alcoholic cardiomyopathy, and hardening of the arteries due to cocaine use.

Intravenous drug abuse may present with many different features. If the drugs are injected acutely in the same vein during binges, they appear as multiple fresh needle marks in a row. These are called "track marks" because they resemble a pattern of railroad ties being laid down one after another. It may be possible to detect the parent drug by excising the immediate area surrounding the injection site and submitting this section for toxicological analysis. If several injection sites are observed and a decision is made to submit more than one for testing, make certain to package the specimens in separate containers, identify the sites from which each was taken, and note their age and appearance. Alternatively, the syringe or other drug paraphernalia such as vials, pipes, or spoons, if available, can also be submitted for analysis. This is a good option if, for whatever reason, limited biological specimens exist. Once the nonbiological contents of the items are identified, directed toxicological analysis on the biological specimens can then proceed. If this is done, it is important that the items be packaged in individual containers, away from biological specimens, so that contamination does not occur.

Injecting drugs into blood vessels can lead to the introduction of many types of infections. Sharing of needles may cause transmission of the hepatitis virus or the human immunodeficiency virus. Various types of bacteria can also be introduced during injection, leading to vasculitis, cellulitis, pneumonia, and endocarditis. Acute intravenous fatalities, such as those caused when individuals inject themselves, are usually classified as *accident*. If one can demonstrate the drug was given to the individual in order to purposefully cause his or her death, the manner would be classified as *homicide*. Also, if another individual injects the drug into the decedent's arm the manner of death should be homicide.

As the vein is chronically abused, it will scar and develop a chronic track mark. Chronic track marks appear as linear scars that traverse the path of underlying veins. Histological sections from these regions often show polarizable debris from impurities found in past-injected drugs. If a chronic intravenous drug abuser consistently rotates the injection sites from one vein to another chronic track marks will not develop.

Skin-popping refers to drugs, such as heroin, injected into the subcutaneous tissues. This usually indicates a long history of drug abuse with destruction of the previously accessible peripheral veins. This may appear as fresh needle marks, usually at the surface of the thighs, or in other places without an underlying vein. These sites often get infected and lead to cellulitis, abscess formation, and scarring.

Another route of drug administration includes *inhalation*. Inhalation (i.e., snorting) of drugs may lead to mucosal reddening from direct irritation. Crack pipes may become very hot during use and burn the drug abuser's mouth and lips. Sometimes histopathology sections of the lungs reveal numerous pigment-laden macrophages from constant inhalation of smoke and debris from inhaled burning drugs such as crack. *Chronic snorting* of drugs may lead to a perforated nasal septum.

Keep in mind, it is not only the illicit drugs such as cocaine or heroin that can be inhaled; an individual may choose to *crush* and *"snort" a tablet or pill* as well**.** In some instances, residue may be observed in the nasal or oral cavity, and these areas can be swabbed and the parent drug identified though analytical testing. Individuals may also choose to inhale or "huff" commercial products such as gases, fuels, aerosols, solvents, or propellants as a means of abuse. This may be accomplished by breathing in the fumes from a rag that has been soaked in the material or by placing a bag containing the fumes over the nose and mouth. In some cases, the inhalation may take place directly from the item (i.e., aerosol can, glue bottle), as well. Users have died from hypoxia, pneumonia, cardiac failure, and aspiration of vomit. If the latter situation is relevant to the case, it is important to inform the toxicology lab of this, as most routine toxicology screens do not include these substances in the scope of their analysis. For these cases, lung tissue or tracheal air, in addition to the routine biological samples, can be collected as well.

Transdermal drug delivery systems introduce medications into the general circulation through a slow diffusion process, and may be considered a desirable alternative to taking oral medications or using substances that require repeated injection. In addition, the transdermal systems, perhaps most importantly, help to minimize the extreme blood spikes and trough levels that may be experienced with orally administered medications. Instead, blood–drug concentrations are maintained at more consistent concentrations.

Examples of commonly encountered medications delivered through transdermal systems include nicotine, hormones (i.e., contraceptives) and the potent narcotic analgesic fentanyl. However, similar to any medication, these patch-style systems may be subject to abuse. For instance, a person may make the decision to apply a multiple number of patches to the body, or through manual or chemical means remove the drug from the drug reservoir or from the adhesive matrix. It is also not uncommon for a person to chew or even swallow them. In these cases, remnants of patches may be observed in the oral cavity or the gastric contents. Other signs of this type of abuse would be if a person presented with patches applied in a manner not consistent with normal therapeutic use. For these cases, document the number of patches found on the body, their locations, any writing

or markings on the patches and any other descriptive features. Make an attempt to ascertain if all the patches represent a single acute application or if some of the patches may be from remote use.

In these types of death situations where patch use is known or suspected (i.e., old adhesive markings are noted on the body) it is important to make certain that specimens are not collected in proximity to a vein or artery that is in the immediate vicinity of a patch or patch marking. As a specific example, following the death of an individual wearing a fentanyl patch, some drug may still be present in the depot beneath the patch. If a blood specimen is collected from an area immediately beneath or near the location of the patch, the concentration of fentanyl may not accurately reflect the circulating concentration at or around the time of death.

Similar to the patch, suppositories represent another type of drug delivery system. Suppositories contain medicated material for insertion into a bodily passage or cavity such as the rectum. Once the suppository, typically a solid substance, is inserted, it will begin to dissolve over time and subsequently will deliver the medication into the body. Substance abuse using this route of administration is relatively rare.

Substance Abuse

Acute and Chronic Alcoholism

Death occurring from acute alcoholism is usually classified as *natural*, although this may not always be the case. A young adult at a party trying to impress friends may attempt to guzzle a liter of whisky. This is more than enough alcohol at one time to kill most adults. In this case, the manner of death would be accident. Sometimes depressed people with an acute triggering event, tell their family that they are going to "drink themselves to death." After several days of drinking large quantities of alcohol, they die. If you can establish the intent to do harm, the manner of death would be *suicide*. If someone at a party drinks alcohol from a funnel and a hose, by pouring the alcohol themselves, and then dies, the manner of death would be accident. If someone holds the hose and pours the alcohol for them, the manner of death should be homicide.

The deaths of individuals with a history of chronic alcoholism, including varying degrees of liver disease, intoxications, and withdrawal, are mostly certified as natural. Chronic alcoholics who stop drinking abruptly may get the "shakes" and eventually experience seizures leading to death. Withdrawal of many other drugs without other underlying natural disease will not typically cause death.

It is very difficult to give an opinion about individuals' state of mind or behavior while they were drinking or using any drug, for that matter. One has no way to know their true thought processes unless their behavior was witnessed or somehow clearly documented. Chronic alcoholics, with a high degree of tolerance, may be able to achieve a high blood alcohol level and not show visible signs or symptoms consistent with intoxication. Some alcoholics become aggressive, loud, and agitated while others become subdued and complacent.

It is important to obtain blood samples with care in cases where there is suspected alcohol use, and trauma played a role in the person's death. If one obtains a blood sample only from the pericardial sac or chest cavity, where other visceral lacerations may exist, contamination with gastric contents or other bodily fluids is a likely possibility. In turn, the measured blood alcohol level may be markedly increased as compared with the actual circulating blood concentration at and around the time of death.

As a more specific example relating to alcohol, when death is a consequence of multiple traumatic injuries there is the possibility that significant damage to the internal organs occurred. These organs include, but are not necessarily limited to, the stomach, small intestine, and liver. If those organs, now damaged, contained unabsorbed alcohol, a blood specimen collected from the chest area may readily become contaminated. As a result, the concentration of alcohol determined may not accurately reflect the circulating concentration at and around the time of the fatal event. Instead, ideally, for postmortem alcohol analysis and to mitigate some of these issues, an alternative specimen type should be harvested. These specimen types would include a vitreous specimen, a urine specimen, or blood collected from a peripheral site such as the femoral vein. This is because, in those cases where the heart blood may have become contaminated due to events such as trauma, the alternative specimen can be used to help provide an interpretable alcohol concentration.

Alternative specimens, such as vitreous fluid, are vital to collect, especially when alcohol is suspected or involved. It is important to recognize that alcohol may form postmortem, and analytical testing cannot make the distinction between this type of alcohol and alcohol that was present prior to death. Indeed, an alcohol finding may represent a combination of these two circumstances. To prevent or minimize postmortem formation once blood is collected, it should be placed into an appropriate type of specimen collection container, one that contains preservatives that help to inhibit microbial growth. If the postmortem formation of alcohol is a concern, such as in a case where marked decomposition has

occurred, a positive alcohol finding may be confirmed in the vitreous fluid, a specimen type that is more resistant to microbial growth.

Post-Mortem Redistribution

Besides contending only with the issue of contamination as caused by trauma, drugs and their metabolites may also be subject to postmortem redistribution. Postmortem redistribution is the movement of drugs among tissues, organs, and bodily fluids after death. The rate and extent of this movement varies according to several factors, including the nature of the drug, and the time interval between death and the postmortem collection time of specimens. Within the torso, the major organs constitute potential drug pools, and the gastrointestinal tract might contain considerable quantities of unabsorbed drug. Therefore, central blood is subject to redistribution from these local organs. In general, redistribution into central vessels is greater than redistribution into peripheral vessels and this is why it is preferred that final quantitative amounts be determined from a peripheral blood source. Therefore, while central blood pools are acceptable for screening purposes, it is always better to get a peripheral blood sample for quantitative confirmation work, if possible.

Cocaine

Cocaine, a Schedule II controlled substance, is found in the leaves of a South American shrub called *Erythroxylon coca* and is one of the most potent of the naturally occurring central nervous system (CNS) stimulants. First isolated in 1855, it has been used medicinally as a local anesthetic. However, because of its high potential for abuse, the use of cocaine for clinical situations has become severely limited. When cocaine is taken for illicit reasons it is either taken as the water-soluble hydrochloride salt by nasal insufflation ("snorting"), intravenous injection, or as the free-base ("crack") by smoking. Regardless of the chemical form or route of administration, once cocaine is administered it is rapidly absorbed and distributed throughout the body. Once inside the body, the dosage form of cocaine cannot be distinguished and analytical determinations are reported as the free-base form.

Cocaine is rapidly biotransformed in the body to a few major metabolites and products including benzoylecgonine, ecgonine methyl ester, ethylecgonine, and ecgonine. These metabolites are all pharmacologically inactive. Small amounts of an active metabolite, norcocaine, may also be produced. However, this product is rarely detected in blood. Cocaethylene is a pharmacologically active substance formed in the liver when cocaine and ethanol are co-ingested. The most predominant cocaine product detected in the majority of biological specimens is benzoylecgonine. Elimination on half-lives are approximately 4.5 hours for benzoylecgonine and approximately 0.8 hours for cocaine.

Effects displayed by an individual under the influence of cocaine may include dilated pupils, increased blood pressure, increased pulse rate, and increased sense of strength or invincibility. It is believed that cocaine is toxic to the cardiovascular system causing thrombosis, myocardial infarction, tachycardia, or fibrillation that may occur in cases of acute and chronic abuse.

Heroin

Heroin is a Schedule I controlled substance and a synthetic derivative of morphine. It is made by first extracting morphine from opium and then chemically treating the morphine with acetic anhydride, sodium chloride, and hydrochloric acid.

Once heroin is taken into the body, most frequently by injection, smoking, or inhalation, it is rapidly deacetylated to 6-monoacetylmorphine (6-MAM), a product that is then hydrolyzed at somewhat of a slower rate than morphine. Unlike the heroin, which has little affinity for the opiate receptors in brain tissue, both 6-MAM and morphine are pharmacologically active. Because 6-MAM is a specific product of heroin, if it is found to be present in a biological specimen, it can be concluded that the individual either used or was exposed to heroin at some point prior to death. However, due in part to the short half-life of 6-MAM, morphine is most often the predominant species detected in biological specimens. Therefore, in cases where heroin is suspected to be the lethal agent and morphine is found in the blood but 6-MAM is not, it may be of benefit to test an alternate specimen type such as urine for the presence of this heroin specific marker as well.

The primary toxic manifestations of heroin use may last for approximately 4 to 6 hours and include the same effects most commonly associated with other opioids. Some of the more common effects include drowsiness, loss of coordination, decreased blood pressure, decreased pulse and respiration, mental clouding, sedation, and sweating. At sufficiently high levels, the user may slip into a coma and may ultimately stop breathing.

Lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD)

LSD, a Schedule I semisynthetic controlled substance, is manufactured from the main precursor chemicals

lysergic acid, lysergic acid amide and ergotamine tartrate. LSD is normally taken by placing a "dot" laced with the material on the tongue. The LSD is then dissolved by the saliva and readily absorbed through the mucous membranes. This method of ingestion allows for its effects to be rapidly felt. Other means of ingestion include mixing the LSD with liquids or adding it to sugar cubes. However, the drug cannot be taken into the body by smoking, as pyrolysis destroys the LSD.

LSD is generally classified as a hallucinogen or psychedelic drug, and may produce both auditory and visual illusions. Approximately 30 to 60 minutes after ingestion, the user will experience the initial effects which, in general, may last for about 8 to 12 hours. Physiological effects are primarily sympathomimetic and may include mydriasis, hyperthermia, seizures, panic, and paranoid reactions. Flashback reactions, a brief recurrence of the LSD experience, are not uncommon in the experienced user, and may occur for weeks, months, or years after the last usage.

Death due to the pharmacological effects of LSD is rare, with most deaths occurring as a result of LSD-induced suicide and accidental trauma.

Marijuana

Marijuana, a Schedule I controlled substance, is a complex mixture of several products obtained from various parts of the *Cannabis sativa* plant, and is the most widely used illicit substance in the United States and the rest of the world. More than 400 chemical substances are found in marijuana. Sixty of these substances are called cannabinoids and are responsible for the psychoactive properties of the plant. The most relevant cannabinoid is tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), as it is the primary psychoactive ingredient in marijuana.

One of the most notable features of this drug is its long half-life, with some metabolic components exceeding 50 hours. This is because the drug is a highly lipid soluble and may undergo significant enterohepatic recirculation. In fact, the redistribution of THC from tissue to blood has been shown to be the rate-limiting step in its metabolism. In the body, THC is metabolized to two major metabolites, 11-hydroxy-THC (11-OH-THC) and tetrahydoxycarboxylic acid (THCC). The former metabolite is pharmacologically active, while the later is devoid of any pharmacological activity.

Marijuana is most frequently smoked, although it can be ingested as well. THC rapidly leaves the blood, even during a smoking period, and falls to below detectable levels within several hours. The most common physical effects are acceleration of heart rate, a moderate increase in blood pressure, a slight decrease in body temperature, reddening of the eyes, and a dryness of the mouth. The psychological effects of marijuana use include a pleasant feeling of well-being and euphoria, distortion of time, reduced ability to concentrate and memorize, and impaired short-term memory. Individuals under the influence of marijuana may have difficulties in tracking movement and demonstrate an inability to appropriately respond to stimuli. In general, this condition may persist for hours after the feelings of intoxication have dissipated, leaving users with a false sense of security concerning their abilities to safely operate a motor vehicle or machinery.

Death strictly due to the pharmacological effects of marijuana is not well documented, with most deaths occurring as a result of accidental trauma.

Methamphetamine

Methamphetamine is a Schedule II controlled substance with a very high potential for addiction and abuse. There are two different chemical forms or isomers of methamphetamine, each producing effects that differ in scope and magnitude. The l-isomer of methamphetamine may be found in over-the-counter nasal inhalers and is used for its vasoconstrictive properties. Compared with d-methamphetamine, it is a weak central nervous system stimulant. In contrast, the d-isomer may represent the licit or illicit forms of methamphetamine. In terms of legitimate or legal use, methamphetamine may be prescribed for a limited number of medical conditions such as weight loss, narcolepsy, and attention deficit disorder. However, because other less addictive and dangerous substances that do not quickly result in patient tolerance to the drug are also available, it is not that frequently prescribed.

Methamphetamine in the body undergoes demethylation to its primary active metabolite amphetamine; in most cases both methamphetamine and amphetamine will be detected. Analytical methods that differentiate the isomers of methamphetamine (and amphetamine) exist and may be employed if warranted.

People who abuse methamphetamine experience certain sequelae of such drug use. In general, the effects of methamphetamine can be broken down into three main stages. The first stage is the "high," where blood concentrations are at their greatest and people are feeling the stimulant effects of methamphetamine. The second stage is the "tweaking" period, where blood levels are on the decline and it is this period where people crave the drug and may behave in an aggressive and violent manner. The third stage is the "crash," where people feel exhausted and drained. High doses of methamphetamine can elicit restlessness, confusion, hallucinations, circulatory collapse, and convulsions.

Methadone

Methadone is a Schedule II controlled substance that is often prescribed during the process of narcotic detoxification, narcotic maintenance, and treatment programs, and to control severe and chronic pain. As compared with morphine, it produces less sedation and euphoria, but cessation of its use may result in withdrawal symptoms—not as severe as those seen with morphine, but longer in duration. Methadone works by decreasing the withdrawal symptoms felt by the narcotic abuser and, when a person attempts to reuse, the desired effects of the illicit drug are minimized.

In the body, methadone is metabolized to EDDP (2-ethylidene-1,5-dimethyl-3,3-diphenylpyrrolidine) and EMDP (2-ethyl-5-methyl-3,3-diphenylpyrroline). These metabolites do not possess any pharmacological activity and do not accumulate to an appreciable extent in plasma during therapy.

Methadone overdose is characterized by stupor, lethargy, pupillary constriction, hypotension, coma, respiratory collapse, and death.

3,4-Methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDMA)

MDMA is a synthetic sympathomimetic compound with mixed stimulant, psychotropic, and hallucinogenic activities. It was used briefly as an adjunct to psychotherapy, but because of widespread abuse it has now been reclassified as a Schedule I controlled substance. The synthesis of MDMA is both complex and time-consuming. As a direct result, the final product may contain a variety of impurities that may be toxic in their own right. Also, drug manufacturers may add an illicit substance or a stimulant in an attempt to enhance the effects of the MDMA. The drug is available in tablet and powder form and it may be injected, inhaled, or ingested. Tablets of MDMA come in a litany of colors and shapes, and may be imprinted with a variety of images including things such as peace symbols, cartoon characters, butterflies, and angels.

In the body, MDMA is metabolized to many other compounds, but the main metabolite is a demethylated product called methylenedioxyamphetamine (MDA).

The effects of MDMA are related to the dose. A lower-level dose (approximately 50 mg) may result in feelings of enhanced creativity, while mid-level doses (approximately 100 mg) may make the user feel open to improved communication and empathy. The ability of the user to undergo self-exploration and analysis is achieved with the doses typically greater than 125 mg. In general, the psychological effects are much more pronounced than the physical effects. Abusers of the drug have been reported to experience longlasting neurobehavioral disorders following cessation of its use. Symptoms of MDMA toxicity include visual hallucinations, confusion, hypotension, agitation, coma, and death.

Phencyclidine (PCP)

PCP is a Schedule II controlled substance that was developed and marketed in the 1950s for use as an intravenous anesthetic. However, it was discontinued for medicinal use in 1965 as patients frequently would become agitated, delusional, and irrational, and experience the distortion of sights and sounds. In the early 1960s, PCP gained a reputation as a drug that produced certain desired feelings such as detachment and dissociation, but also caused the user to sometimes experience unwanted reactions (i.e., bad trips).

At low doses, PCP may cause changes in body awareness and produce psychological effects of euphoria, an alteration of time and space, confusion, bizarre behavior, and panic. Physical effects produced by PCP include impaired motor skills, shallow breathing, sweating, blank staring, speech disturbance, and an inability to regulate body temperature. At high doses, PCP may result in hallucinations, seizures, coma, and death. Because PCP has sedative-like effects, interactions with other central nervous system depressants, such as alcohol and benzodiazepines, may also lead to a life-threatening situation. In general, chronic PCP users may repeatedly use the drug for days at a time and during this period go without food or sleep. There appears to be no relation between plasma levels of phencyclidine and the degree of intoxication that a person may experience.

Oxycodone

Oxycodone is a Schedule II controlled semisynthetic narcotic analgesic derived from thebaine. It is used to control pain associated with such ailments as bursitis, injuries, simple fractures, and neuralgia, and is often found in combination with other drugs such as acetaminophen and aspirin. The addiction liability of oxycodone is about the same as for morphine.

Oxymorphone is a pharmacologically active metabolite of oxycodone that may be seen in blood in very low concentrations. Of interest is that oxymorphone may be prescribed as a parent drug and has a greater analgesic potency than morphine.

In overdose, oxycodone can produce stupor, coma, muscle flaccidity, severe respiratory depression, hypotension, and cardiac arrest. However, sustained-release preparations appear to produce adverse reactions, up to and including death, at lower-level concentrations, especially in combination with other central nervous

system depressants, depending on use pattern and route of administration.

Poisons

Arsenic

Arsenic is a metalloid that is present in all parts of the environment and, for example, may be found in water, soil, and sediment. In broad terms, there are two main forms of arsenic —organic and inorganic. Organic arsenic is present in food, with crustaceans and fish being some of the richest sources. These organic forms of arsenic (arsenobentaine and arsenocholine) are considered to be relatively nontoxic and will be rapidly excreted unchanged in the urine. Inorganic arsenic occurs in two oxidation states: a trivalent form (arsenite) and a pentavalent form (arsenate), with the trivalent form being more toxic than the pentavalent form, which undergoes metabolism to monomethylarsonic acid (MMA) and dimethylarsenic acid (DMA). MMA and DMA are then excreted in the urine.

Arsenic inactivates up to 200 enzymes, most notably those involved in cellular energy pathways, and DNA replication and repair. Unbound arsenic also exerts its toxicity by generating reactive oxygen intermediates that cause lipid peroxidation and DNA damage. Inorganic arsenic binds thiol or sulfhydryl groups in tissue proteins of the liver, lungs, kidney, spleen, gastrointestinal mucosa, and keratin-rich tissues such as the skin, hair, and nails.

The lethal dose of arsenic in acute poisoning ranges from 100 mg to 300 mg. Severe acute arsenic intoxication produces several well-described symptoms. Bloody vomit and diarrhea may occur within 1 to 4 hours of ingestion. Gastrointestinal volume loss is compounded by profound capillary permeability produced by arsenic's interruption of cellular energy metabolism. Cerebral edema, microhemorrhage, encephalopathy, and seizures may also arise from loss of capillary integrity. The rate-corrected QT interval (QT_c) prolongation and tachyarrhythmias may develop.

Subacute arsenic toxicity involves predominately the neurologic and cardiovascular systems. Within days to weeks after ingestion, many untreated or undiagnosed patients describe debilitating peripheral neuropathy characterized by excruciating pain and severe motor weakness. Persistent QT_c prolongation and the accompanying risk of *torsades de pointes*, a specific type of cardiac arrhythmia, occur among patients with clinically significant body burdens of arsenic.

Chronic arsenic toxicity presents itself following months or years of exposure. Some hallmark features of this type of toxicity not described above include hyperpigmentation of the skin, hyperkeratosis of the hands and feet and the appearance of Mee's lines in the fingernails.

It is important to note that death may occur in all of the above situations (e.g., acute, subacute, and chronic) if the person is exposed to a sufficiently high dose of arsenic.

Carbon Monoxide

Carbon Monoxide (CO) is an odorless, colorless gas without taste that forms as the result of the incomplete combustion of carbon-containing material. Motor vehicles, appliances, and heaters that use carbon-based fuels are major sources of exposure. However, it is important to note that natural sources of carbon monoxide also exist. These sources include fire, gases emitted from mines, marine algae, and human metabolism. Carbon monoxide is endogenously produced when hemoglobin, the molecule responsible for oxygen transport, and other heme-containing substances are degraded or broken down. Because of this, endogenous levels of CO, analytically measured as carboxyhemoglobin, are typically less than 1%. It is important to note that CO levels within the body may vary depending on several other factors as well. For example, because cigarette smoke contains CO, a smoker may exhibit carboxyhemoglobin levels as high as 8% saturation.

A person becomes exposed to CO via inhalation with the ultimate biological saturation level dependent upon several factors including CO concentration, duration of exposure and the activity level of the individual. Carbon monoxide poisoning produces hypoxia by two main mechanisms of action. First, CO binds to hemoglobin with an affinity that is greater than 200 times that of oxygen and therefore, by occupying the oxygen binding sites of hemoglobin, CO directly decreases the oxygen-carrying capacity of blood. Second, when CO binds to hemoglobin, the hemoglobin undergoes a change in its configuration so that oxygen release from the hemoglobin is hindered. Early signs of CO poisoning include headache, nausea, and vomiting. As the CO poisoning progresses, the person may experience impaired mental function, an inability to concentrate, and personality changes. Finally, the individual may develop seizures, coma, and death. Classic pathological signs that are most often associated with CO poisoning, although rarely observed, include cherry red skin and retinal hemorrhages.

Cyanide

Cyanide is a potent, rapidly acting lethal poison, and death may occur within minutes following its ingestion.

Common sources of cyanide include industrial manufacturing byproducts, plants, fruit pits, chemicals, and combustion products of certain plastics. Because of the latter, cyanide may play a role in the hypoxic events from fires.

Cyanide exerts its effects by disrupting electron transport at the cytochrome c oxidase step and this in turn adversely impacts the production of adenosine triphosphate (ATP). This break in the oxidative phosphorylation process stops the Kreb's cycle, and ultimately causes a metabolic acidosis as both pyruvic and lactic acid begin to accumulate.

The signs and symptoms of toxicity are dependent upon several factors. These factors include the form of the cyanide (e.g., gas versus solid), the route of exposure (e.g., inhalation versus ingestion), the duration and the extent of the exposure. The minimum lethal dose in an adult has been estimated to be 100 mg for hydrocyanic acid and 200 mg for potassium cyanide.

Cyanide produces a range of symptoms including dizziness, weakness, motor impairment, and mental impairment. These symptoms may progress toward slowed respiration, lactic acidosis, seizures, coma, and death.

It is important to recognize that blood concentrations of cyanide can increase or decrease during storage depending on the length of time, the temperature, and the presence of cyanogenic bacteria.

Ethylene Glycol

Ethylene Glycol is a nonvolatile liquid that is a common ingredient of automotive products such as antifreeze, de-icers, and coolants. It can also be found in some preservatives and as a glycerin substitute.

Following ingestion, ethylene glycol is rapidly absorbed, and manifestations of toxicity may be noted within approximately 30 minutes. Ethylene glycol is metabolized in the liver to several toxic metabolites including glycoaldehyde, glycolic acid, glyoxylic acid, and oxalic acid, and it is these metabolites that then may elicit central nervous system, cardiopulmonary, and renal dysfunction as well as produce a severe metabolic acidosis. The magnitude of the toxicity is dependent upon dose and the onset and success of treatment.

The effects of an ethylene glycol exposure are typically described in three main stages. In the first stage (0.5 to 12 hours post ingestion), neurological symptoms that include signs consistent with ethanol intoxication are manifested. Coma, convulsions, and possibly death may result in this stage. The second stage (12 to 24 hours post-ingestion) is often characterized by cardiopulmonary disturbances including tachycardia, tachypnea, and hypertension. In severe ingestions, congestive heart failure, pulmonary edema, and circulatory collapse may be seen. The end stage of ethylene glycol toxicity is renal failure (24 to 72 hours post-ingestion).

Methanol

Methanol is a type of alcohol that is extremely versatile, and so can be found as a component in industrial solvents, fuels, and antifreeze preparations, and as a denaturant for ethanol. Methanol may be introduced into the body through multiple routes of administration including inhalation and ingestion. Once in the body, methanol is first metabolized to formaldehyde and then to formic acid. Interestingly, although formaldehyde is considered a toxic substance, it has on average a half-life of only several minutes and it is the formic acid that ultimately produces the hallmark features of methanol toxicity, including metabolic acidosis and the loss of visual acuity. Methanol poisoning can be treated by the administration of ethanol, because both methanol and ethanol share a common metabolic pathway. In essence, the ethanol competes for binding to the alcohol dehydrogenase enzyme and indirectly limits the formation of formic acid. Acute methanol exposure may produce severe signs and symptoms of toxicity, including nausea, abdominal pain, and lethargy. In some cases, the poisoning will progress to where the person experiences an anion gap metabolic acidosis leading to coma, seizure, and respiratory collapse. It is important to recognize that methanol may be a component found in embalming fluids and, because of this, tissues or other samples that have come into contact with this type of material may test positive for the presence of methanol.

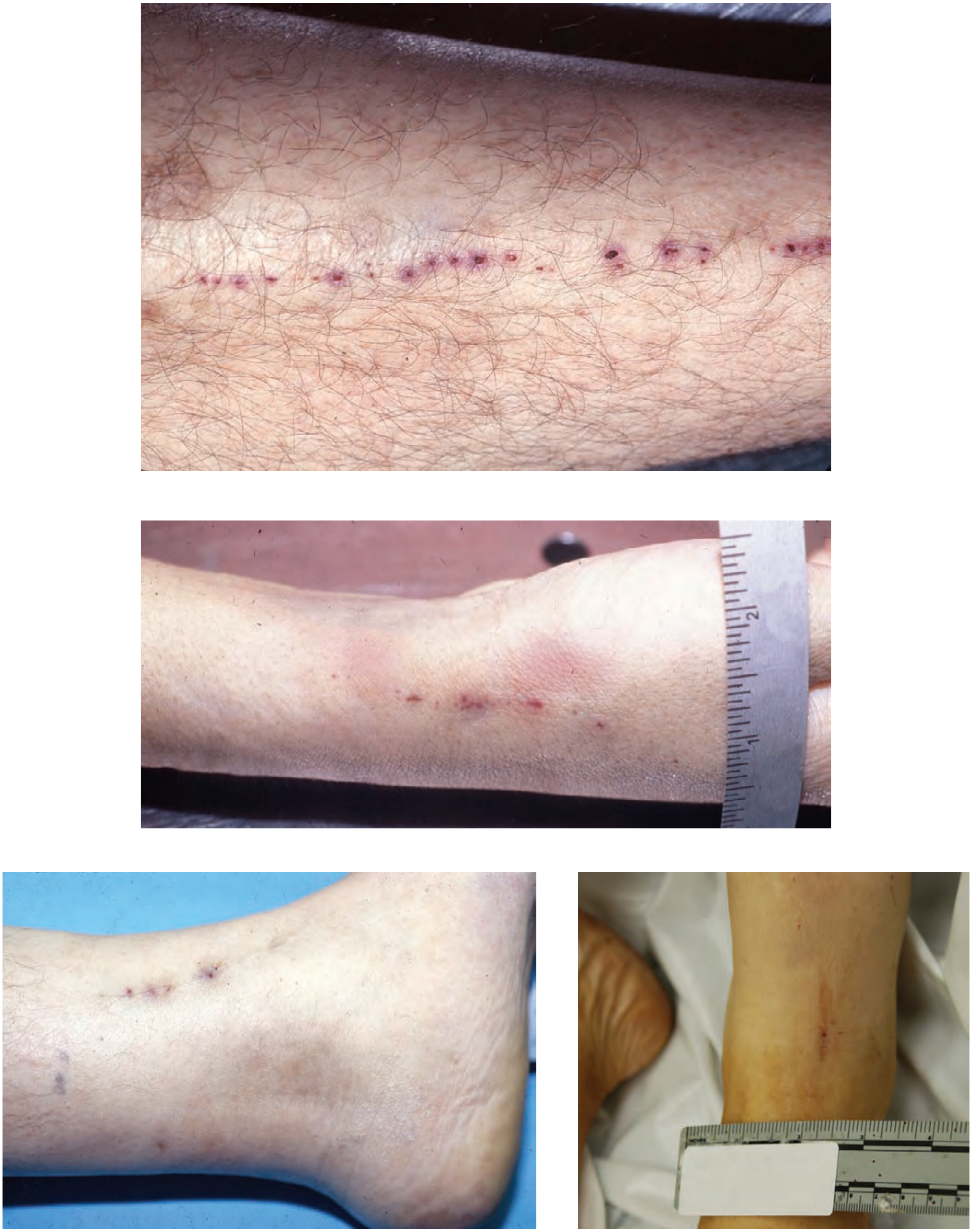
Poison Hemlock

Poison hemlock (*Conium Maculatum*) is a biennial member of the carrot family that grows wild throughout the United States, especially along roadsides. Socrates is thought to have died from ingestion of poison hemlock. Its toxicity is from several simple piperidine alkaloids including coniine, gamma-coniceine, conhydrine, N-methylconiine, and pseudoconhydrine. Coniine and gamma-coniceine are thought to have the most significant contribution to the toxic effects, which are similar to nicotine poisoning.

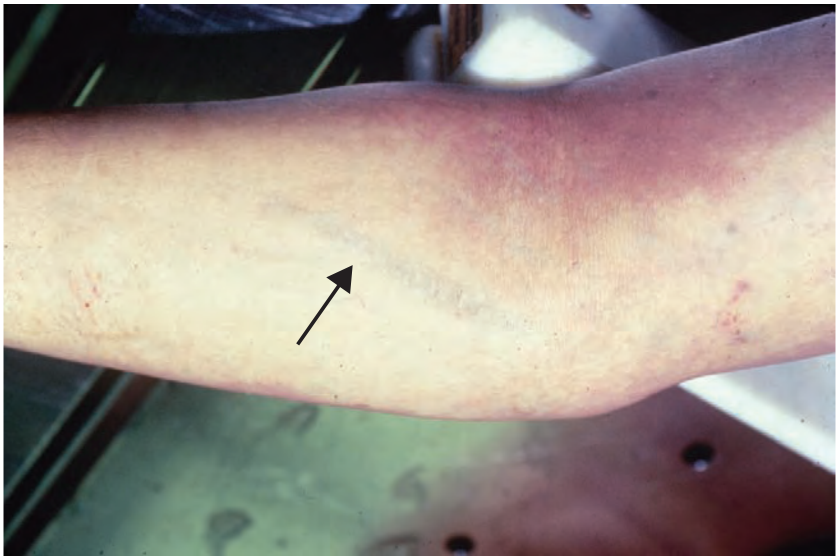
Thallium

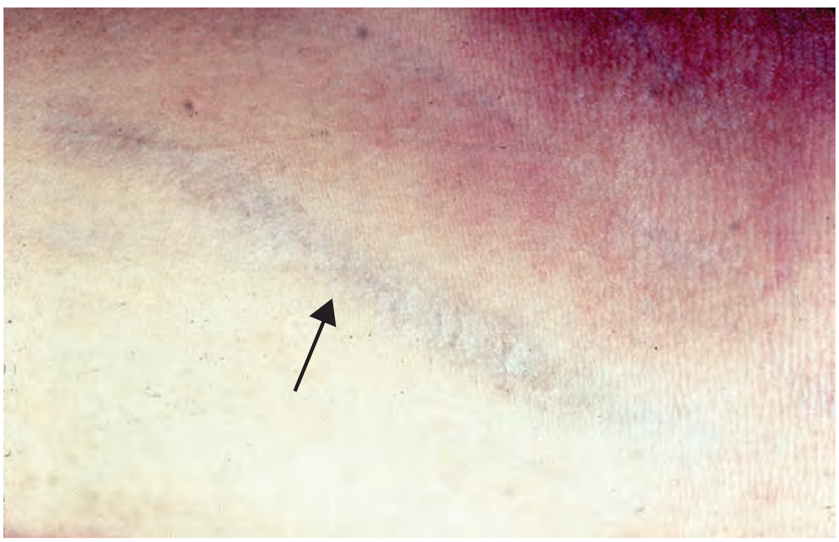
Thallium is a metal that was once used in rodenticides, insecticides, and depilatories, but was banned from residential use in the 1970s. Today, it is used in the

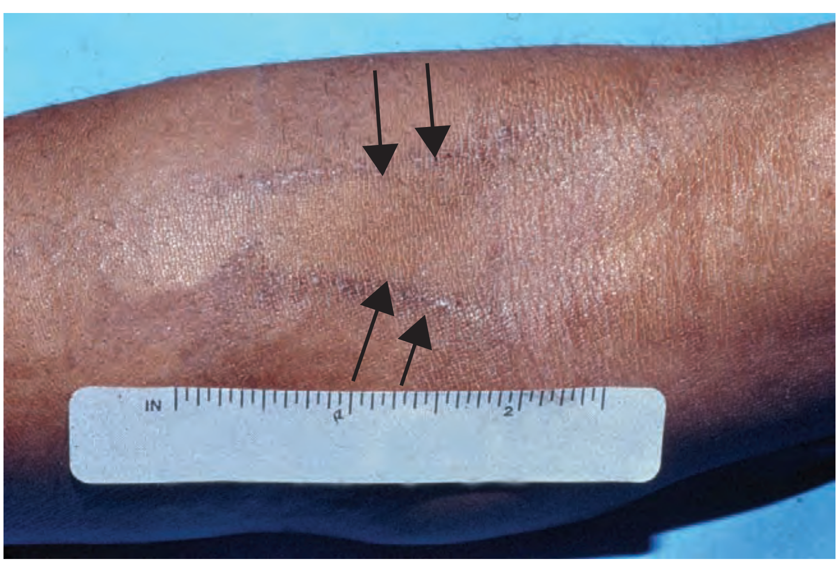
semiconductor industry and may be found in switches and electronic devices. Thallium is readily absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and may be detected in most of the body's tissues and fluids, including blood, brain, liver, kidney, spleen, bone, hair, and urine. The half-life of thallium in the blood is approximately 2 to 4 days, with one of the hallmark symptoms of this type of poisoning, alopecia or loss of hair, occurring after about 1 to 3 weeks. Symptoms of acute exposure include severe gastrointestinal distress, tingling of the hands and feet, paralysis, and respiratory failure. In people being chronically exposed, additional signs and symptoms include paralysis, hepatic and renal issues, and respiratory failure.



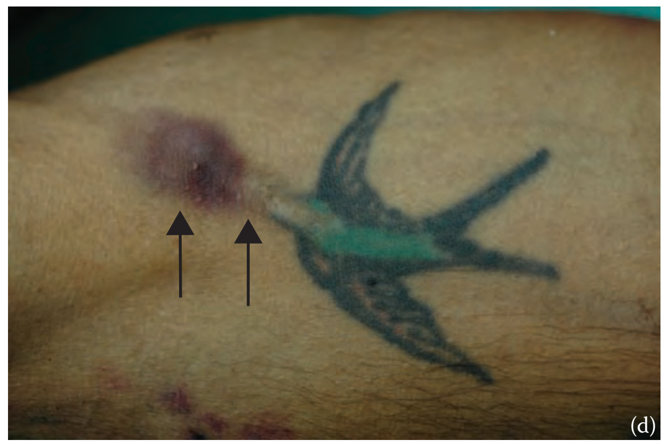
Acute track marks. Multiple fresh needle mark injection sites that traverse the path of underlying veins. Incision of these regions will often reveal underlying hemorrhage. Toxicological testing of underlying injection site tissue may reveal the parent compounds, such as heroine.

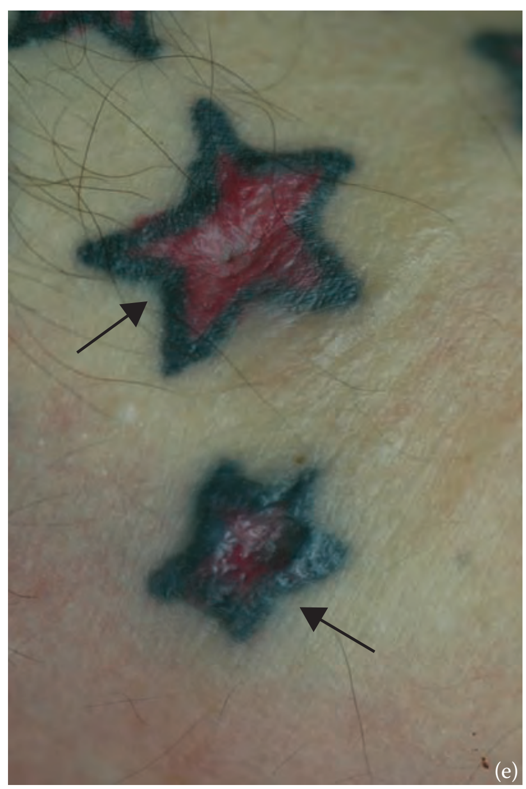




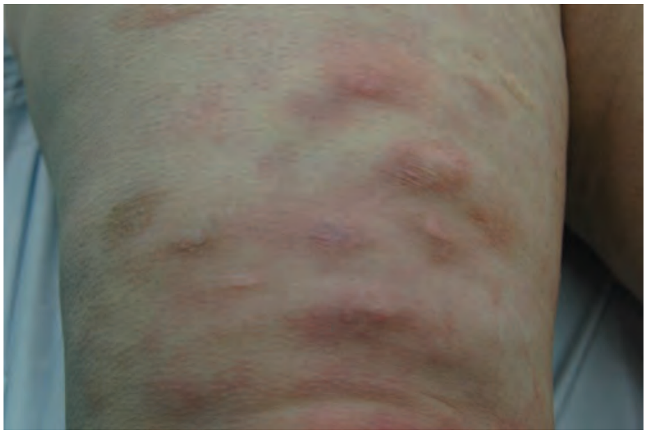


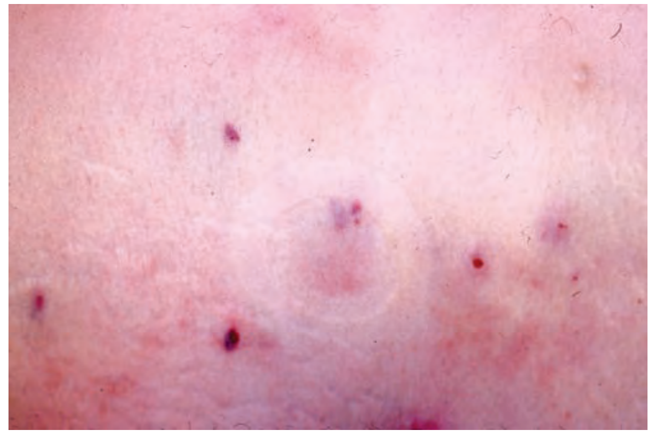
Chronic track marks. Linear scars that traverse the path of underlying veins. Microscopic sections may demonstrate inorganic debris in sub-adjacent soft tissues.





Tattoos are sometimes used to disguise intravenous drug abuse. These figures show examples of track marks in tattoos. Note the fresh injection site at the tip of the bird beak (d) and the healing injection sites at the stars (e), as well as other chronic linear track marks. Also note the fresh needle mark to the left of the tattoo (b) due to documented therapeutic intervention.





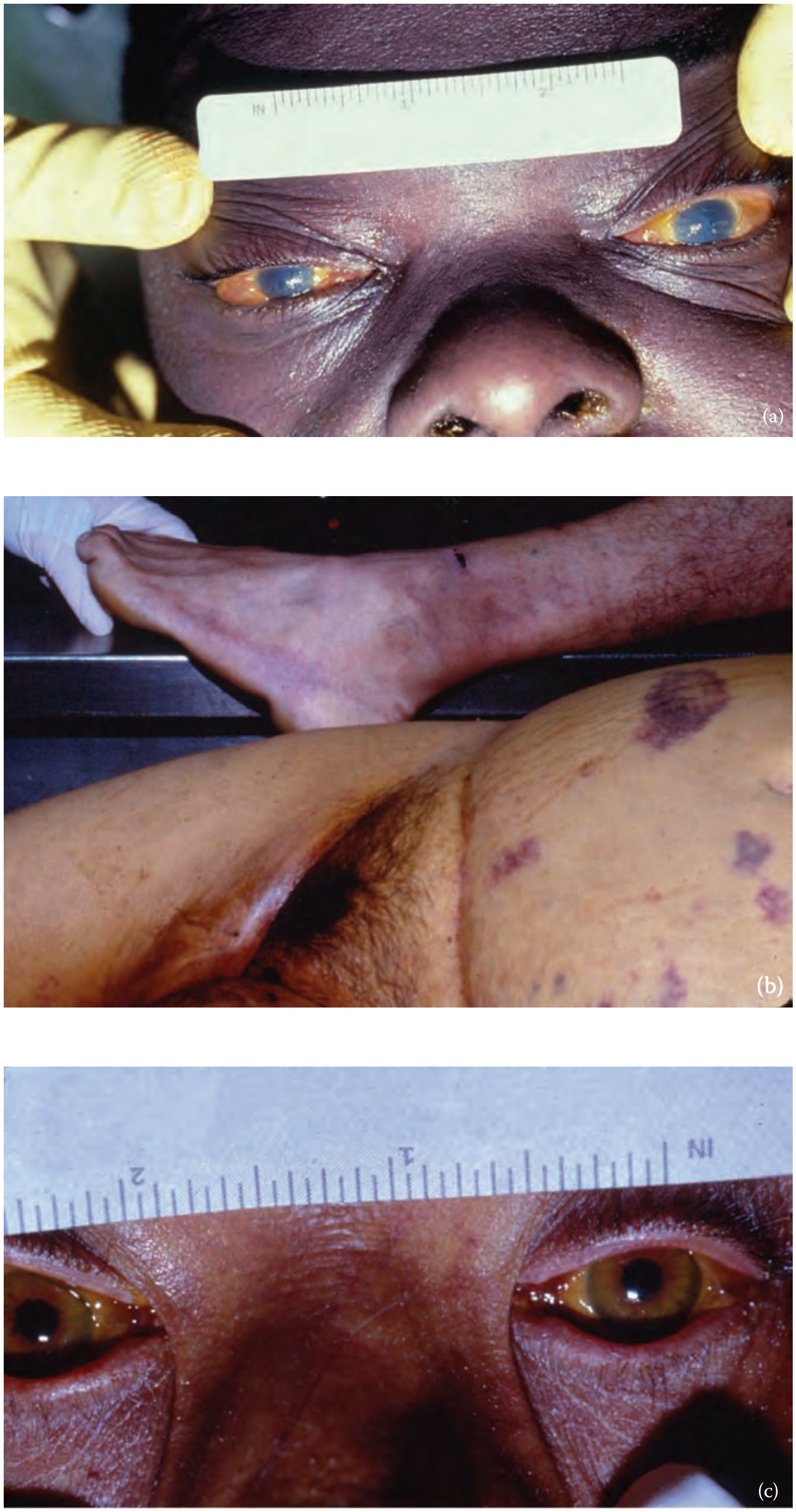
Fresh "skin popping" lesions. When drug abusers exhaust peripheral vein access they may start injecting drugs subcutaneously.

Recent healing infected skin popping lesion with adjacent cellulitis. It is common for these lesions to become infected due to the nonsterile nature of the injection equipment.

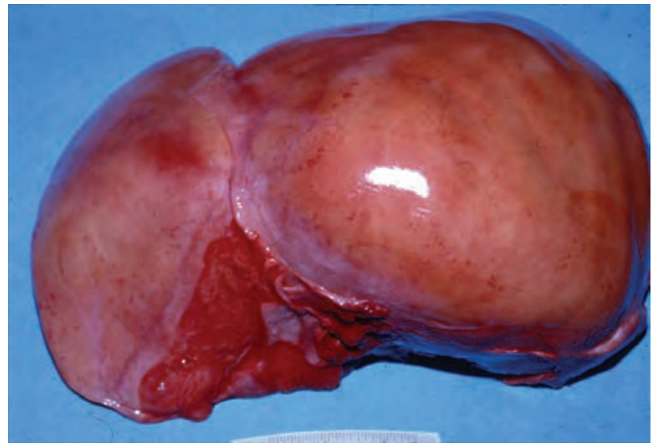
Recent healing infected skin popping lesion.

Healed and almost completely healed skin popping lesions. Note the lower wound has almost complete replacement by scar except for the central healing defect.

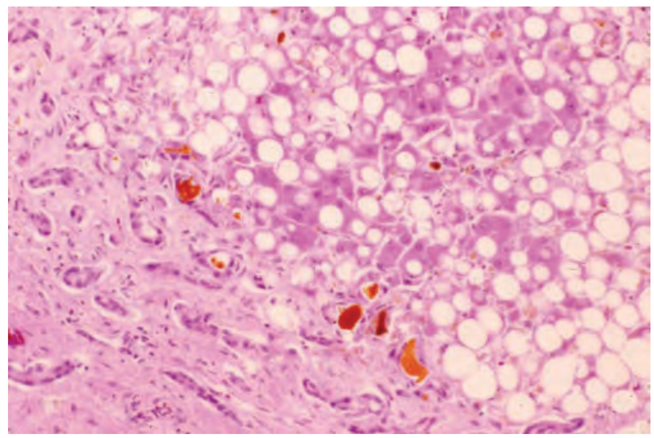
Remote old healed skin popping lesions.

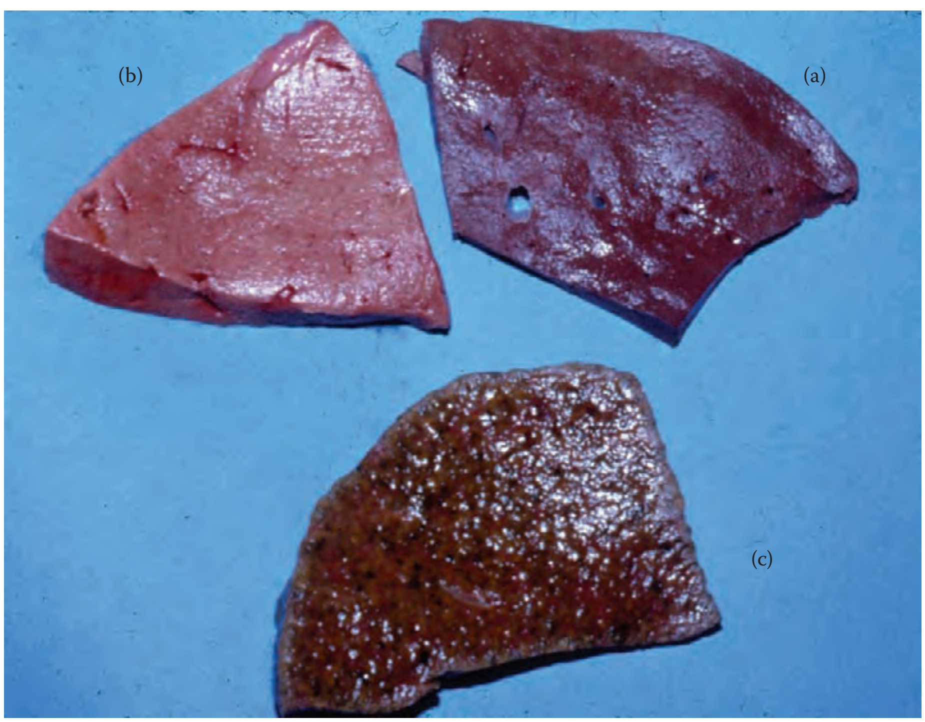


Examples of jaundice following hepatic failure due to hepatic cirrhosis as the result of chronic alcoholism; and viral hepatitis caused by chronic intravenous drug abuse. Note the yellow discoloration in the sclera and skin (a) and (c). Figure (b) demonstrates a comparison to a nonjaundiced individual. Also note the patchy areas of ecchymosis due to coagulopathy associated with the liver disease.

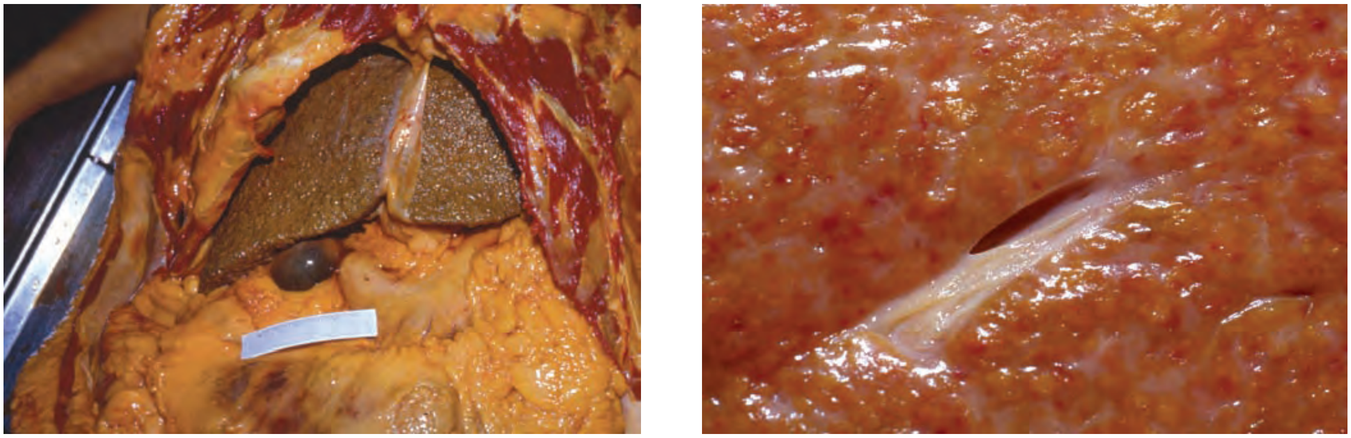


Marked hepatic steatosis due to acute alcoholism.

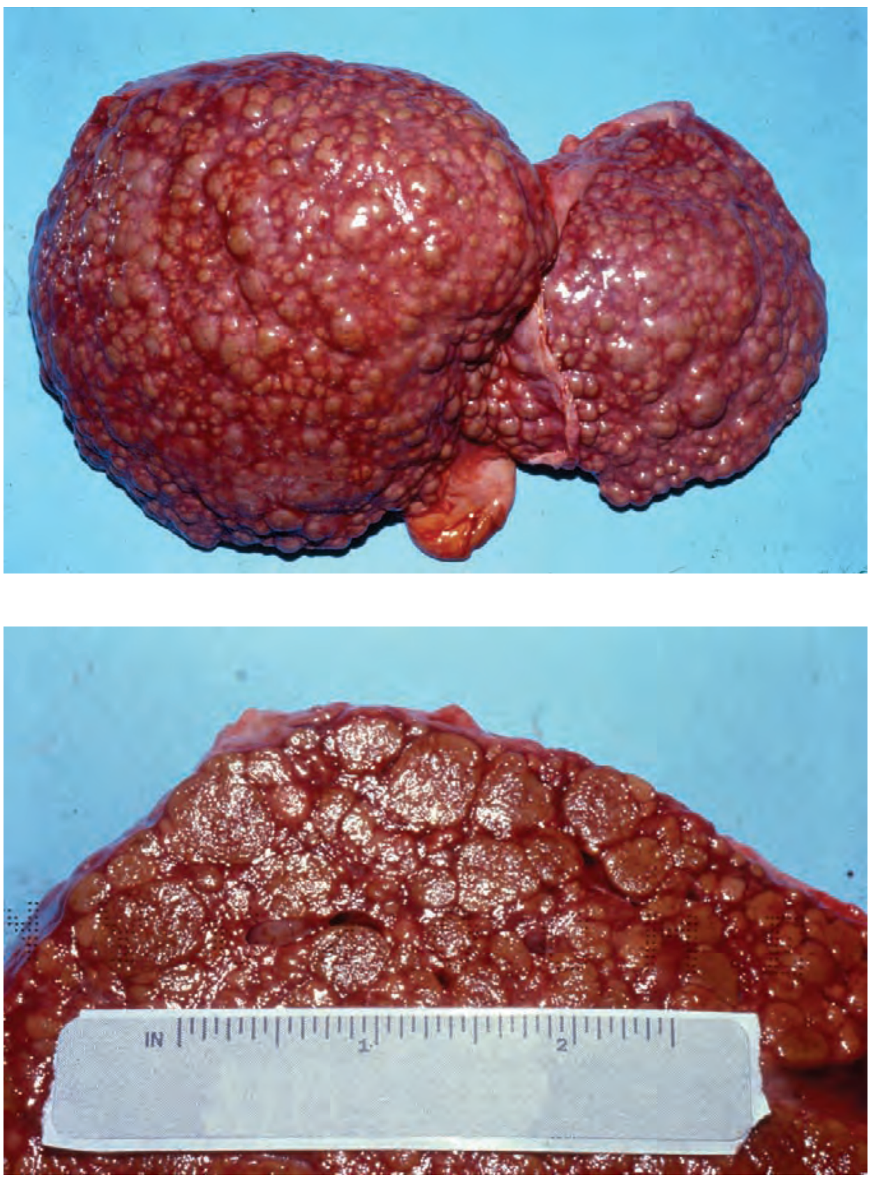




This image demonstrates cut portions of liver. Normal liver is brown (a); the yellow section demonstrates marked steatosis or fatty liver (b). The green section demonstrates micronodular cirrhosis due to chronic alcoholism with inspisated bile (c). The bile imparts this green discoloration.

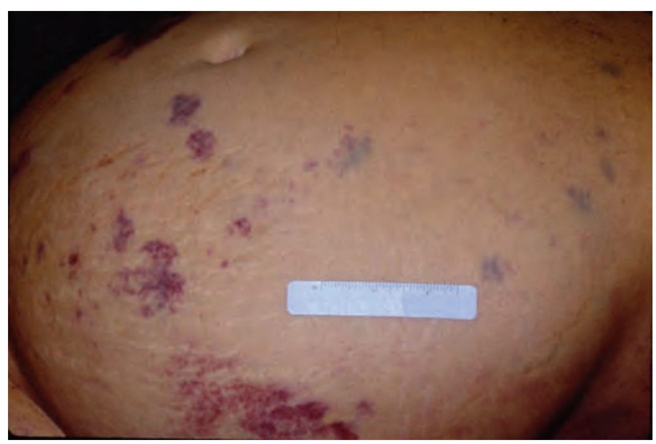


Micronodular hepatic cirrhosis with steatosis due to chronic alcoholism.

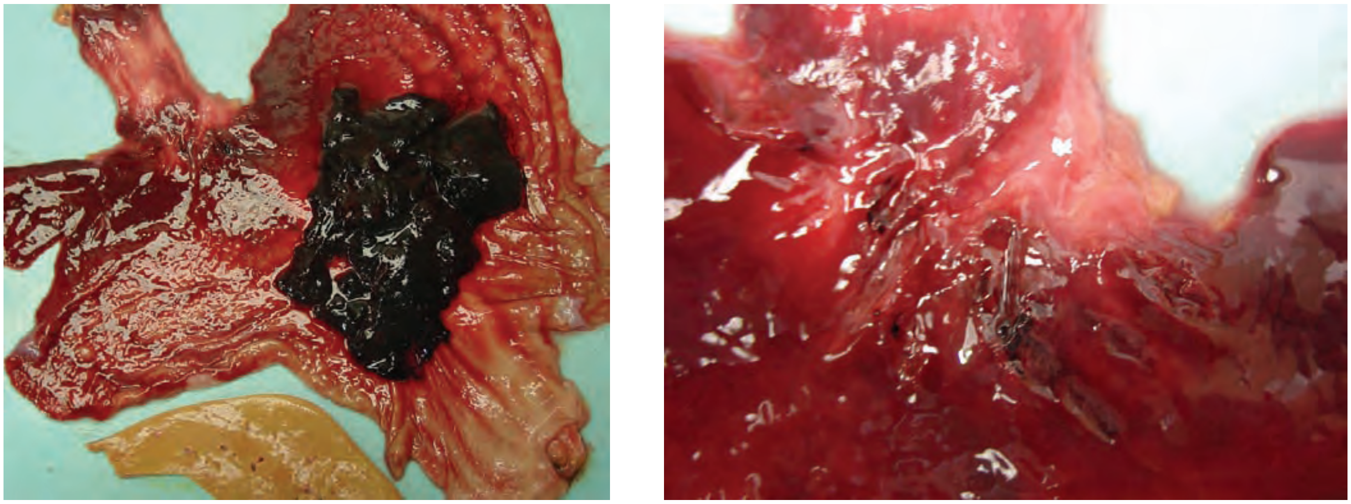


Macronodular hepatic cirrhosis due to hepatitis B infection as a result of chronic intravenous drug abuse.

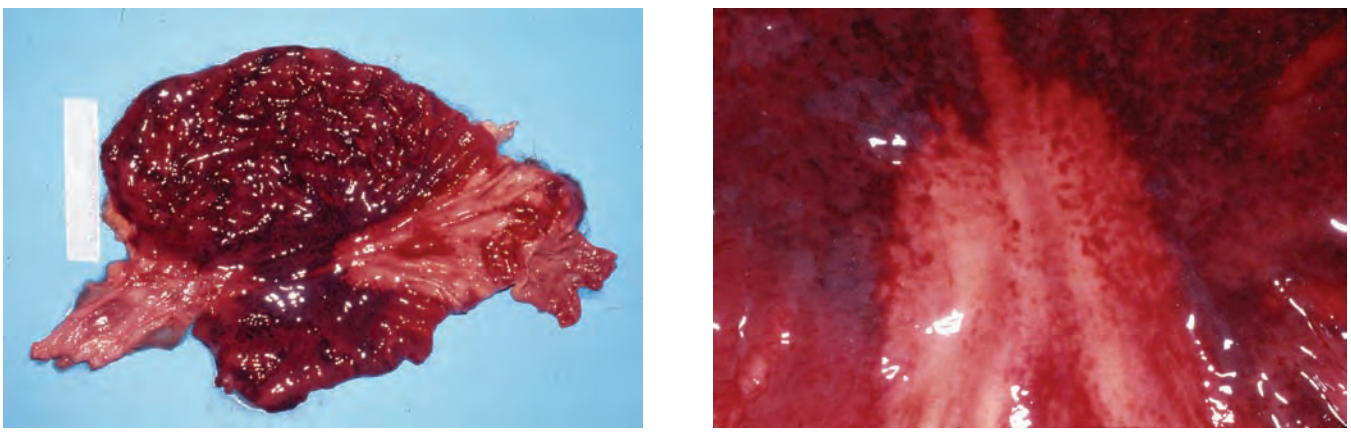

Chronic alcoholic with hepatic cirrhosis and gynecomastia. This individual also had neurofibromatosis, which is demonstrated by the multiple subcutaneous nodules.

Chronic alcoholic with hepatic cirrhosis and coagulopathy. Note the multiple areas of ecchymosis and contusion caused by minimal blunt force trauma.

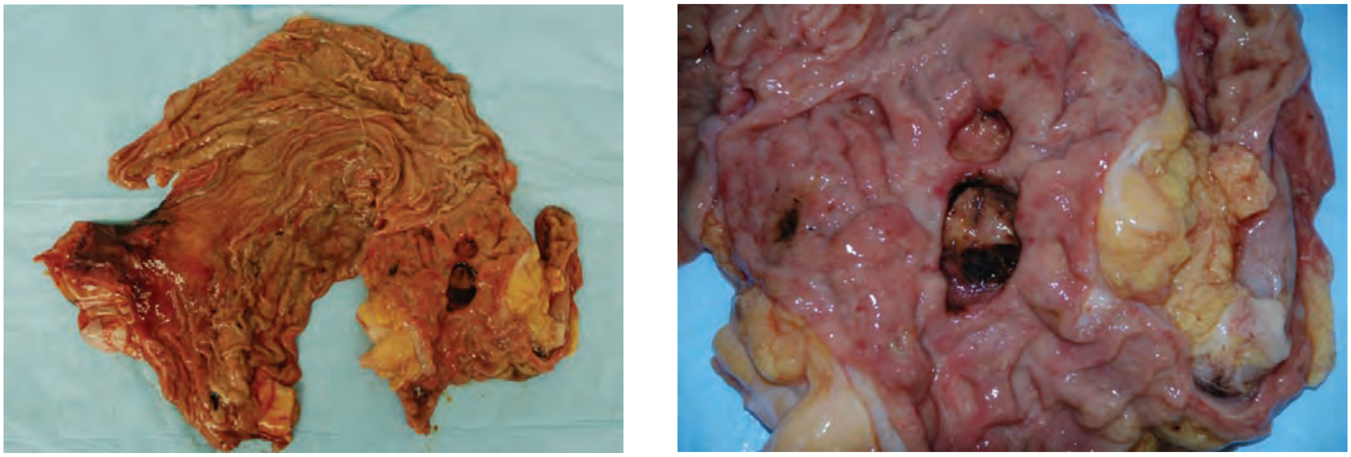


Gastrointestinal hemorrhage due to Mallory-Weiss tears in a chronic alcoholic. Note the laceration of the gastro-esophageal junction leading to death from gastrointestinal hemorrhage following multiple episodes of vomiting.

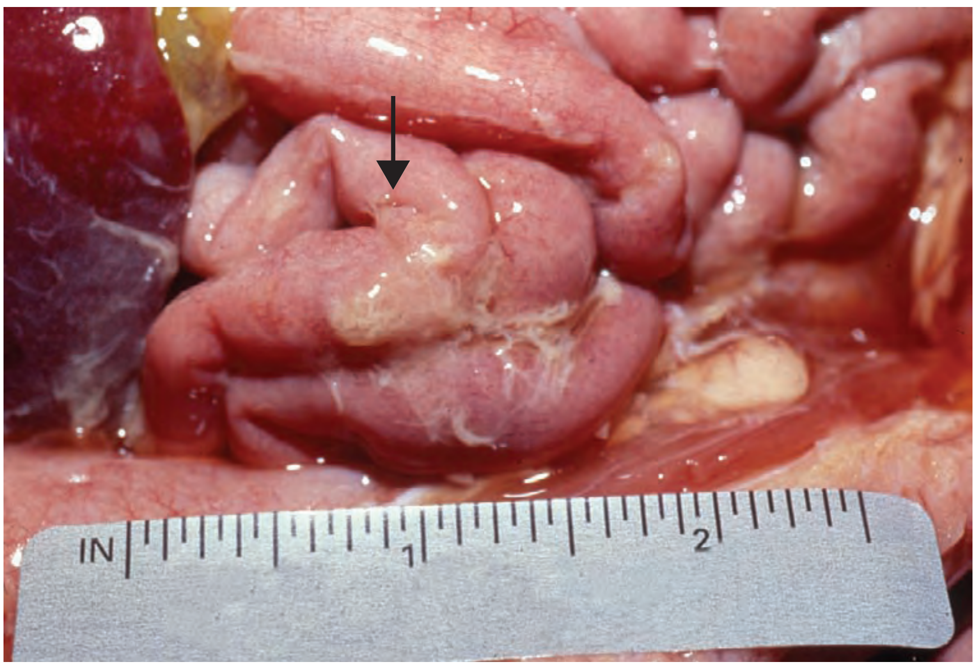


Acute gastritis associated with chronic alcoholism. Note the red discoloration of the mucosa.

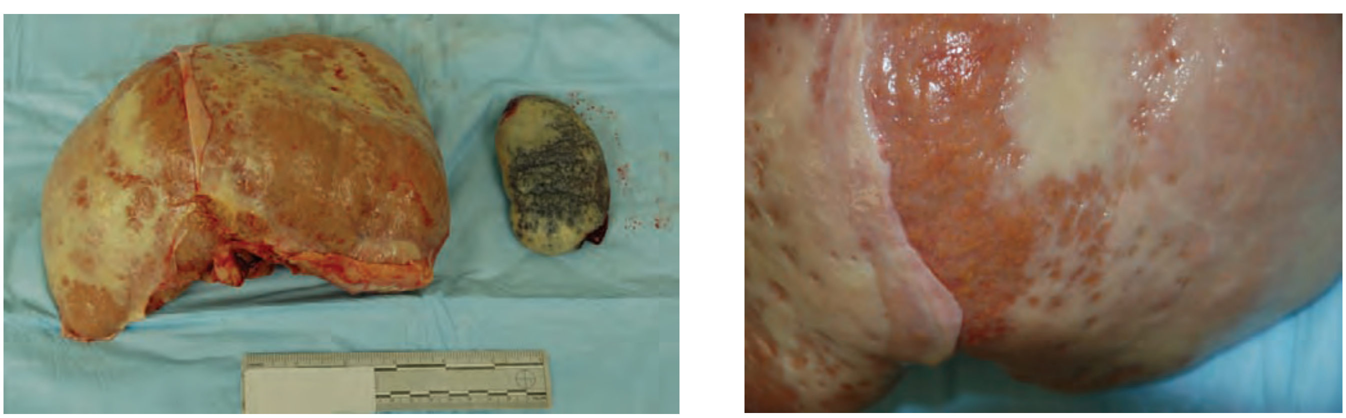
Esophageal varices due to hepatic cirrhosis and increased portal hypertension. Note the dilated red to brown submucosal veins that may rupture and possibly cause exsanguination.



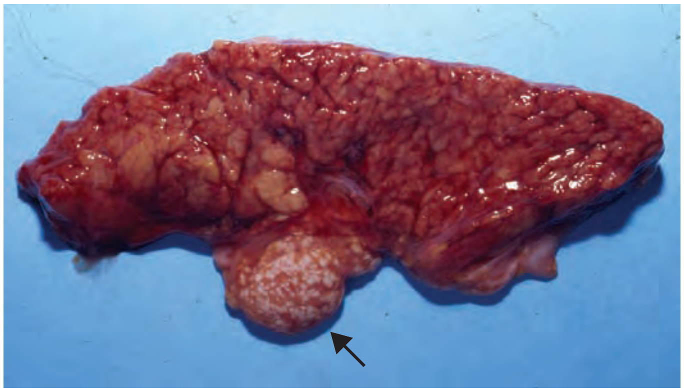
Bleeding peptic ulcers in a chronic alcoholic with gastrointestinal hemorrhage and hepatic cirrhosis.

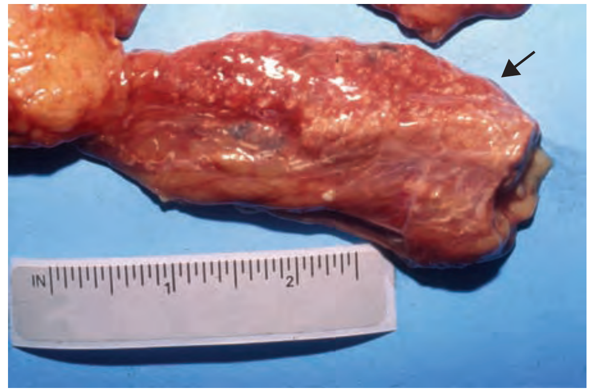


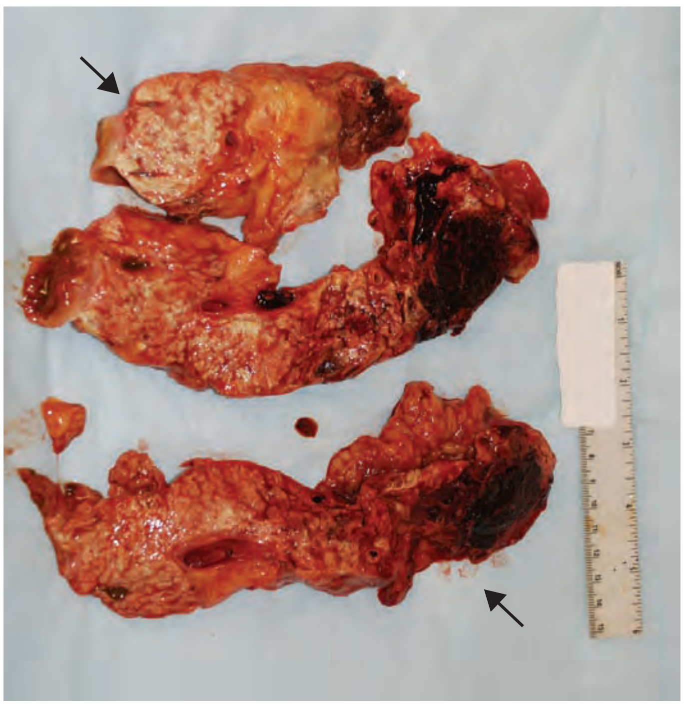
Acute peritonitis in a chronic alcoholic. Note the purulent exudate at the intestinal surface.



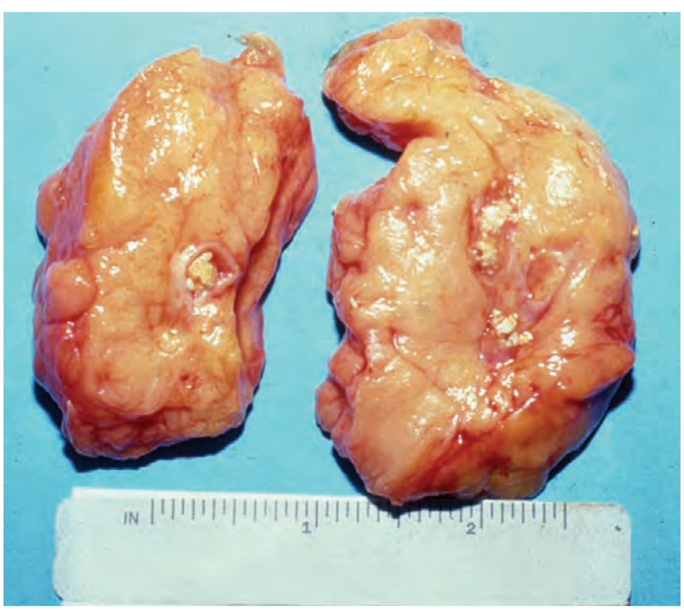
Hyaloserositis. Old healed peritonitis with fibrosis at the surface of the liver and spleen in a chronic alcoholic.



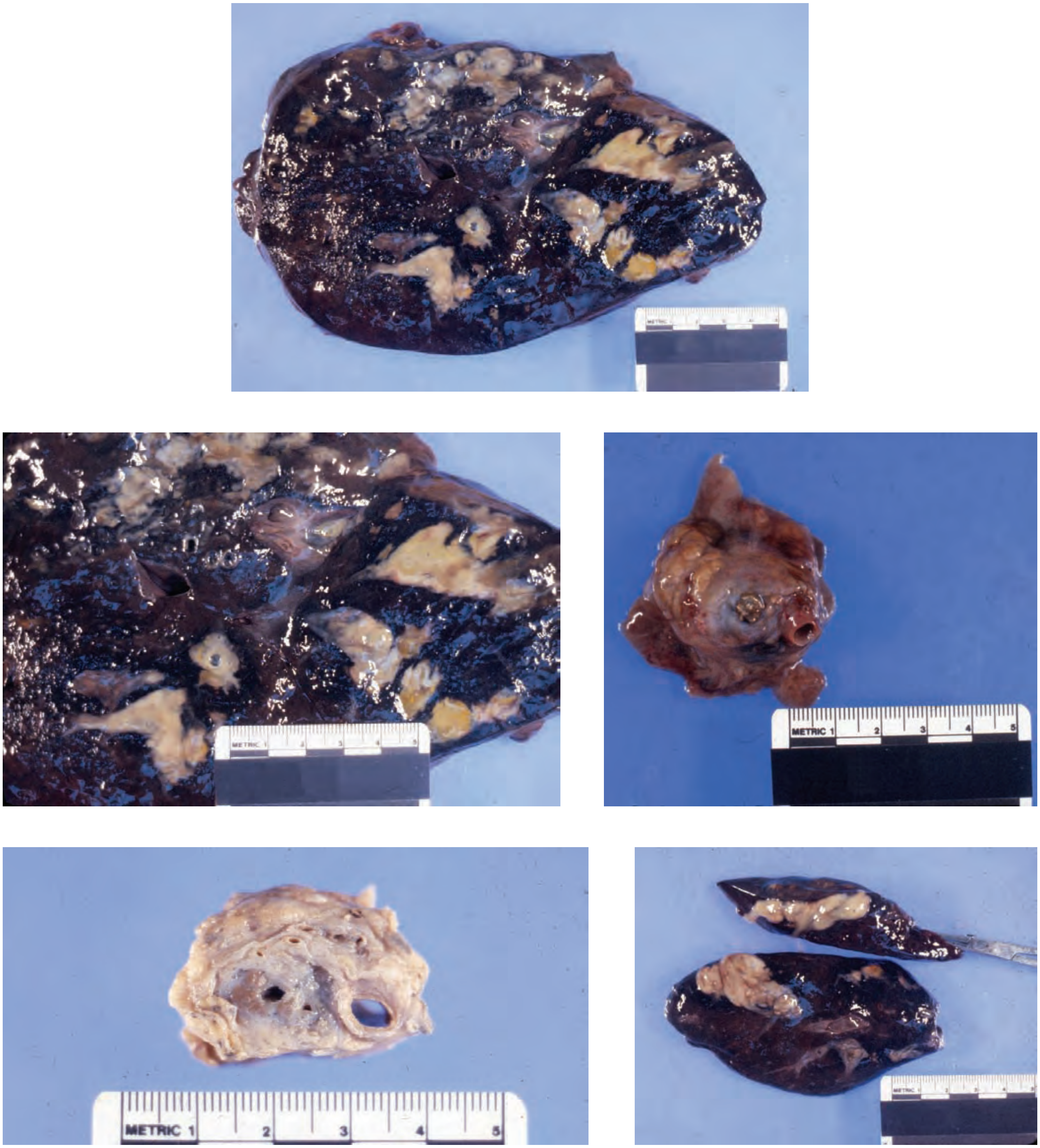




Acute pancreatitis due to chronic alcoholism. Note the white flecks due to fat necrosis and areas of hemorrhage.



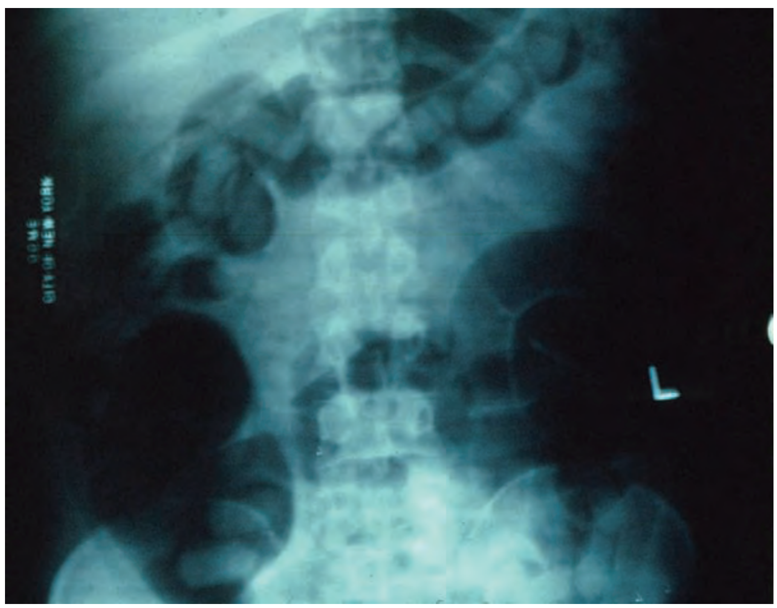
Fatty metamorphosis or atrophy of the pancreas with duct concretions in a chronic alcoholic.



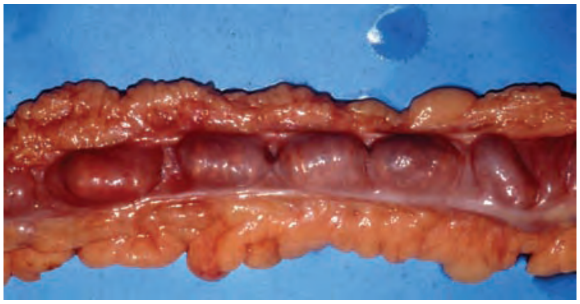
Pyogenic liver abscesses. This decedent had a history of chronic alcoholism with chronic pancreatitis and recent abdominal pain of unknown etiology. This photo depicts multiple geographic, creamy yellow-white collections of purulent material within the liver parenchyma that microscopically proved to be dense collections of neutrophils, karyorrhectic nuclear debris, and masses of faintly basophilic, fine filamentous bacteria. Samples of the abscesses were submitted to the microbiology laboratory but the best that they could do was anaerobic gram negative rods. Candidates included bacteroides, prevotella, and fusobacterium. Actinomyces would have been a consideration but they are gram positive. Pyogenic liver abscesses, while relatively rare, are known complications of chronic alcoholism and pancreatitis.

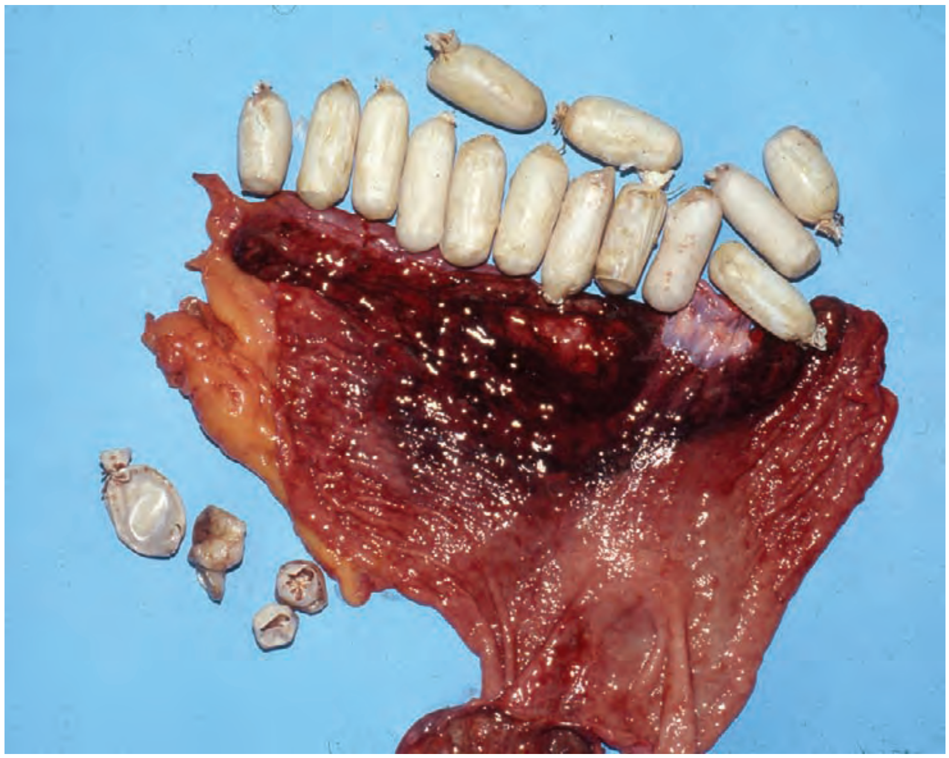
Suicidal overdoses demonstrating intact and fragmented granular pieces of partially digested pills. Note the containers with the granular white flecks at the bottom that indicate pill fragments.

Note the multiple scars demonstrating destructive behavior associated with drug abuse, mental illness, and suicide.

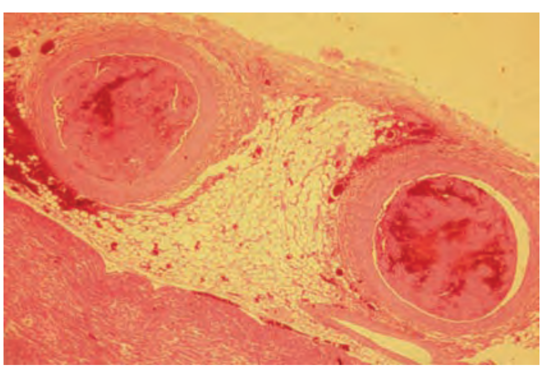


Acting as a "mule," this person ingested multiple packets of drugs to smuggle them into the country. One of the packets ruptured and the individual died of a drug overdose before the plane landed. Note the typical x-ray findings demonstrating these packets within the gastrointestinal tract.

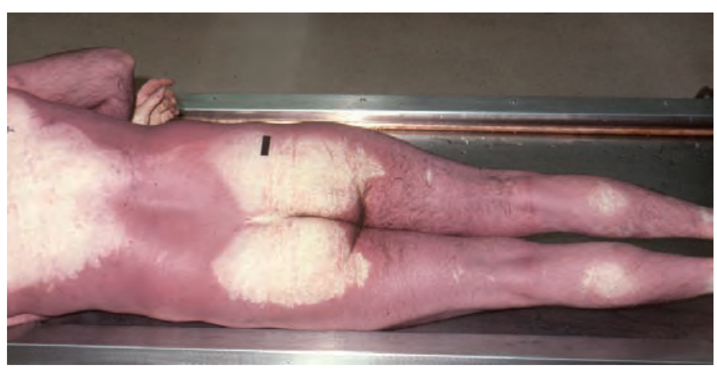




Packets of drugs discovered at autopsy in individuals who died in hotels next to an airport. Note the broken packets demonstrated at the bottom of the last picture.



Epicardial vessels with slight atherosclerosis and occluding thrombosis associated with acute cocaine intoxication.



Carbon monoxide poisoning with cherry red lividity.

Postmortem Change and Time of Death

4

CHARLES A. CATANESE, BRUCE LEVY,
AND GERARD CATANESE

Introduction

In most jurisdictions the time of death is legally defined as the time that the person is declared or recognized to be dead. Thus, a decomposed body or skeletonized remains, clearly deceased for significant periods of time, may have an official time of death that is days, weeks, months, or even years after the actual death of the individual. However, being able to estimate the actual time of death (or the postmortem interval) can be critically important in criminal investigations, civil litigation, or settlement of the deceased's estate.

The concept of a "window of death" was developed to help answer these questions. This window can be initially bracketed by the time that the person was last known to be alive and the time he or she was declared dead. Forensic science can then apply a variety of observations and tests in an attempt to narrow that window as much as is scientifically and medically possible. Accurate interpretation of postmortem change is crucial in helping to establish the actual time of death.

Postmortem changes can be subdivided into several categories. These categories include early postmortem changes, decomposition, and skeltonization. Each has characteristics that can overlap with advancing time and are variable depending on environmental conditions and the physiologic state of the body at the time of death. The activity of insects and animals will also create artifacts that can lead to misinterpretation of the postmortem interval. Interpreting postmortem changes is not an exact science, and without a witness, one can only estimate a time period in which the death was most likely to have occurred.

Early Postmortem Changes

Generally considered to occur or evolve within the initial 24 hours after death, these consist of algor mortis, livor mortis, and rigor mortis.

Algor Mortis

The cooling of the body after death. After death the body will gradually cool until it equilibrates with the ambient temperature. Under standard climate controlled conditions, with average humidity and a room temperature of about 72° F, the body generally loses about 2° F per hour for the first 12 hours and than approximately 1° F per hour for the next 12 to 18 hours. If the ambient temperature is greater than the body temperature, algor mortis occurs in reverse and the body temperature rises until it reaches the ambient temperature.

The above calculations apply only at or near room temperature and will become variable as the ambient temperature changes. As a general rule, the rate of temperature change in a body is proportional to the difference between the temperature of the body and its environment. In other words, if the ambient temperature is below 72° F, the rate of heat loss will be increased from the numbers above. The reverse would be true for temperatures greater than 72° F. Moving air will cool faster than still air, and wet bodies will cool faster than dry bodies. Bodies found in stagnant water, flowing water, or those found buried in the ground will cool at different rates from those in the air and from each other. When the body and environment are at the same temperature, they have reached steady state and estimates of time of death based on temperature are limited to a minimum period of time.

Many other variables can influence algor mortis. In general, an elevated body temperature at the time of death will give the appearance of a shorter postmortem interval based on a measurement of the body temperature. A lower body temperature will have the reverse effect. Things that effect body temperature include infection, strokes, seizures, thyroid disease, and many other natural diseases. Whether or not the person was involved in strenuous physical activity prior to death (such as a violent struggle) will increase body temperature. Many other factors, including the age of the person, his or her overall health, and many drugs or medications can also have an effect on the calculation of postmortem interval based on this and other observations.

It is important to make certain there is consistency in how the body temperature is obtained. First, these calculations are based on a core body temperature, meaning either taking a rectal temperature or, more ideally, introducing a thermometer into the abdominal cavity beneath the liver to measure core temperature. Temperature readings on

the surface of the body, including axillary, oral, or ear temperature are unacceptable for determining a postmortem interval. The thermometer must be kept in place long enough for the body temperature to equilibrate.

Livor Mortis

The settling of blood under the effects of gravity after death. It can first be appreciated as early as 20 minutes after death in very light-skinned individuals. The color of the livor will deepen to a purple color over the first 8 to 12 hours after death. During this period the livor is typically blanching, meaning that pressure on an area of livor will cause the color to briefly leave the area, resulting in a pale mark. After about 12 hours the livor will become fixed and no longer blanch under pressure. As with algor mortis, temperature will influence the rate at which livor becomes fixed, with increased temperatures shortening the time for livor to become fixed and decreased temperatures lengthening the fixation time. In some cases, livor mortis advances to cause small visible hemorrhages in the skin known as Tardieu spots, which should be distinguished from petechiae.

The medical condition of the person and the cause of the death can also create changes in livor mortis. People who are anemic (low blood count) or sustain an injury resulting in significant loss of blood might have very faint or even absent livor mortis. It can also be difficult to appreciate livor in dark-skinned individuals.

When evaluating livor mortis, it is important to note its location, intensity, whether it is blanching or fixed, and if it is appropriate for the position of the body. If livor is inappropriate for position, you can conclude that the person was moved at some point after the onset of livor. You can also evaluate livor for its color. For example, people who die as a result of carbon monoxide or cyanide poisoning will have a bright "cherry red" color to their livor mortis. People who die in a cold environment might also have a similar red color to their livor.

Rigor Mortis

The stiffening of the body after death. It is the result of a physiochemical process within the muscles of the body that does not cause actual contraction of the muscles. Under typical conditions, rigor will first be appreciated within 30 minutes to 2 hours after death. It will progress to a maximum intensity over the first 12 hours and remain at a maximum until about 24 hours after death. It will then "pass" from the body between 24 and 36 hours after death, after which the body will remain flaccid.

As with algor mortis and livor mortis, many variables will affect the rate of development and passing of rigor mortis. In general, increased environmental or body temperatures will speed the rate of development and passing of rigor mortis. Lower environmental or body temperatures will have the reverse effect. People at the extremes of age (children and the elderly) will have different rates of appreciation of rigor mortis due to the decreased muscle mass in these age groups.

When evaluating rigor mortis, it is important to note its location and intensity and whether it is appropriate for the position of the body. If rigor is inappropriate for position you can conclude that the person was moved at some point after the onset of rigor.

Decomposition

As time advances, decomposition gradually increases. Decomposition can be subdivided into two basic categories, putrefaction and mummification. While they can be seen in isolation, careful observation will typically reveal features of both processes simultaneously.

Putrefaction

Decomposition that occurs due to the actions of bacteria. The bacteria typically break down the body from the inside out, causing many of the changes we associate with a person who has been deceased for a longer period of time. However, when there is penetrating trauma that breaks the surface of the body, bacteria from the environment can gain access and hasten putrefaction. These changes include darkening and slipping of the skin, the production of a foul-smelling gas, with bloating of the body and marbling of blood vessels. A dark colored bloody-appearing purge fluid will come from the nose and mouth and should not be confused with blood related to trauma.

This process is extremely environmentally dependent. As with the early postmortem changes, warmer temperatures accelerate this process and cooler temperatures slow it down, with many of the same factors playing a role. A body placed in a dark dumpster in the hot summer sun for half a day can reach a state of putrefaction equivalent to a body left at room temperature for several days or one in the winter cold for greater than a week. In the case of fire fatalities, charring will preserve the body and decelerate this process. A frozen body that has thawed will putrefy at a markedly accelerated rate due to spaces left by frozen ice crystals.

Mummification

Mummification occurs in a dry environment, typically such dry outside environments as a desert, or in heated indoor environments during the winter months when the relative humidity is low. Initially, there is a darkening and hardening of the skin. This will progress to produce flaking of the surface of the skin that can give extremities the appearance of a log, thus the term “tree barking.” As with putrefaction, the skin will begin to split and eventually the skin and soft tissues under the skin are also lost.

Skeletonization

Both putrefaction and mummification eventually lead to skeletonization of the body. The loss of soft tissue progresses at a variable rate, depending on the environmental conditions and access of the body to a variety of animals and insects. The face and ends of the extremities are the first areas where bone is exposed, and the pelvic soft tissues are the last to be lost. While this process is usually measured in months, work performed at the Anthropologic Research Facility at the University of Tennessee in Knoxville has demonstrated that complete skeletonization of a person can occur within days under appropriate conditions.

Autolysis

Autolysis associated with decomposition occurs after cell death and is due to the actions of digestive and catalytic enzymes released from cells in the body. This term, “self-destruction,” is advanced in certain organs, especially the intestinal tract and pancreas, due to their rich enzyme content. This is important to note because autolysis can mimic certain disease processes at the time of gross examination. Maceration of stillborns who were dead inside a uterus for days is a type of autolysis associated with moist sterile environments, appears as a red discoloration with skin slippage, and is not to be confused with trauma or disease.

Adipocere

A process that is rarely seen outside of exhumation cases. It is a chemical change that occurs in the fatty tissues of the body exposed to wet conditions. Adipocere takes many months to develop, and once it forms is extremely persistent, stopping the typical loss of soft tissue and skeletonization of the body.

Other Factors in Evaluating Postmortem Interval

When a deceased body has been exposed to insect or animal activity, we can make observations that might assist in the determination of the post-mortem interval. Maggots (the larval stage of blowflies) can be collected from the body and examined by an entomologist. You need to collect two sets of specimens. One set should be kept alive while the other set is killed. The entomologist will determine the exact species of fly from the matured living specimens and the likely time of death from the killed specimens. In persons who have been deceased for a prolonged period of time (months to years), an evaluation of the type and age of plants growing up through the body might also provide useful information.

Examination of the stomach and intestinal contents can also provide clues to help us in the determination of time of death. Our bodies digest food at a fairly predictable rate, depending on the quantity and types of foods consumed. Higher caloric content foods, such as fats, are digested slower than less complex foods. Larger meals remain in the stomach for a longer period of time. The rate of stomach emptying can be accelerated or slowed by natural disease, drugs, alcohol, or emotional stress. The description of the quantity, type, and condition of food in the stomach is part of the routine autopsy. This can be combined with information about that person’s recent consumption of food obtained during the investigation to estimate the time from the eating of that meal until the time of death. Even without information about the last meal consumed, the stomach contents might provide clues as to when death occurred based on the types of food in the stomach.

Finally, markers found at the scene of death might provide the best information regarding the date or time of death of the individual. Observations regarding uncollected mail or newspapers, information from the telephone company about the last time the phone was used, dated sales receipts, or a noted change in habitual behavior might assist with determining the date of death. The clothing the person is wearing or the status of lighting in the home might provide clues regarding the time of the day or night that death occurred.

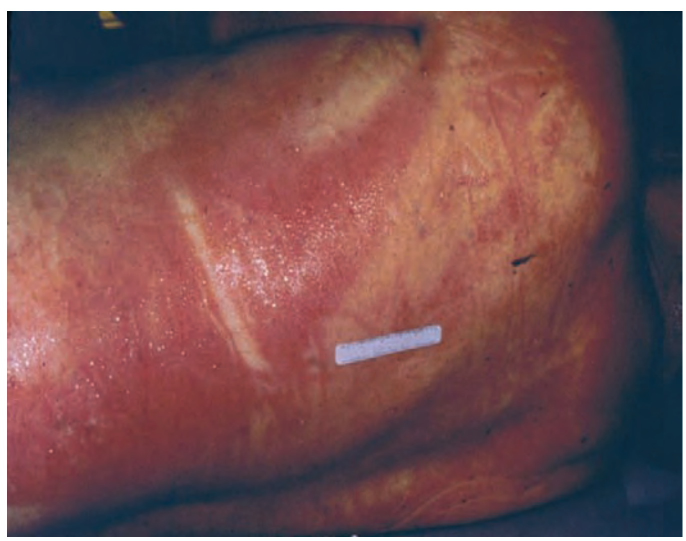
In conclusion, determining the postmortem interval can be difficult. Start with a broad window of death (last-known-alive to found-dead). Then use as many of the above elements as are available to attempt to narrow that window as much as possible. It is important to remember that there is variability of these observations and calculations, so keep an open mind and be willing to reevaluate your opinion based on new information as it becomes available.


Blanching lividity. Note the finger marks caused by pressing the blood away from the skin surface at the posteromedial aspect of the right thigh.


Fixed lividity at the lateral and posterior torso. Note the absence of lividity underlying the pressure region exerted by the arm against the weight of the chest. This child was discovered lying on his left side. This body was stored in a cold refrigerator for many hours prior to being autopsied.

This individual was placed in the morgue on her back the day before this examination. Note the fixed anterior lividity with partial sparing over with pressure points caused by lying on a wrinkled bedspread in her home for many hours prior to being discovered. Also note the early putrefaction consisting of slight green discoloration of the lower right abdomen.

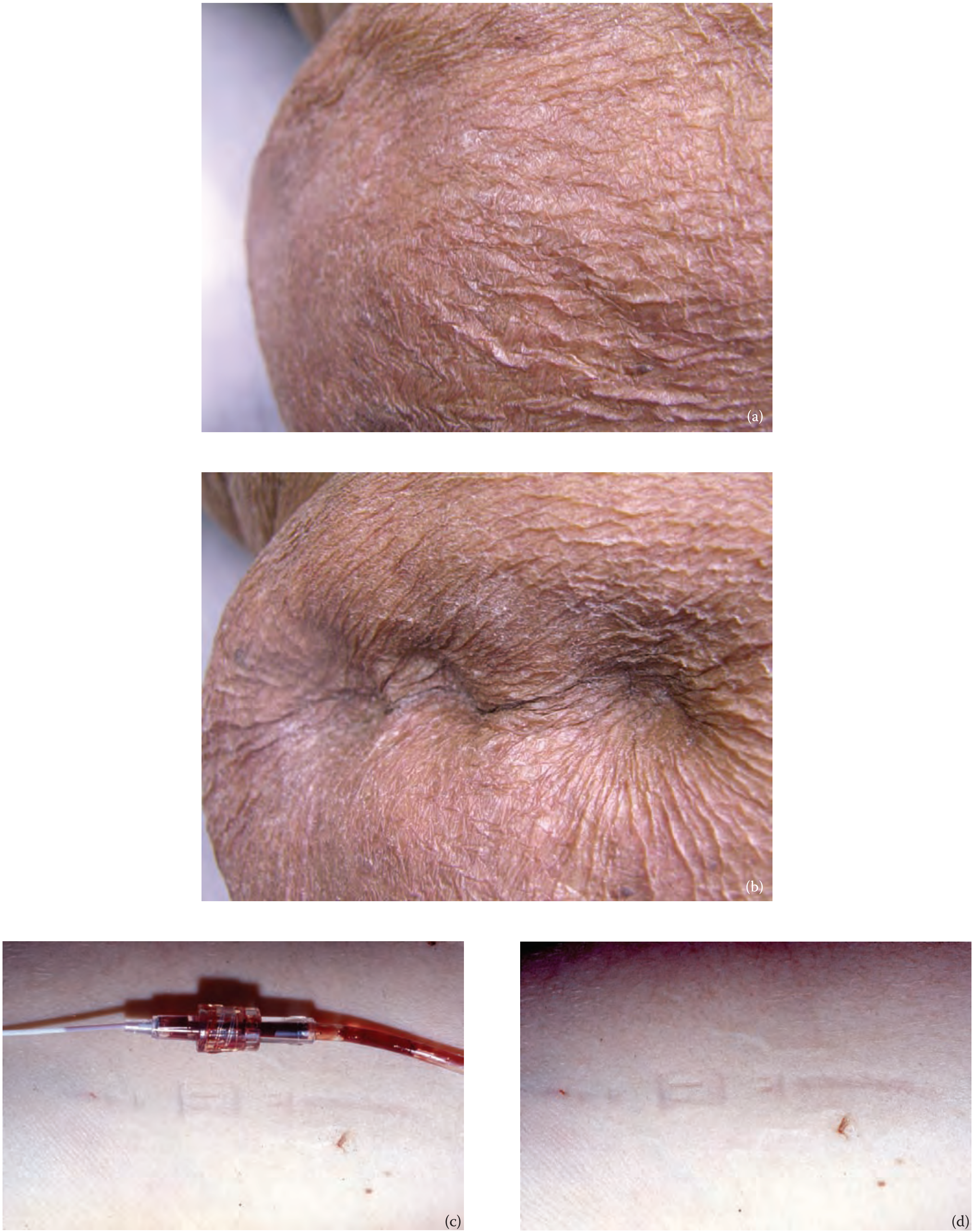
Marked fixed lividity with dark purple spots known as "tardieu spots." Also note the vague chain pattern. It is not unusual for objects such as this to leave postmortem imprints.



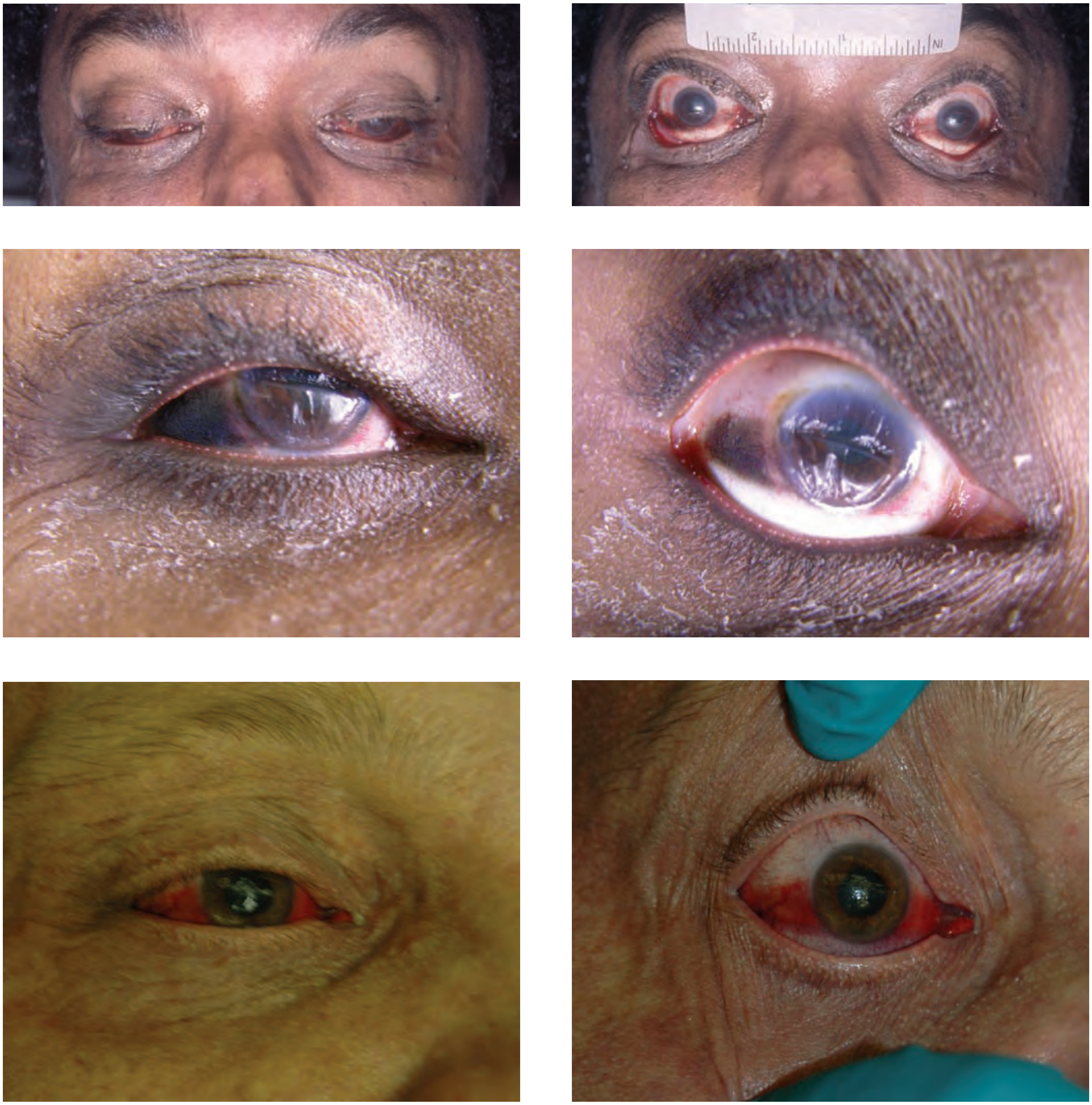
In carbon monoxide poisoning, the color of the livor mortis is more of a bright red instead of the typical red-purple color. This change can also be seen in cases of cyanide poisoning or in decedents who have died in cold environments. Note that the color differences are very subtle and it may not be possible to make a determination from visual inspection alone.

The decedent was found lying on his back with his head elevated on top of several pillows. He was in full rigor mortis at the scene and maintained this position through his arrival into the morgue.

Full rigor mortis. Note the morgue technician pulling tightly on this decedent's arm, which is stuck in a bent position.



Congealing of fat. Adipose tissue at very cold temperatures will demonstrate increased viscosity. This might be mistaken for poor skin elasticity due to dehydration, which may or may not be present with congealing of fat. Note figure (b) shows indentations that have been retained following pressure exerted by fingers.



These are examples of "tache noire," which is a dark discoloration of a portion of sclera exposed to air. This is due to drying and is usually brown to red. This postmortem change may be misinterpreted as hemorrhage associated with strangulation.

This drying of the lips and tongue with dark discoloration is due to postmortem drying associated with mucosal exposure to air. This may be misinterpreted as an antemortem finding resulting from ingestion of caustic substances. The process of suicidal hanging caused the individual's tongue to stick out and become dry and dark.

This is also postmortem drying with dark discoloration of the scrotum and shaft of the penis. This may also be mistaken for an antemortem injury such as an abrasion. If there is doubt, one may make an incision to document underlying hemorrhage.

This is early mummification with drying of the hands and feet. Note the dark discoloration of the fingers with indentation from dehydration. Portions of the body with larger surface areas relative to underlying tissue mass will mummify more rapidly.

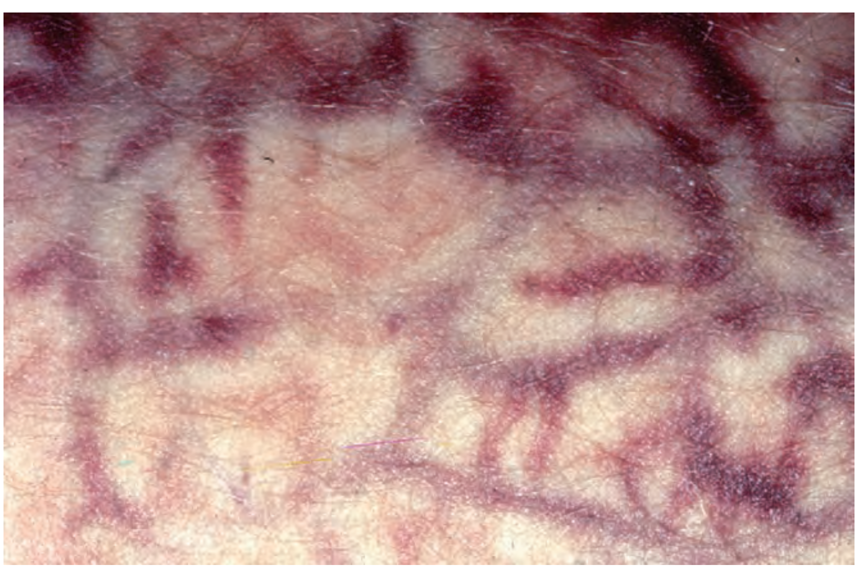
Early putrefactive change with green-brown discoloration of the lower abdomen. The first place for this to occur is typically the lower left abdomen above the cecal region.

This large hernia demonstrates early decomposition with slight green discoloration of the scrotum due to a portion of the large intestine extending into the scrotal sac.

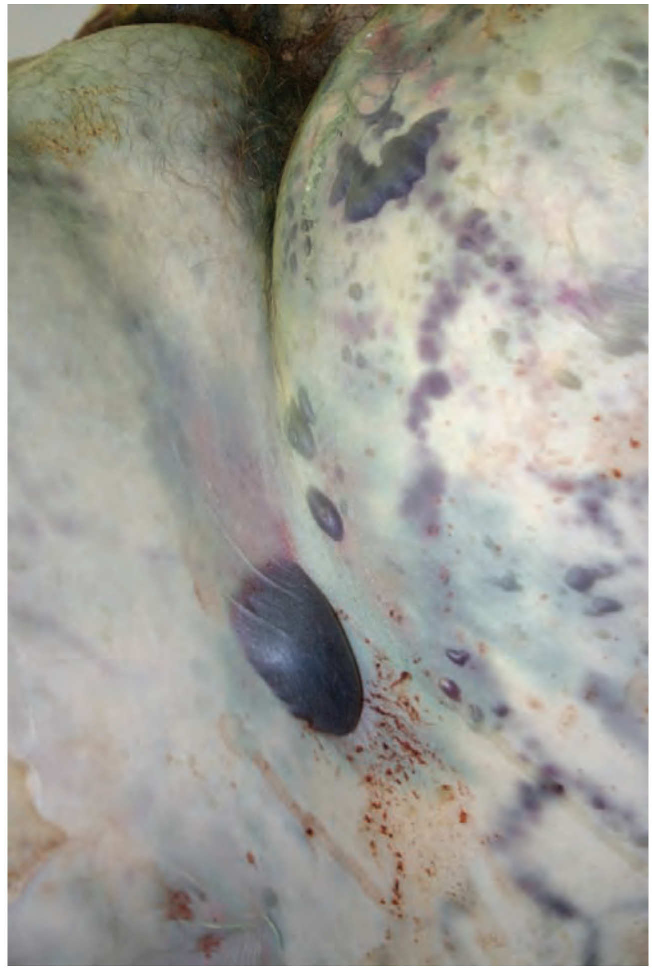
Disproportionate advancing putrefactive change of the abdomen due to acute peritonitis. Note the green discoloration of the abdomen and the absence of green discoloration elsewhere. The presence of infection with bacteria caused this regionally accelerated process. Note the parulent exudate at the surface of the intestines, indicated by the arrow.

This individual committed suicide by ingesting excess prescription medication and placing a loosely fixed plastic bag over the head. The moisture collecting at the face covered by plastic during breathing helped to create an environment where mold and mildew could form at the chin and face.

Postmortem hot water burns of the face in this individual, who was found partially submerged in the warm water of a bathtub. He suffered a cardiac event while taking a shower. It requires less heat to cause thermal damage to a dead body than to a living body. Note the sharply demarcated red region indicating his nose and mouth were below the hot water.



Marbling. This early presentation of putrefaction is predominantly caused by bacteria tracking through the superficial blood vessels causing pigment changes in blood and vessel walls as microorganisms digest the body.



Early to moderate putrefactive change with green-brown fluid-filled blisters. Such blisters may be mistaken for second degree thermal burns or aggressive antemortem bacterial skin infections.

Early putrefactive change with clear yellow fluid-filled blister formation. The rupture of these blisters would appear as skin slippage.

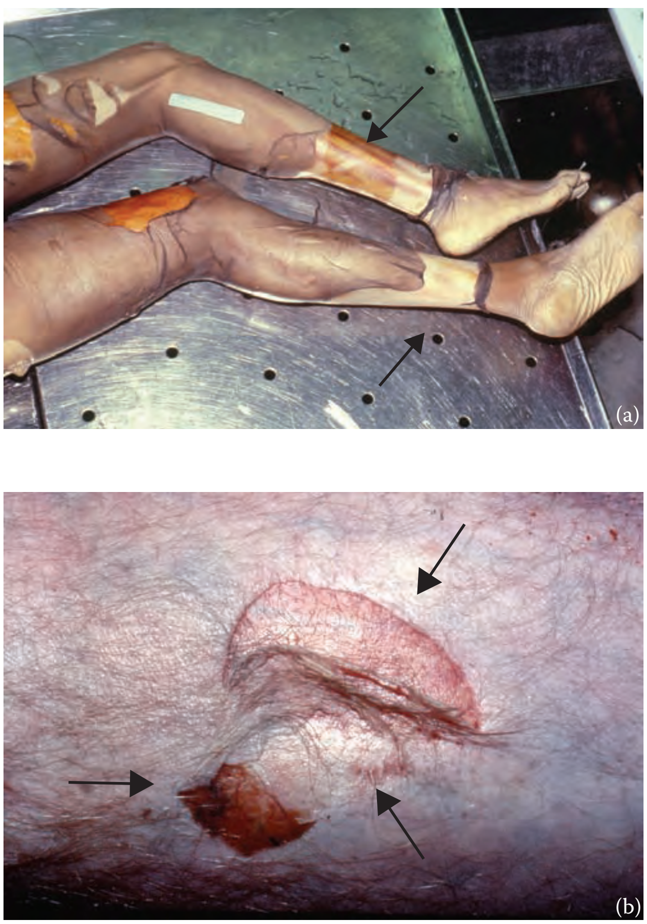
Putrefaction with "purging." Note the red to brown fluid gurgling from the mouth and nose. This can sometimes be mistaken for an upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage.

Putrefactive change with bloating and expansion of the scrotum due to gas accumulation.

Green-brown-red discoloration with fluid-filled blister formation and skin slippage, scrotal enlargement from gas formation due to metabolism of proliferating microorganisms.

There is mummification of the fingertips with an expanded gas-filled blister and green to brown putrefied fluid in its inferior aspect.

Marbling and skin slippage; early to moderate putrefaction.



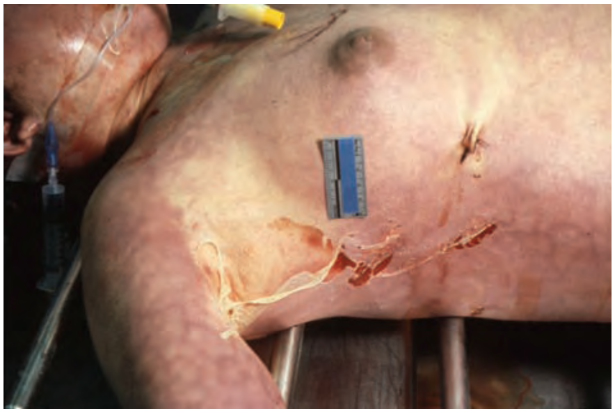
These images, (a) and (b), demonstrate skin slippage that occurred at different times. Note the regions of underlying dermis that are dry and dark, indicating older regions of skin slippage. Also note the other adjacent regions, which are moist, pale, and less dark, indicating shorter duration of underlying dermis exposure to air. This darker discoloration is due to more drying and longer exposure to the air.

Decomposing homicide victim with multiple decomposing blunt impact injuries. The combination of postmortem change with injuries may make interpretation challenging. Note the red to brown abraded contusions at the individual's face and head, with skin slippage and darker discoloration.


(a)


(b)

This individual was found lying on his left side with a mild to moderate degree of putrefaction. Note the puddle of purged fluid underneath his upper trunk and head (a). Also note the greater decomposition with green discoloration in the regions of dependent lividity where the body contacted the warm floor. Purged fluid such as this is often misinterpreted as the result of traumatic injury.



Accelerated putrefaction due to bacterial sepsis at the time of death. This picture depicts the left side of the patient's body with extensive skin slippage as well as green discoloration within the left infraclavicular area. Additionally, an endotracheal tube can be seen protruding from the mouth and taped to the side of her face. Such a depiction might lead one to conclude that overzealous paramedics had worked on a decedent who was decomposing. Marbling is also visible on the lateral and anterior aspects of the left arm. What this case really illustrates is the rapidity with which bacteria, already present within the blood stream at the time of death, can disseminate and propagate throughout the blood system, leading to accelerated postmortem putrefactive change.

Same case with front view of patient's face, also illustrating green discoloration around right infraclavicular puncture site and defibrillator marks.

This is the same case, demonstrating skin sloughage and exudation of hemolytic fluid from the external genital region.

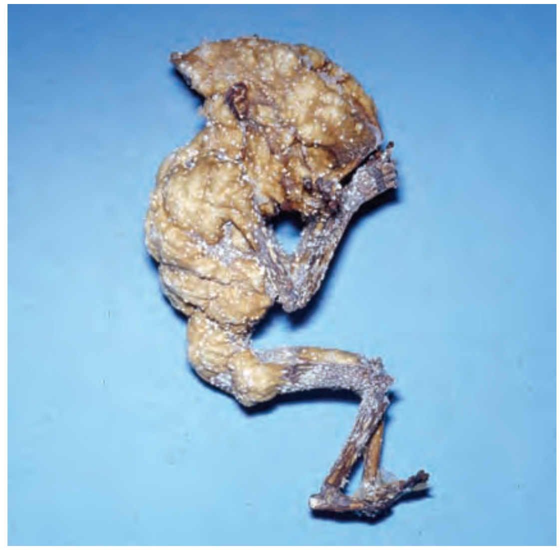
Another case depicting a decedent with dark red-brown discoloration due to postmortem putrefactive change that was accelerated by the probable bacteremic state at the time of death.

Skin slippage with confluent red to brown discoloration, moderate putrefaction. Note figure (b) shows multiple nitroglycerin patches in an individual with known significant heart disease.

Moderate to marked putrefaction with dark brown discoloration and early mummification.

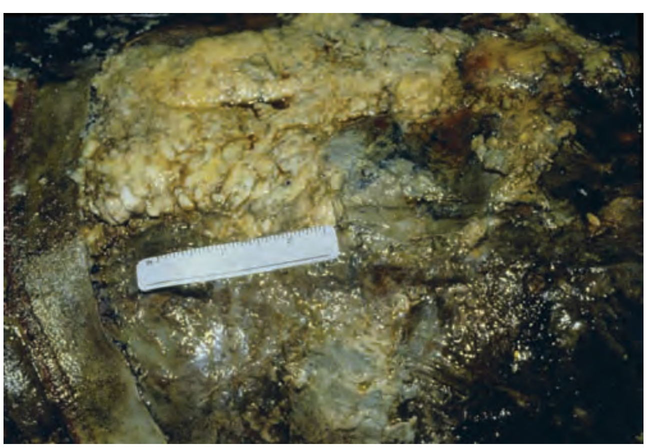
Moderate to marked putrefaction. Identification may sometimes be challenging with advancing decomposition. This individual had a tattoo on his left arm that was initially difficult to view due to putrefactive change. Cleaning of this area with removal of the superficial layers of skin made visualization and thus identification much easier.

Marked putrefactive change with dark brown discoloration and maggot feeding. Note the small circular perforations caused by maggots tunneling through skin and soft tissue.



Mummified fetuses retrieved from dried-out formaldehyde containers found within an abandoned building that once housed a doctor's office that closed more than 30 years earlier.

Advanced decomposition with mummification of the entire body. Note the dry dark leathery appearance of the skin.



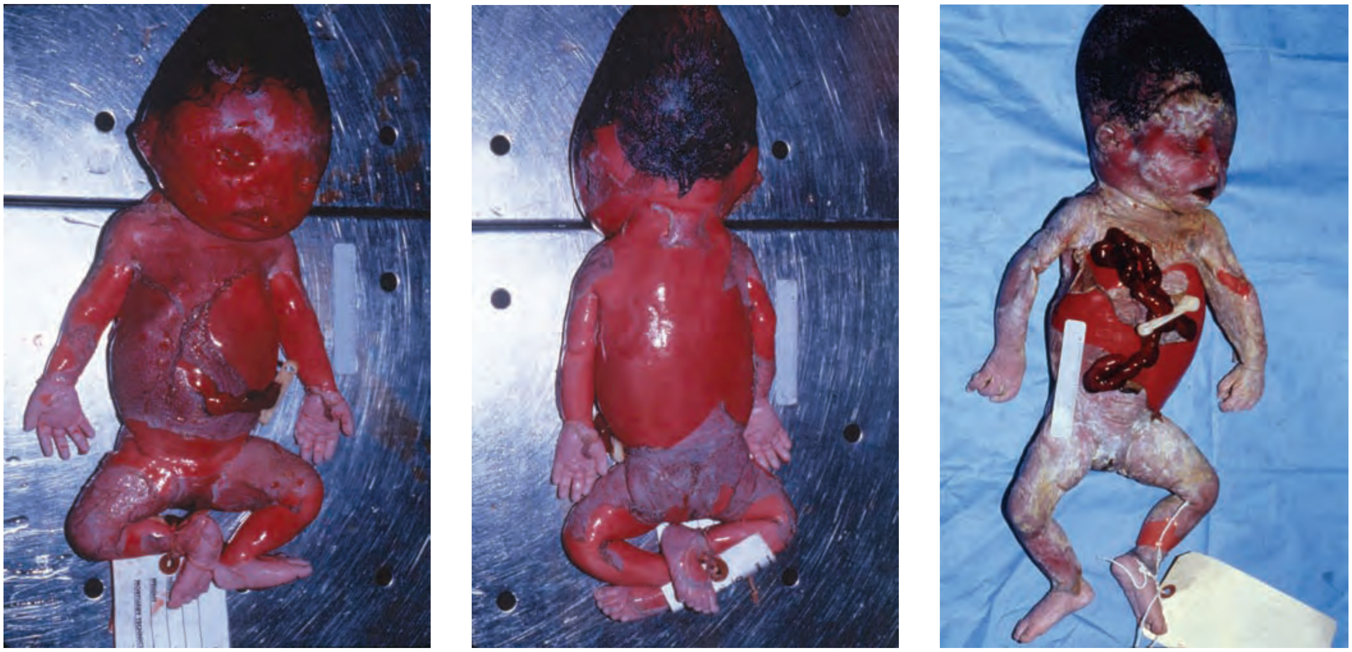
Adipocere is a decomposition process seen with immersions or damp, warm environments. The neutral fats are converted to oleic, palmitic, and stearic acids. Note the white/tan-colored adipocere, which has a waxy feel. In some areas you can see a light sheen of oil on the surface. Once formed, adipocere is resistant to further decomposition.

Skull found tucked under the bottom of a stairwell in the basement of a brownstone in Brooklyn, New York. Note the dried skin at the nose. There was resin and perforation of the cribiform plate. This was the historical remains of an Egyptian mummy skull that was most likely used in religious ceremonies. There were also commingled chicken bones, feathers, and wax.

Advanced decomposition with skeletonization from a body dumped in a wooded area approximately 1 year earlier. The last image demonstrates five toenails from inside a shoe.

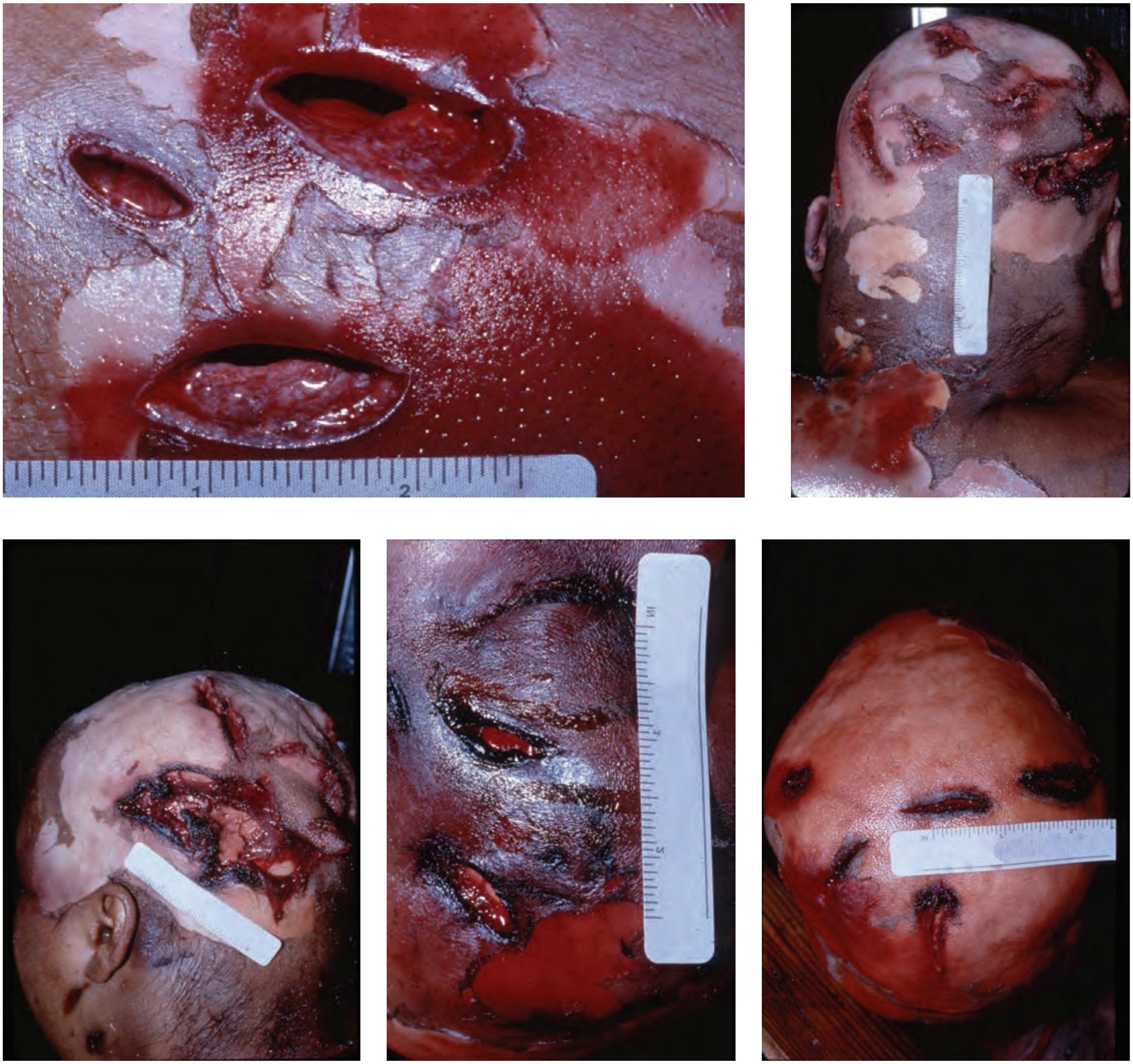
This frozen individual was murdered approximately 1 month prior to being found. His body was in a slight state of putrefaction due to preservation by the freezing winter temperature. Once the body thawed out for autopsy, putrefaction advanced at a markedly accelerated rate.

Photograph taken at time of autopsy. Note the advancing putrefaction with skin slippage. Also note the scalp laceration.

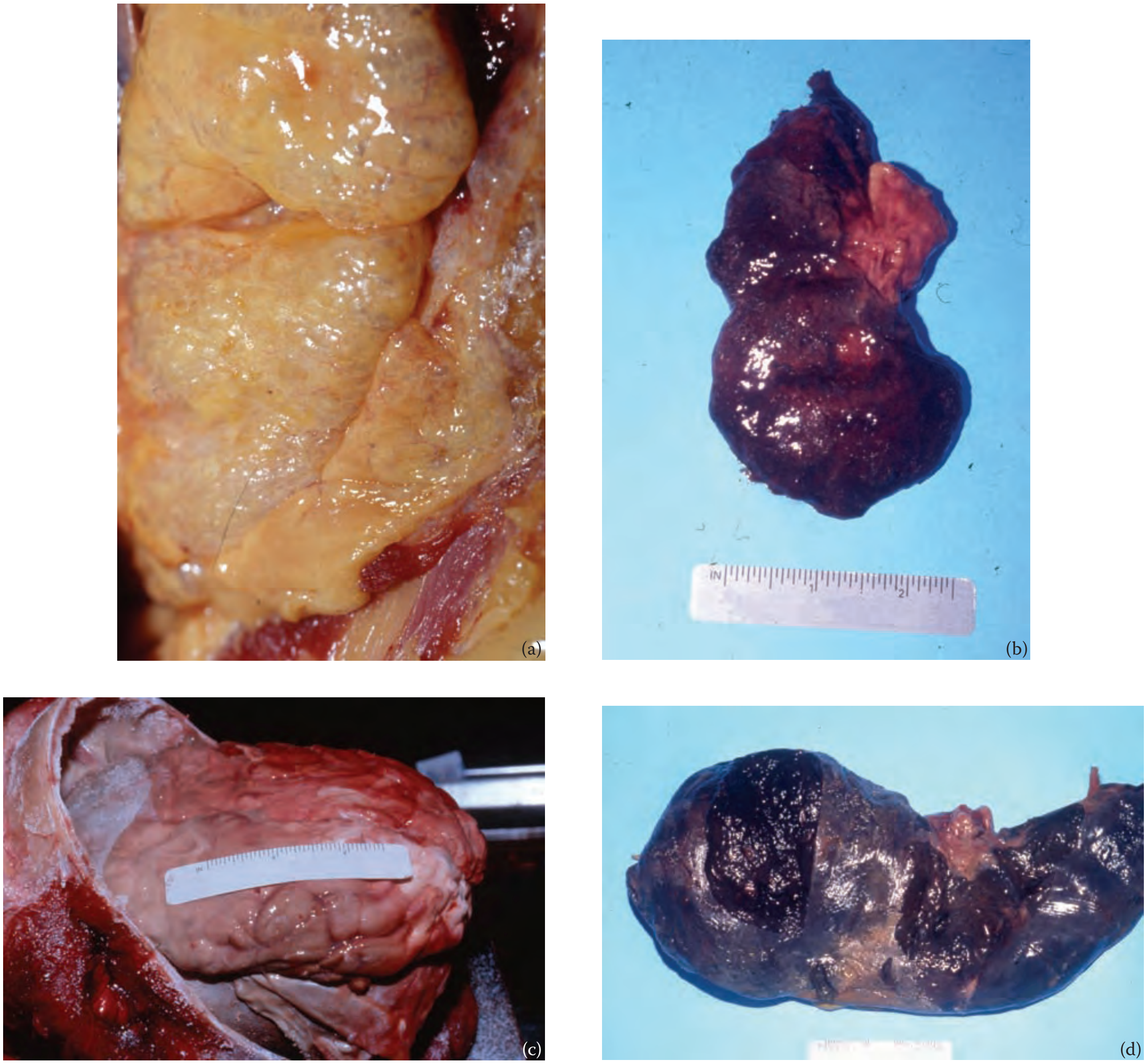


Macerated stillborns with red to brown discoloration. This type of decomposition is autolysis. The womb is normally a sterile environment and there should not be putrefaction unless there is an infection such as chorioamnionitis.

This child was discovered in the back of a garbage truck after being crushed by the trash compactor. The child was commingled with rotting food. Note the green discoloration of the skin due to putrefaction. Note the skull fracture with hemorrhage and dark discoloration due to putrefaction.

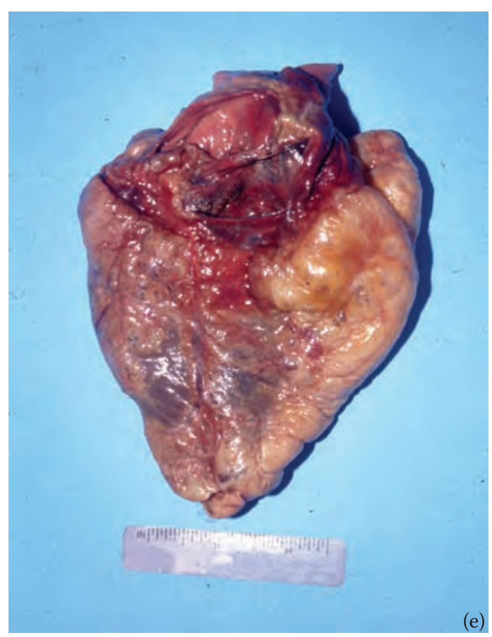


These slides show antemortem injuries that have been obscured by postmortem change. These individuals had multiple stab wounds and lacerations. Note the wound margins are dark and irregular due to drying. This may make wound interpretation challenging and at some point impossible. Also, animals and insects will often more readily feed from injured areas with exposed soft tissue and blood, further obscuring these findings.

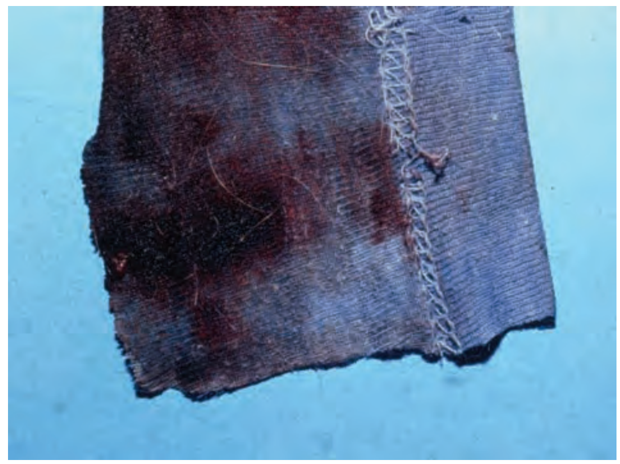


(a) (b) (c) (d)

These are examples of moderate putrefactive changes of internal organs with softening, dehydration, shrinkage, and partial loss of architecture. In (a) note the crepitant adipose tissue due to expanding cavities of gas from proliferating microorganism metabolism. Also note in (c) the gray discoloration of the brain with partial loss of architecture. As central nervous system putrefaction advances, the brain will develop into a liquid, oatmeal-like consistency with few or more recognizable structures. Figure (d) is of a putrefying liver and (e) is of a putrefying heart.



(e)



Note the fixed anterior lividity. The decedent was lying prone on a bed with a wrinkled comforter. Postmortem dog feeding occurred around the anus. Autopsy revealed the absence of large portions of intestines. Note that the torn clothing has dog hairs and blood staining. This case was first suspicious for homicidal violence. Large amounts of blood had drained from the body to the bedding, which was further spread about by the dog.

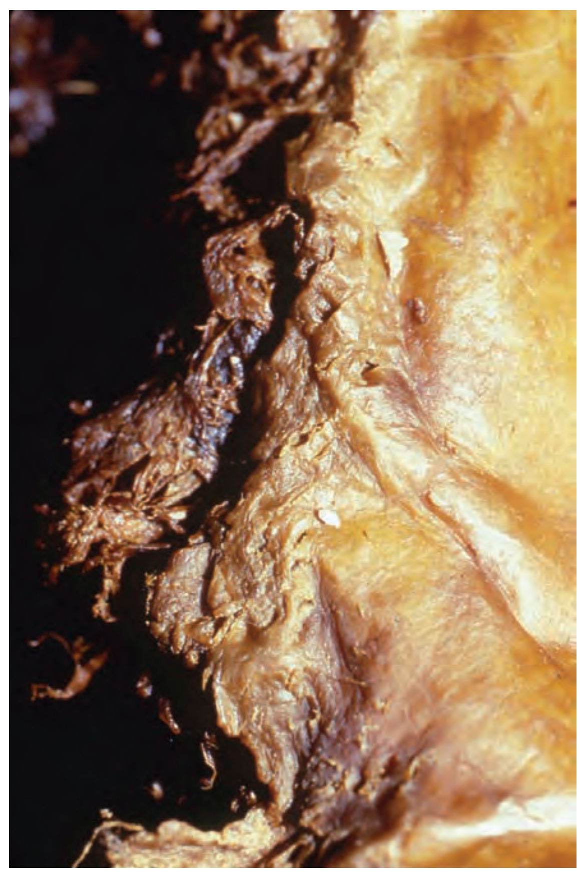
This is another example of postmortem dog feeding, which often initially involves the face, genitals, anus, and areas of wounds.

Postmortem animal feeding with dog claw abrasions.

Postmortem feeding by the decedent's dog.

Postmortem anemic superficial linear abrasions from a body retrieved from the Hudson River. This region of the body was noted to be scraping against a rocky surface just prior to retrieval from the water.

Larger carnivore activity is common in rural and suburban areas. In many cases, there may be activity from several different animals in the same environment. In this case, the damage appears to mostly be from the canine family (likely wild) with evidence of tearing of the skin and ribs. There is no obvious vital reaction, indicating the damage occurred postmortem. In these cases, one must consider whether the postmortem activity has obscured injuries sustained during life.



Advanced decomposition with mummification and animal feeding by the decedent's cats. Note the margin with claw marks and a scalloped border from feeding. One arm, a larger portion of the chest and most of the internal organs were absent.

In this case the carnivore activity was caused by domestic pigs.

Postmortem feeding from fish and crustaceans found on these bodies retrieved from the ocean.

Postmortem feeding of the ear due to mice and rats.

Note the varying stages of blowfly development. Eggs have an appearance similar to grated cheese or sawdust. When the eggs hatch, maggots develop and are shown in this picture in varying sizes as small, white, and wormlike. The dark brown pupa cases from hatching flies are also apparent. This entire cycle is accelerated in hotter temperatures.

Embalmed body. Figures (a) and (b) demonstrate sutured incisions made by funeral directors to gain access for blood removal with addition of embalming fluid. Figures (c)–(f) demonstrate multiple "trocar" (a metal rod used to infuse embalming fluid) puncture marks through the body's surface and organs. These may be misinterpreted as injuries.

Pediatric Forensic Pathology

5

MICHAEL J. CAPLAN AND CHARLES A. CATANESE

Introduction

Pediatric forensic pathology is the name for the unofficial and poorly defined subspecialty of forensic pathology that focuses on the evaluation of sudden, unexpected, unexplained or traumatic deaths in children, infants, neonates, and even fetuses. By definition, therefore, this discipline requires specialized knowledge of and familiarity with the various stages in growth and development that occur during childhood, infancy, and intrauterine life, along with the differential vulnerabilities of these periods to various insults, and finally, the unique patterns of injury that characterize these different periods.

Perhaps one of the most illustrative examples of this concept is the assessment of nonaccidental or inflicted head trauma in infants and very young children. An understanding of this type of injury would not be possible without being thoroughly acquainted with the following concepts: (1) the elasticity of the infant's scalp, such that it could potentially sustain a serious blunt impact without necessarily manifesting the impact in the form of a subgaleal contusion; (2) the thin, pliable, unilaminar quality that renders the skull less susceptible to fracture but also allows it to transmit forces to the underlying brain more readily; (3) the broad, shallow skull base in infants, which facilitates rotational movement of the brain and lowers the threshold for diffuse axonal injury; (4) the incompletely myelinated infant brain, with a gray- and white-matter water content substantially higher than that of an adult, imparting a consistency of unset gelatin and making the brain more vulnerable to shearing forces; and (5) the top-heavy calvarium and the weak, underdeveloped neck muscles that fail to effectively dampen the oscillations that are initiated when rotational movement of the brain begins. It is the interface of pediatric and forensic pathology that allows the most complete and comprehensive understanding of these concepts to occur; however, very few individuals actually have such expertise in both fields. As a result, forensic pathologists may have to rely on pediatric pathologists and neuropathologists when they are evaluating difficult, complex, or problematic cases involving deaths in the pediatric population.

Of the many scenarios encountered by the pediatric forensic pathologist, none is as enigmatic as the seemingly healthy infant who is found unresponsive after being put to sleep sometime earlier by a parent, sibling, or other caretaker, either in a crib, a child or adult bed, a couch, or some other location, often in a prone (face-down) position, and with soft bedding, pillows, and clothing. Sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS), a term that was coined in the early 1960s to remove the stigma of an unforeseeable and unpreventable death of an infant from that baby's parents, has now come full circle and runs the risk of being used as a "wastebasket" term for any infant death that is not obviously explainable by a disease or injury. The time-honored external and internal autopsy findings of froth (pulmonary edema) at the nares, intrathoracic (thymic, epicardial, or visceral pleural) petechiae, moderately congested organs, and an empty urinary bladder, while characteristic, are in no way specific for or pathognomonic of SIDS, and have been observed in a wide variety of other types of deaths. Forensic pathologists and pediatricians are just beginning to gain some appreciation of the myriad of factors involved in achieving respiratory control, arousal, and autoresuscitation.

Even in this modern age of molecular medicine, SIDS remains largely an unexplored entity. Thus, the forensic pathologist probably makes the greatest contribution in this area by identifying which deaths do not lie within the spectrum of SIDS. To do this effectively demands a carefully conducted medicolegal death investigation, a meticulously performed autopsy, and the use of ancillary studies, including postmortem toxicology, microbiology, chemistry, radiography, and metabolic screening. Only after all of these studies have been completed and integrated with the autopsy, scene, and anamnestic findings can the pathologist make an opinion about the cause and manner of death.

Other situations necessitating specific pediatric forensic expertise include the assessment of sudden unexplained deaths in otherwise healthy children, either during sleep or while awake, at rest or following exertion; sudden deaths in infants or children who have undergone operations for congenital heart disease; unexpected or unexplained deaths during or following diagnostic or therapeutic procedures; complex child abuse cases involving a multiplicity of injuries separated over space and time; deaths from genetic diseases that might mimic child abuse, such as osteogenesis imperfecta; and

unexplained deaths following apparent minor trauma. In all of these scenarios, knowledge of the specific disease processes or related therapies is required in order to achieve the most complete understanding of the circumstances that culminated in the infant's or child's death. Other types of deaths affecting infants and children that are similar to those involving adults are typically fatal injuries sustained in motor vehicle crashes, either as occupants or pedestrians, although the considerable disparity in height, weight, and center of gravity often produces patterns of injury in infants and children that are distinctly different from those in adults.

Fatal child abuse presents primarily in two forms: (1) as the culmination of a repetitive pattern of inflicted injury, creating wounds of varying ages, in different parts of the body (what has been coined "the battered child syndrome"); and (2) as an impulse act by a caretaker who, following an act of urinating, defecating, or vomiting by the infant or child, lacks the self-control to prevent anger and frustration from translating into physical violence. The pediatric forensic pathologist must know what studies are necessary to perform in order to document not only what did happen, but to exclude all of the other reasonable possibilities that undoubtedly will be introduced by the defense in the adjudication of the case.

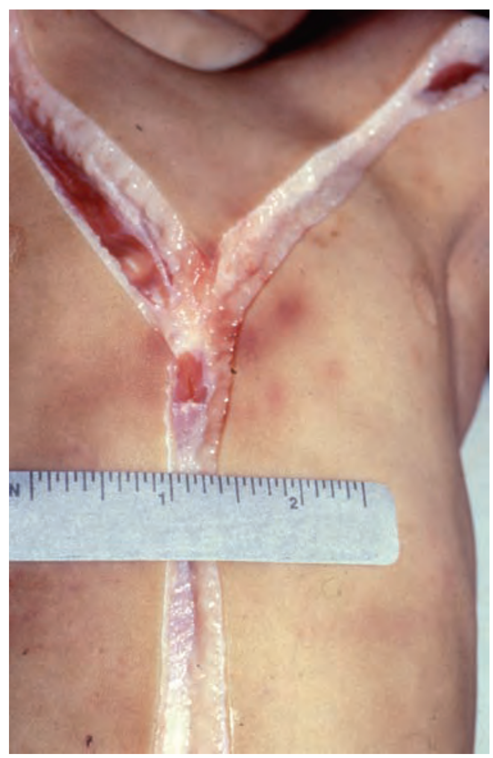
In some ways, the pediatric forensic pathologist often walks a diagnostic tightrope—deciding between SIDS and smothering, between inflicted closed-head injury and spontaneous intracranial hemorrhage, or between preeclampsia and maternal blunt trauma precipitating placental abruption. Toward that end, it is equally important to be aware of the limitations of a particular case and not offer opinions beyond what the circumstances and pathologic evidence allow. In some situations, "undetermined," while unsatisfying, is at the same time the fairest and most reasonable ruling until additional information is obtained that allows a more definitive ruling.

This child was brought to the emergency room and vigorously resuscitated. Note the marks left on the face as a result of endotracheal intubation and application of tape. It is important to document such findings and not confuse them with possible signs of child abuse, such as faint abrasions or contusions due to smothering. It is very important for clinicians to leave all tubes in place for postmortem (autopsy) confirmation of their placement.

Posterior lividity, which may be mistaken for injuries such as contusions related to child abuse.

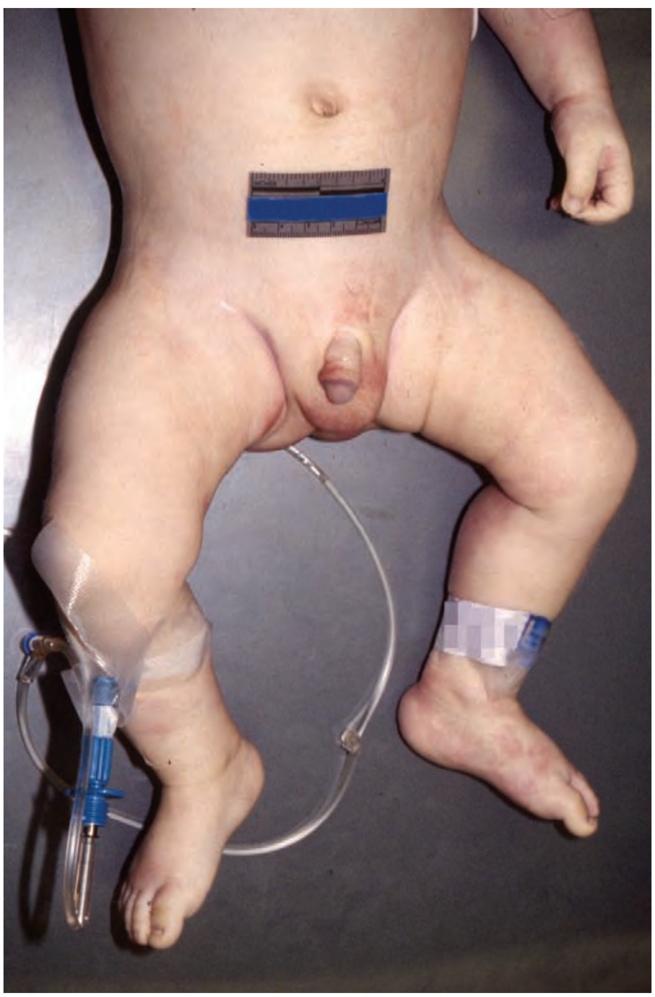
Diaper rash. Note the red cutaneous eruptions. These indicate some degree of neglect.

Child abuse case with resuscitative efforts and perimortem sternal contusions due to chest compressions. Note other small contusions at the lateral aspect of the upper abdomen and lower chest. These were inflicted while the child was grabbed and flung about violently during the assault.



The same case showing perimortem contusions to the middle aspect of the chest due to resuscitation. Note the small amounts of subcutaneous hemorrhage overlying the sternum. Note the other segment of the "Y"-shaped incision is devoid of hemorrhage.

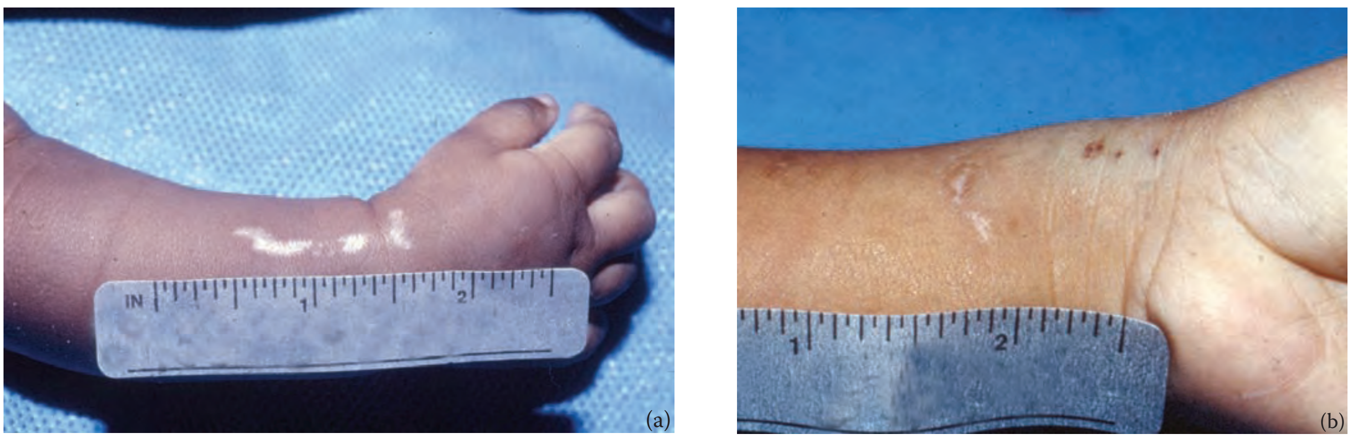
This case involved an infant who was found unresponsive in her crib. The case was referred to the medical examiner's office for autopsy. However, as the external examination was about to begin, this sutured midline incision was encountered. Further inquires revealed that the emergency department physician had authorized postmortem procurement of the infant's heart for heart valves. When this was discovered, the organ procurement agency was contacted, and released the heart to the medical examiner's office. The heart was found to have an anomalous origin of the left coronary artery from the right sinus of Valsalva, a rare yet documented cause of sudden death in both adults and infants. The issue of organ procurement remains a controversial and at times problematic one for the forensic pathologist. Consistently reliable methods for evaluating the coronary ostia have not been established in many tissue procurement agencies for the retrieval of hearts.



View of lower trunk, external genitalia, and lower extremities depicting a right-sided intraosseous catheter. This is a common mode of resuscitation in infants with extremely small, often collapsed blood vessels.

Hemorrhage with swelling of the thigh due to a misplaced femoral line.

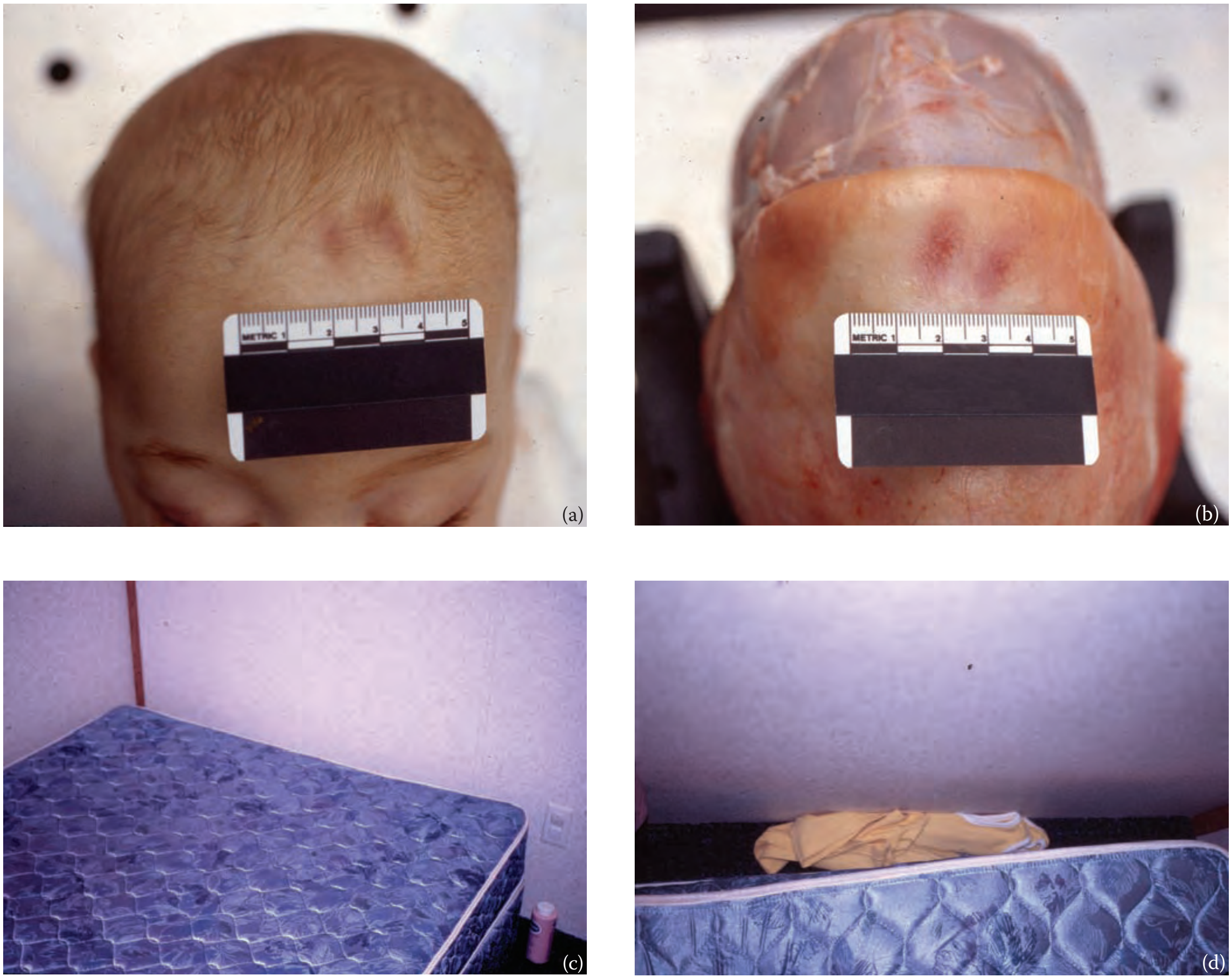
Healing infected tracheotomy incision.



(a) (b)

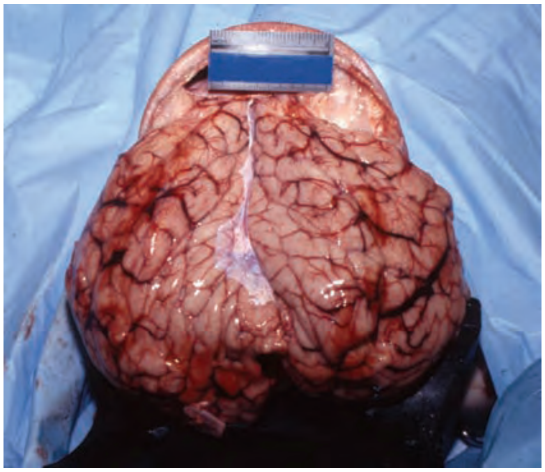
Scars to each wrist due to past therapy. Note image (b) has fresh needle marks as well. Therapeutic procedures should not be mistaken for injuries.

Small tear of the upper frenulum due to vigorous resuscitative efforts by an untrained person. Note the small bruise to the left side of the face, which had been caused by a fall several days earlier. The first phase of resuscitation was captured on a department store video camera when this child became lifeless following a seizure.

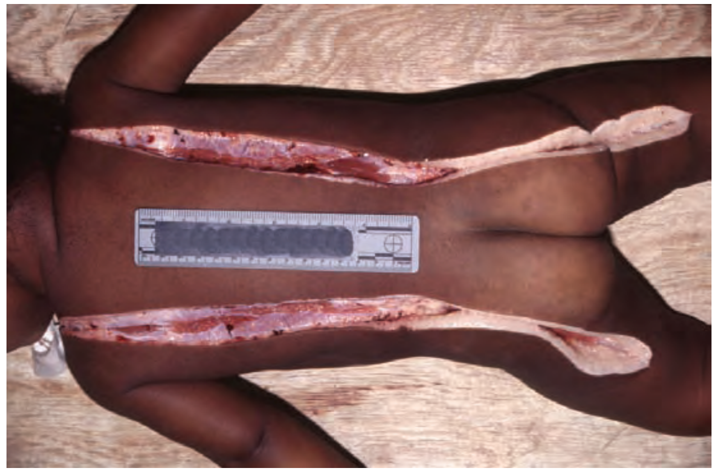


This case involved an infant who suffered an asphyxial death. He was found with his head compressed (wedged) between an adult bed and a wall. He was pulseless, apneic, and asystolic, and despite resuscitative efforts could not be revived; (b) depicts the frontal and temporal regions of the scalp with two ill-defined contusions within the frontal subgaleal region; (c) shows the relationship between the mattress and the wall. The mattress was separated from the wall by at least several inches, allowing the infant to fall into this space and become compressed; (d) is a view looking toward the floor, where the infant was found lying wedged between the wall and the mattress.

This child was brought to the Emergency Department (ED) by parents who spoke a foreign language. The child was reported to be found dead in a crib. The ED physicians believed that this death could be a result of SIDS but there was no initial scene investigation. Note the posterior patchy red lividity. There is also a faint Mongolian-type birthmark within the left gluteal region. Further scene investigation by the Medical Examiner's office and police department revealed that the child had actually slid between the crib railing and mattress, suffering an asphyxial death. There were no marks on the child's body at autopsy. The mattress was from another crib and was slightly smaller, allowing the child to slide between the railing and mattress. Note the doll demonstrating how the child was found at the scene.

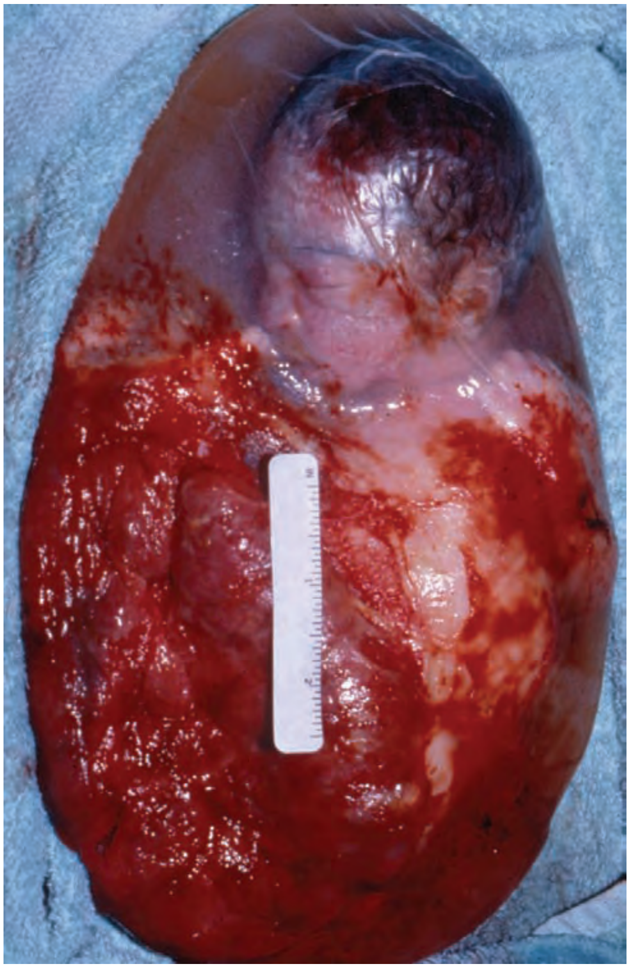


This image demonstrates brain swelling with flattening of gyri and obliteration of sulci due to hypoxic-ischemic brain injury. This 7-month-old female infant was found unresponsive in a car seat that fell off of an adult bed, with her chin tightly opposed to her chest, satisfying the criteria for positional asphyxia. She survived for several days and was ultimately declared brain dead. No other injuries were identified upon autopsy examination.

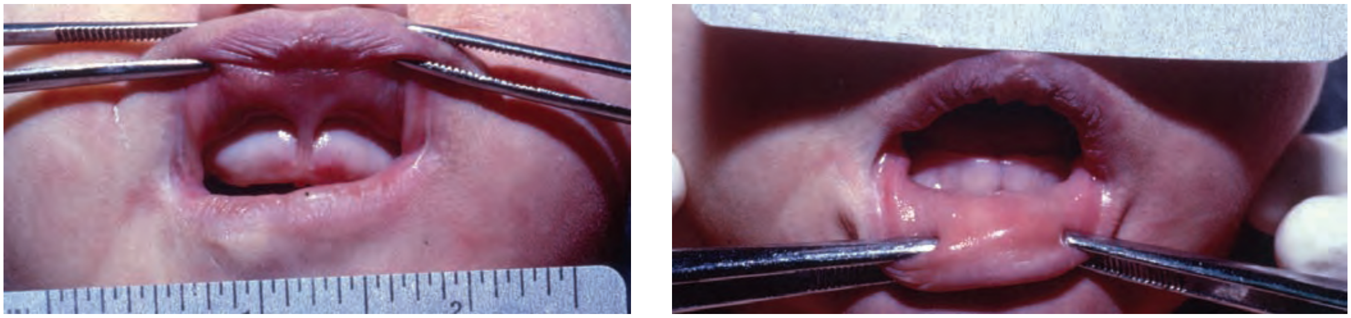


This 9-month-old child with a history of asthma was found unresponsive in her crib. Autopsy demonstrated multiple mucous plugs within the medium-sized airways, along with well-defined pathologic features of chronic asthma. No injuries were found. Death was certified as complications of bronchial asthma. Although unusual in a child this young, asthma can indeed be fatal. These bilateral vertical incisions made at the time of autopsy failed to demonstrate contusions.

This was the body of a completely healthy female infant. Her mother, who had left her unattended for an unknown period of time with her 18-month-old brother, found her submerged in a bathtub. The mother reportedly left them both in the tub without water and claimed the brother had to have turned on the faucets. When police attempted to reconstruct the scene, the older brother was unable to turn the faucets. Although the cause of death in this case was certified as drowning and the manner homicide, the mother was released on probation.



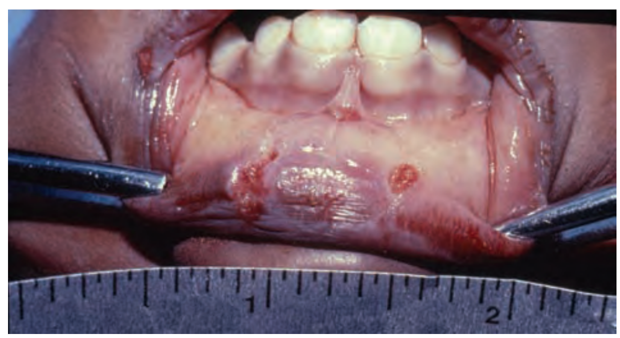
This normally developed neonate was delivered with the placenta enclosed in an intact amniotic sac. The baby died of asphyxia and the manner of death was certified as natural. The child was delivered at home and the young mother did not have medical knowledge to know that the membranes had to be immediately opened following delivery. She noted the child to be moving within this placental unit.

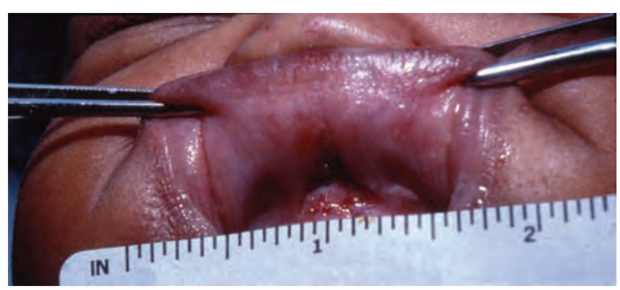


It is important to examine the frenulum and mouth region internally and externally in infants to rule out possible findings associated with smothering. Both of these cases show no injuries.

Healed frenulum laceration. This individual fell as a small child and accidentally struck her face on a kitchen cabinet.

Intact frenulum with postmortem drying of the lips. This does not indicate child abuse.

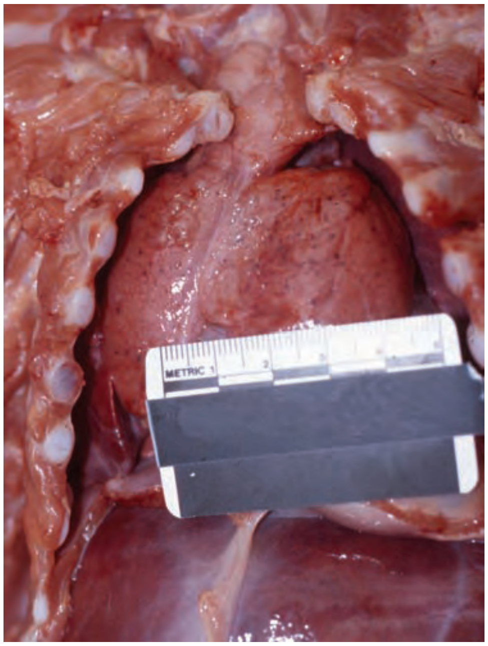




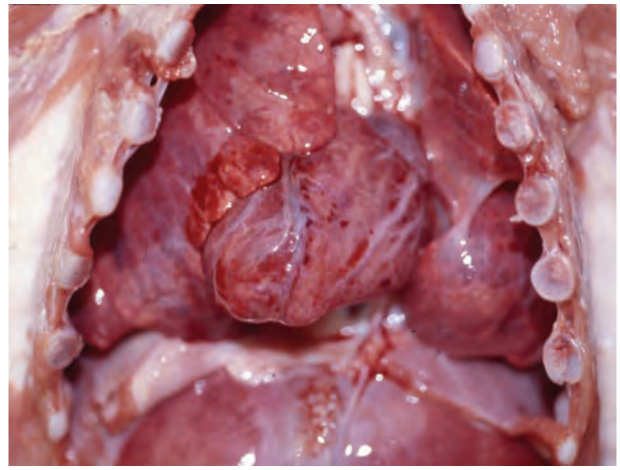
These children have varying degrees of abrasions to their face with trauma to the lips and torn frenula. All are cases of homicidal smothering. It is important to also realize that a homicidal smothering may occur without leaving marks of any kind.

These images demonstrate a case involving a several-month-old infant who was found unresponsive in her crib. She had no known previous illnesses. If possible, it is always important to photograph infants in their original clothing, which allows for more accurate reconstruction of the terminal events (i.e., stains of blood-tinged fluid.) View (a) demonstrates clear fluid emanating from the left nostril with a faintly frothy quality, probably indicative of pulmonary edema, which is a common finding in victims of SIDS, particularly when attempts are made to resuscitate. The elastic nature of infants' lungs and the vigorous resuscitation efforts collectively contribute to the formation of this edema fluid, which is often blood-tinged due to rupture of small capillaries. Oftentimes, the blood-tinged fluid is misinterpreted by police personnel as being suspicious of foul play. It is important for pathologists and emergency medical services (EMS) personnel to educate people with nonmedical backgrounds regarding the distinction between blood-tinged edema fluid and actual clotted blood.

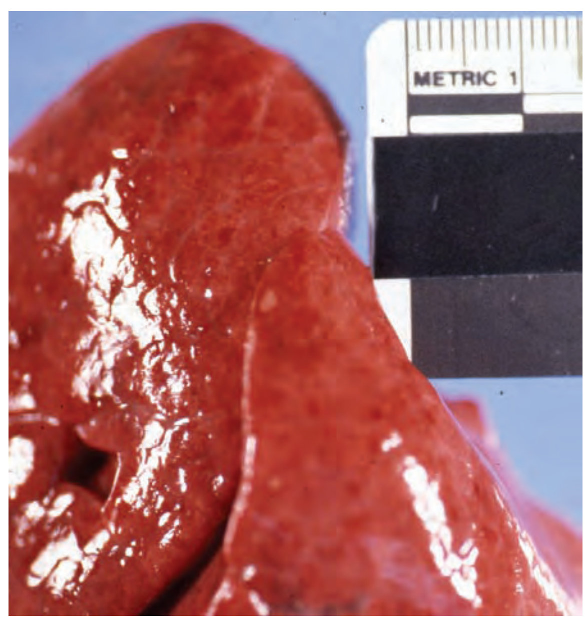
This case involved sudden death in an otherwise healthy infant. Notice the confluent burns and abrasions on his left anterior chest wall, extending to the midline (a). These marks are indicative of defibrillation attempts from resuscitation. Additional therapeutic interventions can be seen, including an endotracheal tube, along with electrocardiogram (ECG) electro pads. Notice also the blotchy red discoloration of the forehead and face (left side slightly greater than right). While one might be tempted to conclude that this is livor mortis, it is important to realize that vigorous resuscitative efforts may also alter the patterns of vascular congestion; in the same case, (b) demonstrates an intact upper frenulum with dried blood-tinged secretion around the left side of the mouth and no trauma.



This infant was found unresponsive in his crib and could not be resuscitated. Maternal history was significant only for group B streptococcal infection. This picture depicts prominent petechiae on the anterior capsular surface of the thymus. Petechiae involving the thymic, visceral pleural, and epicardial surfaces are extremely common findings in sudden infant deaths, including deaths that have been ascribed to SIDS (up to ~85 % of SIDS fatalities). The precise mechanism underlying the formation of petechiae remains elusive, but is believed to be related to the negative pressure created by terminal gasping in infants. However, it is well known that these petechiae are not in any way specific or pathognomonic for SIDS and may be found in deaths due to many other causes, including definable natural disease conditions, accidental injuries, and inflicted injuries (homicides). In this case, the petechiae, which appear as pinpoint hemorrhages, are particularly striking.

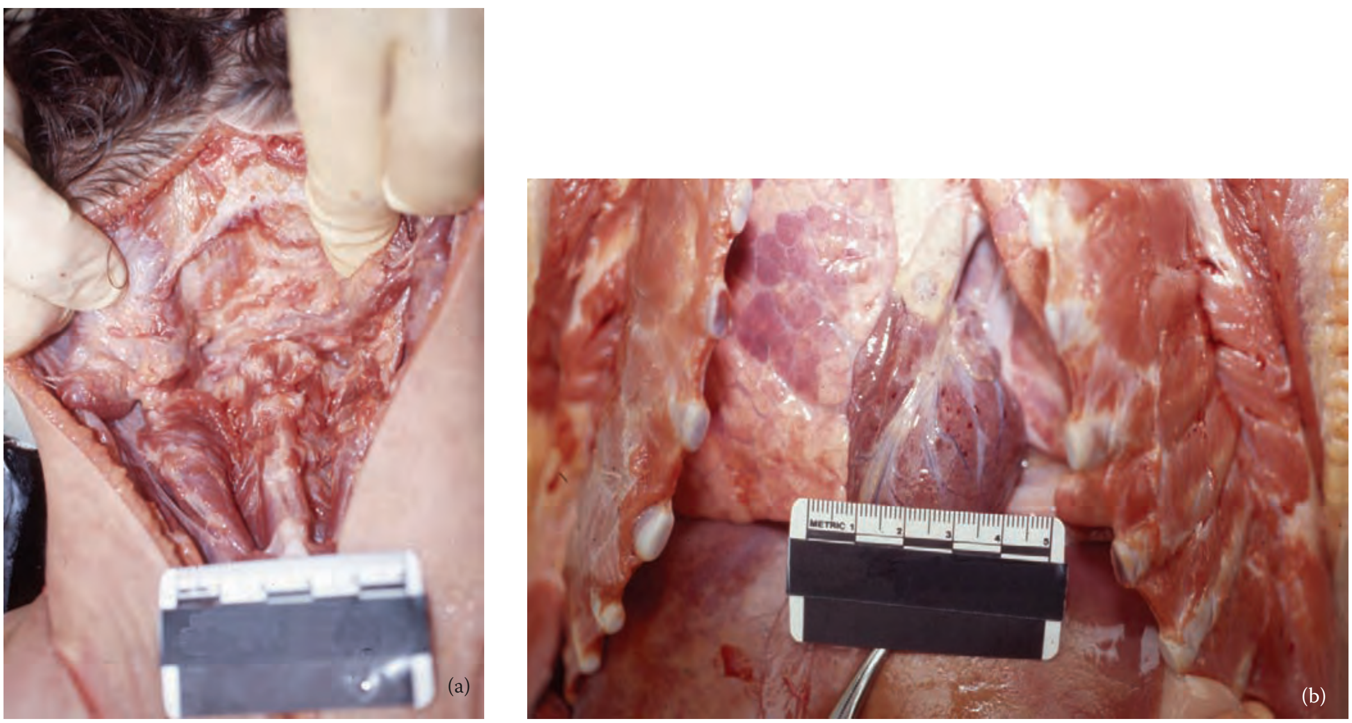


This is a view of the thoracic contents of an infant who was found unresponsive while sharing a bed with his mother while in a supine position. She called 911 and paramedics arrived to find him apneic and pulseless. He could not be resuscitated. Pertinent history included prematurity, maternal group B streptococcal infection, and a recent upper respiratory infection. The only significant findings at autopsy were a moderately cellular mononuclear leptomeningeal exudate consistent with a viral meningoencephalitis. However, there was no significant brain swelling. This fatality occurred in the early to mid-1990s, and the death was ascribed to SIDS. If a similar case were encountered today, bedsharing in an adult bed would probably be listed as a risk factor in part two of the cause of death statement and the manner of death would be undetermined. This picture depicts prominent petechiae on the anterior epicardial surface of the heart.



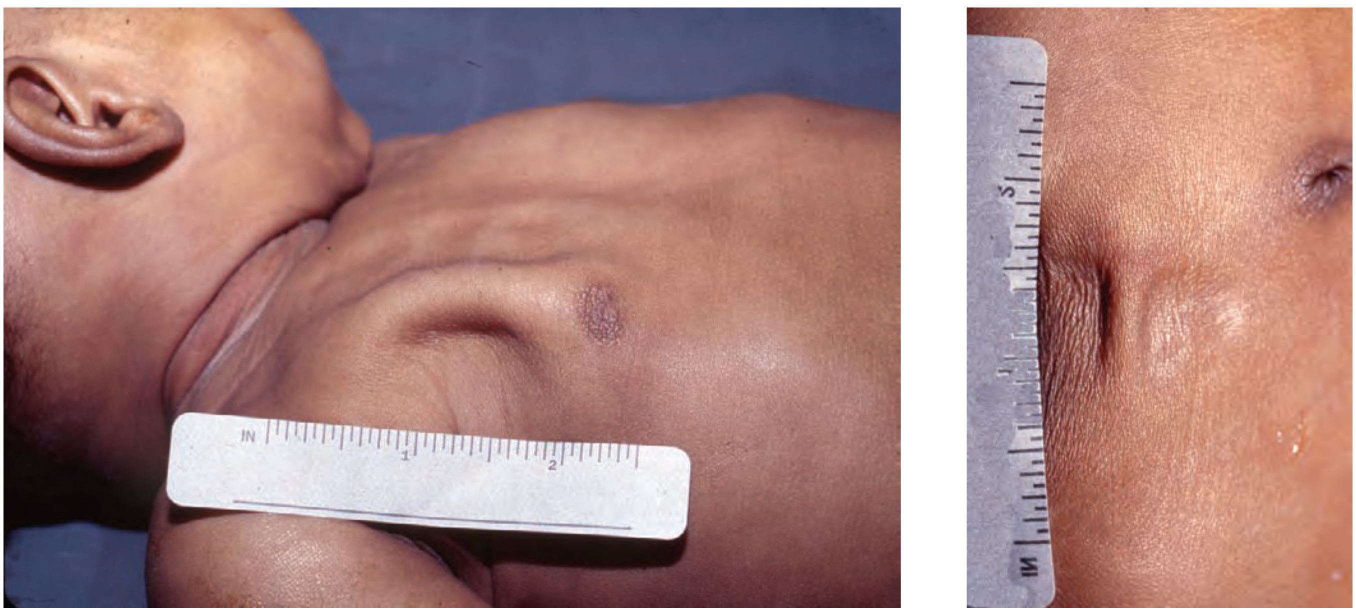
This case involved an infant who was born prematurely at 35 weeks gestation and was found prone in a bassinet with his face between a "covered" adult-sized pillow and the corner of the bassinet. The findings of this case were not sufficient to render a diagnosis of mechanical asphyxia, but asphyxia was of sufficient concern to denote the cause of death as sudden unexplained death in infancy and the manner undetermined. This picture shows sparse, inconspicuous visceral pleural and thymic petechiae, which were the only gross findings at autopsy.

View of the mediastinal surface of the left lung (a) demonstrates confluent subpleural hemorrhages within the lower lobe, likely an artifact of vigorous cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR). Note the way the hemorrhages conform to anatomic boundaries, similar to what is observed in aspiration of blood; (b) demonstrates the costal surface of the lung, with blotchy subpleural hemorrhages, some slightly larger than petechiae. Note also the confluent congestion within the posterior aspects of the lung, most likely a result of postmortem hypostasis, or settling of blood due to gravity.

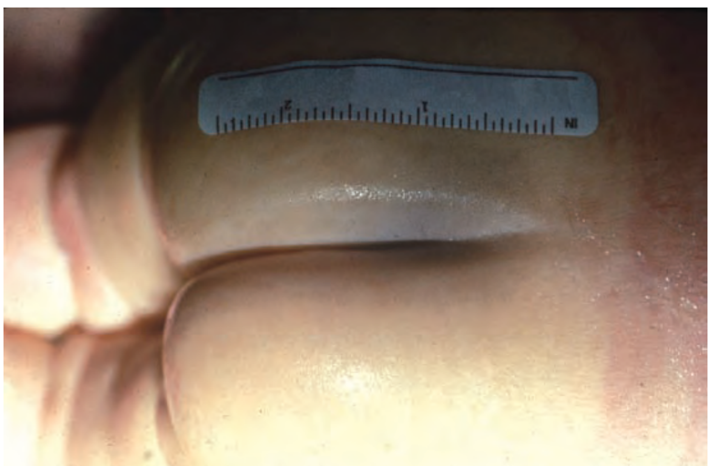


This was a case involving the enigmatic death of a 2-year-old child who was previously completely healthy. She had finished a course of amoxicillin for otitis media 3 days prior to her death. On the day before her death, she apparently fell off a "teeter-totter" and struck her head on the ground, which was a muddy, grassy surface, but she never lost consciousness and experienced no mental status changes. She could not be aroused from an afternoon nap and could not be resuscitated by pediatric life support protocol. The gross autopsy findings were unrevealing, including absence of injuries of scalp, skull, and brain. The only finding in addition to thymic, epicardial, and visceral pleural petechiae (b) was fibromuscular hyperplasia of the atrioventricular (AV) nodal artery, which was discovered by an expert cardiac pathologist who consulted on the case. This picture depicts a posterior neck dissection (a), demonstrating soft tissues and skeletal muscles that are entirely free of injury. In this case, anterior neck dissection was negative for injuries as well; (b) depicts prominent epicardial petechiae on the anterior surface of the heart. This case illustrates that the findings of intrathoracic petechiae are not confined to infants but can also be seen in young children.

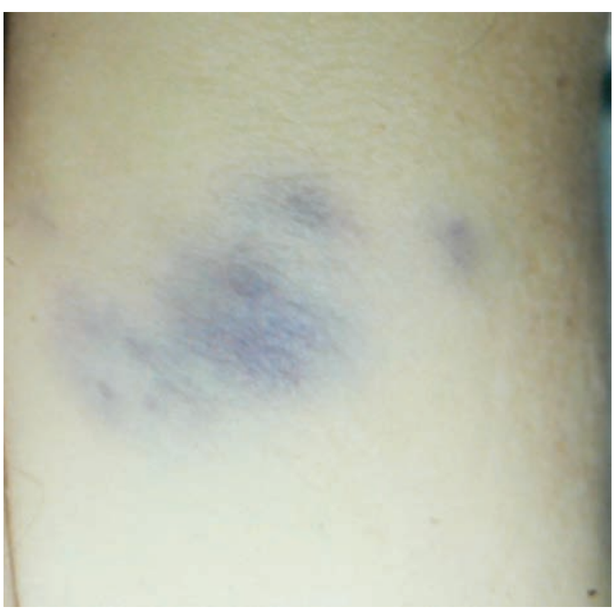
This child died of complications of dehydration following a prolonged viral gastroenteritis. Note the sunken eyes.



Poor skin elasticity (turgor) is demonstrated in these infants who were refrigerated in the morgue overnight. These infants were shown not to be dehydrated by vitreous analyte determination and antemortem hospital chemistry testing. The poor skin elasticity in these cases is due to the congealing of fat as a result of postmortem refrigeration.

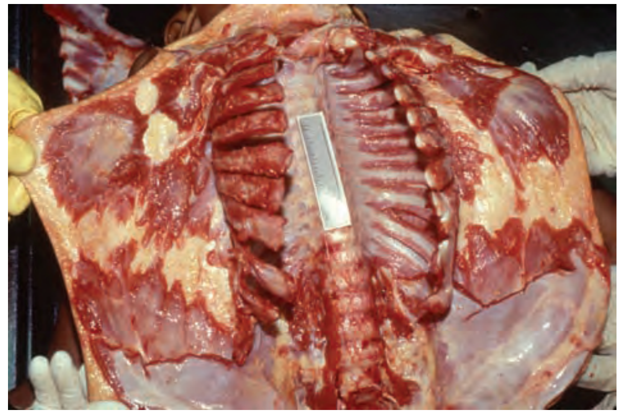


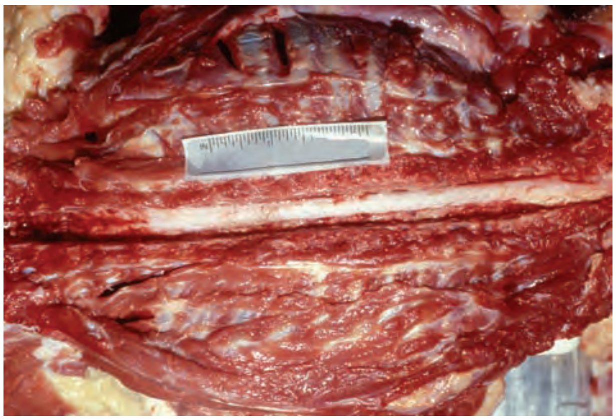
Mongolian spot. This is a birthmark and is sometimes mistaken for a contusion. During the time of autopsy it is easy to differentiate between the two by making an incision and documenting the presence or absence of underlying hemorrhage. The author has had at least one case where a contusion was demonstrated subjacent to a Mongolian spot.

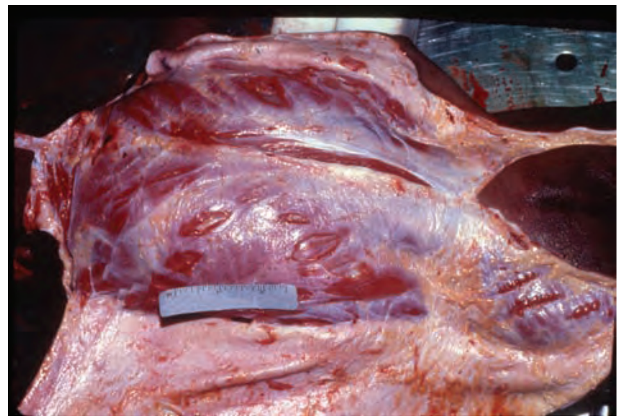


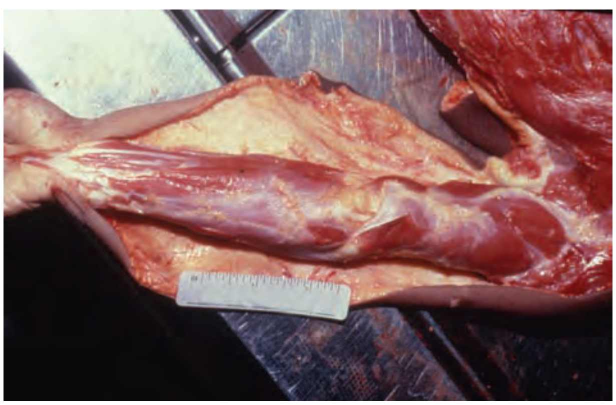
Recent contusion.

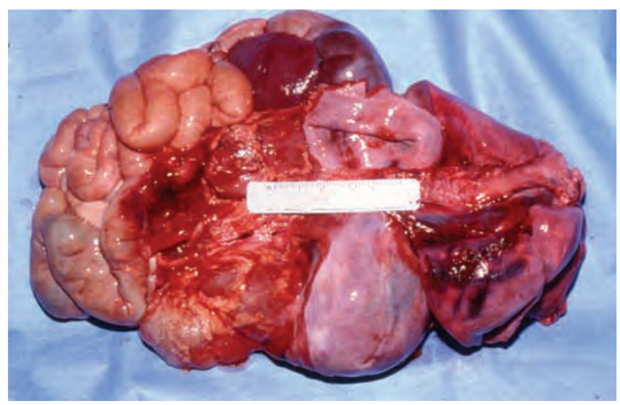
Old contusion.





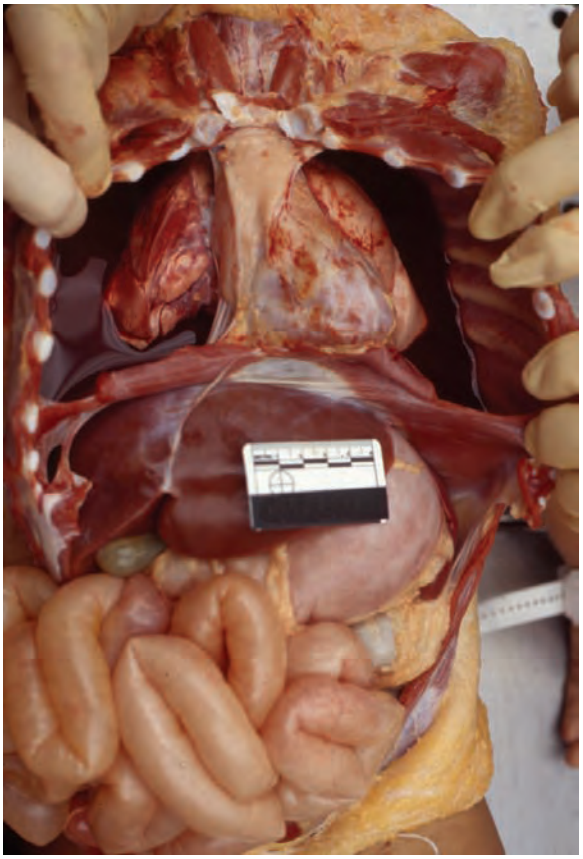




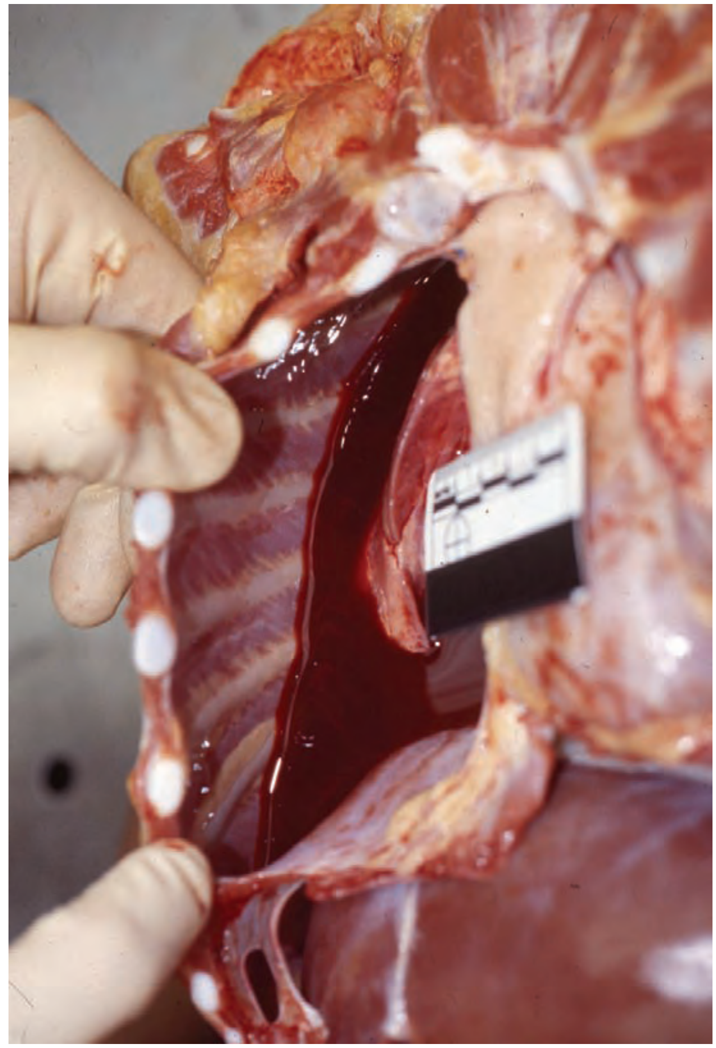


While performing autopsies on suspected child abuse cases it is important to be very thorough and it is recommended to incise the extremities and back to further document deep contusions, particularly in darker-skinned children. When examining the rib cage it is important to strip the pleural surface, separate each rib and evaluate each one separately. It is also good practice to do a posterior neck and back dissection while examining each rib as well.

This figure demonstrates how the body is sutured prior to funeral home release.



This 2-year-old child was brought to the ED by his mother's boyfriend after he was found unresponsive. The only observed external injury was a small faint contusion to the child's forehead. Autopsy revealed a fracture of the lumbar spine with a transected descending thoracic aorta and an old healed fractured clavicle. This picture demonstrates bilateral hemothoraces.



Right hemothorax due to aortic transection.

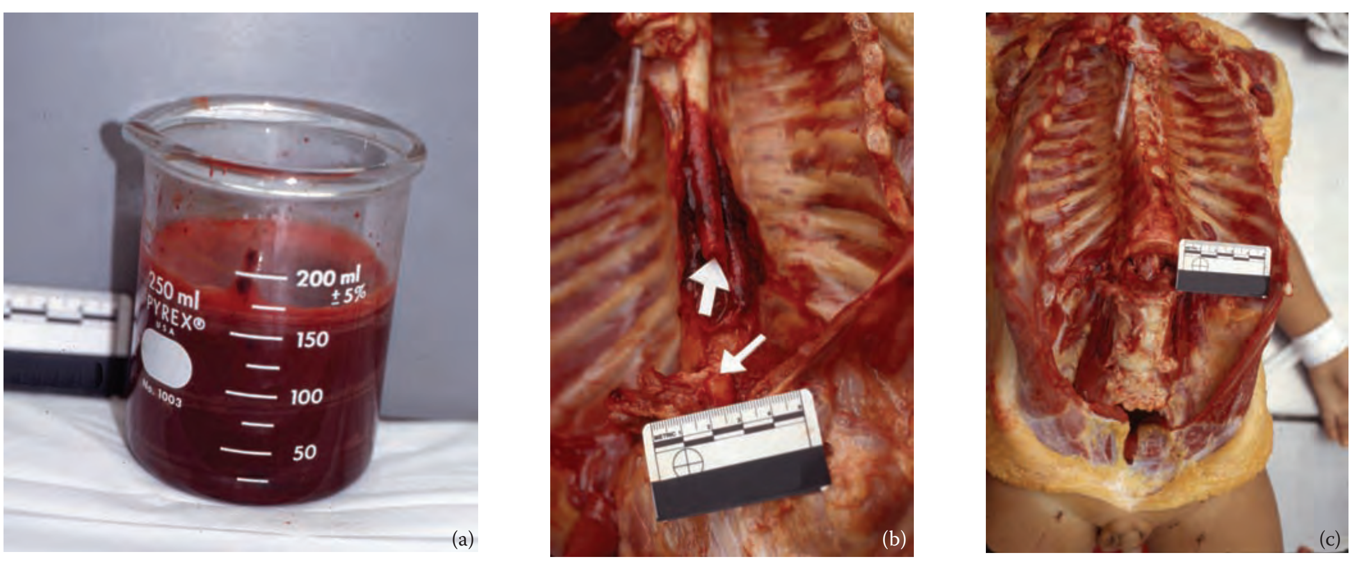
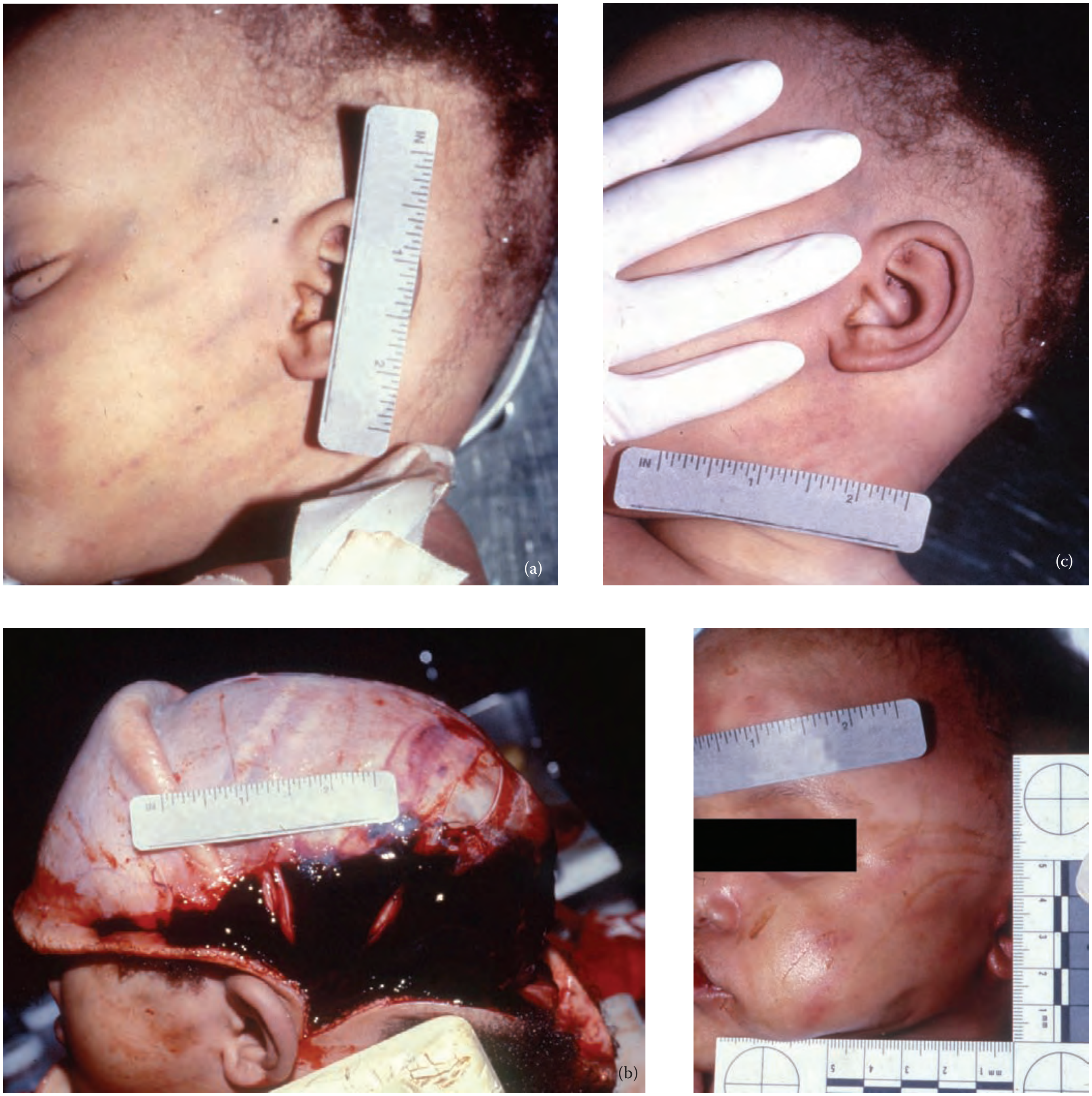
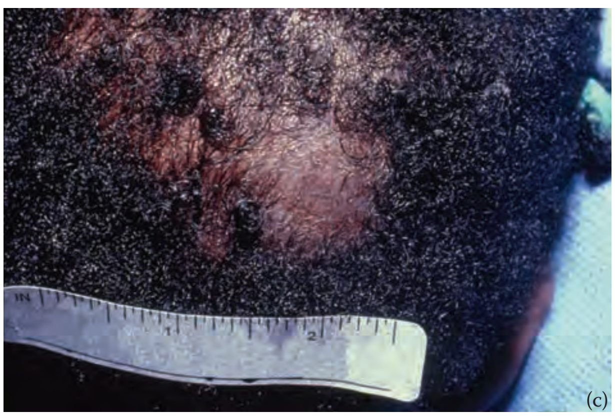


Image (a) demonstrates the volume of blood collected from the bilateral hemothoraces (approximately 165 mL in total). In a case such as this, the mechanisms of death are probably multifactorial, including not only blood loss but also a component of spinal cord or sympathetic nervous system dysfunction; (b) depicts transected free ends of lacerated descending thoracic aorta, marked with arrows; (c) is a panoramic view of lumbar fracture, which resembles a "hinge" at L1-L2.



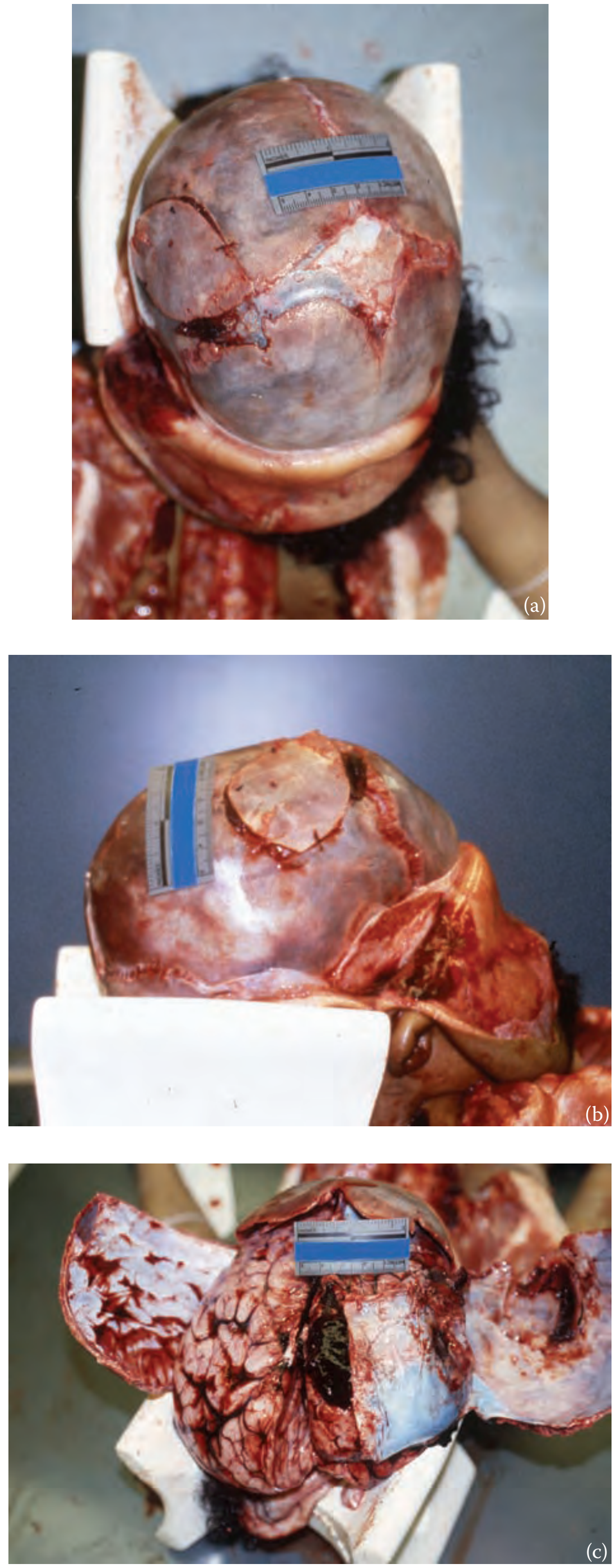
This child died from multiple blunt force injuries. (a) Note the hand pattern with parallel contusions across the child's face. The contusions are more obvious when depicted following the intermastoid incision and scalp reflection (b). Note the excessive dark red blood clot at the inferior portion of the side of the head. Also note that this is not as visible when viewed from the external skin surface. Deep contusions may be difficult to see when viewed only from the external surface of the body; (c) demonstrates the same child approximately 2 days after autopsy. Note that the characteristics of the facial bruises have changed slightly due to the extended postmortem interval.



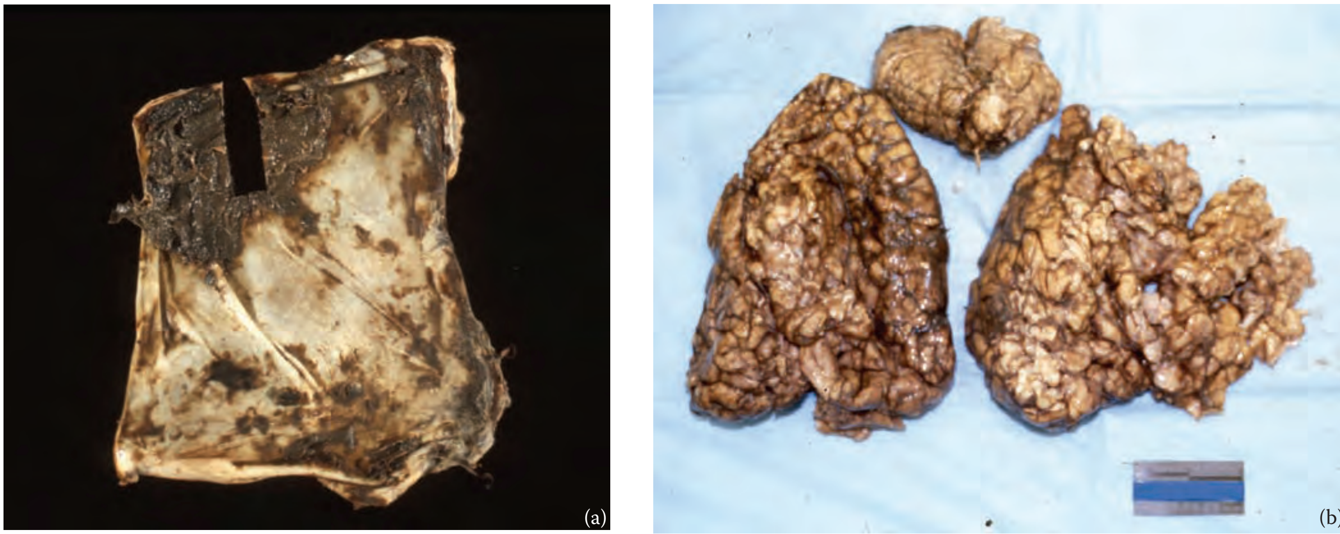
This child sustained multiple blunt force injuries to his head, back, and extremities (a–b). The child's hair was traumatically pulled from his scalp (c). Note the multiple angulated red to brown abraded contusions on the child's back (d), consistent with a belt buckle strike. Also note, following incision of the back and extremities during autopsy (e), the large degree of red bruising within the subcutaneous soft tissues of the back. Note the pale yellow subcutaneous tissue within the posterior compartments of the lower extremities, which are atraumatic and without hemorrhage.

Note the multiple therapeutic interventions documented at autopsy. This documentation is important to help prevent misinterpretation of therapeutic intervention as injuries.

This case demonstrates a sutured right-sided scalp incision as part of a craniotomy for evacuation of a right-sided subdural hematoma.

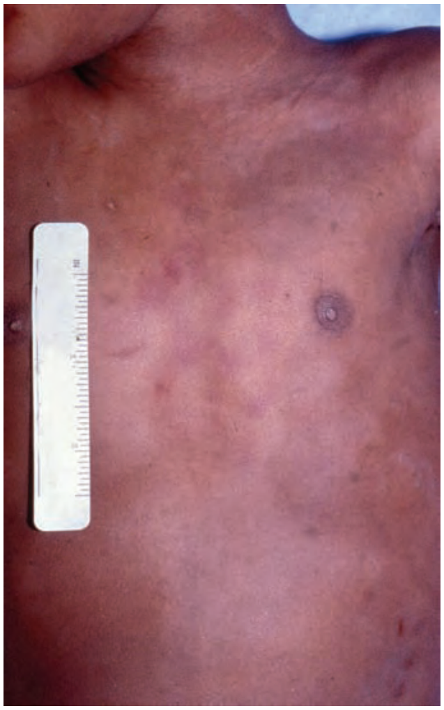


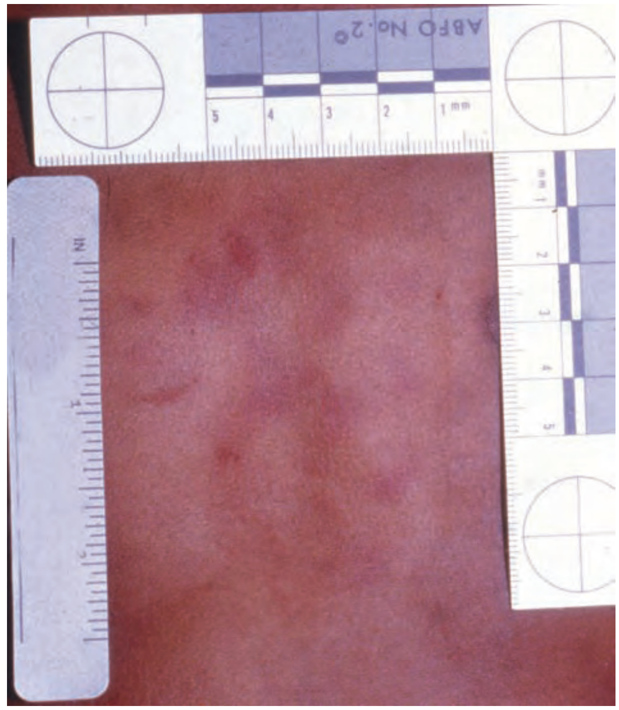
Superior view of the calvarium (a) illustrating marked widening of the coronal suture (diastasis) due to brain swelling, along with a right-sided craniotomy window; (b) right side of face and skull, including craniotomy window. Marked diastasis of the coronal suture is also seen; (c) residual right-sided subdural hemorrhage and marked brain swelling, characterized by complete flattening of gyri and effacement of sulci on the cerebral convexity of the left cerebral hemisphere. The inner surface of the left vertex dural leaf is blood-stained.



Formaldehyde-fixed portion of dura mater from an approximately 4-month-old infant with a history of tetralogy of Fallot who was found unresponsive by his mother's boyfriend. The boyfriend claimed that he had fallen approximately 3 feet from a couch onto a carpeted floor. Such explanations are often incompatible with the spectrum of injuries observed at autopsy. In this case, the adherent, thin-layered, clotted subdural blood indicates a duration of approximately 3–4 days following the injury, which correlates with the survival period of this infant after being found unresponsive. (b) Illustrates the fixed, markedly friable, fragmented brain attributable to marked hypoxic-ischemic injury, and is therefore a nonspecific finding, as it can be seen within the setting of hypoxic-ischemic brain injury of any cause.

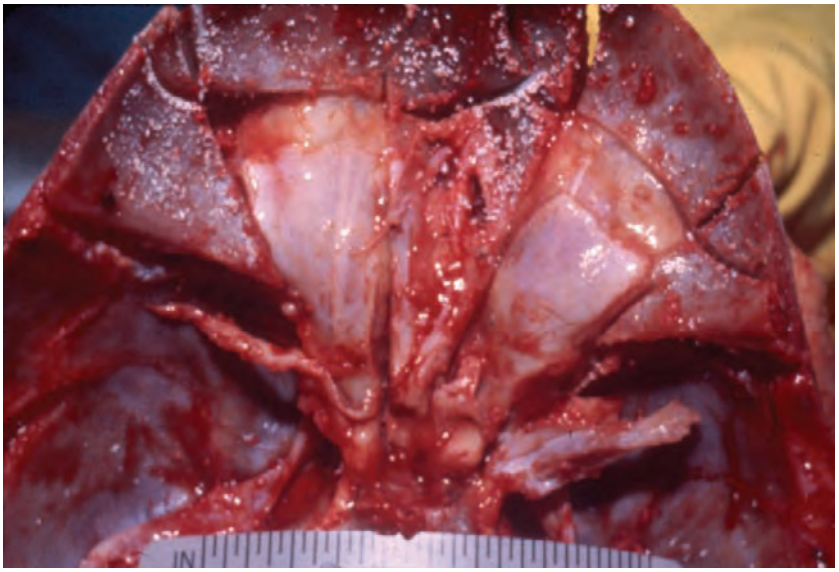
Cross-section of the optic nerve in an infant found to have unilateral subdural hematoma and brain swelling, who underwent evacuation of the subdural hematoma. The infant never regained consciousness and was declared brain dead approximately 3 days following the surgery. Optic nerve sheath hemorrhage is correlated with retinal hemorrhages, although it is not specific for inflicted injury , and may be seen in conditions of sepsis, hemorrhagic diathesis, and other rare natural conditions.



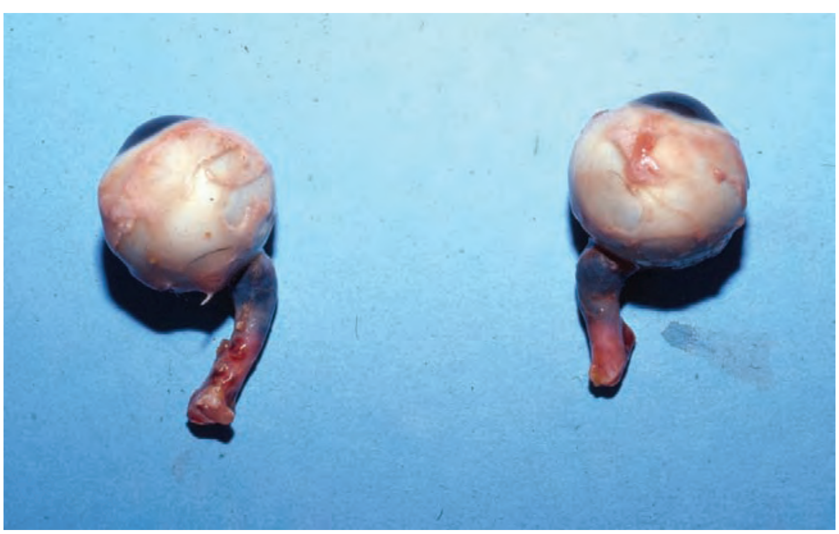


Note the vague pattern contusion of a fist on the anterior chest in this child-abuse fatality. This child died of multiple blunt impact injuries and was discovered dead at the scene in full rigor. No resuscitation was performed.

Antemortem contusions associated with child abuse combined with superimposed perimortem contusions associated with resuscitation. The resuscitative injuries overlie the sternum.

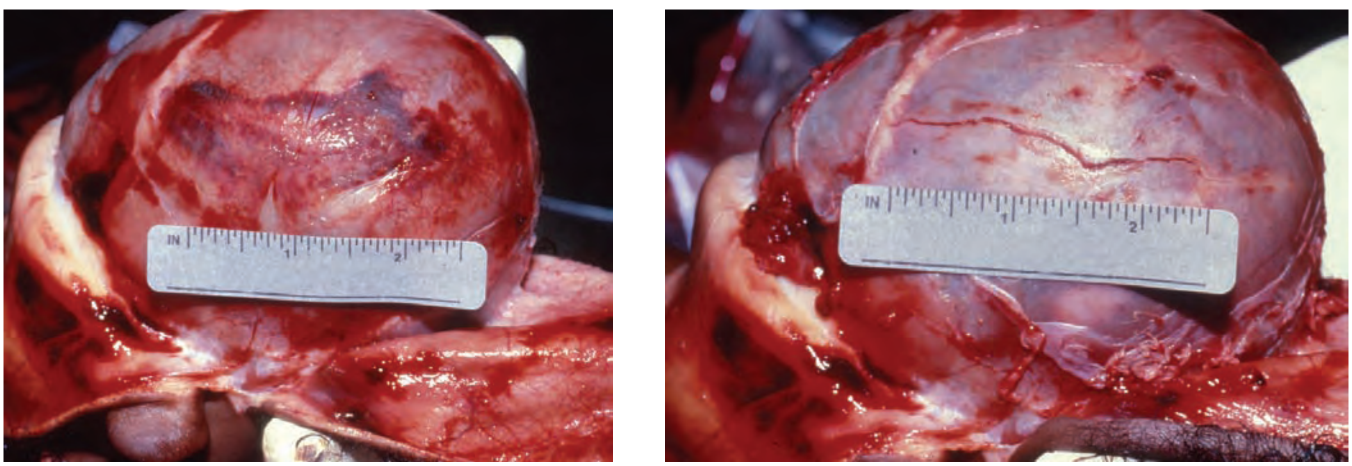


This demonstrates saw cuts through the floor of the anterior cranial fossa (orbital plate of the frontal bone) prior to removal of the eye with its attached optic nerve.



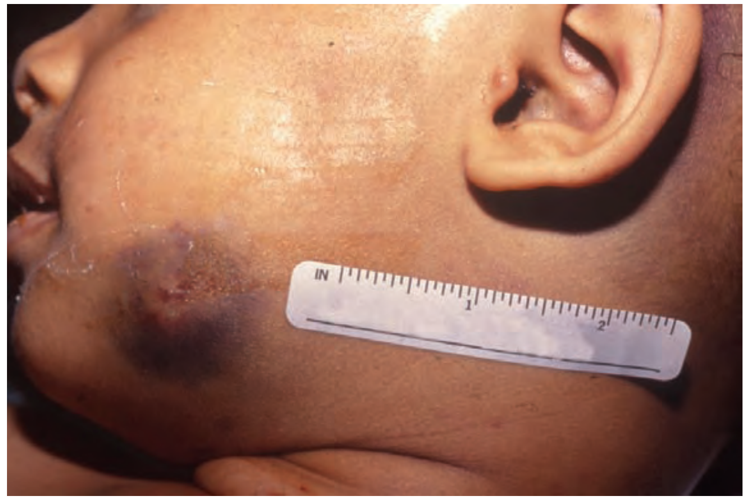
Note the optic nerve sheath hemorrhages. Both of these images demonstrate optic nerve sheath hemorrhages in small children who died from shaken-impact syndrome. Histopathology revealed retinal hemorrhages. There was no evidence of natural disease including coagulopathic syndromes or connective tissue disorders.

The first image of this child-abuse case demonstrates vague contusions on the child's forehead. Reflection of the scalp shows much more prominent soft tissue (subgaleal) hemorrhage.



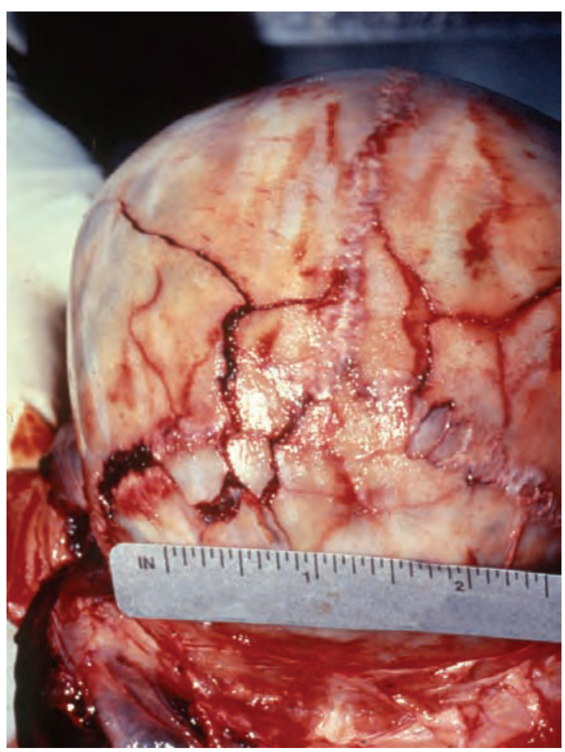
Child abuse case with reflected scalp demonstrating contusions and underlying linear skull fracture.

This child was visiting his grandfather with his parents from another country. The grandfather's apartment was not made "child-safe" prior to the visit. The toddler was standing and rocking a large old wooden television back and forth on a stand that was missing several screws. The television toppled over and crushed the child's head. Note the fracture pattern to the skull indicating a crush-type injury. Also note the photograph demonstrating the top of the skull reflected with underlying dura mater still overlying the brain with epidural hemorrhage. The fractures involved the temporal, frontal, and parietal bones and there was severe brain injury with brain swelling and herniation.



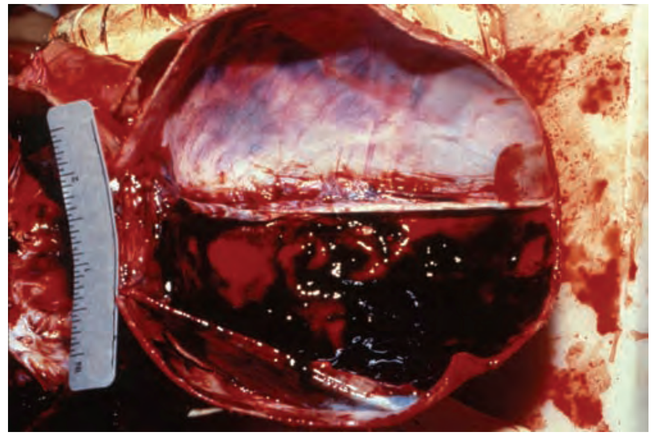
Note the large contusion to the side of the child's face from being punched.

This child was the victim of an assault and suffered a skull fracture with brain injury that caused his death. Note the area of hemorrhage to the mastoid portion of the scalp demonstrating "battle sign."



Child abuse case with comminuted skull fracture. This was most likely produced by flinging the child in a downward trajectory, and striking the child's head against a hard countertop. A fracture of this nature would take tremendous force to produce.

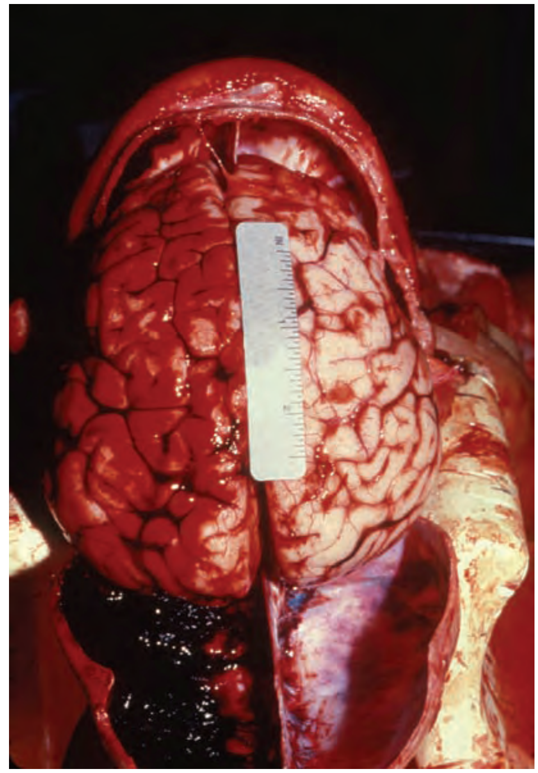
This demonstrates the top portion of the skull (calvarium) removed during autopsy with the dura mater still attached and clotted, partially adherent, subdural hemorrhage. Clotted adherent red-black subdural hemorrhage indicates an injury age of approximately 2–4 days.



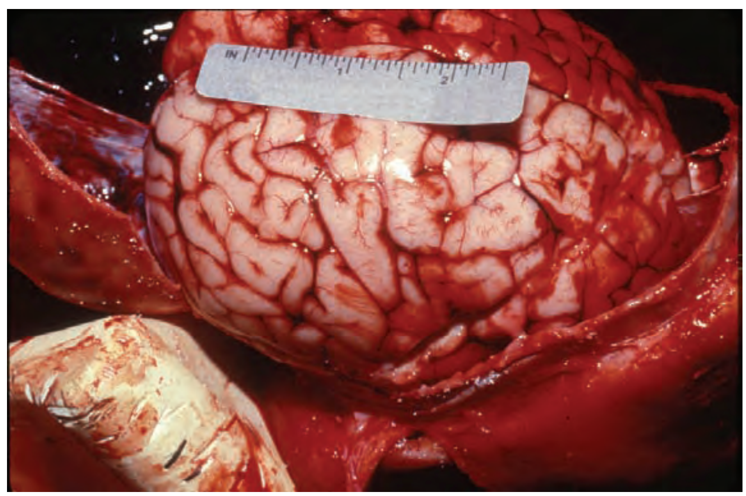
This is the top portion of the skull with adherent clotted subdural hemorrhage involving the left vertex dura (overlying the left cerebral hemisphere) with portions of dura mater separated at the posterior temporal-parietal-occipital regions, adjacent to sites of skull fracture.

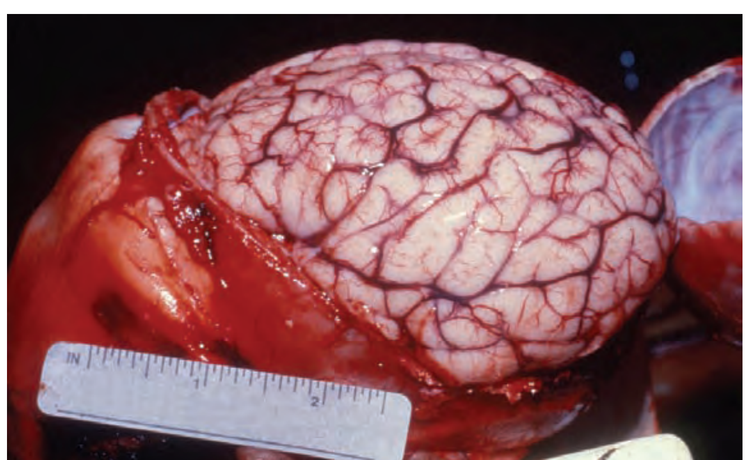
Portion of formaldehyde-fixed dura mater saved for further neuropathologic evaluation. Note the adherent clotted, black-brown subdural hemorrhage.

Formaldehyde-fixed portion of spinal cord removed with the dura mater demonstrating subdural hemorrhage. It is important to remove the cervical spinal cord as carefully as possible during the autopsy process in order to avoid potentially troubling postmortem artifact.

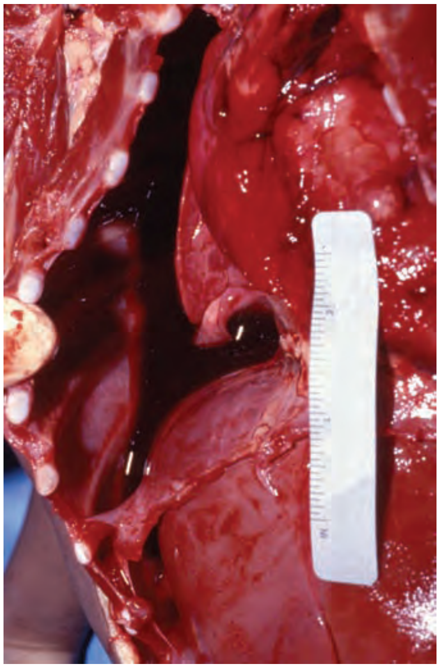
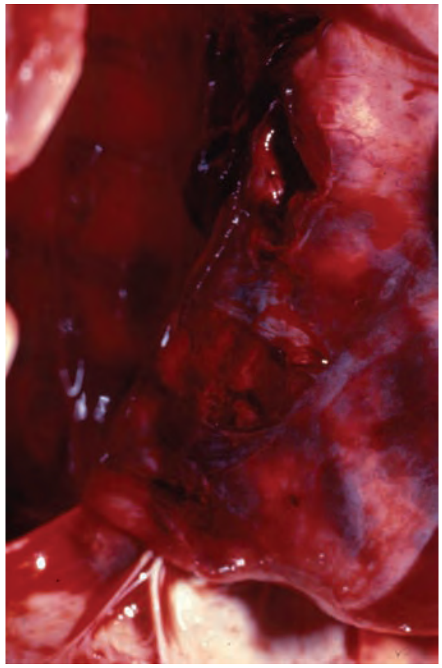
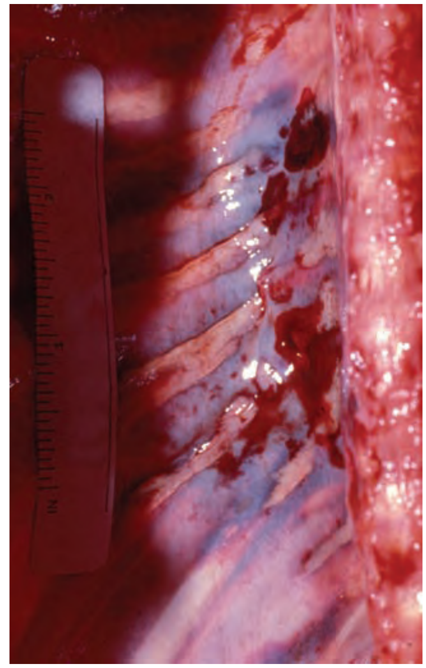
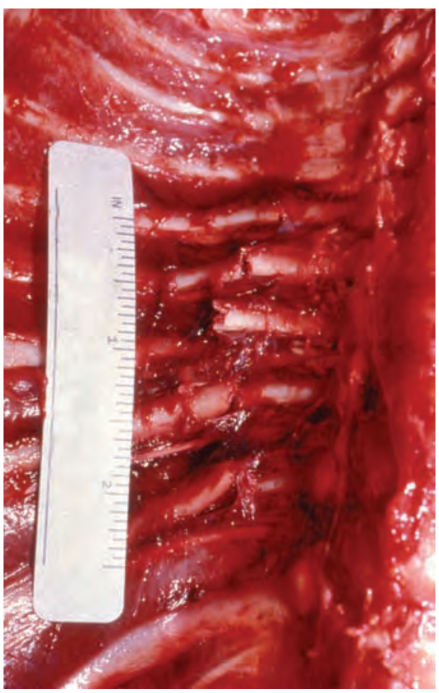
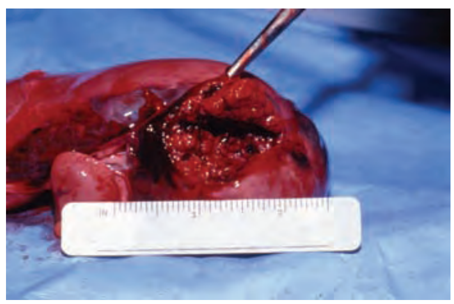


This shows the top portion of the skull (calvarium) being unroofed during the autopsy process for removal of the brain. Note that the dura mater is still adherent to the inner aspect of the skull (endocalvarial surface). There is a large left-sided adherent clotted subdural hemorrhage. There is diffuse cerebral swelling with flattening of the gyral configuration and obliteration of the sulci. There is patchy subarachnoid hemorrhage, which is greatest over the left cerebral hemisphere.



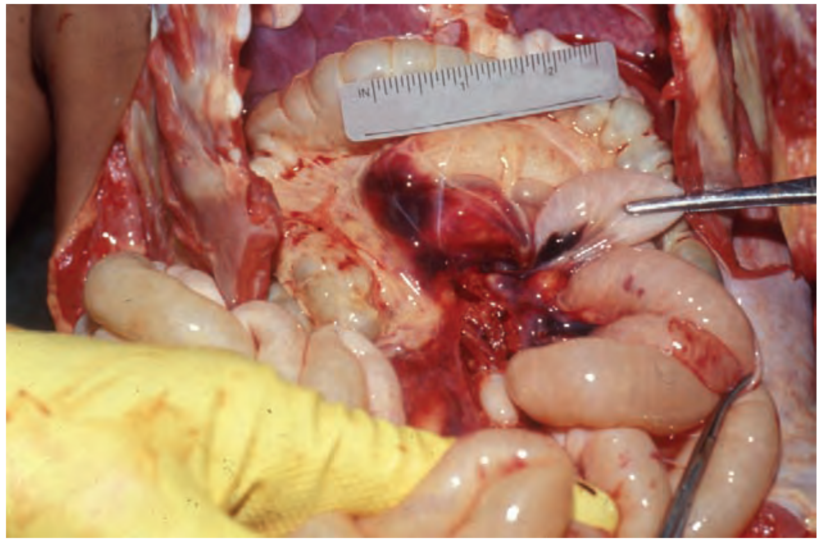


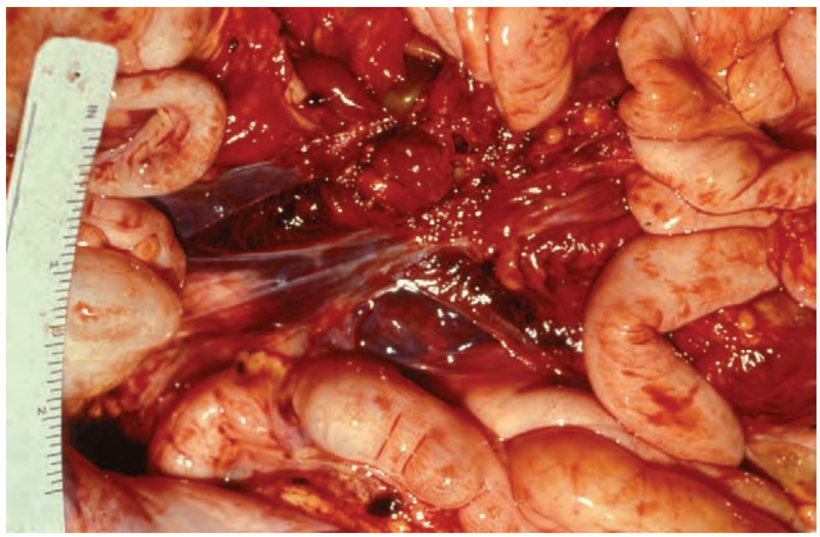
Close-up views of brain swelling with flattening of gyri and obliteration of sulci in a child who survived several days following blunt force trauma due to homicidal violence.


This child sustained multiple posterior rib fractures after being stomped by an adult while lying face-down on the floor. The fractured segments of the ribs penetrated the posterior aspect of the right lung, producing extensive pulmonary and intrathoracic hemorrhage. There were also large lacerations to the posterior aspect of the liver and heart.

X-ray showing multiple recent rib fractures.



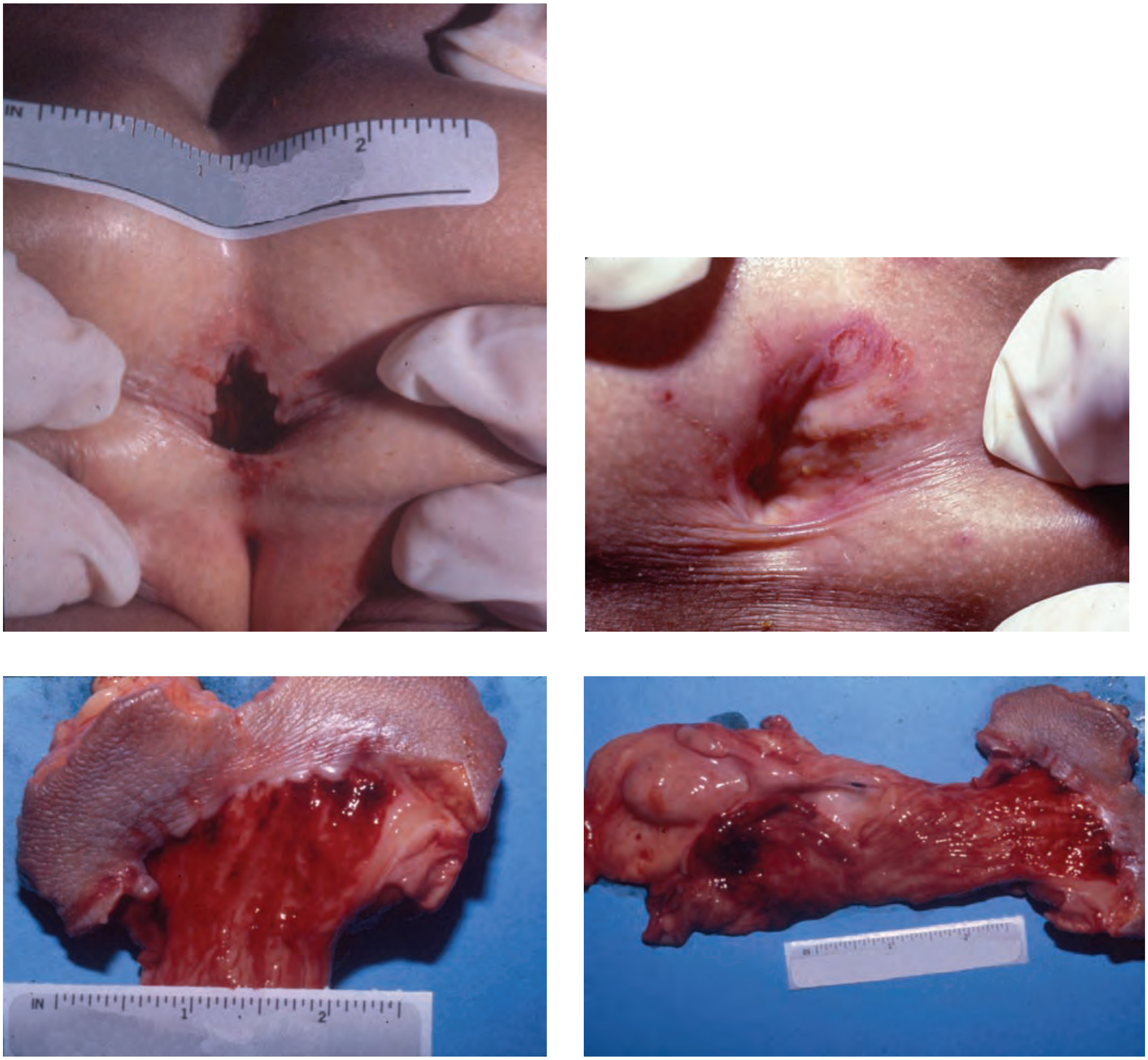


These images demonstrate multiple lacerations involving the mesentery, mesocolon, and peripancreatic soft tissues following blunt abdominal impacts associated with homicidal violence.

This 2-year-old child was found by a caretaker unresponsive in the bathtub. An autopsy revealed confluent subgaleal contusions, essentially spanning from ear to ear, along with brain swelling, although the skull was intact. Death was attributed to blunt impacts to the head with brain swelling. A component of drowning cannot be ruled out in this case. The defendant, a casual acquaintance of the mother, was convicted of second-degree murder and sentenced. Note the bilateral intraosseous catheters, used while attempting to resuscitate this child even though he was slightly over 2 years old. This image depicts the face and anterior trunk of a child with patchy contusions involving the forehead and the left paramedian aspect of the anterior chest wall. Multiple therapeutic interventions are also present. As stated previously, differentiating between the effects of therapy and antecedent injury can be problematic, and the two processes may coexist.

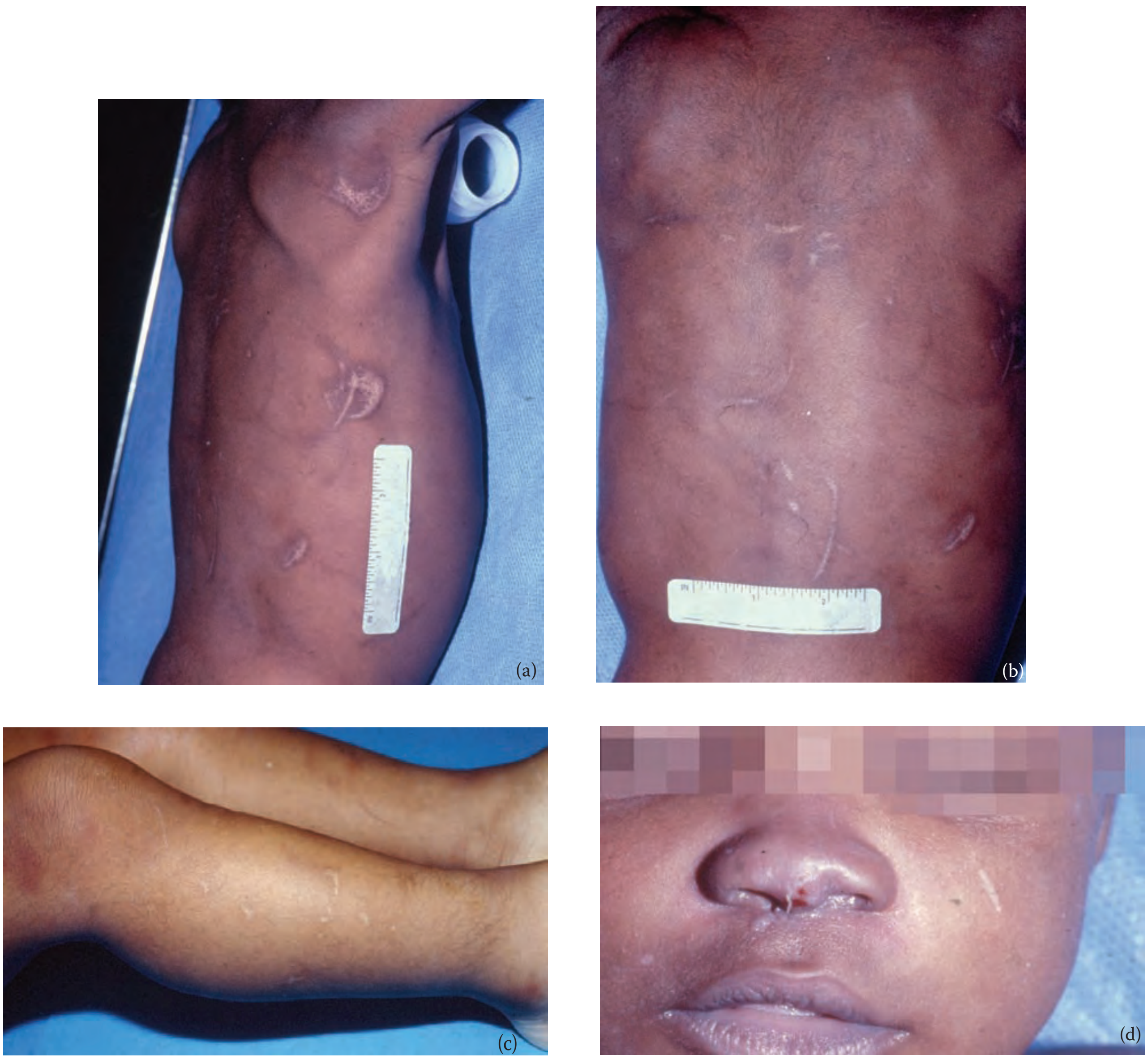
This depicts lower trunk and lower extremities of child, with multiple therapeutic interventions including transverse cutdown sites within both groins, bilateral intraosseous catheters, and a right groin catheter.

This image shows the perineal area of this child (a). No injuries are detected. (b) depicts the child's anus. No injuries are demonstrated. In cases such as these, it is good practice to document photographically the presence or absence of injuries, as the multiplicity of injuries may be one of the determining factors in the ultimate sentencing. Sometimes external examination may be difficult and mucosal folds may be misinterpreted as lacerations. If there is any question as to the nature of a possible lesion or injury, we recommend removing the region en bloc, opening the anorectal segment and photographing it for documentation.



These images demonstrate sexual abuse in a young child. Note the abrasions and lacerations around the anal region. En bloc dissection of this region with the anal-rectal segment of the intestine removed. Note the internal lacerations near the anal border and the intestinal hemorrhage

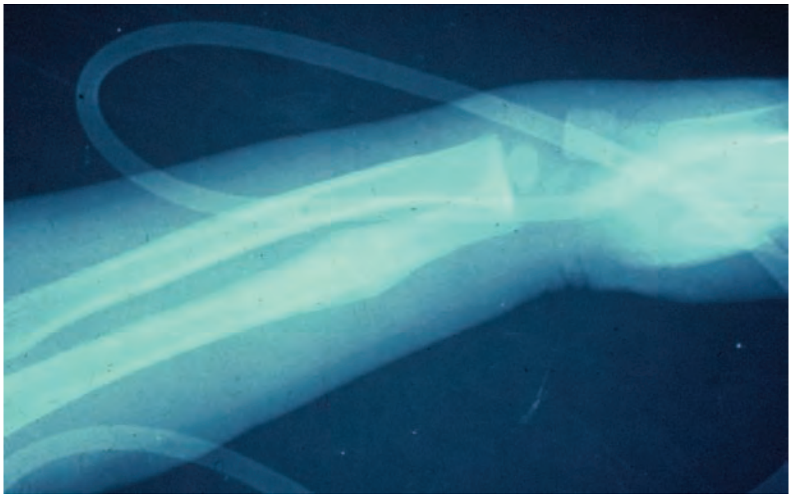
Superficial, healing, criss-crossed, linear abrasions due to rubbing of Velcro jacket patches on each side of this child's neck. This indicates rough handling. This child was later killed by multiple blunt impact injuries during an assault. Note the suture and fresh needle marks at the right chest from a removed subclavian line.

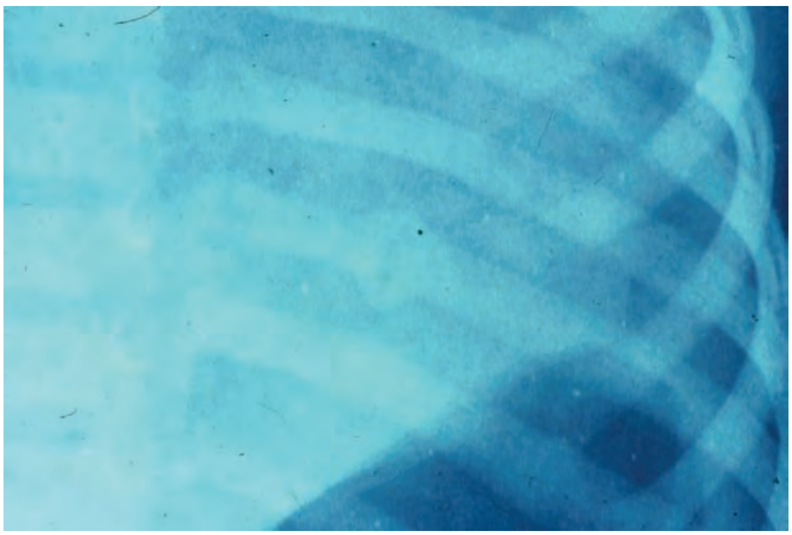


These are multiple scars, many of which were associated with chronic child abuse. When evaluating old injuries, it is important to take into context the child's age and developmental status. A child who is able to run and jump about may fall and sustain blunt-impact injuries. Sometimes it may be difficult, if not impossible, to formulate the nature of such old injuries without history or witnesses. (a) and (b) images are associated with abuse; (c) and (d) represent healed scars from accidental injuries. Note the healing injury at the nose associated with a nasogastric tube and therapy.

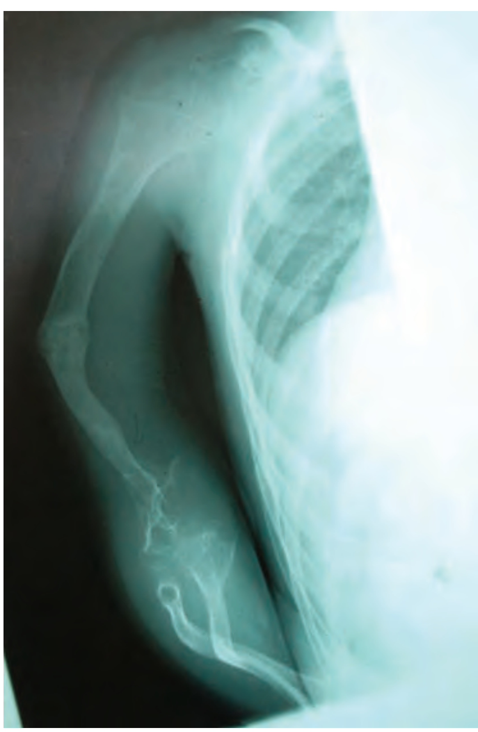
This demonstrates a coronal section of a humerus. Microscopic sections of long bones may be sampled in cases involving a suspicious death of an infant or young child in order to identify transmetaphyseal fractures in situations in which shearing forces have been applied (i.e., violent shaking). Unlike the case in more obvious fractures with extensive visible hemorrhage, these fractures (alternatively referred to as "bucket handle" or "corner" fractures on radiologic plain films, depending upon the view), may sometimes be more readily documented with microscopic examination.

Old healed rib fractures from a case of battered child syndrome.

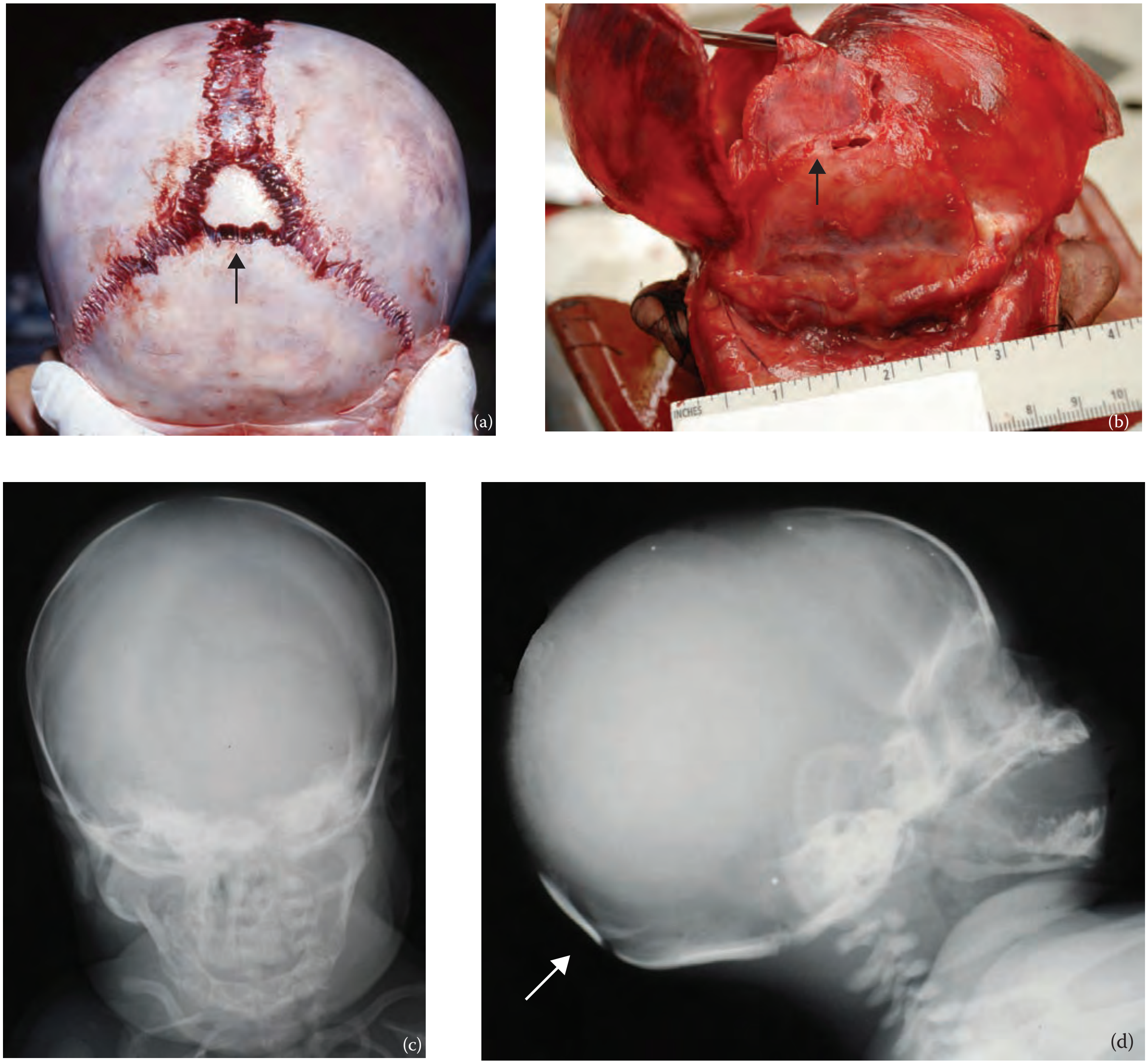




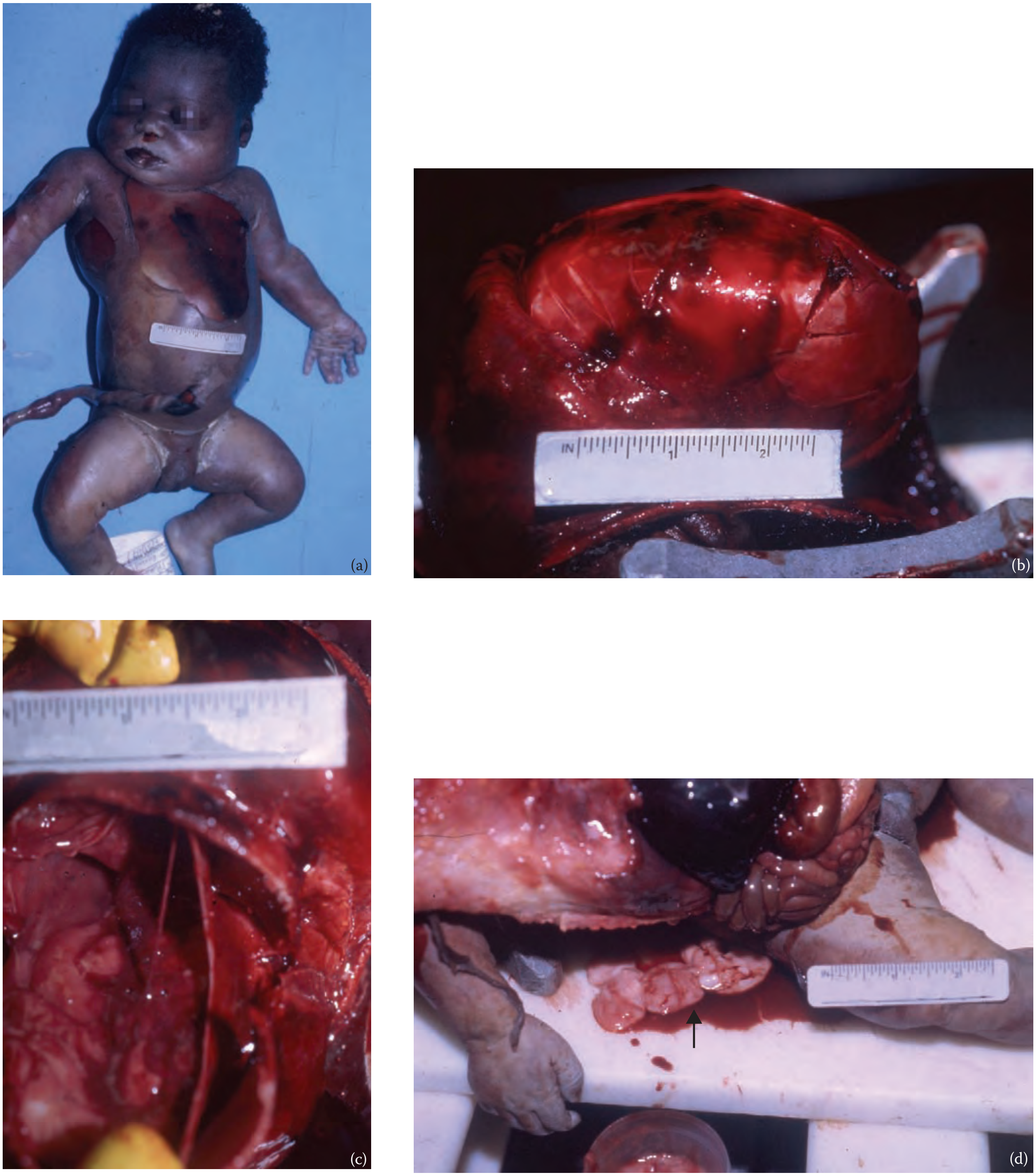
These x-rays demonstrate healing fractures.



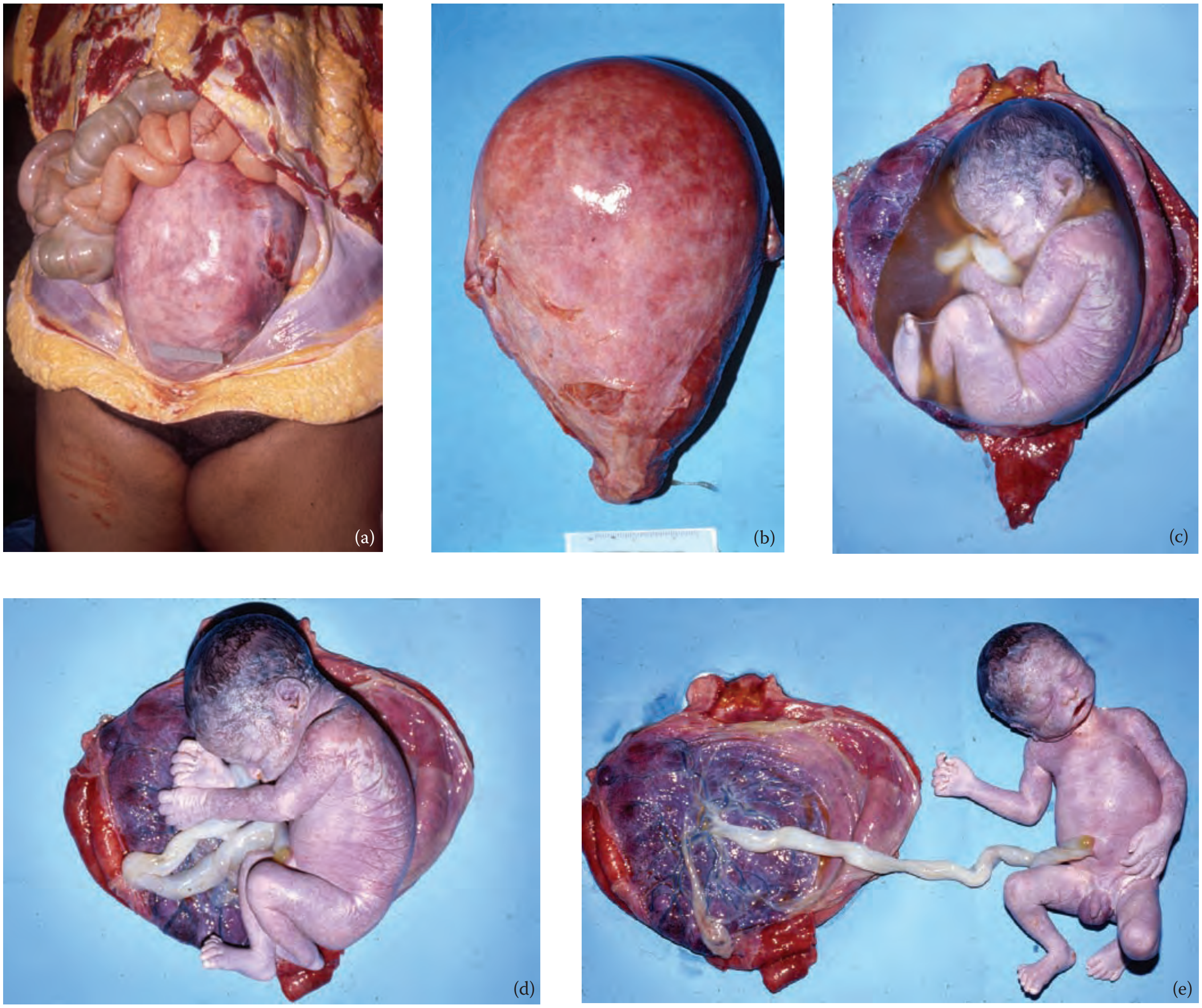
Osteogenesis imperfecta with multiple fractures. This may or may not indicate child abuse. Fractures may occur with very little force.



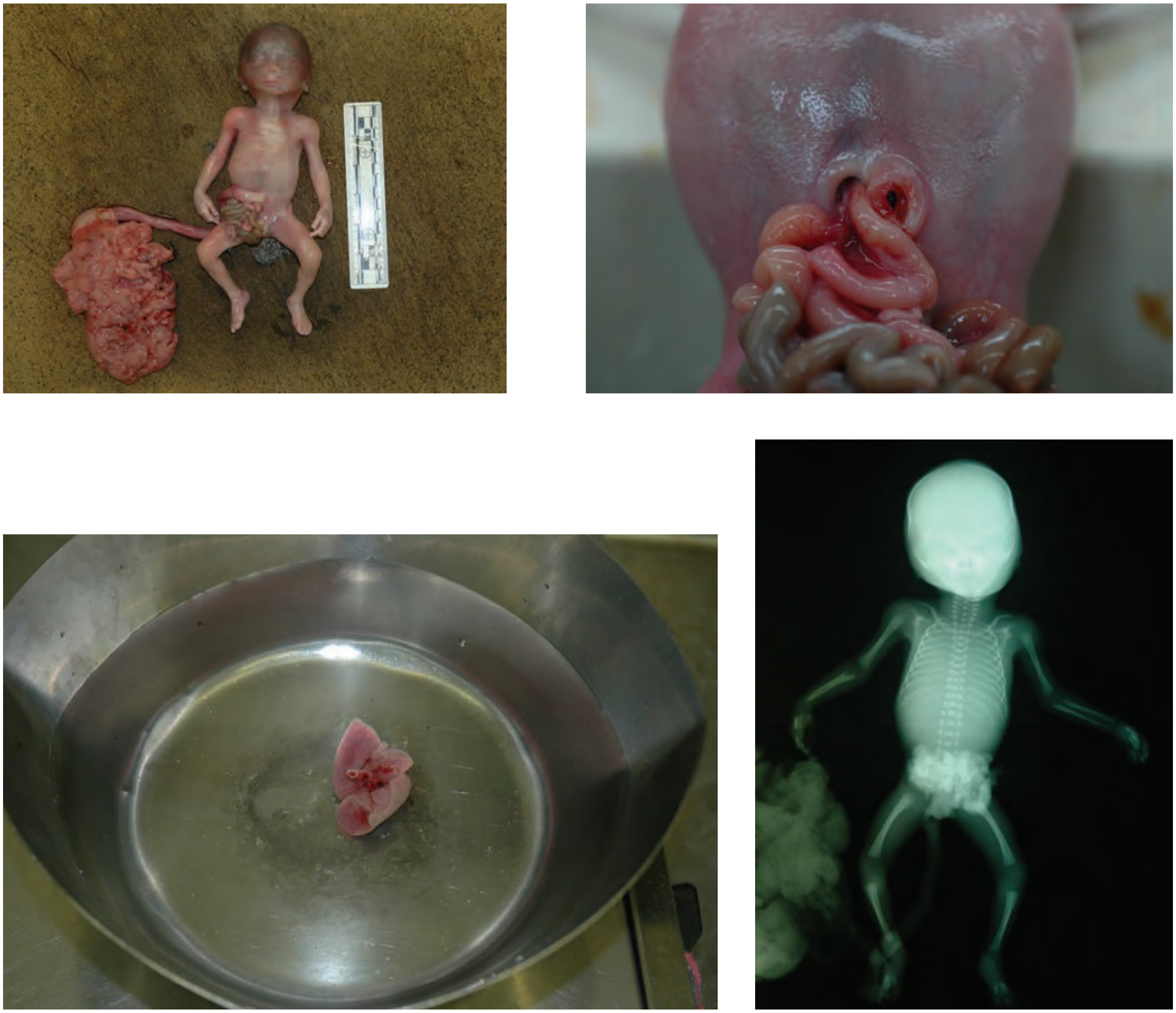
Inca bone skull anomaly. In both of these cases it was mistaken for a skull fracture. The x-rays at the bottom correspond to (b).



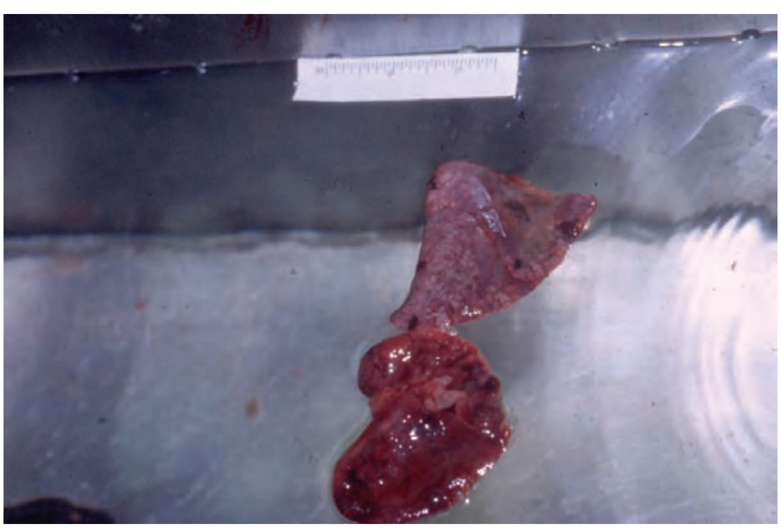
This child was retrieved from the back of a garbage truck partially tied within a torn plastic bag following compression by a trash compactor. Note the confluent hemorrhage to the scalp and the largely empty cranial vault. This child was mildly to moderately decomposed with bloating and separation of tissue planes. The brain material was squeezed from the cranium through the neck following compression of the head by the compactor. When the initial Y-shaped autopsy incision was made to the skin of the trunk, brain material leaked from the chest region (d). The child's body was found mixed with decomposing food material. Note the green discoloration from putrefaction.



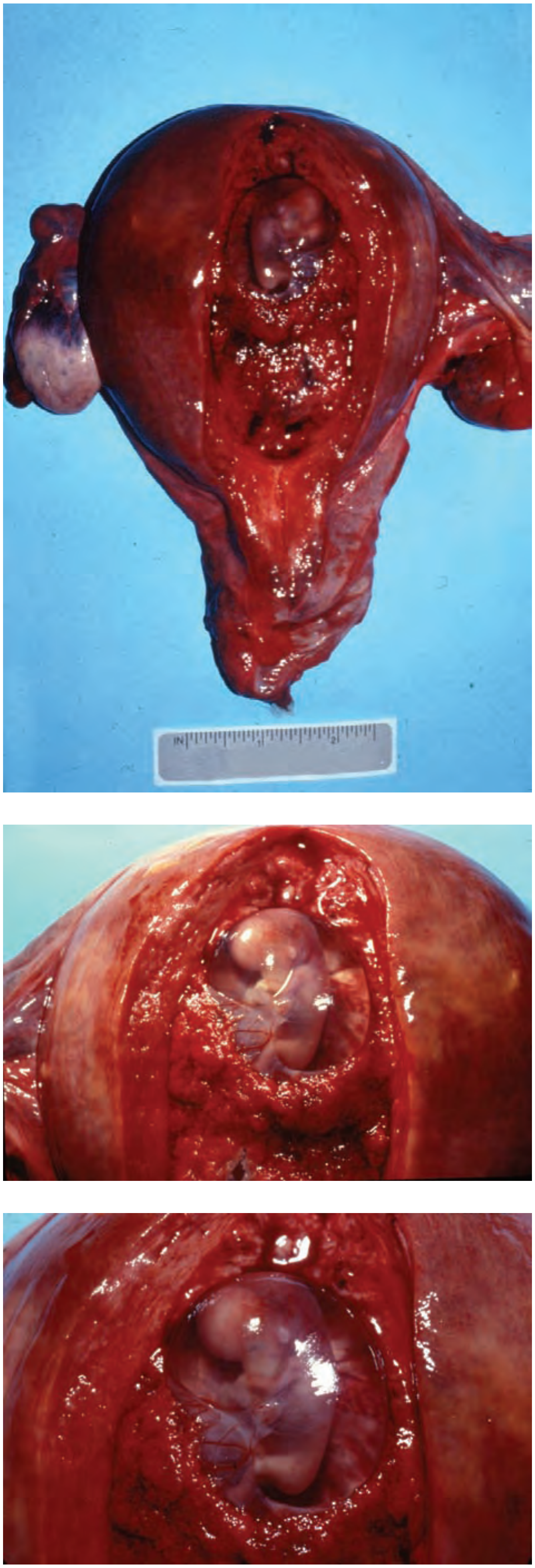
Late-second-trimester pregnancy demonstrating the uterus (a), placenta (b), and fetus (c).



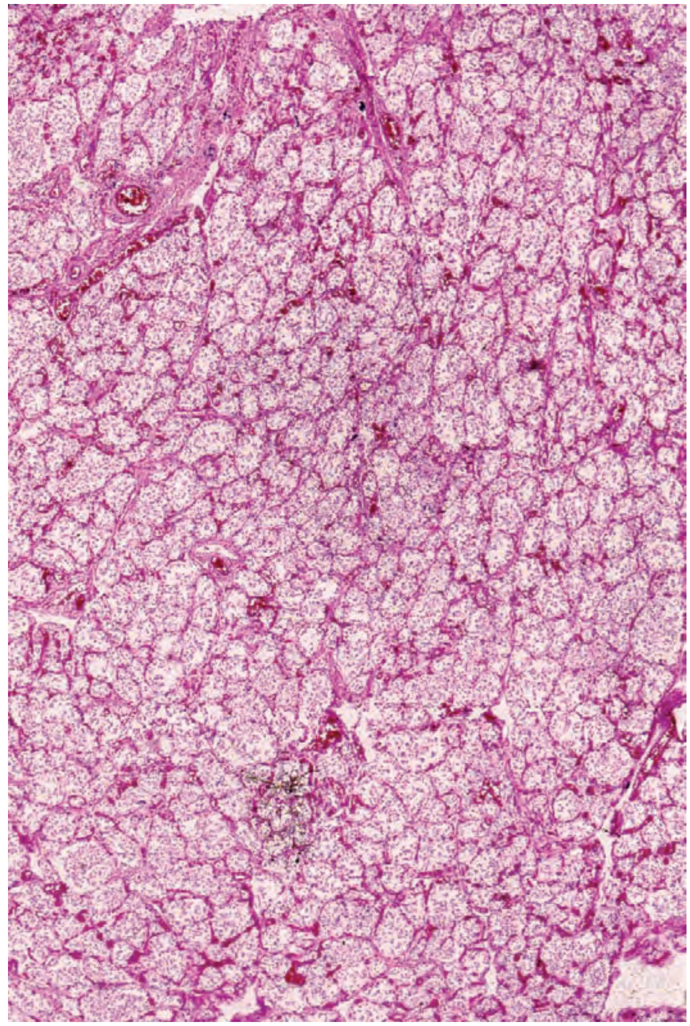
Second trimester stillborn with omphalocele, illegally aborted following administration of drugs given by a nonmedical practitioner. Note the x-ray and the sunken lungs at the bottom of the water container indicating no breaths were taken.



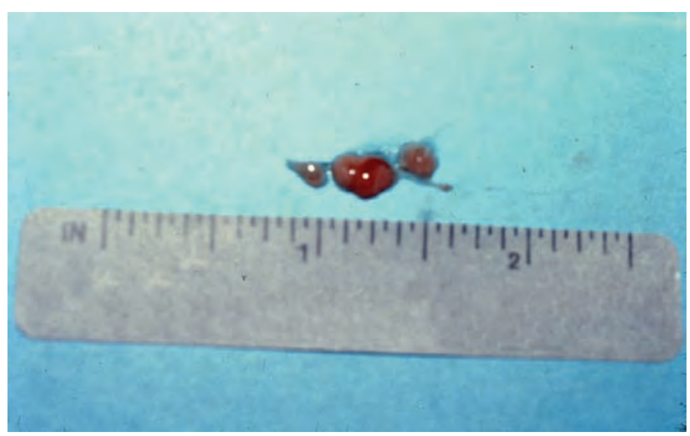
Lungs from a live birth that were expanded with air. Note how they float on top of this water bath. Admittedly, the “flotation test” to confirm independent respiration is far from foolproof and is subject to a number of artifacts and exceptions, thus limiting its utility in resolving the question of live birth versus stillbirth.



First-trimester pregnancy.



Brown fat.



Early first-trimester pregnancy.

Blunt-Force Injuries

6

CHARLES A. CATANESE

Introduction

These are injuries produced when the body is struck with, or strikes, a blunt object. A blunt surface produces injuries by scraping, tearing, shearing, or crushing. This is in contrast to a sharp force injury, which cuts and separates the tissue as it penetrates. What injuries result from trauma are a balance of the amount of force, the area over which it is applied, and the duration of force. In general, the greater the force, smaller the area, or shorter the duration over which the force is applied, the greater the injury will be.

Blunt objects have a relatively large surface area in contrast to sharp objects, where the cutting edge has a relatively small surface area. It takes much less force to penetrate the skin with an ice pick than with the end of a baseball bat. Examples of blunt objects are fists, shoes, pipes, bricks, bats, hammers, roadways, sidewalks, cars, trains, airplanes, walls, etc. Types of blunt-force injuries include *abrasions, contusions* and *lacerations*. These may occur separately but are often present at the same time. As an example, an injury maybe described as an abraded contusion with central laceration. *Fractures* are breaks in the bone as a result of blunt force. *Avulsions* are splits in the soft tissue or soft tissue planes with or without a laceration as a result of shearing forces.

Abrasions

Abrasions are simply scrapes. They are produced as the body contacts a surface and rubs across it with sufficient force. The distance of travel can be very short (falling and scraping your knee) or very long (being dragged under a car). It is often possible to determine the direction of impact. Layers of skin are scraped away and bead up at the margin where the contact to the wound last occurred. Fragments of skin beading up at the inferior wound margin indicate a downward impact. Antemortem abrasions or those that occur during life are typically red to brown and will eventually form a scab with dried blood. Postmortem abrasions are yellow in non-lividity-dependent areas. In general, one needs a beating heart with blood pressure to produce hemorrhage and a red to brown discoloration. A postmortem scrape in a lividity-dependent region will appear red and may be difficult to differentiate from an antemortem injury.

This is important in certain cases. Lawyers will argue different ways to create reasonable doubt. For example, some may argue that an injury occurred during resuscitative efforts in the hospital, or the body was dropped from the stretcher in the morgue. Some other arguments may include: he was dead already when the second car hit him, the other perpetrator shot the body after he was dead, the child had no injuries before entering the hospital, etc.

Abrasions may also change character with increasing time. For example, initial examination of a body retrieved from water may reveal no or much less obvious injuries due to the moisture from the water at the skin's surface. As the body is stored in the morgue overnight and allowed to dry, the abrasions will darken and may become much more apparent.

Contusions

Contusions are simply bruises. These are produced following an impact where the soft tissues and blood vessels, underneath or within the skin, are torn and produce hemorrhage. Grabbing an arm tightly can produce bruising with minimal impact and greater crushing force. One needs a beating heart and blood pressure to produce a contusion. A postmortem impact may accumulate blood due to lividity in a gravity-dependent area. This type of postmortem artifact may be difficult to differentiate from an antemortem injury.

One must exercise great care when dating contusions at the time of autopsy with gross findings alone. One must account for skin color, whether the contusion is deep or superficial, the presence of hematoma, etc. Bruises go through various color changes with advancing time as the body reacts to repair the injury. This depends on the size of the injury, the physiologic state of the individual, including his or her immune and coagulation systems, the vascular efficiency adjacent to the damaged tissue, etc. Color changes range from light blue-red to dark purple then green to yellow-brown as time progresses. Inaccurate interpretations of dating contusions grossly can create significant problems in court. If one sees a variability with color ranges demonstrating

some bruises as red-purple and others as yellow-brown, it is reasonable to say that some injuries are older than others. It is much more accurate to use histopathology to date the injuries using established time ranges for advancing inflammation and healing. Random sections of injuries should be taken including the wound margins. The first several hours reveal hemorrhage with no inflammation. This is followed by iron deposition as a result of hemoglobin breakdown. Estimation of injury dating should be given in ranges.

Bruises can also change appearance as the postmortem time interval increases. A contusion will become more obvious as blood settles away from the impact site. The surrounding tissue will become paler and the contusion will be more pronounced, as in a supine body with anterior contusions in full livor. Bleeding associated with a contusion does not settle away from the impact site as lividity forms, because it is spread throughout the soft tissues and cannot drain within the vessels. Also, during vigorous emergency room resuscitation, the head and upper trunk may become congested. As lividity settles to the back of the head, injuries to the face become more prominent. Clinicians may sometimes miss these subtle contusions.

It is also important to realize that deep contusions may not be visible at external exam and may be visualized only after incisions are made. Clinicians should realize this and create a medical record that is as accurate as possible. If one documents that no bruises are present to regions of the body, yet they are found on autopsy, this may potentially weaken the case in court. The autopsy remains the most accurate way to demonstrate these findings.

Lacerations

Lacerations are tears of the skin, soft tissues, or internal organs or vessels as a result of an impact, overstretching, or crushing-type forces. These injuries are characterized by irregular margins, often with a marginal abrasion, with tissue bridging by fibrous strands and small blood vessels. If the laceration is large and gaping, tissue bridging may not be present due to the strands' being pulled apart. Skin lacerations tend to occur more often over hard surfaces, such as the scalp, knees, elbows, etc. The direction of the impact can be determined by the presence of soft tissue undermining. The underlying soft tissue adjacent to the laceration may form a pocket of separation extending in the direction of impact. A downward impact will produce undermining at the inferior aspect. These directions should be described with reference to standard anatomic planes.

Motor Vehicle Injuries

Motor vehicles include any motorized means of carrying or transporting someone. These include trucks, buses, cars, motorcycles, mopeds, snow mobiles, etc. It is always important to be as accurate as possible, including the *type of vehicle* on the death certificate for vital records. The type of vehicle is obviously important when evaluating injuries.

It is important to recognize various patterns that might help *differentiate drivers from passengers.* In high-speed collisions with unrestrained occupants, people may be ejected from the vehicle. If criminal or civil charges are filed, the living driver may indicate that the dead passenger was driving.

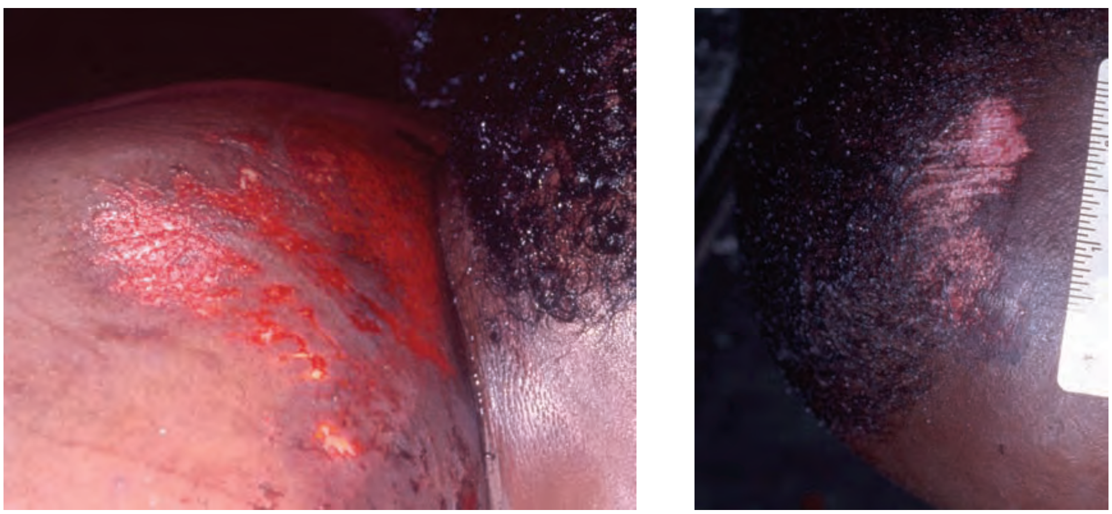
One should look for steering wheel impact marks to the chest, seatbelt-related abraded contusions, and pattern injuries associated with impacts to the windshield, dashboard, or vehicle roof. *Front and back windshields* are often made of laminated glass and fracture with elongated curves or splinters. *Side windows* are often made of tempered glass and fracture into small cubes. Seatbelt-patterned injuries or side impact dicing pattern injuries to the right or left side of the head will help formulate opinions about an individual's seating position. Dicing injuries to the left side of the head of an individual found next to a car with a broken left side window is evidence that he or she was the driver. One could also collect DNA samples from these regions and compare it with ejected occupants. Those not wearing seatbelts are much more likely to be ejected from the vehicle, especially in a rollover accident. Those who are ejected may impact other objects (such as a tree or pole) or may sustain crush injuries due to the vehicle's rolling over them.

Pedestrian clothing and impact sites to the body can reveal many clues with evidence about the circumstances of a collision. Questions one should ask include: Was the pedestrian standing or lying in the street? Was the individual run over or run under by the vehicle? Was more than one vehicle involved? Impact sites may reveal different front grill or tire pattern injuries. With standing pedestrian impacts, one should measure the distance between the impact site and the bottom of the foot or shoe the pedestrian was wearing at the time of the incident. It may be necessary to incise this region to visualize it better. It is good practice to include the measuring stick in the picture. This may give insight into whether the vehicle was braking before the impact occurred. As a driver jams on the brakes, the front end of a car will go downward. Fractures may occur to weight-bearing legs. Fracture patterns may be difficult to interpret when the bone is splintered and fractured into many pieces. Generally speaking, as a force passes through a bone, the fracture pattern

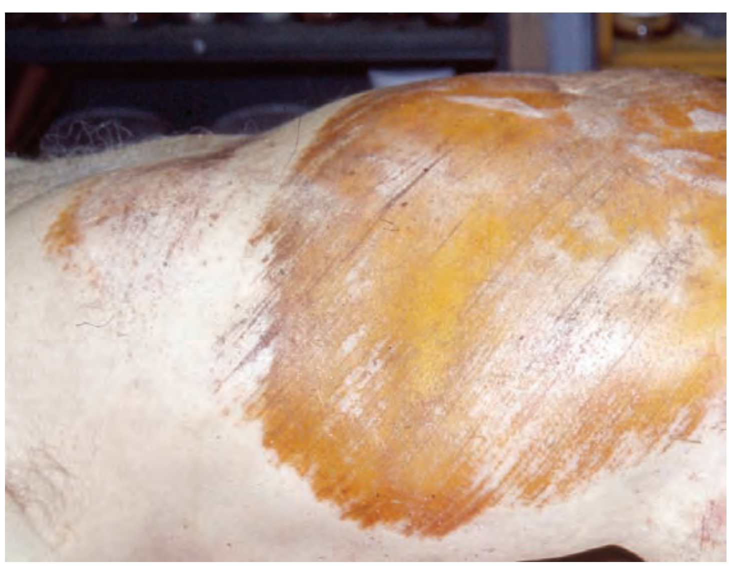
extends outward from the impact site similar to a skull fracture from an entrance gunshot wound producing internal beveling. With posterior standing impact, one might find stretch marks at the inguinal region opposite the impact site. This is caused by hyperextension of the hip and leg in an anterior direction.

Slow-moving vehicles tend to run over people. Fast-moving vehicles tend to run under people, meaning after being struck, the victim is tossed onto and over the hood. Flaps of skin may be torn away as a tire passes over a body. The clothing may yield significant evidence such as paint fragments. The car may have fragments of blood and hair that can be used for DNA analysis. This can be useful when there are multiple pedestrians and cars involved in collisions. Many pedestrian collisions involve children, who are sometimes impulsive and careless and may run out into oncoming traffic; the elderly, may not be quick enough to get out of the way; or individuals who have psychological histories, such as the homeless, or intoxicated individuals, who may think it's not that dangerous to cross a busy freeway.

Recent antemortem abrasions.

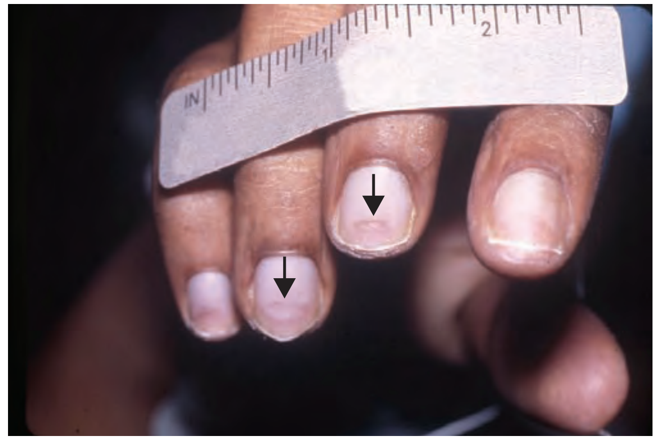


Recent deep antemortem abrasions.

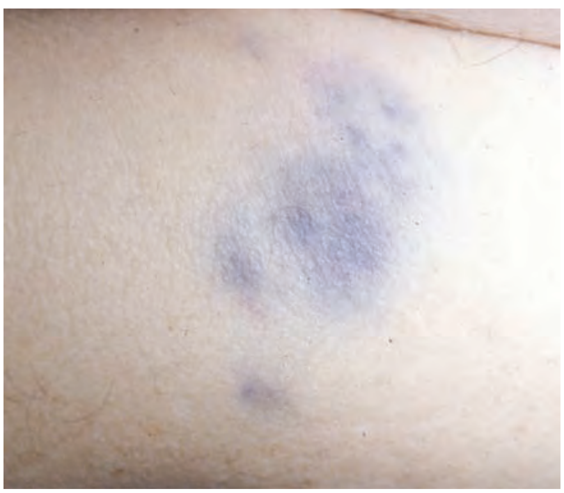


Large yellow anemic postmortem abrasion.

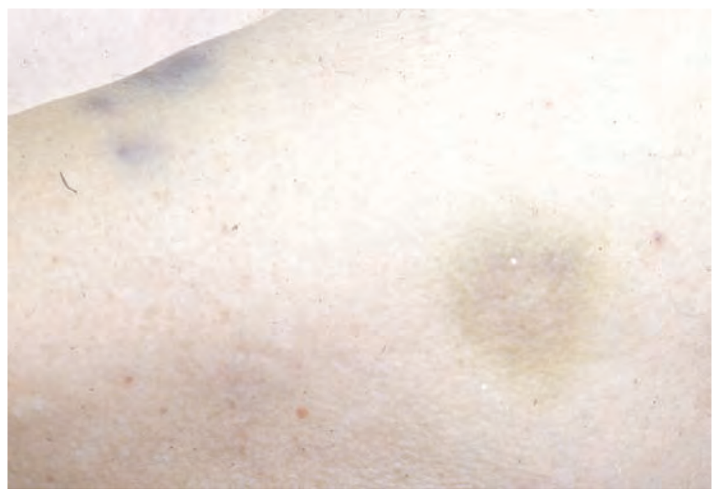
Recent contusion of the left hand associated with a fist fight. This individual punched the attacker before being murdered.



Damaged fingernails with nail bed contusions. Blunt-force injury during struggle.



Recent purple contusion of arm.

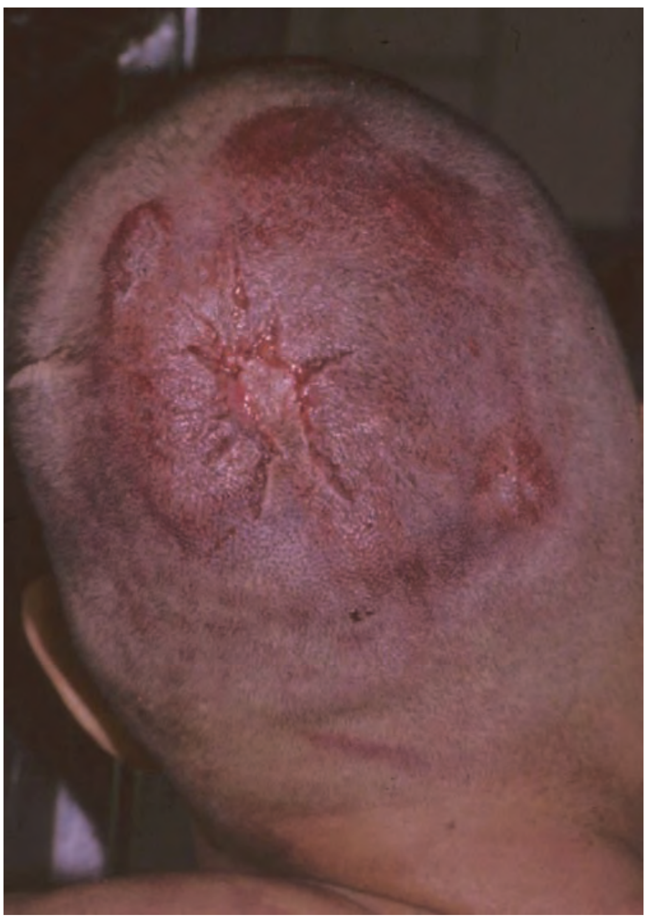


Older yellow-brown contusion.

Multiple abrasions and contusions of face. Note the bilateral periorbital ecchymosis associated with fracture of the anterior cranial fossa. This is also known as "raccoon eyes." A similar injury is Battle's sign, hemorrhage behind the ear, also a sign of basilar skull fractures. Figure (c) demonstrates a basilar skull fracture.

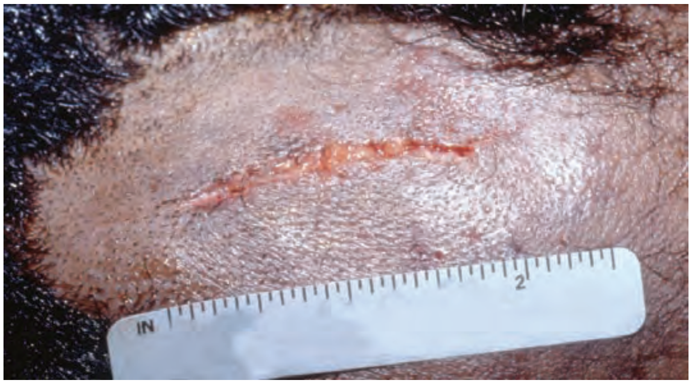
Recent laceration with adjacent abrasion. Note the irregular margin at the point of skin separation due to the skin's ripping or tearing apart.

Recent laceration of scrotum.



Large recent abraded contusion at the back of the head with a stellate laceration. This individual was intoxicated at a party on a rooftop. He was taking a group photograph and while backing up accidentally fell three stories to the pavement below. He had a comminuted skull fracture.

These are multiple recent lacerations and contusions at the inner aspect of the mouth following multiple blunt impacts to this individual's face with a fist.



This is a postmortem anemic laceration in an individual who was stabbed to death in an apartment and later thrown out of a window.

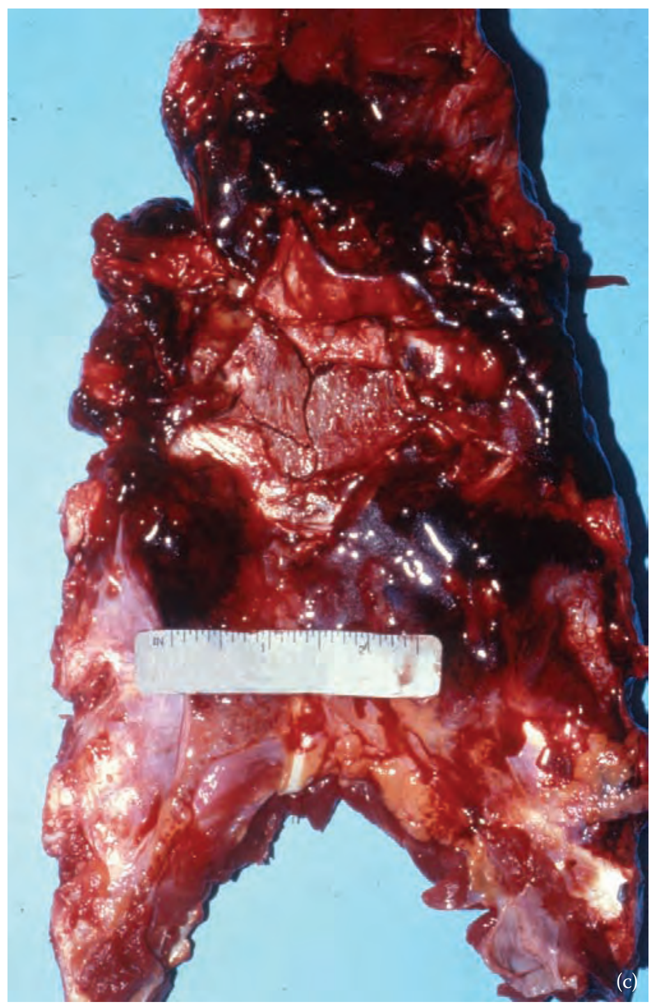
This decomposing body has skin slippage with separation of scalp hair. Note the scalp lacerations with slight to moderate decomposition.

This individual was struck by a train. Note the soft tissue avulsion underneath the intact thick skin.

This individual died of multiple homicidal blunt- and sharp-force injuries. These are scalp lacerations in an individual with moderate decomposition. Note the extensive drying of the wound margins with clotted blood and fragments of hair. Also note the separation of the scalp from the skull with sub adjacent fractures.


(a)

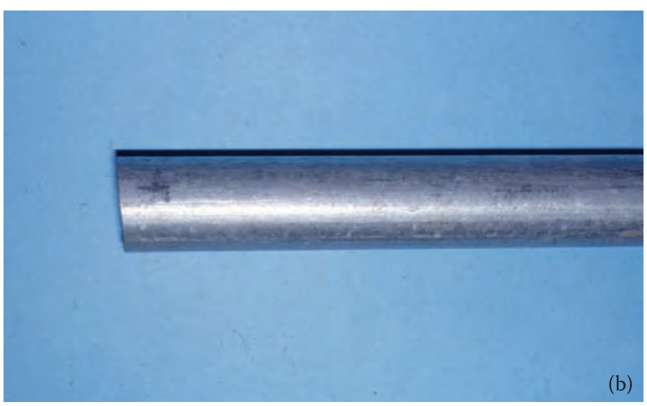

(b)


(c)

Note the recent abraded contusion to the middle aspect of the chest (a). This individual had multiple layers of clothing and was reportedly stomped on by an individual with heavy boots following assaults with other weapons. The abraded contusion to the middle aspect of his chest forms a rough outline of a boot (b). The multiple layers of clothing prevented a more discernable defined boot pattern. The individual had a fractured sternum and a cardiac contusion (c).

Pattern injuries associated with impacts from the bottom of a shoe while being stomped and kicked.

(a)



(b)

This individual was assaulted with fists and a metal pipe or rod. Note the parallel linear contusions at the posterior aspect of the left thigh (a). Depression of the soft tissues contacting the rod causes stretching at each margin with blood vessel injury and parallel linear bruises.

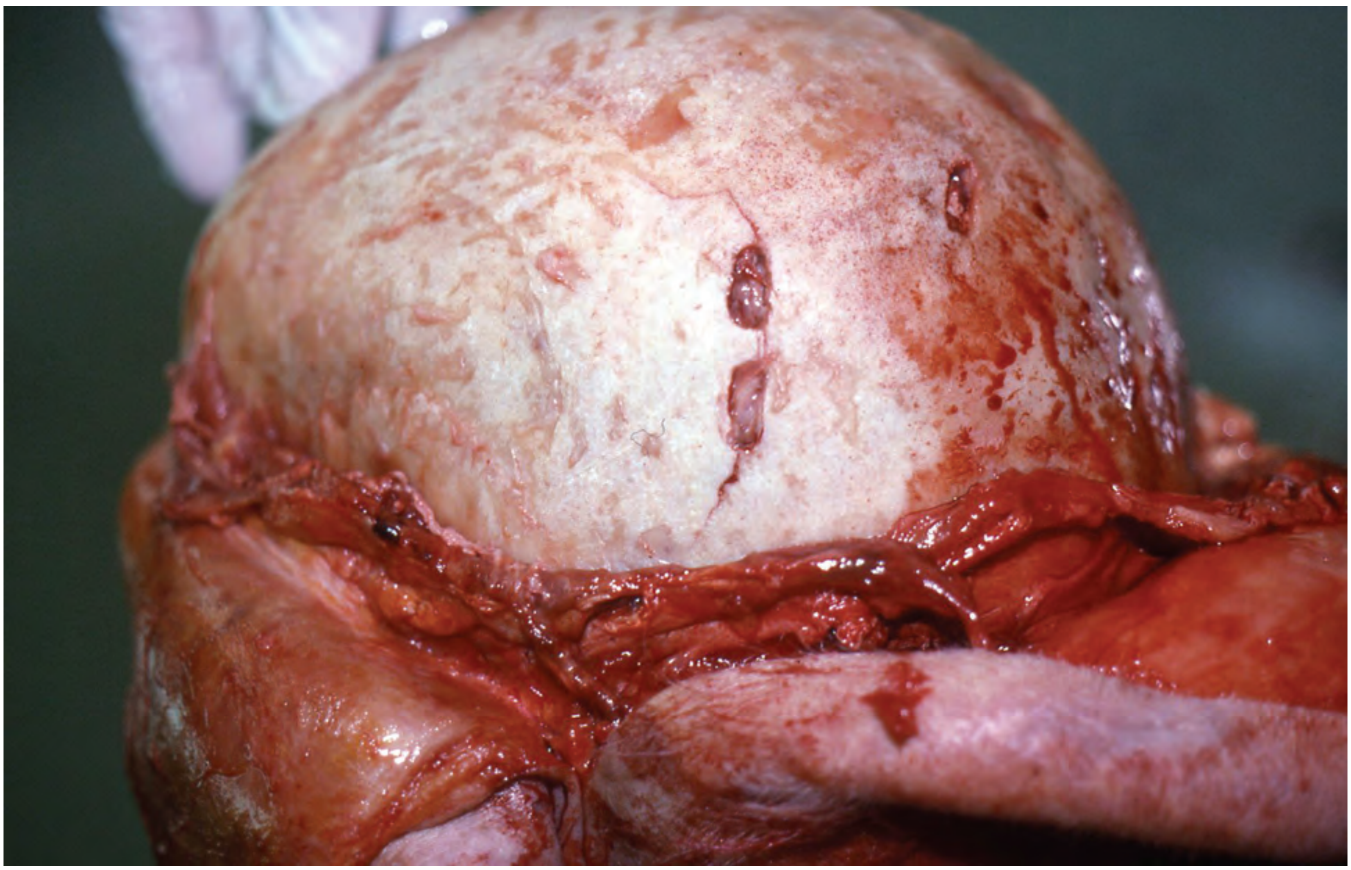
(a)

(b)

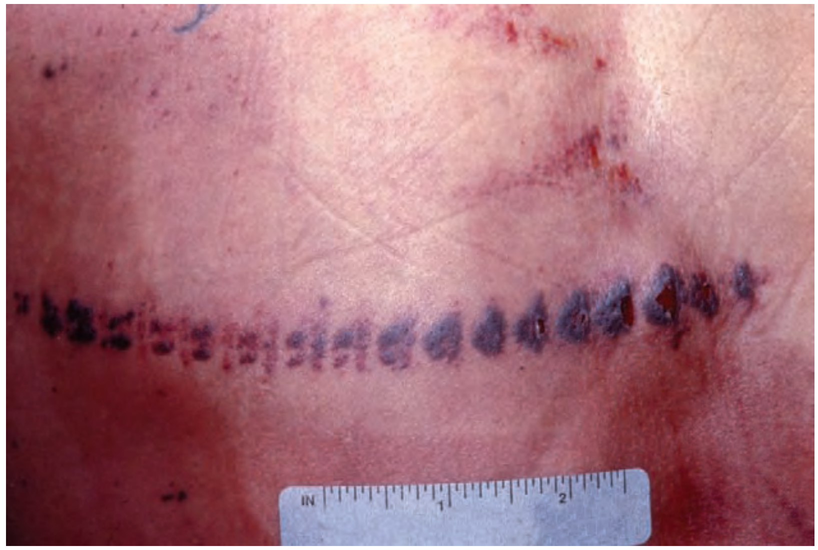
This individual was struck multiple times with a putter golf club. Note the pattern injury at the forehead and face, with the shaft of the club extending at the inferior aspect.

This individual was assaulted by multiple people with bottles and a baseball bat. These abraded contusions at his face and head are characteristic of a baseball bat impact. Note the oval contusion with sparing of the central aspect with overlying abrasion. Also note the abraded central region.

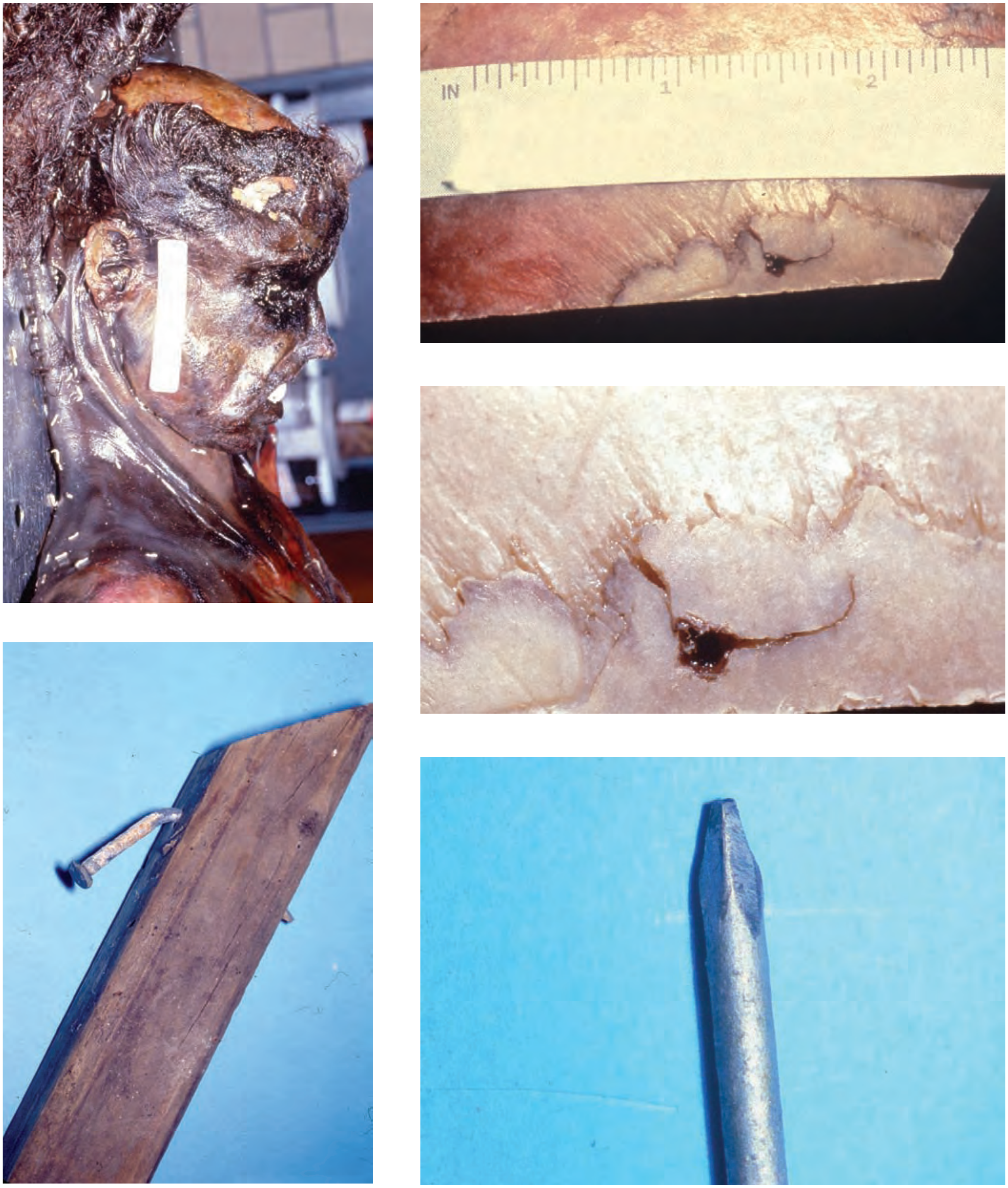
This elderly women had a history of an unsteady gait associated with Parkinson's disease and remote stroke. She was found in her apartment with several impact injuries to her scalp. It was initially thought by investigators that she had fallen several times and possibly suffered a heart attack. Further examination of her scalp revealed more lacerations and impacts that were initially not observed at the scene due to poor lighting and dried blood matted in her scalp hair. These scalp lacerations were produced by being struck with a hammer head.



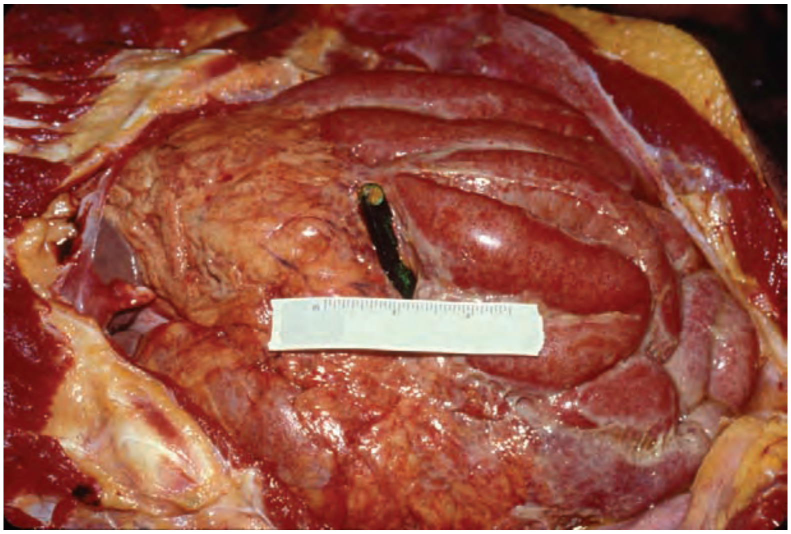
Depressed skull fractures due to multiple impacts with the head and claw of a hammer. Standard household hammer heads have a diameter of 3/4 to 1 inch, and the injuries on the skull tend to reflect this.

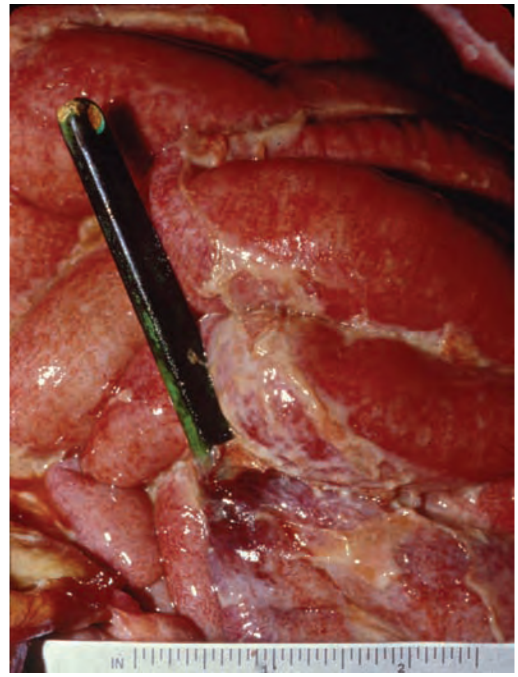


This individual was assaulted by multiple people including one with a bicycle chain. These injuries are characteristic for bicycle chain impacts.

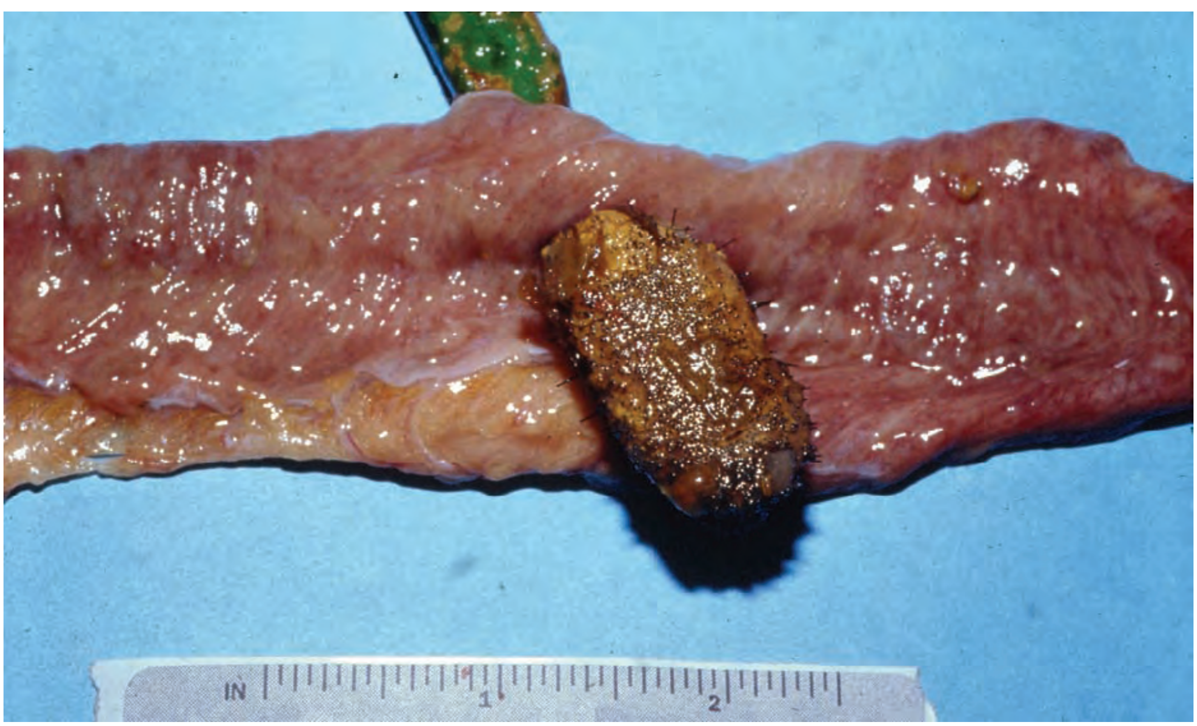


This individual was found naked from the waist down in an abandoned pipe yard. She had multiple defects to her scalp with exposed bone and extensive maggot and animal feeding. Careful inspection of the skull revealed a 1/4″ linear fracture of the superior temporal bone with a 1/16″ roughly square indentation. Further investigation of the scene revealed a board with a nail at the other side of the yard. Further testing confirmed this was the murder weapon.





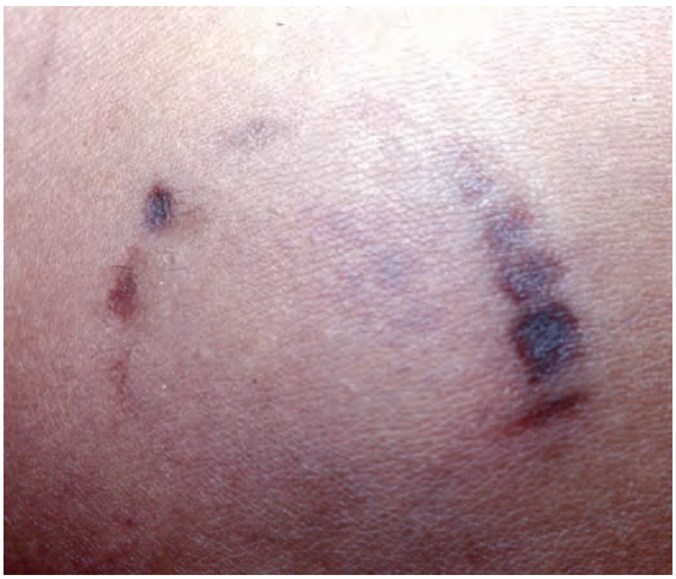
This psych patient had a history of swallowing miscellaneous objects. The blunt side of this toothbrush, in conjunction with peristalsis, eroded through the intestinal wall. This person died of peritonitis with septic complications.

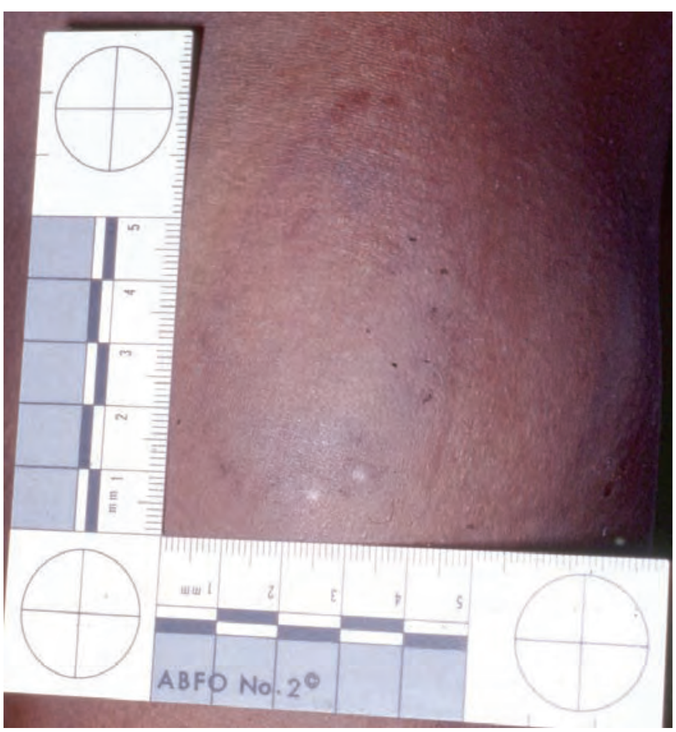


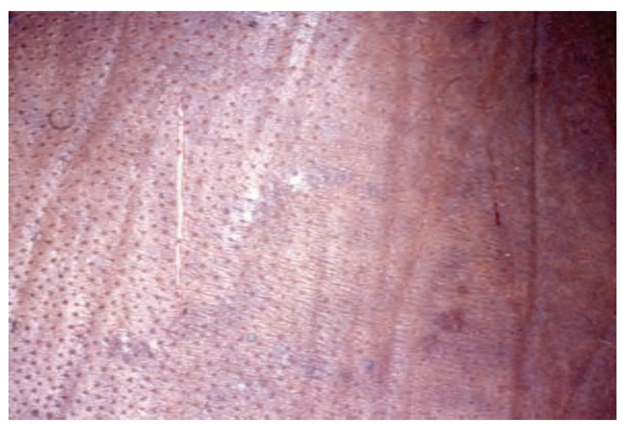
Pierced ear lobe with sociopathic pirate earring.

This is a homicide case where the individual had her earring torn from her ear lobe during the assault.

Note the slit elongation of the piercing site from wearing very heavy earrings. Also note the healed linear scar to the left due to a traumatic tearing of the earring from the ear lobe with complete separation and nonplastic-surgical repair.



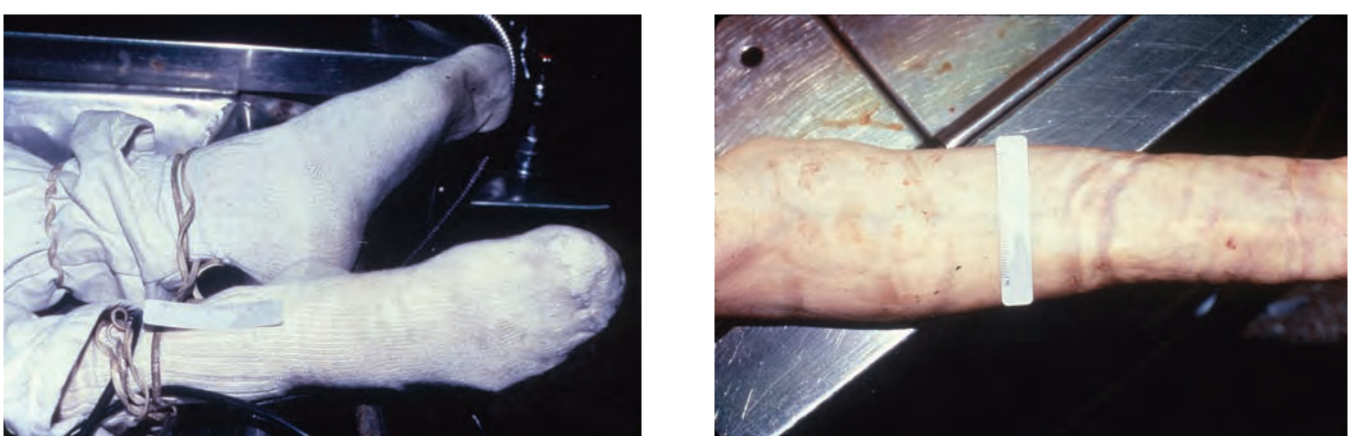




These are various examples of recent bite marks with different placement of the mouth while exerting pressure and different degrees of force applied. Note some patterns are very vague and others are extremely prominent. The typical example of a bite mark reveals a circular pattern with a central region of contusion. It is good practice to consult a forensic dentist as soon as possible whenever a bite mark is suspected. The injury should not be cleaned until swabs are taken to detect oral DNA left behind from the perpetrator. As time goes on with drying and decomposition, the injury may yield less valuable information for dental comparison and DNA analysis.

Image (a) demonstrates both a recent and a healed bite mark. The old bite mark is largely healed with hypo-pigmented deep abrasions from teeth dragging across the epidermal surface.

This individual and her roommate were found in their apartment with multiple blunt- and sharp-force injuries. Note the roughly semicircular lacerations at the superior and inferior aspect of the cheek, with the deeper lacerations of the lip revealing exposed underlying teeth. There was a large cylindrical storefront padlock within a tube sock found at the scene. There were multiple other pattern injuries to the decedent's body consistent with these roughly circular impacts.



Note the furrow indentations associated with extremities bound by rope and cord prior to the victim's being stabbed to death.

This individual suffered a witnessed fatal cardiac event while standing. While falling to the ground he sustained this pattern injury by striking his head on a radiator.

This individual suffered a fatal cardiac event while riding on an escalator. He was found lying at the bottom of the escalator. Note the pattern injury to his arm from the continued rubbing of escalator treads.

This individual impacted a fence at a high rate of speed, leaving a pattern injury from the top of the fencepost's contacting his chest.

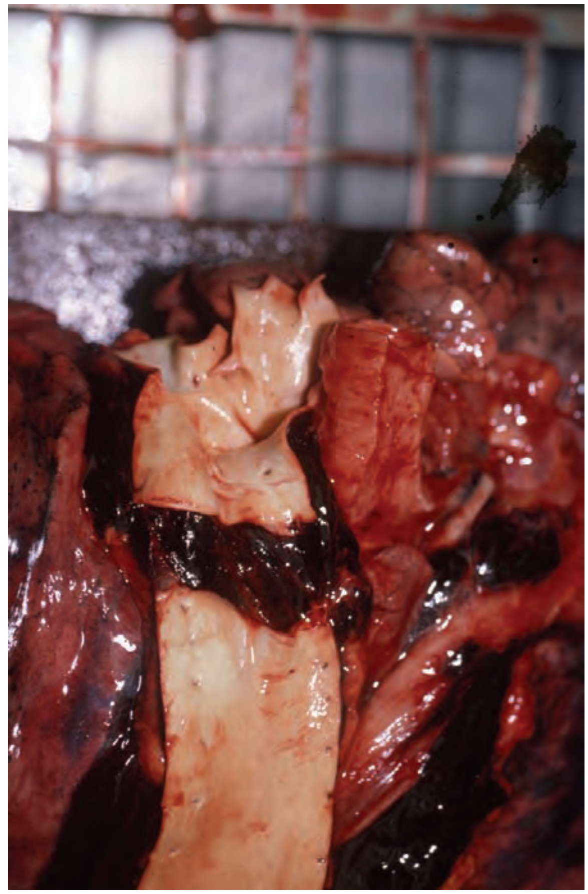
This individual was an unrestrained passenger in a motor vehicle during a head-on collision. His face went through the front windshield. He sustained multiple curvilinear lacerations and sharp-force injuries from broken glass and impact with the car roof. This type of pattern is consistent with a front windshield impact.

Note the dicing type injuries to the scalp with cubed fragments of glass embedded in the injuries. This type of injury is consistent with an impact and fracture of tempered glass, which is present in many side windows. These individuals were passengers with left-door-window head impact.

This individual was the passenger in a front seat collision. Note the abraded contusion from his seat belt.

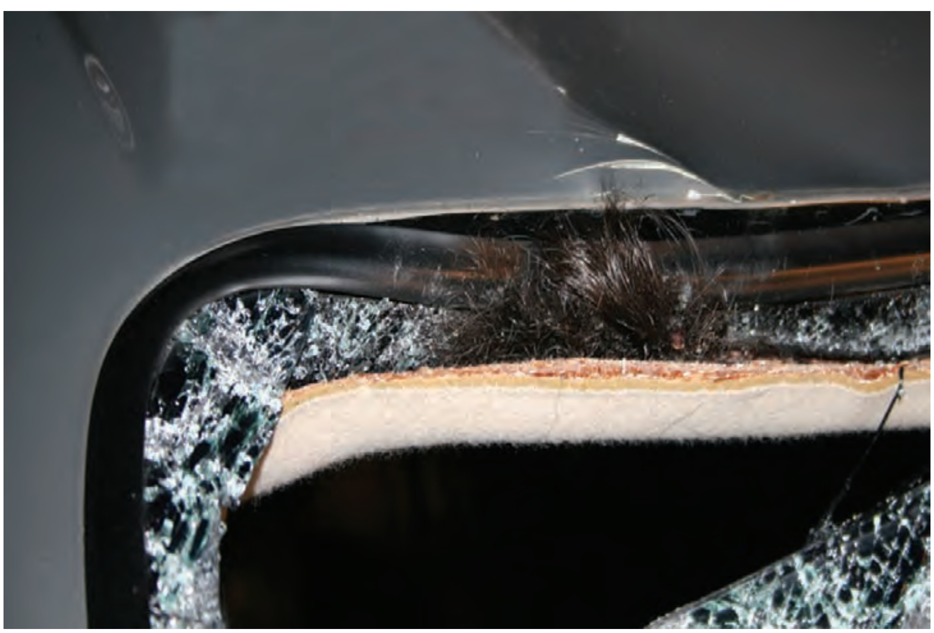
Note the abraded contusion at the chest and arm of this individual from a steering wheel impact. He was the driver of this car in a multiple-fatality vehicular accident.

This was the driver of a car in a motor vehicle accident. Note the abraded contusion from the seat belt.



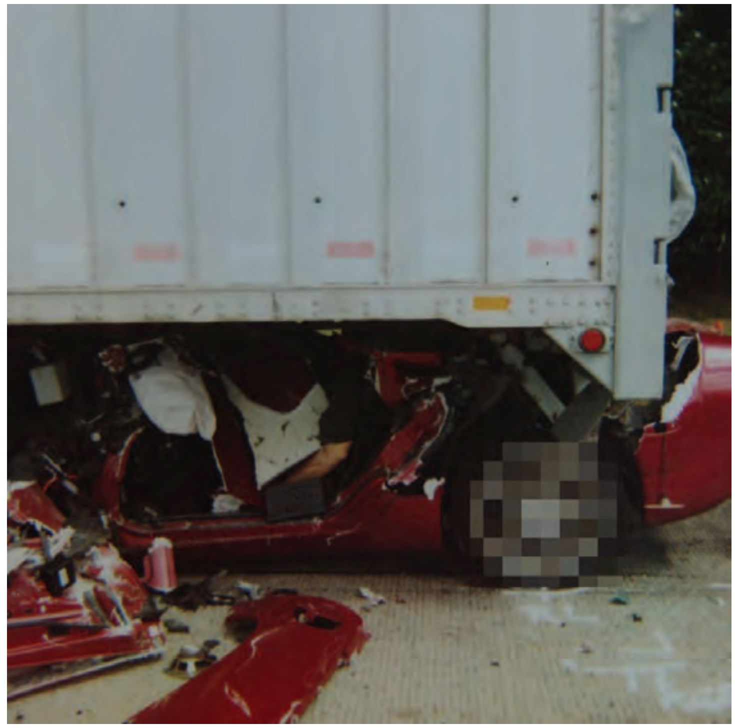
These demonstrate a transection of the aorta in the proximal descending region just distal to the ductus ligatosum. This is a common location of laceration.

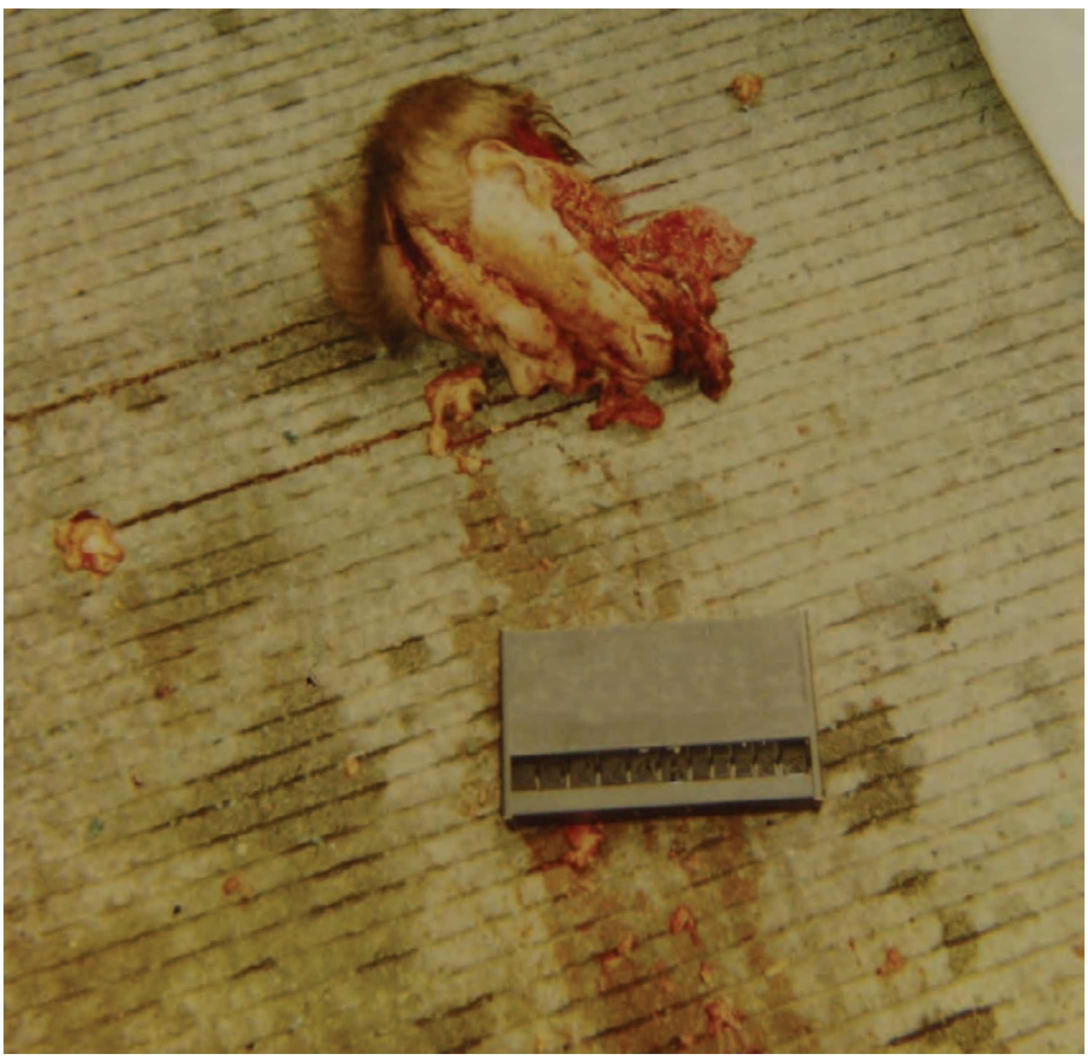
This photograph demonstrates an individual who was struck at a high rate of speed and hit the pavement with great force. Note the exposed comminuted skull fracture with brain material.



These pictures of a car show an impact from a pedestrian who was struck and run under. Note the fragment of scalp with hair embedded in the top part of the windshield and adjacent car roof. The driver of this car initially fled the scene.

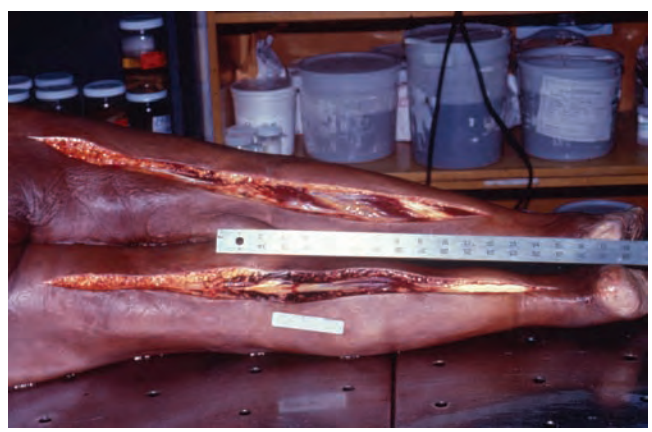
Pedestrians struck by cars with grill pattern injuries.



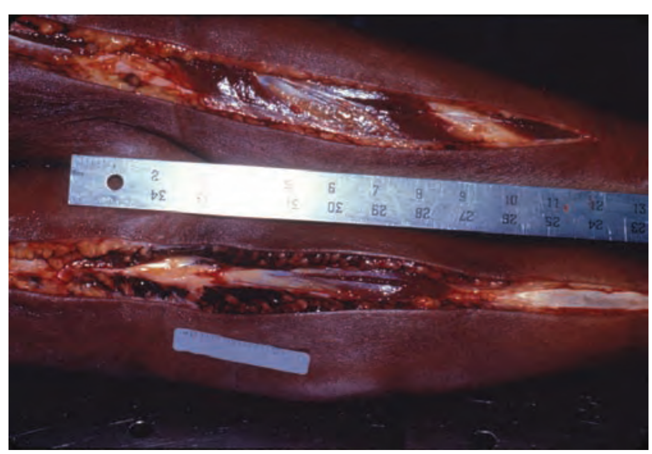


Motor vehicle accident with decapitation.

This is another pedestrian who was struck by a car. Note the tibial fracture at the weight-bearing left leg.

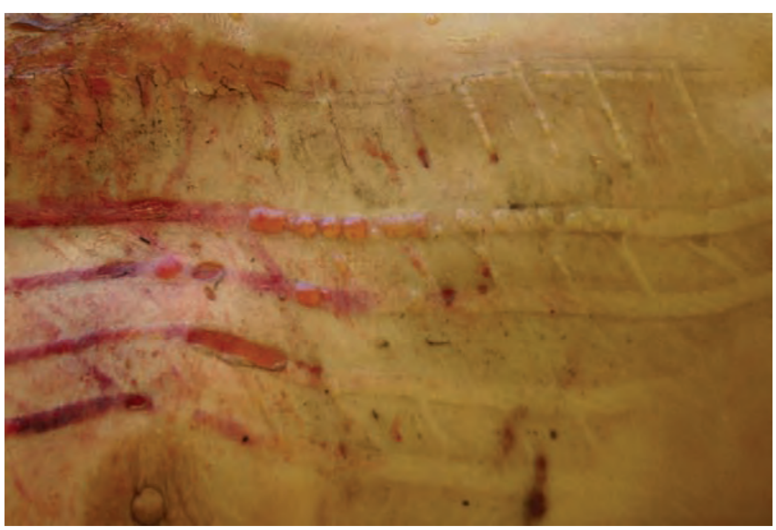


This individual was a pedestrian who was struck from behind by a car. Due to her dark skin, the contusions are not obvious from external examination alone. Incision of the posterior aspects of her leg reveal hemorrhage due to the bumper impact. It is good practice to photograph these impact sites with a ruler to demonstrate the distance from the decedent's heels. This can be matched to a particular car and to whether the driver applied brakes before striking this pedestrian. The front of the motor vehicle will go downward when the braking occurs.



These individuals were both struck by cars and dragged across the pavement. (a) shows yellow anemic abrasions that occurred after the first impact, where the decedent sustained extensive central nervous system injury and a transected aorta. He was thrown into another lane of traffic and dragged by another car. The anemic nature of this injury and yellow discoloration suggests decreased blood perfusion. The injury in (b) shows red to brown discoloration, which is significant for vital reaction in an individual who had an intact beating heart with blood pressure.

These are multiple examples of tire imprints from people who were run over by cars. In one case, the individual was thrown into another lane of traffic after being struck. The second car denied hitting the individual, but his tire pattern was a perfect match and there was forensic evidence found on the under surface of his car.



Individual trapped under a car with tire imprint to chest.

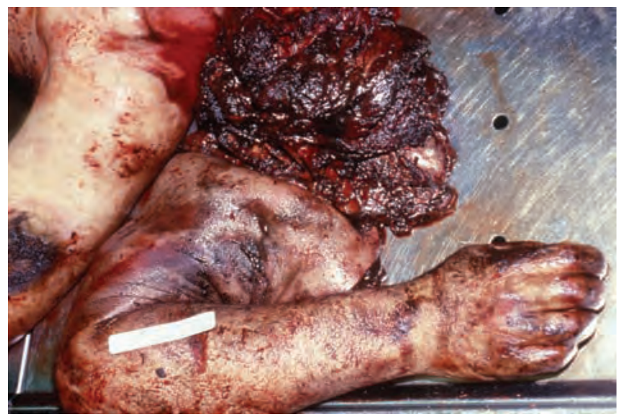
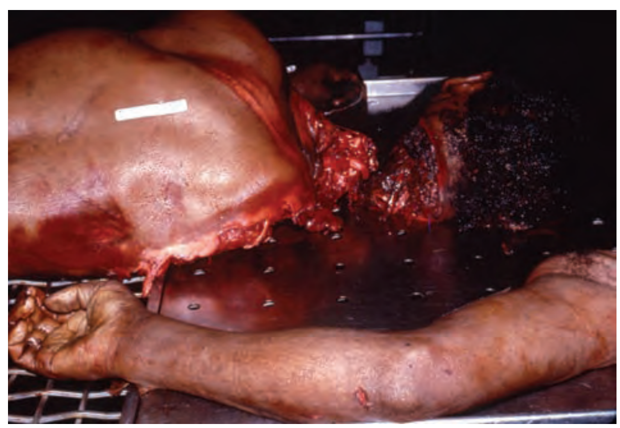
These individuals were run over by a motor vehicle while lying on the ground. Note the flap of skin being torn away from the thigh as the tire rolled over the leg.

These individuals were struck from behind by a car. Note the inguinal stretch marks caused by hyperextension of the hips and legs at the time of impact.

This fractured motorcycle helmet shows blood clot and brain material from an individual who fractured his skull after striking a pole.



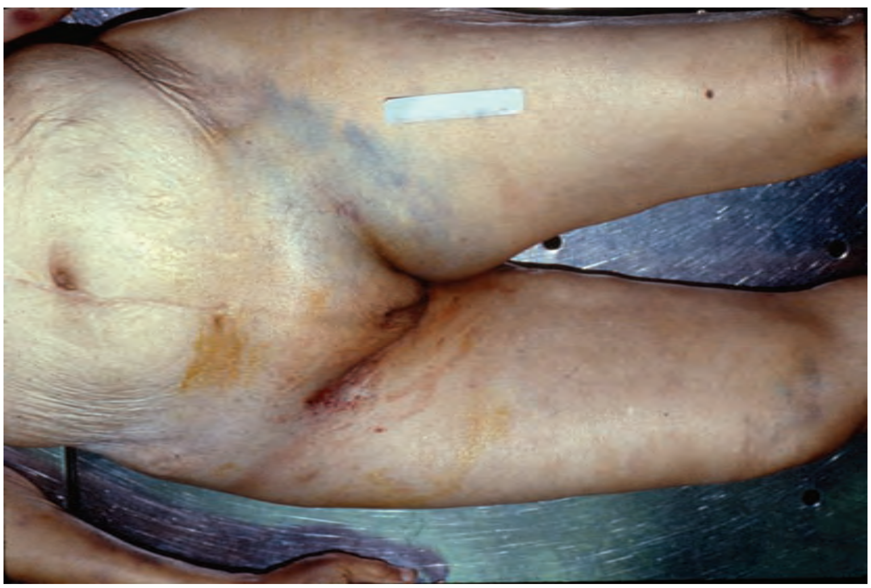



These figures demonstrate various subway fatalities where individuals were run over by trains. Note the separated body portions with extensive crush injury and axle grease from the train wheels.

This individual fell from the top of her steps and sustained multiple blunt-impact injuries including a femur fracture and a skull fracture. Note the slipper at the top steps.

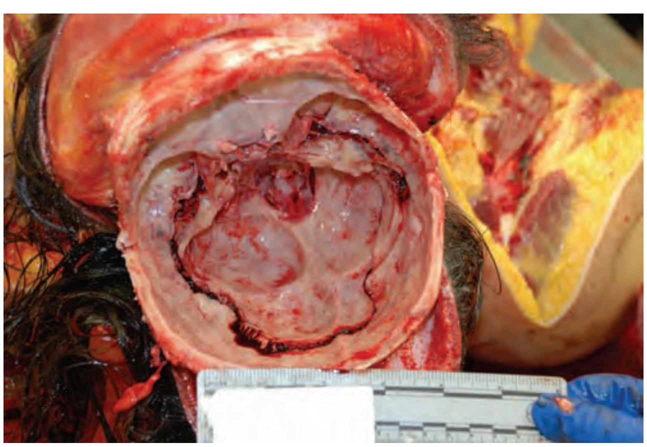
This individual has a femur fracture. Note that the fractured leg is shorter and the foot is laterally rotated.



People with significant osteoporosis may fracture bones with little force. These two pictures demonstrate large areas of contusion and ecchymosis following a femur fracture secondary to a standing height fall.


Angulated irregular abrasions of back due to striking a gravel bed with great force.


This decedent jumped from a great height and fractured his right femur. Note the fractured bone protruding from the thigh. Also note the shortening of the right leg with lateral rotation.



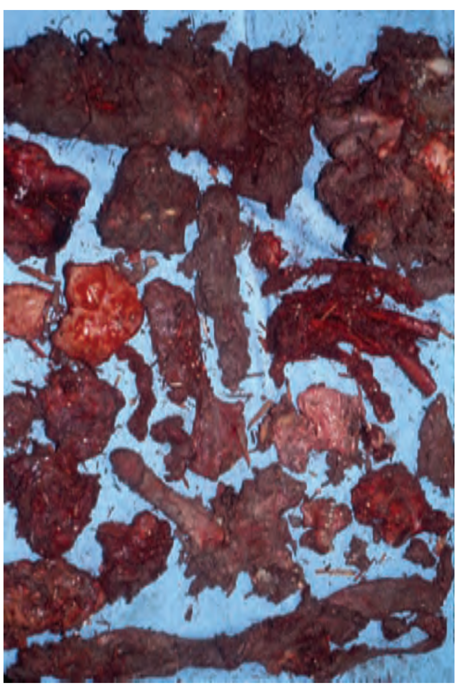
Ring fracture. This usually occurs following a fall with initial impact to the feet or buttocks.

The decedent fell from a great height and landed on his feet. The fractured tibia was forced through the bottom of the foot upon impact.

(a)

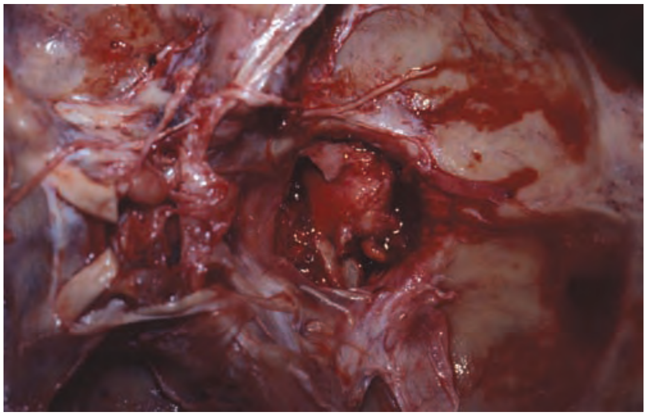
This individual was placed in a garbage dumpster and left to decompose. The trash compactor in the truck was engaged before the body was observed. Note the garbage truck shovel laceration to the back (a). Also note the intestines forced from the anus following compactor compression (b).

(b)

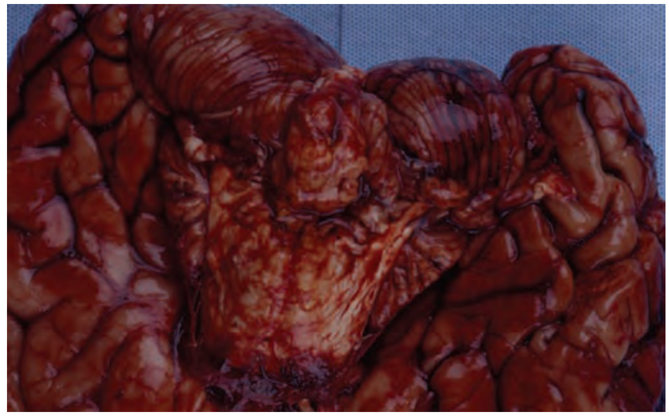


This individual was shot in the head, processed through a trash compactor, and left to decompose. Note the flattening of the body with extensive blunt-force injury and fragmentation.

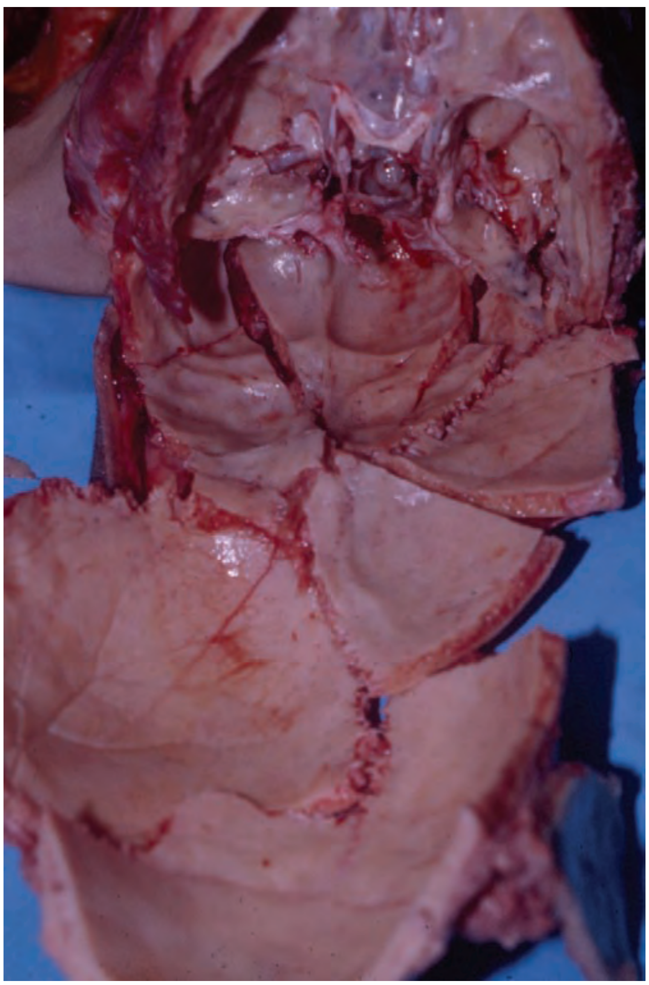
This individual slipped into a terrain leveler and sustained multiple abrasions, with blunt- and sharp-force injuries including extensive fractures and internal lacerations.



This individual had a severe blunt impact to his face that caused the atlanto-occipital ligaments to stretch and dislocate. This caused brainstem and upper cervical spinal cord injury resulting in asystole and apnea.

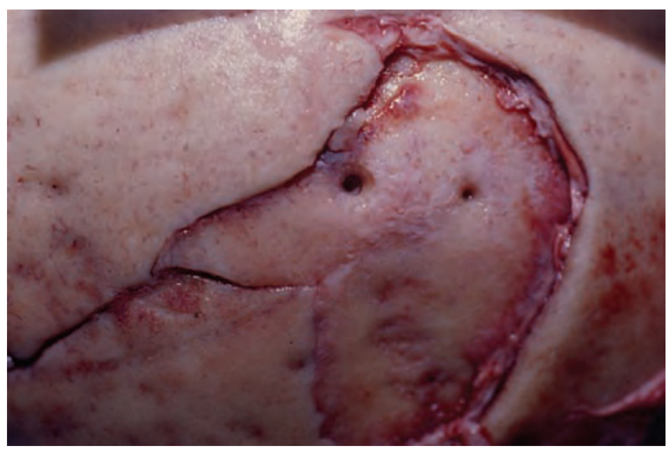


This picture of the base of the brain shows a medullary pontine laceration with extensive subarachnoid hemorrhage.



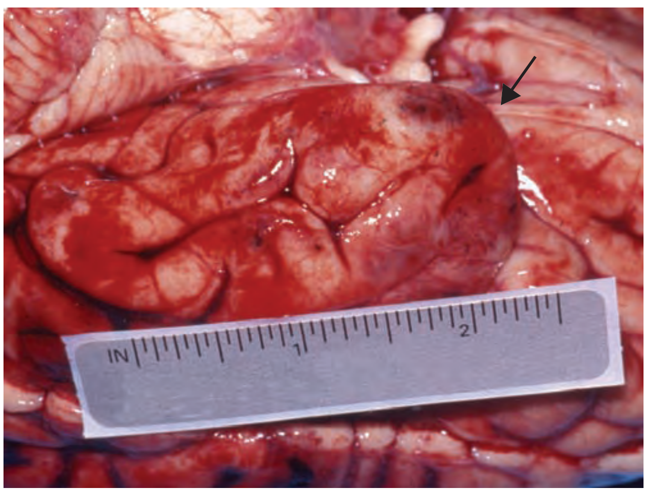
Comminuted skull fracture where the bone is broken into separate pieces.

Diastatic skull fracture showing the fracture site passes through a cranial suture.

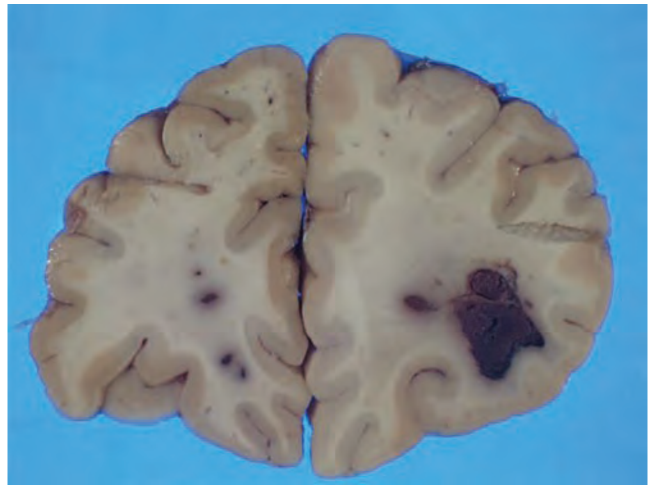


Healing skull fracture.

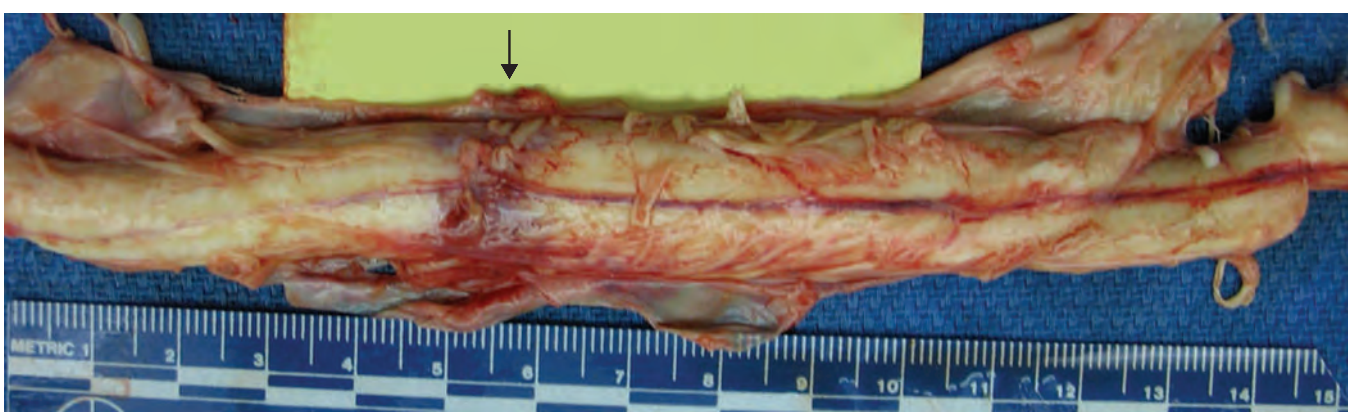
Frontal and temporal contusional hematomas associated with a falling impact to the back of the head in an individual with liver disease.



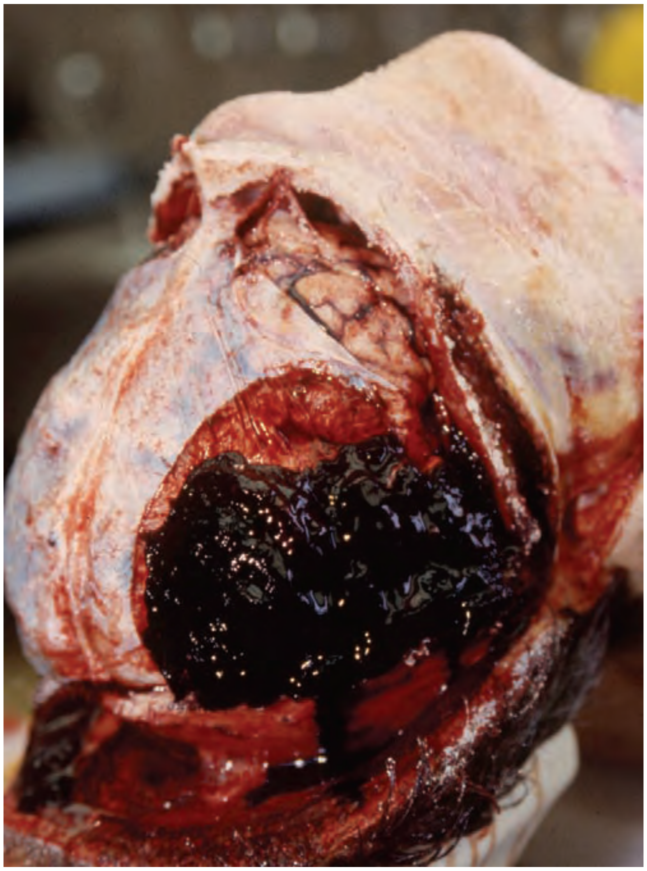
Temporal lobe with multiple splinter-type hemorrhages demonstrating typical cerebrocortical contusions.



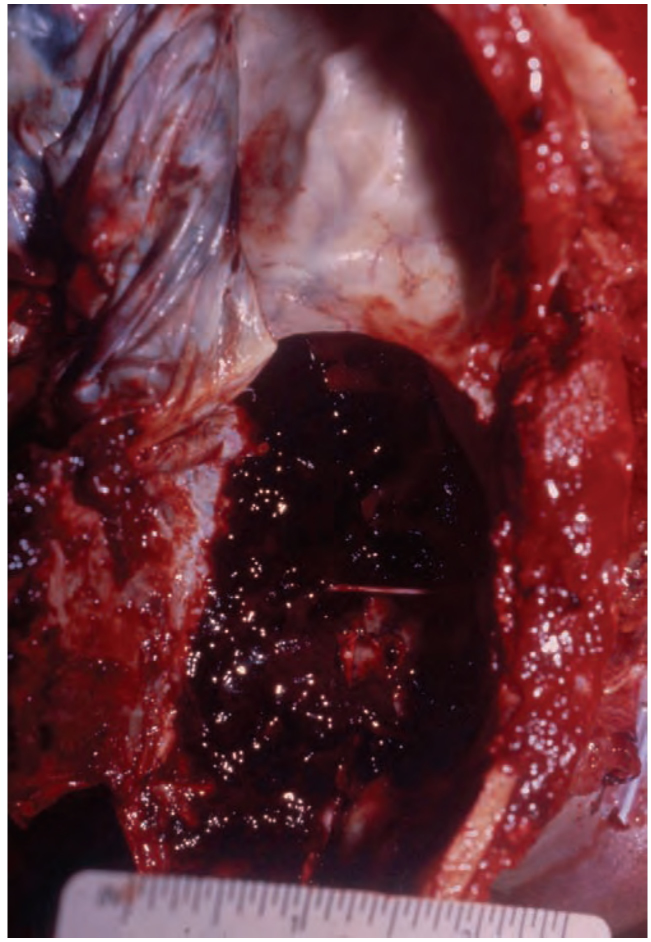
These images demonstrate gliding cortical contusions that typically occur near the white and gray matter junction following blunt-force head trauma.



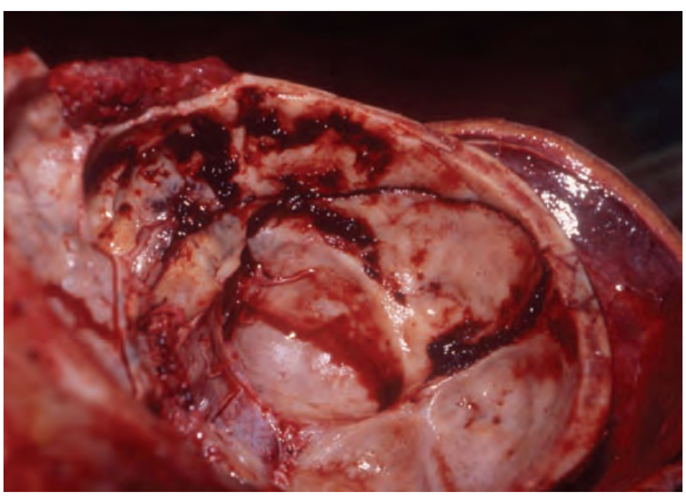
Spinal cord with a region of purple discoloration and softening demonstrating a spinal cord contusion.

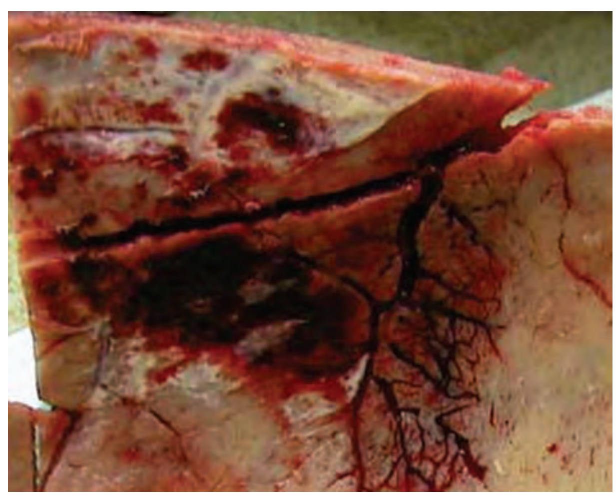


Epidural hemorrhage in an individual with a temporal bone fracture and middle meningeal artery laceration. Note the clotted blood at the surface of the dura mater.

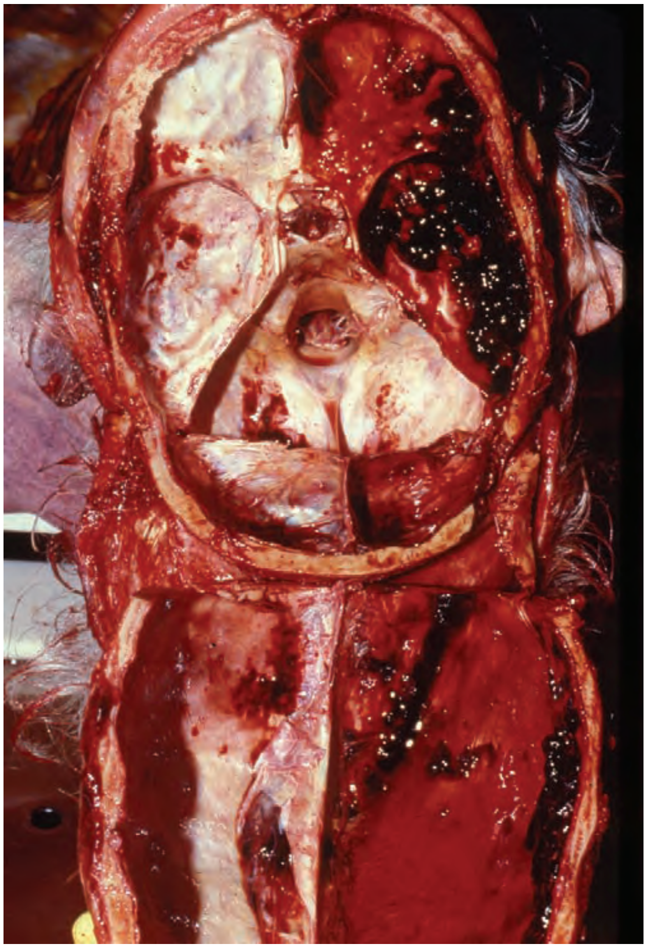


Epidural hemorrhage.

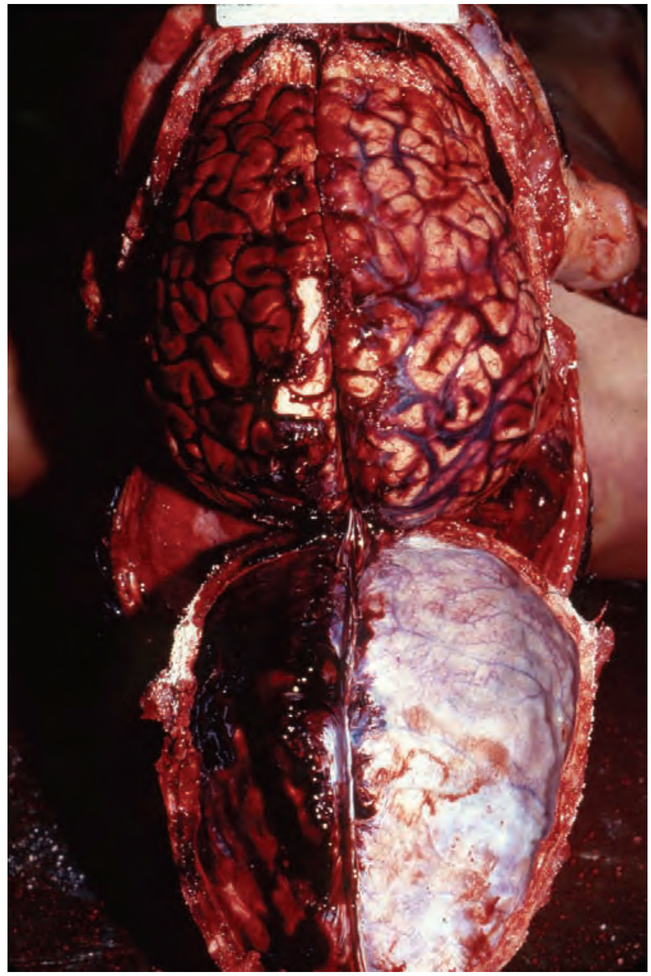




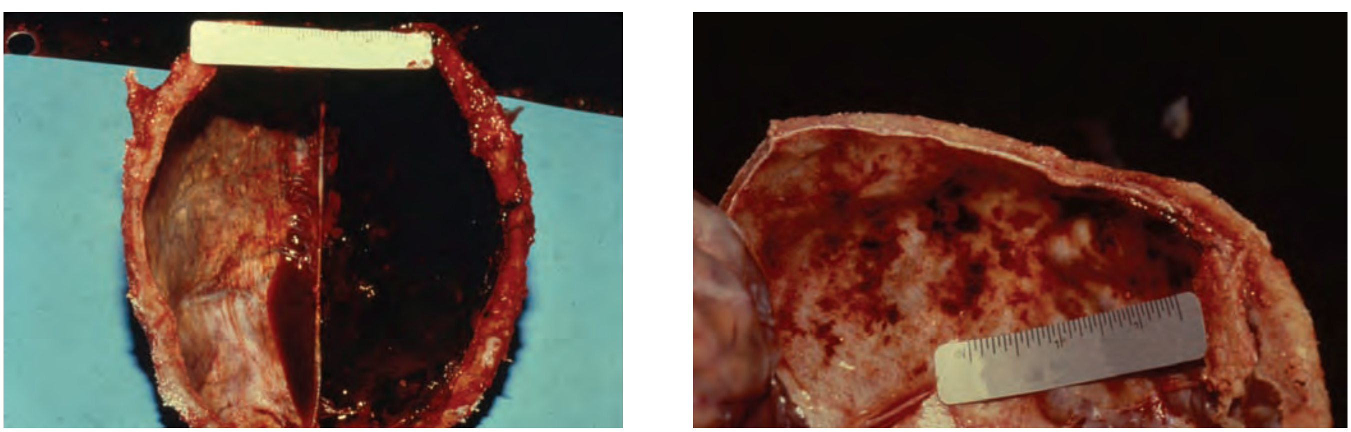
This shows the dura mater stripped from the inner aspect of the calvarium. Note the clotted adherent epidural hemorrhage within the temporal region of the skull.



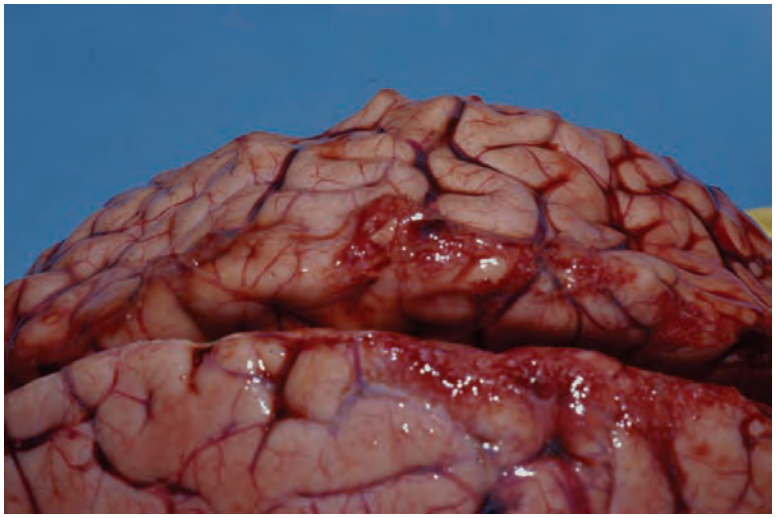
Acute right subdural hemorrhage.



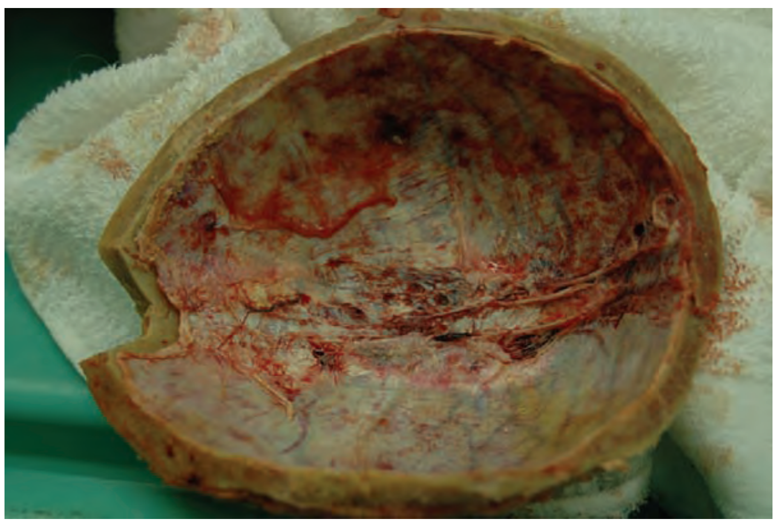
Left subdural hemorrhage that is slightly older with clotted adherent blood.



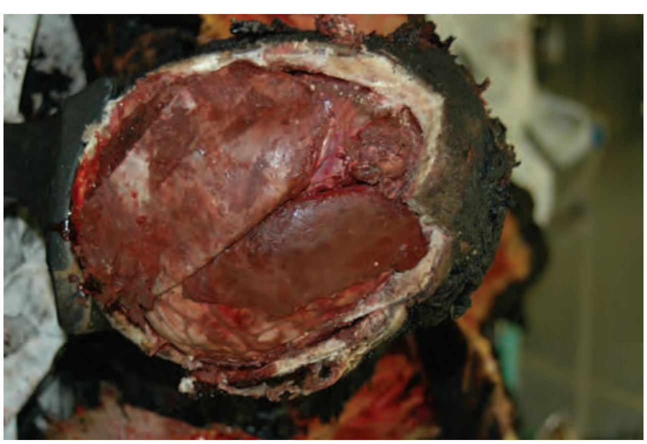
This demonstrates an older, clotted, red, adherent, subdural hemorrhage with portions of rust discoloration and membrane formation.

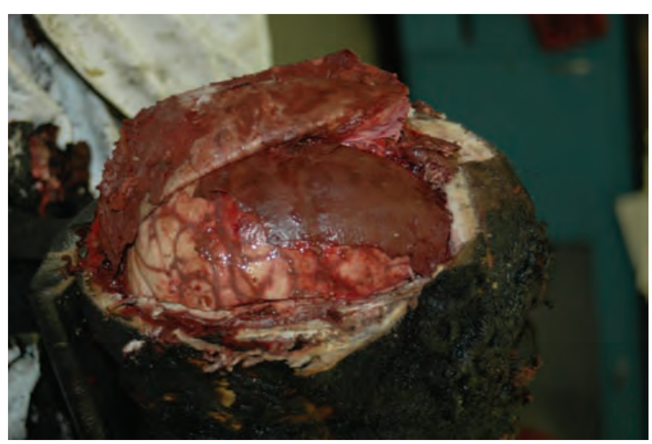


This cerebral cortex demonstrates an irregular flattened surface caused by a chronic subdural hematoma. In contrast, a chronic epidural hematoma generally leaves a flattened and less irregular cerebral cortex deformation.

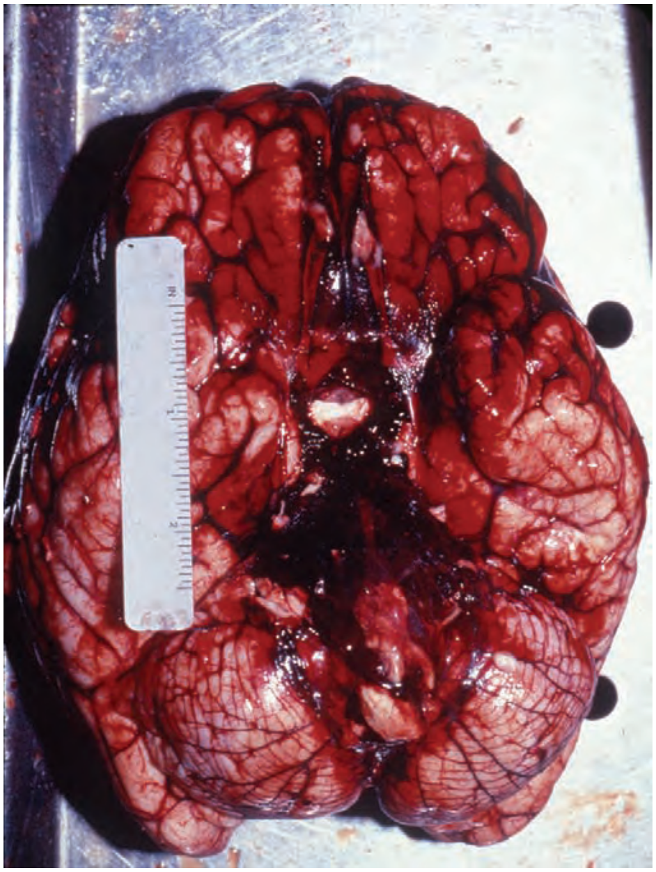


Old subdural hemorrhage with clear to rust-colored membrane formation. Note the membrane separation with beading up away from the midline caused by scraping a scalpel blade along the subdural surface.



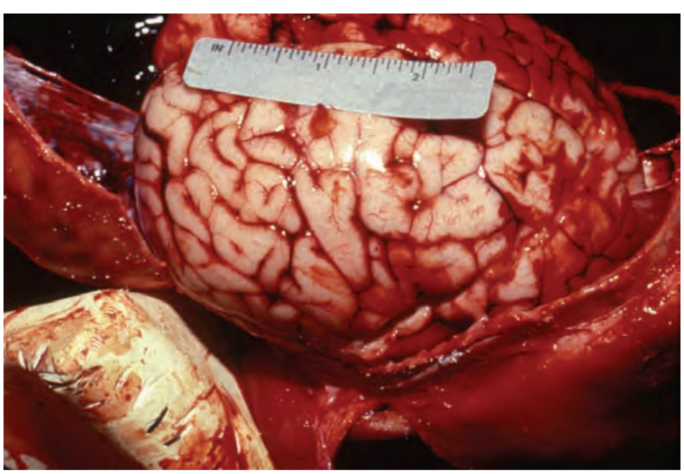


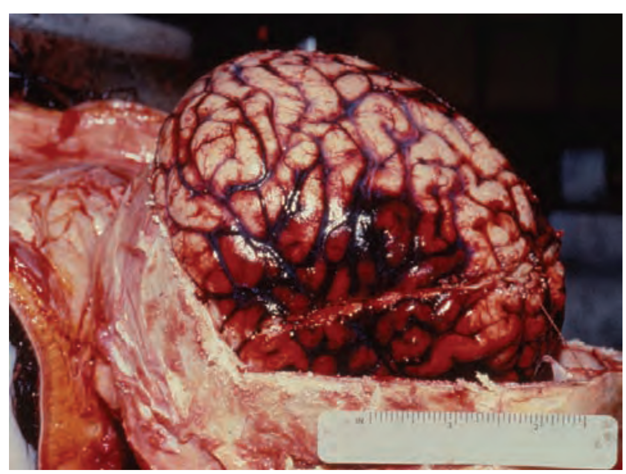
Large antemortem subdural hemorrhage altered by excessive heat due to fire.



This brain demonstrates multifocal subarachnoid hemorrhage with subarachnoid hematoma at the base of the brain. This hemorrhage occurred following a blunt impact to the face causing hyperextension and rotation of the head with laceration of the right vertebral artery.
Source: Kindleburger D., Gilmore K., Catanese C., Armbrustmacher V. Subarachnoid hemorrhage due to internal carotid artery laceration following blunt impact to face with hyperextension and rotation of neck: A case report and review of the literature. *Journal of Forensic Science* 48:1366–1368, 2003.

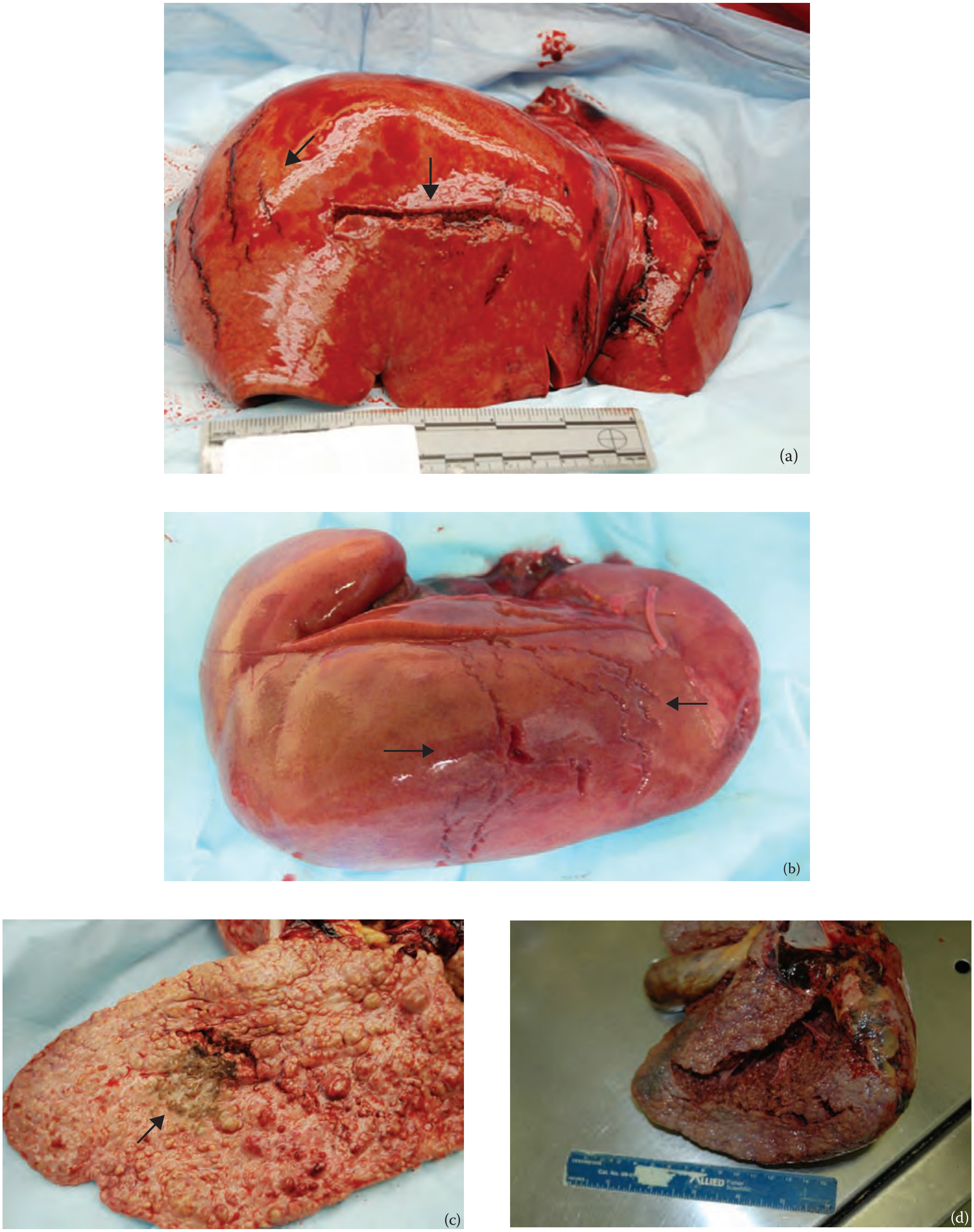
This demonstrates a large subarachnoid hemorrhage in an individual who died several days following a traumatic head injury.





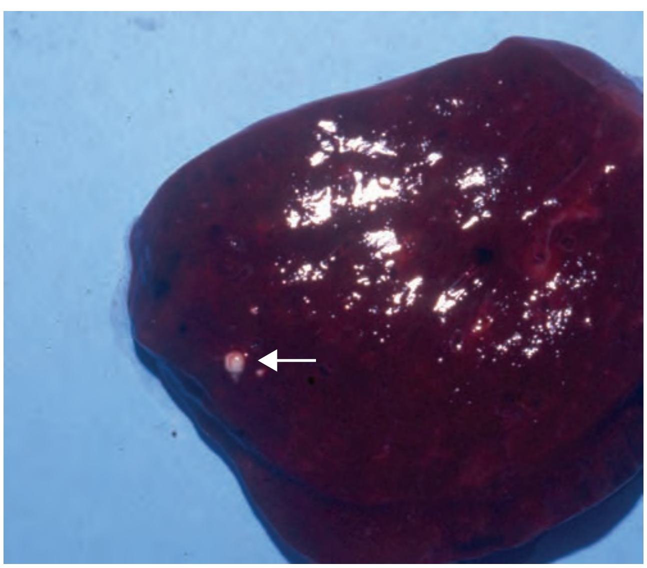
These brains are diffusely swollen with flattened gyral configuration and sulci obliteration. These individuals lived from several hours to several days after the initial insult.

Note the large areas of contusion with ecchymosis following minimal trauma in these individuals with chronic alcoholism, hepatic cirrhosis, and coagulopathy.

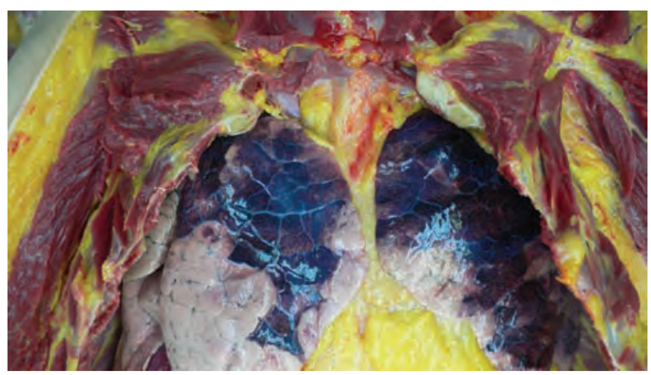


Lacerations of liver and kidney due to blunt-force trauma. Note that (c) and (d) have hepatic cirrhosis, which is less commonly associated with laceration due to fibrosis. A normal liver is the most common organ in the peritoneal cavity to lacerate (a) in association with blunt-force trauma.

This opened airway demonstrates a large piece of aspirated brain in an individual who was resuscitated following extensive blunt-force head trauma with comminuted skull fracture and communicating lacerations extending into the oral cavity. When Emergency Services arrived, the decedent was found in agonal respirations.



This cut section of lung demonstrates a small white to gray fragment in the parenchyma at the lower lateral aspect. Microscopic examination of this revealed intravascular embolic cerebellar tissue. This individual sustained a comminuted skull fracture with multiple central nervous system lacerations. He was vigorously resuscitated several times over the course of several hours. Brain tissue embolized through damaged blood vessels at the base of the brain.



Note the patchy red to purple discoloration indicating aspiration of blood in an individual with a gunshot wound to the head, lacerations extending to the oral pharynx and residual respiratory effort before death.



This is another pedestrian who was struck by a car and survived approximately 2 days in the hospital. Note the tibial fracture with adjacent abrasions and broken skin. There is also blister formation confined to this region associated with sepsis following infection associated with this trauma.

Sharp-Force Injuries

7

CHARLES A. CATANESE

Introduction

Sharp-force injuries are defined as injuries produced by an instrument with a thin edge or point. Examples of these instruments include a knife, razor, box cutter, scalpel, sharp-edged piece of metal, broken glass bottle, broken glass window, scissor, ice pick, fork, propeller, screw driver, saw blade, axe, machete, arrow, nail, pickaxe, spiked fence post, meat cleaver, etc.

A *stab wound* is typically made by a knife blade and is defined as having a greater depth of penetration than surface dimension. An *incised wound* is a slicing-type injury where the surface dimension is greater than the depth of penetration.

Accurate, concise, and organized wound documentation is important, as with all other injuries. Each injury should have a documented location on the body, including a description of adjacent abrasions or contusions, wound dimensions, depth of penetration, and direction of penetration into the body. All injured structures should be documented, including the amount of hemorrhage both in the wound track and within body cavities. In cases where there are multiple injuries, it is acceptable to group them with ranges. It is good practice to take overall photographs of the body before and after cleaning; as well as close-up photographs of each wound.

Important aspects concerning interpretation of injury involve pattern recognition. Familiarization with this will allow opinion formulation concerning correlation of a particular instrument to a particular wound. One example involved the arrest of several suspects with different concealed weapons. The police may approach you to render an opinion about what type of weapon produced injuries so they can focus their early investigation. In one actual case, each suspect had a different instrument in his or her pocket, including a flat-edged pocket knife, a box cutter, a screw driver, and a slightly bent serrated table knife. The injuries to the decedent's body consisted of slit-like perforations with multiple adjacent parallel linear abrasions. This pattern injury is consistent with a serrated knife. Many of the images in this chapter are designed to help with pattern recognition.

Location and Direction of Injury

This should be given with reference to a particular body position, usually standard anatomic planes. Each wound should be documented by location on the body's surface, and measured from vertical and horizontal planes of reference. An example of this would be from below the top of the head or above the feet, and to the right or left of the midline. Standard anatomic planes are demonstrated with the body in an upright position with the head tilted slightly upward, the legs together, the arms at the sides, and palms facing forward. The head is superior and the feet inferior, medial is toward the midline and lateral away from the midline. The anterior or front of the body includes the face, chest, and the palms. The posterior part of the body includes the back, buttocks, etc. The direction of the wound into or through the body should be given with reference to three planes when possible, front–back, right–left, and up–down. This is important because it allows one to correlate the injuries to possible assault descriptions and help discredit or substantiate statements.

Wound Dimension

This should be documented separately for each sharp-force injury, unless there are many that can be grouped together and described in ranges. Example: There are twenty 1-inch to 2-inch, by up to 1/4-inch, stab wounds within a 5-inch × 7-inch region at the middle aspect of the right chest, which is centered 13 inches below the top of the head and 4 inches to the right of the midline.

It is good practice to document the injury as it exists on the body and then again when in a relaxed state. The important aspect is to document the wound dimension in ranges that most closely reflect the actual dimensions of the knife blade or instrument. A stab wound can be put into a relaxed state by pressing the surrounding skin toward the wound and releasing the surrounding tension, or by placing tape over the perforation site to approximate the margins. It is also acceptable to cut a square around the surrounding skin to release the tension. The skin and underlying tissues are elastic, with

different degrees of tension. This can make the surface dimension of the wound length and width slightly variable depending on location and orientation of the body. Cut marks through bone and cartilage may reflect accurate weapon dimension with tool marks and should be retained in formaldehyde.

This same concept applies for the depth of penetration, as well. Dimensions should be given in a range to account for changes in body position when examined on the autopsy table compared with the body position when the injuries were inflicted. Variables that may change this parameter while the assault is taking place include deep breaths or exhales, flexion, extension, rotation, the force used to inflict the injury, the location on the body including underlying bone or soft tissue, etc.

Adjacent Abrasions and Contusions

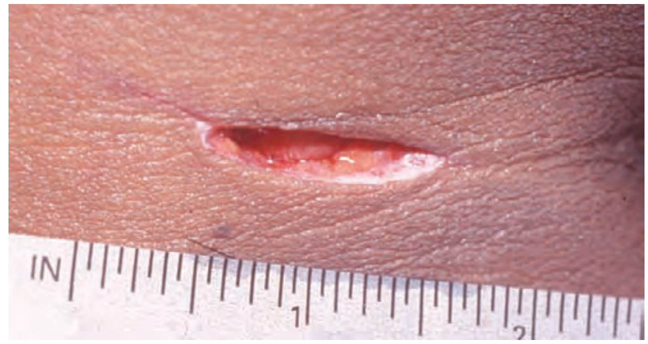
These may indicate body contact from the knife handle, lower part of the knife blade, or the knife hilt. This is important information in formulating an opinion as to how much force was needed to produce the injury. If the knife blade penetrates a bone and there are hilt marks adjacent to the perforation site, one can extrapolate that the knife must have been stuck into the body with great force.

Injured Organs or Structures

This information helps to allow interpretation of how functional one might be after an assault. The number and extent of internal injuries give insight into the nature of the assault and perpetrator.

For instance, "I stabbed him in the neck and he continued to chase me so I stabbed him again in the chest and abdomen." If the neck wound injured the spinal cord, you know the statement is false because the victim would no longer have voluntary movement to part of the body, as with a tendon or peripheral nerve's being cut. Also, depending on the structures damaged, the rate of blood loss may be quite variable. This would help define how fast the individual would lose blood, and what the individual might be capable of doing after the injury, and for how long. Questions like this may often come up in trial. A transected aorta would incapacitate someone more rapidly than a transected brachial (arm) artery, which would be more rapid than a transected cephalic (superficial) vein. Someone with a stab wound to the heart will often lose consciousness within minutes but still be capable of running away, defending themselves, or continuing an assault, particularly if the heart does not go into a lethal arrhythmia. It is possible for someone to get stabbed in the heart, run several blocks and shoot several people before dying.

Stab wound consisting of a flat slit-like perforation with minimal surrounding skin tension.



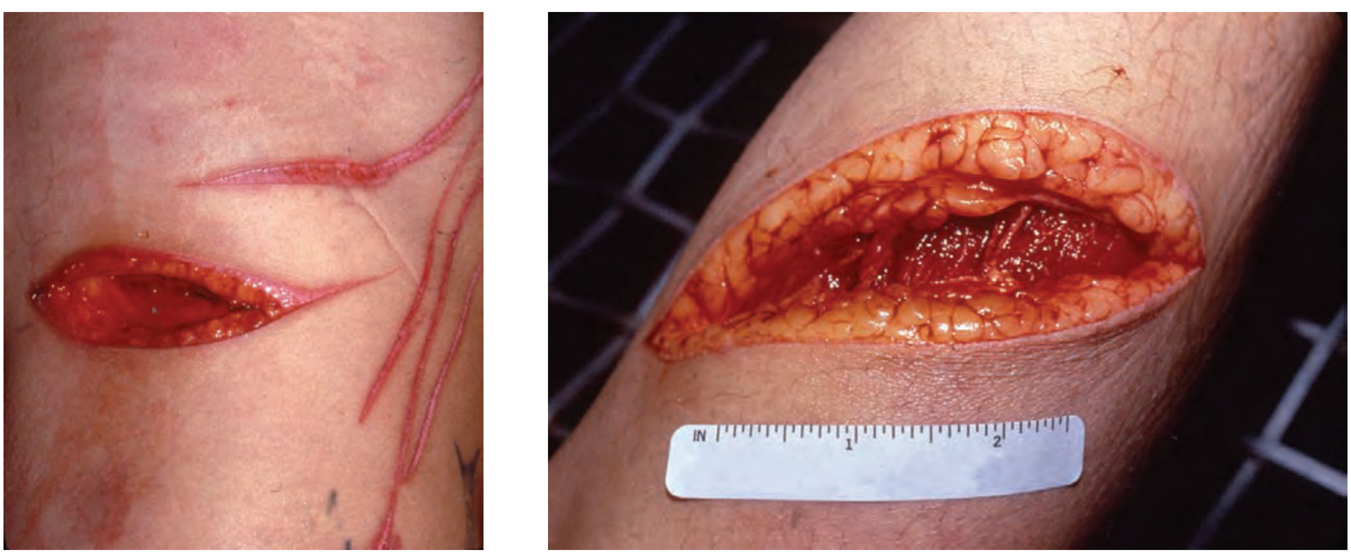
Stab wound with moderate surrounding skin tension. Note the separation of the wound margins.

Gaping stab wound consisting of an oval perforation caused by significant surrounding skin tension.

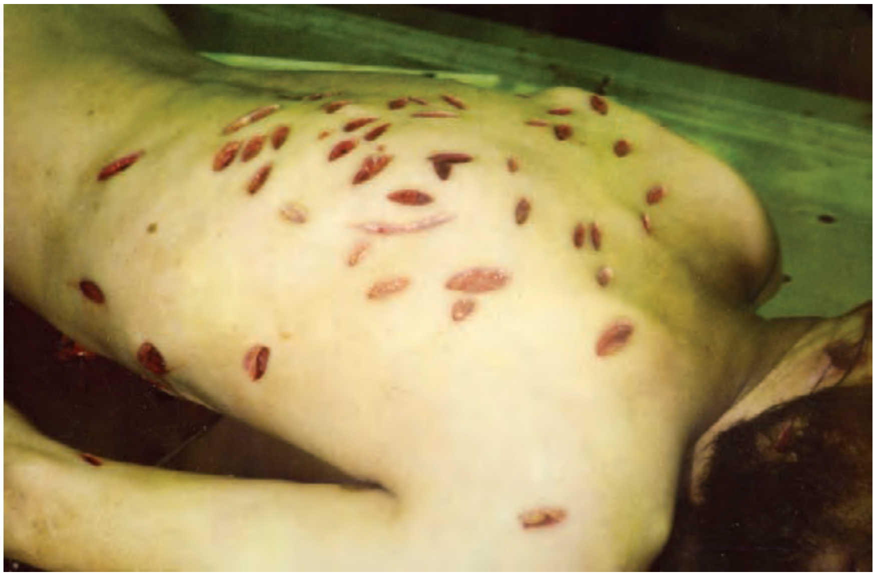
A non-serrated knife blade similar to the one used to inflict these wounds. It is important to take the surrounding skin tension into account when estimating the size and type of weapon used.

Incised wounds produced by a broken bottle.

Incised wound to the face produced by a knife.

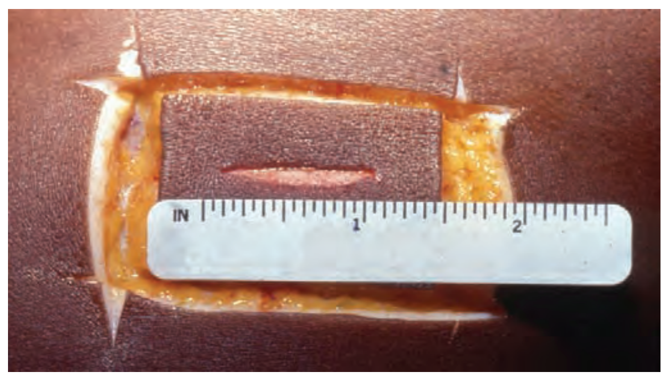


Incised wounds produced by a box cutter.

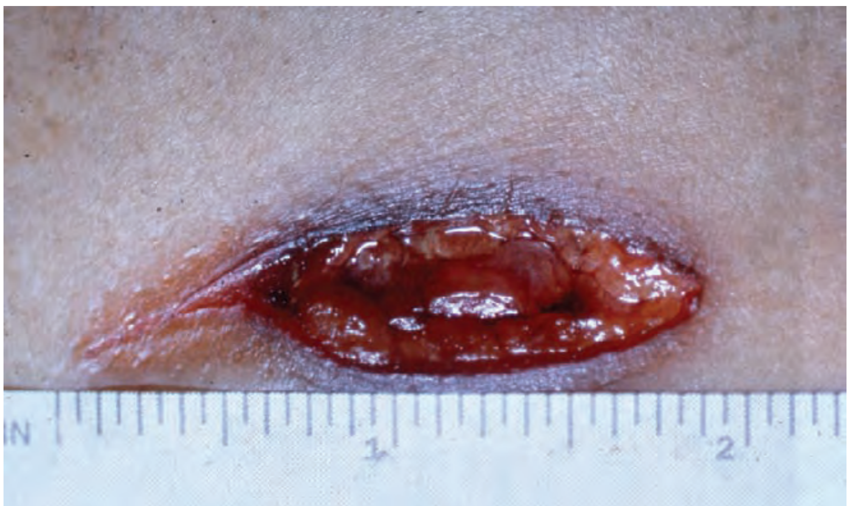


These are multiple stab wounds to the back. Note the varying dimensions and gaping nature due to the varying degrees of skin tension from underlying tissue planes in different locations.

Several of these wounds were chosen based on estimation that they were more reflective of the actual knife blade size. These wounds were then cut into a relaxed state and re-measured to help estimate the actual size of the knife blade.



This is a close-up of one of the wounds that were cut into a relaxed state and measured. Note the sharp end at the left aspect and the blunt end at the right aspect.

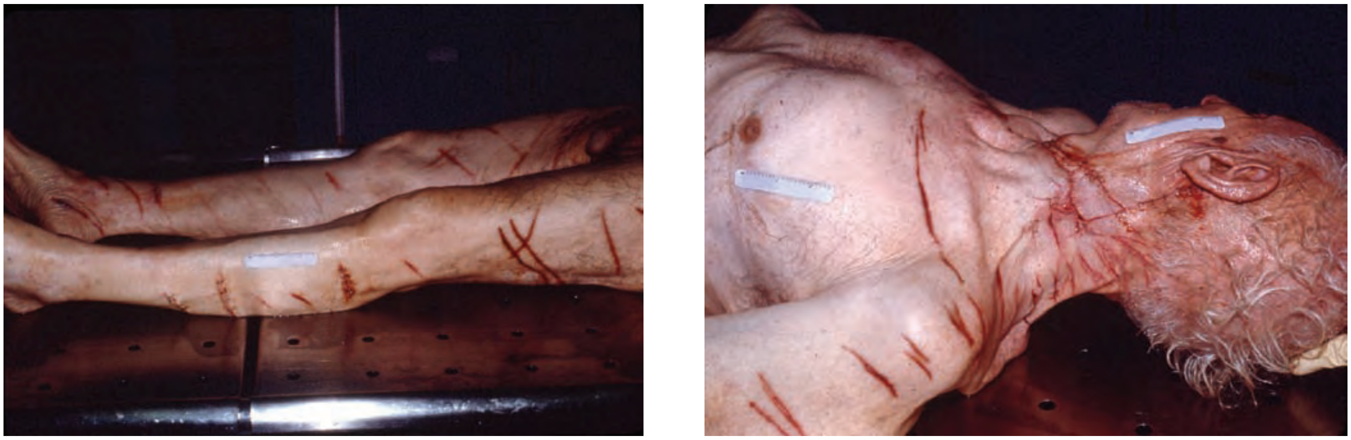


Stab wounds to body with slight drying of the margins and a "linear extension" from one end due to the sharp part of the knife blade being dragged through the wound and across the body surface, changing the dimension of the injury.

These two images demonstrate a "swallowtail"-type injury where the knife was inserted into the body in one direction, turned and then removed in another direction, producing two angulated cuts. This type of injury may be produced by the movement of the perpetrator, victim, or both.

These stab wounds demonstrate adjacent abrasions from the hilt of the knife contacting the skin with great force.

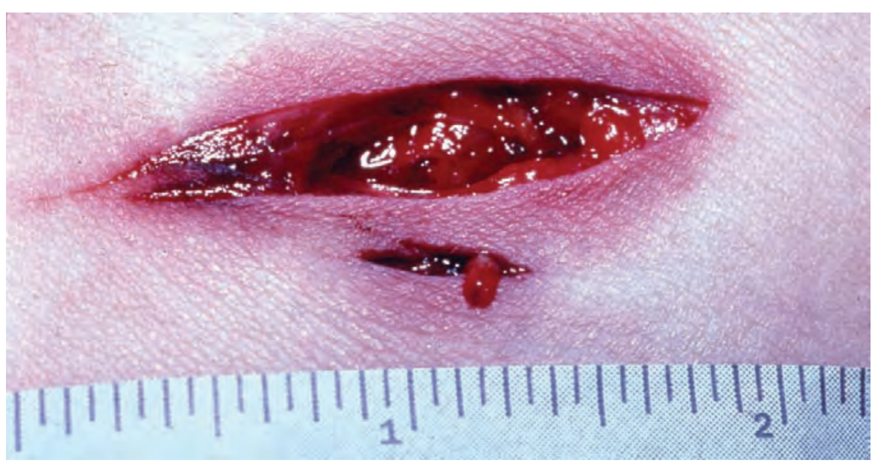
Multiple self-inflected linear abrasions and incised wounds to the arms and wrists demonstrating hesitation marks in individuals who committed suicide with other lethal injuries.



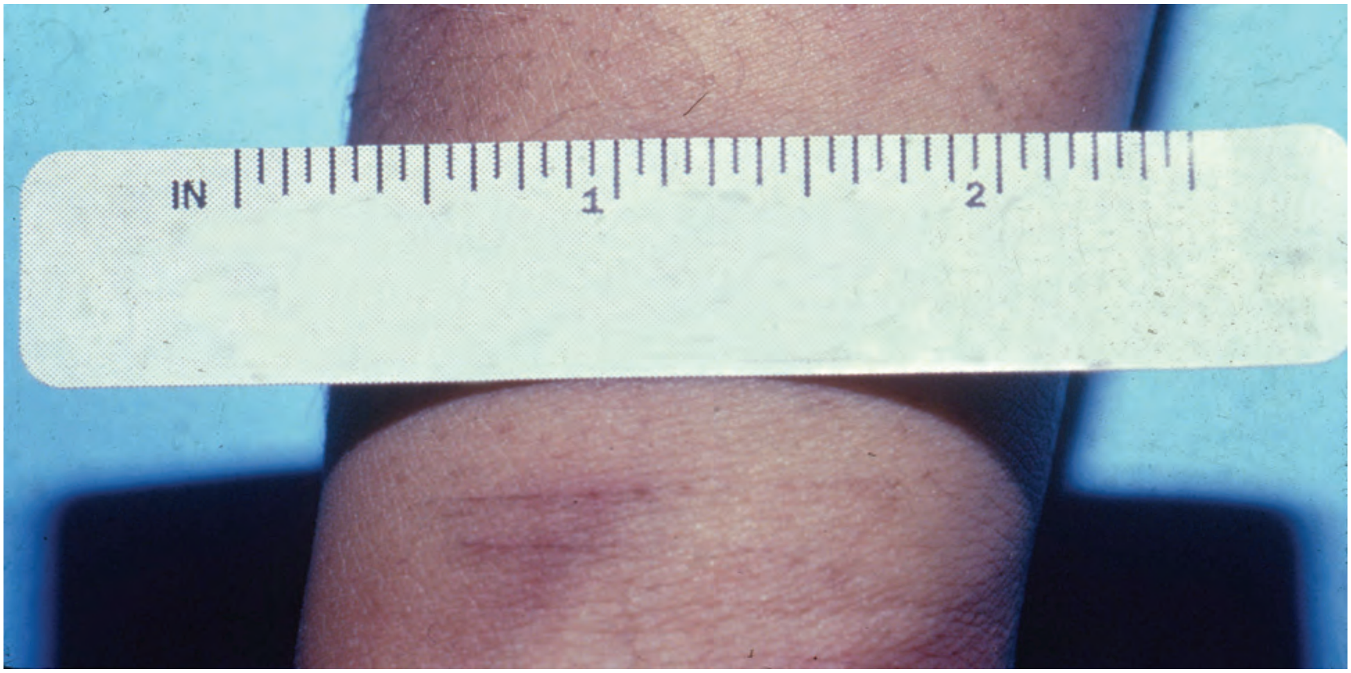
Multiple linear incised wounds in an individual who lived for several hours. He died of a heart attack associated with the stress and blood loss from the self-inflicted injuries. The manner of death in this case was classified as suicide. The cause of death was listed as both multiple incised wounds and heart disease.

Multiple self-inflicted sharp-force injuries including stab and incised wounds. Note the tightly clustered orientation of these injuries, which is common in suicides.

Multiple self-inflicted stab wounds. This individual was found with her hands surrounding the knife handle in a moderate state of rigor mortis.



This individual was found with multiple clustered linear abrasions, incised wounds, and stab wounds to the wrists, arms, and ankles. She first attempted suicide by ingesting large quantities of acetaminophen, then inflicted the above sharp-force injuries. Note the erythema around the wounds, indicating vital reaction. There was blood noted all over the apartment. The individual later jumped out a window and died from blunt-impact injuries. The wounds shown are hesitation wounds.



Superficial linear abrasions caused by dragging a knife blade across the wrist and hand prior to committing suicide by hanging.

Multiple clustered self-inflicted incised and stab wounds located on each side of the neck and chest in an individual who committed suicide. Most of these stab wounds were very superficial in depth of penetration and can be described as hesitation marks. Three of these stab wounds to the chest entered the thoracic cavity and penetrated the heart and lung, causing death. Note the slight degree of decomposition with wound margin drying.

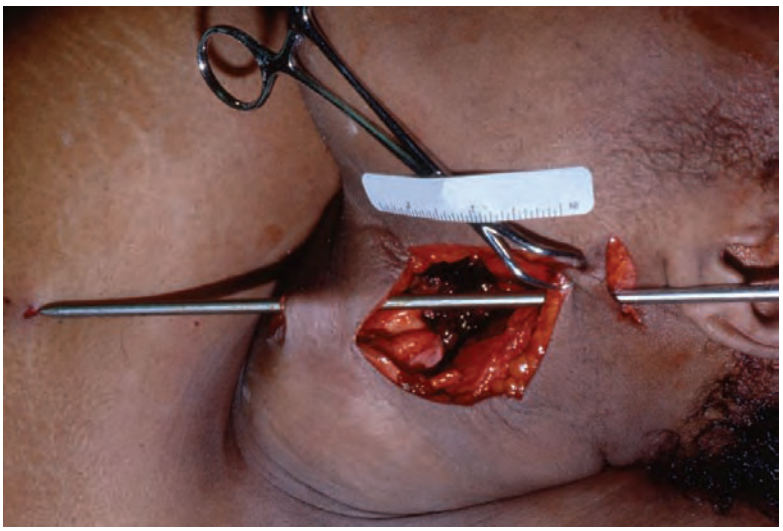
Multiple clustered homicidal stab wounds in individuals who were also bound during a sexual assault. Note the location of the multiple stab wounds to the middle aspect of the individual's back, making it virtually impossible for them to have been self-inflicted.

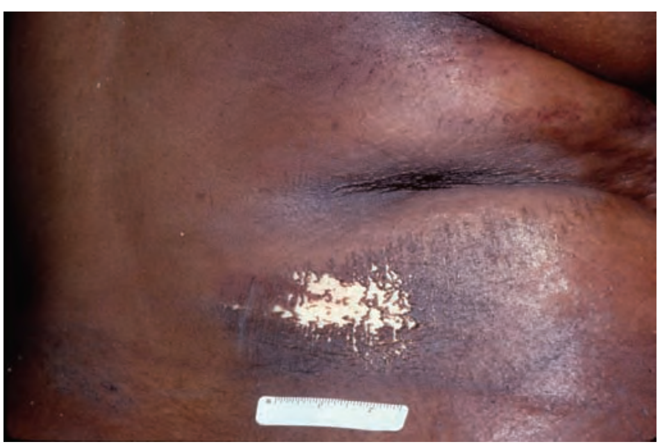




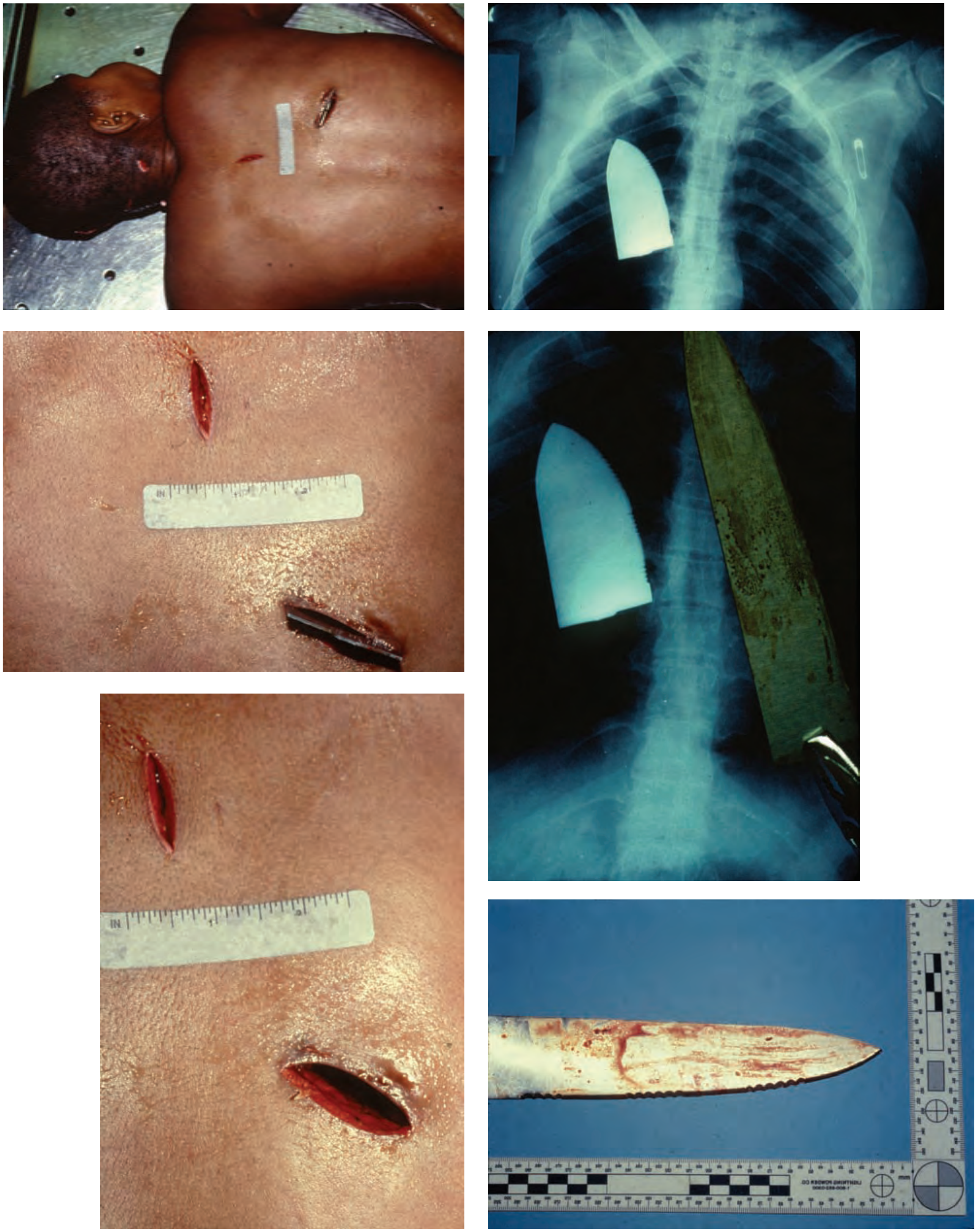
These are multiple examples of defensive-type wounds from individuals who were attempting to ward off an assault from a knife-wielding attacker. Note the multiple linear abrasions, incised wounds, and stab wounds to the hands. Several of these injuries show cut marks between the thumb and fingers, due to the individual's attempting to grab the knife blade.

Other examples of wounds consistent with being inflicted while an individual is fending off an attack.



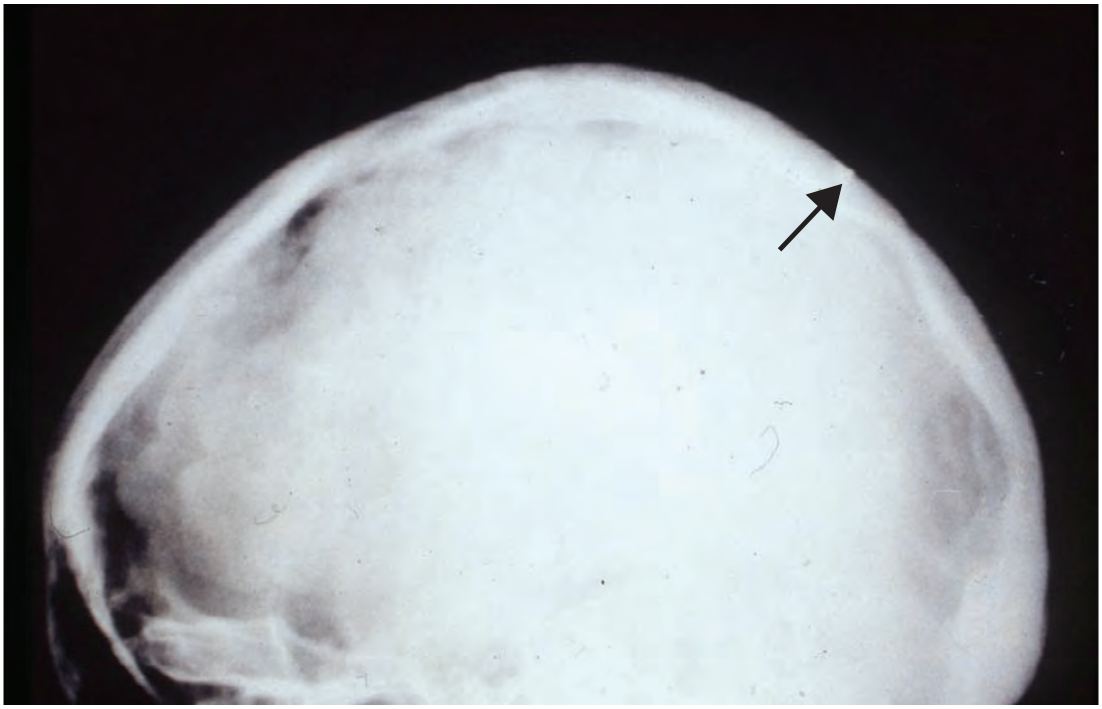


This individual was stabbed in the neck and then thrown from a window. The perpetrator described the injuries as being self-inflicted by the decedent who cut herself and then jumped out a window. The window ledge and outside wall were smeared with blood, which was easily visible from below. During autopsy, approximation of the margins revealed a stab wound just below the left ear from a knife blade that exited through her neck and stuck in her right shoulder. There was also an anemic abrasion to her back and an anemic laceration to the scalp, indicating the decedent had lost much of her blood volume and did not have a beating heart with blood pressure enough to produce hemorrhage from the injuries sustained when striking the ground.

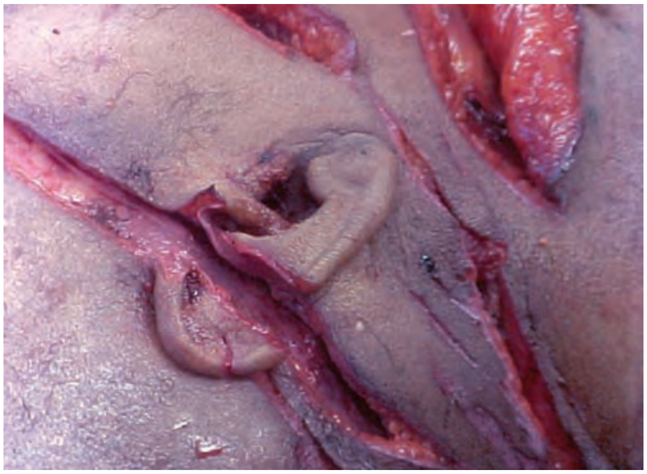


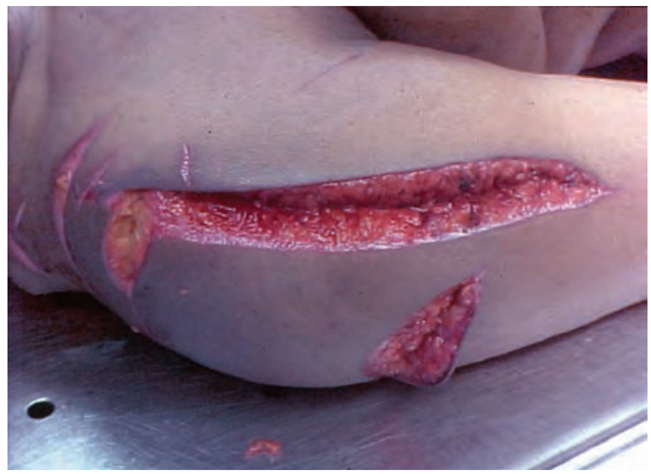
Note the two stab wounds to the left back and the broken knife blade extending from one of the wound tracks. Note the close-up view of the back, demonstrating the knife within the wound track and then with the knife removed. Note the change in the wound dimension after the knife was removed. This demonstrates the elastic nature of skin and the possible challenges of correlating a weapon to a particular wound dimension. Also note the x-ray, which demonstrates the knife blade within the body. Note the dimension of the actual knife blade compared with the dimension of the blade image on the x-ray. This is due to the angle in which the x-rays contacted the knife blade in the thoracic cavity. Weapon.

Broken knife blade left in body following a homicidal assault. This knife was stuck into this individual with great force and the blade got stuck in a bone. When the perpetrator attempted to remove it, the handle broke off and the knife blade was left behind.

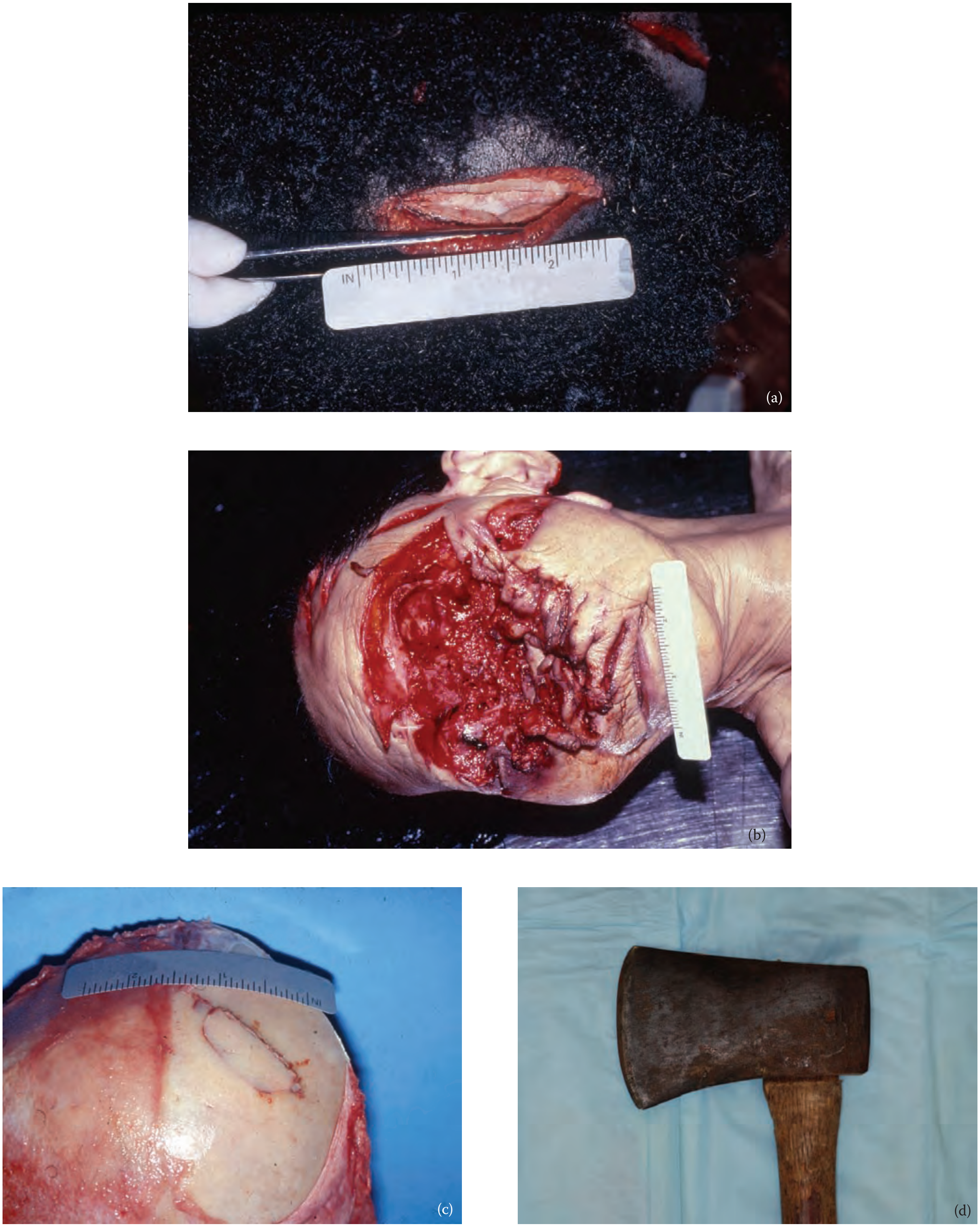


This individual was stabbed more than 75 times by a scorned lover. The tip of the knife blade broke off in the skull during this violent assault. Note the small radio-dense fragment depicted in these skull x-rays. This reinforces the notion that it is good practice to x-ray all sharp-force homicidal violence cases. A fragmented portion of knife blade can later be matched to a suspect's knife.

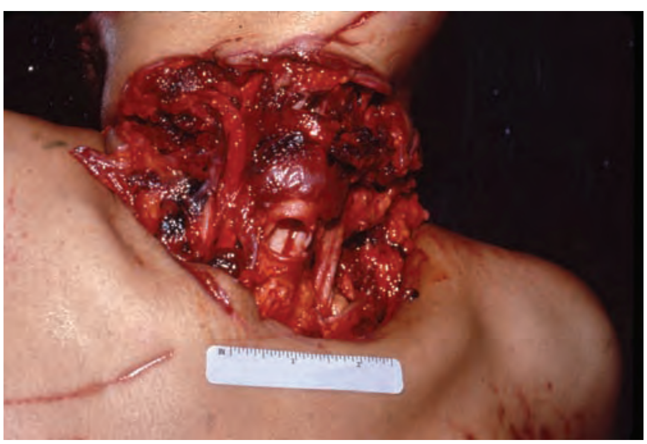


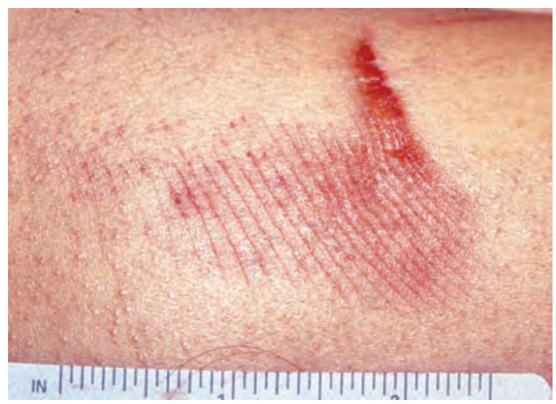
These individuals were attacked multiple times with machetes. Note the long gaping hack marks, several of which cut into and through bone. Most often, this degree of violent rage indicates the victim and the perpetrator had a relationship.



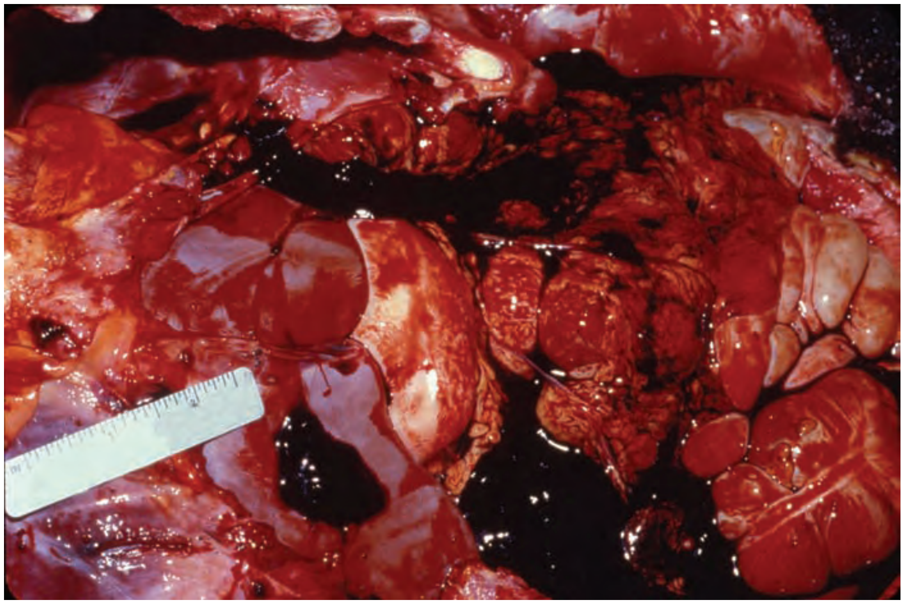
Chopping-type sharp-force injuries produced by an axe. Image (b) shows an individual whose eyes were chopped out by another person with a long history of psychosis. These types of assaults are not common. He reportedly did this because she kept staring at him.

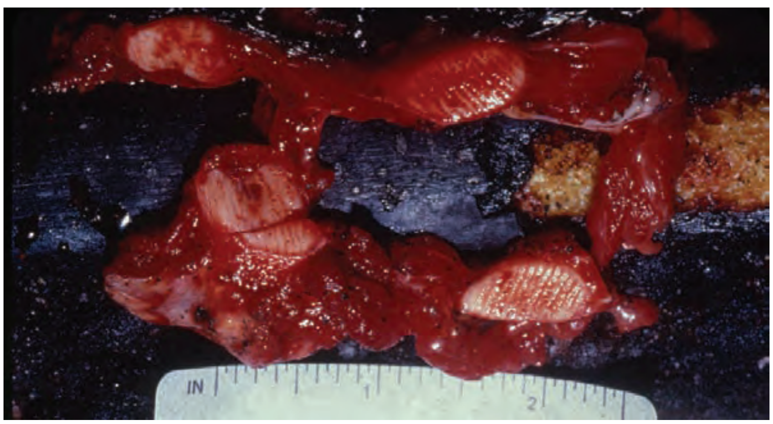


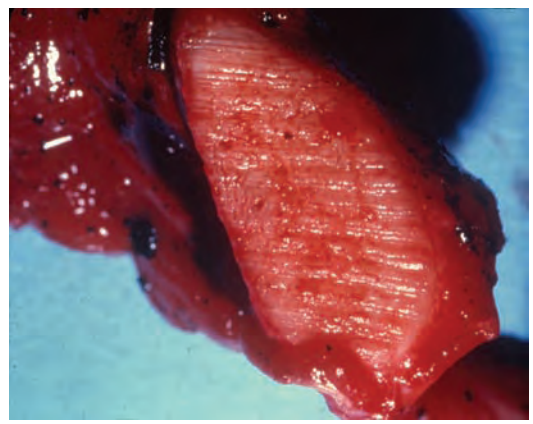
This individual was chased up several flights of stairs in an apartment complex and was cut multiple times with a box cutter similar to the one shown here. Note the blood splatter pattern on the steps. Also note that the individual was almost decapitated. This was reportedly over a dispute concerning gang-related drug dealing territory.



This individual had multiple stab wounds with adjacent abrasions consisting of multiple superficial linear parallel lines. This is a typical pattern found following a serrated knife attack. The absence of these marks does not preclude the use of a serrated knife. If a serrated knife is stuck directly into a body and not dragged across the surface, there will be no parallel linear abrasions.

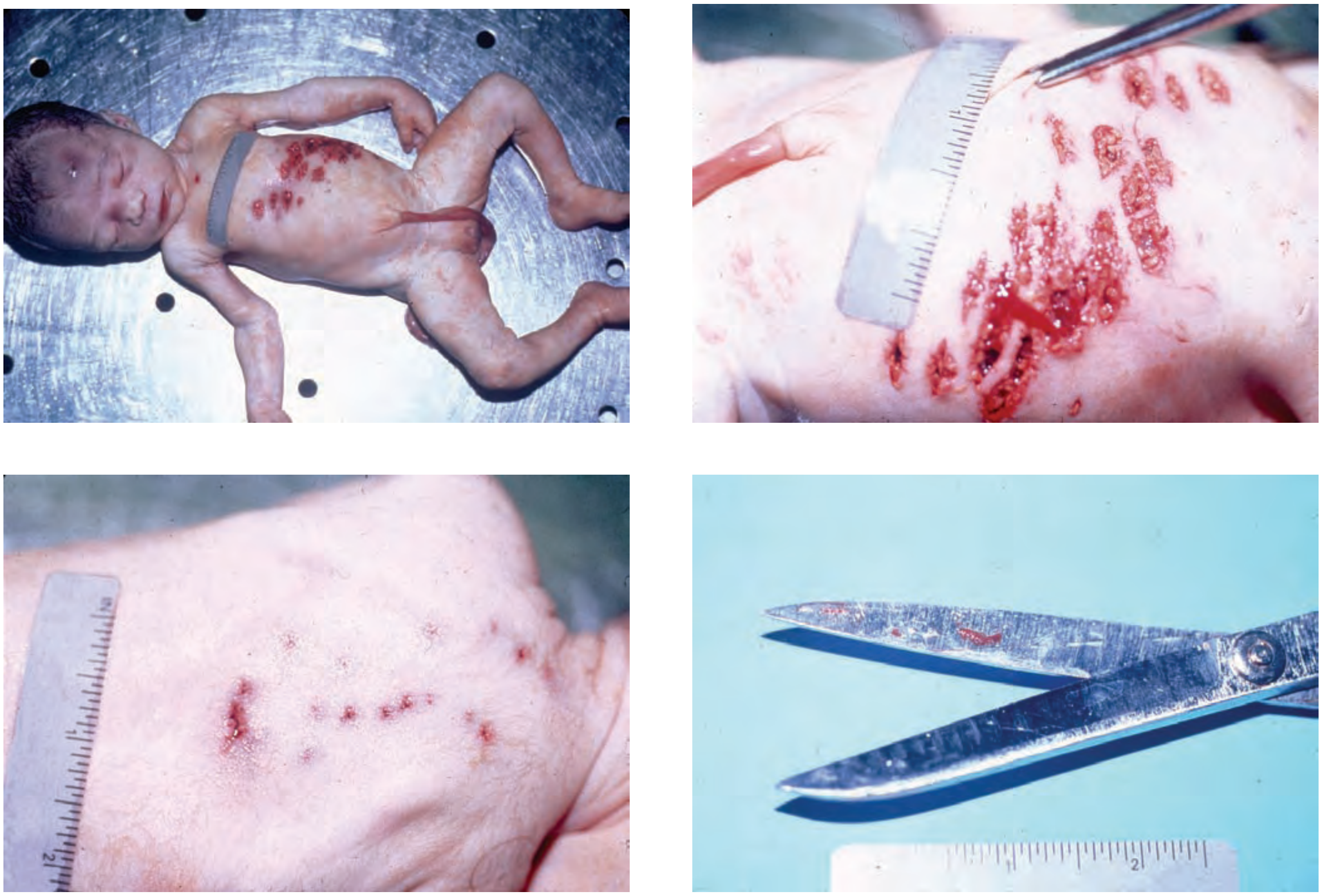




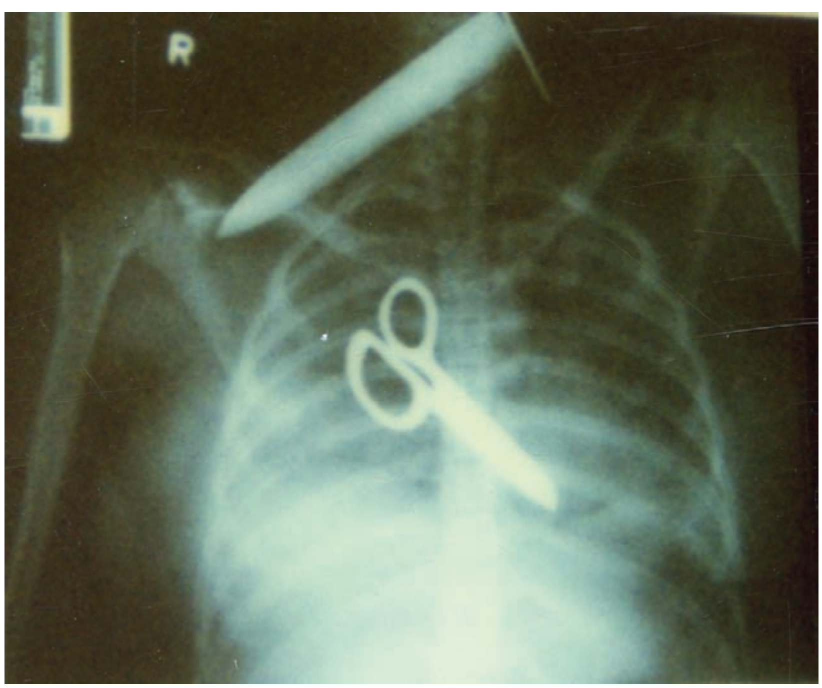


This individual was stabbed multiple times with a Ginsu-type knife. His dwelling was then set on fire and he sustained extensive thermal burns with charring of the skin. Note the costal cartilages with tool markings forming an imprint of the knife blade. Image on lower right demonstrates a knife similar to the one used in the attack.

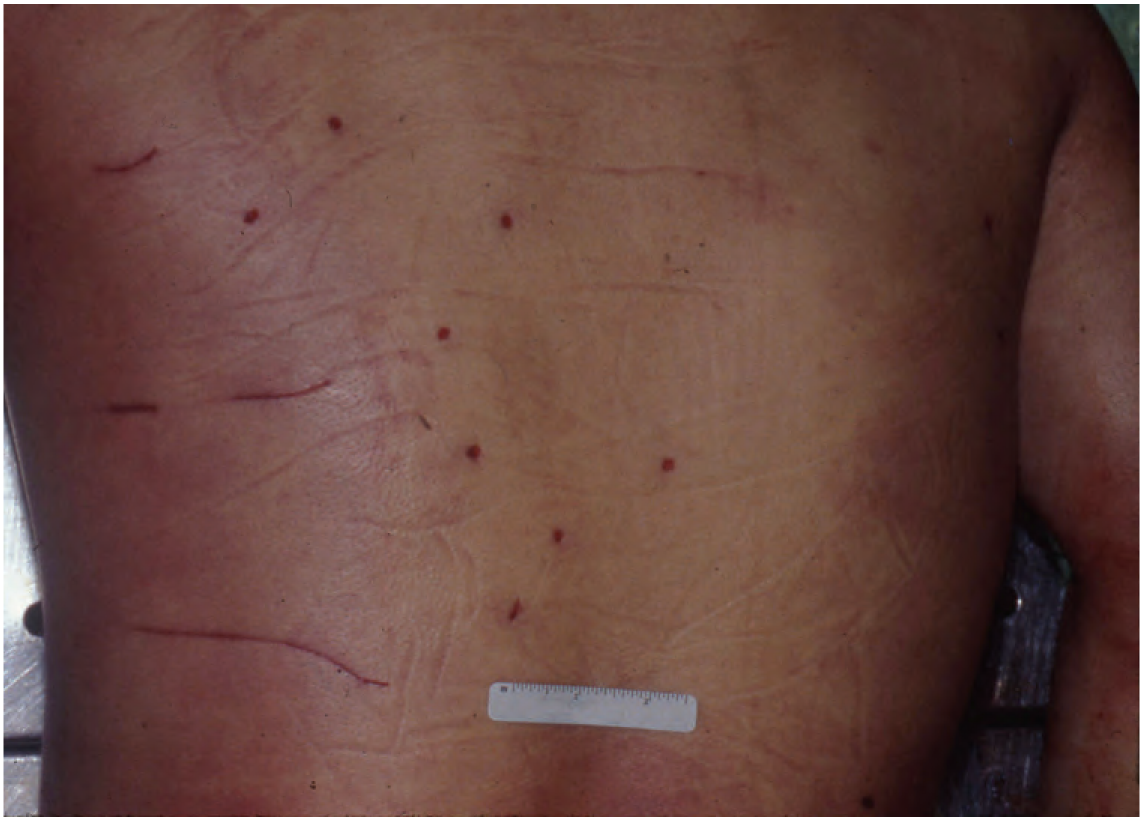
Note this irregular incised wound with curved sharp margins produced by a knife similar to the one depicted in the previous figure.

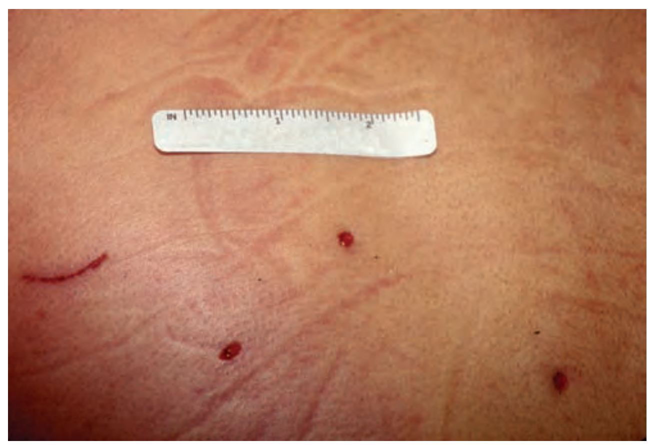


This child was stabbed multiple times with a pair of scissors. Note that the entrance defects to the anterior trunk have a slightly widened angulated character consistent with being inflicted by a pair of scissors. The posterior trunk demonstrates the pointed end of the scissor perforating the entire body.

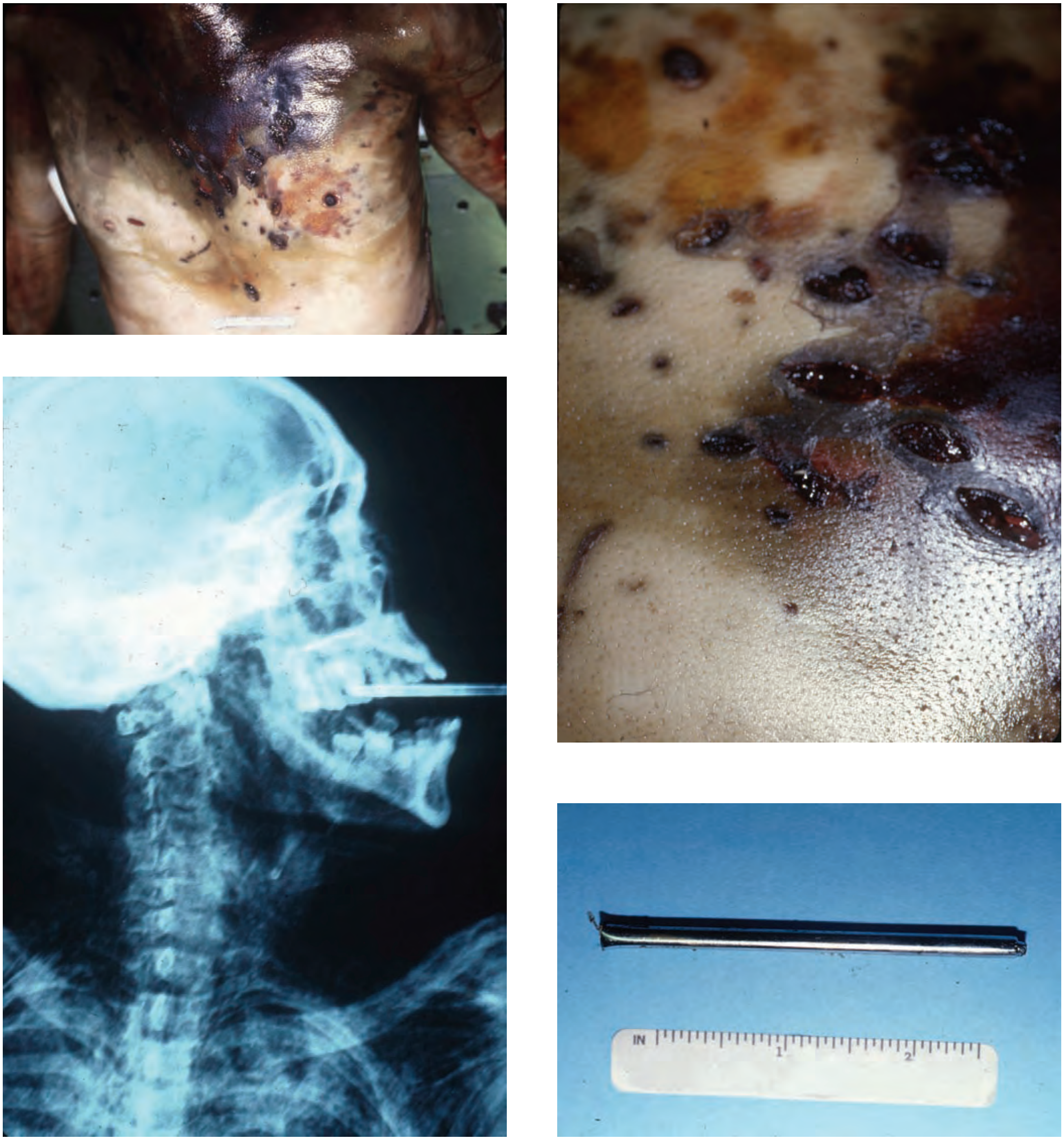


This image shows an x-ray of an adult who was stabbed with a pair of scissors that were left in the wound.





This individual was stabbed more than 75 times with an ice pick. Note the linear abrasions extending in different angles across the back as the tip of the ice pick was dragged across the skin's surface. The small dimension of these perforation wounds would take more time to lose significant blood compared with a typical knife blade. Generally speaking, the larger the wound, the faster the blood flow in a extravascular region. There was evidence of a violent struggle over a long period of time in this case.



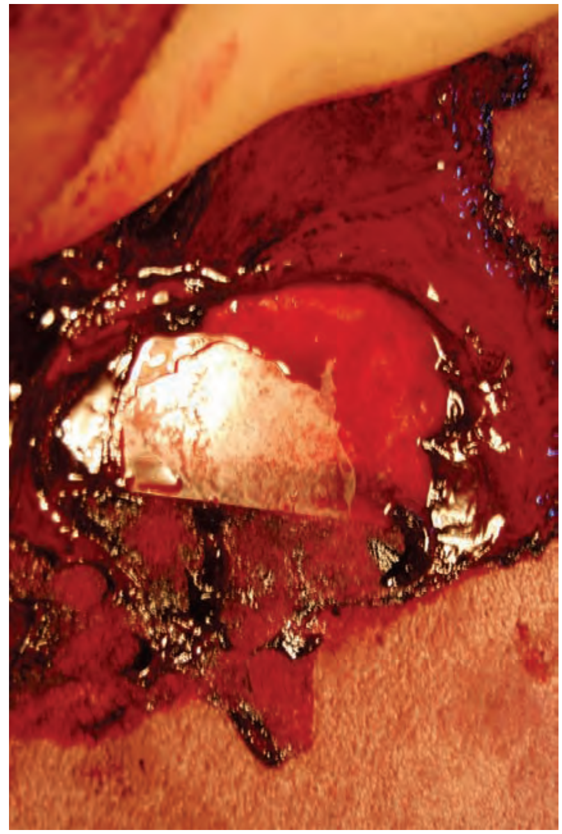
This individual was found within a crack house, in a mild to moderate state of decomposition. He sustained multiple stab wounds and puncture-type wounds to his body that were produced by broken pieces of antenna used as crack pipes. One of these antennas was jammed down his throat. He also sustained multiple blunt-impact injuries with rib fractures and other broken bones from being stomped. Note the drying and slight distortion of the wound margins due to decomposition.

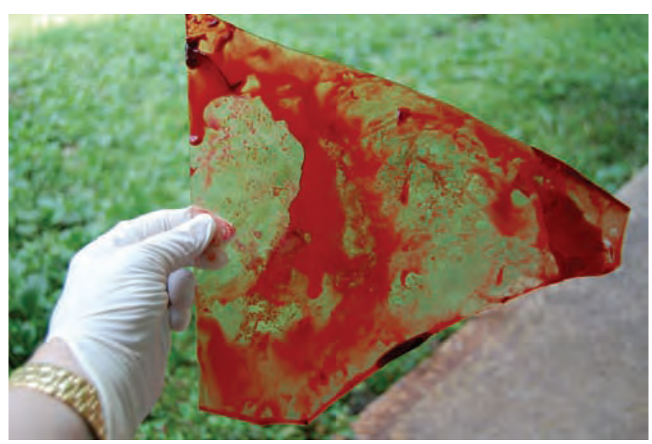
This individual was shot with a hunting arrow. The entrance wound is to the medial aspect of the right chest and the exit wound was to the right back. Note the comparison of the injury to the arrow head.

This individual was struck with a bottle that produced a minimal abrasion with a greater underlying contusion and a central laceration. Note the slightly irregular margins at the laceration site due to this blunt impact. The surrounding scalp hair was shaved to demonstrate the injury in greater detail. The presence of the scalp hair at the time this injury was inflicted also served to cushion the impact site.

This is the same individual, who was then cut multiple times with the sharp broken glass end of the bottle, producing a partial transection to the carotid artery and exsanguination.

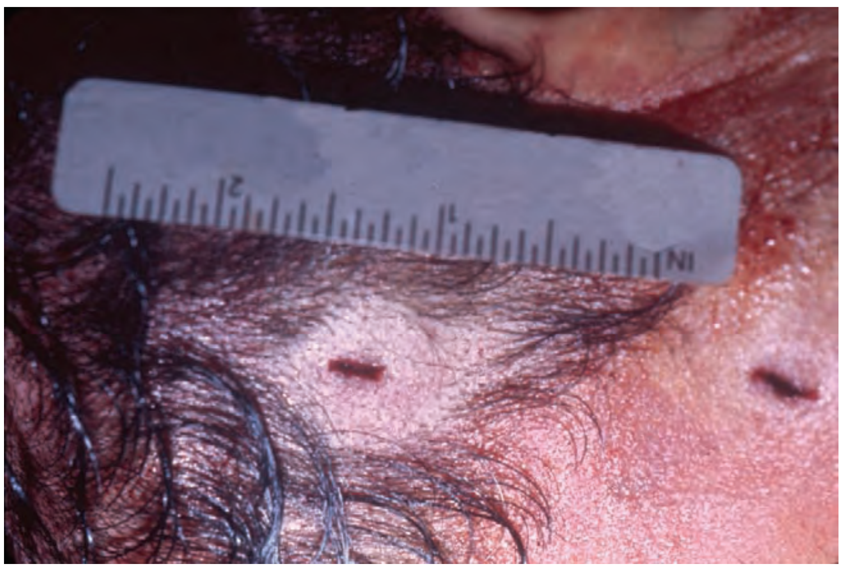
The individual had multiple curvilinear parallel abrasions and other superficial abrasions caused by a bottle top and broken glass scraping across the body surface during the assault. This initial argument began over which rival baseball team was better.



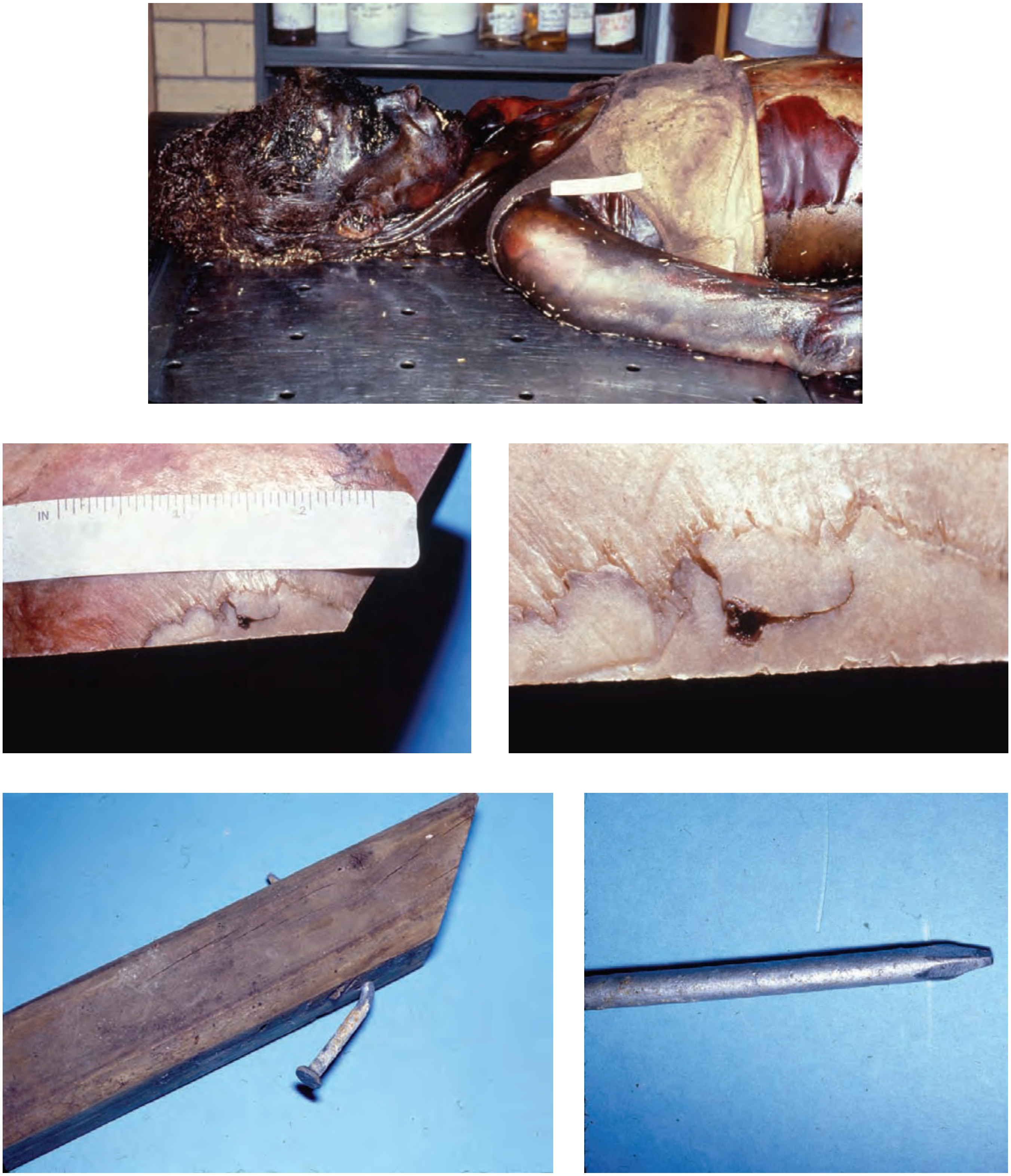


Suicide by multiple sharp-force injuries with broken glass taken from an empty picture frame.

These are multiple examples of puncture wounds caused by a Phillips-head screwdriver, demonstrating the range of presentation of this type of injury.



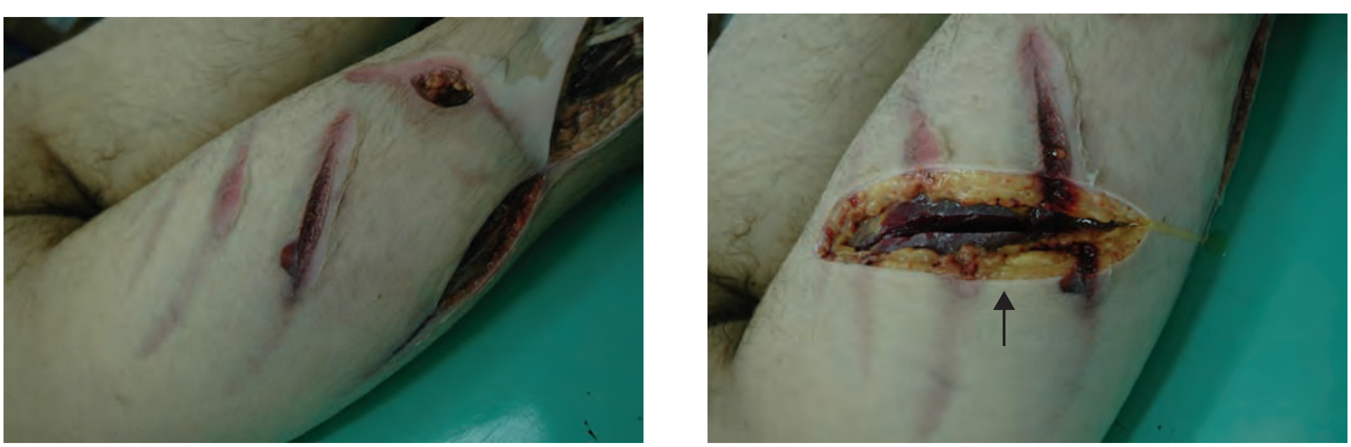
These are multiple examples of flat-head screwdriver puncture wounds.



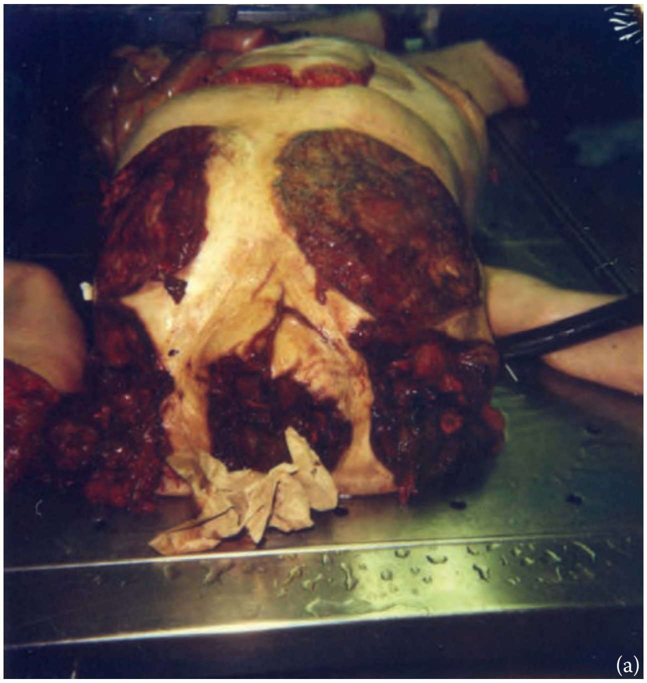
This approximately 30-year-old woman was found naked from the waist down in a construction yard. She had moderate decompositional changes with insect and animal feeding. She had multiple defects to her scalp and face with numerous maggots tracking through the underlying soft tissue. The soft tissues in this region were darkly discolored throughout. It becomes more difficult to interpret soft-tissue injuries as decomposition progresses. Careful examination of the underlying bone in such cases may often yield valuable information. Note the approximately 1/4″ linear skull fracture with a 1/16″ roughly square indentation at the superior right temporal bone. Further examination of the scene revealed a bloodstained board with a nail at the opposite side of the construction site.

Antemortem boat propeller injuries. Note the presence of wound track hemorrhage and the parallel slicing-type injuries.

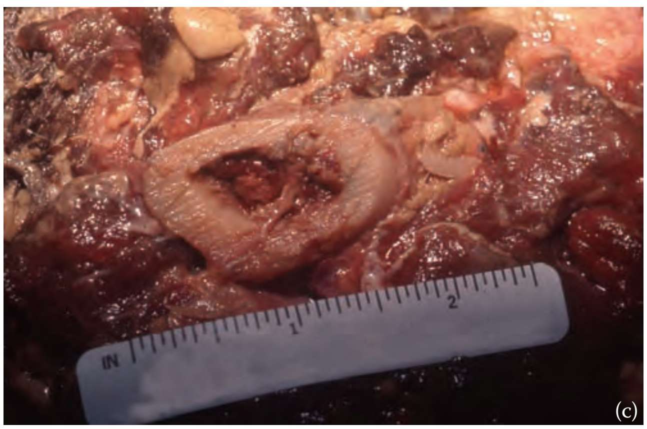
Injuries produced by a boat propeller.



Injuries produced by a boat propeller. Note the hemorrhage at the autopsy incision (lower right), demonstrating the individual was alive when these injuries occurred. Note the range of injury presentation, including superficial abrasion to deep slicing-type wounds with extensive soft-tissue damage.

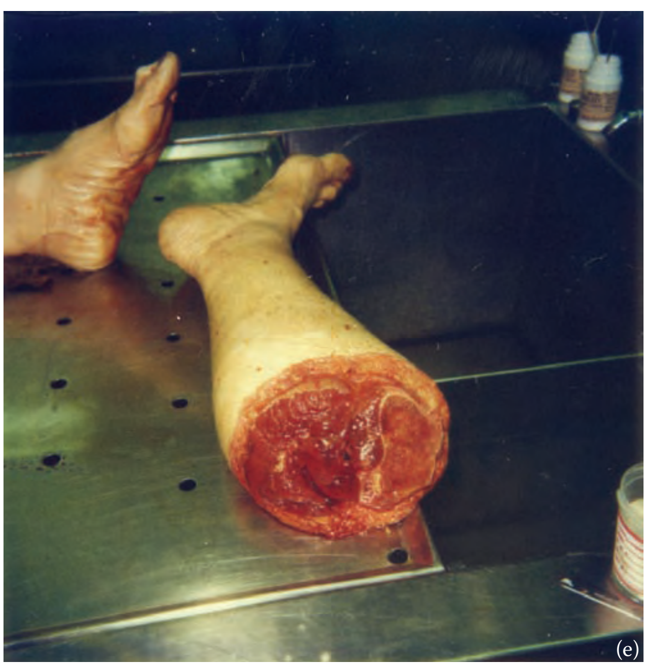

(a)


(b)



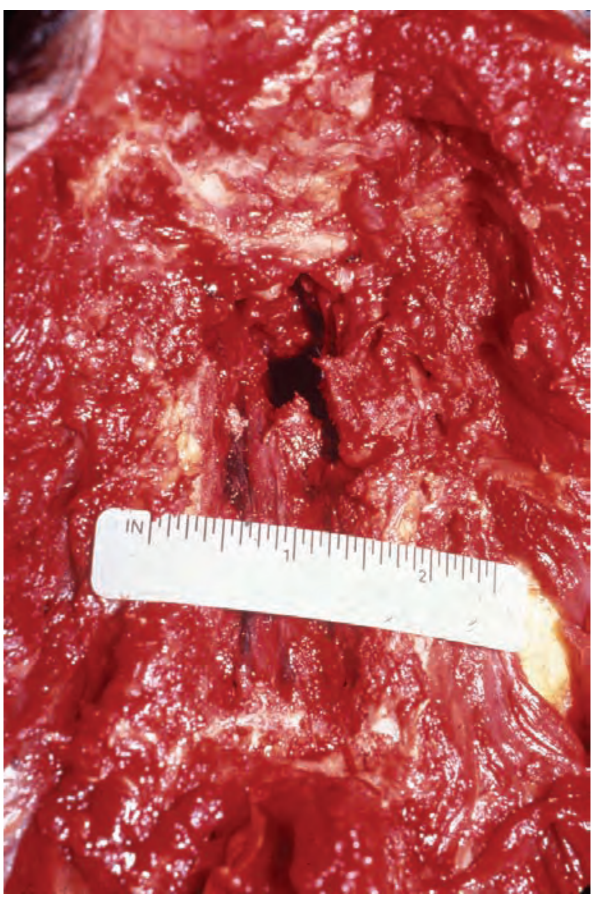
(c)


(d)


(e)


(f)

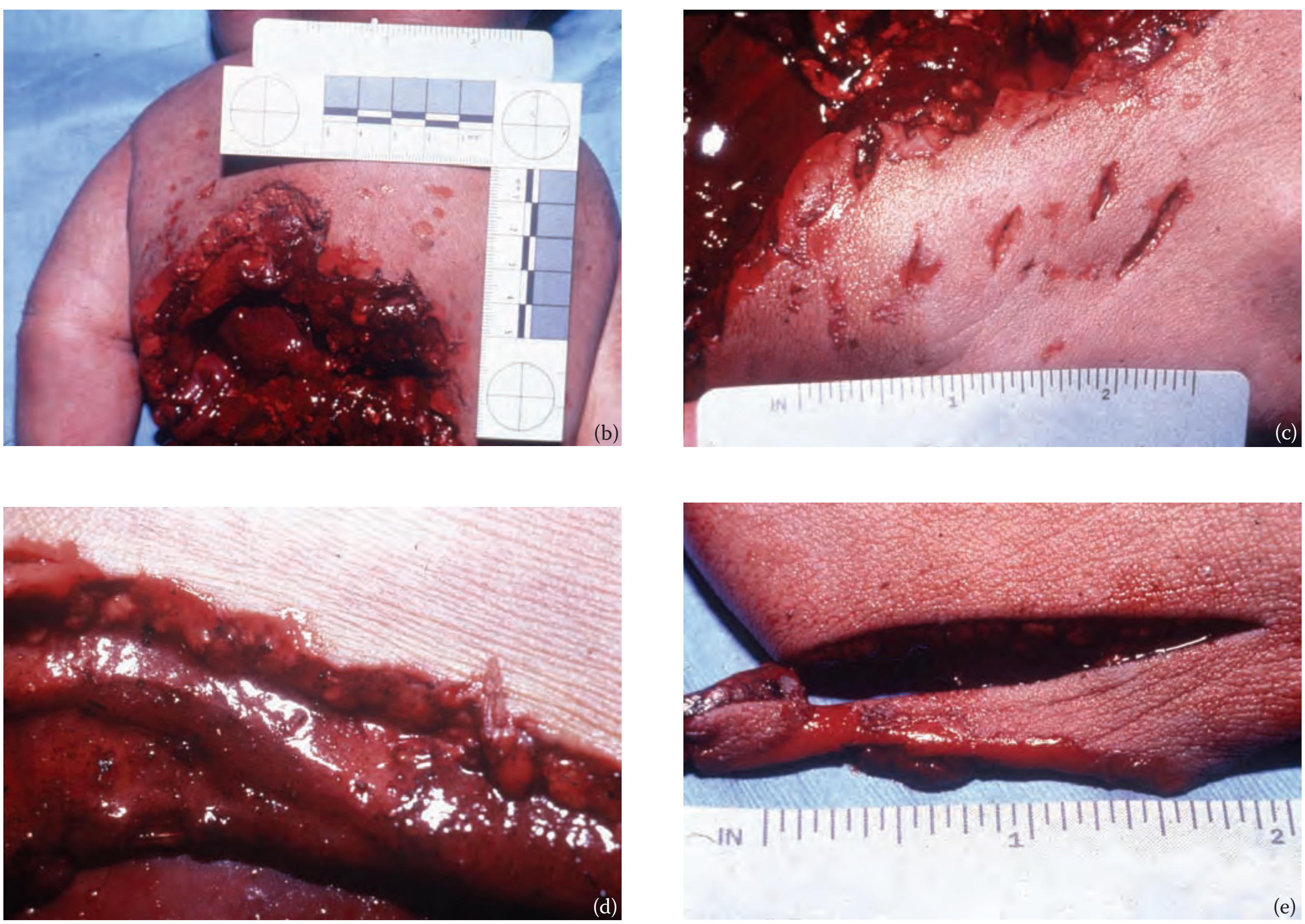
These are examples of dismembered bodies with saw cut marks through bone. It is important to save these portions of bone for possible later tool mark comparison with saw blades used during the dismemberment. Note image (a), where sexual mutilation was performed, with the breasts cut from the body. Also note image (d) of this young individual, who was cut into multiple pieces and neatly stacked on a rooftop.



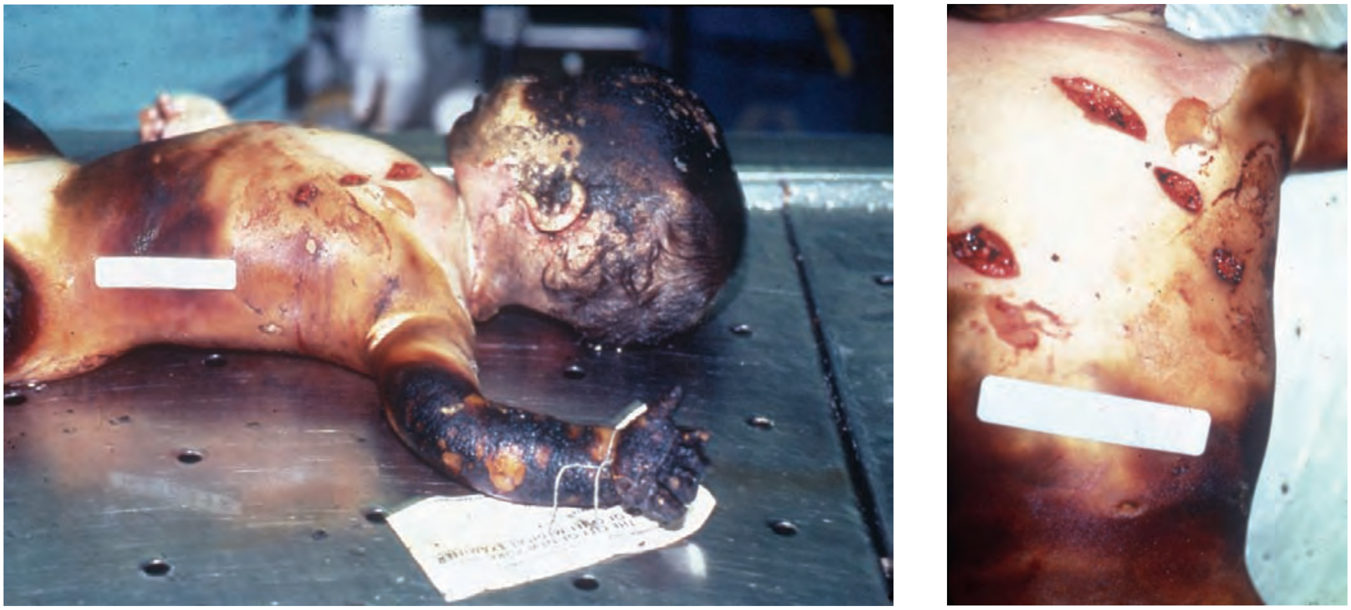
This individual was killed by being struck in the back of the neck with a pickaxe. Note the abraded margin and the perforation matching the roughly squared dimension of the pickaxe. This dispute was reportedly over not receiving back pay after complete work.

This individual committed suicide by jumping out of a window and landing on top of a spiked metal fence similar to the one shown in image (c). The hair surrounding these injuries was shaved to demonstrate the nature of the wound in greater detail. Note the pointed circular perforation site leading into a square abrasion, which was perfectly consistent with the fence spike that penetrated his chest.

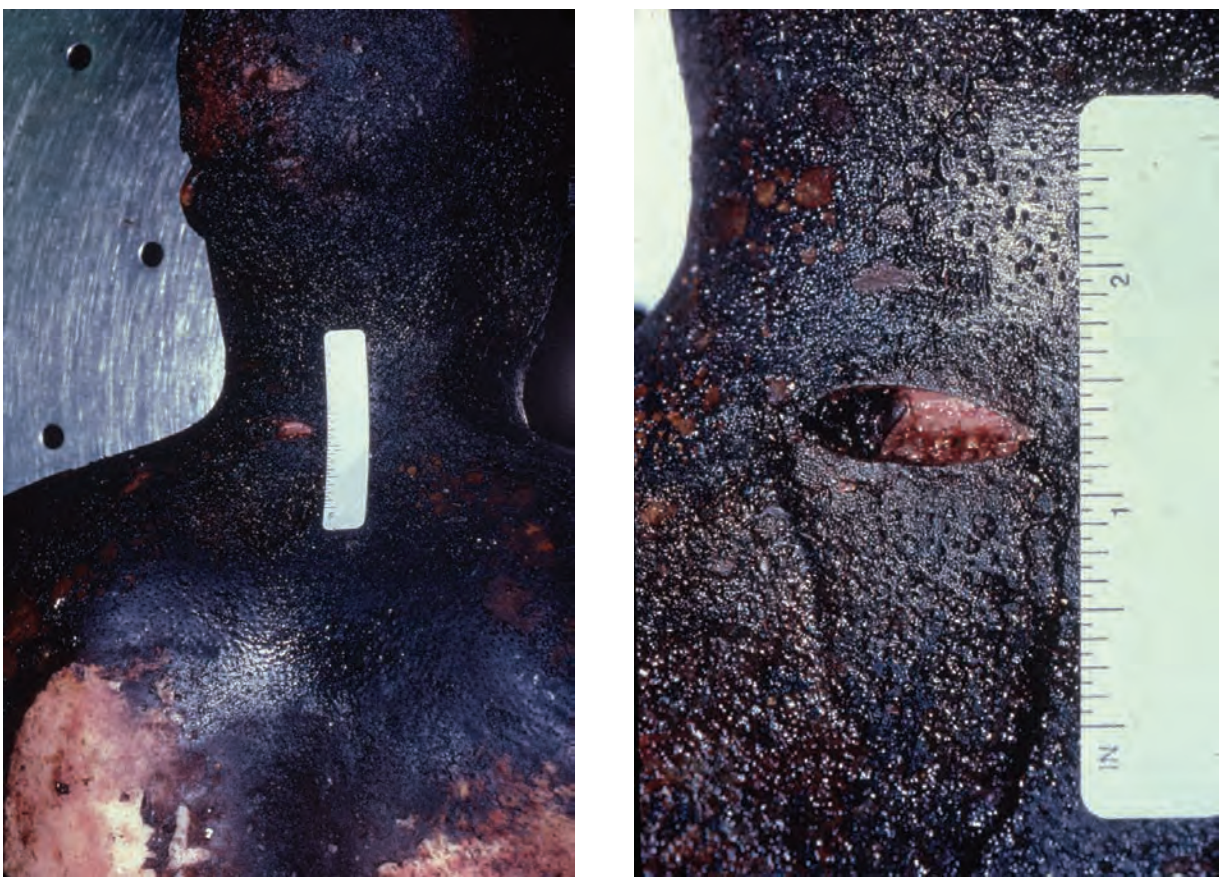
This infant was found partially eaten by dogs in a building courtyard. Note the irregular nature of the wounds to the back (b–d), demonstrating a scalloped border produced by teeth and claws. Other injuries to the child's body were inconsistent with animal feeding and more likely were produced by a sharp instrument such as a knife. Note the sharp wound margins in image (e). Dogs may eat a decomposing body when they are left to starve, or they may kill living individuals, more often without eating them. It has been my experience that it is rare for a domesticated dog to eat an individual unless it is coaxed into it by exposing the hungry dog to initiate feeding activity. The dog should always be examined including the gastrointestinal contents. In one such case, neatly cut strips of soft tissue were found within the dog's stomach that were fed to the dog by the perpetrator to initiate more feeding activity.



These are multiple puncture marks and lacerations with extensive adjacent hemorrhage due to an antemortem dog attack by a pit bull. This individual died as a result of blood loss.



This perpetrator killed his family by inflicting multiple stab wounds and then setting their house on fire. Note the relationship between environmental factors such as heat and the change in wound characteristic. This is demonstrated to a greater degree in the following figures.



This individual was stabbed multiple times and his apartment was set on fire to conceal evidence of the crime. Note the charring of the skin with the sharply margined defect, which was from a stab wound. Internal examination revealed extensive hemorrhage throughout and surrounding the wound track. Sometimes the surface interpretation of such injuries can be challenging. Thermal damage may cause cracking of the skin, which may be misinterpreted as antemortem sharp- or blunt-force injuries.

This individual sustained multiple blunt- and sharp-force injuries due to homicidal violence. She was found many hours after the assault during a hot summer month. Note the putrefactive changes with skin slippage and green to brown discoloration. Also note the wound margins are dry and dark. Some of these wounds could obviously be classified as lacerations or stab wounds and others could not be classified due to distortion by decomposition.

Healed stab wound.

Gunshot Wounds

8

CHARLES A. CATANESE, THOMAS GILSON, AND THOMAS ANDREW

Introduction

The evaluation of gunshot wounds is an area of importance in forensic medicine. Analysis of gunshot wounds should involve:

- Differentiation of wounds of entrance from exit
- Range of fire estimation for entrance wounds
- Determination of trajectory through the body
- Recovery of evidence (e.g. ballistics)

Whenever possible, clothing worn by a gunshot wound victim should also be examined.

Entrance and Exit Differentation

Entrance Gunshot Wounds

Most entrance wounds appear as circular perforations with a margin of abrasion, a collar of abraded skin, and the entrance defect. The margin of abrasion is produced by stretching with eventual tearing of the skin surface as the bullet enters the body. It is the most reliable feature in identifying entrance gunshot wounds. Exit gunshot wounds lack this feature, as the undersurface of the skin is stretched outward when a bullet exits the body. The margin of abrasion may provide useful preliminary information regarding trajectory of a bullet through the body. When the bullet enters the body perpendicular to the surface, the margin of abrasion is symmetric. As the bullet enters the body on an angle, the margin will be elongated on the side where the bullet first contacts the skin. The trajectory is confirmed by subsequent internal examination.

Exit Gunshot Wounds

These types of wounds typically appear as slit-like or irregular perforations without margins of abrasion. An exception to this is a shored or supported exit, which occurs when a bullet exits from the body where the skin is firmly supported. This might occur as a bullet exits when an individual is leaning against a wall, lying on the sidewalk, or even wearing tight-fitting clothing. These wounds generally have a round appearance and may have superficial abrasion around the defect. Unlike the true abrasion margin of an entrance wound, the shored exit abrasion tends to lack any significant depth and is often very irregular.

Atypical Gunshot Wounds

These are entrance wounds characterized by an irregular appearance. They may have irregular or obscure margins of abrasion. The skin adjacent to the entrance wound may show irregular abrasions or lacerations. Sometimes these perforations may appear as irregular tears. Ricochet bullets, or bullets that pass through intermediate targets, often produce atypical entrance wounds. Sometimes the jacket and the slug may separate and produce two separate irregular entrance wounds. Bullets may strike surfaces such as concrete and fragment into pieces, causing multiple irregular defects from impacts of both twisted metal and rock fragments. Fragments from upholstery, chrome, plastic, etc. may be found at the wound surface or even within the wound track. This atypical appearance may also be seen in certain areas of the body where the skin is thicker (palms and soles) or the skin contour is irregular (face). Atypical wounds may be difficult to interpret, particularly in perforating gunshot wounds where the bullet passes through soft tissue only. Fracture characteristics of bone (especially flat bones such as the skull) and lead fragmentation patterns may give great insight into establishing direction of fire.

Range of Fire Estimation

In estimating range of fire, an attempt is made to determine the distance from the end of the barrel of the gun to an entrance wound at the time the weapon is discharged. This is most reliably estimated by observing the wound and trying to re-create an observed pattern by test firing the weapon. Because the weapon is often not available, estimates based on the physical characteristics of the wound are frequently employed.

An understanding of ammunition aids in understanding range of fire estimation. The ammunition

placed into a firearm is a cartridge. A cartridge consists of a bullet, which rests atop a casing containing gunpowder. A primer located at the base of the cartridge ignites the powder. The primer is itself ignited by the mechanical action of the hammer of the firearm, when the hammer strikes the base of the cartridge. The bullet is the portion of the cartridge that exits the barrel. It is propelled by the burning gunpowder. In general, there is some residual gunpowder that does not burn. In addition to the bullet, burned and unburned gunpowder exits the barrel when a weapon is discharged. This forms the basis of range of fire and estimation.

Range of fire can be divided into three major categories. These include *close range, intermediate range,* and *distant range.* As noted, range of fire is best estimated by the use of test firings employing the known weapon with similar ammunition. Lacking these ideal conditions, estimates can be made on the basic wound characteristics as described next. Even when test firings can be performed it is worth remembering that the wounding characteristics of skin are not identical to gunpowder residue deposition on a test-firing cloth.

Close Range of Fire

This is characterized by the presence of *soot* on the adjacent skin surface or within the wound track. Soot is burned gunpowder residue with a dark powdery appearance. It is critical to remember that soot can be wiped from the body's surface, so gunshot wounds need to be examined prior to any washing, whenever possible. The presence of soot indicates the end of the barrel of the gun was held within approximately 6 to 8 inches from the body's surface. Different guns may have different ranges. The closer the end of the barrel is to the body, the denser the soot deposition. As this distance increases, the soot deposition becomes sparser. Soot may be present with stippling (see intermediate range of fire), but this is more accurately still considered close range of fire. When the end of the barrel is very close to the body, there may also be searing of the adjacent skin from burning gunpowder and flame that extends from the end of the barrel. Soot can be filtered away through intermediate targets such as clothing, car doors, walls, etc. This pattern becomes more dispersed as the distance becomes greater.

Within the close-range-of-fire category are contact gunshot wounds where the end of the barrel touches the body. These may be further subdivided into *tight contact* and *loose contact.* Some classify wounds where the barrel is very close to the body as *near contact*. The term "close contact" is redundant, potentially confusing, and best avoided.

Tight Contact Gunshot Wounds

These are produced when the barrel of the gun is held tightly against the body's surface. Most of the soot will be deposited within the wound track and may not be apparent until autopsy examination. Small amounts of soot may be present at the wound margins. Depending on the body region, type of gun, type of ammunition, and force with which the gun is pressed against the body, the wound may appear different. There are often abrasions adjacent to the gunshot wound. These are associated with the muzzle of the gun rubbing against the body's surface as the gun is discharged. These may take the form of a semicircular rim or a complete imprint pattern of the entire muzzle. When the gun is held tightly to the body, particularly over a bony surface such as the skull, there may be multiple radiating linear lacerations. These lacerations may be small or large and are more commonly associated with larger-caliber bullets. Approximation of the laceration margins reveals a central circular perforation typical of an entrance wound with abraded margins. Observation of the muscle under a tight contact wound may reveal a pink discoloration owing to the introduction of combustion products into the wound track such as nitrites and especially carbon monoxide binding with myoglobin.

Loose Contact and Near Contact

When a gun is held less tightly against the body, soot may escape more readily to the skin's surface. If the gun is discharged at an angle to the body's surface, the pattern of soot dispersion will extend over a greater surface area in the direction of fire. A partial muzzle imprint may be observed. In near contact wounds, the soot is deposited in a dense, relatively small area around the entrance and searing of the skin may be observed as noted above.

Intermediate Range of Fire

This range of fire is characterized by the presence of *stippling* defects around the entrance wound. These are small, (approximately 1/16 inch) red to brown, punctuate abrasions of the skin's surface. Stippling indicates the end of the barrel of the gun was held approximately 18 to 24 inches away from the body's surface. These defects are produced primarily by fragments of unburned gunpowder that exit the barrel with the bullet. These fragments strike the body with greater force than soot and produce permanent defects. Such defects cannot be wiped away from the body's surface. The appearance of stippling may vary depending on the type of gunpowder used in the cartridge, (e.g., ball, disk, or flake).

The term *stippling* applies to the defects in the body's surface. This pattern will become more dispersed as the distance from the weapon to the body's surface increases. Like soot, stippling can be dampened or completely filtered by clothing or other intermediate targets. Powder residue found on intermediate targets at this range of fire is characterized by small, separate, gunpowder fragments.

Soot or stippling defects may be present on an outstretched hand but not surrounding the entrance wound. For this reason, close examination of the upper extremities in gunshot wound cases may be helpful. Range of fire is estimated in the same way and the distance between the weapon and the entrance wound can be approximated by factoring in the distance from the wound to the upper-extremity findings.

Occasional "pseudostippling" may be seen around an entrance wound. This phenomenon is generally seen when a bullet passes through an intermediate target and fragments of the intermediate target strike the skin's surface (causing abrasions) around the entrance wound. As noted, such entrance defects tend to be irregular and the adjacent stippling defects exhibit wider size variation than true stippling, where the abrading gunpowder tends to produce abrasions of relatively uniform size.

Distant Range of Fire

This range of fire is characterized by the absence of gunpowder residue around an entrance gunshot wound without an intermediate target between the end of the barrel and the wound. This indicates the end of the barrel of the gun was held more than approximately 18 to 24 inches away from the body's surface. Some experts prefer to call this intermediate range, especially when the possibility of an intermediate target cannot be excluded.

Trajectory Determination

The path a bullet takes through the body may have substantial medicolegal significance. In some cases, the trajectory can be easily determined by careful dissection. In other cases, (e.g., multiple gunshot fatalities), full delineation of wound tracks may be harder to accomplish as a result of extensive internal injury. Surgical intervention may also obscure wound tracks in part. It is also worth remembering that a wound sustained in a certain body position may look slightly out of alignment with the body lying supine on the autopsy table. Superficial wounds can pose difficulties in trajectory determination as entry and exit wounds may not be easily identified. These include graze and tangential gunshot wounds.

Graze-Type Gunshot Wounds

These are produced when the bullet contacts the skin superficially at a very narrow angle, producing an elongated superficial oval abrasion. One may determine direction of fire by a semicircular margin of abrasion at the entrance side and a more irregular margin at the exit side.

Tangential Gunshot Wounds

These are produced when the bullet strikes the skin superficially at a narrow angle and creates lacerations of the underlying subcutaneous tissue and overlying skin. Direction of fire may be established by the presence of a semicircular margin of abrasion at the entrance side. Also, the laceration of the skin overlying the wound track produces tears with skin tag formation. These tags will extend outward on angles. The tips of these lacerations, at their most medial aspects (e.g. within the wound track), point toward the side from which the bullet entered the body.

Gunshot Wounds in Bone

Gunshot injuries of bone may be helpful in trajectory determination, especially in the skull and, less frequently, other flat bones. When a bullet passes through the skull, it creates a cone-shaped beveled defect. The entry point has crisp margins and the exit point is larger and represents the wider portion of the cone. Bullets entering the skull produce internal beveling and those exiting the skull produce external beveling. A tangential bullet strike of the skull may cause the bullet to fragment and result in complex beveling if a portion enters the cranial cavity and a portion shears off and remains outside the surface. In such cases, the bony defect created may exhibit internal and external beveling. Such defects are referred to as "keyhole" defects, as their appearance may resemble a keyhole.

High-Velocity Gunshot Wounds

Trajectory delineation in high-velocity gunshot wounds is similar to low-velocity injury, however, the extent of injury is far more significant and exit wounds are often dramatically large. Hunting ammunition used at high velocity will fragment more in the body than low-velocity bullets, creating a characteristic x-ray picture called a "lead snowstorm."

Evidence Recovery

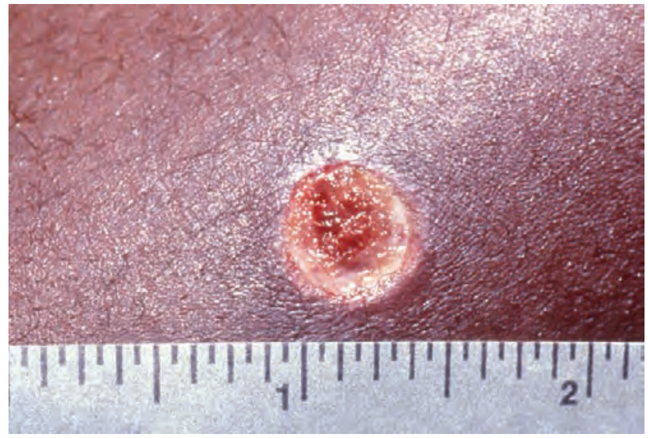
Bullets retained in the body must be recovered at autopsy. Rifled firearms leave characteristic markings

on bullets that can be used for identification of a firearm by comparison with projectiles known to have been fired from that weapon. Care must be taken during dissection to avoid or minimize the creation of any additional marks on the bullet that might obscure the rifling marks. This also applies to any identifying marks inscribed place directly on the bullet after recovery. These identifying marks should be inscribed on the base of the bullet. Older bullets should be recovered at the time of autopsy. These may be enclosed in fibrous capsules at the site of lodgment and often have a dull gray appearance as a result of oxidation. Rifling marks may still be present and useful for ballistic comparison.

Shotgun Wounds

Because of differences in construction and ammunition, shotguns merit special consideration. Shotguns can be used to fire a single projectile (slug) or several pellets (shot). Shot size can vary (buckshot versus birdshot). Slugs behave essentially as single projectiles. The shotgun cartridge (or shell), contains some additional components (e.g., wadding, filler material) that might produce injuries that can be used in range of fire estimation. Soot and stippling remain useful in close- and intermediate-range determinations. The wounds produced by shotgun shells containing shot look different from conventional bullet wounds. Soot, stippling, wadding, and other components can be used for range of fire estimation, but the behavior of the pellet cluster over distance provides additional information regarding range of fire. When the shot exits the barrel, it travels initially as a tightly grouped cluster. Striking the skin, the tight cluster produces a round defect. The grouping opens up over distance with the first noticeable change in wound appearance occurring at about 3 feet. A single defect is still observed but the margins now take on a scalloped appearance. With further distance (and more pellet dispersal), wounds now consist of a central defect with scattered satellite defects surrounding them. These satellite defects increase in number with greater distance, until the central defect is lost entirely and pellets maintaining sufficient velocity strike the skin's surface individually. The dispersal pattern of pellets is not predictable once an intermediate surface intervenes. It is not possible to evaluate these wounds for range estimations and, for similar reasons; estimates of range of fire by x-ray examination are unreliable. As with other firearms, test firings are the most reliable means for range of fire approximations.

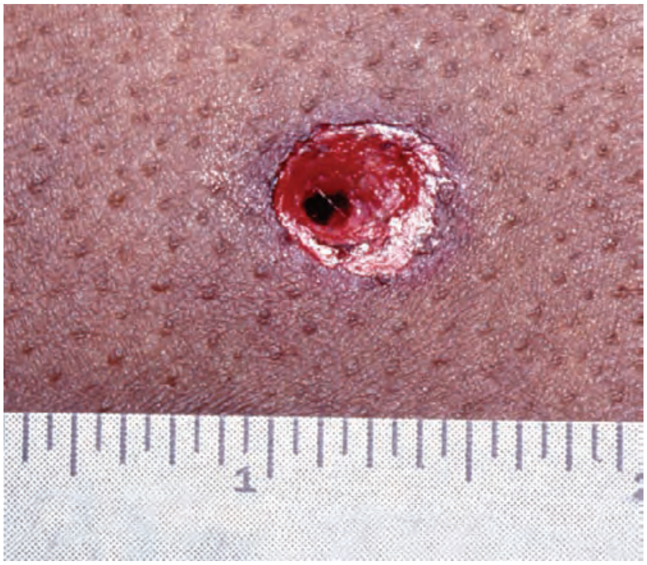
Distant entrance gunshot wound. This bullet struck the body nose end first, roughly perpendicular to the surface. Note the thin and roughly symmetric margin of abrasion surrounding the slightly oval perforation.



Distant entrance gunshot wound in a darker-skinned individual. Note the slightly asymmetric margin of abrasion, which is greatest at its inferior aspect. This indicates the bullet struck the body nose first, and at a slight upward trajectory. These directions are stated *relative to the body*.

Distant entrance gunshot wound with slightly asymmetric margin of abrasion, which is greatest at the right inferior aspect. This usually indicates the bullet struck the body nose first, almost perpendicular and at a slightly upward and right-to-left trajectory. These directions are stated *relative to the body*.

Distant entrance gunshot wound with slightly asymmetric margin of abrasion greatest on its superior and left aspect. This usually indicates that the bullet struck the body nose first, almost perpendicular and at a slightly downward, left-to-right trajectory. These directions are stated *relative to the body*.

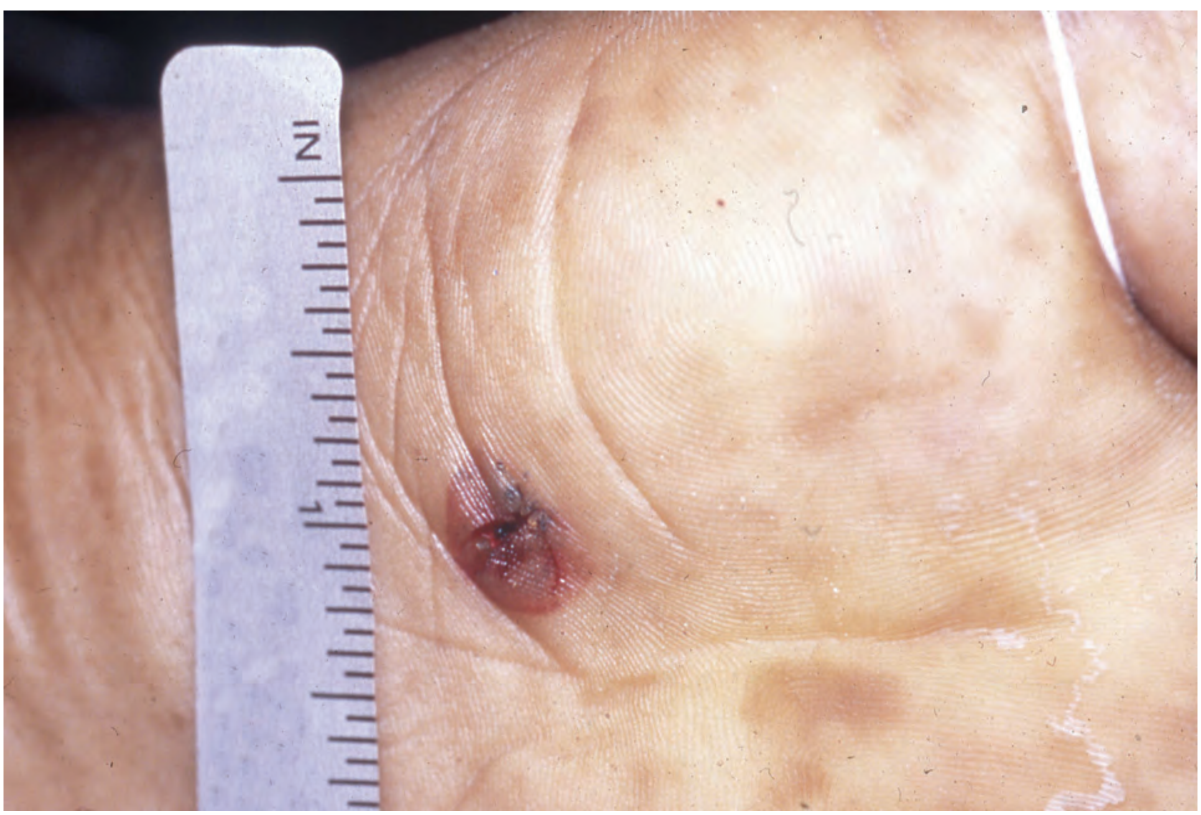


Distant entrance gunshot wound with slightly irregular, widened margin of abrasion, which is greatest at the right lateral aspects. This indicates the bullet struck the body from a slightly inferior and right-to-left trajectory. The slightly irregular nature of the margin of abrasion may sometimes be seen, as the bullet perforates clothing first.

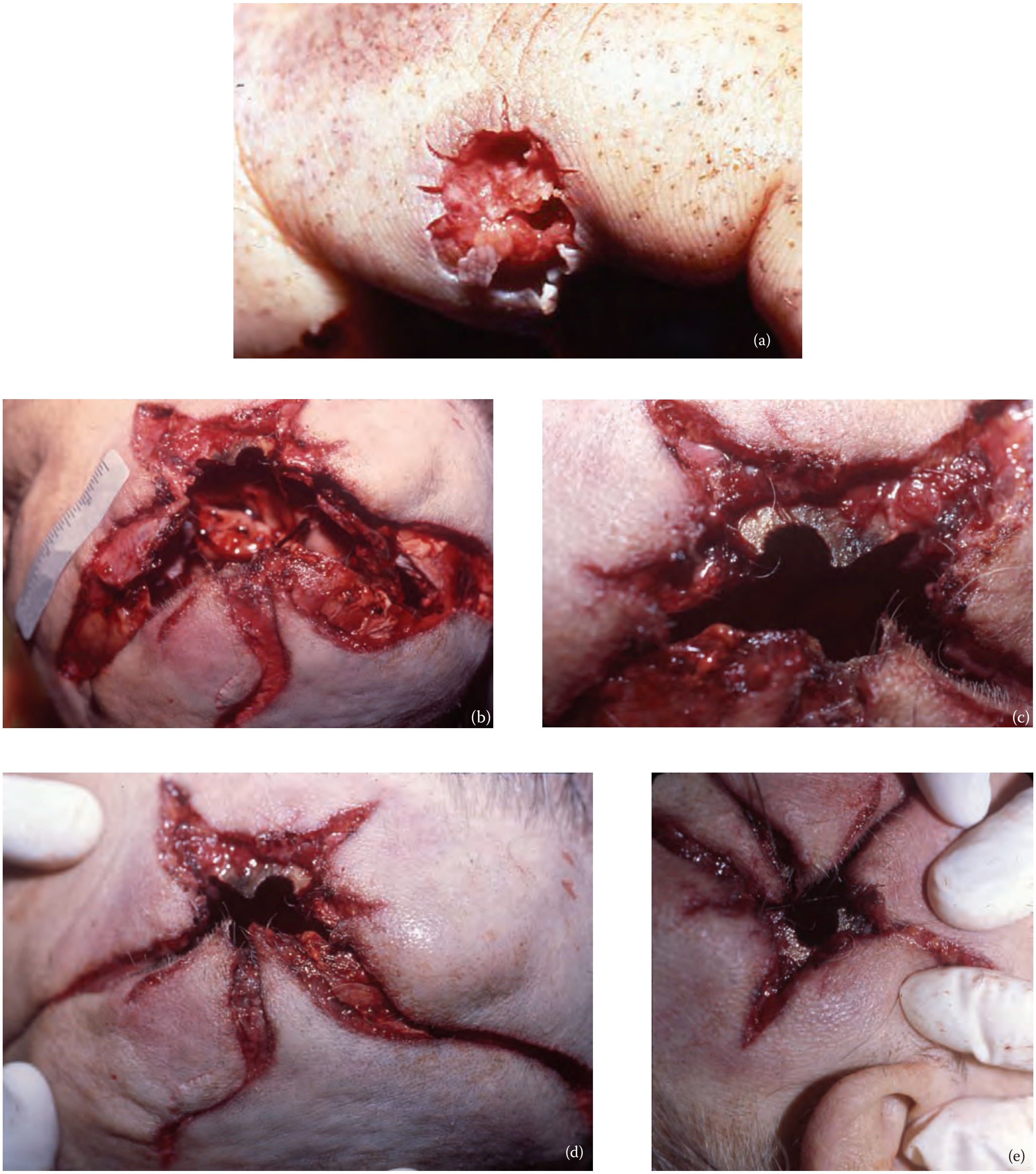
Distant entrance gunshot wound that is slight stretched into an oval due to skin tension. Note the slightly asymmetric margin of abrasion, which is greatest at the 9 o'clock through 12 o'clock position, indicating the bullet struck the body with a slightly downward and left-to-right trajectory.

There are six separate clustered entrance gunshot wounds to this individual's head. Note the abrasion to the posterior ear helix caused by a bullet. Shaving the hair is recommended for external examination of such gunshot wounds.

Distant entrance gunshot wound to the palm of the hand through thick skin.



Distant entrance gunshot wound through the thick skin of the sole of the foot. This bullet first perforated the bottom of a shoe and a sock before entering the body.



Entrance gunshot wound with surrounding stippling defects indicating intermediate range of fire. This gunshot wound (a) to the thick skin of the palm of the hand reveals typical small radiating lacerations without prominent margin of abrasion. These characteristics are typical for gunshot wounds of the palms of the hand and soles of the feet. These images (b–e) represent the same contact gunshot wound with varying degrees of tension surrounding the wound's surface. Note that with approximation of the margins (d–e) the wound forms a roughly circular perforation with margin of abrasion typical of an entrance gunshot wound. Also note the copious amounts of soot within the wound track and at the underlying bone surface. Such large radiating linear lacerations are usually associated with higher-caliber guns and tight contact of the gun muzzle on the body surface with underlying bone close to the skin. The expanding gases from burning gunpowder forced into the wound track causes such lacerations.

Contact gunshot wound to the scalp with radiating lacerations and soot deposition within the wound track and at the wound margins. These lacerations are caused by burning gunpowder, with expanding gases forced into the wound track and causing the overlying skin to lacerate.

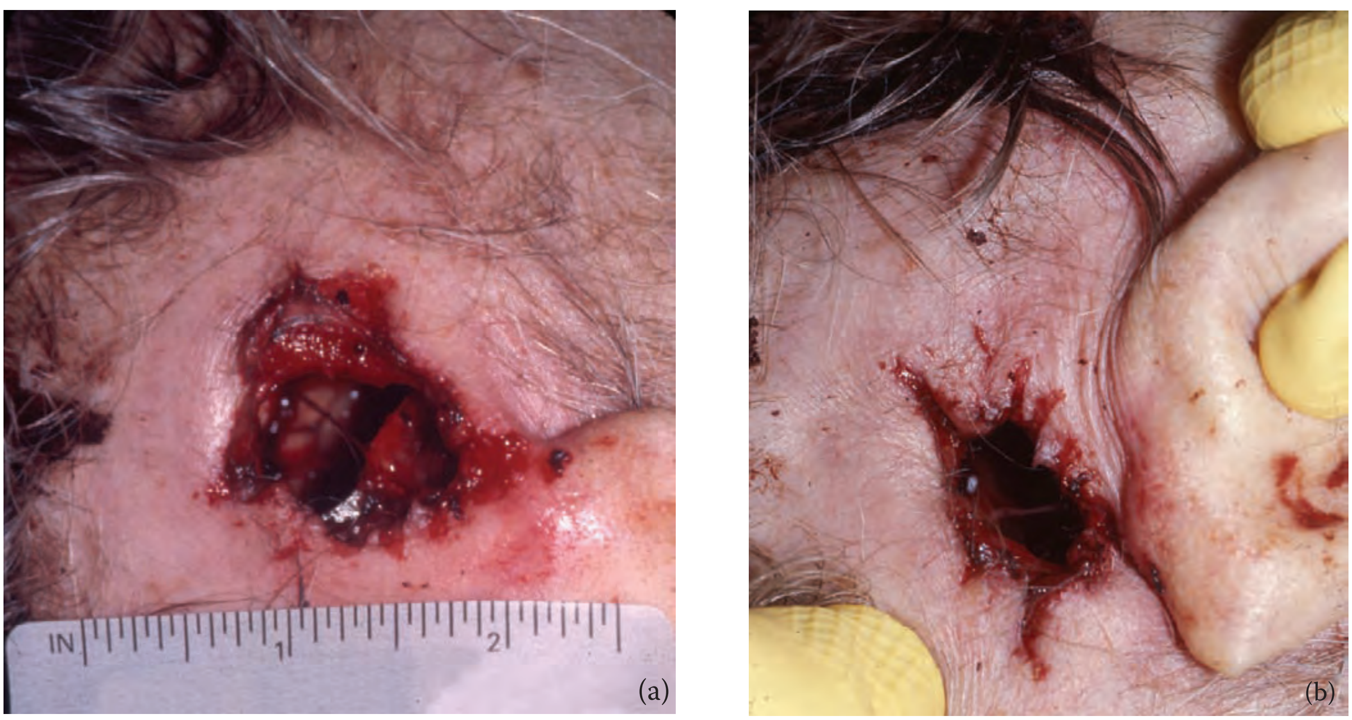
Contact gunshot wound to the face (a). Note the stellate lacerations radiating from the perforation site with soot deposition; (b) a close-up view with a different orientation.

Contact gunshot wound to the right temporal region. Note the larger lacerations extending from the perforation site with adjacent soot deposition.

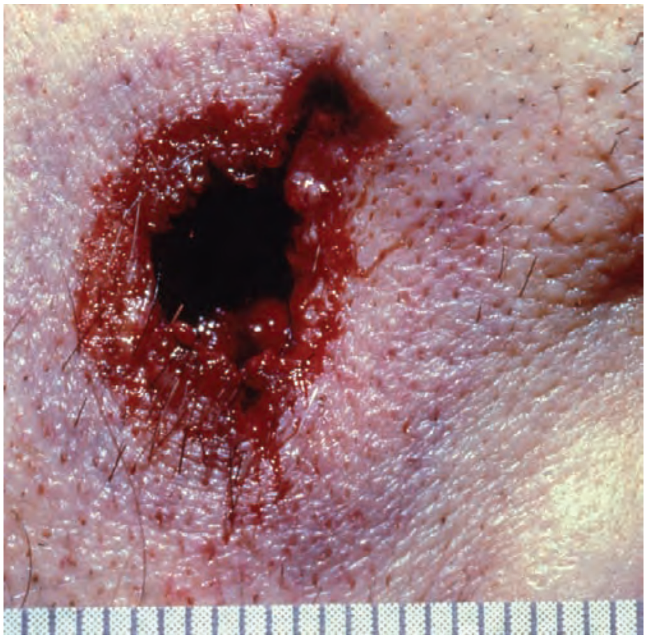
Contact gunshot wound to the eye. Note the lacerations of the eyelid and eye globe with soot deposition at the adjacent skin and within the wound track.

Contact gunshot wound to the temple. Note the small radiating lacerations from the perforation site. Note the presence of soot within the wound track and adjacent skin.

Note this tight contact gunshot wound to the right temporal region with lacerated borders and soot deposition. A .357 Magnum caused a comminuted skull fracture with head deformity and the eye protruding from the socket.



Contact gunshot wound to the scalp. (a) Note the small radiating lacerations with soot deposition. (b) Note the same wound after cleaning. The tension surrounding the wound is relieved by pressing the surrounding skin inward toward the perforation. This will approximate the wound margins and reveal a roughly circular perforation with margin of abrasion characteristic for an entrance gunshot wound. Note that even after cleaning, small amounts of soot are still present at the wound margins. Further cleaning might eliminate this gunpowder residue as well. In many cases, such as this one, it is essential to photograph the body before cleaning.

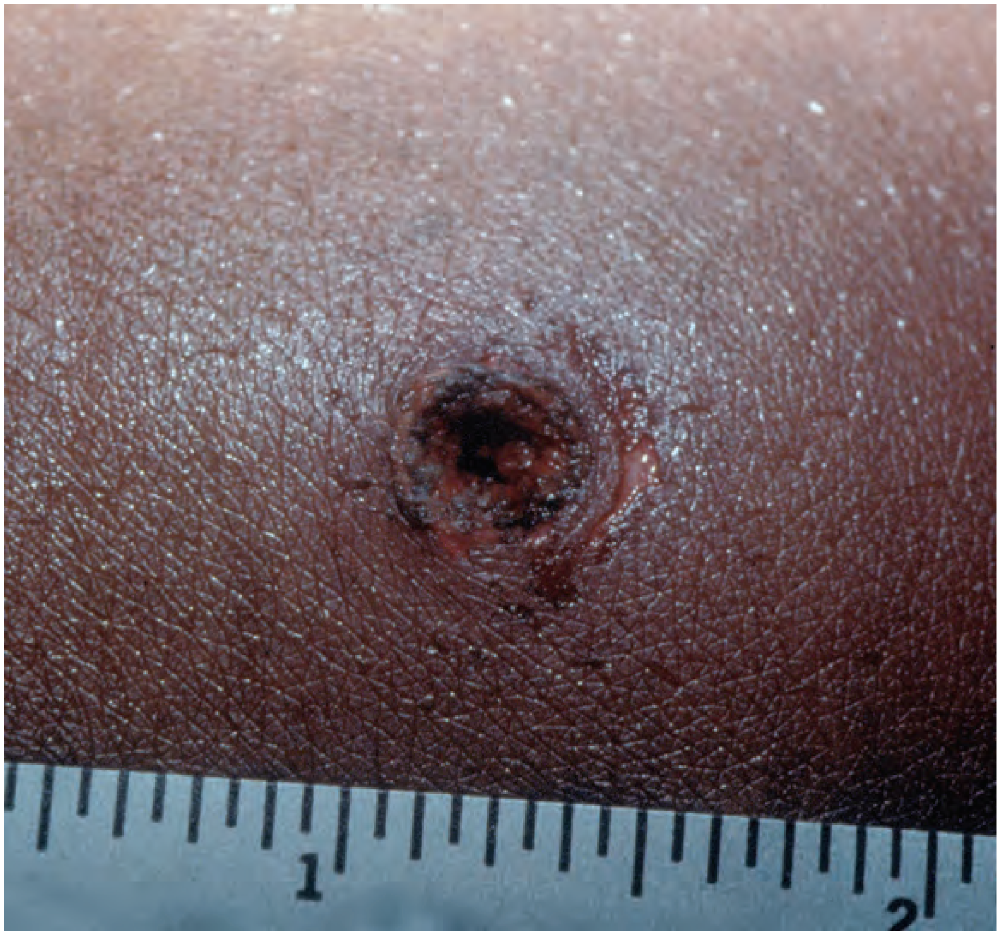


Contact entrance gunshot wound to the temple. Note the abraded imprint of the eyepiece portion of the gun at the superior aspect. The perforation site has a margin of abrasion. There is no obvious soot at the surface of the adjacent skin, but there were copious amounts of soot within the wound track. Note the pink to red discoloration surrounding the perforation due to nitrates and carbon monoxide released from burning gunpowder. These components may sometimes cause this discoloration when reacting with the underlying muscle. In this case, it is more obviously due to the decedent's light skin color.

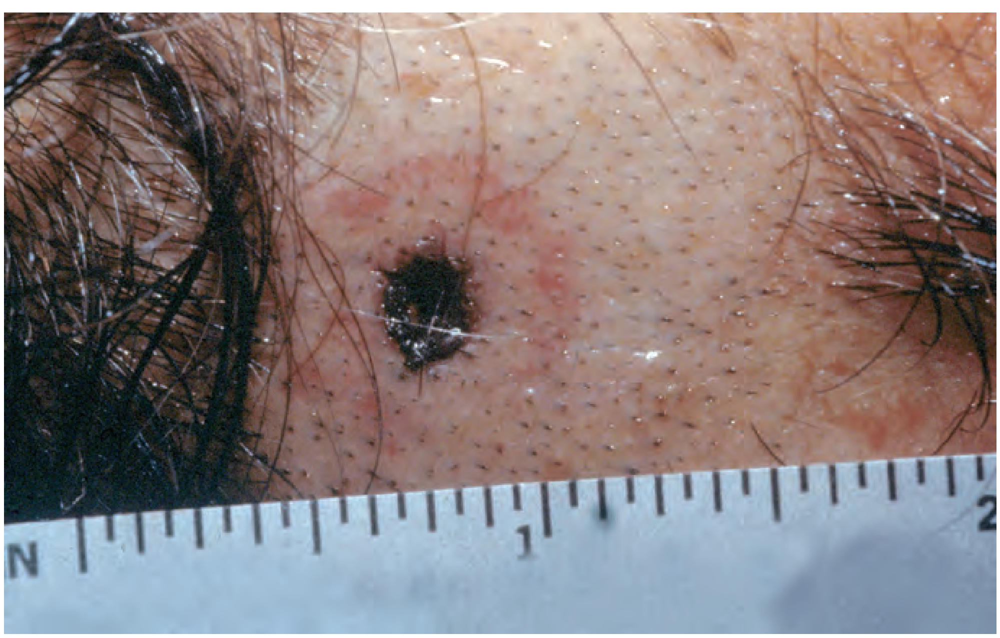
Contact gunshot wound with muzzle imprint.

Contact gunshot wound. Note the adjacent abrasion to the perforation site due to contact with a revolver ejector rod when the gun was discharged. There are also small amounts of soot visible at the wound margins and more within the wound track.

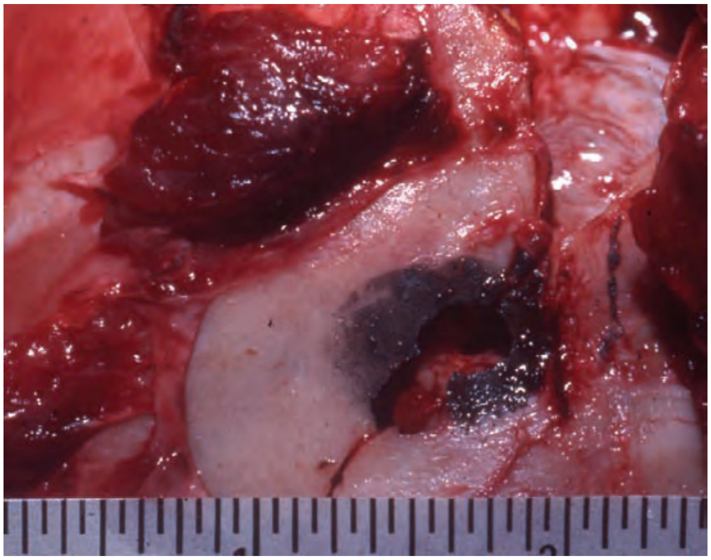
Contact gunshot wound to the scalp with an abrasion at the superior left aspect due to the gun muzzle. There is visible soot within the wound track. Sometimes it may be difficult to visualize the presence of gunpowder residue on thick, dark, scalp hair.

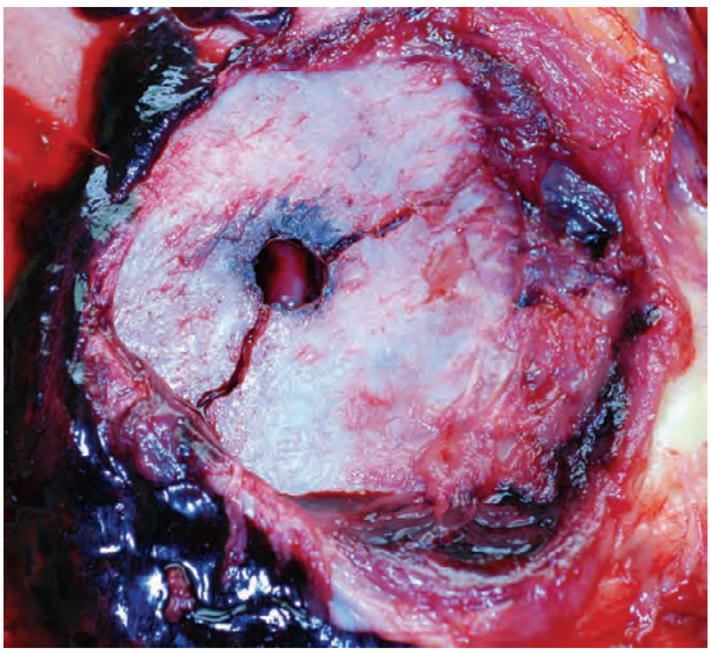


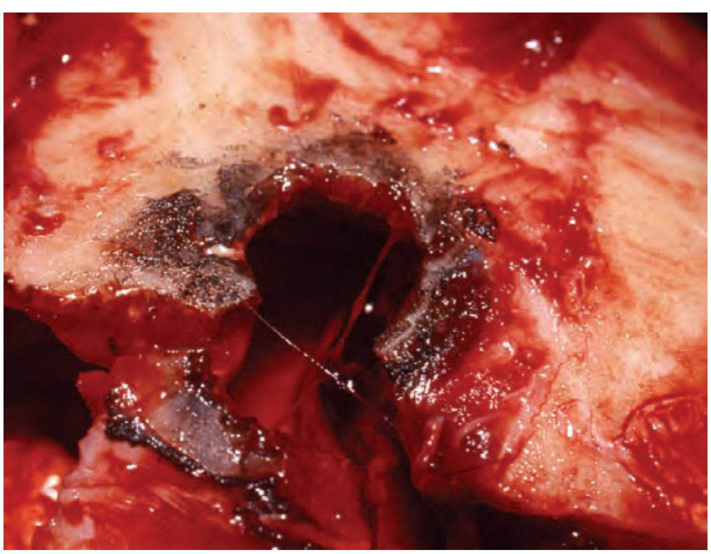
Contact gunshot wound. Note the soot at the margin of the perforation site. Note the surrounding abrasion from a partial muzzle imprint.



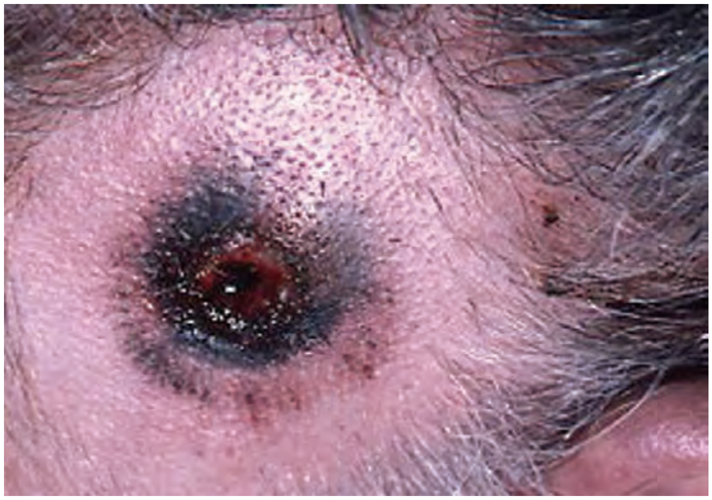
Contact gunshot wound to the right temporal scalp. Note the soot deposition surrounding the margin and the red discoloration of the adjacent skin.





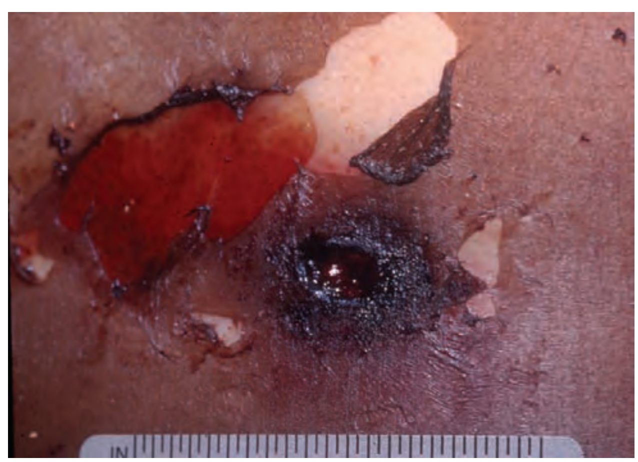


Underlying soot deposition within the wound track on the outer surface of the exposed skull. This is typically seen with a tight contact gunshot wound where soot is forced into the wound track.

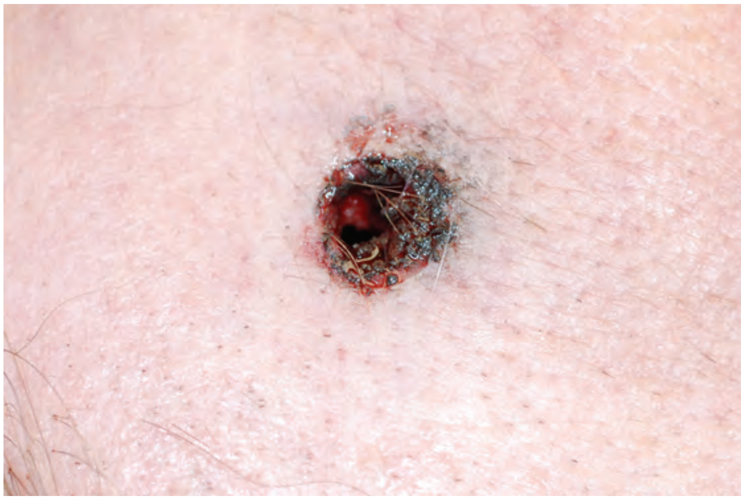


Close-range gunshot wounds with soot deposition.

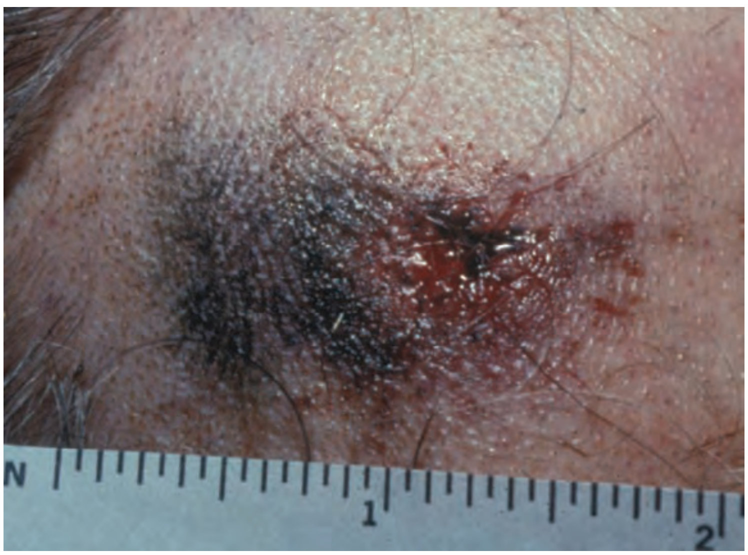
Note the entrance wound is to the left where soot is visible at the adjacent skin.



Close-range gunshot wound to a body with early decompositional changes. Note the soot deposition surrounding the perforation site. These early putrefactive changes consist of skin slippage and discoloration.

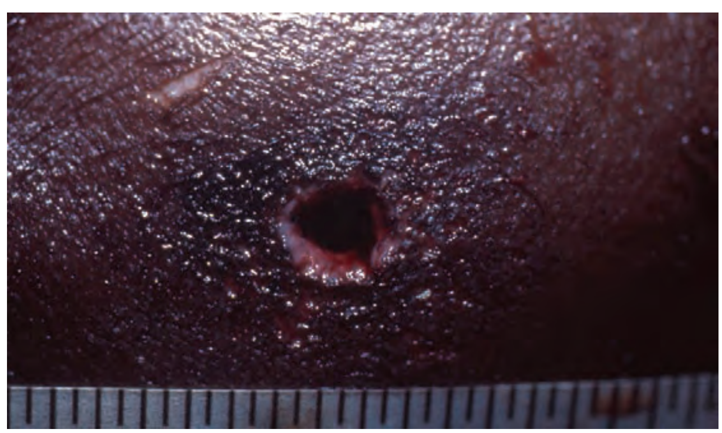


Loose contact with more soot extending to the right side of the perforation.



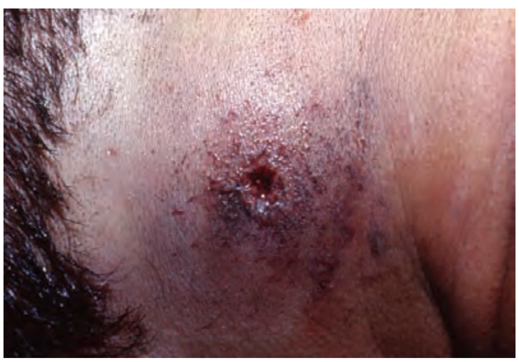
Loose contact with the muzzle more tightly applied at the right aspect. Note the greater soot deposition to the left of the perforation.

Close-range gunshot wound with soot deposition.



Close-range gunshot wound in a very dark-skinned individual. Note the gunpowder residue surrounding the entrance gunshot wound.

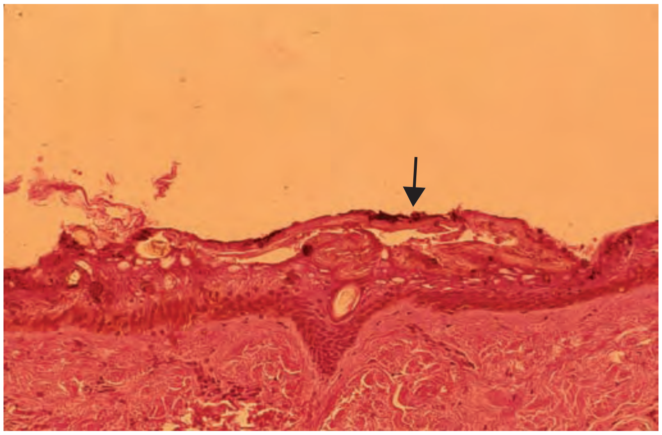
Close-range gunshot wound with a muzzle flare burn and soot encircling the perforation site.

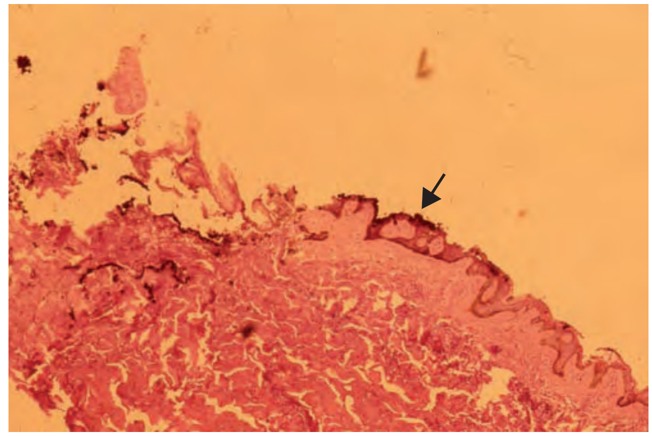


Close-range gunshot wound with sparse soot deposition surrounding the perforation site with adjacent superficial skin erosions due to muzzle flare.

Close-range gunshot wound with soot deposition, superficial skin erosions from muzzle flare with tightly compacted stippling-type defects.

Close-range gunshot wound to the scalp with sparse soot deposition, adjacent burning of the scalp due to muzzle flare, and closely packed stippling defects.





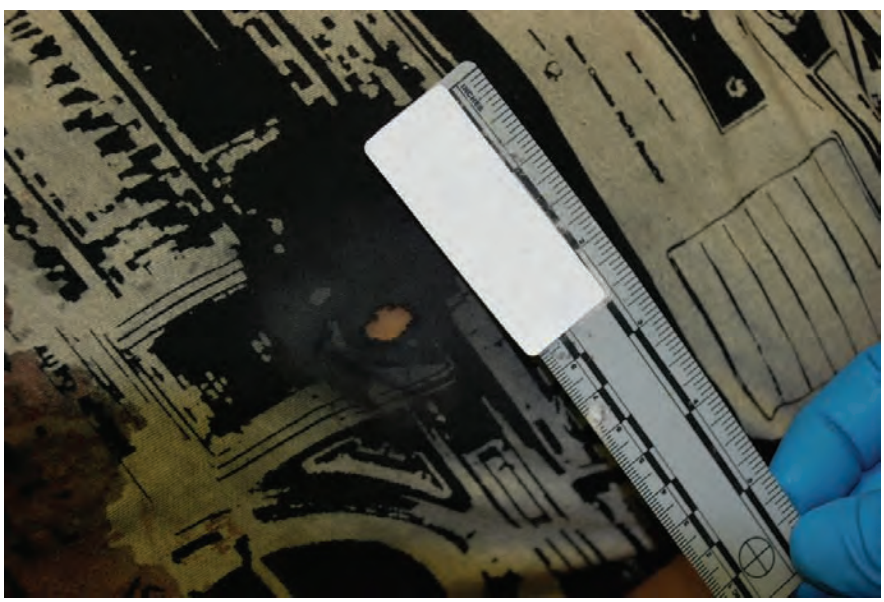
These demonstrate histopathology sections of skin with soot deposition at its surface. The soot appears as a black film on the skin's surface; unburned powder particles may also be visible.

Gunpowder residue at the fingers due to firing a handgun. This individual died from a self-inflicted gunshot wound to the head. The amount of gunpowder residue following discharge of a firearm may be quite variable and sometimes not very obvious.

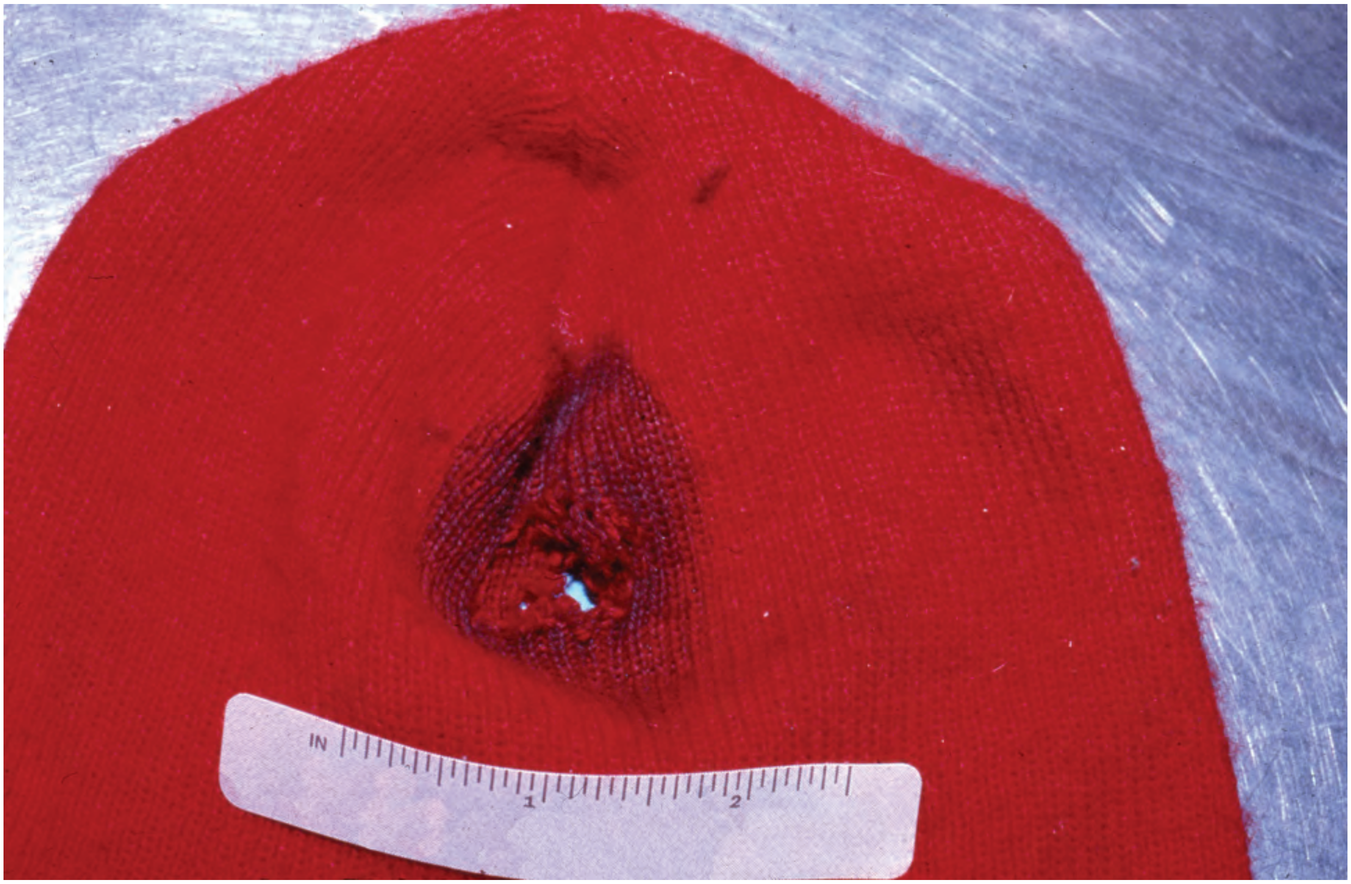
Soot may also be deposited as it exits from the muzzle of the gun or from cylinder gap in revolver type handguns.

This pattern of soot was caused by holding a revolving cylinder while discharging the weapon.

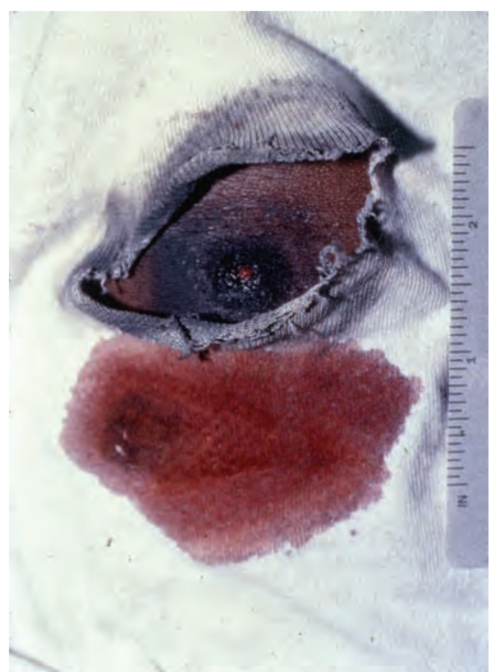
Note the "blowback" blood spatter pattern on the hands of these individuals who died from self-inflicted gunshot wounds to the head. Note that in (a) the spatter pattern is partially obscured by subsequent contact deposit of blood. Also note in (d) the extent of spatter may be minimal.



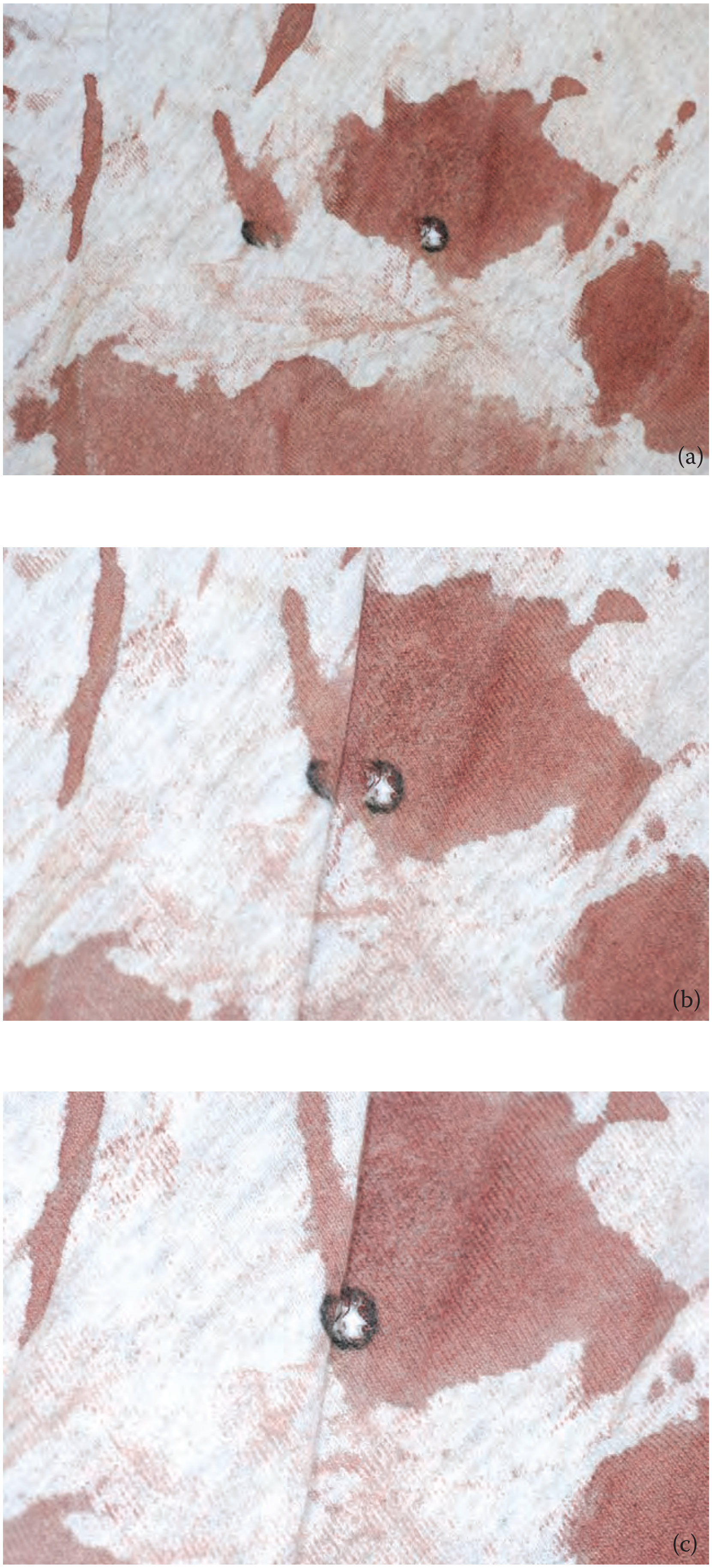
All of these are articles of clothing demonstrate close-range gunshot perforations with soot deposition. It is always important to inspect the decedent's clothing. Multiple layers of heavy clothing may filter gunpowder residue from the body surface. It is also important to distinguish bullet wipe from soot deposition. Bullet wipe is a small, encircling, gray discoloration around the perforation site of the clothing due to lubricants and residue from within the barrel of the gun that adhere to the bullet surface as it passes through the barrel. Unlike soot, bullet wipe is not useful in range of fire estimations.

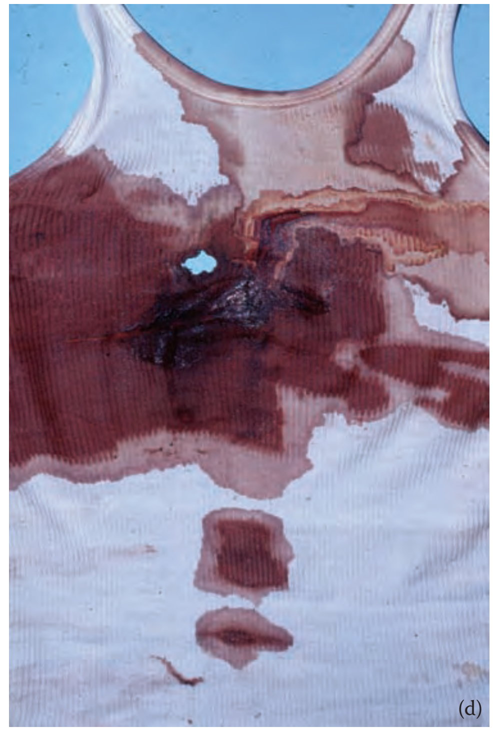


Clothing with soot indicating close range of fire. The individual wearing the hat had long curly black hair and there was no appreciable soot noted at the scalp.



Note the large tear in the clothing from this contact wound and the minimal amount of adjacent external hemorrhage. This is an antemortem injury with more than a liter of blood observed in the thoracic cavity during autopsy.

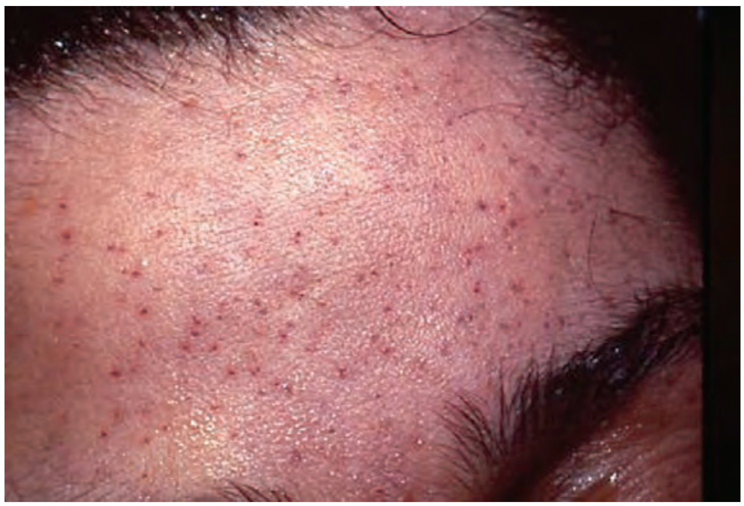




This entrance gunshot defect is surrounded by dark clotted blood. The dark discoloration of blood, particularly on dark clothing, may make if difficult to observe soot. This is a distant gunshot wound (d).

Bullet wipe. This individual had his shirt tucked in, creating folds in the cloth. Note the dark discoloration around the perforation site with the right aspect separated several inches from the site of bullet entry. By refolding the fabric and approximating the margins we can simulate how the individual actually wore his shirt (a–c).

Intermediate range of fire. Tightly packed stippling defects surrounding this entrance gunshot wound to the cheek. There is no apparent soot deposition.



Multiple stippling defects to this individual's forehead indicating intermediate range of fire.

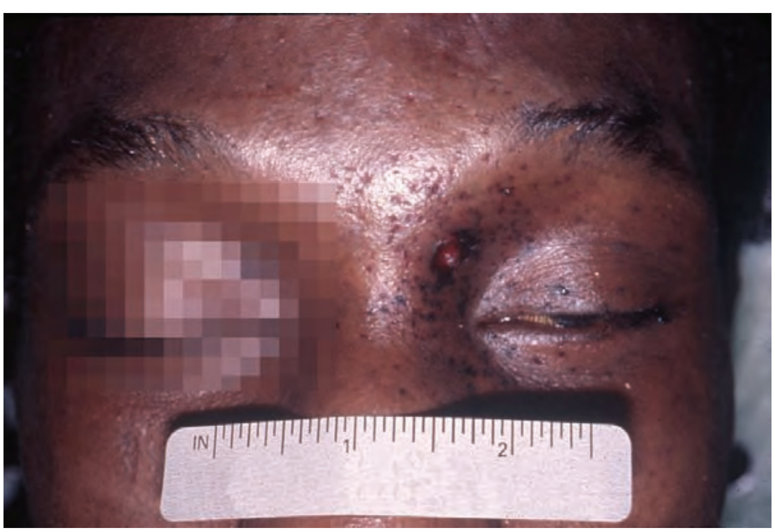
Intermediate range of fire with stippling defects. Stippling defects represent abrasions that, unlike soot, cannot be wiped away.

Intermediate range entrance gunshot wound to the eyebrow with stippling defects across the face. Note the irregular nature of the wound due to the location of the gunshot wound through the eyebrow ridge, with the underlying frontal bone closely subadjacent to the skin surface.

Intermediate range of fire.

Intermediate-range entrance gunshot wound with stippling defects. The scalp is partially shaved. Note the decreased number of defects in the shaved area as a result of hair dampening the effect. The weapon was a sawed-off 30/30 hunting rifle that was reportedly discharged approximately 15 inches away from the decedent's head.

Entrance gunshot wound with stippling defects indicating intermediate range of fire.



Intermediate-range gunshot wound with stippling in a dark-skinned individual.

Intermediate-range gunshot wound. Note the sparse stippling defects along the bicep and forearm with sparing of the anticubital fossa region. This indicates the decedent had his arm bent when he was shot.

This individual had stippling defects involving the posterior portion of his lateral outer ear and temporal scalp. Note the sparing of the posterior medial ear.

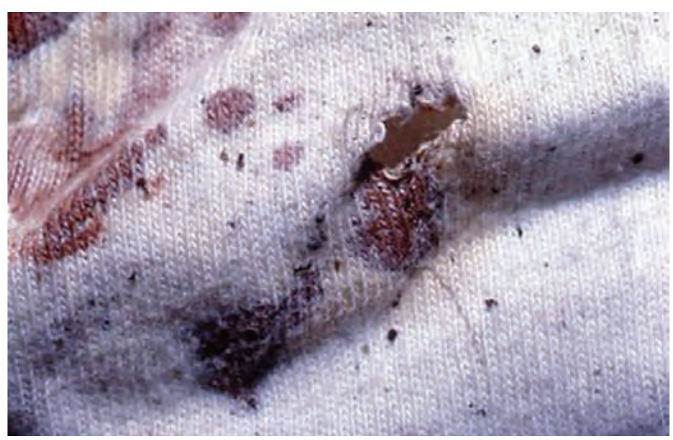

Stippling defects with soot deposition on the side of an outstretched hand, indicating intermediate to close range of fire.

Multiple-entrance gunshot wounds. Note the sparse stippling defects indicating intermediate range of fire at the skin anterior to the ear. The farther away a gun is discharged from the body, the more spread out the stippling defects become.

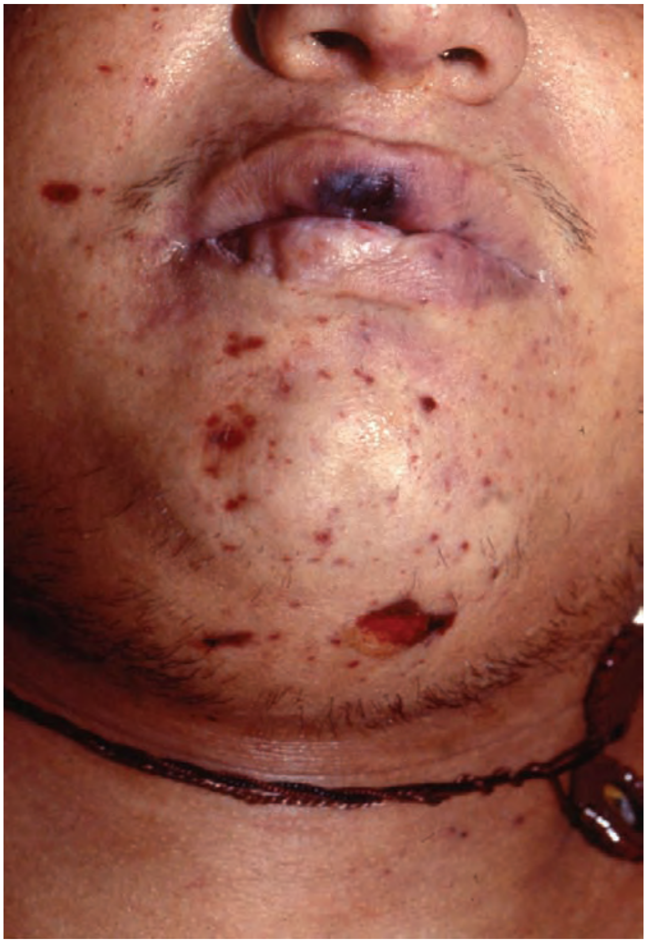
Intermediate range of fire. Note the sparse stippling defect surrounding the bullet perforation site.

A few sparse stippling defects indicating intermediate range of fire. Note the contusion surrounding the perforating gunshot wound at the arm. This dark discoloration should not be confused with gunpowder residue.

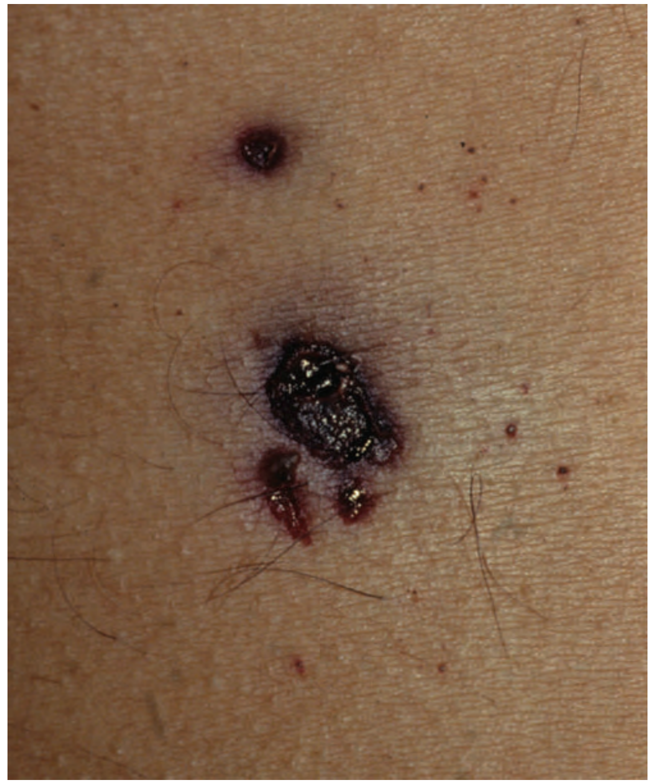
Note the multiple gunshot wounds to this individual in varying directions. She was shot multiple times while jumping in different directions in an attempt to run away. Note the contusion to her left shoulder and the stippling defects to her face. It is important to realize that the direction of fire may vary greatly.



Gunshot wound perforation of clothing with multiple gunpowder residue flecks at the surrounding surface. The underlying entrance gunshot wound still revealed a sparse stippling pattern consistent with intermediate range of fire.

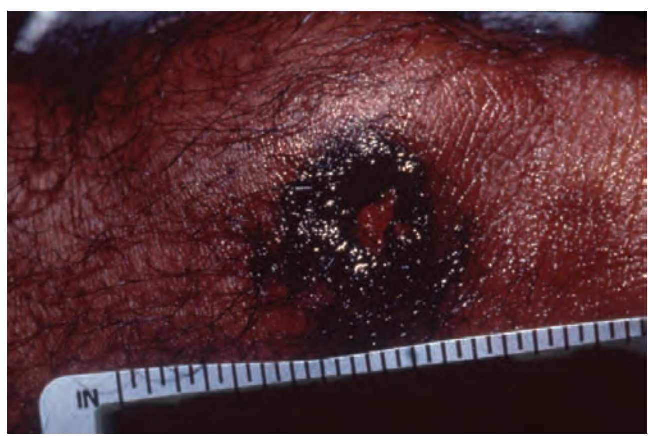


Distant gunshot wound with pseudostippling to this individual's face caused by fragmented debris as the bullet passed through a car window.

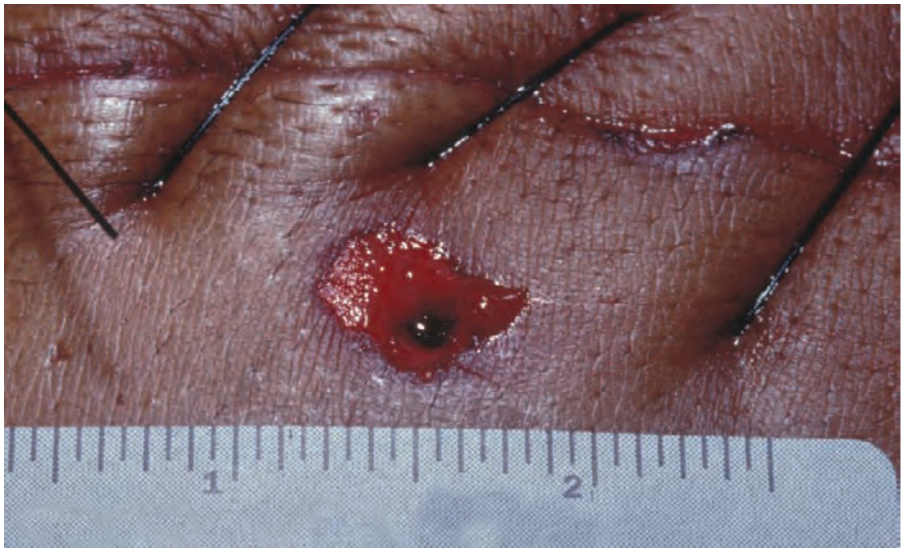


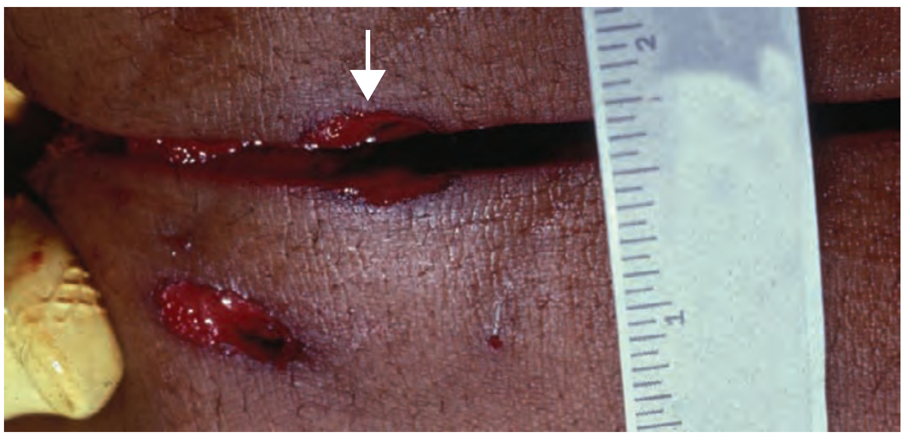
Distant gunshot wound with pseudostippling. Note the large size variation in the abrasions to the gunshot wound. True stippling defects are more uniform in size.

Atypical distant-entrance gunshot wound with surrounding contusion.



Distant-entrance gunshot wound with surrounding clotted blood. In this case, histopathology of the adjacent skin demonstrated no dark particles consistent with gunpowder residue. It may be challenging to visualize soot when it is mixed with dried blood. Dried clotted blood has a shinier character than gunpowder residue, which has a duller appearance. It may be challenging to interpret range of fire when both dried blood and soot are present simultaneously. If there is any question concerning the presence of soot, we recommend microscopic examination to help clarify this point.



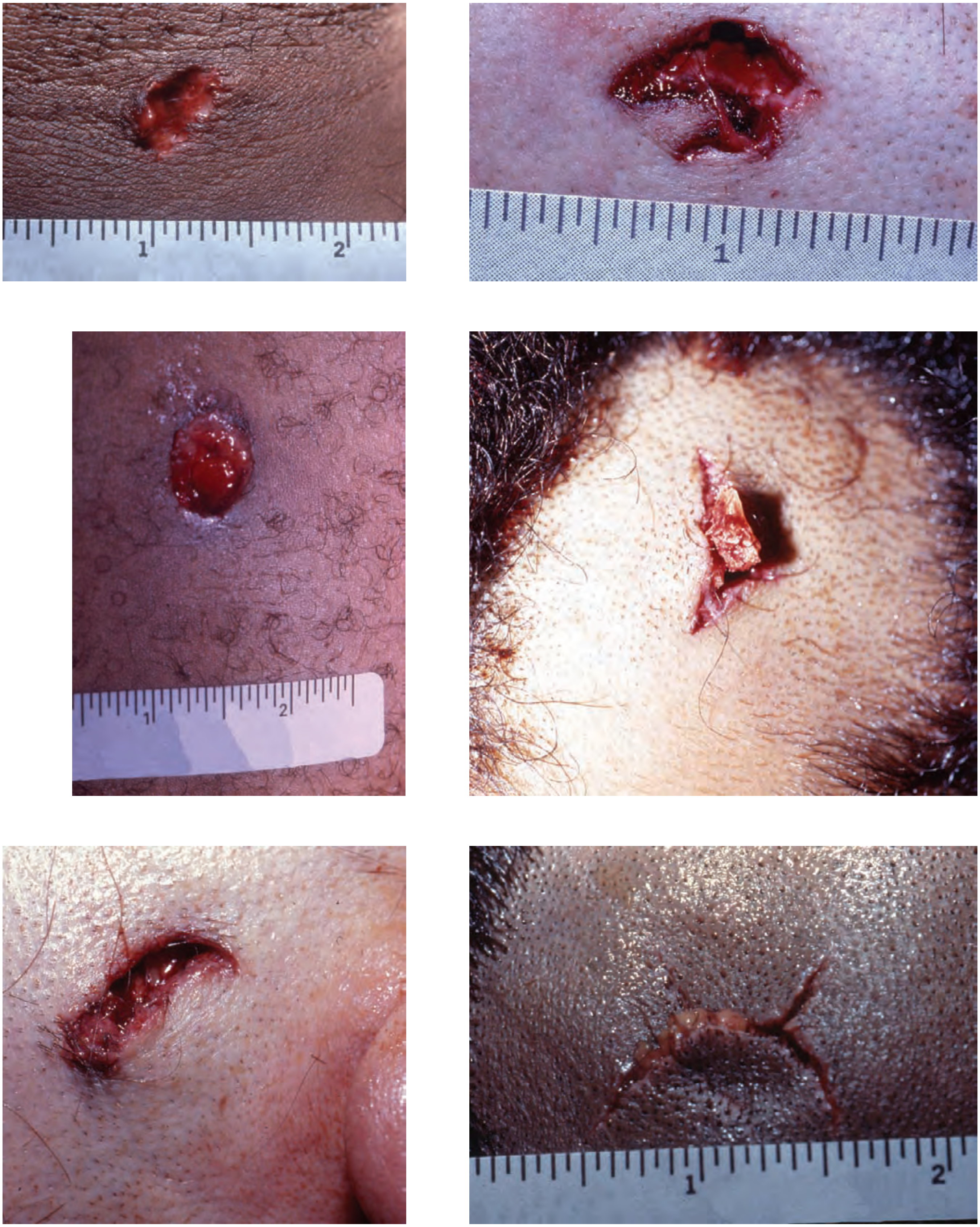


Thoracotomy incision through entrance gunshot wound. One should never cut through the wound during resuscitative efforts. No one would argue the importance of saving the individual's life. Cutting next to the wound will not affect the chances for survival. Cutting through the wound may make wound interpretation very difficult and hinder criminal proceedings. Note one gunshot wound was cut through and hidden in the suture line. The defect becomes more obvious with suture removal.

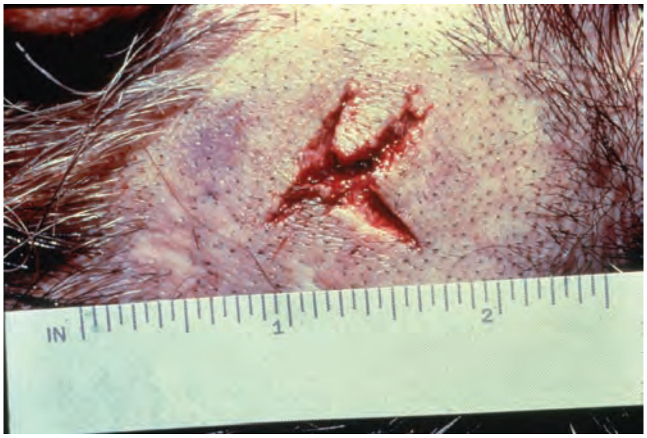
Note the large gunshot wound at the medial aspect of this thoracotomy incision.

This is a gunshot wound that is several days old. This person died of septic complications. Note the adjacent wound infection distal to the GSW site.

Exit gunshot wounds. Note the typical, often irregular, slit-like defects without margins of abrasion. The appearance is generally more irregular and less round than the entrance wound.



Exit gunshot wounds.

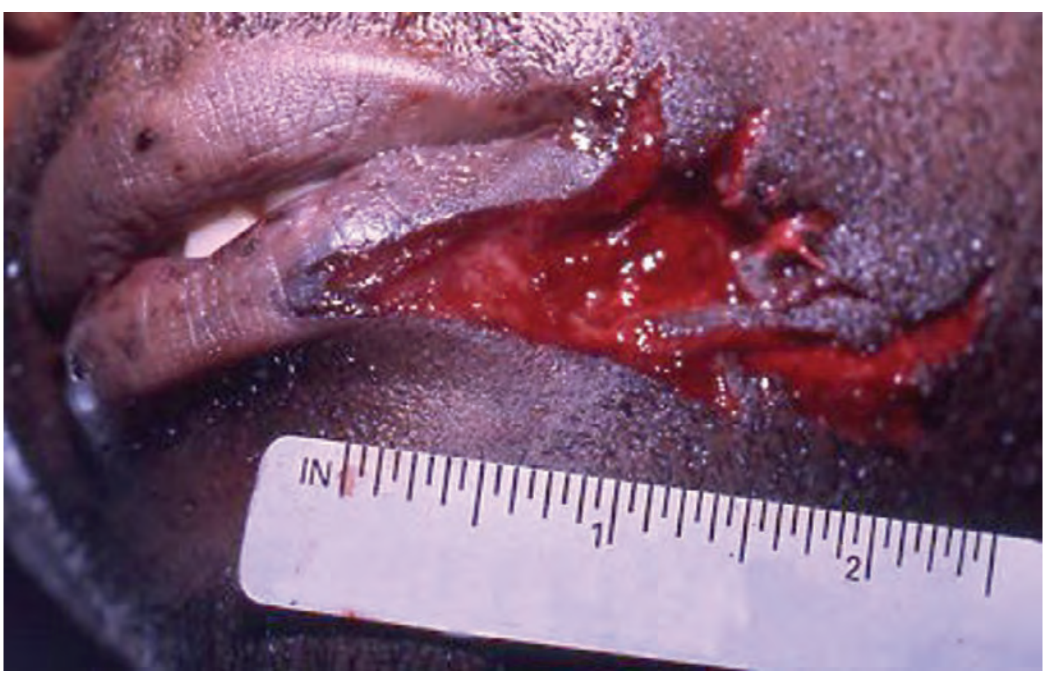


Exit wound with lacerated margins.

Exit wound from a sawed-off 30/30 hunting rifle.

Exit wound from a handgun. It is not typical to get such a large laceration from a medium-caliber bullet that already perforated the skull.

Exit gunshot wound through the right nares.



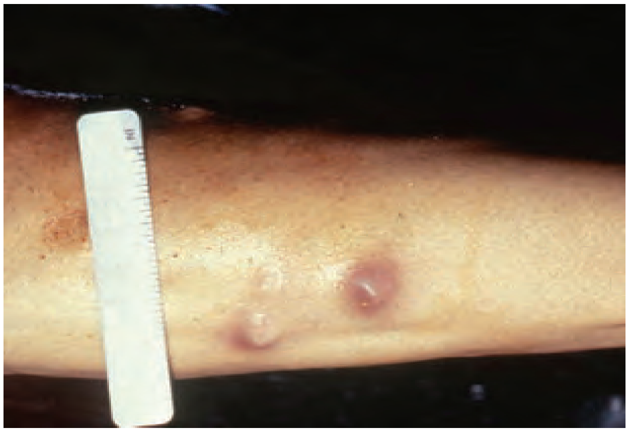
Exit gunshot wound to the lower face caused by a bullet that was markedly deformed by striking underlying bone before exiting.

Exit gunshot wound through the finger.

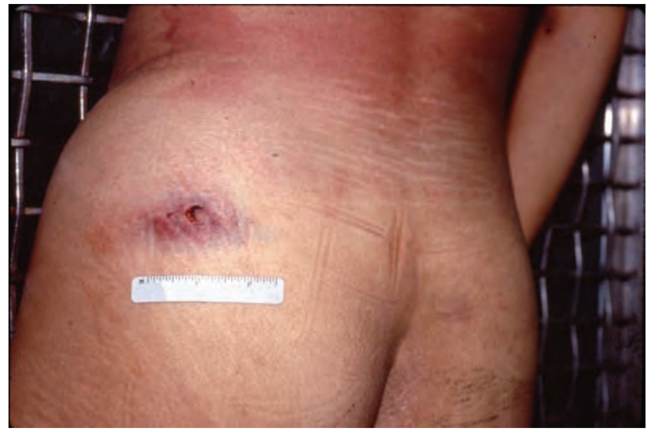
Exit gunshot wounds through the palm of the hand.

Exit gunshot wound through the thumbnail bed.

This individual was shot in the lower back while leaning forward. The bullet perforated the structures of the thoracic cavity and neck, producing a grazing-type gunshot wound to the tongue. The bullet then knocked out the individual's front tooth before exiting the body from the open mouth.

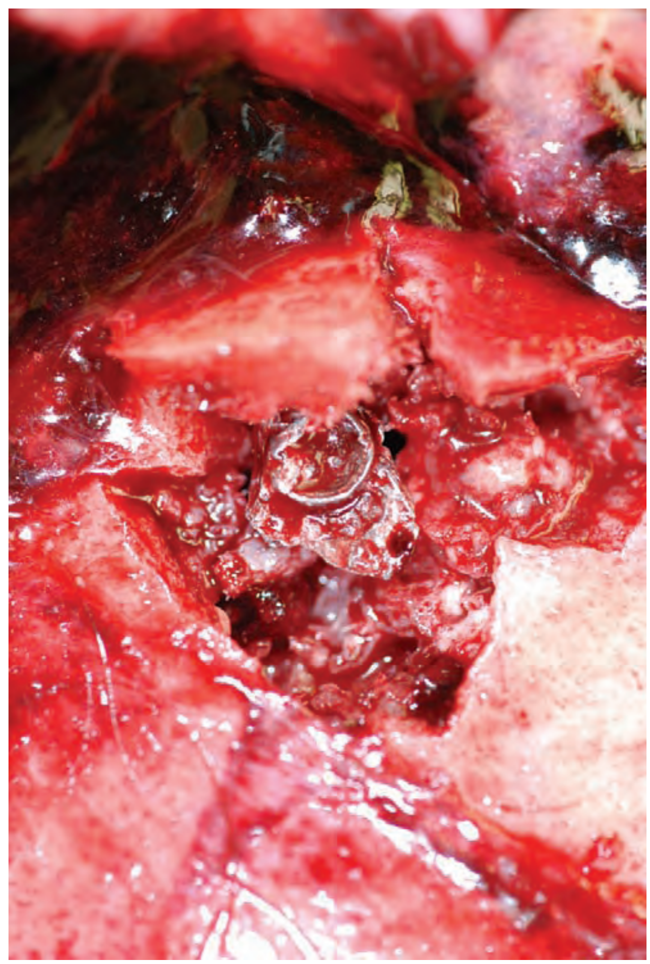


Note the lumps directly underneath the skin's surface. These are caused by bullets just beneath the surface of the skin that did not have enough kinetic energy to exit the body.

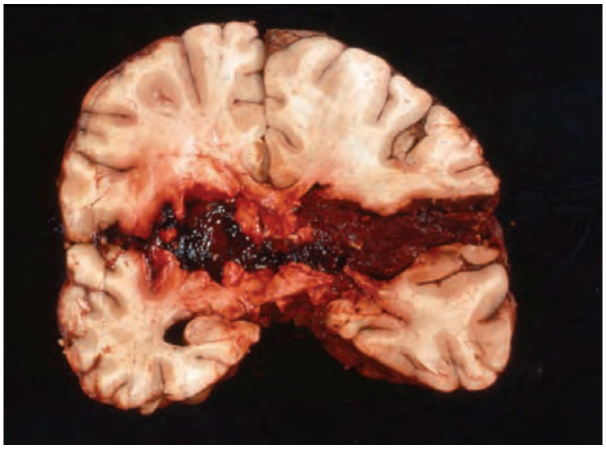


A bullet was retrieved just beneath the surface of the skin within this area of contusion.

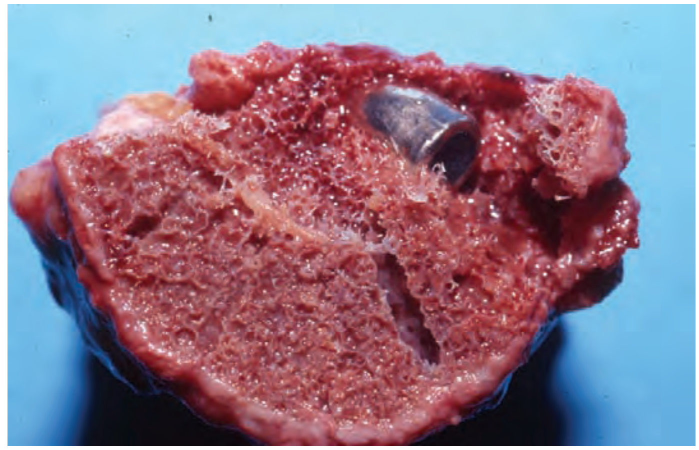
There is a large deformed gray metal slug just underneath the surface of the skin that is partially visible underneath the broken skin.



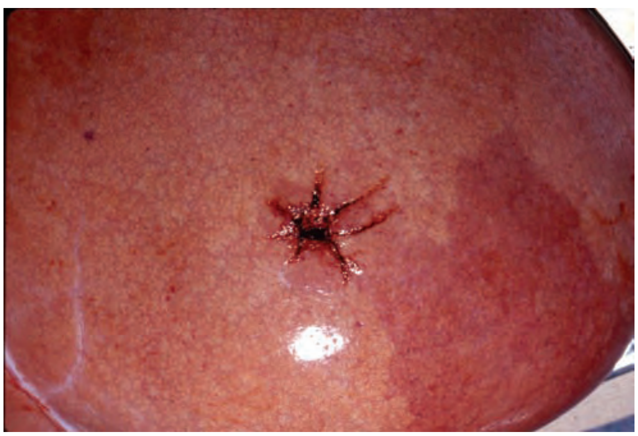
Bullet retrieved from skull fracture directly underneath the skin's surface.

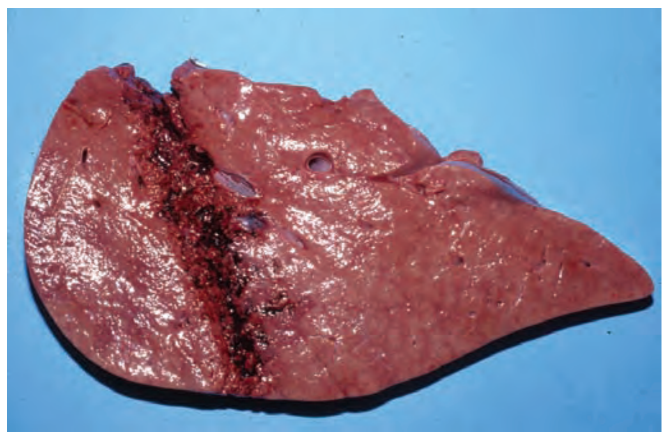


This image demonstrates a hemorrhagic pulpified wound track through the cerebral hemispheres caused by a medium-caliber handgun bullet.

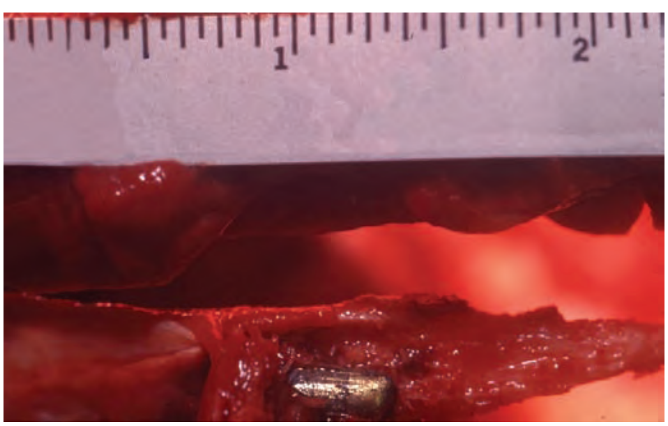


This bullet was retrieved within this portion of thoracic vertebra. It is important to carefully remove such bullets encased in bone, so as not to destroy ballistic markings on the sides of the bullet.

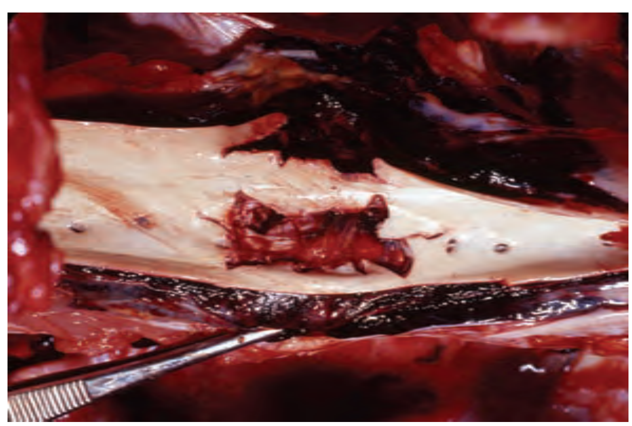




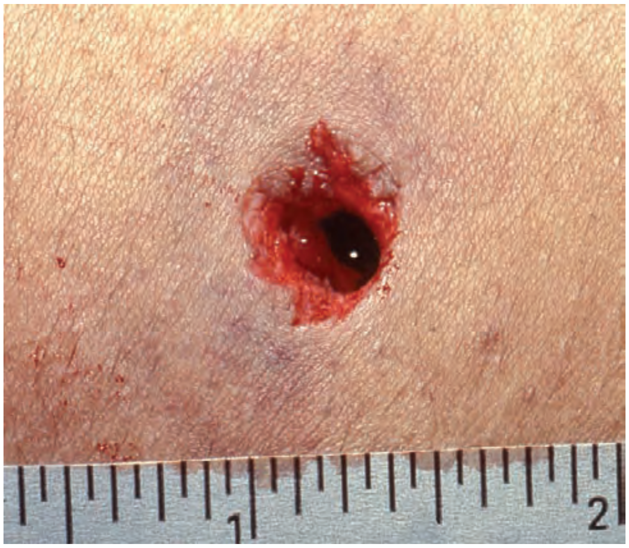
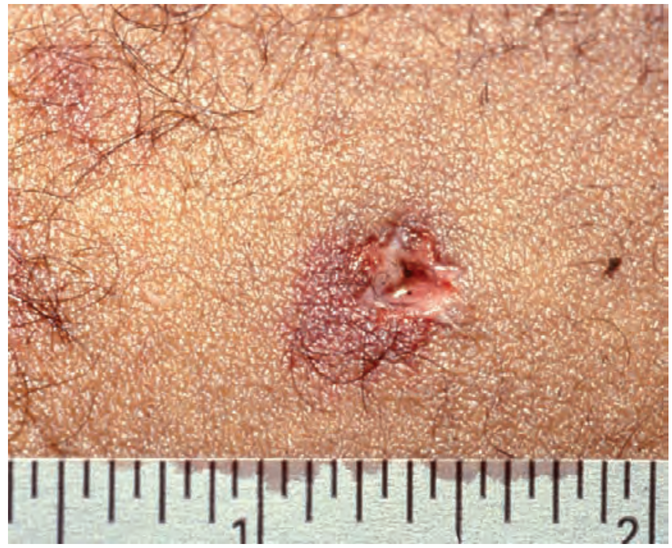
These figures demonstrate a wound track through the liver caused by a medium-caliber handgun.



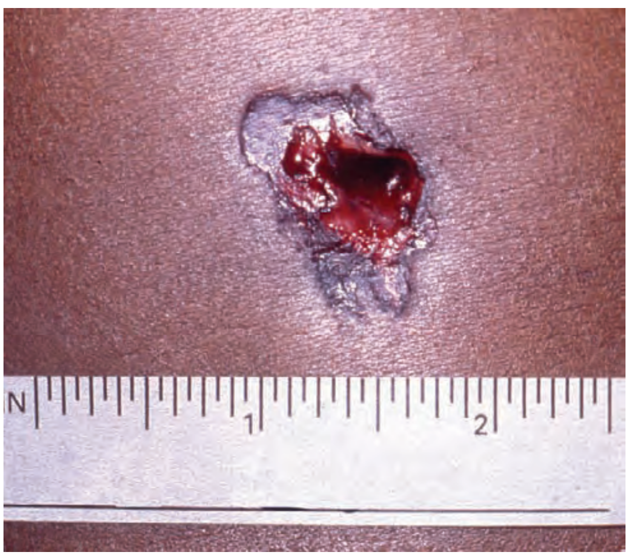
This individual had been shot several weeks earlier with a .22 caliber handgun. One of his ribs fractured while removing the breastplate during autopsy and a bullet was retrieved from within the medullary cavity.



A wound track through the aorta with adjacent surrounding hemorrhage. This wound was caused by a medium-caliber weapon.

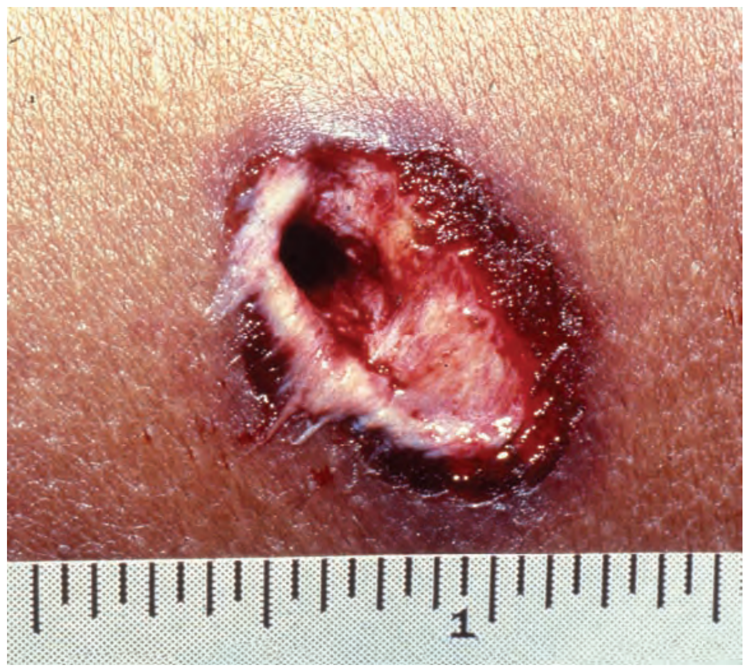
Shored exits. These wounds were produced by bullets exiting the body where the skin's surface is supported (e.g., by a firm surface or tight clothing).



Atypical entrance gunshot wound caused by a bullet that was deformed by passing through an intermediate target. Note the large irregular abrasion caused by the deformed edges of the bullet's striking the skin surface.

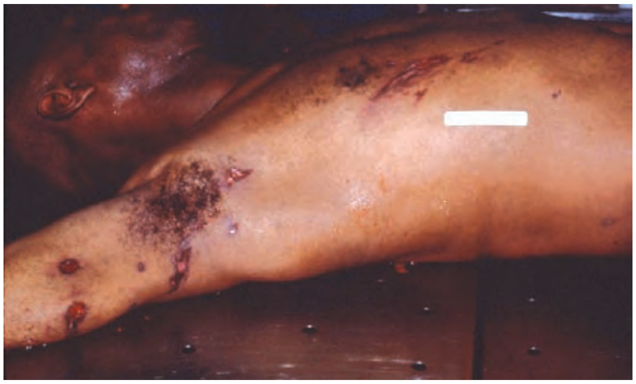

Shored exit wounds.

Irregular exit gunshot wound with adjacent abrasion due to its location on the body through a region of folded skin.



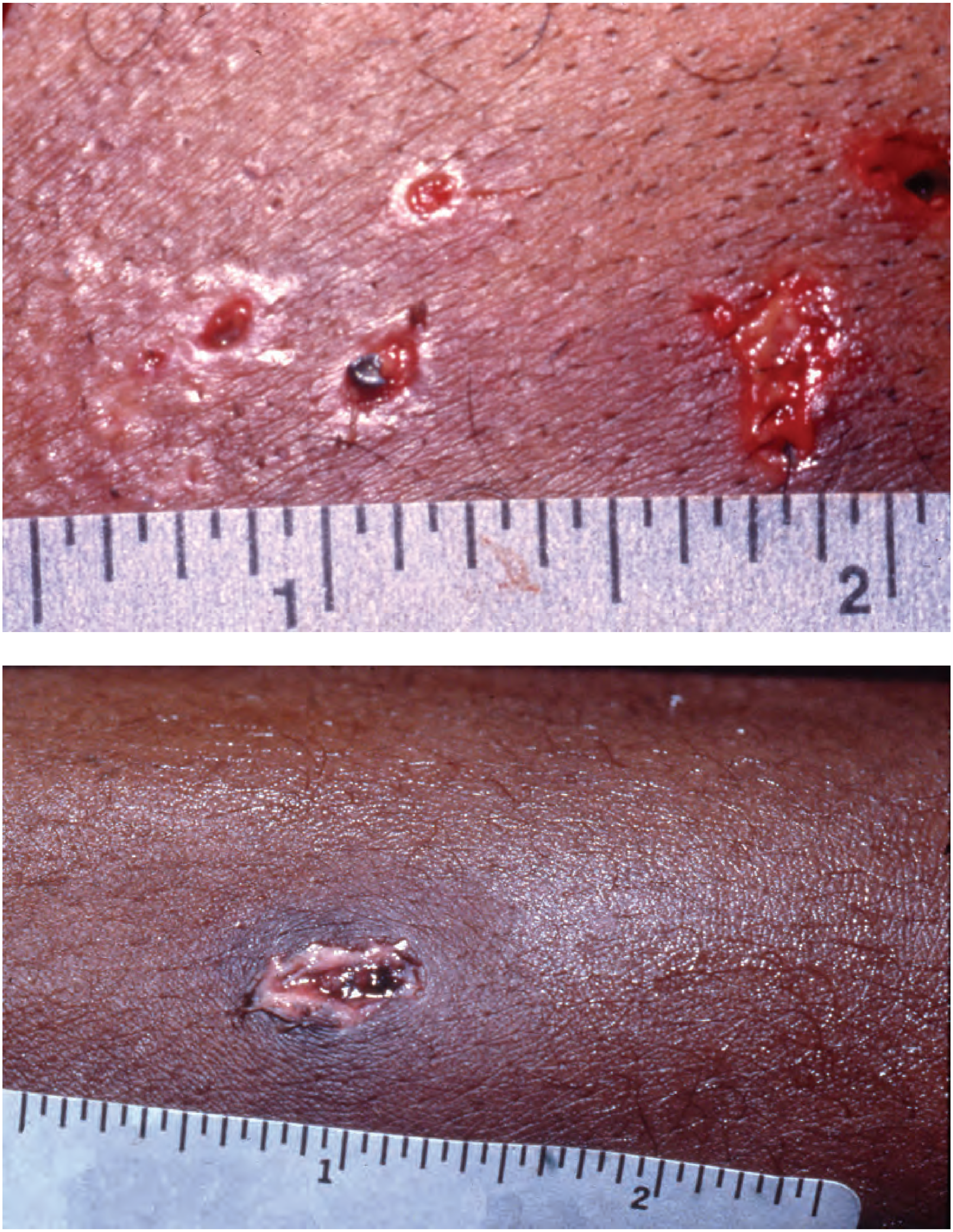
This distant-entrance gunshot wound has slight oval shape with an irregular margin of abrasion that is greatest at its inferior right aspect. This wound was produced by a ricochet bullet that first struck a brick wall. Part of the bullet had an irregular scratched surface. Also, this bullet most likely struck the body sideways.

Atypical gunshot wound. This is a re-entry gunshot wound produced from a bullet that was markedly deformed from striking a bone in another part of the body. Note the irregular nature of the perforation with the irregular adjacent abrasions.



Atypical gunshot wounds from deformed and fragmented bullets that passed through an intermediate target, such as a car door and window, before entering and exiting the body. Note the markedly irregular nature of these injuries.

Multiple atypical entrance gunshot wounds produced by fragmented pieces of lead caused by .22 caliber nonjacketed bullets that struck concrete and fragmented before striking an individual who was lying on the sidewalk. Note the irregular nature of these injuries with superficial fragmented pieces of lead observed in several of the wound tracks.

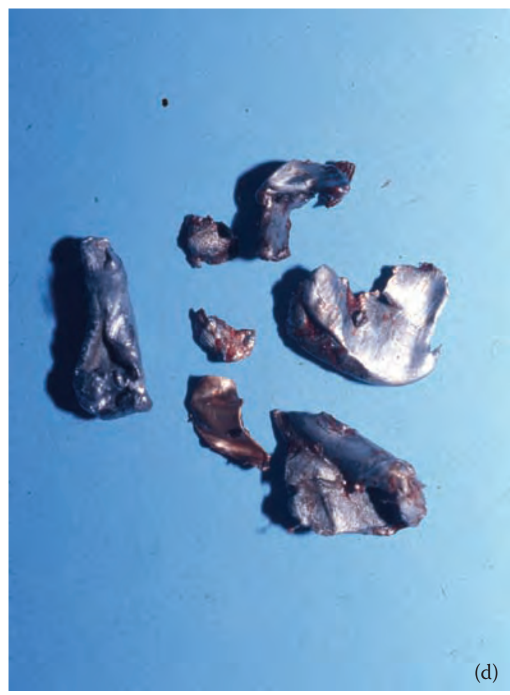


Several atypical injuries produced by fragmented nonjacketed lead bullets. The individual survived in the hospital for days. Note the healing margins and fragments of lead being pushed from the underlying soft tissue.

(a)

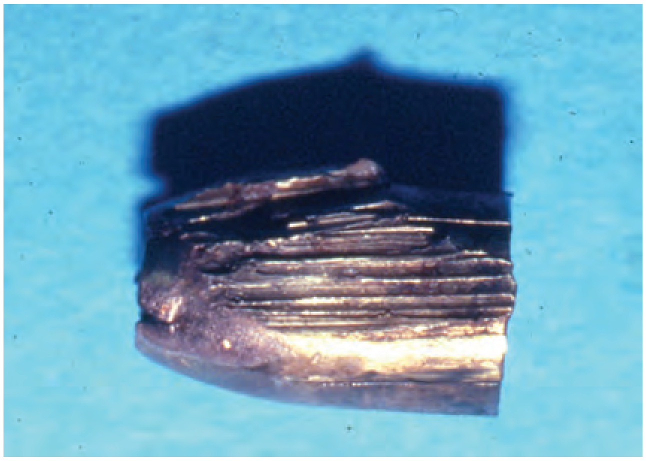
(b)

(c)

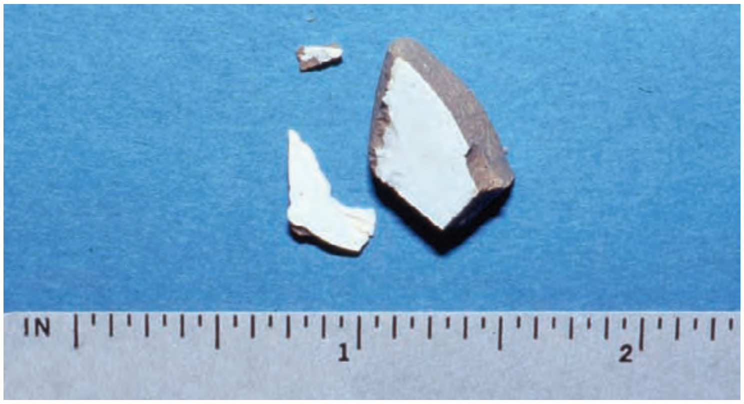


(d)

This child was shot multiple times. One of the bullets struck another object, fragmented, and produced this atypical entrance wound to his wrist (a). There were fragments of bullets retrieved from the decedent's jacket corresponding to this location (b). X-ray (c) shows multiple fragments of deformed metal retrieved just underneath the skin surface adjacent to the bones of the hand. The last image (d) shows all the bullet fragments retrieved from this individual's hand and wrist. There were no other wounds to this region of the body.



This ricochet bullet was retrieved within the abdomen of an individual with a perforated iliac artery. The bullet perforated the individual's shirt and did not strike bone while passing through the body.

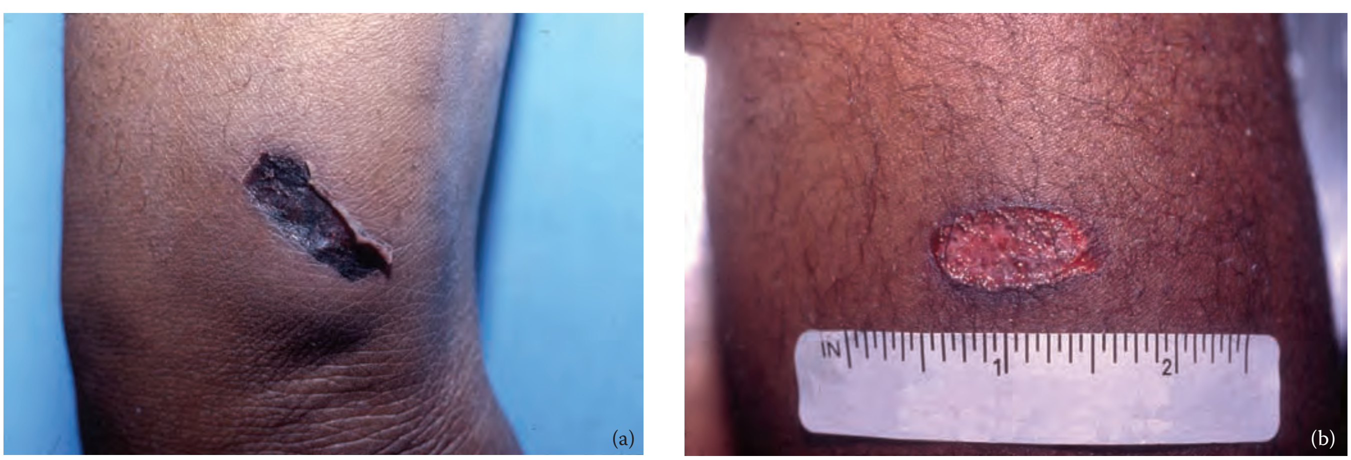


This bullet struck the ground, fragmented portions of tile, and became markedly deformed before ricocheting upward and striking the body of an individual already lying on the ground. The resulting gunshot wound was markedly atypical, producing irregular injuries to the body surface.

This deformed bullet was retrieved from an individual after it ricocheted off an intermediate target.

Intermediate-entrance gunshot wound with stippling. Note the irregular natural of the wound due to the location on the body. The bullet entered between the cartilage of the ear at a skin fold between the ear and the scalp. Note the elongated abrasion at the posterior ear due to the bullet's grazing the skin before entering the body.

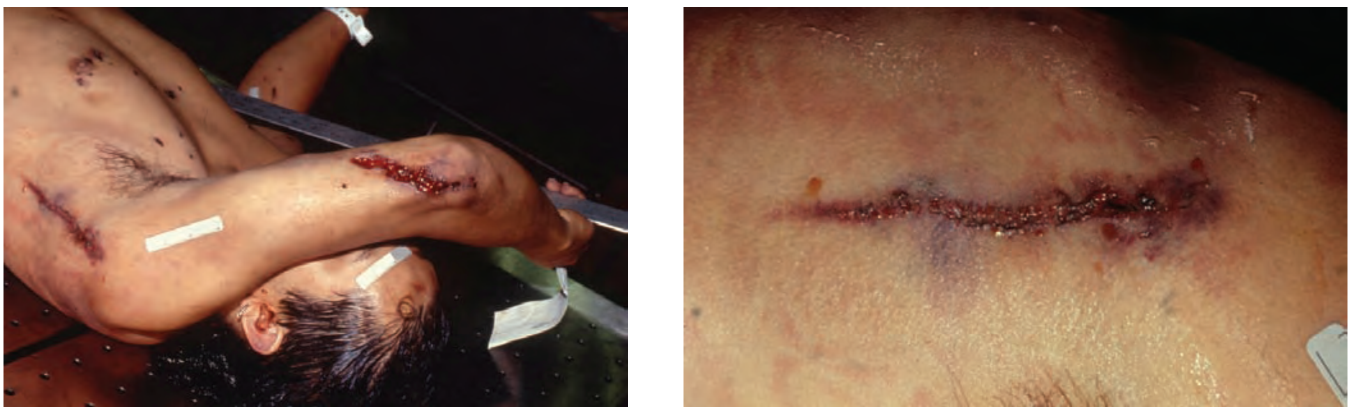
Distant-entrance gunshot wound with an asymmetric margin of abrasion. This indicates that the bullet grazed the body at an upward trajectory before perforating the skin.



Graze gunshot wounds; (a) is more atypical.

Graze gunshot wounds.

Tangential gunshot wound with a trajectory from the middle to distal aspect of the finger. Note the semicircular entrance defect at the right side of this wound overlying the proximal middle phalange.



Tangential gunshot wounds to the arm and trunk. Note the skin tag formation at the wound margin produced as the bullet perforated underneath the skin's surface.

Tangential gunshot wound with skin tag formation. The direction of fire is from left to right.

Distant tangential gunshot wound. Tangential gunshot wounds are produced when the bullet strikes the body at a narrow angle, producing skin tag formation. Usually the bullet exits the body leaving an open wound through the skin's surface, connecting the path of entrance and exit perforations. These wounds are deeper than graze gunshot wounds. This wound is associated with bullet fragmentation and partial exit, which may occur when the bullet strikes the body at a surface directly adjacent to underlying bone. This is an example with bullet fragmentation, partial exit, and underlying keyhole deformity of the skull. Note the entrance side of this wound is at the anterior aspect. There is a semicircular margin of abrasion leading into this laceration. The direction of fire is from left to right.

Tangential gunshot wound of the scalp. The direction of fire is from right to left. Note the skin tag formation pointing away from the semicircular entrance site at the right side of the wound.

Note the tangential gunshot wound through the palmar surfaces of the fingers.

Tangential gunshot wound to the forehead. Part of this bullet entered the cranium and a portion of the bullet exited the body. There was an underlying keyhole deformity to the skull.

After this bullet perforated the fingers it produced a tangential gunshot wound to the nose before entering the body at the face.

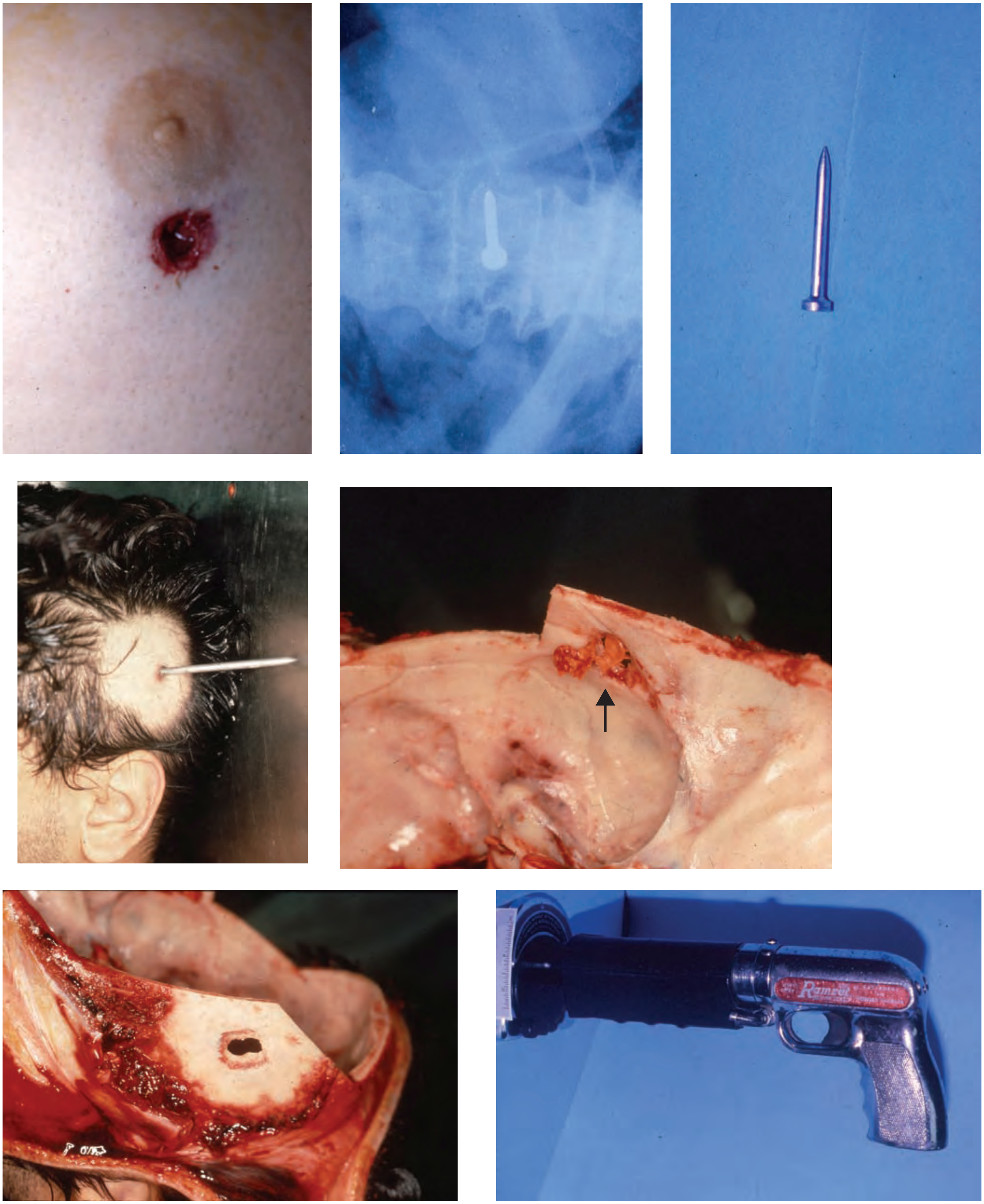
This demonstrates an entrance and exit gunshot wound that passed superficially beneath the skin surface. The direction of fire is right to left. Note that the perforation at the right side has a more uniform oval shape with a more symmetric margin of abrasion. The exit component to this wound is more irregular.

This gunshot wound produced multiple tears and perforations to the surface of the skin as the bullet passed close to the underlying surface. Such injuries often occur in regions of the body where skin folds on itself, such as the inguinal, gluteal, and axillary regions.

This single gunshot wound passed through the superficial soft tissues of the chest, producing multiple perforations and tears to the surface. Note the irregular nature of the torn skin and irregular abrasions at the exit reentry site.

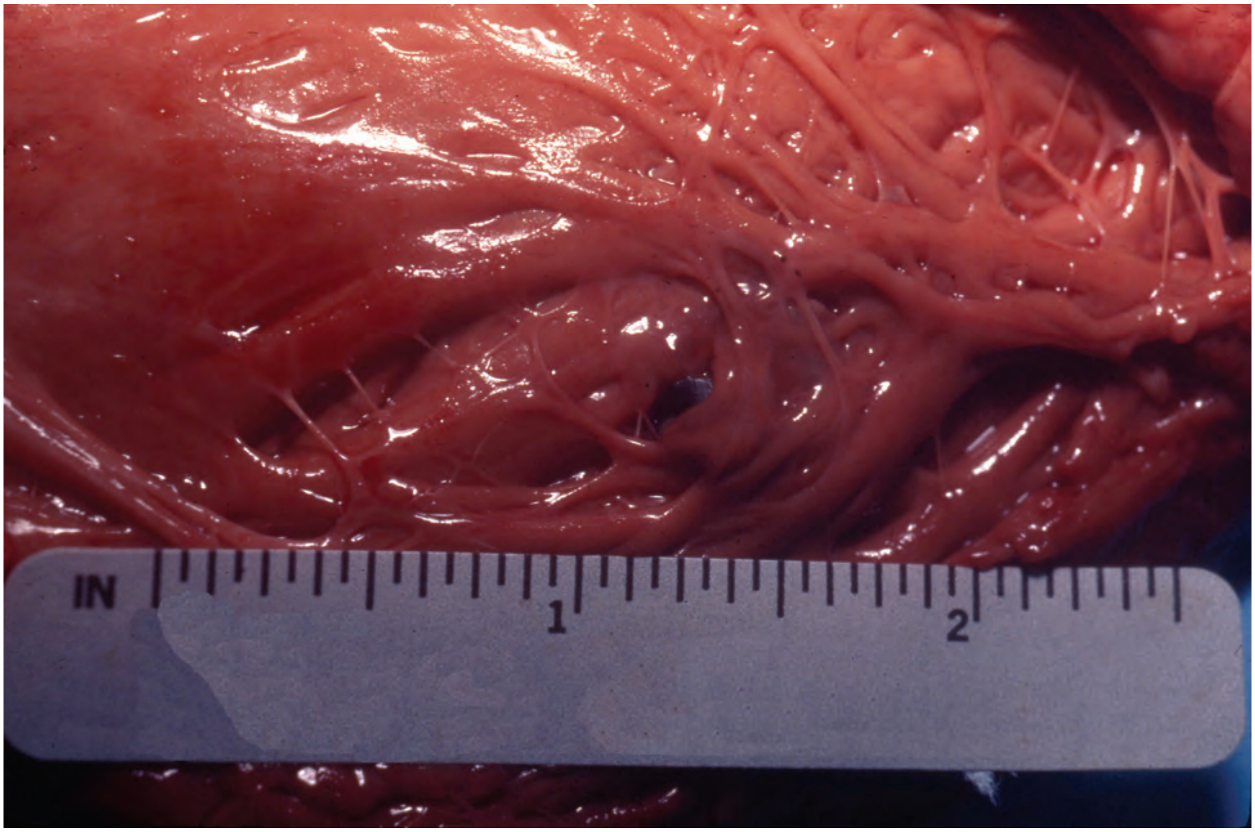
This is another example of an entry–exit–reentry wound where the bullet passed close to the underlying skin surface. Note the larger irregular abrasions connecting the exit and re-entry sites. Also note the dark discoloration due to drying.

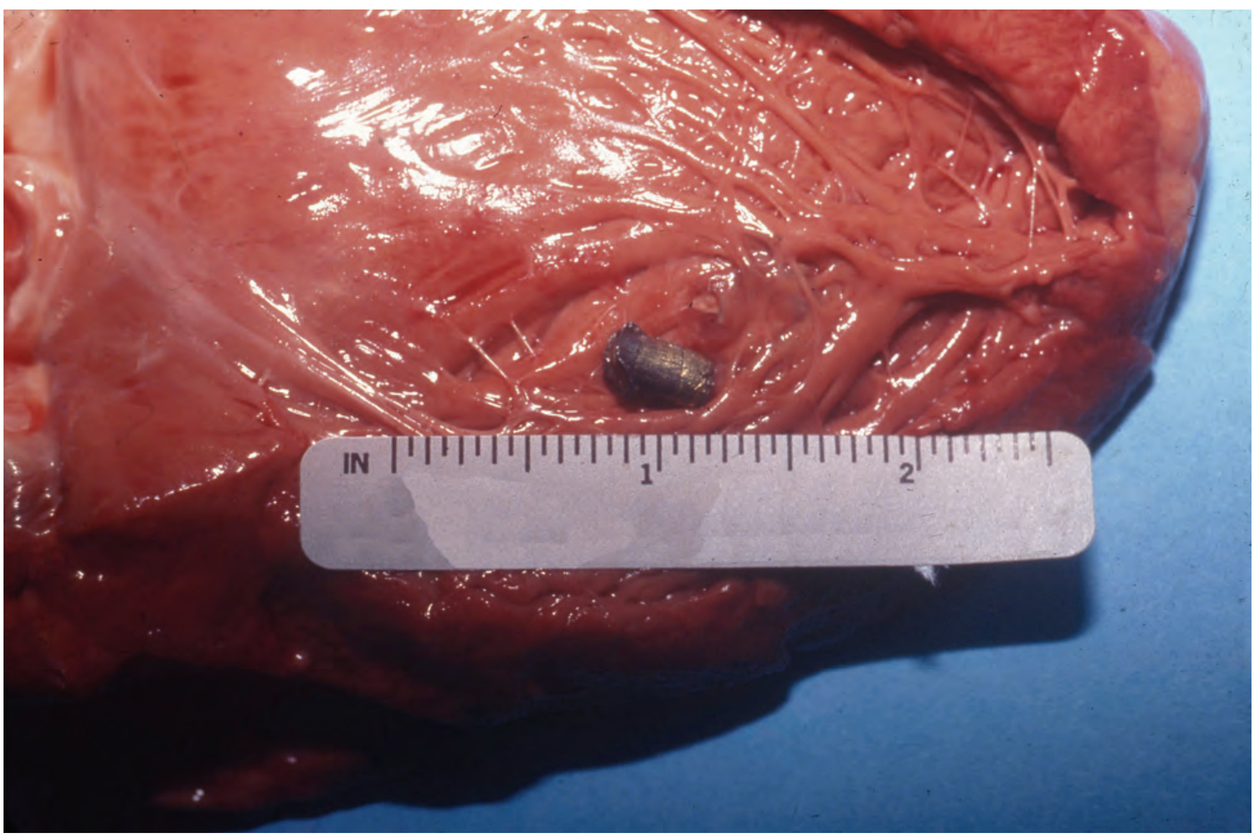
This is an entrance and exit gunshot wound where the bullet passed very close to the under surface of the skin.



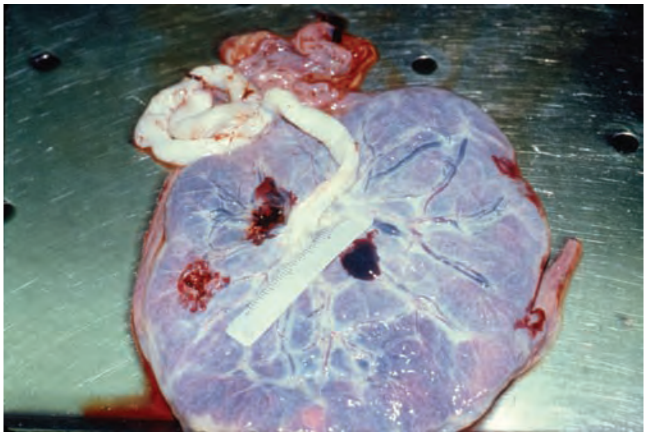
These images show different examples of nailgun wounds. Both of these cases were suicides. Both nailguns were similar to the one shown in the last image, which used gunpowder-loaded cartridges. Both entrance wounds consisted of circular perforations with symmetric margins of abrasion indistinguishable from typical entrance gunshot wounds. Note the orange plastic ejected into the entrance perforation of the temporal skull that is used in some nail guns to hold and steady the nail prior to discharge.

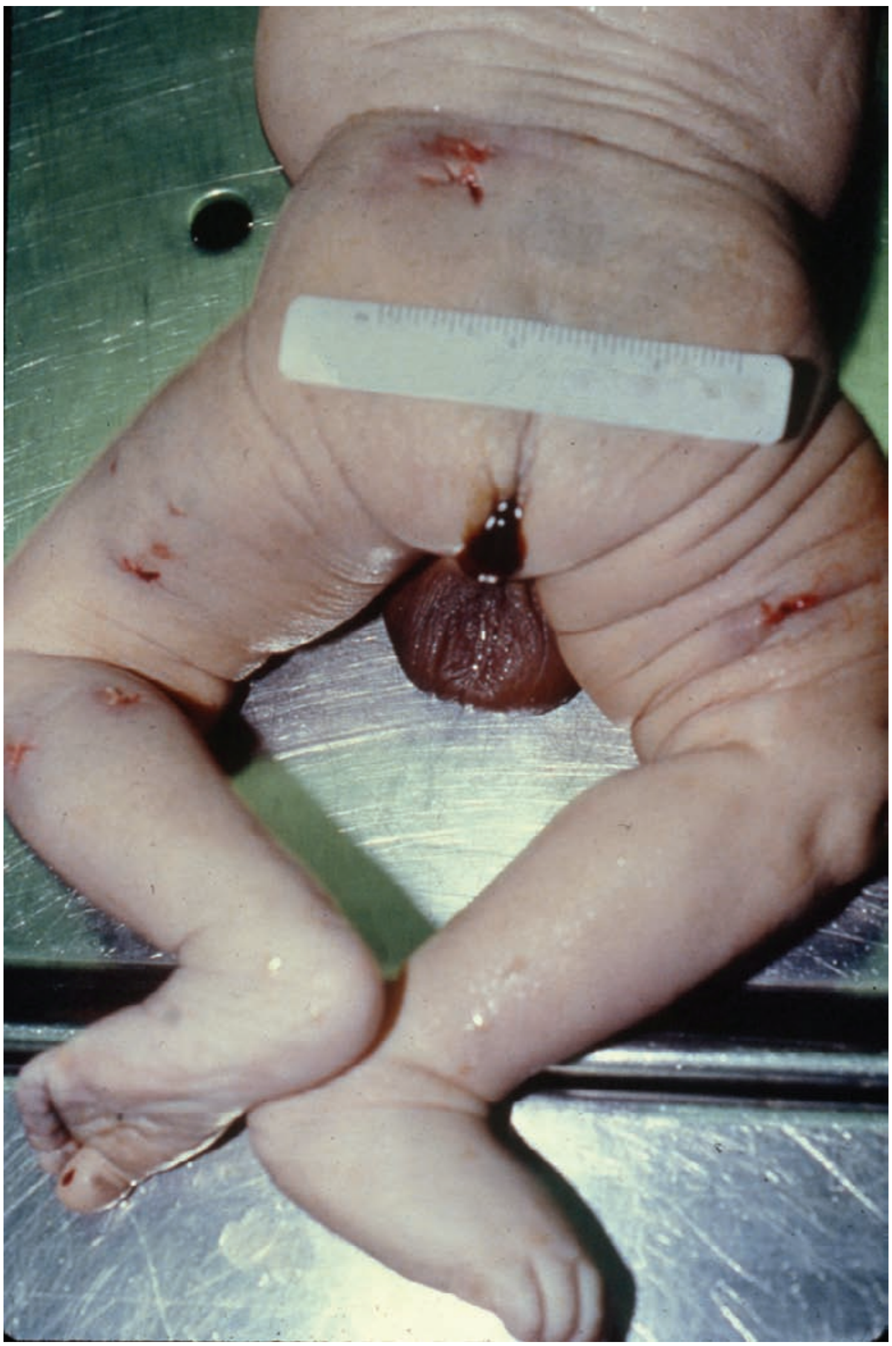
This individual was shot multiple times. Note the exit gunshot wound to the superior aspect of his middle chest (a). He was wearing a medallion on a string that was struck by the bullet as it exited the body, producing an imprint on the skin surface. The chest surface was most likely pressing against another object when the bullet exited. Figure (b) illustrating the medallion actually demonstrates it facing the wrong way. The medallion should be oriented with the inward curvature facing the chest. This was at first erroneously thought to be an entrance gunshot wound. Among other points arguing this to be an exit wound was the sternum fracture with bone splinters pointing in an outward anterior direction(d).





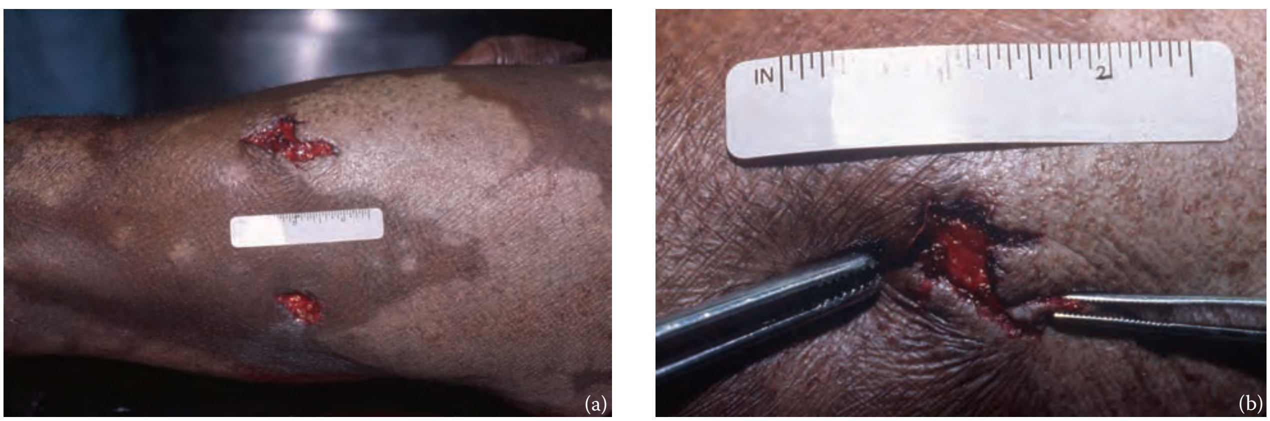
This individual was shot multiple times and survived in the hospital for approximately 2 weeks. One of the bullets entered the lung parenchyma and embolized to the heart, where it got wedged in papillary muscles of the left ventricle. He developed bronchopneumonia and his lung wound reopened, causing hemorrhage and death.



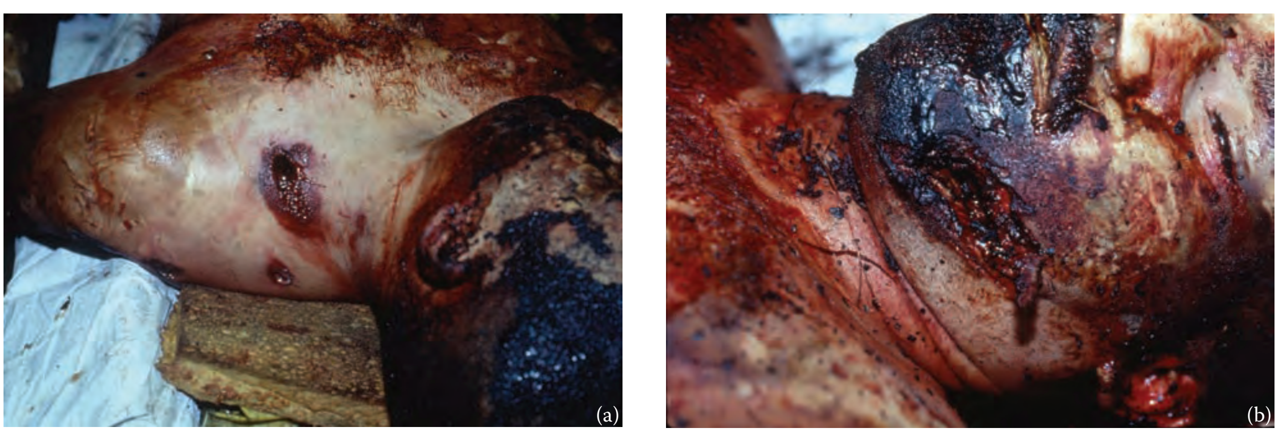


An otherwise healthy, full-term pregnant woman was shot multiple times in the abdomen. There were multiple perforating gunshot wounds to her fetus that were atypical due to the intermediate targets, including the mother, uteroplacental unit, and amniotic fluid. All the fetal wounds appeared as irregular lacerations with irregular abrasions. Direction of fire could not be determined.
Source for upper right and lower figures: Catanese C. and Gilmore K. A case report and brief analysis of fetal gunshot wound characteristics. *Journal of Forensic Science* 47:1067–069; 2002. Reprinted with permission from ASTM International.

This individual was shot in the face while wearing eyeglasses. Note the irregular nature of the entrance gunshot wound just beneath the eye (a) and the elongated abrasion extending across the cheek to the decedent's ear (b), corresponding to the eyeglass frame.



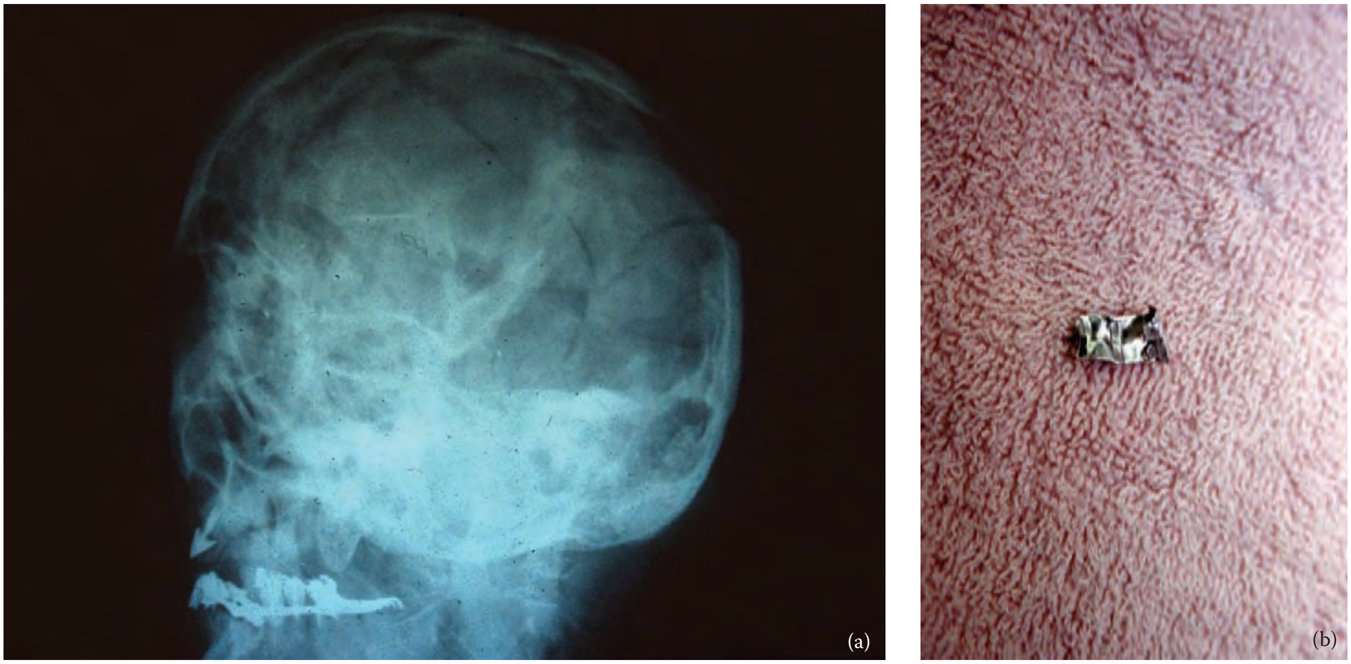
This individual was shot multiple times and had psoriatic skin disease. Note the irregular nature of this entrance gunshot wound through one of the plaques (a). The skin had small radiating lacerations and decreased abrasion similar to what is sometimes seen with gunshot wounds through thick skin found on the palms of the hands or soles of the feet (b).



These are gunshot wounds to an individual who was set on fire to destroy evidence after being shot in his residence. His carbon monoxide blood level was negligible. Note the change in character of these injuries due to thermal effect. These thermal burns are postmortem.

This individual was shot multiple times where the bullet struck bones and fragmented into multiple pieces. It is important to keep track of which bullets are associated with which gunshot wounds. There may be three different shooters and only one of the bullet wounds lethal. Linking the lethal bullet to a particular shooter may have different legal implications.

This individual was shot in the abdomen with a hunting rifle. Note the snowstorm effect of bullet lead fragmentation depicted on this x-ray.



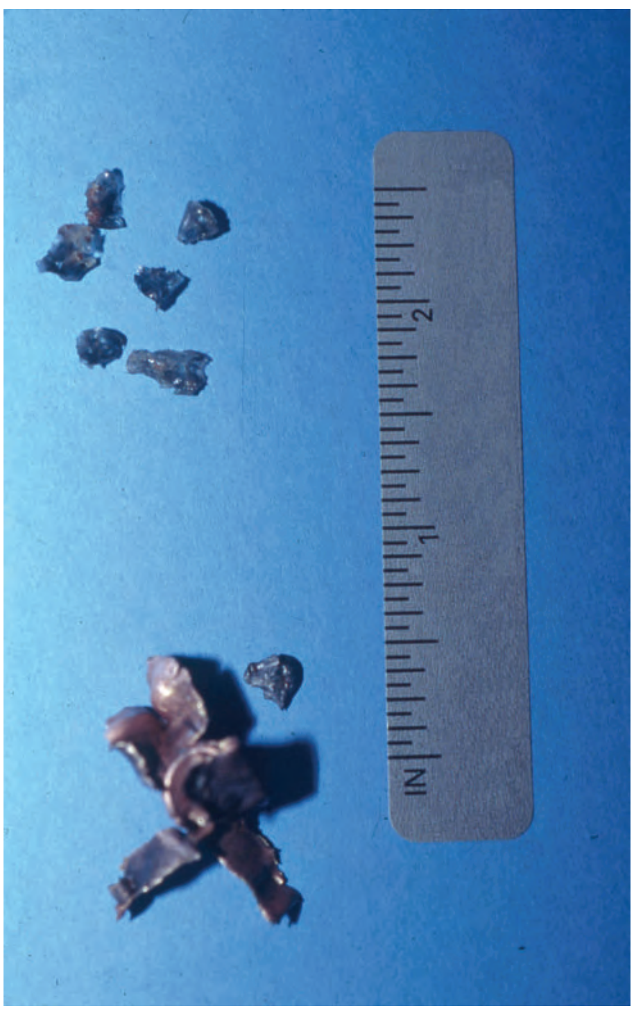
This individual (a) was shot with an aluminum-jacketed bullet. This fragment of aluminum (b) was retrieved within the wound track. Aluminum, being a relatively less dense metal, may not be apparent on x-ray, particularly when it is lying over a dense thick bone.

Note from this x-ray that one can tell the direction of travel. The bullet struck the humerus, fragmented into pieces, and then left a trail of metal fragments as it passed through the soft tissues before coming to rest.

This is a contact gunshot wound to the chest with visible muzzle imprint abrasion (b). Note the blue-tipped Teflon plug Glazer safety ammunition visible within the revolver chamber (a). Note the yellow metal jacket, Teflon plug, and multiple lead pellets seen on x-ray (c), and demonstrated after removal from the body (d).

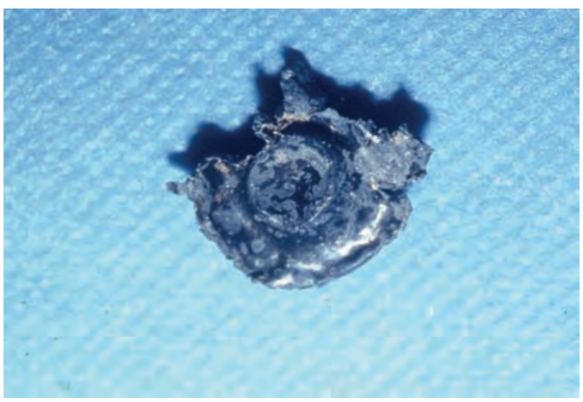
Tangential distant gunshot wound produced by Mag-safe ammunition (prefragmented).

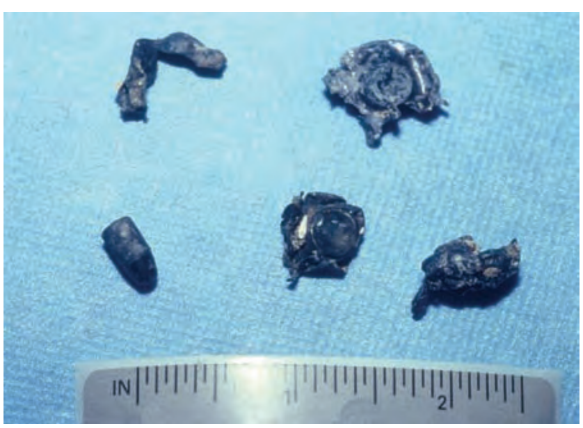
This diagram shows a comparison of the components of Mag-safe ammunition and Glaser safety slug.



This x-ray is taken from an individual shot with Mag-safe ammunition. Note the metal jacket, gray to blue epoxy fragments, and gray metal pellets.

This demonstrates a bullet retrieved from an individual who was shot approximately 1 day prior to autopsy. Note the shiny surface of the bullet, signifying no significant oxidation.



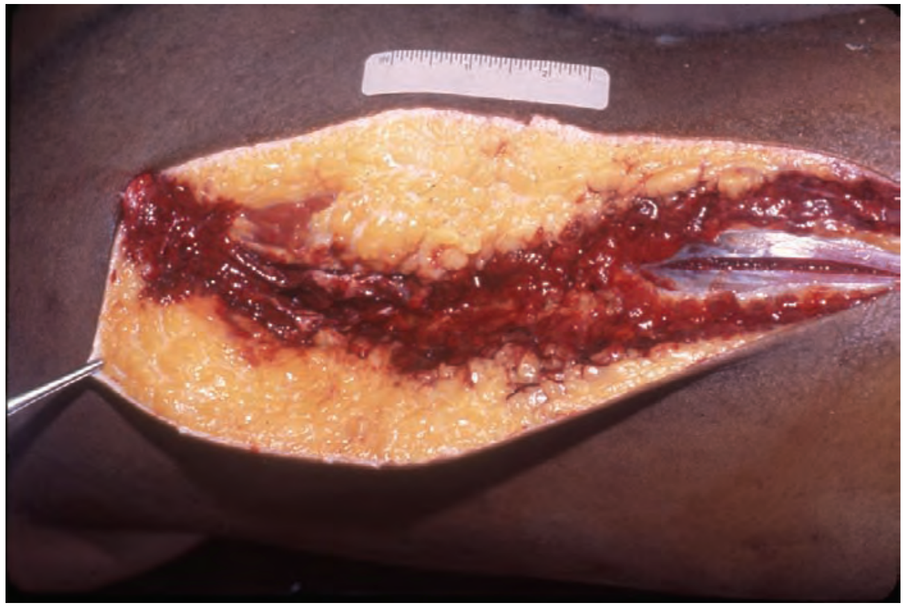


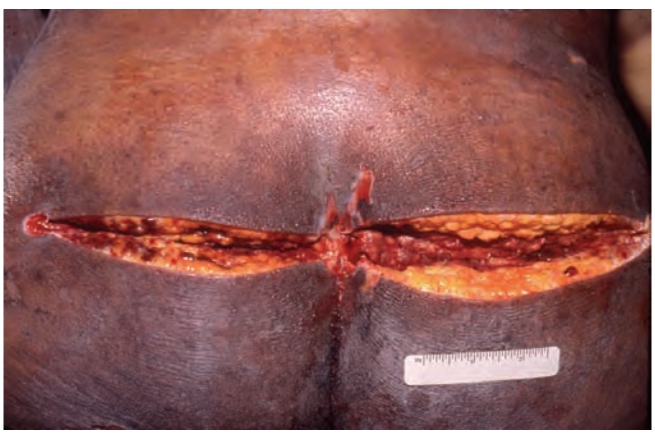
These are multiple weathered fragments of bullet retrieved from underneath and within the body of a partially skeletonized individual who was shot and thrown down a well shaft several years earlier. Note the irregular weathering marks at the surface of the bullets due to erosion.

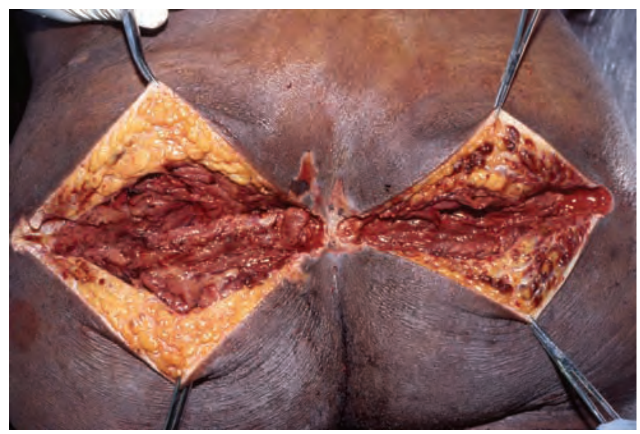
This demonstrates a bullet retrieved from an individual who was shot over a year before. This bullet remained in his body until it was retrieved during autopsy after somebody else shot and killed him. Note the dull oxidized surface on this old bullet.

The homicide victim who owned this dog died of multiple perforating gunshot wounds. The dog sustained penetrating gunshot wounds during the attack and was autopsied to retrieve ballistic evidence.

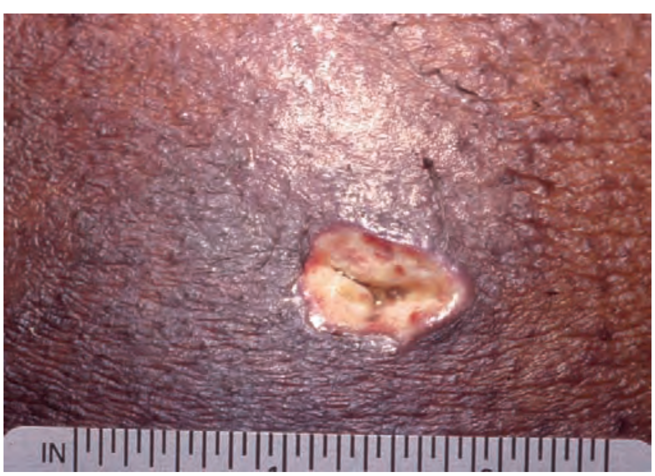
This is a recent gunshot wound to an individual who was shot through the subcutaneous and fatty tissues of the gluteal region and thigh. Note the curvature of the wound track. This demonstrates how wound tracks may change when the body is laid on a flat autopsy table. One must keep this in mind when formulating bullet trajectories with reference to standard anatomic planes. This information may later be used as a reference to help explain possible body positions during the actual shooting. Interpreting wound track directions can become complicated when there are multiple gunshot wounds in proximity, particularly when the individual was shot while curled up in a fetal position and then later examined while spread out on an autopsy table. Directions should be stated with reference to standard anatomic planes.





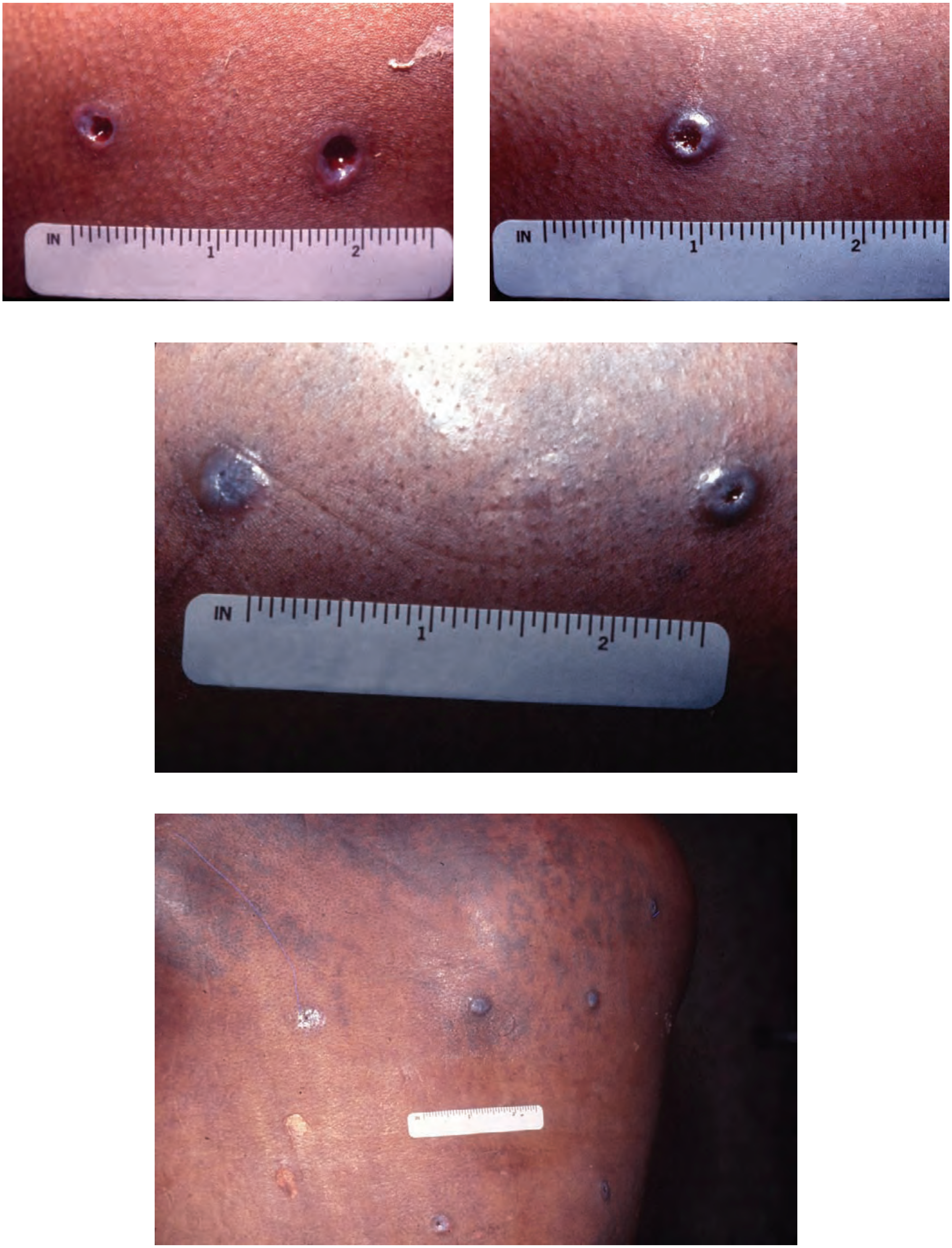


This is a healing wound track through the subcutaneous and fatty tissues of the gluteal region. Note the dull granular nature due to healing and the presence of granulation tissue.



This is a healing gunshot wound that is approximately a week old.

Atypical healing gunshot wounds with fragmented pieces of lead.

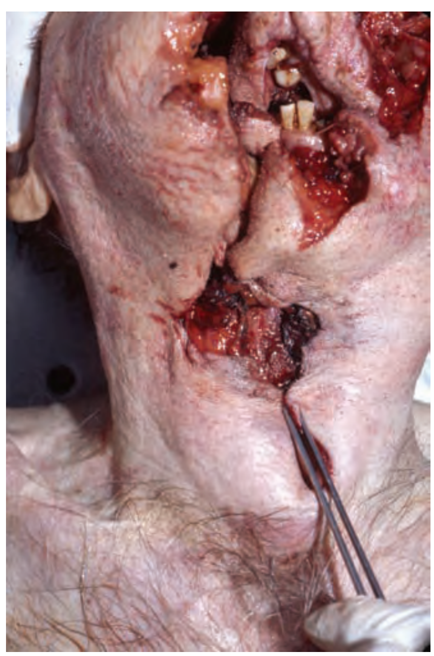


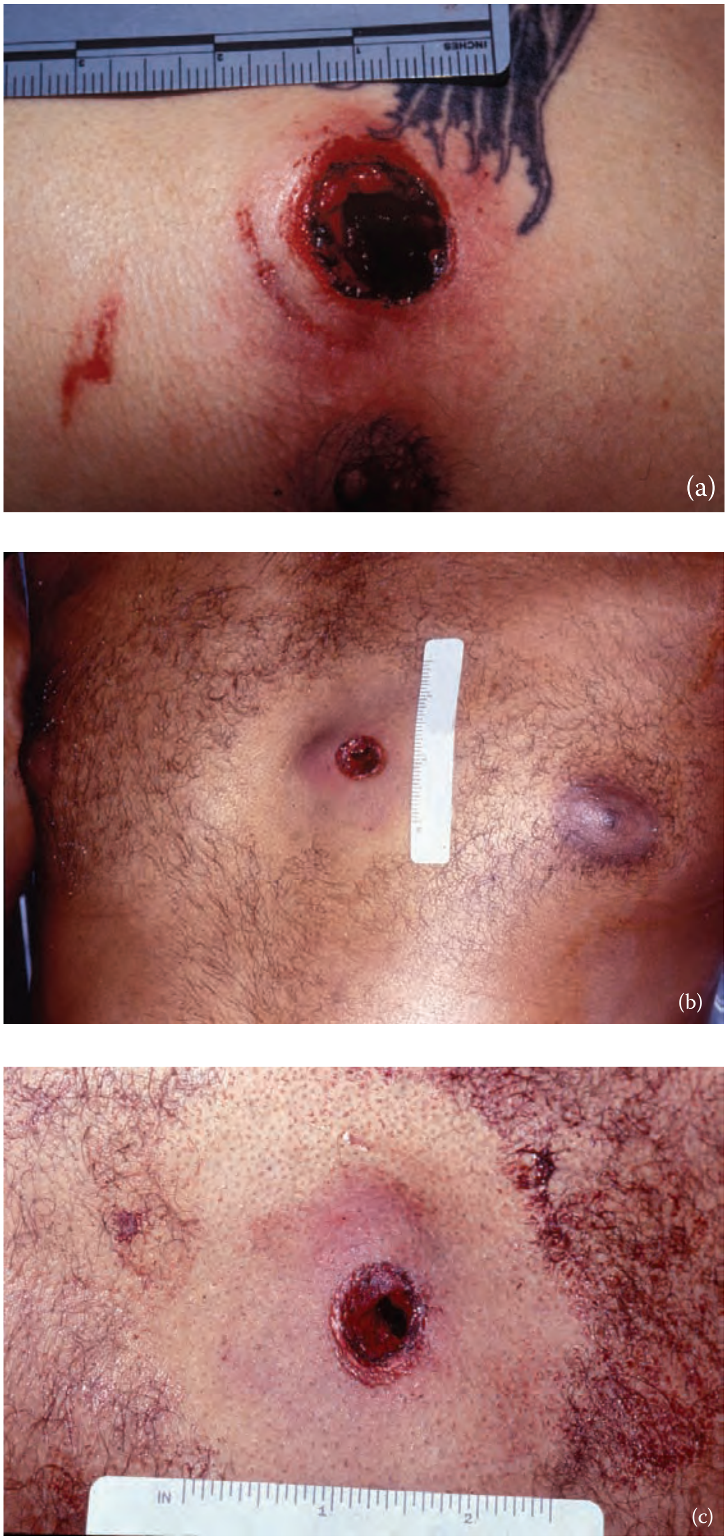
Varying stages of healing gunshot wounds.

This case involves a suicidal tight-contact intraoral .44-caliber rifle wound with extensive fractures and lacerations to the head. Note the gaping injury at the top of the head with the empty cranial vault. The brain was ejected almost entirely intact due to expanding muzzle gases.

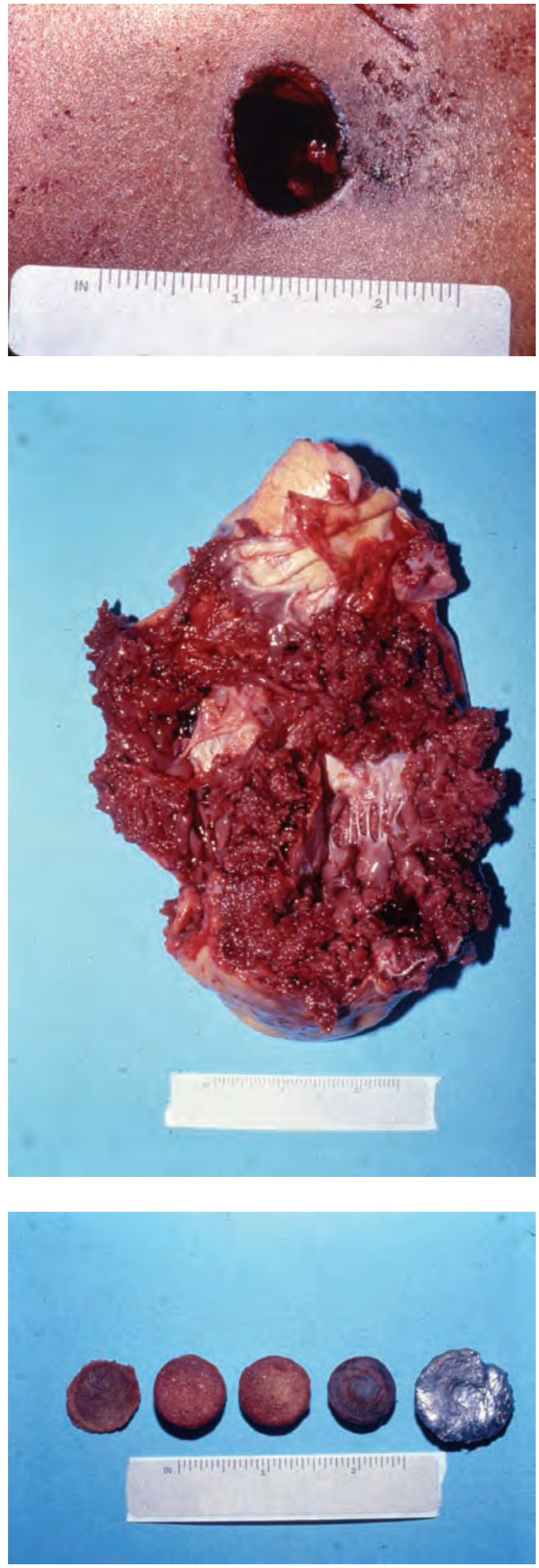
This individual died from a self-inflicted contact 16-gauge buckshot shotgun wound to his forehead. His cerebral hemispheres were ejected from the cranium almost completely intact and were discovered behind the body. Note reconstruction of this wound produces an obvious circular perforation with soot at the individual's forehead. Initially, at the scene investigation, it was thought to have been an intraoral shotgun wound, many of which are associated with stretching and lacerations of the lips and mouth region.

This individual died of a self-inflicted, contact, 12-gauge shotgun wound to the superior aspect of his neck underneath his chin. Note approximation of the wound margins produces a roughly circular perforation with soot. There were extensive lacerations to the face and head. Note the extensive stretch marks at the decedent's face. Note the blood spatter pattern and gunpowder residue on the hand.

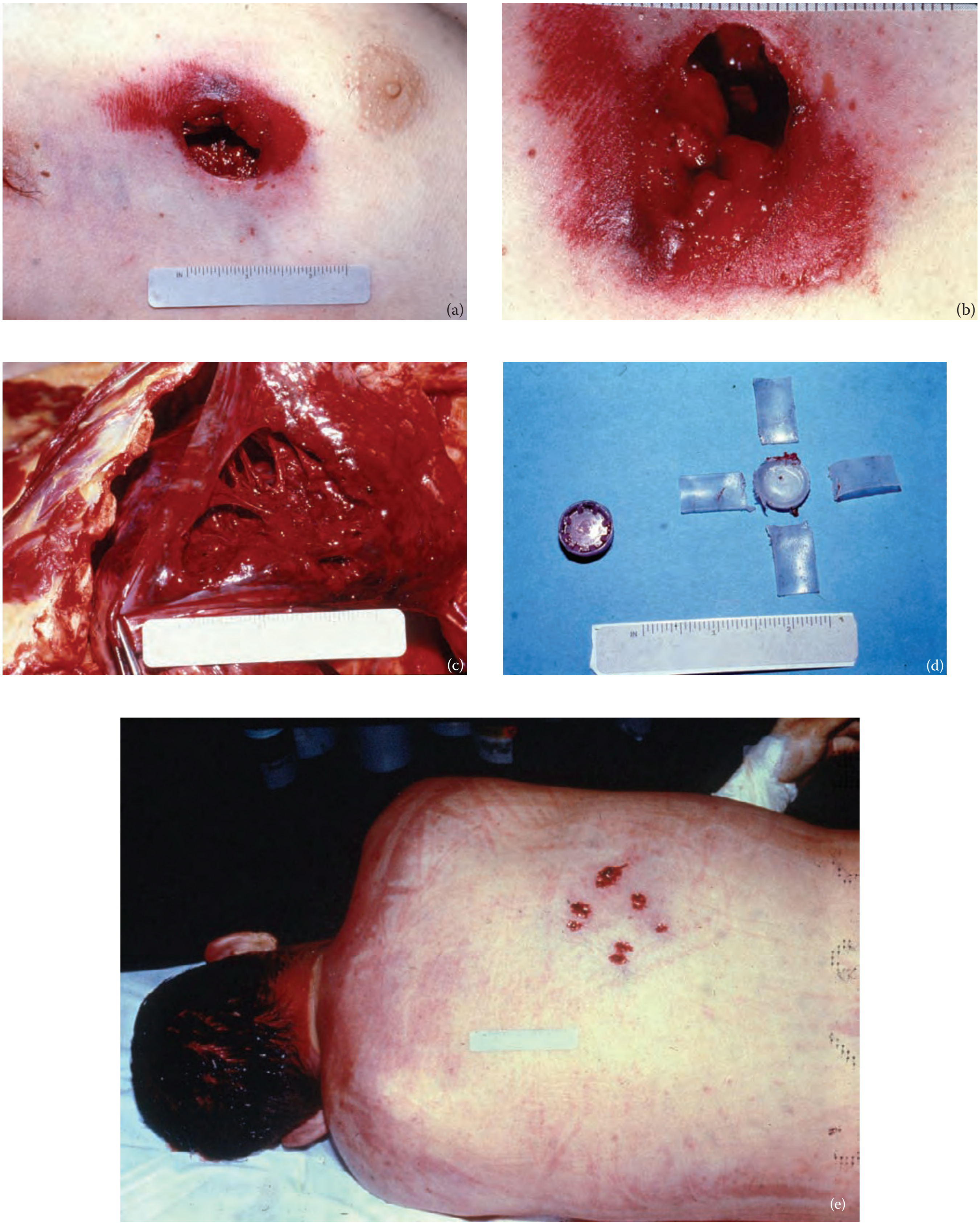




These are contact shotgun wounds to the chest. Note the roughly symmetric margin of abrasion with small amounts of soot. More soot was observed within the wound track. Note in (a) another encircling abraded ring corresponding to where the muzzle contacted the body when the gun was discharged. Note in (b–c) there is an encircling vague pink discoloration from carbon monoxide and nitrites in the burning gunpowder that reacted with the underlying muscle and blood, producing this red discoloration.



This is another example of a shotgun-slug wound. Note the extensive fragmentation and laceration to the heart. The last image shows the deformed lead shotgun slug with wadding retrieved from the wound track.



This is a .12-gauge shotgun wound through clothing showing few stippling defects and a larger abrasion adjacent to the entrance defect (a and b). The power piston was retrieved within the wound track (d). Note the abrasions adjacent to the entrance wound due to power piston impact (b). There was extensive fragmentation of the lung (c). Note the multiple exit buckshot-pellet wounds to the decedent's back (e).

Distant birdshot-shotgun wounds.

This birdshot-shotgun wound to the forearm is estimated at a range of approximately 3 to 4 feet.

Birdshot shotgun wound with an estimated range of fire of 4 to 5 feet.

Birdshot shotgun wound with an estimated range of fire of 6 to 8 feet.

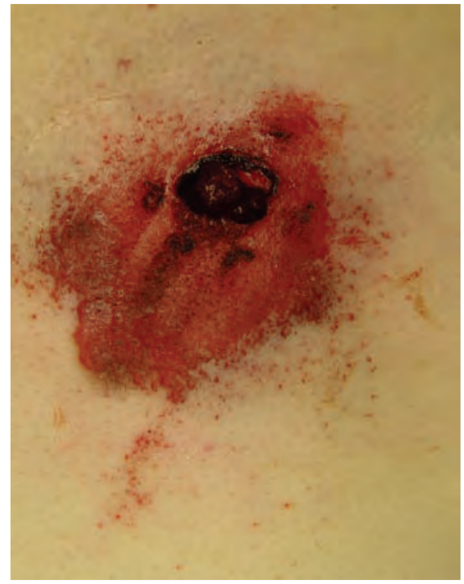
Birdshot with power piston type cup from a shotgun shell.

This individual was shot multiple times with shotgun slugs. Note the large circular perforations with margins of abrasions typical for entrance handgun wounds (a). Note the elongated margin of abrasion at the middle wound (b), indicating the slug struck the body on an angle, traveling in a left-to-right direction.

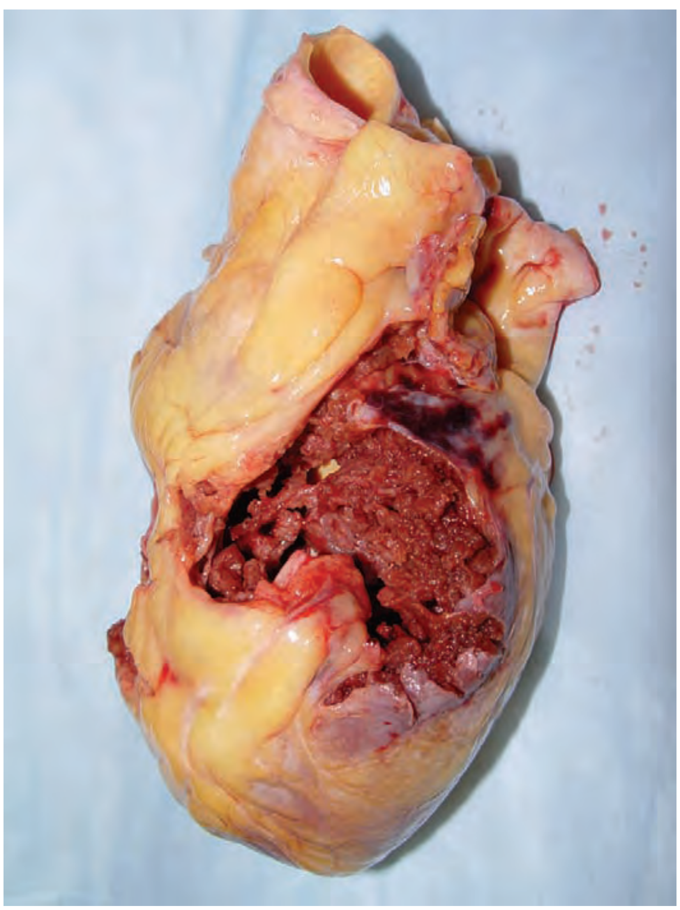
Entrance shotgun wound with an estimated range of fire of 3 to 4 feet based on the scalloped appearance of the wound margins.

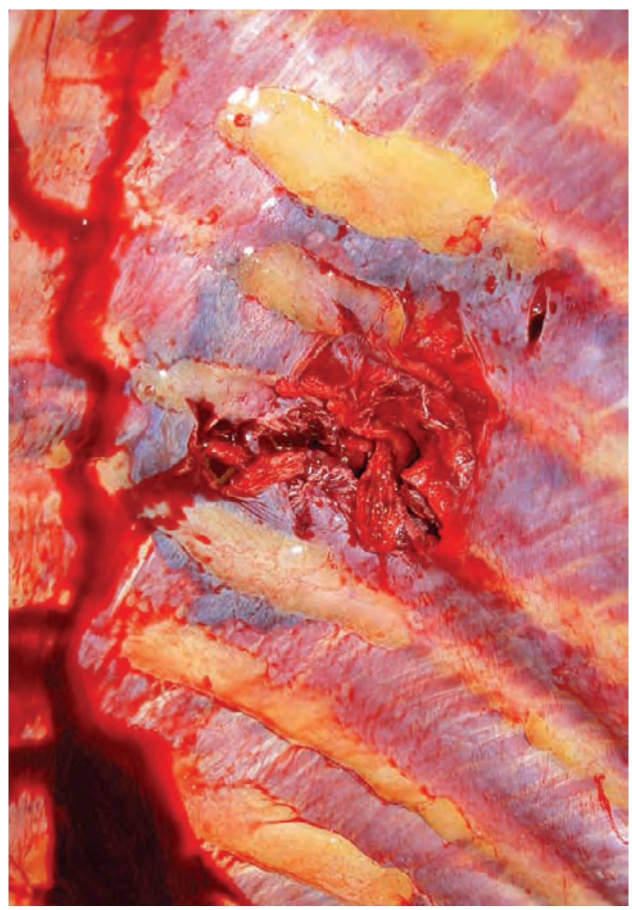
Mini-14 Ruger rifle.

Flash suppressor.



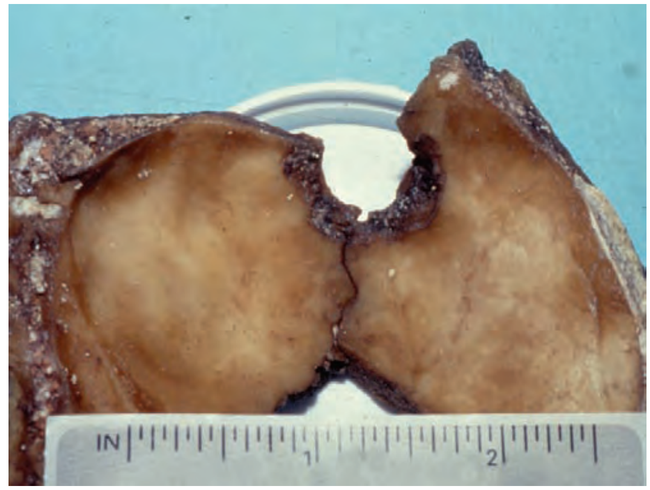
Contact Ruger mini-14 gunshot wound with a .223 bullet. Note the flash suppressor burns with soot deposition.



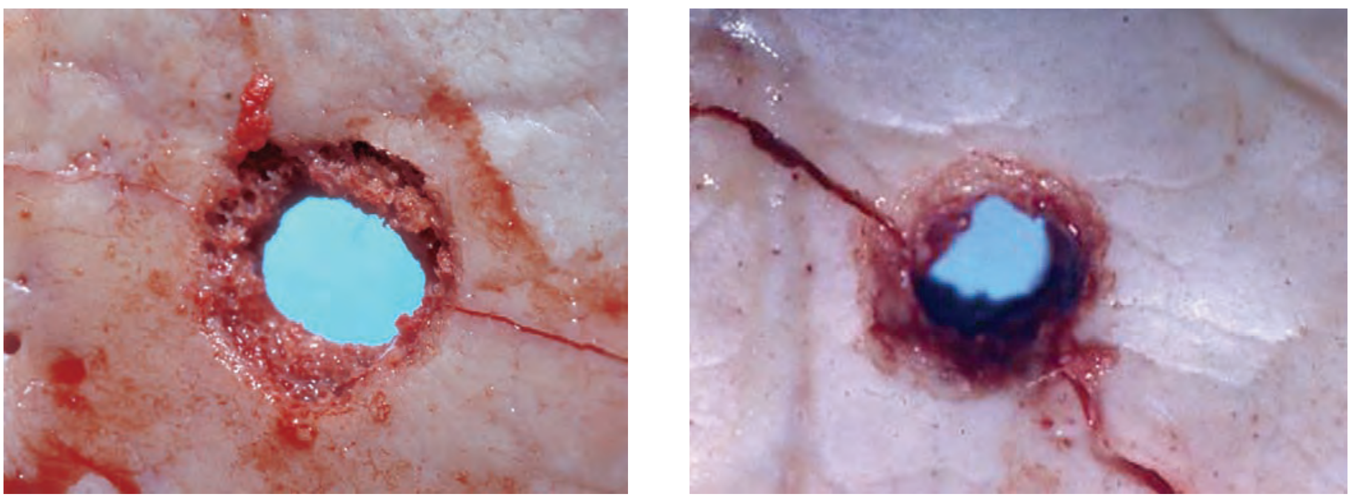


Internal injuries caused by a .223-caliber high-velocity military bullet.

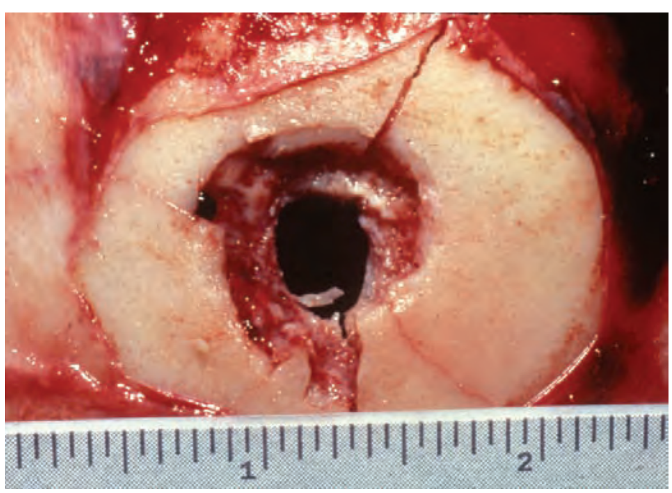
Entrance gunshot wound to the roof of the mouth in the skeletonized remains of this individual with a history of depression. The remains were found with a handgun.



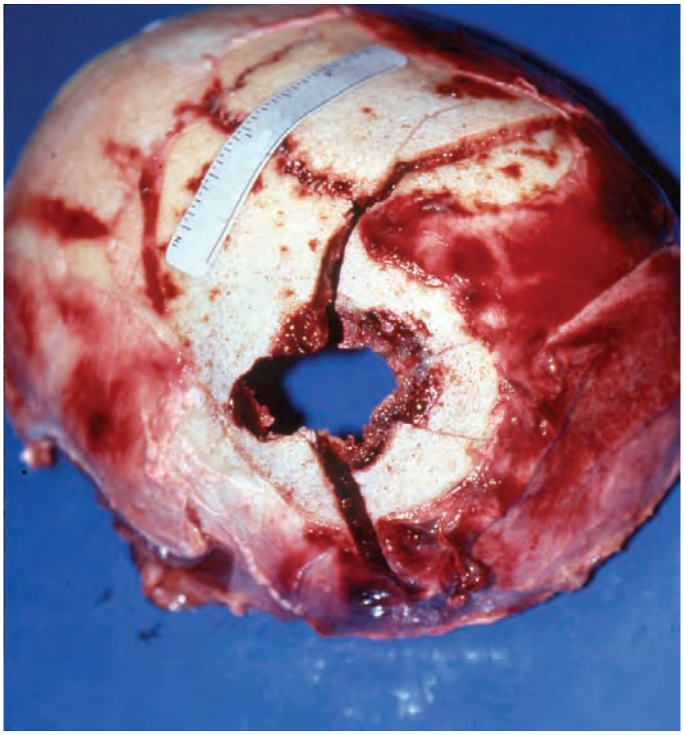
This is the inner aspect of a fractured portion of skull with a roughly circular perforation and internal beveling visible at the inner aspect of the skull indicating this to be an entrance gunshot wound.

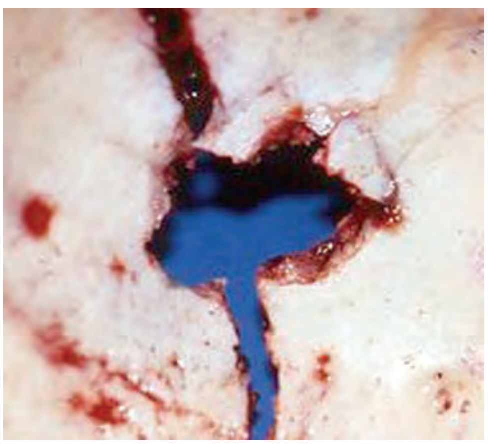
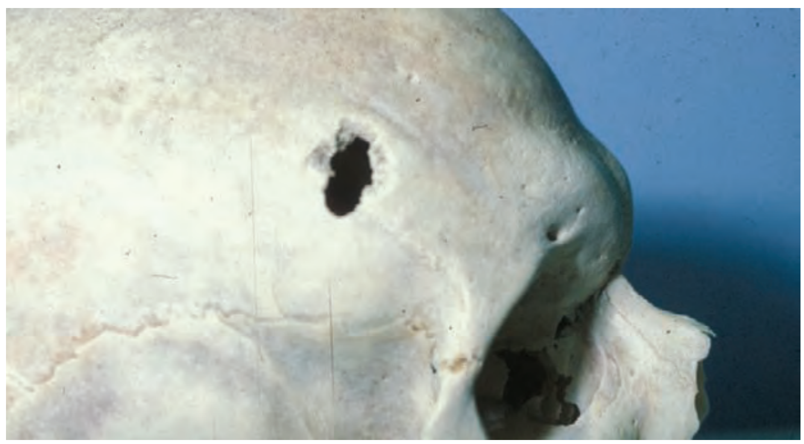


Entrance gunshot wounds to the head demonstrating internal beveling of the inner calvaria.



Exit gunshot wound through the skull. This image demonstrates the surface of the skull with external beveling typical for an exit gunshot wound.



These defects at the external surface of these skulls were produced by an entrance tangential gunshot wound. This demonstrates a keyhole deformity with both internal and external beveling. The bullet typically strikes the bone tangentially, producing internal beveling at the entrance side. Then it will often fragment and partially exit the body. The exit side will have external beveling.

Burns

9

CHARLES A. CATANESE AND GERARD CATANESE

Introduction

Burns may occur following exposure to heat (thermal burns), electricity, chemicals, or radiation.

First-degree burns are the most superficial and involve the epidermis. They appear as a red discoloration of the skin. An example of this would be sunburn without blister formation. *Second-degree burns* have deeper penetration of injury involving the epidermis and dermis causing blister formation. An example of this may occur when one touches a hot pot on a stove and pulls the hand away quickly. *Third-degree burns* are full thickness, involving the epidermis, dermis, and subcutaneous layer, and appear as collapsed blisters with skin sloughing and red-to-brown discoloration. *Fourth-degree burns* have even deeper penetration of damage, often with charring and exposed underlying tissue including bone. The bones may be fractured from intense heat and the internal organs may have a firm, discolored, and shrunken appearance.

Burns following exposure to heat are *thermal burns,* which may occur following contact with hot liquid or fire. Children may be scalded while left unattended in a bath tub. They may inadvertently hit the hot water knob to increase hot water flow. They may jump into a bath tub full of very hot water, scalding their feet. One must exercise great care in evaluating these cases as they may be a result of abuse or neglect. A child with both feet scalded with scarring around a shoe pattern is more likely the result of abuse or neglect. A child who is waiting to take a bath will not usually have shoes on and will most likely step one foot into the tub at a time. The burns will be on one foot but not usually both. Both feet scalded at once may indicate dunking into hot water as punishment.

If an individual dies and is placed in a tub full of hot water after death, the body will develop thermal injury more readily than if a living body was placed in the same water. A living body can counteract heat injury by vasodilation and circulating the heat to the body's core away from the surface, thus providing some protection to the skin. A dead body left in warm water will quickly develop postmortem thermal burns that appear as skin slippage. Decomposition may also present with skin slippage and blister formation. An individual may sustain full thickness burns to greater than half of his or her body and still be conscious without immediate death. Death often occurs later due to electrolyte imbalances or infection.

Also, mortality increases with age. Second- to third-degree thermal burns to half the body's surface would much more likely kill a senior citizen than a child. Second-degree burns are more painful than third- or fourth-degree burns due to less damage to nerve endings.

Antemortem burns may be characterized by fluid-filled-blister formation. To have fluid-filled blisters in a nondecomposing body in a nongravity-dependent area not adjacent to an area with more extensive burns with contracted tissue, one needs a blood pressure and a beating heart. Antemortem blisters also typically have a red base with surrounding erythema. This concept remains controversial in some jurisdictions. Also, a dead body from a house fire will decompose at a much slower rate than a dead body not exposed to smoke and intense heat Smoke and heat serve as preservatives. Low heat will accelerate the putrefication process. Radiant heat in a dry environment will quickly cause tissue to become firm and dehydrated, often with hair still present. This depends on the amount of heat and humidity and the duration of exposure. Also, intense heat may produce postmortem artifacts that may be misinterpreted as antemortem injury, such as an epidural hemorrhage. Epidural hemorrhage may be postmortem and is caused by heat-related contracture of the dura mater forcing blood from adjacent vessels into the epidural space. Subdural hemorrhages do not occur in this manner and are antemortem injuries.

Thermal burns sustained by fire may be accompanied by smoke inhalation. In general, most fatalities from house fires are caused by smoke inhalation. Decedents dying directly in house fires usually have mostly postmortem burns. Fire fatalities that occur outside in an open space often do not have associated significant smoke inhalation because the smoke rises rapidly and is not inhaled. In the case of a flash fire, inhaled super-heated gases damage the upper airways, including the laryngeal mucosa, and causing death from reflexive closure of the airway at the level of the vocal cords with asphyxia and eventual fatal arrhythmia. The effects of smoke inhalation are often reflected by the amount of carbon monoxide present in the blood. This depends on the nature of the burning material.

There are often other significant poisons associated with burning materials that can rapidly contribute to death, such as hydrogen cyanide. A fire victim does not need a lethal level of carbon monoxide to die of smoke inhalation. Carbon monoxide is produced from incomplete combustion of organic fuels. Carbon monoxide, in the absence of smoke, is a colorless, odorless gas that reversibly binds the hemoglobin molecule approximately 200 times greater than oxygen, resulting in hypoxia and possible death. Levels of carbon monoxide that exceed 50% saturation are considered life threatening, but may cause death with levels less than 26% saturation. Carbon monoxide levels of greater than 80% are possible. These levels need to be correlated with the physiologic disease state of the individual's body, including heart disease, for example. Someone with marked coronary-artery atherosclerosis would often require much less carbon monoxide exposure to produce death than a young healthy individual with slight atherosclerosis. Cigarette smokers may reach carbon monoxide levels of 10%. Carbon monoxide levels of 15–30% are associated with dizziness, nausea, and headache. Cherry-red lividity first becomes apparent at levels of 30–35%. The half-life for carboxyhemoglobin elimination in a resting adult at sea level is generally 4 to 5 hours. This may be reduced to 80 minutes following administration of pure oxygen, and may be further reduced to 24 minutes by using oxygen at 3 atmospheres of pressure. Primary elimination of unchanged carbon monoxide occurs by pulmonary excretion. Also, if there is more than one fatality without obvious cause, one should consider carbon monoxide poisoning.

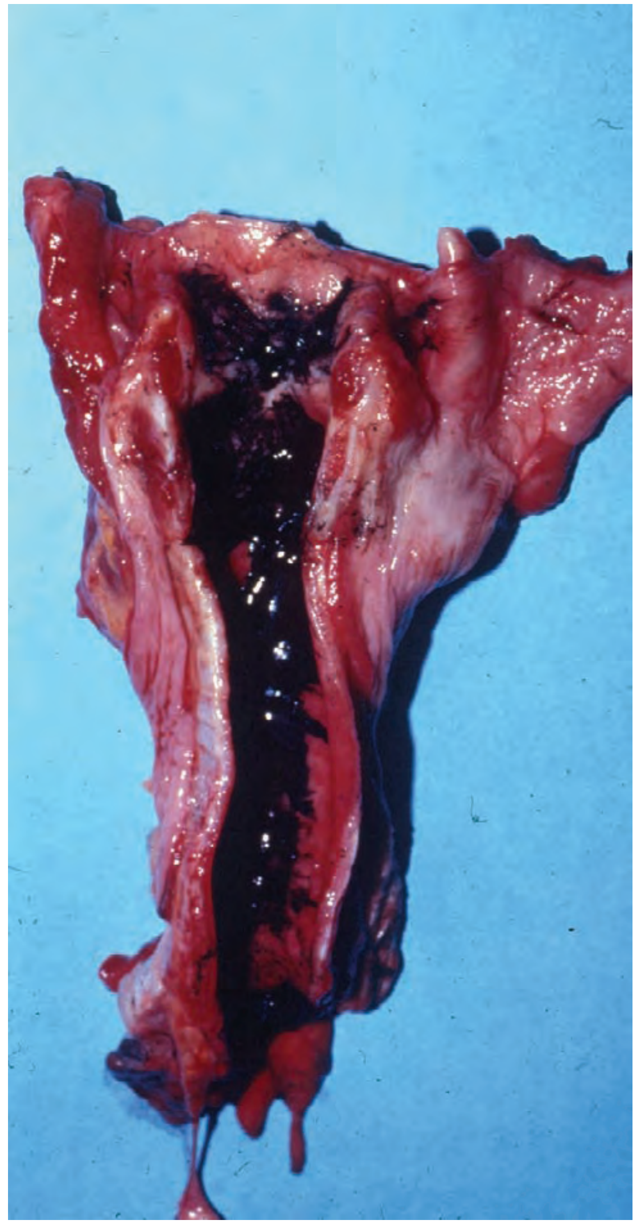
Electrical burns may be due to low- or high-voltage exposure. The electrical current may be direct or alternating in nature. Alternating current is more likely to cause a fatal cardiac arrhythmia than direct current. High voltage is generally defined as greater than 1000 volts for alternating current and greater than 1500 volts for direct current. High-voltage burns are usually associated with extensive obvious injury. Low voltage is generally defined as being less than 1000 volts for alternating current and less than 1500 volts for direct current. Low-voltage burns may present with no visible marks to the body's surface at all. The degree of injury depends on many factors, including the duration of exposure and the amount of heat generated.

Electrical burns may also occur as a result of a lightning strike. Lightning bolts occur with an enormous short-term release of electricity, often producing minimal injuries. Lightning strikes may also produce a fern-like red pattern at the skin's surface. Patterns similar to this may be observed in high-voltage electrocution. These types of electrical discharges present with different autopsy findings. The mechanism of death is usually arrhythmia and more likely to occur if the current passes directly through the heart. Death may also occur due to asphyxia if there is interference with the central nervous system's respiratory centers or paralysis of the chest muscles. To complete an electrical circuit one needs an entrance and exit point for electricity to pass through the body. An otherwise healthy individual may be found lying barefoot and on a damp floor next to a power tool with a frayed electrical cord. This is why adequate scene investigation is crucial. It is also important to keep the electrical device as evidence to be tested, and to prevent any other fatalities. There may or may not be burns to the body's surface at autopsy.

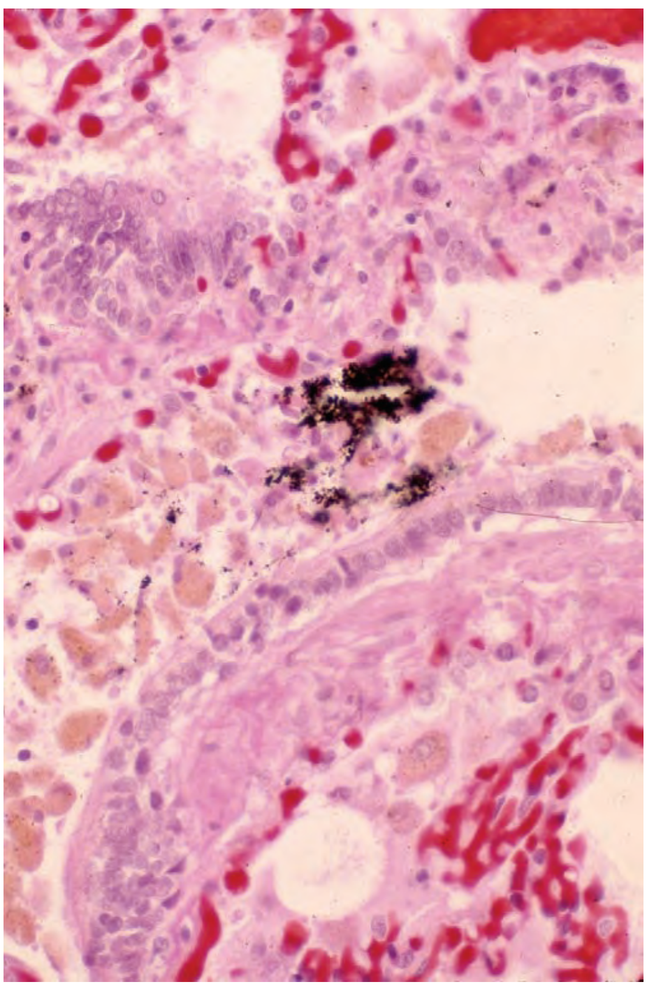
Chemical burns are due to exposures to caustic substances. These burns most often involve injury to the skin or mucosa, leaving red discoloration or sloughing of the superficial layers. More extensive injuries may involve damage to the underlying tissue including bone. This depends on the strength and nature of the caustic substance, which include acids, bases, and other chemicals that can damage the body. Individuals may die acutely following chemical burns from many different mechanisms including hemorrhage, infection, dehydration, or they may die many years following such injuries. For instance, if an individual attempts to commit suicide by ingesting lye 20 years earlier and later develops esophageal cancer as a result of these burns, the manner of death would be suicide. Children may accidently drink caustic substances, leading to gastrointestinal perforation that may lead to adhesion and gastrointestinal obstruction many years later. In this case, the manner of death would be accidental. It is always very important to find out the initial event that starts the ball rolling in the sequence of events that eventually leads to an individual's demise.

Radiation is defined as energy distributed as waves or particles across the electromagnetic spectrum. This includes electric, radio, radar, microwaves, infrared, visible light (lasers), ultraviolet light, x-rays, gamma rays, and cosmic radiation. Waves are characterized as having long wavelengths and low frequencies, whereas particles have short wavelengths and high frequencies. The types of biological effects vary greatly depending on the type of radiation, duration of exposure, and intermediate barriers. Acute exposure to skin may range from erythema to overt necrosis with eventual epidermal atrophy and dermal fibrosis. Biological effects include cataracts, burns to the retina and skin, necrosis, fibrosis, and cancer. Generally speaking proliferating cells are affected more substantially with acute exposure as indicated by damage to the gastrointestinal and hematopoietic systems with increased risks of infection, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and hemorrhage. Damage to DNA may eventually lead to many different forms of cancer.

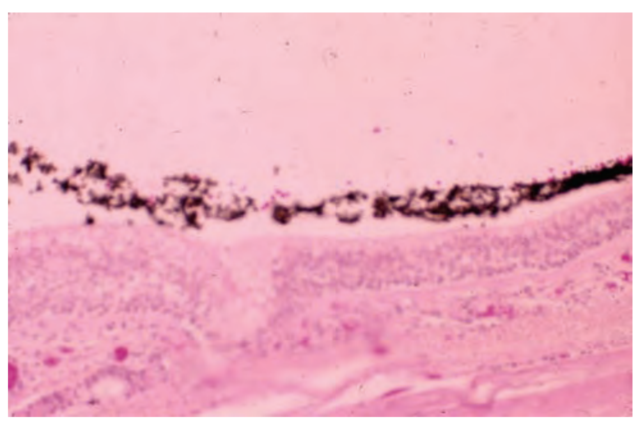
Soot within the nares due to smoke inhalation.



Smoke inhalation with soot deposition on the airway mucosa of the larynx and trachea.



Microscopic view of lung with soot deposition in the distal bronchi.



Microscopic view of airway with soot deposition at the surface of respiratory epithelium.

First-degree burn characterized by red discoloration with injury limited to the epidermis.

Second-degree thermal burns characterized by fluid-filled-blister formation. Second-degree burns include damage to both the epidermis and cermis and are often more painful than third-degree burns due to less destruction of nerve endings.

Second- to third-degree thermal burns. These areas demonstrate fluid-filled-blister formations that were interpreted as antemortem. To have fluid-filled-blister formation associated with thermal injury, one usually needs to have a blood pressure. Fluid-filled blisters generally do not occur due to putrefaction in burn victims due to the preservative effects of fire and smoke. Postmortem blister formation may occur in gravity-dependent regions without significant thermal damage or adjacent to regions with soft-tissue heat-related contractures. Also, postmortem blisters lack vital reaction.

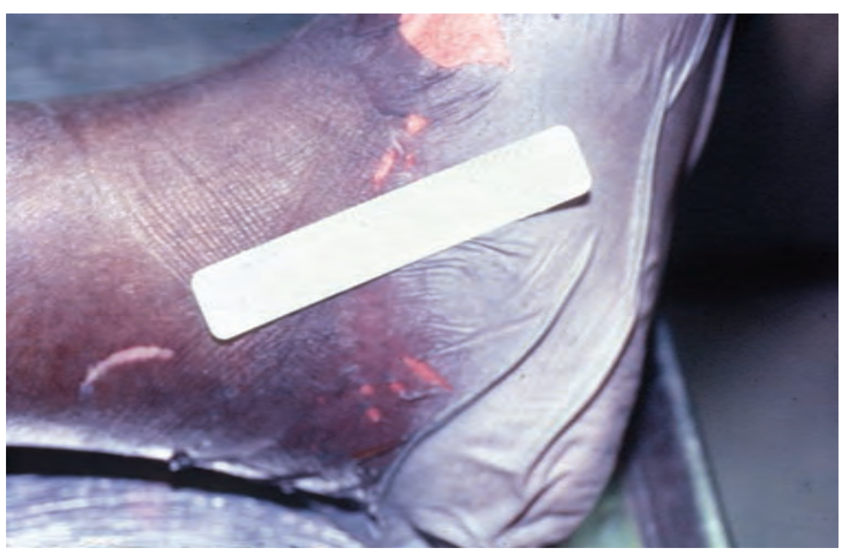
First- to third-degree thermal burns involving the posterior aspect of the left thigh and gluteal region. The right leg is without thermal burns. First-degree thermal burns in this picture are characterized by the red discoloration without blister formation or skin slippage. Note the areas of collapsed blister formation, which are consistent with a postmortem burn. Sometimes it is difficult to interpret antemortem burns if continued heat causes fluid-filled blisters to collapse and fluid to evaporate. Most fire fatalities succumb from smoke inhalation before extensive burns occur.

Postmortem second- to third-degree thermal burn with skin slippage and collapsed blister formation.

Full-thickness or third-degree burns in an individual who lived hours after being shot in the head and having his or her residence set on fire to destroy evidence. Full thickness refers to involvement of the epidermis, dermis, and subcutaneous layers. These are often less painful than second-degree burns due to more complete damage of nerve endings in the latter.

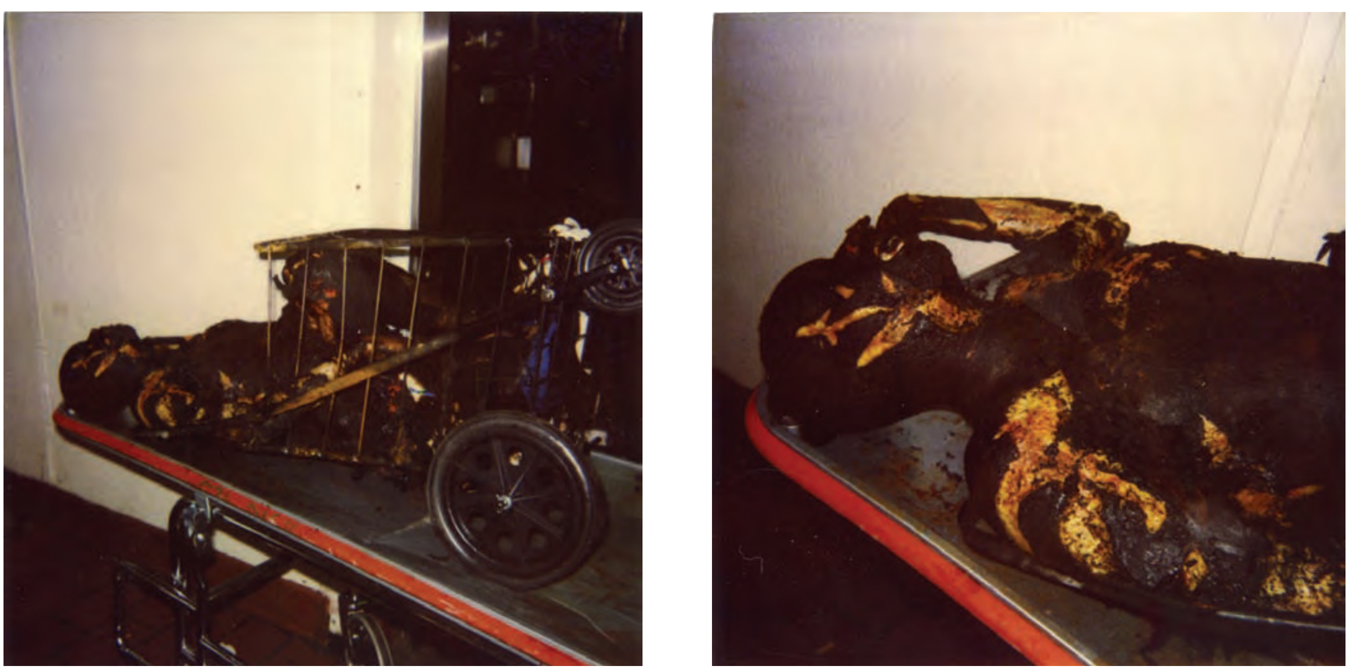
Note the sparing of thermal injury at the bottom of the decedent's foot due to protection by a shoe.

Antemortem third-degree burns. This is self-immolation of an individual who was wearing sandals. Note the lack of thermal injury in the region protected by the shoe strap.



This image demonstrates postmortem second- to third-degree thermal burns to the sole of this foot. Note the wrinkled thick skin demonstrating skin slippage. There was minimal underlying fluid accumulation or blister formation.

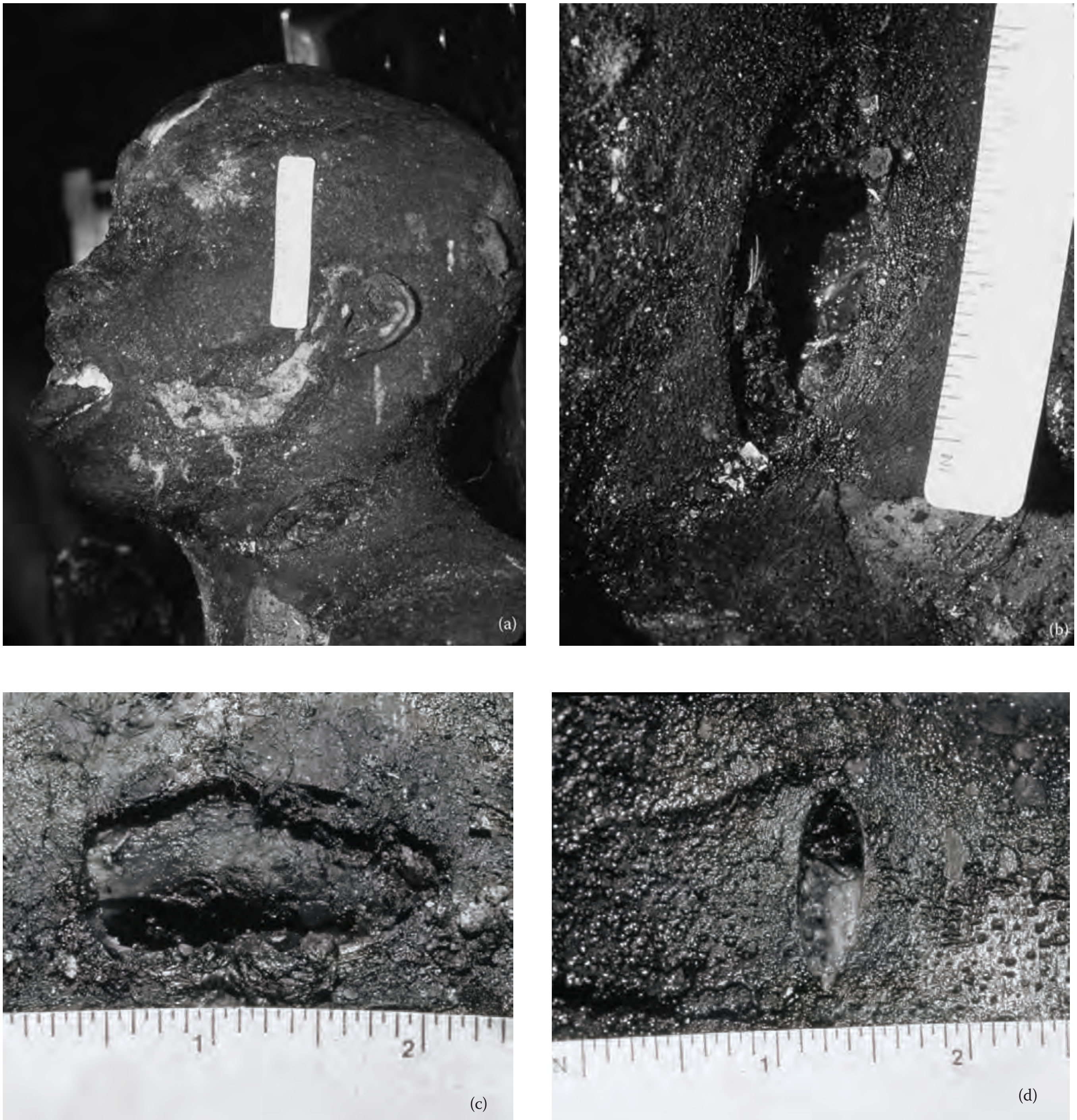
Postmortem fourth-degree thermal burns with extensive charring and exposed muscle and bone. Note the pugilistic stance of the body with arms raised (b). Also note the postmortem skeletal fractures due to extensive heat (c).



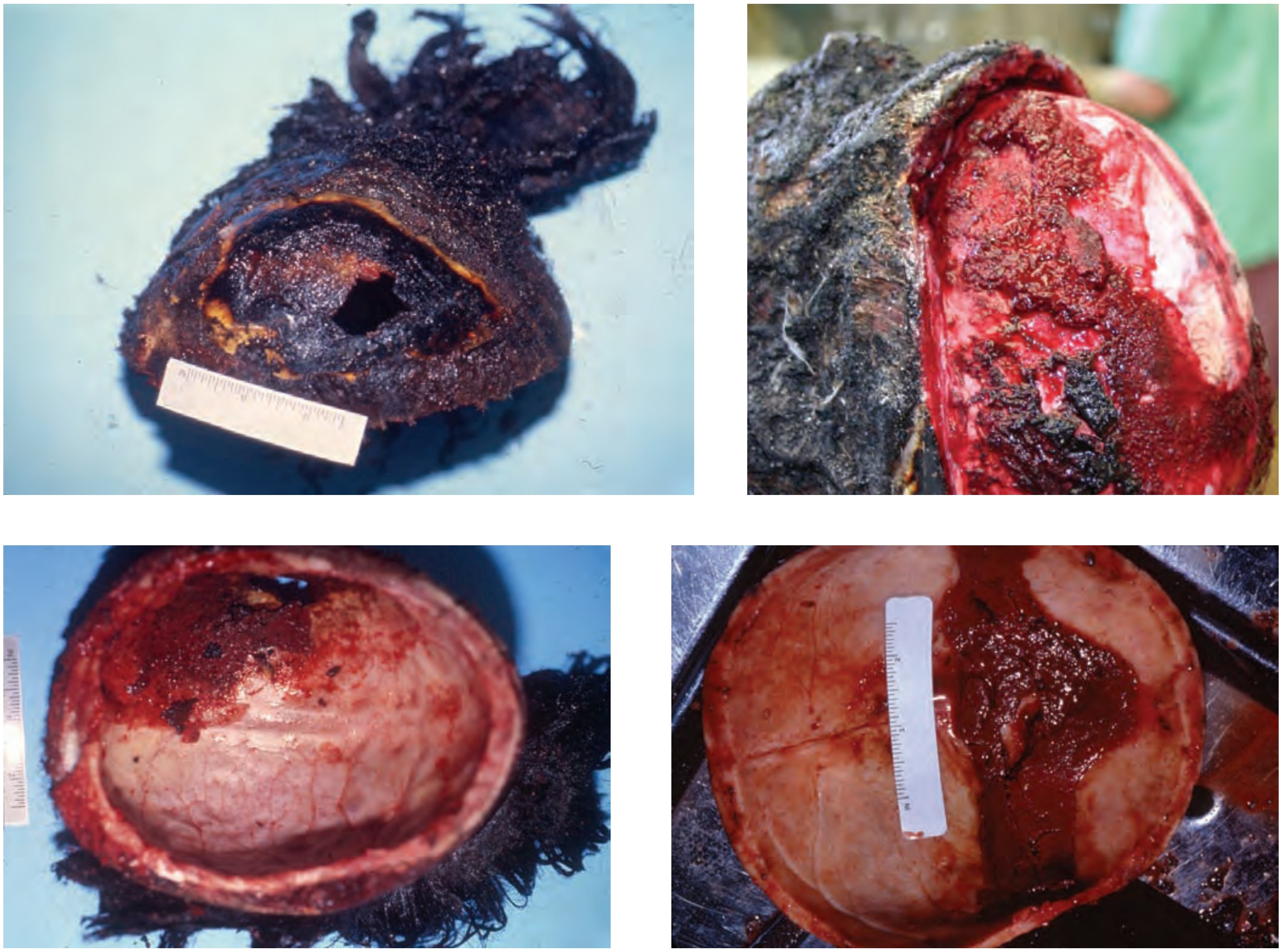
This individual was wheeled out of a building in a shopping cart and set on fire. Note the postmortem cracking of the skin due to heat exposure. This is indicated by the exposed yellow subcutaneous tissue with no hemorrhage. There were extensive fourth-degree thermal burns to the entire body.

Extensive third- to fourth-degree thermal burns with partial skeletal fragmentation due to the wick effect, which refers to a self-perpetuating, low-intensity flame following ignition of certain materials contacting the body, where the skin is cracked from heat and the underlying fatty tissue is rendered into oil that is absorbed into the charred clothing, producing a wick. This low-level heat can produce extensive destruction to a body over hours.

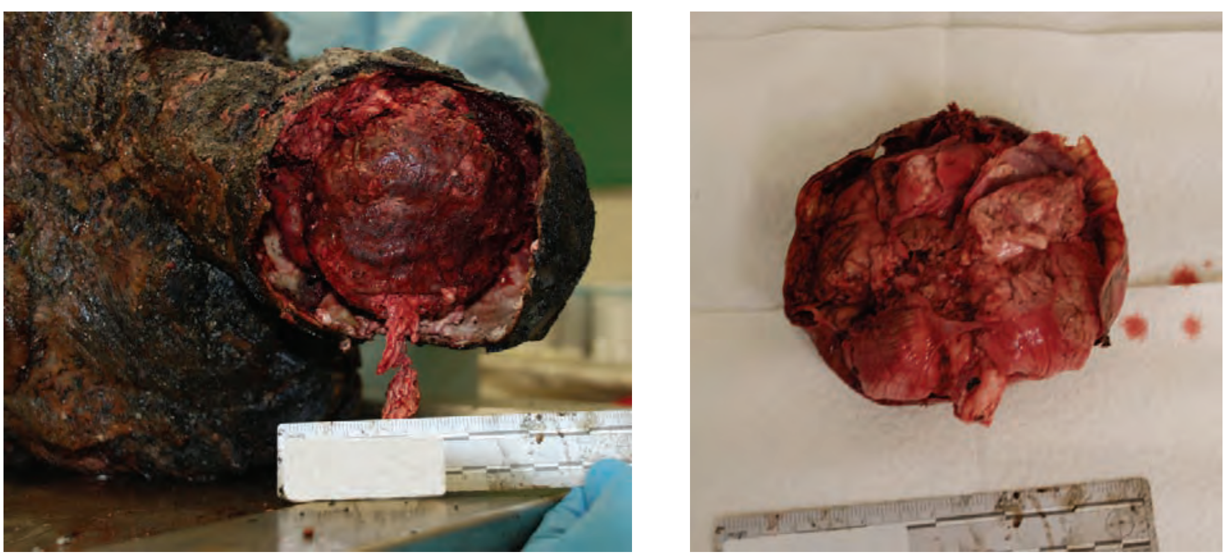
This is a rare finding of decomposition after extensive thermal injury and exposure to smoke. The decedent was involved in a fatal fire and the body was not discovered for several days after being soaked in water following fire extinguishing. Note the microorganisms and mold growing at the body surface shown by the gray-white discoloration. Putrefactive changes were markedly inhibited due to the effects of exposure to smoke and heat.



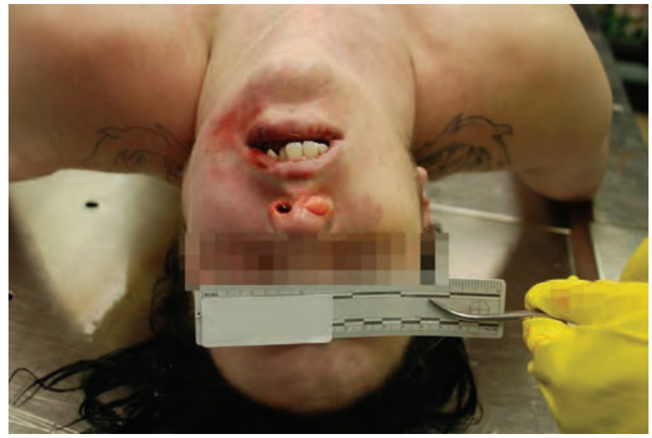
These are all examples of homicides where apartments or houses were set on fire to destroy evidence. Figures (b–d) are examples of antemortem stab wounds that have been altered by postmortem thermal burns. Note that the margins are relatively sharp and do not appear as though the skin has cracked secondary to heat exposure. Upon internal examination, these injuries become much more apparent with hemorrhage and blood accumulation. Note in (a) areas of cracked skin with exposed yellow subcutaneous tissue without hemorrhage, which is indicative of postmortem thermal injuries. Note the wound at the upper aspect of the lateral left neck with hemorrhage due to an antemortem stab wound.



These figures demonstrate postmortem epidural hemorrhage. These can sometimes be misinterpreted as antemortem blunt force trauma. With exposure to flames, the brain and dura mater may contract, and blood may be forced from the small vessels at the inner aspect of the cranial bone and through the dural sinuses, producing epidural blood accumulation that will coagulate with heat.



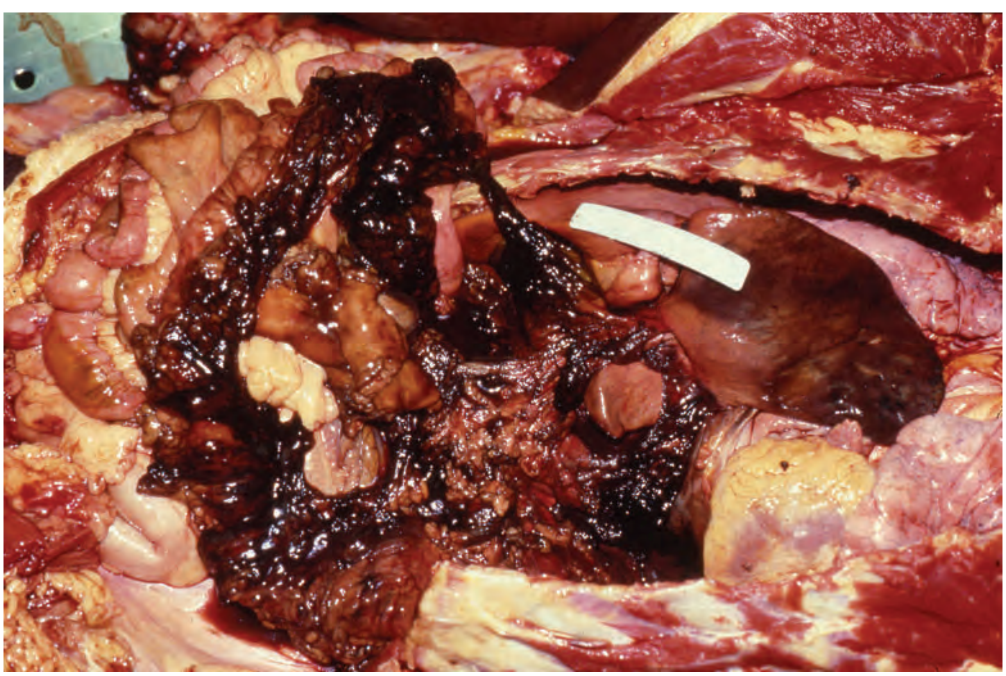
Extensive postmortem thermal injury with brain shrinkage. Organs exposed to extensive heat will decrease in size largely due to dehydration.



This individual died of an overdose and was found with dried vomitus on her face. Note the red discoloration caused by gastric acids producing burns to her face.

Chemical skin burns caused by spilling sulfuric acid. The sutured linear incisions are due to organ donation with retrieval of bone and soft tissues.

This individual drank a mixture of lye, kerosene and other caustic chemicals. Note the white discoloration from chemical burns at the lips, mouth, tongue, and esophagus.



Note the red to brown discoloration in the abdominal cavity following gastric perforation and leakage of the caustic chemicals into the peritoneal cavity.

Electrical burn on the hand of this individual who reached into a ceiling and grabbed a live wire. He was standing on an aluminum ladder wearing shorts. His leg contacting the ladder completed the circuit through his heart, producing a fatal arrhythmia.

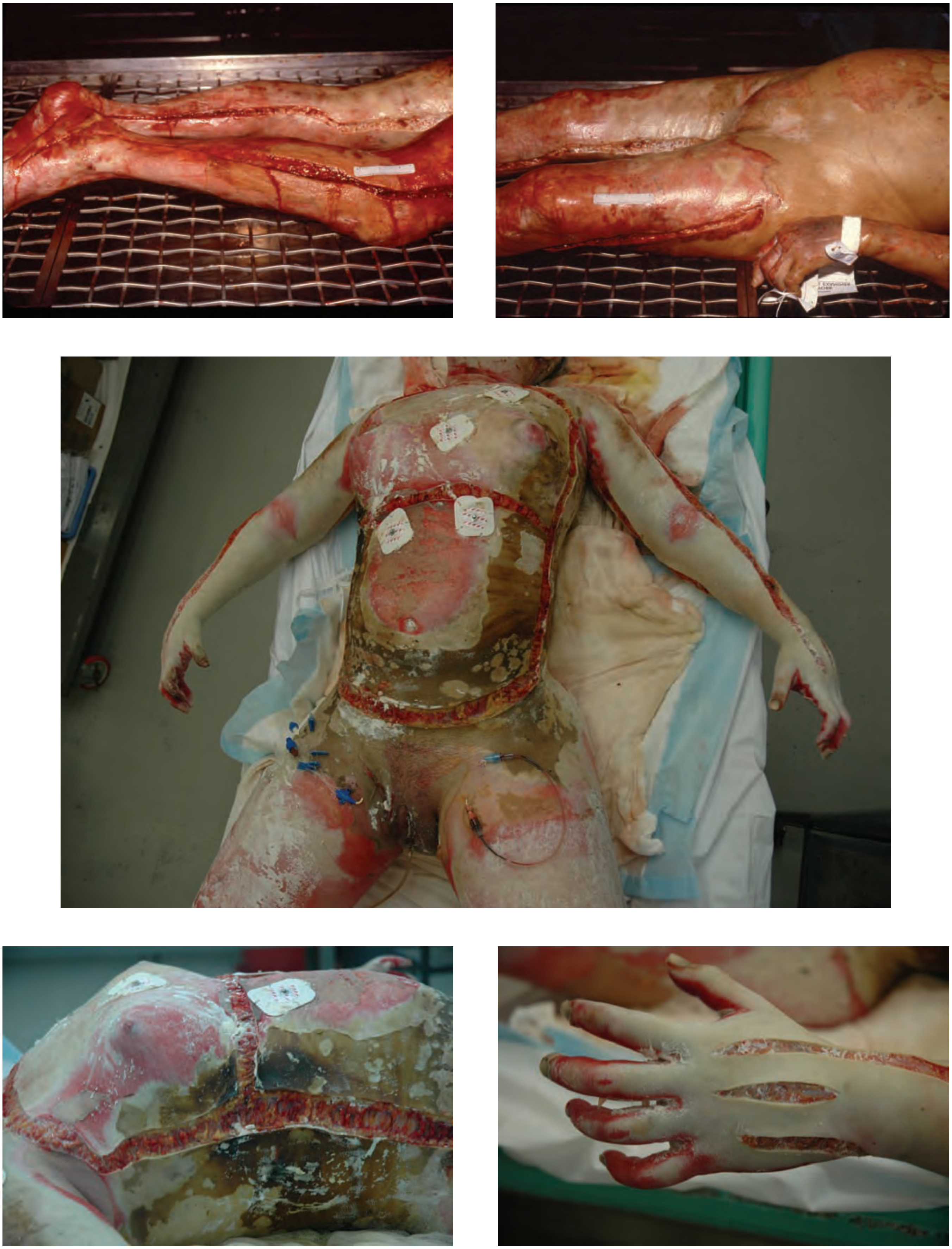
This individual fell from a subway platform onto the third rail and sustained these electrical burns.

These are examples of second- to third-degree electrical burns caused by inadvertently contacting live wires at construction sites. These individuals died as a result of a fatal cardiac arrhythmia. They fell to the ground lifeless within about 15 to 20 seconds after contact.

This individual was found lying next to an electrified subway rail with his pants down, and an electrical burn to his penis. He was lying in a puddle of urine and was markedly intoxicated at the time of his death.

These individuals died of heart disease while taking a bath. These are examples of second- to third-degree postmortem burns due to being submerged in warm to hot water. Postmortem burns occur with less heat than antemortem burns. Note the red discoloration with skin slippage and a sharply demarcated border defining the submerged and unsubmerged areas. To help the viewer distinguish between these regions we placed a line adjacent to this demarcation. Individuals who drown in bathtubs have some contributing factor dictating why they could not keep their head above the water. They maybe neurologically compromised or intoxicated. People with seizures may accidentally drown.

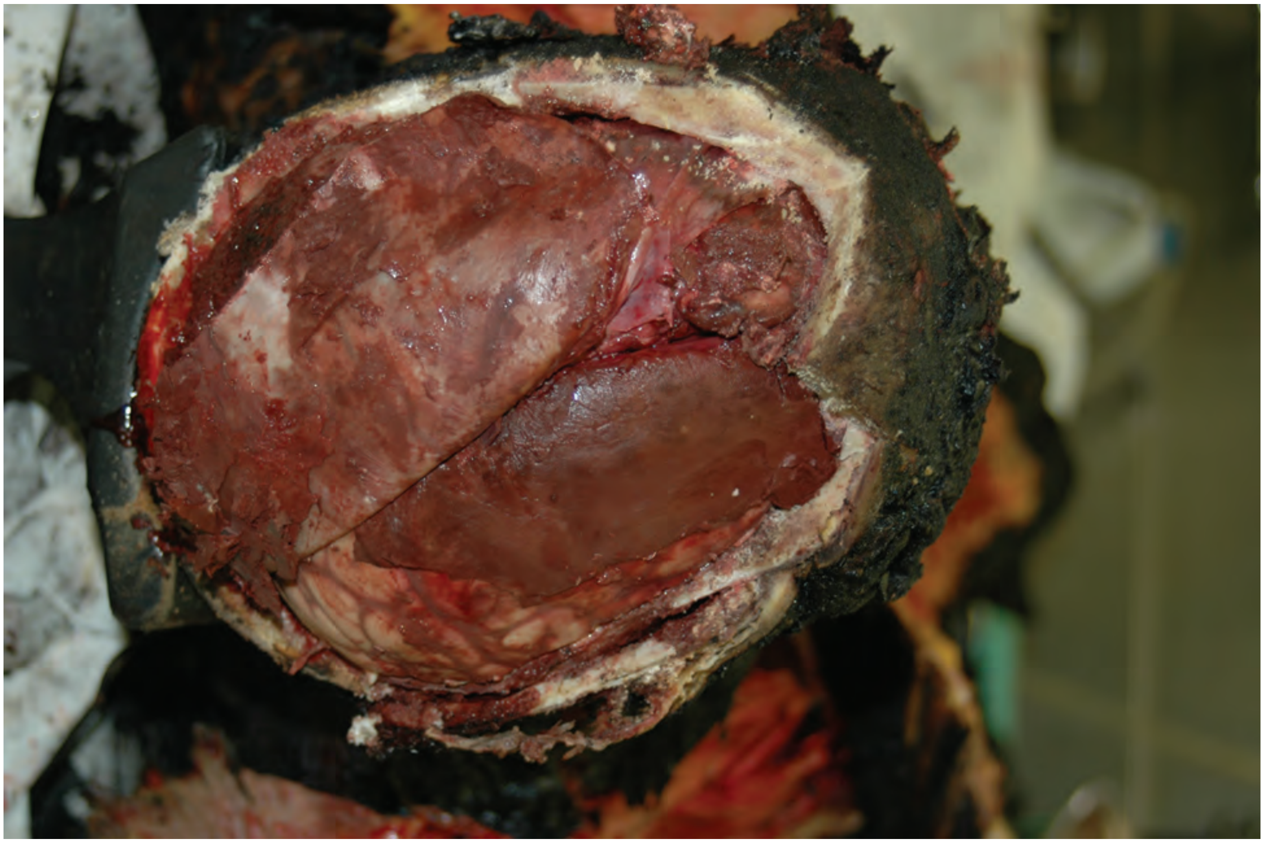
Child abuse cases with homicidal scalding. Image (a) demonstrates second- to third-degree burns to both feet and ankles from repeatedly being dunked in hot water. Images (b–d) show skin grafting with therapeutic intervention in a child with fourth-degree burns who was left sitting in scalding water.



These are fasciotomy incisions made by physicians for medical therapy to relieve pressure in extremities.

Identifications may be very challenging in fire fatalities. These cases may require dental analysis for identification. Incisions may be made in the face to access the teeth. Funerals in such cases are closed casket due to the severe extensive nature of the injuries.

Swelling of the tongue due to inhaling super heated gases in an individual who survived for 1 day.



This individual crashed an airplane and sustained extensive blunt force trauma. These images demonstrate an antemortem subdural hematoma altered by extensive postmortem thermal injuries.

Asphyxia

10

CHARLES A. CATANESE AND BARBARA K. BOLLINGER

This is a general term used to describe decreased oxygen uptake or use, together with decreased carbon dioxide elimination.

Airway obstruction may occur by smothering, neck compression, foreign body aspiration, excess secretions or swelling of the airway, etc. *Smothering* is defined as external occlusion of the mouth and/or nose which prevents air exchange. Children may *aspirate foreign bodies* such as peanuts, hotdogs, popcorn, watch batteries, coins, etc. Adults who aspirate food are invariably neurologically compromised or intoxicated. Airway obstruction due to *excess mucus or swelling* as with asthma or anaphylaxis can produce asphyxia. Also various body positions may produce airway obstruction *(positional asphyxia)* as with occupants of motor vehicles trapped after collisions or intoxicated people passing out and sliding into awkward positions that prevent chest expansion and air exchange.

Autopsy findings associated with *smothering* may be very subtle or non-existent. Findings may include abrasions around the nose and/or mouth that *cannot* be explained by other means (i.e., resuscitative efforts). Great force is applied to the mouth and lips which may cause tears to the frenulum of the lip, the mucous membrane that connects the inside of the lip to the corresponding gum. Smothering may occur with the use of hands or by placing an object over a face, such as a pillow.

Depending on the degree of force applied and the structures compressed, there may or may not be petechiae present on the skin of the face, mucous membranes or eyes. Arguably, the greater the disparity in size between the perpetrator and the victim (i.e., adult and child), the less likely there will be a demonstrable injury due to the overpowering relative nature of this type of struggle. It is important that in cases of suspected smothering, experienced police interrogators and medical investigators perform the interviews. In cases where autopsy findings are very subtle, well-documented descriptions of the circumstances with specific details are extremely important.

Chemicals can produce asphyxia. *Inert gases* like methane or carbon dioxide will displace oxygen from the air and produce asphyxia by depletion or replacement of oxygen. Various *poisons* such as carbon monoxide or cyanide interfere with oxygen uptake and utilization, respectively.

Chest compression can produce asphyxia by *preventing air flow* into the lungs.

Neck compression as with *hanging and strangulation* can also produce asphyxia by obstruction of various neck structures including the airway, venous circulation and arterial circulation.

Interpretation of autopsy findings with respect to *hanging vs. strangulation* can be challenging. Each subheading below will describe the presenting classic and most common features, and then elaborate on less common features. It is important to realize that there is overlap between how the two present; depending on how the act is carried out, they may appear very similar. In establishing the manner of death, one should consider all aspects of the case including the past medical history (i.e., depression, end stage cancer, etc.), scene investigation and autopsy findings.

Hanging refers to ligature compression of the neck mitigated by the gravitational forces of the hanging head, causing partial or complete obstruction of the neck structures including blood vessels and the airway.

In a typical non-judicial suicidal hanging an individual places a ligature with a slip knot encircling the superior aspect of his or her neck. He or she secures the other end of the rope to a fixed support and allows the entire or partial body weight to pull downward, occluding the neck structures until loss of consciousness and death. In this case there should be furrow pattern that matches the overlying ligature which forms an inverted "v" mark or indentation, extending upward at the superior aspect of the neck and head. With the entire body weight pulling downward, all of the neck structures are (i.e., arterial, venous, and airway) are usually occluded at the same time and one would not expect to find petechiae in the face or eyes. There are typically no hemorrhages or fractures of the neck structures or other injuries to the body indicating a struggle. The cervical vertebrae are rarely fractured in suicidal hangings. When the body hangs for longer periods of time the furrow indentation becomes more prominent. Individuals cut down shortly after this act may have little or no furrow mark. This depends on the type of ligature used. A wide soft ligature will leave less of a mark than a narrow, more resistant ligature. If the body is left to hang for days, decomposition with stretching may eventually lead to the head being pulled away from the body.

In the case of a judicial hanging, the body is dropped from a height to produce sufficient force to fracture the upper cervical vertebrae resulting in spinal cord injury with cardiac and respiratory satiation.

An individual hanging in a sitting or lying position may have partial occlusion of the neck structures before loss of consciousness ensues. In situations where the body is adjacent to another structure, the individual may partially pull his or her body up and down, causing varying degrees of pressure–release before loss of consciousness. This will produce a similar effect to what is seen in strangulation. In these circumstances, the up and down motion of pressure release will obstruct different neck structures at different intervals. Venous circulation requires the least amount of pressure for occlusion, as compared to the arterial system and the airway. When venous circulation is obstructed without the arterial circulation, the higher pressure arterial blood beats through the capillary beds rupturing small blood vessels producing petechiae. As this process continues the hemorrhage size increases and may become confluent. These are most obvious within the sclera and conjunctivae. These movements may also produce hemorrhages or fractures to the neck structures including the airway cartilages and hyoid bone. These findings are more characteristic for strangulation, but may be seen in hangings.

Though unusual, people have been known to tie their hands behind their backs during the process of hanging themselves. The individual may have tried to complete this act several times in the past but the will to survive overpowered the will to end life. The tied hands are usually loosely tangled and not tightly tied. This will give the individual enough time to prevent himself from stopping the process. There are usually no other signs of a struggle or defensive type injuries.

With a free hanging and total body weight suspension, an otherwise healthy individual, using a slip knot, would be expected to lose consciousness within 15 to 20 seconds, and suffer irreversible brain damage within 4 to 6 minutes.

Hanging is usually suicidal, but may be accidental or homicidal.

Strangulation may be by ligature or manual. A *ligature* is something flexible that can encircle the neck, like a cord, belt or piece of clothing, etc. *Manual* strangulation refers to the use of one's hands leading to compression and blockage of the neck structures.

Manual strangulation is usually characterized by multiple irregular, angulated, abraded contusions around the neck. The marks may be curvilinear, corresponding to fingernail prints. These external marks can be somewhat variable and can range from a few to many.

Ligature strangulation is usually characterized by a horizontal furrow or mark pattern around the neck. The extent of these injuries depends on the type of ligature, how broad and soft it is, and the amount of struggle, etc.

The act of strangulation is often a very physically dominating, often non-premeditated, way of killing somebody. This act takes time and comes with the risk of injury to all those involved. The individual strangled is usually smaller and of weaker strength. Often a sexual component to the assault exists and a rape kit should be performed in all cases of suspected strangulation. Petechiae are usually present in the face and eyes. There are usually hemorrhages in the strap muscles of the neck, and there may be fractures of the laryngeal cartilages and/or hyoid bone. These fractures are more common in older victims because the cartilages are more calcified, brittle and less elastic. Older people may also have osteoporosis. Younger victims or children tend to have more flexible upper airways that often will stretch or collapse rather than fracture. Depending on how great the struggle, the amount of force used, and the type of neck compression, there may or may not be petechiae and/or hemorrhages above the ligature or region of neck compression. The presence of petechiae formation is more likely when there is a pressure–release component associated with a struggle or if less variable force is applied and if the ligature is wide with a large surface area. The presence of petechiae is less common when the force is very strong, consistent, and applied with a small surface area ligature. The latter example is more similar in nature to a hanging. Victims of strangulation often have defensive type injuries including other abrasions and contusions to their body.

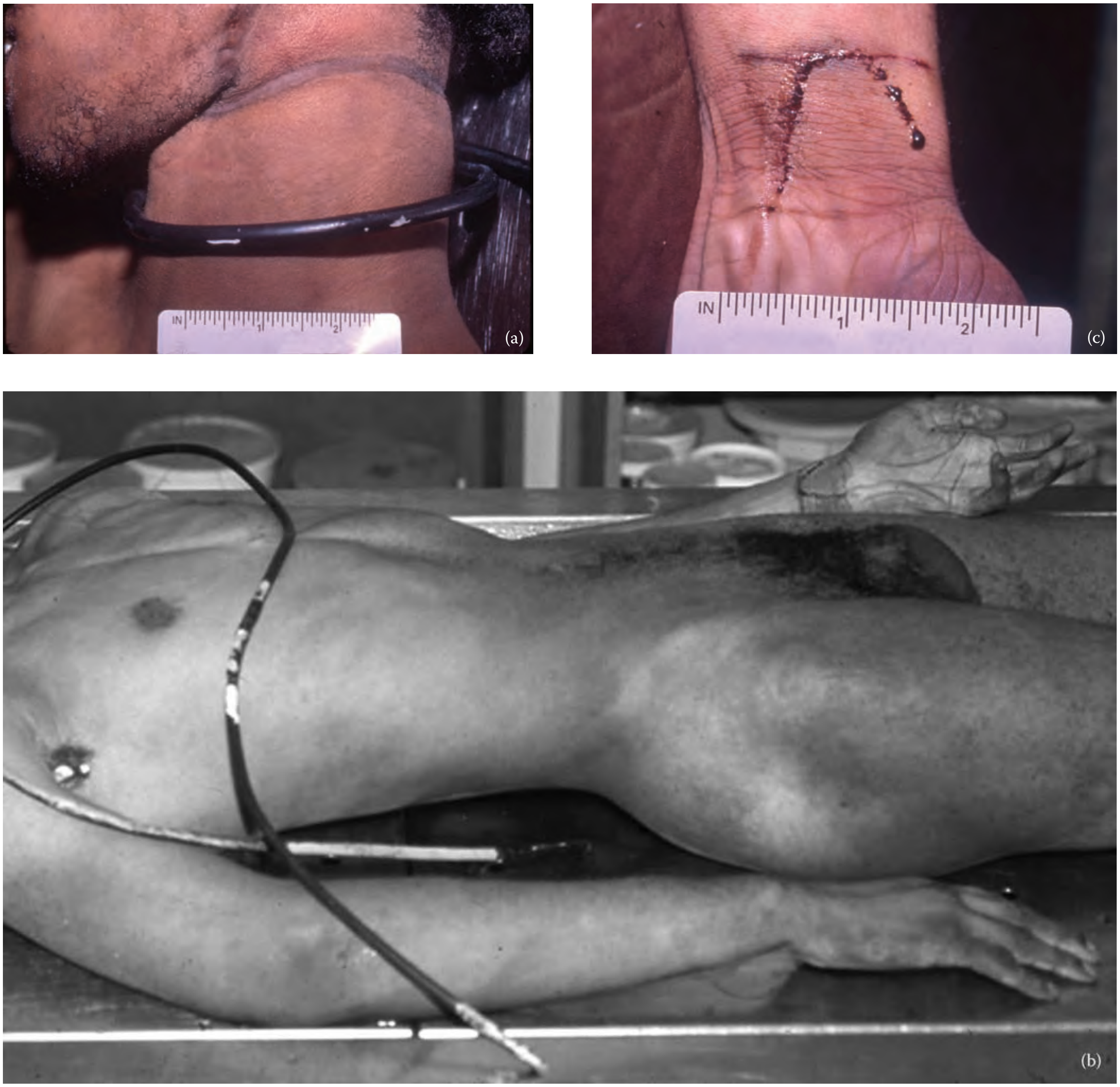
It is possible to ligature strangle yourself; it is not possible to manually strangle yourself. If one is able to apply enough force to lose consciousness manually, revival occurs after the pressure is released. Continued force is necessary for death to ensue.

Someone murdered by ligature strangulation may die within a similar time frame as someone hanged; however, the time frame is usually longer. If there are multiple petechiae with hemorrhages and fractures of the neck structures, whether ligature or manual, the time frame may be much longer. This latter example usually indicates pressure–release, pressure–release over several minutes until loss of consciousness, and then continued pressure for several more minutes until death occurs. If an individual is released shortly following loss of consciousness, revival may follow.

Proper autopsy technique dictates that the *brain and visceral organs be removed prior to a layered neck*

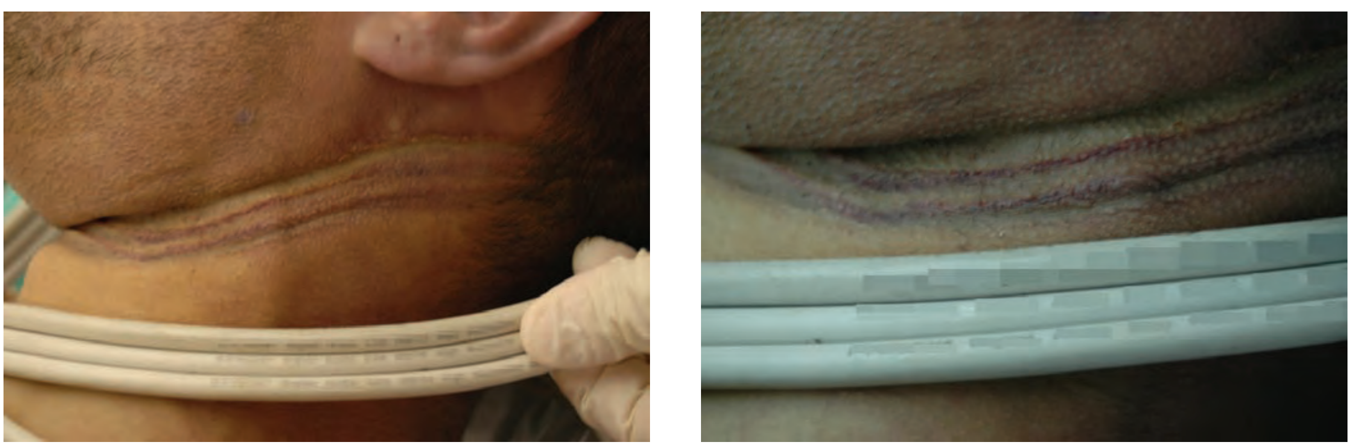
dissection being performed. Photographs of the neck dissection in layers are recommended.

Drowning occurs when water is inhaled, filling up the alveolar spaces and preventing gas exchange. The manner of death will vary depending on how the individual came to be in the water. If the event is not witnessed the manner often remains undetermined. Water in the lungs (pulmonary edema) and the paranasal sinus is often present. The degree of pulmonary edema may vary in a fraction of the cases due to the heart beating after respirations cease. As the heart beats, before eventual asystole, some of the fluid in the lungs will be absorbed. An adult may drown in a big pool or ocean but not in a small pool or bathtub unless *neurologically compromised or intoxicated*. Homicide victims are sometimes placed in a water-filled *bathtub* to wash away evidence. The story given may be, "I found him in the tub, and he must have drowned." Common sense would dictate that an individual does not need to move very much to get his head above the water.



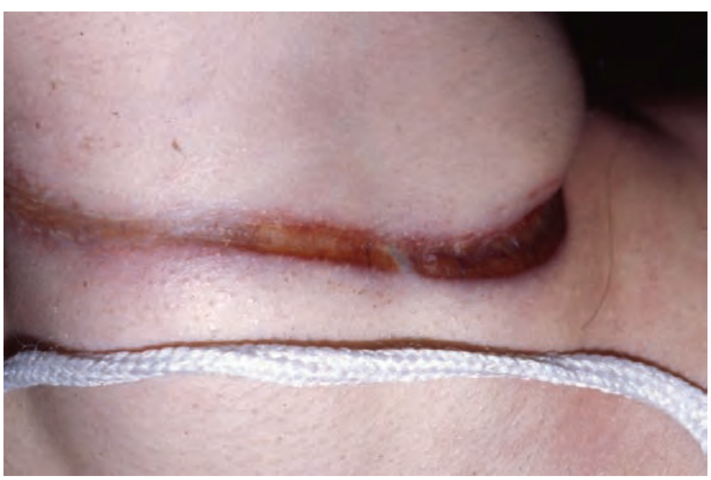
Suicidal hanging. Note the black cord (a) that matches the underlying furrow pattern at the superior aspect of the neck with upward extension at the left side of the face. Also note that the individual's lividity becomes more apparent and is fixed at the level of the upper thigh extending down to the feet (b). This fixed lividity pattern is appropriate for an individual who remained in an upright position for many hours after death. If his lividity was fixed posteriorly and not inferior; this would indicate prior scene alteration. There were hesitation marks at the wrist with blood seeping downward due to gravity (c).

Suicidal hanging with matching rope and furrow pattern circling superior aspect of the neck forming a slight inverted "V" pattern behind the right ear.



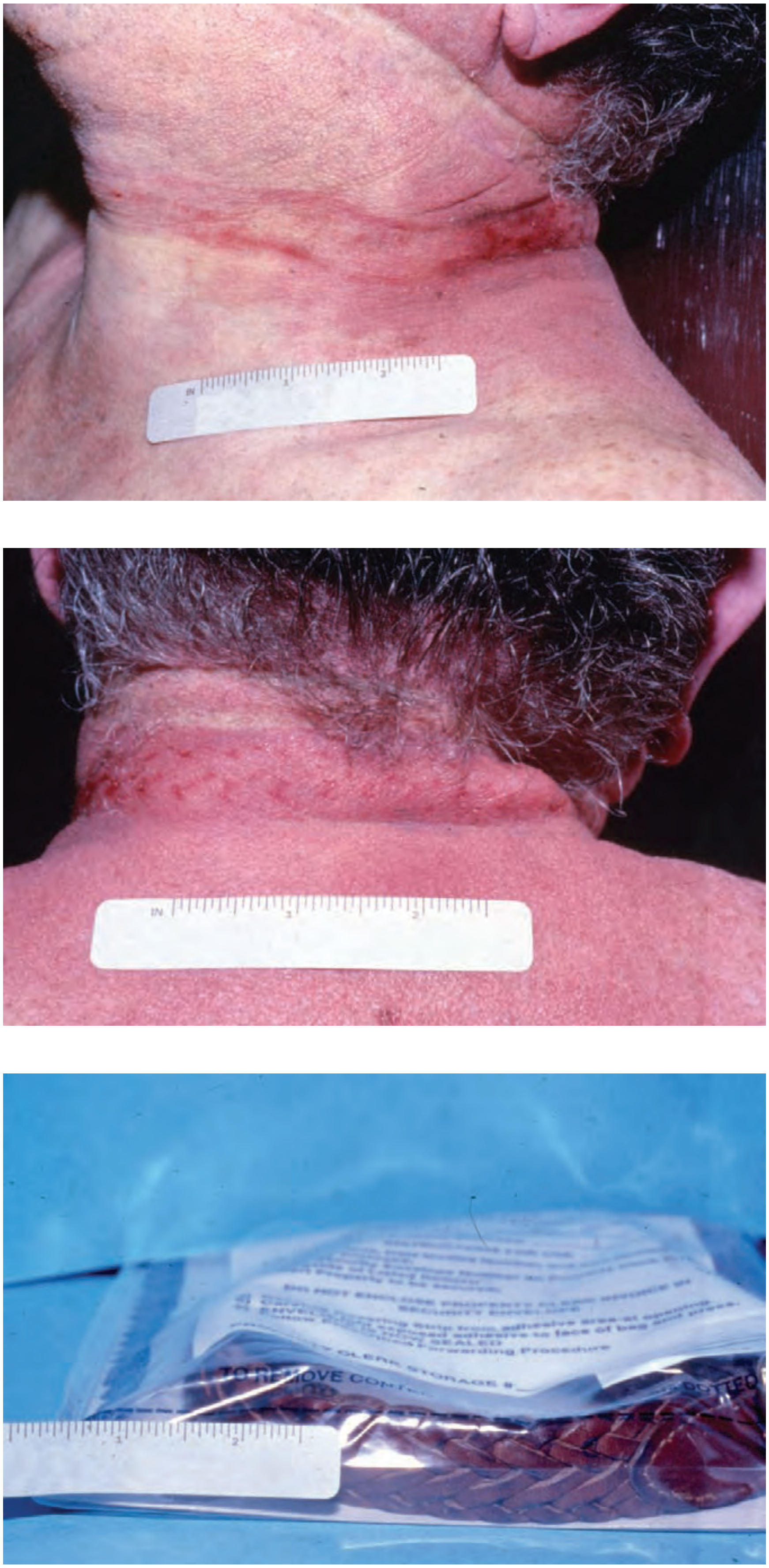
Suicidal hanging with computer cord.

Suicidal hanging with nylon bag strap.

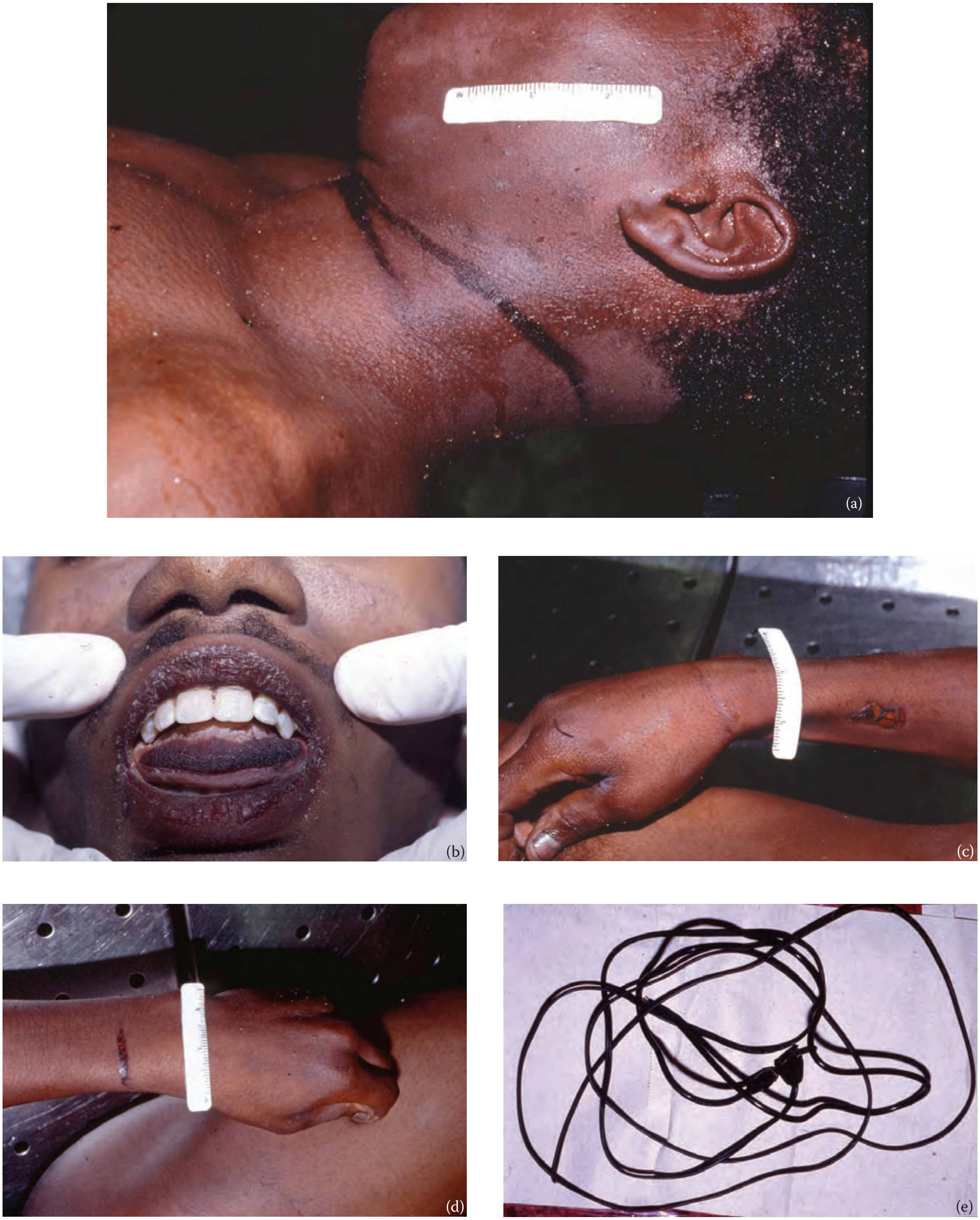


Accidental hanging in an individual with Alzheimer's dementia who enjoyed whirling around in circles while sitting on a desk chair. The person was left unattended for a short period of time by chronic care nursing staff, and got tangled in the cord from a window blind. This furrow pattern matches a blind cord as a ligature.

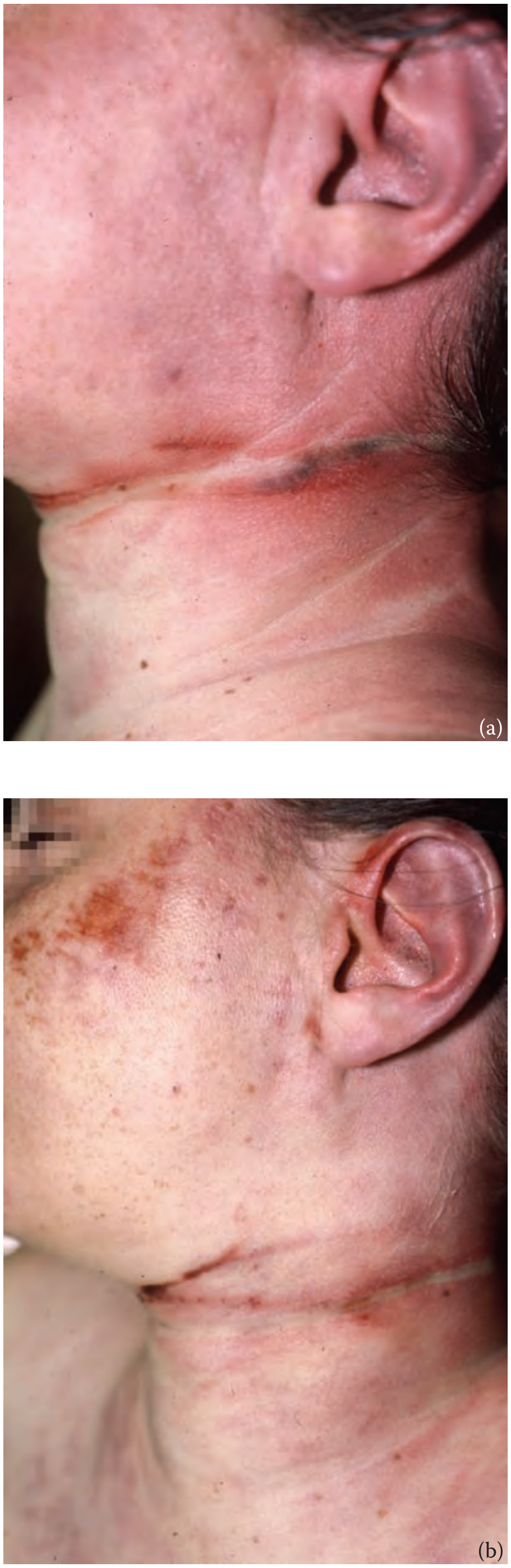
Suicidal hanging with chain.



Suicidal hanging by braided belt. Note the matching skin pattern.

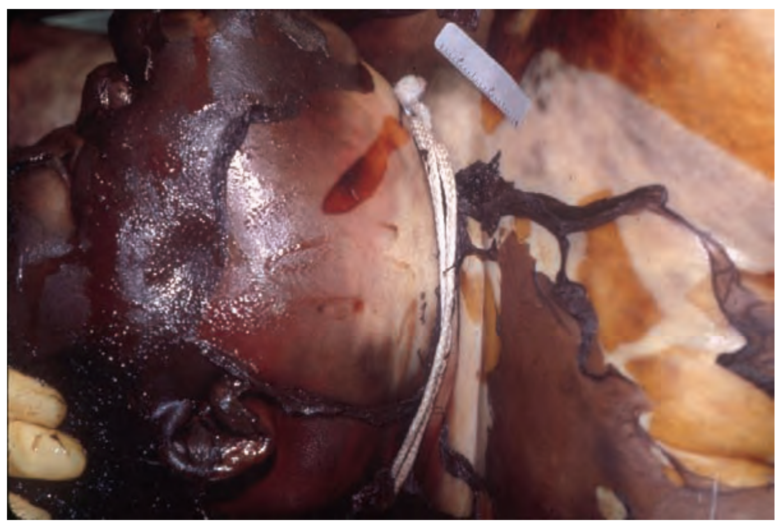


Suicidal hanging with earphone cord (a). This individual also took part of the cord and loosely wrapped his hands behind his back so he would not be able to reach up and prevent the hanging from being successful. This is not very unusual for people to hang themselves and loosely tie their hands in this fashion. Note the force of the ligature caused the tongue to protrude from his mouth (b). Also note the dark postmortem drying of the mucosa exposed to air.



Homicidal ligature strangulations with horizontal cord marks surrounding the necks. Note the other injuries to the decedent's face in (b), including abrasions. Both of these victims were also sexually assaulted.

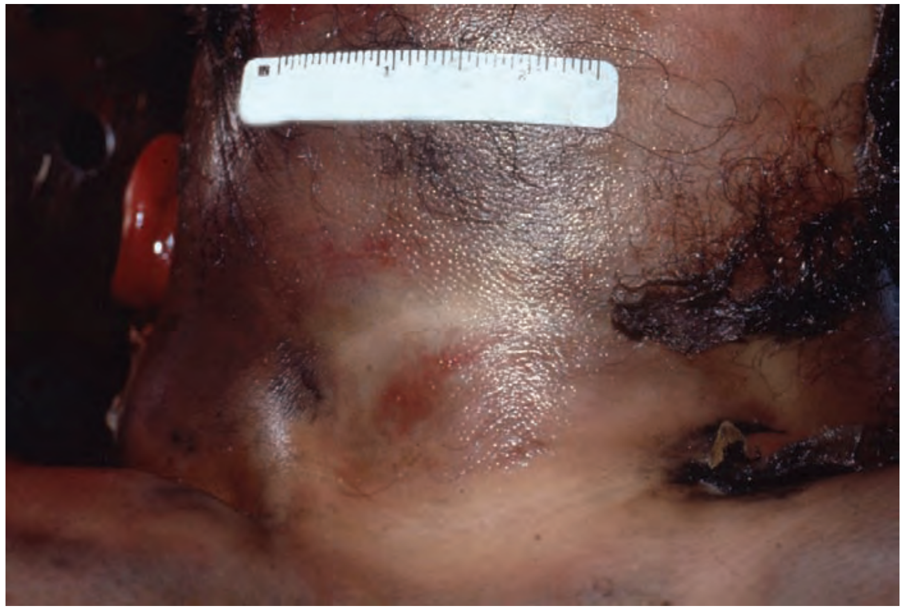
Homicidal ligature strangulation in a prostitute who had large amounts of cocaine and heroin in her system. Her fingers were also noted to be crushed by a pair of pliers during the assault.



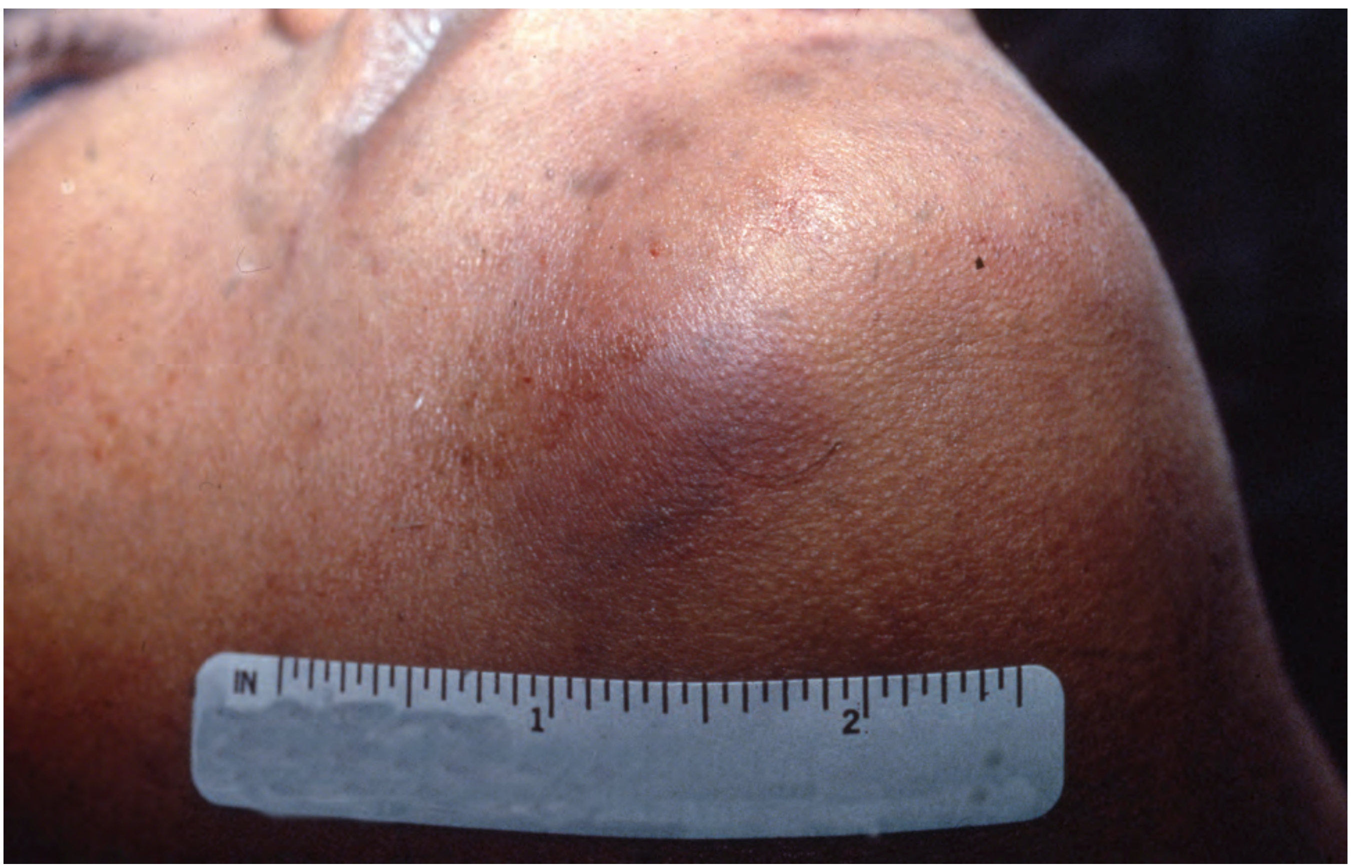
This is a suicidal ligature strangulation in an individual with a longstanding history of depression who was found in a locked secured apartment with a suicide note. Note the cord is tied tightly around his neck. There is also a moderate state of putrefactive change with skin slippage, bloating, and purging.

Manual strangulation. Note the multiple irregular abraded contusions surrounding the neck. There were multiple areas of strap muscle hemorrhage and a fractured hyoid bone. She was sexually assaulted and left in a stairwell. There were multiple petechiae with areas of hemorrhage in the sclerae and conjunctivae of each eye. The constellation of these findings are typical for a homicidal manual strangulation.

Manual strangulation. Note the abraded contusions to the anterior neck.

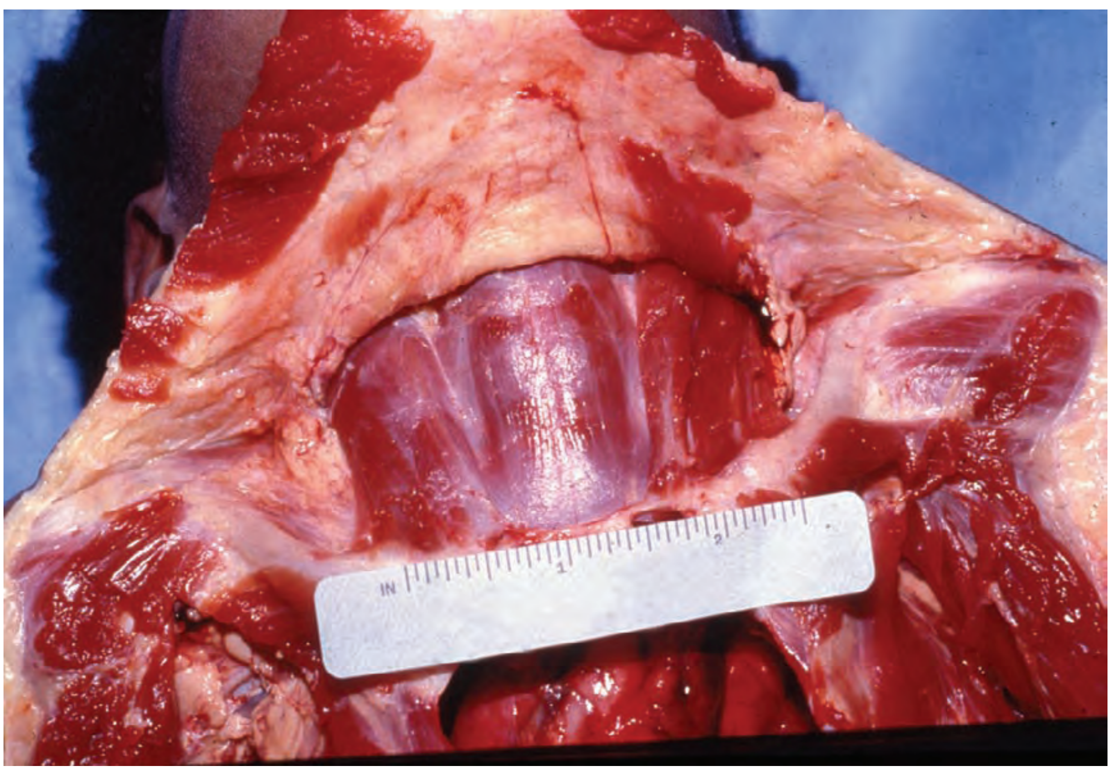


Manual strangulation. There is early decomposition with skin slippage. There are vague abrasions and superficial contusions at the neck. As decomposition progresses it may become more difficult to interpret these findings.

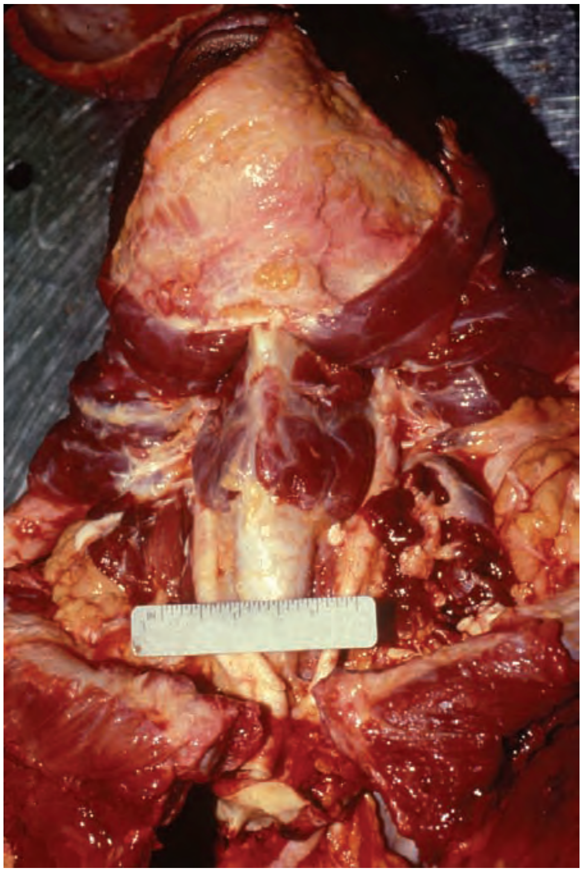


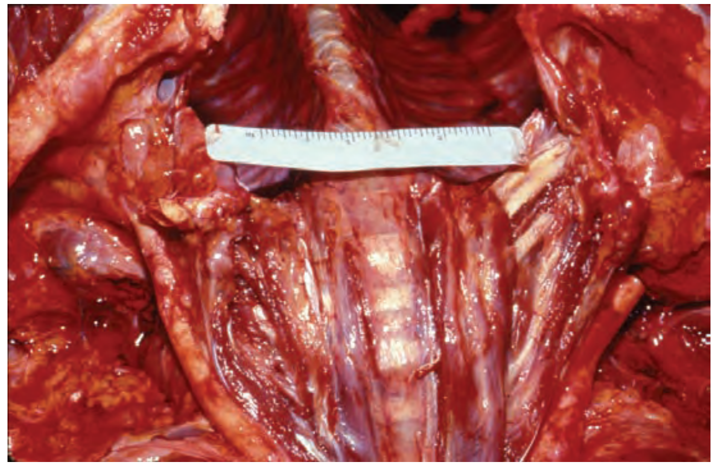
This individual was punched in the face and then yoked from behind during a sexual assault. There were no visible external injuries to the neck except this contusion at the border of the right chin. Careful internal examination after the brain and visceral organs had been removed revealed areas of hemorrhage within the anterior strap muscles and posterior paraspinal muscles. There were also petechiae with hemorrhage of the sclera and conjunctivae. This individual was found face down and the eye hemorrhages were originally thought by some to be associated with postmortem lividity. The perpetrator was caught after bragging about the assault.

This image demonstrates an eye from a person who hanged him or herself. Note there are no petechiae or scleral/conjunctival hemorrhages. The decedent's weight pulling down on the ligature produced a significant enough force to obstruct the entire blood supply to the head. Therefore, there was no pressure–release mechanism, leading to capillary rupture and hemorrhage. The absence of scleral or conjunctivae hemorrhages is more typical in hanging fatalities.



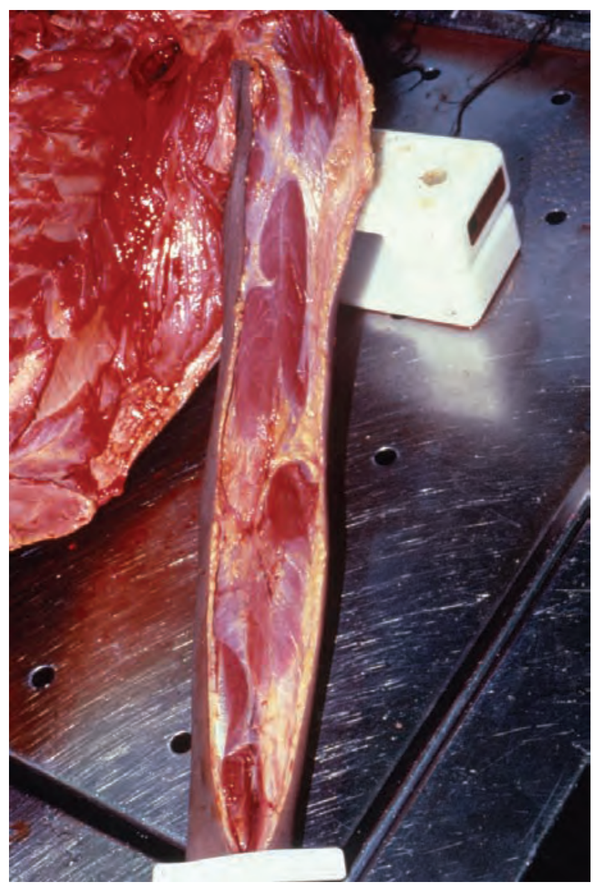
Anterior neck dissection after the visceral organs and brain have been removed. Part of the undersurface of the platysma muscle is visible at the top of this image adjacent to the yellow subcutaneous tissue of the neck. The anterior strap muscles are visible directly above the label and are free of antemortem injury. There were no hemorrhages or fractures of the remaining neck structures. The absence of these injuries is common in hanging fatalities.



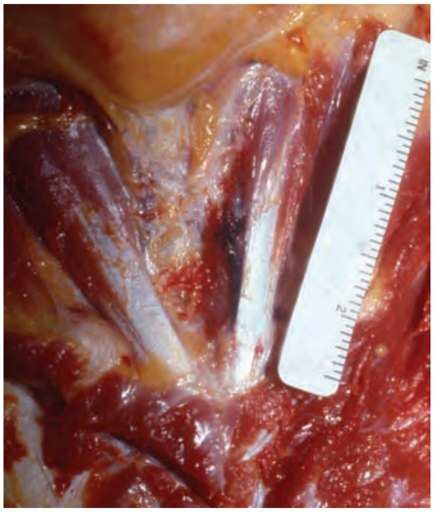


These figures demonstrate anterior neck dissections with no hemorrhages. The absence of hemorrhage is typical for most hangings.

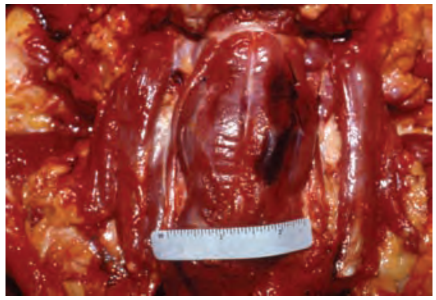
This demonstrates a normal hyoid bone with no fractures or contusions.



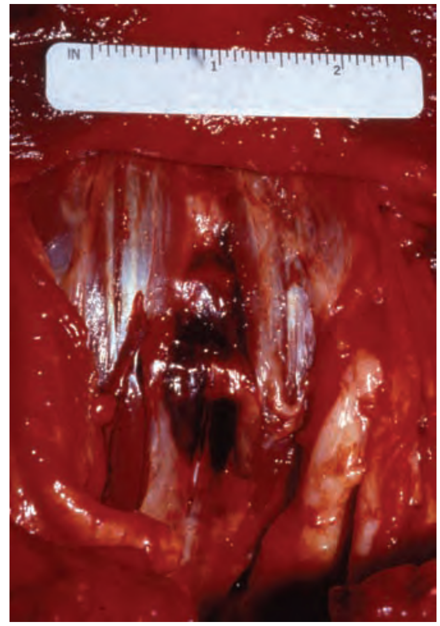
Some cases may require further evaluation including a posterior neck and back dissection. This case involved a 12-year-old African American child who was strangled. Dissection should be done in a layer-by-layer fashion until the surface of bone is exposed. It is important to dissect the arms as well, which may demonstrate contusions from being held during a struggle. There were no hemorrhages found in this case. It is often more difficult to externally visualize contusions in darker-skinned individuals.



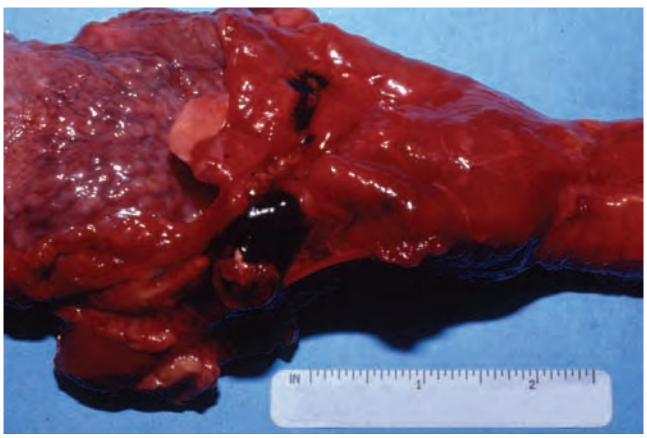
Strangulation. Hemorrhage of the medial left sternocleidomastoid muscle.



Strangulation. Note the large hemorrhage to the anterior neck structures including the left sternohyoid muscle.

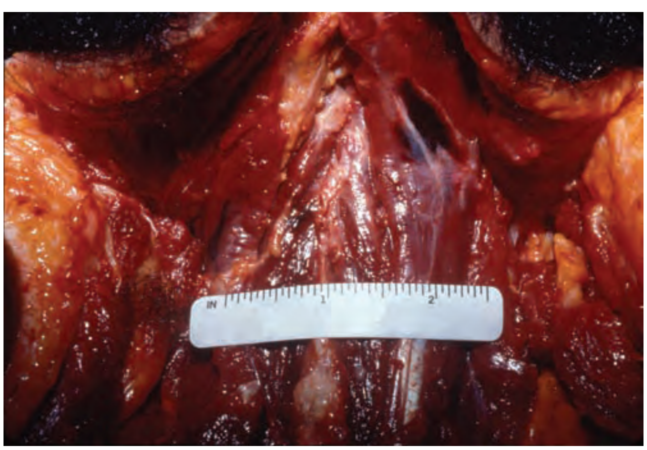


Strangulation. Note the hemorrhage in the anterior neck structures.

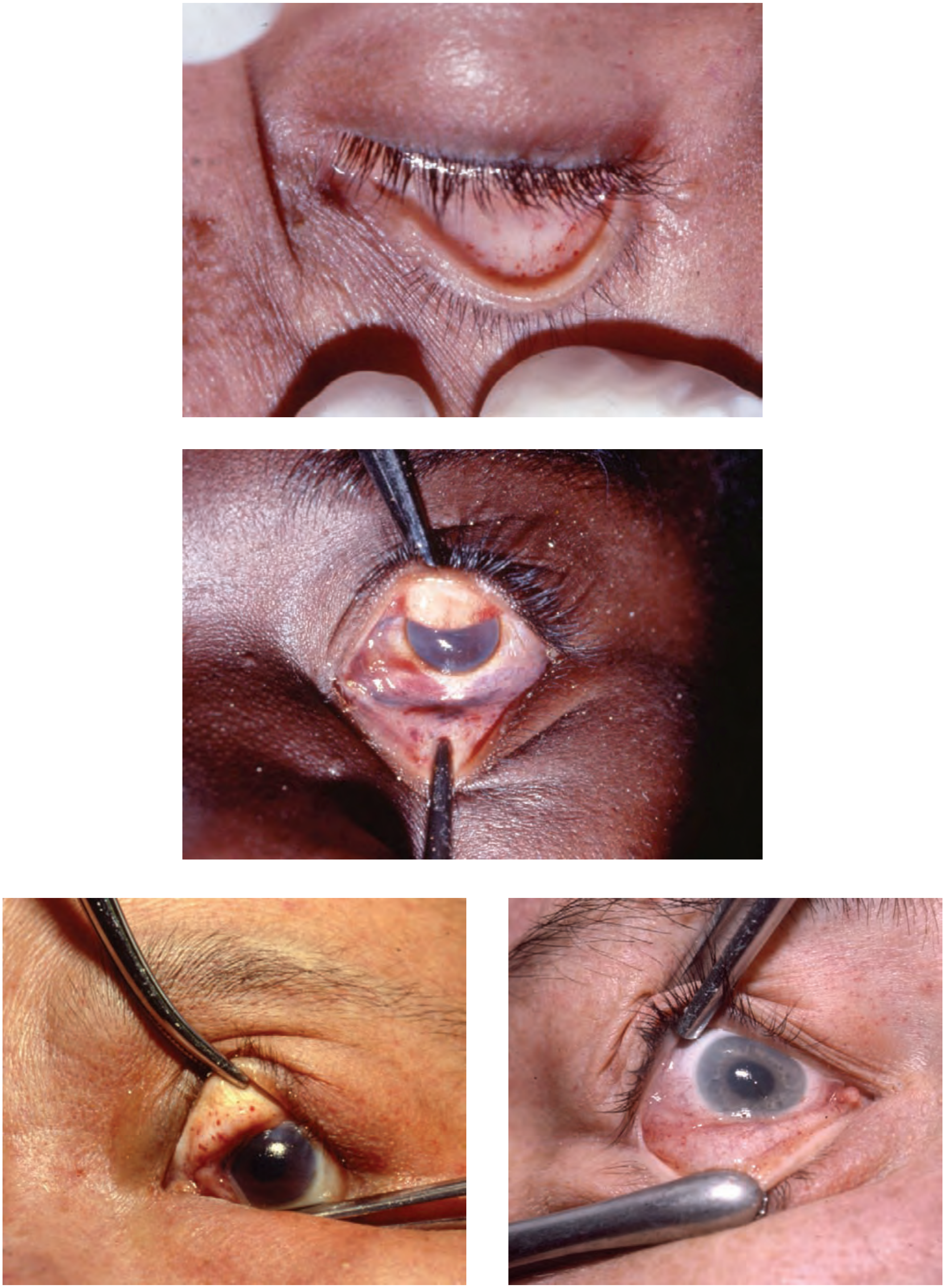


Strangulation. Note the hemorrhage overlying the left superior horn of the thyroid cartilage. The underlying cartilage was fractured.

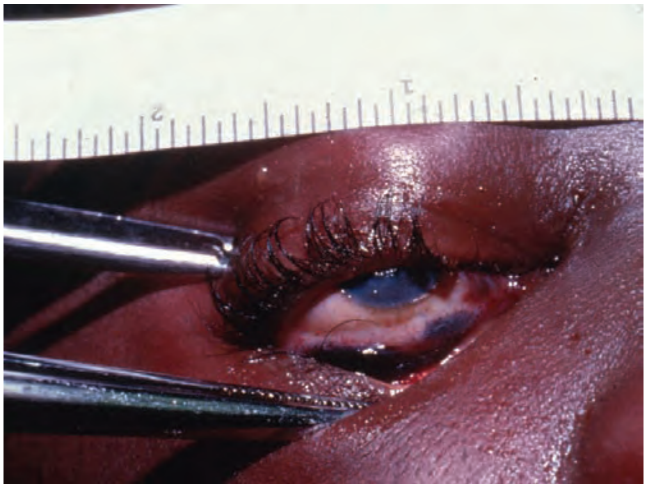
Note the fractures of this hyoid bone with vague hemorrhages in a decedent with slight to moderate decomposition. Fractures of the hyoid bone are often found in association with homicidal strangulation. The presence of a hyoid bone fracture does not indicate that the case must be a strangulation and the absence of fractures to the hyoid bone does not indicate the decedent was not strangled. Fractures can occur as a result of a blunt impact as well.

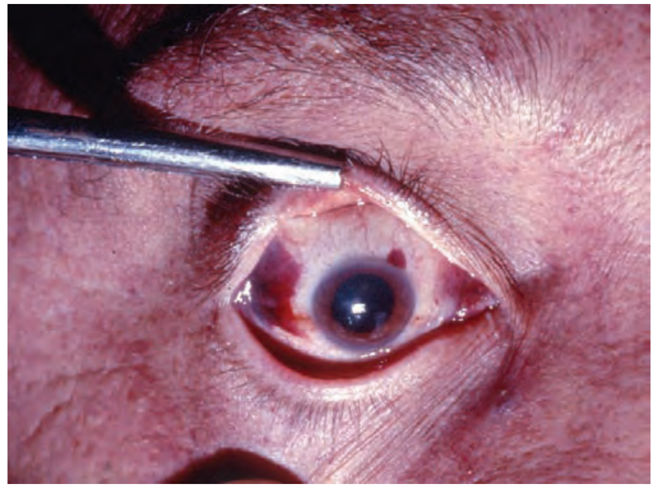


Strangulation. Posterior neck dissection with hemorrhage to the superior aspect of the semispinalis capitis muscle.

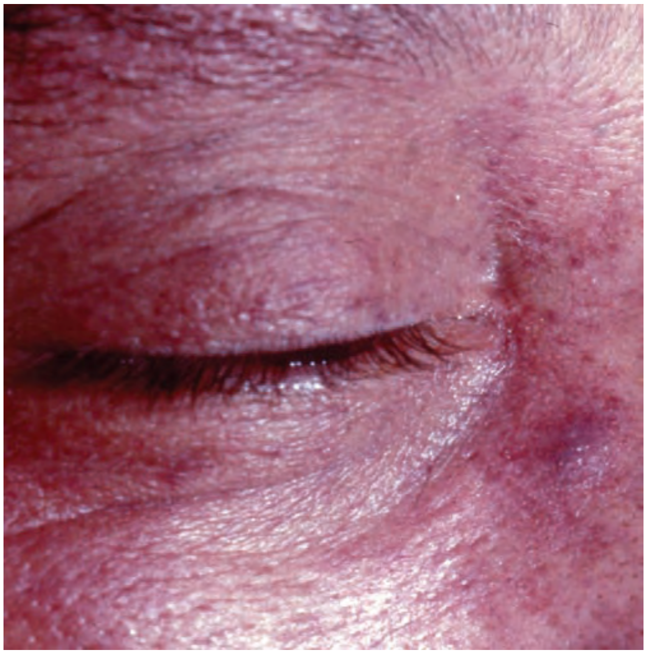


Cases of strangulation demonstrating petechiael hemorrhages of the sclera and conjunctivae.



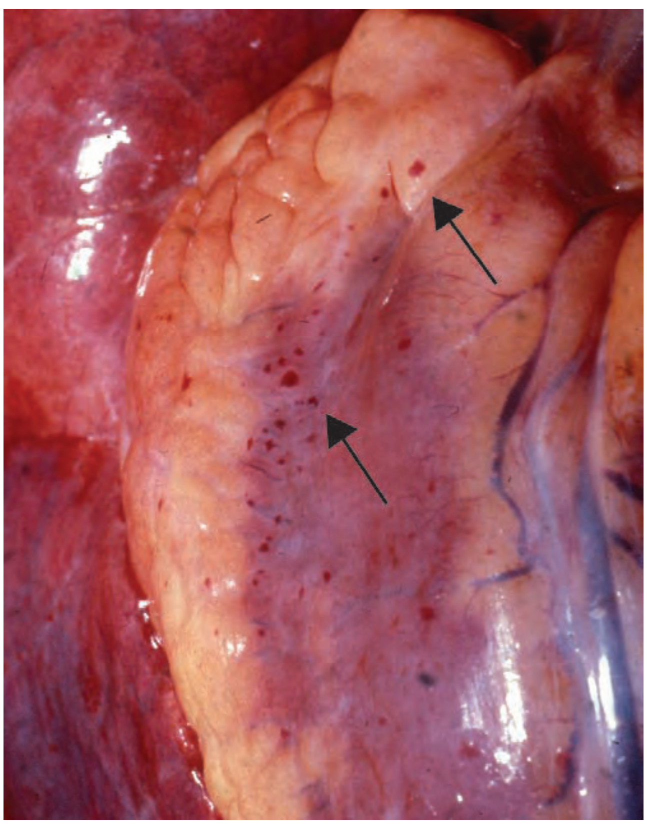


These demonstrate a range of scleral and conjunctival hemorrhages. As varied degrees of neck pressure continue after petechiae formation these hemorrhages progressively become larger and possibly confluent until death ensues.



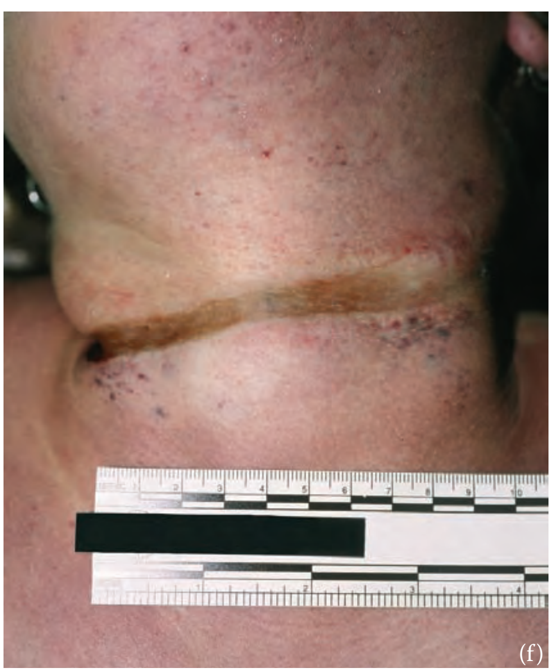
Petechiael hemorrhages of the face.

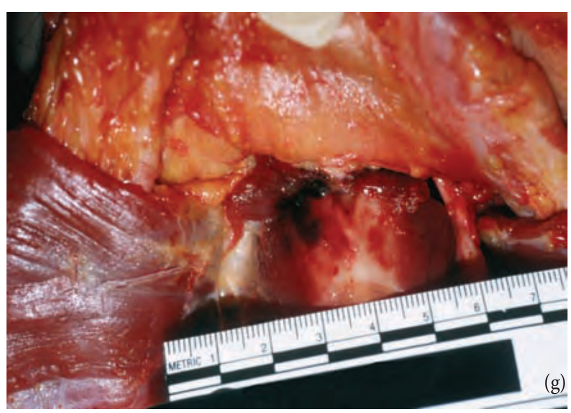
Strangulation. Petechiael hemorrhages within the mucosal surface of the mouth.



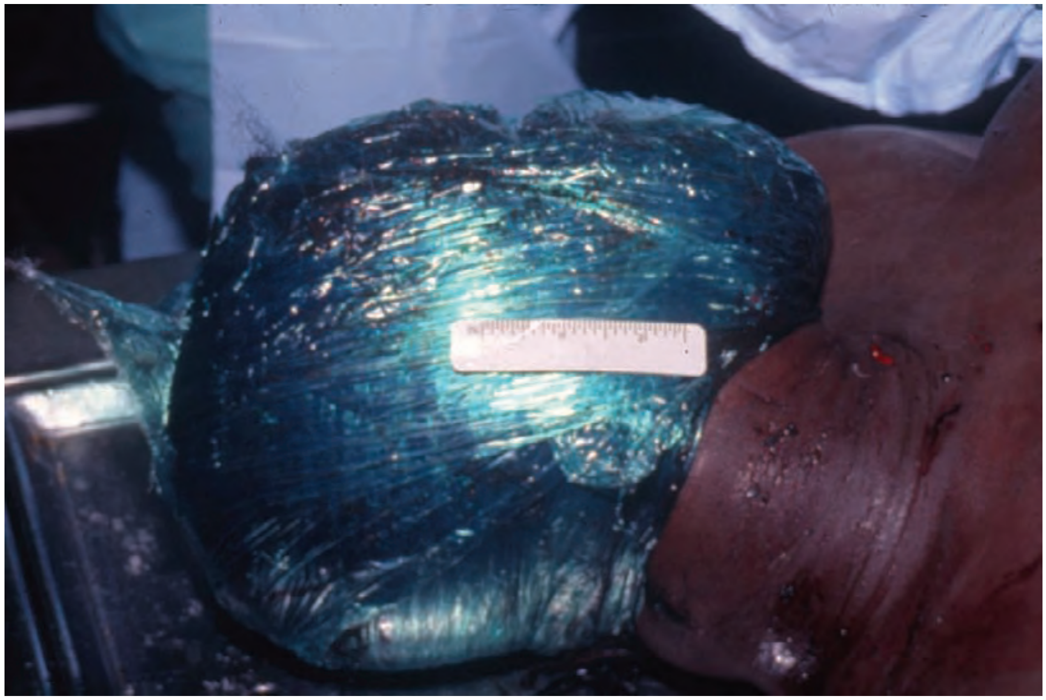
Petechiael hemorrhages at the surface of the heart associated with asphyxia due to chest compression.

Strangulation. Petechiael hemorrhages within the mucosa of the tracheal and laryngeal cartilage.





This individual was strangled and then hanged in an attempt to stage a suicide and cover up this crime. Note the injuries to the back of the decedent's feet during a struggle and the haphazard scuff marks to the floor surrounding the body (b–c). Also note the decedent's hair and clothing stuck under the noose (d–e). There are also injuries with hemorrhage to the neck structures. These findings are completely inconsistent with a suicidal hanging.

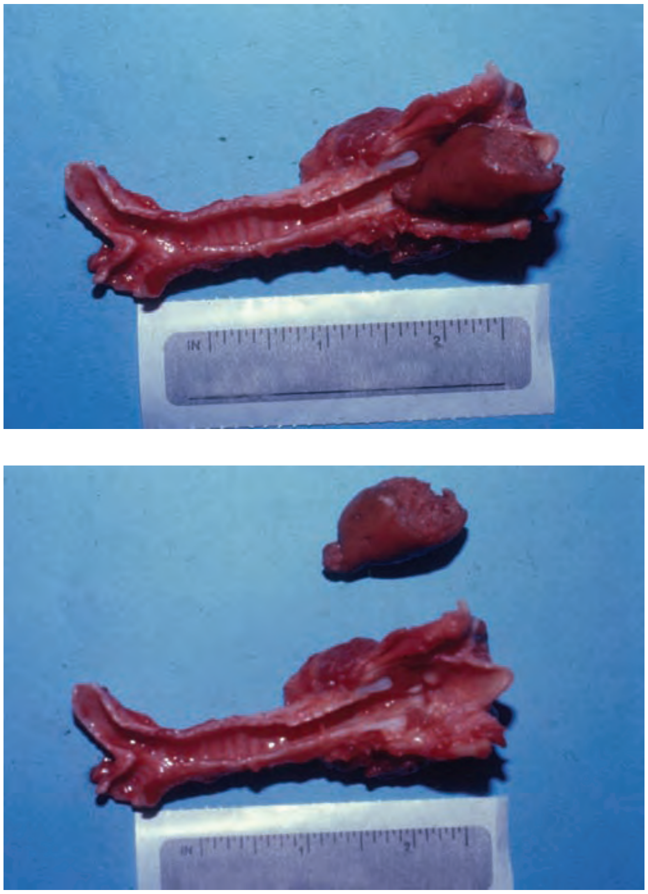


This individual was abducted, bound, and had multiple superficial stab wounds associated with a sexual assault. Her head was wrapped in multiple layers of plastic that covered her mouth and nose.

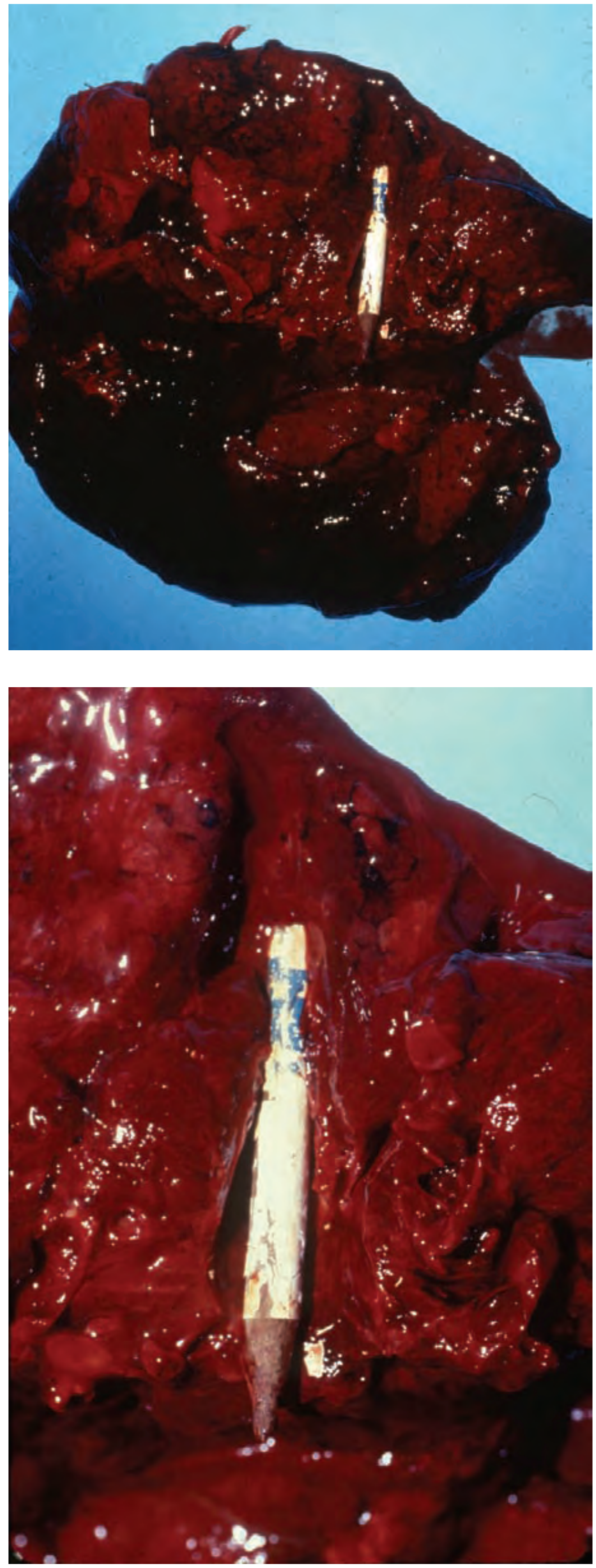
This individual committed suicide by taking multiple pills and tying a plastic bag tightly over her head. It is the author's experience that it is better to pend these cases for toxicology.

Homicidal asphyxia due to airway obstruction. This individual was found in a moderate to marked state of decomposition within her apartment. She was reportedly dealing drugs and was found tied up with a piece of cloth stuck down her mouth and throat.

Anal trauma with abrasions and lacerations due to sexual assault during strangulation. One should always assume strangulation victims have been sexually assaulted. A rape kit should always be performed in these cases.



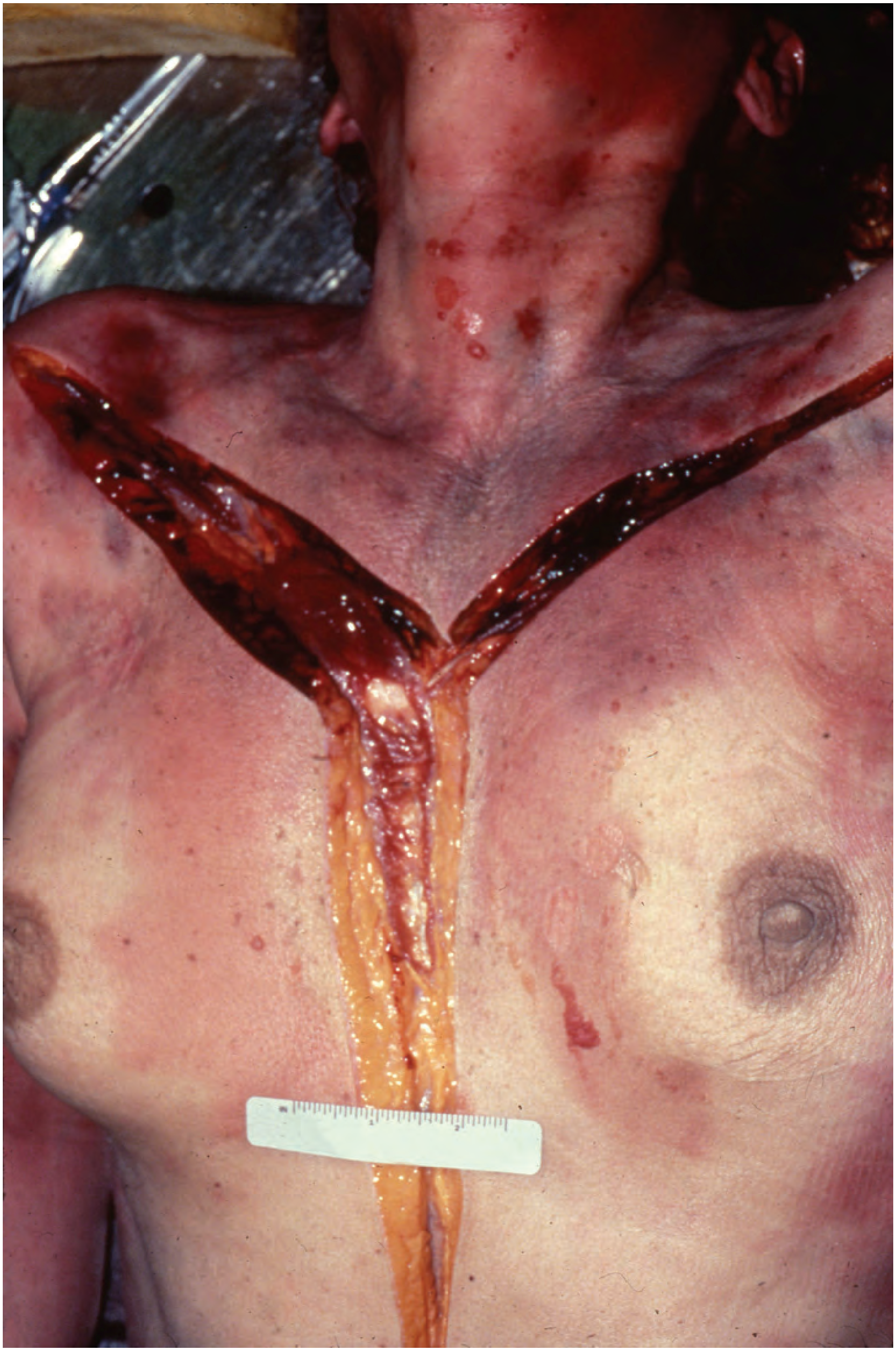
This is an airway from a 2-1/2 year-old who was fed a hot dog by her older sibling. The large size of the hot dog piece caused it to get wedged in her throat, leading to asphyxia.



This individual had a pencil in his mouth when he collapsed at work. The pencil was inhaled and wedged in the right mainstem bronchus.

This child was found to have a pebble wedged within her right mainstem bronchus, as evident on this radiograph.

These individuals were trapped in machines that caused chest compression and inability to breathe. One was stuck in a box folding machine, another trapped under a car and another stuck under a single-person elevator lift. Note the imprint of the individual's hand (d) while he was struggling to escape, with the blister formation between these finger marks. Also note the pulmonary edema demonstrated by froth coming out of the mouth (f). This individual also had numerous petechiael hemorrhages of the upper trunk, face, eyes, and visceral organs including the heart.



Homicidal asphyxia due to compression of chest and neck. Note the extensive hemorrhage at the superior chest visible at the superior aspect of the Y-shaped incision during autopsy. The lower aspect of this incision is yellow, anemic, and postmortem. This individual was punched, strangled and then the perpetrator sat on her chest during the assault.

Positional asphyxia. These individuals were markedly intoxicated and passed out in positions that prevented them from breathing, thus obstructing blood circulation.

FORENSICS & CRIMINAL JUSTICE

Color Atlas of Forensic Medicine and Pathology

New York City has the largest medical examiner's office in the United States, and the Brooklyn division is the busiest of the five boroughs. Charles A. Catanese received his Forensic Pathology fellowship training in New York, and then worked full time as a Medical Examiner in the Brooklyn office for more than 10 years. He has personally performed more than 4000 autopsies, including over 400 homicides. Dr. Catanese has worked through several disasters, including TWA Flight 800, AA Flight 587, and more than nine months on the World Trade Center fatalities. He is currently the Chief Medical Examiner of Orange County, New York. Drawing on his wealth of knowledge and experience in solving some of the most difficult cases a forensic examiner could encounter, he assembles hundreds of images from his own work experience to present the ***Color Atlas of Forensic Medicine and Pathology.***

Featuring twice the number of images as any other forensic pathology atlas, the book is filled with high-resolution photos that demonstrate postmortem changes of the human body and the different types of patterns produced in deaths caused by

- Natural causes
- Diagnostic or therapeutic procedures
- Substance abuse
- Poisoning
- Child abuse
- Firearms
- Blunt instruments
- Sharp instruments
- Burns
- Asphyxia

This easy-to-read atlas, created for medical and non-medical personnel, covers basic and advanced forensic concepts that relate to all manners of deaths. The carefully worded, unambiguous text describing each photo and the side-by-side comparisons of similar, yet different, pathologies make this remarkable atlas a powerful teaching tool for all those who must confront and solve the mystery of human demise. A fully searchable DVD version is also available.

4320X

ISBN: 978-1-4200-4320-4

90000

9 781420 043204

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
an **informa** business
www.crcpress.com

6000 Broken Sound Parkway, NW
Suite 300, Boca Raton, FL 33487
270 Madison Avenue
New York, NY 10016
2 Park Square, Milton Park
Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN, UK

www.crcpress.com

TIME OF DEATH, DECOMPOSITION AND IDENTIFICATION

AN ATLAS

CAUSES OF DEATH ATLAS SERIES

TIME OF DEATH, DECOMPOSITION AND IDENTIFICATION

AN ATLAS

JAY DIX
MICHAEL GRAHAM

CRC Press
Boca Raton London New York Washington, D.C.

FORENSIC PATHOLOGY ATLASES
CAUSES OF DEATH SERIES

Series Editor: Jay Dix

Asphyxia and Drowning: An Atlas
Jay Dix, Michael Graham and Randy Hanzlick

Investigation of Road Traffic Fatalities: An Atlas
Jay Dix, Michael Graham and Randy Hanzlick

Time of Death, Decomposition and Identification: An Atlas
Jay Dix and Michael Graham

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Dix, Jay.
Time of death, decomposition and identification: an atlas / by Jay Dix and Michael Graham.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references.
ISBN 0-8493-2367-3 (alk. paper)
1. Postmortem changes—Atlases. 2. Death—Time of—Atlases. 3. Dead—Identification—Atlases. I. Graham, Michael A. II. Title. III. Series.
[DNLM: 1. Forensic Medicine—methods—Atlases. 2. Postmortem changes—Atlases. 3. Time factors—Atlases W 617 D619t 1999]
RA1063.4.D59 1999
614′.1—dc21 99-050306
CIP

Direct all inquiries to CRC Press LLC, 2000 N.W. Corporate Blvd., Boca Raton, Florida 33431.

International Standard Book Number 0-8493-2367-3
Library of Congress Card Number 99-050306
Printed in the United States of America 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0
Printed on acid-free paper

Preface

This is the first book in the Forensic Pathology: Causes of Death Atlas Series. It is intended for death investigators, law enforcement professionals, attorneys and anyone else who may be involved in forensic death cases. This particular book deals with the determination of the time of death, postmortem changes, and identification. These topics are important in virtually every death occurring in a forensic jurisdiction. The reader will learn through photographs and discussion how estimating the time of death can rarely be accomplished with scientific accuracy. The Atlas will show the numerous changes the body undergoes after death. Examples and discussion of how positive and probable identifications are made are also included.

J.D.

Table of Contents

3 Case Examples

Time of Death (Postmortem Interval) and Decomposition

1

Time of Death

Introduction

Establishing the time of death or the interval between the time of death and when a body is found (postmortem interval) typically cannot be determined with certainty. Unless death is witnessed, the exact time of death cannot be determined; however, sufficient information is often available to allow estimation of a range of time encompassing the actual moment of death. In general, the shorter the postmortem interval, the narrower the estimated time range. Conversely, a longer postmortem interval entails a broader range estimate and often a greater chance for error. No single observation about a dead body is a reliable or accurate indicator of the postmortem interval.

The most reliable estimates are based upon a combination of numerous observations made of the body and the scene of death. Observed conditions involving the body include rigor mortis, livor mortis, algor mortis and decomposition. The stomach contents may also help in determining the time of death. In addition to examining the body, it is also important to investigate the scene of death, during which time the environmental conditions should be documented. Environmental conditions, especially the temperature, are the most important factors affecting the changes the body undergoes after death. Observations made during the scene investigation help assess the body changes and may also offer additional information useful in estimating when death occurred. The combination of scene and body examinations will give the investigator the best chance of reliably estimating when death occurred.

The body observations should be made by someone with sufficient training and experience in death investigation as soon as possible after the body is found. The body should not be unnecessarily manipulated prior to making these observations. Changes in the environment, such as opening doors and windows or turning on air conditioning, should also be minimized until the observations are made.

Rigor Mortis

The muscles of the body initially become flaccid after death. Within 1–3 hours following death, the muscles begin to become noticeably increasingly rigid and the joints immobile (freeze) due to a process known as rigor mortis (postmortem rigidity, rigor). The chemical processes causing the muscles to stiffen are not clearly understood but are similar, although not identical, to physiologic muscle contraction in that both of these processes involve calcium and ATP/ADP. Rigor mortis involves the formation of locking chemical bridges between the muscle proteins actin and myosin and does not involve muscular shortening, while physiologic muscular contraction involves shortening of muscle as the actin molecules reversibly slide over the myosin molecules.

When a body stiffens, it remains in that position until rigor passes or it is physically overcome (broken), such as when a joint is forcibly moved. Since the chemical process of rigor is irreversible, fully developed rigor will not recur in an area in which it has been broken or in an area in which it has already passed. However, if rigor is overcome prior to its full development the process will continue to completion, resulting in the apparent recurrence of rigor in that area, albeit to less than expected "full" stiffness.

All muscles of the body begin to stiffen at the same time after death. However, the stiffening becomes noticeable in the smaller muscle groups before the larger groups, giving the appearance that rigor mortis proceeds at different rates in the various muscle groups. Stiffness is usually apparent first in the jaw, then the elbows and finally the knees. A body is said to be in complete or full rigor when the jaw, elbow and knee joints are immovable. The ability to passively move a joint is dependent on the amount of muscle controlling the joint. Rigor involving a joint with a small amount of muscle such as the finger is easily overcome, while it may be difficult to move a joint such as the elbow, which is connected to relatively large muscles. As a rule, men will have stronger rigor than women since men typically have a larger muscle mass than women. Large muscles, especially in muscular individuals, may become so resistant to stretching that it may require the efforts of more than one person to move a large joint. Occasionally, the bone may break before the rigor mortis is overcome. Conversely, rigor may be poorly formed or not apparent in individuals with little muscle mass, such as infants or emaciated adults.

Complete rigor takes approximately 10–12 hours to fully develop in an average size adult when the environmental temperature is 70–75°F. The body will remain stiff for 24–36 hours at this same temperature before decomposition causes the muscles to begin to appreciably loosen, apparently in the same order they stiffened.

The problem with relying on this time sequence for rigor mortis in estimating the postmortem interval is that a number of factors influence the course of rigor mortis. Rigor mortis is affected by the environmental temperature, the internal body temperature and the decedent's activity prior to death.

Rigor mortis is most affected by the environmental temperature. Elevated temperatures will accelerate the appearance and disappearance of rigor. Rigor involving a body lying in a field will come and pass quicker on a hot summer day than on a cold winter one. The rate of development and disappearance of rigor will be affected by temperature changes experienced by the body, such as occur during the heat of day and the coolness of night.

Rigor is also affected by the decedent's internal body temperature and activity prior to death. Higher body temperatures at the time of death and conditions causing more lactic acid production cause rigor to develop more quickly. For example, a person who dies having a fever from an infection such as pneumonia may develop rigor sooner than a person with a normal body temperature. Accelerated rigor may also be seen in persons dying with hyperthermia even though the environmental temperature may be normal, such as may occur in deaths related to cocaine, PCP or methamphetamine.

The onset of rigor may also occur more quickly if strenuous physical activity takes place immediately prior to death. For example, a person who runs away from an assailant before being shot or stabbed may develop rigor sooner than if there were no intense physical activity. The accelerated rigor is due to a combination of increased body temperature and increased production of lactic acid.

Rarely, rigor mortis may become apparent within minutes of death. This "cadaveric spasm" is usually associated with extreme physical activity just prior to death. It has also been associated with some other circumstances such as electrocution.

In contrast to elevated environmental temperature, cold conditions may retard or prevent rigor mortis. The process will begin or accelerate when the body is allowed to warm. If a body is not in complete rigor and is placed in refrigeration the process will slow down and may stop. Rigor may proceed to completion when the body is warmed. The stiffness of rigor must be differentiated from muscle hardening or freezing due to very cold weather. Under such environmental conditions, rigor may be difficult to evaluate.

Rigor mortis will also aid the investigator in determining if the body has been moved. If an investigator arrives on the scene and finds an unsupported arm or leg sticking up in the air, the investigator knows the decedent has been moved after rigor has set in. A person may die with the arms or legs in the air, but gravity will prevent the unsupported extremities from remaining there after death.

Livor Mortis

Livor mortis (postmortem hypostasis, lividity) is the discoloration of the body after death due to the gravitational settling of blood which is no longer being pumped through the body by the heart.

Livor mortis is usually noticeable approximately 1 hour after death and is often apparent earlier, within 20–30 minutes. The discoloration increases in intensity and usually becomes "fixed" in about 8–10 hours; however, the time interval to fixation is unpredictable and may be significantly longer or, occasionally, shorter than the "typical" 8–10 hours. Prior to fixation, the body can be moved many times and the blood will resettle each time into the dependent areas. However, after fixation, the blood will remain where it has already settled even if the body is repositioned. Fixation is a progressive process that is not all or nothing. Thus, if a body with some fixed livor is moved, there may be some blood that is not fixed and which is able to resettle. In such a case, discoloration will be seen in the repositioned dependent areas as well as in the original dependent areas. The intensity of the livor in each area will depend on the extent of fixation when the body was moved. Patterns of livor mortis in non-dependent areas indicate the body or body part has been moved after death. Individuals dying of some natural diseases, often involving terminal congestive heart failure, may have intense congestion of the head, neck, shoulders and upper chest, resulting in discoloration of these areas that appears to be similar to livor mortis except that it is not confined to dependent areas. Similar discoloration may also be seen in some cases of mechanical asphyxia. Discoloration due to blood congesting vessels that is not related to gravitational settling needs to be differentiated from livor mortis. Rarely, "lividity" has been observed in living people who have severe cardiovascular disturbances such as congestive heart failure.

The formation of livor may be hindered or prevented by pressure applied to the body's surface because the small blood vessels become compressed and blood is prevented from settling into them. For example, if a body is lying on its back, pale areas will typically be found over the scapulae, buttocks and calves. In addition, any object pressing against the skin with sufficient pressure to compress small blood vessels will be prevent blood from draining into them. Pale marks within zones of livor mortis may be caused by tight clothing (bra, underpants, belts), surface irregularities (wrinkled clothing or

bedding) or objects abutting the surface (coins in a pocket, marble on the floor). These patterns enable the investigator to judge if the body has been moved and to help in reconstructing the body's previous position.

Lividity tends to be violaceous or purple in a light-skinned individual and darker in someone with darker skin. Livor may not be apparent in a darkly pigmented person. People who die from extensive blood loss or who were severely anemic may have light or no apparent livor due to the small amount of blood or hemoglobin in their vascular system.

In certain causes of death, livor mortis may take on a different color. Carbon monoxide poisoning, cyanide poisoning and hypothermia are often associated with livor mortis that appears bright red or pink. Similar coloration of the livor may be induced during refrigeration of the body. It is common to see red edges outlining the typical purple livor mortis at the time of autopsy in a body that has been in the morgue's refrigerator overnight. Occasionally, most often in infants, the livor may be entirely red after the body has been in the morgue cooler overnight. Brown lividity has been described in deaths caused by potassium chlorate and in deaths caused by nitrobenzene poisoning.

Livor mortis will be visible until the body becomes discolored during decomposition. Color changes due to decomposition vary and include combinations of red, green, brown and black. The decomposition-induced changes will obscure the livor pattern and interfere with its interpretation. The examiner may not be able to determine whether the livor mortis is on the back or the front of the body if decomposition is sufficiently advanced.

In some cases, it may be difficult to distinguish livor mortis from contusion. In other cases, livor mortis may obscure the presence of contusion. An incision into an area of lividity will demonstrate blood confined to blood vessels, whereas an area of contusion will have extravasated blood within the soft tissues. Decomposition may add further difficulty in recognizing contusions and distinguishing them from livor mortis.

Occasionally, small blood vessels engorged with settled blood may passively rupture, allowing the blood to seep out of the vessel and create small areas of "hemorrhage." These extravasations, called Tardieu spots, are particularly common in distal extremities of hanging victims and generally measure less than 3/16″ in diameter. They can also be present in any part of the body which is in a dependent position for many hours, especially just prior to the onset of decomposition as the blood vessels lose their structural integrity and leak. They should not be mistaken for the smaller pinpoint hemorrhages called petechiae. Petechiae may occur when death is accompanied by a sudden increase in venous pressure such as the terminal onset of profound heart failure or in asphyxial deaths involving compression of the chest or jugular veins as may occur in compression asphyxia or manual

strangulation. Petechiae are often seen on the face, especially on and around the eyes. If a person lies face down and is in this position for many hours or days, blood may accumulate in the small blood vessels of the eyes and orbit, resulting in a hemorrhagic or bloody appearance ("raccoon" eyes) that may falsely suggest the presence of trauma. The red/brown drying artifact of the conjunctivae (tache noire de sclerotic) which occurs when the eyes are partially open after death also should not be confused with livor mortis.

Algor Mortis (Body Cooling)

After death, the body equilibrates with the surrounding environmental temperature. Although this usually involves algor mortis (cooling of the body), in some cases, such as a body laying on a sidewalk in direct sunlight, the body may absorb heat. However, in most cases, the body will progressively lose temperature until it equilibrates with its environment. Many studies have examined this progressive decrease in body temperature to attempt to develop formulae which could be used to calculate the postmortem interval. Unfortunately, a number of variables affect postmortem cooling which precludes its use as an accurate method of predicting the postmortem interval. However, measuring body temperature may be useful in estimating the postmortem interval when considered in conjunction with other postmortem observations and when its limitations are recognized. In general, evaluating a decrease in body temperature is most helpful within the first 10–12 hours after death when the body is in a cool environment (70–75°F). During this time, assuming a normal antemortem temperature and a 70–75°F environment, the average size body cools at approximately 1 1/2°F per hour. However, the rate of cooling is affected by several variables and is not necessarily uniform. The rates of cooling at the ends of the curve are slower than the rates in the midportion. The body may not appreciably lose temperature in the initial hours after death and may, in fact, have an initial slight rise in temperature. Bodies with more insulation (fat, clothing) cool more slowly and those with less insulation cool more rapidly. Other problems in calculating the postmortem temperature using the rate of cooling include errors in assuming the initial internal temperature was 98.6°F and the environmental temperature was a constant 70–75°F. Errors in calculation would result if the antemortem body temperature was elevated due to infection, drug toxicity or physical exertion. Furthermore, the outside temperature is rarely a constant 70–75°F. Significant deviations from this environmental temperature may affect the shape and slope of the cooling curve. Elevated environmental temperatures may retard cooling (and, as noted above, may actually cause the body to absorb heat) and a cold environment may hasten it.

As the body gets cold, the fat in the soft tissues under the skin solidifies and will assume the shape of anything it rests against, causing unusual shapes

and distortions of the skin. Outlines of other body parts (such as hands) and items such as tree bark or sticks are common. The folds of skin around the neck may simulate a ligature mark.

If the body is in a very cold environment, it may freeze. Freezing severely limits an estimation of the postmortem interval except to say that the body has been dead long enough to freeze. Once the body begins to thaw, decomposition progresses rapidly. The rapidity of the changes may be impressive and may sometimes be seen in the short time between the onset and the end of the autopsy.

If the body temperature is going to be used to help estimate the postmortem interval, the body temperature should be taken as soon as possible after the body is discovered and the environmental temperature should be maintained and also measured. The temperature should ideally be taken at least twice, with a period of approximately 1 hour between the measurements to better define the actual rate of cooling (at least in that time). Liver and, less commonly, rectal temperatures are the most commonly used measurements of body core temperature. Oral or axillary temperature measurements are not valid. For the reasons previously noted, an estimate of the postmortem interval based solely on cooling of the body is, at best, a crude estimate.

It must be remembered that the environmental temperature measured at the time the body temperature is measured may not be indicative of the environmental conditions the body has been exposed to during a significant portion of the postmortem interval. A body lying outside may be subjected to wide variations in the environmental temperature. A body in a building may also be subject to some variations in temperature, such as may be due to changing sun exposure or a programmable thermostat. Changes in environmental conditions may also be brought about by investigators at the death scene who may open doors and windows, turn on air conditioning, etc.

Gastric Contents

The total volume and a description of food, liquid or other material present in the stomach should be recorded at autopsy. This information is helpful not only for identifying the composition of the decedent's last meal, but also for estimating the time of the last meal. For example, if a body is discovered in the evening and only breakfast-type food is present in the stomach, this finding would suggest that death occurred in the morning. In addition, gastric emptying time can be useful if taken in context with other information. In general, a light meal may take only a couple of hours to pass through the stomach into the small intestine while a heavy meal might take up to 6 hours. Some foods such as celery, onion, potato, corn and tomato skins typically take longer than meat or other foods to exit the stomach. Thus, if the time of the last meal is known, the state of gastric emptying may suggest

when death occurred in relation to the ingestion of the last meal. However, the rate of digestion and gastric emptying is affected by the mental and physical state of the victim prior to death. A person under mental or physical duress may have either a slower or quicker than normal gastric emptying time. It is not uncommon to examine the stomach contents of persons who have died after being in the hospital in a coma for several days due to a head injury, only to find that the stomach is full of nearly undigested food which was ingested prior to sustaining the head injury. Identification of the gastric contents also may allow investigators to identify when and where the victim last ate. For example, undigested pasta with a certain distinct sauce may be traced to a particular restaurant where the decedent was seen to eat at a particular time (and with a particular person).

Chemical Analyses

Various components of blood, cerebrospinal fluid and vitreous humor have been studied as a means to determine time of death. Unfortunately, none of these studies have yielded conclusive means to identify when someone died. The concentration and rate of rise of potassium in the vitreous fluid have received the most attention over the years. Its use is limited because of wide individual variation.

Microscopic Analyses

The body undergoes changes at the cellular level long before any changes can be seen with the unaided eye. Cells begin to die and enzymes may begin to digest the tissues at and around their sites of origin. Death and disintegration of cells and tissues becomes apparent microscopically. This process, called autolysis, only occurs after death. This process is different than the process of necrosis which is the death of cells and tissues that occurs when the individual is still alive. Autolysis occurs at different rates in different tissues. Tissues rich in digestive enzymes are most readily subject to autolytic changes.

Autolysis is readily seen with the microscope and may be apparent grossly. The cellular architecture appears to fade away or, in the case of tissues rich in digestive enzymes, dissolve. However, the ghosts of many of the cellular elements and their borders remain discernible into the decomposition process. There is no reaction by the body's immune or inflammatory system. If there is little or no autolysis then the postmortem interval was short or the person died under circumstances that would inhibit autolysis, such as death in a cold environment.

If cells are injured or die while a person is alive, there will be an inflammatory response to the injury if the person survives long enough. The type of response is somewhat dependent on the type of injury and the type of

tissue that is injured. The presence or absence of an inflammatory reaction may suggest the interval between the injury and death. Inflammatory responses occur at different rates in various tissues and are influenced by a number of factors including age, state of health and medications. An injury lacking an inflammatory response suggests it occurred in close proximity to the time of death.

The nature and extent of an inflammatory response may help determine the interval between the onset of the injury and the time of death. An illustrative example is a child who dies from an abdominal infection (peritonitis) caused by a ruptured intestine due to a blow to the abdomen. The inflammation around the bowel injury contains acute inflammation, but also chronic inflammatory cells and cells that produce scar tissue (fibroblasts) as well as a large amount of breakdown products of blood (hemosiderin). This appearance would indicate the injury had been received several days prior to death.

Scene Investigation

Besides the above changes involving the body, other information from the scene may help in determining the time of death. Some of this information involves the body and other details do not.

Insects attracted to the body (or to other insects already on the body) can be collected and saved for evaluation by an entomologist. An entomologist will be able to identify the various types of insects as well as their stages of development. Since each developmental stage lasts for a reasonably predictable time, the entomologist can calculate how long the various insects have been on the body. If live larvae and pupae are available, the entomologist can let them develop in the laboratory to more accurately define the length of their developmental stages under prescribed conditions. Potential effects of differences between laboratory conditions and the conditions the body was exposed to in the environment on the development of the insects must be taken into account when estimating the postmortem interval. The time frame developed by the entomologist represents the minimum time the body has been dead because a body may have been dead for some period of time prior to insect infestation. The entomologist is also able to determine what insects are active at particular times of the year and how long it typically takes for particular insects to invade the body. The entomologist also may be helpful in establishing if a body has been moved and, potentially, where it originated by identifying insects on the body that are not part of the local population and by identifying insects restricted to specific locales.

Experts in plant biology may be helpful in determining the postmortem interval. They may also be helpful in determining if the body has been moved and where it originated. The postmortem interval estimation provided by the botanist is usually in terms of months, years or seasons. They analyze

plant specimens recovered from the clothing, crime scene or body location. Plant material, including leaves, twigs and roots can be analyzed as to origin, time of year of presence and development. Pollen, fungi and algae may also be found and analyzed. The identification of the nature of plant material within digested gastric material may offer clues to the contents of the decedent's last meal.

Information from a scene not associated with the body may also be useful in estimating the time of death. For example, clues from a house or apartment may shed light on when death occurred — when were the mail and newspaper last picked up? Were the lights or television on? What food, if any, was being prepared? Was a major appliance on? Was there any indication as to activities an individual was performing, had completed or was contemplating? How was the person dressed? When was the computer last accessed?

Decomposition

The environment is a major determinant of the type of decomposition the body undergoes and the rate at which it proceeds. Bodies that are buried in earth, submerged in water, left in the hot sun or placed in a cool basement will not look the same after the same postmortem interval.

In general, as rigor passes, green discoloration of the skin becomes evident. The green discoloration typically begins on the abdomen and then spreads to the rest of the body. At room temperature, the right lower abdomen turns green at about 24 hours after death and the entire abdomen is green by 36 hours. As with other postmortem changes, the onset and progression of the green discoloration is quite variable. The spread of the green discoloration is not uniform. Some areas do not turn green because of the body's position, clothing or other factors. Some bodies will have red and/or black discoloration and may lack green discoloration. As discoloration progresses, the body will begin to swell due to the production of gas by bacteria. These bacteria are normal inhabitants of the large intestine (colon). After the person dies, the bacteria gain access to the vascular system through which they spread throughout the body where they proliferate. This bacterial overgrowth is promoted in warm weather and retarded in cold conditions. The bacteria that make the gases (methane and others) do not represent a hazard to the death investigator or pathologist.

Generally, as the body begins to bloat, the blood begins to break down (hemolyze) within the blood vessels and the outer layers of the skin (epidermis) begin to slip off the body. The hair will also loosen and slip off with the skin. Skin which slips off the hands and fingers will contain the decedent's fingerprints. This skin should be retained for printing if the decedent's identity is in question. Since the fingerprint pattern is actually based in the dermis

which remains on the body, the fingers from which the outer layers of the skin are absent can be printed. Obtaining adequate prints from decomposing tissue is often technically difficult but a variety of specialized techniques have been developed to optimize this procedure. As bloating continues, fluid may build up under the slipping skin, causing blisters to form. These fluid-filled blisters should not be confused with antemortem burns.

During the stages of bloating and skin slippage, blood within the blood vessels begins to degenerate and will stain the walls of the blood vessels. The degenerated blood will react with hydrogen sulfide made by bacteria and result in black staining of the blood vessels. The blood vessels that are close to the surface become visible as a reticulated pattern called "marbling."

Also during the bloating stage, bloody fluid may exude from the body's orifices, especially the nose and mouth. Gas pressure forces decomposed blood out of the lungs and airways, a phenomenon called "purging." Fluid emanating from the nose and mouth should not be mistaken as a sign of trauma. On occasion, a marked amount of fluid will be purged and extensively stain the material, such as bedding or carpet, on which the decedent is lying. Increased pressure within body cavities and soft tissues may also cause the skin to tear. This most commonly occurs in areas of previous surgical incisions.

The body's tissues and organs soften during decomposition, eventually to degenerate into a mass of unrecognizable tissue. Continued decomposition may lead to liquefaction of the tissues. At this stage, the brain will pour from the cranial cavity as an amorphous mass when the skull cap is removed during autopsy. Large accumulations of blood and skull fractures may be evident, but other subtler abnormalities will not be discerned. Examination of the other internal organs for diseases or injuries will also be problematic at this stage. The internal organs may be ingested by insects and other animals that have invaded the body.

Following the phases of "wet decomposition" the surface tissues will dry, collapse and darken to assume a leathery texture. Residual organs and tissues will also dessicate and shrink. Depending on the environment and the length of time since death, the body may eventually progress to skeletonization. The time for this to occur is extremely variable. For example, a body exposed to a 100°F environmental temperature with high humidity may completely decompose to a skeleton within a few weeks. In contrast, a body exposed to a 65°F environment may not skeletonize for months or years. Also, if a person dies in arid conditions, the body may mummify and complete skeletonization may not occur. Insect and animal activity may facilitate skeletonization.

Decomposition is associated with a myriad of odors, most of them unpleasant. The smell emanating from a decomposing body is not easy to describe. However, anyone who has smelled a dead animal along the side of the road readily recognizes the source of the smell. The body is most odiferous

during the wet stages of decomposition when gas and putrefactive amine production is highest. Bodies undergoing decomposition in water during the summer months may be particularly odiferous, especially after being out of the water for several hours. In general, the smell tends to dissipate as less and less soft tissue remains on the body. Mummifed and partially skeletonized remains tend to have a more musty odor. Completely skeletonized remains may be essentially odor free.

As noted above, the environment in which a body lies is critical to the rate at which it will decompose. In general, a body decomposing above ground for a week may look similar to a body that has been under water for 2 weeks or one that has been buried in the ground for 6–8 weeks. This is a generalization and should only serve as a reminder that an uncovered body decomposes more rapidly than one that is covered or shielded.

The rate of decomposition in buried bodies is extremely variable. The climate and soil conditions play a part in how quickly decomposition will occur. The type of decomposition may also be different under various conditions. It is not uncommon for two bodies buried under different circumstances for the same length of time to appear markedly different. This also holds true for bodies that have undergone embalming prior to burial. Well-embalmed bodies in airtight caskets and vaults may remain in relatively good condition for years. However, bodies buried in caskets that fill with water may decompose within weeks.

Decomposition is not necessarily a uniform process and may be quite asymmetric. For example, decomposition will occur more rapidly in areas of injuries. If a person is struck on the head and the scalp is torn in that area, decomposition may be much more advanced on the head than the remainder of the body. Flies preferentially lay eggs in moist areas of the body such as eyes, nose, mouth, injured sites, anogenital orifices and body creases (e.g., axillae). Larvae are attracted to injured areas where they feed on exposed blood proteins and cause accelerated decomposition. Asymmetric decomposition may result in skeletonization restricted to one part of the body. For example, a decedent who was kneeling with his face on the ground had decomposition to the bone involving the side of the face touching the ground while the other side of the face was only discolored. The body had been in the woods for 2 weeks during cool temperatures.

After a body is discovered, it is usually refrigerated until a postmortem examination is performed or until final disposition. Decomposition will usually slow down or cease if a body is refrigerated. When re-exposed to room temperature the rate of decomposition will be accelerated because bacteria which have already disseminated will proliferate. Recognition of this accelerated decomposition is particularly important when a person dies in a cold environment and is moved to a warmer one. Accelerated decomposition is also commonly seen in corpses that have been submerged in bodies of water for prolonged periods.

A word of caution — the body at the scene may appear quite different than it does at the time of the autopsy. This may not present a significant problem if the same jurisdiction performs the investigation and the postmortem examination. However, if the investigating agency and the pathologist are not in the same jurisdiction, problems in interpretation may arise. A body with minimal decomposition evident at the scene may be markedly more decomposed when viewed by the pathologist the next day or later after discovery. It is a good idea in such cases to have photographs of the body at the scene available for evaluation by the pathologist.

Under certain environmental conditions, decomposition may feature the formation of adipocere or mummification.

Adipocere

Adipocere is a term derived from Latin which literally means "fat" (adipo) "wax" (cera). It refers to a hard gray-white waxy substance formed during decomposition. It is an uncommon change, occurring particularly in bodies buried for an extended period of time in cool, moist environments and is most commonly seen after bodies have been submerged in water during the winter months. Not all bodies having adipocere are found in water. For example, bodies found in plastic bags which provide a moist environment may also undergo this change.

The formation of this substance requires fat. The fatty tissue beneath the skin begins to saponify (turn into soap). Generally, women and children form adipocere more readily because they have a higher fat content. The hardening usually takes a few months to fully develop but rarely can be fully developed within 4 weeks. It develops more completely in submerged bodies. Once fully developed, this process will keep the remainder of the body relatively well-preserved for months or years. The exterior of the body remains white and the outermost layers of the skin slip off. There may be "goose bumps" due to fixation of the arrector pili muscles of the hair shafts. Unlike the usual decompositional process, there may be no green discoloration or significant bloating since the cold temperatures inhibit the bacteria which normally proliferate and form gas.

Adipocere initially forms on the dependent parts of the body. For bodies totally submerged in water, adipocere will usually be distributed quite evenly over all body surfaces. Occasionally, there may be differential formation between those parts of the body that are clothed and those parts unclothed. Differential formation may also occur in areas of injury.

Mummification

Mummification occurs in hot dry environments where the body is able to dehydrate and bacterial proliferation is minimal. The skin becomes dark, dry and leathery. The internal organs desiccate and shrink. Most mummification

occurs in the summer months but may also occur during the winter if the temperature is warm enough. An entire body can mummify in a few days to weeks. As the skin dries and hardens, the soft tissues decompose. After a few weeks, an entire body may appear preserved with some shrinkage due to dehydration. If, however, an incision is made through the skin, soft tissues, fat and internal organs may be virtually absent with the body resembling a "bag of bones." Once the body is in this state, it may remain preserved for many years unless the skin is torn or broken. Mummification localized to certain parts of the body is relatively common. Mummification of the fingers and toes occurs readily in relatively dry environments regardless of temperature.

Anthropophagia

Insects and other animals will feed on the body after death, if it is accessible. This is common both indoors and outdoors. Roaches and ants may cause yellow/brown erosions of the skin that may resemble abrasions and confuse examiners. Ant and roach bites on the skin of children dying of SIDS have been misconstrued as evidence of abuse. Insects and their larvae play a major role in the defleshing of a body during decomposition.

Larger animals, including household pets, will also feed on a dead body. Pet cats and dogs will chew on their dead owners if left alone and hungry. Rodents, raccoons, possums and other feral animals may also cause considerable damage to the body. Most of these postmortem injuries are readily recognized by either the pathologist or the consulting anthropologist. Rarely does an animal consume an entire body. However, animals may spread parts of the remains over a wide area.

Figure 1.1 This man was found in this position the day after he died. His body was completely stiff. This stiffness (rigor mortis) begins in all muscles 1–2 hours after death when the environmental temperature is approximately 75°F. The body will be in complete rigor in 10–12 hours and remain stiff for another 24–36 hours at the same environmental temperature. Heat speeds up the process and cold retards it. See next photo.

Figure 1.2 The man's knee remains bent after he is moved because the rigor mortis is still in a fixed position. If discovered in this position, the examiner would know the body had been moved.

Figure 1.3 Law enforcement first saw this man in bed with his arms "fixed" and suspended above his head. This proves he was in a different position prior to examination by law investigators.

Figure 1.4 Livor mortis. Blood settles with gravity after a person dies. The blood becomes fixed in the dependent position in approximately 8–10 hours. Prior to fixation, the blood will redistribute to the new dependent location if the body is moved. The normal color of livor mortis (lividity) is purple. The cold, cyanide, and carbon monoxide can cause red lividity.

Figure 1.5 Lividity and congestion (buildup of blood) in the head, neck, and upper chest can give this splotchy pattern. This pattern is not indicative of a particular disease or traumatic entity.

Figure 1.6 This man was discovered dead in bed. The pattern of livor mortis suggests the man had been moved after the livor mortis had fixed. See next photo.

Figure 1.7 The pattern of bedding on the leg suggests the decedent was lying on the bed after death.

Figure 1.8 The lividity pattern is consistent with the man being on his face in the bed. Fluid stains (arrow) on the bed also show he had been moved.

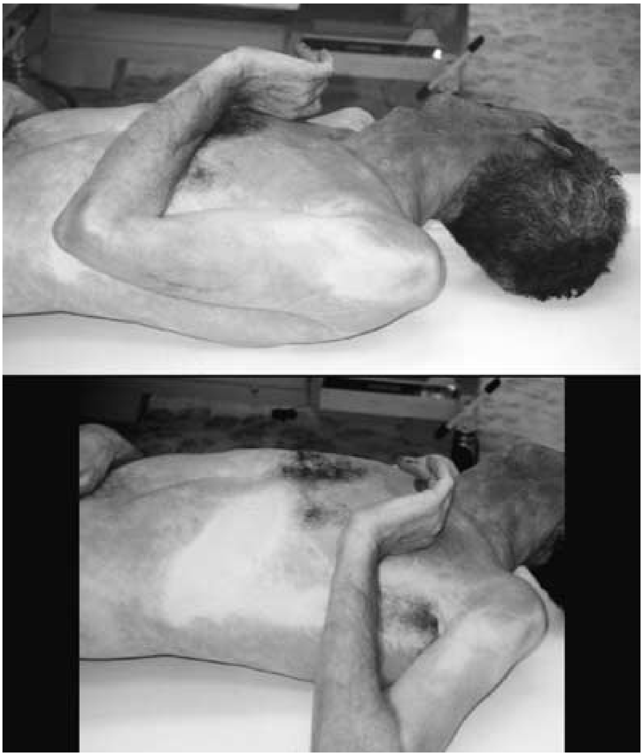


Figure 1.9 This man's arm was in complete rigor against his body. When the arm is moved, the absence of lividity is apparent where the arm was in contact with the skin.

Figure 1.10 The livor mortis outlines the decedent's hand. This pattern will not go away since the lividity is fixed.

Figure 1.11 The pale mark on this man's forehead indicates he was resting on his head after death.

Figure 1.12 This man died after a brain hemorrhage. See next photo.

Figure 1.13 The anterior lividity with the pale areas is outlined in blood.

Figure 1.14 Occasionally, livor mortis may appear as an unusual pattern or look like an injury. This man was discovered at the bottom of some stairs. The pathologist can cut into the area to differentiate between livor mortis and injury. See next photo.

Figure 1.15 An incision into the area reveals only the yellow fat and no blood. This indicates the area is lividity and not an injury.

Figure 1.16 The pale mark on the left side of the face indicates that side of the face was against the floor.

Figure 1.17 This woman was face down on the floor. She has insignificant abrasions from striking the floor after her sudden collapse. See next photo.

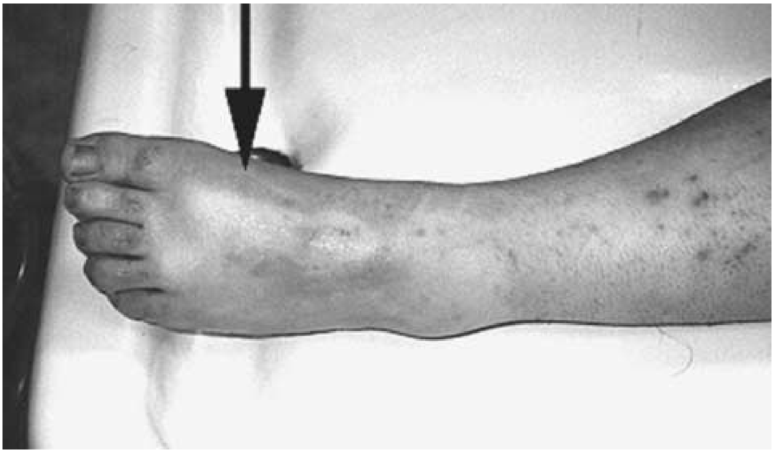


Figure 1.18 The paleness on the top of her foot also reveals she was face down on the floor.

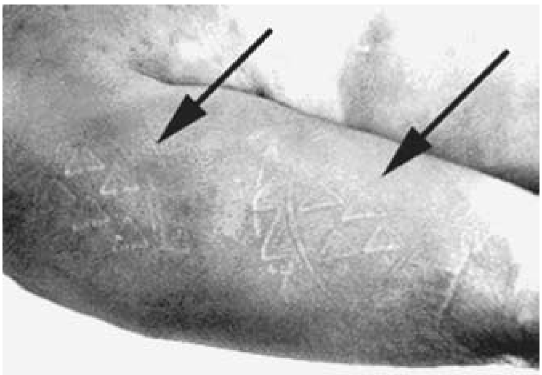


Figure 1.19 The arrows point to a shoe pattern on the decedent's arm. There were pale impressions and not bruises or scrapes. This indicates the person was lying against the shoes after death and not before.

Figure 1.20 One of the first signs of decomposition is green discoloration of the skin, especially in the abdomen. Decompositional changes may appear within a few hours if the environmental temperature is high.

Figure 1.21 Slight bloating from beginning decomposition.

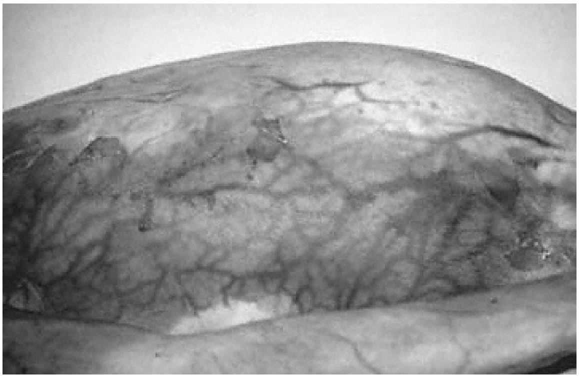


Figure 1.22 As decomposition progresses, the body swells (bloats) from bacterial gas formation and there is skin slippage and subcutaneous marbling (the outlines of the blood vessels under the skin).

Figure 1.23 Drying artifacts of the nose and mouth. This should not be considered suspicious.

Figure 1.24 Internal pressure occurs on the internal organs when gas develops. Pressure pushes bloody fluid out the nose and mouth (purging). This should not be confused with trauma to the nose and mouth.

Figure 1.25 Another example of purging in beginning decomposition.

Figure 1.26 Marked bloating and skin discoloration after a couple of days in a warm house.

Figure 1.27 This lady was discovered dead near her garden, approximately 12 hours after she was last seen during July. See next photo.

Figure 1.28 Fluid-filled blister (arrow) of decomposition.

Figure 1.29 This woman is decomposing while she is still in rigor. The presence of rigor is more important than the decomposition in estimating the postmortem interval. See next photo.

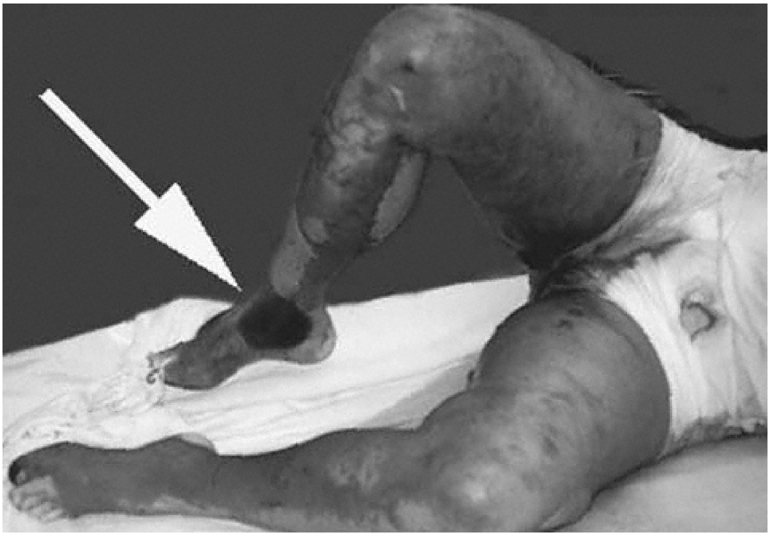


Figure 1.30 She also has fluid-filled blisters that should not be confused with thermal injuries.

Figure 1.31 Marked skin slippage with slight to moderate decomposition.

Figure 1.32 Bodies may not swell much when they are in hot and dry climates. The skin slippage may also be dry. See next photo.

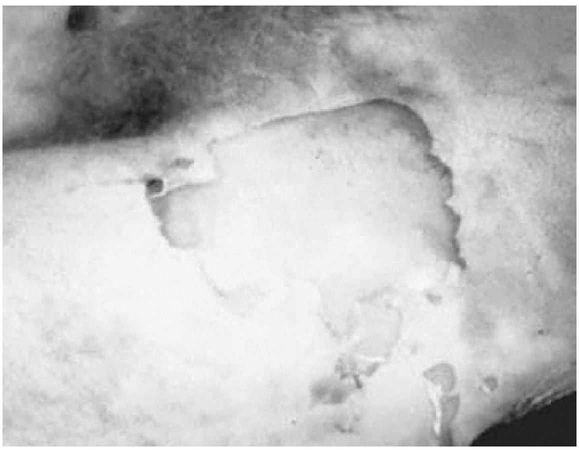


Figure 1.33 The skin slippage on the man's hip is dry, not wet and slippery as is usually seen.

Figure 1.34 This man was 21, thin, and white. He was discovered in a river 4–5 days after he was killed in the summertime. Decomposition can cause the facial features to change and the hair to slip off. Visual identification may be difficult when such changes occur.

Figure 1.35 The facial features begin to change as swelling occurs during decomposition.

Figure 1.36 Marked decomposition of face and abundant maggots. The rest of the body was only slightly decomposed. He was face down on the ground. Maggots accumulate more in areas where there are injuries.

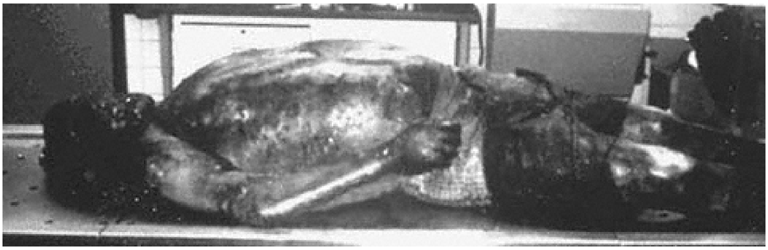


Figure 1.37 This 22-year-old white man was found in the woods on a hot summer day five days after he died. The body is markedly swollen and discolored. Initially, he was mistaken for an African-American man.

Figure 1.38 Three weeks in the winter under a brush pile caused this man's decompositional changes. The head area is more decomposed than the rest of the body because he had been shot multiple times there.

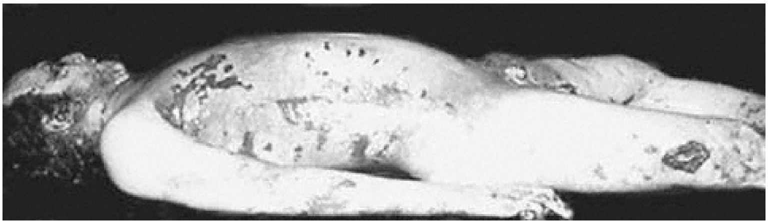


Figure 1.39 Except for a few injuries, this man's body is in relatively good shape. He was identified visually. He had been in the water for at least three weeks during February.

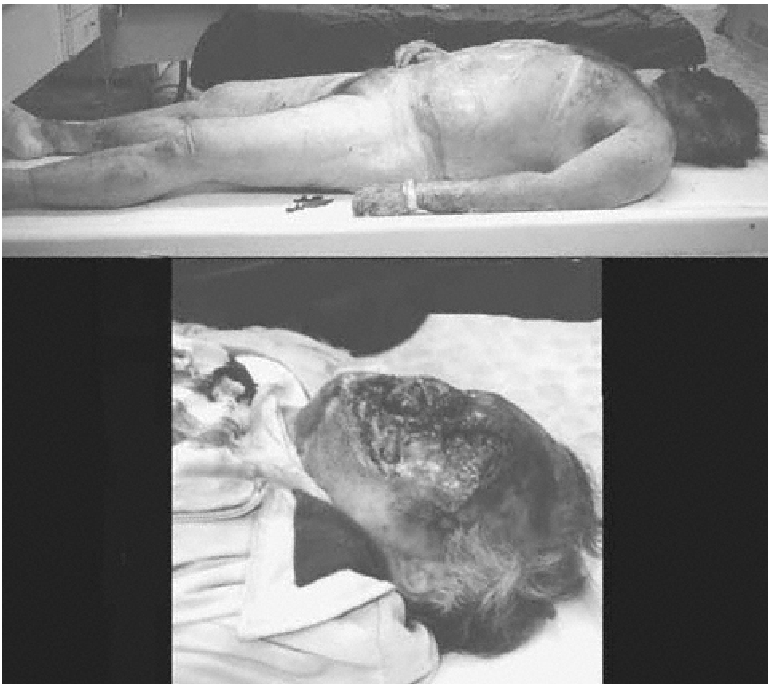


Figure 1.40 More decompositional changes of the face, because he was face down (similar to 1.36).

Figure 1.41 This is another example of asymmetrical decomposition. The exposed head is much more decomposed than the rest of the body within the sleeping bag. Covered areas prevent decompositional changes from occurring as quickly as exposed parts of the body.

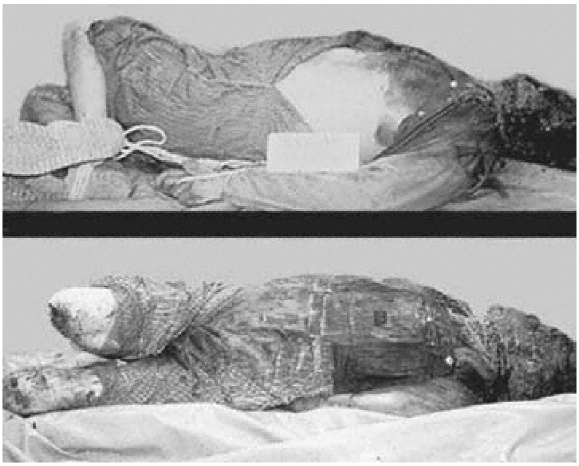


Figure 1.42 This man was found on the side of the road two days after he was strangled and beaten in the head. He was also covered with a blanket. See next photo.

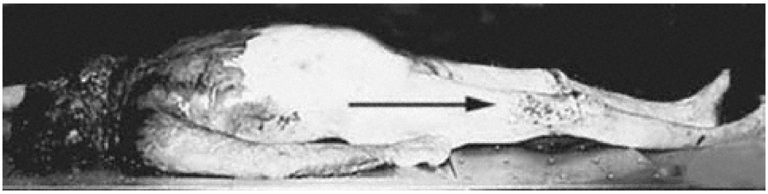


Figure 1.43 His body was much more decomposed in the head region where he was injured and less where he was clothed and covered with the blanket. This asymmetrical decomposition is commonly seen when insects and flies are attracted to the blood in the injured areas. Estimating time of death must be done with the least decomposed areas. The arrow points to postmortem insect activity (anthropophagia).

Figure 1.44 This boy was one of four family members who drowned after his father drove their car off the road and turned upside down in a river. They were found two days later. See next photo.

Figure 1.45 Because he was belted in upside down in the car, the upper part of his body is more decomposed than the lower part. See next photo.

Figure 1.46 His younger brother was wearing a life jacket and was also belted in the seat. See next photo.

Figure 1.47 The difference between his upper and lower parts are not as distinct as his brother. See next photo.

Figure 1.48 Their mother was decomposed similarly to the boys, however, she also had facial cuts from glass. See next photo.

Figure 1.49 She also had a laceration of the forehead.

Figure 1.50 Organs begin to soften as decomposition occurs. This brain is only slightly decomposed. Eventually, decomposition will cause the brain to flow out of the skull in an amorphous mass.

Figure 1.51 The next series of photos are of a man shot in the back of the head and buried. He was discovered six months after burial. See next photo.

Figure 1.52 Much of the surrounding dirt accompanied the body. The blanket wrapping the body was carefully removed. The remains and the dirt had already been X-rayed. No bullets were discovered.

Figure 1.53 The next of kin identified the T-shirt. It had the distinctive phrase "Kiss my Grits." See next photo.

Figure 1.54 The skeleton was complete except for the head. Many of the facial fragments were lost at the time of the shooting. The man was wearing red shoes, shorts, and a shirt, which were used in the identification. See next photo.

Figure 1.55 There was no soft tissue remaining. A dentist was asked to look through all of the bone fragments of the face and head in order to find some teeth for identification. He was unsuccessful. See next photo.

x

Figure 1.56 The bones of the feet were still in the red sport shoes.

Figure 1.57 Mummification. The skin dries out and turns leathery. This man's head mummified within two days because his head was next to a heater. His head will not decomposed further due to the mummification. See next photo.

Figure 1.58 His hands had also mummified.

Figure 1.59 These remains were completely mummified in approximately six weeks during the summer months.

Figure 1.60 Adipocere. A clothed body wrapped in a U-Haul blanket was discovered at the edge of a lake. See next photo.

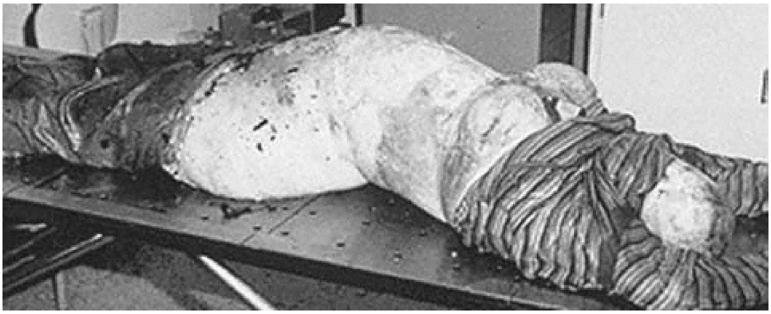


Figure 1.61 The body was still white and originally thought by law enforcement to not be very decomposed. They thought the body had been in the water about a week. See next photo.

Figure 1.62 Even though she had been in the cold water for over ten months, the sheriff visually identified her. See next photo.

Figure 1.63 Upon closer examination, the skin appeared to be thickened with the superficial layers of the skin missing. This change is called adipocere. The soft tissue turns into a soap-like substance (saponification). This occurs in cold wet conditions. Once the change occurs, it will remain for years. See next photo.

Figure 1.64 She was also identified by numerous tattoos. See next photo.

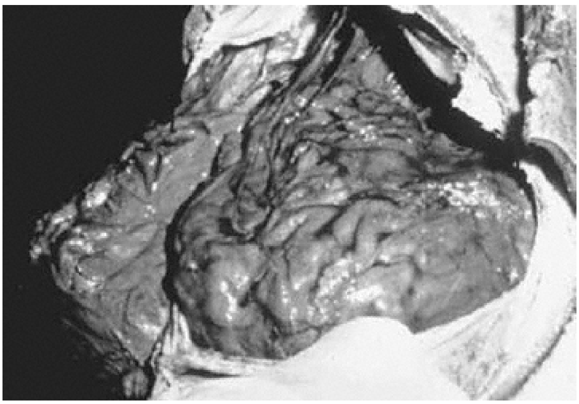


Figure 1.65 The internal organs were in remarkably good condition given the time in the water. This photograph of the brain shows that it was still in good enough condition to be examined for evidence of trauma.

Figure 1.66 This case is another example of adipocere. The body was buried for more than two years in a casket filled with water. See next photo.

Figure 1.67 The remains are much less preserved than in the previous case. An examination could be made; however, the results were not as good as hoped.

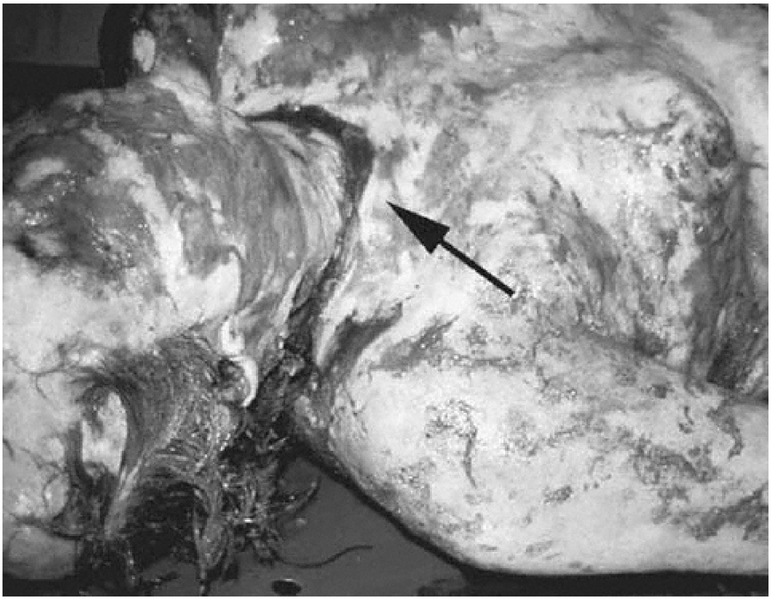


Figure 1.68a This woman was in cold water for approximately three months. Adipocere was only beginning. Adipocere change usually takes months before it is well developed. The mark on the neck is from a cable (tied to a concrete block) which aided in sinking the body.

Figure 1.68b This woman floated over 100 miles down the Missouri River. She had been missing for over two months. Her body was in the beginning stages of adipocere formation.

Figure 1.69 This man had been embalmed and buried for over three years. See next photo.

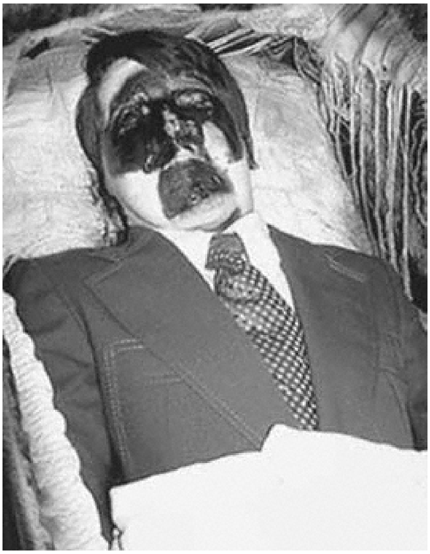


Figure 1.70 Aside from the mold, the body was well preserved. See next photo.

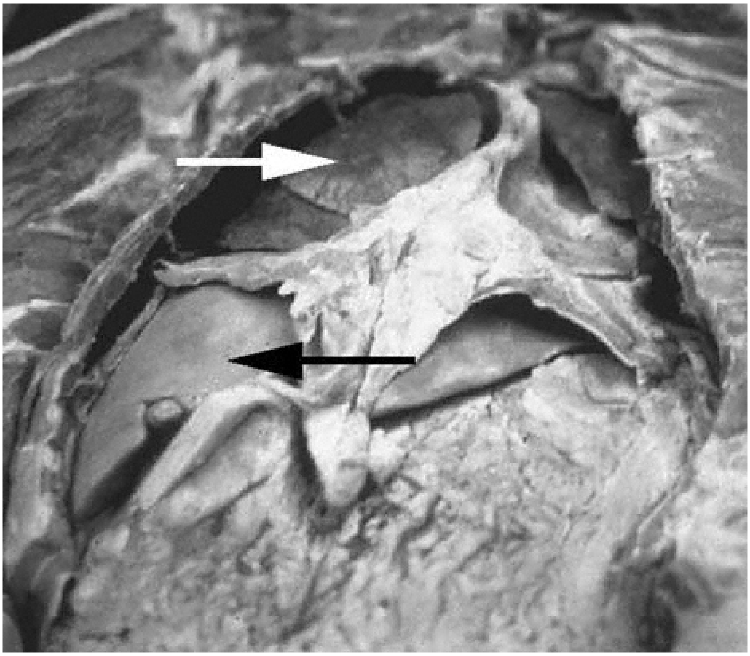


Figure 1.71 The internal organs were in very good condition and could be easily evaluated. The white arrow points to the right lung and the black arrow points to the liver.

Figure 1.72 This man's body was disinterred because a faulty heart valve was thought to be the cause of his death. See next photo.

Figure 1.73 The body had undergone moderate change with mold on the external surface and internal organ softening and discoloration. See next photo.

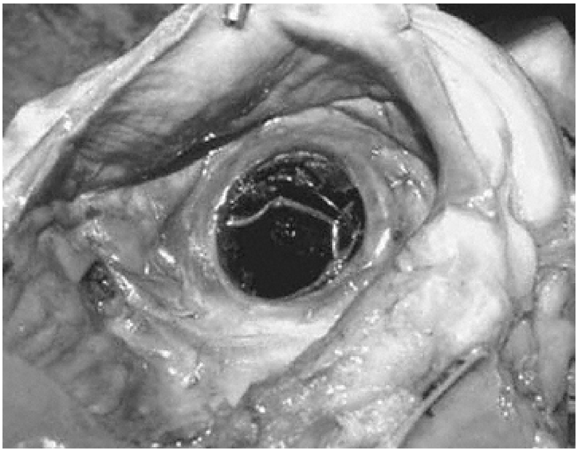


Figure 1.74 The heart valve could easily be located and evaluated. In this case, the valve did not malfunction; however, it was damaged from the trocarring performed during the embalming process.

Figure 1.75 This woman's body was placed in a steel box, filled with concrete, and buried under the house. The concrete did not totally encase the body because her back was lying on the bottom of the box. She was found approximately 18 months after death. See next photo.

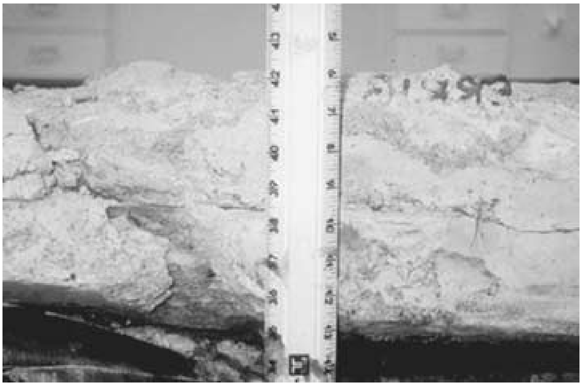


Figure 1.76 The concrete was over 7″ thick. See next photo.

Figure 1.77a The body had markedly decomposed while in the concrete for almost two years. No cause of death could be proven. There were no fractures. The woman was thought to have been strangled.

Figure 1.77b A woman was abducted, killed, and buried here in the woods. See next photo.

Figure 1.78 After ten days in the ground, the body was in relatively good condition. See next photo.

Figure 1.79 There was obvious trauma to the head. The body was transported directly to the morgue and placed in refrigeration. See next photo.

Figure 1.80 This is the top of her head the next day at autopsy. There were marked decompositional changes by the time the autopsy was performed. Bodies can change significantly from the time they are discovered until the examination.

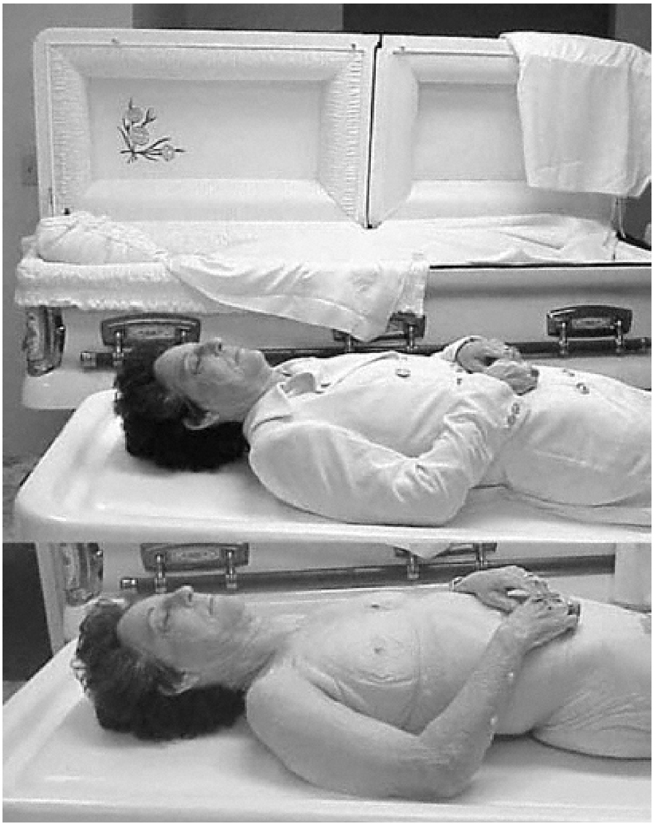


Figure 1.81 This woman was buried for almost a year. See next photo.

Figure 1.82 Her body was in remarkably good condition except for some mold and skin slippage on her hands.

Figure 1.83 A two year old was disinterred nine years after burial. He was not autopsied prior to burial. His babysitter reported he had fallen down some stairs. Her story was accepted, even though there was a fracture of the skull and retinal hemorrhages. See next photo.

Figure 1.84 There were marked decompositional changes. See next photo.

Figure 1.85 The face had a putty-like consistency from adipocere change. There were no visible external injuries. See next photo.

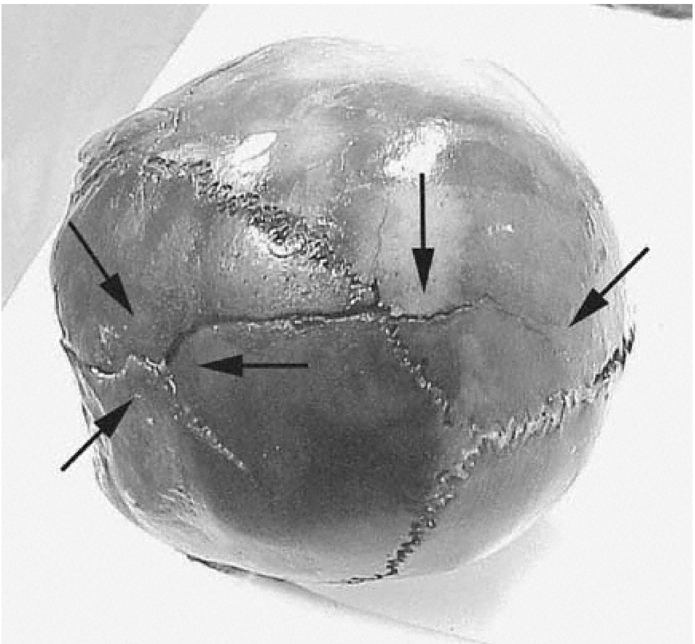


Figure 1.86 A depressed skull fracture (arrows) in the posterior skull extended toward the front. This is inconsistent with a fall. When confronted, the babysitter admitted striking the child.

Figure 1.87 Roaches caused these abraded lesions after death. This is called anthropophagia. See next photo.

Figure 1.88 Notice the lack of blood around the area where the ear is missing. A rat had chewed off this man's ear after he died in a car.

Figure 1.89 Most postmortem injuries are usually red-brown to brown with a lack of blood in or around the wounds. However, they may be red if the area is in a dependent position.

Figure 1.90 These injuries were caused by insects. The man was clothed and wrapped in a blanket. They are somewhat more red than usual. See photos 1.42 and 1.43.

Figure 1.91 Another example of anthropophagia by ants or roaches. This baby was thought to have been abused. An emergency room physician saw these marks and became suspicious. The child died of SIDS.

Figure 1.92 This woman was shot in the chest. Her body lay on the floor for two days prior to discovery. See next photo.

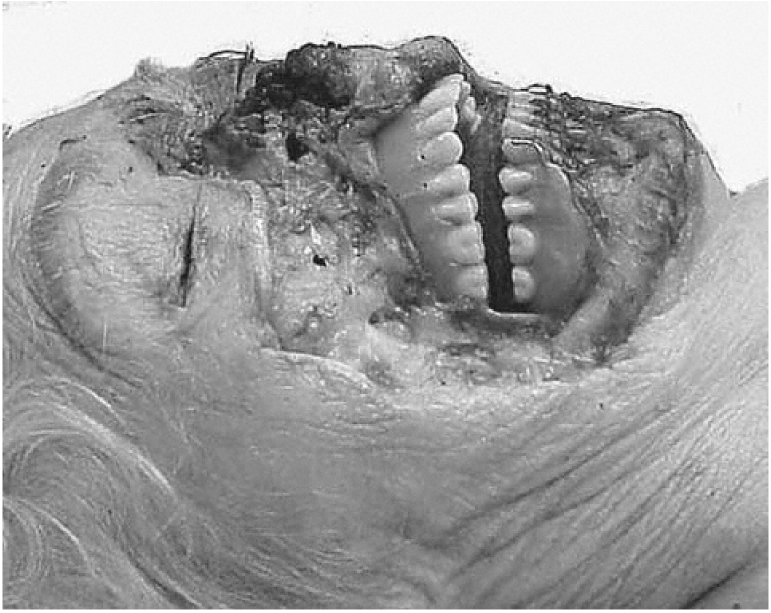


Figure 1.93 Her face was chewed by her cat. See next photo.

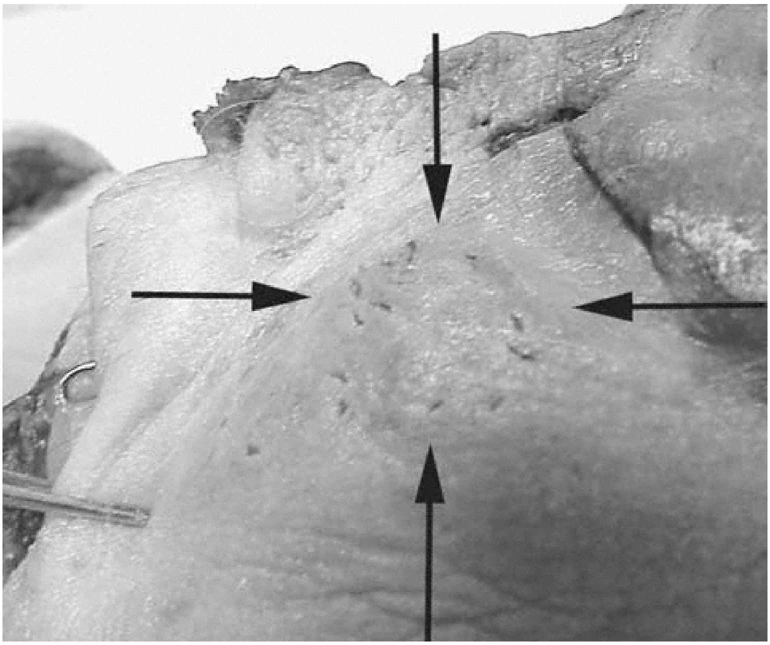


Figure 1.94 Teeth marks from the cat were apparent on her cheek.

Figure 1.95 Notice the difference between the skin of the hand and the rest of the body in this drowning victim. See next photo.

Figure 1.96a A close-up view of the hand shows the dramatic wrinkling of the skin. Had the person been in the water longer, the skin might have easily slipped off like a glove.

Figure 1.96b The skin and toenails will also slip off the feet in drowning, heat, and decomposition.

Figure 1.97 The discoloration of this man's legs is from heart failure and not decomposition or livor mortis.

Figure 1.98 Swollen abdomen from fluid buildup due to cirrhosis of the liver and not decomposition.

Figure 1.99 Blood from the eye after eye donation.

Figure 1.100 Another example of hemorrhage from eye donation.

Figure 1.101 A Plastic eye replaces the original eye after donation.

Figure 1.102 This man's body is decomposing after his abdomen was initially opened for liver and kidney specimen removal for toxicology.

Figure 1.103 Decubitus ulcers (bed sores) in a case of elderly abuse. Not a postmortem injury.

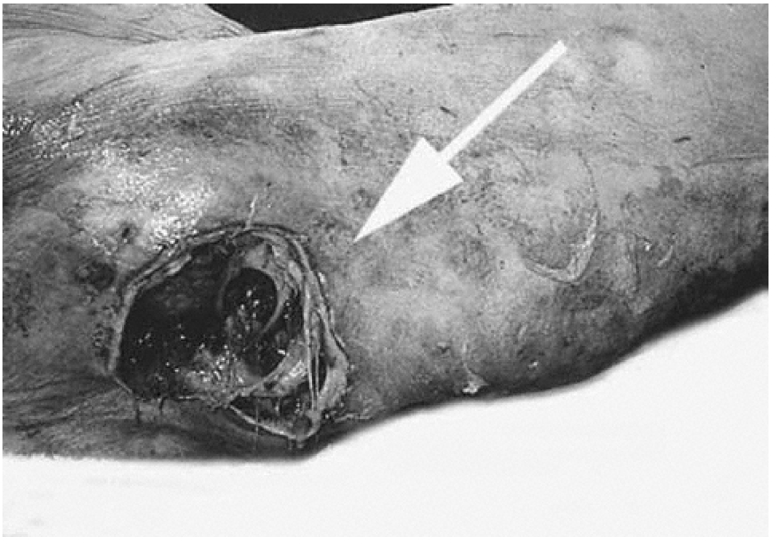


Figure 1.104 Decubitus ulcer of the hip.

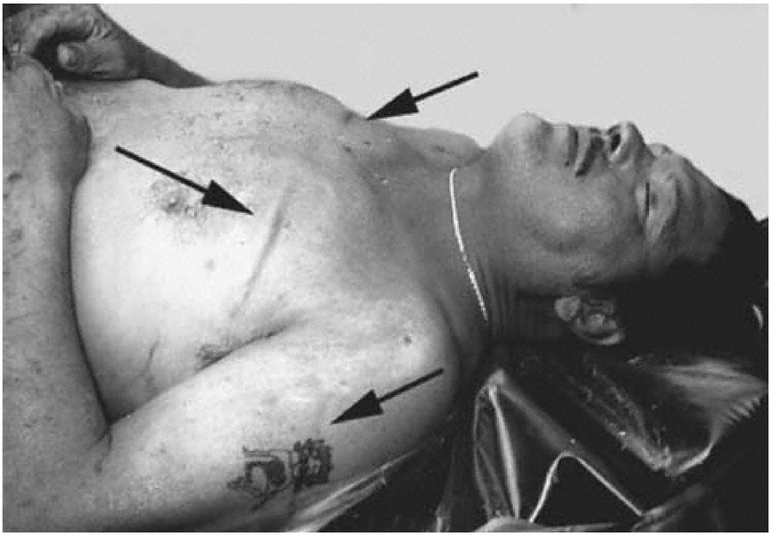


Figure 1.105 Marks from straps used to secure the decedent onto the stretcher. These are not antemortem injuries.

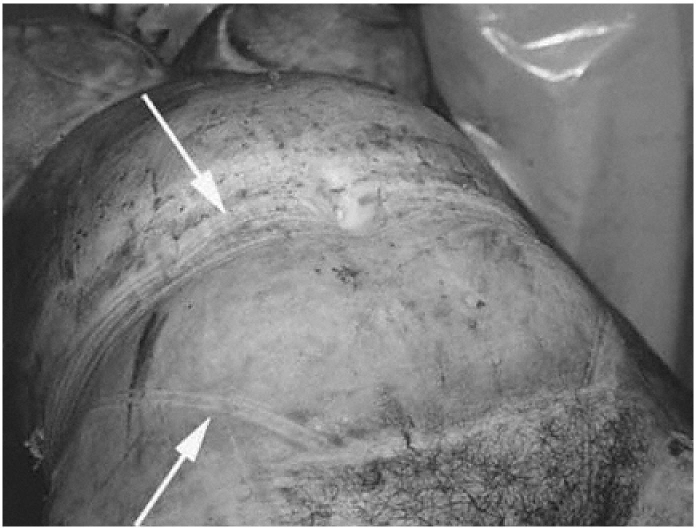


Figure 1.106 Panty line marks are quite apparent after decomposition occurs.

Figure 1.107 Normal discoloration of the skin on the abdomen (not from a scar or injury).

Figure 1.108a Vomitus on the face. Vomit and aspiration is rarely the sole cause of death. Many people vomit when they are dying.

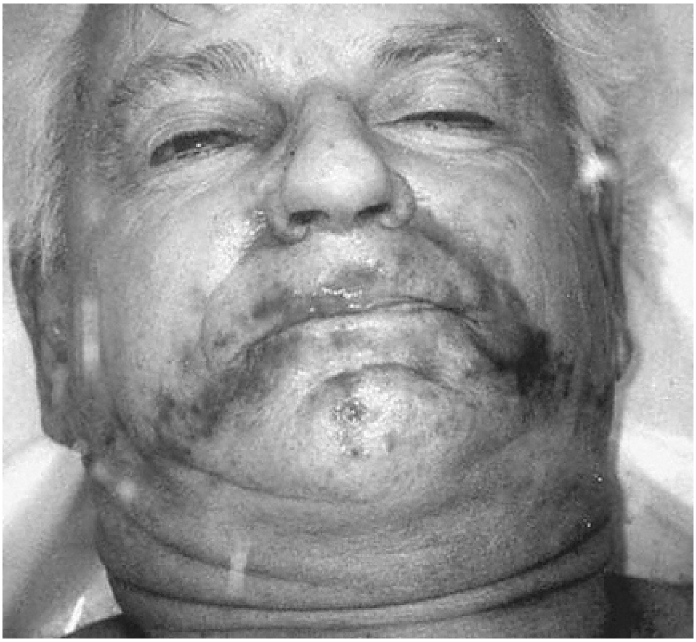


Figure 1.108b Superficial abrasions on the face from acid in vomitus or gastric contents. See next photo.

Figure 1.108c There were similar lesions on his back as well.

Figure 1.109 Postmortem dilatation of the rectum. There are no injuries. It is not a sign of sodomy.

Figure 1.110 This woman was bludgeoned to death and left on the side of the road. See next photo.

Figure 1.111 The cold caused her skin and soft tissues to have a doughy consistency.

Figure 1.112 A couple with a handicapped son was visited every week by a visiting nurse that worked with the son. She came for her weekly visit and discovered the couple on the kitchen floor. See next photo.

Figure 1.113 The man had been dead for 4–5 days. The degree of his body's decomposition was consistent with the mail and newspaper buildup outside the house. Autopsy revealed significant coronary artery disease as a cause of death. See next photo.

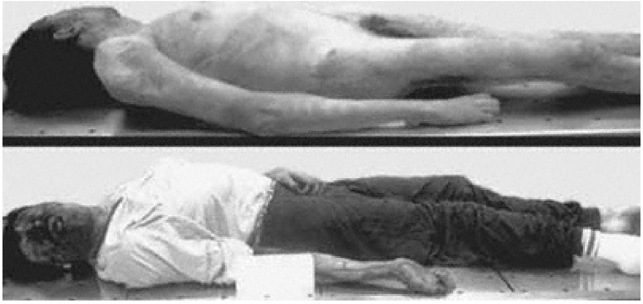


Figure 1.114 The son was not as decomposed as the father was and his lividity was cherry red. Autopsy revealed physical deformities (he was confined to a wheelchair) and a carbon monoxide level of 30%. There was no other cause for his death. See next photo.

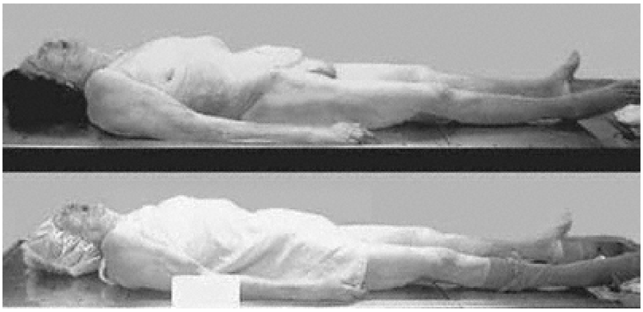


Figure 1.115 The mother's body was not decomposed. Autopsy revealed cardiomegaly, pericarditis, and aortic stenosis. Toxicology was negative for all drugs, including the digoxin she was supposed to be taking. See next photo.

Figure 1.116 A closer look at the original scene shows the wife with her leg over her husband's leg. The only thing out of place at the scene was an overturned stool next to the bodies. A car in the garage was empty of gas and the key was in the "on" position. See next photo.

Figure 1.117 In summary: The father died first of heart disease. The wife killed the son by carbon monoxide in the garage and then killed herself. At the end, she lay next to her husband, grabbed his hand (arrow), and waited for death. Their physician confirmed the fact that the husband and wife had a suicide pact; if one of them died, the other would kill the son and then commit suicide.

Identification

2

A very important question to answer in any death investigation is the identification of the decedent. Identification of the decedent allows his or her family and acquaintances to grieve and settle the decedent's affairs. In addition, investigation of the death is greatly facilitated when the identity of the decedent is known. In non-forensic deaths, identifying the decedent is rarely a concern because most people die at home or in a health care facility. Identification is more often problematic in forensic cases because death may occur away from home and the next of kin may not be available to view the body; death occurs away from home and no identification is present on the body; a person lives and dies alone; false identification may by present on the body; or injury and/or postmortem changes preclude visual identification of the decedent.

Identification can be carried out in a variety of ways. It is convenient to categorize the means of identification as positive or presumptive. Positive identification entails scientifically establishing identity through the presence of known unique characteristics. Positive methods of identification include fingerprints, footprints, dental characteristics, radiographic comparisons and the presence of certain permanently implanted unique medical devices. The current state of DNA technology is generally considered a method of positive identification recognizing that an identical twin would be expected to carry the same DNA pattern. Presumptive methods of identification include those relying on non-unique or inconstant factors such as clothing, physical characteristics, circumstantial evidence, exclusion and visual identification. All methods of identification require that a known characteristic of an individual (even if it is a family member's DNA) be compared with the same characteristic of the unknown decedent.

The identity of most decedents in the U.S. is established by direct visualization. Under the appropriate conditions, this type of identification is quite acceptable and does not need to be supplemented with some other form of positive identification.

Positive Identification

Visual Identification

As noted above, the identification of most decedents is satisfactorily established by means of viewing the facial characteristics. Family members or close acquaintances are notified of a death and may go to the hospital, morgue or funeral home to confirm the identity of a decedent. In these cases, other information has led authorities to think that the decedent is a certain specified individual. Visual identification of a dead person may be quite unpleasant for the family. Some jurisdictions require the next of kin to visually identify the decedent in person while other jurisdictions may allow identification by viewing a photograph of the decedent. Some jurisdictions may rely solely upon rapid scientific identification if it is available and suggest that relatives avoid looking at the body until it is ready for viewing at the funeral home. In many cases, even if identification has been established scientifically, family members still want to see the body to "make sure" it is their loved one.

Even though this method of identification is the most common, in some ways is the easiest and is rarely incorrect, it is not without problems. Family members may mistakenly identify a person as their loved one because the authorities have told them that is who the dead person is supposed to be. Family members have been seen to make visual identification while their eyes were closed. Similarly, they may mistakenly not identify their loved one because emotionally they are in denial about the possibility of his or her death. Blood, disfiguring injuries and decomposition each make visual identification hazardous. Changes that exacerbate emotional responses or that obscure identifying features may make visual identification unreliable. Rarely, misidentification is intentional (fraud). If the examiner is at all unsure about the reliability of a visual identification, some other method of identification should be used.

Many methods used to identify a decedent may also serve as methods to exclude identity. Identity is easily excluded by radiography, dental examination, DNA analysis and fingerprints.

Fingerprints

A common means of positive identification is fingerprint comparison. To date, no two sets of fingerprints have ever been shown to be identical, even those of identical twins. Approximately 200 million people have their fingerprints on file with law enforcement and/or other agencies. Since the science of fingerprinting has advanced significantly over the last 50 years, mistakes in fingerprint identification rarely occur. Advances in technology

have helped agencies store fingerprint data and electronically search their files for possible matching prints, thereby shortening the time it takes to make matches of the unidentified body to a known individual. Even in this age of computerized searching, the final match is still made manually by a qualified fingerprint analyst.

Even if an individual did not have fingerprints on file with some agency, it may still be possible to do a fingerprint comparison. In these cases, fingerprints may be obtained from objects or surfaces that the person who is thought to be the decedent has touched, such as a mirror at home, bathroom articles, office articles, etc. Obviously, it is important in this situation to make sure that the exemplar prints do indeed belong to the person who was supposed to have left them.

The basic fingerprint ridge pattern resides in the dermis. As previously discussed, even after skin slippage, the dermal ridge pattern is still available for evaluation. The fingerprint pattern may also be recovered from the layers of skin that have slipped from the body. Recovering fingerprints from decomposed tissue may be difficult but experienced fingerprint experts using a variety of techniques have reasonable success in printing decomposed bodies.

In some cases, footprints may be used to establish identity. Footprints recorded at birth may be used for comparison purposes, especially for children. Unfortunately, a large number of the footprints secured at the time of birth are technically inadequate for comparison purposes. Additionally, many pilots have their footprints recorded since the foot is generally well-protected and may be relatively intact following a crash that extensively disrupts other portions of the body.

Dental

Most adults and many children have been to the dentist. In fact, more people have visited the dentist than have ever been fingerprinted. The unique characteristics of teeth (including reparative or cosmetic procedures) and jaw bones, coupled with their durability, make dental comparison an ideal method of identification. Antemortem dental radiographs can be compared with postmortem radiographs. A forensic pathologist sometimes will make the comparison in straightforward cases but rely on an odontologist in more complex cases and, often, cases involving homicides. In many jurisdictions, dentists perform all dental comparisons. As a practical matter, even in cases involving simple comparisons, next of kin and juries tend to feel more comfortable with the reliability of a dental identification if it has been made by a dentist. In some cases, a particular dentist may recognize his or her handiwork by examining a prosthesis from an unidentified decedent and thus provide a means of establishing identification.

Dental comparison is most often made using antemortem and postmortem radiographs. In some cases, antemortem radiographs may not be available. In some of these cases, dental comparison still may be possible by comparing the teeth seen in a photograph of the smiling individual with the teeth of the decedent.

Edentulous persons may also be identified through dental comparison methods. Radiographs including the bone structure of the jaws may offer sufficient unique detail to establish identity. Dentures sometimes are inscribed with the owner's name, social security number or other identifying information. Although it is tempting to rely on this type of information to establish identification, it must be kept in mind that dentures are not permanently implanted and may be used by someone else. We have seen over the years a couple of individuals who were wearing some other person's dentures when they died. Identifying information inscribed on dentures is best used as a bridge (pun intended) to other more positive means of identification.

Some children have not been to a dentist. If their remains are discovered, a positive dental comparison may not be possible; however, the pattern of tooth eruption might give an indication as to the age of the child.

The dentist can also check for wear patterns that might lead to indications of lifestyle habits (e.g., pipe smoking) and age. These findings may be useful in corroborating other information or narrowing the search for additional information about the decedent.

Radiographs (X-rays)

Many individuals have undergone at least one X-ray examination during their lifetime. These radiographs can be compared to postmortem studies either by forensic pathologists or radiologists. In general, it is preferable for anything other than straightforward radiographic identifications to be confirmed by a radiologist. Skull and pelvic radiographs tend to be the best for comparison because they have more points of bony variation, making them easier to match than the more commonly taken chest radiograph. For an adult, the skull may be the most useful radiograph since the pattern of the sinuses in the front of the skull is specific for each individual. Like fingerprints, no two sinus patterns in this region are exactly alike. In addition, radiographs depicting unique injuries or anomalies are also ideal for identification purposes.

The discovery of antemortem X-rays does not ensure a positive identification can be made even if the radiographs are of sufficient technical quality for identification purposes. There may not be enough points of comparison to consider the radiographic findings unique. A presumptive identification

may be made if the radiographs are consistent with those of the decedent and there is no other evidence to suggest the decedent is someone else.

DNA "Fingerprinting"

DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) is the building block of human genetic material and is found in all cells of the body which have nuclei. Differences in the makeup of DNA of various persons make it possible to distinguish the DNA of one person from that of another. The results of DNA analysis has been called the DNA "fingerprint," implying that the genetic composition is similar to our fingerprint in that it is unique to an individual. This is not quite true — identical DNA patterns are found in identical twins. However, excluding the existence of an identical twin, the DNA of an individual is unique. DNA testing is commonly performed in all states and its validity has been accepted by the scientific and legal communities.

Some medical examiners routinely save blood in all cases for DNA testing if it becomes necessary at some point in the future. For identification purposes, postmortem blood or tissue DNA analytic results can be compared to the results of testing performed on a known antemortem specimen. In some cases, an antemortem sample may not be available. In these cases, DNA samples can be obtained from family members and the analysis of these samples may demonstrate the decedent is from this particular family.

Blood collected during autopsy for DNA testing is also commonly used for other purposes such as the determination of paternity. The postmortem blood DNA pattern can be used to identify or exclude a parent-child relationship between two individuals. Some states are routinely collecting blood for DNA testing in an attempt to complete investigations in unsolved murders and sexual assaults.

DNA has been used to identify victims in cases where the body is missing. In Missouri, a man was convicted of shooting his wife in the head with a shotgun while she was seated in her car. The body was never found, but the car contained an abundant amount of dried blood, shotgun pellets and facial bone fragments. The blood in the car was proven to be the wife's blood. Similarly, DNA was used to identify the source of fragments of brain tissue recovered from a car wash drain even though the remainder of the body was missing.

A form of DNA is found in cellular organelles called mitochondria. This form of DNA is unique in that it is inherited solely from the mother. Its usefulness for identification lies in the fact that it may be recovered from hair. Thus, hair from hairbrushes or electric razor debris may provide a source of DNA for comparison purposes. Mitochondrial DNA analysis is a specialized form of DNA testing and is performed in a limited number of laboratories.

Presumptive Identification

Physical Features

Tattoos, scars, birthmarks, the absence of organs from surgical procedures and other physical anomalies are helpful in making identifications. The presence or absence of any of these characteristics may be helpful in eliminating possible matches, as well as in making an identification. The strength of an identification made on individual or combinations of physical features will depend on the relative uniqueness of the feature(s).

A feature that may be very useful in making an identification is the presence of a permanently implanted medical device such as an artificial joint or a pacemaker. In the U.S., if these devices are removed, they are not allowed to be implanted into another person. Each of these devices bears a unique serial number. The manufacturer of the device can be contacted and the serial number can be used to identify the individual into whom the device was implanted, as well as when and where it was implanted.

Clothing and other Personal Property

The style, size and manufacturer of clothing and jewelry are commonly used to make a presumptive identification or to presumptively exclude identity. Relatives, friends or witnesses may remember what the missing person was wearing when last seen. Unfortunately, clothing may decompose along with the rest of the body or be destroyed if a body is burned. Of course, a person may not be wearing his or her "regular" clothes when death occurred or may not be wearing the same clothing when "last" seen. Identification should not be based solely on clothing since someone else may have donned the missing person's clothing or the missing person may be wearing the clothing of some other person.

Similarly, personal property such as a driver's license or social security card may offer important leads as to the identity of the decedent. However, since these documents can be borrowed, found or stolen, their presence should not be sole determinants of identity.

Circumstances Surrounding Death

Occasionally, it may not be possible to make a positive or presumptive identification based on the characteristics of the remains. In some cases, however, the circumstances in which the remains are discovered may allow identification to be made. For example, a decomposed body is found sitting in a chair facing the television set, which is on. The house is locked and no evidence of foul play is evident. The body is that of an elderly man who is clothed in the same attire the owner of the house was seen

in 5 days previous to the body being discovered. The owner of the house is a sickly elderly man with no known relatives and who did not believe in going to doctors. A diligent search to locate the owner of the house alive was unsuccessful. There was no reason to believe the remains were those of someone other than the owner. Under these circumstances, a presumptive identification of the body as the owner may be made. Similarly, circumstantial evidence may allow an extensively burned partially consumed body recovered from a house fire to be identified as the house's resident. Obviously, identification based on circumstances involves some risk of error and great care must be used when relying on this type of identification method.

A variant of circumstantial identification is identification by exclusion. As an example, a military jet with a crew of five crashed and burned during takeoff, resulting in extensive burning of the bodies of the crew. The crew was known to consist of four men and one woman. The remains were not visually identifiable; however, autopsies revealed one of the remains as those of an adult female and the others as males. By exclusion, identification of the woman was made since she was the only female member of the known flight crew.

Skeletal Remains

Skeletal remains are usually examined by a physical anthropologist, preferably a forensic anthropologist. Forensic anthropologists are experts in estimating age, gender, race and stature. A variety of measurements and formulae are used to arrive at their conclusions. Techniques are also available to reconstruct the facial characteristics of the decedent if the skull is available.

Age estimates in children may be arrived at by radiographic and dental techniques looking at bone ossification centers and dental eruption patterns. A variety of findings may also help categorize the age of an adult skeleton. Microscopic evaluation of bone which involves counting the number of osteons is one method of age estimation.

Identification of skeletal remains is accomplished using the same methods as in the identification of non-skeletal remains. Obviously, visual identification of skeletal remains is not valid.

Anthropologists may address issues other than the general skeletal characteristics. They are able to examine the remains for signs of injury and may be able to identify the nature of injuries (blunt force, sharp force, firearm) as well as whether the injuries were sustained antemortem or postmortem. Evidence of postmortem animal activity such as clawing and gnawing are typically readily recognized by the anthropologist.

Figure 2.1 This woman's face was traumatized due to a motor vehicle accident. Care must be taken when asking the family for a visual identification (I.D.). Many family members or friends are hesitant to give a positive I.D. when the face has been injured. Visual identification may also be difficult in cases in which the decedent's body has undergone moderate decomposition.

Figure 2.2 The skin and fingernail of this little finger have slipped off due to the heat. Only the skin is needed to make a fingerprint.

Figure 2.3 This decomposed man has marked skin slippage of the hands. See next photo.

Figure 2.4 Close up of the left hand. See next photo.

Figure 2.5 Close up of the right hand.

Figure 2.6 The skin on the ends of the fingers can be removed and placed on the examiner's hand for printing. See next photo.

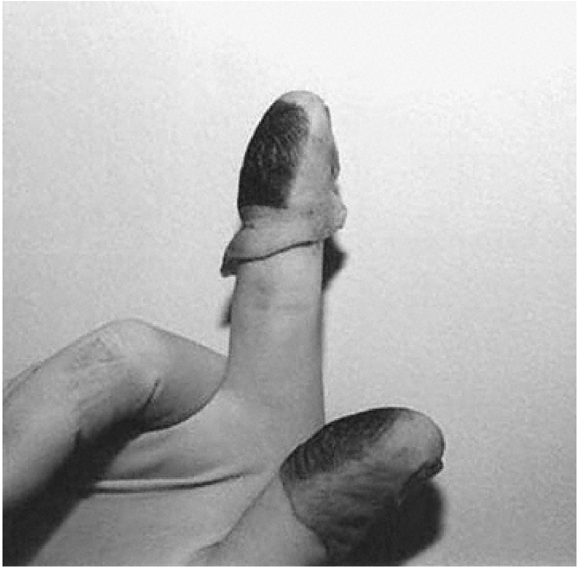


Figure 2.7 Printed skin.

Figure 2.8 If necessary, the ends of the fingers or hands may be removed and sent to the lab for printing.

Figure 2.9 Tattoos may be good for both probable and positive I.D.s.

Figure 2.10 Occasionally tattoo artists are able to identify their work.

Figure 2.11 Some tattoos may be cute, but not very unique. However, they still may aid in eventual identification.

Figure 2.12 Tattoos can be readily observed on decomposed bodies with skin slippage.

Figure 2.13 A unique tattoo on an individual with a gunshot wound to the head (arrow).

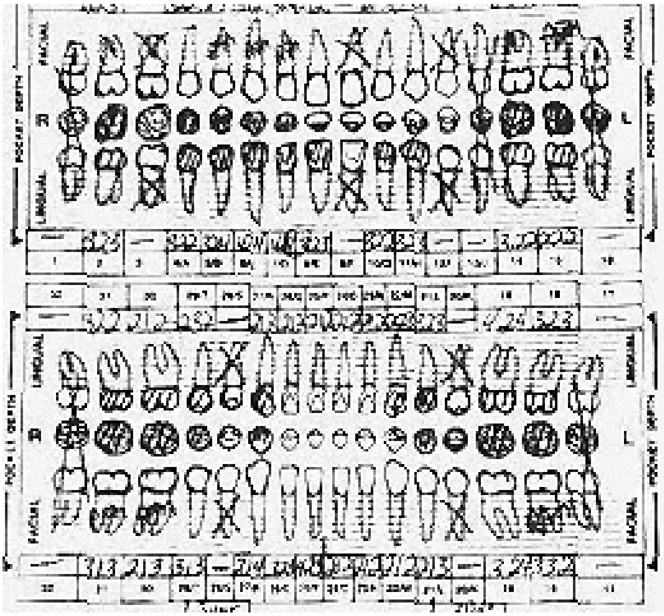


Figure 2.14 A typical dental chart used to make a positive identification. The teeth are numbered from the upper right molar (#1), across to the upper left wisdom tooth (#16) and then across the bottom from left (#17) to right (#32).

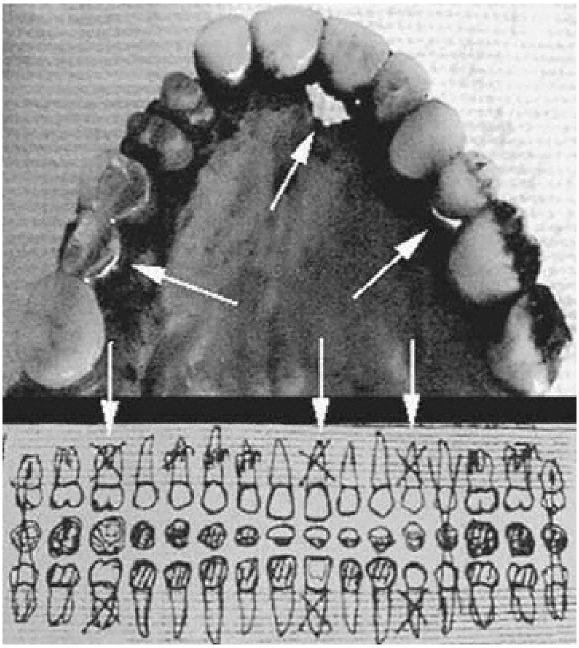


Figure 2.15 This is an example of numerous points of positive matches (arrows).

Figure 2.16 The teeth may withstand extensive thermal injury and decomposition. Even though this body is charred, the teeth remain a good source for identification. See next photo.

Figure 2.17 The jaw may need to be removed and retained for I.D. purposes. The skin and soft tissue around the jaw are cut and reflected prior to removing the bone. See next photo.

Figure 2.18 An oscillating saw is used to remove the maxilla and mandible.

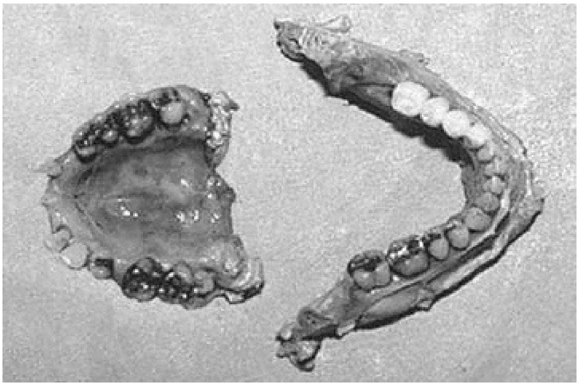


Figure 2.19 Once removed, the maxilla and mandible (right) can be easily examined and X-rayed.

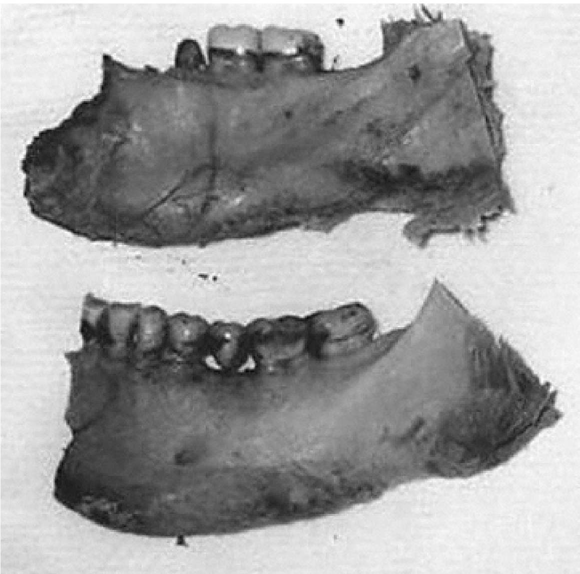


Figure 2.20 These two portions of a mandible have identifiable dental work that made I.D. easy.

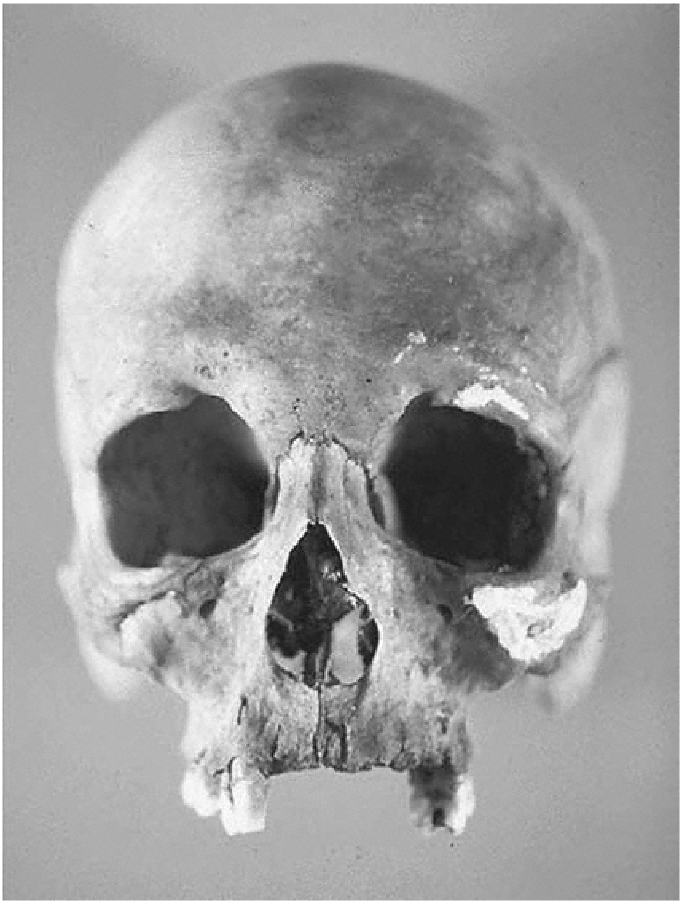


Figure 2.21 This skull was discovered with other parts of a skeleton. The police thought they knew the decedent's identity; however, a positive I.D. had to be made.

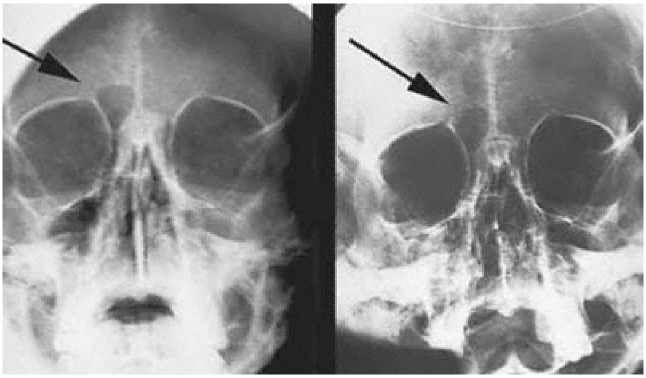


Figure 2.22 A skull X-ray from a previous traffic accident was available for comparison. The arrows point to the frontal sinuses on the antemortem (left) and postmortem films. The sinuses are the same.

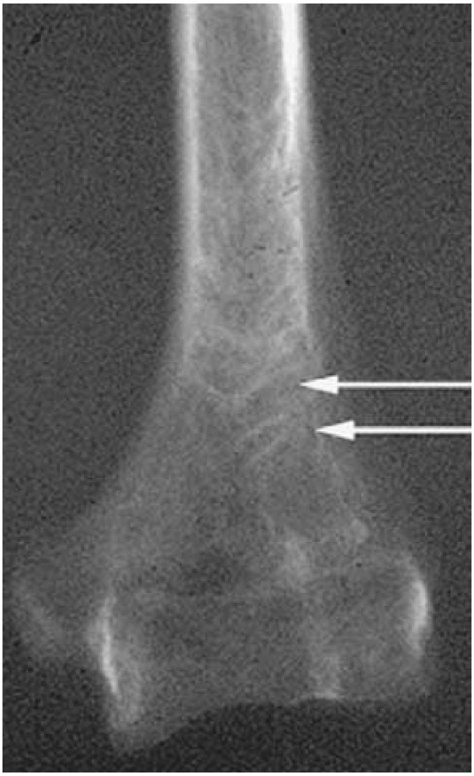


Figure 2.23 Individual growth lines in the bone (arrows) can be used for I.D.

Figure 2.24 This body was discovered in a field. It was thought to be that of an African-American man who was shot in the abdomen during a barroom brawl. In order to prosecute the assailant, a positive I.D. needed to be made. See next photo.

Figure 2.25 An examination of the skull revealed black curly hair and the jaw of a man. The teeth appeared as if no dentist had ever worked on them. The findings are consistent with those of an African-American man; however, positive proof must be made. See next photo.

Figure 2.26 There was moderate decomposition to the torso with abundant maggots. Notice the difference in the degree of decompositional changes between the torso and the skull in the previous photo. See next photo.

Figure 2.27 The clothing was consistent with those worn by the man when he was shot. This is still not enough for a positive I.D.. See next photo.

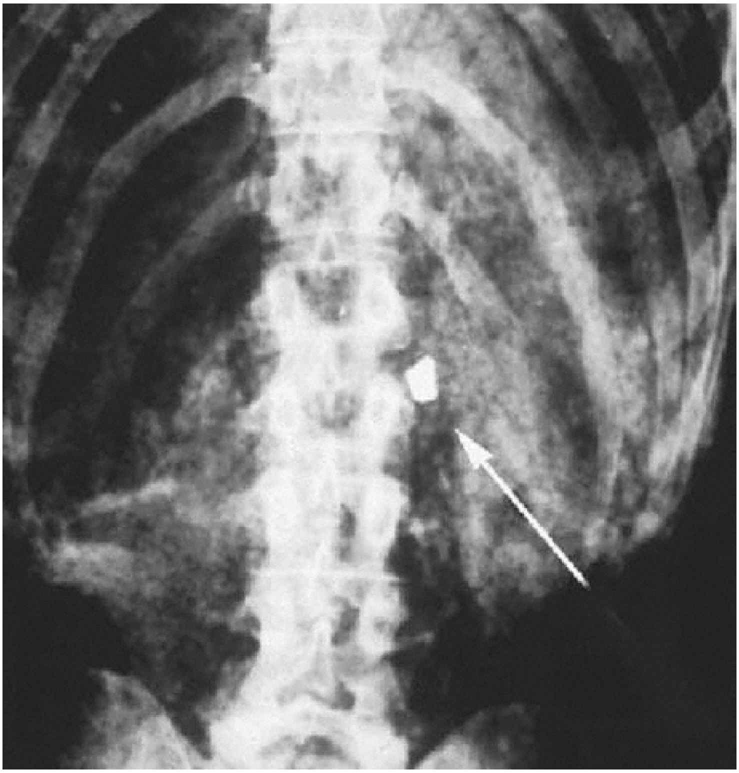


Figure 2.28 A postmortem X-ray revealed a bullet (arrow) next to the spine. There was no scar tissue around the bullet. This proved he had recently been shot. See next photo.

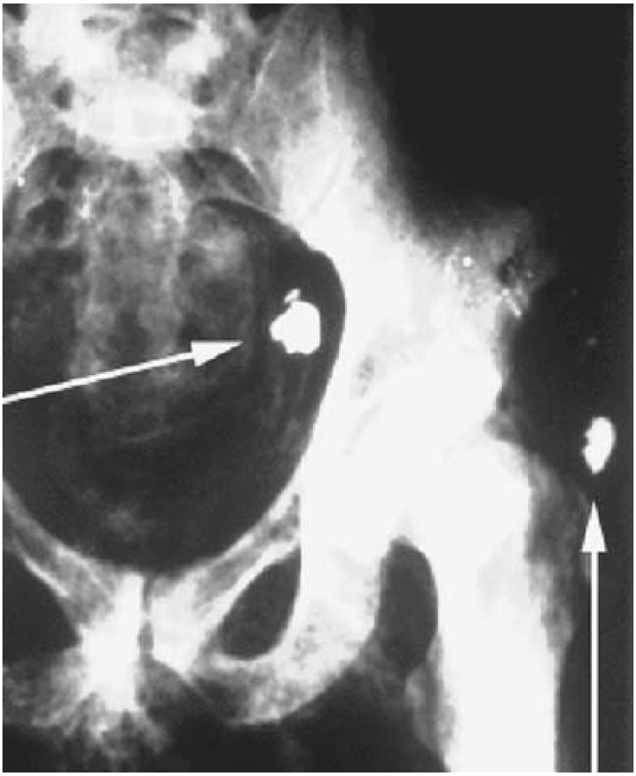


Figure 2.29 An X-ray of the pelvis revealed bullet fragments. These fragments were surrounded by scar tissue, indicating the man had been shot before. See next photo.

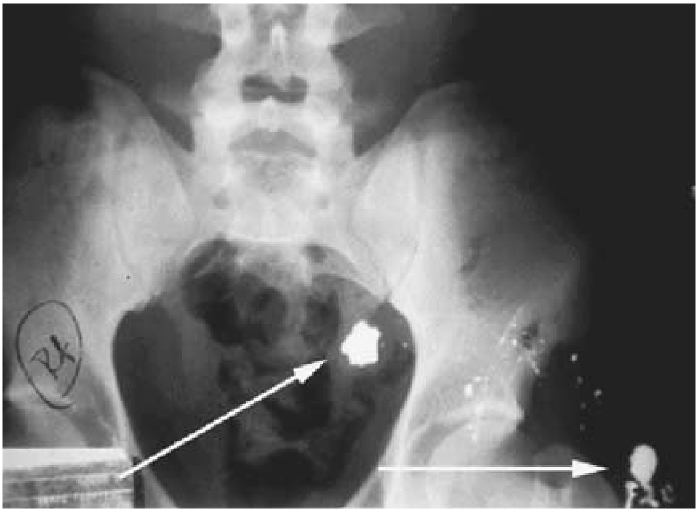


Figure 2.30 An eight-year-old X-ray from the probable victim revealed the same fragments as seen on the postmortem radiograph. See next photo.

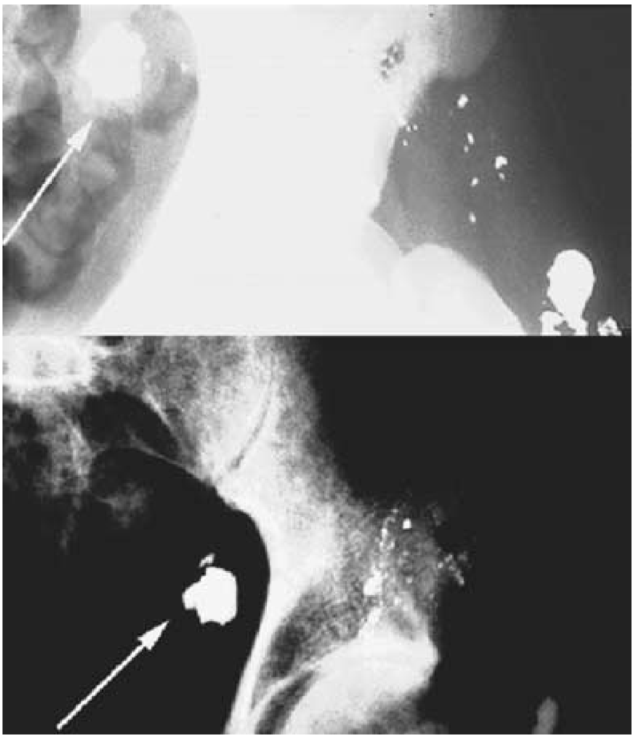


Figure 2.31 A comparison of the two X-rays revealed not only a match with the bullet fragments, but also a match of the pelvic bones. Now there is positive I.D. and the assailant can be prosecuted.

Figure 2.32 This skinned appendage was thought to be a hand when discovered by law enforcement. See next photo.

Figure 2.33 The X-ray reveals the specimen to be a bear paw. The tips of the digits were removed by a taxidermist for mounting. Notice that only one digit is shorter than the others.

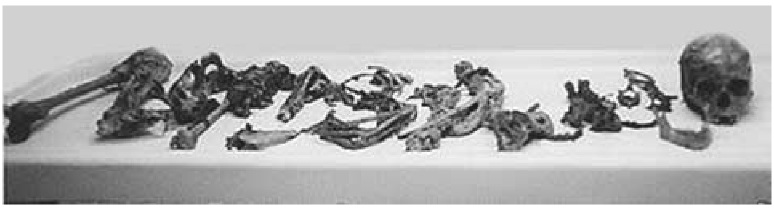


Figure 2.34 These bones were sent in for examination. See next photo.

Figure 2.35 A closer view of the skull and jaw. See next photo.

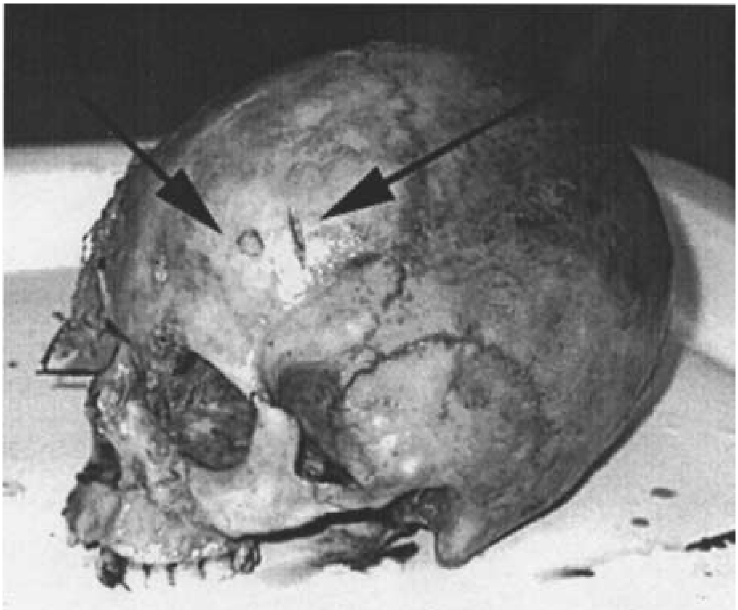


Figure 2.36 Examination of the skull revealed blunt impact injuries (arrows).

Figure 2.37 This hand is from a woman who died in a plane crash. The ring on her finger was identified by her son.

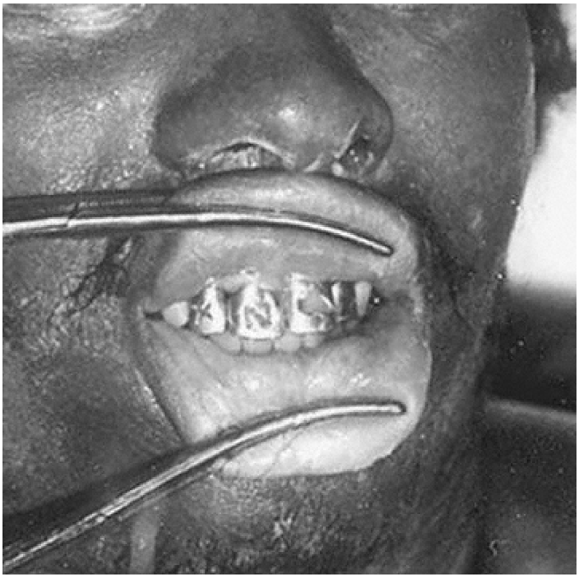


Figure 2.38 The gold caps with the initials made this a relatively easy I.D.

Figure 2.39 This photo shows a metal plate (arrow) used to fix a fractured cervical vertebrae. The plate has an identifying number that helped to make a positive I.D.

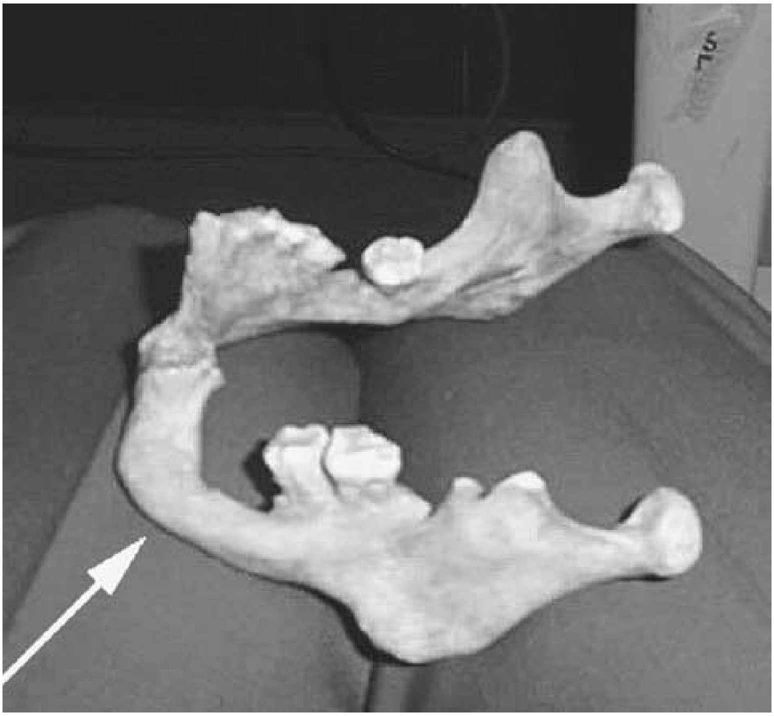


Figure 2.40 Old injuries to this decedent's jaw aided in the I.D. of the remains.

Figure 2.41 Clothing may be used to make probable I.D. The wearer of these panties was identified by the word "sexy."

Figure 2.42 This baby was discovered in a toilet. His identification was made with DNA testing. Prior to DNA technology, his identification would probably have not been made.

References

1. Perper J.A., Time of death and changes after death. Pt 1. Anatomical considerations, in Spitz W.U. (ed): *Spitz and Fisher's Medicolegal Investigation of Death: Guidelines for the Application of Pathology to Crime Investigation, 3rd ed*. Springfield: Charles C. Thomas, 1993, pp 26-27.
2. *Dorland's Illustrated Medical Dictionary, 28th ed*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders, Co., 1994.
3. Fierro M.F., Identification of Human Remains, in Spitz, W.U. (ed): *Spitz and Fisher's Medicolegal Investigation of Death: Guidelines for the Application of Pathology to Crime Investigation, 3rd ed*. Springfield: Charles C. Thomas, 1993, pp 106-108.
4. Lee H.C., et al, DNA Typing in Forensic Science, *Am. J. Forensic Med. Pathol.*, 15:269-282, 1994.
5. Gonzales T.A., Vance M., et al., *Legal Medicine*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1954.
6. Haglund W.D. and Sorg M.H. (eds): *Forensic Taphonomy*. Boca Raton: CRC Press, 1997.
7. DiMaio D.J. and DiMaio V.J.M.: *Forensic Pathology*. New York: Elsevier, 1989.
8. Graham M.A. and Hanzlick R.: *Forensic Pathology in Criminal Cases*. Carlsbad: Lexis Law Publishing, 1997.
9. State of Missouri *v.* Ralph Davis, 1989.

Case Examples

3

Case 1 — Differential Decomposition

On a hot August day in the midwest, the body of an elderly man was found in a ditch next to a country road. He was lying supine, dressed in overalls, a short-sleeved work shirt and socks without shoes. His abdomen and legs were covered by a blanket. There was extensive maggot infestation of the head and neck, partially obscuring a scalp defect on the back of his head. In addition, there was a ligature encircling the neck. The skin of the upper chest, neck and head was markedly darkened. The rest of the body was not decomposed. There was no apparent blood on the ground surrounding the decedent.

The scalp defect was a 4″ gaping laceration with no injury to the underlying bone or brain. The ligature was a small towel tightly compressing the neck and knotted in the back. There was no rigor mortis and livor mortis was present on the posterior aspect of the body. The stomach contained fragments of sausage, brown liquid and yellow-white semi-solid food particles. Approximately a dozen maggots were collected and preserved in alcohol. A diagnosis of ligature strangulation was rendered. The manner of death was ruled as homicide.

The next day, a deputy sheriff called the pathologist and asked about the time of death. The deputy was holding a man in custody who had been seen with the decedent two days prior to the body being found. The suspect was out of town on business the day before the victim's body was discovered. The suspect had a good motive for the murder because of a soured business deal with the victim. Prior to making a formal arrest, the officer needed to make sure the postmortem interval was consistent with two days. What should the pathologist tell the deputy about the postmortem interval in this case?

Discussion

One of the most frequently asked questions during a death investigation concerns the time of death. Unfortunately, determining the exact time of death from an examination of a body is not possible. Numerous findings must be interpreted to give a reasonable estimate of the postmortem interval. In this particular case, the time of death was key to the arrest because the suspect had an alibi for the day prior to the discovery of the body.

In this case, differential decomposition occurred because a head injury caused an open wound. Blood is an excellent stimulus for flies to lay eggs and for maggot activity which accelerated decompositional changes of the head. Since the rest of the body had not decomposed, an estimation of the postmortem interval was made by evaluating the area of least decomposition.

Environmental temperature is the most important factor in determining the rate of decompositional change after death. The decompositional changes in the head and the lack of rigor mortis could occur in 10–20 hours in temperatures circa 90°F. Therefore, in this case the appearance of the body suggested a postmortem interval of less than 24 hours.

The decedent's stomach contained pieces of sausage, brown liquid and yellow-white food particles suggestive of breakfast foods. If he normally ate these foods only in the morning, then he probably ate breakfast on the day of his death. Relatives and friends should be contacted to discover his eating habits, including whether he tended to eat breakfast at home or at a particular restaurant. In addition, a search of his home may demonstrate remnants of sausage and eggs.

The maggots appeared freshly hatched and were also consistent with being less than 30 hours of age. This information correlates with the other findings since it is well established that flies lay eggs on a body very shortly after death.

The above discussion suggests the decedent died the day before his body was discovered. Therefore, the "prime" suspect with the strong alibi does not appear to have committed the murder, and investigators need to renew their search for the killer.

Case 2 — Time of Death

An elderly couple was discovered dead in bed. There was a gunshot wound to the man's head. A revolver was in his right hand. The woman had no apparent injuries. Both bodies were at room temperature, in complete rigor mortis and with posterior fixed lividity. The man was dressed in day clothes and his wife was wearing a nightgown. Autopsies demonstrated the woman to have a massive intracerebral hypertensive hemorrhage and the man to

have a perforating gunshot wound of the head with a contact entry site in the right temple.

The times of death and not the causes of death were in question. The man had a trust fund for his two grown children by a previous marriage. The trust was written in such a way that if he died first, his money went to his current wife. Upon her death, the money would go to her children by a previous marriage. But if he died after her, his children inherited the money. Thus, the important question is — who died first?

The physical appearance of the bodies was of no help. Both had relatively the same degree of rigidity and lividity. An analysis of their stomach contents was of no help since both stomachs were empty. The most important factor in this case was the clothing. The woman was wearing a nightgown and the man was wearing street clothes. Although there is no way to absolutely prove the sequence of events, the most likely scenario is that the man discovered his wife dead and subsequently laid down beside her and took his own life. In this scenario, his children would have received the money. Even though this scenario is the most likely, it cannot be proven scientifically to a reasonable degree of certainty. The wife's heirs may likely dispute such a ruling and claim that survivorship cannot be determined with reasonable certainty.

In many cases involving multiple deaths occurring in a single incident such as a plane crash, the sequence of deaths cannot be reliably determined. The fact that one person was pronounced dead after another person does not necessarily imply that death occurred later; it may simply reflect that one person was found before the other. Most jurisdictions deal with this issue by presuming that individuals who died in the same event died at the same time unless it can be proven otherwise to a reasonable degree of certainty.

Case 3 — Gastric Contents

A prison inmate summoned the guards at approximately 4:30 p.m. on a Sunday afternoon. When the guard arrived at the cell, the inmate told him he had just killed his cell mate during a fight within the previous 30 minutes. The cell mate was lying on the bottom bunk in the cell. The guard saw little out of the ordinary besides the dead cell mate. The guard called for the paramedics and did not examine the body. The autopsy demonstrated signs of strangulation — bruises on the neck, hemorrhages in the neck strap muscles, a fractured larynx and petechiae on the conjunctivae and orbital skin. The stomach was full of slightly digested brown meat with corn and lima beans.

The gastric contents were not consistent with other investigative information. On Sunday, the noon meal is served in the main cafeteria and the

evening meal is served in the cells. The evening meal is served early on Sunday, at approximately 3 p.m. On this particular day, a guard delivered two trays of the afternoon meal at the usual time. Thirty minutes later, the guard picked up the trays and both meals had been eaten. On this particular day, the noon meal was meatloaf with corn and lima beans. The evening meal consisted of more meat but with carrots as the only vegetable. Since the decedent had corn and lima beans in his stomach, he had been killed prior to the 3 p.m. meal and both of the evening meal trays had been eaten by the assailant. The killer admitted to killing his cell mate because he wanted to be on death row with his “boyfriend.” His wish was granted.